The ROYAL MARSDEN
NHS Foundation Trust

The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of

Clinical Nursing Procedures

STUDENT EDITION

Eighth Edition

Edited by Lisa Dougherty and Sara Lister

The ROYAL MARSDEN
NHS Foundation Trust

The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of

Clinical Nursing Procedures

STUDENT EDITION

Eighth Edition

Edited by Lisa Dougherty and Sara Lister

Contents

Cover

Half Title page

Title page

Copyright page

List of contributors to the eighth edition

Foreword to the eighth edition

Introduction and guidelines for use

- *References*

Quick reference to the procedure guidelines

Acknowledgements

List of abbreviations

Part One: Managing the Patient Journey

Chapter 1: The context of nursing

- *Introduction*
- *Political factors*

Economic factors
Social factors
Technical factors
Conclusion
References

Chapter 2: Assessment, Discharge and End of Life Care

Overview
Inpatient assessment and the process of care
Discharge planning
Care of the dying patient
Last Offices
References

Chapter 3: Infection Prevention and Control

Overview
Infection Prevention and Control
Aseptic technique
Source isolation
Protective isolation
Prevention and management of inoculation injury
Management of waste in the healthcare environment
Management of soiled linen in the healthcare environment
References

Chapter 4: Risk Management

Overview

Risk management
The assessment and mitigation of important clinical risks
Venous thromboembolism
Pressure ulcers
Prevention of falls
Key principles of risk management
References

Part Two: Supporting the Patient with Human Functioning

Chapter 5: Communication

Overview
Communication
Informing patients
Managing challenging issues with communication
Denial and collusion
Anxiety
Panic attacks (acute anxiety)
Depression
Behavioural
Suicidal ideation
Anger, aggression and violence management
Delirium
Acquired communication disorders
References

Chapter 6: Elimination

Overview
Normal elimination
Assisting the patient with normal elimination
Urinary elimination
Penile sheaths
Urinary catheterization
Bladder irrigation
Faecal elimination
Diarrhoea
Constipation
Enemas
Suppositories
Stoma care
References

Chapter 7: Moving and Positioning

Overview
Moving and positioning
Positioning the patient: sitting in bed
Positioning the patient: side-lying
Positioning the patient: in a chair/wheelchair
Moving the patient from sitting to standing
Moving and positioning the unconscious patient
Moving and positioning the patient with respiratory compromise
Positioning to maximize ventilation/perfusion matching
Positioning to minimize the work of breathing
Positioning to maximize the drainage of secretions

Moving and positioning the patient with neurological impairment
Positioning and management of an amputee
References

Chapter 8: Nutrition, Fluid Balance and Blood Transfusion

Overview
Fluid balance
Nutritional status
Provision of nutritional support: oral
Enteral tube feeding
Enteral tube insertion
Administration of enteral tube feed
Enteral feeding tubes: administration of medication
Transfusion of blood and blood components
References

Chapter 9: Patient Comfort

Overview
Personal hygiene
Eye care
Ear care
Mouth care
Pain
Pain management
References

Chapter 10: Respiratory Care

Overview
Respiratory therapy
Oxygen therapy
Humidification
Tracheostomy care
Tracheostomy: dressing change
Tracheostomy: suctioning
Cardiopulmonary resuscitation
References

Part Three: Supporting the Patient Through the Diagnostic Process

Chapter 11: Interpreting Diagnostic Tests

Overview
Diagnostic tests
Blood: obtaining samples from a peripheral vein (venepuncture)
Blood tests
Blood cultures
Antimicrobial drug assay
Specimen collection: swab sampling
Specimen collection: urine sampling
Specimen collection: faecal sampling
Specimen collection: respiratory tract secretion sampling
Endoscopic investigations
Gastroscopy
Colonoscopy
Cystoscopy

Liver biopsy
Radiological Investigations: X-ray
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
Computed tomography (CT)
References

Chapter 12: Observations

Overview
Observations
Pulse
Twelve□lead electrocardiogram (ECG)
Blood pressure
Respiration and pulse oximetry
Peak flow
Temperature
Urinalysis
Blood glucose
Neurological observations
References

Part Four: Supporting the patient through treatment

Chapter 13: Medicines management

Overview
Medicines management
Self-administration of medicines
Controlled drugs

Routes of administration
Oral administration
Topical administration
Transdermal administration
Rectal administration
Vaginal administration
Pulmonary administration
Ophthalmic administration
Nasal administration
Otic administration
Injections and infusions
Intradermal injection
Subcutaneous injection
Intramuscular injections
Intravenous injections and infusions
References

Chapter 14: Perioperative Care

Overview
Preoperative care
Intraoperative care
Intraoperative care: anaesthesia
Intraoperative care: theatre
Intraoperative care: recovery
Postoperative care
References

Chapter 15: Wound Management

Overview

Wounds
Pressure ulcers
Surgical wounds
Removal of sutures or staples
Wound drains
Plastic surgery
Negative pressure wound therapy
References

Appendix 1: The Code

Appendix 2: Contributors to previous editions

Appendix 3: Multiple choice answers

Index

The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures

Student Edition

You've bought the book now test your knowledge online!

Visit **www.royalmarsdenmanual.com**
and select the **Student Edition** tab

The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures

Student Edition

Eighth Edition

Edited by

Lisa Dougherty
OBE, RN, MSc, DClinP
Nurse Consultant Intravenous Therapy
The Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust

and

Sara Lister
RN, PGDAE, BSc (Hons), MSc, MBACP
Assistant Chief Nurse/Head of School
The Royal Marsden School of
Cancer Nursing & Rehabilitation
The Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust

NHS

WILEY-BLACKWELL
A John Wiley & Sons, Ltd., Publication

This edition first published 2011
© 1992, 1996, 2000, 2004, 2008, 2011 The Royal Marsden Hospital

Blackwell Publishing was acquired by John Wiley & Sons in February 2007. Blackwell's publishing programme has been merged with Wiley's global Scientific, Technical, and Medical business to form Wiley-Blackwell.

Registered office
John Wiley & Sons Ltd, The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, UK

Editorial offices
9600 Garsington Road, Oxford, OX4 2DQ, UK
The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, UK
2121 State Avenue, Ames, Iowa 50014-8300, USA

For details of our global editorial offices, for customer services and for information about how to apply for permission to reuse the copyright material in this book please see our website at www.wiley.com/wiley-blackwell.

The right of the authors to be identified as the authors of this work has been asserted in accordance with the UK Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, except as permitted by the UK Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988, without the prior permission of the publisher.

Wiley publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

Designations used by companies to distinguish their products are often claimed as trademarks. All brand names and product names used in this book are trade names, service marks, trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners. The publisher is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book. This publication is designed to provide accurate and authoritative information in regard to

the subject matter covered. It is sold on the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering professional services. If professional advice or other expert assistance is required, the services of a competent professional should be sought.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

The Royal Marsden Hospital manual of clinical nursing procedures / edited by Lisa Dougherty and Sara Lister. — 8th ed. (student ed.)
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 978-1-4443-3510-1 (pbk. : alk. paper)
1. Nursing—Technique–Handbooks, manuals, etc. I. Dougherty, Lisa. II. Lister, Sara E. III. Title: Manual of clinical nursing procedures.
RT42.R68 2011b
610.73 — dc22

2010044584

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Every effort has been made in the writing of this book to present accurate and up-to-date information from the best and most reliable sources. However, the results of caring for individuals depends upon a variety of factors not under the control of the authors or the publishers of this book. Therefore, neither the authors nor the publishers assume responsibility for, nor make any warranty with respect to, the outcomes achieved from the procedures described herein.

List of contributors to the eighth edition

Lynn Ansell MPharm, PG Dip Clinical Pharmacy
Formerly Pharmacy Clinical Services Manager
(**Chapter 13**: Medicines management)

Hannah Brown RN, MN, DipHE
Formerly Sister
(**Chapter 6**: Elimination)

Suzanne Chapman RN, BSc, MSc
Clinical Nurse Specialist Pain Management
(**Chapter 9**: Patient comfort)

Rebecca Clarke RN, BSc(Hons), MSc
Ward Sister
(**Chapter 14**: Perioperative care)

Maria Crisford RN, BSc (Hons), Dip HE
Colorectal Specialist Sister
(**Chapter 6**: Elimination)

Alison Diffley RN, Advanced Dip, DiP
Clinical Nurse Specialist Counsellor
(**Chapter 5**: Communication)

Andrew J. Dimech RN, BN, Dip HE, PG Dip, MSc
Intensive Care
Clinical Nurse Specialist, Cancer, Critical Care, Resuscitation and Outreach
(**Chapter 11**: Interpreting diagnostic tests)

Shelley Dolan RN, BA (Hons), MSc, PhD
Chief Nurse
(**Chapter 4**: Risk management)

Pauline Doran-Williams RN, BSc, DiP HE
Specialist Sister Plastic Surgery
(**Chapter 15**: Wound management)

Lisa Dougherty OBE, RN, MSc, DClinP
Nurse Consultant Intravenous Therapy
(**Chapter 11**: Interpreting diagnostic tests;
Chapter 13: Medicines management)
Natalie Doyle RN, MSc
Nurse Consultant Rehabilitation
(**Chapter 9**: Patient comfort)

Steven Edmunds RN, BSc (Hons), Dip HE
Senior Staff Nurse
(**Chapter 12**: Observations)

Ann Farley RN, BA (Hons)
Specialist Sister Palliative Care
(**Chapter 9**: Patient comfort)

Andreia Fernandes RN, BSc, PG Dip
Clinical Nurse Specialist Gynaecology-Oncology
(**Chapter 6**: Elimination; **Chapter 9**: Patient comfort;
Chapter 11: Interpreting diagnostic tests)

Catherine Forsythe RN, Dip HE, BSc (Hons)
Senior Staff Nurse, Critical Care Unit
(**Chapter 11**: Interpreting diagnostic tests)

Charlotte Graham RN, BSc

Senior Staff Nurse
(**Chapter 11**: Observations)

Dimity Grant-Frost RN, BSc
Special Sister, Palliative Care
(**Chapter 2**: Assessment, discharge and end of life care)

Jagdesh K. Grewal RN, BA (Hons), PG Dip NE, DMS
Matron
(**Chapter 14**: Perioperative care)

Oonagh Griffin RD, BSc (Hons)
Dietetic Team Leader
(**Chapter 8**: Nutrition, fluid balance and blood transfusion)

Diz Hackman Dip Physiotherapy, MCSP, PG Dip, MSc
Clinical Specialist Physiotherapist
(**Chapter 7**: Moving and positioning)

Sharlene Haywood RN, BSc (Hons)
Formerly Specialist Sister Rehabilitation Outreach Team
(**Chapter 9**: Patient comfort)

Beverley Henderson RN, PG Dip Counselling Psychotherapy, BSc (Hons)
Clinical Nurse Specialist Counsellor
(**Chapter 5**: Communication)

Geraldine Heneghan RN, BSc
Sister
(**Chapter 11**: Interpreting diagnostic tests)

Diana Higgins RN, Dip HE, BA (Hons), MA
PALS and Patient Information Officer

(**Chapter 5**: Communication)

Claire Hine MCSP, BSc (Hons)
Senior Physiotherapist
(**Chapter 7**: Moving and positioning)

Justine Hofland RN, BSc (Hons), Dip HE, MSc
Clinical Nurse Director
(**Chapter 2**: Assessment, discharge and end of life care)

Victoria Hollis RN, BN (Hons), MSc
Matron/Nurse Practitioner
(**Chapter 12**: Observations)

Kate Jones MCSP, Dip Physiotherapy, MSc
Clinical Specialist Physiotherapist
(**Chapter 7**: Moving and positioning)

Joanna Lamb RN, BSc (Hons), BA
Ward Sister
(**Chapter 12**: Observations; **Chapter 14**: Perioperative care)

Carol Lane RD, BSc (Hons), PG Dip
Dietitian
(**Chapter 8**: Nutrition, fluid balance and blood transfusion)

Sara Lister RN, BSc (Hons), PGDAE, MSc
Assistant Chief Nurse/Head of School
(**Chapter 1**: The context of nursing;
Chapter 2: Assessment, discharge and end of life care;
Chapter 5: Communication)

Perrie Luke RN, RM, RMN
Critical Care Outreach Charge Nurse

(**Chapter 10**: Respiratory care)

Jennifer Mackenzie RN, BN
Sister, Critical Care Unit
(**Chapter 11**: Interpreting diagnostic tests)

Kath Malhotra MCSP, BSc (Hons), PGCE
Lecturer/Practitioner
(**Chapter 7**: Moving and positioning)

Rebecca Martirani RN, BA
Specialist Sister Infection Prevention
(**Chapter 3**: Infection prevention and control)

Kelly McGovern RN, Dip HE, Dip Cancer
Senior Staff Nurse
(**Chapter 2**: Assessment, discharge and end of life care)

Hayley McHugh RN, CPPD, BSc (Hons)
Practice Educator, CCU
(**Chapter 8**: Nutrition, fluid balance and blood transfusion)

Chris McNamara RN, BSc (Hons), MSc
Lecturer Practitioner
(**Chapter 6**: Elimination)

Dee Mears DCR, DMS
Superintendent Radiographer
(**Chapter 11**: Interpreting diagnostic tests)

Helen Mills RN, BSc (Hons), MSc
Head of Quality Assurance
(**Chapter 1**: The context of nursing)

Carolyn Moore MCSP, SRP
Superintendent Physiotherapist
(**Chapter 7**: Moving and positioning)

Sarah Newton RD, BSc (Hons)
Dietitian
(**Chapter 8**: Nutrition, fluid balance and blood transfusion)

Gillian M. Parker RN, BSc, ONC
Specialist Sister Urology
(**Chapter 6**: Elimination)

Natalie Pattison BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD, Dip HE
Clinical Nursing Research Fellow
(**Chapter 1**: The context of nursing; **Chapter 2**: Assessment, discharge and end of life care)

Karon Payne RN
Transfusion Practitioner
(**Chapter 8**: Nutrition, fluid balance and blood transfusion)

Abby Peacock Smith RN, BN, CPPD
Critical Care Outreach Sister
(**Chapter 10**: Respiratory care)

Hannah Perry RN, BSc (Hons)
Specialist Sister GI
(**Chapter 6**: Elimination)

Scott Pollock Dip SW, BA (Hons), SW, MSc
Complex Discharge Co-ordinator
(**Chapter 1**: The context of nursing; **Chapter 2**: Assessment, discharge and end of life care)

Stephen Pollock RN, BSc, Dip HE
Critical Care Outreach Charge Nurse
(**Chapter 10**: Respiratory care)

Jorn Rixen-Osterbro RN, BSc (Hons), Dip HE
Specialist Charge Nurse
(**Chapter 2**: Assessment, discharge and end of life care)

Lara Roskelly RN, Dip N, Dip HE
Critical Care Outreach Sister
(**Chapter 10**: Respiratory care; **Chapter 11**: Interpreting diagnostic tests)

Steve Scholtes RN, BSc, MSc
Matron
(**Chapter 14**: Perioperative care)

Erica Scurr DCR(R), MSc
Lead MRI Superintendent Radiographer
(**Chapter 11**: Interpreting diagnostic tests)

Clare Shaw RD, BSc (Hons), PG Dip, PhD
Consultant Dietitian
(**Chapter 8**: Nutrition, fluid balance and blood transfusion)

Sian Shepherd RD, BSc (Hons), Advanced Dip
Catering Liaison Dietitian
(**Chapter 8**: Nutrition, fluid balance and blood transfusion)

Victoria Sinnett DCR(R), MSc
Superintendent Radiographer
(**Chapter 11**: Interpreting diagnostic tests)

Jenny Smith RN

Senior PALS and Patient Information Officer
(**Chapter 5**: Communication)

Anna-Marie Stevens RN, RM, ONC, BSc (Hons), MSc
MacMillan Nurse Consultant Palliative Care
(**Chapter 6**: Elimination; **Chapter 9**: Patient comfort)

Nicola Tinne RN, BSc, Dip HE
Specialist Sister Head & Neck
(**Chapter 15**: Wound management)

Joanna Todd RN, BN (Hons), Dip HE
Senior Staff Nurse
(**Chapter 12**: Observations)

Richard Towers RN, Dip Onc, BSc (Hons), MSc
Lecturer Practitioner/Lead Nurse Counsellor
(**Chapter 5**: Communication)

Joanna Waller RN, Dip Onc, BN (Hons)
Ward Sister Ellis Ward
(**Chapter 14**: Perioperative care)

Ashworth Paul Weaving RN, BSc, Cert, Advanced Dip
Lead Nurse Infection Prevention and Control
(**Chapter 3**: Infection prevention and control)

Linda Wedlake RD, MSc, MMed Sci
Research Dietitian
(**Chapter 8**: Nutrition, fluid balance and blood transfusion)

Helen White MRCSLT, BSc (Hons)
Speech and Language Therapist/Team Leader
(**Chapter 5**: Communication;

Chapter 8: Nutrition, fluid balance and blood transfusion)

Barbara Witt RN
Nurse Phlebotomist
(**Chapter 11**: Interpreting diagnostic tests)

Foreword to the eighth edition

As the Chief Nurse of the Royal Marsden NHS Foundation Trust and a contributor and clinical user for many years, it is a special pleasure and honour to be asked to introduce the eighth Student edition of *The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures*. The manual is internationally renowned and used by nurses across the world to ensure their practice is evidence based and effective. As information becomes ever more available to the consumers of healthcare it is essential that the manual is updated frequently so that it reflects the most current evidence to inform our clinical practice.

More than ever in 2011, nurses need to be able to assure the public, patients and their families that care is based on the best available evidence. As students on placement in the busy world of clinical practice, either in a ward, unit or in the community, it can be challenging to find time to search for the evidence and this is where the Student edition of *The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures* is a real practical help.

As in previous editions, reviewing the evidence or sources of knowledge has been made more explicit with each level of evidence graded. This grading provides the reader with an understanding of whether the reference comes from a randomized controlled trial, national or international guidance or from expert opinion. At its best, clinical nursing care is an amalgam of a sensitive therapeutic relationship coupled with effective care based on the best evidence that exists. Some areas of practice have attracted international research such as cardiopulmonary resuscitation and infection prevention and control; other areas of practice have not attracted such robust research and therefore it is more of a challenge to ensure evidence-based care. Each year as the manual overview is designed we reflect on the gaps in research and knowledge and this provides the impetus to start developing new concept analysis and develop further research studies. This year there are new areas covered including a chapter on risk

management and a section on preparing the patient for diagnostic investigations such as endoscopy or CT scans.

As you look at the list of contributors to the manual you will see that this edition has continued to ask clinically active nurses to share their practice in their chapters. This has the double advantage of ensuring that this manual reflects the reality of practice but also ensures that nurses at the Royal Marsden NHS Foundation Trust are frequently reviewing the evidence and reflecting upon their care.

A textbook devoted to improving and enhancing clinical practice needs to be alive to the clinical practitioner. You will see that this edition has a new overall format designed to make the manual more effective in clinical care.

As nurses we provide care that is individually and sensitively planned, and based on the best available evidence. The Student edition of *The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedure*s is a wonderful resource for such evidence and I hope it will be widely used by students across the country.

Finally, I would like to pay a warm tribute to the amazing amount of work undertaken by the two editors, Lisa Dougherty and Sara Lister, and to all the nurses and allied health professionals at the Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust who have worked so hard on this eighth edition.

Shelley Dolan
Chief Nurse
The Royal Marsden
Hospital NHS
Foundation Trust

Introduction and guidelines for use

The first edition of *The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures* was produced in the early 1980s as a core procedure manual for safe practice within The Royal Marsden Hospital, the first cancer hospital in the world. Thirty years and eight editions later the staff of the hospital are still working together to keep it updated, ensuring that only current evidence-based practice is recommended.

The type of evidence that underpins procedures is made explicit by using a system to categorize the evidence, which is broader than that generally used. It has been developed from the types of evidence described by Rycroft-Malone *et al*. (2004) in an attempt to acknowledge that 'in reality practitioners draw on multiple sources of knowledge in the course of their practice and interaction with patients' (Rycroft-Malone *et al*. 2004, p. 88).

The sources of evidence, along with examples, are identified as follows:

1 *Clinical experience (E)*:

- Encompasses expert practical know-how, gained through working with others and reflecting on best practice.
- If there is no written evidence to support clinical experience as a justification for undertaking a procedure the text will be referenced as an E but will not be preceded by an author's name.
- Example: (Dougherty 2008: E). This is drawn from the following article that gives expert clinical opinion: Dougherty, L. (2008) Obtaining peripheral vascular access. In: *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice* (eds L. Dougherty & J. Lamb), 2nd edn. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

2 *Patient (P):*

- Gained through expert patient feedback and extensive experience of working with patients.
- Example: (Diamond 1999: P). This has been gained from a personal account of care written by a patient, Diamond, J. (1999) *C:*

Because Cowards Get Cancer Too. Vermillion, London.

3 *Context (C):*

- May include Audit and Performance data, Social and Professional Networks, Local and National Policy, guidelines from Professional Bodies (e.g. Royal College of Nursing; RCN) and manufacturer's recommendations.
- Example: (DH 2001: C). This document gives guidelines for good practice: DH (2001) *Reference Guide to Consent for Examination or Treatment*. Department of Health, London.

4 *Research (R):*

- Evidence gained through research.
- Example: (Fellowes *et al.* 2004: R 1a). This has been drawn from the following evidence: Fellowes, D., Wilkinson, S. & Moore, P. (2004) Communication skills training for healthcare professionals working with cancer patients, their families and/or carers. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*, **2**, CD003751. DOI: 10.10002/14651858.CD003571.pub2.

The levels that have been chosen are adapted from Sackett, Strauss and Richardson (2000) as follows:

1 (a) Systematic reviews of randomized controlled trials (RCTs).
(b) Individual RCTs with narrow confidence limits.
2 (a) Systematic reviews of cohort studies.
(b) Individual cohort studies and low quality RCTs.
3 (a) Systematic reviews of case-controlled studies.
(b) Case-controlled studies.
4 Case series and poor quality cohort and case-controlled studies.
5 Expert opinion.

The rationale for the system and further explanation is discussed in more detail in Chapter 1.

The Manual is informed by the day-to-day practice in the Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust and conversely is the corporate policy and procedure document of the organization. It therefore does not cover all aspects of acute nursing practice or those relating to children's or community nursing. However, it does contain

the procedures and changes in practice that reflect modern acute nursing practice.

Core to nursing, wherever it takes place, is the commitment to care for individuals and to keep them safe. Increasing use is being made of the internet to record and access information essential in maintaining this safe environment. This edition of *The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures* has been significantly revised to reflect the move to utilize electronic records and web-based information in the process of providing patient care.

A more detailed uniform structure has been introduced for all chapters so that there is a balance to the information included. The number of chapters has been reduced, grouping together similar procedures related to an aspect of human functioning. This is to avoid the need to duplicate material and to make it easier for the reader to find.

The chapters have been organized into four broad sections that represent as far as possible the needs of a patient along their care pathway. The first section, *Managing the patient journey,* presents the generic information that the nurse needs for every patient who enters the acute care environment. The second section, *Supporting the patient with human functioning,* relates to the support a patient may require with normal human functions such as elimination, nutrition, respiration. The third section, *Supporting the patient through the diagnostic process*, includes procedures that relate to any aspects of supporting a patient through the diagnostic process from the simple procedures such as taking a temperature, to preparing a patient for complex procedures such as a liver biopsy. The final section, *Supporting the patient through treatment*, includes the procedures related to specific types of treatment or therapies related to the disease or illness of the patient.

Structure of chapters

The structure of each chapter is consistent throughout the book:

- *Overview:* As the chapters are larger and have considerably more content, each one begins with an overview to guide the reader, informing them of the scope and the sections included in the chapter.

- *Definition:* Each section begins with a definition of the terms and explanation of the aspect of care, with any technical or difficult concepts explained.
- *Anatomy and physiology*: Each section includes a discussion of the anatomy and physiology that relates to the aspect of nursing care in the chapter. If appropriate, this is illustrated with diagrams so the context of the procedure can be fully understood by the reader.
- *Related theory:* If an understanding of theoretical principles is more appropriate background information to help carry out a procedure, this has been included.
- *Evidence-based approaches:* This provides background and presents the research and expert opinion in this area. If appropriate the indications and contraindications are included as well as any principles of care.
- *Legal and professional issues:* This outlines any professional guidance, law or other national policies that may need to be known about in respect to the procedures. If necessary this includes any professional competences or qualifications that are required in order to perform the procedures.
- *Preprocedural considerations:* When carrying out any procedure there are certain actions that may need to be completed, equipment prepared or medication given beforehand. These are made explicit under this heading.
- *Procedure:* Each chapter includes the current procedures that are used in the acute hospital setting. They have been drawn from the daily nursing practice at The Royal Marsden NHS Foundation Trust. Only procedures where the authors have the knowledge and expertise have been included.

Each procedure gives detailed step-by-step actions, supported by rationale, and, where available, the known evidence underpinning this rationale has been indicated.

- *Problem solving and resolution*: If relevant, each procedure will be followed by a table of potential problems that may be encountered while carrying out the procedure and suggestions as to the cause, prevention and any action that may help resolve the problem.

- *Postprocedural considerations*: Care for the patient doesn't end with the procedure. This new section details any documentation the nurse may need to complete, education or information that needs to be given to the patient, ongoing observations or referrals to other members of the multiprofessional team.
- *Complications:* Any ongoing problems or potential complications are discussed in a final section and includes evidence-based suggestions for resolution.
- *Illustrations*: The number of colour illustrations has been increased and where relevant they have been used to illustrate the steps of some procedures. This will enable the nurse carrying out the procedures to see in greater detail, for example, the correct position of hands or the angle of a needle.
- *Reference list*: The chapter finishes with a reference list. Only recent texts from the last 10 years have been included unless they are seminal texts. For the first time a list of websites has also been included.

This book is intended as a reference and a resource, not as a replacement for practice-based education. None of the procedures in this book should be undertaken without prior instruction and subsequent supervision from an appropriately qualified and experienced professional. We hope that *The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures* will continue to be a resource and a contribution to 'continually improving the overall standard of clinical care' (NHSE 1999, p. 3).

References

NHSE (1999) *Clinical Governance: Quality in the New NHS*. Department of Health, London.

Rycroft-Malone, J. *et al*. (2004) What counts as evidence in evidence based practice? *J Adv Nurs*, **47**(1), 81–90.

Sackett, D.L., Strauss, S.E. and Richardson, W.S. (2000) *Evidence-Based Medicine: How to Practice and Teach EBM,* 2nd edn. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

Lisa Dougherty
Sara Lister

Quick reference to the procedure guidelines

Anaesthesia: caring for patient in anaesthetic room
Antiembolic stockings: assessment, fitting and wearing
Aseptic technique, for example, changing a wound dressing
Assessment and education of patients prior to surgery
Bed bathing a patient
Blood component administration
Blood components: collection and delivery to the clinical area
Blood cultures: peripheral (winged device collection method)
Blood glucose monitoring
Blood pressure measurement (manual)
Blood sampling: antimicrobial drug assay
Blood sampling: pretransfusion
Cardiopulmonary resuscitation
Care of the patient during bladder irrigation
Commencing bladder irrigation
Commode use: assisting a patient
Contact lens removal: hard lenses
Contact lens removal: soft lenses
Discharge planning
Donning a sterile gown and gloves: closed technique
Donning sterile gloves: open technique
Dressing a wound
Electrocardiogram
Enema administration
Enteral feeding tubes: administration of feed
Enteral feeding tubes: administration of medication
Eye irrigation
Eye swabbing

Faecal sampling
Feeding an adult patient
Fluid input: measurement
Fluid output: measuring output from drains
Fluid output: monitoring output from bowels
Fluid output: monitoring output from gastric outlets, nasogastric tubes, gastrostomy
Fluid output: monitoring output from stoma sites
Fluid output: monitoring/measuring output if the patient is catheterized
Fluid output: monitoring/measuring output if the patient is not catheterized
Hand decontamination using alcohol handrub
Handwashing
Humidification for respiratory therapy
Last Offices
Measuring the weight and height of the patient
Medication: administration by inhalation using a metered dose inhaler
Medication: administration by inhalation using a nebulizer
Medication: continuous infusion of intravenous drugs
Medication: controlled drug administration
Medication: ear drop administration
Medication: eye administration
Medication: injection (bolus or push) of intravenous drugs
Medication: injections administration
Medication: intermittent infusion of intravenous drugs
Medication: intradermal injection
Medication: intramuscular injection
Medication: nasal drop administration
Medication: oral drug administration
Medication: self-administration
Medication: single-dose ampoule: powder preparation
Medication: single-dose ampoule: solution preparation
Medication: subcutaneous injection

Medication: topical applications
Medication: transdermal applications
Medication: vaginal administration
Mouth care
Moving from sitting to standing: assisting the patient
Multidose vial: powder preparation, using a venting needle
Multidose vial: powder preparation, using equilibrium method
Nasogastric intubation with tubes using an introducer
Nasogastric intubation with tubes without using an introducer, for example, a Ryle's tube
Negative pressure wound therapy
Neurological observations and assessment
Operating theatre procedure
Oxygen therapy
Pain assessment chart: chronic pain recording
Patients in PACU
Peak flow reading using a manual peak flow meter
Penile sheath application
Positioning the neurological patient with tonal problems
Positioning the patient to maximize V/Q matching for widespread pathology in a self-ventilating patient
Positioning the patient to maximize V/Q matching with unilateral lung disease in a self-ventilating patient
Positioning the patient: in a chair/wheelchair
Positioning the patient: lying down to sitting up
Positioning the patient: side-lying
Positioning the patient: sitting in bed
Positioning the patient: supine
Positioning the preoperative and postoperative amputee patient
Positioning to maximize the drainage of secretions
Preoperative care: theatre checklist
Protective isolation: entering the isolation room
Protective isolation: preparing the room

Pulse measurement
Putting on and removing a disposable apron
Putting on and removing a disposable mask or respirator
Putting on and removing non-sterile gloves
Putting on or removing goggles or a face shield
Respiratory assessment and pulse oximetry
Safe disposal of foul, infected or infested linen
Slipper bedpan use: assisting a patient
Source isolation: entering the isolation room
Source isolation: leaving the isolation room
Source isolation: preparing an isolation room
Source isolation: transporting infected patients outside the source isolation area
Sputum sampling
Staple removal
Stoma bridge or rod removal
Stoma care
Suctioning a patient with a tracheostomy
Suppository administration
Suture removal
Swab sampling: ear
Swab sampling: eye
Swab sampling: low vagina
Swab sampling: nose
Swab sampling: penis
Swab sampling: rectum
Swab sampling: skin
Swab sampling: throat
Swab sampling: wound
Temperature measurement
Tracheostomy dressing change
Transfer to PACU
Urinalysis: reagent strip procedure

Urinary catheter bag: emptying
Urinary catheter removal
Urinary catheterization: female
Urinary catheterization: male
Urine sampling: 24-hour urine collection
Urine sampling: catheter specimen of urine (CSU)
Urine sampling: midstream specimen of urine: female
Urine sampling: midstream specimen of urine: male
Venepuncture
Wound drain removal (closed drainage system, for example, Redivac or concertina)
Wound drain shortening (open drainage systems, for example, Penrose, Yates or corrugated)
Wound drainage systems: changing the dressing around the drain site and observation/management
Wound drainage systems: changing the vacuum of a closed drainage system

Acknowledgements

A book is a team effort and never more so than with this edition of *The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures*.

Since the first edition was published in 1984, the range of procedures within the manual has grown in complexity and the depth of the theoretical content underpinning them has increased considerably, more so in this edition as the structure has been totally revised. This has demanded more from every author, as they have had to research and write new material as well as revising the evidence base of the existing content. This has been a collaborative task carried out by knowledgeable, expert nurses in partnership with members of the multidisciplinary team including pharmacists, physiotherapists, occupational therapists, dietitians, speech therapists, radiographers and psychological care.

So, we must thank every member of the 'team' who have helped to produce this edition, for their time, effort and perseverance. An additional challenge has been to co-ordinate the increased number of contributors to each chapter. This responsibility has fallen to the lead chapter authors, so, for this, they deserve a special acknowledgement and thanks for their ability to integrate all the contributions and create comprehensive chapters.

We would also like to thank some other key people:

Dale Russell and the library team of the David Adams Library at The Royal Marsden School of Cancer Nursing and Rehabilitation for their help and support in providing the references required by the authors and setting up the end note system.

Stephen Millward and the medical photography team for all the new photographs.

Our families and friends who have encouraged us, stood by us and tolerated our distracted state at times during the last eighteen months.

Finally, our thanks go to Beth Knight, Rachel Coombs, Catriona Dixon and Helen Harvey at Wiley-Blackwell for their advice and support in all

aspects of the publishing process.

Lisa Dougherty
Sara Lister

List of abbreviations

5-FU	5-fluorouracil
AAC	augmentive or alternative communication
A&E	Accident and Emergency
ABG	arterial blood gas
ABPI	Ankle to Brachial Pressure Index
ADH	antidiuretic hormone
ADL	activities of daily living
ADR	adverse drug reaction
AED	automated external defibrillator
AFO	ankle foot orthosis
AHP	allied health professional
AIDS	acquired immune deficiency syndrome
ALARP	as low as reasonably practicable
ALS	advanced life support
ALT	alanine aminotransferase
ANH	acute normovolaemic haemodilution
ANP	atrial natriuretic peptide
ANS	autonomic nervous system
ANTT	aseptic non-touch technique
AORN	Association of Perioperative Registered Nurses
AP	anteroposterior
APTR	activated partial thromboplastin ratio
ARDS	acute/adult respiratory distress syndrome
ARSAC	Administration of Radioactive Substances Advisory Committee
AST	aspartate aminotransferase
AT	anaerobic threshold
ATC	around the clock
AV	atrioventricular
BAL	bronchoalveolar lavage
BCG	bacille Calmette-Guérin
BCSH	British Committee for Standards in Haematology
BIA	bio-electrical impedance analysis
BLS	basic life support
BMA	British Medical Association
BME	black and minority ethnic

BMI	Body Mass Index
BNF	British National Formulary
BOC	British Oxygen Company
BPI	Brief Pain Inventory
BSE	bovine spongiform encephalopathy
CAD	coronary artery disease
CARES	Cancer Rehabilitation Evaluation System
CAUTI	catheter-associated urinary tract infections
CCU	coronary care unit/critical care unit
CD	controlled drug
cfu	colony-forming units
CJD	Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease
CML	chronic myeloid leukaemia
CMV	cytomegalovirus
CNS	central nervous system
CO	cardiac output
COAD	chronic obstructive airways disease
COMA	Committee on Medical Aspects of Food Policy
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
COSHH	Control of Substances Hazardous to Health
CPAP	continuous positive airway pressure
CPET	cardiopulmonary exercise testing
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CRP	C-reactive protein
CSAS	Chemotherapy Symptom Assessment Scale
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid/colony-stimulating factor
CSS	Central Sterile Services
CSU	catheter specimen of urine
CT	computed tomography
CVAD	central venous access device
CVC	central venous catheter
CVP	central venous pressure
CXR	chest X-ray
DBE	deep breathing exercises
DF	dorsiflexion
DH	Department of Health
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
DM	diabetes mellitus
DMSO	dimethyl sulphoxide

DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid
DNAR	do not attempt resuscitation
DPI	dry powder inhaler
DRE	digital rectal examination
DVLA	Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency
DVT	deep vein thrombosis
EAPC	European Association of Palliative Care
EBM	evidence-based medicine
EBN	evidence-based nursing
EBP	evidence-based practice
EBRT	external beam radiotherapy
EBV	Epstein–Barr virus
ECF	extracellular fluid
ECG	electrocardiogram
ECM	extracellular matrix
EDTA	ethylenediaminetetra-acetic acid
EGFR	epidermal growth factor receptor
EIA	Equality Impact Assessment
ELISA	enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
EMLA	eutectic mixture of local anaesthetics
ENT	ears, nose and throat
EPO	erythropoietin
ERV	expiratory reserve volume
ETT	endotracheal tube
EUPAP	European Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel
F(Fr)	French (gauge)
FBC	Full blood count
FEES	Fibreoptic endoscopic evaluation of swallowing
FFI	fatal familial insomnia
FFP	fresh frozen plasma
FRC	functional residual capacity
FTSG	full-thickness skin graft
FVC	forced vital capacity
GCS	Glasgow Coma Scale
G-CSF	granulocyte-colony stimulating factor
GFR	glomerular filtration rate
GGT	gamma-glutamyl transferase
GI	gastrointestinal
GMC	General Medical Council

GM-CSF	granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor
GP	general practitioner
GSL	general sales list
GTN	glyceryl trinitrate
HBsAg	hepatitis B surface antigen
HBV	hepatitis B virus
HCA	healthcare assistant
HCAI	healthcare-acquired/associated infection
HCV	hepatitis C virus
HDN	haemolytic disease of the newborn
HDR	high dose rate
HDU	high-dependency unit
HEPA	high-efficiency particulate air
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HLA	human leucocyte antigen
HME	heat and moisture exchange(r)
HOOF	home oxygen ordering form
HPA	Health Protection Agency
HR	heart rate
HSC	Health Service Circular/Health and Safety Commission
HSE	Health and Safety Executive
IASP	International Association for the Study of Pain
IBCT	incorrect blood component transfused
IC	inspiratory capacity
ICD	implantable cardioverter defibrillator
ICF	intracellular fluid
ICP	intracranial pressure
ICRP	International Commission on Radiological Protection
ICS	intraoperative cell salvage
ICSI	intracytoplasmic sperm injection
ICU	intensive care unit
IgM	immunoglobulin M
IJV	internal jugular vein
ILCOR	International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation
IMV	intermittent mandatory ventilation
INR	international normalized ratio
IPCT	infection prevention and control team
IPEM	Institute of Physics and Engineering in Medicine
IRMER	Ionizing Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations

IRR	infra-red radiation
IRV	inspiratory reserve volume
ISC	intermittent self-catheterization
IV	intravenous
IVC	inferior vena cava
IVF	*in vitro* fertilization
IUI	intrauterine insemination
JPAC	Joint UKBTS/NIBSC Professional Advisory Committee
KGF	keratinocyte growth factor
KVO	keep vein open
LANSS	Leeds Assessment of Neuropathic Symptoms and Signs
LBC	liquid-based cytology
LCT	long-chain triglyceride
LDR	low dose rate
LMA	laryngeal mask airway
LMN	lower motor neurone
LMWH	low molecular weight heparin
LPA	Lasting Power of Attorney
MAC	*Mycobacterium avium intracellulare*
MAOI	monoamine oxidase inhibitor
MAP	mean arterial pressure
MBP	mean blood pressure
MC&S	microscopy, culture and sensitivity
MCT	medium-chain triglyceride
MDA	Medical Devices Agency
MDI	metered dose inhaler
MDT	multidisciplinary team
ME	medical examiner
MET	medical emergency team
MEWS	Modified Early Warning System
MHRA	Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency
MI	myocardial infarction
MIC	minimum inhibitory concentration
MLD	manual lymphatic drainage
MPQ	McGill Pain Questionnaire
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
MRSA	meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
MSAS	Memorial Symptom Assessment Scale
MSCC	metastatic spinal cord compression

MSU	midstream specimen of urine
NANDA	North American Nursing Diagnosis Association
NBTC	National Blood Transfusion Committee
NCEPOD	National Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome and Death
NG	nasogastric
NHS	National Health Service
NHSCSP	NHS Cervical Screening Programme
NHSE	National Health Service Executive
NICE	National Institute for (Health and) Clinical Excellence
NIV	non-invasive ventilation
NMC	Nursing and Midwifery Council
NMDA	N-methyl-D-aspartate
NPSA	National Patient Safety Agency
NPWT	negative pressure wound therapy
NRS	numerical rating scales
NRT	nicotine replacement therapy
NSAID	non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug
NSF	National Service Framework
ODP	operating department practitioner
OGD	oesophagogastroduodenoscopy
ONS	Oncology Nursing Society
OSCE	objective structured clinical examination
OT	occupational therapist
OTC	over the counter
OTFC	oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate
P	pharmacy medicines
PA	posterior anterior
$PaCO_2$	partial pressure of carbon dioxide
PACU	peri-anaesthesia care unit
PAD	preoperative autologous donation
PART	patient-at-risk team
PC	*Pneumocystis carinii*
PCA	patient-controlled analgesia
PCEA	patient-controlled epidural analgesia
PCS	postoperative cell salvage
PDPH	postdural puncture headache
PDT	percutaneous dilatational tracheostomy
PE	pulmonary embolism/pulmonary embolus
PEA	pulseless electrical activity

PEEP	positive end-expiratory pressure
PEF(R)	peak expiratory flow (rate)
PEG	percutaneous endoscopically placed gastrostomy
PEP	postexposure prophylaxis
PET	positron emission tomography
PF	plantarflexion
PGD	patient group direction
PGSGA	patient-generated subjective global assessment
PHCT	primary healthcare team
PICC	peripherally inserted central catheter
PN	parenteral nutrition
PNS	peripheral nervous system
POA	preoperative assessment
POCT	point-of-care testing
POM	prescription-only medicine
PPE	personal protective equipment
PrP	prion protein
PSAR	Pain and Assessment Records
PSCC	primary/benign spinal cord compression
PSD	patient-specific direction
psi	pounds per square inch
PT	physiotherapist
PTFE	polytetrafluoroethylene
PTHrp	parathormone-related polypeptide
PUO	pyrexia of unknown origin
PVC	polyvinylchloride
PVD	peripheral vascular disease
PWO	partial withdrawal occlusion
RA	right atrium
RAP	right atrial pressure
RAS	reticular activating system
RBC	red blood cell
RCA	root cause analysis
RCN	Royal College of Nursing
RCS	Royal College of Surgeons of England
RCUK	Resuscitation Council UK
RIG	radiologically inserted gastrostomy
RNI	reference nutrient intake
RSV	respiratory syncytial virus

RTO	Resuscitation Training Officer
RTOG	Radiation Therapy Oncology Group
RV	residual volume
SA	sinoatrial
SABRE	Serious Adverse Blood Reactions and Events
SARS	severe acute respiratory syndrome
SBAR	Situation-Background-Assessment-Recommendations
SBO	small bowel obstruction
SCC	spinal cord compression
SCI	spinal cord injury
SCNS	Supportive Care Needs Survey
SDF	stromal cell-derived factor
SGA	subjective global assessment
SHOT	Serious Hazards of Transfusion
SI	Système International
SIMV	simulated intermittent mandatory ventilation
SIRS	systemic inflammatory response syndrome
SL	semi-lunar
SLD	simple lymphatic drainage
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
SLT	speech and language therapist
SNRI	serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor
SOP	standard operating procedure
SPI	Social Problems Inventory
SPN	Safer Practice Notice
SRHH	Self Report Health History
SSG	split-thickness or split skin graft
SSI	surgical site infection
SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
SUI	serious untoward incident
SV	stroke volume
SVC	superior vena cava
swg	standard wire gauge
TACO	transfusion-associated circulatory overload
TA-GVHD	transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease
TB	tuberculosis
TCA	tricyclic antidepressant
TCI	target-controlled infusion
TED	thromboembolic deterrent

TENS	transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation
TIVA	total intravenous anaesthesia
TLC	total lung capacity
TLD	thermoluminescent
TPI	*Treponema pallidum* immobilization
TPN	total parenteral nutrition
TRALI	transfusion-related acute lung injury
TRSC	Therapy Related Symptom Checklist
TSE	transmissible spongiform encephalopathy
TSS	toxic shock syndrome
TTO	to take out
TURP	transurethral resection of prostate
TV	tidal volume
UH	unfractionated heparin
UMN	upper motor neurone
UTI	urinary tract infection
V/Q	ventilation/perfusion
VAD	vascular access device
VAP	ventilator-associated pneumonia
VAT	venous assessment tool
VC	vital capacity
vCJD	variant Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease
VDRL	Venereal Disease Research Laboratory
VDS	verbal descriptor scales
VEGF	vascular endothelial growth factor
VF	ventricular fibrillation
VPF	vascular permeability factor
VT	ventricular tachycardia
VTE	venous thromboembolism
VTM	viral transport medium
WBC	white blood cell
WBP	wound bed preparation
WHO	World Health Organization
WOB	work of breathing
WR	Wassermann reaction

Part one

Managing the Patient Journey

1 The context of nursing
2 Assessment, discharge and end of life care
3 Infection prevention and control
4 Risk management

Chapter 1

The context of nursing

Introduction

> Nursing encompasses autonomous and collaborative care of individuals of all ages, families, groups and communities, sick or well and in all settings. Nursing includes the promotion of health, prevention of illness, and the care of ill, disabled and dying people. Advocacy, promotion of a safe environment, research, participation in shaping health policy and in patient and health systems management, and education are also key nursing roles.
>
> (International Council of Nursing 2010)

Factors that shape and direct the nature of healthcare provision

Nursing today is at the heart of healthcare provision in the United Kingdom, and nurses are the largest group of clinical employees (www.nhs.uk) in the NHS. Many factors, from political to economic, from social to technological, shape and direct the nature of healthcare provision and so also affect nursing and the context in which it takes place. These factors are continually changing and evolving and therefore affecting the quality of care for patients.

This chapter will set out the factors that nurses working in hospital settings need to be aware of as they plan, deliver and develop patient care. The factors are discussed under four headings: Political, Economic, Social and Technological, or PEST, a popular model used to structure decision making (Barr and Dowding 2008). The headings are nominal as many factors are complex and overlap with each other. This chapter will also include an explanation of the structure of the rest of the manual, the

order of the chapters and the grading system for the evidence of the rationale accompanying the steps in the procedures.

Political factors

High Quality Care for All

Political factors include strategies of the government that impact directly on the current context of health and therefore nursing care. Current national provision has been influenced by *High Quality Care for All* (Darzi 2008), the final report of the NHS Next Stage Review, co-produced by Lord Darzi with the NHS during a year-long process involving more than 2000 clinicians and 60,000 NHS staff, patients, stakeholders and members of the public. The core purpose of this strategy is to increase the quality of all aspects of the health service. Lord Darzi defines quality of care as 'clinically effective, personal and safe' (Darzi 2008, pp.8–9). It is about effectiveness of care, from the clinical procedure the patient receives to their quality of life after treatment. It is also about the patient's entire experience of the NHS and ensuring they are treated with compassion, dignity and respect in a clean, safe and well-managed environment.

In practice, this strategy has meant that resources have been invested in standardizing treatment across the UK and in time may extend to standardizing the practices, procedures and equipment used in treatment. A key strategic aim is to *get the basics right first time* (Darzi 2008, p.5), that is, protecting patient safety by eradicating healthcare-acquired infections and avoidable accidents.

With the change of government in May 2010, the political emphasis shifted to focusing specifically on 'continuously improving those things that really matter to patients – the outcome of their healthcare' (DH 2010b, p.1). This means that the end-result of procedures is going to be more important than the process of achieving them.

'The NHS will be held to account against clinically credible and evidence-based outcome measures, not process targets. We will remove targets with no clinical justification' (DH 2010b, p.4).

For example, in nursing, this may mean an increased analysis of the outcome of the use of certain types of wound care products, the length of time catheters are *in situ* and the effectiveness of pain management processes. However, this approach will be accompanied by a commitment to 'empower and liberate clinicians to innovate, with the freedom to focus on improving healthcare services' (DH 2010b, p.1).

Care Quality Commission

The Care Quality Commission (www.cqc.org.uk), the independent regulator of all health and adult social care in England, is charged with monitoring all healthcare providers across England against the new standards of quality.

Its aim is to make sure better care is provided for everyone, whether that's in hospital, in care homes, in people's own homes or elsewhere. It has a vision of high-quality care, meaning care that:

- is safe
- has the right outcomes, including clinical outcomes (for example, do people get the right treatment and are they well cared for?)
- is a good experience for the people who use it, their carers and their families
- helps to prevent illness, and promotes healthy, independent living
- is available to those who need it when they need it
- provides good value for money.

(www.cqc.org.uk/aboutcqc/whoweare.cfm)

To make this happen the Care Quality Commission has been given statutory powers to enforce standards through prosecution of those statutorily accountable for quality in any healthcare organizations (not just the NHS). These regulatory duties are carried out in the acute care setting through the following pathways.

Registration and enforcement

The Health and Social Care Act, 2008 introduced a new, single registration system that applies to both health and adult social care. From April 2010, all care providers who provide regulated activities (see

Box 1.1) will be required by law to be registered with the Care Quality Commission (www.cqc.org.uk/guidanceforprofessionals/introductiontoregistration/whoneedstoregister.cfm). To register, all healthcare providers must show they are meeting new essential standards of quality and safety across all the regulated activities they provide (see Box 1.1).

Box 1.1 Healthcare activities that need to be registered with the Care Quality Commission

Regulated activities that require registration are described in the Health and Social Care Act 2008 (Regulated Activities) Regulations 2009. They include:

- personal care
- accommodation with nursing or personal care
- accommodation for persons who require treatment for substance misuse
- accommodation and nursing or personal care in the further education sector
- treatment of disease, disorder or injury
- assessment or medical treatment for persons detained under the Mental Health Act 1983
- surgical procedures
- diagnostic and screening procedures
- management of supply of blood and blood-derived products
- transport services, triage and medical advice provided remotely
- maternity and midwifery services
- termination of pregnancies
- services in slimming clinics
- nursing care
- family planning services.

The list of regulated activities included in the regulations is based on the level of risk to people who use services.

(www.cqc.org.uk/guidanceforprofessionals/introductiontoregistration/whoneedstoregister.cfm#3)

The new system will make sure that people can expect services to meet essential standards of quality and safety that respect their dignity

and protect their rights. The new system is focused on outcomes, rather than systems and processes, and places the views and experience of people who use services at the centre. The Care Quality Commission currently publishes results so they are in the public domain. Information is expected to be available more regularly and speedily so that 'Patients will have access to the information they want, to make choices about their care' (DH 2010a, p.3).

Assessments of quality

To register, the CQC expects organizations to meet essential standards in quality and safety. Organizations are expected to produce evidence to demonstrate they have met outcomes relating to important aspects of care in respect of:

- involvement and information
- personalized care, treatment and support
- safeguarding and safety
- suitability of staffing
- quality and management
- suitability of management.

Publishing information

This information will then be made available to people so they can make informed decisions about where they have their care. This impacts on nursing as there is an expectation that procedures that define care given are explicit and of course followed.

Patient safety

A key patient safety issue that remains a priority for the NHS has been tackling healthcare-acquired infections. A variety of measures have been put into place following the catastrophic occurrence of deaths from *Clostridium difficile* and MRSA bacteraemias in 2004–5 (Healthcare Commission 2006, 2007).

- *Mandatory surveillance* of *C. difficile* was introduced in 2004 (because it is a significant cause of morbidity and can be difficult to

treat because of its multiple antibiotic resistance).

- *Agreed maximum numbers of MRSA bloodstream infections.* NHS trusts are now required to ensure that their agreed 'ceilings' of the number of MRSA bloodstream infections are not exceeded so that, collectively, the level of infections nationally is maintained at less than half the number in 2003–4. Zero tolerance to infections is encouraged. From July 2010 levels of these infections are published weekly (DH 2010d).
- *Annual Hygiene Code inspections* (for more information, see Chapter 3).

Nurses obviously play a significant role in meeting these measures. A charter for the 'new' role of the matron (DH 2004a) set out ten commitments in respect of a cleaner safer hospital (Box 1.2), building on the principles set down by Florence Nightingale in the 1800s.

> Let whoever is in charge keep this simple question in her head (not, how can I always do this right thing myself, but) how can I provide for this right thing to be always done? (Nightingale 1859, p.24)

Box 1.2 Commitments of a matron (DH 2004a)

1. Keeping the NHS clean is everybody's responsibility.

2. The patient environment will be well maintained, clean and safe.

3. Matrons will establish a cleanliness culture across their units.

4. Cleaning staff will be recognized for the important work they do. Matrons will make sure they feel part of the ward team.

5. Specific roles and responsibilities for cleaning will be clear.

6. Cleaning routines will be clear, agreed and well publicized.

7. Patients will have a part to play in monitoring and reporting on standards of cleanliness.

8. All staff working in healthcare will receive education in infection control.

9. Nurses and infection control teams will be involved in drawing up cleaning contracts and matrons have authority and power to withhold payment.

10. Sufficient resources will be dedicated to keeping hospitals clean.

The High Impact Actions for Nursing and Midwifery

A current political initiative in the nursing profession to drive up standards of care is *The High Impact Actions for Nursing and Midwifery* (NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement 2009). Eight high-impact actions (see Table 1.1) have been selected, from over 600 postings to the High-Impact website, by a group of senior nurses in the NHS. They have been selected as areas where significant improvement to quality can be achieved for patients and have been made available with relevant research evidence developed by academic experts to support day-to-day nursing practice.

Table 1.1 High-Impact Actions for Nursing and Midwifery

Category of action	Action	Relevant chapters
Your skin matters	No avoidable pressure sores in the NHS	4
Staying safe, preventing falls	Demonstrate a year-on-year reduction in the number of falls sustained by older people in NHS-provided care	7
Keeping nourished, getting better	Stop inappropriate weight loss and dehydration in NHS-provided care	8
Promoting normal birth	Increase the normal birth rate and eliminate unnecessary caesarean sections through midwives taking the lead role in the care of normal pregnancy and labour, focusing on informing, educating and providing skilled support to first-time mothers and women who have had one previous caesarean section	Not applicable
Important choices – where to die when the time comes	Avoid inappropriate admission to hospital and increase the numbers of people who are able to die in the place of their choice	2
Fit and well to care	Reduce sickness absence in the nursing and midwifery workforce to no more than 3%	Not applicable

Ready to go – no delays	Increase the number of patients in NHS-provided care who have their discharge managed and led by a nurse or midwife where appropriate	2
Protection from infection	Demonstrate a dramatic reduction in the rate of UTIs for patients in NHS-provided care	3, 6

The NHS Constitution

The new NHS Constitution aims to make explicit what a person can expect from the NHS so they can feel more empowered as a participant in their own care.

The Constitution was developed in consultation with patients, the public and NHS staff as part of the NHS Next Stage Review led by Lord Darzi. The NHS Constitution was first published on 21 January 2009 and applies to NHS services in England. The Health Act 2009 includes provisions related to the NHS Constitution. These came into force on 19 January 2010 and place a statutory duty on NHS bodies, primary care services, and independent and third sector organizations providing NHS care in England to have regard to the NHS Constitution.

The Constitution:

- outlines the purpose of the NHS and the principles of the NHS, which are the enduring high-level 'rules' that govern the way that the NHS operates and define how it seeks to achieve its purpose
- details NHS values that inspire passion in the NHS and should guide it in the 21st century
- makes explicit rights and pledges. One of the primary aims of the Constitution is to set out clearly what patients, the public and staff can expect from the NHS and what the NHS expects from them in return
- makes explicit rights and pledges for staff, as well as their responsibilities.

Explanations of these are found in Box 1.3.

Box 1.3 Definition of terms in the NHS Constitution

A '**right**' is a legal entitlement protected by law. The Constitution sets out a number of rights, which include rights conferred explicitly by law and rights derived from legal obligations imposed on NHS bodies and other healthcare providers. The

Constitution brings together these rights in one place but it does not create or replace them.

A '**pledge**' is that which the NHS is committed to achieve, supported by its management and regulatory systems. The pledges are not legally binding and cannot be guaranteed for everyone all the time, because they express an ambition to improve, going above and beyond legal rights.

'**Responsibilities**' are the expectations of how patients, the public and staff can help the NHS work effectively and ensure that finite resources are used fairly.

(DH 2010a)

Economic factors

Globally financial resources to pay for healthcare are under considerable constraint. In England for the year 2010–11, 'The Department of Health and the NHS announced that it will deliver £4.35 billion of savings, as their departmental contribution towards £11 billion of savings that are being made across government' (Budget statement, March 23rd 2010).

NHS healthcare providers are responding to this in a variety of ways. These include refining processes of care, ensuring that delays and unnecessary bed days for patients are at a minimum. The distribution of care activities has also been scrutinized across the workforce.

Cost-effectiveness

With increasing emphasis on cost-effectiveness, the necessity of a Registered Nurse to carry out all procedures is constantly questioned. A study entitled *Improving the Effectiveness of the Nursing Workforce* (Centre for Health Economics 2003) has highlighted the shift in roles at the other end of the novice-to-expert continuum, with healthcare assistants taking responsibility for an increasing number of procedures that historically have been the professional domain of nursing (O'Dowd 2003).

Currently in the acute NHS there is no national standard preparation for these roles, nor any regulations governing what healthcare assistants can or cannot do. The Nursing and Midwifery Council is currently

looking into options for regulating them (Santry 2010). Whatever happens, nurses continue to be accountable for the patients in their care.

Accountability

Accountability means that if a nurse is delegating care to another professional, healthcare support staff, carer or relative, they must delegate effectively and are accountable for the appropriateness of that delegation. This means that they must:

- establish that anyone they delegate to is able to carry out their instructions
- confirm that the outcome of any delegated task meets required standards
- make sure that everyone they are responsible for is supervised and supported.

(NMC 2008a)

Some of the procedures included in this edition could be carried out by a healthcare assistant (HCA) (Table 1.2). However, it will always be the nurse responsible for those patients on a shift who must ensure that the HCA is competent in carrying out the procedures and knows what to report to the nurse on completing the activity. There is continual debate about the boundaries between the role of the Registered Nurse and the healthcare support worker (Hopwood 2010). This is currently decided locally.

Table 1.2 Procedures that could be carried out by a healthcare assistant after relevant training and competency assessment supervised by a Registered Nurse (this is not an exhaustive list)

Procedure	Chapter
Penile sheath application	6
Urinary catheter bag: emptying	6
Stoma care	6
Fluid input: measurement	8
Measuring the weight and height of the patient	8
Blood components: collection and delivery to the clinical area	8
Mouthcare	9
Venepuncture	11

Swab sampling: ear, eye, nose, penile, rectal, throat	11
Urine sampling: midstream specimen of urine – male/female	11
Faecal sampling	11
Pulse measurement	12
Electrocardiogram	12
Blood pressure measurement (manual)	12
Respiratory assessment and pulse oximetry	12
Peak flow reading using a manual peak flow meter	12
Temperature measurement	12
Urinalysis – reagent strip procedure	12
Blood glucose monitoring	12
Antiembolic stockings: assessment, fitting and wearing	14

Vigilance

Aiken *et al.* 2002 further emphasized the essential role of the Registered Nurse, describing them as 'the surveillance system'. It is not just the actions of taking the vital signs, dressing the wound or starting the intravenous drip, it is also 'the watchfulness' that is always part of the nurse's thinking process while activities such as these are completed (Meyer and Lavin 2005). This has been described as vigilance. Vigilance is the search for signals (Lancaster 1998), which are events that the individual determines to be indicators of something significant. Vigilance is not seen; it is only an action that occurs as the result of watching out for and responding to the signals that will suggest to others that vigilance has been happening. Meyer and Lavin 2005 propose that vigilance has five components (Box 1.4).

Box 1.4 Five components of vigilance and how this manual can help the nurse to develop them

- *Attaching meaning to what is*: this is described as the ability to differentiate 'adverse signals' indicating danger from the ordinary 'noise' – the normal signs and symptoms. Developing theoretical and professional knowledge is an important part of learning to identify these signals. The reference material in the introductory chapters is essential to developing an understanding of the underlying physiological function or psychological response of the individual so the nurse understands what is normal.

- *Anticipating what might be*: observe, as the normal procedures and responses are described so the abnormal becomes more apparent.
- *Calculating risks*: understanding that there is an inherent risk in every situation. Problem-solving sections help to increase risk awareness and knowledge of the implications of untoward situations associated with procedures.
- *Readiness to act*: developed from a knowledge base, this allows the nurse to know what might be required in a situation and to make sure interventions can be carried out quickly when necessary. The manual has been written by experts who are sharing years of experience of carrying out the procedures. Therefore they know what equipment is needed, have knowledge of the potential problems that might occur and, over time, they have built up solutions to address them.
- *Monitoring the results of interventions*: experts writing chapters have made explicit the source of the rationale for steps in the intervention process, that is, professional knowledge.

Benefit of registered nurses delivering care

If qualified nurses deliver care there is also an increased opportunity for patients to benefit from therapeutic nursing. Evidence demonstrates that this does contribute positively to the patient's experience of care (Spilsbury and Meyer 2001). As well as this often hidden aspect of nursing being essential to organizations, it is also essential for patients as they want to feel secure with the nurses caring for them (Williams and Irurita 2004). They want to be assured that the nurses have the ability to assess their needs as individuals as well as recognizing their personal limitations and potential risks.

Advanced practice nursing and other role developments

The other group of nurses whose roles are changing in respect of creating a safer, more efficient health service are those in advanced practice roles. 'Advanced practice' is an umbrella term relating to the skills, knowledge, expertise and attitudes that are firmly grounded in clinical practice, and encompasses aspects of education, research, consultation and case management (Hawkins and Holcombe 1995, NMC 1999, Royal Marsden NHS Trust 2003).

Initially, the *New Deal* for junior doctors (NHSME 1991) began the debate about the areas of medical practice that could be carried out by nurses, with bold statements being made about the potential cost savings (Richardson and Maynard 1995). With the publication of *The Scope of Professional Practice* (UKCC 1992), procedures previously carried out by doctors became the responsibility of nurses and new advanced practice roles evolved. The new advanced practice senior clinical roles such as clinical nurse specialists, nurse consultants and nurse practitioners ensure that experienced and highly skilled nurses stay close to patient care (DH 2006a). The Chief Nursing Officer's 'ten key roles' for nurses in England (DH 2000) provided the legitimacy and authority needed to assume new responsibilities, such as the freedom to admit and discharge patients or order diagnostic investigations. In practice, this means that nurses are undertaking numerous procedures that are more invasive and complex than 30 years ago when the first edition of this manual was published.

One of the challenges of advanced practice roles has been assessing competence at this higher level of practice (Lillyman 1998). Benner's 1984 model of skill acquisition offers a framework to define the development from novice through to clinical expert. This and her subsequent work (Benner *et al*. 1996) have been used extensively to articulate the qualities that distinguish an expert nurse and to define expert nursing care. This framework has been used to develop role development profiles, tools that:

> Support competence acquisition in relation to role developments, enabling individuals to take responsibility for planning, managing and evaluating learning and to provide the opportunity for the individual to maintain a record of their own developing competence.
>
> (Royal Marsden Hospital 2004)

Those activities that have not previously fallen within the scope of nursing practice and for which the nurse has not received education and training may be considered to be role developments. Procedure guidelines are integral to role development and are part of the process of ensuring clinical effectiveness in 'doing the right thing the right way'. Within the UK, there are constant challenges for employers to define

and manage these roles because currently there is no national legislative statement of what constitutes an advanced practitioner. This also has implications for the general public as any nurse can call themselves an advanced practitioner.

The NMC initiated national consultation on this aspect of nursing practice in 2005, with the intention of establishing a specific part of the Register for nurses who were functioning as advanced practitioners. In February 2007, a White Paper was published, *Trust, Assurance and Safety – the Regulation of Health Professionals in the Twenty-First Century* (DH 2007a), stating that 'where appropriate, common standards and systems should be developed across professional groups where this would benefit patient safety'. In response to this and the later review by the Council of Regulatory Excellence (2009), the Department of Health published *Advanced Level Nursing : A position statement* (DH 2010e) to assist employers in developing new advanced practice roles and posts and to provide a national benchmark for expected standards of advanced practice.

The benchmark developed by expert practitioners and drawing on previous international work in this area (Australian Nursing and Midwifery Council 2009; Canadian Nurses Association 2008; International Council of Nurses 2008; Scottish Government 2010) has four themes:

- clinical /direct care practice
- leadership and collaborative practice
- improving quality and developing practice
- developing self and others.

All the 28 elements of practice defined under these headings would be an expected part of the role of any nurse working explicitly at an advanced level.

Social factors

This section specifically looks at the current characteristics of society and how they affect the provision of nursing care. The most dominant characteristic currently affecting healthcare is the structure of the 60

million population of the United Kingdom (Office for National Statistics 2008); 16% are over 65 years of age and 2% of those are over 80 years. The NHS spends over 40% of its budget on people over 65 years of age (DH 2007b) so over 65% of those who use inpatient acute hospital services on any given day are older people. This has considerable implications for nursing. *The National Service Framework for Older People* (DH 2001) explicitly sets out standards of care for older people in the care environment.

The aim of Standard 4 of the National Service Framework is to 'ensure that older people receive the specialist help they need in hospital and that they receive the maximum benefit from having been in hospital'. It states explicitly that:

> Older people's care in hospital is to be delivered through appropriate specialist care and by hospital staff who have the right set of skills to meet their needs.

(www.dh.gov.uk/dr_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/documents/digitalasset/dh_4067211.pdf)

Where relevant, specific care for older people has been included in the manual. However, the principles listed in Box 1.5 are relevant to whatever procedure is being carried out with an older person.

Box 1.5 NMC guidelines for the care of the older person (NMC 2009)

Think People

Nurses capable of delivering safe and effective care for older people are:

- competent, with the right knowledge, skills, attitude and desire to care for older people
- assertive, prepared to challenge poor practice, attitudes and behaviour
- reliable, consistent and dependable
- empathic, compassionate and kind.

Think Process

Delivering quality care that promotes dignity by nurturing and supporting the older person's self-respect and self-worth.

- Communicating with the person, talking with them and listening to what they have to say.
- Assessing need in order to provide individualized care.
- Respecting the person's privacy and dignity.
- Working in partnership with the person, their family, carers and, of course, your colleagues.

Think Place

Diverse settings wherever care is provided for older people.

- Appropriate and safe environments in which to practise dignified care.
- Committed to equality and diversity, providing care in a non-discriminatory, non-judgemental and respectful way.
- With the resources, staff and equipment needed to do the job well.
- Leadership from managers capable of setting and maintaining standards of care and supporting their teams through training, development, supervision and reflection.

With an increase in the percentage of the population who are older, there is an increase in adults who are vulnerable.

Safeguarding of vulnerable adults

Working with vulnerable people, nurses are likely to identify patients who have been or may be being abused. Many patients who report abuse are fearful as they do not know if they will be taken seriously or what the consequences will be. It may be more difficult to assess if abuse has occurred in a patient with impaired capacity but it should be acknowledged that their lack of capacity makes them more vulnerable. Since 2000 and the launch of *No Secrets* (DH 2000), all staff working with vulnerable patients have a duty to report any suspicions of abuse to the patient's local authority. *No Secrets* required local authorities to develop a multi-agency safeguarding policy as well as each organization having their own local arrangements. It is important to know what the local arrangements are and who to report any safeguarding concerns to within the organization.

No Secrets (DH 2000) is currently under review but it defines a vulnerable adult as a person over the age of 18 years 'who is or may be in need of community care services by reason of mental or other

disability, age or illness; and who is or may be unable to take care of him or herself, or unable to protect him or herself against significant harm or exploitation' (DH 2000, p.8). Abuse is described as 'a violation of an individual's human and civil rights by any other person or persons' (DH 2000, p.8). Abuse occurs not only when harm is caused as a result of wilful intent and therefore we need to consider that issues such as neglect and poor practice can also constitute abuse and should be reported in the same way.

If abuse is identified or suspected, it is important to escalate it to the most appropriate person. As abuse in many cases is a criminal act, any evidence must also be kept safe.

Dignity

One of the principles of the NMC Code is: 'Make the care of people your first concern, treating them as individuals and respecting their dignity'. This involves:

- not discriminating in any way against those in your care
- treating people kindly and considerately
- acting as an advocate for those in your care, helping them to access relevant health and social care, information and support.

(NMC 2008b)

An aspect of care that is relevant to everybody but has been raised specifically in respect of the older person is that of dignity. When Milburn (Milburn *et al*. 1995, p.1094) asked patients what care they would like from a nurse, one of the responses was 'being acknowledged and treated as an individual'. Patients described this as being treated with respect, which meant kind, prompt care and regular contact from the nurses. Patients felt care was dignified not only when they were appropriately dressed or covered but also when there was adequate allocation of time, acknowledgement of their views and feelings and the demonstration of discretion and consideration of their feelings (Walsh and Kowanko 2002).

There has been much philosophical debate about the concept of dignity, particularly in the provision of care to a diverse population and

the challenges of respecting the values, beliefs and practices of different cultures (Willis 1999), age groups and individuals (Coventry 2006). What does this mean in day-to-day nursing practice?

> The most powerful tool a nurse possesses to maintain and promote dignity is herself, to work with feelings, use them constructively to understand patients and to treat them as valid, worthy and important at a time when they are vulnerable. In order to promote the dignity of another, feelings need to be clarified and understood, to ensure interactions and interventions are patient focused.
>
> (Haddock 1996, p.931)

When performing a physical procedure for a patient, nurses can uphold the dignity of the patient by discussing with them:

- if they would like the procedure to take place
- when is the best time for the procedure to take place
- where they would like it to take place
- who they would like to be there
- if they need any medication before it begins
- if they have any questions
- how much information they would like about the procedure.

(Adapted from Price 2004)

Patients need to feel that they have an equal and influential role in their own healthcare. One of the drivers for nursing practice today is the expectations of patients: 'They are more knowledgeable and expect to be treated as partners and equals and to have choices and options available to them' (DH 2006a, p.6).

We know that patients want more than just a person who can carry out a series of procedures and interventions dictated by their medical condition. Recent research has explored what patients want from their nurse (Milburn *et al*. 2009, Williams and Iruita 2004). In these two studies, the interpersonal aspect of the nurse's role was emphasized as being high on the priority list for patients. From one perspective, the time to listen and talk, that is performing a social function, helps patients to feel respected and valued as human beings. The social interaction

while intimate or difficult procedures are being carried out also provides a valuable distraction. As a patient recently commented, 'Having my chemo was so much better when it was given by a friendly chatty nurse, we talked and gossiped about all sorts'.

Specific therapeutic communication is also highly valued by patients:

> … I want them to listen to me when I need them. When I get bad news (about this cancer) I need somebody to sit and listen and to know they don't leave you when you get bad news. They take their time … when you are low, they are there.
>
> (Milburn *et al*. 2009, p.1096)

Frequently even this therapeutic conversation takes place while the nurse is involved in another procedure or care activity with the patient.

Patients also talk about the importance of the nurse in the 'little things'. Reflecting on an episode of hospital care for the treatment of cancer, K.B. Schwartz wrote in *The Boston Globe* that: 'It is quiet acts of humanity that have felt more healing than the high dose radiation and chemotherapy' (Schwartz 1995). These 'little things', such as changing soiled linen or cleaning up the leaking stoma bag, have been described by Darbyshire 1999 as having profound meaning for recovery and, indeed, for cure. He describes this as the essence of nursing, a caring praxis that includes the ability to be with another, sensitively minimizing embarrassing and humiliating experiences.

Practices such as these little, yet very complex, procedures are what helps a patient towards recovery. Giving baths and getting patients to the bathroom are often considered to be the basics of nursing, so are often taken for granted and their complexity and importance are often overlooked. It is when they are carried out by an experienced nurse purposefully and with a patient-centred approach that they make a difference to patients because of the nursing knowledge and skill that are drawn upon (Macleod 1994). The depth of knowledge of the patient and possibilities for recovery influences the timing, pacing and sustainability of action (Benner 1991). Knowledge of the patient is a key component of excellent nursing practice and must be drawn upon when any care activity or procedure is carried out.

Research by Williams and Irurita 2004 found that attention to these interpersonal therapeutic aspects of care provides emotional comfort for patients, which in turn helped patients to feel control over what was happening to them.

Therefore dignity exists when an individual is capable of exerting control over their own behaviour, surroundings and the way in which they are treated by others. They should be capable of understanding information and making decisions. They should feel comfortable with their physical and psychological status quo (Mairis 1994).

Consent

One of the principles in the NHS Constitution is:

> NHS services must reflect the needs and preferences of patients, their families and carers. Patients, their families and carers where appropriate will be involved and consulted on all decisions about their care and treatment.
>
> (DH 2010c, p.3)

The NHS Constitution (DH 2010c) also states that a patient has the right to accept or refuse treatment that is offered and not be given any physical examination or treatment unless they have given valid consent.

The Code (NMC 2008b) states that the nurses have a responsibility to ensure they gain consent and that they must:

- gain consent before treatment or care starts
- respect and support people's rights to accept or decline treatment or care
- uphold people's rights to be fully involved in decisions about their care
- be aware of the legislation regarding mental capacity
- be able to demonstrate that they have acted in someone's best interest if emergency care has been provided.

For consent to be valid, it must be given voluntarily by a competent person who has been appropriately informed and who has the capacity to consent to the intervention in question (NMC 2008c). This will be the

patient or someone authorized to do so under a Lasting Power of Attorney (LPA) or someone who has the authority to make treatment decisions as a court-appointed deputy (DH 2009).

The validity of consent does not depend on a signature on a form. Written consent merely serves as evidence of consent. Although completion of a consent form is in most cases not a legal requirement, the use of such forms is good practice where an intervention such as surgery is to be undertaken (DH 2009).

If there is any doubt about the person's capacity to make a decision about consent, the nurse should determine whether or not the person has the capacity to consent to the intervention and that they have sufficient information to be able to make an informed decision (DH 2009). This should be done before the person is asked to sign the form. Documentation is necessary and the nurse should record all discussions relating to consent, details of the assessment of capacity, and the conclusion reached, in the patient's notes (NMC 2008c).

Obtaining consent is a process and not a one-off event (NMC 2008c). Usually the person undertaking the procedure should be the person seeking to obtain consent. There may be situations when a nurse has been asked to seek consent on behalf of other staff. Providing the nurse has had training for that specific area, they may seek to obtain consent (NMC 2008c).

As part of the nursing assessment, the nurse needs to establish if the person is able to read or write. If they are unable, they may be able to make their mark on the form to indicate consent. In this instance, it would be good practice for the mark to be witnessed by a person other than the clinician seeking consent, and for the fact that the person has chosen to make their mark in this way to be recorded in the case notes (DH 2009). The person can direct someone to sign the form on their behalf, but there is no legal requirement for them to do so. If consent has been given validly, the lack of a completed form is no bar to treatment, but a form can be important evidence of such consent (DH 2009).

Consent may be expressed by a person verbally, in writing or by implying (NMC 2008c); an example of implied consent would be where a person, after receiving appropriate information, holds out an arm for

their blood pressure to be taken. The nurse should ensure that the person has understood what examination or treatment is intended, and why, for such consent to be valid (DH 2009). It is good practice to obtain written consent for any significant procedure, such as a surgical operation or when the person participates in a research project or a video recording (NMC 2008c).

A competent adult may refuse to consent to treatment or care and nurses must respect that refusal (NMC 2008c).

Mental capacity

The Mental Capacity Act 2005 defines a person who lacks capacity as one who is unable to make a decision for themselves because of an impairment or disturbance in the functioning of their mind or brain. This can be temporary or permanent (DH 2009). Every adult must be presumed to have the mental capacity to consent or refuse treatment (NMC 2008c).

An assessment of a person's capacity must be based on their ability to make a specific decision at the time it needs to be made and not their ability to make decisions in general (DH 2009). A person is unable to make a decision if they cannot do one or more of the following things:

- understand the information given to them that is relevant to the decision
- retain that information long enough to be able to make the decision
- use or weigh up the information as part of the decision-making process
- communicate their decision – this could be by talking or using sign language and includes simple muscle movements such as blinking an eye or squeezing a hand.

(DH 2009)

Where a person lacks the capacity to make a decision for themselves, any decision must be made in that person's best interests (DH 2009).

Patients may have capacity to consent to some interventions but not to others, or may have capacity at some times but not others. Under the Mental Capacity Act, a person must be assumed to have capacity unless

it is established that they lack capacity (DH 2009). If there is any doubt, then the healthcare professional should assess the capacity of the patient to take the decision in question (NMC 2010). This assessment and the conclusions drawn from it should be recorded in the patient's notes. Guidance on assessing capacity is given in Chapter 4 of the Mental Capacity Act Code of Practice (2005).

Capacity should not be confused with a healthcare professional's assessment of the reasonableness of the person's decision (DH 2009). A person is entitled to make a decision which may be perceived by others to be unwise or irrational, as long as they have the capacity to do so (NMC 2010). All practical and reasonable measures should be taken to assist the person in making the decision.

Working with patients with learning disabilities

Two significant reports produced in the last few years have an important message for all providers of care to people with learning disabilities: in particular, *Death by Indifference* (Mencap 2007) and the Local Government and Parliamentary Health Service Ombudsmen's response to this report, *Six Lives*: *The Provision of Public Services for People With Learning Disabilities* (House of Commons 2009). These identified many deficits in health and social care provision to six patients with learning disabilities. As a result of these reports, hospitals and other care providers are being asked to look at how they meet the needs of patients with learning disabilities and ensure there are clear and robust systems for identifying and addressing the needs of this patient group.

It is important to recognize that people with learning disabilities may have additional needs when attending or coming into hospital. We need to work with the patient, their family and carers to identify what additional care and support the patient requires. In doing so, we need to consider the implication of the Mental Capacity Act principles, in particular the presumption of capacity. The information then needs to be shared with all staff who provide care to the patient. This will enable continuity of care and prevent the patient or their carers from having to continually repeat the information to new care providers.

Hospitals need to work with their community partners to facilitate good communication between them both before and after admission and through any ongoing care for people with learning disabilities. For instance, if a patient with learning disabilities is to be admitted to hospital and the Community Learning Disability Nurse has a care plan on how to manage the patient's epilepsy or what their likes and dislikes are, then sharing that information and using the community nurse specialist's professional knowledge and expertise can only help to improve the care provided to the patient. It is therefore beneficial to nurses to know what their local organization arrangements are as well as what community services are available for people with learning disabilities.

Equality and diversity

Another characteristic of the UK population is the diversity of colour, nationality, ethnic origin, religious beliefs and faith, sexual orientations and marital and partnership status. In April 2010, the Equality Act received Royal Assent, providing streamlined law that can be used more effectively to tackle inequalities and discrimination. This law is particularly applicable to all public bodies, including the NHS. There is an expectation that there will be an explicit commitment to equality, diversity and human rights throughout the health and social care system. At strategic level, this means moving towards a single equality scheme; that is, a patient-centred and multifaceted approach is taken to the provision of all services, processes and policy development rather than an approach that puts people into boxes, which can have the effect of ignoring other differences. A generic approach to tackling health inequalities provides the opportunity to review all functions and policies, and to begin embedding equality into the commissioning and provision of services (DH 2010b). In practical terms as nurses, this may mean:

- co-operating with each other and social care organizations to ensure that patients' individual needs are properly managed
- having systems in place to ensure that you are treating patients, their relatives and carers with dignity and respect

- the views of patients, their carers and others are sought and taken into account in designing, planning, delivering and improving healthcare services
- all patients can equally access and have choice in access to services and treatment equitably.

(Adapted from DH 2005)

The competencies expected of every nurses associated with equality and diversity are articulated explicitly in the NHS Knowledge and Skills Framework (DH 2004b) (Table 1.3).

Table 1.3 The NHS Knowledge and Skills Framework dimension: equality, diversity and rights

Dimension	Level Descriptions			
Core (will relate to all NHS posts)	1	2	3	4
Equality, diversity and rights	Ensure own actions support equality, diversity and rights	Support people's equality, diversity and rights	Promote people's equality, diversity and rights	Enable people to exercise their rights and promote their equality and diversity

Adapted from the *NHS Knowledge and Skills Framework and Development Review Guidance* – Working Draft, Version 6, (2003) p.9. © Crown copyright. Reproduced under the terms of the Click-use Licence.

Equality Impact Assessment

As part of the commitment to treating all patients equally, all public organizations are legally required to perform an Equality Impact Assessment (EIA). In its simplest form, the EIA process can be seen as a foundation tool for measuring the effect of policy and practice on people and should encourage greater openness about policy making and service development.

An EIA is a means of ensuring that any policy introduced does not affect one or more groups of people, including staff, patients, carers and other users of the organization's services, in an adverse way. EIAs help to identify discrimination by requiring policy and service developers to think about how their policy or service will affect service users and staff and what actions or improvements to it may be required to ensure fairer access to services and employment (Box 1.6).

Box 1.6 Equality impact assessment tool used to assess the procedures in the manual

Section 1

Full title of chapter being screened

Chapter owner

Date

Name and title of people completing Equality Checklist

Could the Chapter have an impact on staff, patients, carers or other members of the public?

Yes Please complete the rest of the Equality Checklist.

No Please return the Equality Checklist as above

Section 2

What are the purpose and the aims of the Chapter?
Who is intended to benefit from the Chapter and how?

Section 3

Is there any potential or evidence that the Chapter will or could:

Affect people from any social group differently to others?	Yes	No
Discriminate unlawfully against any social group?	Yes	No
Affect the relations between any social groups?	Yes	No
Prevent the Trust from achieving the aims of its Equality and Diversity policy?	Yes	No

If Yes, please identify which potential social groups could be affected.

The outcome of the EIA for this manual will be available on the website of both the Royal Marsden NHS Foundation Trust and the Royal Marsden Manual (www.royalmarsdemanual.com).

Technical factors

The impact of rapid advances in technology on the roles and process of nursing will be considered here. Most obviously, this means that more effective treatments as well as the ability to provide care in different settings are now available (DH 2006a).

Competence

For the nurse, the competencies required in the technical area are increasing. Milburn (Milburn *et al*. 2009), probably not unsurprisingly, found that patients considered that a good nurse is one who knows what she is doing.

The NMC states that:

- you must have the knowledge and skills for safe and effective practice without supervision
- you must keep your knowledge and skills up to date throughout your working life
- you must recognize and work within the limits of your competence.

(NMC 2008a)

There is an expectation that, on qualifying, the nurse will have the competence to carry out fundamental procedures.

Competence is defined in the dictionary as having 'The ability to do something successfully or efficiently' (Pearsall 19981998, p.374). There is considerable debate as to what is needed to achieve this, whether it is just technical ability to perform a skill or whether associated knowledge and the appropriate attitude are also important (Arthur *et al*. 2001, Darbyshire 1999, Musk 2004, Ray 1987). However, the NMC states that a registered nurse 'must have the knowledge and skills for safe and effective practice when working without direct supervision' (NMC 2008a).

This manual has been structured to enable nurses to develop competence, recognizing that competence is not just about knowing how to do something but also about understanding the rationale for doing it and the impact it may have on the patient.

Developing skills

Competence develops over time. Benner's 1984 model of skill acquisition offers a framework to define the development from novice through to clinical expert. Based on the Dreyfus model (1982), which distinguishes between the level of skilled performance that can be achieved through principles and theory based in the classroom and context-dependent judgements and skill that can only be acquired in real situations, the manual is relevant to competence development at all levels.

- *Stage 1: Novice*. As a novice, the related *anatomy and physiology*, *related theory and preprocedural considerations* will provide 'objective attributes' (Benner 1984), that is, knowledge of features of the task that can be gained away from the situation, for example understanding of venous anatomy of the arm. The procedures will give 'context-free rules' (Benner 1984) to guide actions that are not determined by the patient as an indivdual. This is the first step to technical competence (Ray 1987).
- *Stage 2: Advanced beginner*. The advanced beginner is one who has got some clinical experience and can use the *evidence-based approaches* to understand what they have seen in practice and the procedures as a reminder of the steps to follow to undertake a procedure. Chapters 2 and 5 will also be important at this stage to introduce the nurse to professional aspects of care that are essential in carrying out any procedure holistically as they progress to becoming a competent practitioner.
- *Stage 3: Competent*. At this stage, the nurse should be familiar with carrying out core procedures, but they may need to develop problem-solving skills in respect of specific procedures. The *problem-solving tables* and *complications sections* will help them to develop these skills.
- *Stage 4: Proficient*. Proficient nurses perceive situations as a whole. They will have integrated knowledge, skills and attitudes (Benner 1984). The manual will provide a useful reference to alert them to changes in practice and using the *evidence-based approaches* sections

will heighten their awareness of the new evidence underpinning practice.

- *Stage 5: Expert*. The manual will be useful to the expert to highlight areas where further research needs to be done to establish the evidence underpinning practice. It will also be a useful reference to guide them as they learn those procedures that are new to their role.

Developing new roles has obvious risks attached to it and although every individual nurse is accountable for their own actions, every healthcare organization has to take vicarious liability for the care, treatment and procedures that take place. An organization will have expectations of all its nurses in respect of keeping patients, themselves and the environment safe. There are the obvious ethical and moral reasons for this: 'Nurses have a moral obligation to protect those we serve and to provide the best care we have available' (Wilson 2005, p.118). So there is an increasing requirement to demonstrate competencies in specific areas. This has become part of the risk management process of an NHS organization.

Evidence-based practice

The moral obligation described above extends to the evidence upon which we base our practice. Nursing now exists in a healthcare arena that routinely uses evidence to support decisions and practice and nurses must justify their rationales for practice. Where historically, nursing and specifically clinical procedures were based on rituals rather than research (Ford and Walsh 1994, Walsh and Ford 1989), evidence-based practice (EBP) now forms an integral part of practice, education, management, strategy and policy. Best Research for Best Health (DH 2006b) outlines a health research strategy to ensure practice is underpinned by world-class research. Building research evidence that ranges from prevention of ill health, promotion of health, disease management, patient care, delivery of healthcare and its organization to public health and social care is essential in striving to improving health (DH 2006b). Critical appraisal of research and evidence is also essential for healthcare staff to understand and appropriately carry out evidence-based practice.

Nursing care must be appropriate, timely and based on the best available evidence. NHS staff now have open access to these resources to facilitate EBP, which increases the likelihood of the care that is delivered to patients being based upon evidence of what works (Rycroft-Malone *et al.* 2004a). Defining and exploring the concept of EBP should help to further clarify the expectations that nurses now have to meet.

What is evidence-based practice?

This has been described by Sackett, a pioneer in introducing EBP in UK healthcare, as:

> … the conscientious, explicit and judicious use of current best evidence in making decisions about the care of the individual patients. The practice of evidence-based medicine means integrating individual clinical expertise with the best available external clinical evidence from systematic research.
>
> (Sackett *et al*. 1996, p.72)

Despite the emphasis on research in EBP, it is important to note that where research evidence is lacking, other forms of evidence can be equally informative when making decisions about practice. Evidence-based practice goes much wider than research-based practice and encompasses clinical expertise as well as other forms of knowing, such as those outlined in Carper's seminal work (1978) on nursing. These include:

- empirical evidence
- aesthetic evidence
- ethical evidence
- personal evidence.

This issue is evident throughout this manual where clinical expertise and guidelines inform the actions and rationale of the procedures. Indeed, these other types of evidence are highly important as long as we can still apply scrutiny to their use. Porter 2010 describes a wider empirical base upon which nurses make decisions and argues for nurses to take into account and be transparent about other forms of knowledge such as ethical, personal and aesthetic knowing, echoing Carper 1978.

By doing this, and through acknowledging limitations to these less empirical forms of knowledge, nurses can justify their use of them to some extent. Furthermore, in response to Paley's 2006 critique of EBP as a failure to holistically assess a situation, nursing needs to guard against cherry-picking, ensure EBP is not brandished ubiquitously and indiscriminately and know when judicious use of, for example, experiential knowledge (as a form of personal knowing) might be more appropriate.

Greenhalgh (2002), another EBP pioneer, describes later developments in the evidence-based medicine (EBM) and EBP movement and how intuitional and clinical knowledge was allowed its place.

Medicine and nursing have undoubtedly been shaped in recent years by the move toward EBP and the pressure to revisit and review practice regularly. Traynor (2009) discussed how nursing, as well as lower status groups in medicine, embraced the shift to EBP as an exercise in the 1990s and suggested that this may be in part due to nurses' status as a profession and the subsequent desire to acquire technical knowledge. Regardless of what the impetus has been for nursing to adopt EBP as integral to its practice, the use of evidence is now widespread, expected and accepted practice.

Evidence-based nursing (EBN) and EBP are differentiated by Scott and McSherry (2009) in that EBN involves additional elements in its implementation. Evidence-based nursing is regarded as an ongoing process by which evidence is integrated into practice and clinical expertise is critically evaluated against patient involvement and optimal care (Scott and McSherry 2009). For nurses to implement EBN, four key requirements are outlined:

- to be aware of what EBN means
- to know what constitutes evidence
- to understand how EBN differs from EBM and EBP
- to know how to engage with and apply the evidence.

(Scott and McSherry 2009)

We contextualize our information and decisions to reach best practice for patients and the ability to use research evidence and clinical expertise together with the preferences and circumstances of the patient to arrive at the best possible decision for that patient is recognized (Guyatt *et al.* 2004).

Leaders of EBP such as Greenhalgh and Sackett have changed their focus away from solely the evidence of effectiveness through research to consider other areas of evidence (Greenhalgh 2002, Paley 2006, Traynor 2009). Thus the evidence required today to support all of these principles needs to come from a range of sources, as proposed by Higgs and Jones, who consider that evidence should be: 'Knowledge derived from a variety of sources that has been subjected to testing and has been found to be credible' (Higgs and Jones 2008, p.311). Credibility, as raised above, is a key issue (McKenna *et al.* 2000, Scott and McSherry 2009). As such, the emphasis and value of expert opinion highlighted here should in no way allow nurses to disregard research evidence (McKenna *et al.* 2000). Moreover, nurses' and midwives' professional code now insists on use of best available evidence (NMC 2008b).

Knowledge can be gained that is both propositional, that is from research and generalizable, and non-propositional, that is implicit knowledge derived from practice (Rycroft-Malone *et al.* 2004b). In more tangible, practical terms, evidence bases can be drawn from a number of different sources, and this pluralistic approach needs to be set in the context of the complex clinical environment in which nurses work in today's NHS (Pearson *et al.* 2007, Rycroft-Malone *et al.* 2004b). The evidence bases can be summarized under four main areas.

1. Research
2. Clinical experience/expertise/tradition
3. Patient, clients and carers
4. The local context and environment

(Pearson *et al.* 2007, Rycroft-Malone *et al.* 2004b)

These four areas can also be regarded as corresponding to the empirical, personal, ethical and aesthetic categories of evidence which Carper (1978) espoused. What can be regarded as evidence to facilitate

clinical decision making needs further consideration. When making clinical decisions, clinicians use evidence that relates to the four principal interests of:

- *feasibility*: practical and possible
- *appropriateness*: fits or is suitable for a situation
- *meaningfulness*: personal experience, opinions, values of the patient
- *effectiveness*: achieves the intended outcome.

(Pearson *et al.* 2007)

In the clinical environment, practitioners will draw upon and integrate these forms of evidence in order to deliver person-centred care, which underpins EBN. Of the sources of evidence available, research has been regarded as the best form. However, in some areas of nursing practice there is a lack of evidence available to support decisions made in practice (Pearson *et al.* 2007). In addition, there is also debate about the types of evidence available to support practice. Within nursing, qualitative research is the prevalent design used, whilst within the field of evidence-based practice there is the perception that quantitative evidence is superior to that which is qualitative (Rolfe and Gardner 2006), although this has been debated (Hewitt-Taylor 2003). Narrative, intuitional and clinical practices still have their place with EBP, especially where evidence is lacking (Greenhalgh 1999, 2002). Indeed, there are different opinions on the value of different types of research for EBP and it is important to consider, as Mulhall suggests, that: 'No single design has precedence over another, rather the design chosen must fit the particular research question' (Mulhall 1998, p.5). In practice, this can be a challenge and there will continue to be debate and discussion on the relative merits of different research designs in evidence-based practice. This will be discussed further when considering the grading of evidence.

Clinical experience and expertise play a fundamental role in terms of evidence-based nursing and practice. However, there remains some contention in relation to the terminology, role and status within the literature (Rolfe and Gardner 2006, Pearson *et al.* 2007). A clear distinction is apparent between experience, as a source of knowledge or evidence, and expertise, which is the application of evidence to practice, but these terms are often used interchangeably. A nurse may have many

years of experience, been qualified for 20 years, but may not have developed knowledge as a result of this and thus is not able to apply this to develop expertise when making decisions related to her clinical practice. On the other hand, a nurse may have both experience and expertise but these are difficult to capture, make explicit and ensure they are verified for a wider audience (Rycroft-Malone *et al.* 2004b). Expert opinion does have a role both within hierarchies of evidence and within the definitions of evidence-based practice, although it is often regarded as poorer evidence compared to research (Rolfe and Gardner 2006). Guidelines and consensus practices may be informed by expert opinion. What is perhaps most important is the blending of this knowledge with research and the sharing of this with others to contribute to evidence-based decision making in practice (Rycroft-Malone *et al.* 2004b).

The involvement of patients in decision making about their own care and wider consultation in relation to the development of services within the NHS is a principle that has been developed and supported by the Department of Health in relation to healthcare generally and cancer care more specifically (DH 1995, 2000, 2010a). Individual experiences and preferences should be central to the practice of evidence-based healthcare and recent policy has tried to address this with a specific strategy to ensure inclusion through cancer care (DH 2010a). However, the inclusion of the patient's values, experiences and preferences into evidence-based practice can be complicated and difficult to achieve (Rycroft-Malone *et al.* 2004b). For example, a patient may request a new treatment but the research evidence may not be there to support it. This is particularly contentious, with the role of the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) being to appraise treatments upon which subsequent funding decisions are based. Equally, the patient may decline a treatment for which there is research evidence because in their experience, it has unwelcome side-effects. We now have a policy driver (DH 2010a) to encourage us to work towards the patient and carer having a greater role in the decision and care they receive. We must also be mindful that without patient participation, the research we use as evidence to underpin our practice would not be possible (Staley 2009).

The context within which healthcare is delivered, whilst not traditionally recognized as a base for evidence, has been suggested to contain sources of evidence that would impact upon evidence-based patient care (Rycroft-Malone *et al.* 2004b). This is clinical knowledge from clinical experience and professional practice. Practitioners will draw upon both local and national sources to underpin their practice and these would include, for example, policies, patient stories, cultural context and professional networks. For some, it may include the use of some of the procedures contained in this edition. Moreover, in today's NHS in cancer and other specialties, it is evident that NICE guidance, the NHS Cancer Plan, published patient stories, patient satisfaction surveys and other sources will influence the delivery of patient care. What we have yet to determine is how to appraise and integrate this systematically into the evidence-based agenda in which we work.

Systems and challenges of grading evidence

Within the arena of evidence-based practice today, we must assess the quality of the evidence before it is used to inform practice. Hierarchies of evidence have been developed by a range of individuals and organizations in an attempt to identify the 'best' evidence to inform a particular decision that needs to be made in relation to a particular treatment, procedure or area of practice (Sackett *et al.* 2000). A key underlying assumption of using such a system is that not all evidence is equivalent (Rycroft-Malone 2006) and the quality of the evidence base therefore needs to be judged in some way. Making such judgements about evidence is complex and difficult to achieve. However, an explicit approach, as will be found in this manual, may help to facilitate critical appraisal of these judgements, provide confidence when applying evidence in practice and improve communication of this information (Grade Working Group 2004).

As Mantzoukas' (2009) review of nursing research within the hierarchies of evidence recently outlined, one of the challenges for nursing is that many of the hierarchies of evidence do not consider some of the evidence bases discussed in this chapter and put a lower value on research evidence that is not a meta-analysis or cluster randomized

controlled trial (CRCT). To address this problem, some writers such as Rolfe and Gardner (2006) have sought to challenge this and move from an 'exclusive' hierarchy to an 'inclusive' hierarchy that does not only consider evidence from research programmes but considers all sources of evidence together. How this is achieved is under discussion in the literature, so in the interim we have established, after much debate, a process to grade the procedures in this edition which captures all the evidence bases, not only the research.

Grading evidence in The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures

The evidence underpinning all the procedures has been reviewed and updated. To reflect the current trends in EBP, the evidence presented to support the procedures within this edition of *The Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures* has been graded, with this grading made explicit to the reader. The rationale for the system adopted will now be outlined.

As we have seen, there are many sources of evidence and ways of grading evidence and this has led us to a decision to consider both of these factors when referencing the procedures. You will therefore see that references will identify if the source of the evidence was from:

- clinical experience (Dougherty and Lamb 2008, E)
- patient (Diamond 1998, P)
- context and guidelines (DH 2010a, C)
- research (Fellowes *et al.* 2004, R).

If there is no written evidence to support a clinical experience or guidelines as a justification for undertaking a procedure, the text will be referenced as an 'E' but will not be preceded by an author's name.

For the evidence that comes from research, this referencing system will be taken one step further and the research will be graded using a hierarchy of evidence. The levels that have been chosen are adapted from Sackett *et al.* (2000) and can be found in Box 1.7.

Box 1.7 Levels of evidence

1a Systematic reviews of RCTs.
1b Individual RCTs with narrow confidence limits.
2a Systematic reviews of cohort studies.
2b Individual cohort studies and low-quality RCTs.
3a Systematic reviews of case–control studies.
3b Case–control studies.
5 Case series and poor-quality cohort and case–control studies.
6 Expert opinion.

RCTs, randomized controlled trials.

(Adapted from Sackett *et al.* 2000)

Taking the example above of Fellowes *et al.* (2004), this is a systematic review of RCTs from the Cochrane Centre and so would be identified in the references as: Fellowes *et al.* (2004, R1a).

Through this process we hope that the reader will be able to more clearly identify the nature of the evidence upon which the care of patients is based and that this will assist when using these procedures in practice. You may also like to consider the evidence base for other procedures and policies in use in your own organization.

Implementing evidence in practice

The implementation of evidence in practice in an organization, be that at a local level in a ward, throughout a hospital or in the community, can be demanding and requires planning, determination and time and the participation of individuals, teams and the organization to effect this change. It is beyond the scope of this chapter to cover the process in detail but some key factors to consider in the successful implementation of EBP are the evidence which has been explored in detail in this chapter, the context and facilitation (Rycroft-Malone *et al.* 2002, Scott and McSherry 2009). It can be useful to consider questions such as: how appropriate is the research to your group of patients/families/staff? Will the proposed research answer the issues you have? Is it transferable and is it justified to implement it? Did the design meet the stated research question and was the design appropriate? Was it methodologically rigorous?

Implementation of evidence in practice is most likely to occur when evidence is robust and inclusive, the context is receptive to change and the process is facilitated by someone who has the skills to effect change. Practice development teams in organizations are well placed to assist with the implementation of evidence in practice but the onus is also in the individual nurse who has a professional, moral and ethical duty to ensure that their practice is up to date, and who needs to willingly engage and apply evidence to practice.

Conclusion

This chapter has discussed the current context of healthcare, identifying the issues that influence the use and development of nursing procedures in the delivery of patient-centred care. The procedures in this book affect the whole person. They range from those that are observational and physically non-invasive to those involving intrusion into both the physical body and the psychological persona. The intent also varies; some are diagnostic, others therapeutic and some are supportive with the aim of increasing well-being. This chapter seeks to remind you of the importance of seeing procedures not just as tasks but as part of the whole for the patient.

It is important to remember that even if a procedure is very familiar to us and we are very confident in carrying it out, it may be new to the patient, so time must be taken to explain it and gain consent, even if this is only verbal consent. The diverse range of technical procedures that patients may be subjected to should act as a reminder not to lose sight of the unique person undergoing such procedures and the importance of individualized patient assessment in achieving this.

When a nurse

Encounters another

What occurs is never a neutral event

A pulse taken

Words exchanged

A touch

A healing moment

Two persons

Are never the same.

(Anon in Dossey *et al.* 2005)

Nurses have a central role to play in helping patients to manage the demands of the procedures described in this manual. It must not be forgotten that for the patient, the clinical procedure is part of a larger picture, which encompasses an appreciation of the unique experience of illness. Alongside this we need to be mindful of the evidence upon which we are basing the care we deliver. We hope that through increasing the clarity with which the evidence for the procedures in this edition is presented, you will be better able to underpin the care you deliver to your patients in your day-to-day practice.

Website

http://www.nhs.uk/choiceintheNHS/Rightsandpledges/NHSConstitution/Documents/COI_NHSConstitutionWEB2010.pdf.

References

Aiken, L.H., Clarke, S.P., Sloane, D.M., Sochalski, J. and Silber, J.H. (2002) Hospital nurse staffing and patient mortality, nurse burnout and job dissatisfaction. *JAMA*, **288** (16), 1987–1993.

Arthur, D., Pang, S. and Wong, T. (2001) The effect of technology on the caring attributes of an international sample of nurses. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, **38** (1), 37–43.

Australian Nursing and Midwifery Council (2009) *Nurse Practitioners: Standards and Criteria for the Accreditation of Nursing and Midwifery Courses Leading to Registration, Enrolment, Endorsement and Authorisation in Australia – with Evidence Guide.* www.anmc.org.au/userfiles/ANMC_Nurse_Practitioner(1).pdf

Barr, J. and Dowding, L. (2008) *Leadership in Healthcare*. Sage, Thousand Oaks, CA.

Benner, P.E. (1991) The role of experience, narrative, and community in skilled ethical comportment. *Advanced Nursing Science*, **14** (2), 1–21.

Benner, P.E. (1984) *From Novice to Expert: Excellence and Power in Clinical Nursing Practice*. Addison-Wesley, Menlo Park, CA.

Benner, P.E., Tanner, C.A. and Chesla, C.A. (1996) *Expertise in Nursing Practice: Care, Clinical Judgment and Ethics*. Springer, New York.

Canadian Nurses Association (2008) *Advanced Practice: A National Framework.* www.cna-aiic.ca/CNA/documents/pdf/publications/ANP_National_Framework_e.pdf

Carper, B. (1978) Fundamental patterns of knowing in nursing. *ANS Advances in Nursing Science*, **1** (1), 13–23.

Centre for Health Economics (2003) *Improving the Effectiveness of the Nursing Workforce: Short Report of Analysis of NISCM Data Set*. University of York, Centre for Health Economics, York.

Council for Regulatory Excellence (2009) *Advanced Practice: Report to the four UK Health Departments*. www.chre.org.uk/_img/pics/library090709_Advanced_Practice_report_FINAL.pdf

Coventry, M.L. (2006) Care with dignity: a concept analysis. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, **32** (5), 42–48.

Darbyshire, P. (1999) Nursing, art and science: revisiting the two cultures. *International Journal of Nursing Practice*, **5** (3), 123–131.

Darzi, Lord (2008) *High Quality Care for All: NHS Next Stage Review Final Report*. Department of Health, London.

DH (1995) *Improving the Quality of Cancer Services*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2000) *No Secrets: Guidance on Developing and Implementing Multi-Agency Policies and Procedures to Protect Vulnerable Adults from Abuse*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2001) *National Service Framework for Older People*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2004a) *A Matron's Charter: An Action Plan for Cleaner Hospitals*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2004b) *NHS Knowledge and Skills Framework*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2005) *Promoting Equality and Human Rights in the NHS – A Guide for Non-Executive Directors of NHS Boards*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2006a) *Modernising Nursing Careers*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2006b) *Best Research for Best Health*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2007a) *Trust, Assurance and Safety – the Regulation of Health Professionals in the Twenty-First Century*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2007b) *A Recipe for Care – Not a Single Ingredient*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2009) *Reference Guide to Consent for Examination of Treatment*, 2nd edn. Department of Health, London.

DH (2010a) *The Handbook to the NHS Constitution*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2010b) White Paper. *Equity and Excellence: Liberating the NHS*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2010c) *The NHS Constitution: The NHS Belongs to Us All*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2010d) *Revision to the Operating Framework for the NHS in England 2010/11*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2010e) *Advanced Level Nursing*: A Position Statement. Department of Health, London.

Diamond, J. (1998) *C: Because Cowards Get Cancer Too*. Vermilion, London.

Dossey, B.M., Keegan, L. and Guzzetta, C.E. (2005) *Holistic Nursing: A Handbook for Practice*, 4th edn. Jones and Bartlett, Sudbury, MA.

Dougherty, L. and Lamb, J. (2008) *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice*, 2nd edn. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Dreyfus, S.E. (1982) Formal models vs human situational understanding: inherent limitations on modelling of business expertise, in *From Novice to Expert: Excellence and Power in Clinical Nursing Practice* (ed. P.E. Benner). Addison-Wesley, Menlo Park, CA, pp. 133–155.

Fellowes, D., Wilkinson, S. and Moore, P. (2004) Communication skills training for health care professionals working with cancer patients, their families and/or carers. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **2**, CD003751.

Ford, P. and Walsh, M. (1994) *New Rituals for Old: Nursing Through the Looking Glass*. Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford.

Grade Working Group (2004) Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. *BMJ*, **328**, 1490–1498.

Greenhalgh, T. (1999) Narrative based medicine: narrative based medicine in an evidence based world. *BMJ*, **318** (7179), 323–325.

Greenhalgh, T. (2002) Intuition and evidence – uneasy bedfellows? *British Journal of General Practice*, **52** (478), 395–400.

Guyatt, G., Cook, D. and Haynes, B. (2004) Evidence based medicine has come a long way. *BMJ*, **329** (7473), 990–991.

Haddock, J. (1996) Towards further clarification of the concept 'dignity'. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **24** (5), 924–931.

Hawkins, J.W. and Holcombe, J.K. (1995) Titling for advanced practice nurses. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, **22** (8 Suppl), 5–9.

Healthcare Commission (2006) Investigation into outbreaks of *Clostridium difficile* at Stoke Mandeville Hospital. Healthcare Commission, London.

Healthcare Commision (2007) Investigation into outbreaks of *Clostridium difficile* at Maidstone and Tunbridge Wells NHS Trust. Healthcare Commission, London.

Hewitt-Taylor, J. (2003) Reviewing evidence. *Intensive and Critical Care Nursing*, **19** (1), 43–49.

Higgs, J. and Jones, M. A. (2008) *Clinical Reasoning in the Health Professions*, 3rd edn. Butterworth-Heinemann, Edinburgh.

Hopwood, L. (2010) A study to explore the contribution to patient care made by Registered Nurses and non-registered healthcare staff and their ability to understand their own and each other's roles (unpublished). Available from Greenwich School of Management. www.greenwich-college.ac.uk/.

House of Commons (2009) *Six Lives: The Provision of Public Services for People With Learning Disabilities*. Stationery Office, London.

International Council of Nurses (2008) The Scope of Practice, Standards and Competencies of the Advanced Practice Nurse. International Council of Nurses, Geneva.

International Council of Nursing (2010) The ICN definition of nursing. www.icn.ch/definition.htm.

Lillyman, S. (1998) Assessing competence, in *Advanced and Specialist Nursing Practice* (eds P. McGee and G. Castledine). Blackwell Science, Oxford, pp. 119–129.

MacLeod, M. (1994) 'It's the little things that count': the hidden complexity of everyday clinical nursing practice. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **3** (6), 361–368.

Mairis, E.D. (1994) Concept clarification in professional practice – dignity. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **19** (5), 947–953.

McKenna, H., Cutcliffe, J. and McKenna, P. (2000) Evidence-based practice: demolishing some myths. *Nursing Standard*, **14** (16), 39–42.

Mantzoukas, S. (2009) The research evidence published in high impact nursing journals between 2000 and 2006: a quantitative content analysis. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, **46** (4), 479–489.

Mencap (2007) *Death by Indifference*. MENCAP, London. www.mencap.org.uk/displaypagedoc.asp?id=284.

Mental Capacity Act (2005) Code of Practice. Stationery Office, London.

Meyer, G. and Lavin, M.A. (2005) Vigilance: the essence of nursing. *Online Journal of Issues in Nursing*, **10** (3), 8.

Milburn, M., Baker, M., Gardner, P., Hornsby, R. and Rogers, L. (1995) Nursing care that patients value. *British Journal of Nursing*, **4** (18), 1094–1099.

Musk, A. (2004) Proficiency with technology and the expression of caring: can we reconcile these polarized views? *International Journal for Human Caring*, **8** (2), 13–21.

NHS Institute of Innovation and Improvement (2009) *High Impact Actions for Nursing and Midwifery*. NHS Institute of Innovation and Improvement, London.

NHSME (1991) *Junior Doctors: The New Deal*. NHS Management Executive, London.

Nightingale, F. (1859) *Notes on Nursing*. JB Lippincott, Philadelphia.

NMC (1999) *Scope of Practice: A Higher Level of Practice*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2008a) *Accountability*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2008b) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses And Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2008c) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent.

NMC (2009) *Guidelines for Care of the Older Person*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2010) *Advice Sheet: Mental Capacity Act 2005*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

O'Dowd, A. (2003) Who should perform the caring role? *Nursing Times*, **99** (10), 10–11.

Office for National Statistics (2008) News release: population grows to 61.4 million. www.statistic.gov.uk.

Paley, J. (2006) Evidence and expertise. *Nursing Inquiry*, **13** (2), 82–93.

Pearsall, J. (1998) *The New Oxford Dictionary of English*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, p.374.

Pearson, A., Field, J. and Jordan, Z. (2007) *Evidence-Based Clinical Practice in Nursing and Health Care: Assimilating Research, Experience, and Expertise*. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Porter, S. (2010) Fundamental patterns of knowing in nursing: the challenge of evidence-based practice. *ANS Advances in Nursing Science*, **33** (1), 3–14.

Price, B. (2004) Demonstrating respect for patient dignity. *Nursing Standard*, **19** (12), 45–51; quiz 52.

Ray, M.A. (1987) Technological caring: a new model in critical care. *Dimensions in Critical Care Nursing*, **6** (3), 166–173.

Richardson, G. and Maynard, A. (1995) *Fewer Doctors? More Nurses? A Review of the Knowledge Base of Doctor–Nurse Substitution*. Centre for Health Economics, University of Leeds, Leeds.

Rolfe, G. and Gardner, L. (2006) Towards a geology of evidence-based practice – a discussion paper. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, **43** (7), 903–913.

Royal Marsden Hospital (2004) *Developing Your Role: A Guide for Nurses*. Royal Marsden NHS Foundation Trust, London.

Royal Marsden NHS Trust (2003) *Advanced Nursing Practice at the Royal Marsden NHS Trust 1999–2002*. Royal Marsden NHS Trust, London.

Rycroft-Malone, J. (2006) The politics of the evidence-based practice movements: legacies and current challenges. *Journal of Research in Nursing*, **11** (2), 95–109.

Rycroft-Malone, J., Harvey, G., Kitson, A. *et al.* (2002) Getting evidence into practice: ingredients for change. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (37), 38–43.

Rycroft-Malone, J., Harvey, G., Seers, K., Kitson, A., McCormack, B. and Titchen, A. (2004a) An exploration of the factors that influence the implementation of evidence into practice. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **13** (8), 913–924.

Rycroft-Malone, J., Seers, K., Titchen, A., Harvey, G., Kitson, A. and McCormack, B. (2004b) What counts as evidence in evidence-based practice? *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **47** (1), 81–90.

Sackett, D.L., Straus, S.E. and Richardson, W.S. (2000) *Evidence-Based Medicine: How to Practice and Teach EBM*, 2nd edn. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

Sackett, D.L., Rosenberg, W.M., Gray, J.A., Haynes, R.B. and Richardson, W.S. (1996) Evidence based medicine: what it is and what it isn't. *BMJ*, **312** (7023), 71–72.

Santry, C. (2010) We need to be clear about our primary responsibility. *Nursing Times*, **106** (4), 4–5.

Schwartz, K.B. (1995) A patient's story. *Boston Globe Magazine*, 16th July. www.theschwartzcenter.org/story/index.html.

Scott, K. and McSherry, R. (2009) Evidence-based nursing: clarifying the concepts for nurses in practice. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **18** (8), 1085–1095.

Scottish Government (2010) *Advanced Nursing Practice Roles: Guidance for NHS Boards.* www.knowledge.scot.nhs.uk/media/clt/ResourceUploads/188860/Advanced%20%Practice%20Guidance%20-%20Final_.pdf

Spilsbury, K. and Meyer, J. (2001) Defining the nursing contribution to patient outcome: lessons from a review of the literature examining nursing outcomes, skill mix and changing roles. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **10** (1), 3–14.

Staley, K. (2009) *Exploring Impact: Public Involvement in NHS, Public Health and Social Care Research.* INVOLVE, Eastleigh. www.invo.org.uk/pdfs/Involve_Exploring_Impactfinal28.10.09.pdf.

Traynor, M. (2009) Indeterminacy and technicality revisited: how medicine and nursing have responded to the evidence based movement. *Sociology of Health and Illness*, **31** (4), 494–507.

UKCC (1992) *The Scope of Professional Practice: A UKCC Position Statement*. United Kingdom Central Council for Nursing, Midwifery and Health Visiting, London.

Walsh, K. and Kowanko, I. (2002) Nurses' and patients' perceptions of dignity. *International Journal of Nursing Practice*, **8** (3), 143–151.

Walsh, M. and Ford, P. (1989) *Nursing Rituals, Research and Rational Actions*. Heinemann Nursing, Oxford.

Williams, A.M. and Irurita, V.F. (2004) Therapeutic and non-therapeutic interpersonal interactions: the patient's perspective. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **13** (7), 806–815.

Willis, W.O. (1999) Culturally competent nursing care during the perinatal period. *Journal of Perinatal and Neonatal Nursing*, **13** (3), 45–59.

Wilson, C. (2005) Said another way. My definition of nursing. *Nursing Forum*, **40** (3), 116–118.

Chapter 2

Assessment, Discharge and End of Life Care

Overview

This chapter will give an overview of a patient's care from assessment through to discharge and will include care of the dying and procedures after death.

Assessment is considered to be the first step in the process of individualized nursing care. It provides information that is critical to the development of a plan of action that enhances personal health status. It also decreases the potential for, or the severity of, chronic conditions and helps the individual to gain control over their health through self-care (RCN 2004). Assessment forms an integral part of patient care and should be viewed as a continuous process.

Inpatient assessment and the process of care

Definition

Assessment is a systematic, deliberate and interactive process that underpins every aspect of nursing care (Heaven and Maguire 1996). It is the process by which the nurse and patient together identify needs and concerns. It is seen as the cornerstone of individualized care, a way in which the uniqueness of each patient can be recognized and considered in the care process (Holt 1995).

Related theory

Principles of assessment

The process of assessment requires nurses to make accurate and relevant observations, to gather, validate and organize data and to make judgements to determine care and treatment needs. A nursing assessment should have physical, psychological, emotional, spiritual, social and cultural dimensions, and it is vital that these are explored with the person being assessed. The patient's perspective of their level of daily activity functioning (Horton 2002) and their educational needs are essential to help maximize their understanding and self-care abilities (Alfaro-Lefevre 2002). It is only after making observations of the person and involving them in the process that the nurse can validate their perceptions and make appropriate clinical judgements.

Effective patient assessment is integral to the safety, continuity and quality of patient care and fulfils nurses' legal and professional obligations in practice. The main principles of assessment are outlined in Box 2.1.

Box 2.1 Principles of assessment

1 Patient assessment is patient focused, being governed by the notion of an individual's actual, potential and perceived needs.

2 It provides baseline information on which to plan the interventions and outcomes of care to be achieved.

3 It facilitates evaluation of the care given and is a dimension of care that influences a patient's outcome and potential survival.

4 It is a dynamic process that starts when problems or symptoms develop, which continues throughout the care process, accommodating continual changes in the patient's condition and circumstances.

5 It is essentially an interactive process in which the patient actively participates.

6 Optimal functioning, quality of life and the promotion of independence should be primary concerns.

7 The process includes observation, data collection, clinical judgement and validation of perceptions.

8 Data used for the assessment process are collected from several sources by a variety of methods, depending on the healthcare setting.

9 To be effective, the process must be structured and clearly documented.

(Alfaro-Lefevre 2002, NMC 2008, Teytelman 2000, White 2003)

Structure of assessment

Structuring patient assessment is vital to monitor the success of care and to detect the emergence of new problems. Different conceptual or nursing models, such as that of Roper *et al.* (2000), provide frameworks for a systematic approach to assessment (such as Roper's Activities of Daily Living), implying that there is a perceived value in the co-existence of a variety of perspectives. There remains, however, much debate about the effectiveness of such models for assessment in practice, some arguing that individualized care can be compromised by fitting patients into a rigid or complex structure (Kearney 2001, Tierney 1998). Nurses therefore need to take a pragmatic approach and utilize assessment frameworks that are appropriate to their particular area of practice. This is particularly relevant in today's rapidly changing healthcare climate where nurses are taking on increasingly advanced roles, working across boundaries and setting up new services to meet patients' needs (DH 2006a).

Nursing models represent a set of concepts and statements integrated into a meaningful conceptual framework (Kozier *et al.* 2003) representing different theoretical approaches to nursing care.

Nursing models can serve as a guide to the overall approach to care within a given healthcare environment and therefore provide a focus for the clinical judgements and decision-making processes that result from the process of assessment. It has been argued that whilst nursing models

have not been widely implemented in clinical practice, nurses do use them as a way to consider the process of nursing (Wimpenny 2001). During any patient assessment, nurses engage in a series of cognitive, behavioural and practical steps but do not always recognize them as discrete decision-making entities (Ford and McCormack 1999). Nursing models give novice practitioners a structure with which to identify these processes and to reflect on their practice in order to develop analytical, problem-solving and judgement skills needed to provide an effective patient assessment.

Nursing models have been developed according to different ways of perceiving the main focus of nursing. These include adaptation models (e.g. Roy 1984), self-care models (e.g. Orem *et al.* 2001) and activities of daily living models (e.g. Roper *et al.* 2000). Each model represents a different view of the relationship between four key elements of nursing: health, person, environment and nursing. It is important that the appropriate model is used to ensure the focus of assessment data collected is effective for particular areas of practice (Alfaro-Lefevre 2002, Murphy *et al.* 2000). Nurses must also be aware of the rationale for implementing a particular model since the choice will determine the nature of patient care in their day-to-day work. The approach should be sensitive enough to discriminate between different clinical needs and flexible enough to be updated on a regular basis (Allen 1998, Smith and Richardson 1996).

In the context of cancer care, the Cancer Action Team (2007) has published guidance for a holistic common assessment of the supportive and palliative care needs of adults with cancer. The content of the assessment is divided into five domains including background information and assessment preferences, physical needs, social and occupational needs, psychological well-being and spiritual well-being. The guidance recommends that a structured assessment should be undertaken at key points throughout the person's cancer illness trajectory, recognizing the importance of assessment as an ongoing process (Cancer Action Team 2007, NICE 2004).

Incorporating these key dimensions, the framework of choice at the Royal Marsden Hospital is based on Gordon's Functional Health

Patterns (Gordon 1994; see Box 2.2). The framework facilitates an assessment that focuses on patients' and families' problems and functional status and applies clinical cues to interpret deviations from the patient's usual patterns (Johnson 2000). The model is applicable to all levels of care, allowing all problem areas to be identified. The information derived from the patient's initial functional health patterns is crucial for interpreting both the patient's and their family's pattern of response to the disease and treatment. It is therefore considered particularly applicable for the cancer and palliative care settings where patients' needs and responses vary enormously along their illness trajectory.

Box 2.2 Gordon's functional health patterns

- Health perception–health management.
- Nutrition–metabolic.
- Elimination.
- Activity–exercise.
- Sleep–rest.
- Cognitive–perceptual.
- Self-perception–self-concept.
- Coping–stress tolerance.
- Role–relationship.
- Sexuality–reproductivity.
- Value–belief.

(Gordon 1994)

Evidence-based approaches

Methods of assessment

Assessment information is collected in many different formats and consists of both objective and subjective data. Nurses working in different settings rely on different observational and physical data that

may include assessment of vital signs, physical systems, symptoms and laboratory results. Subjective data are based on what the patient perceives and may include descriptions of their concerns, support network, their awareness and knowledge of their abilities/disabilities, their understanding of their illness and their attitude to and readiness for learning (Coyne *et al.* 2002, White 2003). A variety of methods have been developed to facilitate nurses in eliciting both objective and subjective assessment data on the assumption that if assessment is not accurate, all other nursing activity will also be inaccurate.

Studies of patient assessment by nurses are few but they indicate that discrepancies between nurses' perceptions and those of their patients are common (Brown *et al.* 2001, Lauri *et al.* 1997, McDonald *et al.* 1999, Parsaie *et al.* 2000). Communication is therefore key for, as Suhonen *et al.* 2000 suggest, 'there are two actors in individual care, the patient and the nurse' (p.1254). Gaining insight into patients' preferences and individualized needs is facilitated by meaningful interaction and depends both on patients' willingness and capability in participating in the process and nurses' interviewing skills. The initial assessment interview not only allows the nurse to obtain baseline information about the patient, but also facilitates the establishment of a therapeutic relationship (Crumbie 2006). Patients may find it difficult to disclose some problems and these may only be identified once the nurse–patient relationship develops and the patient trusts that the nurse's assessment reflects concern for their well-being.

Assessment interviews

An assessment interview needs structure to progress logically in order to facilitate the nurse's thinking (an example of such a structure can be found in Box 2.3) and to make the patient feel comfortable in telling their story. It can be perceived as being in three phases: the introductory, working and end phases (Crumbie 2006). It is important at the beginning to emphasize the confidential nature of the discussion and to take steps to reduce anxiety and ensure privacy since patients may modify their words and behaviour depending on the environment (Neighbour 1998).

Box 2.3 Carrying out a patient assessment using functional health patterns

Pattern	Assessment and data collection are focused on
Health perception–management	■ The person's perceived level of health and well-being, and on practices for maintaining health. ■ Habits that may be detrimental to health are also evaluated. ■ Actual or potential problems related to safety and health management may be identified as well as needs for modifications in the home or for continued care in the home.
Nutrition and metabolism	■ The pattern of food and fluid consumption relative to metabolic need. ■ Actual or potential problems related to fluid balance, tissue integrity. ■ Problems with the gastrointestinal system.
Elimination	■ Excretory patterns (bowel, bladder, skin). ■ Excretory problems such as incontinence, constipation, diarrhoea and urinary retention may be identified.
Activity and exercise	■ The activities of daily living requiring energy expenditure, including self-care activities, exercise and leisure activities. ■ The status of major body systems involved with activity and exercise is evaluated, including the respiratory, cardiovascular and musculoskeletal systems.
Sleep and rest	■ The person's sleep, rest and relaxation practices. ■ Dysfunctional sleep patterns, fatigue, and responses to sleep deprivation may be identified.
Cognitive and perceptual ability	■ The ability to comprehend and use information. ■ The sensory functions, neurological functions.
Perception/concept of self	■ The person's attitudes toward self, including identity, body image and sense of self-worth. ■ The person's level of self-esteem and response to threats to their self-concept may be identified.

Stress and coping	■ The person's perception of stress and its effects on their coping strategies. ■ Support systems are evaluated, and symptoms of stress are noted. ■ The effectiveness of a person's coping strategies in terms of stress tolerance may be further evaluated.
Roles and relationships	■ The person's roles in the world and relationships with others. ■ Satisfaction with roles, role strain or dysfunctional relationships may be further evaluated.
Sexuality and reproduction	■ The person's satisfaction or dissatisfaction with sexuality patterns and reproductive functions. ■ Concerns with sexuality may be identified.
Values and belief	■ The person's values, beliefs (including spiritual beliefs) and goals that guide their choices or decisions.
(Adapted from Gordon 1994)	

In the middle working phase, various techniques can be employed to assist with the flow of information. Open questions are useful to identify broad information that can then be explored more specifically with focused questions to determine the nature and extent of the problem. Other helpful techniques include restating what has been said to clarify certain issues, verbalizing the implied meaning, using silence and summarizing (Morton 1993). It is important to recognize that there may be times when it is not possible to obtain vital information directly from the patient; they may be too distressed, unconscious or unable to speak clearly, if at all. In such situations, appropriate details should be taken from relatives or friends and recorded as such. Effort should equally be made to overcome language or cultural barriers by the use of interpreters.

The end phase involves a further summary of the important points and an explanation of any referrals made. In order to gain the patient's perspective on the priorities of care and to emphasize the continuing interest in their needs, a final question asking about their concerns can be used (Alfaro-Lefevre 2002). Examples include: 'Tell me the most

important things I can help you with', 'Is there anything else you would like to tell me?', 'Is there anything that we haven't covered that still concerns you?' or 'If there are any changes or you have any questions, do let me know'.

Box 2.4 is a summary of the types of assessment.

Box 2.4 Types of patient assessment

Mini assessment

A snapshot view of the patient based on a quick visual and physical assessment. Consider patient's ABC (airway, breathing and circulation), then assess mental status, overall appearance, level of consciousness and vital signs before focusing on the patient's main problem.

Comprehensive assessment

An in-depth assessment of the patient's health status, physical examination, risk factors, psychological and social aspects of the patient's health that usually takes place on admission or transfer to a hospital or healthcare agency. It will take into account the patient's previous health status prior to admission.

Focused assessment

An assessment of a specific condition, problem, identified risks or assessment of care; for example, continence assessment, nutritional assessment, neurological assessment following a head injury, assessment for day care, outpatient consultation for a specific condition.

Ongoing assessment

Continuous assessment of the patient's health status accompanied by monitoring and observation of specific problems identified in a mini, comprehensive or focused assessment.

(Ahern and Philpot 2002, Holmes 2003, White 2003)

Preprocedural considerations

Assessment tools

The use of assessment tools enables a standardized approach to be used to obtain specific patient data. This can facilitate the documentation of change over time and the evaluation of clinical interventions and nursing care (Conner and Eggert 1994). Perhaps more importantly, assessment tools encourage patients to engage in their care and provide a vehicle for

communication to allow nurses to follow patients' experiences more effectively. An example of this comes from the European-wide cancer nursing WISECARE project (Kearney 2001). Nurses developed systematic measurements for four chemotherapy treatment-related symptoms and this enhanced care by directly linking nursing interventions to patients' reports of their experience. Improvements in outcomes were demonstrated and patients perceived their feelings and experience had been better considered in their treatment plan (Kearney 2001).

Assessment tools in clinical practice can be used to assess patients' general needs, for example the supportive care needs survey (Bonevski *et al.* 2000), or to assess a specific problem, for example the oral assessment guide (Eilers *et al.* 1988). The choice of tool depends on the clinical setting although in general, the aim of using an assessment tool is to link the assessment of clinical variables with measurement of clinical interventions (Frank-Stromborg and Olsen 2004). To be useful in clinical practice, an assessment tool must be simple, acceptable to patients, have a clear and interpretable scoring system and demonstrate reliability and validity (Brown *et al.* 2001).

Nurse researchers and clinicians have developed a broad spectrum of tools to assess the problems frequently encountered by patients (Box 2.5). More tools are used in practice to assess treatment-related symptoms than other aspects of care, possibly because these symptoms are predictable and of a physical nature and are therefore easier to measure. The most visible symptoms are not always those that cause most distress, however (Holmes and Eburn 1989), an acknowledgement of the patient's subjective experience is therefore an important element in the development of assessment tools (McClement *et al.* 1997, Rhodes *et al.* 2000).

Box 2.5 Examples of assessment tools used in cancer care

Generic assessment tools

Cancer Rehabilitation Evaluation System (CARES) (Ganz *et al.* 1992)

Problems checklist (Osse *et al.* 2004)

Supportive Care Needs Survey (SCNS) (Bonevski *et al.* 2000)

Specific assessment tools

Piper Fatigue Scale (Piper 1997)

Oral assessment (Eilers *et al.* 1988)

Chemotherapy Symptom Assessment Scale (C-SAS) (Brown *et al.* 2001)

Pain and Assessment Records (PSAR) (Bouvette *et al.* 2002)

The use of patient self-assessment tools appears to facilitate the process of assessment in a number of ways. It enables patients to indicate their subjective experience more easily, gives them an increased sense of participation (Kearney *et al.* 2000) and prevents them from being distanced from the process by nurses rating their symptoms and concerns (Brown *et al.* 2001). Many authors have demonstrated the advantages of increasing patient participation in assessment by the use of patient self-assessment questionnaires (Rhodes *et al.* 2000). A number of patient self-report tools have been developed for cancer patients as a result, and whilst many have been established for research purposes, an increasing number are being used very effectively in everyday clinical practice (Box 2.6).

Box 2.6 Examples of specific patient self-assessment tools used in cancer care

- Self Report Health History (SRHH) (Skinn and Stacey 1994)
- Memorial Symptom Assessment Scale (MSAS) (Portenoy *et al.* 1994)
- Concerns Checklist in Oncology Outpatient Setting (Dennison and Shute 2000)
- Therapy Related Symptom Checklist (TRSC) (Williams *et al.* 2001)
- Social Problems Inventory (SPI) (Wright *et al.* 2001)
- Symptoms and Concerns Checklist (Lidstone *et al.* 2003)

The methods used to facilitate patient assessment are important adjuncts to assessing patients in clinical practice. There is a danger that too much focus can be placed on the framework, system or tool that prevents nurses thinking about the significance of the information that they are gathering from the patient (Harris *et al.* 1998). Rather than following assessment structures and

prompts rigidly, it is essential that nurses utilize their critical thinking and clinical judgement throughout the process in order to continually develop their skills in eliciting information about patients' concerns and using this to inform care planning (Edwards and Miller 2001).

Principles of an effective nursing assessment

The admitting nurse is responsible for ensuring that an initial assessment is completed when the patient is admitted. The patient's needs identified following this process then need to be documented in their care plan.

The following box (Box 2.7) discusses each area of assessment indicating points for consideration and suggesting questions that may be helpful to ask the patient as part of the assessment process.

Box 2.7 Points for consideration and suggested questions for use during the assessment process

1 Cognitive and perceptual ability

Communication

The nurse needs to assess the level of sensory functioning with or without aids/support such as hearing aid(s), speech aid(s), glasses/contact lenses, and the patient's capacity to use and maintain aids/support correctly. Furthermore, it is important to assess whether there are or might be any potential language or cultural barriers during this part of the assessment. Knowing what the norm within the culture will facilitate understanding and lessen miscommunication problems (Galanti 2000).

- *How good are the patient's hearing and eyesight?*
- *Is the patient able to express their views and wishes using appropriate verbal and non-verbal methods of communication in a manner that is understandable by most people?*
- *Are there any potential language or cultural barriers to communicating with the patient?*

Information

During this part of the assessment the nurse will assess the patient's ability to comprehend the present environment without showing levels of distress.

This will help to establish whether there are any barriers to the patient understanding their condition and treatment. It may help them to be in a position to give informed consent.

- *Is the patient able and ready to understand any information about their forthcoming treatment and care? Are there any barriers to learning?*
- *Is the patient able to communicate an understanding of their condition, plan of care and potential outcomes/responses?*
- *Will he or she be able to give informed consent?*

Neurological

It important to assess the patient's ability to reason logically and decisively, and determine that he or she is able to communicate in a contextually, coherent manner.

- *Is the patient alert and orientated to time, place and person?*

Pain

To provide optimal patient care, the assessor needs to have appropriate knowledge of the patient's pain (Wilson 2007) and an ability to identify the pain type and location. Assessment of a patient's experience of pain is a crucial component in providing effective pain management. Dimond 2002 asserts that it is unacceptable for patients to experience unmanaged pain or for nurses to have inadequate knowledge about pain. Pain should be measured using an assessment tool that identifies the quantity and/or quality of one or more of the dimensions of the patient's experience of pain.

Assessment should also observe for signs of neuropathic pain including descriptions such as shooting, burning, stabbing, allodynia (pain associated with gentle touch) (Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists 2005, Jensen *et al.* 2003, Rowbotham and Macintyre 2002).

- *Is the patient pain free at rest and/or on movement?*
- *Is the pain a primary complaint or a secondary complaint associated with another condition?*
- *What is the location of the pain and does it radiate?*
- *When did it begin and what circumstances are associated with it?*
- *How intense is the pain, at rest and on movement?*
- *What makes the pain worse and what helps to relieve it?*
- *How long does the pain last, for example, continuous, intermittent?*
- *Ask the patient to describe the character of pain using quality/sensory descriptors, for example, sharp, throbbing, burning.*

For further details regarding pain assessment, see Chapter 9.

2 Activity and exercise

Respiratory

Respiratory pattern monitoring addresses the patient's breathing pattern, rate and depth.

In this section it is also important to assess and monitor smoking habits. It is helpful to document the smoking habit in the format of pack-years. A *pack-year* is a term used to describe the number of cigarettes a person has smoked over time. One pack-year is defined as 20 manufactured cigarettes (one pack) smoked per day for 1 year. At this point in the assessment, it would be a good opportunity, if appropriate, to discuss smoking cessation. A recent meta-analysis indicates that if interventions are given by nurses to their patients with regard to smoking cessation the benefits are greater (Rice and Stead 2008).

- *Does the patient have any difficulty breathing?*
- *Is there any noise when they are breathing such as wheezing?*
- *Does breathing cause them pain?*
- *How deep or shallow is their breathing?*
- *Is their breathing symmetrical?*
- *Does the patient have any underlying respiratory problems such as COPD, emphysema, tuberculosis, bronchitis, asthma or any other airway disease?*

For further details, see Chapter 10.

Cardiovascular

A basic assessment is carried out and vital signs such as pulse (rhythm, rate and intensity) and blood pressure should be noted. Details of cardiac history should be taken for this part of the assessment. Medical conditions and previous surgery should be noted.

- *Does the patient take any cardiac medication?*
- *Does he/she have a pacemaker?*

For further information, see Chapter 12.

Physical abilities – personal hygiene/mobility/toileting – independence with the activities of daily living

The aim during this part of the nursing assessment is to establish the level of assistance required by the person to tackle activities of daily living such as walking and steps/stairs. An awareness of obstacles to safe mobility and dangers to personal safety is an important factor and part of the assessment.

The nurse should also evaluate the patient's ability to meet personal hygiene, including oral hygiene, needs. This should include the patient's ability to make arrangements to preserve standards of hygiene and the ability to dress appropriately for climate, environment and their own standards of self-identity.

- *Is the patient able to stand, walk and go to the toilet?*
- *Is the patient able to move up and down, roll and turn in bed?*
- *Does the patient need any equipment to mobilize?*

■ *Has the patient good motor power in their arms and legs?*

■ *Does the patient have any history of falling?*

■ *Can the patient take care of their own personal hygiene needs independently or do they need assistance?*

■ *What type of assistance do they need: help with mobility or fine motor movements such as doing up buttons or shaving?*

It might be necessary to complete a separate manual handling risk assessment

For further information, see Chapters 7 and 9.

3 Elimination

Gastrointestinal

During this part of the assessment it is important to determine a baseline with regard to independence.

■ *Is the patient able to attend to their elimination needs independently and is he/she continent? Are bowel movements within the patient's own normal pattern and consistency?*

■ *What are the patient's normal bowel habits?*

■ *Does the patient have any underlying medical conditions such as Crohn's disease or irritable bowel syndrome?*

■ *Does the patient have diarrhoea or is he/she prone to or have constipation?*

■ *How does this affect the patient?*

Genitourinary

The assessment is focused on the patient's baseline observations with regard to continence/incontinence. It is also important to note whether there is any penile or vaginal discharge or bleeding.

Does the patient have a urinary catheter *in situ*? If so, list the type and size. Furthermore, note the date the catheter was inserted and/or removed. Urinalysis results should also be noted here.

■ *How often does the patient need to urinate? (Frequency)*

■ *How immediate is the need to urinate? (Urgency)*

■ *Do they wake in the night to urinate? (Nocturia)*

■ *Are they able to maintain control over their bladder at all times? (Incontinence – inability to hold urine)*

See Chapter 6 for further information.

4 Nutrition

Oral care

As part of the inpatient admission assessment, the nurse should obtain an oral health history that includes oral hygiene beliefs, practices and current state of oral health. During this assessment it is important to be aware of treatments and medications that affect the oral health of the patient.

If deemed appropriate, use an oral assessment tool to perform the initial and ongoing oral assessment.

During the admission it is important to note the condition of the patient's mouth.

- Lips – pink, moist, intact
- Gums – pink, no signs of infection or bleeding
- Teeth – dentures, bridge, crowns, caps

For full oral assessment, see Chapter 9.

Hydration

An in-depth assessment of hydration and nutritional status will provide the information needed for nursing interventions aimed at maximizing wellness and identifying problems for treatment. The assessment should ascertain whether the patient has any difficulty eating or drinking. During the assessment the nurse should observe signs of dehydration, for example dry mouth, dry skin, thirst or whether the patient shows any signs of altered mental state.

- *Is the patient able to drink adequately? If not, please explain why not.*
- *How much and what does the patient drink?*
- *Note the patient's alcohol intake in the format of units per week and the caffeine intake measured in the amount of cups per day.*

Nutrition

A detailed diet history provides insight into a patient's baseline nutritional status. Assessment includes questions regarding chewing or swallowing problems, avoidance of eating related to abdominal pain, changes in appetite, taste or intake, as well as use of a special diet or nutritional supplements. A review of past medical history should identify any conditions and highlight increased metabolic needs, altered gastrointestinal function and the patient's capacity to absorb nutrients.

- *What is the patient's usual daily food intake?*
- *Do they have a good appetite?*
- *Are they able to swallow/chew the food – any dysphagia?*
- *Is there anything they don't or can't eat?*
- *Have they experienced any recent weight changes or taste changes?*
- *Are they able to eat independently?*

(Arrowsmith 1999, DH 2005, Malnutrition Advisory Group 2000)

For further information, see Chapter 8.

Nausea and vomiting

During this part of the assessment you want to ascertain whether the patient has any history of nausea and/or vomiting. Nausea and vomiting can cause dehydration, electrolyte imbalance and nutritional deficiencies (Marek 2003), and it can also affect a patient's psychosocial well-being. They may become withdrawn, isolated and unable to perform their usual activities of daily living.

Assessment should address questions such as:

- *Does the patient feel nauseous?*
- *Is the patient vomiting? If so, what is the frequency, volume, content and timing?*
- *Does nausea precede vomiting?*
- *Does vomiting relieve nausea?*
- *When did the symptoms start? Did they coincide with changes in therapy or medication?*
- *Does anything make the symptoms better?*
- *Does anything make the symptoms worse?*
- *What is the effect of any current or past antiemetic therapy including dose, frequency, duration, effect, route of administration?*
- *What is the condition of the patient's oral cavity?*

(Perdue 2005)

5 Skin

A detailed assessment of a patient's skin may provide clues to diagnosis, management and nursing care of the existing problem. A careful skin assessment can alert the nurse to cutaneous problems as well as systemic diseases. In addition, a great deal can be observed in a person's face, which may give insight to his or her state of mind.

- *Does the patient have any wounds or sore places on their skin?*
- *Does the patient have any dry or red areas?*

Furthermore, it is necessary to assess whether the patient has any wounds and/or pressure sores. If so, you would need to complete a further wound assessment. For further information about wound care, see Chapter 15.

6 Controlling body temperature

This assessment is carried out to establish baseline temperature and determine if the temperature is within normal range, and whether there might be intrinsic or extrinsic factors for altered body temperature. It is important to note whether any changes in temperature are in response to specific therapies (e.g. antipyretic medication, immunosuppressive therapies, invasive procedures or infection (Bickley 2007)). White blood count should be recorded to determine whether it is within normal limits. See Chapters 11 and 12 for further information.

- *Is the patient feeling excessively hot or cold?*
- *Have they been shivering or sweating excessively?*

7 Sleep and rest

This part of the assessment is carried out to obtain sleep and rest patterns and reasons for variation. Description of sleep patterns, routines and interventions applied to achieve a comfortable sleep should be documented. The nurse should also include the presence of emotional and/or physical problems that may interfere with sleep.

- *Does the patient have enough energy for desired daily activities?*
- *Does the patient tire easily?*
- *Has he/she any difficulty falling asleep or staying asleep?*
- *Does he/she feel rested after sleep?*
- *Does he/she sleep during the day?*
- *Does he/she take any aids to help them sleep?*
- *What are the patient's normal hours for going to bed and waking?*

8 Stress and coping

Assessment is focused on the patient's perception of stress and on his or her coping strategies. Support systems should be evaluated and symptoms of stress should be noted. It includes the individual's reserve or capacity to resist challenge to self-integrity, modes of handling stress. The effectiveness of a person's coping strategies in terms of stress tolerances may be further evaluated (adapted from Gordon 1994).

- *What are the things in the patient's life that are stressful?*
- *What do they do when they are stressed?*
- *How do they know they are stressed?*
- *Is there anything they do to help them cope when life gets stressful?*
- *Is there anybody who they go to for support?*

9 Roles and relationships

The aim is to establish the patient's own perception of the roles and responsibilities in their current life situation. The patient's role in the world and their relationships with others are important to understand. Assessment in this area includes finding out about the patient's perception of the major roles and responsibilities they have in life, satisfaction or disturbances in family, work or social relationships. An assessment of home life should be undertaken which should include how they will cope at home post discharge from hospital and how home will cope while they are in hospital, for example dependants, animals or children and if there are any financial worries.

- *Who is at home?*
- *Are there any dependants (include children, pets, anybody else they care for)?*
- *What responsibilities does the patient have for the day-to-day running of the home?*
- *What will happen if they are not there?*
- *Do they have any concerns about home while they are in hospital?*
- *Are there any financial issues related to their hospital stay?*
- *Will there be any issues related to employment or study while they are in hospital?*

10 Perception/concept of self

Body image/self-esteem

Body image is highly personal, abstract and difficult to describe. The rationale for this section is to assess the patient's level of understanding and general perception of self. This includes their attitudes about self, perception of abilities (cognitive, affective or physical), body image, identity, general sense of worth and general emotional pattern. An assessment of body posture and movement, eye contact, voice and speech patterns should also be included.

- *How do you describe yourself?*
- *How do you feel about yourself most of the time?*
- *Has it changed since your diagnosis?*
- *Have there been changes in the way you feel about yourself or body?*

11 Sexuality and reproduction

Understanding sexuality as the patient's perceptions of their own body image, family roles and functions, relationships and sexual function can help the assessor to improve assessment and diagnosis of actual or potential alterations in sexual behaviour and activity.

Assessment in this area is vital and should include relevant feelings about the patient's own body, their need for touch, interest in sexual activity, how they communicate their sexual needs to a partner, if they have one, and the ability to engage in satisfying sexual activities.

This may also be an opportunity to explore with the patient issues related to future reproduction if this is relevant to the admission. Below are a few examples of questions that can be used.

- *Are you currently in a relationship?*
- *Has your condition had an impact on the way you and your partner feel about each other?*
- *Has your condition had an impact on the physical expression of your feelings?*
- *Has your treatment or current problem had any effect on your interest in being intimate with your partner?*

12 Values and beliefs

Religious, spiritual and cultural beliefs

The aim is to assess the patient's spiritual, religious and cultural needs to provide culturally and spiritually specific care while concurrently providing a forum to explore spiritual strengths that might be used to prevent problems or cope with difficulties. Assessment is focused on the patient's values and beliefs, including spiritual beliefs or on the goals that guide his or her choices or decisions. A patient's stay in hospital may be influenced by their religious beliefs or other strongly held principles, cultural background, ethnic origin. It is important for nurses to have knowledge and understanding of the diverse cultures of their patients and take their different practices into account.

- *Are there any spiritual/cultural beliefs that are important to you?*
- *Do you have any specific dietary needs related to your religious, spiritual or cultural beliefs?*
- *Do you have any specific personal care needs related to your religious, spiritual or cultural beliefs (i.e. washing rituals, dress)?*

13 Health perception and management

Relevant medical conditions, side-effects/complications of treatment

Assessment of the patient's perceived pattern of health and well-being and how health is managed should be documented here. Any relevant history of previous health problems, including side-effects of medication, experienced previously should be noted. Examples of other useful information that should be documented are compliance with medication regimen, use of health promotion activities such as regular exercise and if the patient has annual check-ups.

- *What does the patient know about their condition and planned treatment?*
- *How would they describe their own current overall level of fitness?*
- *What do they do to keep well: exercise, diet, annual check-ups or screening?*

Postprocedural considerations

Decision making and nursing diagnosis

The purpose of collecting information through the process of assessment is to enable the nurse to make a series of clinical judgements, otherwise known as nursing diagnoses, and subsequently decisions about the nursing care each individual needs. The decision-making process is based upon the clues observed, analysed and interpreted and it has been suggested that expert nurses assess the situation as a whole and make judgements and decisions intuitively (King and Clark 2002, Hedburg and Satterlund Larsson 2003, Peden-McAlpine and Clark 2002), reflecting Benner's 1984 renowned novice-to-expert theory. However, others argue that all nurses use a logical process of clinical reasoning in order to identify patients' needs for nursing care and that, while this becomes more automatic with experience and perhaps more subconscious, it should always be possible for a nurse to explain how they arrive at a decision about an individual within their care (Gordon 1994, Putzier and Padrick 1984, Rolfe 1999). A further notion is that of

a continuum, where our ability to make clinical judgements about our patients lies on a spectrum, with intuition at one end and linear, logical decisions (based on clinical trials, for example) at the other (Cader *et al.* 2005, Thompson 1999). Factors that may influence the process of decision making include time, complexity of the judgement or decision to be made, as well as the knowledge, experience and attitude of the individual nurse.

Nursing diagnosis is a term which describes both a clinical judgement that is made about an individual's response to health or illness, and the process of decision making that leads to that judgement; Box 2.8 illustrates the process of making a nursing diagnosis. The importance of thorough assessment within this process cannot be overestimated. The gathering of comprehensive and appropriate data from patients, including the meanings attributed to events by the patient, is associated with greater diagnostic accuracy and thus more timely and effective intervention (Alfaro-Lefevre 2002, Gordon 1994, Hunter 1998).

Box 2.8 The process of nursing diagnosis

- Collect information using an appropriate assessment framework.
- Identify clusters of information and consider possible nursing judgements (nursing diagnoses).
- Collect further information to verify these judgements.
- Arrive at an accurate nursing judgement (nursing diagnosis).

(Gordon 1994, Tanner *et al.* 1987)

The concept of a 'nursing diagnosis' has historically generated much debate within the nursing literature, and it is therefore important to clarify the difference between a nursing diagnosis and a patient problem or care need. 'Patient problems' or 'needs' are common terms used within nursing to facilitate communication about nursing care (Hogston 1997). As patient problems/needs may involve solutions or treatments from disciplines other than nursing, the concept of a 'patient problem' is similar to but broader than a nursing diagnosis. Nursing diagnoses

describe problems that may be dealt with by nursing expertise (Leih and Salentijn 1994) (Box 2.9).

Box 2.9 Characteristics of conditions labelled as nursing diagnoses (Gordon, 1994)

1 Nurses can identify the condition through a process of diagnostic reasoning (assessment, problem identification).

2 The condition can be resolved primarily by nursing interventions.

3 Nurses assume accountability for patient/outcomes.

4 Nurses assume responsibility for research on the condition and its treatment.

The term 'nursing diagnosis' also refers to a standardized nursing language, to describe patients' needs for nursing care, that originated in America over 30 years ago and has now been developed, adapted and translated for use in numerous other countries. The language of nursing diagnosis provides a classification of over 200 terms (NANDA-I 2009), representing judgements that are commonly made with patients/clients about phenomena of concern to nurses, enabling more consistent communication and documentation of nursing care (see Box 2.10 for an example of a nursing diagnosis).

Box 2.10 Example of a nursing diagnosis

Label	
Definition	
Provides a clear meaning of the diagnosis.	*Acute pain:* an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage or described in terms of such damage (IASP 2007). Sudden or slow onset of any intensity from mild to severe with an anticipated or predictable end and a duration of <3 months.
Defining characteristics	For example:
Cues to determine if the condition or response	■ The patient states they have pain.

described by the diagnosis is present for the patient/client.	■ Pain assessment: numerical rating scale (0–10) pain score >2. ■ Evidence of noxious stimuli, e.g. surgery, trauma. ■ Guarding of injury. ■ Reduction in patient's normal mobility. Refer to NANDA-I (2009) for a complete list of defining characteristics.
Related factors Factors that contribute to the diagnosis being present. Individualized to each patient or client. (Adapted from NANDA-I 2009)	Injury agents (biological, chemical, physical, psychological).

Most significantly, the use of common language enables nurses to clearly and consistently express what they do for patients and why, making the contribution of different nursing roles clearly visible within the multidisciplinary care pathway (Delaney 2001, Elfrink *et al*. 2001, Grobe 1996, Moen *et al.* 1999). Secondly, an increasingly important reason for trying to structure nursing terms in a systematic way has been the need to create and analyse nursing information in a meaningful way for electronic care records (Clark 1999, Westbrook 2000). The term 'nursing diagnosis' is not commonly used within the UK as no definitive classifications or common languages are in general use; however, for the aforementioned reasons, the adaptation and implementation of standard nursing languages within clinical practice in the UK are being explored (Chambers 1998, Lyte and Jones 2004, Westbrook 2000).

Planning and implementing care

Nursing diagnoses provide a focus for planning and implementing effective and evidence-based care. This process consists of identifying nursing-sensitive patient outcomes and determining appropriate interventions that will enable the individual to reach their desired outcome. However, while nurses may gather valuable information through the assessment process, it is often the case that very little of this is translated into the documentation (Ford and Walsh 1994), resulting in

the standard of care bearing little relationship to the written documentation (Ballard 2006, Ford and Walsh 1994). Therefore, when planning care, it is vital:

- to determine the immediate priorities and recognize whether patient problems require nursing care or whether a referral should be made to someone else
- to identify the anticipated outcome for the patient, noting what the patient will be able to do and in what time frame. The use of 'measurable' verbs that describe patient behaviour or what the patient says facilitates the evaluation of patient outcomes (see Box 2.11)
- to determine the nursing interventions, that is, what nursing actions will prevent or manage the patient's problems so that the patient's outcomes may be achieved
- to record the care plan for the patient which may be written or individualized from a standardized/core care plan or a computerized care plan.

(Alfaro-Lefevre 2002, Shaw 1998, White 2003)

Box 2.11 Examples of measurable and non-measurable verbs for use in outcome statements

Measurable verbs (use these to be specific)

- State; verbalize; communicate; list; describe; identify
- Demonstrate; perform
- Will lose; will gain; has an absence of
- Walk; stand; sit

Non-measurable verbs (do not use)

- Know
- Understand
- Think
- Feel

(Alfaro-Lefevre 2002, pp.134–135)

Outcomes should be patient focused and realistic, stating how the outcomes or goals are to be achieved and when the outcomes should be evaluated. Patient-focused outcomes centre on the desired results of nursing care, that is, the impact of care on the patient, rather than on what the nurse does. Outcomes may be short, intermediate or long term, enabling the nurse to identify the patient's health status and progress (stability, improvement or deterioration) over time. Setting realistic outcomes and interventions requires the nurse to distinguish between nursing diagnoses that are life-threatening or an immediate risk to the patient's safety and those that may be dealt with at a later stage. Identifying which nursing diagnoses/problems contribute to other problems (for example, difficulty breathing will contribute to the patient's ability to mobilize) will make the problem a higher priority. By dealing with the breathing difficulties, the patient's ability to mobilize will be improved.

The formulation of nursing interventions is dependent on adequate information collection and accurate clinical judgement during patient assessment. As a result, specific patient outcomes may be derived and appropriate nursing interventions undertaken to assist the patient to achieve those outcomes (Hardwick 1998). Nursing interventions should be specific to help the patient achieve the outcome and should be evidence based. When determining what interventions may be appropriate in relation to a patient's problem, it may be helpful to clarify the potential benefit to the patient after an intervention has been performed, as this will help to ensure its appropriateness.

It is important to continue to assess the patient on an ongoing basis whilst implementing the care planned. Assessing the patient's current status prior to implementing care will enable the nurse to check whether the patient has developed any new problems that require immediate action. During and after providing any nursing action, the nurse should assess and reassess the patient's response to care. The nurse will then be able to determine whether changes to the patient's care plan should be made immediately or at a later stage. If there are any patient care needs that require immediate action, for example consultation or referral to a doctor, recording the actions taken is essential. Involving the patient and

their family or friends will promote the patient's well-being and self-care abilities. The use of clinical documentation in nurse handover will help to ensure that the care plans are up to date and relevant (Alfaro-Lefevre 2002, White 2003).

Evaluating care

Effective evaluation of care requires the nurse to critically analyse the patient's health status to determine whether the patient's condition is stable, has deteriorated or improved. Seeking the patient's and family's views in the evaluation process will facilitate decision making. By evaluating the patient's outcomes, the nurse is able to decide whether changes need to be made to the care planned. Evaluation of care should take place in a structured manner and on a regular basis by a Registered Nurse. The frequency of evaluation depends on the clinical environment within which the individual is being cared for as well as the nature of the nursing diagnosis (problem) to which the care relates. Questions such as:

- What are the patient's self-care abilities?
- Is the patient able to do what you expected?
- If not, why not?
- Has something changed?
- Are you missing something?
- Are there new care priorities?

will help to clarify the patient's progress (Alfaro-Lefevre 2002, White 2003). It is helpful to consider what is observed and measurable to indicate that the patient has achieved the outcome.

Documenting

Nurses have a professional responsibility to ensure that healthcare records provide an accurate account of treatment, care planning and delivery, and are viewed as a tool of communication within the team. There should be 'clear evidence of the care planned, the decisions made, the care delivered and the information shared' (NMC 2009, p.8) (Box 2.12). The content and quality of record keeping are a measure of

standards of practice relating to the skills and judgement of the nurse (NMC 2009).

Box 2.12 The Royal Marsden Hospital guidelines for nursing documentation

General principles

1 Records should be written legibly in black ink in such a way that they cannot be erased and are readable when photocopied.

2 Entries should be factual, consistent, accurate and not contain jargon, abbreviations or meaningless phrases (e.g. 'observations fine').

3 Each entry must include the date and time (using the 24-hour clock).

4 Each entry must be followed by a signature and the name printed as well as:

- the job role (e.g. staff nurse or clinical nurse specialist)
- if a nurse is a temporary employee (i.e. an agency nurse), the name of the agency must be included under the signature.

5 If an error is made this should be scored out with a single line and the correction written alongside with date, time and initials. Correction fluid should not be used at any time.

6 All assessments and entries made by student nurses must be countersigned by a Registered Nurse.

7 Healthcare assistants:

- can write on fluid balance and food intake charts
- who have demonstrated achievement of the learning outcomes for observing and monitoring the patient's condition as defined in *The Royal Marsden Hospital Health Care Assistant Role Assessment and Development Profile* (2001) can write on observation charts
- must not write on prescription charts, assessment sheets, care plans or progress notes.

Assessment and care planning

1 The first written assessment and the identification of the patient's immediate needs must begin within 4 hours of admission. This must include any allergies or infection risks of the patient and the contact details of the next of kin.

2 The following must be completed within 24 hours of admission and updated as appropriate:

- nutritional, oral, pressure sore and manual handling risk assessments
- other relevant assessment tools, for example pain and wound assessment.

3 All sections of the nursing admission assessment must be completed at some point during the patient's hospital stay with the identification of the patient's care needs. If

it is not relevant or if it is inappropriate to assess certain functional health patterns, for example the patient is unconscious, then indicate the reasons accordingly.

The ongoing nursing assessment should identify whether the patient's condition is stable, has deteriorated or improved.

4 Care plans should be written wherever possible with the involvement of the patient, in terms that they can understand, and include:

- patient-focused, measurable, realistic and achievable goals
- nursing interventions reflecting best practice
- relevant core care plans that are individualized, signed, dated and timed.

5 Update the care plan with altered or additional interventions as appropriate.

6 The nursing documentation must be referred to at shift handover so it needs to be kept up to date.

Principles of assessment

- Assessment should be a systematic, deliberate and interactive process that underpins every aspect of nursing care (Heaven and Maguire 1996).
- Assessment should be seen as a continuous process (Cancer Action Team 2007).

Structure of assessment

- The structure of a patient assessment should take into consideration the specialty and care setting and also the purpose of the assessment.
- When caring for individuals with cancer, assessment should be carried out at key points during the cancer pathway and dimensions of assessment should include background information and assessment preferences, physical needs, social and occupational needs, psychological well-being and spiritual well-being (Cancer Action Team 2007).
- Functional health patterns provide a comprehensive framework for assessment, which can be adapted for use within a variety of clinical specialties and care settings (Gordon 1994).

Methods of assessment

- Methods of assessment should elicit both subjective and objective assessment data.
- An assessment interview must be well structured and progress logically in order to facilitate the nurse's thinking and to make the patient feel comfortable in telling their story.
- Specific assessment tools should be used, where appropriate, to enable nurses to monitor particular aspects of care, such as symptom management (e.g. pain, fatigue), over time. This will help to evaluate the effectiveness of nursing interventions whilst often providing an opportunity for patients to become more involved in their care (Conner and Eggert 1994).

Decision making and nursing diagnosis

- Nurses should be encouraged to provide a rationale for their clinical judgements and decision making within their clinical practice (NMC 2009).

- The language of nursing diagnosis is a tool that can be used to make clinical judgements more explicit and enable more consistent communication and documentation of nursing care (Clark 1999, Westbrook 2000).

Planning and implementing care

- When planning care, it is vital that nurses recognize whether patient problems require nursing care or whether a referral should be made to someone else.
- When a nursing diagnosis has been made, the anticipated outcome for the patient must be identified in a manner which is specific, achievable and measurable (NMC 2009).
- Nursing interventions should be determined in order to address the nursing diagnosis and achieve the desired outcomes (Gordon 1994).

Evaluating care

- Nursing care should be evaluated using measurable outcomes on a regular basis and interventions adjusted accordingly (Box 2.11).
- Progress towards achieving outcomes should be recorded in a concise and precise manner. Using a method such as charting by exception can facilitate this (Murphy 2003).

Documenting and communicating care

- The content and quality of record keeping are a measure of standards of practice relating to the skills and judgement of the nurse (NMC 2009).
- In addition to the written record of care, the important role that the nursing shift report, or 'handover', plays in the communication and continuation of patient care should be considered, particularly when considering the role of electronic records (Ballard 2006).

(Reproduced with kind permission of the Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust 2005)

Discharge planning

Definition

Discharge planning is defined by Rorden and Taft (1990) as 'a process made up of several steps or phases whose immediate goal is to anticipate changes in patient care needs and whose long-term goal is to ensure continuity of health care'.

Related theory

Discharge planning should involve the development and implementation of a plan to facilitate the transfer of an individual from hospital to an appropriate setting and include the multidisciplinary team, the patient and their family and carers. Furthermore, it involves building on, or adding to, any assessments undertaken prior to admission (DH 2003a). It is acknowledged that the activities required to achieve a safe and timely discharge of patients back into the community are complex (DH 2010).

The nurses' ability in this task is central to a good discharge and requires them to have a clear understanding of how to assess the patient's and carer's needs (Atwal 2002, Reilly *et al.* 1996). Determining the discharge needs of a patient returning to the community is, as suggested by Foust (2007, p.73), 'a first and complex step' in the discharge planning process.

One of the key elements of the Clinical Governance agenda is improved quality and effectiveness (DH 1998a). Good-quality discharge should reduce delayed discharges (Tarling and Jauffur 2006) and facilitate meeting the targets set by various Department of Health publications (DH 2000a, 2002, 2004a). It is evident from the literature that there is growing pressure to ensure patients have a better discharge experience and that hospitals work to improve the discharge planning processes (Maramba *et al.* 2004, Mistiaen *et al.* 2007, Salter 1996).

Therefore all hospitals should have a discharge policy which is developed, agreed and ideally jointly published with all the relevant local health and social service agencies. The Department of Health (2003b) states in its guidance on discharge policy development that this 'will need to be understood by staff' and highlights the importance of training through induction and ongoing education programmes. Standards should be applicable to the planning and delivery of care at all stages: preadmission and admission; the period as an inpatient; predischarge; the discharge process and postdischarge (Health Services Accreditation 1996). Patient preadmission clinics are an ideal opportunity to assess care required on discharge (DH 2003a). It is worth ensuring that the information gathered at preadmission is shared with community staff, as they may be able to commence their assessments

prior to admission, and with the ward staff responsible for planning the patient's discharge.

Poor discharge planning is considered detrimental to a patient's physical and psychological well-being (Smith 1996). Patients may return home with insufficient support, resulting in unnecessary readmissions to hospital or struggling at home with inadequate care (Rosswurm and Lanham 1998). Poor discharge planning can result in patients remaining in hospital for longer periods of time than is necessary (Wells *et al.* 2002). A lack of proactive planning for discharge on or even before admission leads to a longer length of stay (DH 2004a). Therefore it is essential that discharge planning is an ongoing process from preassessment through to the day the patient returns to the community. Given the potential benefits of good discharge planning to patients and their carers and the evidence identifying the impact of poor discharge planning, it is clearly in the best interests of all concerned to ensure that discharge planning is given priority and is seen as a core activity in patient care (Foust 2007, Maramba *et al.* 2007).

Your Guide to the National Health Service (NHSE 2001) states that from the moment a patient arrives:

> Arrangements for discharging you from hospital will begin, and your discharge plan will be agreed with you, taking account of your needs. When you are ready to leave hospital, the nurses and doctors will talk to you about what will happen to you during your recovery and you will be told who to contact in an emergency.
>
> If you need ongoing care at home, your GP, midwife, health visitor, community nurse or Social Services department will be there to help you.
>
> If you need any medical equipment for your return home, the NHS and your Social Services department will aim to provide it promptly. If you need your home to be adapted in any way, your Social Services department will assess your needs.
>
> (NHSE 2001, p.30)

All patients, whether short- or long-stay, those with few or simple needs or those with complex needs, should receive comprehensive

discharge planning commenced at the earliest opportunity (DH 2010).

Evidence-based approaches

Principles of discharge planning

The key principles for effective discharge planning are as follows.

- Unnecessary admissions are avoided and discharge is facilitated by a whole-system approach to care planning.
- Patients and carers should be actively involved in the process (DH 1995, DH 2004b).
- Discharge planning should commence on the initial contact with patients.
- Complex discharge should be co-ordinated by a named person.
- Discharge is a core nursing task (Atwal 2002).
- Discharge planning should be a multidisciplinary process by which resources to meet the needs of patients and carers are put in place (Salter 1996).
- Effective use is made of transitional, intermediate and enablement care services, so that patients achieve their optimal outcome and acute hospital beds are used appropriately.
- Patients and carers understand the discharge planning process and their rights, and receive appropriate information to enable them to make informed decisions about their future care.

(Adapted from DH 2003a)

The discharge planning process and the primary/secondary care interface

The discharge planning process can be initiated by any member of the primary healthcare team (PHCT) or Social Services staff in the patient's home, prior to admission, in preadmission clinics or on hospital admission (Huber and McClelland 2003). Importance is attached to developing a primary care-led NHS, reinforced by the government's White Paper *The New NHS: Modern, Dependable* (DH 1998b). The

focus on quality, patient-centred care and services closer to where people live will be dependent on primary, secondary and tertiary professionals working together (Davis 1998).

However, it is important to note that the Community Care (Delayed Discharges) Act (DH 2003b) introduced a system of reimbursement to NHS bodies from Social Services departments for delays caused by the failure of Social Services departments to provide timely assessment and/or services for a patient being discharged from an acute hospital bed. An awareness of the process and required timescales is essential to ensure that a patient's discharge is not delayed because Social Services have had insufficient time to respond to a request for an assessment.

The discharge planning process takes into account a patient's physical, psychological, social, cultural, economic and environmental needs. It involves not only patients but also families, friends, informal carers, the hospital multidisciplinary team and the community health/social services teams (Maramba *et al.* 2004, Salentera *et al*. 2003), with the emphasis on health and social services departments working jointly. However, a new emphasis is being placed on personalized care in the community, with patients purchasing and managing their own care package (Darzi 2008). Giving patients greater control and choice over the services they need requires the professionals to ensure that they have provided information regarding all the possible alternatives for care open to the patient and their carers (Darzi 2008).

As well as patient experience, discharge planning is considered a factor in reducing the length of stay in hospital, which has a financial impact for the NHS (DH 2004a, Bull and Roberts 2001, Mardis and Brownson 2003, Nazarko 1998). Given the huge cost of inpatient care, it is financially sensible to ensure that procedures are in place, and complied with, to facilitate patients being discharged at the earliest opportunity. However, the notion of a seamless service may be idealistic because of increasing time constraints and the complex care needs of high-dependency patients (Smith 1996).

Occasionally the discharge process may not proceed as planned; a discharge may be delayed for a number of reasons and a system should be in place to record this (for example, see Figure 2.1). Patients may

take their own discharge against medical advice and this should be documented accordingly (see Box 2.13). When patients are assessed as requiring care or equipment but decline these, this does not negate the nurse's duty to ensure a discharge is safe. A discussion should take place with the patient and carer to assess how they intend to manage without the required care/equipment in place. It is crucial that the community services are aware of assessed needs that are not being met through patient choice or lack of resources. It is critical that the community team who will be supporting the patient when they return home are notified and where possible this should be in writing, such as sending them a copy of the patient refusal of equipment form. Some patients receiving news of a poor prognosis may prefer to go home to die and plans would need to be set up at short notice (Figure 2.2).

Figure 2.1 Discharge delay monitoring form.

Reproduced with kind permission of the Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust (2006).

DISCHARGE DELAY MONITORING FORM
Please refer to accompanying guidelines

Ward
Week commencing

Were there any delayed discharges this week (please tick) YES ☐ NO ☐

If yes please complete form fully.

Please complete this form for patients who no longer need clinical care in a comprehensive cancer centre, but who stay in the hospital because of 'delayed or lack of appropriate Community/Social Services or internal failures to plan the discharge properly'

Patient's Details: (Give full address inc. postcode) **Hospital No:** _____

Name: _____ **Consultant:** _____

Address: _____

_____

_____ **Postcode:** _____

Expected Date of Discharge: _____ | **Actual Date of Discharge:** _____

Reason for Delay in Discharge: (Please tick the appropriate boxes)

Royal Marsden NHS Trust Failure	☐	Other Hospital Failure	☐
Hospice Failure	☐	Transport Failure	☐
		Internal Social Services Failure	☐
Community Health Service Failure e.g. D/N, Macmillan	☐	External Social Services Failure	☐
Identify Health Authority _____		*Identify Social Services Dept.* _____	
Patient/Relative choice	☐	Other	☐
(Don't count if 24 hours' notice given to relatives)		Please specify _____	

Full details of delay: Please complete

_____

_____

_____

_____

Signature: _____ **Print Name:** _____

Please send completed forms to Complex Discharge Co–Ordinator / Tracking Officer

Figure 2.2 Checklist for patients being discharged home for urgent palliative care.

	Date & Time	Signature, Print Name & Job Title
Patient / Family Issues		
Meeting with patient/family to discuss: patient's condition and prognosis		
Plan agreed and discussed with patient and carers. Explain the level of care that will be provided in the community. Ensure an understanding that there will not be 24-hour nursing presence.		

Communication with District Nurse and Community Palliative Care Team		
Discuss • Patient and family needs • The role of each service and the timing and frequency of visits • Community Service cover at night (to support family) e.g. Marie Curie or other local services • The need to complete the Continuing Care Application Form, if necessary		
Agreed planned date and time of district nurse's first visit.....		
Agreed planned date and time of community palliative care team first visit.....		
Night nursing service Start date.....		
Communication with GP and Community Palliative Care Medical Team – Medical Responsibilities (Hospital medical team to organize – the nurse to confirm when arranged)		
Registrar to discuss with GP the patient needs and their prognosis, medication and the need to review the patient in the community for death certification purposes.		
Oxygen cylinder/ concentrator (delete as appropriate) ordered through GP and delivery date organized for.....		
Medical summary faxed to GP ☐ copy with patient ☐		
Registrar to discuss with the Palliative Care Medical Team the patient's needs and proposed plan of care		
Adequate supply of drugs prescribed for discharge (TTOs) including crisis drugs, i.e. Midazolam and morphine sulphate		
Medical letter or authorization for drugs to be administered by community nurses.		
'Do Not Attempt Resuscitation' letter for Community Staff		
'Do Not Attempt Resuscitation' letter for Ambulance Crew		

Box 2.13 Patients taking discharge against medical advice

Nursing staff responsibility

If a patient wishes to take their own discharge, the ward sister/co-ordinator should contact:

- a member of the medical team
- the manager on call
- the complex discharge co-ordinator.

The complex discharge co-ordinator will inform Social Services if appropriate. Out of hours, following a risk assessment, the manager on call will contact the local Social Services department, if appropriate, and inform the hospital Social Services department the following day.

Medical staff responsibility

> The doctor, following consultation with the patient, should complete the appropriate form prior to the patient leaving the hospital. The form must be signed by the patient and the doctor and filed in the medical notes. The doctor must immediately contact the patient's GP.

The role of informal carers

Engaging and involving patients and informal carers as equal partners is central to successful discharge planning (DH 2003a, Holzhausen 2001). The Picker Report (Garrett and Boyd 2008), an independent patient survey, identified that 16% of patients questioned reported that they did not feel involved in their discharge. The hospital discharge process is also a critical time for informal carers (Higginson and Costantini 2008) yet Holzhausen (2001) suggests they do not feel involved in the discharge process. It may be the first time they are confronted with the reality of their role, the effect it may have on their relationship with the person needing care, their family and their employment (Hill and Macgregor 2001). Research suggests that if carers are unsupported, this can result in early readmission of the patient (Holzhausen 2001).

The Carers Act 1995 was implemented to support carers in a practical way by providing information, helping carers to remain at work and to care for themselves. Under the Act, carers are entitled to their own assessment and many support services can be provided, including respite, at no charge.

Throughout discharge planning, carers' needs should be acknowledged. Carers may have different needs from patients and there may be conflicting opinions about how the patient's care needs can be met. It is not uncommon for patients to report that their informal carer is willing to provide all care but the carer is not in agreement with this. Healthcare professionals should allow carers sufficient time, provide appropriate information to enable them to make decisions, provide written information on the discharge plan and ensure adequate support is in place before discharge (Hill and Macgregor 2001). This will promote a successful and seamless transfer from hospital to home.

Communication and discharge planning

Effective, safe discharge planning needs to be patient and carer focused. Therefore it is dependent on a multidisciplinary approach and the sharing of good practice (Ashby and Mendelson 2009, Martin 2001). There is consistent evidence to suggest that best practice in hospital discharge involves multidisciplinary teamwork throughout the process (Borill *et al.* 2001). The multidisciplinary approach, where all staff have a clear understanding of their roles and responsibilities, will also help to prevent inappropriate readmissions and delayed discharges (Stewart 2000). This approach also promotes the highest possible level of independence for the patient, their partner and family by encouraging appropriate self-care activities.

Ineffective discharge planning has been shown to have detrimental effects on a patient's psychological and physical well-being and their illness experience (Cook 2001, Kissane 2004). Planning care, providing adequate information and involving patients, families and healthcare professionals will keep disruption to a minimum. Poor discharge planning can also result in patients remaining in hospital for longer than is necessary (Wells *et al.* 2002).

To achieve the best quality of life for patients and carers, there needs to be good co-ordination in terms of care planning and delivery of that care over time (Speck 1992). Discharge co-ordinators are generally health or social care professionals who have both hospital and community experience. Their role is to advise on and help with planning the care patients may need when leaving hospital, particularly when the nursing and care needs are complex. McKenna *et al.* (2000) cite poor communication between hospital and community. Discharge processes (DH 2004a) endorse the value of co-ordination in a climate of shorter hospital stays and timely patient discharge.

For complex discharges, it is helpful if a key worker, for example the discharge co-ordinator, is appointed to manage the discharge and, where appropriate, for family meetings/case conferences to take place and include the patient/carer, multidisciplinary team and PHCT and representatives (Health Services Accreditation 1996, Salter 1996). Additionally, a guide to planning a complex discharge (Box 2.14) can highlight the communication required by the multidisciplinary team.

Box 2.14 Guide to arranging a complex discharge home

NB: This is not an exhaustive list and MUST BE DISCUSSED with the complex discharge co-ordinator/specialist sister, discharge planning, palliative care.

Complex discharge definition

- A large package of care involving different agencies.
- The patient's needs have changed since admission, with different services requiring co-ordination.
- The family/carer requires intensive input into discharge planning considerations (e.g. psychological interventions):
  - — patients who are entitled to Continuing NHS Funded Care and who require a package of care on discharge
  - — patients for repatriation.

1 Comprehensive assessment by nurse on admission and document care accordingly

(a) Provisional discharge date set.	■ This will only be an approximate date, depending on care needs, equipment, and so on. ■ It should be reviewed regularly with multidisciplinary team. ■ Discharge should **not** be arranged for a Friday or weekend.
(b) Referrals to relevant members of multidisciplinary team.	For example, occupational therapist, physiotherapist, Social Services.
(c) Referral to community health services (in liaison with multidisciplinary team).	For example, District Nurse (who may be able to arrange for night sitters), Community Palliative Care Team.
(d) Request equipment from District Nurse and discuss with family.	For example, hoist, hospital bed, pressure-relieving mattress/cushion, commode, nebulizer.
	■ **If oxygen is required,** medical team to complete Home Oxygen Ordering Form (HOOF) and Home Oxygen Consent

Form (HOCF) for oxygen cylinders and concentrators at home. Fax to relevant oxygen supplier.

2 Discuss at ward multidisciplinary meeting, arrange family meeting/case conference as required, and invite all appropriate healthcare professionals, including community staff

(a) Appoint discharge co-ordinator at the multidisciplinary meeting.

- To act as co-ordinator for referrals and point of contact for any discharge concerns.
- To plan and prepare the family meeting/case conference and to arrange a chairperson and minute-taker for the meeting.
- Primary team nurse to liaise with discharge co-ordinator.

(b) Formulate a discharge plan at meeting.

- At the meeting, formulate a discharge plan in conjunction with patient, carers, and all hospital and community personnel involved and agree a discharge date; an occupational therapist home visit may be required.

(c) Ascertain discharge address.

- Liaise with services accordingly.
- It is important to agree who will care for patient/where patient will be cared for, for example ground/first floor.
- Ascertain type of accommodation patient lives in so that the equipment ordered will fit in appropriately.
- **NB: If not returning to own home, a GP will be required to take patient on as a temporary resident.**

(d) Confirm PROVISIONAL discharge date.

- This will depend on when community services and equipment can be arranged.
- This must be agreed with the patient and family/informal carer/s.

3 Ascertain whether District Nurse is able to undertake any necessary clinical procedures in accordance with their primary care trust policy, for example care of skin-tunnelled catheters. Consider alternative arrangements if necessary

(a) Confirm equipment agreed and delivery date.

- **NB: Family must be informed of delivery date and also requested to contact ward to inform that this has been received.**

(b) Confirm start date for care.

- For example, Social Services/District Nurse/community palliative care.

(c) Confirm with

- Liaise with complex discharge co-ordinator for

patient/family agreed discharge date.	Community Services Arrangements Form. ■ Check community services are able to enter patient's home as necessary.

4 Forty-eight hours prior to discharge, fax and telephone District Nurse with Community Care Referral Form and discuss any special needs of patient, for example syringe driver, oxygen, wound care, intravenous therapy, MRSA or other infection status. Give written information and instructions

(a) Arrange transport and assess need for escort/oxygen during transport.	
(b) Ongoing review.	■ Should be in place for any change in patient's condition/treatment plan. ■ **If there is a change,** notify/liaise with multidisciplinary team and community services.
(c) If NO change within 24 hours of discharge, confirm that: ■ Patient is medically fit for discharge ■ All community services are in place as agreed ■ Patient has drugs to take out (TTO) and next appointment	■ Ensure patient has drugs TTO with written and verbal instructions. ■ Next in/outpatient appointment as required.
■ Access to home, heating and food are checked.	■ Check arrangements for patient to get into home (front door key), heating, food and someone there to welcome them home, as appropriate.

5 Hospital equipment: for example syringe drivers: ensure clearly marked and arrangements made for return

6 After discharge, follow-up phone call to patient by ward nurse/complex discharge co-ordinator as agreed to ensure all is well

Discharge at end of life

The *End of Life Care Strategy* (DH 2008) requires that assessment is made of the patient's preferred place of care and where they wish to be cared for at the end of life. There may be occasions when a patient is reaching the end of life and the decision is made that their preferred place of care/death is home. Then every effort must be made to ensure that all practicable steps are taken to allow that to happen (Vaartio *et al.* 2006). It is important to contact the District Nurses, the community palliative care team and (where available) the community matron at the earliest opportunity. A fast-track NHS Continuing Care Funding application may need to be submitted to access funding for the care provision. The patient may also require essential equipment to enable them to return home, such as bed, commode or hoist; again, these should be ordered at the first opportunity. Once care and equipment are in place and discharge is proceeding, ensure that a medical review takes place and that the GP, District Nurses and community palliative care team are provided with a copy of the discharge summary. Telephone contact with the GP prior to discharge is essential to ensure they visit the patient at home.

Anticipated patient outcomes

- To ensure patients have a safe and timely discharge from hospital to the community.
- To ensure patients and carers are involved throughout the discharge planning process.
- To provide patients and carers with written and verbal information to meet their needs on discharge.
- To provide continuity of care between the hospital and the agreed environment by facilitating effective communication.

(Adapted from DH 2004a)

Preprocedural considerations

It is essential that nurses are aware of their trust's discharge procedures and protocols.

Single assessment process

Referred to in *The NHS Plan* (DH 2000a) and reinforced in *The National Service Framework for Older People* (DH 2001a), the Single Assessment Process is designed to replace fragmented assessments carried out by different agencies with one seamless procedure (Hunter 2001). The aim is to produce a single, centrally held, electronic summary/tool containing all the information needed to assess and provide for an older person's health and social care needs. The end result will be a comprehensive 'individual care plan' that will lay out their full needs and entitlements (Hunter 2001). Although there has been a high level of commitment to the Single Assessment Process from both health and social care professionals, implementation has occurred at different rates. It appears that more progress has been made in the community rather than hospitals and general practitioner practices (NHS Connecting for Health 2005). Work continues on the development of a data-sharing system that will allow previous assessments, carried out before a hospital admission, to be shared across the NHS, preventing the need for patients to go through the assessment process more than once.

Intermediate care

The National Bed Enquiry (DH 2000b), *The NHS Plan* (DH 2000a) and *The National Service Framework for Older People* (DH 2001a) signalled the development of intermediate care as one of the major initiatives for services in the future. It is recognized that older people are best cared for at home if at all possible. To aid the transition period from hospital to home, intermediate care teams may provide a period of intensive care/rehabilitation following a hospital stay, which may take place in a care home or in the individual's own home. It is likely to be limited to a maximum of 6 weeks but there are local variations in practice. Intermediate care needs to have a person-centred approach involving patients and carers in all aspects of assessment, goal setting and discharge planning. Its success depends on local knowledge of the service and interagency collaboration (Hancock 2003). There is growing evidence suggesting that intermediate care initiatives reduce admissions to acute hospitals and residential/nursing home placements (DH 2002).

Discharge to a care home

Discharge to a care home (whether a residential or nursing home) requires careful thought as giving up their own home is one of the most traumatic events that a person has to consider. A thorough multidisciplinary assessment is essential, taking into account the individual needs of the patient and carer and exploring all the options before agreeing on a care home. Placements can be delayed while waiting for a vacancy and it may be necessary to consider an interim placement (DH 2003a).

In 2001 there were important changes in the funding arrangements for adults requiring registered nursing care in nursing homes in England (DH 2001b). All adults needing the skills and knowledge of a Registered Nurse to meet all or certain elements of their care needs have that care paid for by the NHS. The amount of funding, paid directly to the nursing home, is dependent on a comprehensive assessment of the patient's care needs by a Registered Nurse, who will usually be employed by the local primary care trust. NHS-funded nursing care was originally provided via payment 'bands', which relate to the level of nursing care required. However, the *National Framework* (DH 2006b), which came into effect in October 2007, replaced the banding system with a weekly rate for NHS-funded nursing care.

NHS Continuing Healthcare

NHS Continuing Healthcare is a general term that describes the care that people need over an extended period of time as the result of disability, accident or illness, to address both physical and mental health needs. It may require services from the NHS and/or social care. It can be provided in a range of settings, for example, from a care home to care in people's own homes. NHS Continuing Healthcare is a package of care arranged and funded solely by the NHS. It should be awarded when it is established (through multidisciplinary comprehensive assessment) that an individual's primary care need is a health need. There has been inconsistency in applying the criteria nationally (House of Commons Health Committee 2005), resulting in the Department of Health

producing a *National Framework for NHS Continuing Healthcare* (DH 2006b).

In October 2009 the new national tools for NHS Continuing Care were launched. These replace any previous tools, including the fast-track assessment for those patients who have a rapidly deteriorating condition. There is a legal obligation to inform patients of their right to be assessed for NHS Continuing Care funding. There is a booklet informing patients of their rights and outlining the process (DH 2007). Patients who may be entitled to funding through this process could be paying unnecessarily for their care through Social Services as they will have been financially assessed.

Procedure guideline 2.1 Discharge planning

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
This is the initial assessment (at the preadmission clinic or within the first 24–48 hours of admission). **1** The admitting nurse is responsible for ensuring that an initial assessment is completed when the patient is admitted and is documented in the patient's care plan. Assessment should be ongoing and regularly reviewed with the multidisciplinary team.	To enable the physical, psychological and social care needs of the patient and carers to be identified at an early stage (Biddington 2000, C; DH 2000c, C).
2 An expected date of discharge must be established and the patient should be aware of this.	To ensure planning for discharge commences (Biddington 2000, C).
3 Clarify whether the patient has dependants, for example elderly relatives, children or a disabled partner, who require care/support. If so, establish who is looking after them and whether they receive any services.	Arrangements may need to be made for alternative carers or an increase in services. Notification may need to be made, for example to school nurse/teacher if patient has children at school. E
4 Establish who else is involved in giving care/support and the type of help given, for example local support group, voluntary agency, church.	To assess the support that the patient and carers may require at home so that appropriate services can be mobilized. To establish social network in order to co-ordinate care between voluntary and statutory agencies. E
5 Ascertain the type of accommodation the patient is living in, for example house, bungalow (council or privately owned),	To identify any potential accommodation needs which

residential or nursing home, sheltered housing.	may entail social work intervention, adaptations or housing advice re unsuitable accommodation or homelessness. E
6 Ensure that the home address and telephone number of the patient are documented accurately in the care plan. Establish where the patient will be going on discharge and document the discharge address if different from the permanent address.	Personal information may not have been updated on previous nursing or medical records. It is crucial that this information is accurate when making referrals to community services, to ensure appropriate service provision. E
7 Ensure that the patient is registered permanently with a GP, and with a GP on a temporary basis if going to a different address on discharge. Check the names, addresses and telephone numbers with the patient.	Community nursing services are unable to accept the patient without medical support. Accurate information is required to establish which District Nurse will have responsibility for patient care. It is important for the patient that medical care can be provided at home. E
8 Establish whether any statutory community health or Social Services have been involved before the patient's admission. Include the health visitor when the patient has children under the age of 5 years.	To enable contact for exchange of information. Valuable information can be obtained from community services to assist in assessing potential needs on discharge (DH 2003a, C).
Procedure	
9 Assess the patient's ability to carry out activities of daily living at home prior to admission, for example were they able to climb stairs? Consider patient's current level of functioning and whether this will change as a result of treatment and/or rehabilitation.	To establish at an early stage whether an occupational therapy/physiotherapist assessment is required. Home assessment by occupational therapy may be required prior to discharge, which may involve complex planning and preparation (DH 2001c, C; Kumar 2000, E).
10 Refer to other hospital personnel as soon as potential needs are recognized, for example occupational therapist, physiotherapists, dietitian, speech and language therapist. Referral as soon as possible after admission is essential: do not wait until treatment is completed and discharge is imminent.	To ensure multidisciplinary planning and co-ordination. Considerable time may be needed to arrange community services and early referral helps to prevent discharge delays. E
11 Patients identified as requiring local authority Social Services support are referred to the Social Services department. Some hospitals use a 'trigger' form as an aid to assessment, an example of which can be found in Box 2.15.	To ensure early and appropriate referral to the Social Services department for assessment. E
12 A discharge planning care plan should be commenced. All members of the multidisciplinary team should document in the	To facilitate multidisciplinary planning, co-ordination and

care plan their assessment, plans and action taken.	communication. E
13 Where there is a designated discharge co-ordinator, they can act as a resource offering support and education to the ward team in the preparation of discharge plans, especially for those patients requiring a complex package of care.	To facilitate effective discharge planning and utilize expertise appropriately. E
14 Formulate a discharge plan in conjunction with patient and carers and all involved hospital and community personnel and agree a discharge date.	To collate information and co-ordinate planning (DH 2004a, C).
15 For complex discharges, a discharge planning meeting should be held.	To co-ordinate continuity of care planning. E
16 The ward-based nurse is responsible for arranging and co-ordinating community nursing services (including the Community Palliative Care Team) in consultation with the discharge co-ordinator, if applicable.	To facilitate continuity of care between hospital and community. E
17 Refer to the community nursing services with a minimum of 48 hours' notice. If a complex package of care is being organized, more notice will be required. Invite community nurses to visit the ward where appropriate.	Community nurses may wish to assess the patient's nursing care needs and ensure preparation of the home prior to discharge. They need time to liaise with other agencies to co-ordinate care and to obtain any equipment required. E
18 Ascertain whether community nurses are able to carry out necessary clinical procedures in accordance with their trust policy, for example care of skin-tunnelled catheters. Consider alternative arrangements if necessary. Give written information and instructions.	District Nurses may not have been trained in certain procedures or may be unfamiliar with particular equipment. E
19 Details of patient's MRSA status (or other infections) must be given to community personnel and written in requirements.	To reduce risk of cross-infection. Community staff require full knowledge of the patient's history and nursing referral details (Halm *et al.* 2003, E; Smith 2003, E, C).
20 Complete the community care referral form or update letter. The form/letter should be completed and signed and a copy provided for all community services.	Provide information for community staff to ensure that they have accurate information (Halm *et al.* 2003, E).
21 Ensure any essential medical/nursing aids or equipment have been obtained before discharge by community services, for example oxygen, nebulizers, commode, pressure-relieving mattress, hoist.	Some equipment may not be available or may take some time to obtain. Equipment may be loaned from the community and appropriate legislation procedures must be followed for safety reasons (DH 2001c, C).
22 Home assessment by occupational therapy may be required prior to discharge.	
23 Patients requiring community nursing, physiotherapy, occupational therapy, stoma care, speech therapy and/or dietetic support on discharge will be referred by the appropriate	To ensure continuity of specialist care. E

hospital-based healthcare professional to their equivalent in the community.	
Leaving the hospital on discharge	
24 Medical staff are responsible for assessing the patient's medical fitness for discharge and for liaising with other members of the multidisciplinary team regarding arrangements for meeting the patient's care needs in the community.	To ensure that both health and social care needs are taken into consideration when formulating discharge plans (DH 2003a, C).
25 Ensure that patient and, with their agreement, carers have full information regarding the patient's medical condition and care required.	To prepare carers and to enable patient/carer support. E
26 Teach the patient and carers any necessary skills, allowing sufficient time to practise before discharge. This should include information on the safe use of equipment, for example a hoist, and identify if there are any trust protocols regarding assessing competency to use equipment.	To enable the patient to be as independent as possible and promote an understanding of self-care techniques. E
27 Ensure that the patient has a door key and can gain entrance to their residence. Wherever possible, ensure that someone is at home to receive the patient.	The patient may have left their key with a neighbour. It is helpful for someone to be available to welcome the patient and attend to any immediate needs. E
28 Book transport if required with 48 hours' notice, using relevant form. Specify if patient needs a stretcher or chair, or requires escort. Ensure that transport is also booked for return clinic appointment if necessary.	The patient may not have private transport facilities and may be too weak to use public transport. E
29 Cancel transport if discharge date or outpatients department appointment is altered.	To prevent a waste of resources. E
30 Patients should be given an appropriate supply of medication and, where necessary, a supply of wound dressings or medical equipment. The community nurses should be informed about exactly what the patient is being discharged with; they may require a signed prescription.	To ensure the safe and continuous administration of medication and use of equipment at home. Time is needed to obtain supplies in the community. E
31 Discharge plans should not be altered without consultation with all the hospital personnel who have been involved in the planning, for example occupational therapist, social worker, discharge co-ordinator, and also patient/family/carers.	If there is no consultation this causes considerable confusion and stress for the patient/carers, and all involved services. It may result in the patient being unsupported at home. E
32 If discharge is cancelled or postponed, or if the patient dies, ensure that all relevant community services are informed.	To avoid distress to relatives. To avoid wasted visits and promote good community relations. E
33 Weekend discharge: patients who require a high level of health and Social Services support should generally not be discharged home on a Friday or Saturday or a public holiday. This applies particularly to patients who were previously unknown to community services. (NB: it may be appropriate, under the Community Care (Delayed Discharges) Act, 2003, to discharge patients if agreement has been obtained with local	All community services will be operating at a reduced level and emergency medical back-up may be difficult to obtain. E

authority Social Services or if a patient has a poor prognosis and wishes to return home.) *Note*: assessment and planning for weekend leave are as important as for final discharge.	
34 Inform the patient and carers of potential side-effects of treatment and management.	To alleviate anxiety and to promote patient comfort, knowledge and safety. E
35 Ensure that patient and carers have information on local support groups or national specialist organizations as appropriate.	Some patients may benefit from the kind of support offered by the organizations. E
36 Reinforce any special instructions with written information or by giving an approved patient education booklet.	To promote an understanding of disease and treatment. To confirm arrangements made. To enable the patient to contact the appropriate services. E
37 Information on community services arranged, including names and telephone numbers and expected date of first visit, should be given to the patient and carers prior to discharge. This information should also be documented in the patient's care plan.	To confirm arrangements made. To enable the patient to contact the appropriate services. E
38 Ensure that arrangements have been made to provide patient with food at home on discharge and that there will be adequate heating.	To supply immediate needs. E
39 Ensure that the patient and carers are given verbal and written information on the dosage, route, frequency and side-effects of any medication and how to obtain further supplies.	Lack of information makes it difficult for the GP to provide the medical care required (DH 2003a, C).
Postprocedure	
40 A follow-up phone call should be made to establish how the patient is managing.	To ensure services are in place. E

Box 2.15 Patients with particular care needs on discharge

- Live alone.
- Are frail and/or elderly.
- Have care needs which place a high demand on carers.
- Have a limited prognosis.
- Have serious illnesses and will be returning to hospital for further treatments.
- Have continuing disability.
- Have learning difficulties.
- Have mental illness or dementia.

- Have dependants.
- Have limited financial resources.
- Are homeless or live in poor housing.
- Do not have English as their first language.
- Have been in hospital for an 'extended stay'.
- Require aids/equipment at home.

(DH 1989, 2004a)

Postprocedural considerations

Discharge delays

A discharge delay is when a patient remains in hospital beyond the date agreed by the multidisciplinary team and beyond the time when they are medically fit to leave (DH 2003a). For every patient who is 'delayed', the trust is required to inform the Strategic Health Authority through the SITREP reporting mechanism which is normally captured at a point in time each week. It is the responsibility of health authorities, in collaboration with Social Services departments, to monitor the way in which discharges from hospitals are being undertaken and, if problems occur, to establish the reasons, so that any necessary changes are made to address the local needs (DH 1989). Each hospital should have at least a basic system of audit and quality control of discharge practice and procedures.

Care of the dying patient

Definitions

Terminal illness

Describes any disease which is at an advanced stage or has no known cure.

Palliative care

The term used for care, wherever and by whomever provided, which seeks to improve quality of life through the prevention and relief of suffering in the time leading up to death (Higgins 2010). Palliative care is applicable from early in the course of an illness, in conjunction with other therapies which aim to prolong life (WHO 2002; www.who.int/cancer/palliative/en).

Terminal phase

'The ill-defined period of irreversible decline that heralds imminent death. This is usually a period of several days, but may be as short as a few hours, or as long as a couple of weeks' (Back 1992). The expression 'terminal care' applies to care given during this period of time.

Anatomy and physiology

In the days and hours leading up to an expected death, the following are common.

- A weaker pulse (but regular unless previously arrhythmic).
- A gradual drop in blood pressure (though at this stage it should not be routinely taken).
- Shallower, slower breathing which varies in depth, often in a Cheyne–Stokes pattern.
- A decreasing level of consciousness leading eventually to coma, except in those few patients who remain awake until a few minutes before they die.
- Cooling and clamminess of the skin from the periphery inwards.
- Cyanosis of the skin on the extremities and around the mouth.
- Eventual loss of all signs of cardiorespiratory function and the corneal reflex – death is said to occur at this point (Fürst 2004).

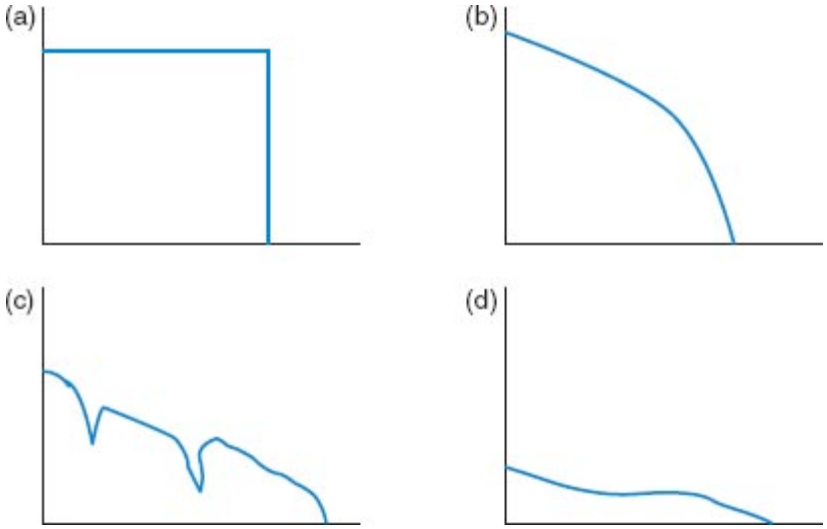
Related theory

Care of the person who has reached the final stage of their life is a key aspect of maintaining human dignity and is enormously important for

relatives and friends who will remember this period perhaps better than any other during the cancer journey. Unrelieved suffering of patients at the end of life is associated with increased relative distress and can unnecessarily complicate the already difficult period of bereavement. Nursing care during this period does not simply represent a continuation of previously given care, nor necessarily the complete cessation of all 'active treatment' measures which may previously have been undertaken. As with all aspects of nursing care, assessment of the individual patient and their relatives, exceptional communication and good multiprofessional working will help to determine the appropriate next steps for each individual.

Cancer has a well-defined trajectory (Figure 2.3) and it is usual for physical deterioration to take place over several weeks, with a terminal phase lasting hours to days at the end of life. However, sometimes patients can experience sudden death, either as a result of treatment and its side-effects or from complications of the disease itself, including bleeding, infection, pulmonary embolism or a cardiac event. Those deaths which follow the former pattern will be discussed here.

Figure 2.3 Different death trajectories: y axis = health status, x axis = time. (a) Sudden death. (b) Typical cancer death. (c) Typical death from end-organ failure. (d) Typical death from dementia. From Glare and Christakis (2004).



Care of the dying patient starts with a recognition from the multiprofessional team that the terminal phase has begun. It is perhaps

the single most important factor in enabling the achievement of all the factors associated with a 'good death' (Faull and Nyatanga 2005). The terminal phase can be difficult to identify, and often there are barriers from healthcare professionals reluctant to make a diagnosis of dying. In an attempt to overcome some of these barriers, four basic criteria for recognizing the terminal phase are widely acknowledged (and are associated with the Liverpool Care Pathway, to be discussed later in this chapter) (Kinder and Ellershaw 2003). The presence of two or more of the following, commonly preceded by a progressive period of decline, and where no other reversible cause is present, is said to denote the terminal phase of life:

- the patient is bedbound
- the patient is semi-comatose or comatose
- the patient is only able to take sips of fluid
- the patient is no longer able to take tablets.

Evidence-based approaches

Palliative care is relatively new as a specialty in nursing and medicine and its evidence base is therefore comparatively small, though growing. Nursing care of the dying patient should have as its main priority meeting personal needs which will allow the patient to have a 'good' death. It has been suggested that the following characteristics are central to a 'good' death from medical, nursing and patient perspectives: (1) control, (2) comfort, (3) closure, (4) trust in healthcare providers, (5) recognition of impending death, and (6) an honouring of personal beliefs and values (Kehl 2006).

The WHO (2002) suggests that palliative care:

- provides relief from pain and other distressing symptoms
- affirms life and regards dying as a normal process
- intends neither to hasten nor postpone death
- integrates the psychological and spiritual aspects of patient care
- offers a support system to help patients live as actively as possible until death

- offers a support system to help the family cope during the patient's illness and in their own bereavement
- uses a team approach to address the needs of patients and their families, including bereavement counselling if indicated
- enhances quality of life and may also positively influence the course of an illness
- is applicable early in the course of illness, in conjunction with other therapies that are intended to prolong life, such as chemotherapy and radiation therapy, and includes those investigations needed to better understand and manage distressing clinical complications.

Legal and professional issues

Advance directives

Advance directives, formerly known as 'living wills', allow people to make a legal decision to refuse, in advance, a proposed treatment, or the continuation of that treatment, if at the necessary time the person lacks the capacity to consent to it. Advance directives can only be made by those who are deemed to have the mental capacity to do so, and allow only for the refusal of treatments – they cannot enforce the provision of specified treatments in the same circumstances (Mental Capacity Act 2005, sections 24–26).

Decisions to refuse life-sustaining treatments must be made in writing, be signed and witnessed, and must expressly state that the decision stands even if the person's life is at risk. Advance directives can be withdrawn verbally or in writing and are not considered valid if the person has conferred lasting power of attorney on another person. Furthermore, advance directives are invalidated if the person has done anything which is clearly inconsistent with the original advance decision made, for example, any change in religious faith.

The Mental Health Capacity Act 2005 (sections 24–26) forms the legal basis for advance directives.

Assisted suicide and euthanasia

Euthanasia is the intentional killing, by act or omission, of a person whose life is thought not to be worth living. Assisted suicide is similar in intentionality but differs in that it involves one person (whether a healthcare professional or not) providing the means for another to end his or her own life, whilst not participating in the act itself (Wyatt 2009). At present, both are illegal in the United Kingdom, despite current campaigns to change the law, and it is, therefore, unlawful for any registered nurse to participate in this process.

It must be remembered, however, that those who approach healthcare professionals with a request for assisted suicide or euthanasia will be doing so from a position of significant vulnerability and deserve compassion and respect. Commonly, requests for assisted suicide or euthanasia stem from a fear of pain, indignity and dependence (Wyatt 2009) and it is imperative to ensure that patients are offered adequate opportunities to express these fears, and the specialist physical, psychosocial and spiritual support necessary to minimize their distress.

Artificial hydration

One of the most contentious issues in day-to-day palliative care practice is that of hydration at the end of life, and clear, compassionate communication with patients and their relatives about this aspect of care is therefore essential, as many will be concerned about the impact of poor oral hydration on themselves or their loved one. There is currently no conclusive research in favour of either giving or withholding artificial hydration in end-of-life care, especially in terms of its impact on the length of remaining life. However, studies of the experiences of hospice nurses suggest that artificial hydration has no benefit and, at worst, may contribute to increased respiratory secretions (see Table 2.1) and oedema elsewhere in the body (Watson *et al*. 2009) and so most palliative care practitioners usually favour stopping artificial hydration on the grounds of preventing increased symptomatology. It is important that the distress of (most often) the relatives is acknowledged in these situations, and their concerns explored. Once the rationale for discontinuing artificial hydration is offered and the patient and/or relatives have been reassured, it is important to support a decision which

serves the best interests of the patient first, and their relatives as well. It may be necessary to negotiate a contract whereby a small amount of artificial hydration is given for an agreed period, on the understanding that this will be discontinued if it is causing distress to the patient. As ever, complex situations require skilled and experienced communication (see Chapter 5).

Table 2.1 Common symptoms observed in the terminal phase of life

Symptom	Management changes
Pain	Levels of pain may increase, decrease or remain stable. Analgesics may need to be rationalized and/or administered via a different route (e.g. via a subcutaneous syringe pump) as the patient may no longer be able to swallow (for further information, see Chapter 9)
	Levels of consciousness, lucidity and respiratory rate will all be commonly altered during the terminal phase. It is important to bear this in mind when assessing the effect and side-effects of analgesic medications
	Some discomfort can be caused by immobility and pressure on the skin. If appropriate (i.e. if it will not cause patient or relative distress), the patient should be moved to a pressure-relieving mattress. Otherwise regular skin care should be carried out as tolerated (see Chapter 9 for further information)
Nausea/vomiting	Nausea and vomiting may increase, decrease or remain stable. Antiemetics may need to be rationalized and/or administered via a different route (e.g. via a subcutaneous syringe pump) as the patient may no longer be able to swallow
	Because the insertion of a nasogastric tube is considered a fairly invasive and uncomfortable procedure, it is unlikely to be appropriate for the management of nausea and vomiting in the terminal care setting. Those nasogastric tubes already *in situ* should remain unless causing distress to the patient
	Injectable hyoscine hydrobromide (Buscopan) or octreotide should be considered to dry gastric secretions in those patients with mechanical vomiting secondary to bowel obstruction
Respiratory secretions	'Noisy', 'bubbly' breathing or 'death rattle' in the terminal phase of life affects approximately 50% of dying patients (O'Donnell 1998) and is the result of fluid pooling in the hypopharynx
	Changing the position of the patient in the bed may reduce the noisiness of breathing. It is important to reassure the family that the patient is not drowning or choking, and is unlikely to be distressed by the symptom themselves

Antimuscarinic (hyoscine butylbromide) or anticholinergic drugs (glycopyrronium or hyoscine hydrobromide) are often used in this setting and can be administered subcutaneously via a syringe pump

Agitation/restlessness

Confusion, delirium, agitation and restlessness are all terms used to describe patient distress in the last 48 hours of life. The symptom is fairly common, with up to 88% of patients experiencing symptoms in the last days or hours of life (Lawlor *et al.* 2000). Careful assessment should include consideration of any precipitating factors including: medications, reversible metabolic causes, constipation, urinary retention, hypoxia, withdrawal from drugs or alcohol, uncontrolled symptoms and existential distress

Clear, concise communication, continuity of carers if possible, the presence of familiar objects and people and a safe immediate environment can all be helpful nursing interventions

Where the cause of the symptoms cannot be established or cannot be reversed, anxiolytics, antipsychotics or sedation may need to be considered. This may need to be discussed with relatives instead of the patient. It is important that the nurse is present for these conversations in order to facilitate reassurance of the relatives throughout

Breathlessness

Breathlessness may be a new symptom in the terminal phase or may worsen from its pre-existing state. Careful assessment is important as this symptom will usually involve physiological, psychological and environmental factors

Low-dose opioids and anxiolytics can be of use for breathlessness, though as with other medications, the route of administration may need to be altered. Nebulized bronchodilators and oxygen may also be of benefit. Where the symptom is causing severe distress and is intractable, sedation may need to be considered in discussion with the patient and relatives

Relaxation exercises, open windows or electric fans and massage may also be of benefit if the patient can tolerate these

Constipation

The focus of care with regard to constipation should remain on patient comfort. Oral laxatives are inappropriate if the patient cannot swallow and rectal interventions should only be undertaken if the patient is clearly distressed by this symptom

Preprocedural considerations

Communication

Excellent communication is paramount in all areas of nursing practice, but perhaps most emphatically so in dealing with dying patients and their relatives. Skilful, truthful communication at the end of life affords people the dignity of making educated decisions about the management of their condition and how and where they want to spend their remaining time. Whilst each individual's information needs will be different and require careful assessment, healthcare professionals tend to underestimate patients' desire for information and preferences about decision making (Fallowfield 2005). A large UK study showed that the vast majority of cancer patients want all possible information, though the timing of such information and the depth of detail desired were variable (Jenkins *et al*. 2001). Cultural and spiritual influences must be taken into account when assessing the information needs of patients in the terminal phase of life.

It is critical that nurses have the necessary training and skills for effective therapeutic communication with terminally ill patients and their relatives. For more detailed information about communication, see Chapter 5.

Prognosis

Prognostication simply means predicting an outcome (Glare and Christakis 2004) – and in the care of those who are dying, patients and their families may want information about the likely time remaining before death occurs. This can be difficult to know with much certainty but is generally easier to gauge the closer death is to occurring. Whilst studies show that patients and their relatives tend to have different information needs regarding prognosis (relatives generally wanting more detailed information than patients) (Clayton and Tattersall 2006), it is important that these are carefully assessed to ensure that the needs of all those involved with the patient can be met. Discussions surrounding prognosis should be undertaken by professionals confident in advanced communication skills and with the appropriate experience to offer an approximation on the grounds of their clinical knowledge and experience. The principles of breaking bad news (see Chapter 5) should be adhered to in undertaking discussions about prognosis.

Procedure

The importance of individually tailored care for those in the terminal phase of their lives and their relatives cannot be overemphasized. No framework, pathway or care plan is a substitute for careful assessment, information giving, listening, referral and skilled intervention. Each person will require slightly different care in one way or another and, as with all areas of nursing care, assumptions should never be made solely on the basis of previous preferences, sociocultural or religious stereotypes.

Nonetheless, some principles and interventions, whilst not to be applied without bearing in mind the individual's needs, are important and should be routinely considered, even if not undertaken for each patient.

The Liverpool Care Pathway (LCP) provides guidance on many different aspects of terminal care including comfort measures, the anticipatory prescription of medicines, the discontinuation of inappropriate interventions (including resuscitation) and care of the relatives (both before and after the death of the patient). The pathway was developed in the late 1990s by the specialist palliative care teams at the Royal Liverpool University Hospital and the Marie Curie Centre in Liverpool in response to an obvious disparity in the quality of end-of-life care in the general setting as opposed to a specialist palliative care setting (such as a hospice). The LCP was seen as a means of enabling professionals of all specialties to provide the best possible multidisciplinary care for their patients as they enter the terminal phase of life (Kinder and Ellershaw 2003). The pathway is adaptable by individual institutions according to local practices, but in essence comprises three sections: (1) initial assessment and care of the dying patient, (2) ongoing care of the dying patient, and (3) care of family and carers after death of the patient. The key stages and patient goals of the LCP are demonstrated in Table 2.2. *Care of the Dying: A Pathway to Excellence* (Ellershaw and Wilkinson 2003) is a key reference book in understanding the development, implementation and evaluation of the LCP.

Table 2.2 The Liverpool Care Pathway (LCP) – key stages and patient goals

Stage	Focus/stage specifics	Assessment/patient goals
Initial assessment	Medical assessment, including the cessation of inappropriate therapy and medication, forward planning for treatment symptoms and an assessment of appropriate nursing care needs	■ Physical assessment ■ Assessment of comfort ■ Psychological assessment ■ Assessment of psychological needs/insight into condition ■ Assessment of religious/spiritual needs ■ Assessment of communication needs
Ongoing assessment	Four-hourly nursing assessment of symptom control	■ Pain ■ Agitation ■ Respiratory tract secretions ■ Nausea and emesis ■ Other symptoms such as dyspnoea ■ Oral hygiene ■ Elimination needs ■ Safe delivery of medication ■ Mobility/pressure area care ■ Psychological support ■ Religious/spiritual support

		■ Needs of family/significant other
Care after death	Discussion with family Correct documentation	■ Last Offices ■ Property/valuables ■ Family information ■ Bereavement booklet ■ Informing GP/appropriate organizations

Reproduced from Jevon (2010).

The LCP is a useful tool in prompting the multiprofessional team to consider different aspects of caring for the dying patient and their relatives. It makes provision for regular assessment of the patient and relatives, and acts as a central source of multidisciplinary documentation about care given in the last days of life. The Department of Health's *End-of-Life Care Strategy* (DH 2008), which seeks to ensure equitable access to excellent palliative care nationwide, recommends the use of the LCP across all healthcare settings as a means of providing a high standard of care in the last days and hours of life.

The LCP, and indeed all good palliative care, always integrates physical, psychological, social and spiritual aspects of care, at no time more important than in the terminal phase of life. Some principles of care are outlined for each of these areas below.

Physical care

Table 2.1 lists the most common physical symptoms present during the terminal phase of life and any management changes specific to care of the patient who is dying. The first four symptoms are the most common.

Psychosocial care

Ongoing psychosocial assessment, support and care of the patient and their relatives are extremely important as death approaches. However, provision may need to be adjusted according to the changing needs of the patient – many will experience increasing anxiety and distress, increased feelings of social isolation and, alongside this, a decrease in physical energy available to them for dealing with these concerns. Relatives will naturally be distressed by the increasing illness of the patient and may exhibit signs of grief even before death occurs. Nurses should ensure that, wherever possible, the physical environment is conducive to patients and relatives being able to express their thoughts and emotions, and that appropriately trained staff are available to listen and support them.

Preferred priorities of care

An important aspect of meeting the psychosocial needs of patients and their relatives in the last days of life is to ensure that, wherever possible, preferred priorities of care are discussed and met. These include preferred place of care and death and other difficult issues which have traditionally not been discussed, to the detriment of the patient. A formal document, developed as part of the Department of Health's *End-of-Life Care Strategy* (DH 2008), is available to support these discussions (www.endoflifecareforadults.nhs.uk).

Spiritual and religious care

As death approaches, many people will be seeking answers to life's big questions: its nature, meaning and purpose and what, if any, form it takes after death. Some may find these answers in religion, others in their own philosophy or that of others. Many nurses acknowledge the struggle to provide spiritual or religious support because they feel inadequately skilled or knowledgeable (Kissane and Yates 2003). However, assessment, even if simple, communication and onward referral will ensure that appropriate care can be given without compromising the integrity of the healthcare professional, nor denying the patient the opportunity to explore these central life issues.

Those with specific religious beliefs may have certain religious practices which need to be undertaken before or after death. It is important to try to discuss these with the patient, as even where relatives share a common faith, there may be differences in the way each person practises. It is, as always, vital that assumptions are not made on the basis of a previously disclosed religious preference – for example, not all Catholic believers will want to be given the sacrament of the sick. Each patient and their relatives should have the opportunity to express their needs and nurses should ensure that, wherever possible, these are met. Further information about religious/cultural perspectives and practices is given in Table 2.3.

Table 2.3 Cultural and religious factors to be considered at Last Offices

	Beliefs about death	Cultural or religious routines	Preparing the body	Postmortem/ transplantation	Specific 'burial' requirements	For further information contact
Buddhism	Death is viewed as very important as it is a time of transition before rebirth as they move towards Nirvana – the freedom from suffering death and rebirth	There is no one specific ritual but a state of calm is necessary. An example may be: ■ a monk called to recite prayers/lead meditation ■ the family wanting the body to remain in one place for up to 7 days for the rebirth to take place. However, it is recognized this is not possible in a healthcare setting	At all times the body should be treated with greatest care and respect When washing has taken place, the body should be wrapped in a plain white sheet	No objections	Prefer cremation as symbol of impermanence of the body	The Buddhist Hospice Trust 01983 526945 www.buddhisthospice.org.uk
Christianity Anglican/ Church of England	God's forgiveness is available to all who ask because of the selfless/sinless death of Jesus Christ on the cross. As Christ was resurrected, death has been overcome and eternal life is a gift from God, available to all who believe and seek forgiveness	Priest or minister may attend to say prayers. Primarily to support relatives and friends	No specific requests	No objections	No preference	Hospital Chaplaincies Council 020 7898 1894 www.nhs-chaplaincy-spiritualcare.org.uk
Non-conformist/ Free Church		Prayers may be offered but these will be informal in most situations	No specific requests	No objections	No preference	

	Beliefs about death	Cultural or religious routines	Preparing the body	Postmortem/ transplantation	Specific 'burial' requirements	For further information Contact
Roman Catholicism		Priest requested to recite prayers for the dying and then prayers for the dead	A religious icon such as a crucifix or rosary may accompany the patient's body	No objections	Burial has in the past been preferred	
Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints Mormon Church	Earthly life is viewed as a test to see if individuals are fit to return to God on death. Death is viewed as a temporary separation from loved ones		The body should be washed and dressed in a shroud. Some may wear a religious undergarment which must remain in place after the patient has died	No religious objection	Burial preferred	The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints 0121 712 1200 www.ldschurch.org
Christian Scientist		There are no specific rituals associated with death	Females only to touch female body	This is generally not supported unless there is a legal requirement for it	Prefer cremation	For details of local Christian Science Church www.christianscience.org.uk
Hinduism	Hindus believe that all human beings have a soul that passes through successive cycles of birth and rebirth. It is believed that eventually the soul will be purified and join the cosmic consciousness	Last rites include: tying a thread around the neck or wrist to bless the dying person, sprinkling holy water from the River Ganges on them, placing a sacred Tulsi leaf in their mouth if possible, placing the person on a sheet or mat on the floor to symbolize closeness to Mother Earth, freedom from physical constraints and the easing of the soul's departure	Close family members usually wash the body led by the eldest son. They may be distressed if a non-Hindu touches the body so gloves should be worn. A female must only be touched by a female and a male by a male The body should be covered by a plain white sheet All religious objects should remain in place	Only if absolutely necessary. If a postmortem does take place, the organs must be returned to the body	Cremation within 24 hours of death arranged by the eldest son	National Council of Hindu Temples (UK), www.hinducounciluk.org
Islam	Death is a mark of transition from one state of being to another. Muslims are encouraged to accept death as part of the will of Allah	The time before death is important for extending forgiveness to family and friends The Koran is recited until the point of death	The body should be turned to the right (Quibla (Mecca)) if this hasn't happened before the patient dies The relatives will close the eyes and bandage the lower jaw so the mouth doesn't gape Flex the joints of the arms and legs to stop them becoming rigid A complete cleansing (Ghusal) will then take place performed by the relatives (this may take place after the body has been removed from the ward) The body will be wrapped in a Caffan. If there isn't one available, a sheet will do A female must be handled by female nursing staff and a male by male staff Maintaining modesty and dignity is essential	This is not acceptable, primarily because it will delay burial but also because the person may still be able to perceive pain	Burial will take place as quickly as possible	Muslim Council of Great Britain http://www.mcb.org.uk/downloads/Death-Bereavement.pdf
Jehovah's Witness	When a person dies their existence stops for ever	There are no special rituals or practices to perform	No special requirements are to be observed		Funeral must be modest and dignified	his@wtbts.org.uk www.watchtower.org

	Beliefs about death	Cultural or religious routines	Preparing the body	Postmortem/ transplantation	Specific 'burial' requirements	For further information Contact
Judaism	Death is the end of life but eternal life is offered if they have the right relationship with God	Orthodox Jews don't permit the touching or moving of a dying person. Following death, the rabbi will be requested to perform Last Rites It is important that somebody stays with the body until a member of Jewish Burial Society or family member arrives The family may want to keep watch with the body to pray even if it is in the mortuary	The body will receive the ritual washing (Taharah) performed by either trained members of the synagogue or the Jewish Burial Society If the rabbi cannot be contacted, essential procedures can be performed by healthcare staff: ■ close eyes and mouth ■ all catheters and drains and the fluid in them must be left as they are considered part of the body ■ open wounds must be covered ■ the body must be laid flat with hands open and arms parallel to the body ■ DON'T wash the body ■ Traditionally the body is covered by a plain white sheet with the feet facing the door	This is not permitted by Orthodox Jews except where the law requires it Reform Jews permit it on the grounds of the furthering of medical knowledge	Cremation is permitted for non-Orthodox Jews	The Burial Society of the United Synagogue 020 8343 3456 The Office of the Chief Rabbi (Orthodox), 735 High Road, North Finchley, London WC1N 9HN. 020 8343 6301 Union of Liberal and Progressive Synagogues, Montagu Centre, 21 Maple Street, London W1T 4BE
Sikhism	Life after death is a continuous cycle of rebirth; the person's soul is their essence	Prior to the death, comfort may be derived from reciting verses from the holy book (Guru Granth Sahib)	The relatives may wish to prepare the body but this shouldn't be assumed. The five Ks should be left on the body. 1 Kesh – uncut hair symbolic of sanctity and a love of nature 2 Kangha – a wooden comb symbolizing cleanliness 3 Kara – a steel band worn on the right wrist symbolic of strength and restraint 4 Kirpan – a sword or dagger symbolizing the readiness to fight against injustice 5 Kaccha – unisex undershorts symbolizing morality The body must be touched only by staff of the same sex The eyes and mouth closed The face straight and clean	No objections	Cremation	Sikh Educational and Cultural Association (UK) 01474 332356

Postprocedural considerations

Nursing care does not end when the death of the patient occurs. Last Offices should be performed with as much attention to detail and respect for the individual as any other procedure.

Last Offices

Definitions

The term 'Last Offices' is historically related to the Latin *officium*, meaning service or duty. It is used to refer to the final act performed on a person's body. Last Offices, sometimes referred to as 'laying out', is the term for the nursing care given to a deceased patient which demonstrates continued respect for the patient as an individual (NMC 2008). Nursing care continues even after death. Last Offices includes health, safety and legal requirements, making the person's body safe to handle, respecting religious, cultural and spiritual requirements, and making the person who has died as pleasant as possible for others to see.

Patients, even though they have died, are still referred to as patients or people throughout this section.

Related theory

After-death care is the final act a nurse will carry out for the patient and remains associated with ritual (Pattison 2008b). Nursing care for a patient who has died has historical roots dating back to the 19th century (Wolf 1988). However, contemporary nursing has moved away from the ritualistic practices of cleansing, plugging, packing and tying the patient's orifices to prevent the leakage of body fluids to encompass much more than simply dealing with a dead body (Pattison 2008b, Pearce 1963). Consideration now has to be given to legal issues surrounding death, the removal (or non-removal) of equipment, washing and grooming, and ensuring correct identification of the patient (Costello 2004). The *End-of-Life Care Strategy* (DH 2008) emphasizes care after a patient has died, and in particular it points to the value of integrated care pathways in managing administrative and psychosocial care. This corresponds to 'good death' theory where being treated with dignity is an underlying premise (Kehl 2006, Smith 2000), and good death encompasses all stages of dying and death (Pattison 2008b). This principle, therefore, continues after death.

Carrying out such an intimate act, that in many cultures would be carried out only by certain family or community members, requires careful consideration by nurses and adequate preparation of procedures that include family members where possible. Since 60.6% of all men and women who die in England and Wales will die in an institution (hospice, hospital, care home) (ONS 2009), it is predominantly nurses who will have to carry out after-death care, prior to patients being moved to mortuaries or funeral homes. Quested and Rudge (2001) suggested that this aspect of care is largely invisible to other healthcare workers.

Death threatens the orderly continuation of social life, according to Seale (1998). Last Offices can mark the social transition of the person as well as the biological death of the patient, and begins the process of handing over care to the family and funeral director. Last Offices can be considered as an important act in the rite of passage in moving the deceased person into the world of the dead (Van Gennep 1972) and is a procedure that people in all cultures recognize.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Last Offices has its foundation in traditional cultures and is a nursing routine which does not have a large amount of research-based evidence (Cooke 2000). The administration of Last Offices can have symbolic meaning for nurses, often providing a sense of closure. It can be a fulfilling experience as it is the final demonstration of respectful, sensitive care given to a patient (Nearney 1998) and also the family (Speck 1992).

Many parts of this nursing procedure are based on general principles of infection prevention and control, and safe working. Furthermore, there is a cultural requirement to continue with the practice of Last Offices, as 'rituals serve to express symbolic meanings important to groups of people functioning within a subculture' (Wolf 1988, p.59). This is particularly important with something as profound as death. Rituals have a role in providing comfort and structure at a traumatic

time, which Neuberger (2004) suggests can be valuable for families. Nurses approaching this act of care with compassion might enable families to see that their family member was respected and cared for, even after death. Nurses demonstrate the respect they have for a person who has died and the family, who may now 'own' the body, through rituals associated with Last Offices (Pattison 2008b).

Contemporary nursing practice and education increasingly shy away from ritualistic practices as they are considered irrational and unscientific (Philpin 2002) but Last Offices remains a notable exception. However, this is not to say that nurses carrying out Last Offices do it 'without thinking about it in a problem-solving way' (Walsh and Ford 1989, p.9) or in a way that does not recognize the individual needs of deceased patients and their carers. Instead, they are carried out with insight into the meanings attached to the accomplishment of this aspect of nursing care (Philpin 2002).

This aspect of care is usually carried out on the ward. In institutions without mortuary technicians, nurses may also rarely be called on to aid a family to view a patient who has died in the hours after death in the mortuary (Figure 2.4) or in a 'chapel of rest' (Figure 2.5).

Figure 2.4 Mortuary.

Figure 2.5 Chapel of rest.

There is no national guidance for how to prepare patients who have died for the mortuary or funeral home. *Patients Who Die in Hospital* (DH 1997) and *What to Do After a Death* (DWP 2006) deal with death in hospital and focus on procedures around the legalities of organizing funerals. Specific guidance might potentially disallow individual variation and personalization of after-death care in respect to patient wishes, cultures and religions. There is, however, national guidance on infection prevention and control in relation to people who have died. Care of the patient who has died must take into account health and safety guidelines to ensure families, healthcare workers, mortuary staff and undertakers are not put at risk (HSAC 2003). This chapter incorporates this guidance into broader national guidance where appropriate. It aims to ensure that patients who have died are treated with respect and dignity even after death, that legalities are adhered to, and that appropriate infection prevention and control measures are taken.

Indications

- When a patient's death has been verified and documented.
- For adult patients who have died in hospital or in a hospice.

Contraindications

When to consult for further guidance before undertaking procedure:

- if a patient who has died is indicated for a postmortem
- if a patient who has died is a candidate for organ donation.

Legal and professional issues

In administering Last Offices, nurses need to know the legal requirements for care of patients after death and it is essential that correct procedures are followed. Every effort should be made to accommodate the wishes of the patient's relatives (Neuberger 2004). The UK is an increasingly multicultural and multifaith society which presents a challenge to nurses who need to be aware of the different religious and cultural rituals that may accompany the death of a patient. There are notable cultural variations within and between people of different faiths, ethnic backgrounds and national origins. This can affect approaches to death and dying (Neuberger 2004) and needs to remembered when administering Last Offices in order to avoid presumptions. While those who have settled in a society where there is a dominant faith or culture other than their own might appear to increasingly adopt that dominant culture, they may choose to retain their different practices at times of birth, marriage or death (Neuberger 1999). Approaches to death and dying also reveal as much of the attitude of society as a whole as they do about individuals within that society (Field *et al.* 1997).

Practices relating to Last Offices will vary depending on the patient's cultural background and religious practices (Nearney 1998). The following sections provide a guide to cultural and religious variations in attitudes to death and how individuals may wish to be treated. The information that follows is not designed to be a 'factfile' (Gilliat-Ray 2001, Gunaratnam 1997, Smaje and Field 1997) of information on culture and religion that seeks to give concrete information. Such a 'factfile' would not be appropriate as we need to be aware that whilst death and death-related beliefs, rituals and traditions can vary widely between specific cultural groups, within any given religious or cultural group there may be varying degrees of observance of these issues (Green and Green 2006), from orthodox to agnostic and atheist. Categorizing individuals into groups with clearly defined norms can

lead to a lack of understanding of the complexities of religious and cultural practice and can depersonalize care for individuals and their families (Neuberger 1999, Smaje and Field 1997).

Last Offices for an expected death may be very different to those given to a patient who has died suddenly or unexpectedly (Docherty 2000) or in a critical care setting, so these issues will be dealt with later in this chapter. In certain cases the patient's death may need to be referred to the coroner or medical examiner for further investigation and possible postmortem (DH 2003c). If those caring for the deceased are unsure about this then the person in charge of the patient's care should be consulted before Last Offices are commenced.

Prior to the patient's death, whenever possible it is good practice to ascertain if the patient wishes to donate organs or tissue following their death. For further information on this, visit www.nhsorgandonor.net.com

Preprocedural considerations

Before undertaking Last Offices several other events must take place.

Confirmation of death

Death should be confirmed or verified by appropriate healthcare staff. At present, confirmation of death is usually done by a medical doctor but can be undertaken by nurses in certain healthcare settings, if death is *expected* and local policy permits this (RCN 1996). Unexpected deaths must be confirmed by a medical doctor (and usually a senior medical doctor). Confirmation of death must be recorded in the medical and nursing notes (and care pathway documentation if necessary).

A registered medical doctor who has attended the deceased person during their last illness is required to give a medical certificate of the cause of death (Home Office 1971). The certificate requires the doctor to state on which date they last saw the deceased alive and whether or not they have seen the body after death (this may mean that the certificate is completed by a different doctor from the one who confirmed death). Out-of-hours medical examiners can now certify death where there is a cultural/religious requirement to bury, cremate or repatriate patients quickly (DH 2008). Medical examiners can also

certify for reportable deaths where a postmortem is not deemed necessary (DH 2008). The medical examiner (ME) is a primary care trust-appointed but independent health professional who determines the need for coroner referral. For those who need a quick burial within 24 hours, this remains at the discretion of the local births and deaths registrar in each council and depends on the individual opening hours and on-call facilities. Local hospital policy should outline procedures for out-of-hours death registration and certification, and burial is usually easier to accommodate than cremation within 24 hours.

Repatriation to another country needs further documentation, alongside the death certification and registration documents, and this varies according to which country repatriation is to. Only a coroner or medical examiner is authorized to permit the body to be moved out of England or Wales. A 'Form of Notice to a Coroner of Intention to Remove a Body Out of England' (Form 104) is required which can be obtained from coroners or registrars. This form needs to be given to the coroner along with any certificate for burial or cremation already issued. The coroner's office will acknowledge receipt of notice and inform when repatriation can occur. Coroner authorization normally takes up to 4 working days so that necessary enquiries can be made. In urgent situations, this can sometimes be expedited. The coroner's office and relevant High Commission will have further information. In terms of infection control, packing may be required by different countries and those involved with repatriation must be informed if there is a danger of infection (HSAC 2003). Funeral directors would assist with transportation issues.

Referral to a coroner

If the patient's death is to be referred to a coroner or ME, this will affect how their body is prepared. The need for referral to a coroner or ME needs to be ascertained with the person verifying the death (DH 2008). Preparation in this situation differs according to how the patient died. Broadly, two types of death are referred to the coroner.

- Those from a list of cases where the coroner must be informed (which includes deaths within 24 hours of an operation, for example).

- Cases where the treating doctor is unable to certify the cause of death (Home Office 2002, HTA 2006).

The Department of Health website at www.dh.gov.uk gives more information about when to refer to the coroner or ME and when postmortems are indicated.com

Requirement for a postmortem

Postmortems can affect preparation after death, depending on whether this is a coroner's postmortem (sometimes referred to as a legal postmortem because it cannot be refused) or a postmortem requested by the consultant doctor-in-charge to answer a specific query on the cause of death (also referred to as a hospital or non-legal postmortem). A coroner's postmortem might require specific preparation but the coroner or ME will advise on this and should be contacted as soon as possible after death to ascertain any specific issues. Individual hospitals, institutions and NHS trusts should provide further guidance on these issues. If the patient is to be referred to the coroner, cap off catheters and ensure there is no possibility of leakage. Do not remove any invasive devices until this has been discussed with the coroner (HTA 2006).

If the patient is *not* to be referred to the coroner, invasive and non-invasive attachments, such as central venous access catheters, peripheral venous access cannulas, Swan–Ganz catheters, tracheal tubes (tracheostomy/endotracheal) and drains, can be removed prior to Last Offices.

Organ donation

Consider whether the patient is a candidate for organ or tissue donation. Patients who previously expressed a wish to be a donor (or carry a donor card), or whose family has expressed such a wish, might need specific preparation (see further resources at the end of the chapter and contact local or regional transplant co-ordinators).

Organ donation is an important consideration at the end of life. Current law is an opt-in system for donation, therefore express wishes must be made by families (next of kin) or patients.

Infectious patient

If the patient was infectious, it needs to be established whether it is a notifiable infection, for example, hepatitis B, C or tuberculosis, or non-notifiable (Healing *et al.* 1995, HPA 2010, HSAC 2003). There are additional requirements for patients with bloodborne infections, so the senior nurse on duty should be consulted and local infection control policy adhered to. In the UK, notifiable infections must be reported via a local authority 'proper officer' which is the attending doctor's duty. Infection prevention and control contacts in local trusts or services can provide more help and guidance around notification. Placing the patient who has died in a body bag is advised for all notifiable diseases and a number of non-notifiable infectious diseases (i.e. HIV, transmissible spongiform encephalopathies, e.g. Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease). A label identifying the infection must also be attached to the patient's body. Specific guidance is outlined in Procedure guideline 2.2.

Certain extra precautions are required when handling a patient who has died from an infectious disease. However, the deceased will pose no greater threat of an infectious risk than when they were alive. It is assumed that staff will have practised universal precautions when caring for all patients, and this practice must be continued when caring for the deceased patient (HSAC 2003).

Porters, mortuary staff, undertakers and those involved with Last Offices must also be informed if there is a danger of infection (HSAC 2003).

Informing the next of kin

Inform and offer support to relatives and/or next of kin to ensure that the relevant individuals are aware of the patient's death and any specific care or practices can be carried out (Wilkinson and Mula 2003). The support of a hospital chaplain or other religious leader or other appropriate person should be offered. If the relative(s) or next of kin are not contactable by telephone or by the GP, it may be necessary to inform the police of the death.

Some families and carers may wish to assist with Last Offices, and within certain cultures it may be unacceptable for anyone but a family

member or religious leader to wash the patient (Green and Green 2006). It may also be required for somebody of the same sex as the patient to undertake Last Offices (Neuberger 2004). Families and carers should be supported and encouraged to participate if possible as this may help to facilitate the grieving process (Berry and Griffie 2001).

Families and carers should also be supported in adhering to infection prevention and control procedures.

There are a few, very rare, exceptions where it is not possible for families to participate in Last Offices.

- If the patient has had any of the following infections prior to death: typhus, severe acute respiratory syndrome, yellow fever, anthrax, plague, rabies and smallpox. Assistance with Last Offices or viewing is not permitted because of the high risk of transmission of these infections (Healing *et al.* 1995).
- The patient who has died was exposed to radiation. Patients may have been treated with radioactive material as therapy or may have been exposed to it in accidental circumstances. Always seek expert radiation protection advice before beginning Last Offices in such cases.

Patient considerations

Ascertain any social, cultural, spiritual and/or religious considerations that should be observed during the procedure. Spiritual needs involved in preparation of the patient who has died can be diverse but the final sections in this chapter give up-to-date guidance about religious considerations in Last Offices. It should be noted that this is guidance only and the patient's previous wishes should be established where possible and should always take precedence (Pattison 2008a). If not documented, try to determine the patient's previous wishes from family or carers. The patient's last will and testament might have instruction on this, or an Advance Directive might have information. Families, carers or members of the patient's community or faith may wish to participate in Last Offices (with consent of the next of kin or as expressed in the patient's wishes when they were alive). If this is the case, they must be

adequately prepared for this with careful and sensitive explanation of the procedure to be undertaken.

Families may request other items to accompany the patient who has died to the mortuary and funeral home. This might be an item of sentimental value, for instance, and in this case it should be at the discretion of those caring for the patient and the nurse-in-charge (local policy might also specify). Certain religious artefacts must never be removed from the patient, even after death, for example, the five Ks in Sikhism (Kesh – uncut hair, Kangha – the wooden comb which fixes uncut hair into a bun, Kara – an iron, steel or gold bracelet worn on the right wrist, Kirpan – a symbolic sword worn under clothing in a cloth sheath or as a brooch or pendant, and Kach – undergarments) (Neuberger 2004).

Table 2.3 lists the cultural and religious factors to be considered at Last Offices but these are only guidelines: individual requirements may vary even amongst members of the same faith. Families may require all, part or none of these actions to be carried out. They are adapted from Green and Green (2006), Neuberger (2004), Pattison (2008a, b) and Speck 1992.

Varying degrees of adherence and orthodoxy exist within all the world's faiths. The given religion of a patient may occasionally be offered to indicate an association with particular cultural and national roots, rather than to indicate a significant degree of adherence to the tenets of a particular faith. If in doubt, consult the family members concerned.

Regardless of the faith that the patient's record states they hold, wishes for Last Offices may differ from the conventions of their stated faith. Sensitive discussion is needed by nurses to establish what is wanted at this time. If patients are of a faith not listed in Table 2.3 or hold no religious beliefs, ask the relatives to outline the patient's previously expressed wishes, if any, or establish the family's wishes. Furthermore, the patient may be non-denominational and/or the family members may be multi-denominational so all possibilities must be taken into account.

Additional considerations

It is important to inform other patients, particularly if the person has died in an area where other people are present (such as a bay or open ward) and might know the patient. Senior staff should offer guidance in the event of uncertainty about how to deal with the situation.

Finally, Last Offices should be carried out within 2–4 hours of death. This is because rigor mortis can occur relatively soon after death, and this time is shortened in warmer environments (Berry and Griffie 2001).

Procedure guideline 2.2 Last Offices

Essential equipment

- Disposable plastic apron
- Disposable plastic gloves
- Bowl of warm water, soap, patient's own toilet articles. Disposable wash cloths and two towels
- Disposable razor or patient's own electric razor, comb and equipment for nail care
- Equipment for mouth care including equipment for cleaning dentures
- Identification labels × 2
- Documents required by law and by organization/insitution policy, for example Notification of Death cards
- Shroud or patient's personal clothing: night-dress, pyjamas, clothes previously requested by patient, or clothes which comply with deceased patient/family/cultural wishes
- Body bag if required (if there is actual or potential leakage of bodily fluids and/or if there is infectious disease). Labels for the patient's body defining the nature of the infection/disease (HSAC 2003)
- Gauze, tape, dressings and bandages if wounds, puncture sites or intravenous/arterial devices
- Valuables/property book
- Plastic bags for clinical and domestic (household) waste
- Laundry skip and appropriate bags for soiled linen
- Clean bedlinen

- Record books for property and valuables
- Bags for the patient's personal possessions
- Disposable or washable receptacle for collecting urine, if appropriate
- Sharps bin, if appropriate

Optional equipment

- Caps/spigots for urinary catheters (if catheters are to be left *in situ*)
- Goggles
- Full gowns
- 3M masks (if highly infectious) (HSAC 2003)
- Petroleum jelly
- Suction equipment and absorbent pads (where there is the potential for leakage)
- Card or envelope to offer lock of hair, as appropriate

Preprocedure

Action	**Rationale**
1 Apply gloves and apron, gowns/masks/goggles if the patient is infectious.	Personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing Last Offices, and is used to protect yourself and all your patients from the risks of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; HSAC 2003, C; Pratt *et al.* 2007, C, R2b; RCN 2005, C).
2 If the patient is on a pressure-relieving mattress or device, consult the manufacturer's instructions before switching off.	If the mattress deflates too quickly, it may cause a manual handling challenge to the nurses carrying out Last Offices. E
Procedure	
3 Lay the patient on their back with the assistance of additional nurses and straighten any limbs as far as possible (adhering to your own organization's manual handling policy).	To maintain the patient's privacy and dignity (NMC 2008, C) and for future nursing care of the body. Stiff, flexed limbs can be difficult to fit easily into a mortuary trolley, mortuary fridge or coffin and can cause additional distress to any carers who wish to view the body. However, if the patient's body cannot be straightened, force should not be used as this can be corrected by the funeral director (Green and Green 2006, E).
4 Remove all but one pillow. Close the mouth and support the jaw by placing a pillow or rolled-up towel on the chest or underneath the jaw. Do not bind the patient's jaw with bandages.	To avoid leaving pressure marks on the face which can be difficult to remove.
5 Remove any mechanical aids such as syringe	To prepare the body for burial or cremation.

drivers, heel pads, and so on. Apply gauze and tape to syringe driver/IV sites and document disposal of medication (adhering to your own organization's disposal of medication policy). Consider leaving prosthetics *in situ* as appropriate (e.g. limb, dental or breast prosthetics).	E
6 Close the patient's eyes by applying light pressure to the eyelids for 30 seconds. If this is unsuccessful then a little sticky tape such as Micropore can be used, and leaves no mark. Alternatively, moistened cotton wool may be used to hold the eyelids in place.	To maintain the patient's dignity (NMC 2008, C) and for aesthetic reasons. Closure of the eyelids will also provide tissue protection in case of corneal donation (Green and Green 2006, E).
7 Drain the bladder by applying firm pressure over the lower abdomen. Have a disposable or washable receptacle at the ready to collect urine.	Because the patient's body can continue to excrete fluids after death (Green and Green 2006, E).
8 Leakages from the oral cavity, vagina and bowel can be contained by the use of suctioning, drainage and incontinence pads respectively. Patients who do continue to have leakages from their orifices after death should be placed in a body bag following Last Offices. The packing of orifices can cause damage to the patient's body and should only be done by professionals who have received specialist training. It might be helpful to manage self-limiting leakages with absorbent pads and gently rolling the patient who has died to aid drainage of potential leakages.	Leaking orifices pose a health hazard to staff coming into contact with the patient's body (Green and Green 2006, E; HSAC 2003, C). Ensuring that the patient's body is clean will demonstrate continued respect for the patient's dignity (NMC 2008, C). The packing of orifices is considered unnecessary, as it increases the rate of bacterial growth that can occur when these areas of the patient's body are not allowed to drain naturally (Berry and Griffie 2001, E). However, there are certain situations where it is necessary (in severe leakage or where repatriation is required). A body bag is also necessary in these cases.
9 Exuding wounds or unhealed surgical scars should be covered with a clean absorbent dressing and secured with an occlusive dressing (e.g. Tegaderm). Stitches and clips should be left intact. Consider leaving intact recent surgical dressings for wounds that could potentially leak, for example large amputation wounds. Reinforcement of the dressing should be sufficient.	The dressing will absorb any leakage from the wound site (Naylor *et al.* 2001, R2b). Open wounds and stomas pose a health hazard to staff coming into contact with the body (RCN 2005, C). Disturbing recent large surgical dressings may encourage seepage and leakage (Travis 2002, E).
10 Stomas should be covered with a clean bag.	
11 Remove drainage tubes, unless otherwise stated. Record the tubes and devices that have been removed and those that have been left *in situ*. Open drainage sites need to be sealed with an occlusive dressing (e.g. Tegaderm).	Open drainage sites pose a health hazard to staff coming into contact with the patient's body (RCN 2005, C). When a death is being referred to the coroner or ME or for

	postmortem, devices and tubes should be left in place (Green and Green 2006, C).
12 Wash the patient, unless requested not to do so for religious/cultural reasons or carer's preference. Male patients should be shaved unless they chose to wear a beard in life.	For hygienic and aesthetic reasons. As a mark of respect and point of closure in the relationship between nurse and patient (Cooke 2000, C).
If shaving a man, apply water-based emollient cream to the face.	To prevent brown streaks on the skin.
13 It may be important to family and carers to assist with washing, thereby continuing to provide the care given in the period before death.	It is an expression of respect and affection, part of the process of adjusting to loss and expressing grief (Berry and Griffie 2001, E).
14 Mouth and teeth should be cleaned with foam sticks or a toothbrush. Insert clean dentures if the patient normally used them. Apply petroleum jelly to the lips and perioral area.	Teeth and mouth are cleaned for hygienic and aesthetic reasons (Cooke 2000, C) and to remove debris. Petroleum jelly can prevent skin excoriation or corrosion if stomach contents aspirate.
15 Remove all jewellery (in the presence of another nurse) unless requested by the patient's family to do otherwise. Jewellery remaining on the patient should be documented on the 'Notification of Death' form. Record the jewellery and other valuables in the patient's property book and store the items according to local policy. Avoid the use of the names of precious metals or gems when describing jewellery to prevent potential later confusion. Instead, use terms such as 'yellow metal' or 'red stone'. Rings left on the patient's body should be secured with tape, if loose.	To meet with legal requirements, cultural practices and relatives' wishes (Green and Green 2006, C).
16 Dress the patient in personal clothing or white garment, traditionally called a shroud (depending on organizational policy or the family's wishes).	For aesthetic reasons for family and carers viewing the patient's body or religious or cultural reasons and to meet the family's or carers' wishes (Green and Green 2006, C).
17 Ensure the correct hospital or organizational irremovable patient identification label is attached to the patient's wrist and attach a further identification label to one ankle. Complete any documents such as Notification of Death cards. Copies of such cards are usually required (refer to hospital policy for details). Tape one securely to clothing or shroud.	To ensure correct and easy identification of the patient's body in the mortuary (Green and Green 2006, C).
18 Wrap the patient's body in a sheet, ensuring that the face and feet are covered and that all limbs are held securely in position.	To avoid possible damage to the patient's body during transfer and to prevent distress to colleagues, for example portering staff (Green and Green 2006, E).
19 Secure the sheet with tape.	Pins must not be used as they are a health and safety hazard to staff. E
20 Place the patient's body in a body bag as leakage of body fluids may be anticipated. The patient may	To avoid actual or potential leakage of fluid, whether infection is present or not, as this

also have a known infectious disease.	poses a health hazard to all those who come into contact with the deceased patient. The sheet will absorb excess fluid (HSAC 2003, C).
Postprocedure	
21 Tape the second Notification of Death card to the outside of the sheet (or body bag).	For ease of identification of the patient's body in the mortuary (Green and Green 2006, E).
22 Request the portering staff to remove the patient's body from the ward and transport to the mortuary.	To avoid decomposition which occurs rapidly, particularly in hot weather and in overheated rooms. Many pathogenic organisms survive for some time after death and so decomposition of the patient's body may pose a health and safety hazard for those handling it (Cooke 2000, E). Autolysis and growth of bacteria are delayed if the patient's body is cooled.
23 Screen off the beds/area that will be passed as the patient's body is removed.	To avoid causing unnecessary distress to other patients, relatives and staff.
24 Remove gloves and apron. Dispose of equipment according to local policy and wash hands.	To minimize risk of cross-infection and contamination (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
25 Record all details and actions within the nursing documentation.	To record the time of death, names of those present, and names of those informed (NMC 2009, C).
26 Transfer property and patient records to the appropriate administrative department.	The administrative department cannot begin to process the formalities such as the death certificate or the collection of property by the next of kin until the required documents are in its possession (Green and Green 2006, C).

Problem-solving table 2.1 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 2.2)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Relatives not present at the time of the patient's death	Possible unexpected death; non-contactable family	Preparation of family for event of death where appropriate	Inform the relatives as soon as possible of the death Consider also that they may want to view the patient's body before Last Offices are completed
Relatives or next of kin not contactable by telephone or by the general practitioner	Out-of-date or missing contact information	Ensure next of kin contact information is documented and up to date	If within the UK, local police will go to next of kin's house. If abroad, the British Embassy will assist
Death occurring within 24 hours of an operation	n/a	In relation to documentation, ensure information around circumstance of death is documented and handed over to relevant healthcare staff	All tubes and/or drains must be left in position. Spigot or cap off any cannulas or catheters. Treat stomas as open wounds. Leave any endotracheal or tracheostomy tubes in place. Machinery can be disconnected (discuss with coroner or ME) but settings must be left alone Postmortem examination will be required to establish the cause of death. Any tubes, drains, and so on may have been a major contributing factor to the death
Unexpected death	n/a	As above	As above. Postmortem examination of the patient's body will be required to establish the cause of death
Unknown cause of death	n/a	As above	As above
Patient brought into hospital who is already deceased	n/a	Not preventable but where possible, ensure patients' families are prepared for all eventualities, particularly if palliative care patients whose death is expected, and that family know who to call and what to do in the event of death	As above, unless patient seen by a medical practitioner within 14 days before death. In this instance, the attending medical officer may complete the death certificate if they are clear as to the cause of death

Patient and/or relative wishes to donate organs/tissues for transplantation	n/a	Discussion around transplantation should occur with families/ next of kin wherever appropriate (as deemed by clincial team). Exceptions apply	As stated in the Human Tissue Act 1961, patients with malignancies can only donate corneas and heart valves (and more recently, tracheas). Contact local transplant co-ordinator as soon as decision is made to donate organs/tissue and before Last Offices is attempted. Obtain verbal and written consent from the next of kin, as per local policy. Prepare patient who has died as per transplant co-ordinator's instructions. For further guidance see: www.uktransplant.org.uk
Patient to be moved straight from ward to undertakers	n/a	n/a	Contact senior nurse for hospital. Contact local Register Office as Certificate for Burial or Cremation ('green' document) needs to be obtained. Liaise with chosen funeral directors and the deceased's family. Perform Last Offices as per religious/cultural/family wishes. Obtain written authority for removal of person by the funeral directors, from the next of kin. Document all actions and proceedings (Travis 2002)
Relatives want to see the person who has died after removal from the ward	n/a	n/a	Inform the mortuary staff in order to allow time for them to prepare the body. Occasionally nurses might be required to undertake this in institutions where there are no mortuary staff. The patient's body will normally be placed in the hospital viewing room

			Ask relatives if they wish for a chaplain or other religious leader or appropriate person to accompany them. As required, religious artefacts should be removed from or added to the viewing room. The nurse should check that the patient's body and environment are presentable before accompanying the relatives into the viewing room. The relatives may want to be alone with the deceased but the nurse should wait outside the viewing room in order that support may be provided should the relatives become distressed. After the relatives have left, the nurse should contact the portering service who will return the deceased patient to the mortuary
Patient has an implantable cardioverter defibrillator (ICD) which could potentially delay death certification (Goldstein *et al.* 2004). There are risks (potential explosion) associated around cremation with both pacemakers (Dimond 2004) and ICDs (MHRA 2002)	n/a	Knowledge of device *in situ* prior to death	Nurses must inform funeral directors and mortuary staff about patients with cardiac pacemakers *in situ* and ensure it is clearly documented (Dimond 2004, Royal Marsden NHS Foundation Trust 2006). For patients with ICDs, the implants should be disabled once death has been confirmed (Goldstein *et al.* 2004) since these can delay pronunciation of death. This will prevent the chance of shocks being delivered to a patient who has already died or who is dying. The MHRA (2002) highlights that taping a small magnet over the skin does not always disable ICDs. However, cardiac technicians can reprogramme ICDs to non-shock mode (MHRA 2002). Nurses should consult local protocols and guidance for clear information on what should be done in specific areas

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Relatives' time with patient after death

Since there is a time limit to how long a patient should remain in the heat of a ward (there could potentially be early onset of rigor mortis), the senior nurse will have to exercise discretion over when to send the patient to the mortuary. This will vary according to family circumstances (there could be a short delay in a relative travelling to the ward/area) and the ward situation (side rooms are obviously easier for the family/other patients). As a general rule, 1–2 hours would be considered the upper limits for a patient to remain in the ward area, after Last Offices have been carried out.

Viewing the patient in the chapel of rest

Families may wish to view the patient in the chapel of rest again (Figure 2.5). It is important to ensure that the patient is in a presentable state before taking the family to see them.

Spiritual, emotional and bereavement support

The bereaved family may find it difficult to comprehend the death of their family member and it can take great sensitivity and skill to support them at this time. Explaining all procedures as fully as possible can help understanding of the practices at the end of life. Offering bereavement care services may be useful to families for that difficult period immediately after death and in the future. National services such as CRUSE (www.cruse.org.uk) can be useful if local services are not available.

Relatives may express extreme distress; this is a difficult situation to handle and other family members are likely to be of most comfort and support at this point. The family member may wish for their GP to be contacted.

Maintain a high degree of sensitivity when outlining the process after a patient has died since families frequently have to attend the hospital in the very near future in order to collect the documentation for registering the death.

Education of patient and relevant others

Helping the family to understand procedures after death is the role of many people in hospital but primarily this will fall upon those who first meet with the family after their relative has died. The Home Office leaflet *What to Do After a Death* (DWP 2006) can help families.

If the family states that they feel the death was unnatural or even that it was interfered with, we have a responsibility to explore these feelings and even outline their legal entitlement to a postmortem.

- Prepare the family for what they might see.
- Invite the family into the bed space/room.
- Accompany family but respect their need for privacy should they require it.
- Anticipate questions.
- Offer the family the opportunity to discuss care (at that time or in the future).
- Offer to contact other relatives on behalf of the family.
- Advise about the bereavement support services that can be accessed. Arrange an appointment if requested.
- Provide them with a point of contact with the hospital.

Some families may wish for a memento of the patient, such as a lock of hair. Try to anticipate and accommodate these wishes as much as possible.

Websites and useful addresses

For further information about organ donation contact the following website or your local transplant co-ordinator:

www.uktransplant.org.uk.com

For further information about bereavement and bereavement advice: Cruse Bereavement Care, www.crusebereavementcare.org.uk.com

For advice following a death: Citizens Advice Bureau, www.citizensadvice.org.uk.com

Hospital Chaplaincies Council: www.nhs-chaplaincy-spiritualcare.org.uk.com

For specific guidance on religious practices

National Spiritual Assembly of the Bahais of the United Kingdom

Email: nsa@bahai.org.uk

Website: www.bahai.org.uk.com

Buddhist Hospice Trust

Website: www.buddhisthospice.org.uk.com

Hindu Council UK

Website: www.hinducounciluk.org.com

Jainism

Website: www.jainism.org.com

Jehovah's Witnesses

Email: his@wtbts.org.uk

Website: www.watchtower.org.com

Rastafarianism

Website: www.rastafarian.net.com

Zoroastrian Trust Funds of Europe

Email: secretary@ztfe.com

Website: www.ztfe.com

The BBC Religion and Ethics websites also provide useful information.

www.bbc.co.uk/religion/religions/judaism.com

www.bbc.co.uk/religion/religions/sikhism.com

www.bbc.co.uk/religion/religions/zoroastrian.com

References

Ahern, J. and Philpot, P. 2002) Assessing acutely ill patients on general wards. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (47), 47–54.

Alfaro-Lefevre, R. 2002) *Applying Nursing Process: Promoting Collaborative Care*. Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Allen, D. 1998) Record-keeping and routine practice: the view from the wards. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **27** (6), 1223–1230.

Arrowsmith, H. 1999) A critical evaluation of the use of nutritional screening tools by nurses. *British Journal of Nursing*, **8** (22), 1483–1490.

Ashby, M and Mendelson, D. 2009) Family carers: ethical and legal issues, in *Family carers in palliative care: A guide for health and social care professionals* (eds Hudson, P and Payne, S.). Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland 2001) Preoperative Assessment: the role of the Anaesthetist. www.nhshealthquality.org/nhsqis/files/Anaesthesia.pdf.

Atwal, A. 2002) Nurses' perceptions of discharge planning in acute health care: a case study in one British teaching hospital. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **39** (5), 450–458.

Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA) 2005) Acute pain management: scientific evidence. www.anzca.edu.au/resources/books-and-publications/acutepain.pdf.

Back, I.N. 1992) Terminal restlessness in patients with advanced malignant disease. *Palliative Medicine*, **6**, 293–298.

Ballard, E.C. 2006) Improving information management in ward nurses' practice. *Nursing Standard*, **20** (50), 43–48.

Benner, P.E. 1984) *From Novice to Expert: Excellence and Power in Clinical Nursing Practice*. Addison–Wesley, Menlo Park, CA.

Berry, P. and Griffie, J. 2001) Planning for the actual death, in *Textbook of Palliative Nursing* (eds B. Ferrell and N. Coyle). Oxford University Press, Oxford. pp. 382–394.

Bickley, L. 2007) *Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking*, 9th edn. Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Biddington, W. 2000) Reviewing discharge planning processes and promoting good practice. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **14** (5), 4–6.

Bonevski, B, Sanson-Fisher, R., Girgis, A. et al. 2000) Evaluation of an instrument to assess the needs of patients with cancer. *Cancer*, **88**, 215–217.

Borill, C, West, M., Dawson, J. et al. 2001) *Team Working and Effectiveness in Health Care*. Aston Centre for Health Service Organisation Research, Aston, Yorkshire. www.itslifejimbutnotasweknowit.org.uk/files/Team_effectiveness.pdf

Bouvette, M., Fothergill-Bourbonnais, F. and Perreault, A. 2002) Implementation of the pain and symptom assessment record (PSAR). *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **40** (6), 685–700.

Brown, V, Sitzia, J., Richardson, A. et al. 2001) The development of the Chemotherapy Symptom Assessment Scale (C–SAS): a scale for the routine clinical assessment of the symptom experiences of patients receiving cytotoxic chemotherapy. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, **38** (5), 497–510.

Bull, M.J. and Roberts, J. 2001) Components of a proper hospital discharge for elders. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **35** (4), 571–581.

Cader, R., Campbell, S. and Watson, D. 2005) Cognitive continuum theory in nursing decision-making. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **49** (4), 397–405.

Cancer Action Team 2007) *Holistic Common Assessment of Supportive and Palliative Care Needs for Adults with Cancer: Assessment Guidance*. Cancer Action Team, London.

Chambers, S. 1998) Nursing diagnosis in learning disabilities nursing. *British Journal of Nursing*, **7** (19), 1177–1181.

Clark, J. 1999) A language for nursing. *Nursing Standard*, **13** (31), 42–47.

Clayton, J.M. and Tattersall, M.H.N. 2006) Communication in Palliative Care, in *Textbook of Palliative Medicine* (eds E. Bruera, I. Higginson, C. Ripamonti and C. von Guten). Hodder Arnold, London.

Conner, F.W. and Eggert, L.L. 1994) Psychosocial assessment for treatment planning and evaluation. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services*, **32** (5), 31–42.

Cook, D. 2001) *Patient autonomy versus paternalism. Critical Care Medicine*, **20** (2), N24–25.

Cooke, H. 2000) *A Practical Guide to Holistic Care at the End of Life*. Butterworth Heinemann, Oxford.

Costello, J. 2004) *Nursing the Dying Patient: Caring in Different Contexts*. Palgrave Macmillan, Basingstoke.

Coyne, P.J., Lyne, M.E. and Watson, A.C. 2002) Symptom management in people with AIDS. *American Journal of Nursing*, **102** (9), 48–57.

Crumbie, A. 2006) Taking a history, in *Nurse Practitioners: Clinical Skills and Professional Issues* (ed. M. Walsh). Butterworth Heinemann, Edinburgh, pp. 14–26.

Darzi, Lord 2008) *Our NHS, Our Future: Next Stage Review*. Department of Health, London.

Davis, S. 1998) Primary–Secondary Care Interface. Proceedings of conference, 25 March. NHS Executive, June, Issue 2.

Delaney, C. 2001) Health informatics and oncology nursing. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing*, **17** (1), 2–6.

Dennison, S. and Shute, T. 2000) Identifying patient concerns: improving the quality of patient visits to the oncology outpatient department – a pilot audit. *European Journal of Oncology Nursing*, **4** (2), 91–98.

DH 1989) *Discharge of Patients from Hospital. Health Circular (89)5*. HMSO, London.

DH 1997) *Patients Who Die in Hospital: HSG(97)43*. Department of Health, London. http://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/+/www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Lettersandcirculars/Healthserviceguidelines/DH_4018378.

DH 1998a) *A First Class Service: Quality in the New NHS*. NHSE, London.

DH 1998b) *The New NHS: Modern, Dependable*. HMSO, London.

DH 2000a) *The NHS Plan. A Plan for Investment, A Plan for Reform*. HMSO, London.

DH 2000b) *Shaping the Future NHS: Long Term Planning for Hospitals and Related Services. Consultation Document on the Findings of the National Bed Enquiry*. HMSO, London.

DH 2000c) *Patient and Public Involvement in the NHS*. HMSO, London.

DH 2001a) *The National Service Framework for Older People*. HMSO, London.

DH 2001b) *NHS Funded Nursing Care in Nursing Homes: What It Means for You*. HMSO, London.

DH 2001c) *Guide to Integrating Community Equipment Services*. HMSO, London.

DH 2002) *National Service Framework for Older People – Intermediate Care: Moving Forward*. HMSO, London.

DH 2003a) *Discharge from Hospital: Pathway, Process and Practice*. HMSO, London.

DH 2003b) *Delayed Transfers of Care: Planning for Implementation of Reimbursement and Improving Hospital Discharge Practice*. HMSO, London.

DH 2003c) *A Guide to the Post-mortem Examination Procedure*. Department of Health, London.

DH 2004a) *Achieving Timely 'Simple' Discharge from Hospital – a Toolkit for the Multi-disciplinary Team*. HMSO, London.

DH 2004b) *Carers and Disabled Children Act 2000 and Carers (Equal Opportunities) Act 2004. Combined Policy Guidance*. HMSO, London.

DH 2005) *Choosing a Better Diet: A Food and Health Action Plan*. Department of Health, London.

DH 2006a) *Modernising Nursing Careers: Setting the Direction*. Department of Health, London.

DH 2006b) *National Framework for NHS Continuing Healthcare and NHS-funded Nursing Care in England. Consultation Document*. HMSO, London.

DH 2007) *NHS Continuing Healthcare and NHS-Funded Nursing Care: Public Information Leaflet*. Department of Health, London. http://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/+/www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/documents/digitalasset/dh_079516.pd

DH 2008) *End-of-Life Care Strategy*. Department of Health, London.

DH 2010) *'Ready to Go'. Planning the discharge and the transfer of patients from hospital and intermediate care*. Department of Health, London.

DWP 2006) *What to Do After a Death*. Department of Work and Pensions, London.

Dimond, B. 2002) *Legal Aspects of Pain Management*. Quay Books, Salisbury.

Dimond, B. 2004) Health and safety considerations following the death of a patient. *British Journal of Nursing*, **13** (11), 675–676.

Docherty, B. 2000) Care of the dying patient. *Professional Nurse*, **15** (12), 752.

Edwards, M. and Miller, C. 2001) Improving psychosocial assessment in oncology. *Professional Nurse*, **16** (7), 1223–1226.

Eilers, J., Berger, A.M. and Peterson, M.C. 1988) Development, testing and application of the oral assessment guide. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, **15** (3), 325–330.

Elfrink, V., Bakken, S., Coenen, A., McNeil, B. and Bickford, C. 2001) Standardized nursing vocabularies: a foundation for quality care. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing*, **17** (1), 18–23.

Ellershaw, J. and Wilkinson, S. 2003) *Care of the Dying: A Pathway to Excellence*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Fallowfield, L. 2005) Communication with the patient and family, in *Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine* (eds D. Doyle, G. Hanks, N. Cherny and K. Calman). Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Faull, C. and Nyatanga, B 2005) Terminal care and dying, in *Handbook of Palliative Care* (eds C. Faull, Y. Carter and L. Daniels). Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford.

Field, D., Hockley, J. and Small, N. 1997) *Death, Gender and Ethnicity*. Routledge, London.

Ford, P. and McCormack, B. 1999) Determining older people's need for registered nursing in continuing health care: the contribution of the Royal College of Nursing's Older People's Assessment Tool. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **8** (6), 731–742.

Ford, P. and Walsh, M. 1994) *New Rituals for Old: Nursing Through The Looking Glass*. Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford.

Foust, J.B. 2007) Discharge planning as part of daily nursing practice. *Applied Nursing Research*, **20** (2), 72–77.

Fraise, A.P. and Bradley, T. (eds) 2009) *Ayliffe's Control of Healthcare-associated Infection: A Practical Handbook*, 5th edn. Hodder Arnold, London.

Frank-Stromborg, M. and Olsen, S.J. (eds) 2004) *Instruments for Clinical Health-Care Research*, 3rd edn. Jones and Bartlett, Sudbury, MA.

Fürst, C.J. 2004) The terminal phase, in *Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine* (eds D. Doyle, G. Hanks, N. Cherny and K. Calman). Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Galanti, G. 2000) An introduction to cultural differences. *Western Journal of Medicine*, **172** (5), 335–336.

Ganz, P.A., Schag, C.A., Lee, J.J. and Sim, M.S. 1992) The CARES: a generic measure of health-related quality of life for patients with cancer. *Quality of Life Research*, **1** (1), 19–29.

Garrett, E. and Boyd, J. 2008) *Key Findings Report: Adult Inpatient Survey Results 2007*. Picker Institute Europe, Oxford. www.nhssurveys.org/survey/613.

Glare, P. and Christakis, N. 2004) Predicting survival in patients with advanced disease, in *Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine* (eds D. Doyle, G. Hanks, N. Cherny and K. Calman). Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Goldstein, N.E., Lampert, R., Bradley, E. *et al.* 2004) Management of implantable cardioverter defibrillators in end-of-life care. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, **141** (11), 835–838.

Gordon, M. 1994) *Nursing Diagnosis, Process and Application*. Mosby, St Louis.

Green, J. and Green, M. 2006) *Dealing with Death: A Handbook of Practices, Procedures and Law*, 2nd edn. Jessica Kingsley Publishers, London.

Grobe, S.J. 1996) The nursing intervention lexicon and taxonomy: implications for representing nursing care data in automated patient records. *Holistic Nursing Practice*, **11** (1), 48–63.

Gunaratnam, Y. 1997) Culture is not enough: a critique of multiculturalism in palliative care, in *Death, Gender and Ethnicity* (eds D. Field, J. Hockley and N. Small). Routledge, London, pp. 166–186.

Halm, J., Gagner, S, Goering, M. *et al.* 2003) Interdisciplinary rounds: impact on patients, family and staff. *Clinical Nurse Specialist*, **17** (3), 133–142.

Hancock, S. 2003) Intermediate care and older people. *Nursing Standard*, **17** (48), 45–51.

Hardwick, S. 1998) Clarification of nursing diagnosis from a British perspective. *Assignment*, **4** (2), 3–9.

Harris, R, Wilson-Barnett, J., Griffiths, P. and Evans, A. 1998) Patient assessment: validation of a nursing instrument. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, **35**, 303–313.

Healing, T.D., Hoffman, P.N. and Young, S.E.J. 1995) The infection hazards of human cadavers. *Communicable Disease Report*, **5** (5), R61–R68.

Health Services Accreditation 1996) *Service Standards for Discharge Care*. NHS, East Sussex.

Heaven, C.M. and Maguire, P. 1996) Training hospice nurses to elicit patient concerns. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **23**, 280–286.

Hedberg, B. and Satterlund Larsson, U. 2003) Observations, confirmations and strategies – useful tools in decision-making process for nurses in practice? *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **12** (2), 215–222.

Higgins, D. 2010) Care of the dying patient: a guide for nurses, in *Care of the Dying and Deceased Patient* (ed. P. Jevon). Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford.

Higginson, I.J. and Costantini, M 2008) Dying with cancer, living well with cancer. *European Journal of Cancer*, **44**, 1414–1424.

Hill, M. and Macgregor, G. 2001) *Health's Forgotten Partners? How Carers are Supported Through Hospital Discharge*. Carers UK, London.

www.carershealthmatters.org.uk.

Hogston, R. 1997) Nursing diagnosis and classification systems: a position paper. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **26** (3), 496–500.

Hollins, S. 2006) Religions, Culture and Healthcare. Radcliffe, Oxford.

Holmes, H.N. (ed.) 2003) *Three-Minute Assessment*. Lippincott, Philadelphia.

Holmes, S. and Eburn, E. 1989) Patients' and nurses' perceptions of symptom distress in cancer. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **14** (7), 575–581.

Holt, P. 1995) Role of questioning in patient assessment. *British Journal of Nursing*, **4**, 1145–1146.

Holzhausen, F. 2001) '*You Can Take Him Home Now'. Carers' Experiences of Hospital Discharge*. Carers National Association, London.

Home Office 1971) *Report of the Committee on Death Certification and Coroners*. CMND 4810. HMSO, London.

Home Office 2002) When Sudden Death Occurs: Coroners and Inquests. www.nnuh.nhs.uk/docs%5 Cleaflets%5C90.pdf.

Horton, R. 2002) Differences in assessment of symptoms and quality of life between patients with advanced cancer and their specialist palliative care nurses in a home care setting. *Palliative Medicine*, **16** (6), 488–494.

House of Commons Health Committee 2005) *NHS Continuing Care, Sixth Report of Session 2004–2005*, Vol. **1**. House of Commons Publications, Norwich, pp. 399–391.

HPA 2010) The Infection Hazards of Human Cadavers: Guidelines on Precautions to Be Taken With Cadavers of Those Who Have Died With a Known or Suspected Infection. www.vfda.net/CadaverPolicyUK.pdf.

HSAC 2003) *Safe Working and the Prevention of Infection in the Mortuary and Postmortem Room*. Health and Safety Advisory Committee /HSE, London.

HTA 2006) *Human Tissue Authority. Code of Practice – consent.* www.hta.gov.uk/_db/_documents/2006–07–04_Approved_by_Parliament_–_Code_of_Practice_1_–_Consent.pdf.

Huber, D.L. and McClelland, E. 2003) Patient preferences and discharge planning transitions. *Journal of Professional Nursing*, **19** (4), 204–210.

Hunter, M. 1998) Rehabilitation in cancer care: a patient-focused approach. *European Journal of Cancer Care*, **7** (2), 85–87.

Hunter, M. 2001) Will social services suffer in new regime? *Community Care*, **13** (87), 10–11.

IASP 2007) *IASP Pain Terminology*. International Association for the Study of Pain, Seattle. www.iasp-pain.org/AM/Template.cfm?Section=General_Resource_Links&Template=/CM/HTMLDisplay.cfm&ContentID=3058.

IPEM 2002) *Medical and Dental Guidance Notes. A Good Practice Guide on All Aspects of Ionising Radiation Protection in the Clinical Environment*. Institute of Physics and Engineering in Medicine, York.

Jenkins, V., Fallowfield, L. and Saul, J. 2001) Information needs of patients with cancer: results from a large study in UK cancer centres. *British Journal of Cancer*, **84** (1), 48–51.

Jensen, T.S, Wilson, P. and Rice, A. 2003) *Clinical Pain Management: Chronic Pain*. Arnold, London.

Jevon, P. (ed) 2010) *Care of the Dying Patient: A Guide for Nurses*. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford.

Johnson, T. 2000) Functional health pattern assessment on-line: lessons learned. *Computers in Nursing*, **18** (5), 248–254.

Kearney, N. 2001) Classifying nursing care to improve patient outcomes: the example of WISECARE. *NT Research*, **6** (4), 747–756.

Kearney, N., Miller, M., Sermeus, W. *et al.* 2000) Collaboration in cancer nursing practice. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **9**, 429–435.

Kehl, K.A. 2006) Moving toward peace: an analysis of the concept of a good death. *American Journal of Hospice Palliative Care*, **23** (4), 277–286.

Kinder, C. and Ellershaw, J. 2003) How to use the Liverpool Care Pathway for the Dying Patient, in *Care of the Dying: A Pathway to Excellence* (eds J. Ellershaw and S. Wilkinson S). Oxford Univerity Press, Oxford.

King, L. and Clark, J.M. 2002) Intuition and the development of expertise in surgical ward and intensive care nurses. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **37** (4), 322–329.

Kissane, D. 2004) Bereavement, in *Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine*, 3rd edn (eds D. Doyle, G. Hanks, N. Cherny and K. Calman). Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Kissane, D. and Yates, P. 2003) Psychological and existential distress, in *Palliative Nursing: A Guide to Practice* (eds M. O'Connor and S. Aranda). Radcliffe Medical Press, Oxford.

Kozier, B., Erb, G., Berman, A. *et al.* 2003) *Fundamentals of Nursing: Concepts, Process and Practice*,7th edn. Addison Wesley, Menlo Park, CA.

Kumar, S. 2000) *Multidisciplinary Approach to Rehabilitation*. Butterworth Heinemann, London.

Lauri, S., Lepisto, M. and Kappeli, S. 1997) Patients' needs in hospital: nurses' and patients' views. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **25**, 339–346.

Lawlor, P.G., Gagnon, B., Mancini, I.L. *et al.* 2000) Occurrence, causes, and outcome of delirium in patients with advanced cancer: a prospective study. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, **160** (6), 786–794.

Leih, P. and Salentijn, C. 1994) Nursing diagnoses: a Dutch perspective. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **3** (5), 313–320.

Lidstone, V., Butters, E., Seed, P. T., Sinnott, C., Beynon, T. and Richards, M. 2003) Symptoms and concerns amongst cancer outpatients: identifying the need for specialist palliative care. *Palliative Medicine*, **17** (7), 588–595.

Lyte, G. and Jones, K. 2001) Developing a unified language for children's nurses, children and their families in the United Kingdom. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **10** (1), 79–85.

Malnutrition Advisory Group 2000) *Explanatory Notes for the Screening Tool for Adults at Risk of Malnutrition*. Malnutrition Advisory Group, Maidenhead.

Maramba, P.J., Richards, S., Myers, A.L. and Larrabee, J.H. 2004) Discharge planning process: applying a model for evidence-based

practice. *Journal of Nursing Care Quality*, **19** (2),123–129.

Mardis, R. and Brownson, K. 2003) Length of stay at an all-time low. *Health Care Manager*, **22** (2), 122–127.

Marek, C. 2003) Anti-emetic therapy in patients receiving cancer chemotherapy. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, **30**, 259–269.

Martin, J. 2001) Benchmarking – how do you do it? *Nursing Times*, **97** (42), 30–31.

McClement, S.E., Woodgate, R.L. and Degner, L. 1997) Symptom distress in adults with cancer. *Cancer Nursing*, **20** (4), 236–243.

McDonald, M.V., Passik, S., Dugan, W. *et al.* 1999) Nurses' recognition of depression in their patients with cancer. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, **26** (3), 593–599.

McKenna, H., Keeney, S., Glenn, A. *et al.* 2000) Discharge planning: an exploratory study. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **9**, 594–601.

Mental Capacity Act 2005) Stationery Office, London.

MHRA 2002) *Removal of Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillators*. MHRA, London.

Mistiaen, W., van Cauwelaert, P., Muylaert, P. and de Worm, E. 2007) Thousand Carpentier-Edwards pericardial valves in the aortic position: what has changed in the last 20 years and what are the effects on hospital complications? *Journal of Heart Valve Disease*, **16**, 1–6.

Moen, A., Henry, S.B. and Warren, J.J. 1999) Representing nursing judgements in the electronic health record. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **30** (4), 990–997.

Morton, P.G. 1993) *Health Assessment in Nursing*, 2nd edn. Springhouse, Philadelphia.

Murphy, E.K. 2003) Charting by exception. *AORN Journal*, **78** (5), 821–823.

Murphy, K., Cooney, A., Casey, D. *et al.* 2000) The Roper, Logan and Tierney (1996) model: perceptions and operationalization of the model in psychiatric nursing within a Health Board in Ireland. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **31** (6), 1333–1341.

NANDA-I 2009) *Nursing Diagnoses: Definitions and Classifications 2009–2011*. North American Nursing Diagnosis Association – International, Philadelphia.

Naylor, W., Laverty, D. and Mallett, J. 2001) *The Royal Marsden Hospital Handbook of Wound Management in Cancer Care*, Blackwell Science, Oxford.

Nazarko, L. 1998) Improving discharge: the role of the discharge co-ordinator. *Nursing Standard*, **12** (49), 35–37.

Nearney, L. 1998) Last offices, part 1. *Nursing Times*, **94** (26), Insert.

Neighbour, R. 1987) *The Inner Consultation*. MTP Press, Lancaster.

Neuberger, J. 1999) Cultural issues in palliative care, in *Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine* (eds D. Doyle, G. Hanks and N. MacDonald). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 777–780.

Neuberger, J. 2004) *Caring for People of Different Faiths*. Radcliffe Medical Press, Abingdon.

NHS Connecting for Health 2005) *CRDB SAP Action Team Output V1.0*. Crown Copyright.

NHSE 2001) *Your Guide to the National Health Service*. HMSO, London.

NICE 2004) *Guidance on Cancer Services: Improving Supportive and Palliative Care for Adults with Cancer*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NMC 2008) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC 2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

O'Donnell, V. 1998) The pharmacological management of respiratory secretions. *Journal of Palliative Nursing*, **4**, 199–203.

ONS 2009) *Mortality Statistics Deaths Registered in 2008*. OPSI, Kew.

Orem, D.E., Taylor, S.G. and Renpenning, K. 2001) *Nursing: Concepts of Practice*, 6th edn. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

Osse, B.H., Vernooij, M.J., Schade, E. and Grol, R.P. 2004) Towards a new clinical tool for needs assessment in the palliative care of cancer patients: the PNPC instrument. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **28** (4), 329–341.

Parsaie, F.A., Golchin, M. and Asvadi, I. 2000) A comparison of nurse and patient perceptions of chemotherapy treatment stressors. *Cancer Nursing*, **23** (5), 371–374.

Pattison, N. 2008a) Care of patients who have died. *Nursing Standard*, **22** (28), 42–48.

Pattison, N. 2008b) Caring for patients after death. *Nursing Standard*, **22** (51), 48–56.

Pearce, E. 1963) *A General Textbook of Nursing*. Faber and Faber, London.

Peden-McAlpine, C. and Clark, N. 2002) Early recognition of client status changes: the importance of time. *Dimensions of Critical Care Nursing*, **21** (4), 144–150.

Perdue, C. 2005) Understanding nausea and vomiting in advanced cancer. *Nursing Times*, **101** (4), 32.

Philpin, S. 2002) Rituals and nursing: a critical commentary. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **38** (2), 144–151.

Piper, B.F. 2004) Measuring fatigue, in *Instruments for Clinical Health-Care Research*, 3rd edn (eds M. Frank-Stromborg and S.J. Olsen). Jones and Bartlett, Sudbury, MA, pp. 538–569.

Portenoy, R.K., Thaler, H.T., Kornblith, A.B. *et al.* 1994) The Memorial Symptom Assessment Scale: an instrument for the evaluation of symptom prevalence, characteristics and distress. *European Journal of Cancer*, **30A** (9), 1326–1336.

Pratt, R.J., Pellowe, C.M., Wilson, J.A. *et al.* 2007) epic2: National evidence-based guidelines for preventing healthcare-associated infections in NHS hospitals in England. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **65S**, S1–S64.

Putzier, D.J. and Padrick, K.P. 1984) Nursing diagnosis: a component of nursing process and decision making. *Topics in Clinical Nursing*, **5** (4),

21–29.

Quested, B. and Rudge, T. 2001) Procedure manuals and textually mediated death. *Nursing Inquiry*, **8** (4), 264–272.

RCN 1996) *Verification of Death by Registered Nurses*. Issues in Nursing and Health, 38. Royal College of Nursing, London.

RCN 2004) *Nursing Assessment and Older People. A Royal College of Nursing Toolkit*. Royal College of Nursing, London.

RCN 2005) *Good Practice in Infection Prevention and Control. Guidance for Nursing Staff*. Royal College of Nursing, London.

Reilly, D., McNeely, M., Doerner, D. *et al.* 1999) Self-reported exercise tolerance and the risk of serious perioperative complications. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, **159**, 2185–2192.

Rhodes, V.A., McDaniel, R., Homan, S. *et al.* 2000) An instrument to measure symptom experience: symptom occurrence and symptom distress. *Cancer Nursing*, **23** (1), 49–54.

Rice, V.H. and Stead, L.F. 2008) Nursing interventions for smoking cessation. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **1**, CD001188.

Rolfe, G. 1999) Insufficient evidence: the problems of evidence-based nursing. *Nurse Education Today*, **19** (6), 433–442.

Roper, N., Logan, W. and Tierney, A.J. 2000) *The Roper Logan Tierney Model of Nursing: Based on Activities of Living*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

Rorden, J.W. and Taft, E. 1990) *Discharge Planning Guide for Nurses*. W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia.

Rosswurm, M.A. and Lanham, D.M. 1998) Discharge planning for elderly patients. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, **24** (5), 14–21.

Rowbotham, D.J. and Macintyre, P.E. 2002) *Clinical Pain Management: Acute Pain*. Arnold, London.

Roy, C. 1984) *Introduction to Nursing: an Adaptation Model*, 2nd edn. Prentice-Hall, New Jersey.

Royal Marsden NHS Foundation Trust 2006) After death care, in *Critical Care Unit Guidelines*. Internal Document, Royal Marsden NHS Foundation Trust, London.

Royal Marsden NHS Trust 2005) *Guidelines for Nursing Documentation*. Royal Marsden NHS Trust, London.

Salentera, S., Eriksson, E., Junnola, T. *et al.* 2003) Clinical judgement and information seeking by nurses and physicians working with cancer patients. *Psycho-Oncology*, **12**, 280–290.

Salter, M. 1996) Nursing the patient in the community, in *Nursing the Patient with Cancer* (ed. V. Tschudin). Prentice-Hall, Hemel Hempstead, pp. 438–451.

Seale, C. 1998) *Constructing Death. The Sociology of Dying and Bereavement*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Shaw, M. 1998) *Charting Made Incredibly Easy*. Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Skinn, B. and Stacey, D. 1994) Establishing an integrated framework for documentation: use of a self-reporting health history and outpatient oncology record. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, **21** (9), 1557–1566.

Smaje, C. and Field, D. 1997) Absent minorities? Ethnicity and the use of palliative care services, in *Death, Gender and Ethnicity* (eds D. Field, J. Hockley and N. Small). Routledge, London, pp. 142–165.

Smith, A. 2003) Antibiotic resistance, in *Infection Control in the Community* (eds J. Lawrence and D. May). Churchill Livingstone, London, pp. 319–332.

Smith, G. and Richardson, A. 1996) Development of nursing documentation for use in the outpatient oncology setting. *European Journal of Cancer Care*, **5**, 225–232.

Smith, R. 2000) A good death. An important aim for health services and for us all. *BMJ*, **320**, 129–130.

Smith, S. 1996) Discharge planning: the need for effective communication. *Nursing Standard*, **10** (38), 39–41.

Speck, P. 1992) Care after death. *Nursing Times*, **88** (6), 20.

Stewart, W. 2000) Development of discharge skills: a project report. *Nursing Times*, **96** (41), 37.

Suhonen, R., Valimaki, M. and Katajisto, J. 2000) Developing and testing an instrument for the measurement of individual care. *Journal of*

Advanced Nursing, **32** (5), 1253–1263.

Tanner, C.A., Padrick, K.P., Westfall, U.E. and Putzier, D.J. 1987) Diagnostic reasoning strategies of nurses and nursing students. *Nursing Research*, **36** (6), 358–363.

Tarling, M. and Jauffur, H. 2006) Improving team meetings to support discharge planning. *Nursing Times*, **102** (26), 32–35.

Teytelman, Y. 2000) Effective nursing documentation and communication. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing*, **18** (2), 121–127.

Thompson, C. 1999) A conceptual treadmill: the need for 'middle ground' in clinical decision making theory in nursing. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **30** (5), 1222–1229.

Tierney, A.J. 1998) Nursing models; extant or extinct? *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **28** (1), 77–85.

Travis, S. 2002) *Procedure for the Care of Patients Who Die in Hospital*. Royal Marsden NHS Trust, London.

Vaartio, H., Leino-Kilpi, H., Salentera, S. and Suominen, T. 2006). Nursing advocacy: how is it defined by patients and nurses, what does it involve and how is it experienced? *Scandinavian Journal of Caring Sciences*, **20** (3), 282–292.

Van Gennep A. 1972) *The Rites of Passage*. Chicago University Press, Chicago.

Walsh, M. and Ford, P. 1989) *Nursing Rituals, Research and Rational Action*. Butterworth Heinemann, Oxford.

Watson, M., Lucas, C., Hoy, A. and Wells, J. (eds) 2009) Ethical Issues, in *Oxford Handbook of Palliative Care* (eds M. Watson, C. Lucas, A. Hoy and I. Back). Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Wells, D.L., LeClerc, C.M., Craig, D., Martin, D.K. and Marshall, V.W. 2002) Evaluation of an integrated model of discharge planning: achieving quality discharges in an efficient and ethical way. *Canadian Journal of Nursing Research*, **34** (3), 103–122.

Westbrook, A. 2000) Nursing language. *Nursing Times*, **96** (14), 41.

White, L. 2003) *Documentation and the Nursing Process*. Delmar Learning, Clifton Park, NY.

WHO 2002) Guidance on Palliative Care. www.who.int/cancer/palliative/en.

Wilkinson, S. and Mula, C. 2003) Communication in care of the dying, in *Care of the Dying: A Pathway to Excellence* (eds J. Ellershaw and S. Wilkinson). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 74–89.

Williams, P.D., Ducey, K.A., Sears, A.M., Williams, A.R., Tobin-Rumelhart, S.E. and Bunde, P. 2001) Treatment type and symptom severity among oncology patients by self-report. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, **38** (3), 359–367.

Wilson, B. 2007) Nurses' knowledge of pain. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **16** (6), 1012–1020.

Wimpenny, P. 2001) The meaning of models of nursing to practising nurses. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **40** (3), 346–354.

Wolf, Z. 1988) *Nurses' Work: The Sacred and the Profane*. University of Pennsylvania Press, Philadelphia.

Wright, E.P., Selby, P.J., Crawford, M. *et al.* 2003) Feasibility and compliance of automated measurement of quality of life in oncology practice. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, **21** (2), 374–382.

Wyatt, J. 2009) *Matters of Life and Death*. Inter-Varsity Press, Nottingham.

Chapter 3

Infection Prevention and Control

Overview

This chapter describes the steps to be taken to minimize the risk of individuals acquiring infections during the course of care or treatment. Patients are most at risk but healthcare staff are also legally obliged to take reasonable and practicable precautions to protect themselves, other staff and anyone else who may be at risk in their workplace (Health and Safety at Work, etc. Act 1974). The chapter describes the **standard precautions** that must be taken with all patients at all times regardless of their known infection status, and the additional precautions that need to be taken with some patients. Additional precautions can be required either because the patient is colonized or infected with micro-organisms that may pose a particular risk to others, or because they are particularly vulnerable to infection themselves. The chapter also describes the specific precautions that must be taken during invasive procedures, in particular aseptic technique. Related issues such as the safe management of healthcare waste are also considered briefly.

Infection Prevention and Control

Definitions

'Infection prevention and control' has been defined as the clinical application of microbiology in practice (RCN 2010). More simply, it is a collective term for those activities intended to protect people from infections. Such activities are carried out as part of daily life by most individuals; for example, people wash their hands before eating to protect themselves from infection. The term is most often used in

relation to healthcare, in particular with reference to preventing patients acquiring those infections most often associated with healthcare (such as wound infection) and preventing the transmission of micro-organisms from one patient to another (sometimes referred to as cross-infection).

Defined in Box 3.1 are some other terms used when discussing infection prevention and control. Confusion may sometimes arise because some of these terms are synonymous or have meanings which overlap, or are used in different ways by different people or organizations and this has been highlighted wherever possible.

Box 3.1 Terms used when discussing infection prevention and control

Infectious agent

Anything that may be transmitted from one person to another, or from the environment to a person, and subsequently cause an infection or parasitic infestation. Infectious agents are most often micro-organisms such as bacteria or viruses.

Pathogen

A micro-organism that is capable of causing infection. Many micro-organisms are *opportunistic* pathogens; that is, they will cause infection in vulnerable individuals but not, normally, in healthy adults.

Colonization

When micro-organisms are present on or in a person but not currently causing any harm, that person is said to be colonized with those organisms. For example, human beings are normally colonized with huge numbers of several different species of bacteria.

Healthcare-associated infection (HCAI)

Any infection acquired as a result of a healthcare-related intervention or an infection acquired during the course of healthcare that the patient may reasonably expect to be protected from. For example, a person may acquire viral gastroenteritis in many circumstances but if they acquire it in hospital from another patient, it should be regarded as healthcare associated. This has replaced the term ‘hospital-acquired infection’.

Cross-infection

Cross-infection is one term given to the transmission of infectious agents between patients within the healthcare setting. It may be direct transmission from one person to another, or indirect, for example via an incorrectly cleaned piece of equipment.

Universal precautions

Correctly called universal blood and body fluid precautions, these are the precautions that are taken with all blood and 'high-risk' body fluids. They are based on the principle that any individual may be infected with a bloodborne virus, such as HIV or hepatitis B, and so pose a risk of infection; no individual can be regarded as completely 'risk free'. They are incorporated within standard precautions.

Standard precautions

The phrase 'standard precautions' is sometimes used interchangeably with 'universal precautions' (see above) but is used in this chapter and elsewhere (e.g. Health Protection Scotland 2009, Siegel *et al.* 2007) to describe the actions that should be taken in every care situation to protect patients and others from infection, regardless of what is known of the patient's status with respect to infection. Standard precautions include:

- hand hygiene at the '5 moments' described by the WHO (2009), including before and after each patient contact
- care in the use and disposal of sharps
- the correct use of personal protective equipment for contact with all blood, body fluids, secretions and excretions (except sweat)
- providing care in a suitably clean environment with adequately decontaminated equipment
- the safe disposal of waste
- the safe management of used linen.

Transmission-based precautions

Additional infection control precautions taken with patients known or strongly suspected to be infected or colonized with organisms that pose a significant risk to other patients. The precautions will vary depending on the route by which the organism travels from one individual to another, but there will be common elements. Transmission-based precautions can be divided into:

- contact
- enteric
- droplet
- airborne.

Contact precautions

Additional infection control precautions to be taken with patients known or strongly suspected to be infected or colonized with pathogenic micro-organisms that are mainly transmitted through touch or physical contact. Contact precautions normally consist of isolation of the patient in a single room, where possible, and use of gloves and apron for any procedure involving contact with the patient or their immediate environment (Siegel *et al.* 2007).

Enteric precautions

Additional infection control precautions to be taken with patients suffering symptoms of infectious gastroenteritis, that is diarrhoea or vomiting that does not have an obvious mechanical or non-infectious cause. Enteric precautions should be taken from the first instance of diarrhoea or vomiting, regardless of whether a causative organism has been identified, until there is a definitive diagnosis that the symptoms do not have an infectious cause. Enteric precautions consist of prompt isolation of the patient in a single room with the door closed and use of gloves and apron for any procedure involving contact with the patient or their immediate environment (Chadwick *et al.* 2000, DH/HPA 2008).

Droplet precautions

Additional infection control precautions taken with patients known or strongly suspected to be infected or colonized with pathogenic micro-organisms that are mainly transmitted via droplets of body fluid expelled by an infected person. These are most often respiratory secretions expelled during coughing and sneezing but can include droplets from other sources such as projectile vomiting or explosive diarrhoea. The droplets are relatively large (>5 micrometres diameter) and do not remain suspended in the air for long so special ventilation is not normally required. Droplet precautions consist of isolation of the patient in a single room with the door closed and use of gloves and apron for any procedure involving contact with the patient or their immediate environment. Staff entering the room should wear a mask (Siegel *et al.* 2007).

Airborne precautions

Additional infection control precautions taken with patients known or strongly suspected to be infected or colonized with pathogenic micro-organisms that are mainly transmitted through the airborne route. These organisms are present in smaller droplets expelled by an infected person and so remain suspended in the air. Droplet precautions consist of prompt isolation of the patient in a single room, if possible with negative pressure ventilation or a positive pressure lobby, with the door closed, and use of gloves and apron for any procedure involving contact with the patient or their immediate environment. Staff entering the room should wear a fitted respirator (Siegel *et al.* 2007).

Some guidelines merge droplet and airborne precautions in order to provide a single set of instructions for staff caring for patients with any respiratory or airborne infection.

Isolation

Isolation is the practice of nursing a patient in a single-occupancy room to reduce the risk of spread of pathogens and to reinforce and facilitate additional infection control precautions.

Source isolation

The practice of isolating a patient for the main purpose of preventing the spread of organisms *from* that patient.

Protective isolation

The practice of isolating a patient for the main purpose of preventing the spread of organisms *to* that patient, normally used for patients with impaired immune systems.

Cohorting

When the number of patients with a particular infection or carrying a particular organism exceeds the single room capacity of a healthcare provider, they may be nursed together in a *cohort*. This is most often done for highly infectious conditions such as norovirus. Patients who require isolation but have different infections *cannot* be cohort nursed together because of the risk of cross-infection between them.

Barrier nursing

The practice of nursing a patient who is carrying an infectious agent that may be a risk to others in such a way as to minimize the risk of transmission of that agent to others.

Reverse barrier nursing

The practice of nursing an individual who is regarded as being particularly vulnerable to infection in such a way as to minimize the transmission of potential pathogens to that person.

Related theory

People who are in hospital or receiving healthcare elsewhere have an increased vulnerability to infection. There are many reasons for this, including reduced immunity and the use of invasive devices and procedures that bypass the body's normal defences. In addition, being in hospital puts them in closer proximity to other people with infectious conditions. However, many infections acquired by patients receiving healthcare are preventable, as has been amply demonstrated by the 50% reduction in MRSA bacteraemia (bloodstream infections caused by meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*) in English NHS hospitals between 2005 and 2008 (Health Protection Agency 2010a) and recent dramatic falls in the number of cases of *Clostridium difficile* infection in England (Health Protection Agency 2010b). These reductions have been achieved by the systematic application and monitoring of established practices for the prevention and control of infection, including diligent hand hygiene and correct aseptic technique.

Common healthcare-associated infections

The 2006 national prevalence survey of patients in hospital in England with infections identified a prevalence rate of around 8%; that is, eight out of every 100 patients in hospital at the time of the survey had an infection. The most common types of infection were gastrointestinal infections (22%), urinary tract infections (20%), pneumonia (14%) and surgical site infections (13.8%) (Hospital Infection Society/Infection Control Nurses Association 2007). Less common types of infection, for example bacteraemia (bacteria infecting the bloodstream), may be more severe, so *all* procedures must be carried out in such a way as to minimize the risk of any infection.

Causes of infection

Infections are normally caused by micro-organisms. These are life forms too small to see with the naked eye. In some cases, for example prion diseases such as Creuzfeldt–Jacob disease (CJD), it can be unclear if the causative agent is actually living or not, while at the other extreme, infection control precautions will be applied to prevent the transmission of visible parasites such as scabies mites or enteric worms that may be metres in length (although their eggs are microscopic). The term 'infectious agent' is therefore often used to describe anything that may be transmitted from one person to another, or from the environment to a person, and subsequently cause an infection or parasitic infestation.

The major groups of micro-organisms are described below. Which group an infectious agent belongs to will have significant implications for the treatment of an infected individual – for example, antibiotics target bacteria but have no effect on viral infections – but for infection prevention and control it is more important to understand the *route of transmission* as this will dictate if any additional, transmission-based, precautions need to be in place.

Types and classification of micro-organisms

Historically, the classification of micro-organisms was based on physical characteristics such as their size, shape or ability to retain a particular

stain to make them visible under the microscope. Some of these distinctions are still useful, but classification is increasingly based on genetic characteristics, as analysis reveals the actual relationships between organisms. This can lead to confusion as new discoveries lead to species being reclassified and renamed. It should be noted that there can also be a wide variety of characteristics within each species, leading to significant variations in the severity of infection caused by different strains of the same organism. A good example of this is *Escherichia coli*. Every human being carries millions of these bacteria with no ill effects but infection with the toxin-producing O157 strain can cause serious illness.

This section describes the different types of organisms that may be encountered in a healthcare environment as well as the differences between and within the different types (Goering *et al.* 2007, Wilson 2000).

Bacteria

Bacteria are probably the most important group of micro-organisms in terms of infection prevention and control because they are responsible for many opportunistic infections in healthcare. A healthy human being will typically be host to one *quadrillion* (1000 trillion, or 10^{15}) bacteria – around ten times as many organisms as there are cells in the human body. In normal circumstances the relationship between these bacteria and their host is commensal (i.e. their presence does not cause the host any problems) and may be mutually beneficial. For example, *E. coli* present in the gut can be an aid to digestion. However, when circumstances change, these commensal organisms can cause infections. If the *E. coli* in the example above are transferred from the gut to the urinary tract, a urinary tract infection can result.

Whether or not any particular situation will result in an infection depends on a wide range of factors and is not always predictable. What is certain is that bacterial infections cannot occur when bacteria are not present, hence the importance of measures designed to minimize the risk of transmission. However, the presence of bacteria does not necessarily indicate an infection – as noted above, many millions of bacteria live on

and in the human body without causing harm – so the diagnosis of a bacterial infection and any decision about treatment must be made by considering a combination of the patient's symptoms and laboratory results that may indicate the presence of any particular bacteria (Wilson 2000).

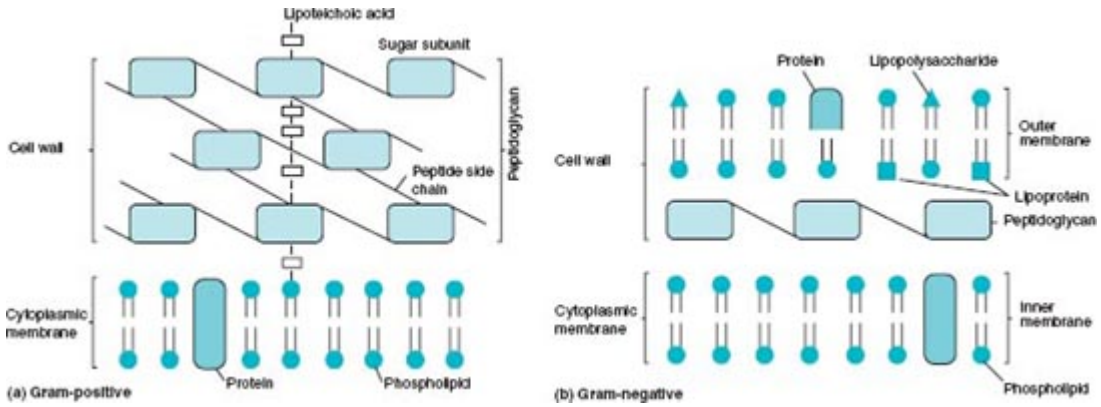
Bacteria are what are known as *prokaryotes*, as opposed to *eukaryotes*, the term used for more complex organisms such as humans. This means that bacterial cells are much smaller and simpler than human cells, typically about the size of some of the structures such as mitochondria that exist within a mammalian cell. This small size means that bacteria do not have separate structures (such as a nucleus) within their cells. What bacteria do have and mammalian cells do not is a cell wall that contains the rest of the cell and gives it a distinctive shape (Goering *et al.* 2007). Some of these shapes are illustrated in Table 3.1. In terms of healthcare-associated infections, the most important bacteria are generally rod shaped or spherical.

Table 3.1 Bacterial shapes and arrangements

	Shape/arrangement	Notes/example
	Coccus (sphere)	Different species divide in one plane to make pairs and chains or in multiple planes to make clusters
	Chain	*Streptococcus*
	Pair (diplococci)	*Neisseria*
	Cluster	*Staphylococcus*
	Straight rod	*Escherichia coli*
	Spore-forming rod	*Clostridium difficile*
	Comma-shaped	*Vibrio cholerae*
	Spiral-shaped	*Treponema pallidum*, which causes syphilis

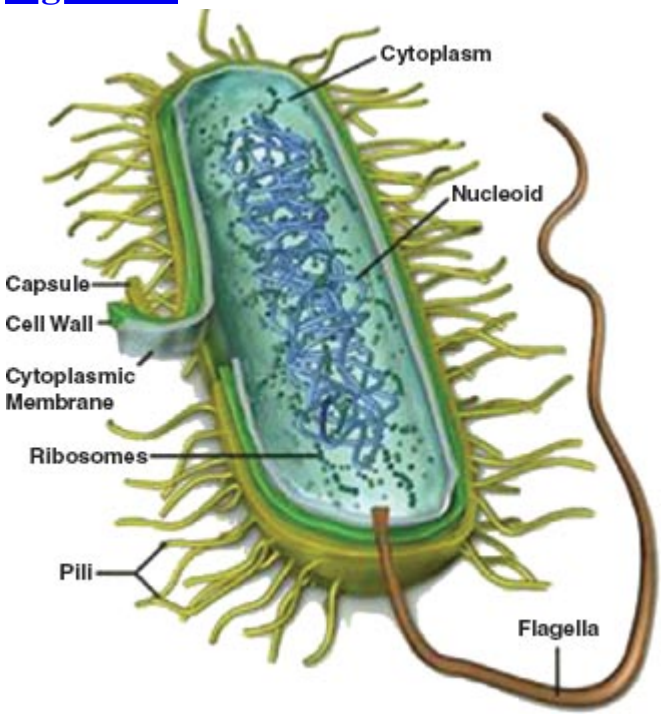
The structure of the cell wall determines another important distinction in medically significant bacteria: whether they are Gram positive or Gram negative. The 'Gram' in these terms refers to Gram staining, named after its Dutch inventor, Hans Christian Gram (1853–1938), who devised the stain in 1884. Put simply, the structure of the cell wall determines whether or not the bacteria are able to retain a particular stain in the presence of an organic solvent such as acetone. The structure of the cell wall determines other characteristics of the bacteria, including their susceptibility to particular antibiotics, so knowing whether the cause of a bacterial infection is Gram positive or negative can help to determine appropriate treatment (Goering *et al.* 2007). The structure of the two different types of cell wall is shown in Figure 3.1.

Figure 3.1 Gram-positive (a) and Gram-negative (b) bacterial cell walls. Used with permission from Elliot (2007).



Other structures visible outside the cell wall may include pili, which are rigid tubes that help the bacteria attach to host cells (or, in some cases, other bacteria for the exchange of genetic material), flagellae, which are longer, mobile projections that can help bacteria to move around, and capsules, that can provide protection or help the bacteria to adhere to surfaces. These are illustrated in Figure 3.2. The presence or absence of different structures will play a part in determining an organism's pathogenicity – its ability to cause an infection and the severity of that infection (Goering *et al.* 2007).

Figure 3.2 Bacterial structures.



A final bacterial structure to consider is the spore. Bacteria normally reproduce by a process called binary fission – they create a copy of their genetic material and split themselves in two, with each 'daughter' cell being an almost-exact copy of the parent (there are mechanisms by which bacteria can transfer genetic material between cells and so acquire characteristics such as antibiotic resistance, but they are beyond the scope of this chapter). However, some bacteria, notably *Clostridium difficile*, have the capacity, in adverse conditions, to surround a copy of their genetic material with a tough coat. Because this structure is created within the bacterial cell, it is sometimes referred to as an endospore, but is more often simply called a *spore*. The parent cell then dies and disintegrates, leaving the spore to survive until conditions are suitable for it to germinate into a normal, 'vegetative' bacterial cell that can then reproduce (Goering *et al.* 2007). Spores are extremely tough and durable. They are not destroyed by boiling (hence the need for high-temperature steam under pressure in sterilizing autoclaves) or by the alcohol handrubs widely used for hand hygiene – hence the need to physically remove them from the hands by washing with soap and water when caring for a patient with *Clostridium difficile* infection (DH/HPA 2008).

Some medically significant bacteria are listed in Table 3.2.

Table 3.2 Medically significant bacteria

	Spherical	**Rod-shaped**
Gram positive	*Staphylococcus aureus* *Streptococcus* spp	*Clostridium difficile Clostridium tetanii Bacillus* spp
Gram negative	*Neisseria meningitides* *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*	*Pseudomonas aeruginosa Escherichia coli Legionella pneumophila Acinetobacter baumanii Salmonella*

A few bacteria do not easily fit into the Gram-positive/negative dichotomy. The most medically significant of these are the *Mycobacteria*, which are responsible for diseases including tuberculosis and leprosy (Goering *et al.* 2007).

Viruses

Viruses are much smaller, and even simpler, than bacteria. They are often little more than a protein capsule containing some genetic material.

They do not have cells, and some people do not even consider them to be alive. They have genes and will evolve through natural selection, but have no metabolism of their own. The most significant characteristic of viruses is that they can only reproduce within a host cell, by using the cell's own mechanisms to reproduce the viral genetic material and to manufacture the other elements required to produce more virus particles. This often causes the death of the cell concerned (Goering *et al.* 2007).

The small size of viruses (poliovirus, for example, is only 30 nanometres (nm) across) means that most are smaller than the wavelengths of visible light. They can only be 'seen' with a specialist instrument such as an electron microscope, which will only be available in a very few hospital microbiology laboratories. Diagnosis of viral infections is normally by the patient's symptoms, with confirmation by laboratory tests designed to detect either the virus itself or antibodies produced by the patient's immune system as a response to infection (Wilson 2000).

There are viruses that specifically infect humans, or other animals, or plants, or even bacteria. This is one characteristic that can be used in classifying them. However, the main basis for classification is by the type of genetic material they contain. This can be DNA or RNA, and may be in a double strand, as seen in other organisms' DNA, or in a single strand. Other characteristics include the shape of the viral particle and the sort of disease caused by infection.

The life cycle of all viruses is similar and can be summarized as follows (Goering *et al.* 2007).

1. *Attachment*: a virus particle attaches to the outside of a host cell. Viruses are generally very limited in the types of cell that they can attach to, and normally infect only a single species or a limited range of related host organisms. Even a wide-ranging virus such as rabies is restricted to infecting mammals.

2. *Penetration*: the virus particle enters the host cell. The exact mechanism of this depends on the virus and the type of host.

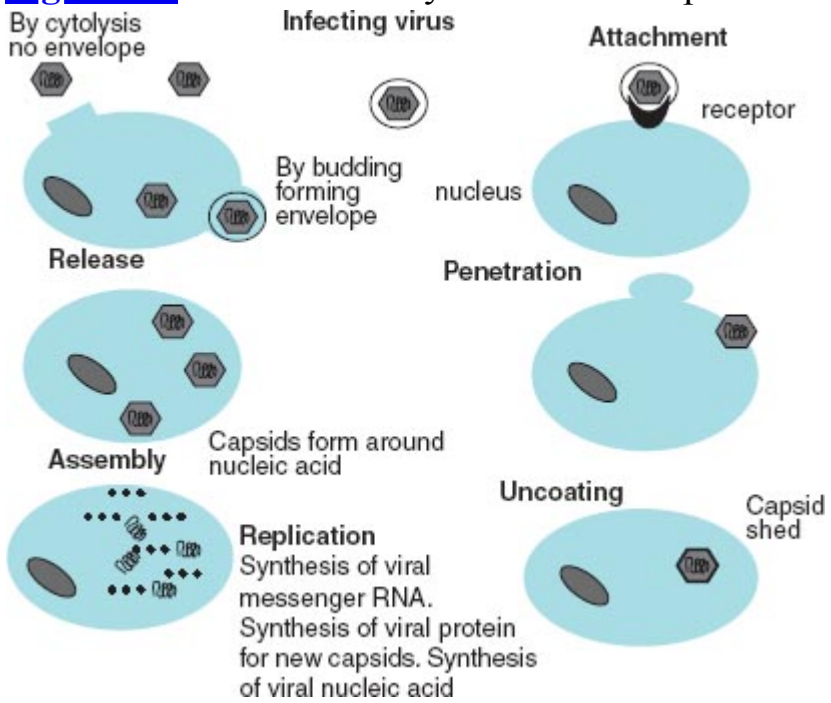
3. *Uncoating*: the virus particle breaks down and exposes the viral genetic material.

4. *Replication*: the instructions contained in the viral genes cause the host cell mechanisms to create more viral particles.

5. *Release*: the new viral particles are released from the cell. Some viruses may 'bud' from the surface of the cell, acquiring their enclosing membranes in the process, but often release occurs due to cell rupture and destruction.

This process is illustrated in Figure 3.3.

Figure 3.3 The viral life cycle. Used with permission from Perry (2007).



A final point to consider in relation to viral structure and infection prevention and control is the presence or absence of a lipid envelope enclosing the viral particle. Those viruses that have a lipid envelope, such as herpes zoster virus (responsible for chicken pox and shingles), are much more susceptible to destruction by alcohol than those without, for example norovirus, which is a common cause of viral gastroenteritis.

Fungi

Like bacteria, fungi exist in many environments on Earth, including, in some cases, as commensal organisms on human beings. Unlike bacteria, they are eukaryotic, so their cells share some characteristics with other eukaryotes such as humans, but they are distinct from both animals and

plants. Fungi are familiar to us as mushrooms and toadstools and the yeast that is used in brewing and baking. They also have many uses in the pharmaceutical industry, particularly in the production of antibiotics. Fungi produce spores, both for survival in adverse conditions, as bacteria do, and to provide a mechanism for dispersal in the same way as plants (Goering *et al.* 2007).

A few varieties of fungi are able to cause opportunistic infections in humans. These are usually found in one of two forms: either as single-celled yeast-like forms that reproduce in a similar fashion to bacteria, by dividing or budding, or as plant-like filaments called *hyphae*. A mass of hyphae together forms a *mycelium*. Some fungi may appear in either form, depending on environmental conditions. Fungal infections are referred to as *mycoses*. Superficial mycoses such as ringworm and thrush usually involve only the skin or mucous membranes and are normally mild, if unpleasant, but deeper mycoses involving major organs can be life threatening. These most frequently occur in patients who have severely impaired immune systems and may be an indicator of such impairment; for example, pneumonia caused by *Pneumocystis jiroveci* (previously *carinii*) is considered a clinical indication of AIDS. Superficial infections are generally transmitted by physical contact, whereas deeper infections can result, for example, from spores being inhaled. This is why it is important to ensure that patients with impaired immunity are protected from situations where the spores of potentially pathogenic fungi are likely to be released, for example during building work (Goering *et al.* 2007).

Protozoa

Protozoa are single-celled animals, some species of which are medically important parasites of human beings, particularly in tropical and subtropical parts of the world where diseases such as malaria are a major public health issue. Unlike bacteria, their relationship with humans is almost always parasitic – that is, their presence has an adverse effect on the host. The life cycles of protozoa can be complex, and may involve stages in different hosts.

Medically important protozoa include *Plasmodium*, the cause of malaria, *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium*, which can cause gastroenteritis, and *Trichomonas*, which is a sexually transmitted cause of vaginitis.

The most common routes of infection with protozoa are by consuming them in food or water or via an insect vector such as a mosquito (Goering *et al.* 2007). Cross-infection in the course of healthcare is uncommon but not unknown.

Helminths

'Helminth' is a generic term for parasitic worms. A number of worms from three different groups affect humans: tapeworms, roundworms (nematodes) and flukes. Transmission is generally by ingestion of eggs or larvae, or of infected animals or fish, but some are transmitted via an insect vector and some, notably the nematode *Strongyloides*, have a larval stage that is capable of penetrating the skin.

Helminth infections can affect almost every part of the body, and the effects can be severe. For example, the *Ascaris* worm can cause bowel obstruction if there are large numbers present; *Brugia* and *Wuchereria* obstruct the lymphatic system and eventually cause elephantiasis as a result; and infection with *Toxocara* (often after contact with dog faeces) can result in epilepsy or blindness. However, cross-infection in healthcare is not normally considered a significant risk.

Arthropods

Arthropods (insects) are most significant in infectious disease in terms of their function as vectors of many viral, bacterial, protozoan and helminth-caused diseases. Some flies lay eggs in the skin of mammals, including humans, and the larvae feed and develop in the skin before pupating into the adult form, and some, such as lice and mites, are associated with humans for the whole of their life cycle. Such arthropod infestations can be uncomfortable, and there is often significant social stigma attached to them, possibly because the creatures are often visible to the naked eye. The activity of the insects and the presence of their saliva and faeces can result in quite severe skin conditions that are then

vulnerable to secondary fungal or bacterial infection (Goering *et al.* 2007).

Lice

Species of *Pediculus* infest the hair and body of humans, feeding by sucking blood from their host. The adult animal is around 3 mm long and wingless, moving by means of claws. It cannot jump or fly, and dies within 24 hours if away from its host, so cross-infection is normally by direct contact or transfer of eggs or adults through sharing personal items.

Scabies

Scabies is caused by the mite *Sarcoptes scabiei*, an insect less than 1 mm long, which burrows into the top layers of skin. Infestation usually starts around the wrists and in between the fingers because acquisition is normally by close contact with an infected individual. The female mites lay eggs in these burrows and the offspring can spread to other areas of skin elsewhere on the body. The burrows are visible as a characteristic rash in the areas affected. In immunocompromised hosts or in those unable to practise normal levels of personal hygiene, very high levels of infestation can occur, often with thickening of the skin and the formation of thick crusts. This is known as 'Norwegian scabies' and is associated with a much higher risk of cross-infection than the normal presentation. Scabies is most often associated with long-stay care settings, but there have been reported outbreaks associated with more acute healthcare facilities.

Prions

Prions are thought to be the causative agents of a group of diseases called transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs), the most well known of which are Creuzfeldt–Jacob disease (CJD) and its variant (vCJD), which has been associated with the bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE) outbreak in Great Britain in the late 1980s and early 1990s. TSEs cause serious, irreversible damage to the central

nervous system and are fatal. They are characterized by ‘plaques’ in the brain that are surrounded by holes that give the appearance of a sponge, hence the name. It used to be thought that this group of diseases was caused by so-called ‘slow’ viruses but they are now widely thought to be caused by prions, although this theory is not universally accepted. The theory is described below (Weaving 2007).

The prion protein (PrP) is a normally occurring protein found on the surface of some cells (PrPC). The disease-causing form of the protein (PrPCJD) appears to have an identical amino acid sequence but has a different three-dimensional shape. When the normal protein PrPC is exposed to the disease-causing form, PrPCJD, it changes its conformation to that of PrPCJD. PrPCJD appears to progressively accumulate and be deposited in the brain, resulting in the characteristic ‘plaques’. This process is slow compared to the replication of most micro-organisms and ‘classic’ CJD normally appears in older people.

One of the characteristics of vCJD is that it affects a much younger age group, although the incubation period still appears to be a number of years. There are currently no reliable tests to identify infection before the onset of symptoms, which has led to the worry that there could be a large pool of asymptomatic carriers of the vCJD infectious agent who may act as a reservoir for onward transmission via healthcare procedures. Routes of transmission already confirmed for CJD and vCJD include dura mater and corneal grafts, treatment with human-derived growth hormone, blood transfusion and surgical instruments. The infectious agent does not appear to be affected by decontamination processes such as autoclaving and chemical disinfectants to the same extent as more familiar micro-organisms such as bacteria or viruses. This has led to extensive reviews of decontamination procedures in the UK and has resulted in an increased emphasis on effective washing to remove any residual organic material that may harbour the infectious agent, and on the tracking of instruments to individual patients to facilitate any look-back exercise should any patient be identified as suffering from CJD or vCJD at a later date.

Creuzfeldt–Jacob disease is a sporadic illness that affects around one person in every million and probably arises from a spontaneous genetic

mutation. It should also be noted that only a very small number of people have developed vCJD. It appears that a combination of exposure to the infectious agent and genetic susceptibility is necessary for progression to the disease (related TSE have a very strong genetic component), and there are numerous measures in place to prevent both the infectious agent entering the food chain and onward transmission through healthcare interventions. These appear to be the only routes of infection – there is no evidence of transmission via any other route. However, there is much that is unclear about the disease and the causative agent.

Mechanisms of infection

Whether or not a particular infectious agent will cause an infection in any given circumstance is dependent on many different factors, including how easily that agent can be transmitted and its *pathogenicity* or *virulence* – its ability to cause disease and the severity of the infection produced. However, it is generally accepted that for infection to occur, certain linked requirements need to be met. These links are often referred to as the *chain of infection* (Damani 2003). While the chain of infection will not be strictly accurate in every case – some 'links' may be missing or will overlap – it is an extremely useful model to consider how infection can be prevented, by breaking the 'links' in this chain. Some links are easier to break than others – for example, it is often easier to prevent an infectious agent entering a susceptible person than it is to prevent it leaving an infected one.

The chain of infection is illustrated in Figure 3.4 and the links are listed, with examples of how infection can be prevented at each link, in Table 3.3.

Figure 3.4 The chain of infection. A useful tool for seeing how to prevent transmission. How would you break each of the links in the chain?

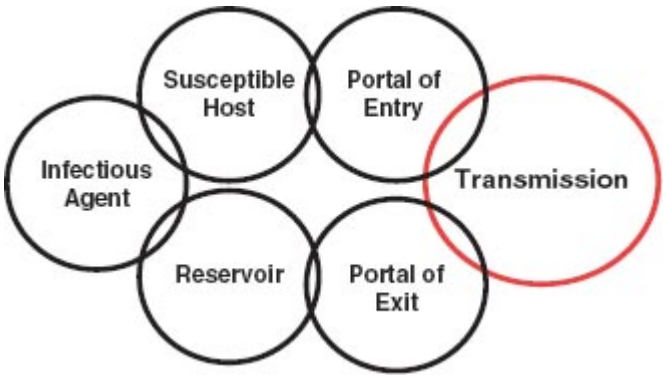


Table 3.3 Links in the chain of infection

Link	Definition	Example	Examples of breaking the chain
Infectious agent	A potentially pathogenic micro-organism or other agent	Any potential pathogen	Removal of infectious agents through cleaning; destruction of micro-organisms through sterilization of equipment; treatment of patient with bacterial infection with antibiotics
Reservoir	Any location where micro-organisms or other agents may exist or reproduce	Human beings; the healthcare environment; stagnant water	Cleaning equipment and the environment; removing stagnant water by flushing low-use taps and showers and changing flower water regularly; minimizing the number of people present in high-risk situations such as surgery
Portal of exit	The route by which the infectious agent leaves the reservoir	Diarrhoea or vomit may carry norovirus; droplets expelled during coughing or sneezing may contain respiratory pathogens	Asking a patient with active tuberculosis infection to wear a mask in communal areas of the hospital
Mode of transmission	See Modes of transmission		
Portal of entry	The route by which the infectious agent enters a new host	Organisms introduced into a normally sterile part of the body through use of an invasive device, for example urinary catheter; inhalation of airborne pathogens	Avoiding unnecessary invasive devices; using strict aseptic technique; staff members wearing masks when dealing with infectious agents that may be inhaled
Susceptible host	The person that the infectious agent enters has to be susceptible to infection	The very old and very young are more susceptible, as are people with underlying chronic illnesses	Ensuring adequate nutrition and personal hygiene; providing vaccination to healthcare workers

Modes of transmission

The mode of transmission is the method by which an infectious agent passes from one person or place to another. Considering the mode of transmission allows you to implement the measures required to prevent it.

Direct contact

This is person-to-person spread of infectious agents through physical contact between people. It occurs through normal nursing activities and can happen during aseptic procedures if technique is poor. It can be prevented through good hand hygiene and the use of barriers such as aprons and gloves.

Indirect contact

This occurs when someone comes into contact with a contaminated object. Many items in the healthcare environment can become contaminated, but the most likely routes of spread are inadequately decontaminated items of equipment used for diagnosis or treatment. Transmission is prevented by effective cleaning and decontamination and good hand hygiene.

Droplet transmission

When people cough, sneeze or even talk, they expel droplets of respiratory secretions and saliva. These droplets will travel about a metre from the person expelling them, and may contain the agents responsible for respiratory infections such as influenza or tuberculosis. Transmission is prevented through isolating the affected patient and using masks, aprons and gloves to provide a barrier, and also through good hand hygiene as there will almost always also be transmission by indirect contact.

Airborne transmission

Airborne transmission also involves droplets or particles containing infectious agents, but on a small enough scale that the particles can remain suspended in the air for long periods of time. Infections spread via this route include measles and chicken pox. Prevention is as for droplet transmission.

Parenteral transmission

This is a form of contact transmission, where blood or body fluids containing infectious agents come into contact with mucous membranes or exposed tissue. In healthcare, this can occur through transplantation

or infusion, which is why blood and organs for transplantation are screened for bloodborne viruses such as HIV, or through an inoculation injury where blood splashes into the eyes or a used item of sharp equipment penetrates the skin (often called a 'needlestick' injury). Transmission is prevented by good practice in handling and disposing of sharps and the appropriate use of protective equipment, including eye protection.

Faecal–oral transmission

This occurs when an infectious agent present in the faeces from the gastrointestinal tract of an infected person is subsequently ingested by someone else and enters their gastrointestinal tract. It is the route of much gastrointestinal illness and water- and foodborne disease. There are often several steps involved; for example, someone with infectious diarrhoea whose hand hygiene is insufficiently effective is likely to contaminate any food they prepare, which will then expose anyone who eats it to infection. Transmission is prevented through isolating any patient with symptoms of gastroenteritis, effective hand hygiene (with soap and water as many of these organisms may be less susceptible to alcohol) by both staff and patients, appropriate use of gloves and aprons, and good food hygiene.

Vector transmission

Many diseases are spread through the action of a vector, most often an insect that travels from one person to another to feed. This route is not currently a concern in healthcare in England, but in parts of the world where malaria is endemic, for example, protecting patients from vectors such as mosquitoes will be an important element of nursing care.

These definitions are useful for considering the different routes by which infectious agents can spread but there is overlap between the different categories: droplet and airborne spread, for example, or indirect contact and faecal–oral. Many agents will be spread by more than one route, or there may be a combination of routes involved. In norovirus infection, for example, the overall mode of spread is faecal–oral but if someone is infected with norovirus, they may vomit and create an

aerosol of droplets that contain the virus. Those droplets may be ingested directly from the atmosphere or they may settle on food, surfaces or equipment in the immediate vicinity. Anyone touching those surfaces will pick up the virus on their hands (indirect contact) and transmit it to their mouth either directly or via food.

Sources of infection

An individual may become infected with organisms already present on their body (endogenous infection) or introduced from elsewhere (exogenous infection). The majority of HCAIs are endogenous, hence the importance of procedures such as effective skin decontamination prior to invasive procedures.

Indicators and effects of infection

Generally, infection is said to have occurred when infectious agents enter a normally sterile area of the body and cause symptoms as a result. There are obvious exceptions to this – for example, the digestive tract is not sterile, being home to trillions of micro-organisms, but many types of infectious gastroenteritis are caused by particular organisms entering this area – but it is a useful working definition. The symptoms of infection are listed below. Not all symptoms will be present in all cases, and it should be noted that many symptoms are due to the body's response to infection and so may not be present in severely immunocompromised patients.

Symptoms of infection

- *Heat*: the site of the infection may feel warm to the touch, and the patient may have a raised temperature.
- *Pain*: at the site of the infection.
- *Swelling*: at the site of the infection.
- *Redness*: at the site of the infection.
- Pus.
- Feeling of general malaise.

- *In gastrointestinal infection*: abdominal pain and tenderness; nausea; diarrhoea and/or vomiting.
- *In urinary tract infection*: frequency of micturition; often confusion in the elderly; loin pain and/or abdominal discomfort.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

The principle of all infection prevention and control is preventing the transmission of infectious agents. However, the measures taken to reduce the risk of transmission must be reasonable, practicable and proportionate to the risk of transmission and the effects of infection with any particular agent. For example, while *Staphylococcus aureus* can cause severe infections, it is carried by around a third of the population and so isolating every patient carrying it would not be practicable. Meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) can cause equally serious infections, is resistant to many of the antibiotics that would normally be used to treat these infections and is carried by far fewer people, so it is both reasonable and practicable to take additional precautions to prevent its spread in healthcare. These may include isolation in an acute hospital but it would not be reasonable to segregate a colonized individual in a mental health unit where social interaction may form part of their care and the risk to other individuals is less.

The management of any individual who is infected or colonized with an organism that may pose a risk to other individuals must be based on a risk assessment that takes into account how easily the infectious agent can be passed to other people; the susceptibility to infection of other people being cared for in the same area and the likely consequences of their becoming infected; the practicality of implementing particular infection prevention and control precautions within that area or institution (the number of single rooms available, for example); and the individual's other nursing needs. The infection prevention and control policies of health and social care providers are based on generic risk assessments of their usual client or patient group and should be adhered to unless there are strong reasons to alter procedures for a particular

individual's care. In such circumstances, the advice of the infection prevention and control team (IPCT) should be sought first. Nurses working in independent and social care settings should seek advice from the IPCT of the local primary care organization or local health protection unit of the Health Protection Agency.

Indications

Infection prevention and control precautions must be taken with all patients, regardless of whether or not they are known to be carrying any particular infectious agent that may cause a hazard to others. This is because it is impossible to guarantee whether or not any given individual is free of any particular infectious agent and because many common micro-organisms may cause infections in some circumstances. The indications for additional infection control precautions are that an individual is particularly vulnerable to infection because of some deficiency in their normal defence mechanisms or that they are known to be infected or colonized with an infectious agent that may pose a particular risk to others.

Contraindications

As mentioned previously, precautions to prevent the spread of infection must be based on a risk assessment that takes in all the relevant factors. In some cases precautions will need to be modified because of a patient's physical or psychological needs. Isolation, for example, has been demonstrated to have an adverse psychological effect on some individuals (Morgan *et al.* 2009).

Anticipated patient outcomes

The anticipated outcome is that no patient will acquire micro-organisms from any other individual during the course of healthcare or suffer an avoidable infection.

Legal and professional issues

In England, the Health and Safety at Work, etc. Act 1974 is the primary piece of legislation relating to the safety of people in the workplace. It applies to all employees and employers, and requires them to do everything that is reasonable and practicable to prevent harm coming to anyone in the workplace. It requires employers to provide training and appropriate protective equipment and employees to follow the training that they have received, use the protective equipment provided, and report any situations where they believe inadequate precautions are putting anyone's health and safety at serious risk. This dovetails with the requirements of the Nursing and Midwifery Council (NMC 2008a) for nurses to promote and protect the well-being of those in their care and to report their concerns in writing if problems in the environment of care are putting people at risk.

The requirement to protect individuals from healthcare-associated infections is further emphasized in England by the Health and Social Care Act 2008. This legislation is monitored and enforced by the Care Quality Commission, which assesses care providers against the requirements of the Code of Practice for health and adult social care on the prevention and control of infections and related guidance (DH 2010a). Often referred to as the Hygiene Code, this has been applied to NHS hospitals in England, in one form or another, for some years but from October 2010 applies to all providers of health or adult social care. Each provider must be registered with the Care Quality Commission and declare compliance with the ten criteria of the Hygiene Code. These criteria are summarized in Table 3.4.

Table 3.4 Criteria of the 2010 Hygiene Code of Practice

Compliance criterion	What the registered provider will need to demonstrate
1	Systems to manage and monitor the prevention and control of infection. These systems use risk assessments and consider how susceptible service users are and any risks that their environment and other users may pose to them
2	Provide and maintain a clean and appropriate environment in managed premises that facilitates the prevention and control of infections
3	Provide suitable accurate information on infections to service users and their visitors
4	Provide suitable accurate information on infections to any person concerned with providing further support or nursing/medical care in a timely fashion
5	Ensure that people who have or develop an infection are identified promptly and receive the appropriate treatment and care to reduce the risk of passing on the infection to other people

6	Ensure that all staff and those employed to provide care in all settings are fully involved in the process of preventing and controlling infection
7	Provide or secure adequate isolation facilities
8	Secure adequate access to laboratory support as appropriate
9	Have and adhere to policies designed for the individual's care and provider organizations that will help to prevent and control infections
10	Ensure, so far as is reasonably practicable, that care workers are free of and are protected from exposure to infections that can be caught at work and that all staff are suitably educated in the prevention and control of infection associated with the provision of health and social care

From DH (2010a) © Crown copyright. Reproduced under the terms of the Click-use Licence.

Nurses need to be aware of the measures that are in place in their workplace to ensure compliance with the Code of Practice. For example, many hospital trusts have a programme of regular visits to clinical areas by senior staff who will carry out an inspection against the criteria of the Code as if they were an external assessor. This programme ensures that senior staff are familiar with the Code and that everyone is familiar with the inspection process. In addition, nurses may need to carry out activities to promote compliance and provide evidence of assurance, such as audits of hand hygiene performance or compliance with aseptic technique. One such set of audits in place in many hospitals in England is the package produced by the Department of Health (2007a) and known collectively as *Saving Lives*. These are discussed in more detail later.

In addition to healthcare-specific requirements, items of legislation and regulation have also been devised with the objective of reducing the risk of infection in any situation that apply to healthcare as much as they do to any other business or workplace. These include legislation and regulation relating to food hygiene (Food Safety Act 1990), water quality (Health and Safety Commission 2001), waste management (Hazardous Waste Regulations 2005) and other issues that are peripheral to healthcare but must be taken into account when developing policies and procedures for an NHS trust or other healthcare provider.

Competencies

The NMC Code (NMC 2008a) states that all nurses must work within the limits of their competence. This means not carrying out aseptic

procedures, for example, without being competent and confident that they can be carried out without increasing the risk of introducing infection through lack of knowledge or technique. However, there are some procedures for infection prevention and control that must be carried out as part of every care activity, and so all nurses must be competent in these if they are to provide any level of physical care at all. These include:

- hand hygiene
- use of personal protective equipment such as gloves and aprons
- appropriate segregation and disposal of waste, in particular used sharps items and other equipment designated as single use
- appropriate decontamination of reusable equipment after use.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

All infection prevention and control measures have the objective of preventing the transmission of infectious agents, whether by removing them from items that may be contaminated (hand hygiene and cleaning) or establishing a barrier (personal protective equipment and isolation). There are therefore some items that should be available for effective infection prevention and control in any situation where healthcare is provided.

Equipment for hand hygiene

It is essential that wherever care is provided, there are facilities for hand hygiene. Hand wash basins in clinical areas should have taps that can be turned on and off without using the hands; that is, they should be non-touch or lever operated (DH 2006b). Basins used solely by clinical staff for hand hygiene should not have plugs (to encourage hand washing under running water) or overflows because they are difficult to clean effectively and can be a reservoir for organisms such as *Pseudomonas* that may cause infection in vulnerable individuals (NHS Estates 2001). Basins that are also used by patients may require plugs, which will

require careful management with some client groups to reduce the risk of flooding. In all cases, the taps should be positioned so that water does not fall directly into the outflow as this may lead to splashes containing organisms from within the drain. Taps should be of a mixer type that allows the temperature to be set before handwashing starts. Access to basins must be unobstructed by any furniture or equipment to ensure that they can easily be used whenever required.

Liquid soap dispensers should be positioned close to hand wash basins and care should be taken to ensure that soap cannot drip onto the floor from the dispenser and cause a slip hazard. Soap should be simple and unscented to minimize the risk of adverse reactions from frequent use. There is no advantage to using soap or detergents combined with or containing antimicrobial agents for routine handwashing. These preparations carry a higher risk of adverse reactions and should not be used routinely. Bar soap should not be used. A paper towel dispenser should be fixed to the wall close to the hand wash basin. Hand towels should be of adequate quality to ensure that hands are completely dried by the proper use of one or two towels. To conveniently dispose of these towels, a suitable bin with a pedal-operated lid should be positioned close to the basin, but not so that it obstructs access to the basin.

Alcohol-based handrub should be available at the point of care in every clinical area for use immediately before care and between different care activities on the same patient (NPSA 2008). Dispensers may be attached to the patient's bed or bedside locker, and free-standing pump-top bottles can be used where appropriate, such as on the desk in a room used for outpatient clinics. Dispensers should not be sited close to sinks unless this is unavoidable because of the risk of confusion with soap, particularly if the dispensers are similar. Smaller sized personal-issue bottles are appropriate where there is a risk that handrub may be accidentally or deliberately drunk, such as in paediatric areas or when caring for a patient with alcohol dependency (NPSA 2008). *Note*: Antiseptic handrubs based on non-alcoholic antiseptics are available but evidence suggests that alcohol is the most useful agent in terms of range and speed of antimicrobial activity (WHO 2009).

Equipment for waste disposal

Also available should be disposal bags for domestic and clinical waste and a sharps bin if the procedure is to involve the use of any sharp single-use items (DH 2006a). The sharps bin should always be taken to the point of use (Pratt *et al.* 2007); do not transport used sharps in any other way or in any other container. Bags and containers used for hazardous waste should be coloured according to their final disposal method (DH 2006a).

Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)

Other equipment required for infection prevention and control will depend on the activity being carried out, but basic PPE to provide a barrier to body fluids and micro-organisms – non-latex disposable gloves, disposable aprons and eye protection as a minimum – should be readily available in the clinical area (Pratt *et al.* 2007), and particularly where regular use is anticipated. For example, it is appropriate to have dispensers for gloves and aprons situated outside isolation rooms. All PPE sold in the UK must comply with the relevant regulations and standards, including being 'CE' marked to demonstrate that they meet these standards (Department of Trade and Industry 2002).

Disposable gloves

Gloves will be necessary in some circumstances but should be worn only when required (Infection Control Nurses Association 2002). Non-sterile disposable gloves are most usefully available packaged in boxes of 100 ambidextrous gloves, in small, medium and large sizes. These boxes should be located close to the point of use, ideally in a fixed dispenser to make removing the gloves from the box as easy as possible. In the past, natural rubber latex was a commonly used material for these gloves but concerns about latex sensitivity mean that many healthcare organizations have adopted gloves made of alternative materials such as vinyl. There is some evidence that vinyl may be a less effective barrier than latex, but all gloves carry a risk of failure, often not visible to the naked eye (Korniewicz *et al.* 2002), hence the need for hand hygiene

regardless of whether or not gloves are worn. Whatever the material, these gloves are single use – they should be used for the task for which they are required and then removed and disposed of. They cannot be cleaned and reused for another task (MHRA 2006, Pratt *et al.* 2007).

Disposable aprons

Single-use disposable aprons may be obtained either in a box or linked together on a roll. Presentation is not important as long as it is compatible with the dispensers in use and the product meets the requisite standards (i.e. is 'CE' marked). Aprons are normally made of thin polythene and are available in a range of colours. Different coloured aprons can be used to designate staff doing different tasks or working in different areas to give a visible reminder of the risk of cross-infection. As with disposable gloves, disposable aprons should be used for the task for which they are required and then removed and disposed of (MHRA 2006, Pratt *et al.* 2007).

Sterile gloves

Single-use sterile gloves, both latex and latex free, should be available in any area where their use is anticipated. Sterile gloves are packed as a left-and-right pair and are manufactured in a wide range of full and half sizes (similar to shoe sizes) so as to fit closely and provide the best possible compromise between acting as a barrier and allowing the wearer to work normally. Natural rubber latex is still one of the best materials for this, so sterile gloves are more often made of this than of alternative materials. Care must be taken to ensure alternatives are available for patients with sensitivity to latex.

Sterile gowns

To provide 'maximal barrier precautions' during surgery or other invasive procedures carrying a high risk of infection, or where infection would have serious consequences such as insertion of a central venous catheter, a sterile gown will be required in addition to sterile gloves.

Modern sterile gowns are most often single-use disposable products made of water-repellent material as multiple-use fabric gowns may, over time, lose their effectiveness as a barrier.

Eye protection

Eye protection will be required in any situation where the mucous membranes of the eyes may be exposed to body fluid droplets generated during aerosol-generating procedures or surgery with power tools. Both single-use and multiple-use options are available. Goggles are normally sufficient as long as they are worn in conjunction with a fluid-repellent mask. If greater protection is required, or a mask is not worn for any reason, a face shield should be used. Face shields may also be more appropriate for people who wear glasses; prescription glasses will often not provide sufficient protection and should not be relied upon.

Masks and respirators

If dealing with organisms spread by the airborne or droplet route, a facemask or respirator will be required. When using a respirator (usually used to prevent the transmission of respiratory viruses), a good fit is essential to ensure that there is no leakage around the sides. Staff who are likely to need to use respirators should be 'fit tested' using a taste test to ensure that they have the correct size. A taste test consists of wearing the respirator while being exposed to a strong-tasting vapour (normally inside a hood to contain the vapour); if the subject can taste the vapour then the respirator is not properly fitted. Fit testing is normally carried out by the infection prevention and control team or occupational health department. Note that facial hair under the edge of the respirator will prevent a proper seal; staff with beards may therefore be unable to work safely if a respirator is required.

Single-use masks and respirators are normally the best option (and should be strictly single use). In the past, some materials used in mask manufacture would become wet from exhaled moisture and lose their barrier properties; modern products contain fluid-resistant materials and will last for the full duration of an episode of use. Multiple-use

respirators are sometimes required, often for people whose face shape does not allow a good seal with disposable products (DH 2010b).

Assessment and recording tools

Assessment for infection prevention and control should take place at every level in an organization providing healthcare, from completing an assessment of infection risks (both to and from the patient) as part of the care planning process to the audit of compliance in a team, unit or hospital (DH 2010a). As mentioned previously, the Care Quality Commission assesses care providers in England against the requirements of the Hygiene Code. Other external assessors may also require evidence that procedures are in place to reduce the risk of healthcare-associated infection. Such evidence may include audits of compliance with hand hygiene against the WHO '5 moments' when hand hygiene should be performed at the point of care (WHO 2009) or audits to demonstrate that all the elements of a procedure that carries a particular risk of infection have been carried out. Such procedures are sometimes referred to as 'high-impact interventions' because the risk of infection is such that improving adherence to good practice when they are carried out can have a significant impact on an organization's infection rates. The English Department of Health's *Saving Lives* toolkit (DH 2007a) is a collection of guidelines for high-impact interventions in the form of care bundles, and audits of those care bundles that can be used both for practice improvement and as evidence of good practice for internal and external assessment. All nurses should know which of these tools are being used in their workplace and actively participate in their completion.

At the level of individual patients, all additional precautions for infection prevention should be documented within the patient's individual plan of care, which should include regular reassessment and changes as necessary as the patient's condition alters. For example, a patient given antibiotics for a chest infection may be at risk of developing *Clostridium difficile* infection; if they develop diarrhoea, they will need to be isolated immediately but if the diarrhoea settles following treatment, they will no longer require isolation once they have

been free of symptoms for 48 hours (DH/HPA 2008). When a procedure is carried out that requires additional precautions, for example aseptic technique, it should be documented in the record of that procedure that those precautions were adhered to or, if not, the reasons why they could not be implemented.

Specific patient preparations

Education

All patients should be informed about the risks of healthcare-associated infection and the measures that are known to reduce the risk of infection. In particular, patient education programmes that encourage the patient to ask healthcare workers 'Did you wash your hands?' have been demonstrated to increase compliance with hand hygiene (McGuckin *et al.* 2001). In addition, patients who are infected or colonized with infectious agents that require additional precautions to be implemented to reduce the risk of infection to other patients must be clearly told the nature of the infectious agent and its mode of spread, the risk to others, the details of the precautions required and the rationale behind them. Patients are likely to suffer anxiety if they are infected or colonized by such agents and this can be alleviated through being provided with clear information. Similarly, there are adverse psychological effects of isolation and other precautions (Gammon 1998) and these are more likely to be mitigated if the patient has a clear understanding of why they are being implemented (Ward 2000).

Procedure guideline 3.1 Handwashing

Essential equipment

- Hand wash basin
- Liquid soap
- Paper towels
- Domestic waste bin

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Remove any rings, bracelets and wristwatch	Jewellery inhibits good handwashing. Dirt and

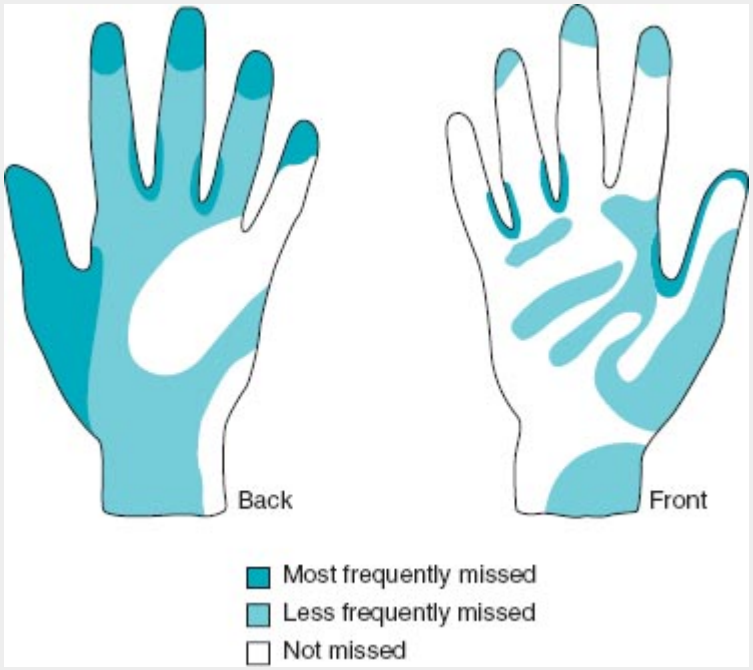
still worn and roll up sleeves. (Note: It is good practice to remove all hand and wrist jewellery and roll up sleeves before entering any clinical area and the English Department of Health has instructed NHS trusts to implement a 'bare below the elbows' dress code.)	bacteria can remain beneath jewellery after handwashing. Long sleeves prevent washing of wrists and will easily become contaminated and a route of transmission of micro-organisms (DH 2010c, C).
2 Cover cuts and abrasions on hands with waterproof dressing.	Cuts and abrasions can become contaminated with bacteria and cannot be easily cleaned. Repeated handwashing can worsen an injury (WHO 2009, C). Breaks in the skin will allow the entry of potential pathogens.
3 Remove nail varnish and artificial nails (most uniform policies and dress codes prohibit these). Nails must also be short and clean.	Long and false nails and imperfections in nail polish harbour dirt and bacteria that are not effectively removed by handwashing (WHO 2009, C).
Procedure	
4 Turn on the taps and where possible direct the water flow away from the plughole. Run the water at a flow rate that prevents splashing.	Plugholes are often contaminated with micro-organisms that could be transferred to the environment or the user if splashing occurs (NHS Estates 2001, C).
5 Run the water until hand hot.	Warm water is more pleasant to wash with than cold so handwashing is more likely to be carried out effectively. E Water that is too hot could cause scalding. Soap is more effective in breaking down dirt and organic matter when used with hand-hot water (DH 2001, C).
6 Wet the surface of hands and wrists.	Soap applied directly onto dry hands may damage the skin. E The water will also quickly mix with the soap to speed up handwashing.
7 Apply liquid soap and water to all surfaces of the hands.	Liquid soap is very effective in removing dirt, organic material and any loosely adherent transient flora. Tablets of soap can become contaminated, potentially transferring micro-organisms from one user to another, but may be used if liquid soap is unavailable (DH 2001, C). To ensure all surfaces of the hands are cleaned. E
8 Rub hands together for a minimum of 10–15 seconds, with particular attention to between the fingers and the tips of fingers and thumbs (see Action Figure 8a). The areas that are most frequently missed through poor hand hygiene technique are shown in Action Figure 8b.	To ensure all surfaces of the hands are cleaned. Areas that are missed can be a source of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
9 Rinse soap thoroughly off hands.	Soap residue can lead to irritation and damage to the skin. Damaged skin does not provide a barrier to infection for the healthcare worker and can become colonized with potentially pathogenic bacteria, leading to cross-infection (DH 2001, C).
10 Turn off the taps using your wrist or elbow.	To avoid re-contaminating the hands. E

If the taps are not lever-type, turn them off using a paper hand towel to prevent contact.	
Postprocedure	
11 Dry hands thoroughly with a disposable paper towel from a towel dispenser.	Damp hands encourage the multiplication of bacteria and can potentially become sore (DH 2001, C).
12 Dispose of used paper towels in a black bag in a foot-operated waste bin.	Paper towels used to dry the hands are normally non-hazardous and can be disposed of via the domestic waste stream (DH 2006a, C). Using a foot-operated waste bin prevents contamination of the hands. E

Action Figure 8a 1. Rub hands palm to palm. 2. Rub back of each hand with palm of other hand with fingers interlaced. 3. Rub palm to palm with fingers interlaced. Rub with back of fingers to opposing palms with fingers interlocked. Rub tips of fingers. Rub tips of fingers in opposite palm in a circular motion. 4. Rub each thumb clasped in opposite hand using a rotational movement. 5. Rub each wrist with opposite hand. 6. Rinse hands with water.

Action Figure 8b Areas most commonly missed following handwashing.

Reproduced by kind permission of the Nursing Times where this first appeared in 1978.



Procedure guideline 3.2 Hand decontamination using alcohol handrub

Essential equipment

- Alcohol-based handrub

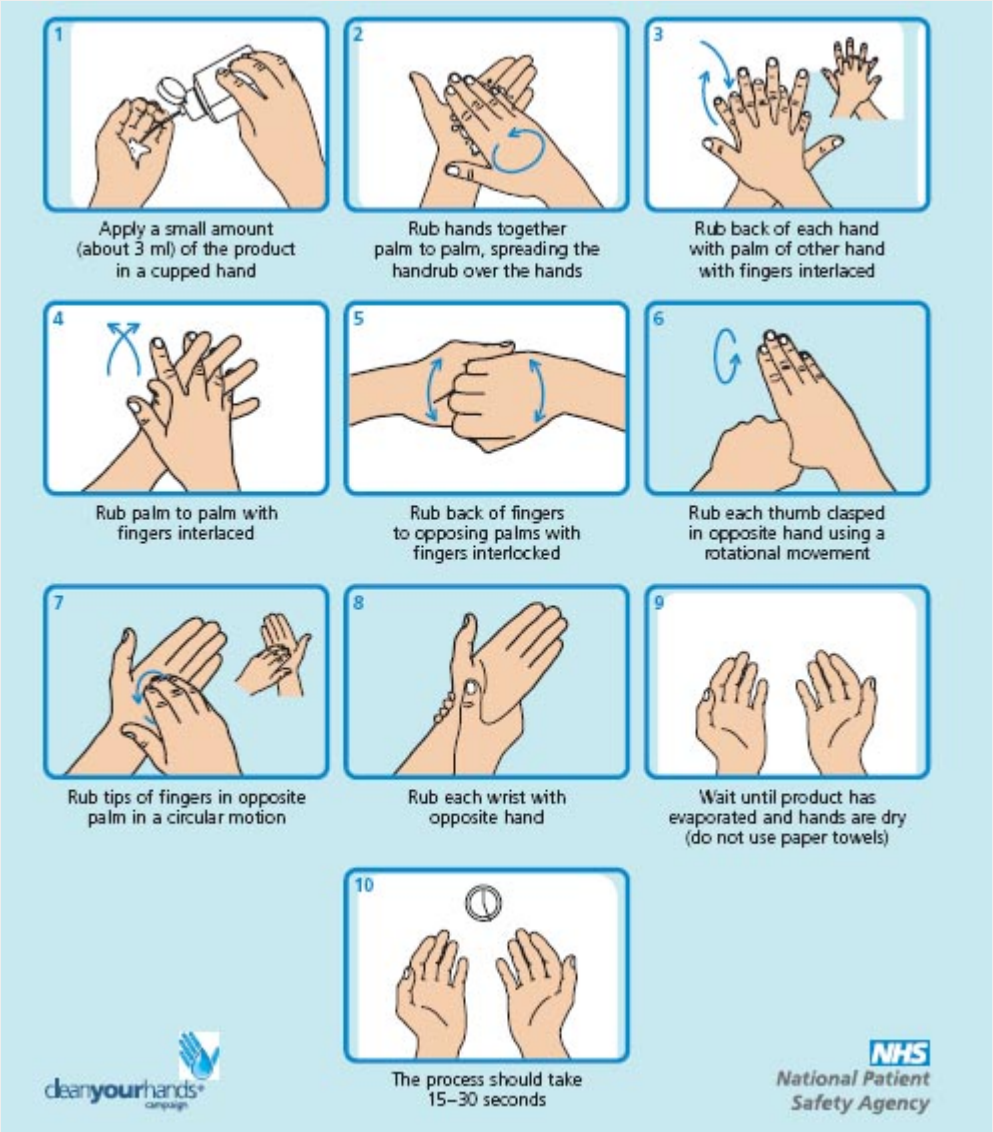
Procedure

Action	Rationale
1 Dispense the amount of handrub indicated in the manufacturer's instructions into the palm of one hand.	Too much handrub will take longer to dry and may consequently cause delays; too little will not decontaminate hands adequately. E
2 Rub the alcohol handrub into all areas of the hands, until the hands are dry, using the illustrated actions in Action Figure 2.	To ensure all areas of the hands are cleaned. Alcohol is a rapid-acting disinfectant, with the added advantage that it evaporates, leaving the hands dry. This prevents contamination of equipment, whilst facilitating the application of gloves (WHO 2009, C, E).

Action Figure 2 Alcohol handrub hand hygiene technique – for visibly clean hands. Adapted from WHO (2009).

© *Crown copyright.*

Reproduced under the terms of the Click-use Licence.



Procedure guideline 3.3 Putting on and removing non-sterile gloves

Essential equipment

- Non-sterile gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Clean hands before putting on gloves.	Hands must be cleansed before and after every patient contact or contact with patient's equipment (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).

Procedure	
2 Remove gloves from the box singly (see Action Figure 2), to prevent contamination of the gloves lower down. If it is likely that more than two gloves will be required (i.e. if the procedure requires gloves to be changed part-way through), consider removing all the gloves needed before starting the procedure.	To prevent cross-contamination. E
3 Holding the cuff of the glove, pull it into position, taking care not to contaminate the glove from the wearer's skin (see Action Figure 3). This is particularly important when the second glove is being put on, as the gloved hand of the first glove can touch the skin of the ungloved second hand if care is not taken.	To prevent cross-contamination. E
4 During the procedure or when undertaking two procedures with the same patient, it may be necessary to change gloves. Gloves are single-use items and must not be cleansed and reused.	Disposable gloves are single-use items. They cannot be cleaned and reused for the same or another patient (MHRA 2006, C).
5 If gloves become damaged during use they must be replaced.	Damaged gloves are not an effective barrier. E
6 Remove the gloves when the procedure is completed, taking care not to contaminate the hands or the environment from the outside of the gloves.	The outside of the glove may be contaminated. E
7 Remove the first glove by firmly holding the outside of the glove wrist and pulling off the glove in such a way as to turn it inside out (see Action Figure 7).	Whilst removing the first glove, the second gloved hand continues to be protected. By turning the glove inside out during removal, any contamination is contained inside the glove. E
8 Remove the second glove by slipping the fingers of the ungloved hand inside the wrist of the glove and pulling it off whilst at the same time turning it inside out (see Action Figure 8).	By putting the fingers inside the glove, they will not be in contact with the potentially contaminated outer surface of the glove. E
Postprocedure	
9 Dispose of used gloves as 'hazardous infectious waste' (see Action Figure 9), that is, into an orange waste bag, unless instructed otherwise by the infection prevention and control team.	All waste contaminated with blood, body fluids, excretions, secretions and infectious agents thought to pose a particular risk should be disposed of as hazardous infectious waste. Orange is the recognized colour for hazardous infectious waste that does not require incineration and may be made safe by alternative treatment (DH 2006a, C).
10 After removing the gloves, decontaminate your hands.	Hands may have become contaminated (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).

Action Figure 2 Remove gloves from the box.

Action Figure 3 Holding the cuff of the glove, pull it into position.

Action Figure 7 Remove the first glove by firmly holding the outside of the glove wrist, then pull off the glove in such a way as to turn it inside out.

Action Figure 8 Remove the second glove by slipping the thumb of the ungloved hand inside the wrist of the glove and pulling it off while turning it inside out.

Action Figure 9 Dispose of used gloves.

Procedure guideline 3.4 Putting on and removing a disposable apron

Essential equipment

- Disposable apron

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Remove an apron from the dispenser or roll using clean hands and open it out.	To make it easy to put on. E
Procedure	
2 Place the neck loop over your head and tie the ties together behind your back, positioning the apron so that as much of the front of your body is protected as possible (see Action Figure 2a,2b).	To minimize the risk of contamination being transferred between your clothing and the patient, in either direction. E
3 If gloves are required, don them as described in Procedure guideline 3.3. At the end of the procedure, remove gloves first.	The gloves are more likely to be contaminated than the apron and therefore should be removed first to prevent cross-contamination (DH 2010b, C).
4 Remove the apron by breaking the ties and neck loop; grasp the inside of the apron and dispose of it (see Action Figure 4).	The inside of the apron should be clean. E
Postprocedure	
5 Dispose of used aprons as 'hazardous infectious waste', that is, into an orange waste bag, unless instructed otherwise by the infection prevention and control team.	All waste contaminated with blood, body fluids, excretions, secretions and infectious agents thought to pose a particular risk should be disposed of as hazardous infectious waste. Orange is the recognized colour for hazardous infectious waste that does not require incineration and may be made safe by alternative treatment (DH 2006a, C).
6 After removing the apron, decontaminate your hands.	Hands may have become contaminated (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).

Action Figure 2a Place the neck loop of the apron over your head.

Action Figure 2b Tie the ties together behind your back, positioning the apron so that as much of the front of your body is protected as possible.

Action Figure 4 Remove the apron by breaking the neck loop and ties.

Procedure guideline 3.5 Putting on and removing a disposable mask or respirator

Essential equipment

- Disposable surgical mask or respirator

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Remove surgical-type masks singly from the box, or remove individually wrapped items from their packaging, with clean hands.	To prevent contamination of the item or others in the box or dispenser. E
2 Remove glasses, if worn.	Glasses will obstruct the correct positioning of the mask or respirator and may be dislodged and damaged. E
Procedure	
3 Place the mask/respirator over nose, mouth and chin (see Action Figure 3).	To ensure correct positioning. E
4 Fit the flexible nose piece over the bridge of your nose if wearing a respirator.	To ensure the best fit. E
5 Secure the mask or respirator at the back of the head with ties or fitted elastic straps and adjust to fit (see Action Figure 5).	To ensure the mask/respirator is comfortable to wear and remains in the correct position throughout the procedure. E
6 If wearing a respirator, perform a fit check. First, breathe in – respirator should collapse or be 'sucked in' to the face. Then breathe out – respirator should not leak around the edges.	To ensure that there is a good seal around the edge of the respirator so that there is no route for non-filtered air to pass in either direction. Note that this check should be carried out whenever a respirator is

	worn and is not a substitute for prior fit testing (DH 2010b, C, E).
7 Replace glasses, if worn.	To restore normal vision. E
8 At the end of the procedure, or after leaving the room in which the respirator is required, remove by grasping the ties or straps at the back of the head and either break them or pull them forward over the top of the head. Do not touch the front of the mask/respirator (see Action Figure 8a, 8b).	To avoid contaminating the hands with material from the outside of the mask/respirator (DH 2010b, C, E).
9 Dispose of used disposable items as 'hazardous infectious waste', that is, into an orange waste bag, unless instructed otherwise by the infection prevention and control team.	All waste contaminated with blood, body fluids, excretions, secretions and infectious agents thought to pose a particular risk should be disposed of as hazardous infectious waste. Orange is the recognized colour for hazardous infectious waste that does not require incineration and may be made safe by alternative treatment (DH 2006a, C).
Postprocedure	
10 Clean reusable items according to the manufacturer's instructions, usually with detergent and water or a detergent wipe.	To avoid cross-contamination and ensure the item is suitable for further use (DH 2010b, C, E).

Action Figure 3 Place the mask over your nose, mouth and chin.

Action Figure 5 Secure the mask at the back of the head with ties.

Action Figure 8a After use, remove the mask by untying or breaking the ties and pulling them forward.

Action Figure 8b Do not touch the front of the mask.

Procedure guideline 3.6 Putting on or removing goggles or a face shield

Purpose: To protect the mucous membranes of the eyes, nose and mouth from body fluid droplets generated during aerosol-generating procedures or surgery with power tools.

Essential equipment

- Reusable or disposable goggles or face shield

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Remove eye protection from any packaging with clean hands.	To prevent cross-contamination. E
Procedure	
2 Apply demister solution according to manufacturer's instructions, if required.	To ensure good visibility throughout the procedure. E
3 Position item over eyes/face and secure using ear pieces or headband; adjust to fit.	To ensure the item is comfortable to wear and remains in the correct position throughout the procedure. E
4 At the end of the procedure, remove by grasping the ear pieces or headband at the back or side of the	To avoid contaminating the hands with material from the outside of the eye protection (DH 2010b, C, E).

head and lifting forward, away from the face. Do not touch the front of the goggles or face shield (see Action Figure 4).	
Postprocedure	
5 Dispose of used disposable items as 'hazardous infectious waste', that is, into an orange waste bag, unless instructed otherwise by the infection prevention and control team.	All waste contaminated with blood, body fluids, excretions, secretions and infectious agents thought to pose a particular risk should be disposed of as hazardous infectious waste. Orange is the recognized colour for hazardous infectious waste that does not require incineration and may be made safe by alternative treatment (DH 2006a, C).
6 Clean reusable items according to the manufacturer's instructions, usually with detergent and water or a detergent wipe.	To avoid cross-contamination and ensure the item is suitable for further use. E

Action Figure 4 Don and remove eye protection by grasping the earpieces; do not touch the front.

Procedure guideline 3.7 Donning sterile gloves: open technique

Purpose: To have a barrier between the nurse's hands and the patient to prevent the transmission of infectious agents in either direction, and to prevent contamination of a vulnerable area or invasive device through contact with non-sterile gloves.

Note that in steps 4 and 5, below, either glove can be put on first. Simply exchange 'left' and 'right' in the description if you wish to put on the right-hand glove first.

Essential equipment

- Sterile disposable gloves
- All other equipment required for the procedure for which the gloves are required

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Clean hands using soap and water or alcohol-based handrub.	Hands must be cleansed before and after every patient contact or contact with patient's equipment (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
2 Prepare all the equipment required for the procedure, including setting up the sterile field and tipping sterile items on to it from packets if you do not have an assistant, but do not touch any sterile item before putting on gloves.	To avoid contaminating gloves with non-sterile packets. E
Procedure	
3 Open the packet containing the gloves and open out the inside packaging on a clean surface so that the fingers of the gloves are pointed away from you, taking care not to touch the gloves or allow them to come into contact with anything that is non-sterile (see Action Figure 3).	To prevent contamination of the gloves and to put them in the best position for putting them on. E
4 Hold the cuff of the left-hand glove with your right fingertips, at the uppermost edge where the cuff folds back on itself. Lift this edge away from the opposite edge to create an opening. Keeping them together, slide the fingers of the left hand into the glove, taking care not to contaminate the outside of the glove, while keeping hold of the folded edge in the other hand and pulling the glove onto the hand. Spread the fingers of the left hand slightly to help them enter the fingers of the glove (Action Figure 4a, 4b, 4c).	To prevent contamination of the outside of the glove. E
5 Open up the right-hand glove with your left hand fingertips by sliding them beneath the folded-back cuff. Taking care not to touch the left-hand glove or the outside of the right-hand glove, and keeping the fingers together, slide the fingers of the right hand into the right-hand glove. Again, spread your fingers slightly once inside the body of the glove to help them into the glove fingers (see Action Figure 5a, 5b).	To prevent contamination of the outside of the glove. E
6 When both gloves are on, adjust the fit by pulling on the body of the glove to get your fingers to the end of the glove fingers (see Action Figure 6a, 6b).	To ensure the gloves are comfortable to wear and do not interfere with the procedure. E
Postprocedure	
7 Remove the gloves when the procedure is completed,	The outside of the glove is likely to

taking care not to contaminate the hands or the environment from the outside of the gloves.	be contaminated. E
8 First, remove the first glove by firmly holding the outside of the glove wrist and pulling off the glove in such a way as to turn it inside out.	Whilst removing the first glove, the second gloved hand continues to be protected. By turning the glove inside out during removal, any contamination is contained inside the glove. E
9 Then remove the second glove by slipping the fingers of the ungloved hand inside the wrist of the glove and pulling it off whilst at the same time turning it inside out.	By putting the fingers inside the glove, the fingers will not be in contact with the potentially contaminated outer surface of the glove. E
10 Dispose of used gloves as 'hazardous infectious waste', that is, into an orange waste bag, unless instructed otherwise by the infection prevention and control team.	All waste contaminated with blood, body fluids, excretions, secretions and infectious agents thought to pose a particular risk should be disposed of as hazardous infectious waste. Orange is the recognized colour for hazardous infectious waste that does not require incineration and may be made safe by alternative treatment (DH 2006a, C).
11 After removing the gloves, decontaminate your hands.	Hands may have become contaminated (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).

Action Figure 3 Open the packet containing the gloves onto a clean surface and open out the inside packaging so that the fingers of the gloves point away from you.

Action Figure 4a Hold the cuff of the first glove with the opposite hand and slide the fingertips of the other hand (that the glove is to go on) into the opening.

Action Figure 4b Keep hold of the folded edge and pull the glove onto your hand.

Action Figure 4c Spread your fingers slightly to help them enter the fingers of the glove.

Action Figure 5a Slide the fingertips of your gloved hand beneath the folded cuff of the second glove.

Action Figure 5b Slide the fingertips of your ungloved hand into the opening of the second glove.

Action Figure 6a Pull the glove onto your hand, again spreading your fingers slightly to help them enter the fingers of the glove.

Action Figure 6b When both gloves are on, adjust the fit.

Procedure guideline 3.8 Donning a sterile gown and gloves: closed technique

Note 1:These procedures will normally require participants to also wear a mask and eye protection.

Note 2: An assistant is required to open sterile gloves and tie the back of the gown.

Essential equipment

- Sterile disposable gloves
- Sterile disposable or reusable gown

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Prepare the area where gowning and gloving will take place. Open the gown pack with clean hands. Do not touch the inside of the package.	To ensure that there is adequate room to don gown and gloves and to avoid contaminating either. E
2 Wash your hands using a surgical scrub technique with either antiseptic hand wash solution or soap. Dry using a separate sterile paper towel for each hand and forearm. If hands have been washed with soap, apply an antiseptic handrub to the hands and forearms.	To both disinfect and physically remove matter and micro-organisms from the hands (WHO 2009, C).
Procedure	
3 Open the inner layer of the gown pack, if present (see Action Figure 3a, 3b).	To allow the gown to be removed. E
4 Grasp the gown on its inside surface just below the neck opening (this should be uppermost if the gown pack has been opened correctly) and lift it up, holding it away from the body and any walls or furniture. The gown should fall open with the inside facing towards you (see Action Figure 4).	To open out the gown while keeping its outer surface sterile. E
5 Insert the free hand into the corresponding sleeve of the gown, pulling the gown towards you, until your fingers reach, but do not go beyond, the cuff of the sleeve (see Action Figure 5).	To pull on the gown while keeping its outer surface sterile. E
6 Release the inside surface of the gown and insert that hand into	To pull on the gown while

the corresponding sleeve, again until your fingers reach, but do not go beyond, the cuff of the sleeve. The assistant should help by pulling on the ties of the gown (see Action Figure 6).	keeping its outer surface sterile. E
7 The assistant opens a pair of sterile gloves and presents the inner packaging for you to take. Place this on the sterile area of the open gown package so that the fingers of the gloves point towards you (see Action Figure 7).	To prepare the gloves for donning while keeping them and the gown sterile. E
8 Open the inner packaging of the gloves. The fingers should be towards you, the thumbs uppermost and the cuffs folded over. Keeping your hands within the sleeves of the gown, slide the thumb of your right hand (still inside the sleeve) between the folded-over cuff and the body of the right glove. Pick up that glove. Grasp the cuff of that glove on the opposite side with the other hand (still inside its sleeve) and unfold it, pulling it over the cuff of the sleeve and the hand inside. Then push your right hand through the cuff of the sleeve into the glove. Repeat the process with the left hand. Once both hands are inside their respective gloves, there is no risk of contaminating the outside of the gloves or gown with your bare hands (see Action Figure 8a, 8b, 8c, 8d, 8e, 8f, 8g).	To don the gloves while keeping their outer surface sterile and ensuring that there is no risk of contaminating the outside of the gown. E
9 If you need to change a glove because it is damaged or contaminated, pull the sleeve cuff down over your hand as you do so and don the replacement glove using the technique above.	To minimize the risk of contaminating the gown or the sterile field. E
10 Dispose of used gloves and disposable gowns as 'hazardous infectious waste', that is, into an orange waste bag, unless instructed otherwise by the infection prevention and control team.	All waste contaminated with blood, body fluids, excretions, secretions and infectious agents thought to pose a particular risk should be disposed of as hazardous infectious waste. Orange is the recognized colour for hazardous infectious waste that does not require incineration and may be made safe by alternative treatment (DH 2006a, C).
Postprocedure	
11 At the end of the procedure, remove gown and gloves as a single unit by pulling the gown away from you so as to turn it and the gloves inside out (see Action Figure 11a, 11b).	
12 Consign reusable gowns as infected linen according to local arrangements.	To minimize any risk to laundry workers from contaminated items (NHS Executive 1995, C).
13 After removing the gloves and gown, decontaminate your hands.	Hands may have become contaminated (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).

Action Figure 3a Open the gown pack with clean hands onto a clean surface. Do not touch the inner packet until after the surgical

scrub.

Action Figure 3b Open the inner layer of the pack; use sterile towels to dry hands and forearms if required.

Action Figure 4 Lift up the gown by its inner surface and hold it away from the body.

Action Figure 5 Put one hand into the corresponding sleeve and use the other hand to pull the gown towards you. Your hand should not go beyond the cuff.

Action Figure 6 Put the other hand into the other sleeve. Again, your hand should not go beyond the cuff.

Action Figure 7 The assistant opens a pair of sterile gloves and presents the inner packaging for you to take.

Action Figure 8a Take the gloves, keeping your hands inside your sleeves.

Action Figure 8b Open the inner glove packet on the sterile open gown package so that the glove fingers point towards you.

Action Figure 8c Slide the thumb of one hand (still inside the sleeve) under the folded-over cuff of the corresponding glove.

Action Figure 8d Push your hand through the cuff and into the glove.

Action Figure 8e Pull the glove into position using the other hand (still inside its sleeve).

Action Figure 8f Repeat the process with the other glove.

Action Figure 8g Adjust the fit when both gloves are on.

Action Figure 11a At the end of the procedure, remove gown and gloves as a single unit by pulling the gown away from you.

Action Figure 11b Turn it and the gloves inside out.

Aseptic technique

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Aseptic technique is the practice of carrying out a procedure in such a way that you minimize the risk of introducing contamination into a

vulnerable area or contaminating an invasive device. Aseptic technique is required whenever you are carrying out a procedure that involves contact with a part of the body or an invasive device where introducing micro-organisms may increase the risk of infection. Note that the area or device on which you are working will not necessarily be sterile – wounds, for example, will be colonized with micro-organisms – but your aim must be to avoid introducing additional contamination.

Aseptic non-touch technique (ANTT®) is the practice of avoiding contamination by not touching key elements such as the tip of a needle, the seal of an intravenous connector after it has been decontaminated, or the inside surface of a sterile dressing where it will be in contact with the wound. An example of non-touch technique is illustrated in Figure 3.5. Gloves are normally worn for ANTT but they are mainly for the practitioner's, rather than the patient's, protection. Non-sterile gloves are therefore perfectly acceptable.

Figure 3.5 Avoiding contamination by avoiding contact with the key elements. With permission from ICU Medical Europe S.R.L.

As with other infection prevention and control measures, the actions taken to reduce the risk of contamination will depend on the procedure being undertaken and the potential consequences of contamination. Examples of different aseptic techniques and the measures required for them are given in Table 3.5. It is therefore difficult to provide a procedure guideline that will apply to the whole range of aseptic procedures. To provide a context, the following procedure contains steps for changing a wound dressing but is presented as a guide to aseptic

technique in general. Local guidance and training should be sought before carrying out specific procedures. Some specific procedures are described in other chapters of this manual.

Table 3.5 Examples of aseptic procedures

Procedure	Precautions required
Surgical joint replacement	Must be carried out in an operating theatre with specialist ventilation by a team who will wear sterile gowns and gloves, or even full body suits with individual exhaust systems to eliminate airborne contamination
Urinary catheterization	Can be carried out in an open ward by a practitioner wearing an apron and sterile gloves
Peripheral intravenous cannulation	Can be performed wearing non-sterile gloves and using an appropriate non-touch technique

Procedure guideline 3.9 Aseptic technique, for example, changing a wound dressing

Essential equipment (will vary depending on procedure)

- Sterile dressing pack containing gallipots or an indented plastic tray, low-linting swabs and/or medical foam, disposable forceps, gloves, sterile field, disposal bag. Please note that there may be different packs specifically for particular procedures, for example IV packs. Usage and availability of these will vary locally so reference is generally made to 'sterile dressing pack'
- Fluids for cleaning and/or irrigation. Normal saline is normally appropriate
- Hypo-allergenic tape (if required)
- Appropriate dressing (if required)
- Alcohol handrub (handwashing is an acceptable alternative but will take more time and may entail leaving the patient; alcohol handrub is most appropriate for hand hygiene during a procedure as long as hands are physically clean)
- Any other material as determined by the procedure being carried out
- Any extra equipment that may be needed during procedure, for example sterile scissors
- Traceability system for any reusable surgical instruments and patient record form
- Detergent wipe for cleaning trolley

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Check that all the equipment required for the procedure is available and, where applicable, is	To ensure that only sterile products are used (MHRA 2010, C); to ensure that the patient

sterile (i.e. that packaging is undamaged, intact and dry; that sterility indicators are present on any sterilized items and have changed colour where applicable).	is not disturbed unnecessarily if items are not available and to avoid unnecessary delays during the procedure. E
2 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
Procedure	
3 Clean hands with alcohol handrub or wash with soap and water and dry with paper towels.	Hands must be cleaned before and after every patient contact and before commencing the preparations for aseptic technique, to prevent cross-infection (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
4 Clean trolley with detergent and water or detergent wipes and dry with a paper towel. If disinfection is also required (e.g. by local policy), use disposable wipes saturated with 70% isopropyl alcohol and leave to dry.	To provide a clean working surface (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E); alcohol is an effective and fast-acting disinfectant that will dry quickly (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
5 Place all the equipment required for the procedure on the bottom shelf of the clean dressing trolley.	To maintain the top shelf as a clean working surface. E
6 Take the patient to the treatment room or screen the bed. Ensure that any fans in the area are turned off and windows closed. Position the patient comfortably and so that the area to be dealt with is easily accessible without exposing the patient unduly.	To allow any airborne organisms to settle before the sterile field (and in this case, the wound) is exposed. Maintain the patient's dignity and comfort. E
7 Put on a disposable plastic apron.	To reduce the risk of contaminating clothing or contaminating the wound or any sterile items from clothing. E
8 Take the trolley to the treatment room or patient's bedside, disturbing the curtains as little as possible.	To minimize airborne contamination. E
9 Loosen the adhesive or tape on the existing dressing.	To make it easier to remove the dressing. E
10 Clean hands with alcohol handrub.	Hands should be cleaned before any aseptic procedure (WHO 2009). Using alcohol handrub avoids having to leave the patient to go to a sink. E
11 Open the outer cover of the sterile pack and, once you have verified that the pack is the correct way up, slide the contents, without touching them, onto the top shelf of the trolley.	To minimize contamination of the contents. E
12 Open the sterile field using only the corners of the paper.	So that areas of potential contamination are kept to a minimum. E
13 Open any other packs, tipping their contents gently onto the centre of the sterile field.	To prepare the equipment and, in the case of a wound dressing, reduce the amount of time that the wound is uncovered. E
14 Where appropriate, loosen the old dressing.	To minimize trauma when removing the old dressing. E
15 Clean hands with alcohol handrub.	Hands may have become contaminated by

	handling outer packets or the old dressing (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
16 Carefully lift the plastic disposal bag from the sterile field by its open end and, holding it by one edge of the open end, place your other hand in the bag. Using it as a sterile 'glove', arrange the contents of the dressing pack and any other sterile items on the sterile field.	To maintain the sterility of the items required for the procedure while arranging them so as to perform the procedure quickly and efficiently. E
17 With your hand still enclosed within the disposal bag, remove the old dressing from the wound. Invert the bag so that the dressing is contained within it and stick it to the trolley below the top shelf. This is now the disposal bag for the remainder of the procedure for any waste other than sharps.	To minimize risk of contamination, by containing dressing in bag. E To ensure that any waste can be disposed of without contaminating the sterile field. E
18 Pour any solutions into gallipots or onto indented plastic tray.	To minimize risk of contamination of lotion. E
19 Put on gloves, as described in procedure guideline 3.3 or 3.7. The procedure will dictate whether gloves should be sterile or non-sterile.	Gloves should be worn whenever any contact with body fluids is anticipated (Pratt *et al.* 2007). Sterile gloves provide greater sensitivity than forceps for procedures that cannot be carried out with a non-touch technique and are less likely to cause trauma to the patient. E
20 Carry out the relevant procedure according to the guidelines.	
Postprocedure	
21 Make sure the patient is comfortable.	To minimize the risk of causing the patient distress or discomfort. E
22 Dispose of waste in orange plastic waste bags. Remove apron and gloves and discard into orange waste bag.	To prevent environmental contamination. Orange is the recognized colour for hazardous infectious waste (DH 2006a, C).
23 Draw back curtains or help the patient back to the bed area and ensure that they are comfortable.	To minimize the risk of causing the patient distress or discomfort. E
24 Check that the trolley remains dry and physically clean. If necessary, wash with liquid detergent and water or detergent wipe and dry thoroughly with a paper towel.	To remove any contamination on the trolley and so minimize the risk of transferring any contamination elsewhere in the ward (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
25 Clean hands with alcohol handrub or soap and water.	Hands should be cleaned after any contact with the patient or body fluids (WHO 2009, C).
26 Document the procedure clearly, including details of who carried it out, any devices or dressings used, particularly any left *in situ*, and any deviation from prescribed procedure. Fix any record labels from the outside packaging of any items used during the procedure on the patient record form and add this to the patient's notes.	Provides a record of the procedure and evidence that any items used have undergone an appropriate sterilization process (DH 2007b, C; NMC 2009, C).

Source isolation

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Source isolation is used for patients who are infected with, or are colonized by, infectious agents that require additional precautions over and above the standard precautions used with every patient in order to minimize the risk of transmission of that agent to other vulnerable persons, whether patients or staff. Common reasons for source isolation include infections that cause diarrhoea and vomiting, entailing the use of enteric precautions; infections that are spread through the air, entailing the use of airborne or droplet precautions; and infection or colonization with antibiotic-resistant bacteria, requiring contact precautions. Note that the patient's other nursing and medical needs must always be taken into account and infection control precautions may need to be modified accordingly.

Patients requiring source isolation are normally cared for in a single room, although outbreaks of infection may require affected patients to be nursed in a cohort, that is, isolated as a group. A single-occupancy room will physically separate patients who present a risk from others who may be at risk, and will act as a reminder to any staff dealing with that patient of the need for additional infection control precautions. Single-occupancy rooms used for source isolation should have en-suite toilet and bathroom facilities wherever possible, and contain all items required to meet the patient's nursing needs during the period of isolation (e.g. instruments to assess vital signs), which should remain inside the room throughout the period of isolation. If this is not possible because insufficient equipment is available on the ward, any items taken from the room must be thoroughly cleaned and disinfected (normally with a chlorine solution) before being used with any other patient.

The air pressure in the room should be negative or neutral in relation to the air pressure in the rest of the ward (note that some airborne infections will require a negative pressure room). A lobby will provide

an additional degree of security and space for donning and removing personal protective equipment and performing hand hygiene. Some facilities have lobbies that are ventilated so as to have positive pressure with respect to both the rest of the ward and the single-occupancy room; this allows the room to be used for both source and protective isolation. Where insufficient single rooms are available for source isolation, they should be allocated to those patients who pose the greatest risk to others, using a tool such as the Lewisham Isolation Prioritization System (LIPS) to prioritize patients (Breathnach *et al.* 2010) (Figure 3.6). As a general rule, patients with enteric symptoms, that is diarrhoea and vomiting, or serious airborne infections, such as tuberculosis, will have the highest priority for single-occupancy rooms. If this situation arises, it will mean that additional precautions will be required for some patients on the open ward, for example gloves and aprons will still be required while caring for someone colonized with MRSA even if they are not isolated.

Figure 3.6 Lewisham Isolation Prioritization System (LIPS). Used with permission of Lewisham Healthcare NHS Trust. For more information and updates contact Lewisham Healthcare NHS Trust. ACDP, Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens; CJD, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease; ESBL, extended–spectrum beta lactamase producers; Gent, gentamicin; GRE, glycopeptide–resistant enterococci; ITU, intensive care unit; MDRTB, multi-drug resistant tuberculosis; MRSA, meticillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*; NICU, neonatal intensive care unit; PVL, Panton-Valentine leukocidin; RSV, respiratory syncytial virus; SCBU, special care baby unit, TB, tuberculosis; TSE, transmissible spongiform encephalopathy; VHF, viral haemorrhagic fever; VRE, vancomycin–resistant enterococci.

Step 1	Identify infection or condition
Step 2	Use score card to record: • ACDP hazard group • Mode of transmission • Evidence for transmission • Assess prevalence of infection in the hospital • Determine antibiotic resistance • Assess susceptibility of other patients • Assess dispersal characteristics of patient
Step 3	Add all scores and compare total to chart to determine priority for isolation

Score card (*Document score in patient's notes*)

Patient name	**Date**		**Name and designation of person scoring**
Significant details	**e.g. micro-organism/s**		
Criteria	**Classification**	**Score**	**Comments**
ACDP	2	5	
	3	10	
	4	40	
Route	Air-borne	15	
	Droplet	10	
	Contact/faeco-oral	5	
	Blood-borne	0	
Evidence of transmission	Strong (published)	10	
	Moderate (consensus)	5	
	Poor	0	
	Nil	-10	
Significant resistance	Yes	5	Such as MRSA, VRE, ESBL, Gent resistance
	No	0	
High susceptibility of other patients with serious consequences	Yes	10	Specific for various infections and patient populations
	No	0	
Prevalence in the hospital	Sporadic	0	
	Endemic	-5	This reflects the burden of infection in the hospital and cohort measures may be more applicable
	Epidemic	-5	See above
Dispersal	High risk	10	This includes diarrhoea, projectile vomiting, coughing, confused wandering infected patients, etc.
	Medium risk	5	
	Low risk	0	
TOTAL SCORE			

Using the score to determine the priority for isolation:

Score	**Priority for isolation**
0 - 20	Low
25 - 35	Medium
35+	High

INFECTION/ CONDITION IDENTIFIED	**ACDP category**	**Evidence for transmission in healthcare**	**Mode of transmission**	**Score and priority for isolation**	**Specific guidance**
Adenovirus	2	Moderate	Contact / droplet / faeco-oral	20	Not usually problem in immune competent adults. A problem in newborns, children and immunodeficient individuals
Antibiotic resistant organisms including GRE, ESBL, acinetobacter and VRE (MRSA is below)	2	Strong	Contact	35	Dependant on site of body and where patient is sited in the hospital High risk is : External site, e.g. catheter Patient in intensive care or high dependency unit
Atypical mycobacteria	3	Weak	Air borne	(25)	Rarely requires isolation
Campylobacter	2	Poor	Faeco-oral	10	
Chickenpox (varicella)	2	Strong	Air borne	30-40	More infectious than shingles. Usually infectious for up to five days following first crop of vesicles - longer in immunodeficient individuals
CJD (TSE)	3	Nil	Blood / tissue	10	
Clostridium difficile	2	Strong	Faeco-oral/ possibly droplet	35-45	Isolate in the presence of diarrhoea and until there has been no diarrhoea for at least 48 hours
Cryptococcus	2	Nil	Nil	5	
Cytomegalovirus	2	Nil	Contact	10	Problem in pregnant women and babies
Diarrhoea with or without vomiting (assume potential gastroenteritis or *C. difficile* until negative specimen result and definitive alternative diagnosis available)	2	Strong	Faecal-oral	>45	Isolate until symptom-free for 48 hours or until negative specimen result and definitive alternative diagnosis available
Diphtheria(pharyngeal	2	Strong	Droplet	>35	
Hepatitis A & E	2	Poor	Faecal-oral	20	Isolate for 14 days after onset of jaundice
Hepatitis B & C	2	Poor	Blood	10	
Impetigo	2	Strong	Contact	20	May be a problem in children and immunodeficient

Influenza (clinical diagnosis)	2	Strong	Droplet	25-40	Immunodeficient individuals are particularly susceptible and should avoid contact with influenza cases. Cohort in outbreaks or pandemics
Legionnaires disease (legionellosis)	2	Nil	Air borne	20	
Lice	2	Strong- body lice Poor- head/ pubic lice	Contact	10-20	Head and pubic lice are less transmissible than body lice in hospital environment
Measles	2	Strong	Droplet	>35	
Meningitis undiagnosed (viral or bacterial)	2 or 3	Moderate	**Droplet** / faeco-oral	30-40	All meningitis cases should be isolated until cause is established. Meningococcal meningitis requires isolation until patient has received 48 hours of treatment
MRSA	2	Strong	Contact	>35	Risk assess for isolation: High risk includes: • Major dispensers, i.e. dry or flaky skin, expectorating infected sputum • Surgical especially in orthopaedic, cardiac or neurosurgery areas • Patients with multiple devices and interventions, e.g. ITU, NICU & SCBU • PVL, MRSA Medium risk includes: • Positive screening swab but otherwise well and not in areas identified above. These patients may be cohorted
Mumps	2	Moderate	Droplet	30-40	
Palliative care	N/a	N/a	N/a		Cannot be scored in the same way as infectious agents but must be taken into account when prioritising use of single rooms. Need to consider condition and all nursing needs vs risk to other patients if a potentially infected individual is not isolated
RSV	2	Strong	Droplet	25	**A problem in newborn, children and immunodeficiency**
Rotavirus	2	Strong	**Droplet**/ faeco-oral	25	**A problem in newborn, children and immunodeficiency**
Rubella	2	Moderate	Droplet		Susceptibility of non immune may be an issue. Medium risk paediatrics and women's health
Salmonella or *Shigella*	2	Strong	Faeco-oral	>30	Dependent on potential for dispersal Medium risk for patients who are incontinent or have diarrhoea
Scabies (confirmed)	2	Strong	Contact	20	
Scarlet fever	2	Moderate	Droplet	30	
Shingles (herpes zoster)	2	Moderate	Contact	30	No isolation needed if lesions are covered or dried Medium risk is : weeping lesions, non-immune women of child bearing age, babies and children and immunodeficient
Streptococcus pyogenes (Group A strep)	2	Strong	**Droplet** / contact	25	Remain isolated for 24 hours following treatment
TB-non-pulmonary	3	Nil	Contact	15	Dependent on site and stage of disease
TB-open pulmonary or exuding lesion	3	Strong	Contact / airborne	35	Isolated for period of 10-14 days following commencement of treatment **MDRTB patients should remain in isolation throughout hospital stay** High risk: Patients who have a cough, MDRTB
Typhoid fever	3	Weak	Faeco-oral	25	Dependent on potential for dispersal Medium risk for patients who are incontinent or have diarrhoea
Verotoxin producing strains of *Escherichia coli* (e.g. E.coli O157)	3	Poor	Faeco-oral	25	Dependent on potential for dispersal Medium risk for patients who are incontinent or have diarrhoea
VHF-Lassa / Ebola / Marburg	4	Blood contact/ droplet	**Droplet/ blood** / contact	>70	Blood and body fluids are highly infectious – **transfer to regional Infectious diseases facility**
Wound oozing/infected	2	Strong	**Contact**		

Principles of care

Attending to the patient in isolation

Meals

Meals should be served on normal crockery and the patient provided with normal cutlery. Cutlery and crockery should be washed in a dishwasher able to thermally disinfect items, that is, with a final rinse of 80°C for 1 minute or 71°C for 3 minutes. Disposable cutlery and crockery should only be used if specifically instructed by the infection prevention and control team. Disposables and uneaten food should be discarded in the appropriate bag.

Contaminated crockery is a potential vector for infectious agents, particularly those causing enteric disease, but thermal disinfection will minimize this risk (Fraise and Bradley 2009).

Urine and faeces

Wherever possible, a toilet should be kept solely for the patient's use. If this is not available, a commode should be left in the patient's room. Gloves must be worn by staff when dealing with body fluids. Bedpans and urinals should be bagged in the isolation room and taken directly to the sluice for disposal. They should not be emptied before being placed in the bedpan washer or macerator unless the contents volume needs to be measured for a fluid balance or stool chart. Gloves and apron worn in the room should be kept on until the body waste is disposed of and then removed (gloves first) and discarded as infected waste.

This will minimize the risk of infection being spread from excreta, for example via a toilet seat or a bedpan (Pratt *et al*. 2007) and the risk of hands or clothing being contaminated by body waste.

Spillages

As elsewhere, any spillage must be mopped up immediately, using the appropriate method for the fluid spilt, and the area dried. This removes the risk of anyone slipping and removes and disinfects any contaminated fluid that may carry a risk of infection.

Bathing

If an en-suite bathroom is not available, the patient must be bathed elsewhere on the ward. The patient does not need to use the bathroom last but the bathroom must be thoroughly cleaned after use so bathing them last will minimize any delays to other patients that this may cause. However, if the patient requires an early bath, for example because they are leaving the ward for an examination elsewhere, this must be catered for.

Thorough cleaning and disinfection of the bathroom will minimize the risk of cross-infection to other patients.

Linen

Place infected linen in a red water-soluble alginate polythene bag, which must be secured tightly before it leaves the room. Just outside the room,

place this bag into a red linen bag which must be secured tightly and not used for other patients. These bags should await the laundry collection in the area designated for this.

Placing infected linen in a red alginate polythene bag confines the organisms and allows laundry staff to recognize the potential hazard and avoid handling the linen (NHSE 1995).

Waste

Orange waste bags should be kept in the isolation room for disposal of all waste generated in the room. The top of the bag should be sealed and labelled with the name of the ward or department before it is removed from the room.

Cleaning the isolation room

1. Domestic staff must be instructed on the correct procedure to use when cleaning an isolation room, including an explanation as to why isolation is essential to reduce the risk of cross-infection, the materials and solutions used, and the correct colour coding for these materials. This will reduce the risk of mistakes and ensure that appropriate precautions are maintained (DH 2001).

2. Isolation rooms must be cleaned last, to reduce the risk of the transmission of contamination to 'clean' areas (NPSA 2009).

3. Separate cleaning equipment must be used for isolation rooms. Cross-infection may result from shared cleaning equipment (Wilson 2006).

4. Cleaners must wear gloves and plastic aprons while cleaning isolation rooms to minimize the risk of contaminating hands or clothing. Some PPE may also be required for the safe use of some cleaning solutions.

5. Floor (hard surface: carpeted rooms should not be used as isolation rooms). This must be washed daily with a disinfectant as appropriate. All excess water must be removed. Daily cleaning will keep the bacterial count reduced. Organisms, especially Gram-negative bacteria,

multiply quickly in the presence of moisture and on equipment (Wilson 2006).

6. Cleaning solutions must be freshly made up each day and the container emptied and cleaned daily. Disinfectants may lose activity over time; cleaning solutions can easily become contaminated (Dharan *et al.* 1999).

7. After use, the bucket must be cleaned and dried. Contaminated cleaning equipment and solutions will spread bacteria over surfaces being cleaned (Dharan *et al.* 1999).

8. Mop heads should be laundered in a hot wash daily as they become contaminated easily (Wilson 2006).

9. Furniture and fittings should be damp-dusted daily using a disposable cloth and a detergent or disinfectant solution by nursing or cleaning staff as dictated by local protocol, in order to remove dirt and a proportion of any organisms contaminating the environment (Wilson 2006).

10. The toilet, shower and bathroom area must be cleaned at least once a day and if they become contaminated, using a non-abrasive hypochlorite powder, cream or solution. Non-abrasive powders or creams preserve the integrity of the surfaces.

Cleaning the room after a patient has been discharged

1. The room should be stripped. All bedlinen and other textiles must be changed and curtains changed (reusable curtains must be laundered and disposable curtains discarded as infectious waste). Dispose of any unused disposable items. Curtains and other fabrics readily become colonized with bacteria (Patel 2005, E); paper packets cannot be easily cleaned.

2. Impervious surfaces, for example locker, bedframe, mattress cover, chairs, floor, blinds, soap dispenser, should be washed with soap and water, or a combined detergent/chlorine disinfectant if sporicidal activity is required, and dried. Relatively inaccessible places, for example ceilings, may be omitted. Wiping of surfaces is the most effective way of removing contaminants; spores from, for example, *Clostridium difficile* will persist indefinitely in the environment unless

destroyed by an effective disinfectant; bacteria will thrive more readily in damp conditions; inaccessible areas are not generally relevant to any infection risk (Wilson 2006).

3. The room can be reused as soon as it has been thoroughly cleaned and restocked. Effective cleaning will have removed infectious agents that may pose a risk to the next patient.

Discharging the patient from isolation

If the patient no longer requires isolation but is still to be a patient on the ward, inform them of this and the reasons why isolation is no longer required before moving them out of the room. Also inform them if there is any reason why they may need to be returned to isolation, for example if enteric symptoms return.

If the patient is to be discharged home or to another health or social care setting, ensure that the discharge documentation includes details of their condition, the infection control precautions taken while in hospital and any precautions or other actions that will need to be taken following discharge. Suitable accurate information on infections must be supplied to any person concerned with providing further support or nursing/medical care in a timely fashion (DH 2010a).

Procedure guideline 3.10 Source isolation: preparing an isolation room

Essential equipment

- Single-occupancy room
- Patient equipment
- Personal protective equipment
- Hand hygiene facilities
- Patient information material

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Identify the most suitable room available for source isolation, taking into account the risk to other patients and staff and the patient's other nursing needs.	To ensure the best balance between minimizing the risk of cross-infection and maintaining the safety and comfort of the isolated patient. E

Procedure	
2 Remove all non-essential furniture and equipment from the room. The remaining furniture should be easy to clean. Ensure that the room is stocked with any equipment required for patient care and sufficient but not excessive numbers of any disposable items that will be required.	To ensure the availability of everything required for patient care while minimizing the number of items that will require cleaning or disposal at the end of the isolation period and the amount of traffic of people and equipment into and out of the room. E
3 Ensure that a bin for clinical waste with an orange bag is present in the room. This will be used for all waste generated in the room. The bag must be sealed before it is removed from the room.	For containing contaminated rubbish within the room and minimizing further spread of infection. E
4 Place a container for sharps in the room.	To contain contaminated sharps within the infected area (DH 2006a, C).
5 Keep the patient's personal property to a minimum. All belongings taken into the room should be washable, cleanable or disposable. Contact the infection prevention and control team for advice as to how to best clean or wash specific items.	The patient's belongings may become contaminated and cannot be taken home unless they are washable or cleanable. E
6 Ensure that all PPE required is available outside the room. Wall-mounted dispensers offer the best use of space and ease of use but if necessary, set up a trolley outside the door for PPE and alcohol handrub. Ensure that this does not cause an obstruction or other hazard.	To have PPE readily available when required. E
7 Explain the reason for isolation and the precise precautions required to the patient, their family and other visitors, providing relevant patient information material where available. Allow the patient to ask questions and ask for a member of the infection prevention and control team to visit the patient if ward staff cannot answer all questions to the patient's satisfaction.	Compliance is more likely if patients and their visitors understand the reasons for isolation; the patient's anxiety will be reduced if they have as much information as possible about their condition. E
8 Fix a suitable notice outside the room where it will be seen by anyone attempting to enter the room. This should indicate the special precautions required while preserving the patient's confidentiality.	To ensure all staff and visitors are aware of the need for additional infection control precautions. E
9 Move the patient into the single-occupancy room.	
10 Arrange for terminal cleaning of the bed space that the patient has been occupying.	To remove any infectious agents that may pose a risk to the next patient to occupy that bed (NPSA 2009, C).
Postprocedure	
11 Assess the patient daily to determine if source isolation is still required; for example, if enteric precautions have been required, has the patient been without symptoms for 48 hours?	There is often limited availability of isolation rooms (Wigglesworth and Wilcox 2006, R) so they must be used as effectively as possible. E

Procedure guideline 3.11 Source isolation: entering the isolation room

Essential equipment

- Personal protective equipment as dictated by the precautions required. Gloves and apron are the usual minimum; a respirator will be required for droplet precautions; eye protection if an aerosol-generating procedure is planned
- Any equipment required for any procedure you intend to carry out in the room

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Collect all equipment needed.	To avoid entering and leaving the infected area unnecessarily. E
Procedure	
2 Ensure you are 'bare below the elbow' (see Procedure guideline 3.1).	To facilitate hand hygiene and avoid any contamination of long sleeves or cuffs that could be transferred to other patients. E
3 Put on a disposable plastic apron.	To protect the front of the uniform or clothing, which is the most likely area to come in contact with the patient. E
4 Put on a disposable well-fitting mask or respirator of the appropriate standard if droplet or airborne precautions are required, for example: **(a)** Meningococcal meningitis before completion of 24 hours of treatment **(b)** Pandemic influenza **(c)** Tuberculosis, if carrying out aerosol-generating procedure or the TB may be multiresistant.	To reduce the risk of inhaling organisms (DH 2010b, NICE 2006, C).
5 Don eye protection if instructed by infection prevention and control team (e.g. for pandemic influenza) or if conducting an aerosol-generating procedure (e.g. bronchoscopy or intubation) in a patient requiring airborne/droplet precautions.	To prevent infection via the conjunctiva (DH 2010b, C).
6 Clean hands with soap and water or alcohol handrub.	Hands must be cleaned before patient contact (WHO 2009, C).
7 Don disposable gloves if you are intending to deal with blood, excreta or contaminated material, or if providing close personal care where contact precautions are required.	To reduce the risk of hand contamination (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
8 Enter the room, shutting the door behind you.	To reduce the risk of airborne organisms leaving the room (Kao and Yang 2006, R1a) and to preserve the patient's privacy and dignity.

Procedure guideline 3.12 Source isolation: leaving the isolation room

Essential equipment

- Orange waste bag
- Hand hygiene facilities

Procedure

Action	Rationale
1 If wearing gloves, remove and discard them in the orange waste bag.	To avoid transferring any contamination on the gloves to other areas or items (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
2 Remove apron by holding the inside of the apron and breaking the ties at neck and waste. Discard it into the orange waste bag.	To avoid transferring any contamination on the apron to other areas or items (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
3 Clean hands with soap and water or alcohol handrub. Do not use alcohol handrub when patients require enteric precautions: wash with soap and water.	Hands must be cleaned after contact with the patient or their immediate environment (WHO 2009); alcohol is less effective against *Clostridium difficile* spores and some enteric viruses and in the presence of organic material such as faeces (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 Leave the room, shutting the door behind you.	To reduce the risk of airborne spread of infection (Kao and Yang 2006, R1a).
5 Clean hands with soap and water or alcohol handrub. If the patient requires enteric precautions, hands should be cleaned with soap and water.	Hands must be cleaned after contact with the patient or their immediate environment (WHO 2009, C). Alcohol is not effective on all organisms that cause enteric infections (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Procedure guideline 3.13 Source isolation: transporting infected patients outside the source isolation area

Procedure

Action	Rationale
1 Inform the department concerned about the procedure required, the patient's diagnosis and the infection control precautions required at the earliest opportunity.	To allow the department time to make appropriate arrangements. E
2 If possible and appropriate, arrange for the patient to have the last appointment of the day.	The department concerned and any intervening areas will be less busy, so reducing the risk of contact with

	other vulnerable individuals, and additional cleaning required following any procedure will not disrupt subsequent appointments. E
3 Inform the portering service of the patient's diagnosis and the infection control precautions required; ensure that this information has been passed to any porters involved in transfer and reinforce the precautions required.	Explanation and reinforcement will minimize the risk of cross-infection through failure to comply with infection control precautions (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 Escort the patient if necessary.	To attend to the patient's nursing needs and to remind others of infection control precautions if required. E
5 If the patient has an infection requiring droplet or airborne precautions that may present a risk to people encountered in the other department or in transit, they will need to wear a mask or respirator of the appropriate standard. Provide the patient with the mask and explain why it is required and how and when it is to be worn (i.e. while outside their single-occupancy room) and assist them to don it if necessary.	To prevent airborne cross-infection. E Providing the patient with relevant information will reduce anxiety.

Protective isolation

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Protective isolation is used to minimize the exposure to infectious agents of patients who are particularly at risk of infection. Although the evidence that protective isolation successfully reduces the incidence of infection is limited (Wigglesworth 2003), probably because many infections are endogenous (i.e. caused by the patient's own bacterial flora), it is used to reduce the risk of exogenous infection (cross-infection from other people or the environment) in groups who have greatly impaired immune systems (Fraise and Bradley 2009), such as autologous and allogenic bone marrow transplant patients. Patients who have compromised immune systems often have greatly reduced numbers of a type of white blood cell called a neutrophil; this condition is known as neutropenia and those people suffering from it are described as neutropenic. Neutropenia is graded from mild to severe according to how few neutrophils are in the circulation and hence how much the risk of infection is raised.

Single-occupancy rooms used for protective isolation should have neutral or positive air pressure with respect to the surrounding area. High-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration of the air in the room may reduce exposure to airborne pathogens, particularly fungal spores. A room with positive pressure ventilation must not be used for any patient infected or colonized with an organism that may be spread through an airborne route; in this circumstance if an immunocompromised patient has such an organism, they should be nursed in a room with neutral air pressure or with a positive pressure lobby.

Principles of care

Diet for the immunocompromised patient

- Educate the patient in the importance of good food hygiene in reducing their exposure to potential pathogens; they should choose only cooked food from the hospital menu and avoid raw fruit, salads and uncooked vegetables. Stress the importance of good hand hygiene before eating or drinking. Uncooked foods are often heavily colonized by micro-organisms, particularly Gram-negative bacteria (Moody *et al*. 2006); potential pathogens on the hands may be inadvertently consumed while eating or drinking.
- Educate the patient's family in the importance of good food hygiene, particularly good hand hygiene, and advise that any food brought in for the patient should be in undamaged, sealed tins and packets obtained from well-known, reliable firms and within the expiry date. Correctly processed and packaged foods are more likely to be of an acceptable food hygiene standard.
- Provide the patient with filtered water or sealed cartons of fruit juice (not fresh) to drink (Vonberg *et al.* 2005). Do not supply bottled water. Tap water may occasionally be contaminated with potential pathogens; long-life fruit juice has been pasteurized to remove micro-organisms; bottled water very often contains more micro-organisms than tap water.

Discharging the neutropenic patient

- Crowded areas, for example shops, cinemas, pubs and discos, should be avoided. Although the patient's white cell count is usually high enough for discharge, the patient remains immunocompromised for some time (Calandra 2000).
- Pets should not be allowed to lick the patient, and new pets should not be obtained. Pets are known carriers of infection (Lefebvre *et al*. 2006).
- Certain foods, for example take-away meals, soft cheese and pâté, should continue to be avoided. These foodstuffs are more likely to be contaminated with potential pathogens (Gillespie *et al*. 2005).
- Salads and fruit should be washed carefully, dried and, if possible, peeled, to remove as many pathogens as possible (Moody *et al*. 2006).
- Any signs or symptoms of infection should be reported immediately to the patient's general practitioner or to the discharging hospital. Any infection may have serious consequences if left untreated.

Procedure guideline 3.14 Protective isolation: preparing the room

Essential equipment

- Single-occupancy room
- Patient equipment
- Personal protective equipment
- Hand hygiene facilities inside and outside the room

- Patient information material detailing the other infection prevention precautions required
- Cleaning materials for the room

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Identify the most suitable room available for protective isolation, taking into account the risk to the patient, the patient's other nursing needs and other demands on the available single rooms.	To ensure the best balance between minimizing the risk of infection, maintaining the safety and comfort of the isolated patient and the availability of single rooms for other purposes. E
Procedure	
2 Remove all non-essential furniture and equipment from the room. The remaining furniture should be easy to clean. Ensure that the room is stocked with any equipment required for patient care and sufficient numbers of any disposable items that will be required.	To ensure the availability of everything required for patient care while minimizing the amount of cleaning required and the amount of traffic of people and equipment into and out of the room. E
3 Ensure that all PPE required is available outside the room. Wall-mounted dispensers offer the best use of space and ease of use but if necessary, set up a trolley outside the door for PPE and alcohol handrub. Ensure that this does not cause an obstruction or other hazard.	To have PPE readily available when required. E
4 Ensure that the room is thoroughly cleaned before the patient is admitted.	Effective cleaning will remove infectious agents that may pose a risk to the patient (NPSA 2009, C).
5 Explain the reason for isolation and the precise precautions required to the patient, their family and other visitors, providing relevant patient information material where available. Allow the patient to ask questions and ask for a member of the infection prevention and control team to visit the patient if ward staff cannot answer all questions to the patient's satisfaction.	Compliance is more likely if patients and their visitors understand the reasons for isolation; the patient's anxiety will be reduced if they have as much information as possible about their condition. E
6 Fix a suitable notice outside the room where it will be seen by anyone attempting to enter the room. This should indicate the special precautions required while preserving the patient's confidentiality.	To ensure all staff and visitors are aware of the need for additional infection control precautions. E
7 Move the patient into the single-occupancy room.	
8 Ensure that surfaces and furniture are damp-dusted daily using disposable cleaning cloths and detergent solution, and the floor is mopped daily using soap and water.	Damp-dusting and mopping remove micro-organisms without distributing them into the air. E

Procedure guideline 3.15 Protective isolation: entering the isolation room

Essential equipment

- Hand hygiene facilities
- Disposable plastic apron
- Additional equipment, including PPE, for any procedure to be undertaken

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Collect all equipment needed.	To avoid entering and leaving the room unnecessarily.

Procedure

2 Ensure you are 'bare below the elbow' (see Procedure guideline 3.1).	To facilitate hand hygiene and to avoid transferring any contamination to the patient from long sleeves or cuffs. E
3 Put on a disposable plastic apron.	To provide a barrier between the front of the uniform or clothing, which is the most likely area to come in contact with the patient. E
4 Clean hands with soap and water or alcohol handrub.	To remove any contamination from the hands which could be transferred to the patient (WHO 2009, C).
5 Close the room door after entering.	To reduce the risk of airborne transmission of infection from other areas of the ward and ensure that air conditioning and filtration work as efficiently as possible. E

Visitors

1 Ask the patient to nominate close relatives and friends who may then, after instruction (see steps 1–5, above), visit freely. The patient or their representative should ask other acquaintances and non-essential visitors to avoid visiting during the period of vulnerability.	The incidence of infection increases in proportion to the number of people visiting but unlimited visiting by close relatives and friends diminishes the sense of isolation that the patient may experience; large numbers of visitors are difficult to screen and educate. E
2 Exclude any visitor who has had symptoms of infection or been in contact with a communicable disease in the previous 48 hours.	Individuals may be infectious both before and after developing symptoms of infection (Chadwick *et al.* 2000, E).
3 Educate all visitors to decontaminate their hands before entering the isolation room.	Hands carry large numbers of potentially pathogenic micro-organisms that can be easily removed (WHO 2009, C).
4 Visiting by children, other than very close relatives, should be discouraged.	Children are more likely to have been in contact with infectious diseases but are less likely to be aware of this, and are more likely to develop infections because they have less acquired immunity. E

Prevention and management of inoculation injury

Related theory

Healthcare workers are at risk of acquiring bloodborne infections such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the virus that causes acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), hepatitis B and hepatitis C. While the risk is small, five episodes of occupationally acquired HIV infection had nonetheless been documented in the UK up to 2002 (Health Protection Agency 2005). In 2006–7, 914 incidents of occupational exposure to bloodborne viruses were reported, of which between one-fifth and one-third could have been prevented through proper adherence to universal precautions and the safe disposal of hazardous waste (Health Protection Agency 2008). An understanding of the risk of infection and the preventive measures to be taken is essential in promoting a safer work environment (UK Health Departments 1998).

Bloodborne viruses are present in both the blood and other high-risk fluids that should be handled with the same precautions as blood. High-risk fluids include:

- cerebrospinal fluid
- peritoneal fluid
- pleural fluid
- pericardial fluid
- synovial fluid
- amniotic fluid
- semen
- vaginal secretions
- breast milk
- any other body fluid or unfixed tissue or organ containing visible blood (including saliva in dentistry).

Body fluids that do not need to be regarded as high risk, unless they are bloodstained, are:

- urine

- faeces
- saliva
- sweat
- vomit.

The most likely route of infection for healthcare workers is through the percutaneous inoculation of infected blood via a sharps injury (often called a needlestick injury) or by blood or other high-risk fluid splashing onto broken skin or a mucous membrane in the mouth, nose or eyes. These incidents are collectively known as inoculation injuries. Blood or another high-risk fluid coming into contact with intact skin is not regarded as an inoculation injury. It carries little or no risk due to the impervious nature of intact skin.

Evidence-based approaches

If the guidance in Box 3.2 is followed, it has been shown to reduce the risk of sharps injuries.

Box 3.2 Actions to reduce the risk of inoculation injury

- Do not re-sheath used needles.
- Ensure that you are familiar with the local protocols for the use and disposal of sharps (e.g. location of sharps bins) and any other equipment before undertaking any procedure involving the use of a sharp item.
- Do not bend or break needles or disassemble them after use: discard needles and syringes into a sharps bin immediately after use.
- Handle sharps as little as possible.
- Do not pass sharps directly from hand to hand; use a receiver or similar receptacle.
- Discard all used sharps into a sharps container at the point of use: take a sharps container with you to the point of use if necessary. Do not dispose of sharps into anything other than a designated sharps container.
- Do not fill sharps bins above the mark that indicates that it is full.
- Sharps bins that are not full or in current (i.e. immediate) use should be kept out of reach of children and with any temporary closure in place.
- Sharps bins in use should be positioned at a height that enables safe disposal by all members of staff and secured to avoid spillage.

- Wear gloves in any situation where contact with blood is anticipated.
- Avoid wearing open footwear in any situation where blood may be spilt or where sharps are used.
- Always cover any cuts or abrasions, particularly on the hands, with a waterproof dressing while at work. Wear gloves if hands are particularly affected.
- Wear facial protection consisting of a mask and goggles or a face shield in any situation that may lead to a splash of blood or other high-risk fluid to the face. Do not rely on prescription glasses – they may not provide sufficient protection.
- Clear up any blood spillage promptly and disinfect the area. Use any materials or spillage management packs specifically provided for this purpose in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

(UK Health Departments 1998)

Complications

In the event of an inoculation injury occurring, prompt and appropriate action will reduce the risk of subsequent infection. These actions are described in Box 3.3 and should be taken regardless of what is thought to be known about the status of the patient whose blood has been inoculated. HIV, for example, has a 3-month 'window' following infection during which the patient has sufficient virus in their blood to be infectious but before their immune system is producing sufficient antibodies to be detected by the normal tests for HIV status.

Box 3.3 Actions to take in the event of inoculation injury

- Encourage any wound to bleed to wash out any foreign material that has been introduced. Do not squeeze the wound, as this may force any virus present into the tissues.
- Wash any wound with soap and water. Wash out splashes to mucous membranes (eyes or mouth) with large amounts of clean water.
- Cover any wound with a waterproof dressing to prevent entry of any other foreign material.
- Ensure the patient is safe then report the injury as quickly as possible to your immediate line manager and occupational health department. This is because postexposure prophylaxis (PEP), which is medication given after any incident thought to carry a high risk of HIV transmission, is more effective the sooner after the incident it is commenced (DH 2008).

- Follow any instructions given by the occupational health department.
- Co-operate with any action to test yourself or the patient for infection with a bloodborne virus but do not obtain blood or consent for testing from the patient yourself; this should be done by someone not involved in the incident.
- Complete a report of the incident according to local protocols.

(UK Health Departments 1998)

Management of waste in the healthcare environment

Definition

Waste is defined as 'any substance or object the holder discards, intends to discard or is required to discard' (European Parliament 2008).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Waste material produced in the healthcare environment may carry a risk of infection to people who are not directly involved in providing healthcare but who are involved in the transport or disposal of that waste. All waste disposal is subject to regulation and hazardous waste is subject to further controls, depending on the nature of the hazard (DH 2006a). To ensure that everyone involved in waste management is aware of, and protected from, any hazard presented by the waste with which they are dealing, and that the waste is disposed of appropriately, a colour coding system is used. The colours in general use are shown in Table 3.6.

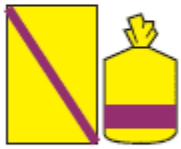
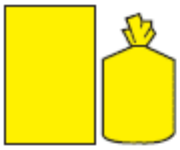
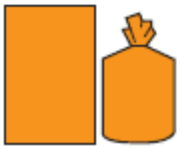
Table 3.6 Waste colours code

Colour	Description
	Waste which requires disposal by incineration Indicative treatment/disposal required is incineration in a suitably permitted or licensed facility.
	Waste which may be "treated" Indicative treatment/disposal required is to be "rendered safe" in a suitably permitted or licensed facility, **usually alternative treatment plants (ATPs). However this waste may also be disposed of by incineration.**
	Cytotoxic and cytostatic waste Indicative treatment/disposal required is **incineration** in a suitably permitted or licensed facility.
	Offensive/hygiene waste* Indicative treatment/disposal required is **landfill** in a suitably permitted or licensed site. This waste should not be compacted in unlicensed/permitted facilities.
	Domestic (municipal) waste Minimum treatment/disposal required is **landfill** in a suitably permitted or licensed site. Recyclable components should be removed through segregation. Clear/opaque receptacles may also be used for domestic waste.
White	**Amalgam waste** For recovery

*The use of yellow/black for offensive/hygiene waste was chosen as these colours have historically been universally used for the sanitary/offensive/hygiene waste stream.
From DH (2006a). © Crown copyright. Reproduced under the terms of the Click-use Licence.

Waste receptacles are plastic bags or rigid plastic containers of the appropriate colour (see Table 3.7).

Table 3.7 Waste containers

Waste receptacle	Waste types	Example contents	Indicative treatment/ disposal
"Over-stickers" with the radioactive waste symbol may be used on yellow packaging.	Healthcare waste contaminated with radioactive material	Dressings, tubing etc. from treatment involving low level radioactive isotopes	Appropriately licensed incineration facility
	Infectious waste contaminated with cytotoxic and/or cytostatic medicinal products	Dressings/tubing from cytotoxic and/or cytostatic treatment	Incineration
	Sharps contaminated with cytotoxic and cytostatic medicinal products[1]	Sharps used to administer cytotoxic products	Incineration
	Infectious and other waste requiring incineration including anatomical waste, diagnostic specimens, reagent or test vials, and kits containing chemicals	Anatomical waste from theatres	Incineration
	Partially discharged sharps not contaminated with cytoproducts[1]	Syringe body with residue medicinal product	Incineration
	Medicines in original packaging	Waste in original packaging with original closures	Incineration
	Medicines NOT in original packaging	Waste tablets not in foil pack or bottle	Hazardous waste incineration
	Infectious waste, potentially infectious waste and autoclaved laboratory waste	Soiled dressings	Licensed/permitted treatment facility

SHARPS	(i) Sharps not contaminated with medicinal products[2] Or (ii) Fully discharged sharps contaminated with medicinal products other than cytotoxic and cytostatic medicines	Sharps from phlebotomy	Suitably authorized incineration or alternative treatment facility[1]
	Offensive/hygiene waste	Human hygiene waste and non-infectious disposable equipment, bedding and plaster casts	Deep landfill
Black bag or clear bag is acceptable.	Domestic waste	General refuse,[3] including confectionery products, flowers, etc.	Landfill
WHITE CONTAINER	Amalgam waste	Dental amalgam waste	Recovery

[1]The authorisation type and content for alternative treatments in Northern Ireland Scotland England and Wales may differ. Not all facilities are authorised to process all types of waste. **Important: It is not acceptable practice to intentionally discharge syringes, etc., containing residual medicines in order to dispose of them in the fully discharged sharps receptacle. Partially discharged syringes contaminated with residual medicines should be disposed of in the yellow- or purple-lidded sharps receptacle shown above.**

[2]The requirements for packaging are significantly affected by the presence of medicinal waste and the quantity of liquid present in the container.

[3]General refuse is that waste remaining once recyclates (that is, paper, cardboard) have been removed.

From DH (2006a). © Crown copyright. Reproduced under the terms of the Click-use Licence.

Legal and professional issues

The producer of hazardous waste is legally responsible for that waste, and remains responsible for it until its final disposal by incineration, alternative treatment or landfill (DH 2006a). In order to track waste to its point of origin, for example if it is necessary to identify where waste has been disposed of into the wrong waste stream, healthcare organizations should have a system of identifying waste according to the ward or department where it is produced. This may be through the use of labelling or dedicated waste carts for particular areas. When assembling sharps bins, always complete the label on the outside of the bin,

including the date and the initials of the assembler. When sharps bins are closed and disposed of, they should be dated and initialled at each stage.

Management of soiled linen in the healthcare environment

As with waste, soiled linen must be managed so as to minimize any risk to any person coming into contact with it. This is done by clearly identifying any soiled linen that may present a risk through the use of colour coding and limiting any contact with such linen through the use of water-soluble bags to contain the linen so that laundry staff do not have to handle it before it goes into the washer (NHS Executive 1995).

Linen that may present a risk may be described as foul, infected or infested. The management of all hazardous linen is similar, so the following procedure applies to any linen that is wet with blood or another high-risk body fluids (see Prevention and management of inoculation injury) or faeces, or has come from a patient in source isolation for any reason, that is where enteric, contact or droplet/airborne precautions are in place, or from a patient who is infested with lice, fleas, scabies or any other ectoparasite. Note that this procedure can be much more easily carried out by two people working together.

Procedure guideline 3.16 Safe disposal of foul, infected or infested linen

Essential equipment

- Disposable gloves and apron
- Water-soluble laundry bag
- Red plastic or linen laundry bag in holder
- Orange waste bin

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Assemble all the required equipment.	To avoid having to fetch anything else during the procedure and risk

	spreading contamination to other areas. E
2 Put on disposable gloves and apron.	To minimize contamination of your hands or clothing from the soiled linen. E
3 Separate the edges of the open end of the water-soluble laundry bag.	To make it easier to put the soiled linen in the bag. E
Procedure	
4 Gather up the foul, infected or infested linen in such a way that any gross contamination (e.g. blood, faeces) is contained within the linen.	To minimize any contamination of the surrounding area. E
5 If there are two people, one holds the water-soluble laundry bag open while the other puts the soiled linen into it. If one person, hold one edge of the open end of the water-soluble bag in one hand and place the soiled linen in the bag with the other. In either case, take care not to contaminate the outside of the bag.	So as to remove the need for laundry workers to handle foul, infected or infested linen before it is washed (NHS Executive 1995, C).
6 Tie the water-soluble bag closed using the tie provided or by knotting together the edges of the open end.	To keep the soiled laundry inside the bag. E
7 Place the full water-soluble bag of soiled linen into the red outer laundry bag. Do not touch this bag.	To identify the linen as requiring special treatment. E
8 Remove gloves and apron and dispose of them into an orange waste bag.	To avoid transferring contamination to other areas (DH 2006a, C).
9 Wash hands and forearms with soap and water.	To avoid transferring contamination to other areas (WHO 2009).
10 Close the red outer laundry bag and transfer it to the designated collection area.	To ensure it does not cause an obstruction and is transferred to the laundry at the earliest opportunity. E

References

Breathnach, A., Zinna, S., Riley, P. and Planche, T. (2010) Guidelines for prioritisation of single-room use: a pragmatic approach. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **74** (1), 89–91.

Calandra, T. (2000) Practical guide to host defence mechanisms and the predominant infections encountered in immunocompromised patients, in *Management of Infections in Immmunocompromised Patients, Part I, Chapter 1* (eds M.P. Glauser and P.A. Pizzo). W.B. Saunders, London, pp. 3–16.

Chadwick, P.R., Beards, G., Brown, B. *et al.* (2000) Management of hospital outbreaks due to small round structured viruses. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **45** (1), 1–10. www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAwebFile/HPAweb_C/1194947408355.

Damani, N.N. (2003) Principles of infection control, in *Manual of Infection Control Procedures*, 2nd edn. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Department of Trade and Industry (2002) *Product Standards: Personal Protective Equipment: Guidance Notes on the UK Personal Protective Equipment Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002 No. 1144)*. Department of Trade and Industry, London. www.bis.gov.uk/files/file11263.pdf.

DH (2001) Standard principles for preventing hospital-acquired infection. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **47** (Supplement), S21–S37.

DH (2006a) *Health Technical Memorandum 07–01: Safe Management of Healthcare Waste*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/documents/digitalasset/dh_073328.pdf.

DH (2006b) *Health Technical Memorandum 64: Sanitary Assemblies*. Stationery Office, London.

DH (2007a) *Saving Lives: Reducing Infection, Delivering Clean and Safe Care*. Stationary Office, London. www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsPolicyAndGuidance/DH_078134.

DH (2007b) *Health Technical Memorandum 01–01: Decontamination of Reusable Medical Devices, Part A – Management and Environment (English edition)*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2008) *HIV Post-Exposure Prophylaxis: Guidance from the UK Chief Medical Officers' Expert Advisory Group on AIDS*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/documents/digitalasset/dh_089997.pdf.

DH (2010a) *The Health and Social Care Act 2008: Code of Practice for Health and Adult Social Care on the Prevention and Control of Infections and Related Guidance*. Department of Health, London.

www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/documents/digitalasset/dh_110435.pdf.

DH (2010b) *Pandemic (H1N1) 2009 Influenza: A Summary of Guidance for Infection Control in Healthcare Settings*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/@ps/documents/digitalasset/dh_110899.pdf.

DH (2010c) *Uniforms and Workwear: Guidance on Uniform and Workwear Policies for NHS Employers*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/@ps/documents/digitalasset/dh_114754.pdf.

DH/HPA (2008) *Clostridium difficile Infection: How to Deal with the Problem*. Department of Health/Health Protection Agency, London. www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAwebFile/HPAweb_C/1232006607827.

Dharan, S., Mourouga, P., Copin, P. *et al.* (1999) Routine disinfection of patients' environmental surfaces. Myth or reality? *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **42** (2), 113–117.

Elliott, T., Worthington, A., Osman, H. and Gill, M. (2007) *Lecture Notes: Medical Microbiology and Infection*, 7th edn. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

European Parliament (2008) Directive 2008/98/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 19 November 2008 on waste and repealing certain Directives. *Official Journal of the European Union* **22**.11.2008. eur-lex.europa.eu/LexUriServ/LexUriServ.do?uri=OJ:L:2008:312:0003:0030:EN:PDF.

Food Safety Act 1990. HMSO, London.

Fraise, A.P. and Bradley, T. (eds) (2009) *Ayliffe's Control of Healthcare-associated Infection: A Practical Handbook*, 5th edn. Hodder Arnold, London.

Gammon, J. (1998) Analysis of the stressful effects of hospitalisation and source isolation on coping and psychological constructs. *International Journal of Nursing Practice*, **4** (2), 84–96.

Gillespie, I.A., O'Brien, S.J., Adak, G.K. *et al.* (2005) Foodborne general outbreaks of *Salmonella enteritidis* phage type 4 infection, England and Wales, 1992–2002: where are the risks? *Epidemiology and Infection*, **133** (5), 795–801.

Goering, R., Dockrell, H., Zuckermann, M. *et al.* (2007) *Mims' Medical Microbiology*, 4th edn. Mosby, London.

Hazardous Waste (England and Wales) Regulations 2005 and the List of Wastes (England) Regulations 2005. HMSO, London.

Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974. HMSO, London.

Health and Safety Commission (2001) *Legionnaires' Disease: The Control of Legionella Bacteria in Water Systems. Approved Code of Practice and Guidance*, 3rd edn (L8). Health and Safety Executive, London.

Health Protection Agency (2005) *Occupational Transmission of HIV: Summary of Published Reports March 2005 Edition: Data to December 2002*. Health Protection Agency, London. www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAwebFile/HPAweb_C/1194947320156.

Health Protection Agency (2008) *Eye of the Needle: United Kingdom Surveillance of Significant Occupational Exposures to Bloodborne Viruses in Healthcare Workers*. Health Protection Agencyn London. www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAwebFile/HPAweb_C/1227688128096.

Health Protection Agency (2010a) *Results from the Mandatory Surveillance of MRSA Bacteraemia*. Health Protection Agency, London. www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAweb&HPAwebStandard/HPAweb_C/1233906819629.

Health Protection Agency (2010b) *Clostridium difficile Mandatory Surveillance*. Health Protection Agency, London. www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAweb&HPAwebStandard/HPAweb_C/1179746015058.

Health Protection Scotland (2009) *Standard Infection Control Precautions*. www.hps.scot.nhs.uk/haiic/ic/standardinfectioncontrolprecautions-sicps.aspx.

Hospital Infection Society/Infection Control Nurses Association (2007) *The Third Prevalence Survey of Healthcare-associated Infections in Acute Hospitals in England 2006: Report for Department of Health England*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/documents/digitalasset/dh_078389.pdf.

Infection Control Nurses Association (2002) *A Comprehensive Glove Choice*. Fitwise, Edinburgh.

Kao, P.H. and Yang, R.J. (2006) Virus diffusion in isolation rooms. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **62** (3), 338–345.

Korniewicz, D.M., El-Masri, M., Broyles, J.M. *et al.* (2002) Performance of latex and nonlatex medical examination gloves during simulated use. *American Journal of Infection Control*, **30** (2), 133–138.

Lefebvre, S., Waltner-Toews, D., Peregrine, A. *et al.* (2006) Prevalence of zoonotic agents in dogs visiting hospitalized people in Ontario: implications for infection control. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **62** (3), 458–466.

McGuckin, M., Waterman, R., Storr, J. *et al.* (2001) Evaluation of a patient empowering hand hygiene programme. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **48** (3), 222–227.

MHRA (2006) *DB 2006(04) Single-use Medical Devices: Implications and Consequences of Reuse*. Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, London. www.mhra.gov.uk.

MHRA (2010) Guidance notes on medical devices which require sterilization, in *EC Medical Devices Directives: Guidance for Manufacturers on Clinical Investigations to Be Carried Out In the UK, Updated March 2010*. MHRA, London, pp. 40–41. www.mhra.gov.uk.

Moody, K, Finlay, J., Mancuso, C. et al. (2006) Feasibility and safety of a pilot randomized trial of infection rate: neutropenic diet versus standard food safety guidelines. *Journal of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology*, **28** (3), 126–133.

Morgan, D.J., Diekema, D.J., Sepkowitz, K. and Perencevich, E.N. (2009) Adverse outcomes associated with contact precautions: a review of the literature. *American Journal of Infection Control*, **37**, 85–93.

NHS Estates (2001) *Infection Control in the Built Environment*. Stationery Office, London.

NHS Executive (1995) *HSG (95) 18 Hospital Laundry Arrangements for Used and Infected Linen*. NHS Executive, London.

NICE (2006) *Clinical Guideline 33: Tuberculosis*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London. www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/10980/30018/30018.pdf.

NMC (2008a) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/aDisplayDocument.aspx?documentID=5982.

NMC (2008b) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent/.

NMC (2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NPSA (2008) *Patient Safety Alert Second Edition 2 September 2008: Clean Hands Save Lives*. National Patient Safety Agency, London. www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/type/alerts/?entryid45=59848&q=0%C2%ACclean+hands%C2%AC%20.

NPSA (2009) *Revised Healthcare Cleaning Manual*. National Patient Safety Agency, London. www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/EasySiteWeb/getresource.axd?AssetID=61814&type=full&servicetype=Attachment.

Patel, S. (2005) Minimising cross-infection risks associated with beds and mattresses. *Nursing Times*, **101** (8), 52–53.

Perry, C. (2007) *Infection Prevention and Control*. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Pratt, R.J., Pellowe, C.M., Wilson, J.A. *et al.* (2007) epic2: National evidence-based guidelines for preventing healthcare-associated infections in NHS hospitals in England. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **65S**, S1–S64. www.epic.tvu.ac.uk/PDF%20Files/epic2/epic2-final.pdf.

RCN (2010) *Infection Prevention and Control.* www.rcn.org.uk/development/practice/infection_control.

Siegel, J.D., Rhinehart, E., Jackson, M., Chiarello, L. and the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (2007) *Guideline for Isolation Precautions: Preventing Transmission of Infectious Agents in Healthcare Settings*. Centers for Disease Control, Atlanta, GA. www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/pdf/isolation2007.pdf.

UK Health Departments (1998) *Guidance for Clinical Health Care Workers: Protection Against Infection with Blood-borne Viruses. Recommendations of the Expert Advisory Group on AIDS and the Advisory Group on Hepatitis*. Deaprtment of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Lettersandcirculars/Healthservicecirculars/DH_4003818.

Vonberg, R.P, Eckmanns, T., Bruderek, J. *et al.* (2005) Use of terminal tap water filter systems for prevention of nosocomial legionellosis. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **60** (2), 159–162.

Ward, D. (2000) Infection control: reducing the psychological effects of isolation. *British Journal of Nursing*, **9** (3), 162–170.

Weaving, P. (2007) Creuzfeldt Jacob disease. *British Journal of Infection Control*, **8** (5), 26–29.

WHO (2009) *WHO Guidelines on Hand Hygiene in Health Care: First Global Patient Safety Challenge. Clean Care is Safer Care*. World Health Organization, Geneva.whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2009/9789241597906_eng.pdf.

Wigglesworth, N. (2003) The use of protective isolation. *Nursing Times*, **99** (07), 26.

Wigglesworth, N. and Wilcox, M.H. (2006) Prospective evaluation of hospital isolation room capacity. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **63** (2), 156–161.

Wilson, J. (2000) *Clinical Microbiology: An Introduction for Healthcare Professionals*, 8th edn. Bailliére Tindall, London.

Wilson, J. (2006) *Infection Control in Clinical Practice*, 3rd edn. Bailliére Tindall, London.

Multiple choice questions

1 If you were told by a nurse at handover to take ‘standard precautions’ what would you expect to be doing?

a Taking precautions when handling blood and ‘high-risk’ body fluids so that you don’t pass on any infection to the patient.

b Wearing gloves, aprons and mask when caring for someone in protective isolation to protect yourself from infection.

c Asking relatives to wash their hands when visiting patients in the clinical setting.

d Using appropriate hand hygiene, wearing gloves and aprons when necessary, disposing of used sharp instruments safely and providing care in a suitably clean environment to protect yourself and the patients.

1 You are told a patient is in ‘source isolation’. What would you do and why?

a Isolating a patient so that they don’t catch any infections.

b Nursing an individual who is regarded as being particularly vulnerable to infection in such a way as to minimize the transmission of potential pathogens to that person.

c Nurse the patient in isolation, ensure that you wear appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) and adhere to strict hand hygiene, for the purpose of preventing the spread of organisms from that patient to others.

d Nursing a patient who is carrying an infectious agent that may be a risk to others in such a way as to minimize the risk of the infection spreading elsewhere in their body.

3 What would make you suspect that a patient in your care had a urinary tract infection?

a The doctor has requested a midstream urine specimen.

b The patient has a urinary catheter *in situ*, and the patient’s wife states that he seems more forgetful than usual.

c The patient has spiked a temperature, has a raised white cell count (WCC), has new-onset confusion and the urine in his catheter bag is cloudy.

d The patient has complained of frequency of faecal elimination and hasn’t been drinking enough.

4 You are caring for a patient in isolation with suspected *Clostridium difficile*. What are the essential key actions to prevent the spread of infection?

a Regular hand hygiene and the promotion of the infection prevention link nurse role.

b Encourage the doctors to wear gloves and aprons, to be bare below the elbow and to wash hands with alcohol handrub. Ask for cleaning to be increased with soap-based products.

c Ask the infection prevention team to review the patient’s medication chart and provide regular teaching sessions on the ‘5 moments of hand hygiene’. Provide the patient and family with adequate information.

d Review antimicrobials daily, wash hands with soap and water before and after each contact with the patient, ask for enhanced cleaning with chlorine-based products and use gloves and aprons when disposing of body fluids.

5 What steps would you take if you had sustained a needlestick injury?

a Ask for advice from the emergency department, report to occupational health and fill in an incident form.

b Gently make the wound bleed, place under running water and wash thoroughly with soap and water. Complete an incident form and inform your manager. Co-operate with any action to test yourself or the patient for infection with a bloodborne virus but do not obtain blood or consent for testing from the patient yourself; this should be done by someone not involved in the incident.

c Take blood from patient and self for Hep B screening and take samples and form to Bacteriology. Call your union representative for support. Make an appointment with your GP for a sickness certificate to take time off until the wound site has healed so you don't contaminate any other patients.

d Wash the wound with soap and water. Cover any wound with a waterproof dressing to prevent entry of any other foreign material. Wear gloves while working until the wound has healed to prevent contaminating any other patients. Take any steps to have the patient or yourself tested for the presence of a bloodborne virus.

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com and select the Student Edition tab.

Chapter 4

Risk Management

Overview

The fundamental goal for every healthcare professional is to ensure that their patients are treated in a safe environment and protected wherever possible from harm. This manual is devoted to ensuring that the care nurses give to patients is consistently of a high quality and based on sound evidence of good practice. Whilst nurses are obliged to keep updated in their practice and only undertake roles and activities for which they feel they have the knowledge, skills and experience (NMC 2008), keeping patients safe involves a deeper understanding of the hazards which may exist along a patient's pathway of care.

This chapter will look at the ways in which risks to patients and staff can be identified at an early stage and managed appropriately. The management of risk is everybody's business and as the main caregivers in the NHS, it is essential that nurses understand the key principles of risk management and ensure that they know how to keep their patients, colleagues and indeed themselves safe.

Risk management

Definitions

Risk management can be defined as the culture, processes and structures that are directed towards the effective management of potential opportunities and adverse effects (Standards Australia and Standards New Zealand 2009) or, in relation to nursing, the way in which

individuals and teams make sure their patients and staff are kept safe by having appropriate systems to identify and manage hazards and risks.

The language of risk is often confusing to healthcare professionals so before looking further into risk management, it is important to understand the basic definitions.

- *Hazard*: a situation, object, property, substance, phenomenon or activity with the potential to cause harm (HSE 2010).
- *Adverse event*: any event or circumstances leading to unintentional harm or suffering relating to treatment. Adverse events may be preventable or non-preventable (WHO 2005).
- *Risk*: the likelihood that something will occur that will have an impact on the achievement of aims and objectives (Standards Australia and Standards New Zealand 2009) or the probability that a specific adverse event (or patient safety incident) will occur in a specific time period or as the result of a specific situation (NPSA 2007).
- *Clinical risk*: the chance of an adverse outcome resulting from clinical investigation, treatment or patient care (NPSA 2007).
- *Inherent clinical risk*: the permanent or currently unavoidable clinical risk that is associated with a particular clinical investigation or treatment (NPSA 2007).
- *Clinical risk management*: the use of techniques to minimize the occurrence of near misses, errors and incidents in the processes of clinical activity and thereby reducing unwanted outcomes (NPSA 2009, Standards Australia and Standards New Zealand 2009).
- *Patient safety incident*: any unintended or unexpected incident which could have or did lead to harm for one or more patients receiving healthcare.

A patient safety incident is an umbrella term used to describe a single incident or a series of incidents that occur over time. Terms such as adverse, error or mistake suggest individual causality and blame and can often prevent the development of full understanding and learning from the incident.

The main categories of patient safety incidents as defined by the National Patient Safety Agency in 2009 were:

- medication incident

- consent incident
- surgical incident
- anaesthetic incident
- medical device incident
- medical records/clinical information, breaches in confidentiality
- radiotherapy and systemic isotope incidents
- diagnostic radiology
- pathology.

(NPSA 2009)

Patient safety incidents may include:

- incidents that staff are involved in
- incidents that staff may have witnessed
- incidents that caused no harm or minimal harm
- incidents with more serious outcomes
- prevented patient safety incidents (also known as near misses).

A medicine could be described as a *hazard* if it has the potential to cause harm. However, the *risk* of that harm may be very small provided effective controls/measures are in place. If the patient could suffer harm as a result of taking the medication, the *adverse event* may be described as a *clinical risk*, and a *patient safety incident* if the harm occurred unexpectedly or unintentionally.

If the *hazard* is considered as selecting the wrong drug because of look-alike packaging, there is a *clinical risk* to the patient, a *risk* to the members of staff involved and a *risk* to the organization. If the organization identified the hazard and changed the packaging, this could be defined as successful *clinical risk management*. If a healthcare professional still administered the wrong drug following the mitigating action, this would be described as a *patient safety incident* (NPSA 2009).

Accident

An unplanned, undesired non-clinical event that could have or did lead to the injury or death of any person affected by the organization's

activities. This definition therefore includes injuries to staff, visitors and contractors. It also applies to any incident involving a patient that is not directly related to their clinical care; for example, a patient fall would be included as an accident.

Non-clinical incident

An incident which is not related to the clinical area of patients but which could have or did lead to harm to an individual or to the organization. Examples of non-clinical incidents include:

- accident to member of staff, patient, visitor or other person
- security incident
- violence, aggression
- ionizing radiation incident (non-clinical)
- equipment (non-medical) incident
- environmental incident, for example chemical spillage, flood, fire, waste disposal
- food safety incident (NPSA 2009).

Non-clinical prevented incident

A situation in which an event or omission, or a sequence of events or omissions, fails to develop further, whether or not as the result of compensating action, thus preventing harm/injury.

Serious untoward incident

A serious untoward incident (SUI) is an accident or incident involving a patient, member of staff, visitor on NHS property, contractor or other person to whom the organization owes a duty of care, that causes actual serious injury or unexpected death.

SUIs may include:

- permanent harm to one or more patients, staff, visitors or members of the public or where the outcome requires life-saving intervention or major surgical/medical intervention or will shorten life expectancy
- unexpected death of a baby, child or young person

- a scenario that prevents or threatens to prevent a provider organization's ability to continue to deliver healthcare services, for example, actual or potential loss or damage to property, reputation or the environment
- serious abuse or physical attack of a person on NHS property
- an incident likely to attract adverse media coverage or public concern for the organization or the wider NHS (NPSA 2009).

Never events

Serious, largely preventable patient safety incidents that should not occur. The core sets of 'never events' are updated by the NPSA on an annual basis and currently include (NPSA 2009):

- wrong site surgery
- retained instrument post operation
- wrong route administration of chemotherapy
- misplaced nasogastric or orogastric tube not detected prior to use
- inpatient suicide using non-collapsible rails (mental health)
- escape from medium- or high-security mental health services
- in-hospital maternal death from postpartum haemorrhage after elective caesarean section
- intravenous administration of mis-selected concentrated potassium chloride.

Never events are immediately reportable to the NPSA and may affect healthcare organizations' registration with the Care Quality Commission. Healthcare providers may also be subject to financial penalties if never events occur within their organization.

Evidence-based approaches

Raising the profile of risk management in the UK

Risk management and risk prevention have come to dominate the healthcare agenda in the UK (Southgate and Dauphinee 1998, Vincent 2006).

Across the world, several notable incidents involving one or more deaths have led to a refocusing of the safety culture (Alaszewski 2002, Flynn 2002). In the UK, the events that occurred at the Bristol Royal Infirmary were instrumental in the regulation of healthcare. Events such as those that happened at Bristol and more recently at the Mid-Staffordshire NHS Foundation Trust (Francis 2010) have highlighted key issues such as culture, leadership, lack of critical analysis, inward looking and in some cases lack of clinical ownership (Francis 2010, Heyman *et al.* 2010, Weick and Sutcliffe 2003). The Department of Health has drawn upon Bristol, Mid-Staffordshire and other evidence from major global incidents in medications and screening to support the urgency of improving risk management and the safety and consistency of healthcare treatments and outcomes (Heyman *et al.* 2010).

The Bristol Inquiry findings provided supporting arguments for reforms designed to develop a more systematic approach to setting, delivering and monitoring standards in healthcare (DH 1998).

- Clear national standards for services and treatments, through National Service Frameworks (NSFs) and a new National Institute for Clinical Excellence (NICE).
- Local delivery of high-quality healthcare, through clinical governance underpinned by modernized professional self-regulation and extended life-long learning.
- Effective monitoring of progress through a new Commission of Health Improvement, a framework for assessing performance in the NHS and a new national survey of patient and user experience. The Commission for Health Improvement (CHI) was replaced in 2004 by the Healthcare Commission, which in 2009 became part of the Care Quality Commission (CQC) together with the Commission for Social Care Inspection and the Mental Health Act Commission (CQC 2009).

The reforms in monitoring risk and safety in the NHS at this time involved working in partnership with the public, nurses, doctors and allied healthcare professionals. The government, however, made it clear that the responsibility for managing risk and quality lay with the individual staff and professions within the NHS, and ‘failure would not be tolerated’ (DH 1998).

The quality agenda

The quality agenda has been a key driving force in the development and funding of health services in the new millennium. Nurses, doctors and allied healthcare professionals (AHPs) need to demonstrate that they are not only managing risk and preventing harm, but that they are also achieving key clinical outcomes for their patients. The increase in regulation of health services, in the form of clinical audit, professional peer review and external regulation, and the sharing of this information with the public have enabled patients to make choices regarding the treatment and care they receive. Nurses now find themselves in the position of explaining to patients how they are ensuring their safety, particularly with issues such as hand hygiene and cleanliness.

As with all public services, regulatory oversight of the NHS has increased notably since the 1980s. It is conducted at arm's length from the government through a number of external bodies (Power 2007).

Hutter (2006) summarized this trend as a move from government to governance. *High Quality Care for All* (DH 2008), the final report of the Next Stage Review, was a landmark document for the future of healthcare in the UK. In the report, Lord Darzi described quality as having three key components in relation to doing the best for patients: patient experience, effectiveness of care and patient safety, or, from a patient's viewpoint:

- be nice to me
- make me better
- do me no harm.

Table 4.1 outlines Darzi's seven steps to quality, all of which relate to staff throughout the NHS, from those in the clinical areas delivering hands-on care to the leaders of organizations at trust board level.

Table 4.1 Darzi's seven steps to enhancing quality

Step	Enhancing and improving quality	Description
1	Bring clarity to quality	Further development of NICE and evidence portal
2	Measuring	The introduction of quality metrics and 'scorecards' to demonstrate quality

	quality	performance against quality targets
3	Publish quality performance	As from April 2010, all NHS and Foundation trusts are obliged to publish quality accounts. These demonstrate how the above measures of quality have been achieved and the quality objectives for the organization
4	Recognize and reward quality	Commissioning for Quality and Innovation (CQUINS) provide financial incentives in relation to preset quality indicators
5	Raise standards	A National Quality Board and Quality Observatory will ensure quality standards are set and met within the health service
6	Safeguard quality	From 1 April 2009 healthcare organizations were obliged to register with the newly formed CQC regarding compliance with the Hygiene Code and from 1 April 2010 regarding compliance with the Quality Standards for Health
7	Staying ahead	Professionals are encouraged to introduce best practice models from the UK and abroad

Care Quality Commission (CQC)

The CQC was established by the Health and Social Care Act 2008 to bring together the Healthcare Commission, the Commission for Social Care Inspection and the Mental Health Act Commission, the three former regulatory bodies in the health and adult social care system in England. The creation of a super-agency is intended to overcome barriers between health and social care where the distinctions between their services increasingly blur.

From 1 April 2009, for the first time, healthcare providers were obliged to register with the CQC their compliance with the Hygiene Code and from 1 April 2010, with the CQC's Essential Standards of Quality and Safety. These quality standards are divided into 28 outcomes, which must be consistently achieved, 16 of those outcomes relating directly to care delivered to patients by frontline staff.

The CQC has powers of enforcement and is required to adopt a risk-based approach and efficiently target action where it is needed (DH 2007, 2008). In relation to governmental efforts to control healthcare-associated infections and quality standards, the CQC is able to fine hospitals, close wards, suspend services and increase inspection visits where hygiene or care quality requirements are not being met. In the wake of the Mid-Staffordshire NHS Trust case (Healthcare Commission 2009) and the subsequent independent enquiry (Francis 2010), risk scrutiny is to be strengthened by the establishment of 'risk summits'.

Inspectors, health watchdogs and regional NHS chiefs will vet the safety of every hospital and share information so that patterns in sub-standard care can be identified. Other reforms include faster alert systems to identify trusts with high mortality rates and risk profiling to identify organizations threatened by management changes and high staff turnover or vacancy rates (Francis 2010).

Risk management and organizational change

Making sure patients come to no harm is a key component of ensuring high-quality care for all. The quality agenda described above has a key focus on establishing and measuring targeted outcomes and establishing very clear reporting structures.

Running alongside the quality agenda in the NHS has been an increasing focus on and use of formal risk-based management approaches (Power 2007). This has also been stimulated by a wider strengthening of faith in its importance to the functioning of a well-governed organization, which is internally and externally accountable for how it handles uncertainty and risk (Power 2007). The leaders of healthcare organizations are being held to account for the levels of risk and harm within their organizations, making investment in robust systems for managing risk, from ward to board, a very high priority.

The publication of *An Organization with a Memory* (DH 2000) and *Building a Safer NHS for Patients* (DH 2001) highlighted from international research the need for organizations to learn more when things go wrong. With the publication of patient safety data such as infection rates in hospitals, patients are also lobbying for better, safer care in hospitals. It is estimated that around 10% of patients (900,000 using 2002–3 admission rates) admitted to NHS hospitals have experienced a patient safety incident and that up to half of these could have been prevented. This study also estimated that 72,000 of these incidents might have contributed to a patient's death (Vincent 2006). Whilst the majority of those incidents relate to system failures involving many healthcare professionals, nurses have a key role to play not only in preventing harm but also in the analysis of patient safety incidents

which inevitably occur, and the dissemination of lessons learned to prevent reoccurrence of incidents.

The quality agenda has provided the NHS with a much greater focus on managing risk and maintaining patient safety than ever before but with such pressure to achieve excellent clinical outcomes comes the risk of professionals being apprehensive in reporting when adverse incidents occur. Quality agendas such as the one outlined above are, however, officially viewed as a method for promoting reflective cultures in which learning rather than blame and defensiveness predominates (Berta *et al.* 2005).

The vision for the NHS is one where patients and staff will be enabled to report errors and guided by this information, healthcare services will individually and collectively progress through continuous improvement.

Development of a 'No Blame' culture

Organizational culture is difficult to define and assess (Davies *et al.* 2000) but there is wide agreement that one of the key impediments to openness in NHS institutions is fear of professionally harmful consequences such as loss of job and/or reputation and litigation (Meurier 2000). Reason (2006) has argued that the source of such fears lies in the myth that errors are the exception rather than the norm in healthcare and must therefore be the fault of flawed individuals.

Fear of blame can lead professionals to draw back from openness and instead take refuge behind professional lines. For example, an in-depth study by Shaw *et al.* 2007 revealed that frontline nurses felt unfairly targeted when patient incidents occurred. As a result, they became less open to new ideas of treatment and to participating confidently in multidisciplinary practice.

Approaches that refocus attention on wider issues and underlying factors of patient incidents are thought to be more helpful because they avoid prior assumption of personal blame, promote open reporting and stimulate learning from mistakes (Vincent 2006). The Being Open policy (NPSA 2005) requires all NHS organizations to establish an infrastructure which facilitates openness between staff, patients and carers following an incident. Research confirms that patients would

welcome prompt disclosure and an apology when incidents occur (Carthey 2005).

Developing a 'no blame' culture within the NHS has been key in recent developments in patient safety, though dilemmas still remain for many nurses when working with staff who have been involved in patient safety incidents. Studies have shown that the best way of reducing error rates and preventing harm is to target failures in systems, and involve staff in reducing risk and participating in learning from near misses rather than taking actions against individual members of staff (Macrea 2008).

The National Reporting and Learning Service of the NPSA provides examples of frequently reported patient safety incidents and then suggests ways to redesign systems, increase learning and reduce risk. Recently published examples include reducing the risk of harm from chest drains and from prescribing and administering controlled drugs (NPSA 2010). Dr Lucian Leape from the Harvard School of Public Health suggests that individuals and organizations confront two myths concerning patient safety.

- *The perfection myth*: if people try hard enough, they will not make any errors.
- *The punishment myth*: if we punish people when they make errors, they will make fewer of them.

The National Patient Safety Agency has a key role both in producing guidance and offering support to professionals, and in the analysis and benchmarking of safety data across healthcare services to identify trends and lessons learned (NPSA 2009). It recognizes that healthcare will always involve risks, but that by adopting a culture of openness and transparency, and tackling the root causes of patient safety incidents, risks can be reduced.

The National Patient Safety Agency (NPSA)

The NPSA was established in 2001. Its two main aims were, firstly, to identify trends and patterns in patient safety problems through its National Reporting and Learning System (NRLS) and secondly, to support staff at the local level to report incidents with a view to ensuring

a high national profile for improving patient safety. Subsequently, the agency has undergone several significant changes. In 2005, its remit was expanded to cover safety aspects of hospital design, food and cleanliness, safety issues in research and support for local performance concerns.

The launch of the Never Events Policy for England in March 2009 (NPSA 2009) is the most recent attempt to set patient safety targets. It defines eight core events considered absolutely preventable, including wrong site surgery, inpatient suicide using non-collapsible rails, and wrong route administration of chemotherapy. The never events framework lists highly specific and selected risks but is intended to act as a spur to the risk and patient safety agenda.

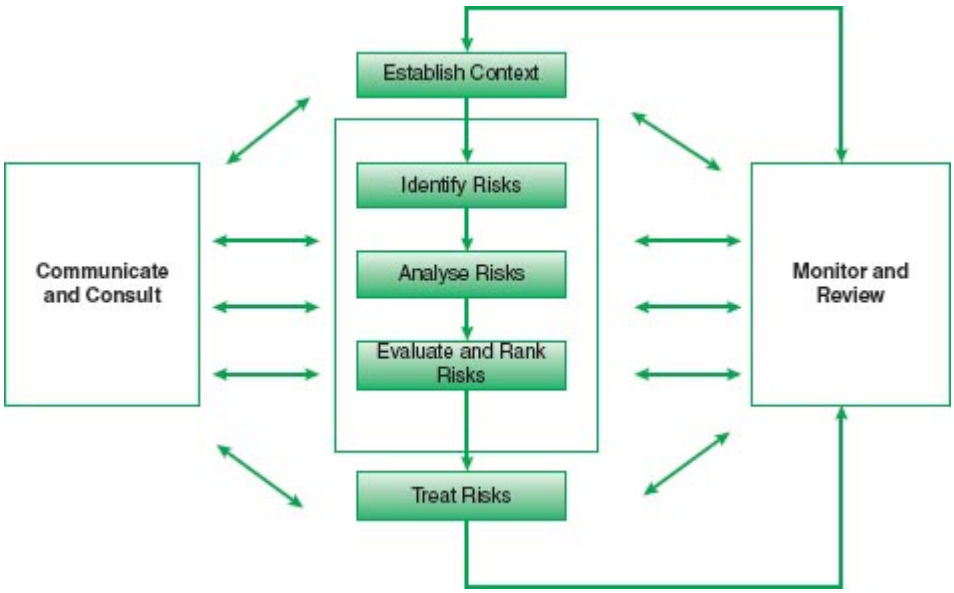
The risk management process

Risk management is a central part of any organization's strategic and operational management processes. It is integral to the business planning process in order to ensure that the organization can achieve its core objectives. Risk management, undertaken systematically and robustly, will help ensure a successful trust, one that prospers while delivering an excellent high-quality and safe service to its patients.

Health and safety management is inseparable from risk management. Legally healthcare trusts are required to have a health and safety policy (DH 1999). The term 'risk management' is used as an overarching concept but it explicitly includes the management of health, safety, fire and security, clinical, operational, financial and strategic risks.

Figure 4.1 depicts an organizational model for managing risk, which is based on the Australian/New Zealand risk management standard 4360:2004 (Standards Australia and Standards New Zealand 2009) and is internationally recognized.

Figure 4.1 The risk management process. Standards Australia and Standards New Zealand (2009), under license 101-c097 SAI Global.



The risk management process made easy

As can be seen from Figure 4.1, the risk management process comprises seven key stages (Standards Australia and Standards New Zealand 2009).

1. Establishing the context.
2. Risk identification.
3. Risk analysis.
4. Risk evaluation.
5. Risk treatment.
6. Monitoring and reviewing risks.
7. Communication and consultation.

Stage 1 – establishing the context

A key component of the context of risk management which impacts upon every level of the process is the individual and organizational commitment to maintain an open dialogue with staff and others about risk issues, to listen to staff concerns and to communicate effectively to all relevant parties about risk-related issues. Nurses working within any organization need to ensure that they are familiar with the risk management strategy and how risks are managed and recorded at an organizational level (NPSA 2009).

Stage 2 – risk identification and analysis

To prevent harm, it is important to understand not only what is likely to go wrong but also how and why it may go wrong. Hopkinson 2001 states that 'the objective of the risk identification element is to ensure that all significant risks are listed so that they can be analysed and evaluated'. This step requires considering the activity within the context of the physical and emotional environment and the culture of the organization and the staff who perform the activity.

This is a small step but essential to the process, as risks that are not identified will not be managed. Risks are identified from a wide range of sources, as illustrated in Figure 4.2.

Figure 4.2 Risk sources. Standards Australia and Standards New Zealand (2009), under license 101-c097 SAI Global.

As can be seen, risk identification is undertaken in many ways and includes incident reporting forms, use of specific risk assessment forms such as falls, pressure sore, nutrition, complaints, legal claims, adverse events and adverse trend analysis, Health and Safety Executive visits, trust health and safety audit inspections, and NHS Litigation Authority standards. Healthcare organizations are now obliged to assess the key risks for the organization and there is an expectation that wards and departments will meet regularly to discuss and analyse particular risks in their clinical areas. This is known as proactive risk assessment.

Stages 3 and 4 – risk analysis and evaluation

The data collected from the risk identification process have to be analysed to ensure that decisions can be made about prioritizing and treating the risks. This stage involves considering the consequence (how bad?) and the likelihood (how often?).

A widely used system for risk analysis and evaluation in trusts is the three-step 5 × 5 risk-scoring matrix as detailed in Steps A–C.

- Step A involves assessing the severity/consequence score (how bad?).
- Step B involves assessing the likelihood of the consequence occurring (how often?).
- Step C involves assessing the consequence × the likelihood and applying a risk grading score.

Step A: consequence score

The most appropriate domain for the identified risk is chosen from the left-hand side of the table. Then the individual works along the columns in the same row to assess the severity of the risk on the scale of 1 to 5 to determine the consequence score, which is the number given at the top of the column.

	Consequence score (severity levels) and examples of descriptors				
	1	2	3	4	5
Domains	**Negligible**	**Minor**	**Moderate**	**Major**	**Catastrophic**
Impact on the safety of patients, staff or public (physical/ psychological harm)	Minimal injury requiring no/ minimal intervention or treatment No time off work	Minor injury or illness, requiring minor intervention Requiring time off work for >3 days Increase in length of hospital stay by 1–3 days	Moderate injury requiring professional intervention Requiring time off work for 4–14 days Increase in length of hospital stay by 4–15 days RIDDOR/ agency reportable incident An event which impacts on a small number of patients	Major injury leading to long-term incapacity/ disability Requiring time off work for >14 days Increase in length of hospital stay by >15 days Mismanagement of patient care with long-term effects	Incident leading to death Multiple permanent injuries or irreversible health effects An event which impacts on a large number of patients

	1	2	3	4	5
Domains	**Negligible**	**Minor**	**Moderate**	**Major**	**Catastrophic**
Quality/complaints/audit	Peripheral element of treatment or service sub-optimal Informal complaint/enquiry	Overall treatment or service sub-optimal Formal complaint (stage 1) Local resolution Single failure to meet internal standards Minor implications for patient safety if unresolved Reduced performance rating if unresolved	Treatment or service has significantly reduced effectiveness Formal complaint (stage 2) complaint Local resolution (with potential to go to independent review) Repeated failure to meet internal standards Major patient safety implications if findings are not acted on	Non-compliance with national standards with significant risk to patients if unresolved Multiple complaints/ independent review Low performance rating Critical report	Totally unacceptable level or quality of treatment/ service Gross failure of patient safety if findings not acted on Inquest/ ombudsman enquiry Gross failure to meet national standards
Human resources/ organizational development/ staffing/competence	Short-term low staffing level that temporarily reduces service quality (<1 day)	Low staffing level that reduces the service quality	Late delivery of key objective/service due to lack of staff Unsafe staffing level or competence (>1 day) Low staff morale Poor staff attendance for mandatory/ key training	Uncertain delivery of key objective/ service due to lack of staff Unsafe staffing level or competence (>5 days) Loss of key staff Very low staff morale No staff attending mandatory/ key training	Non-delivery of key objective/service due to lack of staff Ongoing unsafe staffing levels or competence Loss of several key staff No staff attending mandatory training/key training on an ongoing basis
Statutory duty/ inspections	No or minimal impact or breach of guidance/ statutory duty	Breach of statutory legislation Reduced performance rating if unresolved	Single breach in statutory duty Challenging external recommendations/ improvement notice	Enforcement action Multiple breaches in statutory duty Improvement notices Low performance rating Critical report	Multiple breaches in statutory duty Prosecution Complete systems change required Zero performance rating Severely critical report

Adverse publicity/reputation	Rumours Potential for public concern	Local media coverage Short-term reduction in public confidence Elements of public expectation not being met	Local media coverage Long-term reduction in public confidence	National media coverage with <3 days service well below reasonable public expectation	National media coverage with >3 days service well below reasonable public expectation. MP concerned (questions in the House) Total loss of public confidence
Business objectives/ projects	Insignificant cost increase/ schedule slippage	<5% over project budget Schedule slippage	5–10% over project budget Schedule slippage	Non-compliance with national objectives 10–25% over project budget Schedule slippage Key objectives not met	Incident leading >25% over project budget Schedule slippage Key objectives not met
Finance including claims	Small loss Risk of claim remote	Loss of 0.1–0.25% of budget Claim less than £10,000	Loss of 0.25–0.5% of budget Claim(s) between £10,000 and £100,000	Uncertain delivery of key objective/loss of 0.5–1.0% of budget Claim(s) between £100,000 and £1 million Purchasers failing to pay on time	Non-delivery of key objective/ loss of >1% of budget Failure to meet specification/ slippage Loss of contract/payment by results Claim(s) >£1 million
Service/ business interruption/ Environmental impact	Loss/interruption of >1 hour Minimal or no impact on the environment	Loss/interruption of >8 hours Minor impact on environment	Loss/interruption of >1 day Moderate impact on environment	Loss/interruption of >1 week Major impact on environment	Permanent loss of service or facility Catastrophic impact on environment

Step B: likelihood score (L)

This involves assessing the likelihood of the consequence occurring.

Likelihood score	1	2	3	4	5
Frequency	Rare	Unlikely	Possible	Likely	Almost certain
How often might it/does it happen?	This will probably never happen/recur	Do not expect it to happen/recur but it is possible it may do so	Might happen or recur occasionally	Will probably happen/recur but it is not a persisting issue	Will undoubtedly happen/recur, possibly frequently

Step C: risk scoring = consequence × likelihood (C × L)

This involves multiplying the consequence score by the likelihood score to come up with a risk level.

	Likelihood				
Likelihood score	1	2	3	4	5
	Rare	Unlikely	Possible	Likely	Almost certain
5 Catastrophic	5	10	15	20	25
4 Major	4	8	12	16	20
3 Moderate	3	6	9	12	15
2 Minor	2	4	6	8	10
1 Negligible	1	2	3	4	5

The risk scores are not intended to be precise mathematical measures of risk but the system allows healthcare professionals and managers to arrive at a consistent risk evaluation score and subsequent risk level. Risks can then be prioritized and action taken accordingly. Within each range of risk, there is a range of scores that will further help the process of prioritization. These levels can be simplified into the following format.

1–3	Low risk – quick, easy measures implemented immediately and further action planned when resources permit. Can be managed at local level with appropriate procedures.
4–6	Moderate risk – actions implemented as soon as possible but no later than a year. Requires escalation to senior manager.
8–12	High risk – actions implemented as soon as possible and no later than 6 months. Escalation to senior level.
15–25	Extreme risk – requires urgent action. Escalation to trust board/Strategic Health Authority.

In summary, where a risk is adequately addressed by existing controls or can be resolved by some immediate action, it will be the

responsibility of all staff to ensure that the control is implemented in their ward or area and that any necessary action is taken. In cases where the risk cannot be immediately resolved, it is the responsibility of the manager to escalate the risk through the trust risk management structures so that the risk may be reviewed by senior management and placed on a document know as the *risk register*.

A risk register is a log of risks which have been evaluated but not yet fully controlled; these are therefore risks that may impact upon patient safety or the trust's objectives.

The risk register includes details of the nature of the risk, the severity, likelihood and overall rating, the service which owns the risk, the controls currently in place, the forum where progress in mitigating the risk is monitored, and progress achieved.

Stage 5 – risk treatment

Where risks have been identified, action must be taken to control these risks by reducing the potential impact or likelihood to an acceptable level. The overall purpose of risk treatment is to determine what will be done to mitigate the risk and who will be responsible for the treatment action(s). Risks are more likely to be acted upon if responsibility is allocated to an individual. Risk treatment options are evaluated in terms of feasibility, cost and benefits with the aim of choosing the most appropriate and practical way of reducing risk to a tolerable level. Risk action plans may seek to reduce the likelihood of occurrence, minimize the consequences, transfer or share the risk, or retain the risk.

The following list of risk reduction approaches can be used.

- *Avoid the risk*: for example, by deciding not to proceed with the activity likely to generate risk (where this is practicable); for example, withdrawing equipment from use or terminating activity.
- *Reduce the likelihood of the risk materializing*: audit and compliance programmes, policies and procedures, preventive maintenance, supervision and training.
- *Reduce the potential impact if the risk does materialize*: for example, through contingency planning, minimizing exposure to the risk.

- *Transfer of risk*: this involves another party bearing or sharing some part of the risk. Mechanisms include the use of contracts, insurance arrangements and organizational structures such as partnership and joint ventures.

Stage 6 – monitoring and reviewing risks

Continuous monitoring and review of risks ensure that new risks are detected and managed, action plans are implemented and managers and stakeholders kept informed. The availability of regular information on risks can assist in identifying trends like trouble spots or other changes that have arisen. It is essential that this information is accurate, complete and based on the most recently available data. Ongoing review is also required to ensure that risk management treatment plans remain relevant. In reality, the factors that affect risk assessments are ever changing and it is therefore important for this process to be ongoing to ensure that the risk management system remains effective.

Stage 7 – communication and consultation

At every stage of the risk management process, it is important that healthcare professionals, ward and departmental teams, managers and the risk management team communicate and consult both which each other and with key stakeholders, which may include the patient and their family. Key decisions regarding risk issues need to be made collaboratively in order for the whole process to remain open and transparent. Essential to nurses being successful and confident in managing risk is their understanding of their own and others' contribution to the risk management process and maintaining effective communication throughout the organization.

The two scenarios below demonstrate the way in which the risk management process can be put into practice in the ward setting. The first scenario demonstrates the 'procedure' for undertaking proactive risk assessment of a situation, and the second outlines the procedure for managing risk following a patient safety incident.

Scenario One

Mrs M is a 75-year-old woman admitted for a course of chemotherapy. She lives with her daughter who is her main carer. On admission she is appears to be a very thin, frail woman who is slightly unsteady on her feet. She walks with the aid of a walking frame but requires supervision. Mrs M's daughter also cares for her mother-in-law so is unable to stay with her mother in hospital.

Risk management stages	Action
1 Establish the context	As part of the induction process to any clinical area, you should ensure that you fully understand the risk management procedures for the organization, including the documentation required to ensure that a full assessment of the patient is undertaken. Prior to the patient arriving on the ward, ensure you have the appropriate documentation available, including any risk assessment you may require, for example falls risk assessment. Introduce yourself to the patient and her daughter and explain the admission assessment process. Show the patient and her daughter around the ward, explain the ward values and routines and introduce her to her 'neighbours', if appropriate.
2 Risk identification	Undertake a full patient admission assessment, including risk assessments such as a falls assessment, pressure ulcer risk assessment (see Chapter 15), venous thrombosis assessment (VTE), nutritional assessment (see Chapter 8). Include the patient's daughter in the risk assessments to gain a full picture of the patient's needs.
3/4 Risk analysis and evaluation	Formulate an action/care plan based on the assessment of risk above and agree the plan with the patient and her daughter, especially concerning discharge planning.
5 Risk treatment	Communicate the results of the risk assessment and implement the actions required to the rest of the multiprofessional ward team and make referrals to other professionals as required.
6 Monitoring and reviewing risk	Ensure the patient's risk treatment/care plans are reviewed regularly throughout her stay. Her risk status may change as she progresses through her treatment pathway and risk assessments may need to be repeated.
7 Communication and consultation	Ensure multidisciplinary meetings, ward handovers and ward rounds include regular discussions regarding the patient's risk treatment/care plan.
1–7	Prior to discharge, meet once again with the patient and her daughter to assess the potential risks on discharge and the actions that the patient and her daughter are able to undertake to mitigate those risks, together with any support they may need to manage them. This may include referral to community services, home care teams, local authority support. Depending on the level of risk identified, a full multiprofessional team risk assessment may need to be undertaken.

Scenario Two

You hear a loud commotion in the ward and on investigation find that Mr S, an 80-year-old patient who is 2 days post abdominal surgery, appears to have fallen out of bed and is lying on the floor next to his bed. He is in considerable pain, though there are no obvious signs of injury or haemorrhage.

Risk management stages	Action
	Remain calm and breathe deeply. The patient will become more anxious if you are not calm, which may result in further harm.
	Call for immediate help from both the senior nurse and the medical team. The immediate priority is to prevent further harm to the patient.
1/2 Establish the context/Risk identification	Undertake an initial assessment of the patient without moving him and commence any first aid procedures required, for example securing peripheral lines and abdominal wounds, whilst awaiting the medical team.
	Offer the patient reassurance throughout by explaining exactly what is happening. The patient will be confused and alarmed. An understanding of exactly what is happening will reduce this anxiety.
2 Risk identification	Assist the medical team in their initial assessment.
2 Risk identification and 3/4 Risk analysis and evaluation	Once the patient is safe to be lifted back into bed, transfer the patient back to bed whilst following the trust's manual handling procedures. There is the potential for a second incident in relation to manual handling so even during patient safety incidents, it is important to prevent further incidents.
2 Risk identification, 3/4 Risk analysis and evaluation and 5 Risk treatment	Depending on the level of injuries sustained, undertake any further nursing observations or care required and adjust the patient's plan of care to include extra care needs.
2–7	Explain to the patient exactly what has happened and what is going to happen to prevent reoccurrence of the incident. If appropriate, explain the situation to the patient's next of kin. Risk monitoring and communication: communication is essential, ensuring that the patient and their family know the staff are being open and transparent regarding the incident.
3/4 Risk analysis and evaluation If there is serious injury to the patient then a formal root cause analysis is likely to be undertaken, led by the risk co-ordinator. The nurse can do an immediate assessment of obvious causes of the fall	Evaluate the root cause of the fall, for example bed guard not in place, patient confused, restless.
5 Risk treatment The risk plan should mitigate the	Undertake a risk assessment regarding the patient's risk of falling again and formulate a risk treatment plan. This may include the use of bed safety sides, or one-to-one nursing care.

future risks of reoccurrence of the incident	
3/4 Risk analysis and evaluation This scoring assessment should be undertaken in line with the organization's incident reporting policy and in collaboration with senior staff if appropriate	Complete an incident form, outlining the action which is being taken to mitigate the reoccurrence of such an incident. Include a risk score, for example if the patient fell because his bed guard was not correctly in place but this is now included in the risk treatment plan, together with extra nursing observation. What is the likelihood of the patient falling out of bed again? What are the potential consequences if the patient were to fall out of bed again?
7 Communication and consultation Communicating the action needed to prevent the reoccurrence of incidents and any lessons learned is key in the management of risk within wards, departments and organizations	Discuss the incident and the risk score with the senior nurse/risk co-ordinator and plan how lessons learned from the incident can be shared with the whole team. Consider whether any of the staff require further training on the management of falls prevention.

Legal and professional issues

However well intentioned healthcare organizations may be, the nature of healthcare means that at times things do not go to plan. Nurses from novice to expert can find patient safety incidents extremely stressful and at times upsetting. It is important that if a nurse is involved in an adverse event, they seek and are given appropriate support and guidance in order to learn from the event and prevent its reoccurrence in the future. The nurse has an obligation to report any incidents which occur, and to act in a transparent and open manner. Box 4.1 highlights the action which should be taken if a nurse believes an incident has occurred. Nurses can test their knowledge of risk management by working through a checklist (Box 4.2).

Box 4.1 Priorities in the event of a patient safety incident

Immediate

- Mitigate harm by taking immediate action within the scope of professional practice and call for help if the patient is at risk of further injury or harm.
- Remain calm and offer an initial explanation to the person or people involved.

- Take action to prevent immediate reoccurrence of the incident.
- Report the incident to a senior member of staff.

Short term

- Complete an incident form (depending on the organization, this may be in electronic format), assessing the likelihood and consequence of the risk reoccurring.
- You may be asked to be involved in a root cause analysis (RCA) event. This is a structured process for analysing how the incident occurred, what the main causes of the incident were and how it can be prevented in the future.
- Discuss the incident one to one with your manager, identifying any areas of specific training or support you may require to prevent reoccurrence of the incident.

Long term

- Ensure that actions resulting from the RCA or incident investigation are followed up and completed.
- Work with the ward/departmental team to audit the lessons learned and actions taken.

Box 4.2 Risk management – how do you do?

	Yes	No
1 Have you undergone risk management training within your organization?		
2 Do you understand the organization's risk management and incident reporting policies?		
3 Do you comply at all times with the relevant risk management strategies and policies?		
4 Do you know what the three top risks are in your clinical area and what action has been put in place to mitigate those risks?		
5 Do you report to your line manager if you have any concerns regarding risks or patient safety?		
6 Do you follow up to see if any action has been taken?		
7 Are you familiar with/ have you had training on the specific patient risk assessments in your organization? Manual handling? Pressure area assessments? Nutritional assessments? Infection control assessments? Falls assessments?		
8 Are you competent to use all the equipment you are currently using?		
9 Do you identify with your line manager any areas of your practice in which you require further training?		
10 Do you discuss risk management with your patients and their families where appropriate?		

11 Do you know how to complete an incident form?

12 Have you had training on how to undertake root cause analysis?

13 Do you regularly access the National Patient Safety Agency website to keep updated?

The assessment and mitigation of important clinical risks

In clinical practice there are some risks that have been highlighted nationally and internationally as both largely preventable and, if they occur, causing major morbidity, suffering and high financial costs. Three key examples of these are the prevention of:

- venous thromboembolism (VTE)
- pressure ulcers
- falls.

Venous thromboembolism

Related theory

The prevention of venous thromboembolism

Each year over 25,000 people in England die from VTE contracted in hospital (House of Commons Health Select Committee 2005).

The main danger is from pulmonary embolism (PE). A thrombus forms in the lower limb or pelvic veins and then travels in the blood and lodges in the lungs, leading to acute massive PE, which has a high mortality rate. The initial thrombus is called a deep vein thrombosis (DVT). A DVT is itself a cause of substantial morbidity and may lead to the development of post-thrombotic syndrome (in around 30% of people with DVT), which is associated with chronic swelling and ulceration of the legs. Add this burden of morbidity to the 25,000 deaths and it becomes a massive health problem (NICE 2010). It is possible to greatly

reduce the risk of VTE by using four main approaches to prevention, and sometimes a combination.

- The use of antiembolic compression stockings.
- The use of prophylactic anticoagulation.
- Early mobilization after surgery.
- External compression and decompression devices in those who cannot mobilize.

(Dolan and Fitch 2007, House of Commons Health Select Committee 2005, NICE 2007)

On admission or preferably prior to admission, all patients should have a risk assessment to assess both their individual risk for developing VTE and any risk factors for preventive therapies (National Clinical Guidelines Centre 2009).

Risk factors for the development of VTE

- Active cancer or cancer treatment.
- Age over 60 years.
- Critical care admission.
- Dehydration.
- Known thrombophilias.
- Obesity (Body Mass Index >30 kg/m^2).
- One or more significant co-morbidities.
- Individual history or first-degree relative with a history of VTE.
- Use of hormone replacement therapy.
- Use of oestrogen-containing contraceptive therapy.
- Varicose veins with phlebitis.
- Pregnancy and up to 6 weeks following birth (special considerations).

(National Clinical Guidelines Centre 2009)

Antiembolic stockings (Graduated elastic compression stockings)

Graduated compression (antiembolic) stockings promote venous flow and reduce venous stasis not only in the legs but also in the pelvic veins and inferior vena cava (National Clinical Guidelines Centre 2009, NICE 2007, Roderick *et al.* 2005).

Thigh-length graduated compression/antiembolic stockings should be fitted from the time of admission to hospital unless contraindicated, for example peripheral arterial disease or diabetic neuropathy (NICE 2007) and until the patient has returned to their usual level of mobility. For details on measurement and fitting, see Chapter 14.

The use of prophylactic anticoagulation with low molecular weight heparin

Heparin interrupts the clotting cascade and can prevent clots. Different types of heparin affect clotting at varying levels and work in slightly dissimilar ways, depending on whether they are unfractionated heparin (UH) or low molecular weight heparin (LMWH). In addition, factor Xa inhibitors prevent the formation and development of thrombi.

Unfractionated heparin and LMWH are comparable in preventing VTE, but the advantage of LMWH over UH is that it has been shown to have a better side-effect profile with fewer adverse events (Lechler *et al.* 2006). Patients also rarely need to have regular clotting tests that are recommended for those on UH. The side-effects of LMWH include thrombocytopenia, liver abnormalities, skin rashes and minor bruising and so it should be used cautiously in patients who have renal failure (Dolan and Fitch 2007, National Clinical Guidelines Centre 2009, NICE 2007, Wilson 2007).

Patients who are at risk from VTE and are assessed as being able to receive LMWH should commence prophylactic treatment as soon as they have been assessed as at risk and continue with it as long as the risk remains. Patients will receive an injection which is administered subcutaneously once a day. There are several LMWH preparations available for use in the UK and Europe. Many patients will continue with LMWH on discharge from hospital and will therefore need to be taught how to self-administer or, if unable to undertake this, their family

or a professional carer will need to administer the once-daily dose (National Clinical Guidelines Centre 2009, NICE 2007).

Intermittent pneumatic compression devices

Pneumatic compression devices, usually in the form of a calf boot attached to an external pump which constantly inflates and deflates, are used to promote venous return. They are most useful in patients who have been assessed as having high risk factors and are immobile following surgery or critical illness. The device can be used in combination with VTE compression stockings and LMWH.

The device is often applied in theatre or in critical care and is then used until the risk has reduced or the patient is unable to tolerate it. With all external compression devices, it is important that the device is regularly removed and skin integrity is assessed. Only pneumatic compression devices that are CE marked and have been assessed as safe to use as a medical device should be used (National Clinical Guidelines Centre 2009).

Pressure ulcers

Definition

Pressure ulcers are areas of localized tissue damage caused by excess pressure, shearing or friction forces (Benbow 2006). The extent of this damage can range from persistent erythema to necrotic ulceration involving muscle, tendon and bone (RCN 2005).

Related theory

The three major extrinsic factors that are identified as being significant contributors in the development of pressure ulcers are pressure, shearing and friction. These factors should be removed or diminished to reduce injury (RCN 2005).

- *Pressure*. The blood pressure at the arterial end of the capillaries is approximately 35 mmHg, while at the venous end it drops to 16 mmHg

(the average mean capillary pressure is about 17 mmHg) (Guyton and Hall 2000, Tortora and Grabowski 2008). External pressures exceeding this will cause capillary obstruction as the capillaries close when the pressure between the bed surface and the bony prominence exceeds 16–32 mmHg (Landis 1930, S. Hampton, personal communication, October 2006). Tissues that are dependent on these capillaries are deprived of their blood supply and will eventually become ischaemic and die (Bridel-Nixon 1999, Tong 1999). The pressure near bony prominences can be up to five times greater and is known as the 'cone of pressure'; thus a surface redness can hide extensive tissue damage nearer the bone. It also explains why a small ulcer can open into a large, undetermined ulcer with overhanging edges and sinus formation (S. Hampton, personal communication, October 2006).

- *Shearing*. This may occur when the patient slips down the bed or is dragged up the bed. As the skeleton moves over the underlying tissue, the microcirculation is destroyed and the tissue dies of anoxia. In more serious cases, lymphatic vessels and muscle fibres may also become torn, resulting in a deep pressure ulcer (Clay 2000, Collier 1999, Simpson *et al.* 1996).
- *Friction*. This is a component of shearing, which causes stripping of the stratum corneum, leading to superficial ulceration (Johnson 1989, Waterlow 1988). Poor lifting and moving techniques may be a major contributory factor (NICE 2003).

The most common sites for pressure ulcer development are areas where soft tissue is compressed between a prominence (such as the sacrum) and an external surface (such as a mattress or seat of a chair) (Hess 2005).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Pressure ulcers are a major healthcare issue and are associated with pain, infection, prolonged hospital stay and in extreme cases can be a causative factor in a patient's death (Bennett *et al.* 2004, RCN 2005).

Many pressure ulcers are preventable if there is a systematic and multiprofessional approach to their prevention and continuous assessment of skin integrity (Beldon 2006).

A 3-year clinical audit published in 2009 reported overall pressure ulcer prevalence in UK hospitals of 10.2–10.3%. Over half of pressure ulcers are hospital acquired (57–63%) (Phillips and Buttery 2009). Another study, published in 2004, reported that the mean incidence of pressure damage amongst hospital inpatients in the UK was approximately 40 cases per 1000 admissions in the population at risk (Bennett *et al.* 2004). NPSA data from 2009 demonstrate that of the pressure ulcers reported to the NRLS each year, 13% were grade 1, 47% were grade 2, 23% were grade 3 and 17% were grade 4 (NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement 2010, NPSA 2009). See Box 4.3.

Box 4.3 Grades of pressure ulcers

Grade 1: non-blanchable erythema of intact skin.

Grade 2: presents clinically as an abrasion or blister.

Grade 3: superficial lesions.

Grade 4: deep lesions, extensive destruction, tissue necrosis or damage to muscle, bone or supporting structures.

(EPUAP 2003)

Identifying at-risk patients

The European Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel (EPUAP 2003) recommends that assessment of at-risk patients should be ongoing and frequency of reassessment should be dependent on changes in the patient's condition or environment.

Many predisposing factors are involved in the development of pressure ulcers. An individual's potential to develop pressure ulcers may be influenced by the following intrinsic factors.

- Reduced mobility or immobility.
- Acute illness.
- Level of consciousness.
- Extremes of age.

- Vascular disease.
- Severe, chronic or terminal illness.
- Previous history of pressure damage.
- Malnutrition and dehydration.
- Neurologically compromised.
- Obesity.
- Poor posture.
- Use of equipment such as seating or beds which do not provide appropriate pressure relief (NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement 2010, RCN 2005).

Older people and pregnant women are also at risk, as are people from black and minority ethnic backgrounds whose skin colour may mean that early signs of pressure ulcers are not as readily identifiable (NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement 2010).

Grades of pressure ulcers

If a pressure ulcer develops then classification of the wound may assist in determining the most appropriate treatment. These classifications are valuable in describing the state of the ulcer and the most pertinent care required by the patient (see Box 4.3).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

A wide variety of devices are available to help relieve pressure over susceptible areas, for example cushions, static/dynamic mattresses and replacement beds. These devices differ in function, complexity and costs and the choice must be based on meeting the patient's individual need, sound criteria for decision making and effective use of available resources (Table 4.2). The data currently available to evaluate the clinical effectiveness of pressure-relieving devices are variable but the following are supported by some data.

Table 4.2 A selection of mechanical methods for relieving pressure

Aid	Use	Advantages	Disadvantages
Silicone-filled mattress pad/cushion (e.g. Transoft)	Waterlow 10 or patients on prolonged bedrest, able to move spontaneously	Relieves pressure by distributing it over a greater area. Comfortable. Machine (industrial) washable. Acceptable in community settings as well as in hospital. Can be used for incontinent patients. Relatively cheap purchase price. Plastic protective covers available	If the patient is very incontinent of urine, even if the plastic side is uppermost, there is seepage into the core material. Stitching comes undone after several launderings. Not recommended for routine use in pressure ulcer prevention
Roho air-filled mattress/cushions	High–medium-risk patients, Waterlow 10–15	Interlinked air cells transfer air with movement. Patient can be nursed sitting or recumbent. Non-mechanical. Washable	Can be punctured and is expensive to repair. Often incorrectly inflated due to lack of understanding and education. Can be mechanically cleaned in sterile supply department
Alternating pressure beds	High–medium-risk patients, Waterlow 15	Mechanical alteration of pressure. Reduce the frequency of (but not need for) repositioning. Available on hire at short notice	Must be checked and maintained. May increase pressures in very thin patients. Punctures possible. Patients may complain of nausea due to movement of cells
Pressure redistributing foam mattress	Moderate risk as above	Two-way multi-stretch foam and flexible covers, less expensive than beds	Should be audited 6 monthly for cross-infection risk. Should be placed on meshed mattress board, not solid, and turned monthly
Dynamic air mattress or low air loss bed	Moderate–high-risk patients, Waterlow 15–20	Equalizes pressure and weight and can be programmed to adjust air support to give optimal pressure redistribution. Warm	Expensive to buy, but can be hired. Makes some patients feel 'sea-sick'. Reduces self-motivated movement. Cells can become quite hard
Air fluidized bed	High-risk patients, Waterlow 20, or indicated because of medical condition	As near to levitation as possible! Warm, sterile air produces a beneficial environment for healing wounds. One nurse can manage even a very heavy or debilitated patient on their own. Can be used for incontinent patients or those with heavy wound exudate. May help to alleviate severe pain	Expensive to hire. Need to reinforce floors before it can be installed. Minimizes self-motivation. Can be difficult for the patient to get in and out of bed even with help. Available on hire basis only

It is important to remember the risk of cross-infection with the use of special beds. Most companies provide adequate cleaning/sterilizing of their equipment. Sheepskin is not a pressure-relieving device and can become hard and matted with washing although it has been commended for helping with shearing in the past (Hampton and Collins 2004). See also www.nice.org.uk/page.aspx?o=cg029fullguideline.

- Patients with pressure ulcers should have access to pressure-relieving support surfaces and strategies, for example mattresses and cushions, 24 hours a day and this applies to all support surfaces.
- All individuals assessed as having a grade 1–2 pressure ulcer should, as a minimum provision, be placed on a high-specification foam mattress or cushion with pressure-reducing properties. Observation of skin changes, documentation of positioning and repositioning schemes must be combined in the patient's care.
- If there is any potential or actual deterioration of affected areas or further pressure ulcer development, an alternating pressure (AP) (replacement or overlay) or sophisticated continuous low pressure (CLP) system (e.g. low air loss, air fluidized, air flotation, viscous fluid) should be used.
- Depending on the location of ulcer, individuals assessed as having grade 3–4 pressure ulcers (including intact eschar where depth and therefore grade cannot be assessed) should be, as a minimum provision, placed on an AP mattress or sophisticated CLP system.
- If AP equipment is required, the first choice should be an overlay system. However, circumstances such as patient weight or patient safety indicate the need for a replacement system.

In 2005, NICE in collaboration with the RCN created a clinical guideline in pressure ulcer management (NICE 2005, RCN 2005). This

included data looking at evidence-based practice, cost-effectiveness and economic evaluations of the different devices, drugs and procedures, amongst others, in the management of pressure ulcers (see Table 4.2). In 2009 the Nursing Executive Centre in the US also looked at the prevention of pressure ulcers and their approach is linked to ward organization, spot audits of assessment and pressure-relieving devices (Nursing Executive Centre 2009).

Assessment tools

There are several risk assessment tools in pressure ulcer development such as those developed by Norton, Braden and Waterlow (Braden and Bergstrom 1987, Norton *et al.* 1985, Waterlow 1991, 1998). Particular areas of care have also constructed their own hybrid assessment tool as a result of professional discussion and tailoring to specific patient needs (Birtwistle 1994, Chaplin 2000, Lindgren *et al.* 2002). NICE (2003) cautions professionals to use risk assessment tools as an *aide mémoire* and recommends their use in conjunction with clinical judgement (Chaplin 2000, RCN 2005). Some of the most commonly used tools include the following.

Norton scale

Using the Norton scale (Table 4.3) patients with a score of 14 or below are considered to be at greatest risk of pressure ulcer development. A score of 14–18 is not considered at risk but will require reassessment and a score of 18–20 indicates minimal risk.The 'cut-off' point for 'at-risk' patients was later raised to 15 or 16 by Norton (Norton *et al.* 1985, Anthony *et al.* 2008). Norton acknowledged that the scale was not intended as a universal tool and age and nutrition are not included.

Table 4.3 The Norton Scale

Physical condition	Score	Mental condition	Score	Activity	Score	Mobility	Score	Incontinent	Score
Good	4	Alert	4	Ambulant	4	Full	4	Not	4
Fair	3	Apathetic	3	Walk/help	3	Slightly limited	3	Occasion-ally	3
Poor	2	Confused	2	Chairbound	2	Very limited	2	Usually/ urine	2
Very bad	1	Stuporous	1	Bedfast	1	Immobile	1	Doubly	1

Used with permission from Norton *et al.* (1985) and Braden and Bergstrom (1987).

Waterlow scale

The Waterlow scale (Figure 4.3) defines a score of 11–15 as being 'at risk', 16–20 as 'high risk' and over 20 as 'very high risk' (Waterlow 2005). In a study of the Norton and Waterlow scales, 75.7% of patients identified as 'at risk' by the Waterlow scale developed a pressure ulcer, whereas 62% of those with a score of 16 or less on the Norton Scale developed ulcers (Smith *et al.* 1986) This may suggest that the Waterlow Scale gives a more accurate prediction of patient risk.

Figure 4.3 Waterlow pressure ulcer risk assessment. Adapted from the Waterlow Pressure Sore/Ulcer Risk Assessment Scoring System, available from www.judywaterlow.fsnet.co.uk, with permission and acknowledgement of the copyright holder, J. Waterlow, 1991, revised 1995, 1998 and 2005.

Name: _____ **Hospital No:** _____

Instruction for use:
1. Score on admission and update weekly or if significant change in patient's condition
2. Add scores together and insert total score
3. Document actions taken in the evaluation section
4. If total score is 10+ initiate core care plan At Risk of Pressure Damage/Pressure Ulcer Formation

10+ AT RISK **15+ HIGH RISK** **20+ VERY HIGH RISK**

	Date (Day/Month/Year)								
	Time								
GENDER	**Male**	**1**							
	Female	**2**							
AGE	**14–49**	**1**							
	50–64	**2**							
	65–74	**3**							
	75–80	**4**							
	81+	**5**							
BUILD	**Average**	**0**							
	Above average	**1**							
	Obese	**2**							
	Below average	**3**							
APPETITE (select one option ONLY)	**Average**	**0**							
	Poor	**1**							
	NG Tube/fluids only	**2**							
	NBM/anorexic	**3**							
VISUAL ASSESSMENT OF AT RISK SKIN AREA (may select one or more options)	**Healthy**	**0**							
	Thin and fragile	**1**							
	Dry	**1**							
	Oedematous	**1**							
	Clammy (Temp↑)	**1**							
	Previous pressure sore or scarring	**2**							
	Discoloured	**2**							
	Broken	**3**							
	Fully	**0**							
	Restless/fidgety	**1**							
	Apathetic	**2**							

MOBILITY (select one option ONLY)									
	Restricted	3							
	Inert (due to↓ consciousness/traction)	4							
	Chairbound	5							
CONTINENCE (select one option ONLY)	Continent/catheterized	0							
	Occasional incontinence	1							
	Incontinent of urine	2							
	Incontinent of faeces	2							
	Doubly incontinent	3							
TISSUE MALNUTRITION (may select one or more options)	Smoking	2							
	Anaemia	2							
	Peripheral vascular disease	5							
	Cardiac failure	5							
	Cachexia	8							
NEUROLOGICAL DEFICIT (score depends on severity)	Diabetes, CVA, MS, motor/sensory paraplegia, epidural	4–6							
MAJOR SURGERY TRAUMA (up to 48 hours post surgery)	Above waist	2							
	Orthopaedic, below waist, spinal, >2 hours on theatre table	5							
MEDICATION	Cytotoxics, high dose steroids, anti-inflammatory	4							
TOTAL SCORE									
NURSE SIGNATURE									

Braden scale

The Braden scale (Table 4.4) is based on six subscores (sensory perception, activity, moisture, nutrition, mobility, and friction and shearing) which are scored from 1 to 4 depending on the severity of the condition (with the exception of friction and shearing which is scored 1–3). The total score is then added up with a possible range of 6 to 23. The

lower the score, the higher the risk of developing a pressure ulcer. Hospital patients are considered to be at risk if their score is 16 or below.

Table 4.4 Braden Scale for predicting pressure sore risk

Sensory perception Ability to respond meaningfully to pressure related discomfort	**1.** *Completely limited* Unresponsive (does not moan, flinch or grasp) to painful stimuli, due to diminished level of consciousness or sedation *or* limited ability to feel pain over most of body surface	**2.** *Very limited* Responds only to painful stimuli. Cannot communicate discomfort except by moaning or restlessness *or* has a sensory impairment that limits the ability to feel pain or discomfort over half of the body	**3.** *Slightly limited* Responds to verbal commands, but cannot always communicate discomfort or need to be turned *or* has some sensory impairment that limits ability to feel pain or discomfort in 1 or 2 extremities	**4.** *No impairment* Responds to verbal commands. Has no sensory deficit that would limit ability to feel or voice pain or discomfort
Moisture Degree to which skin is exposed to moisture	**1.** *Constantly moist* Skin is kept moist almost constantly by perspiration, urine and so on. Dampness is detected every time patient is moved or turned	**2.** *Very moist* Skin is often, but not always moist. Linen must be changed at least once a shift	**3.** *Occasionally moist* Skin is occasionally moist, requiring an extra linen change approximately once a day	**4.** *Rarely moist* Skin is usually dry, linen only requires changing at routine intervals
Activity Degree of physical activity	**1.** *Bedfast* Confined to bed	**2.** *Chairfast* Ability to walk severely limited or non-existent. Cannot bear own weight and/or must be assisted into chair or wheelchair	**3.** *Walks occasionally* Walks occasionally during day, but for very short distances, with or without assistance. Spends majority of each shift in bed or chair	**4.** *Walks frequently* Walks outside the room at least twice a day and inside room at least once every 2 hours during waking hours
Mobility Ability to change and control body position	**1.** *Completely immobile* Does not make even slight changes in body or extremity position without assistance	**2.** *Very limited* Makes occasional slight changes in body or extremity position but unable to make frequent or significant changes independently	**3.** *Slightly limited* Makes frequent though slight changes in body or extremity position independently	**4.** *No limitations* Makes major and frequent changes in position without assistance

Nutrition Usual food intake pattern: 1 NBM: nothing by mouth 2 IV: intravenously 3 TPN: total parenteral nutrition	**1.** *Very poor* Never eats a complete meal. Rarely eats more than 1/3 of any food offered. Eats 2 servings or less of protein (meat or dairy products) per day. Takes fluids poorly. Does not take a liquid dietary supplement *or* is NBM 1 and/or maintained on clear fluids or IV 2 for more than 5 days	**2.** *Probably inadequate* Rarely eats a complete meal and generally eats only about 1/2 of any food offered. Protein intake includes only 3 servings of meat or dairy products per day. Occasionally willl take a dietary supplement *or* receives less than the optimum amount of liquid diet or tube feeding	**3.** *Adequate* Eats over half of most meals Eats a total of 4 servings of protein (meats, dairy products) each day. Occasionally will refuse a meal, but will usually take a supplement if offered *or* is on a tube feeding or TPN regimen that probably meets most of nutritional needs
Friction and shear	**1.** *Problem* Requires moderate to maximum assistance in moving. Complete lifting without sliding against sheets is impossible. Frequently slides down in bed or chair, requiring frequent repositioning with maximum assistance. Spasticity, contractures or agitation lead to almost constant friction	**2.** *Potential problem* Moves feebly or requires minimum assistance. During a move skin probably slides to some extent against sheets, chair, restraints, or other devices. Maintains relatively good position in chair or bed most of the time but occasionally slides down	**3.** *No apparent problem* Moves in bed and in chair independently and has sufficient muscle strength to lift up completely during move. Maintains good position in bed or chair at all times
TOTAL SCORE	Total score of 12 or less represents **high risk**		

Assess	Date	Evaluator/signature/title	Assess	Date	Evaluator/signature/tit
1	/ /		3	/ /	
2	/ /		4	/ /	
Name: last, first, middle			Attending physician		

High risk: total score <12; moderate risk: total score 13–14; low risk: total score 15–16 if under 75 years old or 15–18 if over 75 years old.
Copyright B. Braden and N. Bergstrom (1988). All rights reserved. Available from www.bradenscale.com. Used with permission.

The Braden Scale was originally designed as a pressure ulcer predictor, unlike the Norton and Waterlow Scales which assess risk (Waterlow 2005).

Postprocedural considerations

Ongoing care

Treatment of pressure ulcers is the same as for any other wound. The aetiology and underlying or related pathology, as well as the wound itself, must be assessed in order to provide the most appropriate treatment. Care should be aimed at relief of pressure, the minimization of symptoms from predisposing factors and the provision of the ideal microenvironment for wound healing.

When positioning patients, prolonged pressure on bony prominences must be minimized. An awareness of interface pressures, for example creased bedlinen and night clothing, is also important to avoid increased friction and further skin breakdown. Regular repositioning is recommended after assessing other factors such as patient's medical condition, comfort, overall plan of care and the support surface. Where appropriate or possible, patients and their families should be familiarized with the importance of pressure ulcer prevention.

For management see Chapter 15.

Prevention of falls

Related theory

In the UK the average rate of falls in acute hospitals in 2008 was 5.4 incidents per 1000 bed-days (NPSA 2009). This equates to 30 falls per week in an 800-bed acute trust. The physical and psychological costs to the patient and financial costs for the health economy are high. Falls may result in a loss of confidence or independence which, in turn, may lead to a need for increased or extended support from the NHS (Ward *et al.* 2010). Preventing falls in the older person has been well described in

national guidance and all prevention programmes should include particular reference to the care of the older person (Age UK 2008, Becker *et al.* 2003, Oliver *et al.* 2007, Ward *et al.* 2010).

The prevention of falls is complex and as with many other types of risk assessment and prevention, a systematic multiprofessional approach is recommended. Individual needs and the different environmental factors associated with different settings – for example, home, care home or hospital – will need to be assessed regularly.

There are many techniques which have been demonstrated to reduce the incidence of falls, including exercise programmes, identification bracelets, alarm systems and risk assessments (Ward *et al.* 2010). Part of the Chief Nursing Officer for England's programme of 'High Impact Actions for Care' includes 'Staying Safe – Preventing Falls' (Ward *et al.* 2010), the aim of which is to demonstrate a year-on-year reduction in the number of falls sustained by older people in NHS-provided care. However, patient safety must always be carefully balanced with patient independence and their right to make informed choices (NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement 2010). Following on from this, Ipswich Hospital Trust developed a checklist for nurses to use on the wards regularly throughout the day (NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement 2009).

- Hydration: making sure patients have something to drink.
- Checking toilet needs.
- Ensuring patients have the right footwear.
- Decluttering the area.
- Making sure patients can reach what they need, such as the call bell.
- Making sure bedrails are correctly fitted.
- Ensuring patients have an appropriate walking aid, if applicable.

Key principles of risk management

Related theory

Good risk management awareness and practice at all levels is a critical success factor for any organization. In healthcare it can mean the difference between success and failure, not only in terms of an individual patient clinical outcome but also of the organization as a whole (Roberts 2002).

Nurses have a pivotal role to play in risk management and promoting safety and, indeed, a moral obligation to protect those we serve and to provide the best possible care (Wilson 2005).

Nurses are not only the main caregivers in wards and departments but also have a surveillance role, ensuring that they remain vigilant and able to identify risks which may adversely affect the patient experience. When discussing the vigilant nurse, Meyer and Lavin (2005) suggest five components, which are key in the role of the nurse.

- *Attaching meaning to what is*: this is described as the ability to differentiate 'adverse signals', which indicate that there are dangers, from the ordinary 'noise', the normal signs and symptoms.
- *Anticipating what might be*: observe, as the normal procedures and response are described so the abnormal becomes more apparent.
- *Calculating risks*: understanding that there is an inherent risk in every situation.
- *Readiness to act*: developed from a knowledge base, this allows the nurse to know what might be required in a situation and to make sure interventions can be carried out quickly when necessary.
- *Monitoring* the results of interventions.

Patients want to be assured that nurses have the ability to assess their needs as well as recognize their limitations and potential risks. With this comes the need for the nurse to have knowledge of risk and how it works within the organization. Understanding the policies, processes and procedures for managing risk is then a key component of ongoing learning for all nurses and healthcare professionals.

References

Age UK (2008) Ways to Make Tasks Easier Around the Home. England.

Alaszewski, A. (2002) The Impact of the Bristol Royal Infirmary disaster and inquiry on public services in the UK. *Journal of Interprofessional Care*, **16**, 371–378.

Anthony, D., Parbooteeah, S., Saleh, M. and Papanikolou, P. (2008) Norton Waterlow and Braden Score: a review of the literature and a comparison between scores and clinical judgement. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **17** (5), 646–653.

Becker, C., Kron, M., Lindemann, U. *et al.* (2003) Effectiveness of a multifaceted intervention on falls in nursing home residents. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, **51** (3), 306–313.

Beldon, P. (2006) Topical negative pressure dressings and vacuum-assisted closure. *Wound Essentials*, **1**, 110–114.

Benbow, M. (2006) An update on VAC therapy. *Journal of Community Nursing*, **20** (4), 28–32.

Bennett, G., Dealey, C. and Posnett, J. (2004) The cost of pressure ulcers in the UK. *Age and Aging*, **33** (3), 230–235.

Berta, W., Teare, G., Gilbart, E. *et al.* (2005) The contingencies of organizational learning in long-term care: factors that affect innovation adoption. *Health Care Management Review*, **30**, 282–292.

Birtwistle, J. (1994) Pressure sore formation and risk assessment in intensive care. *Care of the Critically Ill*, **10** (4), 154–155, 157–159.

Braden, B.J. and Bergstrom, N. (1987) A conceptual schema for the study of aetiology of pressure sores. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, **12** (1), 8–12.

Bridel-Nixon, J. (1999) Pressure sores, in Nursing Management of Chronic Wounds, 2nd edn (eds M. Morison, C. Moffatt, J. Bridel-Nixon and S. Bale). Mosby, London.

Carthey, J. (2005) Being Open With Patients and Their Carers Following Patient Safety Incidents. Clinical Governance Bulletin, 5.5. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

Chaplin, J. (2000) Pressure sore risk assessment in palliative care. *Journal of Tissue Viability*, **10** (1), 27–31.

Clay, M. (2000) Pressure sore prevention in nursing homes. *Nursing Standard*, **14** (44), 45–50.

Collier, M. (1999) Pressure ulcer development and principles for prevention, in Wound Management: *Theory and Practice* (eds M. Miller and D. Glover). Nursing Times Books, London.

CQC (2009) *Mental Health Act Commission 13th Biannual Report 2007–2009: Coercion and Consent*. Care Quality Commission, London.

Davies, H., Nutley, S. and Mannion, R. (2000) Organisational culture and quality of health care. *Quality in Health Care*, **9**, 111–119.

DH (1998) A First Class Service. *Quality in the New NHS*. Department of Health, London.

DH (1999) HSC 1999/123. Governance in the new NHS. Controls Assurance Statements 1999/2000. *Risk Management and Organizational Controls*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2000) *An Organization with a Memory*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2001) *Building a Safer NHS for Patients*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2007) The Future Regulation of Health and Adult Social Care in England. *Response to Consultation*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2008) High Quality Care For All: *NHS Next Stage Review Final Report*. Department of Health, London.

Dolan, S. and Fitch, M. (2007) The management of venous thromboembolism in cancer patients. *British Journal of Nursing*, **16** (21), 1308–1312.

EPUAP (2003) Pressure Ulcer Prevention Guidelines. www.epuap.org.uk.

Flynn, R. (2002) Clinical governance and governmentality. *Health, Risk and Society*, **4**, 155–173.

Francis, R. (2010) Mid-Staffordshire NHS Foundation Trust Inquiry (2005–2009). *Independent Inquiry into Care Provided by Mid Staffordshire NHS Foundation Trust*. HC375-1 2009/10. Department of Health, London.

Guyton, A.C. and Hall, J.E. (2000) *Textbook of Medical Physiology*, 10th edn. W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia.

Hampton, S. and Collins, F. (2004) Tissue Viability: *The Prevention, Treatment and Management of Wounds*. Whurr, London.

Health and Safety Executive (2010) Guidance on risk management. www.hse.gov.uk/risk/theory/alarpglance.htm.

Healthcare Commission (2009) Investigation into Mid Staffordshire Foundation Trust. Healthcare Commission, London.

Hess, C.T. (2005) *Pressure ulcers, in Wound Care Clinical Guide*, 5th edn. Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia, pp. 79–93.

Heyman, B, Shaw, M., Alaszewski, A. and Titterton, M. (2010) Risk, Safety, and Clinical Practice. *Health Care Through the Lens of Risk*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Hopkinson, M. and Hopkinson, J.B. (2001) Risk management in the NHS: adapting risk management techniques for the commercial world. *Healthcare Risk Report*, **7** (2), 19–20.

House of Commons Health Select Committee (2005) Health Committee Report on the Prevention of Venous Thromboembolism in Hospitalised Patients. www.publications.parliament.uk/pa/cm200405/cmselect/cmhealth/99/9902.html.

Hutter, B.M. (2006) *Risk, regulation, and management, in Risk In Social Science* (eds P. Taylor-Gooby and J. Zinn). Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Johnson, A. (1989) Granuflex wafers as a prophylactic pressure sore dressing. *Care: Science and Practice*, **7** (2), 55–58.

Landis, E.M. (1930) Micro-injection studies of capillary blood pressure in human skin. *Heart*, **15**, 209–228.

Lechler, E., Schramm, W. and Flobach, W. (2006) The venous thrombotic risk in non-surgical patients: epidemiological data and efficacy/safety profile of a low molecular weight heparin (enoxaparin). *Haemostasis*, **26**, 49–56.

Lindgren, M., Unosson, M., Krantz, A.N. et al. (2002) A risk assessment scale for the prediction of pressure sore development, reliability and validity. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **38** (2), 190–199.

Macrea, C. (2008) Learning from patient safety incidents: creating participative risk regulation in healthcare. *Health, Risk and Society*, **10** (1) 53–67.

Meurier, C. (2000) Understanding the nature of errors in nursing: using a model to analyse critical incident reports of errors, which had resulted in an adverse or potentially adverse event. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **32**, 202–207.

Meyer, G. and Lavin, M.A. (2005) Vigilance: the essence of nursing. www.nursingworld.org/ojin/topic22/tpc22.6htm.

National Clinical Guidelines Centre (2009) Venous Thromboembolism: Reducing the Risk of Venous Thromboembolism (Deep Vein Thrombosis and Pulmonary Embolism) in Patients Admitted to Hospital. National Clinical Guidelines Centre, London.

NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement (2009) Staying Safe – Preventing Falls. www.institute.nhs.uk/building_capability/hia_supporting_info/staying_safe_preventing_falls.html.

NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement (2010) Your Skin Matters. Extract from literature review –High Impact Actions for Nurses and Midwives. NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement, London.

NICE (2003) Pressure Ulcer Risk Assessment and Prevention. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London. www.nice.org.uk.

NICE (2005) *Pressure Ulcer Management*. CG 29. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2007) *Venous Thromboembolism: Reducing the Risk of Thromboembolism (Deep Vein Thrombosis and Pulmonary Embolism) with Inpatients Undergoing Surgery*. CG46. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2010) Quality Standards Programme: *Quality Standard for Venous Thromboembolism (VTE) Prevention*. National Institute for

Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NMC (2008) The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

Norton, D., McLaren, R. and Exton-Smith, A. (1985) An Investigation of Geriatric Nursing Problems in Hospital. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

NPSA (2005) Being Open When Patients Are Harmed. *National Patient Safety Agency*, London.

NPSA (2007) Healthcare Risk Assessment Made Easy. *National Patient Safety Agency*, London.

NPSA (2009) Never Events Framework 2009/10. *National Patient Safety Agency*, London.

NPSA (2009) The Organization Patient Safety Incident Reports. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

NPSA (2010) National Reporting and Learning Service: Learning from Patient Safety Incidents National Patient Safety Agency, London.

Nursing Executive Centre (2009) *Pressure Ulcer prevention best practice: bedside report*. Advisory Board Company, Washington DC.

Oliver, D., Connelly, J., Victor, C. *et al.* (2007) Strategies to prevent falls and fractures in hospitals and care homes and effect of cognitive impairment: systematic review and meta-analyses. *BMJ*, **324**, 82.

Philips, L. and Buttery, J. (2009) Exploring pressure ulcer prevention and preventative care. *Nurising Times*, **105** (16), 34–36.

Power, M. (2007) Organized Uncertainty: Designing a World of Risk Management. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

RCN (2005) The Management of Pressure Ulcers in Primary and Secondary Care: A Clinical Practice Guideline. www.nice.org.uk/page.aspx?o=cg029fullguideline.

Reason, J. (2006) Resisting cultural change, in Clinical Governance in a Changing NHS (eds M. Lugon and J. Secker-Walker). Royal Society of Medicine Press, London.

Roberts, G. (2002) *Risk Management in Healthcare*. Witherby and Co, London.

Roderick, P., Ferris, G., Wilson, K. *et al.* (2005) Towards evidence-based guidelines for the prevention of venous thromboembolism: systematic reviews of mechanical methods, oral anticoagulation, dextran and regional anaesthesia as thromboprophylaxis. *Health Technology Assessment*, **9** (49), 1–78.

Shaw, M., Heyman, B., Reynolds, L. et al. (2007) Multi-disciplinary teamwork in a UK regional secure mental health unit: a matter for negotiation? *Social Theory and Health*, **5**, 356–375.

Simpson, A., Bowers, K. and Weir-Hughes, D. (1996) Clinical Care: Pressure Sore Prevention. Whurr, London.

Smith, K.P., Zardiackas, L.D. and Didlake, R.H. (1986) Cortisone, vitamin A and wound healing: the importance of measuring wound surface area. *Journal of Surgical Research*, **40** (2), 49–52.

Southgate, L. and Dauphinee, D. (1998) Maintaining standards in British and Canadian medicine: the developing role of the regulatory body. *BMJ*, **316**, 697–700.

Standards Australia and Standards New Zealand (2009) *Risk management principles and guidelines ISO 31000*. International Organization for Standardization. www.iso.org.

Tong, A. (1999) Back to basics wound care. *Nursing Times*, **1** (1), 20–23.

Tortora, G.J. and Grabowski, S.R. (2008) Principles of Anatomy and Physiology, 12th edn. John Wiley, Chichester.

Vincent, C. (2006) Patient Safety. Elsevier, London.

Ward, L., Fenton, K. and Maher, D. (2010) The high impact actions for nursing and midwifery 3: staying safe, preventing falls. *Nursing Times*, **106** (29), 12–13.

Waterlow, J. (1988) Prevention is cheaper than cure. *Nursing Times*, **84** (25), 69–70.

Waterlow, J. (1991) A policy that protects. *Professional Nurse*, **6** (5), 258–264.

Waterlow, J. (1998) The treatment and use of the Waterlow card. *Nursing Times*, **94** (7), 63–67.

Waterlow, J. (2005) From costly treatment to cost-effective prevention: using Waterlow. *Wound Care*, **10** (9 Suppl), S25–S30.

Weick, K. and Sutcliffe, K. (2003) Hospitals as cultures of entrapment: a re-analysis of the Bristol Royal Infirmary. *California Management Review*, **45**, 73–84.

Wilson, C. (2005) Said another way: my definition of nursing. *Nurse Forum*, **40** (3), 116–118.

Wilson, E. (2007) Preventing deaths from VTE in hospital 2: thromboprophylaxis. *Nursing Times*, **103** (38), 26.

WHO (2005) World Alliance for Patient Safety: WHO draft guidance for adverse event reporting and learning systems. WHO Production Services, Geneva, Switzerland.

Multiple choice questions

1 How can risks be reduced in the healthcare setting?

a By adopting a culture of openness and transparency and exploring the root causes of patient safety incidents.

b Healthcare will always involve risks so incidents will always occur; we need to accept this.

c Healthcare professionals should be encouraged to fill in incident forms; this will create a culture of 'no blame'.

d By setting targets which measure quality.

2 A patient in your care knocks their head on the bedside locker when reaching down to pick up something they have dropped. What do you do?

a Let the patient's relatives know so that they don't make a complaint and write an incident report for yourself so you remember the details in case there are problems in the future.

b Help the patient to a safe comfortable position, commence neurological observations and ask the patient's doctor to come and review them, checking the injury isn't serious. When this has taken place, write up what happened and any future care in the nursing notes.

c Discuss the incident with the nurse in charge, and contact your union representative in case you get into trouble.

d Help the patient to a safe comfortable position, take a set of observations and report the incident to the nurse in charge who may call a doctor. Complete an incident form. At an appropriate time, discuss the incident with the patient and, if they wish, their relatives.

3 You are looking after a 75-year-old woman who had an abdominal hysterectomy 2 days ago. What would you do to reduce the risk of her developing a deep vein thrombosis (DVT)?

a Give regular analgesia to ensure she has adequate pain relief so she can mobilize as soon as possible. Advise her not to cross her legs.

a Make sure that she is fitted with properly fitting antiembolic pressure stockings that are removed daily.

a Ensure that she is wearing antiembolic stockings and that she is prescribed prophylactic anticoagulation and is doing hourly limb exercises.

a Give adequate analgesia so she can mobilize to the chair with assistance, give subcutaneous low molecular weight heparin as prescribed. Make sure that she is wearing antiembolic stockings.

4 You are looking after an emaciated 80-year-old man who has been admitted to your ward with acute exacerbation of chronic obstructive airways disease (COPD). He is currently so short of breath that it is difficult for him to mobilize. What are some of the actions you take to prevent him developing a pressure ulcer?

a He will be at high risk of developing a pressure ulcer so place him on a pressure-relieving mattress.

b Assess his risk of developing a pressure ulcer with a risk assessment tool. If indicated, procure an appropriate pressure-relieving mattress for his bed and cushion for his chair. Reassess the patient's pressure areas at least twice a day and keep them clean and dry. Review his fluid and nutritional intake and support him to make changes as indicated.

c Assess his risk of developing a pressure ulcer with a risk assessment tool and reassess every week. Reduce his fluid intake to avoid him becoming incontinent and the pressure areas becoming damp with urine.

d He is at high risk of developing a pressure ulcer because of his recent acute illness, poor nutritional intake and reduced mobility. By giving him his prescribed antibiotic therapy, referring him to the dietician and physiotherapist, the risk will be reduced.

5 You are looking after a 76-year-old woman who has had a number of recent falls at home. What would you do to try and ensure her safety whilst she is in hospital?

a Refer her to the physiotherapist and provide her with lots of reassurance as she has lost a lot of confidence recently.

b Make sure that the bed area is free of clutter. Place the patient in a bed near the nurses' station so that you can keep an eye on her. Put her on an hourly toileting chart. Obtain lying and standing blood pressures as postural hypotension may be contributing to her falls.

c Make sure that the bed area is free of clutter and that the patient can reach everything she needs, including the call bell. Check regularly to see if the patient needs assistance mobilizing to the toilet. Ensure that she has properly fitting slippers and appropriate walking aids.

d Refer her to the community falls team who will assess her when she gets home.

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com **and select the Student Edition tab.**

Part two

Supporting the Patient with Human Functioning

5 Communication
6 Elimination
7 Moving and positioning
8 Nutrition, fluid balance and blood transfusion
9 Patient comfort
10 Respiratory care

Chapter 5

Communication

Overview

The aim of this chapter is to define and describe effective communication.

It will consider the process of offering psychological support to patients and focus upon the management of factors that contribute to or compromise this process. The medium of communication can take many forms; this chapter is mostly concerned with interpersonal communication using language comprising verbal (including tone) and non-verbal expression.

There are specific sections on denial and collusion, anxiety, depression, anger management, delirium and finally, assisting those with sensory impairment to communicate, including a section on surgical voice restoration.

Communication

Definition

Communication is a universal word with many definitions, many of which describe it as a transfer of information between a source and a receiver (Kennedy Sheldon 2009). In nursing, this communication is primarily interpersonal: the process by which information, meanings and feelings are shared through the exchange of verbal and non-verbal messages between two or more people (Brooks and Heath 1993, Wilkinson 1991).

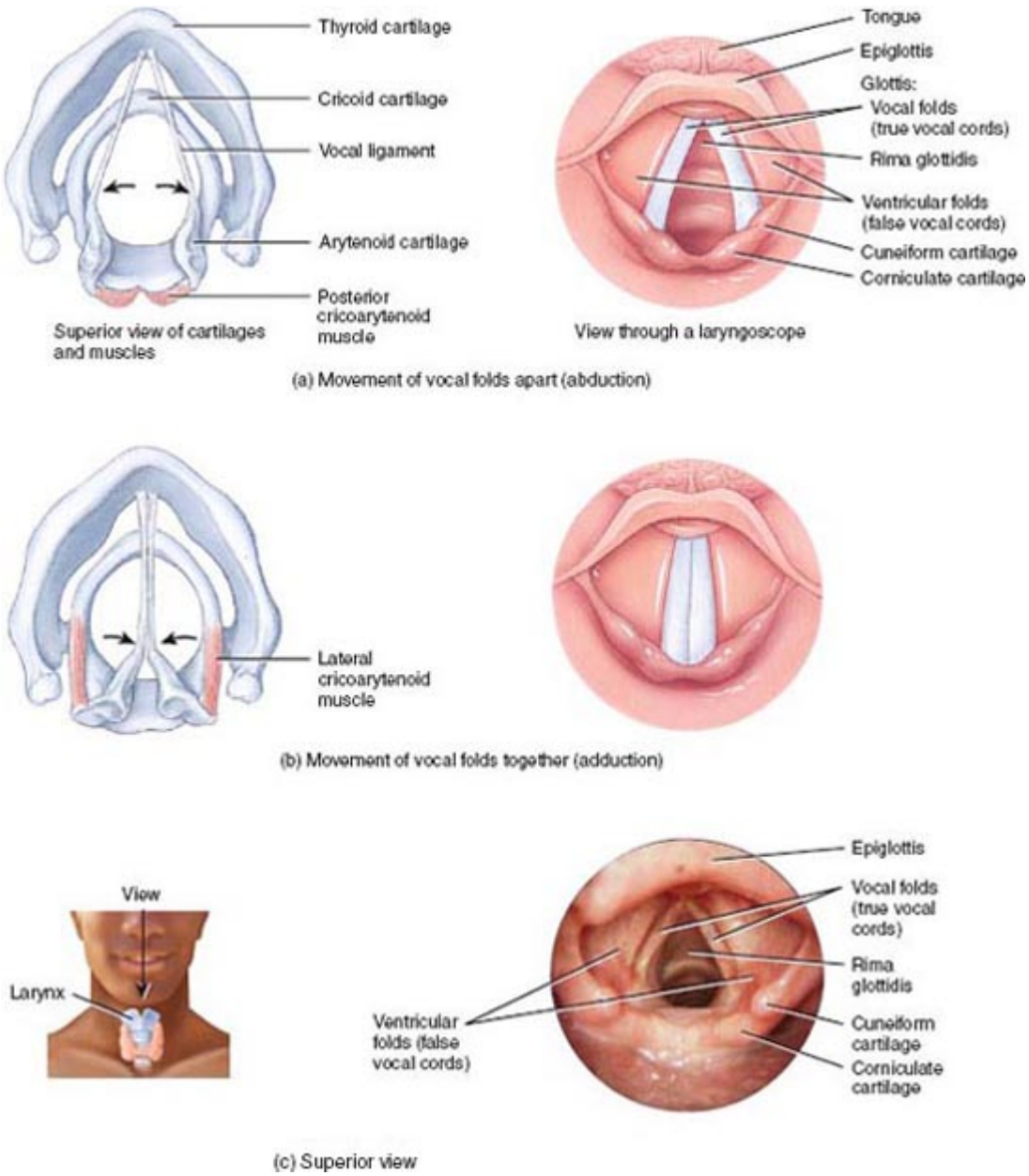
Anatomy and physiology

Physiologically being able to produce speech and to hear are the two dominant physical processes in respect of communication.

The human voice is produced by exhaled air vibrating the vocal cords in the larynx to set up sound waves in the column of air in the pharynx, nose and mouth. Pitch is controlled by the tension on the vocal cords: the tighter they are, the more they vibrate and the higher the pitch. The sounds produced are amplified by the physical spaces of the pharynx and nose and modified by the lips, tongue and jaw into recognizable speech. The muscles of the face, tongue and lips help us to enunciate words (Tortora and Derrickson 2009) (Figure 5.1).

Figure 5.1 Movement of the vocal cords.

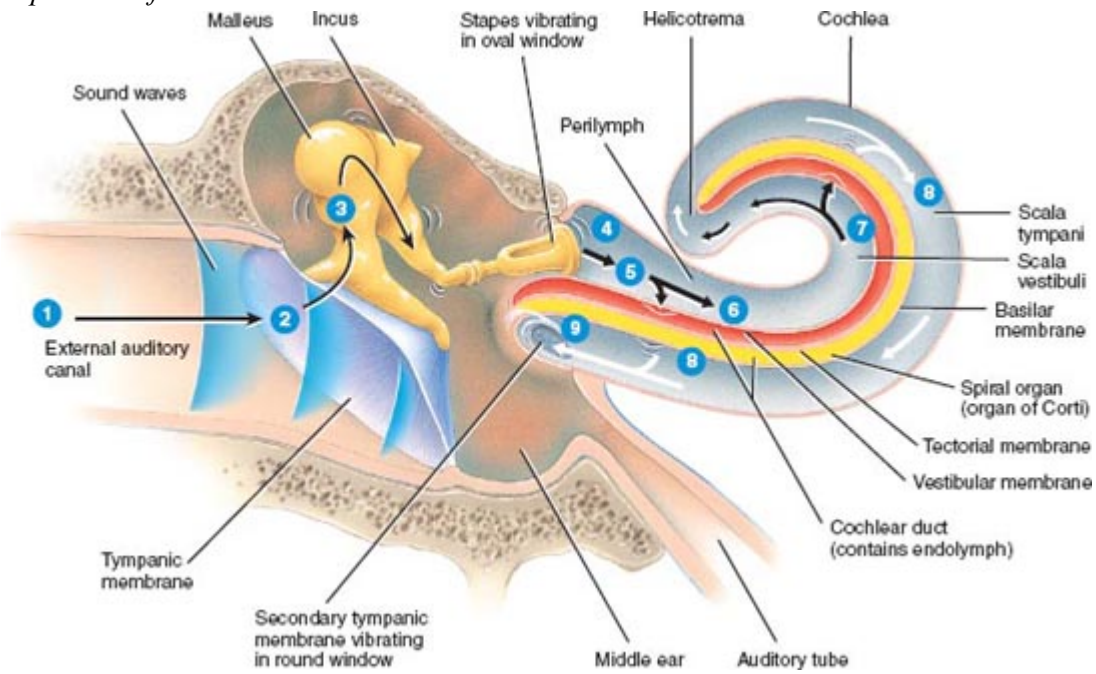
Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson 2009.



The ear contains receptors for sound waves and the external or outer ear is designed to collect them and direct them inward. As the waves strike the tympanic membrane, it vibrates due to the alternate compression and decompression of the air. This vibration is passed on through the malleus, incus and stapes of the middle ear. As the stapes vibrates, it pushes the oval window. The movement of the oval window sets up waves in the perilymph of the cochlea that ultimately lead to the generation of nerve impulses that travel to the auditory area of the cerebral cortex (Tortora and Derrickson 2009) (Figure 5.2).

Figure 5.2 Events in the stimulation of auditory receptors in the right ear.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson 2009.



The physiological process of communication is, however, much greater than just speech and hearing. The central nervous system is central to both verbal and non-verbal communication. Not only does it continually receive information but it also selects that which is important to respond to, so that overstimulation is avoided. Communication issues may arise if any of these processes are altered.

Related theory

There are many theories about interpersonal communication and nurses are encouraged to consider Heron's (2001) Six Category Intervention Analysis (Box 5.1) to reflect upon their own and other health professionals' communication. The main aim is to support and maintain the patient's optimum level of communication while remaining aware of the impact of their disease and its management on the patient's ability and/or motivation to speak. We need to be aware of different coping styles and attitudes of the patient and key people in their lives, other co-morbidities, disease progression, fluctuating cognitive abilities and treatment side-effects. All these factors demand a flexible approach

when supporting communication throughout the length of the patient pathway (White 2004).

Box 5.1 Heron's six category intervention analysis (2001)

Authoritative

1. *Prescriptive*. A prescriptive intervention seeks to direct the behaviour of the client, usually behaviour that is outside the practitioner–client relationship.

2. *Informative*. An informative intervention seeks to impart knowledge, information and meaning to the client.

3. *Confronting*. A confronting intervention seeks to raise the consciousness of the client about some limiting attitude or behaviour of which he is relatively unaware.

Facilitative

4 *Cathartic*. A cathartic intervention seeks to enable the client to discharge or abreact painful emotion, primarily grief, fear and anger.

5 *Catalytic*. A catalytic intervention seeks to encourage self-discovery, self-directed learning, living and problem solving in the client.

6 *Supportive*. A supportive intervention seeks to affirm the worth and value of the client's person, qualities, attitudes or actions.

Non-verbally, people communicate via gestures, body language, posture, facial expression, clothing, furniture, touch, music and art. Communication can be heavily influenced by a multitude of external and internal factors, for example illness, culture, class, self-esteem, immediate environment, gender, status, mood, depression, and the influence of these factors needs to be carefully considered in each circumstance. All patients and relatives should be assessed for their psychological needs and tailored support offered to meet individual needs.

Evidence-based approaches

'Effective communication is widely regarded to be a key determinant of patient satisfaction, compliance and recovery' (Chant *et al.* 2002, p.13), yet poor communication is one of the most common causes of complaints in healthcare (Cambell 2006). Supportive communication is important to create an environment where the individual patient feels heard and understood and can be helped appropriately. Communication needs to be highly flexible – dependent upon cultural, social and environmental factors. Nurses need to communicate effectively with patients in order to deliver individualized safe care and treatment and to manage psychosocial concerns appropriately. People with illness want to be approached with a 'caring and humane attitude' that respects their privacy and dignity (Maben and Griffiths 2008). Patients want their personal values to be respected and to be treated as equals by health professionals. This can be achieved by taking the time to communicate, not controlling dialogue, listening and offering emotional support (Smith *et al.* 2005) and by striving for open, clear and honest communication (Baile *et al.* 2000, Heyland *et al.* 2006, Jenkins *et al.* 2001, Smith *et al.* 2005). The patient's dignity can be promoted by enabling the expression of concerns in a safe environment.

Patients want to be able to experience a meaningful connection and a sense of 'being known' by the staff they encounter (Thorne *et al.* 2005). Nurses need to be able to accurately assess how much patients want to share their thoughts and feelings without assuming that they either do or do not wish to. Communication occurs in a time-pressured environment. Practical and technical tasks demand the nurse's time and tend to be prioritized above psychological support. The resulting communication may be limited and prevent effective exploration of psychological care issues. Without effective exploration, patients are not sufficiently encouraged to engage with and manage their own care. Nurses need to be aware of and consider what other features of the environment contribute to the nature of the dialogue that takes place, for example the wearing of uniform (Edwards 2005, Hargie and Dickson 2004). Patients may not expect to discuss psychosocial issues with nurses because of the communication bias toward physical and medical issues. The task-

orientated short communication encounters that emerge do not encourage the disclosure of psychosocial concerns (Silverman *et al.* 2005).

Patient satisfaction is not necessarily related to the acquisition of specific communication skills (Thorne *et al.* 2005) but staff still need to be able to enquire about the nature and manner of support that patients wish for (so that satisfaction can be achieved wherever possible).

Listening and appropriate verbal responses that demonstrate empathy remain the key skills; if nothing else is achieved, adopting these qualities will be beneficial to patients and be a valuable use of time.

Listening

Listening is a skill often assumed to be natural. Rarely would we consider that we were physically unable to listen and perhaps this makes us pay little attention to this crucial skill area (Box 5.2).

Box 5.2 How to let someone know you are listening to them

- Non-verbal encouragement.
- Verbal characteristics.
- Questioning.
- Paraphrasing.
- Clarifying.
- Summarizing.
- Empathy.

The physical act of hearing is distinct from that of 'listening'. Hearing can be considered to be passive, but listening requires active processing and the attachment of meaning.

It might be difficult for us to answer the question 'How do we listen?' and perhaps a procedure of 'how to listen' would not do justice to the sophistication and success of good listeners. However, there are ways of

describing the constituent parts of listening that, if followed, would make the person speaking appreciate that they were being listened to.

Problems can emerge as two people may interpret the meaning of the same dialogue differently. For example, if you have asked the question, 'How are you?' and the patient replies 'Getting by', do you assume they are doing well and coping or that this means they are struggling and 'putting on a brave face'?

Hopefully, you will be attending to numerous non-verbal cues to decipher what the patient actually means. If there is a suggestion of 'incongruence', where the patient says 'Getting by' in a low and sad-sounding voice, coupled with a simultaneous lowering of the head, we might consider the latter assumption. Alternatively, if the patient sounds upbeat and looks you in the face with a smile you might be reassured they mean the former.

There are strategies to promote successful listening, for example 'summarizing' and 'clarifying' (at suitable moments) what the patient is saying.

Non-verbal responses

Non-verbal communication generally indicates information transmitted without speaking. Included in this would be the way you sit or stand, facial expression, gestures and posture, whether you nod or smile and the clothes worn: all will have an impact on the total communication taking place (Hargie and Dickson 2004).

Egan (2002) usefully describes the acronym SOLER to summarize the constituent elements of non-verbal communication: facing the patient **Squarely**; maintaining an **Open** posture; **Leaning** slightly towards the patient to convey interest; having appropriate **Eye** contact, not staring nor avoiding (cultural dimension needs to be considered with this); and being **Relaxed**. By learning an awareness of these factors and making this behaviour part of your normal demeanour, patients will be encouraged to talk more openly, facilitating emotional disclosure.

Saying nothing says something, so there is always communication however reluctant you or the patient are.

It can be argued that non-verbal information is more powerful than verbal information, for example in the case of 'incongruence' where the verbal message indicates one thing and the non-verbal suggests another. There is a tendency to believe the non-verbal message over the verbal in these instances.

This highlights the need to communicate with genuine compassion. Without this, supportive communication can be severely reduced in its effectiveness.

Non-verbal communication becomes even more important in the case of people whose verbal communication is impaired, for example by stroke, trauma or surgery. Patients need to be supported, ensuring, for example, that they have constant access to pen and paper; communication boards can be used to good effect and it is worth considering the use of information technology and communication software, if available. The experience of losing the ability to speak can be very isolating and frustrating and preparation of the patient and practice with communication aids is important to maximize the success of communication. It is essential that people with a speech deficit are given more time to communicate their needs, and we must be patient and persist with interaction until a satisfactory level of understanding is gained.

We can use non-verbal behaviour to encourage patients to talk by nodding/making affirming noises, for example 'Hmmm'. This 'affirming' is mostly done naturally, for example at points of eye contact, as specific points are made and during slight pauses in dialogue. It can be especially important to affirm when the patient is talking about psychological or emotional issues as they will need you to validate that this is an acceptable topic of conversation.

Verbal responses

The way things are said makes a big difference, so attention needs to be paid to the tone, rate and depth of speech. This means sounding alert, interested and caring, but not patronizing. Speech should be delivered at an even rate: not too fast or too slow (unless presenting difficult or complex information).

Questioning

One skill that needs to be used in close collaboration with listening is that of questioning. When specific information is required, for example in a crisis, closed questions are indicated. Closed questions narrow the potential answer (Silverman *et al.* 2005) and allow the gathering of specific information for a purpose. Closed questions therefore are ones which are likely to generate a short 'yes or no' answer, for example 'Are you all right?'.

In care situations with significant life-changing implications, however, a broader assessment of the patient's perspective is required and there is a need to show compassion and support psychosocial issues. Open questions and listening are therefore required. Open questions do the opposite of closed questions; they broaden the potential answer (Silverman *et al.* 2005) and hand the initiative and agenda over to the patient. So instead of asking 'Are you all right?', ask 'How are you today?' or 'What has your experience of treatment been like?'.

It is good to include a psychological focus to make it clear that this is part of what you are interested in; for example, 'How did that make you feel?' or 'What are your main concerns?'.

Open questions cannot be used in isolation as the opportunity for open discussion can easily be blocked by failing to ensure that the rest of the fundamental communication elements are in place. Attention must therefore be paid to protecting sufficient time, verbal space (not interrupting) and encouragement (in the form of non-verbal cues, paraphrasing, clarifying and summarizing), so that the patient and/or relative can express their feelings and concerns.

Open questions may not be appropriate with people who have a communication problem, perhaps following head and neck surgery or where complex communication is going to be difficult, as for some whose first language is not English.

Try to use one question at a time: it is easy to ask more than one question in a sentence and this can make it unclear where your focus is and lead the patient to answer only one part of your question.

Open questions can also be helpful to respond to cues that the patient may give as to their underlying psychological state. Cues can be varied, numerous and difficult to define, but essentially these are either verbal or non-verbal hints of underlying unease or worry. Concerns may be easier to recognize where they are expressed verbally and unambiguously (del Piccolo *et al*. 2006).

Reflecting back

You can repeat the same words back to the patient: this signals that their focus is a legitimate topic for discussion (Perry and Burgess 2002), but if this technique is overused it can sound unnatural (Silverman *et al.* 2005).

When it is used, it needs to be done with thought and include 'something of you in your response' (Egan 2002, p.97), meaning that you remain alert and caring.

Paraphrasing

This technique involves telling the patient what they have told you but using different words that retain the same meaning; for example:

> *Patient:* I need to talk to them but whenever they start to talk to me about the future, I just start to get wound up and shut down.
>
> *Nurse*: So when your family try to talk, you get tense and you stop talking….

Clarifying

The aim of this technique is to reduce ambiguity and help the patient define and explore the central or pivotal aspect of issues raised. Many of us may be reluctant to explore emotional or psychological issues too much, just in case the issues raised are too emotional and hard to deal with (Perry and Burgess 2002). However, if the principles of good communication are applied and a focus on the patient's agenda is maintained, distressing and difficult situations can be moved forward positively.

The use of open questions is likely to raise certain issues that would benefit from further exploration. Clarification encourages the expression of detail and context to situations, helping to draw out pertinent matters, perhaps not previously considered by either patient or health professional. A mixture of open or closed questions can be used in clarification (Box 5.3).

Box 5.3 Open and closed questions

- Are you feeling like that now? (closed)
- You seem to be down today, am I right? (closed)
- Can you describe how the experience made you feel? (closed)
- You say that you've not had enough information: can you tell me what you do know? (open)
- You mention that you are struggling: what kinds of things do you struggle with? (open)
- You say it's been hard getting this far: what has been the hardest thing to cope with? (open)

It might be necessary for you to clarify your own position too, perhaps acknowledge that you don't know something and cannot answer certain questions, for example 'Will the treatment work?'.

Sometimes not knowing can be a valuable position, enabling you to seek out the patient's experience and not just assume it. Our experience might be relevant, but each patient and relative will require the opportunity to tell it in their words and to feel 'heard'.

Summarizing

This intervention can be used as a way of opening or closing dialogue. An opening can be facilitated by recapping a previous discussion or outlining your understanding of the patient's position. Summarizing can be used to punctuate a longer conversation and highlight specific issues raised.

This serves several purposes.

- It informs your patient that you have listened and understood their position.
- It allows the patient to correct any mistakes or misconceptions generated.
- It brings the conversation from the specific to the general (which can help to contextualize issues).
- It gives an opportunity for agreement to be reached about what may need to happen.

Examples of summarizing:

> It sounds like you are tired and are struggling to manage the treatment schedule. It also sounds like you don't have enough information and we could support you more with that …

Summarizing can be a useful opportunity to plan and agree what actions are necessary. Avoid getting caught up with planning, though: the important issue is that you have listened and understood. In our nursing role, we are familiar with 'doing' and correcting problematic situations and although interventions can be helpful in psychosocial issues, sometimes it is necessary not to act and to just 'be' with the patient, accepting their experience as it is, however emotionally painful.

Recognizing when to act and when to sit with distress can be difficult. However, it is important for us to develop this awareness and to accept that sometimes there are no solutions to difficult situations. The temptation to always correct problems might only serve to negate the patient's experience of being listened to.

Empathy

Sharing time and physical space with other people demands the development of a relationship. In nursing, the relationship with patients is defined by many factors, for example physical and medical care. In clinical roles it might be possible to be emotionally detached and to exist behind a 'professional mask' (Taylor 1998, p.74) but when working in a supportive role, a shared experience and bond are generated, inclusive of feelings.

Recognizing our own feelings is important to allow us to understand and to 'tolerate another person's pain' (McKenzie 2002, p.34). Nurses demonstrate empathy when there is a 'desire to understand the client (patient) as fully as possible and to communicate this understanding' (Egan 2002, p.97).

This means attempting to understand what the patient might be going through, taking into consideration their physical, social and psychological environment. This inferred information can be used to 'connect' with the patient, all the time checking that our interpretation of their experience is accurate (we can be wrong even if we have experienced similar things).

Rogers (1975, p.2) seminally described the skill of empathy as: 'The ability to experience another person's world as if it were one's own, without losing the "as if" quality'. That means allowing ourselves to get into the patient's shoes and experience some of what they might be experiencing, without allowing ourselves to enter the experience wholly (it isn't our experience). Empathy allows for an opportunity to 'taste' and therefore attempt to understand the patient's perspective. Understanding emotions and behaviours in this way encourages an acceptance and positive negotiation of them. Maintaining the 'as if' quality protects us from adopting too great an emotional load. Having too much of a sense of loss or sorrow may prevent us from offering effective support, as we are drawn to focus on our own feelings more than is necessary or helpful (for ourselves or the patient).

Empathy may not always come easily, especially if a patient is angry. What can be very useful in the development and use of empathy is the ability to step back from the situation and reflect upon what it is that you, as the nurse, feel and how this relates to what is happening for the patient.

Barriers to effective communication

Poor communication with patients can negatively affect decision making and quality of life (Fallowfield *et al.* 2001, Thorne *et al.* 2005).

The environmental conditions in which nurses work, with competing professional demands and time pressures, can reduce the capacity to

form effective relationships with patients (Henderson *et al.* 2007).

There is a personal, emotional impact when providing a supportive role for patients with psychological and emotional issues (Botti *et al.* 2006, Dunne 2003, Turner *et al.* 2007) and it is therefore likely that blocking or avoidance of patients' emotional concerns relates to emotional self-preservation for the nurse.

When communicating and assessing patient's needs, nurses may be anxious about eliciting distress and managing expressed concerns. They may lack confidence in their ability to clarify patients' feelings without 'causing harm to the patient or getting into difficulty themselves' (Booth *et al.* 1996, p.526). As a consequence, nurses can make assumptions, rather than assessing concerns properly (Booth *et al.* 1996, Kelsey 2005, Roberts and Snowball 1999, Schofield *et al.* 2008). To illustrate this point, Kruijver *et al.* 2001 demonstrated how nurses verbally focus upon physical issues, which accounted for 60% of communication with patients. Nurses often recognize this bias and suggest that they feel greater competence discussing physical rather than psychological issues and seek better skills to help them to manage challenging situations (McCaughan and Parahoo 2000). Being supported practically and emotionally by supervisors and/or senior staff can be seen to decrease blocking behaviours (Booth *et al.* 1996). Clinical supervision can aid the transfer of communication skills into practice (Heaven *et al.* 2006).

Institutions, work environments and the nature of the senior staff within them can influence the nature of communication (Booth *et al.* 1996, Chant *et al.* 2002, McCabe 2004, Menzies-Lyth 1988, Wilkinson 1991). Nurses may improve their own practice by identifying where environmental barriers lie and attempting to mitigate the features of the clinical environment that inhibit psychological care.

Despite the difficulties outlined, it has been argued that nurses can communicate well when they are facilitated to provide individual patient-focused care (McCabe 2004).

Legal and professional issues

Effective communication is central to a number of explicit standards of *The Code* (NMC 2008a) (see Appendix 1).

Make the care of people your first concern, treating them as individuals and respecting their dignity.

- You must listen to the people in your care and respond to their concerns and preferences.
- You must make arrangements to meet people's language and communication needs.
- You must share with people, in a way they can understand, the information they want or need to know about their health.
- You must uphold people's rights to be fully involved in their care.

There are four essential features of maintaining dignity in communication.

1. *Attitude*. Being aware of the other person's experience, our attitudes towards them and how this affects the care provided.

2. *Behaviour*. Being respectful and kind, asking permission, giving your full attention and using understandable language.

3. *Compassion*. Being aware of and in touch with our own feelings and 'acknowledging the person beyond their illness' (Chochinov 2007, p.186).

4. *Dialogue*. Being able to demonstrate an appropriate knowledge of the patient's history, experience and family context. You might usefully make educated guesses about the likely experiences of the patient, for example 'It must have been difficult to have received the news at that point in your life'.

The Code also makes explicit the responsibility to be aware of the legislation regarding mental capacity, a factor that can have a significant impact on communication. The Mental Capacity Act (2005) sets out guidance. Firstly, always presume people have mental capacity unless they:

- are unable to understand information given to them to make choices
- can understand but are unable to retain the information
- are unable to weigh up and relate the information accurately to their situation
- are unable to communicate their wishes or choices (by any means).

(BMA 2007)

If any of these factors are in question, the Mental Capacity Act (2005) recommends that determining an individual's decision-making capacity is best achieved through multidisciplinary assessment. A separate assessment of capacity must take place for every decision involving the individual. Brady Wagner (2003) specifies four key areas that need to be fulfilled in order to have the capacity to make a decision.

1. Understanding the diagnosis and other information given regarding treatment and non-treatment options.

2. Manipulating those options and consequences in relation to one's personal values and goals.

3. Reasoning through a decision.

4. Communicating the preference/decision.

The mental capacity of an individual needs to be considered in any communication but particularly if it involves the patient making a decision about treatment or care options and in respect of consent. At any time before making any referral for further support, it is important that the patient fully understands and consents.

The Equality Act (2010) reinforces the duty to ensure that everybody, irrespective of their disability, sex, gender, race, ethnic origin, age, relationship status, religion or faith, has equal access to information and is communicated with equitably. This means, for example, that provision is necessary to meet the information needs of blind and partially sighted people (Section 21 of the Disability Discrimination Act, October 1999).

People from black and minority ethnic (BME) groups constitute 6% of the population in the United Kingdom (Dein 2006). Originating primarily from the Caribbean, Africa, South Asia and China, the majority of people falling into this group continue to maintain strong cultural links with their countries of origin even after being resident in the United Kingdom for several generations.

Communication needs are individual and information requirements are also culturally sensitive. People may hold different beliefs about why they have developed an illness, for instance thinking that they are being punished for something that they may or may not have done (Dein 2006).

Medical language is full of technical vocabulary and jargon which is often difficult to comprehend even for native English speakers. Macdonald (2004) suggests that people from BME groups may often come from communities where the opportunity for education is limited, thus making it increasingly difficult for them to comprehend the information that has been provided, particularly when their first language might not be English. Macdonald states that 'sentences should be short, clear and precise' (2004, p.131).

Patients from different ethnic backgrounds will often take a family member to health-related appointments. The family member is there to assist in the dialogue between the patient and the medical/nursing practitioner. Macdonald (2004) discusses the fact that communication is a two-way process and suggests that for it to be effective, the information provided needs to be patient focused. The process of translation and interpretation is never without potential problems, however, and it is important to try to find more effective ways of ensuring that the information provided is not misunderstood or misinterpreted.

In addition to the written word, there are also a number of reputable telephone helplines that can facilitate the translation from one language to another. It is good practice that these services be utilized rather than relying on family or friends of the patient (MacDonald 2004). The reason for this is because the latter may not fully understand what they are being asked to translate, or might misconstrue or misrepresent what is being said (Macmillan Cancer Relief 2004).

Competencies

Communication is such an essential aspect of the role of anybody in healthcare that the Knowledge and Skills Framework specifies the competencies in communication expected at different levels (Table 5.1). Nurses are expected to be competent as a minimum to level 3. This is a baseline and much work has been done in developing programmes to advance communication skills further.

Table 5.1 Knowledge and Skills Framework: four dimensions of communication competence

1	2	3	4
Establish and maintain communication with other people on routine and operational matters	Establish and maintain communication with people about routine and daily activities, overcoming any differences in communication between the people involved	Establish and maintain communication with individuals and groups about difficult or complex matters, overcoming any problems in communication	Establish and maintain communication with various individuals and groups on complex potentially stressful topics in a range of situations

Adapted from *NHS Knowledge and Skills Framework and Development Review Guidance*. Working draft, version 6 (2003).

The consistency of the success of training interventions has been widely discussed (Chant *et al.* 2002, Heaven *et al.* 2006, Schofield *et al.* 2008). The NHS 'Connected' programme (www.connected.nhs.uk) has been developed initially to develop further the skills of key members of multidisciplinary teams in cancer care (Fellowes *et al.* 2003).

Ongoing development of communication skills should include learning how to negotiate barriers to good communication in the clinical environment, tailoring and individualizing communication approaches for different patients, conflict resolution and negotiation skills (Gysels *et al.* 2005, Roberts and Snowball 1999, Schofield *et al.* 2008, Wilkinson 1991).

Courses with a behavioural component of communication training, that is, role playing situations in the classroom, are preferable as this is indicated to influence effectiveness (Gysels *et al.* 2005).

If an issue appears to be beyond the scope of practice of the nurse, it is essential that further advice and help are sought to manage a patient's psychosocial needs.

Supporting yourself and using supervision are key factors in being able to support other people. This means having a balanced lifestyle, knowing when you are under pressure and putting structures in place to support yourself. Make use of colleagues and friends who understand the burdens of the type of work you do. Sharing support issues and developing a good team spirit are good practices. Try to establish for

yourself where and who you can go to for debriefing after distressing experiences. Do not ignore your own needs.

Preprocedural considerations

Time

In an acute hospital environment time is always pressured. For effective, supportive communication to take place, the patient needs to know that they have the nurse's attention for a set period of time. It is therefore essential to be realistic and proactive with the patient to negotiate a specific conversation for a prescribed length of time at a prearranged point in the day. It is important to be realistic but also to keep to the arrangement, otherwise there is the potential for the patient to consider that their psychological needs are not important (Towers 2007).

Environment

Conversations in a hospital environment can be very difficult, especially if privacy is sought. However, there are still actions that can be taken to make the environment as conducive as possible to enable supportive communication to take place (Towers 2007) (Box 5.4). This preliminary work might seem insignificant and time consuming but it underlines the importance of your communication to the patient and illustrates your interest in them.

Box 5.4 Making the environment conducive to supportive communication

- Can the patient safely and comfortably move to a more suitable area to talk with more privacy?
- Do they wish to move?
- Do they wish other people/members of the family to be there?
- Clear a space if necessary, respecting the patient's privacy and property.

- Check whether sitting on one side or another is preferable to them.
- Remove distractions, for example switch off a television, with the patient's permission.
- Is the patient able to sit comfortably?
- Will the patient be too hot or cold?
- As far as possible, choose a seat for yourself that is comfortable, and on the same level as the patient.
- Position your seat so you can have eye contact with each other easily without having to turn significantly.
- If you are in an open area on a ward, draw the curtains (with the patient's permission), to give you some privacy. Obviously, this does not prevent sound transfer and it is worth acknowledging the limitations of privacy.

Assessment

Nurses need to make careful assessments of the patient's psychological care needs. Every patient needs to be assessed for their coping style and their perception of support should be discussed at key stages in the journey of their illness. Patients' needs are diverse and hence individual discussion is necessary to enable professionals to understand and negotiate the desire for hope and control in care and treatment (Hack *et al.* 2005). Assessment and recording tools may support this discussion.

Recording tools

The Distress Thermometer is a validated instrument for measuring distress (Gessler *et al.* 2008, Mitchell 2007, Ransom *et al.* 2006). It is similar to a pain analogue scale (0 = no distress, 10 = extreme distress) and is thus simple to use and understand (Mitchell *et al.* 2009) (Figure 5.3). The tool helps to establish which of the broad range of challenges that may face any unwell person is dominant at any given time. It provides a language to help patients talk about what is concerning them (Mitchell 2007). The patient marks where they feel they are at that moment or for an agreed period preceding the assessment. Trigger

questions included with the Distress Thermometer can then be used to explore the nature of the distress, for example exploring family difficulties, financial worries, emotional or physical problems. A score of over 5 would warrant some supportive discussion and exploration of whether other support is necessary or desired. It may be that no further referral is necessary and the structured discussion this tool provides is sufficient in lowering the level of distress (NCCN 2010).

Figure 5.3 Distress thermometer.

Principles of supportive communication

The process in Principles Table 5.1 is not a rigidly prescribed sequence as skills and strategies may be used differently depending upon the situation.

Principles table 5.1 Supportive communication

Principle	Rationale
Consider whether the patient is comfortable and doesn't need pain relief or to use the toilet before you begin.	Pain and the medication used to treat it and other distractions and discomforts may limit a patient's ability to reason and concentrate. E
Protect the time for psychosocial focus of conversation. This involves telling other staff that you don't wish to be disturbed	Patients may observe how busy nurses are and withhold worries and

for a prescribed period.	concerns unless given explicit permission to talk (McCabe 2004, R3b).
Set a realistic time boundary for your conversation at the beginning.	You may only have 10 minutes and therefore you need to articulate the scope of your available time; this will help you to avoid distraction and give your full attention during the time available. E
Introduce yourself and your role and check what the patient wishes to be called.	This helps to establish initial rapport (Silverman *et al.* 2005, R5).
Spend a short time developing a rapport and indicating your interest in the patient, for example comment on a picture by the bedside.	Patients want to feel known. P
Be ready to move the conversation on to issues that may be concerning the patient.	Be aware that some patients may stay with neutral topics as the central focus of the conversation and withhold disclosure of psychosocial concerns until later in a conversation (Silverman *et al.* 2005, R5).
Suggest the focus of conversation, for example 'I would like to talk about how you have been feeling' or 'I wondered how you have been coping with everything'.	This indicates to the patient that you are interested in their psychological issues. E
Respond to and refer to cues.	Patients frequently offer cues – either verbal or non-verbal hints about underlying emotional concerns – and these need to be explored and clarified (Oguchi *et al.* 2010, R3b).
Responding to cues: 'I noticed you seemed upset earlier. I have 10 minutes to spare in which we can talk about it if you wish' or 'You have seemed a little frustrated. Is now a good time to talk about how I can help you with this?'.	
If the patient does not wish to talk, respect this (it is still important that you have offered to talk and the patient may well wish to talk at another time).	The patient may not wish to talk at that moment or may prefer to talk to someone else. E
Ask open questions: prefix your question with 'what', 'how' or 'why'.	Open questions encourage patients to talk (Hargie and Dickson 2004, R5).
Use closed questions sparingly.	If patients have a complicated issue to discuss, closed questions can help them be specific and can be used for clarification as well as when closing dialogue (Hargie and Dickson 2004, R5).
Add a psychological focus where you can, for example 'how have you felt about that?'.	This will help elicit information about psychological and emotional issues (Ryan *et al.* 2005, R3a).

Listen carefully and feed back your understanding of what is being said at opportune moments.	Listening is a key skill – it is an active process requiring concentration, verbal and non-verbal affirmations (Silverman *et al.* 2005, Wosket 2006, R5).
Be empathic (try to appreciate what the other person may be experiencing and recognize how difficult that is for them).	Empathy is about creating a human connection with your patient (Egan 2002, R5).
Allow for silences.	This can give rise to further expression and useful thinking time for yourself and the patient (Silverman *et al.* 2005, R5).
Initially avoid trying to 'fix' people's concerns and the problems that they express. It might be more powerful and important to simply sit, listen and show your understanding.	As an individual is listened to, they may feel comfort, relief and a sense of human connection essential for support (Egan 2002, R5).
Ask the patient how they think you may be able to help them.	The patient will know what they need better than we do. E
Avoid blocking (see Box 5.5).	Blocking results in failing to elicit the full range of concerns a patient may have (Back *et al.* 2005, R3a).
When you are nearing the end of the time you have agreed to be with the patient, let the patient know, that is, suggest that soon you will need to stop your discussion.	The patient can find this easier to accept if you have clearly expressed the time you had available in the first place (Towers 2007, R5).
Acknowledge that you may not have been able to cover all concerns and summarize what has been discussed, checking with the patient how accurate your understanding is.	The patient can correct any misinterpretations and this can lead to satisfactory agreement about the meeting. It also signifies closure of a meeting (Hargie and Dickson 2004, R5).
If further concerns are raised at this point, you will need to make it clear that you cannot support them at the current time. Let the patient know when you or other staff may be available to talk again, or where else they may get further support.	Clarity and honesty are important, as is working within boundaries. Knowing the limits of your time and expertise will help to prevent confusion about where the patient can receive types of support. E
Agree any action points and follow up as necessary. If needs remain unmet, offer support from a clinical nurse specialist or a counselling service, if available. You must discuss what this means and be realistic with regard to waiting times. Consent from the patient for any further referral is essential (unless you consider the patient to be at risk).	Having made a suitable assessment, you can involve further support if appropriate. E
Document your conversation, having agreed with the patient what is appropriate to share with the rest of the team.	It is essential to document your conversation so other members of the team are informed and to meet your professional requirements (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C).
Reflect upon your own practice.	You may have unintentionally

	controlled the communication or blocked expression of emotion. Reflection will increase your self-awareness and help develop your skills. E
Consider your own support needs. If you are affected by any discussions you have had, seek discussion with supportive senior members of staff or consider debriefing and/or supervision.	Clinical supervision supports practice, enabling registered nurses to maintain and improve standards of care (NMC 2008b, C).

Box 5.5 Characteristics of blocking behaviours

Blocking can be defined as:

- failing to pick up on cues (ignoring emotional content)
- selectively focusing on the physical/medical aspects of care
- premature or false reassurance, for example telling people not to worry
- inappropriate encouragement or trivializing, for example telling someone they look fine when they have expressed altered body image
- passing the buck, for example suggesting it is another professional's responsibility to answer questions or sort out the problem (doctors or counsellors, for example)
- changing the subject, for example asking about something mundane or about other family members to deflect the conversation away from issues that may make the nurse feel uncomfortable
- jollying along, for example 'You'll feel better when you get home'
- using closed questions (any question that can be answered with a yes or a no is a closed question).

(Faulkner and Maguire 1994)

Informing patients

Definition

Principles of providing information to patients and discussing procedures to be carried out.

Related theory

Research conducted by the Picker Institute (Ellins and Coulter 2005) shows that 80% of people actively seek information about how to cope with health problems. Information is of prime importance in helping to support people in the decision-making process, particularly when they are vulnerable and feeling anxious. It is important that high-quality, reliable and evidence-based information should be accessible to patients, their relatives and carers at the right time, making it an integral part of their care (DH 2008). This is reiterated in the White Paper *Our Health, Our Care, Our Say* (DH 2006), which states that 'people with a long-term condition and/or long-term need for support – and their carers – should routinely receive information about their condition' and the services available to them. Information prescriptions represent good practice for supporting the information needs of individuals (DH 2009).

Evidence-based approaches

With any procedure, it is essential that the patient (assuming consciousness and ability to make rational decisions) is psychologically prepared and consented. This requires careful explanation and discussion before a procedure is carried out.

As nurses, we can become so familiar with procedures that we expect them to be considered 'routine' by our patients. This can prevent us from providing thorough and necessary information and gaining acceptance and co-operation from our patients. We therefore need to avoid assuming that repetitive or frequent procedures do not require consent, explanation and potential discussion, for example taking a temperature.

It is important to consider giving information in small amounts and checking whether the patient understands what has been said after each

part has been explained. Keep language simple and clarify common and complex medical terms, for example ‘cannula’, ‘catheter’.

Check frequently whether the patient wishes you to continue to provide them with the same level of information. If confusion is arising, consider whether you are providing too much detail or using too many medical terms. Be aware whether the patient is paying attention or appears anxious (e.g. fidgety/non-attentive behaviour). Do not ignore these cues: name them. For example: ‘I notice you seem a little anxious while I am describing this …’ or ‘You seem concerned about the procedure, what can I do to help?’. This recognition of behaviour will help to fully explore and support the patient’s concerns.

Prior to starting, establish how the patient can communicate with you during the procedure, for example confirm that they can ask questions, request more analgesia or ask for the procedure to stop (if this is realistic).

Information must be presented accurately and calmly and without ‘false reassurance’, for example do not say something ‘will not hurt’ or it ‘will not go wrong’, when it might. It is better to explain the risk and likely outcome. Explain that working with the nurse and co-operating with instructions are likely to improve the outcome and that every effort will be made to reduce risk and manage any problems efficiently.

Respect any refusal unconditionally; however, you may wish to explore the reasons for refusal and explain the potential (realistic) consequences. Document carefully and discuss with the multidisciplinary team. If a patient has had a procedure before, do not assume that they are fully aware of the potential experience or risk involved, which may well have changed.

Attention to good communication, honesty, confidence and calmness will help to reassure the patient, thus gaining their compliance and improving the potential outcome (Maguire and Pitceathly 2002).

Giving the right amount of information is important; for example, it has been shown that getting the level of information wrong (too much or too little) at diagnosis can significantly affect the subsequent level of coping (Fallowfield *et al.* 2002). Getting the level right can be achieved

by simply asking how much people want to know and frequently checking if the level of information is satisfactory for the individual.

Preprocedural considerations

Patient information

Patient information in this context refers to information about disease, its treatment, effects and side-effects, and the help and support available to people living with a chronic condition, their relatives and carers.

When writing information for patients and carers, consideration should be given to information already available on the chosen topic. The purpose of the information may be to:

- address frequently asked questions
- inform about a treatment or service
- reduce anxiety
- give reference material.

Ideas should be shared with other members of the team or clinical unit, and patients and carers involved, from the outset. The content of the material should be accurate and evidence based and meet the current Department of Health and NHS Litigation Authority requirements.

When writing the information, everyday language should be used as if speaking face to face and avoiding the use of jargon; 16% of adults in England do not have the literacy levels expected of an 11-year-old (DfES 2003). However, there is no need to be patronizing or use childish language. The Plain English campaign (www.plainenglish.co.uk) offers a downloadable guide entitled *How to write plain English*.

Information should be dated and carry a planned review date. Sources of information should be acknowledged. This gives the reader confidence in the material.

The provision and production of information must take into account diversity in ethnicity, culture, religion, language, gender, age, disability, socio-economic status and literacy levels, as stated in the Department of Health publication *Better Information, Better Choice, Better Health* 2004. See Principles table 5.2 for the provision of information.

Information should be ratified according to local trust policy. Where a trust does not produce patient information materials to meet specific patient needs, suitable alternative sources of information should be sought.

Other sources of information

Patients and their families may benefit from information and support available in the wider community, away from the environment of statutory health services. Sources of additional information include:

- *disease-specific national charities*, for example the Multiple Sclerosis Society or the British Heart Foundation: these organizations produce written material in booklet and fact sheet format, as well as having websites
- *the 'illness memoir' and internet blogs*: personal accounts are easily accessible online and through bookstores. It may help patients to hear other people's stories as this can reduce the sense of isolation and powerlessness and promote hope (Chelf *et al.* 2001). It must be borne in mind that not everyone will benefit from these sources of information
- *peer support*: the therapeutic benefits of groups are extensively documented (NICE 2004) and most of the support charities will have a directory of local and national groups available.

Principles table 5.2 Provision of information

Principle	Rationale
Review the changing context of the patient's situation.	What may have been relevant before may now not be the same. People's circumstances and needs change. E
Prepare for discussion, ensuring you are familiar with the procedure, disease process, medication or other aspect of care to be discussed.	Accurate information giving is an essential part of nursing care. E
If possible, discuss the procedure some time before it is to be carried out for the first time. Provide the patient with leaflets, DVDs or	Give patients the opportunity to digest information in their own time (Lowry 1995, E). In certain groups it can be demonstrated to improve clinical outcomes, satisfaction, chances of meeting the

video if available so the patient has time to review the information at their own pace.	targeted discharge date and return to prior functional status sooner (Lookinland and Pool 1998, R2b).
Introduce yourself.	Ensure the patient understands who you are and your role and specific aim. Promote patient satisfaction (Delvaux *et al.* 2004, R1b).
Maintain a warm and approachable demeanour. Do not rush.	Promote patient satisfaction (Delvaux *et al.* 2004, R1b).
Explain that you have a procedure to carry out, considering privacy in giving information.	Promote dignity/preserve confidentiality (NMC 2008a, C).
Name the procedure. Elicit, clarify and check the information received by the patient.	Promote understanding and patient satisfaction.
Explain the procedure, avoiding the use of medical jargon. Be prepared to repeat information or rephrase until the patient understands. (If the patient doesn't understand, they haven't consented.)	Establish mutual understanding. Gain compliance with procedure: minimize risk (NMC 2008a, C). Improve outcome (Fellowes *et al.* 2004, R1a). Help patients manage side-effects and adhere to care and treatment (Chelf *et al.* 2001, R3a).
Confirm consent: ensure that the patient is happy for you to proceed. Allow the patient an opportunity to ask further questions or say no to the procedure. (If the patient fully understands what is involved, they may decide that they are not ready to proceed.)	Respecting the rights of the individual (NMC 2008a, C). Obtaining consent correctly (NMC 2008c, C; see also Appendix 1).
Start the procedure, reiterating the main issues as you go along and keeping the patient updated on progress.	To maintain open dialogue and address issues and questions, as they arise. E
Make it clear when the procedure has finished and what has been achieved. Offer opportunity for discussion of implications, disclosing as much information as the patient wishes.	So that the patient is aware and has the information they need and want (Jenkins *et al.* 2001, R2b).

Managing challenging issues with communication

Denial and collusion

Definitions

Denial is a complex phenomenon but most commonly can be defined as a strategy offering 'psychological protection against the perception and processing of subjectively painful or distressing information' (Goldbeck 1997, p.586).

Collusion is when two or more parties develop a 'secret' understanding, that is, withholding information from another person. It is important that health professionals resist invitations to collude with information that the patient has inaccurately understood (Macdonald 2004).

Related theory

A diagnosis of any potentially life-threatening illness can be experienced in many different ways and elicit strong emotional responses. Patients are likely to be distressed and experience a wide range of emotions which may arguably be lessened if 'healthcare professionals (HCPs) were truthful and open with patients about their diagnosis and prognosis' (Wilkinson *et al.* 2005, p.124).

Numerous coping strategies, including denial, may be used when someone is given a potentially life-threatening diagnosis such as cancer. Denial is not an uncommon reaction to a threatening diagnosis and is a well- recognized phenomenon in clinical practice (Vos and Haes 2007). Ten percent of patients deny the gravity of their diagnosis but usually still ask about potential treatments (Maguire 2000). As healthcare professionals, the more we understand about denial, the better equipped we are likely to feel to cope with it.

Literature on denial tends to be limited to the cancer field and prevalence rates are difficult to assess. Vos (2008) found that most lung cancer patients displayed some level of denial, which increased over the course of the illness. This outcome warrants the conclusion that in clinical practice, 'denial in this group of patients has to be considered as a normal phenomenon and not as a sign of disturbed coping' (Vos 2008, p.1170).

Healthcare professionals may view denial as a normal and acceptable response to a potentially life-threatening diagnosis or they may consider

it problematic, especially as it can be seen to generate discomfort and uncertainty for them and the patient's family.

Family members and healthcare professionals can collude with patient denial, perhaps as a means of protecting the patient or themselves from facing the full impact and pain of the situation. As healthcare professionals, we need to be aware of the pitfalls of colluding with patient or family denial and give consideration to how we may be contributing to it.

The concept of denial has been considered from different theoretical perspectives over time. Historically, in early psychoanalytic teaching denial was felt to be a maladaptive, immature defence which needed to be confronted. The emphasis was on the pathological nature of denial. More recently, the traditional view of denial as maladaptive is being challenged.

As human beings, we live our lives in our own individual, unique way and also deal with a life-threatening diagnosis in our own way. For some people, focusing on hope and cure is the priority, whilst for others it is first necessary to prepare themselves and their family for the possibility that their illness may be incurable. Denial is a complex, fluid process, as is living with a life-threatening diagnosis. Patients' understanding of what is happening to them can fluctuate from minute to minute.

> Denial is not an 'all or none' phenomenon. A patient may accept his illness in the morning, but by evening deny that he has it.
>
> (Dein 2005, p.251)

Medical and nursing staff, family members and patients may all 'be in denial' at some point – to protect either themselves or those they care about.

Evidence-based approaches

Assessment of denial

In order to try to understand as fully as possible the emotions that patients are experiencing and the resources they have for coping, a careful assessment of each patient's circumstances is important.

Healthcare professionals need to establish what information the patient has been given, before assuming that the patient is experiencing denial. We need to be sure that patients have been given adequate, digestible information, if necessary on several occasions.

It is helpful to view denial as a process and to see its expression along a continuum. This needs to be acknowledged in the assessment process.

Repeated assessments of denial may help us to understand how various factors might influence denial and to better understand its dynamic nature.

Denial can generate discomfort and uncertainty in staff. Recognizing and understanding it can help healthcare professionals cope with the challenge of caring for a patient who is using denial as a coping mechanism.

Principles table 5.3 Supporting a patient in denial

Principle	Rationale
Healthcare professionals should aim to provide honest information to patients with the use of good communication skills, to the depth and detail the patient requests.	This enables patients to have control over the rate at which they absorb and integrate news and information that may have life-threatening implications for them (Maguire 2000, R5).
Useful skills are those of listening, reflecting and summarizing.	This will establish a supportive relationship which in the future may provide the patient with the security to acknowledge the gravity of the information they have been given. E
If denial is affecting a treatment regime or decisions for the future, it may need to be gently challenged. This can be done by either questioning any inconsistencies in the patient's story or asking if at any point they have thought that their illness may be more serious.	These questions may help the patient get closer to knowledge they may already have about the seriousness of their illness. With the right support, they might be able to face their fears and be more fully involved in decisions about future care and treatment. E
If the patient remains in denial it shouldn't be challenged any further (Dein 2005).	'Confrontation, if pursued in an insensitive or dismissive way or in the absence of adequate trust and support mechanisms, may increase denial, may reduce treatment compliance, or may even precipitate a complete breakdown in the health care professional – patient relationship' (Goldbeck 1997, p.586; Maguire 2000, R5).
The delivery of bad news and	Good communication can help prevent patients receiving

information giving needs to be recorded clearly. The degree to which the patient accepts the information is variable and needs to be respected and carefully documented.	mixed messages. E

Complications

Balancing the reality of the illness with reasonable hope is often difficult for all concerned. When working with patients whom we think are in denial, the challenge for healthcare professionals is not so much the confrontation of denial but rather the avoidance of collusion with it (Houldin 2000).

Collusion can leave healthcare professionals, patients and relatives feeling confused. Recognizing collusion, challenging it and discussing our concerns with colleagues is important. Working with our multiprofessional team helps to improve communication and to ensure a collaborative approach to care. Drawing on the richness of experience of others can help.

Clinical supervision can provide a safe reflective space for healthcare professionals to explore their practice. It is an ideal place to explore the complex phenomenon of denial and collusion, as well as find support and if necessary challenge.

Anxiety

Definition

Anxiety is a feeling of fear and apprehension about a real or perceived threat. The source of the feeling may or may not be known (Kennedy Sheldon 2009).

Anatomy and physiology

Anxious feelings can result in physical symptoms related to the flight or fight response as physically the body responds to the threat, real or

otherwise. The sympathetic nervous system releases adrenaline that is responsible for an increase in heart rate and therefore palpitations and raised blood pressure, faster, shallower breathing (hyperventilation), dizziness, dry mouth and difficulty swallowing, relaxation of sphincters leading to an increase in urinary and faecal elimination, reduction in blood supply to the intestines leading to feelings of 'butterflies', knotted stomach and nausea, increase in perspiration as the body seeks to cool down the tense muscles, and musculoskeletal pains (particularly in the back and neck) (Powell and Enright 1990). These are all unpleasant physical symptoms for the patient and can escalate further if not managed at an early stage.

Related theory

There are a number of theories about anxiety, its causes and therefore how to manage it (Powell and Enright 1990). To be effective in supporting and communicating with a patient with anxiety, it is necessary to know that there are three aspects of feeling anxious.

- *Bodily sensations*.
- *Behaviour*: how the individual behaves when faced with the fear, especially if the behaviour involves avoiding it.
- *Thinking*: this is the ideas, beliefs and mental pictures about what might happen in the situation feared (Powell 2009).

Anxiety is a normal response to threatening events but can become a problem when it is frequent, exaggerated, experienced out of context or interfering with an individual's life (Blake and Ledger 2007). As levels of anxiety increase, awareness and interaction with the environment decrease, and recall and general function are also impaired (Kennedy Sheldon 2009). At the extreme, anxiety may become a panic attack.

Evidence-based approaches

Research has recently demonstrated that the most effective way of helping an individual with the more acute levels of anxiety is through a cognitive behavioural approach (Donohoe and Ricketts 2006, NICE 2007). Some of these principles are applicable to communicating with a

patient with general anxiety associated with their illness and treatment. One of the key interventions is educating the patient, normalizing their response to their situation but also giving information about the situations and circumstances that may be triggering the anxiety (Donohoe and Ricketts 2006). Referring the patient for relaxation therapy can also help them physiologically, as they will learn how to release the muscular tension that may lead to headaches, backaches and other aches and pains (Blake and Leger 2007, Powell 2009).

Principles table 5.4 Supporting an anxious individual

Principle	Rationale
Be alert to the signs and symptoms of anxiety.	Early recognition and intervention may help to prevent worsening of symptoms. E
Encourage the patient to talk about the source of their anxiety if they can.	Patients may find some benefit from expressing their concerns and being heard. E
Listen and only when the patient has expressed all their fears offer information or gently challenge misinformation about treatment, processes or outcomes if this is the source of the anxiety.	Information about a procedure, particularly an operation, can reduce anxiety and improve outcomes (Scott 2004, R3a; Nordahl *et al.* 2003, R2b).
If the patient doesn't know why they are feeling anxious, encourage them to describe what is happening in their body, when it started, what makes it worse, what makes it better.	Patient feels listened to and less alone, which may increase their sense of security and therefore reduce anxiety. E
Ask the patient if they have had the feelings before. What has helped previously (coping mechanisms) and what do they think may help this time?	The patient is encouraged to take control and apply their own coping mechanisms. E

Panic attacks (acute anxiety)

Related theory

A panic attack is a discrete period of intense fear or discomfort that is accompanied by a range of somatic or cognitive symptoms (Donohoe and Ricketts 2006) (Box 5.6).

Box 5.6 Criteria for a panic attack

A discrete period of intense fear or discomfort in which four (or more) of the following symptoms develop abruptly and reach a peak within 10 minutes.

- Palpitations, pounding heart or accelerated heart rate.
- Sweating.
- Trembling or shaking.
- Sensations of shortness of breath or smothering.
- Feeling of choking.
- Chest pain or discomfort.
- Nausea or abdominal distress.
- Feeling dizzy, unsteady, light-headed or faint.
- De-realization or depersonalization.
- Fear of losing control or going crazy.
- Fear of dying.
- Pins and needles in extremities.
- Chills or hot flushes.

(Donohoe and Ricketts 2006)

Panic attacks occur in up to 5% of the population with a sudden onset of symptoms such as dizziness, difficulty in breathing and thoughts of losing control or dying. The more these thoughts intrude, the more extreme the physiological response becomes (Powell 2009). The immediate response for many individuals is to try and leave the situation as soon as possible. This brings immediate relief but increases the likelihood of further apprehension and repeated attack at a later date (Powell 2009).

An indication for many individuals that a panic attack is beginning is a feeling of tightness in the chest or being aware that their breathing is fast. If not managed, this progresses to hyperventilation (Powell 2009).

Evidence-based approaches

Managing acute anxiety (including panic attacks) can help to avoid the development of panic disorder and generalized anxiety disorder. Nurses can support patients to avoid anxiety attacks by taking time to talk issues through. If the anxiety has progressed further and the patient is experiencing the warning signs that they are on the verge of hyperventilation, it is helpful to:

- remind them that the symptoms they are feeling are not harmful
- help them to actively release tension in the upper body by encouraging them to sit up and drop their shoulders in a sideways widening direction. This makes hyperventilation more difficult since the chest and diaphragm muscles are stretched outwards
- breathe slowly … in to a count of 4 and out to a count of 4. Slowing your own breathing down can help the patient
- encourage them to concentrate on breathing out and trying to breathe through their nose.

(Adapted from Powell 2009)

A panic or anxiety attack does not necessarily mean that the patient has a pathological disorder. Prompt treatment and management are important to prevent transient anxiety turning into a disorder (NICE 2007).

Preprocedural considerations

Pharmacological support

Panic disorder

Benzodiazepines, antipsychotics and sedating antihistamines are associated with a worse long-term outcome and pharmacological interventions should be either tricyclic or selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) antidepressant medication (see Depression, Pharmacological support).

Generalized anxiety disorder

Again, antidepressant medication should be considered and this should be an SSRI unless otherwise indicated. Other medication has also been shown to be effective: serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs) (venlafaxine) and antihistamines/benzodiazepines in short-term use (NICE 2004).

Non-pharmacological support

The rebreathing technique

This involves the patient rebreathing the air they have just breathed out (Box 5.7). This air is high in carbon dioxide so has less oxygen. This means that there will be a lower amount of oxygen in the blood, thus activating the parasympathetic nervous system and promoting relaxation (Blake and Ledger 2007).

Box 5.7 Rebreathing technique instructions for a patient

- Make a mask of your hands and put them over your nose and mouth and keep them there (Figure 5.4).
- Breathe in and out through your nose once.
- Breathe in your own exhaled air through your nose.
- Breathe out hard through your mouth.

This should be done slowly without holding your breath. Repeat this four or five times but no more. Remain calm and relaxed while doing it.

(Adapted from Powell 2009)

Figure 5.4 Hand position for rebreathing technique.

After the panic attack, it is important to reflect with the patient about what happened and try to identify any triggers. Explanation and education about physiological responses can help to show the patient the importance of slowing their breathing which will in turn give them a sense of control.

If these panic attacks continue or if the patient has a history of anxiety then the management of this will include a referral for psychological support (with consent). Medication may be indicated after assessment (NICE 2007).

Depression

Definition

Currently, depression can be defined as:

> … a range of mental health disorders characterised by the absence of a positive affect (a loss of interest and enjoyment in ordinary things and experiences), low mood and a range of associated emotional, cognitive, physical and behavioural symptoms. It is often accompanied by anxiety, and can be chronic even in milder presentations.

(NICE 2009a)

Depression describes a group of related disorders whose definition has changed over time.

Related theory

Depression is a common psychological response in patients with a chronic physical illness such as heart disease, diabetes and cancer. When this occurs, it is referred to as a 'co-morbid' depression. Co-morbid depression is difficult to detect as symptoms can be similar to the expected side-effects of the illness or treatment. For example, undetected depression rates in adult patients with cancer can be as high as 50% (Brown *et al.* 2009, Trask 2004). Depression can be found in 20% of patients with a chronic physical illness (NICE 2009a), which is 2–3 times higher than individuals in good health. It is therefore essential that patients with a long-term physical illness are regularly assessed for anxiety and depression.

Box 5.8 sets out some of the symptoms of depression (NICE 2009a).

Box 5.8 Symptoms that indicate a diagnosis of clinical depression

Behavioural

- Tearfulness.
- Irritability.
- Socially withdrawn.
- Changes to sleep patterns.
- Lowered appetite.
- Lack of libido.
- Fatigue.
- Diminished activity.
- Attempts at self-harm or suicide.

Physical

- Exacerbation of pre-existing pains.
- Pains secondary to increased muscle tension.
- Agitation and restlessness.
- Changes in weight.

Cognitive

- Poor concentration.
- Reduced attention.
- Pessimistic thoughts.
- Recurring negative thoughts about oneself, past and future.
- Mental slowing.
- Rumination.

Emotional

- Feelings of guilt.
- Worthlessness.
- Deserving of punishment.
- Lowered self-esteem.
- Loss of confidence.
- Feelings of helplessness.
- Suicidal ideation.

Depression can be accompanied by anxiety and can be diagnosed as either depression or mixed depression and anxiety. The incidence of depression in the UK has been quoted as 2.6% (2.3% male, 2.8% female). However, the figure for mixed anxiety and depression rises to 11.4% (9.1% male, 13.6% female) (NICE 2009a, p.18).

A normal low mood is differentiated from what is medically diagnosed as a depressive episode by the length of time the low mood is experienced. Low mood that persists for 2 weeks or more or rapid-onset/severe low mood are reasons for concern. The presence of other depressive symptoms contributes to a diagnosis as well as a consideration of how this low mood affects the individual's ability to interact socially. Generally, depression is a time-limited disorder with the potential for full recovery within 6–8 months

(NICE 2008a). However, if a chronic physical illness is present, this may be different. Severe depression may be accompanied by psychotic symptoms, that is, hallucinations or delusional thoughts.

Evidence-based approaches

Approaches to treatment of depression are influenced by the severity of the condition. Diagnosing depression has improved following the introduction of ICD-10 which lists 10 depressive symptoms, dividing them into:

- sub-threshold <4 symptoms
- mild 4 symptoms
- moderately depressed 5–6 symptoms
- severe 7 or more symptoms with or without psychosis.

Symptoms need to be present for greater than 2 weeks.

Core management skills include risk assessment plus the following.

- Good communication skills are required to enable the nurse to elicit information from the patient (Brown *et al.* 2009, Strong *et al.* 2004) and show understanding of the problem.
- A sufficient understanding of the signs and symptoms of anxiety and depression and ability to make a preliminary assessment.
- A sufficient understanding of antidepressant medication to enable an explanation of its actions to the patient.
- An ability to 'refer on' when it is recognized that the issues are beyond the scope of experience. This must be done with the patient's consent.
- Awareness of the stigma attached to a diagnosis of depression, and protection of the patient's privacy and dignity.
- Sensitivity to diverse cultural ethnic and religious backgrounds considering variations in presentations of low mood.
- Awareness of any cognitive impairments or learning disabilities to ensure that specialist therapists are involved (where needed).

Use of hospital psychological care departments can assist with the care and treatment of patients as well as providing a supervisory and support framework for staff. Working with psychological care departments can help nurses develop their assessment skills of anxiety and depression helping

them to identify the appropriate time for a referral to a specialist service if required (Towers 2007).

Preprocedural considerations

Pharmacological support

There are four main types of antidepressant (Royal College of Psychiatrists 2010). When prescribing antidepressants, the two main considerations are the presence of other physical health problems and the side-effects of the drugs which may affect the underlying physical disease.

There is minimal difference between the effectiveness of each type of antidepressant; however, there are clear differences in the side-effects of the different classes and types of antidepressants.

The therapeutic effect of antidepressants may take months to appear and treatment should continue for at least 6 months after a response to the treatment.

Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors are safer in overdose than tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs), which can be dangerous. There is, however, an increased risk of gastrointestinal bleeding with SSRIs so they should be avoided in patients taking non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs.

Monoamine oxidase inhibitors can affect blood pressure, particularly when certain food types are eaten.

Serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors are not appropriate for patients with heart conditions as they too increase blood pressure.

Table 5.2 lists the most commonly prescribed antidepressants (RCP, BSRM, NCPCS 2008).

Table 5.2 Most commonly prescribed antidepressants

Medication	Trade name	Group
Amitriptyline	Tryptizol	Tricyclic
Clomipramine	Anafranil	Tricyclic
Citalopram	Cipramil	SSRI
Dosulepin	Prothiaden	Tricyclic
Doxepin	Sinequan	Tricyclic
Fluoxetine	Prozac	SSRI

Imipramine	Tofranil	Tricyclic
Lofepramine	Gamanil	Tricyclic
Mirtazapine	Zispin	NaSSA
Moclobemide	Manerix	MAOI
Nortriptyline	Allegron	Tricyclic
Paroxetine	Seroxat	SSRI
Phenelzine	Nardil	MAOI
Reboxetine	Edronax	SNRI
Sertraline	Lustral	SSRI
Tranylcypromine	Parnate	MAOI
Trazodone	Molipaxin	Tricyclic related
Venlafaxine	Efexor	SNRI

SSRI, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor; SNRI, serotonin and noradrenaline reuptake inhibitor; MAOI, monoamine oxidase inhibitor; NaSSA, noradrenergic and specific serotonergic antidepressant.

Nurses have an important role in exploring with the patient any concerns they may have regarding taking an antidepressant. The patient should be equipped with all the necessary information regarding the optimum time to take the medication and the expected length of time before any therapeutic effect becomes apparent. Medication should be taken for at least 6 months following remission.

Discontinuation of treatment usually requires titration of doses. Therefore treatment must not be stopped abruptly and should be monitored by the prescribing doctor or nurse. Concerns regarding addiction require further information and reassurance confirming that this is unlikely to happen with the more modern antidepressant treatments. Further information on pharmacological intervention can be found in the NICE guidelines on depression (NICE 2009a).

Non-pharmacological support

Nurses can be involved in assessing depression in patients with physical illness. NICE guidance sets out a four-step model for managing a patient with depression. The first step (Box 5.9) could be managed by a nurse in an acute environment.

Box 5.9 Managing the patient with depression: NICE guidance, step 1

Key questions:

1. During the last month, have you often been bothered by:
   - feeling down, depressed or hopeless?
   - having little interest or pleasure in doing things?
2. How long have you felt like this for? (NICE 2009a, p.4)

If the patient answers 'yes' to question 1 and the time scale is longer than 2 weeks, it is important that a referral is made for further assessment by a healthcare professional with clinical competence in managing depression, such as a clinical psychologist or a registered mental health nurse, so they can determine if the patient has been bothered by 'feelings of worthlessness, poor concentration or thoughts of death' (NICE 2009a, p.4).

Other questions should assess for the following.

- Other physical health problems that may be significantly affecting their mood such as uncontrolled pain, sleep disruption, excessive nausea and vomiting, physical limitations on their independence or body image disturbance.
- A history of psychological illness such as depression.
- A consideration of the medication the patient is taking, specifically medication for mental health problems. Have they been able to take it and absorb it or have they had any digestive issues?
- Social support for the patient: who else is around to support the person, are they isolated?

(Adapted from NICE 2009a)

Assessment of how the patient's low mood has affected their usual daily activities such as eating, dressing and sleeping is important. The nurse can also encourage the patient to engage with activities that would be the normal for them.

Suicidal ideation

Definition

This is where someone has thoughts about suicide – it does not necessarily mean they are intending to act upon them.

Related theory

National statistics for UK suicide indicate that there are approximately 11 suicides per 100,000 population per year. Males outnumber females by approximately 3:1 (Office for National Statistics: www.statistics.gov.uk/cci/nugget.asp?id=1092).

Anger, aggression and violence management

Definition

Anger is 'an emotional state that may range in intensity from mild irritation to intense fury and rage. Anger has physical effects including raising the heart rate and blood pressure and the levels of adrenaline and noradrenaline' (Mednet 2010).

Related theory

Nurses may be exposed to anger and aggression. Poor communication is frequently a precursor to aggressive behaviour (Duxbury and Whittington 2005). Aggression and abuse tend to be discussed synonymously in the literature and are reported to occur with some frequency in nursing (McLaughlin *et al.* 2009). Anger is felt or displayed when someone's annoyance or irritation has increased to a point where they feel or display extreme displeasure. Verbal aggression is the expression of anger via hostile language; this language causes offence and may result in physical assault. Verbal abuse may actually be experienced as worse than a minor physical

assault (Adams and Whittington 1995). Whatever the cause of anger or conflict, people can behave in a number of challenging ways and with varying degrees of resistance to social and hospital rules. People may simply refuse to comply with a request or may behave more aggressively, for example by pushing someone aside (without intent to harm) or by deliberately striking out at others. Mental capacity issues should be considered when assessing the causes of aggressive behaviours.

Principles table 5.7 Communicating with a patient who is expressing suicidal ideation

Principle	Rationale
Explore low mood, anxiety and agitation with patients.	These factors indicate increased risk (Hermes *et al.* 2009, R3a).
Assess for risk: this can be as simple as making a statement remarking upon the person's low mood and asking them if they have ever thought of hurting themselves.	Most people will answer truthfully (Sobczak 2009, R3a).
Explore any expressions of suicidal ideas for intention to act. This can be achieved by asking if the patient has a plan. Crucially you will also need to explore what stops people from acting and what changes might cause them to act. If you consider the patient is at risk, explain to them that you need to refer them for further support. Inform and involve the consultant and psychological support services.	Suicidal thoughts do not mean that people are at risk but you do need to establish what the risk is. Assessing suicidal risk needs to be simple (Billings 2004, R5).

When patients do feel anger, they may feel too depleted by experiences of disease and treatment to express it (Bowes *et al.* 2002).

For some people, anger may be the least distressing emotion to display. Sometimes helplessness, sadness and loss are far harder to explore and show to others. Anger therefore can be a way of controlling intimacy and disclosure, but it can escalate to threatening, abusive or violent behaviour.

Evidence-based approaches

Prevention is the most effective method of managing anger; that is, diffusing stressful or difficult interactions before they become a crisis. There are situations encountered within practice where challenging or difficult behaviour can be seen to be related to underlying stress and difficulty in a person's situation. Anger, aggression and violence may have

‘biological, psychological, social and environmental roots’ (Krug 2002, p.25). People frequently get angry when they feel they are not being heard or when their control of a situation and self-esteem are compromised. Many health professionals are unfortunately renowned for failing to acknowledge patients as people and this can stimulate an angry and arguably legitimate behavioural response. Institutional pressures can influence healthcare professionals to act in controlling ways and may contribute to patients’ angry responses (Gudjonsson *et al.* 2004). Patients are often undergoing procedures that threaten them and they may consequently feel vulnerable and react aggressively as a result. Another source of anger can be when personal beliefs in the form of rules are broken by others. We therefore need to strive to be aware of individual and cultural values and work with them to avoid frustration and upset.

People also can become angry when they feel that they have not been communicated with honestly or are misled about treatments and their outcomes. To prevent people’s frustration escalating into anger or worse, health professionals need to ensure that they are communicating with people openly, honestly and frequently.

Some patients may appear or sound aggressive when they are not intending to be and the nurse must therefore use good judgement to clarify their behaviour in these instances. Nurses need to be aware of their own boundaries and capabilities when dealing with challenging or abusive situations.

Threats, uncertainty and disempowerment may predispose people to anger and living with and being treated for any serious condition can be sufficiently threatening and disempowering, for example those affected by cancer (Faulkner and Maguire 1994).

It is frequently possible to engage with and manage some of the underlying features without endangering anyone. People who are behaving aggressively probably do not normally act that way and may apologize when helped.

Talking down or de-escalation of situations where someone is being non-compliant can be achieved with careful assessment of the situation and skilful communication. NICE (2005) clinical guidelines on managing disturbed and violent behaviour recommend remaining calm when

approaching someone and offering them choices. It is acknowledged, however, that there is little research indicating the correct procedure to follow.

Box 5.10 lists signs indicating that people may be angry. It is necessary to engage people sensitively and carefully to attempt to help them whilst maintaining a safe environment for all.

Box 5.10 Warning signs that a patient is angry

- Tense angry facial signs, restlessness and increased volume of speech.
- Prolonged eye contact and a refusal to communicate.
- Unclear thought process, delusions or hallucinations.
- Verbal threats and reporting angry feelings.

The ideal outcome for an encounter with an angry, aggressive or threatening person is that safety is not compromised and the healthcare professional is able to talk the person down, helping them to express the reason why they are angry. Follow-up support should be offered to help stop the person repeating the same behaviour. However, people should also be made aware of potential sanctions if they are unable to comply, for example withdrawal of treatment, involvement of the police and so on.

Legal and professional issues

Nurses may be inclined to accept aggressive behaviour as part of the job (Mclaughlin *et al.* 2009) due to being encouraged to be caring, compassionate and accepting of others. Despite this, nurses have the right to work without feeling intimidated or threatened and should not tolerate verbal or physical abuse, threats or assault. Personal comments, sarcasm and innuendo are all unacceptable.

Employers have a responsibility to adhere to Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations (HM Government 2000). This involves

providing a safe environment for people to work in and one that is free from threats and abuse. With any physical assault, the police should be involved.

Preprocedural considerations

Pharmacological support

Short-term use of a benzodiazepine, for example diazepam or lorazepam, may be indicated. Assess this carefully, that is, do not assume that it is necessary. Once a situation is more under control, you can ask if the person feels less angry and whether they feel that they need further support. Suggesting this at the wrong time or insensitively may inflame the situation.

A psychiatrist may prescribe an antipsychotic medication for short-term use, for example Risperidone.

See also Box 5.11 for phrases that might help when talking with an angry person.

Box 5.11 Phrases that might help when talking with an angry person

- I can see that you are angry about this …
- I would like to help you try to sort this out, how can I do that?
- In order for me to help you, I need you to stop shouting.
- You are shouting at me and I can't help you until you stop.
- Please stop (unacceptable behaviour), you are making me and these other people quite frightened.
- Can you tell me what is making you so angry so that I might be able to help you sort it out?

Try to agree with the patient where possible (this can be a good way to diffuse tensions):

- I can see how that would annoy you … let's see what we can do about it.
- What might I/we do, for you to … (comply with the rules/request)?

Principles table 5.8 Communicating with a patient who is angry

Principle	Rationale
Remain calm.	
Verbally acknowledge the person's distress/anger and suggest you wish to help.	The person may respond positively and accept help. E
Acknowledge issues that may be contributing, for example being kept waiting.	This helps the person feel that their concerns are understood. E
Consider what causes there may be, for example medication or disease (consider diabetes – hypo/hyperglycaemia), medical, circumstantial and so on.	Several factors might be influencing the behaviour. E
Consider safety – try to move to another area (ideally where you can sit down). If others might be intimidated or in danger, be clear about moving one of the parties away where practical, but do not endanger yourself in the process.	Maintain safety for all. E
If a person's behaviour is hostile and intimidating, tell them you are finding their behaviour threatening and state clearly you wish them to stop/desist (see Box 5.11 for suggested phrases).	Some people may not be aware of the impact of their behaviour and will change it when it is pointed out that it is unacceptable. E
Assess individual situations and make use of relatives or friends if they are present and can be of assistance in diffusing the situation.	Sometimes people will listen more to a person who is close to them. E
Create some physical distance or summon assistance if the patient does not concur and continues to be threatening, abusive or passively non-compliant (e.g. refuses to move).	Maintaining safety for all. E
Warn the person that you will contact security staff/police if necessary – avoid threatening language. If possible, make a personal or practical appeal.	People need clear information about the consequences of their actions. E
Attempt to talk the individual down, that is, calm them down by remaining calm and professional yourself, keeping your voice at a steady pace and a moderate volume. Try to engage the person in conversation.	Your behaviour will have an impact on theirs. E
Avoid personalizing the anger but do not accept unwarranted personal criticism.	If we personalize then we are likely to react in a way that exacerbates the situation but neither should you accept abuse. E
You may suggest walking with the patient to discuss issues but ensure you remain in a public/safe environment.	Changing the environment may help to recontextualize behaviour and movement channels agitation. E
The key communication skills discussed in the skills section will be helpful here but fundamentally you need to listen to what the grievance	People need to be heard and understood. E

is, treat the person as an individual, preserve their dignity and attempt to help where you realistically can. Avoid passing the buck or blocking in another way.	
If a patient is no longer abusive or threatening but is struggling to reduce their anger, they may benefit from some further psychological support or medication to help them feel calmer.	The short-term use of some medication may be beneficial. C
In rare and extreme circumstances where patients are violent and do not respond to de-escalation attempts and where the safety of other people is compromised, you must take immediate action by involving security and the police. If an ambulant outpatient, you need to ask them to leave if their behaviour is not acceptable.	Maintaining safety for all. E
Restraint and sedation may be required in some cases. Follow individual hospital security/ emergency procedures in these instances.	

It can be distressing to be exposed to threatening or abusive people and it is good practice to seek a debriefing interview. This can help you and the institution reflect upon the experience and procedures in place to manage such situations. Check with your occupational health or human resources department to establish where you can access support facilities.

Delirium

Definition

Delirium is an altered state of consciousness or acute confusion caused by a severe medical illness (Sendelbach *et al.* 2009).

Related theory

In most cases, delirium is caused by a general medical condition, intoxication or withdrawal of medication/substances which act upon the neurochemical balance of the brain (Ross 1991). Causative factors like infection, post anaesthesia and medication (especially analgesics) need to be considered, particularly for sudden onset of delirium in the hospital environment.

Figures for the incidence of delirium vary, but up to 25% may experience a delirium whilst hospitalized. Up to 50% of postoperative patients may develop delirium (NICE 2008b). There is an increased prevalence for

inpatients over the age of 65 years. Age, the severity of illness, pre-existing cognitive decline, immobility and malnutrition all increase risk (Irving *et al.* 2006).

The disturbance can develop quickly and fluctuate during the course of a 24-hour period (DSM IV 1994). Environmental cues during the daytime act as stabilizing factors and this makes symptoms typically worse at night. The disturbance can resolve within hours/days or can last longer if co-existing with other problems like dementia. A patient's behaviour may change to indicate potential delirium before a full set of diagnostic symptoms is observable (Duppils and Wikblad 2004) (Box 5.12). There is considerable morbidity and mortality associated with delirium, delaying recovery and rehabilitation (Irving *et al.* 2006, NICE 2008b). Recognizing and addressing delirium is important because of the distress it causes patients, families and staff (Lawlor *et al.* 2000). A marked feature of delirium is the variety and fluctuating nature of symptoms.

Box 5.12 Signs and symptoms of delirium

- Difficulty maintaining attention on features of the environment.
- Easily distractible.
- Unable to have a coherent conversation.
- Unable to recall recent events.

Other observable features include:

- disorientation
- rambling speech
- disinhibition
- slow responses
- disturbance of sleep patterns
- rapid mood changes or a significant change of attitude
- distress
- hallucinations and being irrationally frightened of objects.

(Irving and Foreman 2006)

Evidence-based approaches

Nurses play a critical role in the prevention, early detection (Milisen *et al.* 2005) and management of delirium. Delirium is frequently iatrogenic (i.e. caused by medical intervention) and hence can often be corrected once the causative factor has been identified.

Addressing the causative factors as part of good nursing and medical care will help prevent the development of delirium. This means ensuring hydration and nutritional requirements are met and any electrolyte imbalances are monitored and corrected.

Nurses need to be aware that patients over the age of 65 (especially those having anaesthesia) will be highly prone to developing delirium so need to be monitored carefully over a period of time to pick up any early signs. The effect of analgesia (especially opiates) also needs to be considered.

The emergence of delirium can also be significant at the end of life and significantly complicate care (Delgado-Guay *et al.* 2008). Terminal restlessness is a term often used to describe this agitated delirium in end-of-life care, where the causes may require specific management different from that of other types of delirium (Travis *et al.* 2001). A progressive shutdown of body organs in the last 2–3 days of life (Lawlor *et al.* 2000) leads to irresolvable systemic imbalances. The management of delirium in end-of-life care therefore shift from a focus on reversing the cause to alleviating the symptoms. Nurses should avoid medicating symptoms unless this is in the patient's best interests.

Principles of care

Initial screening for any cognitive issues on admission is important to identify predictive factors and establish a baseline of cognitive functioning. Involving the family can be crucial to an accurate assessment where there are existing changes.

Once identified, delirium should be managed by attempting to establish the potential reversible causes. This will include:

- newly started medications
- changes in dosage
- opioid toxicity, withdrawal from opioids or alcohol
- use of corticosteroids

- metabolic imbalances or organ failure affecting the processing and excretion of drugs
- infections
- hypercalcaemia
- constipation.

Legal and professional issues

In the case of medium to longer term delirium, another person may make decisions upon the patient's behalf – this person will have 'lasting power of attorney' and may have been nominated by the patient. It could be a professional, friend or a member of the family. This person will need to be registered with the public guardian and is bound to act in the patient's best interests.

The Mental Capacity Act sets out protection for liability when caring for someone with reduced capacity. This is reliant upon accurate and suitable assessment of capacity and best interests.

Restraint

Restraint is a difficult ethical issue requiring careful consideration. Restraint takes many forms and must be meticulously judged for the potential to benefit or harm an individual. As a general rule, restraint should be a last resort to protect the individual and/or others from harm.

Wherever possible, nurses must attempt to create an environment where restraint is not going to be necessary. It is a rare requirement and all feasible steps to avoid the use of restraint must be explored.

Any action taken must be the 'least harmful' intervention in the circumstance. The aim is to balance the patient's right to independence with their and others' safety. If restraint is required, nurses must explain to the patient why they are doing what they are doing (regardless of the patient's perceived capacity) and reduce the negative impact upon the patient's dignity as much as possible.

An example of justified restraint would be use of mittens in a patient recovering from sedation or anaesthesia who is attempting to remove cannula, drains or catheters (behaviour likely to cause them harm). Regular

review and documentation are necessary and the mittens should be removed as soon as the potential harm has passed (RCN 2008).

Documentation

Delirium is under-reported in nursing and medical note taking (Irving *et al.* 2006). Documentation outlining the onset of behaviours and symptoms is instrumental in assisting the medical team to identify the cause and likely solution to the problem. The documentation of the assessment and subsequent care must be detailed and accurate.

Preprocedural considerations

Pharmacological support

Once diagnosed, symptoms that do not respond to non-pharmacological interventions can be treated with prescribed medication: antipsychotics, for example olanzapine, and/or sedatives, for example haloperidol (NICE 2009b). As far as possible, benzodiazepines are avoided as these are associated with delirium BNF 2011. However, they may be used if delirium is caused by alcohol withdrawal.

Use of medication for sedation in the end stages of life needs individual consideration and the family must be involved and communicated with regularly.

It is worth noting that health professionals and family members can mistake the agitation of delirium for symptoms of pain. If opioids are increased as a result, there will be a potential worsening of the delirium (Delgado-Guay *et al.* 2008).

Non-pharmacological support

Creating an environment conducive to orientation is important wherever possible, for example a quiet well-lit environment, where normal routines take place. Nurses must help patients to maximize their independence through activity as mobilization is seen to assist with orientation (Neville 2006). Nursing interventions include creating a well-lit room with familiar

objects, limited staff changes (possibly requiring one-to-one nursing care), reduced noise stimulation and the presence of family or familiar friends.

Liaison with the patient's family is important so that they understand what is happening and what they can do to help. It must be recognized how distressing it can be to witness or spend time with a delirious member of the family. The family should therefore be given the opportunity to talk about their concerns and be updated with information about the cause and management.

Safety is a priority and patients must be observed carefully to prevent any injury occurring to themselves or others.

Principles table 5.9 Communicating with an individual with delirium

Principle	Rationale
It is essential to ensure that aids for visual and hearing impairments are functional and are being used.	To maximize ability to communicate normally. E
Adjust environment to promote the patient's orientation, for example visible clock or calendar, photographs of family.	Maintain/promote orientation. E
Background noise should be kept to a minimum.	This can be very distracting for the patient. E
The healthcare professional should introduce themselves to the patient (do not assume they remember you). If possible, limit the number of individuals involved in care.	Promote consistency and reduce potential for confusion. E
Give simple information in short statements. Use closed questions.	Closed questions are less taxing and only require a yes or no answer. E
It is important to give explicit explanation of any procedures or activities carried out with the individual.	Maintain respect and dignity. E

Acquired communication disorders

Definitions

Aphasia/dysphasia (terms can be used interchangeably) is an acquired communication disorder that impairs a person's ability to process language. It does not affect intelligence but does affect how someone uses language.

Any injury to the brain has the potential to change a person's ability to speak, read, write and understand others.

Aphasia may be temporary or permanent. Aphasia does *not* include speech impairments caused by damage to the muscles involved with speech, that is, dysarthria.

Dysarthria is a motor speech disorder. Neurological and muscular changes may cause difficulty in producing or sustaining the range, force, speed and co-ordination of the movements needed to achieve appropriate breathing, phonation, resonance and articulation for speech (Royal College of Speech and Language Therapists 2006). Speech may sound flat, slurred, nasal or have a jerky rhythm; pitch, loudness and breath control can also be affected.

Dyspraxia of speech is different from dysarthria as it is not caused by muscle weakness or sensory loss but is a disorder of initiating and sequencing purposeful/voluntary movement. Verbal expression may be hesitant with sound substitutions, for example saying 'tup of tea' for 'cup of tea'.

Dysphonia is a voice disorder and may be related to disordered laryngeal, respiratory and vocal tract function and reflect structural, neurological, psychological and behavioural problems as well as systemic conditions (Mathieson 2001).

Anatomy and physiology

Language

It is now recognized that many areas of the brain are involved with language processing and the complex relationship between structure and function is not fully understood. Distortion and/or compression can occur at some distance from a problem (like a primary or secondary tumour). This means that any consequent cognitive and language impairments may have no direct relationship with the location of brain tumours (Gaziano and Kumar 1999, Gehring *et al.* 2008, Meyer and Levin 1996, Murdoch 1990, Scheibal *et al.*1996).

Speech

Speech (dysarthria), voice (dysphonia) and swallowing (dysphagia) can be impaired by any brain tumour or head and neck cancers involving the ventricular system, brainstem, cerebellum and cranial nerves (V, VII, IX, X, XI, XII). The management of swallowing difficulties is covered in Chapter 8.

Related theory

The brain is the organ of the body that is, above all others, linked with our sense of self. The importance of effective communication is considered at the beginning of this chapter and this need becomes more apparent with any communication disorder. Speech and language shape our thoughts, and language is necessary to make sense of or give meaning to our world. It is the currency of friendship (Parr *et al.* 1997) and is intrinsic and essential to our well-being. Its value and complexity may not become apparent until it is disrupted.

One of the key issues for patients with aphasia (disruption of language processing) is when we expect them to make sense of their disease, its treatment and management options. To do this, they need to use the very medium that is damaged – language. This may have an obvious or more subtle impact upon how the patient's psychological, emotional and social needs are met.

When patients have difficulty communicating, their sense of identity can become fragile and may be further undermined when they are in a hospital. Understandably, in this environment, the focus is on their medical diagnosis, prognosis, treatments and side-effects. Facilitating their communication strengths allows us to help them understand, as well as supporting, acknowledging and respecting their individual needs.

Barriers to communication

- *Poor memory*: delayed language processing can further compromise short-term memory problems.
- *Reduced concentration and short attention span*: acute post surgical; during and after radiotherapy treatment to the brain.

- *Distractibility*: increased sensitivity to background noise or visual distractions.
- *Generalized fatigue*: already using extra energy to process language, it becomes too effortful to chat.
- Previous communication style and communication needs.

Evidence-based approaches

Communication is a neurological function and the speech and language therapist has a key role in the specialist assessment and management of disorders/disruptions to this vital function (Giordana and Clara 2006). Patients with diseases affecting their central nervous system require input from a well-co-ordinated multiprofessional team (NICE 2006), to support their complex changing care needs throughout the patient pathway (NICE 2004, NICE 2006, NSF 2005, RCP, BSRM, NCPCS 2008).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Communication aids

Communication aids or equipment are referred to as augmentive or alternative communication (AAC). AAC may range from basic picture charts or books to electronic aids and computer programs and may support communication when the patient presents with a severe dysarthria or a severe expressive and/or receptive aphasia. Box 5.13 provides suggestions to facilitate realistic expectations and successful use of AAC.

Box 5.13 Suggestions to facilitate realistic expectations and successful use of AAC

- An early referral to the speech and language therapist to assess the appropriateness of the use of AAC.

- With the addition of any aid (no matter how simple or sophisticated), communication becomes more complex and difficult as it involves another step in the process, that is, changes from a two-way to a three-way process.
- Patients need to be motivated to use aids.
- The use of aids requires planning, extra concentration and time, listening, watching and interpretation by both patient and conversation partner.

Patients with various forms of communication difficulty

The person with aphasia

Principles table 5.10 Supporting communication for the person with aphasia

Principle	Rationale
Be aware of where the aphasic patient is within their disease trajectory.	
Be aware if the patient has impaired attention, concentration and/or memory.	This will affect what you say and how you check for understanding. E
Minimize distractions – both visual and auditory.	Make it easier for both parties to concentrate. E
Allow enough time, with a calm, friendly, encouraging approach.	Develop and maintain rapport. E
Use a notebook to record key information.	This minimizes miscommunication particularly if the information is new or complex, the patient is anxious or their memory function is impaired. E
Frequent signposting and checking understanding.	To make sure the patient understands the purpose of the conversation. E
Talk directly to the patient and ask them what is/isn't helpful.	
Have a pen and paper for both people to use during the conversation.	Writing or drawing can support what is being said. E
Speech should be clear, slightly slower and of normal volume.	
Use straight-forward language, avoiding jargon.	Medical terminology is inevitably long and complex but can be clearly written in the notebook for future reference. E

Say one thing at a time and pause between 'chunks' of information.	Allow time for understanding and for questions. E
Structure questions carefully and make use of closed questions.	Limit the need for complex expression. E
Regularly check the patient's understanding.	
Declare a change of topic clearly.	It can be harder for some patients to recognize when the topic has changed. E
Be prepared for their and your frustration. You might have to come back to a topic at another time.	Abilities may fluctuate, so what helps one moment might not work another time. E

The person with impaired speech (dysarthria)

The dysarthria may range from mild, slightly slurred or imprecise speech to being unintelligible (this is different from aphasia where language is not affected).

Principles table 5.11 Supporting communication for the person with dysarthria

Principle	Rationale
Be encouraging but honest and open if you are having difficulty understanding.	This allows the patient to repeat things or express things in another way that may be more understandable. E
Ask if they use any strategies to help their speech.	Patients may well know what helps most. E
Encourage a slower rate of speech and regular pauses.	Ensure adequate breathing between words and phrases. E
Find a quiet environment to speak.	Reduce distractions and make it easier to concentrate. E
Allow more time than usual.	
Have pen and paper to hand, and encourage writing when necessary.	Provide another medium of communication. E

The person with impaired voice (dysphonia)

The dysphonia may fluctuate from a mild hoarseness to not being able to voice at all. Early referral to a speech and language therapist for assessment and advice on vocal hygiene may be required.

Principles table 5.12 Supporting communication for the person with dysphonia

Principle	Rationale
Have pen and paper to hand, encourage writing when necessary.	Provide another medium of communication. E
Encourage the patient to talk gently and avoid either shouting or whispering.	This can strain the voice. E
Avoid having to talk where there is background noise.	The individual would then need to strain unnecessarily. E
Face-to-face communication is preferable. Keep telephone calls to a minimum.	The patient will then be able to use non-verbal communication to transmit their message. E
Encourage regular sips of water.	To maintain hydration and keep the throat area moist. E
Use closed questions so the individual doesn't need to make lengthy replies. Discourage frequent throat clearing. Instead, encourage a firm swallow if possible or gentle throat clearing.	Discourage lengthy responses to questions. E
Be aware if the room atmosphere is dry (placing a bowl of water beside the radiator will help humidify/moisten the air).	A humid atmosphere is preferable to reduce local irritation. E

The person who is blind or partially sighted

Sight loss may vary from mild to complete. Any sight loss is a significant issue when caring for patients. They will rely more on other senses, especially their hearing. Good communication practice is essential and you may need to be the eyes for the patient and relay information they are not aware of, for example the patient's visitor has arrived and is waiting. It is important to be open about the visual impairment and identify the preferred method(s) for each person. No single method will suit all. Even the same person might use different methods at different times and under different circumstances.

Blind and partially sighted people have the same information needs as everyone else and need accessible information in a suitable format such as large-print documents, Braille or audio information. Access to information facilitates informed decisions and promotes independence.

Principles table 5.13 Communication with someone who is blind or partially sighted

Principle	Rationale
Always say who you are when you arrive.	Normal cues are not available to the blind or partially sighted. E
In situations where there might be confusion as to who is being spoken to, use the patient's name or a light touch when you are addressing them.	As above.
Explain precisely where you are.	So people can orientate towards you. E
Ensure glasses are clean and within reach.	
Clear and careful explanations and checking understanding verbally are essential.	We communicate a substantial essence of meaning non-verbally. Blind people therefore do not receive this information so it is harder to gain full understanding. E
Indicate to a patient when you are leaving.	Normal cues are not available to the blind or partially sighted. E

The person who is deaf or hard of hearing

As with blindness, the severity of the impairment will vary. If a hearing aid is used, make sure it is fitted and working. Remember that hearing aids amplify everything, even background noise. More severe hearing loss will not benefit from an aid and these patients might rely on lip reading and/or signing or writing.

Principles table 5.14 Communicating with someone who is deaf or hard of hearing

Principle	Rationale
Find a suitable place to talk: somewhere quiet with no noise or distractions, with good lighting. Make sure that the light is not behind you.	So the person can clearly see your face, and lip reading and expression can contribute to understanding. E,C
Be patient and allow extra time to for the consultation/conversation.	It is likely to take longer than normal. E
Depending on the purpose of the consultation, writing down a summary of the key points made might be helpful.	This will ensure the person has a record of what is said in case they have misunderstood or misheard what is said. E
If the person is wearing a hearing aid, do not assume	

they can hear you. Ask if it is on and if they still need to lip read.	
If an interpreter is required always remember to talk directly to the person you are communicating with, not the interpreter.	This is respectful and confirms that it is them you are addressing. E
Make sure you have the listener's attention before you start to speak.	Otherwise they may miss crucial information. E
Contextualize the discussion by giving the topic of conversation first.	Signposting helps people understand. E
Talk clearly but not too slowly, and do not exaggerate your lip movements.	Lip reading is easier for people when you talk fairly normally. E
Use natural facial expressions and gestures and try to keep your hands away from your face.	Blocking your face will make understanding more difficult. E
Use plain language; avoid waffling, jargon and unfamiliar abbreviations.	Plain language will be more easily understood. E
Check that the person understands you. Be prepared to repeat yourself as many times as necessary.	Many people need to have information repeated to understand it. E

Websites and useful addresses

Action for Blind People

Helpline: 0800 915 4666

Website: www.actionforblindpeople.org.uk.com

Depression Alliance

Telephone: 0845 123 23 20

Website: www.depressionalliance.org.com

Depression UK

Email: info@depressionuk.org

Website: www.depressionuk.org.com

NHS patient information toolkit, version 2.0 (2003)

Website:
www.nhsidentity.nhs.uk/patientinformationtoolkit/patientinfotoolkit.pdf.com

Plain English Campaign

Telephone: 01663 744409

Website: www.plainenglish.co.uk.com

RNIB See It Right

Telephone: 020 7388 1266

Helpline: 0303 123 9999

Website: www.rnib.org.uk.com

RNID

Telephone: 020 7296 8000

Textphone: 020 7296 8001

Information Line (freephone):

Telephone: 0808 808 0123

Textphone: 0808 808 9000

Website: www.rnid.org.uk.com

Royal College of Psychiatrists

Leaflet on delirium:

www.rcpsych.ac.uk/mentalhealthinfo/problems/physicalillness/delirium.aspx.com

Royal College of Speech and Language Therapists

Telephone: 020 7378 1200

Website: www.rcslt.org.com

Speakability

Helpline: 0808 808 9572

Website: www.speakability.org.uk.com

Stroke Association

Helpline: 0845 3033 100

Website: www.stroke.org.uk.com

References

Adams, J. and Whittington, R. (1995) Verbal aggression to psychiatric staff: traumatic stressor or part of the job? *Psychiatric Care*, **2** (5), 171–174.

Back, A.L., Arnold, R.M., Baile, W.F. et al. (2005) Approaching difficult communication tasks in oncology. *CA*, **55** (3), 164.

Baile, W.F., Buckman, R., Lenzi, R. *et al.* (2000) SPIKES – a six-step protocol for delivering bad news: application to the patient with cancer. *Oncologist*, **5** (4), 302–311.

Billings, C.V. (2004) Psychiatric inpatient suicide: focus on intervention. *Journal of the American Psychiatric Nurses Association*, **10**, 190–192.

Blake, C. and Ledger, C. (2007) *Insight into Anxiety*. Waverley Abbey Insight Series. CWR, Farnham.

Booth, K., Maguire, P., Butterworth, T. and Hillier, V. (1996) Perceived professional support and the use of blocking behaviours by hospice nurses. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **24**, 522–527.

Botti, M., Endacott, R., Watts, R. et al. (2006) Barriers in providing psychosocial support for patients with cancer. *Cancer Nursing*, **29** (4), 309–316.

Bowes, D.E., Tamlyn, D. and Butler, L.J. (2002) Women living with ovarian cancer: dealing with an early death. *Health Care for Women International*, **23** (2), 135–148.

Brady Wagner, L. (2003) Clinical ethics in the context of language and cognitive impairment: rights and protections. *Seminars in Speech and Language*, **24** (4), 275–284.

British Medical Association (2007) *Mental Capacity Act. Guidance for Health Professionals*. BMA, London.

BNF 2011 *British National Formulary*. BMJ Group and RPS Publishing, London.

Brooks, W.D. and Heath, R.W. (1993) *Speech Communication*. WC Brown, Dubuque, IA.

Brown, R.F., Byland, C.L., Kline, N. et al. (2009) Identifying and responding to depression in adult cancer patients. *Cancer Nursing*, **32** (3), E1–E7.

Cambell, S. (2006) A project to promote better communication with patients. *Nursing Times*, **102** (19), 28–30.

Chant, S., Jenkinson, T., Randle, J. and Russell, G. (2002) Communication skills: some problems in nurse education and practice. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **11**, 12–21.

Chelf, J.H., Agre, P., Axelrod, A. et al. (2001) Cancer-related patient education: an overview of the last decade of evaluation and research. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, **28** (7), 1139–1147.

Chochinov, H.M. (2007) Dignity and the essence of medicine: the A, B, C, and D of dignity conserving care. *BMJ (Clinical Research Ed)*, **335** (7612),

184–187.

Deakin, K., Lee, K., Robinson, S. and Hermes, B. (2009) Suicide risk assessment: 6 steps to a better instrument. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services*, **47** (6), 44–49.

Dein, S. (2005) Working with the patient who is in denial. *European Journal of Palliative Care*, **12** (6), 251–253.

Dein, S. (2006) *Culture and Cancer Care: Anthropological Insights in Oncology*. Open University Press, Maidenhead.

Delgado-Guay, M.O., Yennurajalingam, S. and Bruera, E. (2008) Delirium with severe symptom expression related to hypercalcemia in a patient with advanced cancer: an interdisciplinary approach to treatment. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **36** (4), 442.

Del Piccolo, L., Goss, C. and Bergvik, S. (2006) The fourth meeting of the Verona Network on Sequence Analysis. 'Consensus finding on the appropriateness of provider responses to patient cues and concerns'. *Patient Education and Counseling*, **61**, 473–475.

Delvaux, N., Razavi, D., Marchal, S. et al. (2004) Effects of a 105 hours psychological training program on attitudes, communication skills and occupational stress in oncology: a randomised study. *British Journal of Cancer*, **90**, 106–114.

DH (2004) *Better Information, Better Choice, Better Health*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2006) *Our Health, Our Care, Our Say: A New Direction for Community Services*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2008) *Information Accreditation Scheme*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/en/Healthcare/PatientChoice/BetterInformationChoicesHealth/Informationaccreditation/index.htm.

DH (2009) *Information Prescriptions*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/en/Healthcare/PatientChoice/BetterInformationChoicesHealth/Informationprescriptions/index.htm.

DfES (2003) *The Skills for Life Survey*. Department for Education and Skills, Norwich. www.dfes.gov.uk/research/data/uploadfiles/RB490.pdf.

Donohoe, G. and Ricketts, T. (2006) Anxiety and panic. In: Feltham, C. and Horton, I. (eds) *The Sage Handbook of Counselling and Psychotherapy*. Sage, London.

DSM-IV (1994) *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th edn. American Psychiatric Association, Washington, DC.

Dunne, K. (2003) The personal cost of caring. Guest editorial. *International Journal of Palliative Nursing*, **9** (6). 232.

Duppils, G.S. and Wikblad, K. (2004) Delirium: behavioural changes before and during the prodromal phase. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **13** (5), 609–616.

Duxbury, J. and Whittington, R. (2005) Causes and management of patient aggression and violence: staff and patient perspectives. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **50** (5), 469–478.

Edwards, P. (2005) An overview of the end-of-life discussion. *International Journal of Palliative Nursing*, **11** (1), 21–27.

Egan, G. (2002) *The Skilled Helper. A Problem–Management and Opportunity–Development Approach to Helping*, 7th edn. Brooks/Cole, Pacific Grove, CA.

Ellins, J. and Coulter, A. (2005) *How Engaged are People in their Healthcare? Findings of a National Telephone Survey*. Picker Institute, Oxford.

Equality Act (2010). www.equalities.gov.uk/equality_act_2010.aspx

Fallowfield, L., Ratcliffe, D., Jenkins, V. and Saul, J. (2001) Psychiatric morbidity and its recognition by doctors in patients with cancer. *British Journal of Cancer*, **84**, 1011–1015.

Fallowfield, L., Jenkins, V.A. and Beveridge, H.A. (2002) Truth may hurt but deceit hurts more: communication in palliative care. *Palliative Medicine*, **16**, 297–303.

Faulkner, A. and Maguire, P. (1994) *Talking to Cancer Patients and their Relatives*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Fellowes, D., Wilkinson, S.M., Leliopoulou, C. and Moore P (2003) Communication Skills Training for Health Care Professionals Working with

Cancer Patients, Their Families and/or Carers: A Systematic Review. Cochrane Collaboration. www.cochrane.org/reviews/en/ab003751.html.

Fellowes, D., Wilkinson, S. and Moore, P. (2004) Communication skills for health care professionals working with cancer patients, their families and/or carers. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **2**, CD003751.

Gaziano, J.E. and Kumar, R. (1999) Primary brain tumours. In: Sullivan, P. and Guilford, A.M. (eds) *Swallowing Intervention in Oncology. Singular Publishing Group*, San Diego, pp. 65–76.

Gehring, K., Sitskoorn, M.M., Aaronson, N.K. and Taphoorn, J.B. (2008) Interventions for cognitive deficits in adults with brain tumours. *Lancet Neurology*, **7**, 548–560.

Gessler, S., Low, J., Daniells, E. *et al.* (2008) Screening for distress in cancer patients: is the distress thermometer a valid measure in the UK and does it measure change over time? A prospective validation study. *Psycho-Oncology*, **17** (6), 538.

Giordana, M.T. and Clara, E. (2006) Functional rehabilitation and brain tumours patients. A review of outcome. *Journal of Neurological Sciences*, **27**, 240–244.

Goldbeck, R. (1997) Denial in physical illness. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, **43** (6), 575–593.

Gudjonsson, G.H., Rabe-Hesketh, S. and Szmukler, G. (2004) Management of psychiatric in-patient violence: patient ethnicity and use of medication, restraint and seclusion. *British Journal of Psychiatry*, **184**, 258–262.

Gysels, M. Richardson, R. and Higginson, I.J. (2005) Communication training for health professionals who care for patients with cancer: a systematic review of effectiveness. *Journal of Supportive Care in Cancer*, **13** (6), 356–366.

Hack, T.F., Degner, L.F. and Parker, P.A. (2005). The communication goals and needs of cancer patients: a review. *Psycho-Oncology*, **14** (10), 831.

Hargie, O. and Dickson, D. (2004) *Skilled Interpersonal Communication: Research Theory and Practice*, 4th edn. Routledge, London.

Heaven, C., Clegg, J. and Maguire, P. (2006) Transfer of communication skills training from workshop to workplace: the impact of clinical

supervision. *Patient Education and Counseling*, **60**, 313–325.

Henderson, A., van Eps, M.A., Pearson, K. *et al.* (2007) 'Caring for' behaviours that indicate to patients that nurses 'care about' them. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **60** (2), 146.

Hermes, B., Deakin, K., Lee, K. and Robinson, S. (2009) Suicide risk assessment: 6 steps to a better instrument. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services*, **47** (6), 44–49.

Heron, J. (2001) *Helping the Client: A Creative Practical Guide*. Sage Publications, London.

Heyland, D.K., Dodek, P., Rocker, G. *et al.* (2006) What matters most in end-of-life care: perceptions of seriously ill patients and their family members. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, **174** (5), 627–633.

HM Government (2000) *Management of Health and Safety at Work: Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations 1999 Approved Code of Practice & Guidance*, HSE, Sudbury.

Houldin, A. (2000) *Patients with Cancer. Understanding the Psychological Pain*. Lippincott, Philadelphia.

Irving, K. and Foreman, M. (2006) Practice development – delirium. Delirium, nursing practice and the future. *International Journal of Older People Nursing*, **1** (2), 121–127.

Irving, K., Fick, D. and Foreman, M. (2006) Practice development – delirium. Delirium: a new appraisal of an old problem. *International Journal of Older People Nursing*, **1** (2), 106–112.

Jacobsen P., Donovan, K., Trask, P. et al. (2005) Screening for psychologic distress in ambulatory cancer patients. *Cancer*, **103** (7), 1494–1502.

Jenkins, V., Fallowfield, L. and Saul, J. (2001) Information needs of patients with cancer: results from a large study in UK cancer centres. *British Journal of Cancer*, **84**, 48–51.

Karlen, R.G., and Maisel, R.H. (2001) Does primary trachoeosophageal puncture reduce complications after laryngectomy and improve patient communication? *American Journal of Otolaryngology*, **22** (5), 324–328.

Kelsey, S. (2005) Improving nurse communication skills with cancer patient. *Cancer Nursing Practice*, **4** (2), 27–31.

Kennedy Sheldon, L. (2009) *Communication for Nurses*. Jones and Bartlett, Sudbury, MA.

Krug, E.G. (2002) *World Report on Violence and Health*. World Health Organization, Geneva.

Kruijver, I.P.M., Kerkstra, A., Bensing, J.M. and van de Weil, H.B.M. (2001) Communication skills of nurses during interactions with simulated cancer patients. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **34** (6), 772–779.

Lawlor, P.G., Gagnon, B., Mancini, I.L. et al. (2000) Occurrence, causes, and outcome of delirium in patients with advanced cancer: a prospective study. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, **160** (6), 786–794.

Lookinland, S. and Pool, M. (1998) Study on effect of methods of pre-operative education in women. *AORN Journal*, **67** (1), 203–213.

Lowry, M. (1995) Knowledge that reduces anxiety: creating patient information leaflets. *Professional Nurse*, **10** (5), 318–320.

Maben, J. and Griffiths, P. (2008) *Nurses in Society: Starting the Debate*. King's College, London.

Macdonald, E. (2004) *Difficult Conversations in Medicine*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Macmillan Cancer Relief (2004) *Macmillan Black and Minority Ethnic Toolkit – Effective Communication with African-Caribbean and African Men Affected by Prostrate Cancer*. Macmillan Cancer Relief, London.

Maguire, P. (2000) *Communication Skills for Doctors*. Arnold, London.

Maguire, P. and Pitceathly, C. (2002) Key communication skills and how to acquire them. *British Medical Journal*, **325**, 697–700.

McCabe, C. (2004) Nurse–patient communication: an exploration of patients' experiences. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **13**, 41–49.

McCaughan, E. and Parahoo, K. (2000) Medical and surgical nurses' perceptions of their level of competence and educational needs in caring for patients with cancer. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **9**, 420–428.

McKenzie, R. (2002) The importance of philosophical congruence for therapeutic use of self in practice. In: Freshwater, D. (ed) *Therapeutic Nursing. Improving Patient Care through Self-awareness and Reflection*. Sage Publications, London, pp. 22–38.

McLaughlin, S., Gorley, L. and Moseley, L. (2009) The prevalence of verbal aggression against nurses. *British Journal of Nursing*, **18** (12), 25.

Mednet (2010) www.medterms.com/script/main/art.asp?articlekey=33843.

Mental Capacity Act (2005) www.opsi.gov.uk/acts/acts2005/ukpga_20050009_en_1

Menzies-Lyth, I. (1988) *Containing Anxiety in Institutions: Selected Essays*. Free Association Books, London.

Milisen, K., Lemiengre, J., Braes, T. and Foreman, M.D. (2005) Multicomponent intervention strategies for managing delirium in hospitalized older people: systematic review. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **52** (1), 79–90.

Mitchell, A.J. (2007) Pooled results from analysis of the accuracy of distress thermometer and other ultra short methods of detecting cancer related mood disorders. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, **25**, 4670–4681.

Mitchell, A.J., Baker-Glenn, E.A., Park, B. *et al.* (2010) Can the Distress Thermometer be improved by additional mood domains? Part II. What is the optimal combination of Emotion Thermometers? *Psycho-Oncology*, **19** (2), 134–140.

Murdoch, B.E. (1990) *Acquired Speech and Language Disorders. A Neuro-Anatomical and Functional Neurological Approach*. Chapman and Hall, London.

NCCN (2010) Distress Management. Clinical Practice Guidelines in Oncology. www.nccn.org.

Neville, S. (2006) Practice development – delirium. Delirium and older people: repositioning nursing care. *International Journal of Older People Nursing*, **1** (2), 113–120.

NICE (2004) *Clinical Guidelines for the Management of Anxiety (Panic Disorder, With or Without Agoraphobia, and Generalised Anxiety Disorder) in Adults in Primary, Secondary and Community Care (CG 22)*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2005) *CG25 The Short-Term Management of Disturbed/Violent Behaviour in In-Patient Psychiatric Settings and Emergency Departments Violence*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2006) *Guidance on Cancer Services: Improving Outcomes for People with Tumours of the Brain and Central Nervous System*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2007) *Depression: Management of Depression in Primary and Secondary Care*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2008a) *Depression in Adults (Update): Final Scope*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. www.nice.org.uk/guidance/index.jsp?action=download&o=42260.

NICE (2008b) *Delirium: Final Scope*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. www.nice.org.uk/guidance/index.jsp?action=download&o=41170.

NICE (2009a) *Depression in Adults with a Chronic Physical Health Problem. Quick Reference Guide for Healthcare Professionals in General Hospital Settings*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2009b) *Delirium Draft Guideline*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/DeliriumDraftFullGuideline061109.pdf.

NMC (2008a) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2008b) *Clinical Supervision for Registered Nurses*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Clinical-supervision-for-registered-nurses/.

NMC (2008c) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent.

NMC (2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

Nordahl, G., Olofsson, N., Asplund, K. and Sjoling, M. (2003) The impact of preoperative information on state anxiety, postoperative pain and

satisfaction with pain management. *Patient Education and Counseling*, **51** (2), 169.

NSF (2005) *The National Service Framework for Long-Term Conditions*. Department of Health, London.

Oguchi, M., Jansen, J., Butow, P. *et al.* (2010) Measuring the impact of nurse cue-response behaviour on cancer patients emotional cues. *Patient Education and Counseling*, April 27, epub ahead of print.

Parr, S., Byng, S., Gilpin, S. and Ireland, C. (1997) *Talking About Aphasia*. Open University Press, Buckingham.

Perry, K.N. and Burgess, M. (2002) *Communication in Cancer Care*. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Powell, T. (2009) *The Mental Health Handbook*, 3rd edn. Speechmark, Milton Keynes.

Powell, T. and Enright, S. (1990) *Anxiety and Stress Management*. Routledge, London.

Ransom, S., Jacobsen, P.B. and Booth-Jones, M. (2006) Validation of the Distress Thermometer with bone marrow transplant patients. *Psycho-Oncology*, **15** (7), 604.

RCN (2008) *Let's Talk About Restraint. Rights, Risks and Responsibility*. Royal College of Nursing, London. www.rcn.org.uk/_data/assets/pdf_file/0007/157723/003208.pdf.

RCP, BSRM, NCPCS (2008) *Long-term Neurological Conditions: Management at the Interface Between Neurology, Rehabilitation and Palliative Care: Concise Guidance to Good Practice No 10*. Royal College of Physicians, British Society of Rehabilitation Medicine, National Council for Palliative Care Services, London.

Roberts, D. and Snowball, J. (1999) Psychosocial care in oncology nursing: a study of social knowledge. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **8**, 39–47.

Rogers, C.R. (1975) Empathic: an unappreciated way of being. *Counselling Psychologist*, **5**, 2–10.

Ross, C.A. (1991) CNS arousal systems: possible role in delirium. *International Psychogeriatrics*, **3** (2), 353–371.

Royal College of Speech and Language Therapists (2006) Therapists guidance on best practice in service organisation and provision. *Communicating Quality*, (3).

Royal College of Psychiatrists (2010) Depression leaflet. www.rcpsych.ac.uk/mentalhealthinfoforall/problems/depression/depression.aspx.

Ryan, H., Schofield, P., Cockburn, J. et al. (2005) Original article: How to recognize and manage psychological distress in cancer patients. *European Journal of Cancer Care*, **14** (1), 7–15.

Scheibal, R.S., Meyer, C.A. and Levin, V.A. (1996) Cognitive dysfunction following surgery for intra-cerebral glioma. Influence of histopathology, lesion, location and treatment. *Journal of Neuro-oncology*, **30**, 61–69.

Schofield, P., Carey, M., Bonevski, B. and Sanson-Fisher, R. (2006) Barriers to the provision of evidence-based psychosocial care in oncology. *Psycho-Oncology*, **15** (10), 863.

Schofield, P.E., Butow, P.N., Thompson, J.F. and Tattersall, M.H.N. (2008) Physician communication. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, **26** (2), 297–302.

Scott, A. (2004) Managing anxiety in ICU patients: the role of pre-operative information provision. *Nursing in Critical Care*, **9** (2), 72–79.

Sendelbach, S., Guthrie, P. and Schoenfelder, D. (2009) Acute confusion/delirium: identification, assessment, treatment, and prevention. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, **35** (11), 11–18.

Silverman, J., Kurtz, S. and Draper, J. (2005) *Skills for Communicating with Patients*, 2nd edn. Radcliffe Publishing, Oxford.

Smith, C., Dickens, C. and Edwards, S. (2005) Provision of information for cancer patients: an appraisal and review. *European Journal of Cancer Care*, **14**, 282–288.

Sobczak, J.A. (2009) Managing high-acuity-depressed adults in primary care. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, **21** (7), 362–370.

Strong, V., Sharpe, S., Cull, A. *et al.* (2004) Can oncology nurses treat depression? A pilot project. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **46** (5), 542–548.

Taylor, B. (1998) Ordinariness in nursing as therapy. In: McMahon, R. and Pearson, A. (eds) *Nursing as Therapy*. Stanley Thornes, Cheltenham, pp. 64–75.

Thomas, S.P., Groer, M., Davis, M. et al. (2000) Anger and cancer: an analysis of the linkages. *Cancer Nursing*, **23**, 344–349.

Thorne, S.E., Kuo, M., Armstrong, E.-A. et al. (2005) 'Being known': patients' perspectives of the dynamics of human connection in cancer care. *Psycho-Oncology*, **14** (10), 887.

Tortora, G.J. and Derrickson, B.H. (2009) *Principles of Anatomy and Physiology*, 12th edn. John Wiley, Hoboken, NJ.

Towers, R. (2007) Providing psychological support for patients with cancer. *Nursing Standard*, **28** (12), 50–58.

Trask, P.C. (2004) Assessment of depression in cancer patients. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute Monographs*, **32**, 80–92.

Travis, S., Conway, J., Daly, M. and Larsen, P. (2001) Terminal restlessness in the nursing facility: assessment, palliation, and symptom management. *Geriatric Nursing*, **22** (6), 308–312.

Turner, J., Clavarino, A., Yates, P. et al. (2007) Oncology nurses' perceptions of their supportive care for patients with advanced cancer: challenges and educational needs. *Psycho-Oncology*, **16**, 149–157.

Vos, M. (2008) Denial in lung cancer patients: a longitudinal study. *Psycho-Oncology*, **17**, 1163–1171.

Vos, M.S. and Haes, J. (2007) Denial in cancer patients, an explorative review. *Psycho-Oncology*, **16** (1), 12.

White, H. (2004) Acquired communication and swallowing difficulties in patients with primary brain tumours. In: Booth, S. and Bruera, E. (eds) *Palliative Care Consultations Primary and Metastatic Brain Tumours*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 117–134.

Wilkinson, S. (1991) Factors which influence how nurses communicate with cancer patients. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **16**, 677–688.

Wosket, V. (2006) *Egan's Skilled Helper Model: Developments and Applications in Counselling*. Routledge, London.

Zabora, J., Brintzenhofeszoc, K., Curbow, B. et al. (2001) The prevalence of psychological distress by cancer site. *Psycho-oncology*, **10**, 19–28.

Multiple choice questions

1 What factors are essential in demonstrating supportive communication to patients?

- Listening, clarifying the concerns and feelings of the patient using open questions.
- Listening, clarifying the physical needs of the patient using closed questions.
- Listening, clarifying the physical needs of the patient using open questions.
- Listening, reflecting back the patient's concerns and providing a solution.

2 Which behaviours will encourage a patient to talk about their concerns?

- Giving reassurance and telling them not to worry.
- Asking the patient about their family and friends.
- Tell the patient you are interested in what is concerning them and that you are available to listen.
- Tell the patient you are interested in what is concerning them and if they tell you, they will feel better.

3 What is the difference between denial and collusion?

- Denial is when a healthcare professional refuses to tell a patient their diagnosis for the protection of the patient whereas collusion is when healthcare professionals and the patient agree on the information to be told to relatives and friends.
- Denial is when a patient refuses treatment and collusion is when a patient agrees to it.
- Denial is a coping mechanism used by an individual with the intention of protecting themselves from painful or distressing information whereas collusion is the withholding of information from the patient with the intention of 'protecting them'.

- Denial is a normal acceptable response by a patient to a life-threatening diagnosis whereas collusion is not.

4 If you were explaining anxiety to a patient, what would be the main points to include?

- Signs of anxiety include behaviours such as muscle tension, palpitations, a dry mouth, fast shallow breathing, dizziness and an increased need to urinate or defaecate.
- Anxiety has three aspects: physical – bodily sensations related to flight and fight response, behavioural – such as avoiding the situation, and cognitive (thinking) – such as imagining the worst.
- Anxiety is all in the mind, if they learn to think differently, it will go away.
- Anxiety has three aspects: physical – such as running away, behavioural – such as imagining the worse (catastrophizing), and cognitive (thinking) – such as needing to urinate.

5 What are the principles of communicating with a patient with delirium?

- Use short statements and closed questions in a well-lit, quiet, familiar environment.
- Use short statements and open questions in a well-lit, quiet, familiar environment.
- Write down all questions for the patient to refer back to.
- Communicate only through the family using short statements and closed questions.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com **and select the Student Edition tab.**

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

Chapter 6

Elimination

Overview

This chapter will provide an overview of elimination and is divided into three main sections. The first reviews urinary elimination, examining penile sheaths, urinary catheterization and bladder irrigation. The second section reviews faecal elimination, examining diarrhoea, constipation, enemas and suppositories. The final section examines stoma care.

Normal elimination

Assisting the patient with normal elimination

Evidence-based approaches

Principles of care

Elimination is a sensitive issue and providing effective care and management for problems associated with it can be problematic. The difficulties associated with this can be minimized if the nurse seeks to respect the patient's dignity when carrying out procedures such as assisting them with using a bedpan or a commode.

Preprocedural considerations

It is essential that the procedure is explained clearly to the patient to ensure consent is obtained and patient co-operation is agreed. A manual handling assessment is vital in order to establish if additional equipment such as a hoist is required.

Pharmacological support

Skin breakdown as a result of incontinence is a common problem with either faecal and/or urinary incontinence (Gray *et al.* 2007). Current nursing practice includes the use of a wide range of skin moisturizers and barrier creams but there is little known about their efficacy or effectiveness (Gray *et al.* 2007). A recent review suggests that the use of barrier creams with a pH near to that of normal skin can be useful in prevention of skin problems but more research is required (Beeckman *et al.* 2009).

Procedure guideline 6.1 Slipper bedpan use: assisting a patient

Essential equipment

- Disposable apron and gloves
- Slipper bedpan and paper cover
- Toilet paper
- Manual handling equipment as appropriate
- Additional nurse if required
- Wash bowl, warm water, disposable wipes and a towel

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Take the equipment to the bedside and explain the procedure to the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C).
2 Carry out appropriate manual handling assessment prior to commencing procedure and establish whether an additional nurse or equipment such as a hoist is necessary.	To maintain a safe environment. E
Procedure	
3 Take the equipment to the bedside and explain the procedure to the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC

	2008a, C).
4 Wash hands, put on gloves and apron.	To ensure the procedure is as clean as possible (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
5 Close door/draw curtains around the patient's bed area.	To maintain privacy and dignity and avoid any unnecessary embarrassment for the patient (NMC 2008b, C).
6 Remove the bedclothes and, providing there are no contraindications (e.g. if patient is on flat bed rest), assist the patient into an upright sitting position.	An upright, 'crouch-like' posture is considered anatomically correct for defaecation. Poor posture adopted while using a bedpan has been shown to cause extreme straining during defaecation. Patients should therefore be supported with pillows in order to achieve an upright position on the bedpan (Taylor 1997, E).
7 Ask the patient to raise their hips/buttocks and insert the bedpan beneath the patient's pelvis, ensuring that the wide end of the bedpan is between the legs, and the narrow end is beneath the buttocks.	A slipper bedpan provides more comfort for a patient who is unable to sit upright on a conventional bedpan (Nicol 2008, E).
8 Offer patients the use of pillows and encourage them to lean forward slightly.	To provide support and optimize positioning for defaecation (Taylor 1997, E).
9 If the patient is unable to adopt a sitting/upright position, then roll them onto one side, using appropriate manual handling equipment, and insert a slipper bedpan with the narrow/flat end underneath their buttocks and wide end between their legs. Then roll the patient onto their back and so onto the bedpan.	To ensure that the patient is in optimum position for eliminating. E
10 Once the patient is on the bedpan, encourage them to move their legs slightly apart and check to ensure that their positioning is correct.	To avoid any spillage onto the bedclothes and reduce risk of contamination and cross-infection. E
11 Cover the patient's legs with a sheet.	To maintain privacy and dignity (NMC 2008b, C).
12 Ensure that toilet paper and call bell are within patient's reach and leave the patient, but remain nearby.	To maintain privacy and dignity (NMC 2008b, C).
13 When the patient has finished using the bedpan, bring washing equipment to the bedside, remove the bedpan, and replace paper cover. Assist patient with cleaning perianal area using warm water and soap. Apply a small amount of barrier cream to the perineal/buttock area if appropriate.	Talcum powder should not be used and barrier creams should be applied sparingly, gently layered on in the direction of the hair growth rather than rubbed into the skin (Le Lievre 2002, E).
14 Offer a bowl of water for the patient to wash their hands.	For infection prevention and control and patient's comfort (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
15 Ensure bedclothes are clean, straighten sheets and rearrange pillows, assisting patient to a comfortable position. Ensure call bell is within reach of the patient.	For patient comfort. P
16 Take bedpan to the dirty utility (sluice) room	To monitor and evaluate patient's elimination

and, where necessary, measure urine output and note characteristics (see Figure 6.2) and amount of faeces.	patterns. E
Postprocedure	
17 Dispose of contents safely and place bedpan in the washer/disposal unit.	For infection prevention and control (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
18 Remove disposable apron and gloves. Wash hands using soap and water.	For infection prevention and control (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
19 Record any urine output/bowel action in patient's documentation.	To maintain accurate documentation (NMC 2009, C).

Procedure guideline 6.2 Commode use: assisting a patient

Essential equipment

- Disposable apron and gloves
- Commode with conventional bedpan inserted below seat
- Toilet paper
- Manual handling equipment as appropriate
- Additional nurse if required
- Wash bowl, warm water, disposable wipes and a towel

Preprocedure

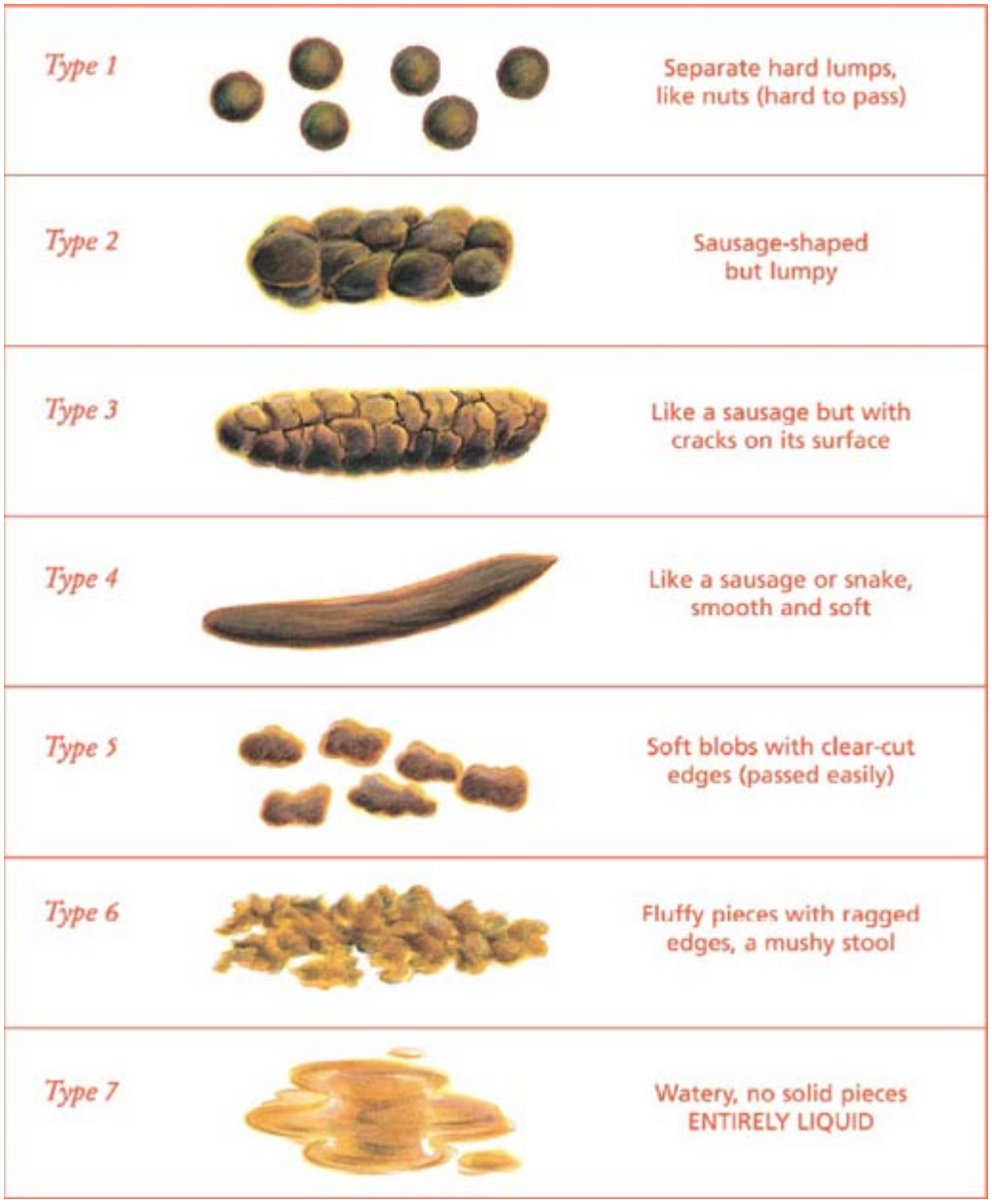
Action	Rationale
1 Carry out appropriate manual handling assessment prior to commencing procedure and ensure that patient's weight does not exceed the maximum recommended for commode (see manufacturer's guidelines).	To maintain a safe environment. E
2 Wash hands, put on gloves and apron.	For infection prevention and control (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Take the equipment to the bedside and explain the procedure to the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C).
Procedure	
4 Close door/draw curtains around the patient's bed area.	To maintain privacy and dignity and avoid any unnecessary embarrassment for the patient (NMC 2008b, C).
5 Remove the commode cover. Assist the patient out of the bed/chair and onto the commode.	
6 Ensure the patient's feet are positioned directly below their knees and flat on the floor. The use of a small	An upright, crouching posture is considered anatomically correct for defaecation. Pillows and a footstool

footstool and/or pillows may help to achieve a comfortable position.	can provide support and optimize positioning for defaecation (Taylor 1997, E).
7 Once the patient is on the commode, encourage them to move their legs slightly apart and check to ensure that their positioning is correct.	To avoid any spillage and reduce risk of contamination and cross-infection. P
8 Cover the patient's knees with a towel or sheet.	To maintain privacy and dignity (NMC 2008b, C).
9 Ensure that toilet paper and call bell are within patient's reach and leave the patient, but remain nearby.	To maintain privacy and dignity (NMC 2008b, C).
10 When the patient has finished using the commode, bring washing equipment to the bedside. Assist patient with cleaning perianal area using toilet paper and, where necessary, warm water and soap. Apply a small amount of barrier cream to the perineal/buttock area if appropriate.	Talcum powder should not be used and barrier creams should be applied sparingly, gently layered on in the direction of the hair growth rather than rubbed into the skin (Le Lievre 2002, E).
11 Offer a bowl of water for the patient to wash their hands.	For infection control and patient dignity (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
12 Assist the patient to stand and walk to bed/chair, ensuring that they are comfortably positioned. Ensure call bell is within reach of the patient.	For patient comfort. P
Postprocedure	
13 Replace cover on the commode and return to the dirty utility (sluice) room.	To reduce any risk of contamination or cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E) and to avoid patient embarrassment (NMC 2008b, C).
14 Remove pan from underneath the commode and where necessary, measure urine output, and note characteristics (see Figure 6.1) and amount of faeces.	To monitor and evaluate patient's elimination patterns. E
15 Dispose of contents safely and place pan in the washer/disposal unit.	For infection prevention and control (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
16 Clean commode using Actichlor plus solution.	
17 Remove disposable apron and gloves. Wash hands.	For infection control purposes (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
18 Record any urine output/bowel action in patient's documentation.	To maintain accurate documentation (NMC 2009, C).

Figure 6.1 Bristol Stool Form Chart.

Reproduced by kind permission of Dr K.W. Heaton, Reader in Medicine at the University of Bristol.

© 2000 Norgine Ltd.



Urinary elimination

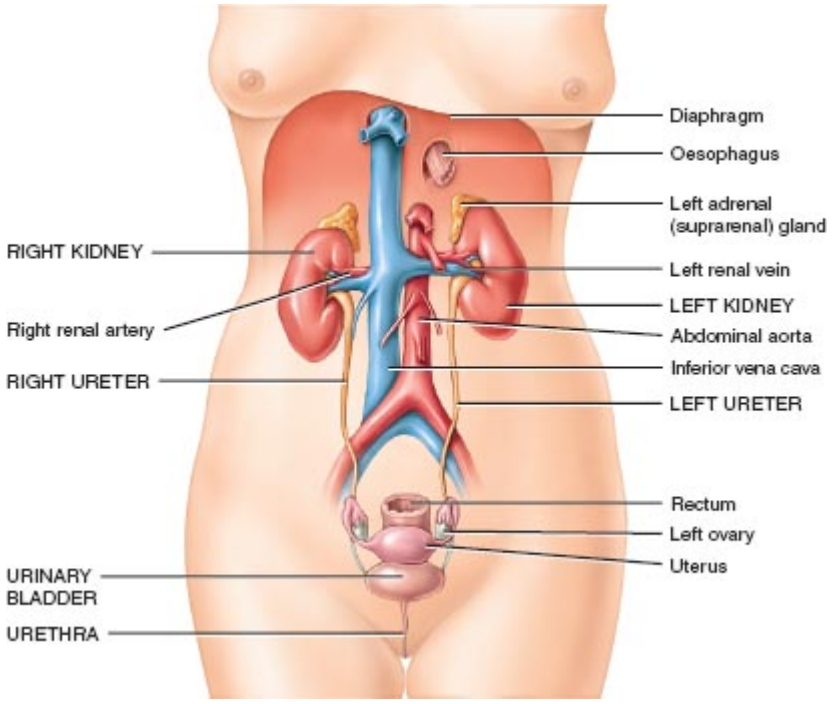
Definition

Urinary elimination is the excretion of urine from the body (Thibodeau and Patton 2007a).

Anatomy and physiology

The urinary tract (Figure 6.2) consists of the two kidneys, two ureters, the bladder and urethra. The urinary system produces, stores and eliminates urine. The kidneys are responsible for excreting wastes such as urea and ammonium and for the reabsorption of glucose and amino acids. They are involved with the production of hormones including calcitrol, renin and erythropoietin. The kidneys also have homoeostatic functions including the regulation of electrolytes, acid/base balance and blood pressure (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Figure 6.2 Anatomy of the genitourinary tract (female).



Each kidney excretes urine into a ureter, which arises from the renal pelvis on the medial aspect of each kidney. In adults the ureters are approximately 25–30 cm long and 2–4 mm in diameter (Tortora and Derrickson 2009). The ureters are muscular tubes, which propel urine from the kidneys to the urinary bladder. They enter the bladder through the back of the bladder, running within the wall of the bladder for a few centimetres. Ureterovesical valves prevent the backflow of urine from the bladder to the kidneys.

The bladder sits on the pelvic floor and is a hollow, muscular, distensible organ which stores urine until it is convenient to expel it. Urine enters the bladder via the ureters and exits via the urethra. As the bladder fills, stretch receptors in the muscular wall signal the parasympathetic nervous system to contract the bladder, initiating the conscious desire to expel urine. In order for urine to be expelled, both the automatically controlled internal sphincter and the voluntary controlled external sphincter must be opened.

Urine leaves the bladder via the urethra. In females this lies in front of the anterior wall of the vagina and is approximately 3.8 cm long. In males it passes through the prostate and penis and is approximately 20 cm long (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Penile sheaths

Definition

Penile sheaths are external devices made from a soft and flexible latex or silicone tubing which are applied over the penis to direct urine into a urinary drainage bag from where it can be conveniently emptied. They are used by men to manage urinary incontinence.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Penile sheaths (also known as conveens) are only to be considered once other methods of promoting continence have failed, as the promotion and treatment of incontinence should be the primary concern of the nurse (Pomfret 2003). They should be considered as a preferable alternative to other methods of continence control, such as pads which quickly can become sodden (Pomfret 2003) and cause skin problems, and catheters, which have several potential complications (Fader *et al.* 2001).

Indications

Penile sheaths may be used to relieve incontinence when no other means is practicable or when all other methods have failed. Penile sheaths are associated with many common problems which are identified by Woodward (2007); these include difficulty in fitting, leaking, kinking, falling off, allergies and urinary tract infections.

Contraindications

Penile sheaths are contraindicated for men with very small or retracted penises (Booth 2009).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Silicone types are now preferred due to concerns about latex allergies (Booth and Lee 2005) (Figure 6.3).

Figure 6.3 Penile sheath.

Sizing and fitting

As modern sheaths come in a variety of sizes and the correct size can be determined by measuring the girth of the penile shaft, one of the most important considerations is to move away from the mentality that one

size fits all. The penis should be measured in the flaccid state (Potter 2007). Most devices come with a manufacturer's sheath sizing guide with different diameters cut into it, so that the correct size can be easily determined. Sheaths are available in a variety of different sizes, which generally increase in increments of 5–10 mm, and in either standard or short lengths (Robinson 2006). Silicone sheaths are advantageous as they are transparent, allowing the patient's skin to be observed and to breathe by allowing the transmission of water vapour and oxygen (Booth and Lee 2005).

Fixation

The main methods in current use follow two different approaches. First, the sheaths can be self-adhesive, so that the sheath itself has a section along its length with adhesive on the internal aspect that sticks to the penile shaft as it is applied. The second method is a double-sided strip of hypoallergenic or foam material applied in a spiral around the penis (which increases the surface area of the conveen adhered to the penis) and then the sheath is applied over the top. Newer devices have been developed which move away from the condom catheter-based system and employ a unique hydrocolloid 'petal' design which adheres only to a small area of the glans penis around the meatus, ensuring a comfortable and secure fit and are ideal for men with a retracted penis (Wells 2008).

Procedure guideline 6.3 Penile sheath application

Essential equipment

- Bowl of warm water and soap
- Non-sterile gloves
- Selection of appropriate penile sheaths
- Bactericidal alcohol handrub
- Disposable plastic apron
- Drainage bag and stand or holder

- Hypoallergenic tape or leg strap
- Catheter leg bag

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives his valid consent (NMC 2008a, C).
2 Screen the bed.	To ensure patient's privacy. To allow dust and airborne organisms to settle before the field is exposed (NMC 2008b, C).
3 Assist the patient to get into the supine position with the legs extended.	To ensure the appropriate area is easily accessible. E
4 Do not expose the patient at this stage of the procedure.	To maintain patient's dignity and comfort (NMC 2008b, C).
5 Wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To reduce risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Put on a disposable plastic apron.	To reduce risk of cross-infection from micro-organisms on uniform (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
7 Prepare the trolley, placing all equipment required on the bottom shelf.	The top shelf acts as a clean working surface. E
8 Take the trolley to the patient's bedside, disturbing screens as little as possible.	To minimize airborne contamination (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
9 Remove cover, maintaining the patient's privacy, and position a disposable pad under the patient's buttocks and thighs.	To ensure urine does not leak onto bedclothes. E
10 Clean hands with a bactericidal alcohol handrub.	Hands may have become contaminated by handling the outer packs (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
11 Put on non-sterile gloves.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
12 Retract the foreskin, if necessary, and clean the penis with soap and water. Dry completely and reduce or reposition the foreskin.	To remove old adhesive and ensure sheath sticks to the skin and to prevent retraction and constriction of the foreskin behind the glans penis (paraphimosis) which may occur if this is not performed. E
13 Trim any excess pubic hair from around the base of the penis.	To prevent sheath from painfully pulling pubic hair when applied. E
14 Apply sheath following manufacturer's guidelines, ensuring that there is a space between the glans penis and the sheath. Squeeze the sheath gently around the penile shaft.	To prevent the sheath from rubbing the glans penis and causing discomfort and potential skin irritation and to ensure sheath has adhered to penis (Pomfret 2003, C).
15 Connect catheter bag and ensure tubing is not kinked.	To facilitate drainage of urine into catheter bag. E
16 Dispose of equipment in a orange plastic clinical waste bag and seal the bag before	To prevent environmental contamination. Orange is the recognized colour for clinical waste (DH 2005a,

moving the trolley.	C).
17 Draw back the curtains once the patient has been covered.	To maintain the patient's dignity (NMC 2008b, C).
18 Record information in relevant documents; this should include: ■ reasons for applying penile sheath ■ date and time of application, sheath type ■ length and size ■ manufacturer ■ any problems negotiated during the procedure ■ a review date to assess the need for reapplication.	To provide a point of reference or comparison in the event of later queries (NMC 2009, C).

Problem-solving table 6.1 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 6.3)

Problem	Cause	Action	Prevention
Leaking or back flow of urine under the sheath	Penile sheath is the wrong size	Remeasure penile shaft and select the correct size	Measure penile shaft using the sizing tool
Twisting or kinking of sheath	Lack of care taken when applying / drainage tube unsecured	Secure drainage bag to leg or stand	Assess patients mobility before application and select suitable type and method of securing the drainage bag
Difficulty fitting sheath to patient with retracted penis	Anatomy of the patient	Observe the penile length when the patient is sitting. If the length of the penis is less than 5 cm when sitting use a hydrocolloid petal design sheath	—

Urinary catheterization

Definition

Urinary catheterization is the insertion of a specially designed tube into the bladder using aseptic technique, for the purposes of draining urine, the removal of clots/debris and the instillation of medication.

Related theory

Urinary catheterization is an invasive procedure and should not be undertaken without full consideration of the benefits and risks. The presence of a catheter can be a traumatic experience for patients and have huge implications for body image, mobility, pain and discomfort (Clifford 2000, RCN 2008).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

Urinary catheterization may be carried out for the following reasons.

- To empty the contents of the bladder, for example before or after abdominal, pelvic or rectal surgery, before certain investigations and before childbirth, if thought necessary.
- To determine residual urine.
- To allow irrigation of the bladder.
- To bypass an obstruction.
- To relieve retention of urine.
- To introduce cytotoxic drugs in the treatment of papillary bladder carcinomas.
- To enable bladder function tests to be performed.
- To measure urinary output accurately, for example when a patient is in shock, undergoing bone marrow transplantation or receiving high-dose chemotherapy.
- To relieve incontinence when no other means is practicable.

- To avoid complications during the insertion of radioactive material (e.g. caesium into the cervix/womb, brachytherapy for the prostate).

Legal and professional issues

Competencies

The Nursing and Midwifery Council (NMC 2008b) states that nurses performing urinary catheterization should have:

- a good knowledge of the urinary tract anatomy and physiology
- a sound knowledge of the principles of aseptic technique
- a knowledge of equipment and devices available
- awareness of infection control practice and legislation
- practice within the limits of competence and be able to recognize when they need to seek help from more experienced staff
- understanding of the issues of informed consent and a knowledge of the Mental Capacity Act
- the ability to deliver care based on the best available evidence or best practice.

Preprocedural considerations

Patients should be assessed individually as to the ideal time to change their catheters. The use of a catheter diary will help to ascertain a pattern of catheter blockages so changes can be planned accordingly.

Equipment

'A catheter is a hollow tube that is used to remove fluid from, or instil fluid into, a body cavity or viscus' (Pomfret 1996, p.245).

Catheter selection

A wide range of urinary catheters are available, made from a variety of materials and with different design features. Careful assessment of the most appropriate material, size and balloon capacity will ensure that the catheter selected is as effective as possible, that complications are

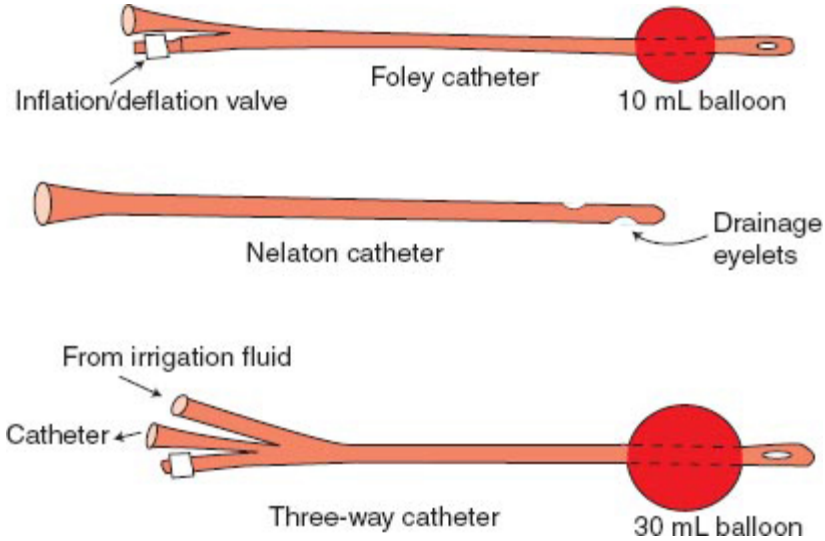
minimized and that patient comfort and quality of life are promoted (Pomfret 1996, Robinson 2001). Types of catheter are listed in Table 6.1 and illustrated in Figure 6.4, together with their suggested use. Catheters should be used in line with the manufacturer's recommendations, in order to avoid product liability (Fraise and Bradley 2009, NHS Supply Chain 2008, RCN 1994).

Table 6.1 Types of catheter

Catheter type	Material	Uses
Balloon (Foley) two-way catheter: two channels, one for urine drainage and second, smaller channel for balloon inflation	Latex, PTFE-coated latex, silicone elastomer coated, 100% silicone, hydrogel coated	Most commonly used for patients who require bladder drainage (short, medium or long term)
Balloon (Foley) three-way irrigation catheter: three channels, one for urine, one for irrigation fluid; one for balloon inflation	Latex, PTFE-coated latex, silicone, plastic	To provide continuous irrigation (e.g. after prostatectomy). Potential for infection is reduced by minimizing need to break the closed drainage system (Mulhall *et al.* 1993)
Non-balloon (Nelaton) or Scotts, or intermittent catheter (one channel only)	PVC and other plastics	To empty bladder or continent urinary reservoir intermittently; to instil solutions into bladder

PTFE, polytetrafluoroethylene; PVC, polyvinylchloride.

Figure 6.4 Catheter types.



Balloon size

In the 1920s, Fredrick Foley designed a catheter with an inflatable balloon to keep it positioned inside the bladder. Balloon sizes vary from 2.5 mL for children to 30 mL. The latter is used to aid haemostasis after prostatic

surgery. Large balloon catheters (30 mL) weigh approximately 48 g, causing pressure on the bladder neck and pelvic floor and potential damage to these structures (Kristiansen *et al.* 1983, Pomfret 2003, Robinson 2001). These catheters are associated with leakage of urine, pain and bladder spasm as they can cause irritation to the bladder mucosa and trigone (Robinson 2001, Stewart 1998). Large balloons are inclined to sit higher in the bladder, allowing a residual pool of urine to collect below the balloon and thus providing a reservoir for infection (Getliffe 1996a, Pomfret 2003).

Consequently, a 5–10 mL balloon is recommended for adults and a 3–5 mL balloon for children.

Care should be taken to use the correct amount of water to fill the balloon because too much or too little may cause distortion of the catheter tip. This may result in irritation and trauma to the bladder wall, consequently causing pain, spasm, bypassing and haematuria. If underinflated, one or more of the drainage eyes may become occluded or the catheter may become dislodged. Overinflation risks rupturing the balloon and leaving fragments of it inside the bladder (Pomfret 2003, Robinson 2001). Catheter balloons should only be inflated once; deflation/reinflation or topping up are not recommended by the manufacturers as distortion of the balloon may occur (Nazarko 2009, Robinson 2004).

Catheter balloons ought to be filled only with sterile water (Hart 2008). Tap water and 0.9% sodium chloride should not be used as salt crystals and debris may block the inflation channel, causing difficulties with deflation (Head 2006). Any micro-organisms which may be present in tap water can pass through the balloon into the bladder (Falkiner 1993, Stewart 1998).

Catheter size

Urethral catheters are measured in charrières (ch). The charrière is the outer circumference of the catheter in millimetres and is equivalent to three times the diameter. Thus a 12 ch catheter has a diameter of 4 mm.

Potential side-effects of large-gauge catheters include:

- pain and discomfort
- pressure ulcers, which may lead to stricture formation
- blockage of paraurethral ducts

- abscess formation (Blandy and Moors 1989, Crow *et al.* 1986, Edwards *et al.* 1983, Roe and Brocklehurst 1987, Winn 1998)
- bypassing – urethral leakage.

The most important guiding principle is to choose the smallest size of catheter necessary to maintain adequate drainage (McGill 1982, Robinson 2006). If the urine to be drained is likely to be clear, a 12 ch catheter should be considered. Larger gauge catheters may be necessary if debris or clots are present in the urine (Pomfret 1996, Winn 1998).

Length of catheter

There are three lengths of catheter currently available:

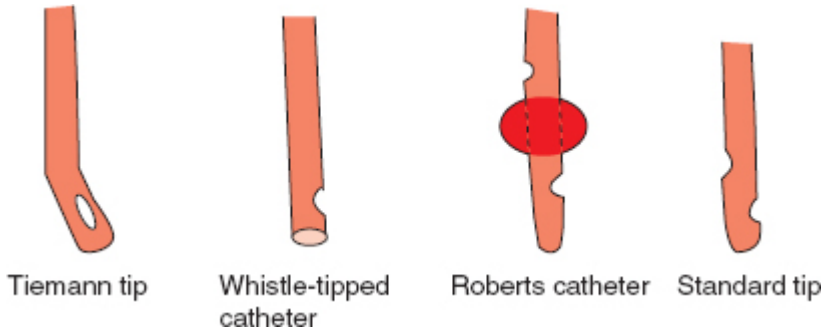
- female length: 23–26 cm
- paediatric: 30 cm
- standard length: 40–44 cm.

The shorter female length catheter is often more discreet and less likely to cause trauma or infections because movement in and out of the urethra is reduced. Infection may also be caused by the longer catheter looping or kinking (Pomfret 2003, Robinson 2001). In obese women or those in wheelchairs, however, the inflation valve of the shorter catheter may cause soreness by rubbing against the inside of the thigh, and the catheter is more likely to pull on the bladder neck; therefore, the standard length catheter should be used (Evans *et al.* 2001, Godfrey and Evans 2000, Pomfret 2003).

Tip design

Several different types of catheter tip are available in addition to the standard round tip (Figure 6.5). Each tip is designed to overcome a particular problem.

Figure 6.5 Catheter tips.



- The *Tiemann-tipped catheter* has a curved tip with one to three drainage eyes to allow greater drainage. This catheter has been designed to negotiate the membranous and prostatic urethra in patients with prostatic hypertrophy.
- The *whistle-tipped catheter* has a lateral eye in the tip and eyes above the balloon to provide a large drainage area. This design is intended to facilitate drainage of debris, for example blood clots.
- The *Roberts catheter* has an eye above and below the balloon to facilitate the drainage of residual urine.

Catheter material

A wide variety of materials are used to make catheters. The key criterion in selecting the appropriate material is the length of time the catheter is expected to remain in place. Three broad timescales have been identified.

- Short term (1–7 days, e.g. PVC and intermittent catheters).
- Short to medium term up to 28 days: for example PTFE.
- Medium to long term (6 weeks–12 weeks): e.g. hydrogel and silicone coated.

The principal catheter materials are as follows.

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)

Catheters made from PVC or plastic are quite rigid. They have a wide lumen, which allows a rapid flow rate, but their rigidity may cause some patients discomfort. They are mainly used for intermittent catheterization or postoperatively. They are recommended for short-term use only (Pomfret 1996).

Latex

Latex is a purified form of rubber and is the softest of the catheter materials. It has a smooth surface, with a tendency to allow crust formation. Latex absorbs water and consequently the catheter may swell, reducing the diameter of the internal lumen and increasing its external diameter (Pomfret 2003, Robinson 2001). It has been shown to cause urethral irritation (Wilksch *et al.* 1983) and therefore should only be considered when catheterization is likely to be short term.

Hypersensitivity to latex has been increasing in recent years (Woodward 1997) and latex catheters have been the cause of some cases of anaphylaxis (Young *et al.* 1994). Woodward (1997) suggests that patients should be asked whether they have ever had an adverse reaction to rubber products before catheters containing latex are utilized.

Teflon (polytetrafluoroethylene [PTFE]) or silicone elastomer coatings

A Teflon or silicone elastomer coating is applied to a latex catheter to render the latex inert and reduce urethral irritation (Slade and Gillespie 1985). Teflon is recommended for short-term use and silicone elastomer-coated catheters are used for long-term catheterization.

All silicone

Silicone is an inert material which is less likely to cause urethral irritation. Silicone catheters are not coated and therefore have a wider lumen. The lumen of these catheters, in cross-section, is crescent or D-shaped, which may induce formation of encrustation (Pomfret 1996). Because silicone permits gas diffusion, balloons may deflate and allow the catheter to fall out prematurely (Barnes and Malone-Lee 1986, Studer *et al.* 1983). These catheters may be more uncomfortable as they are more rigid than the latex-cored types (Pomfret 2003). All-silicone catheters are suitable for patients with latex allergies. Silicone catheters are recommended for long-term use.

Hydrogel coatings

Catheters made of an inner core of latex encapsulated in a hydrophilic polymer coating are commonly used for long-term catheterization. The polymer coating is well tolerated by the urethral mucosa, causing little irritation. Hydrogel-coated catheters become smoother when rehydrated, reducing friction with the urethra. They are also inert (Nacey and Delahunt 1991), and are reported to be resistant to bacterial colonization and encrustation (Roberts *et al.* 1990, Woollons 1996). Hydrogel-coated catheters are recommended for long-term use.

Conformable catheter

Conformable catheter *s* are designed to conform to the shape of the female urethra, and allow partial filling of the bladder. The natural movement of the urethra on the catheter, which is collapsible, is intended to prevent obstructions (Brocklehurst *et al.* 1988). They are made of latex and have a silicone elastomer coating. Conformable catheters are approximately 3 cm longer than conventional catheters for women.

Other materials

Research into new types of catheter materials is ongoing, particularly examining materials that resist the formation of biofilms (bacterial colonies that develop and adhere to the catheter surface and drainage bag) and consequently reduce the instances of urinary tract infections (Pratt *et al.* 2007).

Catheters coated with a silver alloy have been shown to prevent urinary tract infections (Saint *et al.* 1998). However, the studies that demonstrated this benefit were all small scale and a number of questions about the long-term effects of using such catheters, such as silver toxicity, need to be addressed. Argyria is a condition caused by the deposition of silver locally or systemically in the body, and can give rise to nausea, constipation and loss of night vision (Bardsley 2009, Cymet 2001, Pratt *et al.* 2007). There is some suggestion in the research that the use of silver alloy-coated catheters does reduce the onset of bacteriuria and may be beneficial when

catheterization is in high-risk situations, for example diabetic and intensive care patients (Saint *et al.* 2000). However, research trials analysed by the Cochrane Collaboration (Schumm and Lam 2008) indicate that this asymptomatic bacteraemia was only seen in the first 5–7 days; after this, the catheter type made little difference (Plowman *et al.* 2001, Pratt *et al.* 2007).

Catheters coated with antibiotics such as gentamicin, rifampicin, nitrofurazone and nitrouroxone have been investigated in the search to find a product that will reduce instances of catheter-associated urinary tract infections (CAUTI). They may have a role to play in the management of trauma patients; nitrofurazone-impregnated catheters were shown to reduce urinary infections when compared with standard catheters in a trial by Stensballe *et al*. 2007. Whether this effect would be present in non-trauma patients and in the management of patients with long-term catheters is unknown. However, issues such as antibiotic sensitivity or resistance have not been fully investigated or assessed (Schumm and Lam 2008).

The cost implications for routine use of these impregnated catheters would be huge for the NHS (Johnson *et al.* 2006). However, a recent review of impregnated catheters found that silver alloy (antiseptic)-coated or nitrofurazone-impregnated (antibiotic) urinary catheters do reduce infections in hospitalized adults, and siliconized catheters may reduce adverse effects in men, but the evidence is weak (Schumm and Lam 2008). Trials with a specific catheter may be appropriate on an individual patient basis when other types of catheter management of recurrent infections have failed (Brosnahan *et al.* 2006).

Drainage bags

A wide variety of drainage systems are available. Selecting a system involves consideration of the reasons for catheterization, the intended duration, the wishes of the patient, and infection control issues (Wilson and Coates 1996).

Urine drainage bags should only be changed according to clinical need, that is when that catheter is changed or if the bag is leaking, or at times dictated by the manufacturer's instructions, for example every 5–7 days (Pratt *et al.* 2007, Wilson 1998). Urine drainage bags positioned above the level of the bladder and full bags cause urine to reflux, which is associated

with infection. Therefore bags should always be positioned below the level of the bladder to maintain an unobstructed flow and emptied appropriately. Urine drainage bags should be hung on suitable stands to avoid contact with the floor. In situations when dependent drainage is not possible, the system should be clamped until dependent drainage can be resumed (Kunin 1997). When emptying drainage bags, clean separate containers should be used for each patient and care should be taken to avoid contact between the drainage tap and the container (Pratt *et al.* 2007).

Urine drainage bags are available in a wide selection of sizes ranging from the large 2 litre bag, which is used more commonly in non-ambulatory patients and overnight, to 350–750 mL leg bags (Figure 6.6, Figure 6.7). There are also large drainage bags that incorporate urine-measuring devices, which are used when very close monitoring of urine output is required (Figure 6.8).

Figure 6.6 Urinary catheter bag, standard.

Figure 6.7 Urinary catheter leg bag.

Figure 6.8 Urinary catheter with urometer.

There are a number of different styles of drainage bags, from the new body-worn ‘belly bags’ (Pomfret 2003) to the standard leg-worn bags. They allow patients greater mobility and can be worn under the patient’s own clothes and therefore are much more discreet, helping to preserve the patient’s privacy and dignity. Shapes vary from oblong to oval and some have cloth backing for greater comfort in contact with the skin. Others are ridged to encourage an even distribution of urine through the bag, resulting in better conformity to the leg. The length of the inlet tube also varies (direct, short, long and adjustable length) and the intended position on the leg, that is thigh, knee or lower leg, determines which length is used (Robinson 2006, 2008). The patient should be asked to identify the most comfortable position for the bag (Pomfret 2003). The majority of drainage bags, even the new belly bag, are fitted with an antireflux valve to prevent the backflow of urine into the bladder (Madeo and Roadhouse 2009). Several different tap designs exist and patients must have the manual dexterity to operate the mechanism (Robinson 2008). Most leg bags allow for larger 1–2 litre bags to be connected via the outlet tap, to increase capacity for night-time use.

Leg drainage bag supports

A variety of supports are available for use with these bags, including sporran waist belts, leg holsters, knickers/pants and leg straps (Doherty

2006, Roe 1992).

Leg straps

The use of thigh straps (e.g. Simpla G-Strap) and other fixation devices (e.g. Bard StatLock, Comfasure, Clinimed CliniFix) helps to immobilize the catheter and thus reduce the trauma potential to the bladder neck and urethra (Eastwood 2009). It is particularly appropriate for men, due to the longer length and weight of the tube being used; however, some women may also find the extra support more comfortable. Guidance from the Royal College of Nurses (RCN 2008) and NHS Scotland (NHSQIS 2004) reiterates the importance of catheter tetherage to promote patient comfort and to limit the potential complications of catheter migration and subsequent need for recatheterization. The application of these devices is not without potential complications; for example, restriction of the circulation to the limb may give rise to deep vein thrombosis while tension and traction to the urethra can cause trauma and necrosis, especially in men (Bierman and Carigan 2003).

Catheter valves

Catheter valves, which eliminate the need for drainage bags, are also available. The valve allows the bladder to be emptied intermittently and is particularly appropriate for patients who require long-term catheterization, as they do not require a drainage bag.

Catheter valves are only suitable for patients who have good cognitive function, sufficient manual dexterity to manipulate the valve and an adequate bladder capacity. It is important that catheter valves are released at regular intervals to ensure that the bladder does not become overdistended. (These valves must not be used on patients following certain operations to the prostate or bladder, as pressure caused by the distending bladder may cause perforation or rupture; in most of these instances the urethral catheter is only required for a short period of time and free drainage is the preferred method.) As catheter valves preclude free drainage, they are unlikely to be appropriate for patients with uncontrolled detrusor overactivity, ureteric reflux or renal impairment (Fader *et al.* 1997). Catheter valves are designed

to fit with linked systems so it is possible for patients to connect to a drainage bag. This may be necessary when access to toilets may be limited, for example overnight or on long journeys.

Catheter valves are licensed by the Department of Health to remain *in situ* for 5–7 days, and this corresponds with most manufacturers' recommendations (Pomfret 1996). Little research into the advantages and disadvantages of catheter valves has been completed.

Pharmacological support

Anaesthetic lubricating gel

The use of anaesthetic lubricating gels is well recognized for male catheterization, but there is some controversy over their use for female catheterization. In male patients the gel is instilled directly into the urethra and then external massage is used to move the gel down its length, unless a conforming gel such as Instillagel is used and then this is not necessary. In female patients the anaesthetic lubricating gel or plain lubricating gel is applied to the tip of the catheter only, if it is used at all. It has been suggested that most of the lubricant is wiped off the catheter at the urethral introitus so therefore it fails to reach the urethral tissue (Muctar 1991).

These differences in practice imply that catheterization is a painful procedure for men but is not so for women. This assumption is not based on any empirical or biological evidence. Other than the differences in length and route, the male and female urethra are very similar except for the presence of lubricating glands in the male urethra (Tortora and Derrickson 2009). The absence of these lubricating glands in the female urethra suggests that there is perhaps a greater need for the introduction of a lubricant (Wilson 2008). Women have complained of pain and discomfort during catheterization procedures (Mackenzie and Webb 1995), suggesting that the use of anaesthetic lubricating gels must be reconsidered (BAUN 2000, 2009, Woodward 2005). The literature does highlight a couple of issues on the use of lidocaine gel. If it is not instilled far enough in advance, that is, more than 4 minutes, it will have only a lubricating effect (Association for Continence Advice 2003/2008, Tanabe *et al.* 2004) and if the gel is not instilled up the urethra, it will not dilate or anaesthetize it

(Bardsley 2005, NICE 2003). There is a need for caution with the use of lidocaine in the elderly, those with cardiac dysrhythmias and those with sensitivity to the drug, as there is a danger of injury to the urothelial lining of the urethra during the procedure, allowing systemic absorption of the drug (BNF 2011).

Trauma can occur during catheterization, which in turn can increase the risk of infection. Using single-use lubrication gels with antiseptic properties can reduce these risks (BNF 2011, Pratt *et al.* 2007). Since there is a lack of research to clarify the efficacy of lubricating gels, practice must be based on the research evidence that is available and the physiology and anatomy of the urethra.

Procedure guideline 6.4 Urinary catheterization: male

Essential equipment

- Sterile catheterization pack containing gallipots, receiver, low-linting swabs, disposable towels
- Disposable pad
- Sterile gloves
- Selection of appropriate catheters
- Sterile anaesthetic lubricating jelly
- Universal specimen container
- 0.9% sodium chloride
- Bactericidal alcohol handrub
- Hypoallergenic tape or leg strap for tethering
- Sterile water
- Syringe and needle
- Disposable plastic apron
- Drainage bag and stand or holder

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives his valid consent (NMC 2008a, C).

2 Screen the bed.	To ensure patient's privacy (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Assist the patient to get into the supine position with the legs extended.	To ensure the appropriate area is easily accessible. E
4 Do not expose the patient at this stage of the procedure.	To maintain patient's dignity and comfort (NMC 2008b, C).
5 Wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To reduce risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Put on a disposable plastic apron and two pairs of sterile gloves	To reduce risk of cross-infection from micro-organisms on uniform (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
7 Prepare the trolley, placing all equipment required on the bottom shelf.	The top shelf acts as a clean working surface. E
8 Take the trolley to the patient's bedside, disturbing screens as little as possible.	To minimize airborne contamination (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
9 Open the outer cover of the catheterization pack and slide the pack onto the top shelf of the trolley.	To prepare equipment. E
10 Using an aseptic technique, open the supplementary packs.	To reduce the risk of introducing infection into the bladder (NICE 2003, C).
11 Remove cover, maintaining the patient's privacy, and position a disposable pad under the patient's buttocks and thighs.	To ensure urine does not leak onto bedclothes. E
12 Remove top pair of gloves and dispose.	Gloves may have become contaminated by handling outer packs (Bardsley and Kyle 2008, E).
13 Place sterile towels across the patient's thighs and under buttocks.	To create a sterile field. E
14 Wrap a sterile topical swab around the penis. Retract the foreskin, if necessary, and clean the glans penis with 0.9% sodium chloride or sterile water.	To reduce the risk of introducing infection to the urinary tract during catheterization. E
15 Insert the nozzle of the lubricating jelly into the urethra. Squeeze the gel into the urethra, remove the nozzle and discard the tube. Massage the gel along the urethra.	Adequate lubrication helps to prevent urethral trauma. Use of a local anaesthetic minimizes the discomfort experienced by the patient (Bardsley 2005, P).
16 Squeeze the penis and wait approximately 5 minutes.	To prevent anaesthetic gel from escaping. To allow the anaesthetic gel to take effect. E
17 Grasp the penis behind the glans, raising it until it is almost totally extended. Maintain grasp of penis until the procedure is finished.	This manoeuvre straightens the penile urethra and facilitates catheterization (Stoller 2004, P). Maintaining a grasp of the penis prevents contamination and retraction of the penis.
18 Place the receiver containing the catheter between the patient's legs. Insert the catheter for 15–25 cm until urine flows.	The male urethra is approximately 18 cm long (Bardsley 2005, P).
19 If resistance is felt at the external sphincter, increase	Some resistance may be due to spasm of the

the traction on the penis slightly and apply steady, gentle pressure on the catheter. Ask the patient to strain gently as if passing urine.	external sphincter. Straining gently helps to relax the external sphincter. E
20 When urine begins to flow, advance the catheter almost to its bifurcation.	Advancing the catheter ensures that it is correctly positioned in the bladder. E
21 Gently inflate the balloon according to the manufacturer's direction, having ensured that the catheter is draining properly beforehand.	Inadvertent inflation of the balloon in the urethra causes pain and urethral trauma (Getliffe and Dolman 2003, E).
22 Withdraw the catheter slightly and attach it to the drainage system.	To ensure that the balloon is inflated and the catheter is secure. E
23 Support the catheter, if the patient desires, either by using a specially designed support, for example Simpla G-Strap, or by taping the catheter to the patient's leg. Ensure that the catheter does not become taut when patient is mobilizing or when the penis becomes erect. Ensure that the catheter lumen is not occluded by the fixation device or tape.	To maintain patient comfort and to reduce the risk of urethral and bladder neck trauma. Care must be taken in using adhesive tapes as they may interact with the catheter material (Fillingham and Douglas 2004, E; Pomfret 1996, P).
24 Ensure that the glans penis is clean and then reduce or reposition the foreskin.	Retraction and constriction of the foreskin behind the glans penis (paraphimosis) may occur if this is not done (Pomfret 2003, E).
Postprocedure	
25 Make the patient comfortable. Ensure that the area is dry.	If the area is left wet or moist, secondary infection and skin irritation may occur (Pomfret 2003, E).
26 Measure the amount of urine.	To be aware of bladder capacity for patients who have presented with urinary retention. To monitor renal function and fluid balance. It is not necessary to measure the amount of urine if the patient is having the urinary catheter routinely changed (Pomfret 2003, E).
27 Take a urine specimen for laboratory examination, if required (see Chapter 11).	For further information, see Procedure guideline 11.1
28 Dispose of equipment in an orange plastic clinical waste bag and seal the bag before moving the trolley.	To prevent environmental contamination. Orange is the recognized colour for clinical waste (DH 2005a, C).
29 Draw back the curtains.	
30 Record information in relevant documents; this should include: ■ reasons for catheterization ■ date and time of catheterization ■ catheter type, length and size ■ amount of water instilled into the balloon ■ batch number ■ manufacturer	To provide a point of reference or comparison in the event of later queries (NMC 2009, C).

- any problems negotiated during the procedure
- a review date to assess the need for continued catheterization or date of change of catheter.

Procedure guideline 6.5 Urinary catheterization: female

Essential equipment

- Sterile catheterization pack containing gallipots, receiver, low-linting swabs, disposable towels
- Disposable pad
- Sterile gloves
- Selection of appropriate catheters
- Sterile anaesthetic lubricating jelly
- Universal specimen container
- 0.9% sodium chloride or antiseptic solution
- Bactericidal alcohol handrub
- Hypoallergenic tape or leg strap for tethering
- Sterile water
- Syringe and needle
- Disposable plastic apron
- Syringe and needle
- Drainage bag and stand or holder

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives her valid consent (NMC 2008a, C).
2 Screen the bed.	To ensure patient's privacy. To allow dust and airborne organisms to settle before the sterile field is exposed (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Assist the patient to get into the supine position with knees bent, hips flexed and feet resting about 60 cm apart.	To enable genital area to be seen. E

4 Do not expose the patient at this stage of the procedure.	To maintain the patient's dignity and comfort (NMC 2008b, C).
5 Ensure that a good light source is available.	To enable genital area to be seen clearly. E
6 Wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
7 Put on a disposable apron and two pairs of sterile gloves.	To reduce risk of cross-infection from micro-organisms on uniform (Bardsley and Kyle 2008, E; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
8 Prepare the trolley, placing all equipment required on the bottom shelf. (Also see Catheter selection.)	To reserve top shelf for clean working surface. E
9 Take the trolley to the patient's bedside, disturbing screens as little as possible.	To minimize airborne contamination (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
10 Open the outer cover of the catheterization pack and slide the pack on the top shelf of the trolley.	To prepare equipment. E
11 Using an aseptic technique, open supplementary packs.	To reduce risk of introducing infection into the urinary tract. E
12 Remove cover, maintaining the patient's privacy, and position a disposable pad under the patient's buttocks.	To ensure urine does not leak onto bedclothes. E
13 Remove top pair of gloves and dispose.	Gloves may have become contaminated by handling outer packs (Bardsley and Kyle 2008, E).
14 Place sterile towels across the patient's thighs.	To create a sterile field. E
15 Using low-linting swabs, separate the labia minora so that the urethral meatus is seen. One hand should be used to maintain labial separation until catheterization is completed.	This manoeuvre provides better access to the urethral orifice and helps to prevent labial contamination of the catheter. E
16 Clean around the urethral orifice with 0.9% sodium chloride or an antiseptic solution, using single downward strokes.	Inadequate preparation of the urethral orifice is a major cause of infection following catheterization. To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
17 Insert the nozzle of the lubricating jelly into the urethra. Squeeze the gel into the urethra, remove the nozzle and discard the tube. Allow 5 minutes for the gel's antiseptic and anaesthetic effects to occur.	Adequate lubrication helps to prevent urethral trauma. Use of a local anaesthetic minimizes the patient's discomfort (Woodward 2005, P).
18 Place the catheter, in the receiver, between the patient's legs.	To provide a temporary container for urine as it drains. E
19 Introduce the tip of the catheter into the urethral orifice in an upward and backward direction. Advance the catheter until 5–6 cm has been inserted.	The direction of insertion and the length of catheter inserted should relate to the anatomical structure of the area. E
20 Either remove the catheter gently when urinary flow ceases or advance the catheter 6–8 cm.	This prevents the balloon from becoming trapped in the urethra. E
21 Inflate the balloon according to the manufacturer's directions, having ensured that the catheter is draining adequately.	Inadvertent inflation of the balloon within the urethra is painful and causes urethral trauma (Getliffe and Dolman 2003, P).

22 Withdraw the catheter slightly and connect it to the drainage system.	To ensure that the balloon is inflated and the catheter is secure. E
23 Support the catheter, if the patient desires, either by using a specially designed support, for example Simpla G-Strap, or by taping the catheter to the patient's leg. Ensure that the catheter does not become taut when patient is mobilizing. Ensure that the catheter lumen is not occluded by the fixation device or tape.	To maintain patient comfort and to reduce the risk of urethral and bladder neck trauma. Care must be taken in using adhesive tapes as they may interact with the catheter material (Pomfret 1996, P).
Postprocedure	
24 Make the patient comfortable and ensure that the area is dry.	If the area is left wet or moist, secondary infection and skin irritation may occur. E
25 Measure the amount of urine.	To be aware of bladder capacity for patients who have presented with urinary retention. To monitor renal function and fluid balance. It is not necessary to measure the amount of urine if the patient is having the urinary catheter routinely changed (Fillingham and Douglas 2004, E).
26 Take a urine specimen for laboratory examination if required (See Chapter 11).	For further information, see Procedure guideline 11.5.
27 Dispose of equipment in an orange plastic clinical waste bag and seal the bag before moving the trolley.	To prevent environmental contamination. Orange is the recognized colour for clinical waste (DH 2005a, C).
28 Draw back the curtains.	
29 Record information in relevant documents; this should include: ■ reasons for catheterization ■ date and time of catheterization ■ catheter type, length and size ■ amount of water instilled into the balloon ■ batch number and manufacturer ■ any problems negotiated during the procedure ■ a review date to assess the need for continued catheterization or date of change of catheter.	To provide a point of reference or comparison in the event of later queries (NMC 2009, C).

Postprocedural considerations

Documentation

To ensure adequate documentation of the process of urinary catheterization, the following information should be recorded in the patient's notes.

- Note patient's consent and understanding of the procedure, plus allergy status.
- Reason for catheterization.
- Type of catheter inserted, gauge and length.
- Manufacturer and batch number plus expiry date.
- Date and time of insertion.
- Size of balloon and volume of sterile water used to inflate it.
- Cleansing procedure and type of lubricant used.
- Any difficulties experienced or clinical observations noted.
- Plan of action, i.e. duration of catheterization/predicted date for change of long-term catheter.
- Signed and printed by person performing the procedure.

(NMC 2008b, NMC 2009, RCN 2008)

Problem-solving table 6.2 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guidelines 6.4 and 6.5)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Urethral mucosal trauma	Incorrect size of catheter		Recatheterize the patient using the correct size of catheter. Check the catheter support and apply or reapply as necessary
	Procedure not carried out correctly or skilfully. Movement of the catheter in the urethra		
	Creation of false passage as a result of too rapid insertion of catheter		Nurse may need to remove the catheter and wait for the urethral mucosa to heal
Patient has a vasovagal attack	This is caused by the vagal nerve being stimulated so that the heart slows down, leading to a syncope faint		Lie the patient down in the recovery position. Inform doctors
Male Paraphimosis	Failure to retract foreskin after catheterization or catheter toilet		Always retract the foreskin
Female No drainage of urine	Incorrect identification of external urinary meatus	Ensure sufficient light to observe the area. Revise the female anatomy prior to the procedure	Check that catheter has been sited correctly. If catheter has been wrongly inserted in the vagina, leave it in position to act as a guide, reidentify the urethra and catheterize the patient. Remove the inappropriately sited catheter

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Difficulty in visualizing the urethral orifice	This can be due to vaginal atrophy and retraction of the urethral orifice		The index finger of the 'dirty' hand may be inserted in the vagina, and the urethral orifice can be palpated on the anterior wall of the vagina. The index finger is then positioned just behind the urethral orifice. This then acts as a guide, so the catheter can be correctly positioned (Jenkins 1998)

Procedure guideline 6.6 Urinary catheter bag: emptying

Essential equipment

- Swabs saturated with 70% isopropyl alcohol
- Sterile jug
- Disposable gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C).
2 Wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and put on disposable gloves.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
3 Clean the outlet valve with a swab saturated with 70% isopropyl alcohol.	To reduce risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 Allow the urine to drain into the jug.	To empty drainage bag and accurately measure volume of contents. E
5 Close the outlet valve and clean it again with a new alcohol-saturated swab.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Cover the jug and dispose of contents in the sluice, having noted the amount of urine if this is requested for fluid balance records.	To reduce risk of environmental contamination (DH 2005a, C).
7 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water.	To reduce risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Procedure guideline 6.7 Urinary catheter removal

Essential equipment

- Dressing pack containing sterile towel, gallipot, foam swab or non-linting gauze
- Disposable gloves
- Needle and syringe for urine specimen, specimen container
- Syringe for deflating balloon

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Catheters are usually removed early in the morning.	So that any retention problems can be dealt with during the day. E
2 Explain procedure to patient and inform them of potential postcatheter symptoms, such as urgency, frequency and discomfort, which are often caused by irritation of the urethra by the catheter.	So that patient knows what to expect, and can plan daily activity.
Procedure	
3 Clamp below the sampling port until sufficient urine collects. Take a catheter specimen of urine using the sampling port.	To obtain an adequate urine sample and to assess whether postcatheter antibiotic therapy is needed (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 Wearing gloves, use saline to clean the meatus and catheter, always swabbing away from the urethral opening. *Note*: in women, never clean from the perineum/vagina towards the urethra.	To reduce risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E). To help reduce the risk of bacteria from the vagina and perineum contaminating the urethra. E
5 Release leg support.	For easier removal of catheter. E
6 Having checked volume of water in balloon (see patient documentation), use syringe to deflate balloon.	To confirm how much water is in the balloon. To ensure balloon is completely deflated before removing catheter. E
7 Ask patient to breathe in and then out; as patient exhales, gently (but firmly with continuous traction) remove catheter. Male patients should be warned of discomfort as the deflated balloon passes through the prostate gland.	To relax pelvic floor muscles. E It is advisable to extend the penis as per the process for insertion to aid removal. E
Postprocedure	
8 Clean meatus and make the patient comfortable.	To maintain patient comfort and dignity. E
9 Encourage patient to exercise and to drink 2–3 litres of fluid per day.	To prevent urinary tract infections. E

Complications

Infections

Catheterization carries an infection risk. Catheter-associated infections are the most common hospital-acquired infection, possibly accounting for up to 35–40% of all hospital infection (Roadhouse and Wellstead 2004).

Key areas have been identified as having a direct link with the development of urinary tract infection.

- Assessing the need for catheterization and the length of time the catheter is *in situ* (Nazarko 2007).
- Selection of the most appropriate type of catheter and drainage system to be used.
- The aseptic conditions and process by which the catheter is inserted and maintained as a closed drainage system.
- Training and competence of the person performing the procedure and those undertaking the aftercare, that is, patients, relatives and health professionals.

The maintenance of a closed drainage system is central in reducing the risk of catheter-associated infection. It is thought that micro-organisms reach the bladder by two possible routes: from the urine in the drainage bag or via the space between the catheter and the urethral mucosa (Getliffe 1995, Gould 1994). To reduce the risk of infection, it is important to keep manipulations of the closed system to a minimum; this includes unnecessary emptying, changing the drainage bags or taking samples.There is now an intregal catheter and drainage bag available to reduce the number of potential disconnection sites and infection risk. Before handling catheter drainage systems, hands must be decontaminated and a pair of clean non-sterile gloves should be worn (Pratt *et al.* 2007). All urine samples should only be obtained via the specially designed sampling ports using an aseptic technique.

Urinary tract infections (male): meatal cleaning

Cleaning the urethral meatus, where the catheter enters the body, is a nursing procedure intended to minimize infection of the urinary tract for men (DH and CMO 2003, Mangnall and Watterson 2006). Studies examining the use of a variety of antiseptic, antimicrobial agents or soap and water found that there was no reduction in bacteriuria when using any of these preparations for meatal cleaning compared to routine bathing or showering (Pratt *et al.* 2007). Further studies support the view that vigorous meatal cleaning is unnecessary and may compromise the integrity of the skin, thus increasing the risk of infection (Leaver 2007, Saint and Lipsky 1999). Therefore it is recommended that routine daily personal hygiene with soap and water (NICE 2003) is all that is needed to maintain meatal

hygiene (Pomfret and Tew 2004, Pratt *et al.* 2007). Nursing intervention is necessary if there is a poor standard of hygiene or a risk of contamination (Gilbert 2006); removal of a smegma ring, where the catheter meets the meatus, is important to prevent ascending infections and meatal trauma (Wilson 2005).

A urinary tract infection (UTI) may be introduced during catheterization because of faulty aseptic technique, inadequate urethral cleaning or contamination of catheter tip. UTI may be introduced via the drainage system because of faulty handling of equipment, breaking the closed system or raising the drainage bag above bladder level causing urine reflux.

If a UTI is suspected a catheter specimen of urine must be sent for analysis. The patient should be encouraged to have a fluid intake of 2–3 litres a day. Medical staff should be informed if the problem persists so antibiotics can be prescribed.

Table 6.2 details other complications that may arise if a patient is catheterized.

Table 6.2 Complications of catheterization

Problem	Cause	Suggested action
Inability to tolerate indwelling catheter	Urethral mucosal irritation	Nurse may need to remove the catheter and seek an alternative means of urine drainage
	Psychological trauma	Explain the need for and the functioning of the catheter
	Unstable bladder	
	Radiation cystitis	
Inadequate drainage of urine	Incorrect placement of a catheter Kinked drainage tubing	Resite the catheter Inspect the system and straighten any kinks
	Blocked tubing, for example pus, urates, phosphates, blood clots	If a three-way catheter, such as a Foley, is in place, irrigate it. If an ordinary catheter is in use, milk the tubing in an attempt to dislodge the debris, then attempt a gentle bladder washout. Failing this, the catheter will need to be replaced; a three-way catheter should be used if the obstruction is being caused by clots and associated haematuria
Fistula formation	Pressure on the penoscrotal angle	Ensure that correct strapping is used
Penile pain on erection	Not allowing enough length of catheter to accommodate penile erection	Ensure that an adequate length is available to accommodate penile erection
Formation of crusts	Increased urethral secretions collect at the meatus and	Correct catheter toilet

around the urethral meatus	form crusts, due to irritation of urothelium by the catheter (Fillingham and Douglas 2004)	
Leakage of urine around catheter	Incorrect size of catheter	Replace with the correct size, usually 2 ch smaller
	Incorrect balloon size	Select catheter with 10 mL balloon
	Bladder hyperirritability	Use Roberts tipped catheter
		As a last resort, bladder hyperirritability can be reduced by giving diazepam or anticholinergic drugs (Nazarko 2009)
Unable to deflate balloon	Valve expansion or displacement	Check the non-return valve on the inflation/deflation channel. If jammed, use a syringe and needle to aspirate by means of the inflation arm above the valve
	Channel obstruction	Obstruction by a foreign body can sometimes be relieved by the introduction of a guidewire through the inflation channel
		Inject 3.5 mL of dilute ether solution (diluted 50/50 with sterile water or 0.9% sodium chloride) into the inflation arm
		Alternatively, the balloon can be punctured suprapubically using a needle under ultrasound visualization
		Following catheter removal, the balloon should be inspected to ensure it has not disintegrated, leaving fragments in the bladder
		Note: steps above should be attempted by or under the directions of a urologist. The patient may require cystoscopy following balloon deflation to remove any balloon fragments and to wash the bladder out
Dysuria	Inflammation of the urethral mucosa	Ensure a fluid intake of 2–3 litres per day. Advise the patient that dysuria is common but will usually be resolved once micturition has occurred at least three times. Inform medical staff if the problem persists
Retention of urine	May be psychological	Encourage the patient to increase fluid intake. Offer the patient a warm bath. Inform medical staff if the problem persists

Bladder irrigation

Definition

Bladder irrigation is the continuous washing out of the bladder with sterile fluid, usually 0.9% NaCl (Ng 2001).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

Bladder irrigation is performed to prevent the formation and retention of blood clots, for example following prostatic surgery. However, there is evidence emerging that postoperative bladder irrigation can be safely eliminated by modifying the surgical technique used for suprapubic prostatectomy (Okorie *et al.* 2010). On rare occasions bladder irrigation is performed to remove heavily contaminated material from a diseased urinary bladder (Cutts 2005, Fillingham and Douglas 2004, Scholtes 2002).

Principles of care

There are a number of risks associated with bladder irrigation (including introducing infection) and the procedure should not be undertaken lightly (McCarthy and Hunter 2001, NICE 2003). Prior to taking a decision to use bladder maintenance solutions, patients should be assessed (Rew 1999). The guiding principle for effective catheter management always involves addressing the individual needs of the patient (Godfrey and Evans 2000). Assessment of all aspects of catheter care and irrigation should be undertaken, including:

- patient activity and mobility (catheter positioning, catheter kinking)
- diet and fluid intake
- standards of patient hygiene
- patient's and/or carer's ability to care for the catheter (Getliffe 1996a, Ng 2001, Rew 1999, Rew 2005).

An important aspect of management for patients in whom a clear pattern of catheter history can be established is the scheduling of catheter changes prior to likely blockages (Getliffe 1996b, Yates 2004). In patients in whom no clear pattern emerges, or for whom frequent catheter changes are traumatic, acidic bladder washouts can be beneficial in reducing catheter encrustations (Getliffe 1996a, McCarthy and Hunter 2001, Rew 1999, Yates 2004). The administration of catheter maintenance solutions to eliminate catheter encrustation can also be timed to coincide with catheter bag

changes (every 5–7 days) so that the catheter system is not opened more than necessary (Yates 2004).

Preprocedural considerations

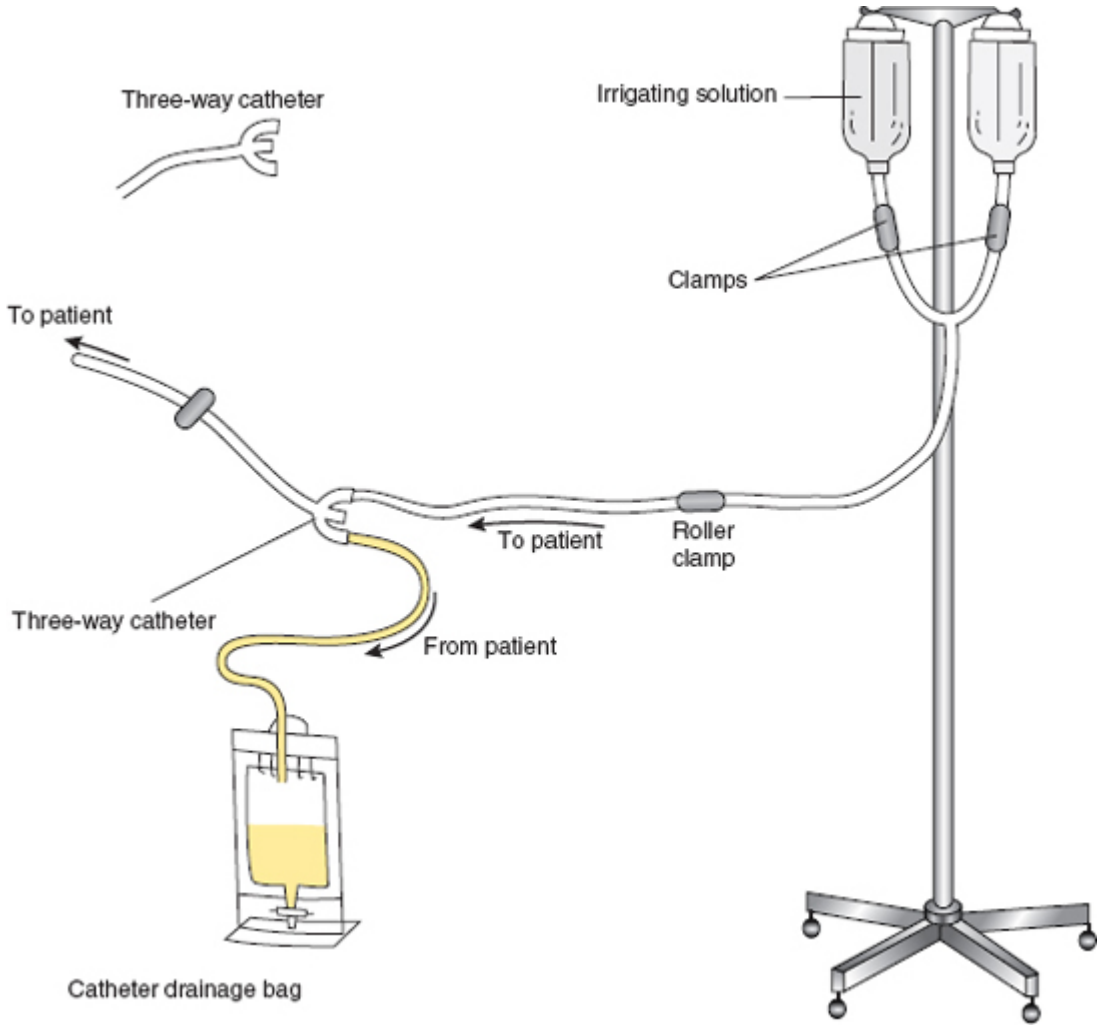
Equipment

Catheters used for irrigation

A three-way urinary catheter must be used for irrigation in order that fluid may simultaneously be run into, and drained out from, the bladder (Cutts 2005, Getliffe 1996a, Ng 2001). A large-gauge catheter (16–24) is often used to accommodate any clot and debris which may be present. This catheter is commonly passed in theatre when irrigation is required, for example after prostatectomy (Forristal and Maxfield 2004). Occasionally, if a patient is admitted with a heavily contaminated bladder, for example blood clots, bladder irrigation may be started on the ward. If the patient has a two-way catheter, this must be replaced with a three-way type (Scholtes 2002).

It is recommended that a three-way catheter is passed if frequent intravesical instillations of drugs or antiseptic solutions are prescribed and the risk of catheter obstruction is not considered to be very great. In such cases, the most important factor is minimizing the risk of introducing infection and maintaining a closed urinary drainage system, for which the three-way catheter allows (Figure 6.9).

Figure 6.9 Closed urinary drainage system with provision for intermittent or continuous irrigation.



Occasionally blood clots can cause a catheter blockage which requires the catheter and drainage tube to be 'milked' using rubber-tipped 'milking' tongs in order to prevent damaging the catheter. This encourages the removal of clots from within the drainage system and ensures the catheter remains free flowing (Lowthian 1991).

Pharmacological support

The agent most commonly recommended for irrigation is 0.9% sodium chloride which should be used in every case unless an alternative solution is prescribed. 0.9% sodium chloride is isotonic; consequently it does not affect the body's fluid or electrolyte levels, enabling large volumes of the solution to be used as necessary (Cutts 2005). In particular, 3-litre bags of 0.9% sodium chloride are available for irrigation purposes. It has been proposed

that sterile water should never be used to irrigate the bladder as it can be readily absorbed by osmosis (Addison 2000a). However, a recent study has demonstrated that sterile water is a safe irrigating fluid for transurethral resection of prostate (TURP) (Moharari *et al.* 2008).

Although not a common complication, absorption of irrigation fluid can occur during bladder irrigation. This can produce a potentially critical situation, as absorption leads to electrolyte imbalance and circulatory overload (Getliffe 1996a). Absorption is most likely to occur in theatre where glycine irrigation fluid, devoid of sodium or potassium, is forced under pressure into the prostatic veins (Forristal and Maxfield 2004). The 0.9% sodium chloride cannot be used during surgery as it contains electrolytes which interfere with diathermy (Forristal and Maxfield 2004). However, the risk of absorption still remains while irrigation continues postoperatively. For this reason it is important that fluid balance is monitored carefully during irrigation (Scholtes 2002).

Procedure guideline 6.8 Commencing bladder irrigation

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack
- Antiseptic solution
- Bactericidal alcohol handrub
- Clamp
- Disposable irrigation set

Medicinal products

- Sterile irrigation fluid
- Infusion stand
- Sterile jug
- Absorbent sheet
- Gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC

	2008a, C).
2 Screen the bed. Ensure that the patient is in a comfortable position, allowing the nurse access to the catheter.	For the patient's privacy and to reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
3 Perform the procedure using an aseptic technique.	To minimize the risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 Open the outer wrappings of the pack and put it on the top shelf of the trolley.	To prepare equipment. E
5 Insert the end of the irrigation giving set into the fluid bag and hang the bag on the infusion stand. Allow fluid to run through the tubing so that air is expelled.	To prime the irrigation set so that it is ready for use. Air is expelled in order to prevent discomfort from air in the patient's bladder. E
6 Clamp the catheter and place absorbent sheet under the catheter junction.	To prevent leakage of urine through the irrigation arm when the spigot is removed. E To contain any spillages.
7 Clean hands with a bactericidal alcohol handrub. Put on gloves.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
8 Place a sterile paper towel under the irrigation inlet of the catheter and remove the spigot.	To create a sterile field. To prepare catheter for connection to irrigation set (Scholtes 2002, E).
9 Discard the spigot and gloves.	To prevent reuse and reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
10 Put on sterile gloves. Clean around the end of the irrigation arm with sterile low-linting gauze and an antiseptic solution.	To remove surface organisms from gloves and catheter and to reduce the risk of introducing infection into the catheter (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
11 Attach the irrigation giving set to the irrigation arm of the catheter. Keep the clamp of the irrigation giving set closed.	To prevent overdistension of the bladder, which can occur if fluid is run into the bladder before the drainage tube has been unclamped (Scholtes 2002, E).
12 Release the clamp on the catheter tube and allow any accumulated urine to drain into the catheter bag. Empty the urine from the catheter bag into a sterile jug.	Urine drainage should be measured before commencing irrigation so that the fluid balance may be monitored more accurately (Scholtes 2002, E).
13 Discard the gloves.	These will be contaminated, having handled the cathether bag (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
14 Set irrigation at the required rate and ensure that fluid is draining into the catheter bag.	To check that the drainage system is patent and to prevent fluid accumulating in the bladder. E
Postprocedure	
15 Make the patient comfortable, remove unnecessary equipment and clean the trolley.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
16 Wash hands.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Problem-solving table 6.3 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 6.8)

Problem	Possible cause	Prevention	Suggested action
Fluid retained in the bladder when the catheter is in position	Fault in drainage apparatus, for example:		
	blocked catheter		'Milk' the tubing. Wash out the bladder with 0.9% sodium chloride
	kinked tubing		Straighten the tubing
	overfull drainage bag	Empty the drainage bag every 4 hours	Empty the drainage bag
	catheter clamped off		Unclamp the catheter
Distended abdomen related to an overfull bladder during the irrigation procedure	Irrigation fluid is infused at too rapid a rate	Monitor fluid drainage rate every 15minutes	Slow down the infusion rate
	Fault in drainage apparatus		Check the patency of the drainage apparatus
Leakage of fluid from around the catheter	Catheter slipping out of the bladder		Insert the catheter further in. Decompress balloon fully to assess the amount of water necessary. Refill balloon until it remains *in situ*, taking care not to overfill beyond safe level (see manufacturer's instructions)
	Catheter too large or unsuitable for the patient's anatomy		If leakage is profuse or catheter is uncomfortable for the patient, replace the catheter with one of smaller size
Patient experiences pain during the lavage or irrigation procedure	Volume of fluid in the bladder is too great for comfort		Reduce the fluid volume within the bladder
	Solution is painful to raw areas in the bladder		Inform the doctor. Administer analgesia as prescribed
Retention of fluid with or without distended abdomen, with or without pain	Perforated bladder		Stop irrigation. Maintain in recovery position. Call medical assistance. Monitor vital signs. Monitor patient for pain, tense abdomen

Procedure guideline 6.9 Care of the patient during bladder irrigation

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack
- Antiseptic solution
- Bactericidal alcohol handrub
- Clamp
- Disposable irrigation set
- Infusion stand
- Sterile jug
- Absorbent sheet

Medicinal products

- Sterile irrigation fluid

Action	Rationale
1 Adjust the rate of infusion according to the degree of haematuria. This will be greatest in the first 12 hours following surgery (average fluid input is 6–9 litres during the first 12 hours, falling to 3–6 litres during the next 12 hours). The aim is to obtain a drainage fluid which is rosé in colour.	To remove blood from the bladder before it clots and to minimize the risk of catheter obstruction and clot retention (Scholtes 2002, E).
2 Check the volume in the drainage bag frequently when infusion is in progress, for example half-hourly or hourly, or more frequently as required.	To ensure that fluid is draining from the bladder and to detect blockages as soon as possible, also to prevent overdistension of the bladder and patient discomfort. To empty catheter drainage bags before they reach capacity.
3 Using rubber-tipped 'milking' tongs, 'milk' the catheter and drainage tube, as required.	To remove clots from within the drainage system and to maintain an efficient outlet (Lowthian 1991, E).
4 Annotate the fluid balance chart accurately. The fluid balance of all patients having bladder irrigation must be monitored.	So that urine output is known and any related problems, for example renal dysfunction, may be detected quickly and easily. E

Postprocedural considerations

Documentation

Bladder irrigation recording chart

The bladder irrigation recording chart (Figure 6.10) is designed to provide an accurate record of the patient's urinary output during the period of

irrigation. Record the time (column A) and the fluid volume in each bag of irrigating solution (column B) as it is put up.

Figure 6.10 Bladder irrigation recording chart.

Patient name:			Hospital no:		
(A) Date and time	(B) Volume put up	(C) Volume run in	(D) Total volume out	(E) Urine	(F) Urine running total
10/7/06					
10.00	2000				
10.30			700		
11.10			850		
11.40		2000	600		
			2150	150	150
11.45	2000				
12.30			500		
13.15			700		
14.20		2000	800		
			2400	400	550
14.25	2000				
15.30			850		
17.00	Irrigation stopped	1200	800		
			1650	450	1000

When the irrigating fluid has all run from the first bag into the bladder, record the original volume in the bag in column C. Record the corresponding time in column A. Do not attempt to estimate the fluid volume run-in while a bag is in progress as this will be inaccurate. If, however, a bag is discontinued, the volume run-in can be calculated by measuring the volume left in the bag and deducting this from the original volume. This should be recorded in column C (Scholtes 2002).

The catheter bag should be emptied as often as is necessary, the volume being recorded in column D and the corresponding time in column A. The

catheter bag must also be emptied whenever the bag of irrigating fluid is empty, and the volume recorded in column D.

When each bag of fluid has run through, add up the total volume drained by the catheter in column D, and write this in red. Subtract from this the total volume run-in (column C) to find the urine output (D 2 C = E). Write this in column E. Draw a line across the page to indicate that this calculation is complete and continue underneath for the next bag.

Faecal elimination

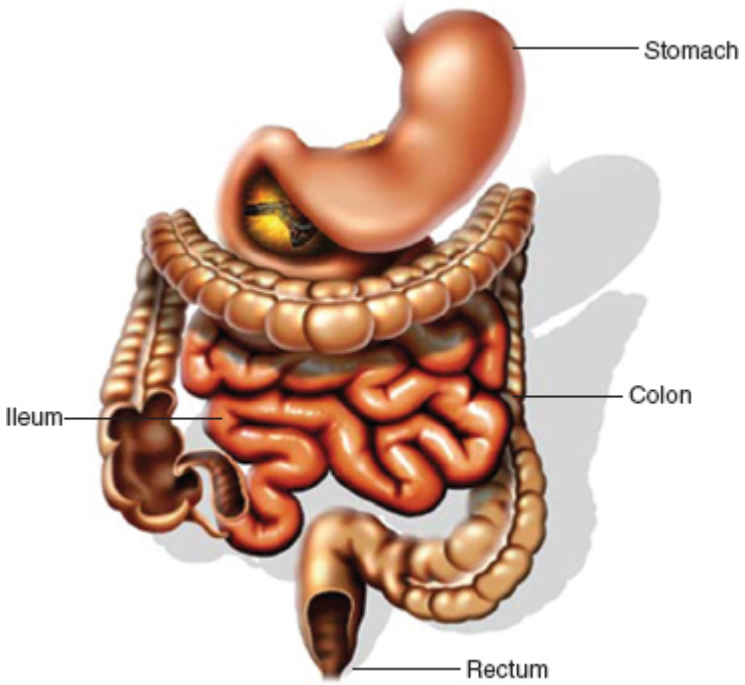
Definition

Faecal elimination is the process of elimination – simply the expulsion of the residues of digestion, faeces, from the digestive tract (Thibodeau and Patton 2007b). The act of expelling faeces is called defaecation.

Anatomy and physiology

This section will consider the normal structure and function of the bowel, which includes the small and large intestine (Figure 6.11). The small intestine begins at the pyloric sphincter of the stomach, coils through the abdomen and opens into the large intestine at the ileocaecal junction. It is approximately 6 m in length and is divided into three segments: the duodenum (25 cm), jejunum (2.5 m) and ileum (3.5 m) (Thibodeau and Patton 2007b). The mucosal surface of the small intestine is covered with finger-like processes called villi, which increase the surface area available for absorption and digestion. A number of digestive enzymes are also secreted by the small intestine (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Figure 6.11 The gastrointestinal tract.



Movement through the small bowel is divided into two types, namely segmentation and peristalsis, and is controlled by the autonomic nervous system. Segmentation refers to the localized contraction of the intestine, which mixes the intestinal contents and brings particles of food into contact with the mucosa for absorption. Once the majority of a meal has been absorbed through this process, intestinal content is then pushed along the small intestine by repeated peristaltic wave-like actions. Intestinal content usually remains in the small bowel for 3–5 hours (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

The total volume of fluid, including ingested liquids and gastrointestinal secretions, that enters the small intestine daily is about 9.3 litres. The small intestine is responsible for absorbing around 90% of the nutrients, electrolytes and water within this volume by diffusion, facilitated diffusion, osmosis and active transport (Tortora and Derrickson 2009). Water is able to move across the intestinal mucosa in both directions, but is influenced by the absorption of nutrients and electrolytes. As various electrolytes and nutrients are actively transported out of the lumen, they create a concentration gradient, promoting water absorption, via osmosis, in order to maintain an osmotic balance between intestinal fluid and blood. This ultimately leads to only about 1 litre of effluent passing through into the

colon (Thibodeau and Patton 2007a, Tortora and Derrickson 2009, Wood 1996).

From the ileocaecal sphincter to the anus, the colon is approximately 1.5–1.8 m in length. Its main function is to eliminate the waste products of digestion by the propulsion of faeces towards the anus. In addition, it produces mucus to lubricate the faecal mass, thus aiding its expulsion. Other functions include the absorption of fluid and electrolytes, including sodium and potassium, the storage of faeces and the synthesis of vitamins B and K by bacterial flora (Thibodeau and Patton 2007a, Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Faeces consist of the unabsorbed end-products of digestion, bile pigments, cellulose, bacteria, epithelial cells, mucus and some inorganic material. They are normally semi-solid in consistency and contain about 70% water (Tortora and Derrickson 2009). The colon absorbs about 2 litres of water in 24 hours, so if faeces are not expelled they will gradually become hard due to dehydration and more difficult to expel. If there is insufficient roughage (fibre) in the faeces, colonic stasis occurs, which leads to continued water absorption and further hardening of the faeces. The movement of faeces through the colon towards the anus is by mass peristalsis, a gastrocolic reflex initiated by the presence of food in the stomach, which begins at the middle of the transverse colon and quickly drives the colonic contents into the rectum. This mass peristaltic movement generally occurs 3–5 times a day (Perdue 2005). In response to this stimulus, faeces move into the rectum (Norton 1996b, Taylor 1997, Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Diarrhoea

Definition

The term diarrhoea originates from the Greek for ‘to flow through’ (Bell 2004) and can be characterized according to its onset and duration (acute or chronic) or by type (e.g. secretory, osmotic or malabsorptive). Diarrhoea can also be defined in terms of stool frequency, consistency, volume or weight (Metcalf 2007).

Related theory

Diarrhoea is a serious global public health problem, in particularly in low-income and middle-income countries. The World Health Organization 2003 believes that over 3 million episodes happen each year, with many people dying. The disease pathogens are most commonly transmitted via the faecal–oral route (Ejemot *et al.* 2008).

Acute diarrhoea

Acute diarrhoea is very common, usually self-limiting, lasts less than 2 weeks and often requires no investigation or treatment (Shepherd 2000). Causes of acute diarrhoea include:

- dietary indiscretion (eating too much fruit, alcohol misuse)
- allergy to food constituents
- infective:
  - — travel associated
  - — viral
  - — bacterial (usually associated with food)
  - — antibiotic related.

Chronic diarrhoea

Chronic diarrhoea generally lasts longer than 2–4 weeks (Metcalf 2007) and may have more complex origins. Chronic causes can be divided as follows (Thomas *et al.* 2003).

- *Colonic*: colonic neoplasia, ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, microscopic colitis.
- *Small bowel*: small bowel bacterial overgrowth, coeliac disease, Crohn's disease, Whipple's disease, bile acid malabsorption, disaccharidase deficiency, mesenteric ischaemia, radiation enteritis, lymphoma, giardiasis.
- *Pancreatic*: chronic pancreatitis, pancreatic carcinoma, cystic fibrosis.
- *Endocrine*: hyperthyroidism, diabetes, hypoparathyroidism, Addison's disease, hormone-secreting tumours.

- *Other causes*: laxative misuse, drugs, alcohol, autonomic neuropathy, small bowel resection or intestinal fistulas, radiation enteritis.

Preprocedural considerations

Assessment

The cause of diarrhoea needs to be identified before effective treatment can be instigated. This may include clinical investigations such as stool cultures for bacterial, fungal and viral pathogens or a more formal medical evaluation of the gastrointestinal tract (Kornblau *et al.* 2000).

Ongoing nursing assessment is essential for ensuring individualized management and care. The lack of a systematic approach to assessment and poor documentation cause problems in effective management of diarrhoea (Cadd *et al.* 2000, Smith 2001). Nurses need to be aware of contributing factors and be sensitive to patients' beliefs and values in order to provide holistic care. A comprehensive assessment is therefore essential and should include the following.

- History of onset, frequency and duration of diarrhoea: patient's perception of diarrhoea is often related to stool consistency (Metcalf 2007).
- Consistency, colour and form of stool, including the presence of blood, fat, mucus. Stools can be graded using a scale such as the Bristol Stool Form Chart (see Figure 6.2), where diarrhoea would be classified as types 6 or 7 (Longstreth *et al.* 2006).
- Associated symptoms: pain, nausea, vomiting, fatigue, weight loss or fever.
- Physical examination: check for gaping anus, rectal prolapse and prolapsed haemorrhoids (Nazarko 2007).
- Recent lifestyle changes, emotional disturbances or travel abroad.
- Fluid intake and dietary history, including any cause-and-effect relationships between food consumption and bowel action.
- Regular medication, including antibiotics, laxatives, oral hypoglycaemics, appetite suppressants, antidepressants, statins, digoxin or chemotherapy (Nazarko 2007).

- Effectiveness of antidiarrhoeal medication (dose and frequency).
- Significant past medical history: bowel resection, pancreatitis, pelvic radiotherapy.
- Hydration status: evaluation of mucous membranes and skin turgor.
- Perianal or peristomal skin integrity: enzymes present in faecal fluid can cause rapid breakdown of the skin (Nazarko 2007).
- Stool cultures for bacterial, fungal and viral pathogens: to check for infective diarrhoea (Pellatt 2007). Treatment may not be commenced until results are available except if the patient has been infected by *Clostridium difficile* in the past.
- Blood tests: full blood count, urea and electrolytes, liver function tests, vitamin B_{12}, folate, calcium, ferritin, ESR (erythrocyte sedimentation rate) and C-reactive protein.
- Patient's preferences and own coping strategies including non-pharmacological interventions and their effectiveness (Cadd *et al.* 2000, Chelvanayagam and Norton 2004, King 2002, Kornblau *et al.* 2000).

All episodes of acute diarrhoea must be considered potentially infectious until proven otherwise. The risk of spreading the infection to others can be reduced by adopting universal precautions such as wearing of gloves, aprons and gowns, disposing of all excreta immediately and, ideally, nursing the patient in a side room with access to their own toilet (King 2002). Advice should always be sought from infection control teams. At this stage nursing care should also include educating patients about careful handwashing.

Diarrhoea can have profound physiological and psychosocial consequences on a patient. Severe or extended episodes of diarrhoea may result in dehydration, electrolyte imbalance and malnutrition. Patients not only have to cope with increased frequency of bowel movement but may have abdominal pain, cramping, proctitis and anal or perianal skin breakdown. Food aversions may develop or patients may stop eating altogether as they anticipate subsequent diarrhoea following intake. Consequently, this may lead to weight loss and malnutrition. Fatigue, sleep disturbances, feelings of isolation and depression are all common consequences for those experiencing diarrhoea. The impact of severe diarrhoea should not be underestimated; it is highly debilitating and may

cause patients on long-term therapy to be non-compliant, resulting in a potentially life-threatening problem (Kornblau *et al.* 2000).

Once the cause of diarrhoea has been established, management should be focused on resolving the cause and providing physical and psychological support for the patient. Most cases of chronic diarrhoea will resolve once the underlying condition is treated, for example drug therapy for Crohn's disease or dietary management for coeliac disease. Episodes of acute diarrhoea, usually caused by bacteria or viruses, generally resolve spontaneously and are managed by symptom control and the prevention of complications (Shepherd 2000).

Pharmacological support

The treatment for diarrhoea depends on the cause.

Antimotility drugs such as loperamide or codeine phosphate may be useful in some cases, for example in blind loop syndrome and radiation enteritis. These drugs reduce gastrointestinal motility to relieve the symptoms of abdominal cramps and reduce the frequency of diarrhoea (Shepherd 2000). It is important to rule out any infective agent as the cause of diarrhoea before using any of these drugs, as they may make the situation worse by slowing the clearance of the infective agent.

In the case of bacterial diarrhoea, treatment with antibiotics is recommended only in patients who are very symptomatic and show signs of systemic involvement (Metcalf 2007). Not uncommonly, *Salmonella* can become resistant to commonly used antimicrobial agents such as amoxicillin (Metcalf 2007). When dealing with antibiotic-associated diarrhoea, most patients will notice a cessation of their symptoms with discontinuation of the antibiotic therapy. If diarrhoea persists, it is important to exclude pseudomembranous colitis by performing a sigmoidoscopy and sending a stool for cytotoxin analysis. However, over the last few years there has been increasing evidence supporting the use of probiotics in cases of diarrhoea associated with antibiotics (McFarland 2007). Researchers believe that probiotics restore the microbial balance in the intestinal tract previously destroyed by inciting antibiotics (Hickson *et al.* 2007). There are a variety of probiotic products available and their effectiveness appears to

be related to the strain of bacteria causing the diarrhoea (Hickson *et al.* 2007, McFarland 2007).

Fluid replacement

The prevention and/or correction of dehydration is the first step in managing an episode of diarrhoea. Adults normally require 1.5–2 litres of fluid in 24 hours. The person who has diarrhoea will require an additional 200 mL for each loose stool. Dehydration can be corrected by using intravenous fluids and electrolytes or by oral rehydration solutions. The extent of dehydration dictates whether a patient can be managed at home or will need to be admitted to hospital (Nazarko 2007). Nursing care should also include monitoring signs or symptoms of electrolyte imbalance, such as muscle weakness and cramps, hypokalaemia, tachycardia and hypernatraemia (Metcalf 2007).

Non-pharmacological support

Maintaining dignity

Preserving the patient's privacy and dignity is essential during episodes of diarrhoea. The nurse has an important role in minimizing the patient's distress by adjusting language and using terms that are appropriate to the individual to reduce embarrassment (Smith 2001) and by listening to the patient's preference for care (Cadd *et al.* 2000). Additionally, the use of deodorizers and air fresheners to remove the smell caused by offensive diarrhoea contributes to the person's dignity. Stoma deodorants are thought to be more effective and samples can be obtained from company representatives (Nazarko 2007).

Skin care

It is important that the patient has easy access to clean toilet and washing facilities and that requests for assistance are answered promptly. Skin care is also essential to prevent bacteria present in faecal matter from destroying the skin's cellular defences and causing skin damage. This is particularly important with diarrhoea since it has high levels of faecal enzymes that come into contact with the perianal skin (Le Lievre 2002). The anal area

should be gently cleaned with warm water immediately after every episode of diarrhoea. Frequent washing of the skin can alter the pH and remove protective oils from the skin. Products aimed at maintaining healthy peristomal skin have been used to protect perianal skin in patients with diarrhoea (Nazarko 2007). Soap should be avoided, unless it is an emollient, to avoid excessive drying of the skin and gentle patting of the skin is preferred for drying to avoid friction damage. Talcum powder should not be used and barrier creams should be applied sparingly, gently layered on in the direction of the hair growth rather than rubbed into the skin (Le Lievre 2002). The use of incontinence pads should be carefuly considered in a person with severe episodes of diarrhoea. This particular material does not adsorb fluid stools, protect the skin from damage or contain smells.

Faecal collection devices can be useful if the person is cared for in bed as undue movement may cause leakage (Nazarko 2007, Wilson 2008). This type of device is fitted over the anus and fluid stools drain into a drainage bag similar to a drainable stoma bag.

Diet

A diet rich in fibre can cause diarrhoea. In this case the person should be advised to reduce the amount and space it out over the day (Nazarko 2007). Chilli and other spices can irritate the bowel and should be avoided. Sorbitol (artificial sweetener), beer, stout and high doses of vitamins and minerals should also be avoided.

Faecal incontinence

Faecal incontinence is a clinical symptom associated with diarrhoea (Nazarko 2007). When it is not possible to treat the cause of the diarrhoea, a care plan should be created to prevent complications and manage incontinence (NICE 2007). Factors that can contribute to the development of faecal incontinence are (Nazarko 2007):

- damage or weakness of the anal sphincter: obstetric damage, haemorrhoidectomy, sphincterotomy or degeneration of the internal anal sphincter muscle
- severe diarrhoea
- faecal loading (impaction): immobility, lack of fluids

- neurological conditions: spinal cord injury, Parkinson's disease
- cognitive deficits.

Diarrhoea can potentially disrupt a person's well-being. Community nurses and hospital-based specialist nurses have an essential role in supporting those affected by this condition. Diagnosis, treatment and management of diarrhoea and potential faecal incontinence can take place at home where individuals are more familiar with the environment.

Constipation

Definition

Constipation results when there is a delayed movement of intestinal content through the bowel (Walsh 1997). It has been defined as persistent, difficult, infrequent or incomplete defaecation, which may or may not be accompanied by hard, dry stools (Norton 2006, Thompson *et al.* 1999). There is a lack of consensus amongst both healthcare professionals and the general public as to what actually constitutes constipation (Norton 2006, Perdue 2005).

Anatomy and physiology

The rectum is very sensitive to rises in pressure, even of 2–3 mmHg, and distension will cause a perineal sensation with a subsequent desire to defaecate. A co-ordinated reflex empties the bowel from mid-transverse colon to the anus. During this phase the diaphragm, abdominal and levator ani muscles contract and the glottis closes. Waves of peristalsis occur in the distal colon and the anal sphincter relaxes, allowing the evacuation of faeces (Tortora and Derrickson 2009). The stimulus to defaecate varies in individuals according to habit, and if a decision is made to delay defaecation, the stimulus disappears and a process of retroperistalsis occurs whereby the faeces move back into the sigmoid colon (Perdue 2005). If these natural reflexes are inhibited on a regular basis, they are eventually suppressed and reflex defaecation is inhibited, resulting in such individuals becoming severely constipated.

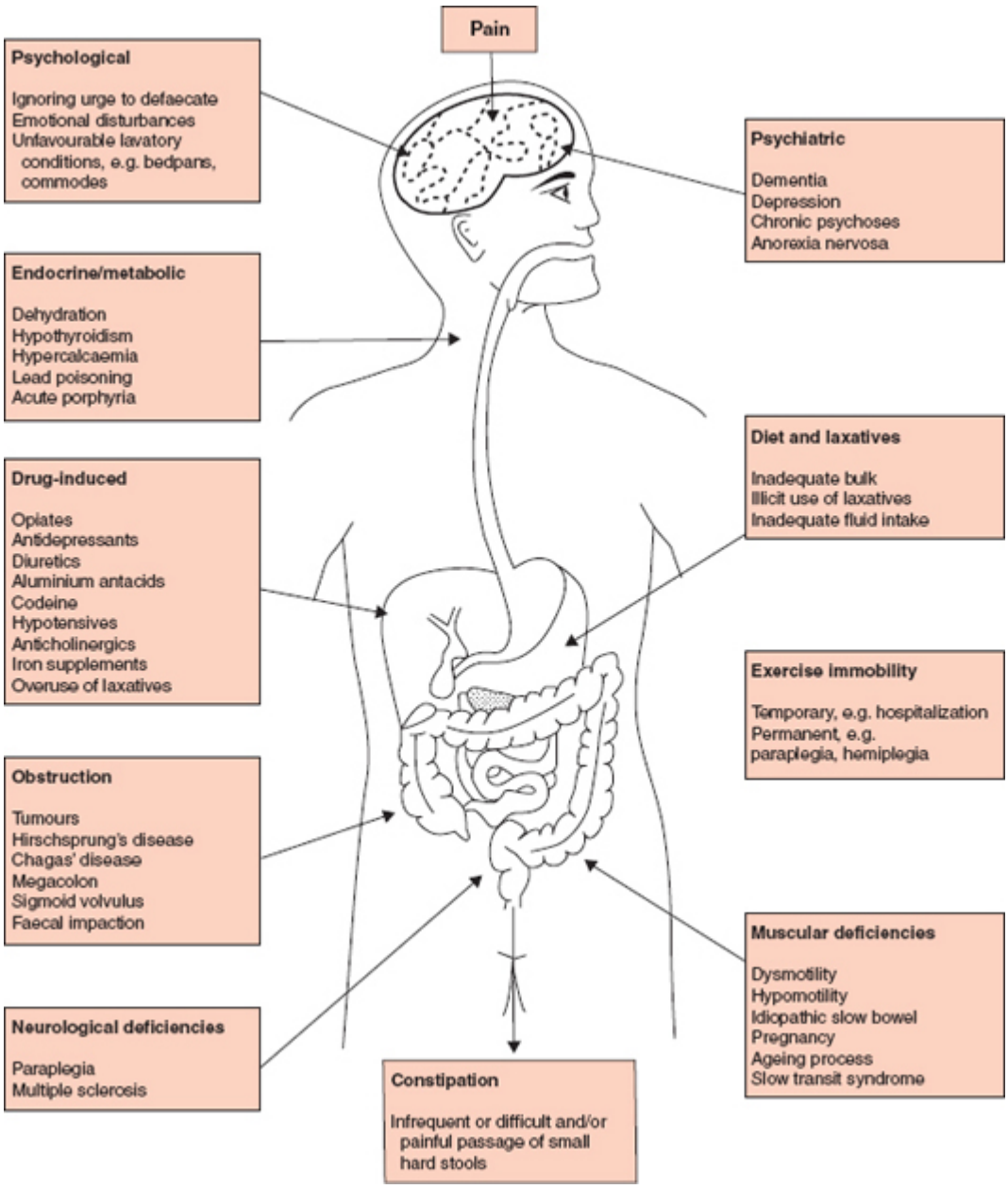
Related theory

It has been estimated that up to 27% of a given population experience constipation (Cook *et al.* 1999, Longstreth *et al.* 2006). Constipation is a common symptom in cancer and palliative care. Constipation has been reported in 55% of patients in their last week of life (Conill *et al.* 1997) and 70–100% of patients receiving treatment in hospital (McMillan 1999). It can affect this patient group at any stage of their disease and for a variety of reasons.

Constipation occurs when there is either a failure of colonic propulsion (slow colonic transit) or a failure to evacuate the rectum (rectal outlet delay) or a combination of these problems (Norton 1996a, Norton 2006, Teahon 1999).

The management of constipation depends on the cause and there are numerous possible causes, with many patients being affected by more than one causative factor (Figure 6.12). While constipation is not life-threatening, it does cause a great deal of distress and discomfort. Particularly, constipation can be associated with abdominal pain or cramps, feelings of general malaise or fatigue and feelings of bloatedness. Nausea, anorexia, headaches, confusion, restlessness, retention of urine, faecal incontinence and halitosis may also be present in some cases (Maestri-Banks 1998, Norton 1996b).

Figure 6.12 Classification of constipation: combined sources.



The effective treatment of constipation relies on the cause being identified by thorough assessment. Constipation can be categorized as primary, secondary or iatrogenic (Perdue 2005). Factors that lead to the development of primary constipation are extrinsic or lifestyle related and include:

- an inadequate diet (low fibre)
- poor fluid intake
- a lifestyle change
- ignoring the urge to defaecate (see Figure 6.13).

Figure 6.13 Correct positioning for opening your bowel.

Reproduced by kind permission of Ray Addison and Wendy Ness.

© Norgine Ltd.

Constipation that is attributed to an intrinsic disease process or conditions such as anal fissures, colonic tumours or hypercalcaemia is classified as secondary constipation, whereas iatrogenic constipation generally results from treatment or medication (Perdue 2005). Constipation of unknown cause must be investigated in order to ensure that appropriate treatment is instigated (Taylor 1997, Teahon 1999).

Preprocedural considerations

Assessment

Undertaking a detailed history from the patient is pivotal in establishing the appropriate treatment plan. At present, there is no comprehensive assessment tool that has been validated. It is of vital importance that nurses adopt a proactive preventive approach to the assessment and management of constipation. Kyle *et al*. 2005 have developed the Eton Scale, a constipation risk assessment tool.

There are a variety of factors that may affect normal bowel functioning which should be considered within an assessment, including:

- nutritional intake/recent changes in diet
- fluid intake
- mobility, for example lack of exercise
- medication, for example analgesics, antacids, iron supplements, tricyclic antidepressants
- lack of privacy, for example having to use shared toilet facilities, commodes or bedpans
- medical conditions, including disease process or symptoms, for example cancer, vomiting
- radiological investigations of the bowel involving the use of barium
- change in patient's normal routine/lifestyle/home circumstances
- change in psychological status, for example depression.

In addition to the identification of these risks/contributing factors, it is important to take a careful history of a patient's bowel habits, taking particular note of the following.

- Any changes in the patient's usual bowel activity. How long have these changes been present and have they occurred before?
- Frequency of bowel action.
- Volume, consistency and colour of the stool. Stools can be graded using a scale such as the Bristol Stool Form Chart (see Figure 6.1) where constipation would be classified as types 1 or 2 (Longstreth *et al.* 2006).
- Presence of mucus, blood, undigested food or offensive odour.

- Presence of pain or discomfort on defaecation.
- Use of oral or rectal medication to stimulate defaecation and its effectiveness.

A digital rectal examination (DRE) can also be performed, providing the nurse has received suitable training or instruction, to assess the contents of the rectum and to identify conditions which may cause discomfort such as haemorrhoids or anal fissures (Hinrichs and Huseboe 2001, Peate 2003, RCN 2006, Winney 1998).

Additional investigations such as an abdominal X-ray may be necessary to exclude bowel obstruction (Christer *et al.* 2003, Edwards *et al.* 2003, Fallon and O'Neill, 1997, Kyle *et al.* 2005, Maestri-Banks 1998, Thompson *et al.* 2003).

Over recent years, international criteria (the Rome Criteria) have been developed and revised (Longstreth *et al.* 2006) which can help to more accurately and consistently define constipation. According to the new Rome III Criteria, an individual who is diagnosed with constipation should report having at least two of the following symptoms within the last 3 months where those symptoms began at least 6 months prior to diagnosis (Longstreth *et al.* 2006, Norton 2006).

- Straining for at least 25% of the time.
- Lumpy or hard stool for at least 25% of the time.
- A sensation of incomplete evacuation for at least 25% of the time.
- A sensation of anorectal obstruction or blockage for at least 25% of the time.
- Manual manoeuvres used to facilitate defaecation at least 25% of the time (e.g. manual evacuation).
- Less than three bowel movements a week.
- Also, in such patients, loose stools are rarely present without the use of laxatives.

It is important to recognize that although the Rome Criteria are the most used definition of constipation, their application to cancer and palliative care patients has its limitations (Stevens *et al.* 2008). The rationale for this is that many cancer and palliative care patients have constipation which is caused by a physical process or a drug so they do not have functional

constipation. Also, many in this group of patients require treatment before 12 weeks.

The myth that daily bowel evacuation is essential to health has persisted through the centuries. It is thought that less than 10% of the population have a bowel evacuation daily (Edwards *et al.* 2003). This myth has resulted in laxative abuse becoming one of the most common types of drug abuse in the Western world. The annual cost to the NHS of prescribing medications to treat constipation is in the region of £45 million (DH 2005b).

An individual's bowel habit is dictated by their diet, lifestyle and environment, and the notion of what is a 'normal' bowel habit varies considerably. Studies have revealed that in the USA and UK, 95–99% of people pass at least three stools per week (Ehrenpreis 1995) and 'normal' bowel movement has been defined as ranging between three times a day and three times a week (Nazarko 1996). Given that there is such a wide normal range, it is important to establish the patient's usual bowel habit and the changes that may have occurred. Many patients are too embarrassed to discuss bowel function and will often delay reporting problems, despite the sometimes severe impact these symptoms have on their quality of life (Cadd *et al.* 2000). Generally complaints will be either that the patient has diarrhoea or is constipated. These should be seen as symptoms of some underlying disease or malfunction and managed accordingly. The nurse's priority is to effectively assess the nature and cause of the problem, to help find appropriate solutions and to inform and support the patient. This requires sensitive communication skills to dispel embarrassment and ensure a shared understanding of the meanings of the terms used by the patient (Smith 2001).

Pharmacological support

Laxatives

Laxatives can be defined simply as substances that cause evacuation of the bowel by a mild action (Mosby 2006). A laxative with a mild or gentle effect is also known as an aperient and one with a strong effect is referred to as a cathartic or a purgative. Purgatives should be used only in exceptional

circumstances, that is, where all other interventions have failed, or when they are prescribed for a specific purpose. The aim of laxative treatment is to achieve comfortable rather than frequent defaecation and, wherever possible, the most natural means of bowel evacuation should be employed, with preference given to use of oral laxatives where appropriate (Fallon and O'Neill 1997, Perdue 2005). The many different types of laxatives available may be grouped into types according to the action they have (see Table 6.3).

Table 6.3 Types of laxative

Type of laxative	Example	Brand names and sources
Bulk producers	Dietary fibre	Bran, wholemeal bread, Fybogel (ispaghula), Normacol (sterculia)
Stool softeners	Mucilaginous polysaccharides Methylcellulose Synthetic surface active agents, liquid paraffin	Agarol, Dioctyl, Petrolager, Milpar
Osmotic agents	Sodium, potassium and magnesium salts	Magnesium sulphate, milk of magnesia, lactulose
Stimulant laxatives	Sodium picosulphate, glycerine	Senna, Senokot, bisacodyl, Dulcolax, co-danthrusate, Picolax, glycerol

Bulking agents

Bulking agents are usually the first line of laxative treatment and work by retaining water and promoting microbial growth in the colon, increasing faecal mass and stimulating peristalsis (Peate 2003). Ispaghula husk (Isogel, Regulan) and sterculia (Normacol) both trap water in the intestine by the formation of a highly viscous gel which softens faeces, increases weight and reduces transit time (Butler 1998). These agents need plenty of fluid in order to work (2–3 litres per day), so their appropriateness should be questioned for those with advanced cancer or for the older patient (Hinrichs and Huseboe 2001, Maestri-Banks 1998, Perdue 2005). They also take a few days to exert their effect (Maestri-Banks 1998) and so are not suitable to relieve acute constipation. Also, they are contraindicated in some patients, including those who have bowel obstruction, faecal impaction, acute abdominal pain and reduced muscle tone, or those who have had recent bowel surgery. Increasing the bulk may worsen impaction, lead to increased colonic faecal loading or even intestinal obstruction (Norton 1996a), and in some cases may increase the risk of faecal incontinence.

Other potentially harmful effects include malabsorption of minerals, calcium, iron and fat-soluble vitamins, and reduced bio-availability of some drugs (Taylor 1997). Another problem initially is that bulk laxatives tend to distend the abdomen, often making the individual feel full and uncomfortable. Sometimes this leads to temporary anorexia (Taylor 1997).

Stool softeners

Stool-softening preparations, such as docusate sodium and glycerol (glycerine) suppositories, act by lowering the surface tension of faeces which allows water to penetrate and soften the stool (Hinrichs and Huseboe 2001, Peate 2003). They may also have a weak stimulatory effect (Barrett 1992), but drugs of this type are often given in combination with a chemical stimulant (Shepherd 2000). Softening agents usually take 1–3 days to work (Day 2001).

Liquid paraffin acts as a lubricant as well as a stool softener by coating the faeces and allowing easier passage. However, its use should be avoided as there are a number of problems associated with this preparation. It interferes with the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins and can also cause skin irritation and changes to the bowel mucosa while accidental inhalation of droplets of liquid paraffin may result in lipoid pneumonia (BNF 2011, Maestri-Banks 1998, Peate 2003).

Osmotic agents

These can be divided into two subgroups: lactulose and magnesium preparations.

Lactulose is a synthetic disaccharide which exerts an osmotic effect in the small bowel. Distension of the small bowel induces propulsion which in turn reduces transit time. Colonic bacteria metabolize lactulose into a short-chain organic salt which is then absorbed; therefore the osmotic effect does not continue throughout the colon (Barrett 1992). This process of metabolism also produces gas which in turn stimulates colonic movements and increases bacterial growth. This results in increased stool weight and thus colonic transit time is shortened (Spiller 1994). However, bowel action may still take up to 3 days to occur following administration (Shepherd

2000) and flatulence, cramps and abdominal discomfort are associated with high dosages.

Magnesium preparations also exert an osmotic effect on the gut and additionally they stimulate the release of cholecystokinin. This encourages intestinal motility and fluid secretion (Nathan 1996). They have a rapid effect, working within 2–6 hours, so fluid intake is important with these preparations as patients may experience diarrhoea and dehydration (Hinrichs and Huseboe 2001). These preparations should be avoided in patients with renal or hepatic impairment (Taylor 1997).

Stimulant laxatives

Laxatives including bisacodyl, danthron and senna stimulate the nerve plexi in the gut wall, increasing peristalsis and promoting the secretion of water and electrolytes in the small and large bowel (Maestri-Banks 1998, Peate 2003, Shepherd 2000). Abdominal cramping may be increased if the stool is hard and a stool softener may be used in combination with this group of drugs (ABPI 1999, Taylor 1997). Long-term use of these laxatives should be avoided, except for patients on long-term opiates, as they may lead to impaired bowel function such as atonic non-functioning (cathartic) colon (ABPI 1999, Hinrichs and Huseboe 2001, Taylor 1997).

Preparations containing danthron are restricted to certain groups of patients, that is, the terminally ill as some studies on rodents have indicated a potential carcinogenic risk (ABPI 1999, Shepherd 2000, Taylor 1997). Danthron preparations should not be used for incontinent patients, especially those with limited mobility, as prolonged skin contact will colour the skin pink or red and superficial sloughing of the discoloured skin will occur (ABPI 1999, Taylor 1997).

Methylnaltrexone

Methylnaltrexone bromide is a parenteral preparation that is a peripherally acting selective antagonist of opioid binding to the mu-receptor, thus reversing peripherally mediated opioid-induced constipation but not centrally mediated analgesic effects (Thomas *et al.* 2008). The indications for use are opioid-induced constipation in patients with advanced illness

receiving palliative care and who are unable to take oral laxatives. It is necessary to exclude bowel obstruction prior to its use and it should be used under the advice of a palliative care team.

Non-pharmacological support

Diet

Dietary manipulation may help to resolve mild constipation, although it is much more likely to help prevent constipation from recurring. Increasing dietary fibre increases stool bulk, which in turn improves peristalsis and stool transit time. This results in a softer stool being delivered to the rectum (Norton 1996b). The government's strategy on food and health aims to increase the UK average daily fibre intake from the current 13.8 to 18.0 g (this recommended amount is based on the Englyst method; British Nutrition Foundation 2004, DH 1998).

There are two types of fibre: insoluble fibre is contained in foods such as wholegrain bread, brown rice, fruit and vegetables and soluble fibre is contained in foods such as oats, pulses, beans and lentils. It is recommended that fibre should be taken from a variety of both soluble and insoluble foods and eaten at times spread throughout the day (British Nutrition Foundation 2004, Edwards *et al.* 2003, Food Standards Agency 2006, Teahon 1999). Care should be taken to increase dietary fibre intake gradually as bloating and abdominal discomfort can result from a sudden increase, particularly in the older person and those with slow-transit constipation (Bush 2000, Cummings 1994, Edwards *et al.* 2003, Norton 1996a). Other sources of dietary laxatives can be encouraged with care; for example, prunes contain diphenylisatin and onions contain indigestible sugars (Norton 1996a).

Dietary changes need to be made in combination with other lifestyle changes. Daily fluid intake should be between 2.0 and 2.5 litres (Day 2001, Taylor 1997, Teahon 1999). Fruit juices such as orange and prune juice can help stimulate bowel activity (Winney 1998) and coffee has been shown to stimulate colonic motor and bowel activity (Addison 1999, Brown *et al.* 1990). The motor response takes place within minutes of drinking coffee and can last for up to 90 minutes (Addison 2000a).

There is a need for further studies to examine the role of dietary manipulation in the management of constipation, particularly the function of dietary fibre and fluid intake (Addison 2000b).

Positioning

Patients should be advised not to ignore the urge to defaecate and to allow sufficient time for defaecation (Norton 1996a). It is important that the correct posture for defaecation is adopted; crouching or a 'crouch-like' posture is considered anatomically correct (Taylor 1997) and the use of a footstool by the toilet may enable patients to adopt a better defaecation posture (Edwards *et al.* 2003, NICE 2007, Norton 1996a, Taylor 1997) (see Figure 6.13). The use of the bedpan should always be avoided if possible as the poor posture adopted while using a bedpan has been shown to cause extreme straining during defaecation (Taylor 1997). Where possible, patients should be supported to get to a bathroom.

Exercise

Where possible, patients should be encouraged to increase their level of exercise; physical activity has been found to have a positive effect on peristalsis, particularly after eating (Thompson *et al.* 2003). Therapies such as homoeopathy and reflexology can also be utilized (Edwards *et al.* 2003, Emly *et al.* 1997, Rankin-Box 2000).

However, overall, laxatives are the most commonly used treatment for constipation (Table 6.4). In general, they should be used as a short-term measure to help relieve an episode of constipation as long-term use can perpetuate constipation and a dependence on laxatives can develop (Butler 1998). However, in cancer and palliative care patients where drugs such as opioids may need to be maintained then laxative therapy may need to continue for longer periods of time.

Table 6.4 Classification of laxatives

Type of laxative	How it works	Name of drug	Special notes for patients
Bulk forming	These drugs act by holding onto water so the stool remains large and soft and encourages the gut to move	Fybogel	If your nurse or doctor is unsure if your bowel has a normal activity or is concerned about the amount of fluid you are taking, this drug may not be considered for you
Stimulant	Will cause water and electrolytes to accumulate in the bowel and will stimulate the bowel to move	Senna tablet/liquid Bisacodyl tablet/ suppositories	This group of drugs will be avoided if your bowel is not moving very well as they can cause abdominal cramps
Mixed stimulant and softener	2-in-1 preparations	Co-Danthramer liquid and capsules available Docusate tablets	This drug may cause your urine to change colour Mild stimulant
Softeners	Attract and retain water in the bowel	Milpar (liquid paraffin and magnesium hydroxide) Docuaste Arachis oil enema	If you have an allergy to nuts please tell your nurse or doctor as an arachis oil enema should be avoided
Osmotic	Act in the bowel by increasing stimulation of fluid secretion and movement in the bowel	Lactulose Movicol Phosphate enema Microlax enema	Can cause bloating and excess wind and abdominal discomfort Powdered sachet that needs to be dissolved in about 150 mL fluid

Enemas

Definition

An enema is the administration of a substance in liquid form into the rectum, either to aid bowel evacuation or to administer medication (Higgins 2006).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

Enemas may be prescribed for the following reasons.

- To clean the lower bowel before surgery, X-ray examination of the bowel using contrast medium or before endoscopy examination.
- To treat severe constipation when other methods have failed.
- To introduce medication into the system.
- To soothe and treat irritated bowel mucosa.
- To decrease body temperature (due to contact with the proximal vascular system).
- To stop local haemorrhage.
- To reduce hyperkalaemia (calcium resonium).
- To reduce portal systemic encephalopathy (phosphate enema).

Contraindications

Enemas are contraindicated under the following circumstances.

- In paralytic ileus.
- In colonic obstruction.
- Where the administration of tap water or soap and water enemas may cause circulatory overload, water intoxication, mucosal damage and necrosis, hyperkalaemia and cardiac arrhythmias.
- Where the administration of large amounts of fluid high into the colon may cause perforation and haemorrhage.
- Following gastrointestinal or gynaecological surgery, where suture lines may be ruptured (unless medical consent has been given).
- Frailty.
- Proctitis.
- The use of microenemas and hypertonic saline enemas in patients with inflammatory or ulcerative conditions of the large colon.
- Recent radiotherapy to the lower pelvis unless medical consent has been given (Davies 2004).

Evacuant enemas

An evacuant enema is a solution introduced into the rectum or lower colon with the intention of it being expelled, along with faecal matter and flatus, within a few minutes. The osmotic activity increases the water content of

the stool so that rectal distension follows and induces defaecation by stimulating rectal motility (Barrett 1992, Roe 1994).

The following solutions are often used.

- Phosphate enemas with standard or long rectal tubes in single-dose disposable packs. Although these are often used for bowel clearance before X-ray examination and surgery, there is little evidence to support their use due to the associated risks and contraindications. Davies (2004) and Bowers (2006) highlight the risk of phosphate absorption resulting from pooling of the enema due to lack of evacuation and also the risk of rectal injury caused by the enema tip. Studies have found that if evacuation does not occur, patients may suffer from hypovolaemic shock, renal failure and oliguria. When using this type of enema, it is vital that good fluid intake is encouraged and maintained.
- Dioctyl sodium sulphosuccinate 0.1% and sorbitol 25% in single-dose disposable packs are used to soften impacted faeces.
- Sodium citrate 450 mg, sodium alkylsulphoacetate 45 mg and ascorbic acid 5 mg in single-dose disposable packs.

Retention enemas

A retention enema is a solution introduced into the rectum or lower colon with the intention of being retained for a specified period of time. Two types of retention enema are in common use.

- Arachis oil (may be obtained in a single-dose disposable pack). This needs to be used cautiously as it is contraindicated in patients with peanut allergies (Day 2001).
- Prednisolone.

Enemas containing arachis oil enhance the lubricating process, as well as softening impacted faeces (Butler 1998). These work by penetrating faeces, increasing the bulk and softness of stools. They work most effectively when warmed to body temperature and retained for as long as possible (Clarke 1988).

All types of enemas need to be prescribed and checked against the prescription before administration. It is essential that the implications and

procedure are fully explained to the patient, so as to relieve anxiety and embarrassment.

Legal and professional issues

Administration requires skill and knowledge from the practitioner and adherence to the Nursing and Midwifery Council's (NMC 2008c) *Standards for Medicines Management*.

Procedure guideline 6.10 Enema administration

Essential equipment

- Disposable incontinence pad
- Disposable gloves
- Topical swabs
- Lubricating jelly
- Rectal tube and funnel (if not using a commercially prepared pack)
- Solution required or commercially prepared enema

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C).
2 Wash hands.	For infection prevention and control (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Ensure privacy.	To avoid unnecessary embarrassment and to promote dignified care (NMC 2008b, C).
4 Allow patient to empty bladder first if necessary.	A full bladder may cause discomfort during the procedure (Higgins 2006, E).
5 Ensure that a bedpan, commode or toilet is readily available.	In case the patient feels the need to expel the enema before the procedure is completed. P
Procedure	
6 Warm the enema to room temperature by immersing in a jug of hot water.	Heat is an effective stimulant of the nerve plexi in the intestinal mucosa. An enema at room temperature or just above will not damage the intestinal mucosa. The temperature of the environment, the rate of fluid administration and the length of the tubing will all have an effect on the temperature of the fluid in the rectum (Higgins 2006, E).

7 Assist the patient to lie on the left side, with knees well flexed, the upper higher than the lower one, and with the buttocks near the edge of the bed.	This allows ease of passage into the rectum by following the natural anatomy of the colon. In this position gravity will aid the flow of the solution into the colon. Flexing the knees ensures a more comfortable passage of the enema nozzle or rectal tube (Higgins 2006, E).
8 Place a disposable incontinence pad beneath the patient's hips and buttocks.	To reduce potential infection caused by soiled linen. To avoid embarrassing the patient if the fluid is ejected prematurely following administration. P
9 Wash hands and put on disposable gloves.	For infection prevention and control (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
10 Place some lubricating jelly on a topical swab and lubricate the nozzle of the enema or the rectal tube.	This prevents trauma to the anal and rectal mucosa which reduces surface friction (Higgins 2006, E).
11 Expel excessive air from enema and introduce the nozzle or tube slowly into the anal canal while separating the buttocks. (A small amount of air may be introduced if bowel evacuation is desired.)	The introduction of air into the colon causes distension of its walls, resulting in unnecessary discomfort to the patient. The slow introduction of the lubricated tube will minimize spasm of the intestinal wall (evacuation will be more effectively induced due to the increased peristalsis). C
12 Slowly introduce the tube or nozzle to a depth of 10.0–12.5 cm.	This will bypass the anal canal (2.5–4.0 cm in length) and ensure that the tube or nozzle is in the rectum. C
13 If a retention enema is used, introduce the fluid slowly and leave the patient in bed with the foot of the bed elevated by 45° for as long as prescribed.	To avoid increasing peristalsis. The slower the rate at which the fluid is introduced, the less pressure is exerted on the intestinal wall. Elevating the foot of the bed aids in retention of the enema by the force of gravity. C
14 If an evacuant enema is used, introduce the fluid slowly by rolling the pack from the bottom to the top to prevent backflow, until the pack is empty or the solution is completely finished.	The faster the rate of flow of the fluid, the greater the pressure on the rectal walls. Distension and irritation of the bowel wall will produce strong peristalsis which is sufficient to empty the lower bowel (Higgins 2006, E).
15 If using a funnel and rectal tube, adjust the height of the funnel according to the rate of flow desired.	The forces of gravity will cause the solution to flow from the funnel into the rectum. The greater the elevation of the funnel, the faster the flow of fluid. E
16 Clamp the tubing before all the fluid has run in.	To avoid air entering the rectum and causing further discomfort. E
17 Slowly withdraw the tube or nozzle.	To avoid reflex emptying of the rectum. E
18 Dry the patient's perineal area with a gauze swab.	To promote patient comfort and avoid excoriation. P
19 Ask the patient to retain the enema for 10–15 minutes before evacuating the bowel.	To enhance the evacuant effect. C
20 Ensure that the patient has access to the nurse call system, is near to the bedpan, commode or toilet, and has adequate toilet paper.	To enhance patient comfort and safety. To minimize the patient's embarrassment. P
Postprocedure	

21 Remove and dispose of equipment.	
22 Wash hands.	For infection prevention and control (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
23 Record in the appropriate documents that the enema has been given, its effects on the patient and its results (colour, consistency, content and amount of faeces produced), using the Bristol Stool Form Chart (see Figure 6.2).	To monitor the patient's bowel function (Gill 1999, C).
24 Observe patient for any adverse reactions.	To monitor the patient for complications (Peate 2003, C).

Problem-solving table 6.4 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 6.10)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Unable to insert the nozzle of enema pack or rectal tube into the anal canal	Tube not adequately lubricated. Patient in an incorrect position	Ensure patient is relaxed and in the correct position	Apply more lubricating jelly. Ask the patient to draw knees up further towards the chest. To ensure the patient is relaxed before inserting the nozzle or rectal tube
	Patient apprehensive and embarrassed about the situation. Patient unable to relax anal sphincter		Ensure adequate privacy and give frequent explanations to the patient about the procedure. Ask the patient to take deep breaths and 'bear down' as if defaecating.
Unable to advance the tube or nozzle into the anal canal	Spasm of the canal walls	Ask the patient to take slow deep breaths to help them to relax	Wait until spasm has passed before inserting the tube or nozzle more slowly, thus minimizing spasm. Ask patient to take slow deep breaths to help them to relax.
Unable to advance the tube or nozzle into the rectum	Blockage by faeces		Withdraw tubing slightly and allow a little solution to flow and then insert the tube further
	Blockage by tumour		If resistance is still met, stop the procedure and inform a doctor.

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Patient complains of cramping or the desire to evacuate the enema before the end of the procedure	Distension and irritation of the intestinal wall produce strong peristalsis sufficient to empty the lower bowel	Encourage the patient to retain the enema	Stop instilling the enema fluid and wait with the patient until the discomfort has subsided.
Patient unable to open bowels after an evacuant enema	Reduced neuromuscular response in the bowel wall		Inform the doctor that the enema was unsuccessful and reassure the patient.

Suppositories

Definition

A suppository is a medicated solid formulation that melts at body temperature when inserted into the rectum (Moppett and Parker 1999).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

The use of suppositories is indicated under the following circumstances.

- To empty the bowel prior to certain types of surgery and investigations.
- To empty the bowel to relieve acute constipation or when other treatments for constipation have failed.
- To empty the bowel before endoscopic examination.
- To introduce medication into the system.
- To soothe and treat haemorrhoids or anal pruritus.

Contraindications

The use of suppositories is contraindicated when one or more of the following pertain.

- Chronic constipation, which would require repetitive use.
- Paralytic ileus.
- Colonic obstruction.
- Malignancy of the perianal region.
- Low platelet count.
- Following gastrointestinal or gynaecological operations, unless on the specific instructions of the doctor.

Methods of administration of suppositories

The use of suppositories dates back to about 460 BC. Hippocrates recommended the use of cylindrical suppositories of honey smeared with ox gall (Hurst 1970). The torpedo-shaped suppositories commonly used today came into being in 1893, when it was recommended that they were inserted apex (pointed end) first (Moppett 2000).

This practice has been questioned by Abd-el-Maeboud *et al.* 1991 who suggest that suppositories should be inserted blunt end first. This advice is based on anorectal physiology; if a suppository is inserted apex first, the circular base distends the anus and the lower edge of the anal sphincter fails to close tightly. The normal squeezing motion (reverse vermicular contraction) of the anal sphincter therefore fails to drive the suppository into the rectum. These factors can lead to anal irritation and expulsion of the suppository (Moppett 2000). The study by Abd-el-Maeboud *et al.* 1991 remains the only research evidence supporting this practice. Whilst their work demonstrated that patients found insertion and retention of suppositories much easier and more comfortable using the base-first method, the isolated nature of this research means that manufacturers' instructions continue to recommend apex end first. Therefore this area of practice remains somewhat unclear: the Abd-el-Maeboud *et al.* 1991 study, coupled with the anatomical and physiological rationale, would imply that blunt end first is preferable.

Types of suppository

There are several different types of suppository available. Retention suppositories are designed to deliver drug therapy, for example analgesia,

antibiotic, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID). Those designed to stimulate bowel evacuation include glycerine, bisacodyl and sodium bicarbonate. Lubricant suppositories, for example glycerine, should be inserted directly into the faeces and allowed to dissolve. They have a mild irritant action on the rectum and also act as faecal softeners (BNF 2011). However, stimulant types, such as bisacodyl, must come into contact with the mucous membrane of the rectum if they are to be effective as they release carbon dioxide, causing rectal distension and thus evacuation.

Procedure guideline 6.11 Suppository administration

Essential equipment

- Disposable incontinence pad
- Disposable gloves
- Topical swabs or tissues
- Lubricating jelly
- Suppository(ies) as required (check prescription before administering a medicinal suppository, e.g. aminophylline)

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient. If you are administering a medicated suppository, it is best to do so after the patient has emptied their bowels.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C). To ensure that the active ingredients are not prevented from being absorbed by the rectal mucosa and that the suppository is not expelled before its active ingredients have been released (Moppett 2000, E).
2 Wash hands.	To ensure the procedure is as clean as possible and for infection control reasons (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Ensure privacy.	To ensure privacy and dignity for the patient (NMC 2008b, C).
4 Ensure that a bedpan, commode or toilet is readily available.	In case of premature ejection of the suppositories or rapid bowel evacuation following their administration. P
Procedure	
5 Assist the patient to lie on the left side, with the knees flexed, the upper higher than the lower one, with the buttocks near the edge of the bed.	This allows ease of passage of the suppository into the rectum by following the natural anatomy of the colon. Flexing the knees will reduce discomfort as the suppository is passed through the anal sphincter (Moppett 2000, E).
6 Place a disposable incontinence pad beneath the patient's hips and buttocks.	To avoid unnecessary soiling of linen, leading to potential infection and embarrassment to the patient if the

	suppositories are ejected prematurely or there is rapid bowel evacuation following their administration. E
7 Wash hands.	For infection prevention and control (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
8 Place some lubricating jelly on the topical swab and lubricate the blunt end of the suppository if it is being used to obtain systemic action. Separate the patient's buttocks and insert the suppository blunt end first, advancing it for about 2–4 cm. Repeat this procedure if a second suppository is to be inserted.	Lubricating reduces surface friction and thus eases insertion of the suppository and avoids anal mucosal trauma. Research has shown that the suppository is more readily retained if inserted blunt end first (Abd-el-Maeboud *et al.* 1991, R2b). (For further information, see Suppositories.) The anal canal is approximately 2–4 cm long. Inserting the suppository beyond this ensures that it will be retained (Abd-el-Maeboud *et al.* 1991, R2b).
9 Once the suppository(ies) has been inserted, clean any excess lubricating jelly from the patient's perineal area.	To ensure the patient's comfort and avoid anal excoriation (Moppett 2000, E).
10 Ask the patient to retain the suppository(ies) for 20 minutes, or until they are no longer able to do so. If a medicated suppository is given, remind the patient that its aim is not to stimulate evacuation and to retain the suppository for at least 20 minutes or as long as possible.	This will allow the suppository to melt and release the active ingredients. Inform patient that there may be some discharge as the medication melts in the rectum (Henry 1999, E).
Postprocedure	
11 Remove and dispose of equipment. Wash hands.	For infection prevention and control (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
12 Record that the suppository(ies) have been given, the effect on the patient and the result (amount, colour, consistency and content, using the Bristol Stool Chart – see Figure 6.1) in the appropriate documents.	To monitor the patient's bowel function (Gill 1999, C).
13 Observe patient for any adverse reactions.	To monitor for any complications (Peate 2003, E).

Stoma care

Definition

Stoma is a word of Greek origin meaning mouth or opening (Taylor 2005).

Anatomy and physiology

The gastrointestinal tract stretches from the mouth to the anus (see Figure 6.11). It is responsible for absorption of carbohydrates, proteins, fats, water, electrolytes, vitamins and bile salts.

The small bowel is divided into three sections: the duodenum, the jejunum and the ileum. Its primary function is digestion and absorption of nutrients, vitamins, minerals, fluids and electrolytes.

The colon (large bowel) consists of the caecum, ascending colon, transverse colon, descending colon, sigmoid colon, rectum and anal canal. It is about 1.5–1.8 metres long and approximately 6 cm in diameter (Thibodeau and Patton 2007a). The colon has four main functions (Nazarko 2007).

- *Reabsorption*: around 1 litre of water in 24 hours and bile salts that are secreted from the liver to enable digestion to happen.
- *Creation of vitamins and biotin*: the bacteria in the colon form vitamin K, essential for blood clotting, vitamin B_5, necessary for the manufacture of neurotransmitters and hormones, and biotin, a substance required in glucose metabolism.
- *Elimination*: of indigestible residue of food and excess metabolites.
- *Formation and storage of faeces*: as the end-products of digestion pass through the colon, they become thicker and more formed and are stored in the colon until they can be eliminated.

The rectum and anal canal include internal and external sphincters which are the mechanisms responsible for controlling bowel function. Therefore disturbance of this results in loss of bowel control and incontinence.

An understanding of the relevant anatomy and physiology is key to understanding the functions of different types of stoma formation.

Related theory

Approximately 13,500 people undergo stoma formation surgery every year in the UK (Baxter and Salter 2000). The most common underlying conditions resulting in the need for stoma surgery are colorectal cancer, bladder cancer, ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. Other causes of stoma surgery include:

- cancer of the bowel

- cancer of the pelvis, for example gynaecological cancer
- trauma
- neurological damage
- congenital disorders
- ulcerative colitis
- Crohn's disease
- diverticular disease
- familial polyposis coli
- intractable incontinence
- fistula
- radiation enteritis.

Therefore stoma surgery affects many people regardless of gender, age and culture.

Types of stoma

Colostomy

A colostomy may be formed from any section of the large bowel. Its position along the colon will dictate the output and consistency of faeces. Therefore an understanding of the anatomy and physiology is essential to fully care for stoma patients.

The most common site for a colostomy is on the sigmoid colon. This will produce a semi-solid or formed stool and is generally positioned in the left iliac fossa and is flush to the skin (Black 2000). Stomas formed higher up along the colon will produce a slightly more liquid stool. A colostomy tends to act on average 2–3 times per day, but this can vary between individuals.

Colostomies can either be permanent (end) or temporary (loop). Permanent (end) colostomies are often formed following removal of rectal cancers, as in abdominoperineal resections of the rectum, whereas a temporary (loop) colostomy may be formed to divert the faecal output, to allow healing of a surgical join (anastomosis) or repair, or to relieve an obstruction or bowel injury (Taylor 2005). This type of stoma is often referred to as a defunctioning stoma, which indicates that the bowel distal to the stoma is being rested (Black 2000, Taylor 2000).

End and loop colostomies are very different in appearance. An end colostomy tends to be flush to the skin and sutured to the abdominal wall and consists of an end-section of bowel, whereas a loop colostomy is larger in size. During the perioperative period it is supported by a stoma bridge or rod (Figure 6.14). This is placed under the section of bowel and is generally left in place for 3–10 days following surgery and then removed (Wright and Burch 2008).

Figure 6.14 Loop colostomy with bridge *in situ*.

Ileostomy

Ileostomies are formed when a section of ileum is brought out onto the abdominal wall. This is generally positioned at the end of the ileum on the right iliac fossa, but can be anywhere along the ileum. Consequently, the output tends to be looser, more liquid stool, as waste is being eliminated before the water is absorbed from the large bowel (colon). Due to the more acidic, abrasive nature of the stool at this stage, a spout is formed with this type of stoma. The ileum is everted to form a spout which allows the effluent to drain into an appliance, without coming into contact with the peristomal skin (Black 2000). This prevents skin breakdown and allows for better management. The average output from an ileostomy is 200–600 mL per day.

Ileostomies can also be either permanent (end) or temporary (loop). Permanent ileostomies are often formed following total colectomies (removal of the entire colon) for diverticular disease. Loop ileostomies are more common and are often formed to allow healing of a surgical join (anastomosis) lower down, to allow healing of an ileo-anal pouch or to aid healing of diseased bowel (Taylor 2005). These are sometimes held in place by a stoma bridge or rod. Refer to Procedure guideline 6.13 for more information on bridge/rod care and removal.

Evidence-based approaches

Stoma care has developed greatly over the years and is mainly based on experiential learning. Although an evidence base for this does exist, it mainly centres around clinical practice and experience.

Stoma care is very individual and requires full holistic patient assessment. The primary aim is to promote patient independence by providing care and advice on managing their stoma, therefore allowing the patient to continue with all the necessary activities of daily living.

Rationale

Indications

Stoma care is essential:

- to collect faeces or urine in an appropriate appliance
- to achieve and maintain patient comfort and security
- to maintain psychological adaptation and independence of the patient.

Legal and professional issues

As already discussed, stoma care is primarily based on experience and therefore the development of skills. It is a basic nursing task that all qualified nurses should be able to carry out. It has recently been recognized that many of the basic nursing skills are being carried out by healthcare assistants and carers. Therefore there is an increasing demand for education in this area. Stoma care often develops due to nurses who have an interest in this area and then further build on their skills. Due to the increasing demand

for good effective stoma care, many courses and conferences now exist to improve patient care and enhance interest.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Many of the appliances now available are very similar in style, colour and efficiency and often there is very little to choose between them when the time comes for the ostomate to decide what to wear.

The aim of good stoma care is to return patients to their place in society (Black 1994). One of the ways in which this can be facilitated is to provide them with a safe, reliable appliance. This means that there should be no fear of leakage or odour and the appliance should be comfortable, unobtrusive, easy to handle and disposable. The ostomate should be allowed a choice from the management systems available. It is also important to identify and manage early on problems with the stoma or peristomal skin. When choosing the appropriate management system for the new ostomate, factors which need to be considered include:

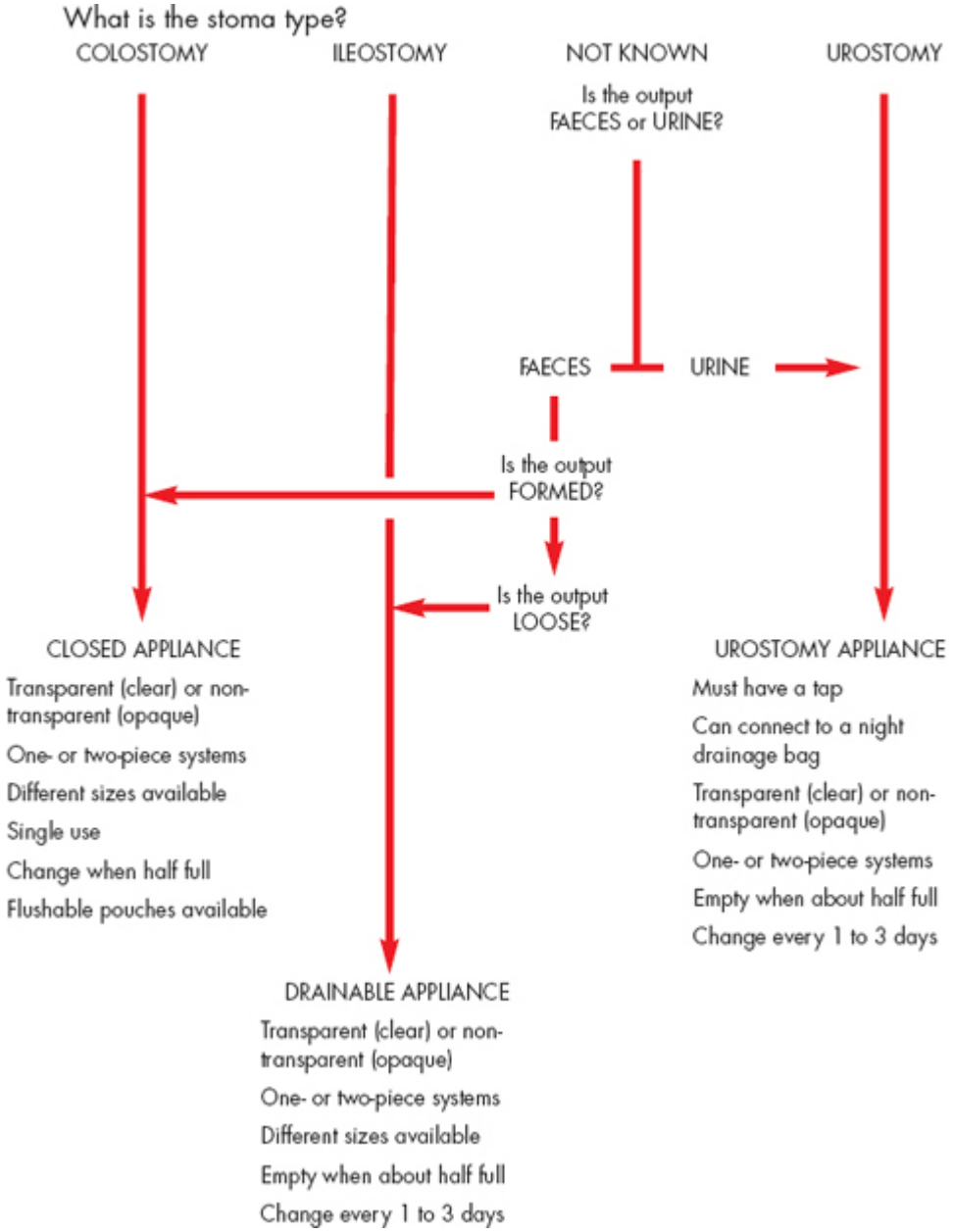
- type of stoma
- type of effluent
- patient's cognitive ability
- manual dexterity
- lifestyle
- condition of peristomal skin
- siting of stoma
- patient preference (Black 2000, Kirkwood 2006).

Pouches

Although some people whose stomas were created several years ago are wearing non-disposable rubber bags, most appliances used today are made from an odour-proof plastic film. These pouches usually adhere to the body by a hydrocolloid wafer or flange (Taylor 2000). Pouches may be opaque or clear and often have a soft backing to absorb perspiration. They usually have a built-in integral filter containing charcoal to neutralize any odour.

The type of pouch used will depend on the type of stoma and effluent expected. Refer to Figure 6.15 to assist pouch selection.

Figure 6.15 Flow chart for choosing appliances. International Ostomy Forum group (2006) Observation Index. Dansac Ltd.



Choosing the right size

It is important that the flange of the appliance fits snugly around the stoma within 0.3 cm of the stoma edge (Kirkwood 2006). This narrow edge is left

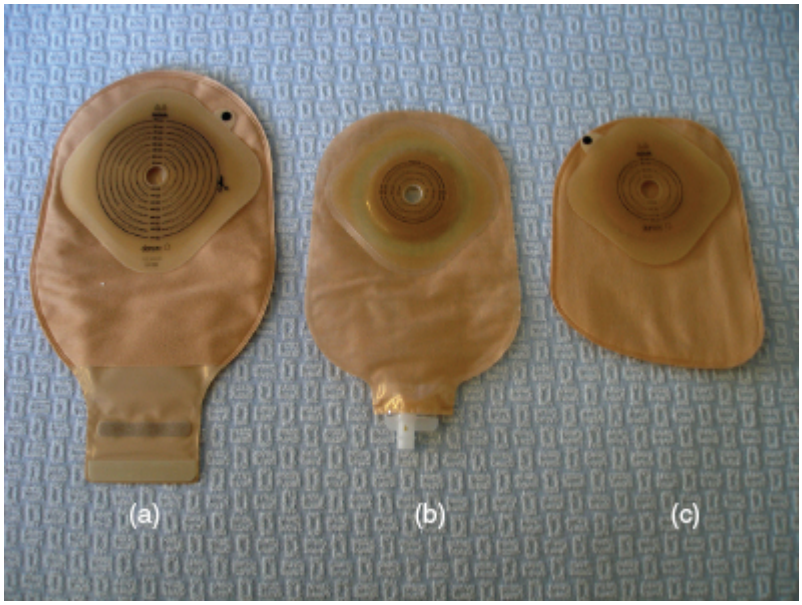
exposed so that the appliance does not rub on the stoma. Stoma appliances usually come with measuring guides to allow for choice of size. During the initial weeks following surgery, the oedematous stoma will gradually reduce in size and the appliances will be changed accordingly.

Fear of malodour when using pouches

Pouches usually have a built-in integral filter containing charcoal to neutralize any odour when flatus is released; therefore, smell is only noticeable when emptying or changing an appliance (Rudoni and Sica 1999). There are also various deodorizers available.These come in the form of drops or powders that may be put into the pouch or sprays, which can be sprayed into the air just before changing or emptying the pouch (Burch and Sica 2005). The individual should be reassured that any problems with odour or leakage will be investigated and that in most circumstances the problem will be solved with alternative appliances or accessories (Black 1997, Bryant 1993).

Drainable pouches are used when the effluent is fluid or semi-formed, that is, ileostomy or transverse colostomy (Figure 6.16a). These pouches have specially designed filters, which are less likely to become blocked or leak faecal fluid. They need to be emptied regularly and the outlet rinsed carefully and then closed with a clip or 'roll-up' method. They may be left on for up to 3 days.

Figure 6.16 Stoma equipment. (a) Drainable bowel stoma pouch. (b) Urostomy pouch. (c) Closed bag.



Urostomy pouches have a drainage tap for urine and should be emptied regularly (Figure 6.16b). They can be attached to a large bag and tubing for night drainage. These pouches can remain on for up to 3 days.

Closed pouches are mainly used when formed stool is expected, for example sigmoid colostomy (Figure 6.16c). They have a flatus filter and need to be changed once or twice a day.

One- or two-piece systems

All types of pouch (closed, drainable or with a tap) fall into one of two broad categories: one-piece or two-piece systems.

- *One-piece*: this comprises a pouch attached to an adhesive wafer that is removed completely when the pouch is changed. This is an easier system for an ostomate with dexterity problems, for example arthritis, peripheral neuropathy, to handle.
- *Two-piece*: this comprises a wafer onto which a pouch is clipped or stuck. It can be used with sore and sensitive skin because when the pouch is removed, the flange is left intact and so the skin is left undisturbed.

Plug system

Patients with colostomies may be able to stop the effluent by inserting a plug into the stoma lumen. This plug swells in the moist environment and

behaves as a seal. This system should only be introduced by a stoma nurse specialist (Taylor 2000).

Solutions for skin and stoma cleaning

Mild soap and water, or water only, is sufficient for skin and stoma cleaning. It is important that all soap residues are removed as they may interfere with pouch adhesion. Detergents, disinfectants and antiseptics cause dryness and irritation and should not be used. The stoma is not a wound or a lesion and should be regarded as a resited urethra or anus.

See Table 6.5 for a summary of products used in managing problems associated with stoma.

Table 6.5 A summary of products used in managing problems associated with stoma

Accessory	Product example	Use	Precautions
Creams	Chiron barrier cream (ABPI 1999)	Sensitive skin as a protective measure	Grease from creams can prevent adherence of the appliance
Protective films	Cavilon no sting barrier film, LBF	To prevent irritation and give protection	If contains alcohol, avoid on broken skin
Protective wafers	Stomahesive	To cover and protect skin	Allergies (rare)
Seals/washers	Cohesive seals Hollister barrier rings	Provide skin protection around the stoma. Useful to fill gaps and dips in skin	Allergies (rare)
Pastes	Stomahesive adapt paste	Useful to fill gaps and dips in skin and provide a smoother surface for applying the pouch	If contains alcohol, avoid on broken skin Should not be used as a solution to an ill-fitting pouch
Protective paste	Orabase paste	Protect raw, sore areas	
Powders	Ostoseal protective powder	Protect sore, wet areas and aid healing	Can sometimes affect adherence
Adhesive preparations	Saltair solution	To improve adherence of product	Should not be used as a solution to an ill-fitting pouch
Adhesive removers	Appeel Adhesive remover aerosols	Aids removal of pouch if patient experiencing pain when pouch removed	Some contain alcohol and should not be used on broken skin
Stoma baseplate securing tape	Hydroframe	To improve patient security. Useful for patients with parastomal hernias	Should not be used as a solution to an ill-fitting pouch
Thickening agents	Gel-X capsules, Ostosorb gel	To help solidify loose stoma output	If output is loose, cause should be investigated
Convex devices	Adapt ring convex inserts, soft seal	Useful for retracted stomas	Bruising and ulceration if used incorrectly
Aerosols	Limone, FreshAire	To mask and absorb odour	Avoid patient associating aerosol spray with stoma
Drops and powders	Nodor S Drops	Deodorizing bag contents	

Deodorants

Aerosols

Use: To absorb or mask odour. *Method*: One or two puffs into the air before emptying or removing appliance. *Examples*: Limone, Naturcare, FreshAire.

Drops and powders

Use: For deodorizing bag contents. *Method*: Before fitting pouch or after emptying and cleaning drainable pouch, squeeze tube two or three times. *Examples*: Ostobon deodorant powder, Nodor S drops, Saltair No-roma.

Preoperative assessment and care

Preoperative care can be divided into two sections: physical and psychological.

Physical

- Firstly, physical care consists of surgical preparation, which can be in the form of bowel preparation where patients are required to take laxatives to cleanse their bowel prior to surgery. This arguably improves surgical visibility and prevents contamination. This depends on the surgeon's preference and needs to be checked with the patient's surgical team on admission.
- Due to the current developments regarding reducing patients' hospital stay, many hospitals are carrying out enhanced recovery programmes for colorectal patients. This involves intensive input preoperatively, where selected patients are required to take nutritional drinks and develop skills in changing a stoma bag. This will improve recovery and management and consequently reduce hospital stay. These enhanced recovery programmes are relatively new and are still being trialled in many centres.
- Finally, stoma siting is one of the most important tasks to be carried out by a doctor, stoma care nurse or ward nurse or anyone with appropriate knowledge and skills. This minimizes future difficulties such as the stoma interfering with clothes or skin problems caused by leakage of the appliance due to a badly sited stoma (Bass *et al.* 1997, Qin and Bao-Min 2001).

Patient assessment is necessary taking into account:

- physical problems
- disabilities
- mental state
- visual impairment
- manual dexterity

- lifestyle
- work
- leisure/sporting activities
- ethnicity.

The following guidelines should be adhered to when siting a stoma.

- Locate the rectus muscle: this reduces the risk of herniation later (Myers 1996). The muscle can be identified by asking the patient to lie flat and raise their head. The muscle may also be palpated and easily felt when the patient coughs.
- Identify a flat area of skin on the abdomen, as this facilitates safe adhesion of the appliance.
- Avoid skin creases, especially in the region of the groin or the umbilicus, to avoid urine or faecal matter tracking along the skin creases.
- Avoid any previous or proposed scars, which may lead to skin creases and difficulty applying a bag.
- Avoid bony prominences and pendulous breasts as this may hinder vision of the stoma.
- Avoid the waistline or belt areas, as the patient's clothing may put pressure on the stoma which may lead to leaks or trauma of the stoma.
- Ideally the patient should be able to see their stoma as this will make postoperative self-care easier.

All these factors need to be carefully considered and discussed with the patient whilst siting the stoma. Patient involvement is important as it allows the patient control and enhances their coping strategies. Make sure that you get the patient to adopt various positions before making a final decision on the stoma site, for example lying flat, sitting, standing, bending, as this sometimes changes the decision based on skin creases and patient comfort. Consideration must be given to any bending or lifting involved with the patient's work and any other activities in which the patient partakes. Account must also be taken of any weight gain or loss in the postoperative period, as this may change the contours of the abdomen and hence the position of the stoma.

Once the site has been chosen, it should be clearly marked with a permanent marker pen, preferably a few days before the surgery. Offering

the patient a bag to wear prior to surgery allows them time to adapt to their proposed surgery. This procedure should then be documented in the medical notes, stating any complications or issues discussed.

Psychological

Psychological preparation of the individual facing stoma surgery should begin as soon as surgery is considered, preferably by utilizing the skills of a trained stoma care nurse. It is important that the information and discussions are tailored to the individual's needs, taking into account their level of anxiety and distress (Borwell 1997).

It is important that patients meet all members of the multidisciplinary team who are involved in their care and that they fully understand the need for the stoma surgery. This needs to be explained in order to obtain informed consent. It is beneficial if the patient is met in preassessment or at home prior to surgery to discuss the implications of stoma care and the patient's role in rehabilitation. At this point it is also helpful to provide the patient with written information and access to self-help support groups.

Stoma counselling is often best carried out by the specialist stoma care nurse involved in the patient's care. This provides an ideal opportunity to discuss issues such as:

- body image
- family relationships
- sexual relationships
- depression and anger
- fears and concerns.

It is often beneficial to provide patients with some patient information/literature to take home. This gives them an opportunity to digest the information and write down any questions that they have. There are many different aids available, such as information booklets, samples of various products, diagrams, DVDs and internet websites. These help to reinforce and clarify the verbal information given to the patient.

Specific patient preparation

Patient education

Patients undergoing stoma formation have to make major physical and psychological adjustments following surgery. If surgery is elective, patient education should begin in the preoperative period (O'Connor 2005). Adequate pre- and postoperative support is mandatory to improve quality of life for stoma patients (Bloeman *et al*. 2009). Individual holistic patient assessment is key as it is important to identify appropriate teaching strategies for each patient. One of the most important ways in which a nurse can support the patient is to teach them stoma care, ensuring independence before discharge (Burch and Sica 2005). It is important that the patient is able to independently change their stoma bag, recognize problems and obtain support and supplies once discharged home. Providing patients with adequate information and input helps to promote patient decision making by allowing them control (Henderson 2003).

You will wear gloves when changing an appliance. This practice should be explained to patients so that they do not feel it is just because they have a stoma that gloves are worn. (It is recognized that it could be difficult to attach an appliance with gloves *in situ*, due to adhesive, but once the stoma has been cleaned of excreta and blood, gloves may be removed to apply bag.)

Procedure guideline 6.12 Stoma care

Essential equipment

Clean tray holding

- Tissues, wipes
- New appliance
- Measuring device/template
- Scissors
- Disposal bags for used appliances, tissues and wipes
- Relevant accessories, for example adhesive remover, protective film, seals/washers
- Bowl of warm water
- Soap (if desired)
- Jug for contents of appliance
- Gloves

Preprocedure	
Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C). To familiarize the patient with the procedure.
2 Ensure that the patient is in a suitable and comfortable position where they will be able to watch the procedure, if well enough. A mirror may be used to aid visualization.	To allow good access to the stoma for cleaning and for secure application of the stoma bag. The patient will become familiar with the stoma and will also learn much about the care of the stoma by observation of the nurse (Bryant 1993, P).
3 Use a small protective pad to protect the patient's clothing from drips if the effluent is fluid and apply gloves for nurse's protection.	Avoids the necessity for renewing clothing or bedclothes and demoralization of the patient as a result of soiling. E
Procedure	
4 If the bag is of the drainable type, empty the contents into a jug before removing the bag.	For ease of handling the appliance and prevention of spillage. E
5 Remove the appliance. Peel the adhesive off the skin with one hand while exerting gentle pressure on the skin with the other.	To reduce trauma to the skin. Erythema as a result of removing the appliance is normal and quickly settles (Broadwell 1987, C).
6 Fold appliance in two to ensure no spillage and place in disposal bag.	To ensure safe disposal according to environmental policy (DH 2005a, C).
7 Remove excess faeces or mucus from the stoma with a damp tissue.	So that the stoma and surrounding skin are clearly visible. E
8 Examine the skin and stoma for soreness, ulceration or other unusual phenomena. If the skin is unblemished and the stoma is a healthy red colour, proceed.	For the prevention of complications or the treatment of existing problems. E
9 Wash the skin and stoma gently until they are clean.	To promote cleanliness and prevent skin excoriation. E
10 Dry the skin and stoma gently but thoroughly.	The appliance will attach more securely to dry skin. E,C
11 Measure the stoma and cut appliance leaving 3 mm clearance. Apply a clean appliance.	Appliance should provide skin protection. The aperture should be cut just a little larger than the stoma so that effluent cannot cause skin damage. This should be no more than 3 mm from the stoma (Kirkwood 2006, C).
Postprocedure	
12 Dispose of soiled tissues and the used appliance in a disposable bag and place it in an appropriate plastic bin. At home the bag should be placed in a plastic bag, tied and disposed of in a rubbish bag.	To ensure safe disposal. E
13 Wash hands thoroughly using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To prevent spread of infection by contaminated hands (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Procedure guideline 6.13 Stoma bridge or rod removal

Essential equipment

Clean tray holding

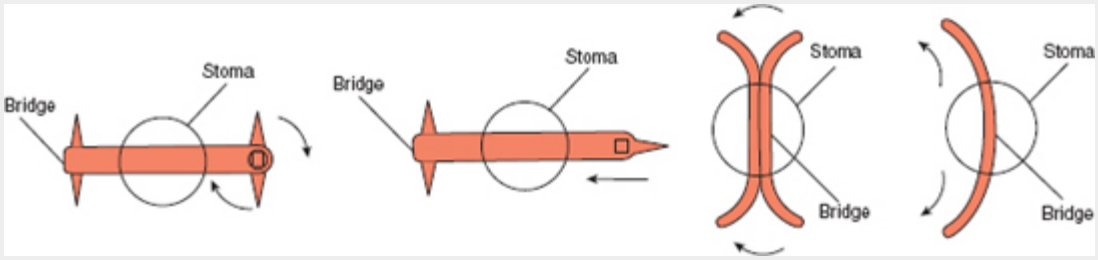
- Tissues
- New appliances
- Disposal bags for used appliances and tissues
- Relevant accessories, for example belt
- Bowl of warm water
- Soap if desired
- Jug for contents of appliance
- Gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C).
2 Ensure the patient is in a suitable and comfortable position.	To allow good access to the stoma for cleaning and for secure application of stoma bag. E
3 Apply gloves.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 If the bag is of the drainable type, empty the contents into a jug before removing the bag.	For ease of handling the appliance and prevention of spillage. E
Procedure	
5 Remove the appliance. Peel the adhesive off the skin with one hand while exerting gentle pressure on the skin with the other.	To reduce trauma to the skin. Erythema as a result of removing the appliance is normal and quickly settles (Broadwell 1987, C).
6 Remove excess faeces or mucus from the stoma with a damp tissue.	So that the stoma and surrounding skin are clearly visible. E
7 Slide the bridge gently to one side to ensure the mobile wing of the bridge is away from the stoma. Turn this wing so that it becomes flush	To prepare bridge for removal. E

with the bridge. Gently slide the bridge through the stoma loop (see Action Figure 7).	
8 Fold the bridge in half so that the bridge appears in a 'C' shape. Gently slide the bridge through the stoma loop (see Action Figure 7).	
9 Examine the skin and stoma for soreness, ulceration or other unusual phenomena. If the skin is unblemished and the stoma is a healthy red colour, proceed. If the skin is red and/or broken, apply barrier cream. If the stoma is not a healthy red colour inform medical and/or stoma care nurse.	For the prevention of complications or the treatment of existing problems (see Table 6.5). E
10 Wash the skin and stoma gently until they are clean.	To promote cleanliness and prevent skin excoriation. E
11 Dry the skin and stoma gently but thoroughly.	The appliance will attach more securely to dry skin. E
12 Apply a clean appliance.	To contain effluent from the stoma. E
13 Dispose of soiled tissues, the bridge and the used bag.	To prevent environmental contamination. E
14 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Action Figure 7 Removal of stoma bridge or rod.



Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Colostomy function

In the first few days a sigmoid colon stoma will produce haemoserous fluid and wind. By day 5 there should be some faecal fluid and then by day 7–14, semi-formed stool (Cottam 1999). A closed appliance may be used. In the case of a stoma formed in the transverse colon, only a small amount of water will be reabsorbed from the faecal matter, so the faecal matter will be unformed. This means a drainable pouch will need to be used.

Patients with a sigmoid colostomy may find that wholemeal foods assist in producing a formed stool once or twice daily (Black 1998, Myers 1996). Medications that reduce peristaltic action, for example codeine phosphate, may also be used to control diarrhoea. The only means of controlling a sigmoid colostomy, however, is by regular irrigation or by use of a Conseal plug system. Stoma care nurses will need to assess patients before teaching them how to perform the irrigation procedure or to use Conseal plugs.

Ileostomy function

For the first few days the stoma will produce haemoserous fluid and wind. By days 5–10 there will be brown faecal matter (Cottam 1999). The fluid output after surgery can be as much as 1500 mL/24 hours but this will gradually reduce to 500–850 mL/24 hours as the bowel settles down (Black 2000). Sometimes the output from a stoma remains high (>1000 mL/24 hours), which may be due to the amount of small bowel removed at surgery or an underlying bowel condition; these patients require careful management.

It is important that fluid balance recordings are made and serum electrolytes are measured as patients are at risk of sodium and/or magnesium depletion (Burch 2004). Patients with a high-output stoma may need to be managed by specialist teams which include gastroenterologists, dietitians and stoma care nurses. The effluent takes on a porridge-like consistency when a normal intake of food is established. A drainable appliance is therefore used. The effluent contains enzymes, which will excoriate the skin, so if the pouch leaks, it must be changed promptly to prevent skin breakdown. The effluent cannot be controlled and is often more active after meals (Black 1997, Myers 1996). Sometimes medication, for example codeine or loperamide, which reduces peristaltic action, may be used to control excessive watery output.

Urostomy/ileal conduit function

Urine will dribble from the stoma every 20–30 seconds and it starts draining immediately. Normal output is 1500 mL/24 hours (Cottam 1999), but may be less after periods of reduced fluid intake, for example at night. Urinary stents (fine-bore catheters) may be in place from the ureters past

the anastomosis and out of the stoma. They are placed to maintain patency and protect the suturing until primary healing is completed (Black 2000). Stents are left *in situ* for 7–10 days.

Postoperative stages

Stage I

In theatre, an appropriately sized transparent drainable appliance should be applied, which should be left on for approximately 2 days. For the first 48 hours postoperatively, the stoma should be observed for signs of ischaemia or necrosis and the stoma colour (a pink and healthy appearance indicates a good blood supply), size and stoma output should be noted, as should the presence of any devices, such as ureteric stents or bridge with a loop stoma (Kirkwood 2006).

Table 6.6 recommends the most appropriate bag type to use on each type of stoma and the expected output. The drainable appliance should always be emptied frequently, gas should be allowed to escape and the appliance should not be allowed to get more than half full with effluent. If the appliance becomes too full, leaks may occur and the weight from the effluent or the pressure from gas may cause the appliance to fall off (Black 1997). A leak-proof, odour-resistant well-fitted appliance does much to promote patient confidence at this time (Kirkwood 2006). The first time a bowel stoma acts, the type, appearance, quantity and consistency of the matter passed should be recorded; this includes any flatus that may be passed (Kirkwood 2006).

Table 6.6 Decision tool to use when selecting appropriate bag/pouch

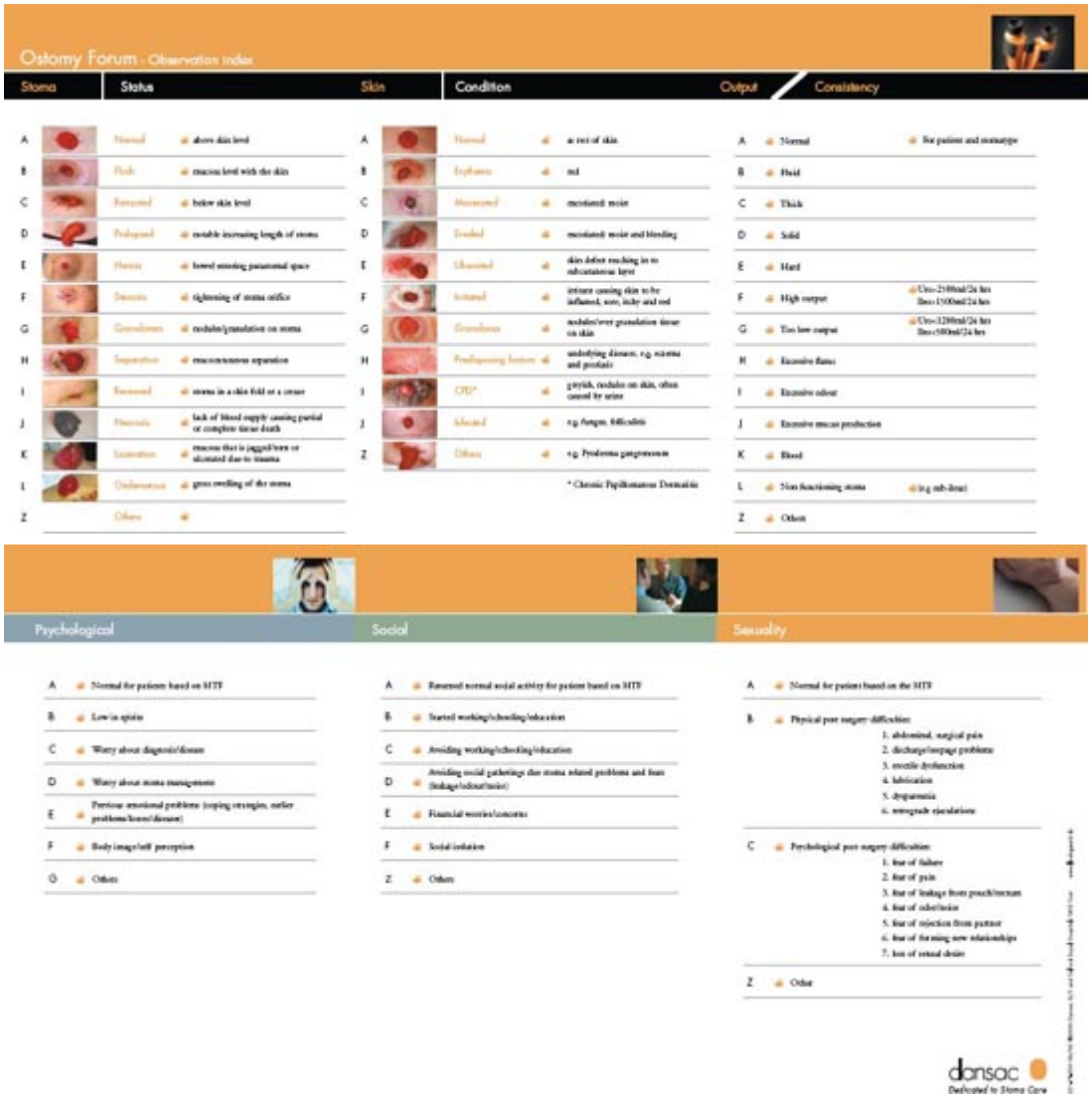
Type of stoma	Expected postoperative output	Recommended bag to be used	Expected stoma output on discharge	Recommended bag to be used on discharge
Colostomy	Haemoserous fluid Flatus Liquid/loose stool	Clear drainable bag	Soft formed stool Bowel action 1–3 times a day	Closed opaque bag
Ileostomy	Haemoserous fluid Liquid/loose stool Flatus	Clear drainable bag	Loose stool Approximately >600 mL per day	Opaque drainable bag
Urostomy	Urine Mucus	Clear drainable bag with tap	Urine 0.5 mL/kg/h	Opaque drainable bag with tap

Immediately postoperatively patients would not be expected to perform their own stoma care but would be encouraged to observe the nurse caring for them and discuss it with the nurse. During appliance changes, observations should be made of the following.

- *Stoma*: colour, size and general appearance: oedematous, flush with abdomen, retracted.
- *Peristomal skin*: presence of any erythema, broken areas, rashes.
- *Stoma/skin margin (mucocutaneous margin)*: sutures intact, tension on sutures, separation of stoma edge from skin (mucocutaneous separation).

Any abnormalities should be reported to the stoma care nurse and medical staff (Black 2000, Burch 2004, Kirkwood 2006) (Figure 6.17).

Figure 6.17 Observational index. With permission from Dansac Ltd.



Viewing the stoma may be difficult for the patient, who may be very aware of other people's reaction to it (Price 1990). The patient's reaction to their stoma should be observed and recorded.

Stage II

As the patient's condition improves, they should be encouraged to participate in the care of their stoma. A demonstration change of the appliance should be given with a full explanation of the principles of stoma care. This will be followed by further opportunities to discuss any problems or raise new queries. Care procedures should be divided into small successive stages and patients should be given support to work through these stages until they are able to take on the care of their stoma. Provided

the patient agrees, it is useful to involve the patient's partner or close friends or relatives at this stage. Their acceptance of the stoma may encourage the patient and help to restore the patient's self-esteem (Salter 1995). They may now be ready to discuss appliances and choose the one that they wish to use at home. Preparation for discharge will be discussed (Black 1994, Heywood Jones 1994).

Stage III

Ideally, the patient should now be independent, eating a normal diet, be ready for discharge and should be competent in stoma care. If the family or close friends are closely involved during all stages and are supportive, patients are better able to adapt to the threat of mutilating surgery and altered pattern of elimination (Price 1990). The family or close friends are also likely to require support and information so that they are in a position to help the ostomate. Acceptance of the stoma is a gradual process and, on discharge from hospital, patients may only be beginning to adapt to life with a stoma (Salter/RCN 1997).

Ongoing care

Body image

Stoma formation creates many issues for the patient and many struggle with body image. Studies suggest that this is often overlooked (Opus 2010). The circumstances in which the stoma is formed will influence psychological recovery (Black 2000). Communication is key and it is important to allow the patient and family to discuss their concerns and anxieties. Therefore stoma care nurses play a vital role in supporting the patient and family. It is important to promote patient independence and acceptance.

Diet

All patients should be encouraged to eat a wide variety of foods. Our digestive system reacts in an individual way to different foods and so it is important that patients try a wide range of foods on several occasions and that none should be specifically avoided (Bridgewater 1999). Patients can then make decisions about different foods based on their own experience of

their own reaction. Explanations should be given of how the gut functions, how it has been changed since surgery and the effects certain foodstuffs may cause.

Colostomy and ileostomy formation means the loss of the anal sphincter so passage of wind cannot be controlled. High-fibre foods such as beans and pulses produce wind as they are broken down in the gut; hence individuals who eat large quantities of these foodstuffs may be troubled by wind. There are several non-food causes of wind, such as chewing gum, eating irregularly and drinking fizzy drinks, which should be considered before blaming a particular food (Bridgewater 1999). Eating yoghurt or drinking buttermilk may help reduce wind for these patients. Green vegetables, pulses and spicy food are examples of foods that may cause colostomy and ileostomy output to increase or become watery. Boiled rice, smooth peanut butter, apple sauce and bananas are some of the foods that may help thicken stoma output (Black 2000, Bridgewater 1999).

Some foods, for example tomato skin and pips, may be seen unaltered in the output from an ileostomy (Black 1997, Blackley 1998, Hulten and Palselius 1996). Celery, dried fruit, nuts and potato skins are some of the foods which can temporarily block ileostomies (Black 2000, Bridgewater 1999). The blockage is usually related to the amount eaten (Wood 1998). The offending food can be tried at another time in small quantities, ensuring it is chewed well and not eaten in a hurry (Bridgewater 1999).

There are no dietary restrictions with a urostomy. It must be stressed, however, that an adequate fluid intake must be maintained to minimize the risk of urinary tract infection. The recommended fluid intake for all individuals is 1.5–2.0 litres per day (Bridgewater 1999). Fluid intake should be increased in hot weather or at times when there is an increase in sweating, for example exercise, fever. Beetroot, radishes, spinach and some food dye may discolour urine; some drugs may also have this effect, for example metronidazole, nitrofurantoin. Urine may develop a strong odour following consumption of asparagus or fish (Bridgewater 1999).

Fear of malodour

This is a common fear for patients with bowel stomas, often based on hearsay or experience with other ostomists in hospital or the community.

Appliances are odour free when fitted correctly. Flatus may be released via charcoal filters and deodorizers are available. The individual must be reassured, however, that any problems that occur postoperatively will be investigated, with a good possibility of their being solved by such means as the use of alternative appliances (Black 2000, Burch 2004).

Sex and the ostomate

The possibility of sexual impairment for both men and women after stoma surgery depends on the nature of the operation, and the ensuing damage to the nerves and tissues involved. The psychological impact of the surgery and its effect on the individual's body image must also be taken into consideration. Surgery that results in physical sexual disability will have psychological repercussions, while some sexual difficulties may be of psychological origin (Black 2004, Borwell 1997, Salter 1996). Impairment may be permanent or temporary. In the latter case, resolution of the difficulty may take anything up to 2 years. Pre- and postoperative counselling should be offered for both patient and partner.

All patients may experience loss of libido and sexual desire. Ejaculatory disturbances occur following cystectomy so men facing this surgery should be offered sperm banking prior to surgery. Erectile dysfunction is a common complication of pelvic surgery and there are a number of treatment options available. These include oral medications (sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil), sublingual apomorphine, intraurethral and intracavernosal alprostadil, vacuum devices and penile implants (Ashford 1998, Kirby *et al.* 1999, Newey 1998).

Female patients may experience dyspareunia; this may be due to narrowing or shortening of the vagina, a reduction in the volume of vaginal secretions or changes in genital sensations (Black 2004, Borwell 1999, Schover 1986). The use of a lubricant, adopting different positions during lovemaking or encouraging greater relaxation by extending foreplay may help resolve painful intercourse (Black 2004, Borwell 1999, Bryant 1993).

Discharge planning

Discharge planning for the patient with a stoma should commence once the patient is admitted. It is important to set a provisional discharge date and set

realistic goals with the patient. The patient needs to be discharged home with:

- adequate stoma supplies (approx. 2 weeks' supply)
- contact details of community stoma care nurse
- prescription details of products being used
- information on delivery company, if relevant.

Continuity of care for these patients is crucial. Effective communication and collaboraton between healthcare professionals are key to psychological adaptation and successful rehabilitation (Borwell 2009).

Follow-up support

The patient is discharged with adequate supplies until a prescription is obtained from the general practitioner. Written reminders are provided of how to care for the stoma, how to obtain supplies of appliances, and any other information that may be required. The patient should have details of non-medical stoma clinics, details about the relevant agencies and information about voluntary associations. Arrangements should also have been made for a home visit from the stoma care nurse and/or the community nurse (Blackley 1998, Cronin 2005). Figure 6.18 provides an example of a discharge checklist.

Figure 6.18 Discharge checklist. From The Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust, Stoma Care Pathway.

		Tick Box	Date, Signature & Print Name
1.	Planned date of discharge: _____	Yes ☐ No ☐	
2.	Is the patient independent with stoma care	Yes ☐ No ☐	
3.	Community stoma care nurse informed	Yes ☐ No ☐	
4.	District nurses informed if necessary	Yes ☐ No ☐ N/A ☐	
5.	Date of first home visit by community stoma care nurse	Date:	
6.	Patient given contact details of community stoma care nurse Nurses NAME: _____ Contact telephone number: _____	Yes ☐ No ☐	
7.	If patient has chosen to use a delivery company, company informed and first order placed	Yes ☐ No ☐	
8.	Outpatient appointment made: _____	Yes ☐ No ☐	
9.	Patient given two weeks supply of stoma products	Yes ☐ No ☐	

Obtaining supplies

All NHS patients with a permanent stoma are entitled to free prescriptions for their stoma care products, and should complete the relevant forms for exemption from payment. Appliances can then be obtained from the local chemist, free home delivery services or directly from the appropriate manufacturers.

Complications

As a healthcare professional providing support and care to stoma patients, it is important to be able to distinguish normal from abnormal. The

observational index (see Figure 6.17) provides a reference guide to use when observing, recording and reporting. If any of the complications are noted, it is important to ensure that the medical team and/or stoma care nurse is informed. Advice on how to manage these problems should be obtained from your specialist stoma care nurse. Recognition of problems and complications early can prevent more serious complications later.

Websites

Medic-Alert Foundation: www.medicalert.org.uk
Sexual Dysfunction Association: www.sexualdysfunctionassociation.com
Urostomy Association: www.uagbi.org

References

Abd-el-Maeboud, K.H., El-Naggar, T. and El-Hawi, E.M.M. (1991) Rectal suppositories. Commonsense mode of insertion. *Lancet*, **338**, 798–800.

ABPI (1999) *ABPI Compendium of Data Sheets and Summaries of Product Characteristics 1999–2000*. Datapharm Publications, Leatherhead, Surrey.

Addison, R. (1999) Practical procedures for nurses No. 37.1. Fluid intake and continence care. *Nursing Times*, **95** (49), 12.

Addison, R. (2000a) Fluid intake: how coffee and caffeine affect continence. *Nursing Times*, **96** (40) (Suppl), 7–8.

Addison, R. (2000b) Fluids, fibre and constipation. *Nursing Times*, **96** (31) (Suppl), 11–12.

Ashford, L. (1998) Erectile dysfunction. *Professional Nurse*, **13** (9), 603–608.

Association for Continence Advice (2003/2008) *Notes on Good Practice*. Association for Continence Advice, London.

Bardsley, A. (2005) Use of lubricant gels in urinary catheterisation. *Nursing Standard*, **20** (8), 41–46.

Bardsley, A. (2009) Coated catheters – reviewing the literature. *Journal of Community Nursing*, **23** (2), 15–17.

Barnes, K.E. and Malone-Lee, J. (1986) Long-term catheter management: minimizing the problem of premature replacement due to balloon deflation. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **11** (3), 303–307.

Barrett, J.A. (1992) Faecal incontinence, in *Clinial Nursing Practice. The Promotion and Management of Continence* (ed. B. Roe). Prentice Hall, New York, pp. 196–219.

Bass, E.M., Del Pino, A., Tan, A. et al. (1997) Does preoperative stoma marking and education by the enterostomal therapist affect outcome? *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum*, **40** (4), 440–442.

Bardsley, A. and Kyle, G. (2008) The use of gloves in urethral catheterisation. *Continence UK*, **2** (1), 65–68.

BAUN (2000) *Guidelines for Female Urethral Catheterisation using 2% Lignocaine Gel (Instillagel)*. British Association of Urological Nurses. Fitwise, Bathgate, Scotland.

BAUN and Astratech Healthcare (2009) *Clean Intermittent Catheterisation. The Patient's Journey*. British Association of Urological Nurses, Bathgate, Scotland.

Baxter, A. and Salter, M. (2000) Stoma care nursing. *Nursing Standard*, **14**, 59.

Beeckman, D., Schoonhoven, L., Verhaeghe, S. et al. (2009) Prevention and treatment of incontinence-associated dermatitis: literature review. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **65** (6), 1141–1154.

Bell, S. (2004) Investigations and management of chronic diarrhoea in adults, in *Bowel Continence Nursing* (eds C. Norton and S. Chelvanayagam). Beaconsfield Publishers, Beaconsfield, Bucks, pp. 92–102.

Bierman, S. and Carigan, M. (2003) The prevention of adverse events associated with urinary tract catheterization. *Managing Infection Control*, September, 43–49.

Black, P. (1994) Stoma care: a practical approach. *Nursing Standard*, **8** (34). RCN Nurs Update, Learning Unit 045.

Black, P. (1997) Practical stoma care. *Nursing Standard*, **11** (47), 49–53.

Black, P. (1998) Colostomy. *Professional Nurse*, **13** (12), 851–857.

Black, P. (2000) Practical stoma care. *Nursing Standard*, **14** (41), 47–55.

Black, P. (2004) Psychological, sexual and cultural issues for patients with a stoma. *British Journal of Nursing*, **13** (12), 692–697.

Blackley, P. (1998) *Practical Stoma, Wound and Continence Management*. Research Publications, Australia.

Blandy, J.P. and Moors, J. (1989) *Urology for Nurses*. Blackwell Scientific, Oxford.

Bloemen, J.G., Visschers, R.G., Truin, W., Beets, G.L. and Konsten, J.L. (2009) Long-term quality of life in patients with rectal cancer:

association with severe postoperative complications and presence of a stoma. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum*, **52** (7), 1251–1258.

BNF (2011) *British National Formulary*. BMJ Group and the RPS Publishing, London.

Booth, F. (2009) Ensuring penile sheaths do their job properly. *Nursing and Residential Care*, **11** (11), 550–554.

Booth, F. and Lee, L. (2005) A guide to selecting and using urinary sheaths. *Nursing Times*, **101** (47), 43–46.

Borwell, B. (1997) Psychological considerations of stoma care nursing. *Nursing Standard*, **11** (48) 49–55.

Borwell, B. (1999) Sexuality and stoma care, in *Stoma Care in the Community: A Clinical Resource dor Practitioners* (ed. P. Taylor). Nursing Times Books, London, pp. 110–135.

Borwell, B. (2009) Continuity of care for the stoma patient: psychological considerations. *British Journal of Community Nursing*, **14** (8), 330–331.

Bowers, B. (2006) Evaluating the evidence for administering phosphate enemas. *British Journal of Nursing*, **15** (7), 378–381.

Bridgewater, S.E. (1999) Dietary considerations, in *Stoma Care in the Community: A Clinical Resource dor Practitioners* (ed. P. Taylor). Nursing Times Books, London.

British Nutrition Foundation (2004) Dietary fibre. www.nutrition.org.uk.

Broadwell, D.C. (1987) Peristomal skin integrity. *Nursing Clinics of North America*, **22** (2), 321–332.

Brocklehurst, J.C., Hickey, D.S., Davies, I., Kennedy, A.P. and Morris, J.A. (1988) A new urethral catheter. *BMJ*, **296** (6638), 1691–1693.

Brosnahan, J., Jull, A. and Tracy, C. (2006) Types of urethral catheters for management of short-term voiding problems in hospitalised adults (review). *The Cochrane Collaboration. The Cochrane Library*, Issue 2. John Wiley, New York.

Brown, S.R., Cann, P.A. and Read, N. (1990) Effect of coffee on distal colon function. *Gut*, **31**, 450–453.

Bryant, R.A. (1993) Ostomy patient management: care that engenders adaptation. *Cancer Investigations*, **11** (5), 565–577.

Burch, J. (2004) The management and care of people with stoma complications. *British Journal of Nursing*, **13** (6), 307–308, 310, 312, 314–318.

Burch, J. and Sica, J. (2005) Stoma care accessories: an overview of a crowded market. *British Journal of Community Nursing*, **10** (1), 24–31.

Bush, S. (2000) Fluids, fibre and constipation. *Nursing Times*, **96** (31) (Suppl), 11–12.

Butler, M. (1998) Laxatives and rectal preparations. *Nursing Times*, **94** (3), 56–58.

Cadd, A., Keatinge, D., Henssen, M. et al. (2000) Assessment and documentation of bowel care management in palliative care: incorporating patient preferences into the care regimen. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **9**, 228–235.

Chelvanayagam, S. and Norton, C. (2004) Nursing assessment of adults with faecal incontinence, in *Bowel Continence Nursing* (eds C. Norton and S. Chelvanayagam). Beaconsfield Publishers, Beaconfield, Bucks, pp. 45–62.

Christer, R., Robinson, L. and Bird, C. (2003) Constipation. Causes and cures. *Nursing Times*, **99** (25), 26–27.

Clarke, B. (1988) Making sense of enemas. *Nursing Times*, **84** (30), 40–44.

Clifford, E. (2000) Urinary catheters: reducing the incidence of problems. *Community Nurse*, **6** (4), 35–36.

Conill, C., Verger, E., Henriques, I. et al. (1997) Symptom prevalence: I the last week of life. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **14** (6), 328–331.

Cook, T., Frall, S., Gough, A. and Lennard, F. (1999) The conservative management of constipation in adults. *J Assoc Chart Physiother Women's Health*, **85**, 24–28.

Cottam, J. (1999) Recovering after stoma surgery (Know How Series). *Community Nurse*, **5** (9), 24–25.

Cronin, E. (2005) Best practice in discharging patients with a stoma. *Nursing Times*, **101** (47), 67–68.

Crow, R.A., Chapman, R.C., Roe, B.H. and Wilson, J.A. (1986) *A Study of Patients with Indwelling Catheters and Related Nursing Practice*. University of Surrey, Guildford.

Cummings, J.H. (1994) Non-starch polysaccharides (dietary fibre) including bulk laxatives in constipation, in *Constipation* (eds M.A. Kamm and J.E. Lennard-Jones). Wrightson Biomedical, Petersfield, Hampshire, pp. 307–314.

Cutts, B. (2005) Developing and implementing a new bladder irrigation chart. *Nursing Standard*, **20** (8), 48–53.

Cymet, T. (2001) Do silver alloy catheters increase the risk of systemic argyria? *Archives of Internal Medicine*, **161** (7), 1014–1015.

Davies, C. (2004) The use of phosphate enemas in the treatment of constipation: use of laxatives. *British Journal of Nursing*, **12** (19), 1130–1136.

Day, A. (2001) The nurse's role in managing constipation. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (8), 41–44.

DH (1998) *Nutritional Aspects of the Development of Cancer. Report on Health and Social Subjects 48*. HMSO, London.

DH (2005a) *Hazardous Waste (England) Regulations*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2005b) *Prescription Cost Analysis, England 2004*. HMSO, London.

DH and Chief Medical Officer (2003) *Winning Ways: Working Together to Reduce Healthcare Associated Infection in England: Report of the Chief Medical Officer*. Department of Health, London.

Doherty, W. (2006) Male urinary catheterisation. *Nursing Standard*, **20** (35), 57–63.

Eastwood, L. (2009) Safe and secure – improving practice in the UK. *Journal of Community Nursing*, **23** (5), 30–32.

Edwards, C., Dolman, M. and Horton, N. (2003) Down, down and away! An overview of adult constipation and faecal incontinence, in

Promoting Continence. A Clinical and Research Resource, 2nd edn. (eds K. Getliffe and E. Dolman). Bailliére Tindall, London, pp. 185–226.

Edwards, L.E., Lock, R., Powell, C. and Jones, P. (1983) Post-catheterisation urethral strictures. A clinical and experimental study. *British Journal of Urology*, **55** (1), 53–56.

Ehrenpreis, E.D. (1995) Definitions and epidemiology of constipation, in *Constipation. Etiology, Evaluation and Management* (eds S.D. Wexner and D.C.C. Bartolo). Butterworth Heinemann, Philadelphia, pp. 3–8.

Ejemot, R., Ehir, J., Meremikwu, M. and Critchley, J. (2008) Hand washing for preventing diarrhea. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **1**, CD004265.

Emly, M., Wilson, L. and Darby, J. (1997) Abdominal massage for adults with learning disabilities. *Nursing Times*, **97** (30) (Suppl), 61–62.

Evans, A., Painter, D. and Feneley, R. (2001) Blocked urinary catheters: nurses' preventive role. *Nursing Times*, **97** (1), 37–38.

Fader, M., Pettersson, L., Brooks, R. *et al.* (1997) A multicentre comparative evaluation of catheter valves. *British Journal of Nursing*, **6** (7), **359**, 362–364, 366–367.

Fader, M., Pettersson, L., Dean, G. et al. (2001) Sheaths for urinary incontinence: a randomized trial. *British Journal of Urology*, **87**, 367–372.

Falkiner, F.R. (1993) The insertion and management of indwelling urethral catheters – minimizing the risk of infection. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **25** (2), 79–90.

Fallon, M. and O'Neill, B. (1997) Clinical review. ABC of palliative care. Constipation and diarrhoea. *BMJ*, **315**, 1293–1296.

Fillingham, S. and Douglas, J. (2004) *Urological Nursing*, 3rd edn. Bailliére Tindall, Edinburgh.

Food Standards Agency (2006) Starchy foods – fibre. www.eatwell.gov.uk/healthydiet/nutritionessentials/starchfoods/.

Forristal, H. and Maxfield, J. (2004) Prostatic problems, in *Urological Nursing*, 3rd edn. (eds S. Fillingham and J. Douglas). Bailliére Tindall,

London, pp. 161–184.

Fraise A.P. and Bradley C. (eds) (2009) *Ayliffe's Control of Healthcare Associated Infection: A Practical Handbook,* 5th edn. Hodder Arnold, London.

Getliffe, K. (1995) Care of urinary catheters. *Nursing Standard*, **10** (1), 25–31.

Getliffe, D.A. (1996a) Bladder instillations and bladder washouts in the management of catheterized patients. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **23**, 548–554.

Getliffe, D.A. (1996b) The use of bladder wash-outs to reduce urinary catheter encrustation. *British Journal of Urology*, **73**, 696–700.

Getliffe, K. and Dolman, M. (2003) *Promoting Continence: A Clinical and Research Resource*, 2nd edn. Bailliére Tindall, London.

Gilbert, R. (2006) Taking a midstream specimen of urine. *Nursing Times*, **102** (18), 22–23.

Gill, D. (1999) Practical procedures for nurses. Stool specimen assessment. Part 1: Assessment. *Nursing Times*, **96**, 26.

Godfrey, H. and Evans, H. (2000) Management of long-term urethral catheters: minimizing complications. *British Journal of Nursing*, **9** (2), 74–80.

Gould, D. (1994) Keeping on tract …. *Nursing Times*, **90** (40), 58–64.

Gray, M., Bliss, D., Doughty, D. et al. (2007) Incontinence-associated dermatitis: a consensus. *Journal of Skin and Wound Care*, **15**, 170–175.

Hart, S. (2008) Urinary catheterization. *Nursing Standard*, **22** (27), 44–48.

Head, C. (2006) Insertion of a urinary catheter. *Nursing Older People*, **18** (10), 33–36.

Henderson, S. (2003) Power imbalance between nurses and patients: a potential inhibitor of partnership in care. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **12** (4), 501–509.

Henry, C. (1999) The advantages of using suppositories. *Nursing Times*, **95** (17), 50–51.

Heywood Jones, I. (1994) Stoma care. *Community Outlook*, **4** (12), 22–23.

Hickson, M., D'Souza, A.L., Muthu, N. *et al.* (2007) Use of probiotic Lactobacillus preparation to prevent diarrhoea associated with antibiotics: randomised double blind placebo controlled trial. *BMJ*, **335** (7610), 80.

Higgins, D. (2006) How to administer an enema. *Nursing Times*, **102** (20), 24–25.

Hinrichs, M. and Huseboe, J. (2001) Research-based protocol: management of constipation. *Journal of Gerontology Nursing*, **27** (2), 17–28.

Hulten, L. and Palselius, I. (1996) Are dietary restrictions necessary for ileostomy surgery? *Eurostoma*, **13**, 20.

Hurst, A. (1970) *Selected Writings of Sir Arthur Hurst (1879–1944)*. Ballantyne, Spottiswode.

Jenkins, S.C. (1998) Digital guidance of female urethral catheterization. *British Journal of Urology*, **82** (4), 589–590.

Johnson, J.R., Kuskowski, M.A. and Wilt, T.J. (2006) Systematic review: antimicrobial urinary catheters to prevent catheter-associated urinary tract infection in hospitalized patients. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, **144** (2), 116–126.

King, D. (2002) Determining the cause of diarrhoea. *Nursing Times*, **98** (23) (Suppl), 47–48.

Kirby, R.S., Carson, C.C. and Goldstein, I. (1999) *Erectile Dysfunction: A Clinical Guide*. Isis Medical Media, Oxford.

Kirkwood, L. (2006) Postoperative stoma care and the selection of appliances. *Journal of Community Nursing*, **20** (3), 12–18.

Kornblau, A., Benson, A., Catalono, R. et al. (2000) Management of cancer treatment-related diarrhea: issues and therapeutic strategies. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **19** (2), 118–129. PubMed.

Kristiansen, P., Pompeius, R. and Wadstrom, L.B. (1983) Long-term urethral catheter drainage and bladder capacity. *Neurourology and Urodynamics*, **2** (2), 135–143.

Kunin, C.M. (1997) *Urinary Tract Infections: Detection, Prevention, and Management*, 5th edn. Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore, MD.

Kyle, G., Prynn, P., Oliver, H. and Dunbar, T. (2005) The Eton Scale: a tool for risk assessment for constipation. *Nursing Times*, **101** (18 Suppl), 50–51.

Leaver, R.B (2007) The evidence for urethral meatal cleansing. *Nursing Standard*, **21** (41), 39–42.

Le Lievre, S. (2002) An overview of skin care and faecal incontinence. *Nursing Times*, **98** (4) (Suppl), 58–59.

Longstreth, G.F., Thompson, W., Chey, W. et al. (2006) Functional bowel disorders. *Gastroenterology*, **130**, 1480–1491.

Lowthian, P. (1991) Using bladder syringes sparingly. *Nursing Times*, **87** (10), 61–64.

Mackenzie, J. and Webb, C. (1995) Gynopia in nursing practice: the case of urethral catheterization. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **4** (4), 221–226.

Madeo, M. and Roadhouse, A. (2009) Reducing the risk associated with urinary catheters. *Nursing Standard*, **23** (29), 47–55.

Maestri-Banks, A. (1998) An overview of constipation – causes and treatment. *International Journal of Palliative Nursing*, **4** (6), 271–275.

Mangnall, J. and Watterson, L. (2006) Principles of aseptic techniques in urinary catheterisation. *Nursing Standard*, **21** (8), 49–56.

McCarthy, K. and Hunter, I. (2001) Importance of pH monitoring in the care of long term catheters. *British Journal of Nursing*, **10** (19), 1240–1246.

McFarland, L. (2007). Diarrhoea associated with antibiotic use. *BMJ*, **335**, 54–55.

McGill, S. (1982) Catheter management: it's the size that's important. *Nursing Mirror*, **154** (14), 48–49.

McMillan, S.C. (1999) Assessing and managing narcotic induced constipation in adults with cancer. *Cancer Control*, **6** (2), 198–204.

Metcalf, C. (2007). Chronic diarrhoea: investigation, treatment and nursing care. *Nursing Standard*, **21** (21), 48–56.

Moharari, R., Khajavi, M., Khademhosseini, P. *et al.* (2008) Sterile water as an irrigation fluid for transurethral resection of the prostate: anesthetical view of the records of 1600 cases. *Southern Medical Journal*, **101** (4), 373–375.

Moppett, S. (2000) Which way is up for a suppository? *Nursing Times*, **96** (19 Suppl), 12–13.

Moppett, S. and Parker, M. (1999) Insertion of a suppository. (Practical procedures for nurses, part 29). *Nursing Times*, **95** (23), supplement.

Mosby (2006) *Mosby's Dictionary of Medicine, Nursing and Health Professions*. Mosby Elsevier, St Louis, MO.

Muctar, S. (1991) The importance of a lubricant in transurethral interventions. *Urologue (B)*, **32**, 153–155.

Mulhall, A.B., King, S., Lee, K. and Wiggington, E. (1993) Maintenance of closed urinary drainage systems: are practitioners aware of the dangers. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **2**, 135–140.

Myers, C. (1996) *Stoma Care Nursing: A Patient-Centred Approach*. Arnold, London.

Nacey, J.N. and Delahunt, B. (1991) Toxicity study of first and second generation hydrogel-coated latex urinary catheters. *British Journal of Urology*, **67** (3), 314–316.

Nathan, A. (1996) Laxatives. *Pharmaceutical Journal*, **257**, 52–55.

Nazarko, L. (1996) Preventing constipation in older people. *Professional Nurse*, **11** (12), 816–818.

Nazarko, L. (2007) Managing diarrhoea in the home to prevent admission. *British Journal of Community Nursing*, **508** (11), 510–512.

Nazarko, L. (2009) Providing effective evidence-based catheter management. *British Journal of Nursing* (Continence supplement), **18** (7), S4–12.

Newey, J. (1998) Causes and treatment of erectile dysfunction. *Nursing Standard*, **12** (47), 39–40.

Ng, C. (2001) Assessment and intervention knowledge of nurses in managing catheter patency in continuous bladder irrigation following TURP. *Urology Nursing*, **21** (2), 97–108.

NHS Supply Chain (2008) www.supplychain.nhs.uk/portal/page/portal/public/NHS.

NHSQIS (2004) *Urinary Catheterisation and Catheter Care: Best Practice Statement*. NHS Quality Improvement Scotland. www.nhshealthquality.org/nhsqis/files/CATHURIN_BPS_JUN04.pdf.

NICE (2003) *Infection Control, Prevention of Healthcare associated Infection in Primary and Community Care. Clinical Guideline 2*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2007) *The Management of Faecal Incontinence in Adults. Clinical Guideline 49*. National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care, London.

Nicol, M. (2008) *Essential Nursing Skills*, 3rd edn. Mosby Elsevier, Edinburgh.

NMC (2008a) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent.

NMC (2008b) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2008c) *Standards for Medicines Management*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*, Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

Norton, C. (1996a) The causes and nursing management of constipation. *British Journal of Nursing*, **5** (20), 1252–1258.

Norton, C. (1996b) *Nursing for Continence*, 2nd edn. Beaconsfield Publishers, Beaconsfield, Bucks.

Norton, C. (2006) Constipation in older patients. Effects on quality of life. *British Journal of Nursing*, **15** (4), 188–192.

O'Connor, G. (2005) Teaching stoma management skills: the importance of self care. *British Journal of Nursing*, **14** (6), 320–325.

Okorie, C., Salia, M., Liu, P. and Plisters, L. (2010) Modified suprapubic prostatectomy without irrigation is safe. *Urology*, **75** (3),

701–705.

Opus (2010) Pre and post op steps to improve body image. *Gastrointestinal Nursing*, **8** (2), 34.

Parekh, D.J., Bochner, B.H. and Dalbagni, G. (2006) Superficial and muscle-invasive bladder cancer: principles of management and outcome assessments. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, **24** (35), 5519–5527.

Peate, I. (2003) Nursing role in the management of constipation: use of laxatives. *British Journal of Nursing*, **12** (19), 1130–1136.

Pellatt, G. (2007) Clinical skills: bowel elimination and management of complications. *British Journal of Nursing*, **16** (6), 351–355.

Perdue, C. (2005) Managing constipation in advanced cancer care. *Nursing Times*, **101** (21), 36–40.

Plowman, R., Graves, N., Esquivel, J. and Roberts, J. (2001) An economic model to assess the cost and benefits of the routine use of silver alloy coated catheters to reduce the risk of urinary tract infections in catheterised patients. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **48**, 33–42.

Pomfret, I.J. (1996) Catheters: design, selection and management. *British Journal of Nursing*, **5** (4), 245–251.

Pomfret, I.J. (2003) Back to basics: an introduction to continence issues. *Journal of Community Nursing*, **16** (7), 36–41.

Pomfret, I. and Tew, L.E. (2004) Urinary catheters and associated UTI's. *Journal of Community Nursing*, **18** (9), 15–19.

Potter, J. (2007) Male urinary incontinence – could penile sheaths be the answer? *Journal of Community Nursing*, **21** (5), 40–42.

Pratt, R.J., Pellowe, C., Wilson, J. et al. (2007) epic2: National evidence-based guidelines for preventing healthcare-associated infections in NHS hospitals in England. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **65S**, S1–S64.

Price, B. (1990) *Body Image: Nursing Concepts and Care*, Prentice-Hall, New York.

Qin, W. and Bao-Min, Y. (2001) The relationship between site selection and complications in stomas. *World Council on Enterostomal Therapy*, **21** (2), 10–12.

Rankin-Box, D. (2000) An alternative approach to bowel disorders. *Nursing Times*, **96** (19 Suppl), 24–25.

RCN (1994) *Guidelines on Male Catheterisation: The Role of the Nurse*. Royal College of Nursing, London.

RCN (2006) *Digital Rectal Examination and Manual Removal of Faeces: Guidance for Nurses*. Royal College of Nursing, London.

RCN (2008) *Catheter Care – RCN Guidance for Nurses*. Royal College of Nursing, London.

Rew, M. (1999) Use of catheter maintenance solutions for long-term catheters. *British Journal of Nursing*, **8** (11), 708–715.

Rew, M. (2005) Caring for catheterized patients: urinary catheter maintenance. *British Journal of Nursing*, **14** (2), 87–92.

Roadhouse, A.J. and Wellstead, A. (2004) The prevention of indwelling catheter related urinary tract infections – the outcome of a performance improvement project. *British Journal of Infection Control*, **5** (5), 22–24.

Roberts, J.A., Fussell, E.N. and Kaack, M.B. (1990) Bacterial adherence to urethral catheters. *Journal of Urology*, **144** (2 I), 264–269.

Robinson, J. (2001) Urethral catheter selection. *Nursing Standard*, **15** (25), 39–42.

Robinson, J. (2004) A practical approach to catheter-associated problems. *Nursing Standard*, **18** (31), 38–42.

Robinson, J. (2006) Continence: sizing and fitting a penile sheath. *British Journal of Community Nursing*, **11** (10), 420–427.

Robinson, J. (2008) Insertion, care and management of suprapubic catheters. *Nursing Standard*, **23** (8), 49–56.

Roe, B.H. (1992) Indwelling catheters, in *Clinical Nursing Practice: The Promotion and Management of Continence* (ed. B.H. Roe). Prentice-Hall, London, pp. 177–191.

Roe, B.H. (1994) *Clinical Nursing Practice: The Promotion and Management of Continence*. Prentice-Hall, New York.

Roe, B.H. and Brocklehurst, J.C. (1987) Study of patients with indwelling catheters. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **12** (6), 713–718.

Rudoni, C. and Sica, J. (1999) NaturCare from AlphaMed: the non–scented ostomy deodorant. *British Journal of Nursing*, **8** (17), 1168–1170.

Saint, S. and Lipsky, B.A. (1999) Preventing catheter-related bacteriuria. Should we? Can we? How? *Archives of Internal Medicine*, **159** (8), 800–808.

Saint, S., Elmore, J.G., Sullivan, S.D., Emerson, S.S. and Koepsell, T.D. (1998) The efficacy of silver alloy-coated urinary catheters in preventing urinary tract infection: a meta-analysis. *American Journal of Medicine*, **105** (3), 236–241.

Saint, S., Veenstra, D.L., Sullivan, S.D., Chenoweth, C. and Fendrick, A.M. (2000) The potential clinical and economic benefits of silver alloy urinary catheters in preventing urinary tract infection. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, **160** (17), 2670–2675.

Salter, M. (1995) Advances in ileostomy care. *Nursing Standard*, **9** (49), 33–40.

Salter, M. (1996) Sexuality and the stoma patient, in *Stoma Care Nursing: A Patient-Centred Approach* (ed. C. Myers). Arnold, London.

Salter, M. and Royal College of Nursing (1997) *Altered Body Image: The Nurse's Role,* 2nd edn. Bailliére Tindall, London.

Scholtes, S. (2002) Management of clot retention following urological surgery. *Nursing Times*, **98** (28), 48–50.

Schover, L.R. (1986) Sexual rehabilitation of the ostomy patient, in *Ostomy Care and The Cancer Patient: Surgical and Clinical Considerations* (eds D.B. Smith and D.E. Johnson). Grune and Stratton, Orlando, FL, pp. 103–119.

Schumm, K. and Lam, T. (2008) Types of urethral catheters for management of short-term voiding problems in hospitalised adults. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **2**, CD004013.

Shepherd, M. (2000) Treating diarrhoea and constipation. *Nursing Times*, **96** (6) (Suppl), 15–16.

Shih, S.C., Jeng, K.S., Lin, S.C. et al. (2003) Adhesive small bowel obstruction: how long can patients tolerate conservative treatment?

World Journal of Gastroenterology, **9** (3), 603–605.

Slade, N. and Gillespie, W.A. (1985) *The Urinary Tract and the Catheter: Infection and Other Problems*. Wiley, Chichester.

Smith, S. (2001) Evidence-based management of constipation in the oncology patient. *European Journal of Oncology Nursing*, **5** (1), 18–25.

Stensballe, J., Tvede, M., Looms, D. et al. (2007) Infection risk with nitrofurazone-impregnated urinary catheters in trauma patients. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, **147** (5), 285–294.

Stevens, A., Droney, J. and Riley, J. (2008) Managing and treating opioid induced constipation in patients with cancer. *Gastrointestinal Nursing*, **6** (9), 1–6.

Stewart, E. (1998) Urinary catheters: selection, maintenance and nursing care. *British Journal of Nursing*, **7** (19), 1152–1154, 1156, 1158–1161.

Stoller, M. (2004) Retrograde instrumentation of the urinary tract, in *Smith's General Urology,* 16th edn (eds E.A. Tanagho, J.W. McAninch and D.R. Smith). Lange Medical Books/McGraw-Hill, New York, pp. 163–174.

Studer, U.E., Bishop, M.C. and Zingg, E.J. (1983) How to fill a silicone catheter balloon. *Urology*, **22** (3), 300–302.

Tanabe, P., Steinmann, R., Anderson, J., Johnson, D., Metcalf, S. and Ring–Hurn, E. (2004) Factors affecting pain scores during female urethral catheterization. *Academic Emergency Medicine*, **11** (6), 699–702.

Taylor, C. (1997) Constipation and diarrhoea, in *Nursing in Gastroenterology* (eds L. Bruce and T.M.D. Finlay). Churchill Livingstone, Oxford, pp. 27–54.

Taylor, P. (2000) Choosing the right stoma appliance for a colostomy. *Community Nurse*, **6** (9), 35–38.

Taylor, P. (2005) An introduction to stomas: reasons for their formation. *Nursing Times*, **101** (29), 63–64.

Teahon, E. (1999) Constipation, in *Essential Coloproctology for Nurses* (eds T. Porret and N. Daniel). Whurr, London, pp. 206–221.

Thibodeau, G. and Patton, K.T. (2007a) *Anatomy and Physiology*, 6th edn. Mosby Elsevier, St Louis, MO.

Thibodeau, G. and Patton, K. (2007b) Anatomy of the digestive system, in *Anatomy and Physiology*, 6th edn (eds G. Thibodeau and K. Patton). Mosby, St Louis, MO, pp. 925–960.

Thomas, J., Karver, S., Cooney, G.A. et al. (2008) Methylnaltrexone for opioid induced constipation in advanced illness. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **22**, 1070–1071.

Thomas, P., Forbes, A., Green, J. et al. (2003) Guidelines for the investigation of chronic diarrhoea, 2nd edn. *Gut*, **52** (5), v1–15.

Thompson, M.J., Boyd-Carson, W., Trainor, B. et al. (2003) Management of constipation. *Nursing Standard*, **18** (14–16), 41–42.

Thompson, W.G., Longstreth, G.F., Drossman, D.A. et al. (1999) Functional bowel disorders and functional abdominal pain. *Gut*, **45**, 1143–1147.

Tortora, G.J. and Derrickson, B.H. (2009) *Principles of Anatomy and Physiology*, 12th edn. John Wiley, Hoboken, NJ.

Walsh, M. (1997) *Watson's Clinical Nursing and Related Sciences*, 5th edn. Bailliére Tindall, London.

Wells, M. (2008) Managing urinary incontinence with Bioderm external continence device. *British Journal of Nursing*, **17S** (9), 24–29.

Wilksch, J., Vernon-Roberts, B., Garrett, R. and Smith, K. (1983) The role of catheter surface morphology and extractable cytotoxic material in tissue reactions to urethral catheters. *British Journal of Urology*, **55** (1), 48–52.

Wilson, L.A. (2005) Urinalysis. *Nursing Standard*, **19** (35), 51–53.

Wilson, M. (1998) Infection control. *Professional Nurse*, **13** (5), S10–13.

Wilson, M. (2008). Diarrhoea and its possible impact on skin health. *Nursing Times*, **104** (18), 49–52.

Wilson, M. and Coates, D. (1996) Infection control and urine drainage bag design. *Professional Nurse*, **11** (4), 245–246, 248–249, 251–252.

Winn, C. (1998) Complications with urinary catheters. *Professional Nurse*, **13** (5 Suppl), S7–10.

Winney, J. (1998) Constipation. *Nursing Standard*, **13** (11), 49–56.

Wood, S. (1996) Nutrition and the short bowel syndrome, in *Stoma Care Nursing: A Patient-Centred Approach* (ed. C. Myres). Edward Arnold, London, pp. 79–89.

Wood, S. (1998) Nutrition and stoma patients. *Nursing Times*, **94** (48), 65–67.

Woodward, S. (1997) Complications of allergies to latex urinary catheters. *British Journal of Nursing*, **6** (14), 786–788, **790**, 792–793.

Woodward, S. (2005) Use of lubricant in female urethral catheterization. *British Journal of Nursing*, **14** (19), 1022–1023.

Woodward, S. (2007) The BioDerm external continence device. Evidence and assessment for use. *British Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, **3** (12), 580–584.

Woollons, S. (1996) Urinary catheters for long-term use. *Professional Nurse*, **11** (12), 825–830.

World Health Organization (WHO) (2003) *Treatment of Diarrhoea: A Manual for Physicians and Other Senior Health Workers*. World Health Organization, Geneva.

Wright, S. and Burch, J. (2008) Pre and post operative care, in *Stoma Care* (ed J. Burch). Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford, pp. 119–141.

Yates, A. (2004) Crisis management in catheter care. *Journal of Community Nursing*, **18** (5), 28–30.

Young, A.E., Macnaughton, P.D., Gaylard, D.G. and Weatherly, C. (1994) A case of latex anaphylaxis. *British Journal of Hospital Medicine*, **52** (11), 599–600.

Multiple choice questions

1 When should a penile sheath be considered as a means of managing incontinence?

(a) When other methods of continence management have failed.

(b) Following the removal of a catheter.

(c) When the patient has a small or retracted penis.

(d) When a patient requests it.

2 What is the most important guiding principle when choosing the correct size of catheter?

(a) The biggest size tolerable.

(b) The smallest size necessary.

(c) The potential length of use of the catheter.

(d) The build of the patient.

3 When carrying out a catheterization, on which patients would you use anaesthetic lubricating gel prior to catheter insertion?

(a) Male patients to aid passage, as the catheter is longer.

(b) Female patients as there is an absence of lubricating glands in the female urethra, unlike the male urethra.

(c) Male and female patients require anaesthetic lubricating gel.

(d) The use of anaesthetic lubricating gel is not advised due to potential adverse reactions.

4 On removing your patient's catheter, what should you encourage your patient to do?

(a) Rest and drink 2–3 litres of fluid per day.

(b) Rest and drink in excess of 5 litres of fluid per day.

(c) Exercise and drink 2–3 litres of fluid per day.

(d) Exercise and drink their normal amount of fluid intake.

5 What are the principles of positioning a urine drainage bag?

(a) Above the level of the bladder to improve visibility and access for the health professional.

(b) Above the level of the bladder to avoid contact with the floor.

(c) Below the level of the patient's bladder to reduce backflow of urine.

(d) Where the patient finds it most comfortable.

6 Perdue (2005) categorizes constipation as primary, secondary or iatrogenic. What could be some of the causes of iatrogenic constipation?

(a) Inadequate diet and poor fluid intake.

(b) Anal fissures, colonic tumours or hypercalcaemia.

(c) Lifestyle changes and ignoring the urge to defaecate.

(d) Antiemetic or opioid medication.

7 A patient is admitted to the ward with symptoms of acute diarrhoea. What should your initial management be?

(a) Assessment, protective isolation, universal precautions.

(b) Assessment, source isolation, antibiotic therapy.

(c) Assessment, protective isolation, antimotility medication.

(d) Assessment, source isolation, universal precautions.

8 Your patient has undergone a formation of a loop colostomy. What important considerations should be borne in mind when selecting an appropriate stoma appliance for your patient?

(a) Dexterity of the patient, consistency of effluent, type of stoma.

(b) Patient preference, type of stoma, consistence of effluent, state of peristomal skin, dexterity of patient.

(c) Patient preference, lifestyle, position of stoma, consistency of effluent, state of peristomal skin, dexterity of patient, type of stoma.

(d) Cognitive ability, lifestyle, patient dexterity, position of stoma, state of peristomal skin, type of stoma, consistency of effluent, patient preference.

9 What type of diet would you recommend to your patient who has a newly formed stoma?

(a) Encourage high-fibre foods to avoid constipation.

(b) Encourage lots of vegetables and fruit to avoid constipation.

(c) Encourage a varied diet as people can react differently.

(d) Avoid spicy foods because they can cause erratic function.

10 What would be your main objectives in providing stoma education when preparing a patient with a stoma for discharge

home?

(a) That the patient can independently manage their stoma, and can get supplies.

(b) That the patient has had their appliance changed regularly, and knows their community stoma nurse.

(c) That the patient knows the community stoma nurse, and has a prescription.

(d) That the patient has a referral to the District Nurses for stoma care.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com **and select the Student Edition tab.**

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

Chapter 7

Moving and Positioning

Overview

The aim of this chapter is to provide guidance on various aspects of moving and positioning patients, acknowledging the need to be clinically effective and, where possible, evidence based. It relates to moving and positioning of adults and does not specifically cover positioning in children or neonates.

The main objectives of the chapter are to:

1. outline the general considerations of moving and positioning

2. provide guidance on the principles of moving and positioning whether the patient is in bed, sitting or preparing to mobilize

3. consider optimal moving and positioning including modifications for patients with different clinical needs.

The principles of moving and positioning will relate to the effect on the patient, but the practitioner needs to ensure that they consider their own position regarding the safety aspects of manual handling. For recommendations and further information on safe manual handling, refer to government (HSE 2004) and local trust policy (HSE 1992), the manual handling advisor or the physiotherapist (PT).

In this chapter the general principles of moving and positioning will be discussed first followed by considerations of positioning for patients with specific clinical needs, which will require modification or additional considerations of the general principles. The first specific clinical area covered will be moving and positioning of unconscious patients and patients with an artificial airway. Following this, there will be a section looking at additional considerations and modifications for patients with different respiratory requirements. The next section of the chapter will relate to the specific moving and positioning needs of

patients with a neurological problem, including the management of patients with spinal cord compression. The final clinical area to be considered will relate to considerations and modifications necessary for upper and lower limb amputees.

All terms marked with an asterisk are explained in the Glossary at the end of the chapter.

Moving and positioning

Definition

The verb 'to position' is defined as 'a way in which someone or something is placed or arranged' (Pearsall 2001). In medical terms, the word 'position' relates to body position or posture. Moving and positioning lie within the broader context of manual handling, which incorporates 'transporting or supporting a load (including lifting, putting down, pushing, pulling, carrying or moving) by hand or bodily force' (HSE 1992).

Anatomy and physiology

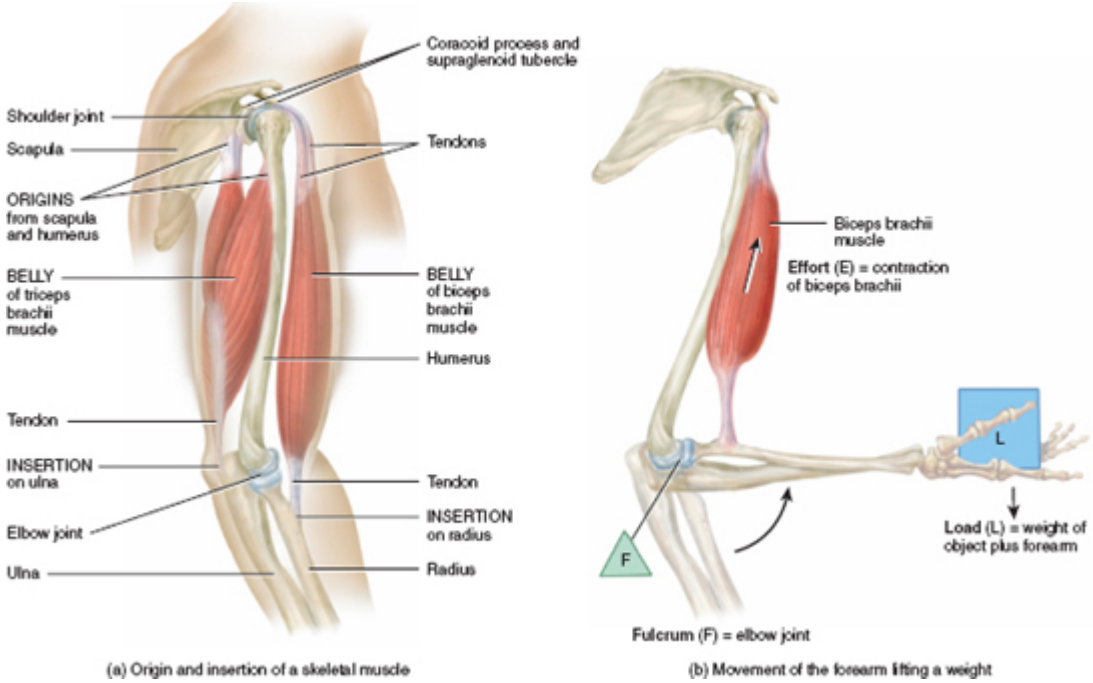
The human body is a complex structure relying on the musculoskeletal system to provide support and to assist in movement. The musculoskeletal system is an integrated system consisting of bones, muscles and joints.

Whilst bones provide the structural framework for protecting vital organs and providing stability, skeletal muscles maintain body alignment and help movement (Tortora and Derrickson 2009). In order for skeletal muscles to provide this function, they often cross at least one joint and attach to the articulating bones that help form the joint so that when a muscle contracts, movement of a joint can occur in one direction. Muscles tend to work in synergy with each other (rather than in isolation) not just to create but also to control the movement. The ability of a muscle to either contract or to extend assists their function (Figure

7.1). However, muscles will waste if not used and can also become shortened if not stretched regularly.

Figure 7.1 Relationship of skeletal muscles to bones: origin and insertion of skeletal muscle.

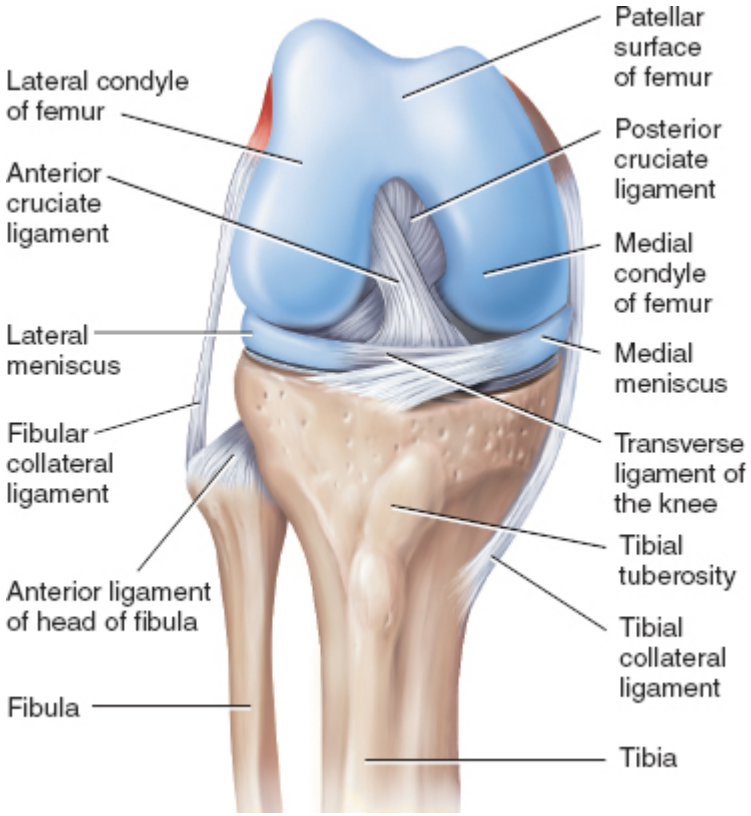
Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



Joints are supported not just by the muscles but also by ligaments which are strong connective tissue structures attached either side of the joint, for example the knee (Figure 7.2). Ligaments can also become shortened if they are maintained in one position repeatedly or over a long period of time, which can prevent full joint movement.

Figure 7.2 Anterior view of the right knee (tibiofemoral) joint.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Moving and positioning are important aspects of patient care because together they can affect the patient physically, physiologically and psychologically. They can have a major influence on the patient's recuperation and well-being, addressing impairments in order to optimize their function and participation in society.

Positioning is often a good starting point to maximize the benefit of other interventions such as bed exercises, breathing exercises, optimizing rest and mobilizing in order to facilitate recovery and maximize function. However, although it is important, it must not be seen in isolation and is just one aspect of patient management within the context of preventative, rehabilitative, supportive and palliative rehabilitation models (Dietz 1981) where the overall goal is to assist independence.

It is important to frequently evaluate the effect that moving and positioning have on the individual with different pathologies to ensure that the intervention is helping to achieve the desired result or goal. This relates to considering whether the moving and positioning procedure is being clinically effective and, where possible, is evidence based.

There are several points to consider with regard to the clinical effectiveness of moving and positioning.

- Is the timing right for moving the patient? For example, is the pain relief adequate?
- Is it being carried out in the correct way? This relates to manual handling with regard to preventing trauma to both the patient and the practitioner. It is well known that nurses have a high incidence of work-related musculoskeletal injuries (Nelson *et al.* 2006) so that approved patient handling techniques are essential for safe practice.
- Is the required position taking into account all the pertinent needs of the patient? This emphasizes the need to consider the patient in a holistic manner and take into account any co-morbidities as well as the primary focus that is being addressed.
- Is it achieving the desired or a detrimental result?

Indications

Assistance in moving and positioning is indicated for patients who have difficulty moving or require periods of rest when normal function is impaired.

Contraindications

There are no general contraindications for moving and positioning. The severity of an illness may leave no choice except bed rest, but the rest itself is rarely beneficial.

Patients who are unstable may also need medical attention prior to any moving or change in position.

Principles of care

The principles of positioning are based on patterns of posture which maximize function with the minimal amount of effort (Gardiner 1973) and without causing damage to the body system (Pope 1996). These basic principles of positioning can be applied regardless of a patient's pathology. The aim is to reduce impairment, facilitate function and alleviate symptomatic discomfort and to assist future rehabilitation where appropriate.

The main principles underpinning all interventions regarding patient positioning and mobilization focus on the short- and long-term goals of rehabilitation and management for each specific patient. It is imperative that a thorough assessment is carried out prior to any intervention in order to plan appropriate goals of treatment. It may be necessary to compromise on one principle, depending on the overall goal. For example, for the palliative patient, it may be that the primary aim of any intervention is to facilitate comfort at the cost of reducing function. Regular reassessment is necessary to allow for modification of plans to allow for changes in status.

Effects of bed rest/decreased mobility

Patients with acute medical conditions and decreased mobility are at risk of developing secondary complications of bed rest such as pulmonary embolus (PE) (Riedel 2001), deep vein thrombosis (DVT) or respiratory infection (Convertino *et al*. 1997). Historically patients complaining of pain, dyspnoea, neurological dysfunction and fatigue were advised to rest. However, inactivity can cause a variety of problems (Creditor 1993, Doyle *et al*. 2004) including:

- deconditioning of many of the body's systems (particularly in cardiorespiratory and musculoskeletal systems)
- deterioration of symptoms
- fear of movement
- loss of independence
- social isolation.

Therefore, patients should be encouraged or assisted to mobilize or change position, at frequent intervals. The use of rehabilitation programmes in the patient with critical illness has the potential to

decrease time on the critical care unit, shorten overall hospital stay and prevent readmission (Thomas 2009). Early referral to therapy services is advantageous.

If bed rest is unavoidable then the following factors should be taken into account:

- patient comfort and adequate support
- avoidance of the complications of prolonged bed rest
- the optimum frequency of position change.

Active movements, as advised by the physiotherapist, should be practised where possible in order to (Adam and Forrest 1999):

- maintain full joint range
- maintain full muscle length and extensibility
- assist venous return
- maintain sensation of normal movement.

Active ankle movements (Figure 7.3) are to be encouraged to assist the circulation, as failure to exercise the calf muscle for prolonged periods may result in limited or poor blood circulation in the lower leg and increases the risk of DVT (O'Donovan *et al.* 2006).

Figure 7.3 (a) Ankle in dorsiflexion (DF). (b) Ankle in plantarflexion (PF).

Risk assessment

There is an absolute requirement to assess the risks arising from moving and handling patients that cannot reasonably be avoided. Once the risk

of not moving the patient is deemed to be greater than moving the patient (see previous rationale), consider the following (TILE).

T Task/operation: achieving the desired position or movement.

I Individual: this refers to the handler/s. In patient handling, this relates to the skills, competencies and physical capabilities of the handlers. It is also important to consider health status, gender, pregnancy, age and disability.

L Load: in the case of patient handling, the load is the patient.

E Environment: before positioning or moving the patient, think about the space, placement of equipment and removal of any hazards.

There have recently been initiatives looking at specific areas to improve patient care following the publication of *High Impact Actions for Nursing and Midwifery* in 2009 (www.institute.nhs.uk). One area identified in this report is falls prevention with the aim of demonstrating a reduction in the number of falls in older people within NHS care. Local initiatives and action plans are currently being formulated to address this issue.

The key points to be considered are summarized in Box 7.1.

Box 7.1 Risk assessment

1 Assess the patient clinically.

2 Consider realistic clinical goals and functional outcomes in discussion with the patient and ascertain the level at which the patient will be able to participate in the task.

3 Consider whether the proposed intervention involves hazardous manual handling and reduce the hazard by:

a adapting the technique

b introducing equipment. Studies advocate the use of assistive devices to promote safer patient handling for patients with complex needs following assessment (Nelson *et al.* 2006, Rockefeller 2008), with a positive impact on patient outcomes with no detrimental effect on staff handling following assessment (Nelson *et al.* 2008)

c seeking advice/assistance from appropriately skilled colleagues.

4 Risk assessment should be an ongoing process and be constantly updated.

5 After the procedure, document the risk assessment in the communication section of the patient's care plan, being sure to include the date, the number of staff involved and the equipment needed to perform the task. Also document any changes in the patient's condition, such as skin redness. It is important to also document the intended duration of time for which the patient should be maintained in this new position.

(CSP 2008)

Effective use of therapeutic handling in the context of use of a comprehensive competency-based training tool can benefit patient outcome, enabling balance and motor training in early rehabilitation with minimal risk to staff (Mehan *et al.* 2008). Where there is any doubt about patients with complex needs, seek advice from the PT or the occupational therapist (OT) for assessment.

Consent must be obtained before any intervention is started. Consent is the voluntary and continuing permission of the patient to receive a particular treatment based on an adequate knowledge of the purpose, nature and likely risks of the treatment including the likelihood of its success and any alternatives to it. Permission given under any unfair or undue pressure is not consent (NMC 2008).This is discussed in more detail in Chapter 1.

Legal and professional issues

For recommendations and further information on safe manual handling refer to professional guidance, government, local trust policy (HSE 1992) and the manual handling advisor or the physiotherapist.

Preprocedural considerations

Before positioning or moving the patient consider the following factors.

Assessment

Pressure/skin care

The risk of skin damage when the patient is positioned or moved will be increased by factors including incontinence, profuse perspiration, poor nutrition and obesity (Hickey 2003a). Direct pressure to the skin and friction during movement of patients are two of the most common causes of injury to the skin that can lead to pressure ulcers. Correct moving and handling of the patient will minimize the risk of pressure ulcer formation (see Chapter 4).

Skin integrity should be assessed using the Waterlow Scale (see Chapter 4) prior to positioning and vulnerable areas protected with specialist pressure-relieving equipment or additional use of pillows/towels. Use of special beds or cushions may be required depending on individual assessment.

Minimize contact with other surfaces where possible to ensure optimum skin condition. Care should be taken when lying the patient directly over the greater trochanter as this increases pressure at this interface and the risk of developing pressure sores (Hawkins *et al.* 1999).

Wounds

Consider the location of wounds and injuries when selecting a comfortable position. Ideally positions should avoid pressure on or stretching through any wounds and consideration should be given to the timing of dressing changes, which should be done before positioning to avoid disturbing the patient twice.

Sensation

Take extra care in positioning patients with decreased sensation as numbness and paraesthesia* may result in skin damage as the patient is unaware of pressure/chaffing. These patients may not be able to adjust their position or alert nursing staff in the normal way so it is very

important to check the patient's skin regularly for areas of redness or breakdown.

Oedema/swelling

Where possible, swollen limbs should not be left dependent but be supported on pillows/footstool as elevation will help to maximize venous return and minimize further swelling. Oedema may result in pain, fragile skin or loss of joint movement.

Pain

Ensure the patient has optimal pain relief before moving. Patients who are pain free at rest may need additional analgesic cover before movement. It is important to allow adequate time for any medication to take effect. See also Chapter 9.

Weakness

Consider the patient's ability to maintain the position. Additional support may be required in the form of pillows or towels to maintain the desired posture.

Limitations of joint and soft tissue range (contractures)

Soft tissue changes and contractures occur through disuse in normal muscle (Jones and Moffatt 2002). As a result, restrictions in joint range may mean that positions need to be modified or become inappropriate.

If there is the potential for any joint or soft tissue restrictions then liaise with the PT or OT regarding any specific exercises or positions necessary for the patient to avoid contractures. This may affect position choice or may involve incorporating appropriate splinting to maintain muscle length.

Communication and involvement with the multidisciplinary team will aid interventions such as physiotherapy as treatment could occur at the same time as positional changes. This potentially allows for more physical assistance in moving the patient without involving other staff, allows collaborative working such as changing sheets, repositioning and

assessment of pressure areas, and will minimize unnecessary disturbance of the patient (Hough 2001).

Fracture or suspected fracture

Patients with unstable fractures or suspected fractures should not be moved and the area should be well supported. A change of position could result in pain, fracture displacement and associated complications. Patients with osteoporosis* or metastatic bony disease with unexplained bony pain should be treated as having a suspected fracture. Risk factors for osteoporosis increase with age and include being female, Caucasian and postmenopausal, having a low BMI, a positive family history, a sedentary lifestyle and smoking. Before an osteoporotic lesion becomes apparent radiologically, at least 50% of bone mass must be lost so that pain may precede radiological changes (McGarvey 1990).

Altered tone

Tone can be altered by positioning with either positive or negative consequences. For further information on patients with neurological impairment and the unconscious patient, see below.

Spinal stability

It is important to establish spinal stability before positioning or moving the patient. The specifics of moving and positioning a patient with spinal cord compression are discussed later in this chapter.

Medical devices associated with treatment

Care should be taken to avoid pulling on lines or causing occlusion if the patient has a catheter, intravenous infusion, venous access device or drain. Pulling on devices may cause pain/injury to the patient and be detrimental to care. Prior to procedure ensure that electrical pumps have been disconnected and sets are untangled and flowing freely. Ensure these are reconnected once the patient is repositioned.

Medical status/cardiovascular instability

The defining parameter for mobilization is that the patient's oxygen transport system is capable of increasing the oxygen supply to meet metabolic demand (Pryor and Prasad 2008). Patients who are medically unstable may become more unstable during movement. Therefore, patients who are acutely unwell should be monitored carefully during any change of position.

Fatigue

Fatigue can be a distressing symptom, so advice and help should be given to the patient to pace their everyday activities. Barsevick *et al*. 2002 describe energy conservation as 'the deliberate planned management of one's personal energy resources in order to prevent their depletion'. Therefore, prioritizing activities may help to avoid engaging in tasks that are unnecessary or of little value (Cooper 2006).

Cognitive state

It is important to explain to the patient the reasons for moving and positioning appropriate to their level of understanding. Always explain what will happen step by step and give clear instructions to the patient to enable them to participate in the movement.

It is known that impaired cognition* and depression are intrinsic risk factors for falls in older people (DH 2001).

Privacy and dignity

In order to maintain privacy and dignity (CSP 2008) during positioning, ensure the environment is as private as possible by shutting the door and/or the curtains prior to moving the patient. It may be appropriate to ask visitors to wait outside. The process of uncovering the patient may make them feel vulnerable and/or distressed, so keep them covered as much as is practically possible during the procedure. Make sure catheter bags and drains are hung as discreetly as possible under the patient's bed/chair.

Patient explanation/instruction

Explain to the patient the reasons for changing their position and where possible gain their verbal consent. If patients are fully informed of the planned change in position they may be able to participate with the manoeuvre and reduce the need for assistance.

Documentation/liaison with multidisciplinary team (MDT)

It is important to check to see if there are any instructions or indications regarding positioning or moving the patient in their documentation. If unsure then check with the MDT as this may provide guidance on what positions are more appropriate and any special precautions that need to be considered prior to moving and positioning.

Equipment

Sliding sheets are used to assist patients to roll or change position in bed. Due to the slippery surface of the slide sheet fabric, friction is reduced and it is easier to move or relocate the patient with very minimal effort or discomfort.

Procedure guideline 7.1 Positioning the patient: supine

Essential equipment

- Pillows/towels
- Sliding sheets/manual handling equipment if indicated following risk assessment in accordance with local manual handling policy
- Bed extension for tall patients

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008, C).
2 Wash hands thoroughly or use an alcohol-based handrub.	To reduce the risk of contamination and cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Ensure that the bed is at the optimum height for handlers. If two handlers are required try to match	To minimize the risk of injury to the practitioner (Smith 2005, C).

handlers' heights as far as possible.	
Procedure	
4 Either: Place one pillow squarely under the patient's head according to patient comfort. For patients with an airway or head and neck surgery, take care not to occlude or displace tubes or increase pressure to vulnerable areas.	To support the head in a neutral position and to compensate for the natural lordosis* of the cervical spine. E To ensure the airway is patent. E To increase patient support and comfort. E
Or: Use two pillows in a 'butterfly' position so that two layers of pillow support the head with one layer of pillow under each shoulder.	This may be necessary for the patient with pain, breathlessness (see Moving and positioning of the patient with respiratory compromise) or an existing kyphosis*. E
Or: Use a folded towel under the patient's head if this provides natural spinal alignment.	To prevent excessive neck flexion. E
5 Ensure the patient lies centrally in the bed.	To ensure spinal and limb alignment. E
6 Place pillows and/or towels under individual limbs to provide maximum support for the patient with painful, weak or oedematous limbs.	To ensure patient comfort. E
7 Ensure the patient's feet are fully supported by the mattress. For taller patients use a bed extension if required.	To ensure patient comfort. E
8 Place a pillow at the end of the hospital bed to support the ankles at 90° of flexion if the patient has weakness or is immobile around the ankle.	To ensure patient comfort. E To prevent loss of ankle movement. E

Positioning the patient: sitting in bed

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

- Patients should be encouraged to sit up in bed periodically if their medical condition prevents them from sitting out in the chair (Figure 7.4). If the patient is unable to participate fully in the procedure, manual handling equipment should be used to help achieve the desired position.

Figure 7.4 Sitting up in bed.

Attention should also be given to sitting posture. Poor posture is one of the most common causes of low back pain which may frequently be brought on by sitting for a long time in a poor position (McKenzie 2006) as it causes an increase in pressure in the disc (Norris 1995).

Contraindications

Post lumbar puncture, patients should lie flat to prevent dural headache in accordance with local policy.

Procedure guideline 7.2 Positioning the patient: sitting in bed

Essential equipment

- Pillows
- Manual handling equipment may be required, for example sliding sheets or a hoist, depending on local policy

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008, C).
2 Wash hands thoroughly or use an alcohol-based handrub.	To reduce the risk of contamination and cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Ensure that the bed is at the optimum height for handlers. If two handlers are required try to match handlers' heights as far as possible.	To minimize the risk of injury to the practitioner (Smith 2005, C).
Procedure	
4 Ask the patient to sit up in bed. The angle at which the patient sits may be influenced by pain, fatigue, abdominal distension or level of confusion/agitation.	To encourage haemodynamic* stability. E To enable effective breathing patterns, maximizing basal expansion (Pryor and Prasad 2008, R4). To assist in functional activities such as eating and drinking. E
5 Ask the patient to position their hips in line with the hinge of the automatic mattress elevator or backrest of the bed.	To ensure good postural alignment, that is, flexing at the hip when sitting up in bed. E To prevent strain on the spine. E
6 Place a pillow under the patient's knees or use the electrical control of the bed to slightly bend the patient's knees. Extra care should be taken if the patient has a femoral line or is on haemofiltration*.	To reduce strain on the lumbar spine. E To maintain the position. E
7 Place a pillow under individual or both upper limbs for patients with a chest drain, upper limb weakness, trunk weakness, surgery involving shoulder/upper limb/breast/thorax, fungating wounds involving axilla, breast and shoulder, upper limb/truncal lymphoedema or fractures involving ribs or upper limbs.	To provide upper limb support. E To maintain trunk alignment. E To encourage basal expansion (Pryor and Prasad 2008, E).

Positioning the patient: side-lying

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

This can be a useful position for patients with:

- compromised venous return, for example pelvic/abdominal mass, pregnancy
- global motor weakness
- risk of developing pressure sores
- unilateral pelvic or lower limb pain
- altered tone (see Moving and positioning the patient with neurological impairment)
- fatigue
- chest infection, for gravity-assisted drainage of secretions
- lung pathology (see Moving and positioning the patient with respiratory compromise)
- abdominal distension, for example ascites*, bulky disease, to optimize lung volume (see Moving and positioning the patient with respiratory compromise).

Contraindications

- Suspected or actual spinal fracture or instability.

Procedure guideline 7.3 Positioning the patient: side-lying

See Figure 7.5

Figure 7.5 Side-lying.

Essential equipment

- Pillows
- Manual handling equipment may be required following risk assessment, for example sliding sheets or a hoist, depending on local policy

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008, C).
2 Wash hands thoroughly or use an alcohol-based handrub.	To reduce the risk of contamination and cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Ensure that the bed is at the optimum height for handlers. If two handlers are required try to match handlers' heights as far as possible.	To minimize the risk of injury to the practitioner (Smith 2005, C).
Procedure	
4 Place one or two pillows in a 'butterfly' position under the patient's head, ensuring the airway remains patent. Extra care should be taken for those patients with a tracheostomy, central lines or recent head and neck surgery.	To support the head in mid-position. E To support shoulder contours. E
5 Ask/assist the patient to semi-flex the lowermost leg at the hip and the knee. Extra care should be taken with the degree of flexion for those patients who have hip or knee pain or loss of movement, fracture	To support the patient in a stable position and prevent rolling. E

involving the femur or pelvis, leg oedema, femoral lines or other venous access devices.	
6 Either: Ask/assist the patient to semi-flex the uppermost leg at the hip and knee. Use a pillow to support under the leg placed on the bed. **Or:** Place a pillow between the patient's knees.	To prevent lumbar spine rotation. E To support the pelvic girdle. E To aid pressure care. E
7 Place the underneath arm in front with scapula protracted* (this would not be appropriate for patients with shoulder pathology). Extra care should be taken with patients with low tone in the affected arm, swollen arms or who have access lines in that arm.	To promote patient comfort. E To promote shoulder alignment. E To provide additional support and comfort. E

Procedure guideline 7.4 Positioning the patient: lying down to sitting up

See Figures 7.6, 7.7 and 7.8

Figure 7.6 Lying to sitting (stage 1).

Figure 7.7 Lying to sitting (stage 2).

Figure 7.8 Lying to sitting (stage 3).

Essential equipment

- Manual handling equipment may be required dependent on risk assessment, for example sliding sheets or a hoist, depending on local policy

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008, C).
2 Wash hands thoroughly or use an alcohol-based handrub.	To reduce the risk of contamination and cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Ensure that the bed is at the optimum height for patients or handlers. If two handlers are required try to match handlers' heights as far as possible.	To minimize the risk of injury to the practitioner (Smith 2005, C).
Procedure	
4 Ask the patient to bend both knees and turn their head towards the	To assist the patient to

direction they are moving. Abdominal wounds should be supported by the patient's hands. Extra care should be taken with patients who have joint pathology, oedema, ascites or positional vertigo*.	roll using their bodyweight. E
5 Ask patient to reach towards the side of the bed with the uppermost arm and roll on to their side.	
6 Ask the patient to bend their knees and lower their feet over the edge of the bed.	
7 Ask the patient to push through the underneath elbow and the upper arm on the bed to push up into sitting. As the patient sits up, monitor changes in pain or dizziness which could indicate postural hypotension or vertigo. Be aware that the patient with neurological symptoms or weakness may not have safe sitting balance.	To help to lever the patient into a sitting position using the weight of their legs. E
8 Achieve upright sitting position with appropriate alignment of body parts.	To ensure safe sitting position achieved. E

Positioning the patient: in a chair/wheelchair

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Pressure cushion

This is a piece of equipment designed to evenly redistribute the weight of a patient to provide pressure relief for those who are vulnerable to skin breakdown (see Chapter 4). They are an effective aid to increasing patients' sitting tolerance. There are various types available and they are usually provided by the OT dependent on the specific needs of the patient.

Procedure guideline 7.5 Positioning the patient: in a chair/wheelchair

Essential equipment

- Upright chair with arms that support elbow to wrist – if using a wheelchair, make certain that the chair has been measured by an occupational therapist (OT) to ensure correct fit and position of the foot rests
- Manual handling equipment may be required following risk assessment, for example a hoist, depending on local policy
- Pillows/rolled-up towel
- Footstool if the patient has lower limb oedema
- Pressure cushion

Procedure

Action	Rationale
1 Place a pressure cushion in the chair and ask the patient to sit well back in the chair. They should have a maximum 90° angle at their hips and knee joints. The patient may not be able to achieve this position if they have pain, abdominal distension or hip/back pain. It may be necessary to refer the patient to the OT for chair raises, a specialized cushion or appropriate seating if a comfortable or safe position cannot be achieved.	Patients with reduced mobility are at greater risk of pressure skin damage. To provide a stable base of support for balance. E To ensure good body alignment. E To achieve a safe sitting position. E
2 Place a pillow or rolled-up towel in the small of the patient's back as is comfortable for the patient.	To allow the patient's back to be supported in a good position. E

3 Ensure the patient's feet are resting on the floor or supported surface. Use pillows or a rolled-up towel to support under the feet if necessary. Make sure the patient's feet are supported on the foot rests if using a wheelchair.	To provide postural alignment and support the lumbar spine. E
4 If the patient has lower leg oedema, use a foot stool, ensuring the whole leg and foot are supported and avoiding hyperextension* at the knees.	To improve venous drainage. E
5 Discourage the patient from crossing their legs.	To reduce risk of developing a DVT (O'Donovan *et al.* 2006, R4).

Moving the patient from sitting to standing

Preprocedural considerations

If the patient stands from the side of a hospital bed, it is helpful to raise the bed slightly to reduce the work of standing for the patient to ensure that the hips are level or higher than the knees with the feet in contact with the floor.

A physiotherapy referral may be appropriate. See Figure 7.9 and Figure 7.10.

Figure 7.9 Sitting to standing (stage 1).

Figure 7.10 Sitting to standing (stage 2).

Procedure guideline 7.6 Moving from sitting to standing: assisting the patient

See Figure 7.9 and 7.10

Essential equipment

- Walking aid if required (if previously issued by physiotherapist)
- Suitable non-slip, well-fitting, supportive and flat footwear (if not available then bare feet are preferable to socks or stockings which may slip) (Figure 7.11)

Figure 7.11 Examples of supportive shoes.

Procedure

Action	Rationale
1 Ask the patient to lean forward and 'shuffle' (by transferring their weight from side to side) and bring their bottom closer to the front of the chair or edge of the bed.	To bring the patient's weight over their feet. E
2 Ask the patient to move their feet back so they are slightly tucked under the chair with their feet hip width apart.	To provide a stable base prior to moving. E
3 Instruct the patient to lean forward from their trunk.	To help initiate movement. E

To facilitate a normal pattern of

	movement. E
4 Instruct the patient to push through their hands on the arms of the chair or surface on which they are sitting as they stand. Encourage a forward and upward motion whilst extending their hips and knees.	To minimize energy expenditure. E
5 Once standing, ask the patient to stand still for a moment to ensure balance is achieved before attempting to walk.	To ensure safe static standing. E

Problem-solving table 7.1 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guidelines 7.17.6)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Increase in pain/ nausea	Change in posture and position of joints and soft tissues. Patients who are symptom controlled at rest may suffer incidental pain when moving	Preprocedural symptom control Ongoing assessment of symptoms and adjustment of medication	Assist the patient to move slowly and offer support and reassurance where needed
Change in medical status	Change in position may cause a drop in blood pressure or trigger cardiovascular instability	Monitor carefully	Always have two people present if the patient is at risk of cardiovascular instability Be prepared to return to original position
Bowel/bladder elimination	Change in position may stimulate bladder and bowels	Put pads and pants on the patient before moving, where appropriate	It may be necessary to stop and clean the patient before continuing to move or position
Increase in loss of fluid, e.g. wound	Change in position may cause breakdown of primary healing or increase in muscular activity which may increase fluid loss	Give support to wounds during movement where possible	Stop and alert medical team for assessment
Loss of consciousness, fainting	Change in position may cause decrease in blood pressure	Allow adequate time for the patient to adjust to a more upright position. Sit patient up in bed and then sit over the edge of the bed and allow time for positional adjustment in blood pressure before attempting to stand	Call for help and follow emergency procedure Refer to local procedure for managing a falling patient
Fall	Multifactoral	Risk assessment and planning	Call for help and follow emergency procedure Refer to local procedure for managing a falling patient
Poor adherence to/toleration of sitting position	Discomfort Reduced tolerance Cognitive issues	Use pillows/towels to ensure patient is well supported and comfortable A timed goal often helps with patient compliance. Start with a short time, for example 30 minutes, and build up the time slowly. Always tell the patient how long they are aiming to sit out for and make sure the call bell is within reach	Combine sitting out with a meal time as this can help the patient to eat more easily and also help to distract the patient from the length of time they have to sit out
Inability to main-tain the position	Patients who are weak and/or fatigued may be at risk of slipping or	Careful positioning of towels and pillows may be needed to maintain a	Observe the patient regularly

falling	central safe posture in the chair

Moving and positioning the unconscious patient

Definition

Consciousness is a state of awareness of self, environment and one's response to that environment. To be fully conscious means that the individual appropriately responds to the external stimuli. An altered level of consciousness represents a decrease in this full state of awareness and response to environmental stimuli (Boss 1998).

Anatomy and physiology

Physiological changes in the unconscious patient

Unconsciousness is a physiological state in which the patient is unresponsive to sensory stimuli and lacks awareness of self and the environment (Hickey 2003b). There are many central nervous system conditions that can result in the patient being in an unconscious state. The depth and duration of unconsciousness span a broad spectrum of presentations from fainting, with a momentary loss of consciousness, to prolonged coma lasting several weeks, months or even years. The physiological changes that occur in unconscious patients will depend on the cause of unconsciousness, on the length of immobility while unconscious, outcome and quality of care. Also drugs, for example some muscle relaxants such as those used in intensive care, can contribute to muscle weakness, raised intraocular and intracranial pressure, electrolyte imbalances and airway tone (Booij 1996). Unconsciousness can lead to problematic changes for patients which have implications for nursing interventions, including moving and positioning.

Evidence-based approaches

Principles of care

The general principles of care already mentioned earlier in the chapter are all relevant to this section. However, there are some other general principles that also need to be considered for these patients.

Sedation

In the critically ill patient sedation is an essential part of the management. In addition to managing the primary neurological problem, the nurse must also incorporate a rehabilitation framework to maintain intact function, prevent complications and disabilities, and restore lost function to the maximum that is possible.

Communication

There is evidence that unconscious patients are aware of what is happening to them and can hear conversations around them (Jacobson and Winslow 2000, Lawrence 1995). It is therefore important to tell them what is going to happen, that is that they are going to be moved, and explain the procedure just as it would be explained to the conscious patient.

Immobility

The human body is designed for physical activity and movement. Therefore any lack of exercise, regardless of reason, can result in multisystem deconditioning, anatomical and physiological changes. Guidance from a physiotherapist for passive exercises early in the period of unconsciousness may help in the prevention of further complications. There is, however, no evidence to justify the inclusion of regular passive movements within the standard management of a patient's care. Intervention will be specific to the patient's presentation (Harrison 2000, Pryor and Prasad 2008).

The risk of deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism is increased in the unconscious patient. This is due to several factors

including blood pooling in the legs, hypercoagulability and prolonged pressure from immobility in bed (Hickey 2003a).

Effects of immobility of muscle

- *Decreased muscle strength:* the degree of loss varies with the particular muscle groups and the degree of immobility. The antigravitational muscles of the legs lose strength twice as quickly as the arm muscles and recovery takes longer.
- *Muscle atrophy*: this means loss of muscle mass. When the muscle is relaxed, it atrophies about twice as rapidly as in a stretched position. Increased muscle tone prevents complete atrophy so patients with upper motor neurone disease lose less muscle mass than those with lower motor neurone disease (Hickey 2003a). For more information see Moving and positioning the patient with neurological impairment.

Respiratory function

Due to the immobility of the unconscious patient, there is an increased threat of developing respiratory complications such as atelectasis, pneumonia, aspiration and airway obstruction. Respiratory assessment should be carried out prior to moving and changing position in order to provide a baseline that can be referred to following the procedure. The assessment should include checking patency of the airway, monitoring the rate, pattern and work of breathing, pulse oximetry* to check oxygen saturations* and blood gases to assess adequacy of gaseous exchange.

Patients may require mechanical ventilation for the following reasons.

- Inability to ventilate adequately, for example post anaesthesia or inspiratory muscle fatigue or weakness.
- Inability to protect own airway or presenting with upper airway obstruction.
- Ability to breathe adequately but inadvisable, for example with an acute head injury.

Mechanical ventilation may be required for days, weeks or even months (MacIntyre and Branson 2009). It is worth remembering that mechanically ventilated patients often cannot express any sort of preference for certain body positions. If the patient is intubated with an

endotracheal tube they are at increased risk of developing nosocomial infections (Hickey 2003a) so it is important that lung volumes and respiratory mechanics should be continuously monitored (Hickey 2003a). For more information see Moving and positioning the patient with respiratory compromise.

Moving and positioning the patient with respiratory compromise

Definition

The causes of respiratory compromise may be multifactoral and should be established before undertaking positioning interventions. Compromise may be due to medical intervention (e.g. side-effects of medication), metabolic, surgical or primary respiratory pathologies. The guidelines regarding principles of moving and positioning are applicable to these patients but particular observation is required regarding their response to the intervention.

Anatomy and physiology

Both skeletal and muscular structures that make up the thoracic cage and surround the lungs play a vital role in respiration (see Chapter 10 for more details). Compromise of one or more of these (e.g. abdominal muscle dysfunction due to abdominal surgery, ascites or deconditioning) may lead to an alteration in normal respiratory function and the ability to generate an effective cough (Hodges and Gandevia 2000).

Evidence-based approaches

Principles of care

The main aim of positioning management of the patient with respiratory symptoms is to:

- maximize ventilation/perfusion (V/Q) matching

- minimize the work of breathing (WOB)
- maximize the drainage of secretions.

In many instances positioning, as outlined above, may enhance medical management by the use of the effects of gravity upon the cardiovascular and respiratory systems. This may reduce the need for more invasive intervention (Jones and Moffatt 2002) such as mechanical ventilation. Therefore, the most advantageous positioning should be integrated into the overall 24-hour plan, and positions that may have an adverse effect should be avoided (ACPRC 1996).

The general principles of care mentioned earlier in the chapter are all relevant to this section.

Positioning to maximize ventilation/perfusion matching

Definition

For optimal gaseous exchange to take place, it is necessary that the air and the blood are in the same area of lung at the same time. Matching of these is expressed as a ratio of alveolar ventilation to perfusion (V/Q). A degree of mismatch can occur either due to adequate ventilation to an underperfused area (dead space) or inadequate ventilation to a well-perfused area (shunt).

Anatomy and physiology

The function of the lungs is to exchange oxygen and carbon dioxide between the blood and atmosphere. Oxygen from the atmosphere comes into close contact with blood via the alveolar capillary membrane. Here it diffuses across into the blood and is carried around the body. The amount of oxygen that reaches the blood depends on the rate and depth of the breath, the compliance of the chest and any airway obstruction.

In a self-ventilating individual in the upright position, ventilation will be preferential in the dependent regions as:

- the apex of the lung is more inflated and therefore has less potential to expand
- the bases of the lung are compressed by the weight of the lungs and the blood vessels and therefore have more potential to inflate.

Perfusion to the alveoli is approximately equal to that of the systemic circulation but as the pressure is far less, the distribution is gravity dependent. The variability in the distribution of perfusion throughout the lung is far greater than that of ventilation.

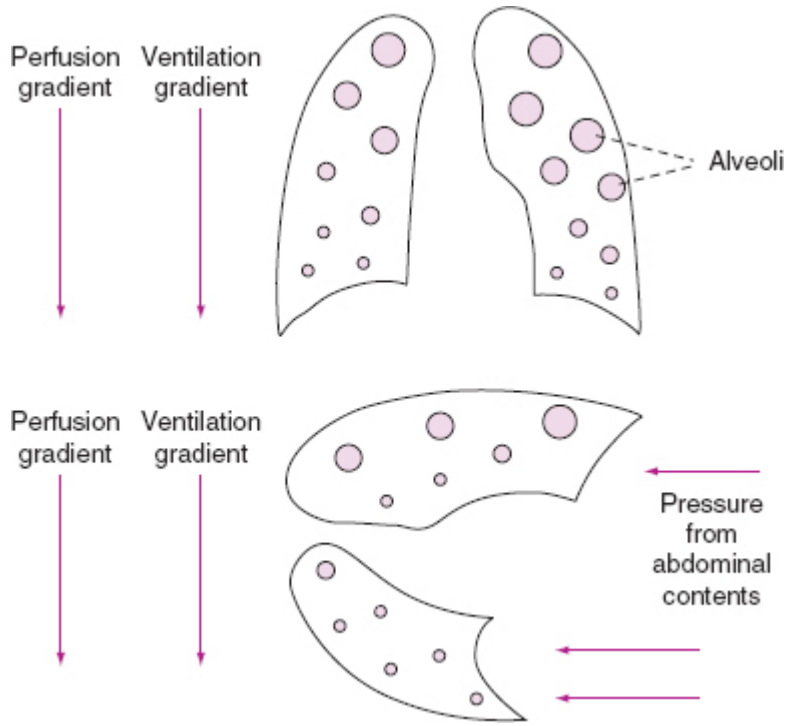
Evidence-based approaches

Principles of care

In a self-ventilating upright position, V/Q is not exactly matched even in a healthy lung but is regarded as optimal in the bases (Figure 7.12) as there is the greatest perfusion and ventilation. Similarly in a side-lying position, the effect of gravity alters the distribution of perfusion and ventilation so that the dependent area of lung, that is, the bottom of the lung, has the best V/Q ratio.

Figure 7.12 Effect of gravity on the distribution of ventilation and perfusion in the lung in the upright and lateral positions.

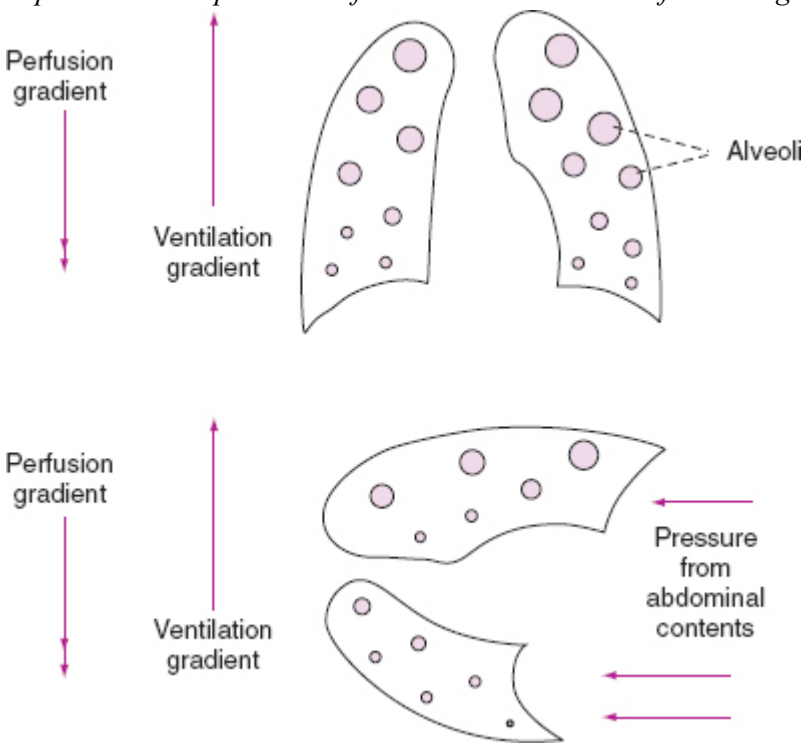
Reproduced with permission from Nelson Thornes Ltd from Hough (2001).



In a patient receiving mechanical ventilation, especially in a mandatory mode (where the ventilator rather than the patient initiates and terminates the breath), the distribution of ventilation and perfusion will alter (Figure 7.13). As ventilation is driven by a positive pressure, rather than the negative pressure when self-ventilating, air will take the path of least resistance. Ventilation will therefore be optimal in the apex of the lungs in the upright position or the non-dependent/uppermost lung in side-lying. This can, however, be altered further in the presence of lung pathology. Perfusion will remain preferentially delivered to the bases (in the upright position) or the dependent/lowermost lung (in side-lying) and have a higher gradient (variability from apex to bases) than in self-ventilating patients as the positive pressure displaces blood from areas of highest ventilation. These two situations mean that the V/Q ratio of those receiving mechanical ventilation can have a higher degree of mismatch. Strategies such as positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) and a higher oxygen delivery will help to overcome this.

Figure 7.13 Effect of controlled mandatory ventilation on ventilation and perfusion gradients. In contrast to spontaneous respiration, the perfusion gradient increases downwards and the ventilation gradient is reversed.

Reproduced with permission from Nelson Thornes Ltd from Hough (2001).



Preprocedural considerations

The general principles of care mentioned earlier in the chapter are all relevant to this section. However, there are also some other general principles that need to be considered for these patients.

Pharmacological support

Oxygen requirements

Repositioning can cause a temporary fall in oxygen saturation or a raised respiratory rate. If the fall is greater than 4% or recovery time is protracted, supplemental oxygen delivery may be required for several minutes before, during and after moving.

Procedure guideline 7.7 Positioning the patient to maximize V/Q matching with

unilateral lung disease in a self-ventilating patient

Equipment

- Pillows/towels
- Sliding sheets/manual handling equipment if indicated following risk assessment in accordance to local manual handling policy
- Bed extension for tall patients

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008, C).
2 Wash hands thoroughly or use an alcohol-based handrub.	To reduce the risk of contamination and cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Ensure that the bed is at the optimum height for handlers. If two handlers are required try to match handlers' heights as far as possible.	To minimize the risk of injury to the practitioner (Smith 2005, C).
Procedure	
4 Position in side-lying on the unaffected side. Refer to the general principles of moving and positioning the patient in side-lying (see Procedure guideline 7.3).	Ventilation and perfusion are both preferentially distributed to the dependent areas of lung.

Procedure guideline 7.8 Positioning the patient to maximize V/Q matching for widespread pathology in a self-ventilating patient

Equipment

- Pillows/towels
- Sliding sheets/ manual handling equipment if indicated following risk assessment in accordance to local manual handling policy
- Bed extension for tall patients

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008, C).
2 Wash hands thoroughly or use an alcohol-based handrub.	To reduce the risk of contamination and cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Ensure that the bed is at the optimum height for handlers. If two handlers are required try to match handlers' heights as far as possible.	To minimize the risk of injury to the practitioner (Smith 2005, C).
Procedure	
4 Position the patient in high sitting as discussed in the general principles of moving and positioning of the patient in sitting in bed or chair (see Procedure guidelines 7.2 and 7.5).	The effects of shunting mean perfusion will best match ventilation in high supported sitting (Dean 1985, R4).

Problem-solving table 7.2 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guidelines 7.7 and 7.8)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Reduced oxygen saturations. This will be evident by looking at the saturation level on the oximeter* if present or observation of patient colour and work of breathing	Movement causes an increase in oxygen demand from the tissues. If this is not matched by adequate delivery then saturations levels will be lower	Preoxygenate prior to movement if patient is requiring high levels of oxygen or is ventilated	Increase the concentration of oxygen delivered until satisfactory saturations are achieved. Aim to reduce this as much as possible but consider that a higher level of oxygen may be required in the altered position If this is still not tolerated, return the patient to previous position
Raised or tense shoulders/increased effort in breathing	Use of accessory muscles to assist with respiration	Use pillows/towels to support upper limbs in positions where they are not able to actively fix and thereby alter their function	Reassurance to patient Increase oxygen concentration until respiratory rate returns to normal If position remains poorly tolerated, return to the previous position

Positioning to minimize the work of breathing

Anatomy and physiology

At rest, inspiration is an active process whereas expiration is passive. The main muscle involved in inspiration is the diaphragm (Figure 7.14). The diaphragm contracts, thereby increasing the volume of the thoracic cavity. Additionally, the external intercostals work by pulling the sternum and rib cage upwards and outwards, likened to a pump and bucket handle (Figure 7.15). When increased ventilation is required (e.g. with exercise or in disease), the accessory muscles (scalene and sternocleidomastoid) assist with this process.

Figure 7.14 The diaphragm as seen from the front. Note the openings in the vertebral portion for the inferior vena cava, oesophagus and aorta.

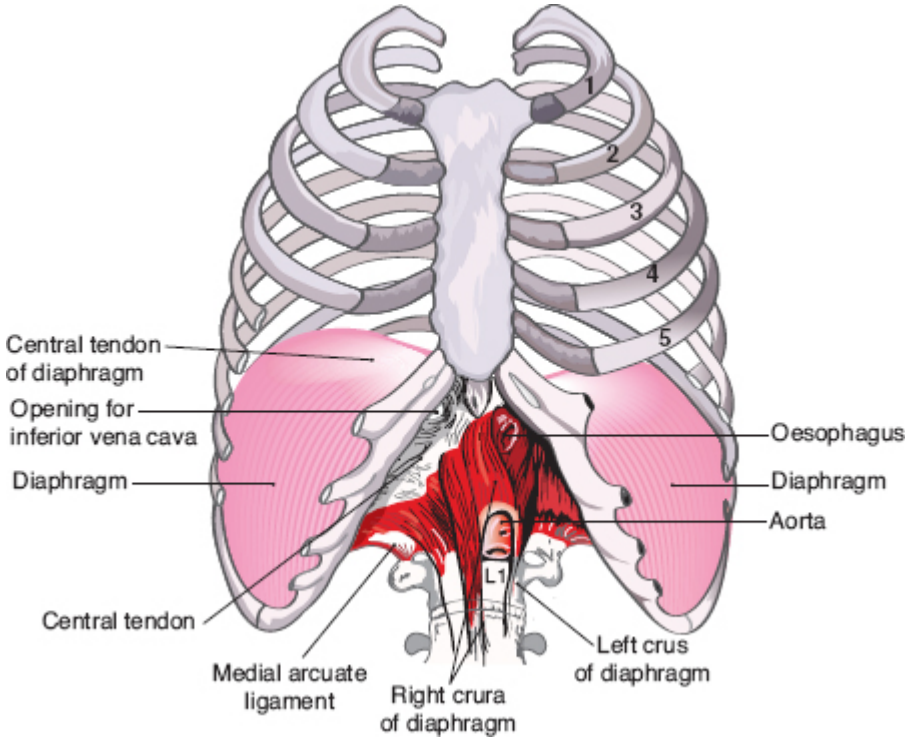
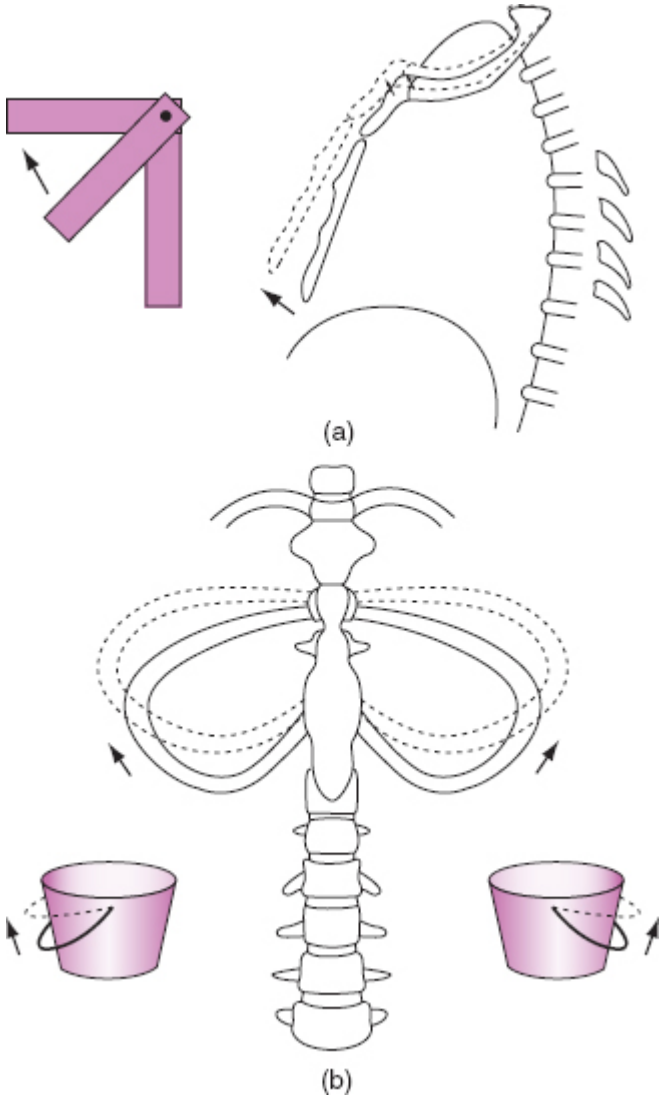


Figure 7.15 Movement of chest wall on inspiration. (a) The upper ribs move upwards and forwards, increasing the anteroposterior dimension of the thoracic cavity. As a result, the sternum also rises forwards (b)

The lower ribs move like bucket handles, increasing the lateral dimension of the thorax.

Reproduced with permission from Aggarwal and Hunter (2007).



If this situation is prolonged, as in respiratory disease, the diaphragm activity reduces and the accessory muscles have to do a higher proportion of the work. This can be observed in a patient who adopts a posture of raised shoulders.

Although expiration should be passive in normal conditions, the internal intercostals and muscles of the abdominal wall (transversus abdominis, rectus abdominis and the internal and external obliques) are utilized in times of active expiration to push the diaphragm upwards, reducing the volume of the thoracic cavity and forcefully expelling air.

This can be observed clinically when the abdominal wall visibly contracts and pulls in the lower part of the rib cage during expiration.

Evidence-based approaches

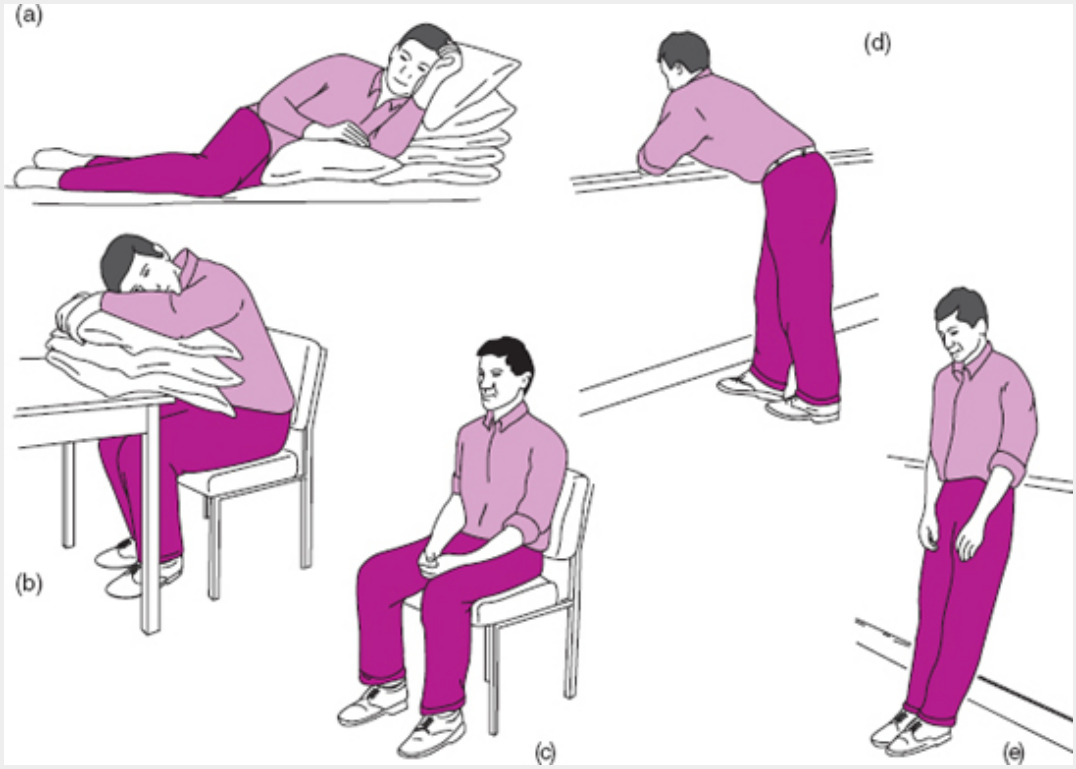
Principles of care

Many people suffering with long-term breathlessness adopt positions that will best facilitate their inspiratory muscles. The aim of any position is to restore a normal rate and depth of breathing in order to achieve efficient but adequate ventilation (see Box 7.2).

Box 7.2 Positioning to minimize the work of breathing

There are certain resting positions that can help reduce the work of breathing, as shown in Figure 7.16.

Figure 7.16 Positions to support breathing.



1 High side-lying (see Figure 7.16a).

2 Forward lean sitting (see Figure 7.16b).
3 Relaxed sitting (see Figure 7.16c).
4 Forward lean standing (see Figure 7.16d).
5 Relaxed standing (see Figure 7.16e).

These positions serve to:

- support the body, reducing the overall use of postural muscle and oxygen requirements
- improve lung volumes
- optimize the functional positions of the respiratory (thoracic and abdominal) muscles (Dean 1985).

Preprocedural considerations

The general procedural considerations mentioned earlier in the chapter are all relevant to this section. However, there are also some other general principles that need to be considered for these patients.

Pharmacological support

Administering nebulizers

If prescribed, administering nebulizers approximately 15 minutes prior to moving will help to dilate the airways, making breathing more efficient and ensuring better oxygen delivery to the blood.

Oxygen requirements

Repositioning can cause a temporary fall in oxygen saturation or a raised respiratory rate. If the fall is greater than 4% or recovery time is protracted, supplemental oxygen delivery may be required for several minutes before, during and after moving.

Non-pharmacological support

Pacing

It may be necessary to allow the patient time to rest during the process of getting into a new position to limit the exertion and therefore increased respiratory demand.

Environment

A breathless patient may be anxious about carrying out a task that could exacerbate their breathlessness. By reducing additional stressors such as noise and a cluttered environment, this can be minimized.

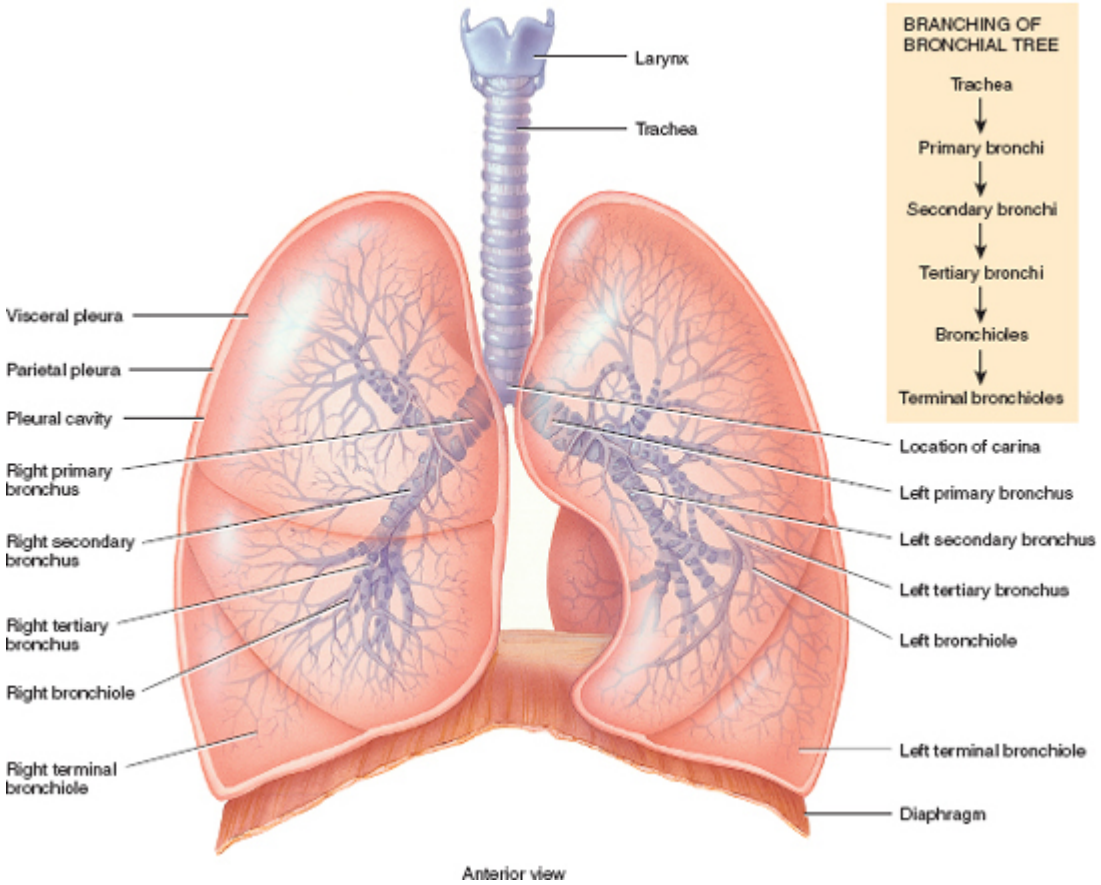
Positioning to maximize the drainage of secretions

Anatomy and physiology

The trachea branches into two bronchi, one to each lung (Figure 7.17). Each main bronchus then divides into lobar and then segmental bronchi (upper, middle and lower on the right, upper and lower on the left), each one branching into two or more segmental bronchi with a smaller and smaller diameter, until they reach the bronchioles and finally alveoli.

Figure 7.17 The bronchial tree.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



The walls of the airways are lined with epithelium which contains cilia. The cilia constantly beat in a co-ordinated movement, propelling the mucus layer towards the pharynx. The mucus layer traps any dust particles/foreign objects which can then be transported along the 'mucociliary escalator', an important part of the lungs' defence mechanism. An increased volume of mucus is produced in response to airway irritation and in some disease states.

A reduced ability to effectively remove this mucus can lead to an increased bacterial load and therefore may compromise respiratory functioning by causing airway obstruction. Consequently leading to segmental atelectasis or lobar collapse, long term this can lead to chronic inflammation and airway destruction.

Preprocedural considerations

The general principles of care mentioned earlier in the chapter and the preprocedural considerations to minimize the work of breathing are all

relevant to this section. However, there are also some other preprocedural considerations that need to be taken into account for these patients.

Non-pharmacological support

Humidification

Drainage of secretions will be optimized if the patient and therefore the mucus layer and cilia are well hydrated. This can be ensured by adequate humidification (see Chapter 10).

The problem-solving, postprocedural considerations and complications in general principles of moving and positioning patients and respiratory compromise also apply to these patients. Refer to relevant sections in this chapter.

Procedure guideline 7.9 Positioning to maximize the drainage of secretions

Equipment

- Pillows/towels
- Sliding sheets/manual handling equipment if indicated following risk assessment in accordance with local manual handling policy
- Bed extension for tall patients

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008, C).
2 Wash hands thoroughly or use an alcohol-based handrub.	To reduce the risk of contamination and cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Ensure that the bed is at the optimum height for handlers. If two handlers are required try to match handlers' heights as far as possible.	To minimize the risk of injury to the practitioner (Smith 2005, C).
Procedure	
4 Auscultate the chest.	To determine most affected area and therefore area to be treated. E

5 Position patient with segment to be drained uppermost.	Use gravity to facilitate drainage of secretions. Bronchopulmonary segment needs to be perpendicular to gravity. E
6 Leave to drain for 10 minutes if tolerated.	Suggested optimal duration (Fink 2002, R).
7 Physiotherapy techniques such as breathing/manual techniques may be carried out whilst in position.	To further assist the removal of secretions. E

Problem-solving table 7.3 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 7.9)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Reduced oxygen saturations. This will be evident by looking at the saturation level on the oximeter* if present or observation of patient colour and work of breathing	Movement causes an increase in oxygen demand from the tissues. If this is not matched by adequate delivery then saturation levels will be lower Positions to drain secretions may not comply with positions to match V/Q	Preoxygenate prior to movement if patient is requiring high levels of oxygen or is ventilated	Increase the concentration of oxygen delivered until satisfactory saturations are achieved. Aim to reduce this as much as possible but consider that a higher level of oxygen may be required in the altered position If this is still not tolerated, return the patient to previous position
Large volume of secretions/increased audible secretions/ coughing	Drainage of distal secretions into more proximal airway	Clear airway prior to movement Regular airway clearance following movement	Clear airway of any secretions either by coughing or suctioning

Moving and positioning the patient with neurological impairment

The general principles of positioning discussed earlier can be applied for this group of patients. However, the complexity of these patients highlights the difficulty of a uniform approach to overall management. Therefore, this section will look at some of the variations in presentation

of this patient group and suggest some principles to be considered when positioning these patients.

This will cover recommendations for assisting patients presenting with physical neurological symptoms affecting their central nervous systems (CNS) and peripheral nervous systems (PNS) as a consequence of their disease or treatment itself. These may include:

- hemiparesis or monoparesis*
- hemi-aesthesia*
- peripheral motor/sensory neuropathies*
- spinal cord compression/injury.

Definitions

Neurological insult through disease or illness can cause damage to patients' central, peripheral and autonomic nervous systems, affecting the relay of messages to and from nerves to enable normal motor and sensory function. Sequelae associated with neurological deficit include altered tone, abnormal movement patterns, sensory, cognitive, perceptual* and speech and language problems.

Anatomy and physiology

The nervous system is a complex organ which allows us to automatically and volitionally adjust to internal and external environments. This maintains equilibrium of body systems and enables effective, efficient motor and cognitive function. It can be considered in three main areas: central nervous system, peripheral nervous system and autonomic nervous system (ANS). The CNS consists of two parts: the brain and spinal cord. The brain consists of four lobes (frontal, temporal, parietal and occipital), the midbrain, pons, medulla oblongata and cerebellum. Each has individual and joint roles, and interconnects with the others via a complex system of pathways producing automatic and volitional movement and cognitive function. These connect with every part of the body via the PNS, consisting of cranial and spinal nerves which carry motor and sensory (afferent) fibres. The ANS, made up of sympathetic and parasympathetic components, regulates structures not

under conscious control, for example arterial blood pressure, gastrointestinal motility and secretion, urinary bladder emptying, sweating, body temperature, activated mainly by centres in the brainstem, spinal cord and hypothalamus. Illness, disease and/or side-effects of treatment can affect any or all of these systems which will have implications for clinical practice and patient management.

Related theory

Disease or damage to the central or peripheral nervous system can lead to temporary or permanent complex physical, cognitive, psychological and psychosocial problems (Brada 1995, Ellison and Love 1997, Guerrero 1998, Kirshblum *et al.* 2001, Lindsay *et al.* 2004, Tookman *et al.* 2004). These may include:

- weakness: unilateral, bilateral or global
- altered tone
- sensory changes
- balance problems
- perceptual problems
- visual problems
- cognitive problems
- dysphagia*
- dysphasia*
- behavioural changes
- autonomic dysfunction
- dysarthria*.

If a person with a neurological presentation is unable to move, they are deprived of the physical benefits of movement (see Box 7.3).

Box 7.3 The physical benefits of movement

- Sensorimotor appreciation.
- Posture and balance control.

- Maintenance of joint and soft tissue range of movement.
- Maximization of functional independence.
- Minimization of tonal changes such as spasticity (Hawkins *et al.* 1999).
- Cardiorespiratory fitness (Convertino *et al*. 1997).

Effective management of patients with neurological impairment requires holistic assessment including consideration of altered tone, abnormal patterns of movement, abnormal reflex activity and joint protection.

Abnormal reflex activity

For the patient with neurological deficit moving and positioning can help to manage the positional influences of unwanted reflex activity for those with altered tone (Davies 1985, Edwards 2002a, Jackson 1998, Stokes 2004). Positions suggested relate to the desire to avoid the development of abnormal patterns of movement associated with altered tone through minimizing the influence of primitive developmental reflexes (Bobath 1990). The three reflexes whose 'release' can be influenced are: (i) the tonic labyrinthine reflex; (ii) the symmetrical tonic neck reflex; and (iii) the asymmetrical tonic neck reflex (Davies 1985, Davies 2000, Jackson 1998). Davies (2000) describes these primitive reflexes as follows.

The tonic labyrinthine reflex is evoked by changes in the position of the head in space, originating at otolithic organs of the labyrinths and believed to be integrated at brainstem levels. In supine, extensor tone* increases throughout the body with resultant extension of head, spine and limb extension and shoulder retraction. In prone, flexor tone* increases throughout the body. This may only be seen as a reduction in extensor tone* in a patient with severe spasticity. The influence of head position relative to the body will also be noticed in sitting or standing and may affect functional movement or position.

The symmetrical tonic neck reflex is a proprioceptive reflex, elicited by stretching of the muscles and joints of the neck. When the head extends, extensor tone in the arms and flexor tone in the legs increase.

When the head is flexed, the extensor tone in the lower limbs increases, with more flexor tone in the arms. This position can be seen where the patient sits unsupported or is half lying in bed with their head flexed; their affected leg extends and affected arm flexes more. This can also be seen when a patient is sitting unsupported in a chair or wheelchair.

The asymmetrical tonic neck reflex is elicited as a proprioceptive response from the muscles of the joints and neck. Extensor tone increases in the limbs on the same side to which the head is turned. The limbs on the occipital side show an increase in flexor tone. Patients who have poor mobility dependent on a wheelchair may have an increase in lower limb flexor tone on their weak side as well as affecting their arm. Here, a flexion contracture of the knee may develop, requiring effective management strategies recommended by therapists following individual patient assessment.

Professionals agree that positioning is a key element of rehabilitation and management of patients with neurological deficit (Bobath 1990, Davies 1985, Edwards and Carter 2002, Hawkins *et al.* 1999, Lynch and Grisogono 1991, Raine *et al.* 2009). An optimal position is not always possible due to variables such as the patient's medical condition and presence of contractures (Edwards 1998). There appears to be an overall lack of consensus in clinicians' actual practice regarding the key components of the positions necessary to limit the onset of spasticity and unwanted patterns of movement (Chatterton *et al.* 2001, Jackson 1998, Mee and Bee 2007). Prevention of complications is an important aim (Bobath 1990, Davies 1985, Edwards and Carter 2002, Lynch and Grisogono 1991, Mee and Bee 2007, Raine *et al*. 2009). Davies ((1985), 2000) describes positioning for stroke patients and urges the avoidance of flat supine positioning due to its influence on the tonic neck and labyrinthine reflexes potentially resulting in an increase in inappropriate extensor activity throughout the body. Edwards (1998) recommends a variety of postures especially for patients with hypertonus.

A survey of physiotherapists identified that the most common aims of positioning for patients with stroke were modulation of muscle tone (93%), prevention of damage to affected limbs (92%) and supporting and stabilizing body segments (91%) (Chatterton *et al.* 2001). Expert

opinion identifies that these factors promote recovery where recovery is likely (Barnes 2001, Edwards 1998, Hawkins *et al.* 1999, Pope 2002).

Altered tone and abnormal patterns of movement

Tone is defined clinically as 'the resistance that is encountered when the joint of a relaxed patient is moved passively' (Britton 1998). Alterations in tone will affect functional recovery in patients with neurological problems and require careful management. This can be through positioning, splinting if required and oral and focal pharmacological intervention (Barnes 2008).

Increased tone and spasticity are disorders of spinal proprioceptive reflexes. Spasticity is defined as:

> a motor disorder characterised by a velocity dependent increase in tonic stretch reflexes (muscle tone) with exaggerated tendon jerks, resulting from hyperexcitability of the stretch reflex, as one component of the upper motor neurone syndrome. (Barnes 2001, p.1)

Normal movement is dependent on a neuromuscular system that can receive, integrate and respond appropriately to multiple intrinsic and extrinsic stimuli. Where this is altered through CNS or PNS disease, abnormal movement patterns will exist which will affect patients functionally. Key components include:

- normal postural tone
- reciprocal innervation of muscles
- sensory: motor feedback and feedforward mechanism
- balance reactions (Edwards 2002b)
- biomechanical properties of muscle (Edwards 1998).

The influence of altered tone and abnormal patterns of movement is key to therapeutic theories regarding the recovery of motor control in patients with neurological problems. Patients may attempt to perform functional skills as prerequisites of activities of daily living, but without appropriate background postural tone and normal properties of muscle, these movements will be performed in an abnormal way.

Joint protection

Positioning is suggested as a strategy to prevent hemiplegic shoulder pain and to prevent loss of range of movement (Ada *et al.* 2005, Dean *et al.* 2000, Kaplan 1995). This aims to prevent the patient's functional deterioration (Gloag 1985). Dean *et al.* 2000 identified that these complications often prevent a patient's full participation in rehabilitation, contributing to poor upper limb functional outcome. Several factors were described for this.

- Glenohumeral subluxation due to lack of muscular activity around the shoulder.
- Trauma to the shoulder complex through unsuitable exercise.
- Trauma through inappropriate handling of the patient by staff during transfers.

Dean *et al.* 2000 acknowledged that consistency in education was essential for these common problems. Ada *et al*. 2005 recommended that patients with little upper limb function in the early stages after a stroke undergo a programme of positioning of the affected shoulder. Their study showed statistical significance in maintaining shoulder range when compared with patients who received standard upper limb care of arm support and exercise only. Such specific joint positioning requires assessment by the physiotherapist for each individual patient.

Soft tissue changes and contractures

With increased tone, joint range and subsequent function are at risk. Restriction in the range of movement is not always simply through increased tone of the relevant muscles. The surrounding soft tissues, tendons, ligaments and the joints themselves can develop changes leading to an increased likelihood of them being maintained in a shortened position (Barnes 2008); a secondary biomechanical component of spasticity is often seen in patients with functional mobility problems. Adaptation of the mechanical properties of muscle also contributes to increased tone in patients with hypertonia (O'Dwyer *et al.* 1996). It is possible, but not proven, that maintaining a joint through a full range of movement may prevent the longer term development of soft tissue contractures (Barnes 2008).

Evidence-based approaches

Principles of care

The general principles of care mentioned earlier in the chapter are all relevant to this section. However, there are also some other principles that need to be considered for these patients. For those with acute and long-standing neurological issues, principles of moving and positioning can be applied at any time along their treatment trajectory for those with rehabilitation potential, deteriorating function and those requiring palliative management. Posture and postural control will be affected in these patients. 'Posture' describes the biomechanical alignment and orientation of the body to the environment (Shumway-Cook and Woollacott 2001), 'postural control' provides orientation and balance (Lundy-Ekman 2007). Positional influences in the patient with neurological impairment may affect spinal, pelvic and shoulder girdle alignment with risk of soft tissue shortening due to the following potential problems.

- Flattened lumbar spine.
- Extended thoracic spine.
- Pelvis tilted backwards.
- Retracted hip.
- Elevated shoulder, retracted scapula.
- Feet tend toward plantarflexion (Shumway-Cook and Woollacott 2001).

Therefore, additional considerations should be applied for the neurological patient with severe tonal management issues. These should always be discussed with the physiotherapist.

Preprocedural considerations

The general principles of moving and positioning patients can be applied when assisting those with complex neurological impairment. Patients with neurological impairment may be able to participate in usual transfer techniques but risk assessment will consider several additional factors. This section will identify considerations for staff in their decision

making. Where there is any doubt when moving patients with complex needs, guidance should be sought from a physiotherapist/occupational therapist.

Patients with neurological deficits may vary in their presentation on a daily basis. The additional considerations for positioning and moving patients with neurological impairment are listed in Box 7.4.

Box 7.4 Considerations for moving patients with neurological impairment

- Variations in tone, for example flaccidity or spasm.
- Cognitive problems including attention deficit.
- Behavioural problems.
- Communication problems.
- Variable client ability, for example 'on/off' periods for patients with Parkinson's disease and patients with changing presentations, for example multiple sclerosis, degenerative conditions.
- Sensory and proprioceptive problems, including reduced midline awareness
- Pain/altered sensitivity.
- Decreased balance and co-ordination.
- Visual disturbance.
- Varying ability over 24 hours, for example, fatigue at the end of the day, at night.
- Effects of medication.
- Varying capability of the patient according to the experience and/or skill mix of handler(s).
- Post surgery, presence of tracheotomy, chest and other drains.
- Traumatic and non-traumatic spinal injury – risk of spinal instability.
- Importance of maintaining privacy and dignity.

(CSP 2008, p.26)

Equipment

Splints and orthoses

In advanced spasticity, it is often the soft tissue changes that contribute most to subsequent disability, such as limb deformity leading to poor function and problems with regard to hygiene, positioning, transferring and feeding and making the individual prone to pressure sores (O'Dwyer *et al.* 1996). Therapeutic splinting may maintain and assist function (Edwards 1998, Raine *et al.* 2009, Shumway-Cook and Woollacott 2001).

An orthosis or splint is an external device designed to apply, distribute or remove forces to or from the body in a controlled manner in order to control body motion and prevent alteration in the shape of body tissues. The aim is to compensate for weak or absent muscle function or to resist unopposed action of spastic muscle (Edwards and Charlton 1996). They may help gain alignment for proximal and truncal activity (Raine *et al.* 2009) and enable more balanced and efficient walking (Hesse 2003). As with all therapeutic interventions, they should only be used after detailed assessment and based on sound clinical reasoning.

Seating

Appropriate seating is also advocated as an adjunct to management for effective postural support (Kirkwood and Bardslay 2001, Pope 1996, 2002, Raine *et al.* 2009).

Occupational therapists and physiotherapists will consider this for management of patients with complex needs.

Environment and positioning

Problems of perception* are considered to be one of the main factors limiting functional motor recovery following stroke (Baer and Durward 2004). These can affect patients with disease or illness affecting their CNS. Here, the patient fails to respond appropriately to stimuli presented on their hemiplegic side, the contralateral side to the brain lesion (Baer and Durward 2004, Lindsay *et al.* 2004). Environmental

factors such as correct positioning are essential for ensuring optimal level of function for each individual (Edwards 2002a). Clinical management strategies include:

- addressing the patient from the affected side
- deliberate placement of items such as drinks on that side
- advice to carers to position themselves on the patient's affected side whilst talking to them in order to orientate them to their affected side
- positioning the patient on their affected side, enabling function with their sound side.

Limited evidence exists to suggest the benefit of these approaches (Baer and Durward 2004). However, it is recognized as a useful treatment adjunct for these patients, through promotion of sensory awareness/appreciation, including perception and body image and enabling function (Bobath 1990, Davies 1985, Edwards and Carter 2002, Grieve and Gnanasekaran 2008, Lynch and Grisogono 1991, Raine *et al.* 2009).

Rehabilitation opportunity

Patients with neurological illness or disease present with an assortment of clinical symptoms. Positioning can assist in their holistic management and allow future opportunity for rehabilitation where their illness or disease allows.

Procedure guideline 7.10 Positioning the neurological patient with tonal problems

Essential equipment

- Pillows or towels (as guidance or basic positioning)

Optional equipment

- Hand/foot resting splint if required
- Resting splint if required

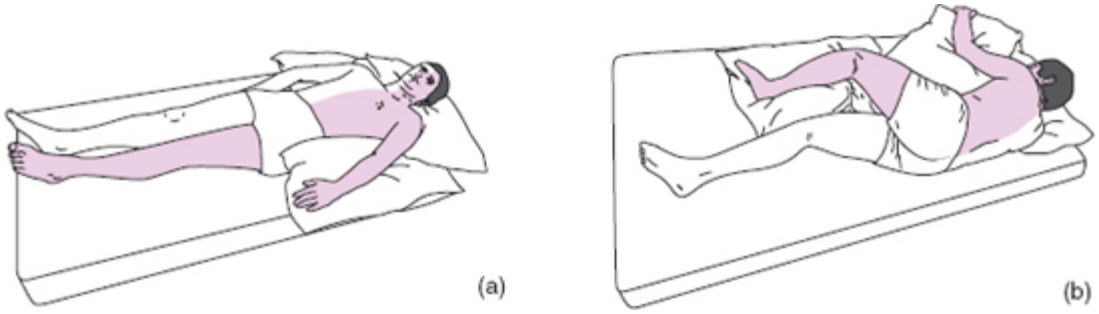
Medicinal products

- Analgesia as required
- Antispasmodics as required

Preprocedure	
Action	Rationale
1 Explain the procedure to the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008, C).
2 Wash hands thoroughly or use an alcohol-based handrub.	To reduce the risk of contamination and cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Ensure that the bed is at the optimum height for handlers. If two handlers are required try to match handlers' heights as far as possible.	To minimize the risk of injury to the practitioner (Smith 2005, C).
Procedure	
4 Follow basic advice for positioning the patient in supine, side-lying and sitting in bed as described in the above procedure guidelines for positioning patients.	To promote alignment of body segments for patients with high or low tone due to abnormal influences of primitive developmental reflexes resulting in asymmetrical posture (Bobath 1990, E; Davies 1985, E; Edwards and Carter 2002, E; Lynch and Grisogono 1991, R4). To ensure patient comfort. E
5a Consider and apply possible modifications as specified below for the supine (see Action Figure 5a1(a). ■ Place pillow under hemiplegic hip for alignment. ■ Place additional pillows or wedge under knees and/or head. ■ Place pillow to support feet in neutral/plantargrade position: ■ Apply foot resting splint (ankle foot orthosis (AFO) (see Action Figure 5a2) to weak foot and ankle if recommended. NB: Ensure the splint is fitted correctly ■ Place pillow under weak arm. ■ Apply resting splint for hand/forearm if required.	To control pelvic and spinal alignment. E To optimize patient comfort. E To maintain joint and soft tissue range (ACPIN 1998, C; E; Barnes 2001, R4; Edwards 1998, E). To maintain soft tissue and joint range (Edwards 1998, E; Shumway-Cook and Woollacott 2001, E).
5b Consider and apply possible modifications as specified below for side-lying (see Action Figure 5a1(b).	To support the patient's affected shoulder and upper limb due to a risk of trauma, pain, muscle and soft tissue shortening (Ada *et al.* 2005, R2b, E; Dean *et al.* 2000, R2b).

■ Place pillow under head and in front of trunk. ■ Place pillow in front of trunk. ■ Place patient's affected arm on pillow. Apply resting splint for hand/forearm if required.	To reduce the influence of primitive developmental reflexes and asymmetrical posturing of head and trunk in patients with high or low tone. E
	May be effective in maintaining opposing trunk muscles. E
	To maintain soft tissue and joint range (Barnes 2001, R4; Edwards 1998, E; Shumway-Cook and Woollacott 2001, E).
Postprocedure	
The general principles of care mentioned earlier in the chapter are all relevant to this section.	
For patients requiring use of an external splint to maintain joint position and range, skin condition must be closely monitored.	To monitor skin integrity and pressure care. E

Action Figure 5a1 Positioning the patient with neurological weakness. (a) Supine: affected arm supported on pillow. (b) Side-lying: affected arm supported on pillow.



Action Figure 5a2 (a) Ankle foot orthosis. (b) Ankle foot orthosis *in situ.*

Problem-solving table 7.4 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 7.10)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Unable to position patient's legs in bed due to increased tone – legs remain 'stiff'	Abnormal tone (high or low) affecting limbs secondary to CNS involvement (cortical/ spinal)	Assess for other noxious stimuli which may increase tone in patients with CNS disease Ensure pain control Ensure bowel management Ensure effective catheter drainage Assess for infection	Use leg flexion position in bed control **And/or** Position small folded pillow/rolled towel under patient's knees Avoid contact of patient's feet against end of bed – this can stimulate increased tone in legs Liaise with physiotherapist (PT)
Unable to achieve comfortable position for patient with CNS involvement Patient's limbs may demonstrate persistent increased tone despite positioning	Possible causes: ■ inadequate pain control ■ inadequate antiepilepsy medication ■ other noxious stimuli	Assess for other noxious stimuli which may increase tone in patients with CNS disease Ensure pain control Ensure bowel management Assess for infection	Reassess patient Ensure adequate analgesia Ensure adequate antiepilepsy medication Possibly a medical review required
Patient's arm remains flexed/unable to position in bed	Abnormal tone (high or low) affecting limbs due to CNS involvement		Position small flat pillow under patient's affected arm to provide support Or Position small flat pillow across patient's abdomen to support both upper limbs Use of resting splint if indicated for patient management – liaise with PT and/or OT
Patent is unaware of affected side	Sensory/motor inattention		Ensure patient's environment is made available to them Ensure affected limbs are supported by pillows/folded/rolled towel as required (refer to positioning for patients with neurological deficits)

Postprocedural considerations

The general principles of care mentioned earlier in the chapter are all relevant to this section. However, there are also some other general principles that need to be considered for these patients.

Ongoing care

Where the patient requires use of an external splint to maintain joint position and joint range, skin integrity must be closely monitored (see Chapter 9), including skin/pressure care, and any adverse effects treated accordingly following assessment.

Documentation

The general principles of care mentioned earlier in the chapter are all relevant to this section. However, in addition, instructions regarding the appropriate use of splints should be clearly documented in the patient's care plan including application, removal and timing of wear.

Education of patient and relevant others

The patient and carer(s) should be given written information regarding use of any splints or orthotics including application, removal and timing of wear according to the therapist's advice. Environmental and clinical management strategies should be explained to the patient and carers for effective holistic management.

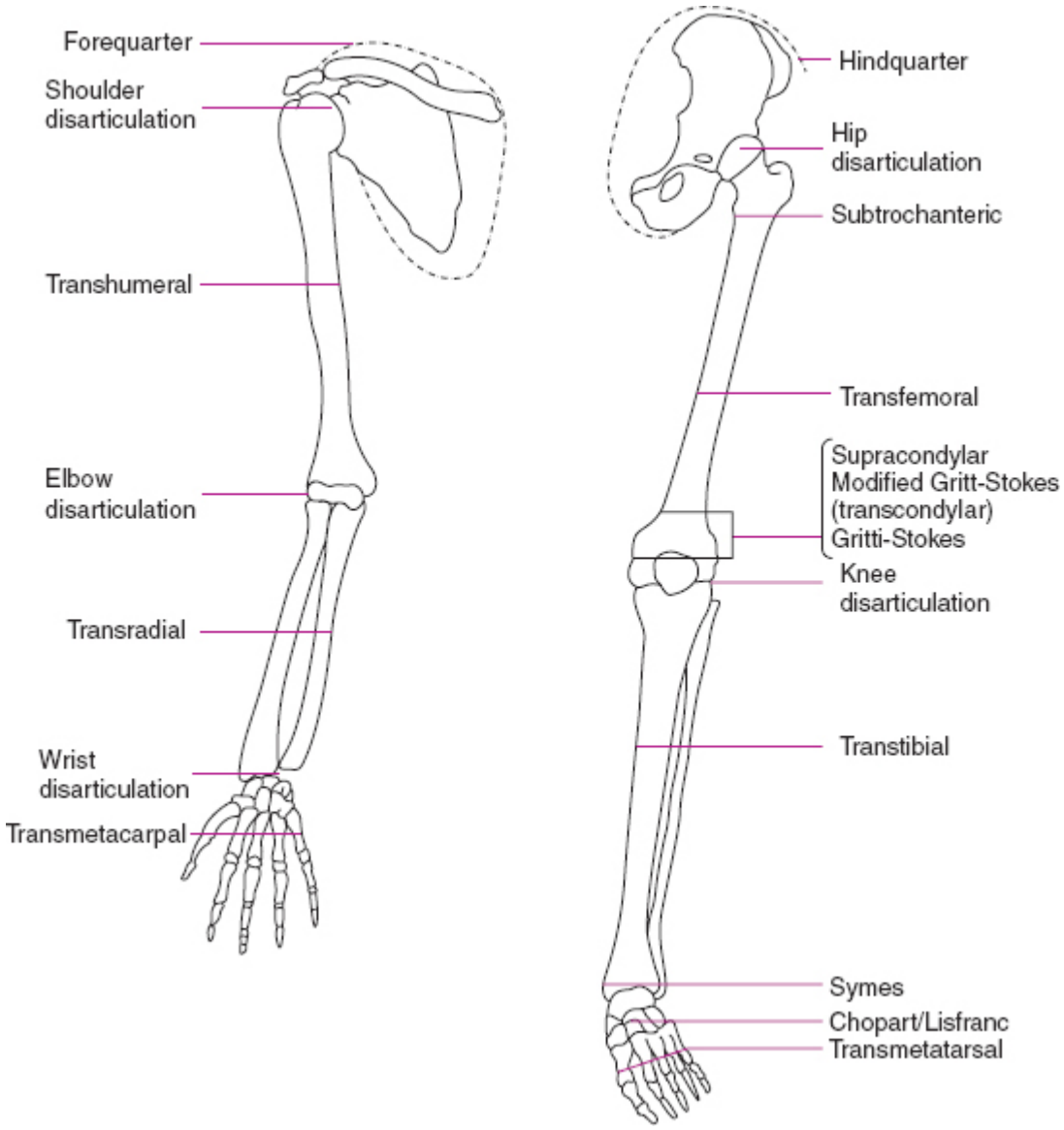
Positioning and management of an amputee

Definition

Amputation refers to the loss of a part or whole of a limb normally as a result of trauma or vascular disease (Figure 7.18).

Figure 7.18 Levels of amputation in the upper and lower limb.

Reproduced from Engstrom and van de Ven (1999).



Related theory

The level of the amputation and the surgical technique can affect both the cosmetic appearance as well as the potential functional ability for the individual.

There are certain levels of amputation that provide a residual limb suitable for a prosthetic fitting, function and cosmesis. Cosmetic appearance will depend to some extent on the level of the amputation and what prosthetic options this leaves. It is essential that one of these levels is selected rather than the boundary of the dead or diseased tissue with the viable tissue. (Engstrom and van de Ven 1999)

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

Positioning and moving patients both before and after amputation are indicated for all patients undergoing upper or lower limb amputation whatever the level.

This is in order to:

- prevent problems arising as a consequence of reduced mobility
- maintain range of movement and muscle strength in order to rehabilitate the patient early postoperatively and to regain maximum function as soon as possible.

Contraindications (with regard to certain positions)

- Leaving the limb on the amputated side unsupported as this can:
  — exacerbate pain
  — hinder wound healing
  — increase stump oedema.

Principles of care

The main goals of moving and positioning with regard to amputee management are to:

- maximize function by preventing contractures (particularly if the patient's goal is prosthetic rehabilitation)
- help to control stump oedema in order to assist wound healing
- assist the regaining of functional independence as soon as possible.

There are also two important points to consider when assisting an amputee patient.

- Firstly, any level of amputation, either of an upper or lower limb, will alter the patient's centre of gravity, potentially resulting in decreased balance. This in turn will increase the risk of falls for these patients.

- Secondly, body symmetry and posture will be altered which can also affect balance and may lead to poor postural habits that will hinder recovery and function.

Where possible, the process of positioning starts at the preoperative stage when the affected limb is often painful and the patient is frequently less able to mobilize. As a result, the patient may adopt positions of comfort that can lead to contractures. These positions are often maintained post amputation due to comfort and habit but are also due to changes in muscle balance (Engstrom and van de Ven 1999). For example, above-knee amputees may adopt a flexed and abducted position of their stump due to an alteration in muscle balance and pain but this can lead to contracture over time if not corrected.

Contractures can profoundly affect the potential for prosthetic rehabilitation and overall function so early correct positioning is paramount in this cohort of patients (Munin *et al.* 2001).

Preoperatively, patients should also be encouraged to keep as mobile as possible within pain limits to reduce the effects of deconditioning.

Pain, including phantom limb pain*, can be a major problem with these patients in the early postoperative stages.

In order to ensure that everyone works together towards a common goal, BACPAR (2006) recommends a comprehensive assessment by key professionals to establish rehabilitation goals. This assessment should be carried out as soon as possible following the decision to amputate and will need to undergo regular review.

The general principles of care mentioned earlier in the chapter are all relevant to this section. However, in addition, particular attention should be given to any possible balance issues for both upper limb and lower limb amputations as previously mentioned.

Note: Following lower limb amputation patients should be mobilized with caution, particularly if a prosthetic assessment is planned. This is because standing for long periods or hopping can:

- negatively influence stump oedema and wound healing
- overtire a patient, particularly elderly patients or those who are physically deconditioned prior to the amputation

- encourage the patient to adopt poor gait patterns due to excessive weight bearing on the remaining limb, leading to difficulty with prosthetic rehabilitation.

Preprocedural considerations

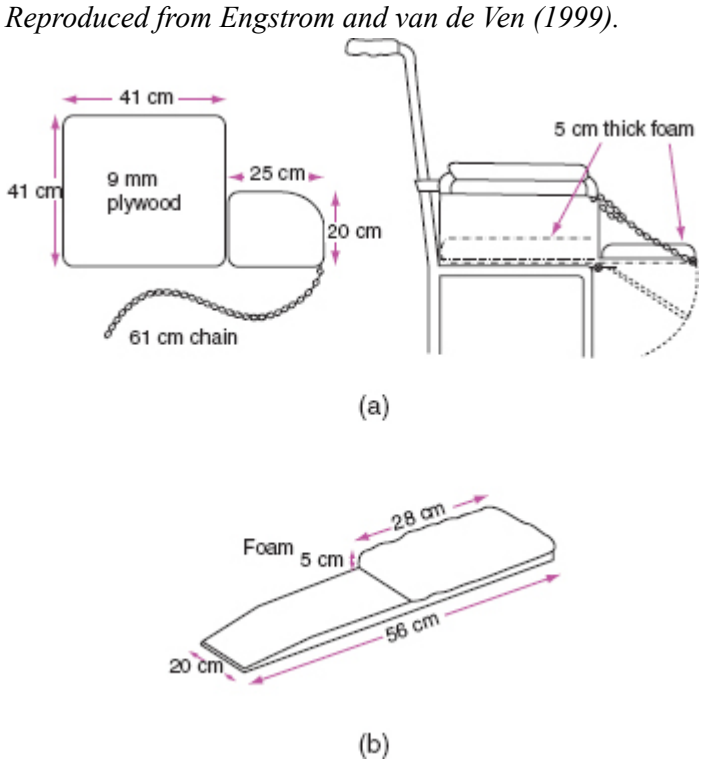
Equipment

Stump board

This will be required when sitting out in a wheelchair to ensure that the limb is fully supported and help prevent knee flexion contractures for below-knee (transtibial) amputees (Figure 7.19).

Figure 7.19 Two designs of stump board. (a) An adjustable stump board: the angle can be varied for comfort. (b) A fixed stump board: this slides underneath the wheelchair cushion.

Reproduced from Engstrom and van de Ven (1999).



Wheelchair and seating cushion

Occupational therapy will assess and provide a wheelchair and a suitable cushion for lower limb amputees. If a patient has a bilateral lower limb amputation then they will need a specially adapted wheelchair with the wheels set back in order to provide sufficient stability.

Procedure guideline 7.11 Positioning the preoperative and postoperative amputee patient

Essential equipment

- Stump board (for below-knee amputees sitting out in wheelchair)
- Pillows
- Hoists and appropriate amputee and rehabilitation slings or sliding sheets may be required if the patient presents as a manual handling risk

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008, C).
2 Wash hands thoroughly or use an alcohol-based handrub.	To reduce the risk of contamination and cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Ensure that the bed is at the optimum height for the patient and handlers. If two handlers are required try to match handlers' heights as far as possible.	To minimize the risk of injury to the practitioner and patient (Smith 2005, C).
Procedure	
Upper limb amputee	
4 Ensure patient is maintaining full range of motion of all remaining joints of the upper limb.	To prevent contractures in case of possible prosthetic rehabilitation and functional use. E
Below-knee amputee	
5 Maintain knee extension.	
■ In bed: do not place a towel or pillow under the knee unless it is supporting the whole of the stump;	To prevent knee flexion contracture. E To assist stump oedema management.

that is, do not encourage the knee to be maintained in a flexed position.	E To promote healing. E
■ In chair: use a stump board on the wheelchair if one has been issued. If the patient is sitting out in the chair then support the amputation with a footstool and pillows.	To support knee joint. E To prevent excessive knee flexion. E To aid stump oedema management (White 1992, R4, E). To protect the residual limb. E
Above-knee amputee	
6 Maintain hip in a neutral position.	To maintain hip extension. E
■ In bed: ensure the patient is periodically lying supine. **Or:**	To prevent hip flexion contracture. E
■ Consider prone-lying or side-lying with the hip in neutral position.	To avoid shortening of hip flexors and abductors. E
■ In sitting: ensure that the patient does not place a towel or pillow under stump.	To prevent excessive hip flexion. E

Problem-solving table 7.5 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 7.11)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Painful stump following transfer or change of position	Fear of movement Pressure on distal end of stump over wound Stump dependent leading to increased oedema and reduced blood flow Unsupported stump	Reassure patient Ensure that stump is well supported following change in position Ensure adequate analgesia prior to movement and support stump wherever possible during the procedure	Explain procedure to patient prior to moving position. E Ensure that there is no pressure over the wound site following the procedure. E
Wound breakdown	Unsupported stump during movement Infection	Ensure that stump is well supported during and following change in position	Ensure that there is no pressure over the wound site following the procedure. E Seek medical review

Complications

1 *Limb contracture* can occur due to:

— immobility

— alteration in muscle balance around the joints

— pain

— habit.

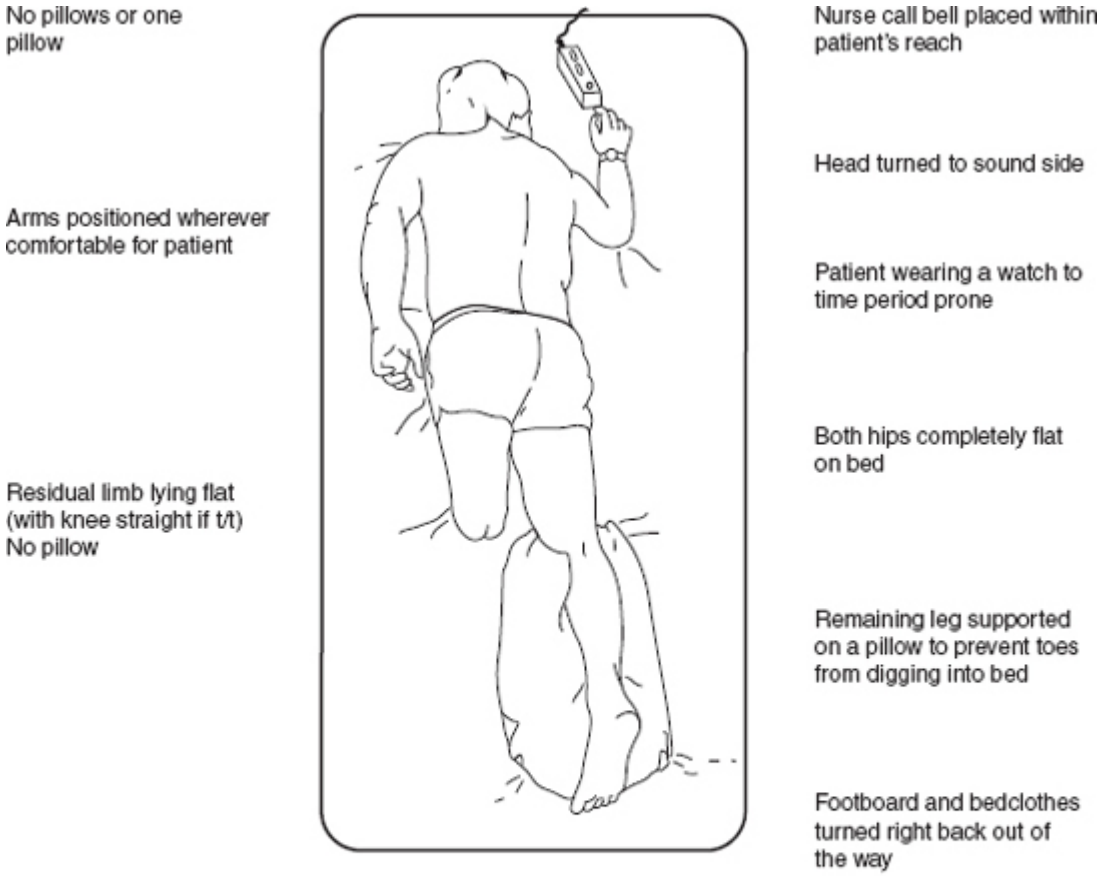
In order to help prevent limb contracture, the patient will require adequate analgesia to control pain. It is also important to remind them if they are tending to adopt positions of their stump which could lead to limb contracture. The physiotherapist may recommend that the patient adopt certain positions for periods during the day to help prevent contractures such as prone-lying for above-knee amputees (Figure 7.20).

2 *Ongoing phantom limb pain*. This can be a persistent problem and will need referral to the pain team for appropriate management.

3 *Wound infection or delayed healing*. Review by medical team for appropriate management.

Figure 7.20 The correct position for prone lying (t/t denotes transtibial).

Reproduced from Engstrom and van de Ven (1999).



Points to remember

1. To roll prone, the amputee must turn towards the sound side, the nurse ensuring that the residual limb is lowered gently.
2. Intially the amputee lies prone for about 10 minutes.
3. The amputee should then build up to lying prone for 30 minutes three times a day.

Websites

http://spinal.co.uk
www.asia-spinalinjury.org
http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG75

References

ACPIN (1998) *Clinical Practice Guidelines on Splinting Adults with Neurological Dysfunction*. Association of Chartered Physiotherapists Interested in Neurology, Chartered Society of Physiotherapy, London.

ACPRC (1996) *Physiotherapy Management of the Spontaneously Breathing, Acutely Breathless, Adult Patient: A Problem Solving Approach*. Chartered Society of Physiotherapy, London.

Ada, L., Goddard, E., McCully, J. et al. (2005) Thirty minutes of positioning reduces the development of shoulder external rotation contracture after stroke: a randomized controlled trial. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **86** (2), 230–234.

Adam, S. and Forrest, S. (1999) ABC of intensive care: other supportive care. *British Medical Journal*, **319** (7203), 175–178.

Aggarwal, R. and Hunter, A. (2007) How exactly does the chest wall work? *Student BMJ*, 15.

BACPAR (2006) *Clinical Guidelines for the Pre and Post Operative Management of Adults with Lower Limb Amputation*. Chartered Society of Physiotherapy, London.

Baer, M.P. and Durward, B. (2004) Stroke, in *Physical Management in Neurological Rehabilitation*, 2nd edn. (ed. M. Stokes). Elsevier Mosby, Edinburgh, pp. 75–101.

Barnes, M.P. (2001) Spasticity: a rehabilitation challenge in the elderly. *Gerontology*, **47** (6), 295–299.

Barnes, M.P. (2008) An overview of the clinical management of spasticity, in Barnes, M.P. and Johnson, G.R. (eds) *Upper Motor Neurone Syndrome and Spasticity: Clinical Management and Neurophysiology*, 2nd edn. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 1–9.

Barsevick, A.M., Whitmer, K., Sweeney, C. and Nail, L.M. (2002) A pilot study examining energy conservation for cancer treatment-related fatigue. *Cancer Nursing*, **25** (5), 333–341.

Bobath, B. (1990) *Adult Hemiplegia: Evaluation and Treatment*, 3rd edn. Heinemann Medical, Oxford.

Booij, L.H.D.J. (1996) Fundamentals of anaesthesia and acute medicine, in *Neuromuscular Transmission*. BMJ Books, London, pp. 124–159.

Boss, B.J. (1998) *Nursing management of adults with common neurologic problems*, in Adult Health Nursing, 3rd edn (eds P. Gauntlett Beare and J.L. Myers). Mosby, St Louis, MO, pp. 904–947.

Brada, M. (1995) Central nervous system tumours, in Horwich, A. (ed) *Oncology: A Multidisciplinary Textbook*. Chapman and Hall, London, pp. 395–416.

Britton, T.C. (1998) Abnormalities of muscle tone and movement, in *Neurological Physiotherapy* (ed. M. Stokes). Mosby, London. pp. 57–65.

Chatterton, H.J., Pomeroy, V.M. and Gratton, J. (2001) Positioning for stroke patients: a survey of physiotherapists' aims and practices. *Disability and Rehabilitation*, **23** (10), 413–421.

Convertino, V.A., Bloomfield, S.A. and Greenleaf, J.E. (1997) An overview of the issues: physiological effects of bed rest and restricted physical activity. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, **29** (2), 187–190.

Cooper, J. (2006) *Occupational Therapy in Oncology and Palliative Care*, 2nd edn. John Wiley, Chichester.

Creditor, M.C. (1993) Hazards of hospitalization of the elderly. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, **118** (3), 219–223.

CSP (2008) *Guidance on Manual Handling in Physiotherapy*, 3rd edn. CSP, London.

Davies, P.M. (1985) *Steps to Follow: A Guide to the Treatment of Adult Hemiplegia, Based on the Concept of K. and B. Bobath*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Davies, P.M. (2000) *Steps to Follow: The Comprehensive Treatment of Adult Hemiplegia*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Dean, C.M., Mackey, F.H. and Katrak, P. (2000) Examination of shoulder positioning after stroke: a randomised controlled pilot trial. *Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*, **46** (1), 35–40.

Dean, E. (1985) Effect of body position on pulmonary function. *Physical Therapy*, **65** (5), 613–618.

DH (2001) *National Service Framework for Older People*. Department of Health, London.

Dietz, J.H. (1981) *Rehabilitation Oncology*. John Wiley, New York.

Doyle, D., Hanks, G., Cherny, N. and Calman, K. (eds) (2004) *Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine,* 3rd edn. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Edwards, S. (1998) *Physiotherapy management of established spasticity in spasticity rehabilitation*, in Spasticity Management (ed. G. Shean). Churchill Communications Europe, London, pp. 71–90.

Edwards, S. (2002a) *Abnormal tone and movement as a result of neurological impairment*, in Edwards, S. (ed) Neurological Physiotherapy: A Problem Solving Approach, 2nd edn. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh, pp. 63–86.

Edwards, S. (2002b) An analysis of normal movement as the basis for the development of treatment techniques, in Edwards, S. (ed) *Neurological Physiotherapy: A Problem Solving Approach*, 2nd edn. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh, pp. 35–68.

Edwards, S. and Carter, P. (2002) General principles of treatment, in *Neurological Physiotherapy: A Problem Solving Approach*, 2nd edn (ed. S. Edwards). Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh, pp. 121–154.

Edwards, S. and Charlton, P. (1996) Splinting and the use of orthoses in the management of patients with neurological disorders, in *Neurological Physiotherapy: A Problem Solving Approach*. Churchill Livingstone, London, pp. 161–188.

Ellison, D. and Love, S. (1997) Classification and general concepts of CNS neoplasms and astrocytic neoplasms, in *Neuropathology: a Reference Text of CNS Pathology*. Mosby, London.

Engstrom, B. and van de Ven, C. (eds) (1999) *Therapy for Amputees*, 3rd edn. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

Fink, J. (2002) Positioning versus postural drainage. *Respiratory Care*, **47** (7), 769–777.

Fraise, A.P. and Bradley, T. (eds) (2009) *Ayliffe's control of Healthcare Associated Infection: A Practical Handbook*, 5th edn Hooder Arnold, London.

Gardiner, M.D. (1973) *The Principles of Exercise Therapy*, 3rd edn. Bell, London.

Gloag, D. (1985) Rehabilitation after stroke: 1– What is the potential? British Medical Journal *(Clinical Research Edition)*, **290** (6469), 699–701.

Grieve, J.I. and Gnanasekaran, L. (2008) *Neuropsychology for Occupational Therapists: Cognition in Occupational Performance*, 3rd edn. Blackwell, Oxford.

Guerrero, D. (1998) *Neuro-Oncology for Nurses*. Whurr, London.

Harrison, P. (2000) Managing Spinal Injury: Critical Care. *Spinal Injury Association*, Milton Keynes.

Hawkins, S., Stone, K. and Plummer, L. (1999) An holistic approach to turning patients. *Nursing Standard*, **14** (3), 51–56.

Hesse, S. (2003) Rehabilitation after stroke: evaluation, principles of therapy, novel treatment approaches and assistive devices. *Topics in Geriatric Medicine*, **19** (2), 109–126.

Hickey, J.V. (2003a) Management of the unconscious neurological patient. in Hickey, J.V. (ed) *The Clinical Practice of Neurological and Neurosurgical Nursing*, 5th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia, pp. 345–357.

Hickey, J.V. (2003b) Neurological assessment, in Hickey, J.V. (ed) *The Clinical Practice of Neurological and Neurosurgical Nursing*, 5th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia, pp. 159–184.

Hodges, P.W. and Gandevia, S.C. (2000) Changes in intra-abdominal pressure during postural and respiratory activation of the human diaphragm. *Journal of Applied Physiology*, **89** (3), 967–976.

Hough, A. (2001) Physiotherapy in Respiratory Care: *An Evidence-Based Approach to Respiratory and Cardiac Management*, 3rd edn. Nelson Thornes, Cheltenham.

HSE (1992) *Manual Handling Operations Regulations 1992*. HMSO, London.

HSE (2004) *Getting to Grips with Manual Handling: A Short Guide*. Health and Safety Executive, Sudbury. www.hse.gov.uk/pubns/indg143.pdf.

Jackson, J. (1998) Specific treatment techniques, in *Neurological Physiotherapy*. Mosby, London, pp. 299–311.

Jacobson, A.F. and Winslow, E.H. (2000) Caring for unconscious patients. *American Journal of Nursing*, **100** (1), 69.

Jones, M. and Moffatt, F. (2002) *Cardiopulmonary Physiotherapy*. BIOS, Oxford.

Kaplan, M.C. (1995) Hemiplegic shoulder pain – early prevention and rehabilitation. *Western Journal of Medicine*, **162** (2), 151–152.

Kirkwood, C.A. and Bardslay, G.I. (2001) Seating and positioning in spasticity, in *Upper Motor Neurone Syndrome and Spasticity: Clinical Management and Neurophysiology*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 122–141.

Kirshblum, S., O'Dell, M. W., Ho, C. and Barr, K. (2001) Rehabilitation of persons with central nervous system tumors. *Cancer*, **92** (4 Suppl), 1029–1038.

Lawrence, M. (1995) The unconscious experience. *American Journal of Critical Care*, **4** (3), 227–232.

Lindsay, K. W., Bone, I. and Callander, R. (2004) *Neurology and Neurosurgery Illustrated,* 4th edn. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

Lundy-Ekman, L. (2007) Motor neurons, in *Neuroscience: Fundamentals for Rehabilitation*, 3rd edn. Saunders Elsevier, St Louis, MO, pp. 188–242.

Lynch, M. and Grisogono, V. (1991) Strokes and Head Injuries: *A Guide for Patients, Families, Friends, and Carers*. John Murray, London.

MacIntyre, N.R. and Branson, R.D. (2009) Mechanical Ventilation, 2nd edn. Saunders Elsevier, St Louis, MO.

McGarvey, C. L. (1990) *Physical Therapy for the Cancer Patient*. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

McKenzie, R. (2006) *Treat Your Own Back*. Spinal Publications, New Zealand.

Mee, L.Y. and Bee, W. H. (2007) A comparison study on nurses' and therapists' perception on the positioning of stroke patients in Singapore General Hospital. *International Journal of Nursing Practice*, **13** (4), 209–221.

Mehan, R., Mackenzie, M. and Brock, K. (2008) Skilled transfer training in stroke rehabilitation: a review of use and safety. *International Journal of*

Therapy and Rehabilitation, **15** (9), 382–389.

Nelson, A., Matz, M., Chen, F. et al. (2006) Development and evaluation of a multifaceted ergonomics program to prevent injuries associated with patient handling tasks. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, **43** (6), 717–33.

Nelson, A., Collins, J., Siddharthan, K., Matz, M. and Waters, T. (2008) Link between safe patient handling and patient outcomes in long-term care. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, **33** (1), 33–43.

NMC (2008) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent.

Norris, C.M. (1995) Spinal stabilisation 2. Limiting factors to end stage motion in the lumbar spine. *Physiotherapy*, **81** (2), 64–72.

O'Donovan, K. J., Bajd, T., Grace, P. A. et al. (2006) An investigation of recommended lower leg exercises for induced calf muscle activity. Proceedings of the 24th IASTED International Conference on Biomedical Engineering. Innsbruck, Austria, ACTA Press.

O'Dwyer, N. J., Ada, L. and Neilson, P.D. (1996) Spasticity and muscle contracture following stroke. *Brain*, **119** (Pt 5), 1737–1749.

Pearsall, J. (2001) The Concise Oxford Dictionary, 10th edn. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Pope, P. (1996) Postural management and seating, in Neurological Physiotherapy (ed. S. Edwards). Mosby, London, pp. 135–160.

Pope, P. (2002) Postural management and special seating, in Edwards, S. (ed) *Neurological Physiotherapy: A Problem Solving Approach*, 2nd edn. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh. pp. 189–218.

Pryor, J. A. and Prasad, S. A. (2008) Physiotherapy for Respiratory and Cardiac Problems: *Adults and Paediatrics*, 4th edn. Churchill Livingstone Elsevier, Edinburgh.

Raine, S., Meadows, L. and Etherington-Lynch, M. (2009) *Bobath Concept. Theory and Clinical Practice in Neurological Rehabilitation*. Wiley-Blackwell, Chichester.

Riedel, M. (2001) Acute pulmonary embolism 1: pathophysiology, clinical presentation, and diagnosis. *Heart*, **85** (2), 229–240.

Rockefeller, K. (2008) Using technology to promote safe patient handling and rehabilitation. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, **33** (1), 3–9.

Shumway-Cook, A. and Woollacott, M. H. (2001) Clinical management of the patient with reach, grasp and manipulation disorders, in Motor Control: *Theory and Practical Applications*, 2nd edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia; London, pp. 545.

Smith, J. (2005) *The Guide to the Handling of People*, 5th edn. Backcare in collaboration with the Royal College of Nursing and the National Back Exchange, London, p.234.

Stokes, M. (2004) *Physical Management in Neurological Rehabilitation*, 2nd edn. Elsevier Mosby, Edinburgh.

Thomas, A. J. (2009) Exercise intervention in the critical care unit – what is the evidence? *Physical Therapy Reviews*, **14** (1), 50–59.

Tookman, A. J., Hopkins, K. and Scharpen-von-Heusson, K. (2004) Rehabilitation in palliative medicine, in Doyle, D., Hanks, G., Cherny, N. and Calman, K. (eds) *Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine,* 3rd edn. Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 1019–1032.

Tortora, G. J. and Derrickson, B. (2009) Principles of Anatomy and Physiology, 12th edn. John Wiley, Hoboken, NJ.

White, E. A. (1992) Wheelchair stump boards and their use with lower limb amputees. *British Journal of Occupational Therapy*, **55** (5), 174–178.

Multiple choice questions

1 How do the structures of the human body work together to provide support and assist in movement?

a The skeleton provides a structural framework. This is moved by the muscles that contract or extend and in order to function, cross at least one joint and are attached to the articulating bones.

b The muscles provide a structural framework and are moved by bones to which they are attached by ligaments.

c The skeleton provides a structural framework; this is moved by ligaments that stretch and contract.

d The muscles provide a structural framework, moving by contracting or extending, crossing at least one joint and attached to the articulating bones.

2 What are the most common effects of inactivity?

a Pulmonary embolism, urinary tract infection and fear of people.

b Deep arterial thrombosis, respiratory infection, fear of movement, loss of consciousness, deconditioning of cardiovascular system leading to an increased risk of angina.

c Loss of weight, frustration and deep vein thrombosis.

d Social isolation, loss of independence, exacerbation of symptoms, rapid loss of strength in leg muscles, deconditioning of cardiovascular system leading to increased risk of chest infection, and pulmonary embolism.

3 What do you need to consider when helping a patient with shortness of breath sit out in a chair?

a They shouldn't sit out in a chair; lying flat is the only position for someone with shortness of breath so that there are no negative effects of gravity putting pressure on the lungs.

b Sitting in a reclining position with the legs elevated to reduce the use of postural muscle oxygen requirements, increasing lung volumes and optimizing perfusion for the best V/Q ratio. The patient should also be kept in an environment that is quiet so they don't expend any unnecessary energy.

c The patient needs to be able to sit in a forward leaning position supported by pillows. They may also need access to a nebulizer and humidified oxygen so they must be in a position where this is accessible without being a risk to others.

d There are two possible positions, either sitting upright or side lying. Which is used is determined by the age of the patient. It is also important to remember that they will always need a nebulizer and oxygen and the air temperature must be below 20° C.

4 Your patient has bronchitis and has difficulty in clearing his chest. What position would help to maximize the drainage of secretions?

a Lying flat on his back while using a nebulizer.

b Sitting up leaning on pillows and inhaling humidified oxygen.

c Lying on his side with the area to be drained uppermost after the patient has had humidified air.

d Standing up in fresh air taking deep breaths.

5 Mrs Jones has had a cerebral vascular accident, so her left leg is increased in tone, very stiff and difficult to position comfortably when she is in bed. What would you do?

a Give Mrs Jones analgesia and suggest she sleeps in the chair.

b Try to diminish increased tone by avoiding extra stimulation by ensuring her foot doesn't come into contact with the end of the bed; supporting, with a pillow, her left leg in side lying and keeping the knee flexed.

c Give Mrs Jones diazepam and tilt the bed.

d Suggest a warm bath before she lies on the bed. Then use pillows to support the stiff limb.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com **and select the Student Edition tab.**

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

Chapter 8

Nutrition, Fluid Balance and Blood Transfusion

Overview

Good nutrition, the supply of optimal nutrients and fluid to meet requirements, is an essential component of health, with poor nutrition contributing to ill health and prolonged recovery from illness or disease. It is therefore crucial that the nutritional status of all patients is assessed and considered during the whole of the patient's care. This chapter addresses how fluid and nutrition can influence body composition, how to identify patients who are malnourished or at risk of malnutrition and, most importantly, how the patient's nutritional needs can be met.

The provision of food and fluids to patients is an integral part of basic care. In normal circumstances adequate nutritional intake enables the body to maintain homoeostasis of body composition and function but in disease states this balance can be altered. The majority of patients will achieve adequate nutrition through the oral route of diet and fluids but, for some, additional artificial nutritional support or products such as blood will be required to maintain optimal body composition and function. This chapter describes how the patient's needs can be assessed and met through oral, enteral and parenteral routes of nutrition, fluid or blood products.

Fluid balance

Definition

In the human homoeostatic state, the intake of fluids equals fluid excreted from the body, thereby maintaining optimal hydration. In nursing practice, this term refers to the procedure of measuring fluid input and output to determine fluid balance (Marieb and Hoehn 2010, Scales and Pilsworth 2008).

Anatomy and physiology

Body composition

The human body is made up of approximately 60% water (this varies with age, gender and percentage of fatty tissue) (Alexander *et al*. 2000, Scales and Pilsworth, 2008, Urden *et al.* 2002). Bodily water/fluid is essential to life and vital for:

- controlling body temperature
- the delivery of nutrients and gases to cells
- the removal of waste
- acid–base balance and
- the maintenance of cellular shape (Baumberger-Henry 2008).

Total body water is distributed between two main compartments: intracellular fluid (ICF, within the cell) and extracelluar fluid(ECF, outside the cell). ECF is further divided into the intravascular space, within the blood vessels (known as plasma), the interstitial space which surrounds the cells and the transcellular space. The transcellular space contains specialized fluids such as cerebrospinal fluid but does not readily exchange fluid with other compartments so is rarely considered in fluid management (Bishop 2008, Haskal 2007).

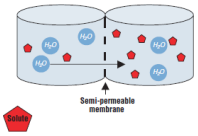
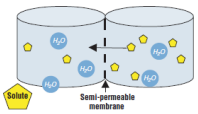
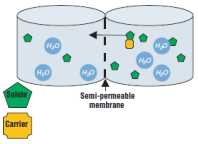
Bodily fluid is a composition of water and a variety of dissolved solutes which Marieb and Hoehn (2010) classify as electrolytes and non-electrolytes. Non-electrolytes include glucose, lipids, creatine and urea and are molecules that do not dissociate in solution and have no electrical charge. Electrolytes such as potassium, sodium, chloride, magnesium and bicarbonate all dissociate in solution into charged ions that conduct electricity. Concentration of these solutes varies depending on the compartment in which they are contained; for example, ECF has

a high sodium content (135–145 mmol/L) and, relatively low in potassium (3.5–4.5 mmol/L) and ICF is the reverse – high in potassium but lower in sodium. The movement and distribution of fluid and solutes between compartments are controlled by the semi-permeable phospholipid cellular membranes that separate them (Baumberger-Henry 2008).

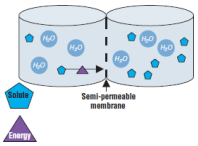
Transport and movement of water and solutes

Water can readily and passively pass across the membrane and does so by osmosis (see Table 8.1) in response to changing solute concentrations. The amount of solute in solution determines the osmolarity – the higher the solute concentration, the higher the osmolarity; this is also referred to as the osmotic pressure (or pull). Electrolytes move across the membrane via the protein channels, some by diffusion (see Table 8.1) and also via a passive mode of transport where solutes move towards an area of low solute concentration. Sodium and potassium are an exception to this rule, as they are required to move against the concentration gradient in order to preserve higher intravascular sodium concentrations. Energy is utilized to pump sodium out of the cell via the protein channels and pump potassium back into the cell, known as the sodium/potassium pump (see Table 8.1).

Table 8.1 Molecule transport modes

Transport mode	Description	Diagram
Osmosis	Movement of water from an area of low solute concentration to an area of high solute concentration	
Diffusion	Movement of solutes from an area of high concentration to an area of low concentration	
Facilitated diffusion	Movement of solutes from an area of high concentration to an area of low concentration, facilitated by a carrier molecule (e.g. glucose only enters the cell carried by insulin)	

Active transport	Movement of solutes against the concentration gradient from an area of low concentration to an area of high concentration. This transport requires energy synthesized within the cell (i.e. the sodium/potassium pump)



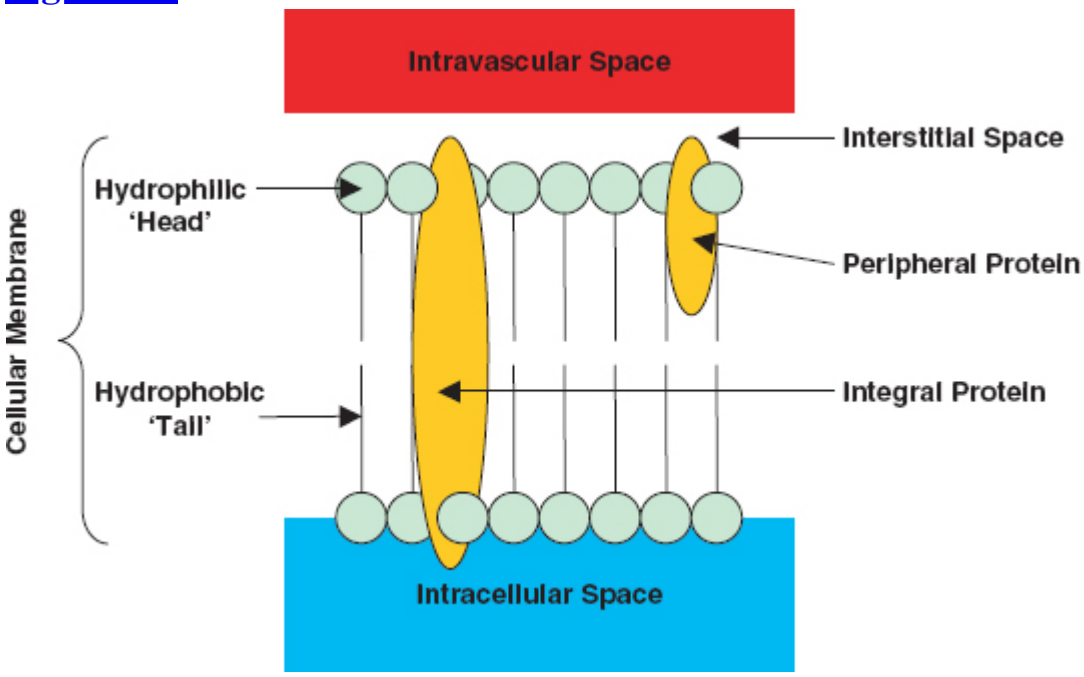
The movement of water and solutes out of the intravascular space and into the interstitial space is dependent on opposing osmotic and hydrostatic pressures. Hydrostatic pressure is caused by the pumping action of the heart and the diameter (resistance) of the vessels/capillaries forcing water and molecules that are small enough to pass through the membrane out of the vessel and into the interstitial fluid. Within the vascular system, only the capillaries have semi-permeable membranes so it is here this 'filtration' occurs. At the arteriole end of the capillary, the hydrostatic pressure exceeds the osmotic pressure, moving solutes out of the plasma and into the interstitial space. At the venous end, hydrostatic pressure is reduced and the osmotic pressure within the vessel (plasma) is higher so water is pulled back into the vessel and circulating volume (van Wissen and Breton 2004). The osmotic pressure is provided by plasma proteins that are too large to pass through the membrane even under pressure. Oedema can result if the membranes become permeable to protein; osmotic pressure is then reduced, resulting in excess of water moving into the interstitial space. Pulmonary oedema is caused by this mechanism at the site of the lungs. Sepsis or a systemic inflammatory response is an example of a condition where the capillary membranes become more permeable to protein.

Osmolarity and fluid balance

Sodium is the most influential electrolyte in fluid balance and is the primary cation (positively charged ion) of the ECF. The concentration of sodium in the ECF has the most profound effect on its osmolarity and therefore water balance. If ECF osmolarity increases (for example, with increased intake of sodium, reduced fluid intake, increased loss of fluid), osmoreceptors of the hypothalamus detect very slight changes (1–2% increase) in plasma osmolarity (Marieb and Hoehn 2010) and trigger the

thirst response which in turn encourages oral fluid intake in an attempt to restore the balance (Figure 8.1).

Figure 8.1 Cellular membrane.



Hormonal mechanisms and the kidneys are highly influential in fluid and electrolyte balance and again are also triggered in response to changing osmolarity and/or plasma volumes. Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is released from the posterior pituitary gland (in response to stimulus of the osmoreceptors in the hypothalamus) (van Wissen and Breton 2004) and acts on the tubules and collecting ducts of the kidneys, inhibiting water excretion and encouraging water reabsorption. If plasma osmolarity falls (indicating water excess), these mechanisms are suppressed by a negative feedback loop; the osmoreceptors are no longer stimulated. This in turn inhibits ADH release; renal tubules no long conserve water and thirst is reduced, leading to a reduction of oral intake and restoration of balance. ADH is also released in the renin-angiotensin response to a reduction in blood pressure (detected by baroreceptors in blood vessels); more detailed information on this mechanism can be found in Chapter 12.

Aldosterone is a mineralocorticoid and is secreted by the adrenal cortex in response to increased osmolarity and/or decreased blood pressure (part of the renin-angiotensin system). It acts on the renal

tubules, initiating the active transport of sodium (and hence water) from the tubules and collecting ducts back into the plasma and circulating volume (Baumberger-Henry 2008).

These homoeostatic mechanisms are very effective in maintaining fluid and electrolyte balance in health and act to compensate for fluid imbalances to ensure effective cellular function. However, these compensatory mechanisms are not sustainable and will eventually fail if ill health or imbalance persists. For example, in continued haemorrhage, the body will compensate by conserving water and vasoconstricting vessels in an attempt to increase blood pressure and volume. Continued haemorrhage and failure to replace lost fluids will lead to cellular and organ dysfunction which in turn lead to organ failure and possible death (Adam and Osborne 2005).

Dehydration is a particular concern in ill health as often fluid intake is reduced (poor appetite, nil by mouth, nausea) and often coincides with an increased output (vomiting, diarrhoea, haemorrhage, drains, fever). The elderly are at particular risk of dehydration as the effectiveness of the thirst response diminishes with age (Ainslie *et al.* 2002, Mentes 2006). When the osmolarity of the ECF increases, it encourages water out of the cell into the ECF, which eventually leads to cellular dehydration, impaired metabolism, disturbed cellular shape and impaired cellular function.

If the osmolarity of the ECF falls, water moves into the cell. If this continues, it will lead to water toxicity, causing cells to expand and eventually burst. Care should therefore be taken when administering intravenous fluids, as fluids that are of lower osmolarity than ECF (hypotonic) will cause a shift of water into the cells. Conversely, hypertonic solutions will cause a shift of fluid from the cells, causing dehydration. Maintenance fluids should usually be isotonic (have the same osmolarity as ECF) (Sheppard and Wright 2006).

Evidence-based approaches

Fluid and electrolyte balance monitoring and management are integral and vital to nursing care (Jevon and Ewens 2007). Alexander *et al.* 2000 suggest that nurses must have a good understanding of the concepts

involved in fluid balance in order to recognize or anticipate imbalances and implement the correct interventions/care. Understanding of the physiological mechanisms will ensure that tasks such as fluid balance charting are carried out with understanding and thought.

Fluid balance charting allows healthcare professionals to carefully monitor the fluid input and output and calculate the fluid balance. This is usually measured over a 24-hour period (Jevon and Ewens 2007). A positive fluid balance indicates that the input has exceeded the output, and a negative result the reverse. Although fluid balance charts are a good indication of fluid balance, this is not an exact measurement, for several reasons. Some losses are insensible such as those from perspiration, respiratory secretions and immeasurable bowel losses. The calculation of fluid balance also relies heavily on the accurate measuring and charting of input and output, a skill documented in the literature as often being done poorly by nurses (Callum *et al.* 1999, Mooney 2007). For such measurements to be taken accurately may require additional interventions such as the need for catheterization. Current recommendations highlight that the benefits of accurate fluid balance measurements outweigh the risks associated with such procedures (Callum *et al.* 1999, NICE 2007). Table 8.2 shows the possible routes and sources of fluid intake and output.

Table 8.2 Fluid intake and output

Intake	Output
Oral Food and drinks *Normally 2000 mL/per day*	**Urine output** *Normally approx 1500 mL/per day*
Parenteral/intravenous Maintenance fluids, IVI, intermittent drugs, flushes *Additional to or replaces oral intake*	**Faeces** *Normally approx 100 mL/per day*
Enteral Nasal gastric/nasal jejostomy, percutaneous gastric jejostomy feed, flushes *Additional to or replaces oral intake*	**Perspiration** *Normally approx 200 mL/day*
	Gastric secretions

Vomit, nasal gastric/gastrostomy drainage
Additional to normal output

Wounds and drains
Additional to normal output

Insensible losses
Perspiration, respiratory secretions
Additional to normal output

From Sheppard and Wright (2006).

The National Confidential Enquiry into Perioperative Deaths (Callum *et al.* 1999) highlights how important effective fluid balance management is and states that imbalance can lead to 'serious postoperative morbidity and mortality'. Of the patients reviewed, 20% were found to have poorly kept fluid balance records, emphasizing the need for effective monitoring and record keeping; the report suggests that accurate fluid balance recording should be as important as the recording of prescriptions and medicine administration. Studies have suggested that nurses may not be aware of the importance of the task (Scales and Pilsworth 2008) and Bryant (2007) identified a knowledge deficit amongst colleagues regarding the assessment of fluid status and subsequent management, which led to an increase in training in this skill. The *National Service Framework for Older People* (DH 2001a) also recognizes the importance of fluid status assessment and subsequent fluid management in the older population.

Although a very useful tool, fluid balance charting should not be used in isolation. When considering fluid and electrolyte balance, additional triggers such as physical assessment and monitoring plasma levels of electrolytes should be integral to the observation and care of a patient with actual or potential fluid and electrolyte imbalances (NICE 2007).

Nursing assessment is discussed in detail in Chapter 2 and the assessment of a patient's fluid status should be an integral part of any admission and subsequent daily assessments, particularly if the patient is

critically ill and/or a fluid deficit has been identified. See Table 8.3 for details of what should be included in a fluid status assessment.

Table 8.3 Assessment of fluid status

Assessment	Usual findings	Indications	
Symptoms		**Fluid deficit**	**Fluid overload**
History To establish any condition, medication or lifestyle that may contribute to or predispose the patient to a fluid imbalance	Differs for each patient	For example, chronic or acute diarrhoea, medication such as diuretics, poor oral fluid intake	Ingestion of too much water/fluid, renal failure/dysfunction
Thirst *Ask the patient*	Occasional; resolved by taking an oral drink	Unusually thirsty	No thirst, normal
Mucosa and conjunctiva *Inspect*	Usually moist and pink	Dry and whitened mucosa, dry conjunctiva and 'sunken' eyeballs	Moist, pink and glistening
Clinical signs			
Heart rate	Usual resting 60–100 bpm	Raised	Normal or raised
Peripheral pulse character	Radial pulse is felt just under the skin at the wrist, light palpation with two or three fingers	Thready, difficult to palpate	Bounding, easy to palpate
Blood pressure	Patient's own normal should be used as a guide	BP will fall if blood volume falls beyond compensatory mechanisms. Patient may experience postural hypotension	Rise in blood pressure, or may remain normal
Central venous pressure	3–10 mmHg	Low	Raised
Respiratory rate	12–20 breaths/min	High, to meet increased oxygen demands of compensatory mechanisms	High, if overload present
Capillary refill	Usually 2–3 seconds	Slower	Faster
Urine output	0.5–1 mL/kg	Low	Increase, if good renal function

Assessment	Usual findings	Indications	
Symptoms		**Fluid deficit**	**Fluid overload**
Lung sounds, auscultation	Vesicular breath sounds, 'rustling' heard mainly on inspiration	Normal	Additional sounds (crackles) may indicate fluid overload
Skin turgor	Following a gentle pinch, the fold of skin should return to normal	Skin will take much longer to 'bounce' back to normal. Unreliable in elderly who may have lost some elasticity of their skin	May be normal; however, may be oedematous therefore skin remains dented/pinched
Serum electrolyte levels			
Sodium	135–145 mmol/L	Raised	Lowered
Potassium	3.5–5 mmol/L	May be lowered if cause of fluid deficit is GI losses	Normal
Urea	2.5–6.4 mmol/L	Decreased	Normal
Creatinine	Male: 63–116 μmol/L Female 54–98 μmol/L	Normal, but eventually rises with prolonged poor renal perfusion	Normal
	This is a basic examination of serum electrolytes in fluid balance. There are several conditions and treatments that may affect these so they should not be used in isolation to assess or treat fluid imbalance.		
Serum osmolarity	275–295 mosmol/kg	Increased	Decreased
Urine osmolarity	50–1400 mosmol/kg	Increased	Decreased
Daily weight	A person's daily weight should be fairly stable; large losses or gain in weight may indicate fluid imbalance	Reduced each day	Increased each day
Temperature	36.5–37.5°C	May be elevated and this may also contribute to the fluid deficit (increased insensible losses)	Normal

From Adam and Osborne (2006), Epstein *et al.* (2003), Flanagan *et al.* (2007), Levi (2005).

Within fluid management, and particularly fluid resuscitation, there is an ongoing debate surrounding the benefits of the use of colloids over crystalloid for fluid replacement. Perel and Roberts (2007) conducted a systematic review of the evidence and concluded that there is no

apparent benefit to the patient when using colloid rather than crystalloid. The UK Adult Resuscitation Guidelines (Resuscitation Council 2005) agree that there is no benefit in choosing colloid over crystalloid but they do recommend that dextrose is avoided due to the redistribution of fluid from the intravascular space and because it may cause hyperglycaemia.

Rationale

Indications

Any patient who has shown signs or symptoms of a fluid imbalance or those having undergone surgery or acute illness that has led to critical care admission should have their fluid intake and output monitored and fluid balance calculated on an hourly basis (Mooney 2007). The decision to monitor fluid balance should be a multidisciplinary one; however, it is the responsibility of the bedside nurse to ensure this is done so accurately.

Legal and professional issues

The NMC Code (NMC 2008a) clearly states that clear and accurate records must be kept; this includes fluid balance charts. Nurses should have an understanding of the mechanisms of fluid balance and identify potential imbalances and the problems associated with these imbalances.

Preprocedural considerations

In order to monitor fluid balance, both input and output must be accurately measured. Below are procedural guidelines for measuring input and output. If the patient is awake, able to take oral fluids and is mobile, they must be educated about the fact that their fluid balance is being monitored and each drink must be recorded, as should each episode of passing urine, bowel motion or vomiting and so on. It is helpful to provide a cup with markings showing volume.

It is important to note that patients may have other means of urine output, for example an ileal conduit, ureteric stents, suprapubic

catheterization, neo bladder. The same concepts can be utilized to measure the output, by attaching an urometer to the catheter or the urostomy bag.

Procedure guideline 8.1 Fluid input: measurement

Essential equipment

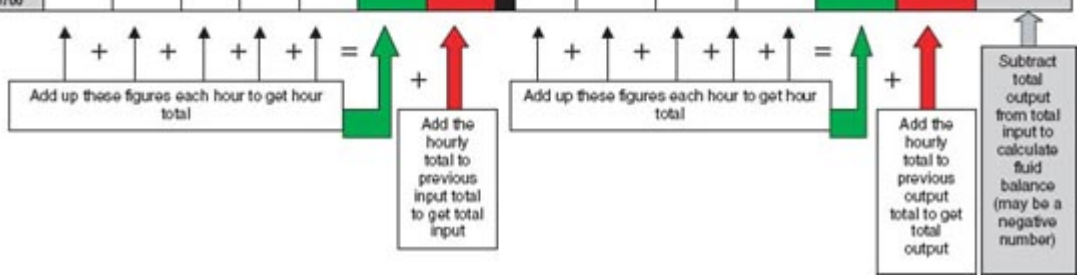
- Fluid balance chart
- Appropriate pumps for fluid or feeding

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Educate the patient about the fact that their fluid input is being monitored and ask them to alert you to any oral intake.	To ensure the patient is aware of the need to record any oral intake so this can be noted accurately (Baraz *et al.* 2009, R4).
2 Obtain fluid balance chart and document patient's name and the date commenced.	To ensure chart is correctly labelled for the correct patient, allowing accurate documentation (Powell-Tuck *et al.* 2009, C).
3 Ensure pumps available for intravenous fluids, nasogastric/jejunostomy feeds.	To enable accurate hourly record of intake (Reid *et al.* 2004, E).
Procedure	
4 Measure oral fluid intake hourly, noting it on the fluid balance chart (see Figure 8.2).	To obtain accurate real-time fluid balance status (Sumnall 2007, E).
5 Note any enteral or parenteral intake.	To obtain accurate real-time fluid balance status and ensure all possible input considered (Alexander *et al.* 2000, E).
6 Add together the values for oral, enteral and parenteral intake for the hour.	To assess hourly fluid intake (Scales and Pilsworth 2008, E).
7 Add this value to the cumulative total for intake (see Figure 8.2).	To assess total intake and enable calculation of the fluid balance (Scales and Pilsworth 2008, E).
Postprocedure	
8 Once output totals are calculated (see Procedure guideline 8.6), subtract output from input.	To calculate fluid balance (Powell-Tuck *et al.* 2009, C).
9 Document on chart and in patient's notes.	To ensure accurate documentation (NMC 2009, C).

Figure 8.2 Example of a fluid balance chart.

Time	Input							Output						Fluid Balance
	Oral	Enteral	Parenteral			Hour Total	Total input	Urine	Gastric losses	Bowels	Drains	Hour total	Total output	
0800	100	40	50	20		220	220	50	20	BNO	75	145	145	+ 75
0900	50	40	50	20		160	380	45	Nil	BO/solid	20	65	210	+ 170
1000														
1100														
1200														
1300														
1400														
1500														
1600														
1700														
1800														
1900														
2000														
2100														
2200														
2300														
2400														
0100														
0200														
0300														
0400														
0500														
0600														
0700														



Procedure guideline 8.2 Fluid output: monitoring/measuring output if the patient is catheterized

Essential equipment

- Urometer
- Measuring jugs (with volume indicators)
- Gloves, apron, goggles
- Bedpan/urinary bottles/commode
- Bile drainage bag/gastrostomy drainage bag
- Scales

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Determine sources of fluid output (see Table 8.2) and note them on the fluid balance chart.	To ensure all possibilities have been considered and to ensure accurate (as possible) output determination (Scales and Pilsworth 2008, E).

Procedure

2 Explain to the patient that it is necessary to monitor their urine output and that you	To ensure the patient is not alarmed by frequent observation and that they are kept informed about

will be doing so every hour.	current care (Bryant 2007, E).
3 Attach a urometer to the catheter, using an aseptic technique (see Chapter 3, Procedure guideline 3.9)	To allow accurate assessment of hourly urine output, to prevent cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 Each hour, on the hour, note the volume of urine in the urometer, recording this on the fluid balance chart.	To determine urine output and to keep accurate records of this, thus enabling assessment of fluid balance (Scales and Pilsworth 2008, E).
5 Empty the urometer into the collection bag (until the bag is full; this will then need emptying).	To ensure urometer is empty for the next hour's determination. E
6 Add recorded urine output to the other values for output, giving an hourly total.	To allow for fluid balance determination (see Table 8.2). E
Postprocedure	
7 Once all output has been determined, noted on chart and total hourly output calculated, subtract total output from total input.	To calculate hourly fluid balance (Levi 2005, E).

Procedure guideline 8.3 Fluid output: monitoring/measuring output if the patient is not catheterized

Essential equipment

- Measuring jugs (with volume indicators)
- Gloves, apron, goggles
- Bedpan/urinary bottles/commode
- Scales

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Determine sources of fluid output (see Table 8.2) and note on the fluid balance chart.	To ensure all possibilities have been considered to ensure accurate (as possible) output determination (Scales and Pilsworth 2008, E).
Procedure	
2 Explain to the patient that it is necessary to measure their urine output.	To ensure that the patient knows that any urine they pass needs to be measured in order to record output and to obtain their co-operation in ensuring accuracy of measurement (Chung *et al.* 2002, R4).
	To ensure the urine is kept for measuring and not

3 Supply the patient with urinary bottles and/or bedpans and ask them to use these even if they are able to mobilize to the toilet; ask them to inform you of each episode.	disposed of (Chung *et al.* 2002, R4).
4 Use protective equipment for bodily fluids when handling used bottle or bedpan.	To prevent cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
5 Place bedpan/bottle on to scales, subtracting appropriate value to compensate for weight of item.	To obtain value of urine in millilitres. E
6 If no scales available, use a jug with volume markings; pour urine into jug (using universal precautions), noting level of urine.	To measure urine volume. E
7 Once noted, dispose of urine appropriately.	To prevent contamination and/or cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
8 Record value on fluid balance chart, adding this to the rest of the output values for the hour.	To determine fluid output for the hour (Sumnall 2007, E).

Postprocedure

9 Once all output has been determined, noted on chart and total hourly output calculated, subtract total output from total input.	To calculate hourly fluid balance (Levi 2005, E).

Procedure guideline 8.4 Fluid output: measuring output from drains

Essential equipment

- Measuring jugs (with volume indicators)
- Gloves, apron, goggles
- Tape and pen

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Determine sources of fluid output (see Table 8.2) and note them on the fluid balance chart.	To ensure all possibilities have been considered to ensure accurate (as possible) output determination (Scales and Pilsworth 2008, E).

Procedure

2 Explain to the patient that the output from the drains will be monitored hourly.	To inform the patient about current care and to ensure they are not alarmed by the frequent observations (Bryant 2007, E).
3 If the drain is drainable, empty contents into jug, noting volume; use universal precautions.	To determine volume of fluid drained and prevent cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 If it is not possible to drain the fluid out of the bag, use a suitable pen and mark the level the fluid reaches each hour. Date and time each marking.	To determine drainage each hour. To ensure consistency in reading and to communicate to other members of the multidisciplinary team regarding drainage (Sumnall 2007, E).
5 Note volume/drainage on fluid balance chart.	To determine drainage each hour (Sumnall 2007, E).
6 Add this figure to the rest of the output values for the hour.	To determine accurate total fluid lost each hour (Sumnall 2007, E).
Postprocedure	
7 Once all output has been determined, noted on chart and total hourly output calculated, subtract total output from total input.	To calculate hourly fluid balance (Levi 2005, E).

Procedure guideline 8.5 Fluid output: monitoring output from gastric outlets, nasogastric tubes, gastrostomy

Essential equipment

- Urometer
- Measuring jugs (with volume indicators)
- Gloves, apron, goggles
- Bile drainage bag/gastrostomy drainage bag

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Determine sources of fluid output (see Table 8.2) and note them on the fluid balance chart.	To ensure all possibilities have been considered to ensure accurate (as possible) output determination (Scales and Pilsworth 2008, E).
Procedure	
2 Explain to the patient that it is necessary to monitor drainage every hour.	To inform the patient of current care and interventions (Bryant 2007, E).

3 Ensure gastric outlet device has a drainage bag attached.	To collect any output for measurement. E
4 If instructed, leave the bag open to drain (this may differ depending on condition).	To enable drainage. E
5 Drain contents into marked jug every hour (if quantity allows), using universal precautions.	To determine volume and prevent cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Attach a urometer if output is high.	To ensure accurate reading and for ease of measuring. E
7 Note volume on fluid balance chart, adding this value to the rest of the output values for that 1 hour.	To enable determination of fluid balance (Sumnall 2007, E).
Postprocedure	
8 Once all output has been determined, noted on chart and total hourly output calculated, subtract total output from total input.	To calculate hourly fluid balance (Levi 2005, E).

Procedure guideline 8.6 Fluid output: monitoring output from bowels

Essential equipment

- Measuring jugs (with volume indicators)
- Gloves, apron, goggles
- Bedpan/commode
- Scales
- Rectal tube 'Flexiseal' (if required)

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Determine sources of fluid output (see Table 8.2) and note them on the fluid balance chart.	To ensure all possibilities have been considered to ensure accurate (as possible) output determination (Scales and Pilsworth 2008, E).
Procedure	
2 Explain to the patient that it is necessary to monitor volume of fluid excreted, including that from the bowel, particularly if the stool is loose/watery.	To keep the patient informed about current care and observations, to ensure co-operation in monitoring fluid output (Bryant 2007, E).
3 Provide the patient with bedpans, even if able to mobilize to the bathroom; ask them to place	To enable inspection and measurement of fluid lost via the bowel. E

the bedpan over the toilet bowl.	
4 If stool is loose enough, this can be transferred into a jug and the volume measured, or use scales.	To quantify fluid output from stool (Scales and Pilsworth 2008, E).
5 If the stool is formed and it is not possible to accurately quantify, still note on fluid balance chart that bowels were opened.	To take into account any insensible losses (Mooney 2007, E).
6 A rectal tube may be suitable in some patients; please refer to local policy regarding use of rectal tube. Note any output on the fluid balance chart.	To ensure correct use of tube and to quantify any fluid losses from the bowel. E
7 Add losses to the previous losses for the hour.	To calculate hourly fluid output (Sumnall 2007, E).
Postprocedure	
8 Once all output has been determined, noted on chart and total hourly output calculated, subtract total output from total input.	To calculate hourly fluid balance (Levi 2005, E).

Procedure guideline 8.7 Fluid output: monitoring output from stoma sites

Essential equipment

- Measuring jugs (with volume indicators)
- Gloves, apron, goggles

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Determine sources of fluid output (see Table 8.2) and note them on the fluid balance chart.	To ensure all possibilities have been considered to ensure accurate (as possible) output determination (Alexander *et al*. 2000, E).
Procedure	
2 Explain to the patient that you are monitoring hourly output.	To ensure the patient understands why their stoma is being checked hourly. To ensure they are up to date with current care (Bryant 2007, E).
3 Check that the stoma bag is drainable; if not, change (see Chapter 6 for further information and procedure guidelines on stomas and changing stoma bags).	To ensure ease of draining bag contents and to reduce the number of times the adhesive flange is removed, in order to protect the skin. E
4 Using protective equipment, empty the	To determine output from stoma for 1 hour and prevent cross-infection (Fraise and

contents of the stoma bag into the measuring jug, noting volume.	Bradley 2009, E).
5 Dispose of contents using protective equipment, adhering to local policy.	To ensure correct disposal of contents and prevent cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Note volume of stool on chart; add to other losses for the hour.	To ensure correct documentation of output and allow calculation of fluid balance (Sumnall 2007, E).
7 Add hourly total (all outputs) to cumulative output (see Figure 8.2).	To enable fluid balance determination (Sumnall 2007, E)
Postprocedure	
8 Once all output has been determined, noted on chart and total hourly output calculated, subtract total output from total input.	To calculate hourly fluid balance. E

Problem-solving table 8.1 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guidelines 8.1–8.7)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Non-compliance/ co-operation from patients	Usually misunderstanding or lack of education regarding importance of monitoring fluid balance	Effective patient education and teaching	Determine effective teaching methods, considering individual needs, for example poor hearing, illiteracy. Re-educate the patient, using appropriate means
Inability to record input due to lack of pumps to regulate intravenous fluids or enteral feeds	Not available, unable to use, inappropriate	Request more equipment from appropriate sources, request training	Calculate drip rates on free-flowing fluids to ensure correct hourly input calculated
Insensible losses	Inability to measure some losses	N/A	Note on chart if perspiration is excessive or if bowels opened and immeasurable, to highlight possible inaccuracy in fluid balance
Leaking drains	Inevitable with some drains	Inevitable with some drains; however, surrounding opening may require further suturing; request surgical review if necessary	Utilize stoma bag/wound drainage bag to collect drainage, to enable measurement
Incorrect fluid balance calculation	Incorrect fluid input determination Incorrect fluid output determination Incorrect calculation	Appropriate teaching and education for nurses performing these procedures, competency checking	Ensure nurses are educated appropriately, access information and education if unsure of procedure or technique

Postprocedural considerations

Every hour the findings of fluid monitoring should be recorded; any deficit or change in fluid balance should be reported. Any imbalance noted will require action and a management plan. The nurse recording the fluid balance should have an appreciation of the importance of fluid imbalance management and should notify the appropriate person.

Complications

Correct fluid balance monitoring is essential in the successful management of actual or potential fluid balance disturbances (Jevon and Ewens 2007). Over- or underestimation of the fluid status could lead to

incorrect management, resulting in fluid overload (hypervolaemia), dehydration (hypovolaemia) (Bryant 2007) and/or electrolyte disturbances, all of which will ultimately lead to organ dysfunction.

Cook *et al.* 2004 describe the importance of correct fluid balance monitoring and recording, not only volumes but the type of fluid administered. They explain that the accurate recording of fluid balance should have the same emphasis and importance as prescription charting.

Fluid overload/hypervolaemia

Underestimating the fluid balance may lead to continued or increased administration of IV fluids, which if monitored incorrectly could result in circulatory overload. Excess IV fluid administration is not the only cause of circulatory overload, which can also result from acute renal failure, heart failure and intake of excessive sodium.

In health, homoeostatic mechanisms exist to compensate and redistribute excess fluids but in ill health, these mechanisms are often inadequate, leading to increasing circulatory volumes. As the volume within the circulatory system rises, so does the hydrostatic pressure, which when excessive results in leaking of fluid from the vessels into the surrounding tissues. This is evident as oedema, initially apparent in the ankles and legs or buttocks and sacrum if the patient is in bed. This can progress to generalized oedema, where even the tissues surrounding the eyes become puffy and swollen.

A bounding pulse and an increased blood pressure are also signs of fluid overload, as is an increased cardiac output and raised central venous pressure (Edwards 2000).

One of the most dangerous symptoms of fluid overload is pulmonary oedema, which occurs when the hydrostatic pressure within the vessels causes congestion within the pulmonary circulation, increasing the hydrostatic pressure there and causing fluid to leak into the lungs and pulmonary tissues (Casey 2004). This presents with respiratory symptoms, including shortness of breath, increased respiratory rate, a cough, often associated with pink frothy sputum and finally reduced oxygen saturations due to inadequate gaseous exchange at the alveolar level (Casey 2004). Left untreated, this can be fatal as the lungs are

failing to provide essential cells and organs with oxygen, which would eventually cause organ dysfunction and then failure.

Cardiac ischaemia can also result from fluid overload, not only from the reduced availability of oxygen to the cardiac cells due to the pulmonary oedema, but also from the increase in volume causing the cardiac muscle to stretch, leading to cell damage (Alexander *et al*. 2000).

Treatment of hypovolaemia would involve restricting fluid intake, monitoring electrolytes and using diuretics in an attempt to offload some of the excess fluid. Vasodilators may also be considered to reduce the pressure in the vessels. If these mechanisms fail, it may be necessary to use renal replacement therapy to drive the fluid out of the circulation.

In some cases fluid overload is part of the disease process. However, with effective monitoring and fluid balance recording and assessment, it may be possible to avoid the devastating complications.

Hypovolaemia/dehydration

Dehydration refers to a negative fluid balance, when the fluid output exceeds the fluid intake (Jevon 2010). Overestimation of the fluid balance may lead to inadequate replacement of lost fluids. Dehydration can, however, be caused by a loss of fluids to 'third spaces' such as ascites or lost due to a reduction in colloid osmotic pressure (hypoalbuminaemia) (Casey 2004), losses which are not easy to account for. Fluid balance charts should therefore always be used in association with physical assessment of the patient, weight measurement and laboratory results.

There are three categories of dehydration (Mentes 2006) – isotonic, hypertonic and hypotonic – each related to the type of fluid and solutes lost. Isotonic describes the loss of both water and sodium from the ECF; hypertonic is excessive loss of water only, which leads to a rise in ECF sodium, causing a shift in fluid from the intracellular space to the extracellular. Hypotonic dehydration results from excessive sodium loss, particularly in the overuse of diuretics.

Dehydration can ultimately cause a reduction in circulating volume. As with any change in a homoeostatic state, the body in health has the

ability to compensate but in ill health these mechanisms are often inadequate. Untreated dehydration will quickly lead to a drop in blood pressure and a rise in heart rate (to compensate for the fall in blood pressure). A fall in blood pressure will firstly lead to inadequate renal perfusion, causing a rise in metabolites, acidosis, acute renal failure and eventual toxaemia. Untreated, other organs will suffer from underperfusion, possibly resulting in ischaemia, organ dysfunction and eventual organ failure (Sumnall 2007).

Additional signs and symptoms of dehydration are thirst, weight loss, decreased urine output, dry skin and mucous membranes, fatigue and increased body temperature (Goertz 2006).

Treatment of dehydration includes the replacement of lost fluid and electrolytes but caution must be exercised. If the dehydration is mild, slower fluid replacement is advised, in order to prevent further complications in shifts in electrolytes. However, if hypovolaemia exists with the signs and symptoms of circulatory shock, low blood pressure and organ dysfunction, aggressive fluid replacement is advised (Jevon 2010).

Nutritional status

Definitions

Nutritional status refers to the state of a person's health as determined by their dietary intake and body composition. Nutritional support refers to any method of giving nutrients which encourages an optimal nutritional status. It includes modifying the types of foods eaten, dietary supplementation, enteral tube feeding and parenteral nutrition (NCCAC 2006).

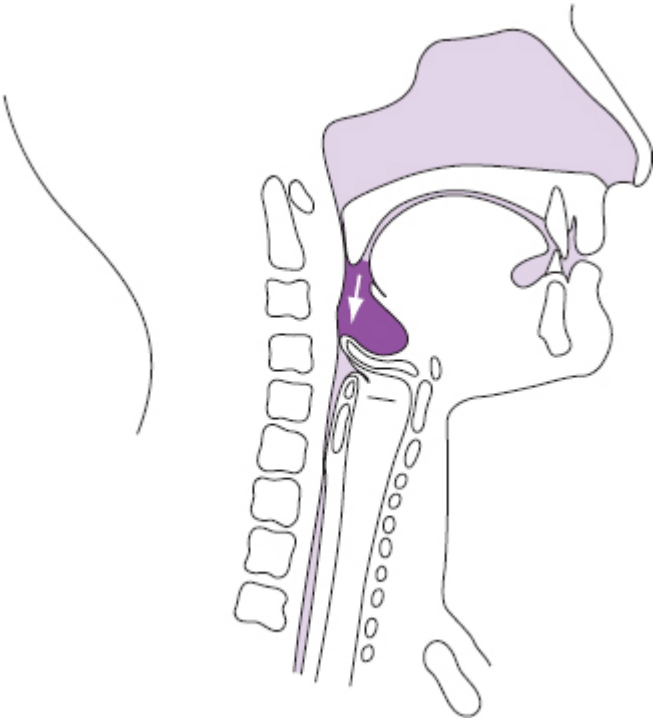
Anatomy and physiology

The normal process of ingestion of food or fluids is via the oral cavity to the gastrointestinal tract.

The normal swallow involves a number of stages, starting with the oral preparatory stage which is influenced by the sight and smell of food. Food or liquid is placed in the mouth and the lips are closed. After chewing and mixing with saliva, it forms a cohesive mass (bolus) that is held on the centre of the tongue. Swallowing is a voluntary task that requires intact functioning of the cranial nerves in addition to intact motor and sensory input for lips, jaw, teeth, tongue and palate.

The pharyngeal stage of swallowing, which is involuntary (see Figure 8.3), occurs as the food bolus crosses the mandible/tongue base as the palate closes, sealing entry to the nasal cavity and reducing risk of nasal regurgitation. Movement of the tongue base and posterior pharyngeal wall squeezes the bolus down the pharynx. Involuntary movements of the larynx (voice box), vocal cords and epiglottis protect the airway and open the cricopharyngeus. The bolus travels from the cricopharyngeus to the gastro-oesophageal junction and peristaltic action then transfers the bolus down the oesophagus (Logemann 1998).

Figure 8.3 Pharyngeal stage of swallowing.



The gastrointestinal tract is the site where food is ingested, digested and absorbed, thus enabling nutrients to be used by the body for growth and maintenance of body functions. Food ingested is moved along the

gastrointestinal tract by peristaltic waves through the oesophagus, stomach, small intestine and large intestine. The passage of food and fluid through the gastrointestinal tract is dependent on the autonomic nervous system, gut hormones such as gastrin and cholecystokinin, the function of exocrine glands such as the parotid, pancreas and liver and psychological aspects such as anxiety. Sphincters situated between the stomach and duodenum, the ileocaecal valves and the anal sphincter also regulate the rate of passage of food and fluids through the tract.

Before food can be absorbed, it must be digested and broken down into molecules that can be transported across the intestinal epithelium which line the gastrointestinal tract. This process is dependent on digestive enzymes secreted by the pancreas and lining of the intestinal tract which act on specific nutrients. Bile, from the liver, is required to emulsify fat, thus enabling it to be broken down by digestive enzymes. The absorption of nutrients is dependent on an active, or energy-dependent, transport across the intestinal epithelium lining the digestive tract. Villi, finger-like projections, increase the surface area of the small intestine to aid absorption. Most nutrients are absorbed from the small intestine although some require specific sites within the gastrointestinal tract; for example, vitamin B_{12} is absorbed in the terminal ileum. Mucosa shed into the lumen of the intestine is broken down and absorbed along with fluid and electrolytes secreted into the lumen during the process of digestion. The volumes of fluid secreted into the gut are large and may amount to 8–9 L a day when combined with an oral intake of 1.5–2 L daily. The majority of fluid is reabsorbed in the small intestine with the remainder being absorbed in the large intestine. Bacteria in the large intestine metabolize non-starch polysaccharides (dietary fibre), increasing faecal bulk and producing short chain fatty acids which are absorbed and metabolized for energy.

Related theory

Bodyweight is the most widely used measure of nutritional status in clinical practice. However, whilst weight provides a simple, readily obtainable and usually fairly precise measure, it remains a one-dimensional metric and as such has limitations. In contrast, an

understanding of anatomy and physiology and in particular the changes that can occur in body composition, in addition to frank weight gain or loss, provides valuable clinical insight (Battezzati *et al.* 2003). In the so-called 'two-compartment' model of body composition, bodyweight is described in terms of, firstly, fat-free mass, that is bones, muscles and organs, which includes the hepatic carbohydrate energy store glycogen, and secondly, fat mass or adipose tissue (van Loan 2003). Water comprises up to 60% of total bodyweight. It is distributed throughout the fat-free and fat compartments with approximately two-thirds present as intracellular and one-third as extracellular fluid. Thus, a healthy 70 kg male comprises 42 kg of water which amounts to 60% of total bodyweight. This is made up of 28 L of intracellular fluid and 14 L of extracellular fluid. The same 'typical' male contains approximately 12 kg of muscle, also referred to as lean body mass, and 12 kg of fat (Geissler and Powers 2005).

Body composition and nutritional status are closely linked and are dependent upon a number of factors including age, sex, metabolic requirements, dietary intake and the presence of disease. Depletion of lean body mass occurs in both acute trauma and chronic inflammatory conditions and negatively affects functional and immune capacity (Roubenoff and Kehayias 1991). Loss of skeletal lean body mass is a natural phenomenon of ageing and similarly compromises functional capacity. Shifts in body water compartments are readily observed in conditions such as ascites and oedema (Bedogni *et al.* 2003). Both of these conditions result from an abnormally increased extracellular water compartment and, despite a gain in total bodyweight, are indicative of worsening outcome.

The physiological characteristics of the different body compartments can be exploited by various assessment tools and techniques to determine changes indicative of nutritional risk (Bedogni *et al.* 2006). Such changes are masked if weight alone is used as the sole measurement.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Nutritional support, to maintain or replete body composition, should be considered for anybody unable to maintain their nutritional status by taking their usual diet (NCCAC 2006). These include the following.

- Patients unable to eat their usual diet (e.g. because of anorexia, mucositis, taste changes or dysphagia) should be given advice on modifying their diet.
- Patients unable to meet their nutritional requirements, despite dietary modifications, should be offered oral nutritional supplements.
- Patients unable to take sufficient food and dietary supplements to meet their nutritional requirements should be considered for an enteral tube feed.
- Patients unable to eat at all should have an enteral tube feed. Reasons for complete inability to eat include carcinoma of the head and neck area or oesophagus, surgery to the head or oesophagus, radiotherapy treatment to the head or neck and fistulae of the oral cavity or oesophagus.
- Parenteral nutrition (PN) may be indicated in patients with a non-functioning or inaccessible gastrointestinal (GI) tract who are likely to be 'nil by mouth' for 5 days or longer. Reasons for a non-functioning or inaccessible GI tract include bowel obstruction, short bowel syndrome, gut toxicity following bone marrow transplantation or chemotherapy, major abdominal surgery, uncontrolled vomiting and enterocutaneous fistulae. Enteral nutrition should always be the first option when considering nutritional support.

Patients in any group may have an increased requirement for nutrients due to an increased metabolic rate, as found in those with burns, major sepsis, trauma or cancer cachexia (Bozzetti 2001, Thomas 2007, Todorovic and Micklewright 2004). Patients should have nutritional requirements estimated prior to the start of nutritional support and should be monitored regularly.

Methods of assessing of nutritional status

Before the initiation of nutritional support, the patient must be assessed. The purpose of assessment is to identify whether a patient is undernourished, the reasons why this may have occurred and to provide baseline data for planning and evaluating nutritional support (NCCAC 2006). It is helpful to use more than one method of assessing nutritional status. For example, a dietary history may be used to assess the adequacy of a person's diet but does not reflect actual nutritional status, whereas percentage weight loss does give an indication of nutritional status. However, percentage weight loss taken in isolation gives no idea of dietary intake and likelihood of improvement or deterioration in nutritional status (NCCAC 2006).

Bodyweight and weight loss

Body Mass Index (BMI) or comparison of a patient's weight with a chart of ideal bodyweight gives a measure of whether the patient has a normal weight, is overweight or underweight, and may be calculated from weight and height using the following equation:

$$\text{BMI} = \frac{\text{Weight (kg)}}{\text{Height (m)}^2}$$

Tables are available to allow the rapid and easy calculation of BMI (BAPEN 2003a). These comparisons, however, are not a good indicator of whether the patient is at risk nutritionally, as an apparently normal weight can mask severe muscle wasting.

Of greater use is the comparison of current weight with the patient's usual weight. Percentage weight loss is a useful measure of the risk of malnutrition:

$$\%\ \text{Weight loss} = \frac{\text{Usual Weight} - \text{Actual Weight}}{\text{Usual Weight}} \times 100$$

A patient would be identified as malnourished if they had any of the following:

- BMI less than 18.5 kg/m^2
- unintentional weight loss greater than 10% within the last 3–6 months
- BMI less than 20 kg/m^2 and unintentional weight loss greater than 5% within the last 3–6 months.

(NCCAC 2006)

Sick children should have their weight and height measured frequently. It may be useful to measure on a daily basis (Shaw and Lawson 2007). These measurements must be plotted onto centile charts. A single weight or height cannot be interpreted as there is much variation of growth within each age group. It is a matter of concern if a child's weight begins to fall across the centiles or if the weight plateaus.

Obesity and oedema may make interpretation of bodyweight difficult; both may mask loss of lean body mass and potential malnutrition (Pennington 1997).

Accurate weighing scales are necessary for measurement of bodyweight. Patients who are unable to stand may require sitting scales.

It is often not appropriate to weigh palliative care patients who may experience inevitable weight loss as disease progresses. Psychologically, it may be difficult for patients to see that they are continuing to lose weight. Measures of nutritional status such as clinical examination and current food intake may still be used in addition to measures of bodyweight.

Skinfold thickness and bio-electrical impedance

Skinfold thickness measurements can be used to assess stores of body fat. They are rarely used in routine nutritional assessment due to the insensitivity of the technique and the variation between measurements made by different observers. They are more appropriate for long-term assessments or research purposes and the technique should only be used by practitioners who are practised in using skinfold thickness calipers because of the potential for intra-investigator variation in results (Durnin and Womersley 1974).

Bio-electrical impedance analysis (BIA) is a simple, non-invasive and relatively inexpensive technique for measuring body composition (Janssen *et al.* 2000). This technique works well in healthy individuals but may be of limited use in some hospital patients with abnormal hydration status (for example, severe dehydration or ascites) and is also less reliable at the extremes of BMI ranges (Kyle *et al.* 2004).

Clinical examination

Observation of the patient may reveal signs and symptoms indicative of nutritional depletion.

- *Physical appearance*: emaciated, wasted appearance, loose clothing/jewellery.
- *Oedema*: will affect weight and may mask the appearance of muscle wastage. May indicate plasma protein deficiency and is often a reflection of the patient's overall condition rather than a measure of nutritional status.
- *Mobility*: weakness and impaired movement may result from loss of muscle mass.
- *Mood*: apathy, lethargy and poor concentration can be features of undernutrition.
- *Pressure sores and poor wound healing*: may reflect impaired immune function as a consequence of undernutrition and vitamin deficiencies (Thomas and Bishop 2007).

Specific nutritional deficiencies may be identifiable in some patients. For example, thiamine deficiency characterized by dementia is associated with high alcohol consumption. Rickets is seen in children with vitamin D deficiency.

A more structured approach can be taken by using an assessment tool such as SGAor patient-generated SGA (PG-SGA) (Bauer *et al*. 2002). This involves a systematic evaluation of muscle and fat sites around the body and assessment for oedema in the ankles or sacral area in immobile patients. Such an assessment can be used to determine whether the patient is malnourished and can be repeated to assess changes in nutritional status.

Dietary intake

Nutrient intake can be assessed by a diet history (Thomas and Bishop 2007). A 24-hour recall may be used to assess recent nutrient intake and a food chart may be used to monitor current dietary intake. A diet history may also be used to provide information on food frequency, food habits, preferences, meal pattern, portion sizes, the presence of any

eating difficulty and changes in food intake (Reilly 1996). A food chart on which all food and fluid taken is recorded is a useful method for monitoring nutritional intake, especially in the hospital setting or when dietary recall is not reliable (Thomas and Bishop 2007).

Biochemical investigations

Biochemical tests carried out on blood may give information on the patient's nutritional status. The most commonly used are as follows.

- *Plasma proteins*. Changes in plasma albumin may arise due to physical stress, changes in circulating volume, hepatic and renal function, shock conditions and septicaemia. Plasma albumin and changes in plasma albumin are not a direct reflection of nutritional intake and nutritional status as it has been shown that they may remain unchanged despite changes in body composition (NCCAC 2006). In addition, albumin has a long half-life of 21 days, so it cannot reflect recent changes in nutritional intake. It may be useful to review serum albumin concentrations in conjunction with C-reactive protein (CRP), which is an acute-phase protein produced by the body in response to injury or trauma. CRP greater than 10 mg/L and serum albumin less than 30 g/L suggests 'illness'. CRP less than 10 mg/L and serum albumin less than 30 g/L suggests protein depletion (Elia 2001). Prealbumin and retinol binding protein levels are more sensitive measures of nutrition support, reflecting recent changes in dietary intake rather than nutritional status. However, they may be expensive to measure or not measured routinely in hospital.
- *Haemoglobin*. This is often below haematological reference values in malnourished patients (men 13.5–17.5 g/dL, women 11.5–15.5 g/dL). This can be due to a number of reasons, such as loss of blood from circulation, increased destruction of red blood cells or reduced production of erythrocytes and haemoglobin, for example due to dietary deficiency of iron or folate.
- *Serum vitamin and mineral levels.* Clinical examination of the patient may suggest a vitamin or mineral deficiency. For example, gingivitis may be due to a deficiency of vitamin C, vitamin A, niacin or riboflavin. Goitre is associated with iodine deficiency, and tremors,

convulsions and behavioural disturbances may be caused by magnesium deficiency (Shenkin 2001). Serum vitamin and mineral levels are rarely measured routinely, as they are expensive and often cannot be performed by hospital laboratories.

- *Immunological competence*. Total lymphocyte count may reflect nutritional status although levels may also be depleted with malignancy, chemotherapy, zinc deficiency, age and non-specific stress (Bodger and Heatley 2001).

If a patient is considered to be malnourished by one or more of the above methods of assessment then referral to a dietitian should be made immediately (Burnham and Barton 2001).

Methods for calculation of nutritional requirements

The body requires protein, energy, fluid and micronutrients such as vitamins, minerals and trace elements to function optimally. Nutritional requirements should be estimated for patients requiring any form of nutritional support to ensure that these needs are met.

Energy requirements may be calculated using equations such as those derived by Schofield (1985), which take into account weight, age, sex, activity level and clinical injury, for example post surgery, sepsis or ventilator dependency. An easier and more appropriate method is to use bodyweight and allowances based on the patient's clinical condition (Table 8.4). Careful adjustments may be necessary in cases of oedema or obesity, in order to avoid overfeeding (Horgan and Stubbs 2003).

Table 8.4 Guidelines for estimation of patient's daily energy and protein requirements (per kilogram bodyweight)

	Normal	**Pyrexia or extreme sepsis**
Energy (kcal)	25	25–35
(kJ)	105	105–146
Nitrogen (g)	0.17 (0.14–0.2)	0.2–0.3
Protein (g)	1 (0.87–1.25)	1.25–1.87
Fluid (mL)	30–35	30–35 plus 2–2.5 mL per °C in temperature above 37°C

Fluid and nitrogen (or protein) requirements can be calculated in a similar way. If additional nitrogen is being given in situations where losses are increased, for example due to trauma, GI losses or major sepsis, then additional energy intake is required to assist in promoting a nitrogen balance. Improvement in nitrogen balance is the single nutritional parameter most consistently associated with improved outcome, and the primary goal of nutrition support should be the attainment of nitrogen balance (Gidden and Shenkin 2000). Additional fluid of 500–750 mL is necessary for every 1°C rise in temperature in pyrexial patients (Thomas 2007).

Vitamin and mineral requirements calculated as detailed in the Committee on Medical Aspects of Food Policy (COMA) Report 41 on dietary reference values (COMA and DH 1991) apply to groups of healthy people and are not necessarily appropriate for those who are ill. A patient deficient in a vitamin or mineral may benefit from additional supplements to improve a condition. Macronutrient and micronutrient requirements for children are also listed in the COMA Report. Calculations are usually done with the reference nutrient intake (RNI). The child's actual bodyweight, not the expected bodyweight, is used when calculating requirements. This is to avoid excessive feeding. For a very small child, the height age instead of the chronological age is the basis of calculation (Shaw and Lawson 2007).

Methods for measuring height and weight of an adult patient

Taking an accurate height and weight of a patient is an essential part of nutrition screening. Accurate measurements of bodyweight may also be required for estimating body surface area and calculating drug dosages, such as for chemotherapy. All patients should have height and weight measured on admission to hospital and weight should be taken at regular intervals during their hospital stay according to local policy and individual clinical need.

Preprocedural considerations

Check that the patient is able to stand or sit on the appropriate scales. The patient should remove outdoor clothing and shoes before being weighed and having height measured.

When obtaining a height measurement, check that the patient is able to stand upright whilst the measurement is taken. For patients who are unable to stand then height may be determined by measuring ulna length and using conversion tables (BAPEN 2003a).

It may not be possible to weigh patients who cannot be moved or are unable to sit or stand. Alternative methods to obtain weight should be explored, for example bed scales which can be placed under the wheels of the bed, scales as an integral part of a bed or a patient hoist with weighing facility.

Equipment

Scales

Scales (either sitting or standing) must be calibrated and positioned on a level surface. If electronic or battery scales are used then they must be connected to the mains or have appropriate working batteries prior to the patient getting on the scales.

Stadiometer

These are devices for measuring height and may be mounted on weighing scales or wall mounted.

Tape measure

Required if estimating height from ulna length. The tape measure should use centimetres, be disposable or made of plastic that can be cleaned with a detergent wipe between patient uses.

Assessment tools

Identification of patients who are malnourished or at risk of malnutrition is an important first step in nutritional care. There are a number of screening tools available which consider different aspects of nutritional

status. National screening initiatives have demonstrated that 28% of patients admitted to hospital were found to be at risk of malnutrition – high risk (22%) and medium risk (6%) (BAPEN 2009). Particular diagnoses, such as cancer, increase the risk of malnutrition.

All patients who are identified as at risk of malnutrition should undergo a nutritional assessment. Subjective global assessment (SGA) is a comprehensive assessment but necessitates more time and expertise to carry out than most screening tests. Some more simple screening tools, including the malnutrition universal screening tool (MUST) (BAPEN 2003a), based on the patient's Body Mass Index, weight loss and illness score, are less time consuming. Other tools may be specific to the patient's age or diagnosis (Kondrup *et al.* 2003). The most important feature of using any screening tool is that patients identified as requiring nutritional assessment or intervention have a nutritional care plan initiated and are referred to the dietitian for further advice if appropriate.

Procedure guideline 8.8 Measuring the weight and height of the patient

Essential equipment

- Scales
- Stadiometer (preferably fixed to the wall)

Optional equipment

- Tape measure

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Position the scales for easy access and apply the brakes (if appropriate).	To ensure that the patient can get on and off the scales easily and to avoid accidents should the scales move. E
2 Ask the patient to remove shoes and outdoor garments. The patient should be wearing light indoor clothes only (see Action Figure 2).	Outdoor clothes and shoes will add additional weight and make it difficult to obtain an accurate bodyweight. E
Procedure	
3 Ensure that the scales record zero then ask the patient to stand on scales (or sit if using sitting scales). Ask the patient to remain still and check that the patient is not	To record an accurate weight (NMC 2009, C).

supporting any weight on any object, for example wall, stick or feet on the floor.	
4 Note the reading on the scale and record immediately, taking care that it is legible. Check with the patient that the weight reflects their expected weight and that the weight is similar to previous weights recorded. This may require conversion of weight from kg to stones and pounds or vice versa.	To check that the weight is correct. If the weight is not as expected then the patient should be re-weighed. E
5 Ensure that the patient has removed their shoes and then ask them to stand straight with heels together. If the stadiometer is wall mounted, the heels should touch the heel plate or the wall. With a freestanding device the person's back should be toward the measuring rod.	Shoes will provide additional height and make the measurement inaccurate. E To ensure that the patient is standing upright. If the person does not have their back against the measuring rod then the measuring arm may not reach the head. E
6 The patient should look straight ahead and with the bottom of the nose and the bottom of the ear in a parallel plane. The patient should be asked to stretch to reach maximal height.	To ensure an accurate height is measured. E
7 Record height to the nearest millimetre.	To record an accurate measurement of the patient's height (NMC 2009, C).
8 To estimate the height of a patient from ulna length, ask the patient to remove long-sleeved jacket, shirt or top.	To be able to access their left arm for measurement purposes. E
9 Measure between the point of the elbow (olecranon process) and the midpoint of the prominent bone of the wrist (styloid process) on the left side if possible.	To obtain measurement of the length of the ulna. E
10 Estimate the patient's height to the nearest centimetre, using a conversion table.	To estimate the patient's height. (BAPEN 2003a, C)
Postprocedure	
11 Document height and weight in patient's notes.	To record the accurate measurement of patient's height and weight (NMC 2009, C).

Action Figure 2 Weighing a patient.

Problem-solving table 8.2 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 8.8)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Patient unable to stand on scale	Poorly positioned scales Patient balance not sufficient	Check with patient prior to asking them to stand on scales if they are able to do so. Offer sitting scales if necessary	Ensure both sitting and standing scales are available in the hospital
Weight obtained appears too low	Patient may have put pressure on scales prior to them reaching zero	Ensure zero is visible before patient touches scales	Check weight with patient once obtained Re-weigh patient to check correct weight
Weight obtained appears too high	Patient may be wearing outdoor clothes, shoes or be carrying a bag, drainage bag and so on Patient may have fluid retention, for example oedema or ascites	Ensure that the patient is wearing light indoor clothes before standing on the scales Check whether patient has fluid retention	Check weight with patient once obtained Re-weigh patient to check correct weight
Patient is unable to stand	Patient is unwell or has physical disability	Discuss the procedure with patient before undertaking height measurement	Consider estimating height from ulna measurement

Postprocedural considerations

Consideration must be given to the patient's weight and whether this reflects a change in their clinical condition. The weight may be being used as part of a nutritional screening or assessment or for planning of treatment, for example medication. Any significant changes should be interpreted in the light of potential changes in body composition and incorporated into the patient's care plan. For example, a loss of weight may require further questioning about dietary intake and the commencement of a nutritional care plan.

After taking a measurement of height it is useful to check with the patient that the figure obtained is approximately the height that is expected. However, it is important to consider that patients may report a loss in height with increasing years. A cumulative height loss from age 30 to 70 years may be about 3 cm for men and 5 cm for women and by age 80 years it increases to 5 cm for men and 8 cm for women (Sorkin *et al.* 1999).

Provision of nutritional support: oral

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

An essential part of providing diet for a patient is to ensure that the patient is able to consume the food and fluid in a safe and pleasant environment. Some patients may require assistance with feeding or drinking and a system should be in place to ensure that these patients receive the required attention at each meal time and beverage service provided.

It is essential that meals are appetizing and strictly comply with any dietary restriction that is relevant to the patient. For example, those with food allergies, texture modifications, religious or cultural dietary requirements need to be clearly identified with the senior ward nurse, before assistance with feeding commences. Eating and drinking are pleasurable experiences and the psychosocial aspect of this cannot be overestimated. The inability to participate in mealtimes can be socially isolating (Ekberg *et al.* 2002, Gaziano 2002).

Supporting the dignity of the patient throughout the process is also imperative to its success and acceptance.

Provision of food and nutrition in a hospital setting

Many factors, including being in hospital, need to be taken into consideration when planning nutritional support. Within the *Essence of Care* framework (DH 2001b), food and nutrition were identified by patients as a fundamental area of care that is frequently unsatisfactory within the NHS.

Good nutritional care, adequate hydration and enjoyable mealtimes can dramatically improve the general health and well-being of patients who are unable to feed themselves, and can be particularly relevant to older people (Nutrition Summit Stakeholder Group and DH 2007).

Unfortunately, it is evident that assistance with meals for those that require it does not always occur. The 2006 inpatient survey undertaken by the Healthcare Commission identified that of those patients who said they needed help to eat their meals, 18% said they did not get enough help and 21% said that they only got enough help sometimes (Healthcare Commission 2007).

Clinical benchmarking (DH 2001b) and clinical initiatives such as protected mealtimes aim to address common problems that patients experience whilst in hospital. Box 8.1 outlines the benchmark for food and nutrition, identifying specific factors that need to be considered when reviewing service provision, in order to promote better practice. The Department of Health and the Nutrition Summit Stakeholder Group have worked together to produce an action plan based on the 10 key characteristics of good nutritional care in hospitals. These are outlined in Box 8.2.

Box 8.1 Food and nutrition benchmark ('food' includes drinks)

Agreed patient/client-focused outcome: patients/clients are enabled to consume food (orally) which meets their individual needs

Indicators/information that highlight concerns which may trigger the need for benchmarking activity:

- Patient satisfaction surveys
- Complaints figures and analysis
- Audit results: including catering audit, nutritional risk assessments, documentation audit, environmental audit (including dining facilities)
- Contract monitoring, for example wastage of food, food handling and/or food hygiene training records
- Ordering of dietary supplements/special diets
- Audit of available equipment and utensils
- Educational audits/student placement feedback
- Litigation/Clinical Negligence Scheme for Trusts
- Professional concern
- Media reports
- *Sustainable Food and the NHS* (King's Fund 2005), *Food and Nutritional Care in Hospitals* (Council of Europe 2003)

1 Screening/assessment to identify patients'/clients' nutritional needs	Nutritional screening progresses to further assessment for all patients/clients identified as 'at risk' using a screening tool that assesses Body Mass Index and weight changes, for example MUST (NCCAC 2006)
2 Planning, implementation and evaluation	Plans of care based on ongoing nutritional assessments are of care for those patients who require advised, implemented and evaluated nutritional assessment

3 A conducive environment (acceptable sights, smells and sounds)	The environment is conducive to enabling the individual patients/clients to eat. Implementation of Protected Mealtimes
4 Assistance to eat and drink	Patients/clients receive the care and assistance they require with eating and drinking. Provision of eating aids where appropriate
5 Obtaining food	Patients/clients/carers, whatever their communication needs, have sufficient information to enable them to obtain their food. Examples include the NHS menu provision and utilizing menu translation services
6 Food provided	Food that is provided by the service meets the needs and preferences of individual patients/clients through audit of patient feedback and equality and diversity co-operatives
7 Food availability	Patients/clients have set mealtimes. Flexibility is also important, ensuring a replacement meal is offered if a meal is missed and patients can access a lighter meal or snacks at any time
8 Food presentation	Food is presented to patients/clients in a way that takes into account portion capacity and what appeals to them as individuals
9 Monitoring	The amount of food patients actually eat is monitored, recorded and leads to action when there is cause for concern
10 Eating to promote health	All opportunities are used to encourage the patients/clients to eat to promote their own health

Other factors which may influence future food intake (e.g. surgery, chemotherapy or radiotherapy) also need to be taken into consideration when planning nutritional support, as clinical experience shows these may exert a deleterious effect on appetite and the ability to maintain an adequate nutritional intake (Newman *et al.* 1998).

DH 2001b. © Crown copyright.

Reproduced under the terms of the Click-use Licence.

Box 8.2 Ten key characteristics of good nutritional care in hospitals

- All patients are screened on admission to identify the patients who are malnourished or at risk of becoming malnourished. All patients are re-screened weekly.
- All patients have a care plan which identifies their nutritional care needs and how they are to be met.
- The hospital includes specific guidance on food services and nutritional care in its Clinical Governance arrangements.

- Patients are involved in the planning and monitoring arrangements for food service provision.
- The ward implements Protected Mealtimes to provide an environment conducive to patients enjoying and being able to eat their food.
- All staff have the appropriate skills and competencies needed to ensure that patients' nutritional needs are met. All staff receive regular training on nutritional care and management.
- Hospital facilities are designed to be flexible and patient centred with the aim of providing and delivering an excellent experience of food service and nutritional care 24 hours a day, every day.
- The hospital has a policy for food service and nutritional care which is patient centred and performance managed in line with home country governance frameworks.
- Food service and nutritional care are delivered to the patient safely.
- The hospital supports a multidisciplinary approach to nutritional care and values the contribution of all staff groups working in partnership with patients and users.

Modification of diet

Practical information on modification of diet can be found in the Royal Marsden Hospital Patient Information Series *Eating Well When You Have Cancer – A Guide for Cancer Patients* (Royal Marsden NHS Trust 2002), *Diet and Cancer* (MCS 2009) and *Have You Got a Small Appetite?* (NAGE, n.d.). See also Table 8.5.

Table 8.5 Suggestions for modification of diet

Eating difficulty	Dietary modification
Anorexia	Serve small meals and snacks, for example twice-daily snack options Make food look attractive with garnish Fortify foods with butter, cream or cheese to increase energy content of meals Use alcohol, steroids, megestrol acetate or medroxyprogesterone as an appetite stimulant Encourage food that patient prefers Offer nourishing drinks between meals. In hospital consider a 'cocktail' drinks round
Sore mouth	Offer foods that are soft and easy to eat Avoid dry foods that require chewing Avoid citrus fruits and drinks Avoid salt and spicy foods Allow hot food to cool before eating
Dysphagia	Offer foods that are soft and serve with additional sauce or gravy Some foods may need to be blended: make sure food is served attractively Supplement the diet with nourishing drinks between meals
Nausea and vomiting	Have cold foods in preference to hot as these emit less odour Keep away from cooking smells

	Sip fizzy, glucose-containing drinks Eat small frequent meals and snacks that are high in carbohydrate (e.g. biscuits and toast) Try ginger drinks and ginger biscuits
Early satiety	Eat small, frequent meals. In hospital access an 'out-of-hours' meal service Avoid high-fat foods which delay gastric emptying Avoid drinking large quantities when eating Use prokinetics, for example metoclopramide, to encourage gastric emptying

Dietary supplements

If patients are unable to meet their nutritional requirements with food alone then they may require appropriate supplementation using dietary supplements. These may be used to improve an inadequate diet or as a sole source of nutrition if taken in sufficient quantity.

Sip feeds

These come in a range of flavours, both sweet and savoury, and are presented as a powder in a packet or ready prepared in a can, bottle or carton. Sip feeds contain whole protein, hydrolysed fat and carbohydrates. Most are called 'complete feeds' since they provide all protein, vitamins, minerals and trace elements to meet requirements if a prescribed volume is taken (Thomas and Bishop 2007). Others may be aimed at specific needs, for example high protein.

Energy supplements

Carbohydrates

Glucose polymers in powder or liquid form contain approximately 350 kcal (1442 kJ) per 100 g and 187–299 kcal (770–1232 kJ) per 100 mL respectively. Powdered glucose polymer is virtually tasteless and may be added to anything in which it will dissolve, for example milk and other drinks, soup, cereals and milk pudding; liquid glucose polymers may be fruit flavoured or neutral (Thomas and Bishop 2007). Such supplements would be used to increase the energy content of the diet.

Fat

Fat may be in the form of long-chain triglycerides (LCT) or medium-chain triglycerides (MCT) and comes as a liquid which can be added to food and drinks. These oils provide 416–772 kcal (1714–3181 kJ) per 100 mL: the oils with a lower energy value are presented in the form of an emulsion and those with a higher energy value are presented as pure oil (Thomas and Bishop 2007).

Mixed fat and glucose polymer solutions and powders are available and provide 150 kcal per 100 mL or 486 kcal per 100 g, depending on the relative proportion of fat and carbohydrates in the product.

Products containing MCT are used in preference to those containing LCT where a patient suffers from GI impairment causing malabsorption. Patients require specific advice about their use to ensure that they are introduced into the diet slowly and GI tolerance is assessed (Thomas and Bishop 2007).

Always check with the manufacturer for the exact energy content of products. *Note*: products containing a glucose polymer are unsuitable for patients with diabetes mellitus.

Protein supplements

These come in the form of a powder and provide 55–90 g protein per 100 g. Protein supplement powders may be added to any food or drink in which they will dissolve, for example milk, fruit juice, soup, milk pudding.

Energy and protein supplements are not used in isolation as these would not provide an adequate nutritional intake. They are used in conjunction with sip feeds and a modified diet. The detailed nutritional compositions of dietary supplements are available from the manufacturers.

Vitamin and mineral supplements

When dietary intake is poor a vitamin and mineral supplement may be required. This can often be given as a one-a-day tablet supplement that provides 100% of the dietary reference values. Care should be taken to avoid unbalanced supplements or those containing amounts larger than the dietary reference value (FSA and Expert Group on Vitamins and

Minerals 2003). Excessive doses of vitamins and minerals may be harmful, particularly as some vitamins and minerals are not excreted by the body when taken in amounts exceeding requirements. Additionally, vitamins and minerals may interact with medication to influence its efficacy; for example, vitamin K may influence anticoagulants such as warfarin.

Anticipated patient outcomes

It is anticipated that feeding an adult will ensure safe delivery of the meal, in a comfortable environment which the patient feels is a pleasurable and positive experience, promoting adequate nutritional care.

Legal and professional issues

Protected Mealtimes should be in place on the wards, whereby all non-essential clinical activities have been discontinued and a calm environment exists (Age Concern 2006). The use of Protected Mealtimes within hospitals is strongly encouraged by the National Patient Safety Agency which encourages trusts to have an appropriate policy in place to monitor its implementation on the wards and to have a structure in place to report patients missing meals via the local risk management system (NPSA 2007a).

Preprocedural considerations

Sufficient staff need to be available to support those who need help. Patients who require assistance should be identified through screening and a discreet signal should be evident to identify that further assistance is required, for example a red tray, a coloured serviette or a red sticker (Bradley and Rees 2003).

Assessment and recording tools

Food record charts can provide the essential information that forms the basis of a nutritional assessment and help to determine subsequent nutritional care. They are therefore a valuable resource for dietitians,

nurses and ultimately the patient (Freeman 2002). They can be used to assess whether the patient is eating and drinking enough, thereby enabling action to be taken to encourage intake in those who have a reduced dietary intake.

The objective is to quantify the amount of food and drink consumed by a patient over an agreed time period and, although open to error, it has been demonstrated that this type of record keeping provides more accurate information than methods involving recall (Kroke *et al.* 1999). In hospital, a patient's intake frequently changes as a result of disease, symptoms, medication and unfamiliar surroundings and food availability. It is frequently not evident how much a patient is eating, particularly on busy wards with regular staff changes.

All screening, including food charts, should be linked to a care plan and documented in the patient's notes (Freeman 2002, NPSA 2009). If there is noted weight loss, concerns expressed by staff or from relatives regarding the patient's nutritional intake, particularly where there are difficulties observed with eating and drinking, close monitoring of oral intake is essential. The only exception to this is when a patient is receiving palliative care and it has been clarified with the clinical team that active nutritional support is not appropriate.

Food charts should be available on all wards and should be simple to complete. It is often preferable to include on the chart household measures such as tablespoons, slice of bread or hospital portions, to assist with the speed of completion.

Training should be given on how the chart should be completed and preferably should be undertaken by the dietitian or the specialist nutrition nurse, as this will facilitate understanding of the rationale and continuity of recording and improve accuracy. Charts need to be carefully completed over a minimum and consecutive 2 or 3 day period or longer if requested by the dietitian. Some research suggests that information should be collected over at least 7 days in order to estimate protein and energy intake to within ±10% (Bingham 1987).

Specific patient preparations

Before commencing assistance, please discuss this with the patient in order that they understand and consent to assistance being provided. When verbal communication is not possible, non-verbal agreement needs to be obtained wherever possible. Try to engage the patient in the feeding process and interpret and record any preferences or dislikes they may express regarding the meal process.

Make sure the patient has the opportunity to visit the bathroom and wash hands or clean their hands with an antiseptic wipe and to undertake any appropriate mouthcare prior to eating. Establish whether any medication is to be administered prior to or after feeding which will facilitate the feeding and digestive process. Individual symptoms should be assessed; for example, if patients are nauseous they may benefit from the prescribing of antiemetics or prokinetic agents. Patients who have pancreatic insufficiency may require pancreatic enzyme replacements. All drugs should be correctly prescribed on the drug chart. The timing in relation to feeding is important and antiemetics should be given approximately 30 minutes prior to meal service. Any special equipment, such as cutlery or non-slip mats, that is required for assisting the patient with the meal should be provided. This may require referral to an occupational therapist for an assessment.

Procedure guideline 8.9 Feeding an adult patient

Essential equipment

- A clean table or tray
- Equipment required to assist the patient such as adequate drinking water, adapted cups, cutlery and napkin
- A chair for the nurse or carer to sit with the patient

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Ensure the patient is comfortable, that is, they have an empty bladder, clean hands, clean mouth and if applicable clean dentures. Ensure that there are no unpleasant sights or smells that would put the patient off eating	To make the mealtime a pleasant experience (Age Concern 2006, E).

2 Ensure that the patient is sitting upright in a supported midline position, preferably at a table.	To facilitate swallowing and protect the airway. E
3 Protect the patient's clothing with a napkin.	To maintain dignity and cleanliness. E
Procedure	
4 Assist the patient to take appropriate portions of food at the correct temperature but encourage self-feeding. Tailor the size of each mouthful to the individual patient.	To make the mealtime a pleasant experience. To ensure that swallowing is not compromised if the patient feels that they must hurry with the meal (Samuels and Chadwick 2006, E).
5 Allow the patient to chew and swallow foods before the next mouthful. Avoid hovering with the next spoonful.	To maintain the dignity of the patient. E
6 Avoid asking questions when the patient is eating, but check between mouthfuls that the food is suitable and that the patient is able to continue with the meal.	To reduce the risk of aspirating, which may be increased if speaking whilst eating. E
7 Use the napkin to remove particles of food or drink from the patient's face.	To maintain dignity and cleanliness. E
8 Ask the patient when they wish to have a drink. Assist the patient to take a sip. Support the glass or cup gently so that the flow of liquid is controlled or use a straw if this is helpful. Take care with hot drinks to avoid offering these when too hot to drink.	To give the opportunity for the patient to swallow. Hot liquids may scald the patient. E
9 If the food appears too dry, ask the patient if they would like some additional gravy or sauce added to the dish.	To facilitate chewing and swallowing (Wright *et al.* 2008, E).
10 Observe patient for coughing, choking, wet or gurgly voice, nasal regurgitation or effortful swallow. See Table 8.6 for details of problems that may be experienced by patients.	May indicate aspiration, laryngeal penetration or weakness in muscles required for swallowing (Leslie *et al.* 2003, E).
11 Encourage the patient to take as much food as they feel able to eat, but do not press if they indicated that they have eaten enough.	To improve nutritional intake but also maintain patient dignity and choice (Wright *et al.* 2008, E).
Postprocedure	
12 After the meal assist the patient to meet hygiene needs, for example, wash hands and face and clean teeth.	To maintain cleanliness and dignity. E

Table 8.6 Difficulties that may be experienced by patients during eating and drinking and their potential implications

Difficulty experienced	Implications
Coughing and choking during and after	Wet or gurgly voice quality

eating and/or drinking	
Indicates laryngeal penetration or aspiration (Smith Hammond 2008)	Indicates laryngeal penetration or aspiration (Leslie *et al.* 2003)
Drooling/excess oral secretions	Indicates less frequent swallowing and is associated with dysphagia (Langmore *et al.* 1998)
Nasal regurgitation	Indicates impaired velopalatal seal (Leslie *et al.* 2003)
Food/drink pooling in mouth	Indicates lack of oral sensation from intraoral flaps or may be a sign of cognitive impairment (Logemann 1998)
Swallow is effortful	May indicate weakness in muscles required for swallowing (Logemann *et al.* 2008)
Respiration rate on eating/drinking is increased	Increased respiration rate may be associated with risk of aspiration (Leslie *et al.* 2003)
Signs of recurrent chest infections and pyrexia	This may indicate aspiration pneumonia as a consequence of dysphagia (Leslie *et al.* 2003)
Patient report of swallowing problems	Patients can be very accurate in self-diagnosis of dysphagia (Pauloski *et al.* 2002)
Patient reports food sticking	Patients can be very accurate in self-diagnosis of dysphagia (Pauloski *et al.* 2002)
Additional time required to eat a meal	Taking a long time to eat may indicate dysphagia (Leslie *et al.* 2003)
Avoidance of certain foods	Patients will avoid food items that they find difficult to swallow (Leslie *et al.* 2003)
Weight loss	Patients may eat less due to difficulty swallowing (Leslie *et al.* 2003)
Poor oral hygiene	Aspiration of secretions in those with poor oral hygiene may result in aspiration pneumonia (Langmore 2001)

Postprocedural considerations

Education of patient and relevant others

It is important that volunteers, family members or visitors who wish to assist the patient with feeding are familiar with and trained in the processes listed in Procedure guideline 8.9 (NPSA 2009). This is to ensure that the family is confident and can safely and effectively assist the patient.

Documentation

It is essential that the plate is not removed before wastage has been recorded and this is relayed to the ward catering staff prior to meal service commencement. If the patient has not managed a reasonable

amount of their meal, this needs to be addressed later in the afternoon or evening. It is also important to ascertain whose responsibility it is for completion of the charts to avoid confusion, that is, nurse, healthcare assistant, ward catering staff or patient, as this will vary across institutions. These charts can be used by the dietitian or healthcare professional to effectively assess the patient's meal pattern and nutrition intake. Some patients may be able to complete the record themselves if given guidance on what is required.

Difficulties arise when the food chart data are not accurately completed or reviewed, during which time malnutrition and its consequences continue, rather than being quickly identified and addressed.

If there is strong concern about the quantity of food that has been consumed by the patient, this must also be verbally relayed to the nurse in charge, ward dietitian and possibly the clinician.

Enteral tube feeding

Definition

Enteral tube feeding refers to the delivery of a nutritionally complete feed (containing protein, fat, carbohydrate, vitamins, minerals, fluid and possibly dietary fibre) directly into the gastrointestinal tract via a tube. The tube is usually placed into the stomach, duodenum or jejunum via either the nose or direct percutaneous route (NCCAC 2006).

Related theory

Enteral feeding tubes allow direct access to the gastrointestinal tract for the purposes of feeding. A nasogastric or nasojejunal tube is placed via the nose and passed down the oesophagus with the feeding tip ending in the stomach (gastric) or small intestine (jejunum) respectively. A gastrostomy tube is placed directly into the stomach allowing infusion of nutrients into the stomach or, alternatively, such tubes may have a jejunal extension passing through the pylorus, allowing feeding into the

jejunum (small intestine). A jejunostomy tube allows direct access to the jejunum for feeding. The choice of appropriate tube should be based on the method of insertion and the associated risks, length of time feeding is required, function of the gastrointestinal tract, the physical condition of the patient and body image issues relating to the visibility of the feeding tube, after discussion with the patient. The feeding regimen, care of the tube and stoma will depend on the enteral feeding tube inserted.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

While the majority of patients will be able to meet their nutritional requirements orally, there is a group of individuals who will require enteral tube feeding either in the short term or on a more permanent basis.

The primary aim of enteral tube feeding is to:

- avoid further loss of bodyweight
- correct significant nutritional deficiencies
- rehydrate the patient
- stop the related deterioration of quality of life of the patient due to inadequate oral nutritional intake (Loser *et al.* 2005).

Indications

Indications for enteral tube feeding are as follows:

- patient is unable to meet nutritional needs through oral intake alone
- the gastrointestinal tract is accessible and functioning
- it is anticipated that intestinal absorptive function will meet all nutritional needs.

(NCCAC 2006)

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment: types of enteral feed tubes

Nasogastric/nasoduodenal/nasojejunal

Nasogastric feeding is the most commonly used enteral tube feed and is suitable for short-term feeding, that is, 2–4 weeks (NCCAC 2006). Fine-bore feeding tubes should be used whenever possible as these are more comfortable for the patient than wide-bore tubes. They are less likely to cause complications such as rhinitis, oesophageal irritation and gastritis (Payne-James *et al.* 2001). Polyurethane or silicone tubes are preferable to polyvinylchloride (PVC) as they withstand gastric acid and can stay in position longer than the 10–14-day lifespan of the PVC tube (Payne-James *et al.* 2001).

Gastrostomy

A gastrostomy may be more appropriate than a nasogastric tube where medium- or long-term feeding is anticipated. It avoids delays in feeding and discomfort associated with tube displacement (NCCAC 2006). It is suitable for patients who are undergoing radical or hyperfractionated radiotherapy to the neck or children with solid tumours. They will require long-term enteral feeding because the treatment is intensive and prolonged.

A gastrostomy tube may be placed endoscopically (percutaneous endoscopically placed gastrostomy; PEG) or radiologically (radiologically inserted gastrostomy; RIG). They are made from polyurethane or silicone and are therefore suitable for short- or long-term feeding. A flange, flexible dome, inflated balloon or pigtail sits within the stomach and holds the tube in position.

For long-term feeding (i.e. longer than 1 month), a gastrostomy tube may be replaced with a button which is made from silicone. The entry site for feeding is flush with the skin, making it neat and less obvious than a gastrostomy tube. This is more cosmetically acceptable, especially for teenagers or patients who are physically active, but does require a certain amount of manual dexterity from the patient (Thomas and Bishop 2007). The button is held in place by a balloon or dome inside the stomach (Griffiths 1996).

Percutaneous endoscopically placed gastrostomy tubes may be placed while the patient is sedated, thereby avoiding the risks associated with

general anaesthesia. However, patients who have compromised airways may require general anaesthesia and appropriate consideration for maintenance of the airway (see Chapter 10).

Certain groups of patients are not suitable for endoscopy; in these cases a RIG can be used. They are indicated for oesophageal patients with bulky tumours where it would be difficult to pass an endoscope and also for head and neck patients whose airway would be obstructed by an endoscope. There is also documented risk of the endoscope seeding the tumour to the gastrostomy site when it pulls the tube past a bulky tumour although this is a rare complication (Pickhardt *et al.* 2002).

Jejunostomy

A jejunostomy is preferable to a gastrostomy if a patient has undergone upper GI surgery or has severe delayed gastric emptying; in some cases it can be used to feed a patient with pyloric obstruction (Thomas and Bishop 2007). Fine-bore feeding jejunostomy tubes may be inserted with the use of a jejunostomy kit, which consists of a needle-fine catheter. The use of needles and an introducer wire allows a fine-bore polyurethane catheter to be inserted into a loop of jejunum. Alternatively, some gastrostomy tubes allow the passage of a fine-bore tube through the pylorus and into the jejunum. A double-lumen tube allows aspiration of stomach contents whilst feed is administered into the small intestine.

Enteral feeding equipment

The administration of enteral feeds may be as a bolus, intermittent or continuous infusion, via gravity drip or pump assisted (Table 8.7). There are many enteral feeding pumps available which vary in their flow rates from 1 to 300 mL per hour. The following systems may be used for feeding via a pump or gravity drip.

Table 8.7 Methods of administering enteral feeds

Feeding regimen	Advantages	Disadvantages
Continuous feeding via a pump	■ Easily controlled rate ■ Reduction of GI complications	■ Patient connected to the feed for majority of the day ■ May limit patient's mobility

Intermittent feeding via gravity or a pump	■ Periods of time free of feeding ■ Flexible feeding routine ■ May be easier than managing a pump for some patients	■ May have an increased risk of GI symptoms, for example early satiety ■ Difficult if outside carers are involved with the feed
Bolus feeding	■ May reduce time connected to feed ■ Very easy ■ Minimum equipment required	■ May have an increased risk of GI symptoms ■ May be time consuming

■ Feed is decanted into plastic bottles or PVC bags. The administration set may be an integral part of the bag or may be supplied separately. The feed is sterile until opened and decanting feed into reservoirs will increase the risk of contamination of the feed from handling (Payne-James *et al.* 2001). Generally this method is only used for feeds that require reconstitution with water. Malnourished and immunocompromised patients are particularly at risk from contamination and infection so this method of administration should be avoided where possible.

■ The 'ready-to-hang' system has a glass bottle, plastic bottle or pack attached directly to the administration set. The bottles and packs are available in different types of feeds and sizes for flexibility. This is a closed sterile system which has been shown to be successful in preventing exogenous bacterial contamination (Payne-James *et al.* 2001).

Enteral feeds

Commercially prepared feeds should be used for nasogastric, gastrostomy or jejunostomy feeding. Available in liquid or powder form, they have the advantage of being of known composition and are sterile when packaged.

Whole protein/polymeric feeds

These contain protein, hydrolysed fat and carbohydrate and so require digestion. They may provide 1.0–1.5 kcal/mL (see manufacturer's specifications). As the energy density of the feed increases, so does the osmolarity. Hyperosmolar feeds tend to draw water into the lumen of the gut from the bloodstream and can contribute to diarrhoea if given too rapidly. Fibre may be beneficial for maintaining gut ecology and function, rather than promoting bowel transit time (Thomas and Bishop 2007).

Feeds containing medium chain triglycerides (MCT)

In some whole-protein feeds a proportion of the fat or LCT may be replaced with MCT. The feed often has a lower osmolarity and is therefore less likely to draw fluid from the plasma into the gut lumen. MCT are transported via the portal vein rather than the lymphatic system. These feeds are suitable for patients with fat malabsorption and maybe steatorrhoea (Cummings 2000).

Chemically defined/elemental feeds

These contain free amino acids, short-chain peptides or a combination of both as the nitrogen source. They are often low in fat or may contain some fat as MCT. Glucose polymers provide the main energy source. These feeds require little or no digestion and are suitable for those patients with impaired GI function (Thomas and Bishop 2007). They are hyperosmolar and low in residue.

Special application feeds

These feeds have altered nutrients for particular clinical conditions. Low-protein and -mineral feeds may be used for patients with liver or renal failure. High-fat, low-carbohydrate feeds may be used for ventilated patients because less carbon dioxide is produced per calorie intake compared with a low-fat, high-carbohydrate feed. Very high-energy and protein feeds may be used where nutritional requirements are exceptionally high, for example burns, severe sepsis. These feeds contain approximately double the amount of energy and protein compared to standard whole-protein feeds.

Paediatric feeds

These are designed for children 1–12 years old and/or 8–45 kg in weight. The protein, vitamin and mineral profile is suitable for children. Generally they are lower in osmolarity than adult feeds. The whole-protein/polymeric feeds are based on cow's milk but are lactose free. Some of these feeds may contain dietary fibre. These feeds provide 1.0–1.5 kcal/mL for children who require additional energy and protein in a smaller volume. Protein hydrolysate feeds and elemental feeds are used in conditions such as food allergies or malabsorption. Some specialist centres use these feeds for enteral feeding during bone marrow transplants as children may have malabsorption caused by gut mucositis. The osmolarity of these feeds is higher than whole-protein feeds. They need to be introduced carefully (Thomas and Bishop 2007).

Immune-modulating feeds

There is evidence to show that the addition of glutamine, arginine or omega-3 fatty acids, if given preoperatively, may benefit postsurgical GI patients by reducing the risk of postoperative infections. These specialized liquids may be given pre- or postoperatively (Braga *et al.* 2002, Weimann *et al.* 2006).

Up-to-date information on the exact composition of dietary supplements and enteral feeds can be obtained from the manufacturers.

Enteral tube insertion

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

It is essential that the position of the nasogastric tube is confirmed prior to feeding to ensure that it has been placed safely in the gastrointestinal tract and has not been inadvertently placed in the lungs. A wire introducer is provided with many of the fine-bore tubes to aid intubation.

Indications

- Patients who require short-term enteral tube feeding (2–4 weeks) as a sole source of nutrition or for supplementary feeding.
- *Indications for insertion without using an introducer:* it is recommended that a nasogastric tube designed for feeding purposes be used wherever possible, for example fine-bore feeding tube, rather than a Ryle's tube, without an introducer, which is used for drainage of gastric contents.

Contraindications

- Patients who require long-term enteral tube feeding in whom it may be more appropriate to use a gastrostomy tube.
- Patients with coagulation disorders should have blood clotting checked by the medical team and appropriate blood products administered if required prior to insertion.

Anticipated patient outcomes

The patient has a nasogastric tube inserted comfortably and safely. The position is checked and it is confirmed that the tube is placed in the stomach.

Legal and professional issues

Those passing the nasogastric tube should have achieved competencies set by the local trust. The procedure should be compliant with the National Patient Safety Agency (NPSA) recommendations, that is, only using syringes that are compatible with enteral feeding tubes (NPSA 2007b).

Preprocedural considerations

Specific patient preparations

The planned procedure should be discussed with the patient so they are aware of the rationale for insertion of a nasogastric tube. Verbal consent

for the procedure must be obtained from the patient.

Prior to performing this procedure, the patient's medical and nursing notes should be consulted to check for potential complications. For example, anatomical alterations due to surgery, such as a flap repair, or the presence of a cancerous tumour can prevent a clear passage for the nasogastric tube, resulting in pain and discomfort for the patient and further complications. The assessment of the patient and consent obtained should be clearly documented.

Social and psychological impact

For some patients a nasogastric tube can be distressing. This is not only due to physical discomfort but also people's perceptions of their body image, particularly as this type of feeding tube is highly visible. Some people find that they limit their social activity due to embarrassment, which can lead to feelings of isolation. Others see it as a reminder of ill health which can have an impact on mood. These issues should be discussed with the patient prior to tube insertion. If necessary, the patient should be referred for specialist psychological care.

Procedure guideline 8.10 Nasogastric intubation with tubes using an introducer

Essential equipment

- Clinically clean tray
- Fine-bore nasogastric tube
- Introducer for tube
- Receiver
- Sterile water
- 50 mL enteral syringe
- Hypoallergenic tape
- Adhesive patch if available
- Glass of water
- Lubricating jelly
- Indicator strips with pH range of 0–6 or 1–11 with gradations of 0.5

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives his/her valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Arrange a signal by which the patient can communicate if they want the nurse to stop, for example by raising their hand.	The patient is often less frightened if they feel that they have some control over the procedure. E
3 Assist the patient to sit in a semi-upright position in the bed or chair. Support the patient's head with pillows. *Note*: The head should not be tilted backwards or forwards (Rollins 1997).	To allow for easy passage of the tube. This position enables easy swallowing and ensures that the epiglottis is not obstructing the oesophagus. E
4 Select the appropriate distance mark on the tube by measuring the distance on the tube from the patient's earlobe to the bridge of the nose plus the distance from the earlobe to the bottom of the xiphisternum (see Action Figure 4a, 4b).	To ensure that the appropriate length of tube is passed into the stomach. E
5 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and assemble the equipment required.	Hands must be cleansed before and after patient contact to minimize cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Follow manufacturer's instructions to prepare the tube, for example injecting sterile water down the tube and lubricating the proximal end of the tube with lubricating jelly.	Contact with water activates the coating inside the tube and on the tip. This lubricates the tube, assisting its passage through the nasopharynx and allowing easy withdrawal of the introducer. E
Procedure	
7 Check that the nostrils are patent by asking the patient to sniff with one nostril closed. Repeat with the other nostril.	To identify any obstructions liable to prevent intubation. E
8 Insert the rounded end of the tube into the clearer nostril and slide it backwards and inwards along the floor of the nose to the nasopharynx. If any obstruction is felt, withdraw the tube and try again in a slightly different direction or use the other nostril.	To facilitate the passage of the tube by following the natural anatomy of the nose. E
9 As the tube passes down into the nasopharynx, unless swallowing is contraindicated, ask the patient to start swallowing and sipping water.	To focus the patient's attention on something other than the tube. A swallowing action closes the glottis and the cricopharyngeal sphincter opens, enabling the tube to pass into the oesophagus (Groher 1997, E).
10 Advance the tube through the pharynx as the patient swallows until the predetermined mark has been reached. If the patient shows signs of distress, for	The tube may have accidentally been passed down the trachea instead of the pharynx. Distress may indicate that the tube is in the bronchus.

example gasping or cyanosis, remove the tube immediately.	However, absence of distress is not sufficient for detecting a misplaced tube (NPSA 2005, C).
11 Remove the introducer by using gentle traction. If it is difficult to remove, then remove the tube as well.	If the introducer sticks in the tube, this may indicate that the tube is in the bronchus. E
12 Secure the tape to the nostril with adherent dressing tape, for example Elastoplast, or an adhesive nasogastric stabilization/securing device. Alternatively Tegaderm/Deoderm can be applied to the cheek and then covered in Mepore to secure the nasogastric tube; this can help to prevent skin irritation. A hypoallergenic tape should be used if an allergy is present.	To hold the tube in place. To ensure patient comfort. E
Postprocedure	
13 Measure the part of the visible tube from tip of nose and record in care plan. Mark the tube at the exit site with a permanent marker pen (nares) (Metheny and Titler 2001).	To provide a record to assist in detecting movement of the tube (NPSA 2005, C).
14 Check the position of the tube to confirm that it is in the stomach by using the following methods.	Feeding via the tube must not begin until the correct position of the tube has been confirmed (NPSA 2005, C). To confirm placement of radiopaque nasogastric tube.
Either Take an X-ray of chest and upper abdomen. **Or**	X-ray of radiopaque tubes is the most accurate confirmation of position and is the method of choice in patients with altered anatomy, those who are aspirating or are unconscious with no gag reflex (NPSA 2005, C).
Aspirate 0.5–1 mL of stomach contents and test pH on indicator strips (NPSA 2005, C; Rollins 1997). When aspirating fluid for pH testing, wait at least 1 hour after a feed or medication has been administered (either orally or via the tube). Before aspirating, flush the tube with 20 mL of air to clear other substances (Metheny *et al.* 1993). A pH level of 5.5 is unlikely to be pulmonary aspirates and it is considered appropriate to proceed to feed through the tube (Metheny and Meert 2004, NPSA 2005).	Indicator strips should have gradations of 0.5 or paper with a range of 0–6 or 1–11 to distinguish between gastric acid and bronchial secretions (NPSA 2005, C). To prove an accurate test result because the feed or medication may raise the pH of the stomach.
If a pH of 6.0 or above is obtained or there is doubt over the result in the range of pH 5–6 then feeding **must not** commence. The nasogastric tube may need to be repositioned or checked with an X-ray.	There is an increased risk of the nasogastric tube being incorrectly placed (NPSA 2005, C).
15 The following methods **must not** be used to test the	These tests are not accurate or reliable as a method of

position of a nasogastric feeding tube: auscultation (introducing air into the nasogastric tube and checking for a bubbling sound via a stethoscope, also known as the 'whoosh test'), use of litmus paper or absence of respiratory distress.	checking the position of a nasogastric tube as they have been shown to give false-positive results (Metheny and Meert 2004, E; NPSA 2005, C).
16 Document the tip position in the patient's notes.	To record the position (NMC 2009, C).

Action Figure 4a Measuring for a nasogastric tube: measure from patient's ear lobe to bridge of nose.

Action Figure 4b Measuring for a nasogastric tube: measure from ear lobe to bottom of xiphisternum.

Procedure guideline 8.11 Nasogastric intubation with tubes without using an introducer, for example, a Ryle's tube

Essential equipment

- Clinically clean tray
- Nasogastric tube that has been stored in a deep freeze for at least half an hour before the procedure is to begin, to ensure a rigid tube that will allow for easy passage
- Receiver
- Topical gauze
- Lubricating jelly
- Hypoallergenic tape
- Indicator strips with pH range of 0–6 or 1–11 with gradations of 0.5
- 50 mL enteral syringe
- Spigot
- Glass of water

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Arrange a signal by which the patient can communicate if they want the nurse to stop, for example by raising their hand.	The patient is often less frightened if they feel that they have some control over the procedure. E
3 Assist the patient to sit in a semi-upright position in the bed or chair. Support the patient's head with pillows. *Note*: The head should not be tilted backwards or forwards (Rollins 1997).	To allow for easy passage of the tube. This position enables easy swallowing and ensures that the epiglottis is not obstructing the oesophagus. E
4 Mark the distance to which the tube is to be passed by measuring the distance on the tube from the patient's earlobe to the bridge of the nose plus the distance from the earlobe to the bottom of the xiphisternum.	To indicate the length of tube required for entry into the stomach. E
5 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and assemble the equipment required.	Hands must be cleansed before and after patient contact to minimize cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Procedure

6 Check the nostrils are patent by asking the patient to sniff with one nostril closed. Repeat with the other nostril.	To identify any obstructions liable to prevent intubation. E
7 Lubricate about 15–20 cm of the tube with a thin coat of lubricating jelly that has been placed on a topical swab.	To reduce the friction between the mucous membranes and the tube. E

8 Insert the proximal end of the tube into the clearer nostril and slide it backwards and inwards along the floor of the nose to the nasopharynx. If an obstruction is felt, withdraw the tube and try again in a slightly different direction or use the other nostril.	To facilitate the passage of the tube by following the natural anatomy of the nose. E
9 As the tube passes down into the nasopharynx, ask the patient to start swallowing and sipping water, enabling the tube to pass into the oesophagus.	To focus the patient's attention on something other than the tube. The swallowing action closes the glottis and the cricopharyngeal sphincter opens, enabling the tube to pass into the oesophagus (Groher 1997, R5).
10 Advance the tube through the pharynx as the patient swallows until the tape-marked tube reaches the point of entry into the external nares. If the patient shows signs of distress, for example gasping or cyanosis, remove the tube immediately.	Distress may indicate that the tube is in the bronchus. However, absence of distress is insufficient for detecting a misplaced tube (NPSA 2005, C).
11 Secure the tube to the nostril with adherent dressing tape, for example Elastoplast, or an adhesive nasogastric stabilization/securing device. If this is contraindicated, a hypoallergenic tape should be used. An adhesive patch (if available) will secure the tube to the cheek.	To hold the tube in place. To ensure patient comfort. E
Postprocedure	
12 Check the position of the tube to confirm that it is in the stomach by using the following methods.	To confirm placement of radiopaque nasogastric tube. X-ray of radiopaque tubes is the most accurate confirmation of position and is the method of choice in patients with altered anatomy, those who are aspirating or are unconscious with no gag reflex (NPSA 2005, C).
Either Take an X-ray of chest and upper abdomen.	
Or	
Aspirate 0.5–1 mL of stomach contents and test pH on indicator strips (NPSA 2005, C; Rollins 1997). When aspirating fluid for pH testing, wait at least 1 hour after a feed or medication has been administered (either orally or via the tube). Before aspirating, flush the tube with 20 mL of air to clear other substances (Metheny *et al.* 1993). A pH level of 5.5 is unlikely to be pulmonary aspirates and it is considered appropriate to proceed to feed through the tube (Metheny and Meert 2004, NPSA 2005).	Indicator strips should have gradations of 0.5 or paper with a range of 0–6 or 1–11 to distinguish between gastric acid and bronchial secretions (NPSA 2005, C). To prove an accurate test result because the feed or medication may raise the pH of the stomach. Wait at least 1 hour before aspirating to enable the feed or medication to be absorbed, otherwise an inaccurate test will be obtained (NPSA 2005, C).
If a pH of 6.0 or above is obtained or there is doubt over the result in the range of pH 5–6 then feeding **must not** commence. The nasogastric tube	There is an increased risk of the nasogastric tube being incorrectly placed (NPSA 2005, C).

may need to be repositioned or checked with an X-ray.

13 The following methods **must not** be used to test the position of a nasogastric feeding tube: auscultation (introducing air into the nasogastric tube and checking for a bubbling sound via a stethoscope, also known as the 'whoosh test'), use of litmus paper or absence of respiratory distress.	These tests are not accurate or reliable as a method of checking the position of a nasogastric tube as they have been shown to give false-positive results (Metheny and Meert 2004, E; NPSA 2005, C).
14 Document the tip position in the patient's notes.	To record the position (NMC 2009, C).

Problem-solving table 8.3 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guidelines 8.10 and 8.11)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Unable to obtain aspirate from nasogastric tube	Tip of tube is not sitting in gastric contents, is against the stomach wall or is not advanced sufficiently into the stomach	Measure the tube correctly as described in Action 4	Follow the NPSA flowchart (NPSA 2005) 1 Turn patient onto their side 2 Inject 10–20 mL air into the tube 3 Wait 15–30 minutes 4 Try aspirating again
pH of greater than 5.5 is obtained	The nasogastric tube may be placed in the lungs or patient is on acid-inhibiting medication and this may contribute to a higher gastric pH	Check pH of gastric aspirate about the time of administration of acid-inhibiting medication when gastric pH is likely to be at its lowest	Check patient's medication and check the position of the tube at the appropriate time
pH of greater than 5.5 is obtained despite following recommendation about acid-inhibiting medication	The nasogastric tube may be placed in the lungs	Check medication	If initial confirmation cannot be obtained from pH aspirate then the tube must be X-rayed as it may be placed in the lungs
Initial correct placement is confirmed but subsequent measurements are unable to obtain a pH of less than 5.5	The following may have happened 1 The nasogastric tube has become displaced 2 Acid-inhibiting medication is causing pH to be above 5.5 3 Feed/food is influencing pH of stomach contents	Follow NPSA guidance on checking the position of the nasogastric tube. This involves additional actions including advancing the tube 10–20 cm and rechecking. Leave for 1 hour and then aspirate and check again	Undertake risk assessment and document action. The nasogastric tube may need to be repositioned and rechecked with an X-ray
Unable to place the nasogastric tube	The patient has altered anatomy The patient is distressed/not compliant with the procedure		The nasogastric tube should be placed under X-ray guidance or via endoscopy

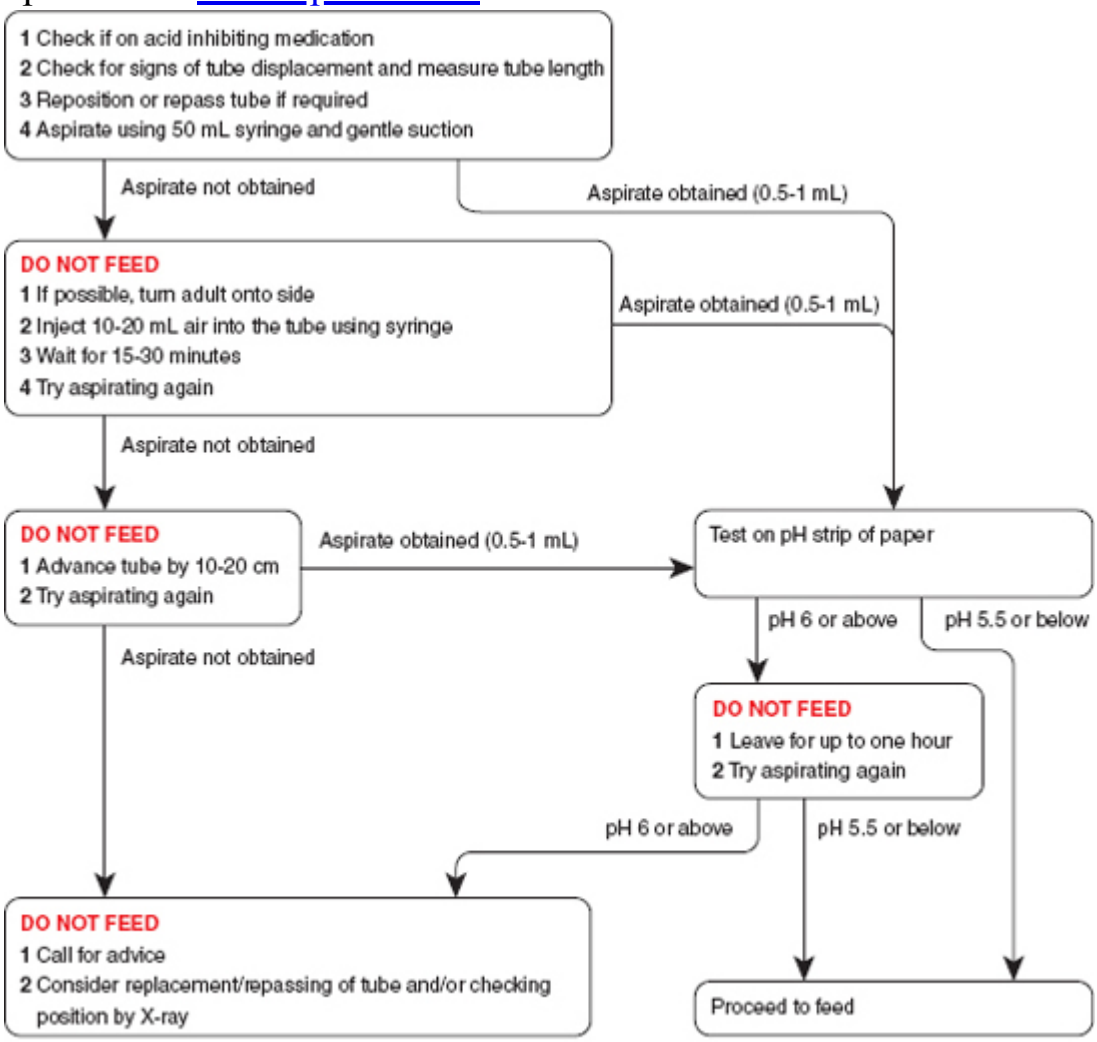
Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

The position of the nasogastric tube must be checked at initial placement and again prior to the administration of all medication or feed. Failure to confirm the position of the tube in the stomach can lead to the

administration of fluid, medication or feed directly into the lungs, resulting in aspiration pneumonia (Figure 8.4).

Figure 8.4 How to confirm the correct position of nasogastric feeding tubes in adults (NPSA 2005). Used with permission of the NPSA. For updates see www.npsa.nhs.uk.



CAUTION: If there is ANY query about position and/or the clarity of the colour change on the pH strip, particularly between ranges 5 and 6, then feeding should not commence.

The position of the nasogastric tube can be checked using two methods.

- *Chest X-ray*. A chest X-ray must be used to confirm the position of the tube in high-risk groups such as patients with oesophageal or head and neck tumours, those who have impaired swallowing or who are

unconscious, because they are at higher risk of misplacement of the nasogastric tube.

- *Testing of gastric aspirate with pH indicator paper*. The use of pH to check the position of the tube is based on an understanding of the pH of body fluids, particularly gastric contents, and the pH scale (see Box 8.3). All patients who do not require an X-ray should have the position of the tube checked with syringed aspirate of gastric content. This should have a pH less than 5.5 (NPSA 2005).

In accordance with NPSA guidance, the following methods should **not** be used to confirm the position of a feeding tube.

- Auscultation of air insufflated through the feeding tube ('whoosh test').
- Testing the pH of the aspirate using blue litmus paper.
- Interpreting the absence of respiratory distress as an indicator of the correct positioning.
- Monitoring bubbling at the end of the tube.
- Observing the appearance of feeding tube aspirate.

Box 8.3 The clinical importance of the pH scale

The pH scale

The pH scale is a convenient way of recording large ranges of hydrogen ion concentrations without using the cumbersome numbers that are needed to describe the actual concentrations. That is why each step **down** the scale is a 10-fold **increase** (or a 10-fold **decrease** if going **upscale**) in the acidity. This means that stomach contents of pH 5 have 10 times as much acidity as has lung fluid of pH 6. Not knowing this could place your patient in harm's way.

The midpoint of the scale is 7. This number is related directly to the actual concentration of hydrogen ions in water, which is one ten-millionth units per litre – an extremely small number. One ten-millionth is the same as one divided by 10^7. So a liquid of pH 6 has one-millionth units per litre, that is, 1 divided by 10^6, and has 10 times the concentration of hydrogen ions as does pure water. This example shows why as the pH decreases the hydrogen ion concentration, and thus the acidity, increase. For example lemon juice and vinegar are acidic with a pH of 2.2 and 3 respectively whereas bleach is alkaline with a low concentration of hydrogen ions and a pH of 11.

In the body, the pH of cells, body fluids and organs is usually tightly controlled in a process called *acid–base homoeostasis.* Without this careful regulation of pH or *buffering,* the normal body chemistry cannot take place successfully and illness or in extreme cases death can occur.

The pH of blood is slightly basic with a value of 7.4, whereas gastric acid can range from 5.5 to the highly acidic 0.7 and pancreatic secretions are measured at 8.1. When the pH in the body decreases, that is becomes more acidic, *acidosis* can occur, leading to symptoms such as shortness of breath, muscular seizure and coma.

pH also influences the structure and function of many enzymes in living systems. These enzymes usually only work satisfactorily within narrow pH ranges. Thus pepsin, a stomach enzyme, works best at pH 2. In the duodenum, trypsin functions best at around pH 7.5–8.0. Generally, most human cell enzymes work best in a slightly alkaline medium of about 7.4.

Keeping the cellular pH at the correct level is very important and in the case of *unregulated diabetes,* high blood sugar levels occur, leading to acidic conditions that rapidly destroy enzymes and cells. Consequently regular blood sugar monitoring is crucial for diabetics.

In living systems, pH is therefore more than just a measure of hydrogen ion concentration as it is critical to life and the many biochemical reactions that have to take place to maintain a person in optimum health.

In addition to the initial confirmation, the tube should be checked on a daily basis (see Procedure guideline 8.10).

When the nasogastric tube is confirmed to be in the stomach, a mark should be made on the tube at the exit site from the nostril with a permanent marker pen. The length of tube visible from the exit of the nostril to the end of the tube should be measured in centimetres and recorded. This is to help detect if the nasogastric tube has become displaced. See Figure 8.5 for a radiograph of a correctly inserted nasogastric tube, Figure 8.6 for information on the test precision and test risk when checking the position of a nasogastric tube, and Figure 8.7 for checks when using pH indicator sticks.

Figure 8.5 X-radiograph of a correctly inserted nasogastric tube.

Reproduced with permission from PPSA (2006) and ECRI. ECRI Institute is an independent not-for-profit healthcare research organisation and is a collaborating centre of the World Health Organisation. www.ecri.org.uk

© ECRI Institute 2010.

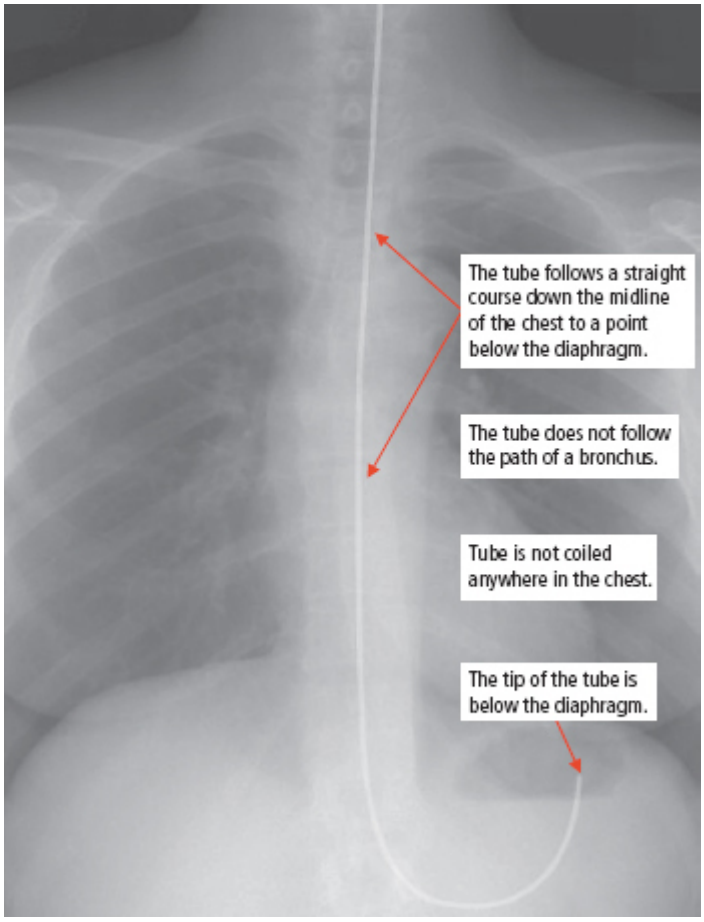


Figure 8.6 Test precision and test risk: the connection.

Reproduced from the trainning materials 'Positioning naso-gastric feeding tubes' jointly developed for publication by the ECRI Institute and the Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust.

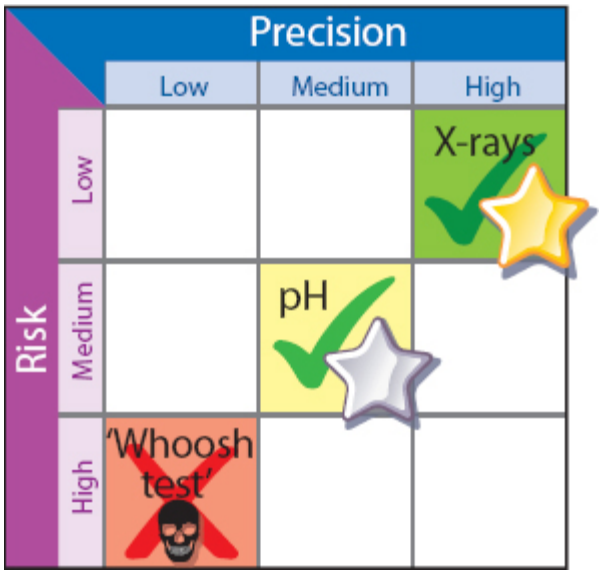
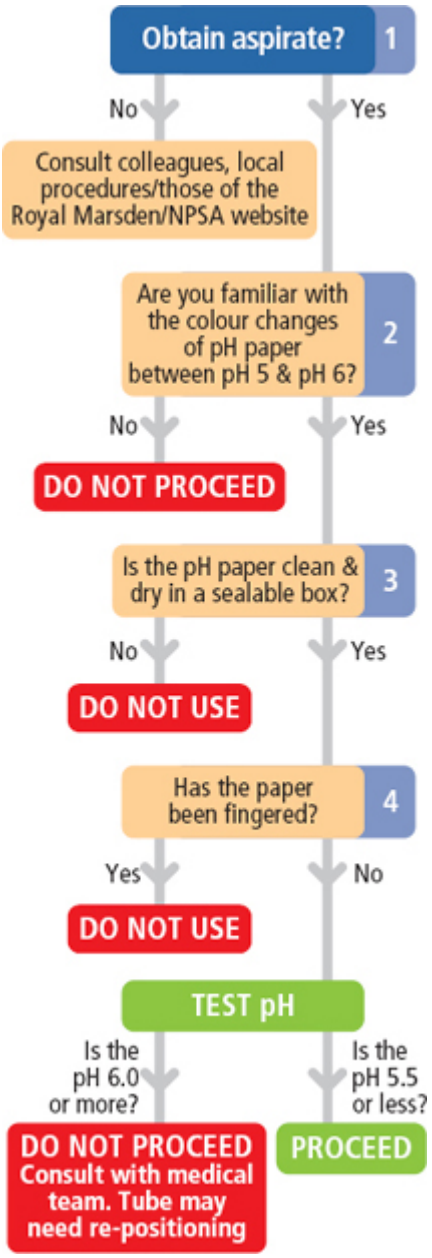


Figure 8.7 Four key checks when using the pH tests.

Reproduced from the training materials 'Positioning naso-gastric feeding tubes' jointly developed for publication by the ECRI Institute and the Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust.



Ongoing care

Once the nasogastric tube has been confirmed to be in the stomach, feeding may commence. The tube should be kept patent by regular flushing before and after feed and medication. Preferably only liquid medication should be used as tablets may block the lumen of the tube

(BAPEN 2003b). Tablets should only be crushed if no alternative liquid preparation is available. Always check with a pharmacist as some medication should not be crushed – see Procedure guideline 8.13.

The position of the tube must be checked:

- before administering each feed
- before giving medication
- following episodes of vomiting, retching or coughing as it is likely the tube may be displaced
- following evidence of tube displacement (e.g. the tube appears visibly longer).

If a pH of below 5.5 is not obtained then it is highly likely that the tube has become displaced. The medical team should be contacted as the tube may need to be replaced. For further details on checking nasogastric tubes, please refer to the full NPSA guidance or local policy.

Education of patient and relevant others

If appropriate, the patient may be taught how to check the position of the nasogastric tube. They should be made aware that if they feel the tube has moved, it must not be used for feeding until its position has been confirmed by one of the methods described.

Complications

Nasal erosion

Prolonged nasogastric feeding or use of a wide-bore tube can lead to nasal erosion (Ripamonti and Mercadante 2004). In this case it is advised that the tube is removed and replaced in the opposite nostril. If feeding is to be long term then a gastrostomy/jejunostomy should be considered.

Displacement of tube

A tube can accidentally be pulled out, particularly if a patient is restless or distressed. It can also be coughed or vomited out of place. In this

situation it is advised that the position of the tube should be checked. If it is not possible to confirm that the nasogastric tube remains within the stomach then it should be removed and a new tube placed (NPSA 2005).

Administration of enteral tube feed

Preprocedural considerations

Prior to using enteral feeding tubes for medication or feed administration, it is vital to know where in the gastrointestinal tract the tube tip lies. This may be difficult in patients who have tubes placed in other organs or where there is little visible difference externally between gastrostomy, gastrojejunostomy or jejunostomy tubes. Where available, the tube size, type, insertion date and method should be clearly documented. If this information is unavailable, the tube should be aspirated and the pH used to differentiate between gastric or small bowel placement. If there are sutures securing the external fixator to the patient's abdomen, these should not be removed until it has been confirmed that they are not required to keep the tube in position.

Procedure guideline 8.12 Enteral feeding tubes: administration of feed

Essential equipment

- 50 mL enteral or catheter-tipped syringe
- Commercial ready-to-hang feed

Optional equipment

- Tap water or sterile water (for jejunostomy tubes or for patients who are immunosuppressed) (NICE 2003). Water should be fresh and kept covered

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).

Procedure

2 Check the date on the feed container.	To ensure that the feed has not passed its expiry date. E
3 Shake the feed container gently.	To ensure the feed is evenly dispersed therefore reducing the risk of blocking the giving set. E

4 Take a new giving set from a sealed package and ensure that the roller clamp/tap is closed.	To avoid accidental spillage of feed from end of administration set. E
5 Screw the giving set tightly onto the feed container.	In order to pierce the seal on the container and maintain a sealed system (Matlow *et al.* 2006, C).
6 Hang the container upside down from the hook on a drip stand.	To avoid backflow of intestinal contents into the feed container (Matlow *et al.* 2006, C).
7 Open the roller clamp/tap and prime the feed to the end of the giving set. (Follow instructions for individual pump.)	This ensures that air is not fed into the stomach when feeding commences. E
8 Feed the giving set into the pump as directed by the manufacturer's instructions.	To connect the giving set to the pump device. E
9 Set the rate of the feed as directed by the manufacturer's instructions and according to the patient's feeding regimen.	To ensure the correct rate of feed is administered. E
10 Set the dose of the feed as directed by the manufacturer's instructions and according to the patient's feeding regimen.	To ensure that the correct dose of feed is administered. E
11 Flush the feeding tube with a minimum of 30 mL of water or sterile water in an enteral syringe by attaching to the end of the feeding tube. Depress the plunger on the syringe slowly.	To ensure the patency of the feeding tube (BAPEN 2003b, C).
12 Remove the end cover from the giving set and connect to the feeding tube.	To ensure that the feed is delivered via the enteral feeding tube. E
13 Set the rate of the feeding pump and commence administration of feed.	To ensure that the feed is delivered via the enteral feeding tube. E
Postprocedure	
14 Document the time that the feed commenced and the rate of administration.	To ensure accurate documentation of nutritional and fluid intake (NMC 2009, C).
15 Dispose of any equipment that is no longer required.	To reduce the chance of equipment being re-used and to reduce cross-contamination with new equipment. E

Problem-solving table 8.4 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 8.12)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Pump alarms with 'occlusion' or 'empty'	The feed may have finished There may be a blockage in the giving set or feeding tube	Ensure the feed container was shaken well before feeding Ensure the giving set was not bent when feeding was commenced Ensure that the roller clamp/tap is fully open Flush the feeding tube as directed before commencing	Straighten any kinks in the giving set Ensure that the giving set is fixed correctly around the rotor Open the roller clamp/tap fully Check that the feeding tube is not blocked. Disconnect from the feeding tube and run the feed into a container; if feed runs and there is no alarm, this indicates that the pump is working properly and the feeding tube is probably blocked
Pump alarms with 'low battery'	This indicates that the pump battery needs to be recharged and that there is approximately 30 minutes of power remaining	Keep pump plugged in and charged	Connect to the mains power and continue to feed
Unable to prime giving set	The roller clamp/tap may not be fully open There may be a fault with the giving set If a drip chamber is present then feed may not have run into this	Ensure that the roller clamp/tap is fully open when beginning to prime the giving set	Open the roller clamp/tap fully Squeeze some feed into the drip chamber if applicable Try with a new giving set
Continuous audio alarm and all visual displays go blank	The pump may require servicing	Ensure it is serviced regularly	Send to equipment library or manufacturers for servicing

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

As soon as the feed commences, check that it appears to be running without problems and is at the correct rate. Monitor this regularly throughout the feed administration.

Monitor the patient for signs of nausea/abdominal discomfort within the first hour and every 2–4 hours during feed administration. This may not be possible if the feed is given overnight and the patient is asleep.

Ongoing care

If appropriate, the patient should be taught how to follow the procedure of setting up the enteral feeding equipment. They should be confident with the maintenance of the equipment and be aware of how to trouble shoot.

Complications

Aspiration

This may occur due to regurgitation of feed, poor gastric emptying or incorrect placement of a nasogastric tube. The risk of this can be reduced by:

- the use of prokinetics which encourage gastric emptying, for example metoclopramide
- checking the position of the tube before feeding
- ensuring the patient has their head at a 45° angle during feeding. If the patient is in bed then this can be achieved through raising the head of the bed and ensuring the patient has sufficient pillows for support.

Nausea and vomiting

This could be caused by a number of factors. It could be related to disease or a side-effect of treatment or a medication such as antibiotics or analgesia. A combination of poor gastric emptying and rapid infusion rates could also stimulate nausea and vomiting. Nausea and vomiting can be better controlled through the use of antiemetics, a reduction in the infusion rate or a change from bolus to intermittent feeding.

Diarrhoea

This could be a result of:

- medications such as antibiotics, chemotherapy or laxatives
- radiotherapy to the abdomen or pelvis
- disease or treatment, for example pancreatic insufficiency, bile acid malabsorption
- gut infection, for example *Clostridium difficile*.

Antidiarrhoeal agents could be used if a person is experiencing diarrhoea as a side-effect of medication. If possible, an alternative medication should be found that does not cause diarrhoea. In the case of antibiotics, these should be stopped as soon as possible. When the diarrhoea is disease related, the underlying problem should be treated, that is, if a person has pancreatic insufficiency they should be provided with a pancreatic enzyme supplement.

Avoiding microbiological contamination of the feed or equipment will help to reduce the risk of diarrhoea. This will involve keeping the equipment clean and, when feeding, maintaining a sealed system.

A stool sample should be sent to check for any gut infection. If the sample is found to be positive then the infection should be treated appropriately.

Constipation

Constipation could be caused by inadequate fluid intake, immobility, bowel obstruction or the use of opiates or other medications causing gut stasis.

Methods to improve symptoms of constipation include:

- checking fluid balance and increasing fluid intake if necessary
- providing laxatives/bulking agents
- if possible, encouraging mobility
- if in bowel obstruction, discontinuing enteral feeding.

Abdominal distension

This could be caused by poor gastric emptying, rapid infusion of feed, constipation or diarrhoea. Possible ways to improve distension include:

- gastric motility agents
- reducing the rate of infusion

- encouraging mobility if possible
- treating constipation or diarrhoea.

Blocked tube

Blockage can be a result of inadequate flushing or failure to flush the feeding tube or administration of inappropriate medications via the tube.

Enteral feeding tubes: administration of medication

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

- Patients requiring medications who are not able to take oral preparations due to dysphasia.

Contraindications

- Not all medications can be administered through an enteral tube due to risk of blockage.
- If the medication has an enteric coating it should not be crushed.
- Some medications such as cytotoxic chemotherapy may be harmful to the administrator and advice from a pharmacist is required.
- If a number of different medications are required always administer separately. Do not mix medications unless advised to do so by a pharmacist.

Procedure guideline 8.13 Enteral feeding tubes: administration of medication

Essential equipment **Optional equipment**

- 50 mL enteral syringe
- Mortar and pestle or tablet crusher if tablets are being administered (BAPEN 2003a)
- Tap water or sterile water (for jejunostomy tubes or for patients who are immunosuppressed) (NICE 2003). Water should be fresh and kept covered

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Check whether patient can take medication orally, whether medication is necessary or if it can be temporarily suspended.	If patient can take medication orally this reduces the risk of tube blockage (BAPEN 2003b, C).
2 Consider whether an alternative route can be used, for example buccal, transdermal, topical, rectal or subcutaneous.	If patient can take medication via an alternative route this reduces the risk of tube blockage (BAPEN 2003b, C).
3 Check drug is absorbed from the site of delivery.	Some drugs may not be absorbed directly from the jejunum (BAPEN 2003b, C).
4 Clean hands with bactericidal soap and water or alcoholic handgel. Put on non-sterile gloves.	To minimize cross-infection and protect the practitioner from gastric/intestinal contents (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Procedure

5 Stop the enteral feed and flush the tube with at least 30 mL of water (sterile water for jejunostomy administration), using an enteral syringe.	To clear the tube of enteral feed as this may cause a blockage or interact with medications. Sterile water should be used for jejunostomy tubes as the water is bypassing the protective acidic environment of the stomach. E

Where there is an absolute contraindication for medicine to be taken with feed:

6 Stop the feed 1–2 hours before and 2 hours after administration (this will depend on the drug), for example for phenytoin administration, stop feed 2 hours before and 2 hours after.	To avoid interaction with enteral feed. E
7 Consult with the dietitian to prescribe a suitable feeding regimen.	To ensure that the patient's nutritional requirements are met in the time available around medicine administration (BAPEN 2003b, C).
8 Prior to preparation, check with the pharmacist which medicines should never be crushed.	Some medications are not designed to be crushed. These include: **(a)** modified-release tablets: absorption will be altered by

	crushing, possibly causing toxic side-effects **(b)** enteric-coated tablets: the coating is designed to protect the drug against gastric acid **(c)** cytotoxic medicines: this will risk exposing the practitioner to the drug (BNF 2011, C).
9 Prepare each medication to be given separately. Volumes greater than 10 mL may be drawn up in a 50 mL syringe and administered via the tube. For small volumes (less than 10 mL) follow step 12. **Either** **Soluble tablets**: dissolve in 10–15 mL water. **Or** **Liquids**: shake well. For thick liquids mix with an equal volume of water. **Or** **Tablets**: crush using a mortar and pestle or tablet crusher and mix with 10–15 mL water.	To avoid interaction between different medications and to ensure solubility (BAPEN 2003b, C).
10 Never add medication directly to the enteral feed.	To avoid interaction between medicines and feed (BAPEN 2003b, C).
11 Administer the medication through the tube via a 50 mL syringe. Rinse the tablet crusher or mortar with 10 mL water, draw up in a 50 mL syringe, and flush this through the tube.	To ensure the whole dose is administered (BAPEN 2003b, C).
12 If volumes of less than 10 mL are required, the dose should be measured in a 10 mL oral syringe. The plunger of a 50 mL syringe should be removed and the 50 mLsyringe connected with the enteral tube. The dose should then be administered into the barrel of the 50 mL syringe and the 10 mL syringe rinsed with water, which should also be administered via the barrel of the 50 mL syringe.	To ensure the whole dose is administered (BAPEN 2003b, C).
13 If more than one medicine is to be administered, flush between drugs with at least 10 mL of water to ensure that the drug is cleared from the tube.	To avoid interactions between medicines (BAPEN 2003b, C).
14 Flush the tube with at least 30 mL water following the administration of the last drug.	To avoid medicines blocking the enteral tube (BAPEN 2003b, C).
15 If the patient is on fluid restriction or for a paediatric patient, consult	To ensure that the

the dietitian and pharmacist about the quantity of water to be given before and after medication.	patient does not exceed their fluid restriction or requirements (BAPEN 2003b, C).
Postprocedure	
16 Record the administration on the prescription chart.	To maintain accurate records (NMC 2008c, C; NMC 2009, C)

Problem-solving table 8.5 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 8.13)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Tube became blocked with medication	Medication had not been administered in the correct composition and/or the tube was not flushed adequately	Ensure that the guidance from the pharmacist is followed correctly Ensure that the tube is flushed before and after administration	See local guidance and the Professional edition of the *Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures*
Unable to administer required medication	It is in a form that cannot be crushed or dissolved	Ensure that the pharmacist and medical team are aware that all medications need to be administered via an enteral tube	Contact the medical team or pharmacist to seek advice on an alternative medication

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

The tube patency should be checked to ensure that the medication has not caused a blockage. This could be done by flushing the tube.

The patient should be monitored to ensure that there are no side-effects of the medication administered.

Ongoing care

In order to avoid complications and ensure optimal nutritional status, it is important to monitor the following in patients on enteral tube feeds:

- oral intake
- bodyweight
- urea and electrolytes
- blood glucose
- full blood count
- fluid balance
- tolerance to feed, for example nausea, fullness and bowel activity
- quantity of feed taken
- care of tube
- care of stoma site (where appropriate).

Education of the patient and relevant others

If the patient is going home with the enteral tube in place, it should be ensured that the patient is educated and confident with administering their medication. If this is not possible then the patient should be referred to a healthcare professional, such as a district nurse, who can undertake this aspect of care.

Home enteral feeding

Some patients who are established on tube feeding in hospital also require enteral tube feeding at home. A multidisciplinary approach is needed for a successful discharge, usually involving a dietitian, doctor, ward nurse, community nurse and general practitioner. The patient's circumstances and the ability of the patient or carers to manage the feed must be considered when discharge is being planned. Adequate time should be allowed in the hospital setting for patients to become fully accustomed to the techniques of feed administration and care of the feeding tube, prior to discharge home. Patients should also be given written information to reinforce the education they receive prior to discharge (BAPEN 2003a).

Support in the form of the general practitioner, community nurse and community dietetic services should be established before discharge. A

multidisciplinary discharge meeting may be of benefit to both the patient and the professionals involved. Many of the commercial feed companies organize for the patient's feed and equipment to be delivered to their home, after consultation with the local community services (BAPEN 2003a). The hospital or community dietitian can arrange this. Early notification of discharge is essential as it usually takes a minimum of 7 days to set this up.

Termination of enteral tube feeding

It is important to ensure that an individual is able to meet their nutritional requirements orally prior to termination of the feed. Ideally, the feeds should be reduced gradually, according to the dietary intake (BAPEN 1999). It may be useful to maintain an overnight feed while the patient is establishing oral intake.

Transfusion of blood and blood components

Definition

Blood transfusion is the administration of a blood component- or plasma-derived product to the patient (Gray *et al.* 2007). Blood is a raw material from which different therapeutic products are made (McClelland 2007).

Anatomy and physiology

ABO blood groups and rhesus types

In 1901, Landsteiner discovered that human blood groups existed and developed the ABO system which marked the start of safe blood transfusion (Bishop 2008). There are four principal blood groups: A, B, AB and O. Each group relates to the presence or absence of surface

antigens on the red blood cells and antibodies in the serum which dictate blood compatibility (Table 8.8).

Table 8.8 Blood group compatibility

Group	Antigens	IgM antibodies	Compatible donor for	Compatible recipient of
A	A	Anti B	A AB	A O
B	B	Anti A	B AB	B O
AB	A and B	None	AB	A B AB O
O	None	Anti A Anti B	A B AB O	O

People with the blood group **AB** have red cells with A and B surface antigens, but they do not have any anti-A or anti-B immunoglobulin M (IgM) antibodies in their serum. Therefore, they are able to receive blood from any group, but can only donate to other people from group AB.

People with group **O** red cells do not have either A or B surface antigens but they do have anti-A and anti-B IgM antibodies in their serum. They are only able to receive blood from group **O**, but can donate to A, B, O and AB groups.

People with group **A** red cells have type A surface antigens, and they have anti-B IgM antibodies in their serum. They are only able to receive blood from groups **A** or **O** and can only donate blood to people from A and AB groups.

People with group **B** red cells have type B surface antigens and they have anti-A IgM antibodies in their serum. They are therefore only able to receive blood from groups **B** or **O** and can only donate blood to people from B and AB groups.

In addition to the ABO system, the rhesus (Rh) system was discovered in 1940; again, these are surface antigens and they are another essential system used in transfusion therapy (Mollison *et al.* 1997). The Rh D antigen is the most immunogenic of the Rh antigens (Porth 2005). However, many other red cell antigens exist and exposure to them may stimulate the development of corresponding antibodies (McClelland 2007).

Related theory

Blood group incompatibility

The transfusion of ABO incompatible red cells can lead to intravascular haemolysis where the recipient's IgM antibodies bind to the corresponding surface antigens of the transfused cells (McClelland 2007). Complement activation results in lysis of the transfused cells and the haemoglobin that is released precipitates renal failure, with the fragments of the lysed cells activating the clotting pathways, which in turn leads to the development of disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) (Mollison *et al.* 1997). Transfusion of rhesus-positive cells to a rhesus-negative individual will result in immunization and the appearance of anti-D antibodies (Hoffbrand *et al.* 2006). However, on any subsequent exposure extravascular haemolysis occurs when rhesus antibody-coated red cells are destroyed by macrophages in the liver and spleen (McClelland 2007).

A patient's rhesus status is of particular importance in pregnancy as haemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN) can occur when the mother is rhesus negative and the developing foetus is rhesus positive as exposure to foetal blood can stimulate anti-D activation in the mother, which in turn can cross the placenta, causing haemolysis (McClelland 2007).

Blood groups in haemopoietic stem cell transplantation

The human leucocyte antigen (HLA) is used to determine compatibility for organ transplantation, including bone marrow and peripheral blood

stem cells. However, because ABO blood groups and HLA tissue types are determined genetically, it is not uncommon to find a suitable HLA donor who is ABO and/or rhesus incompatible with the recipient. In such circumstances, major transfusion reactions can be avoided by red cell and/or plasma depletion of the donor cells in the laboratory before reinfusion (Mollison *et al.* 1997). Occasionally, if the recipient has a very high titre of anti-A or anti-B lytic antibody and the donor marrow or peripheral blood stem cells are blood group A, B or AB, then plasmapheresis of the recipient may be performed to lower the titre of this antibody to safe limits. This is necessary because it is not possible to remove all the red cells from the donor product and those remaining may cause a major transfusion reaction in this situation (Mollison *et al.* 1997).

Evidence-based approaches

The transfusion of blood components is a complex multi-step process involving personnel from diverse backgrounds with differing levels of knowledge and understanding. Errors made in the process of transfusion present a significant risk to patients.

Although there is little evidence to support the efficacy for set procedures to manage this risk, current professional opinion has been provided by the British Committee for Standards in Haematology (BCSH) in collaboration with the Royal College of Nursing (RCN) and the Royal College of Surgeons of England (RCS) (BCSH 1999, Gray and Illingworth 2005). As a result of this guidance, every hospital should have a policy in place for the administration of blood and blood components including identification of the patient, blood sampling, special blood requirement requests, processing of blood samples, the storage, collection and transportation of blood products, administration of blood products and the care and monitoring of the transfused patient. Furthermore, hospitals are also required to manage and report any adverse events or near misses, with a statutory requirement to hold a record of every step of the transfusion process including the final fate of each blood product for 30 years (James 2005). Only staff authorized to do so should be involved at any stage in the transfusion process.

Nurses in the UK are normally the healthcare professionals ultimately responsible for the bedside check and arguably have the final opportunity to prevent errors occurring when patients receive blood transfusions (Wilkinson and Wilkinson 2001). Errors in the requesting, collection and administration of blood components (red cells, platelets and plasma concentrates) lead to significant risks for patients. Since its launch in 1996, the Serious Hazards of Transfusion (SHOT) scheme has continually shown that 'wrong blood into patient' episodes are a frequently reported transfusion hazard. These wrong blood incidents are mainly due to human error arising from misidentification of the patient during blood sampling, blood component collection and delivery or administration which can lead to life-threatening haemolytic transfusion reactions and other significant morbidity (BCSH 2009).

The National Comparative Audits (NCA) of bedside transfusion practice in England and North Wales (2003, 2005 and 2009) show that patients continue to be placed at risk of avoidable complications of transfusion through misidentification and inadequate monitoring of the patient.

Rationale

Blood transfusion is an essential part of modern medicine and healthcare. However, it should be prescribed only to treat conditions associated with significant morbidity or mortality that cannot be prevented or managed by other means (WHO 2005).

Recent publications and legislation have created greater awareness of the need to continue to improve transfusion practice in many ways. Blood and blood products are no longer regarded as safe unlimited resources. There are risks inherent in transfusion practice and therefore unnecessary exposure to blood products should be avoided. This is of particular importance for patients who may only have one transfusion in their lifetime, such as surgical patients. Therefore, these patients should only receive a transfusion when it is absolutely necessary. Furthermore, the appropriate use of products is essential for the conservation of blood supplies. Regularly updated guidance on the safe appropriate use of blood and blood products is now available online at

www.transfusionguidelines.org.uk and these should be consulted in collaboration with local hospital and blood transfusion service guidelines.

Indications

Anaemia is defined as a haemoglobin concentration in blood that is below the expected value, when age, gender, pregnancy and certain environmental factors, such as altitude, are taken into consideration. In general, anaemia is a consequence of one or more of the following generic causes:

- increased loss of red blood cells
- decreased production of red blood cells
- increased destruction of red blood cells
- increased demand of red blood cells
- increased production of abnormal red blood cells,

which may be due to nutritional deficits, blood loss, kidney disease, medication or chronic diseases (Fields and Meyers 2006, Moftah 2005).

A minimum transfusion trigger has not been well established because of the variability of patient co-morbidities and anaemia tolerance. Evidence suggests that most patients can safely tolerate anaemia of 7 g/dL of Hb in the absence of active bleeding (Tolich 2008). However, surveys of the UK population show that most blood recipients are relatively elderly; many will have cardiovascular disease and may be less tolerant of low haemoglobin levels than younger, fitter patients. A low transfusion threshold may therefore be unwise, as older patients may also be at greater risk of congestive cardiac failure due to volume overload when blood and other fluids are infused (Blood Safety and Quality Regulations 2005, McClelland 2007).

Blood donation and testing

All blood donated in the UK is given voluntarily. The successful selection of a donor must protect them from any harm that may be caused by the donation process and also protect the possible recipient of products derived from the donor's blood. Donors of blood for

therapeutic use should be in good health; if there is any doubt about their suitability, the donation should be deferred and they should be fully assessed by a designated medical officer. All donors of blood or its components (via apheresis) should be assessed in accordance with the Joint UKBTS/NIBSC Professional Advisory Committee (JPAC) donor selection guidelines (JPAC 2007). The assessment of fitness to donate includes a questionnaire relating to general health, lifestyle, past medical history and medication. Donation may be temporarily or permanently deferred for a variety of reasons including cardiovascular disease, central nervous system diseases, malignancy and some infectious diseases, all of which are detailed in the JPAC 2007 guidelines. Donors are also screened for risk of exposure to transmissible infectious diseases, and specific guidance is provided for donors receiving therapeutic drugs.

Prevention of transmission of infection is determined by donor selection criteria and laboratory testing. In the UK, all blood donations are tested for infections which could be passed on to the recipient. However, concern about transfusion-related variant Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease (vCJD) transmission is now supported by clinical evidence (Ludlam and Turner 2006) and, despite continuing research, a screening test for preclinical human infection has yet to be developed (Brown 2005). Therefore, donor exclusion criteria remain an important precautionary measure (Cervenakova and Brown 2004). When a donor has been successfully screened, they must validate the information they have provided and record that they have given consent to proceed.

Autologous donation

Since the 1980s there has been interest in autologous donation (blood and blood components collected from an individual and intended solely for subsequent autologous transfusion to that same individual) (Blood Safety and Quality Regulations 2005). This has largely been attributed to high-profile infection risks: human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis C and more recently vCJD (James and Harrison 2002). However, autologous donation is not risk free, with 28 cases of adverse events being reported to SHOT in 2008, the majority of which arose

through cell salvage events. Autologous donation is contraindicated in certain circumstances. Furthermore, there has been significant concern about the efficacy of some methods (Carless *et al.* 2004, Henry *et al.* 2002). Three principal methods of autologous donation exist.

Preoperative autologous donation (PAD)

This requires the patients to donate up to four units of blood whilst simultaneously taking iron supplements in the month preceding surgery. However, the efficacy of this method has been questioned by systematic review (Henry *et al.* 2002) and is only indicated in very specific circumstances such as patients with very rare blood types, patients donating bone marrow and fit patients who have a significant fear of receiving allogeneic blood products such that it is preventing them from seeking necessary surgery (James 2004).

Acute normovolaemic haemodilution (ANH)

This involves the donation of up to three units of blood immediately prior to surgery. The patient is then given crystalloids to dilute the circulating volume. This method is only indicated for surgery where considerable blood loss is expected on the principle that the number of red cells lost will be reduced and the patient's autologous whole blood can be returned after surgery; however, little evidence exists to support the efficacy of ANH (Harrison 2004).

Intraoperative cell salvage (ICS)

Blood loss during surgery is collected, anticoagulated, filtered and held in a sterile reservoir. The collected blood is then processed, washed and suspended in saline for return. Although ICS is not without risks such as embolism, bacterial contamination and enhanced inflammatory responses through reinfusion of inflammatory mediators (Harrison 2004), it has been recommended as the most effective form of autologous transfusion to assist in the conservation of blood supplies (James 2004). Trials in orthopaedic surgery indicate that salvage can

reduce the proportion of patients who receive allogeneic red cell transfusions. Results in cardiac surgery trials have also shown a slight reduction in the use of allogeneic red cell transfusions (McClelland 2007).

The 2008 SHOT report recorded 28 cases of reported adverse events, 25 from ICS and three from postoperative cell salvage (PCS). There were five hypotensive reactions reported from ICS, but no major mortality or morbidity.

Monitoring of patients receiving autologous transfusion is as important as it is for those receiving allogeneic transfusion (SHOT 2008).

Blood component donation

Donors of blood components by automated apheresis are subject to the same selection criteria used for donating whole blood and any exception to this must be decided by a designated medical officer. Apheresis can be used to collect plasma, red cells and platelets. Leucopheresis procedures are used for the collection of granulocytes, lymphocytes and peripheral blood progenerator cells (James 2005).

Appropriate use of donated blood components

Donated blood components are a precious gift; they are not a limitless resource and must be used appropriately. The BCSH has guidelines in place for the use of red cell, platelet, fresh frozen plasma, cryoprecipitate and cryosupernatant transfusions, available on the BCSH website www.bcshguidelines.com.

The decision to transfuse must be based on a thorough clinical assessment of the patient and their individual needs. Each blood component should only be given after careful consideration, when there is valid clinical indication or when there are no alternative treatment options available (Oldham *et al.* 2009).

Blood and blood products have varying shelf-lives and storage requirements. The range of products currently available, indications for use and recommendations for administration are listed in Table 8.9.

Table 8.9 Blood and blood products used for transfusion

Type	Description	Indications	Cross-matching	Shelf life	Average infusion time	Technique	Special considerations
Red cells in optimal additive solutions (SAGM)[a]	Red cells with plasma removed: 100 mL additive fluid used as replacement to give optimal red cell preservation; haematocrit 60–65% leuco-depleted	Correction of anaemia	ABO and Rh compatible (not necessarily identical)	35 days at 2–6°C	1–2 hours/unit. Transfusion to be completed within 4 hours of component's removal from storage	Give via a blood administration set	If more than half blood volume is replaced with red cells in SAGM, use of FFP should be considered to replace clotting factors
Washed red blood cells	Red cells centrifuged and resuspended twice in 0.9% sodium chloride Leuco-depleted	Correction of anaemia where patient may react to plasma components, for example in IgA deficiency	As above	Prepared by non-sterile process, therefore to be used within 24 hours	1–2 hours/unit	As above	–
Frozen red blood cells	Red cells of very rare phenotype Leuco-depleted	To treat patients with very rare antibody	As above	Stored frozen cells: 3 years. Use within 12 hours of thawing	2–3 hours/unit	As above	–
White blood cells (buffy coat or apheresed granulocytes)[b]	Mainly granulocytes obtained by leucophoresis or by 'creaming off' the white blood cell layer from fresh blood	To treat patients with life-threatening granulocytopenia	As above	24 hours after preparation. Stored at room temperature	60–90 minutes/unit	Administer via a blood administration set	White blood cell infusion induces fever, may cause hypotension, rigors and confusion. Treat symptoms and reassure patient Preparation is always irradiated to prevent initiation of transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease (TA-GVHD). *Do not* give to patients receiving amphotericin B. Indications for granulocyte transfusions should be when possible benefits are thought to outweigh considerable hazards of the treatment option (Brozovis *et al.*, 1998)
Platelets[a]	Platelets in 200–300 mL plasma. May be pooled from 5 donors or apheresed from a single donor Leuco-depleted	To treat thrombocytopenia	No cross-matching necessary	Up to 7 days after collection. Storage is at 22°C, with continuous gentle agitation	20–30 minutes/unit	Administration using a platelet administration set. Use a new set for each transfusion. Do not use micro-aggregate filters	General guide to use: 1 Count less than 10×10^9/L 2 Count $10–20 \times 10^9$/L with haemorrhage and/or persistent pyrexia 3 Count $20–50 \times 10^9$/L in special cases or pre-invasive procedure
Fresh frozen plasma	Citrated plasma separated from whole blood	To treat a deficiency in clotting factors due to dilution effects, consumption (in DIC), liver failure or overdose of coumarin anticoagulant	No cross-matching necessary	2 years at −30°C. Once thawed, kept at 4°C, to be used as soon as possible but within 24 hours	15–45 minutes/unit (approx. 250 mL)	Administer rapidly via a blood administration set	FFP should be considered if patient has received more than half their blood volume in red cells, to prevent dilutional hypocoagulability

Type	Description	Indications	Cross-matching	Shelf life	Average infusion time	Technique	Special considerations
Albumin 4.5% (HAS)	Solution of albumin from pooled plasma in a buffered, stabilized 0.9% sodium chloride diluent. Supplied in 250 mL or 500 mL bottle	To treat hypovolaemic shock or hypoproteinaemia due to burns, trauma, surgery or infection. Sourced outside UK to reduce risk of transmission of vCJD	Unnecessary. Not blood group specific	5 years at room temperature Kept in dark	30–60 minutes/unit	Administer via a standard solution administration set	The solution should be crystal clear with no deposits
Albumin 20% (HAS)	Heat-treated, aqueous, chemically processed fraction of pooled plasma	To treat hypovolaemic shock or hypoproteinaemia due to burns, trauma, surgery or infection. To maintain appropriate electrolyte balance	Unnecessary	5 years at room temperature Kept in dark	30–60 minutes/unit	Administer via a blood administration set undiluted or diluted with 0.9% sodium chloride or 5% glucose solution. Slower administration is advised if a cardiac disorder is present to avoid gross fluid shift	The solution should be crystal clear with no deposits
Cryoprecipitate	Cold-insoluble portion of plasma recovered from FFP: rich in factor VIII, von Willebrand's factor and fibrinogen. Available as single packs (20–40 mL) or 5 units pooled (120–140 mL)	To control bleeding disorders due to lack of factor VIII or fibrinogen, for example haemophilia, von Willebrand's disease, DIC	No cross-matching necessary	2 years at −30°C. Use immediately after thawing	15–30 minutes via infusion, 10–15 minutes via intravenous push	Administer rapidly via syringe or blood administration set	
Cryo-depleted plasma	FFP with cryoprecipitate removed	Useful in treating thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura: patients are plasma-exchanged daily to reduce circulating von Willebrand's factor	No cross-matching necessary	2 years at −30°C. Once thawed, kept at 4°C, to be used as soon as possible but within 24 hours	Time varies on machine average ±2.5 hours	Via apheresis machine	

[a]Most commonly used blood products.
[b]See leucocyte depletion.

Anticipated patient outcomes

Blood component transfusion can be a life-saving and life-enhancing treatment when used appropriately and when patients are cared for safely and by knowledgeable, skilled practitioners (Oldham *et al.* 2009).

Legal and professional issues

Blood safety and quality in the UK

Approximately 3.4 million blood products are administered in the UK every year (Gray and Illingworth 2005). The transfusion of blood and its components is usually safe and uneventful; however, there are

associated risks and there have been significant developments over recent years to improve the quality and safety of transfusion practice in the UK. The Blood Safety and Quality Regulations came into effect in February 2005 and were fully implemented on 8 November 2005. These Regulations cover the collecting, testing, processing, storing and distributing of blood and blood components (Blood Safety and Quality Regulations 2005). The official government agency with jurisdiction for these regulations is the Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (MHRA).

The principal requirements of these Regulations in relation to transfusion practice are as follows.

- *Traceability*: whereby hospitals must have a system to record and retain information on the fate of each unit of blood/blood component for a period of 30 years.
- *Haemovigilance*: an organized surveillance procedure relating to serious adverse or unexpected events or reactions. The reporting of such events can be done via the online Serious Adverse Blood Reactions and Events (SABRE) system which is maintained by the Medical Device Adverse Incident Reporting Centre. This will usually be done by a designated member of laboratory staff and therefore clinical staff must ensure that all incident reporting is conducted in line with hospital policy.

The MHRA defines such events as follows.

- A **serious adverse event** is defined as an unintended occurrence associated with the collection, testing, processing, storage and distribution of blood or blood components that might lead to death or life-threatening, disabling or incapacitating conditions for patients or which results in, or prolongs, hospitalization or morbidity.
- A **serious adverse reaction** is defined as an unintended response in a donor or in a patient associated with the collection or transfusion of blood components that is fatal, life-threatening, disabling or incapacitating, or which results in or prolongs hospitalization or morbidity.

(MHRA 2005)

Prior to these regulations, Better Blood Transfusion initiatives aimed to ensure that such guidance became an integral part of NHS care, making blood transfusion safer, ensuring that all blood used in clinical practice is necessary and improving the information both patients and the public receive about blood transfusion (DH 2007). Therefore it is a key requirement that all staff involved in the process of transfusion maintain their awareness of all appropriate guidance.

Competencies

The transfusion of any blood product carries with it the potential of reaction and risk (SHOT 2005). All staff involved in the transfusion of blood and/or blood products must have the knowledge and skills to ensure the process is completed safely. Therefore, the nurse caring for those receiving transfusion therapy must do so within his or her sphere of competence, always acting to minimize risk to the patient (NMC 2008a).

Practitioners must understand the theory and reasoning behind the necessity to follow the correct transfusion procedures and practices (Pirie and Gray 2007). In November 2006, the NPSA, the Chief Medical Officer's National Blood Transfusion Committee (NBTC) and SHOT, working in collaboration, developed strategies aimed at ensuring that blood transfusions are carried out safely, and issued the Safer Practice Notice (SPN) No. 14, *Right Patient, Right Blood*. One of the key action points in this notice was for all NHS and independent sector organizations involved in administering blood transfusions to develop and implement an action plan for competency-based training and assessments for all staff involved in blood transfusions. The current guideline is for all staff involved in the blood transfusion process to have completed their initial competency assessments by November 2010 (BCSH 2009, Blood Safety and Quality Regulations 2005).

There are three key principles which underpin every stage of the blood component transfusion process:

- patient identification
- documentation
- communication (BCSH 2009).

Consent

Providing the patient with information before a procedure and ascertaining that the patient understands the procedure and has consented to it is the responsibility of the healthcare professional carrying out the procedure as well as those prescribing it (NMC 2008b). Although blood components may not be prescribed as they are not medicinal products (Green and Pirie 2009), a blood component transfusion must be treated as any prescribed medicine, that is, patients (or guardian) must be informed of the indication for the transfusion, advised of the risks and benefits, of alternatives to blood transfusion including autologous transfusion (BCSH 1999), be given the opportunity to ask questions and have the right to refuse to receive it in accordance with local and national guidance (NMC 2008b, RCN 2006). One of the key objectives of the HSC 2007/001 Better Blood Transfusion was to improve information provided to patients and to ensure that those who are likely to receive a blood transfusion will be well informed of their choices. There are a number of information leaflets issued by the NHS Blood and Transplant Service for both patients and healthcare professionals.

The issue of consent for blood transfusion is currently being considered by the Advisory Committee on the Safety of Blood, Tissues and Organs (SaBTO). Patients have the right to refuse transfusion and to be treated with respect. Staff must be sensitive to individual patient needs, acknowledging their values, beliefs and cultural background and exploring alternative treatments if appropriate and available (Oldham *et al.* 2009). There is increasing public concern about blood transfusion safety and the need to accommodate some patients' religious beliefs (John *et al.* 2008).

Jehovah's Witnesses and blood transfusion

The role of blood in Jehovah's Witnesses' spiritual belief is based on scripture and followers are usually well informed on both their beliefs and their rights. Many Jehovah's Witnesses carry information with them regarding any objection and therefore the need to ensure informed consent is very important. Staff caring for patients must ensure that

decisions to consent to or refuse treatment are respected and recorded appropriately (McClelland 2007). Furthermore, in individual circumstances, practitioners should endeavour to consider non-blood or autologous methods as described previously, where appropriate (McClelland 2007).

Procedure guideline 8.14 Blood sampling: pretransfusion

Essential equipment

- Antimicrobial skin cleanser – the recommended solution is 0.5% chlorhexidine in 70% alcohol
- Needle/winged infusion device
- Appropriate tubes for blood sample collection
- Gauze
- Hypoallergenic tape
- Non-sterile, well-fitting gloves
- Sharps container

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Take pretransfusion blood from one patient at a time.	To ensure that samples from different patients are not confused which can have fatal consequences and to minimize this risk (SHOT 2008, C).
3 Check all packaging before opening and preparing the equipment.	To ensure there has been no contamination and all equipment is in date. E

Procedure

4 Before taking the sample, ask the patient to state their first name, surname and date of birth. Cross-check these details against the blood request form.	To ensure that the sample obtained corresponds with the request (BCSH 2009, C).
5 Check these details against the patient's identity wristband.	To ensure that the patient is positively identified before obtaining a blood sample (BCSH 2009, C).
6 Check the patient's hospital number on the wristband against that	To ensure that the sample obtained corresponds with the request (BCSH 2009, C).

on the blood request form.

7 Obtain the blood sample by direct venepuncture or via central venous access device, in the appropriate tube (see Chapter 11)	To ensure the correct procedure is followed and an adequate sample is obtained. E

Postprocedure

8 Hand-write the sample tube clearly and accurately, ensuring all names are spelled correctly. This should only be done once the sample has been successfully obtained and should be done at patient's (bed)side. **(a)** First name **(b)** Surname **(c)** Date of birth **(d)** Gender **(e)** Hospital identification number **(f)** Ward or department **(g)** Date	To ensure the sample is labelled with the correct patient details. BCSH guidelines do not recommend the use of addressograph (BCSH 1999, C). Blood tubes should never be completed in advance as this has been identified as a major cause of patient identification errors (SNBTS 2004, C).

Procedure guideline 8.15 Blood components: collection and delivery to the clinical area

Removal of blood components from their storage location continues to be identified as a major source of error in the transfusion process (BCSH 2009). Only those staff who are authorized, trained and competent may remove blood components from storage. A guide to the necessary elements of blood pack labelling is shown in Figure 8.8.

Essential equipment

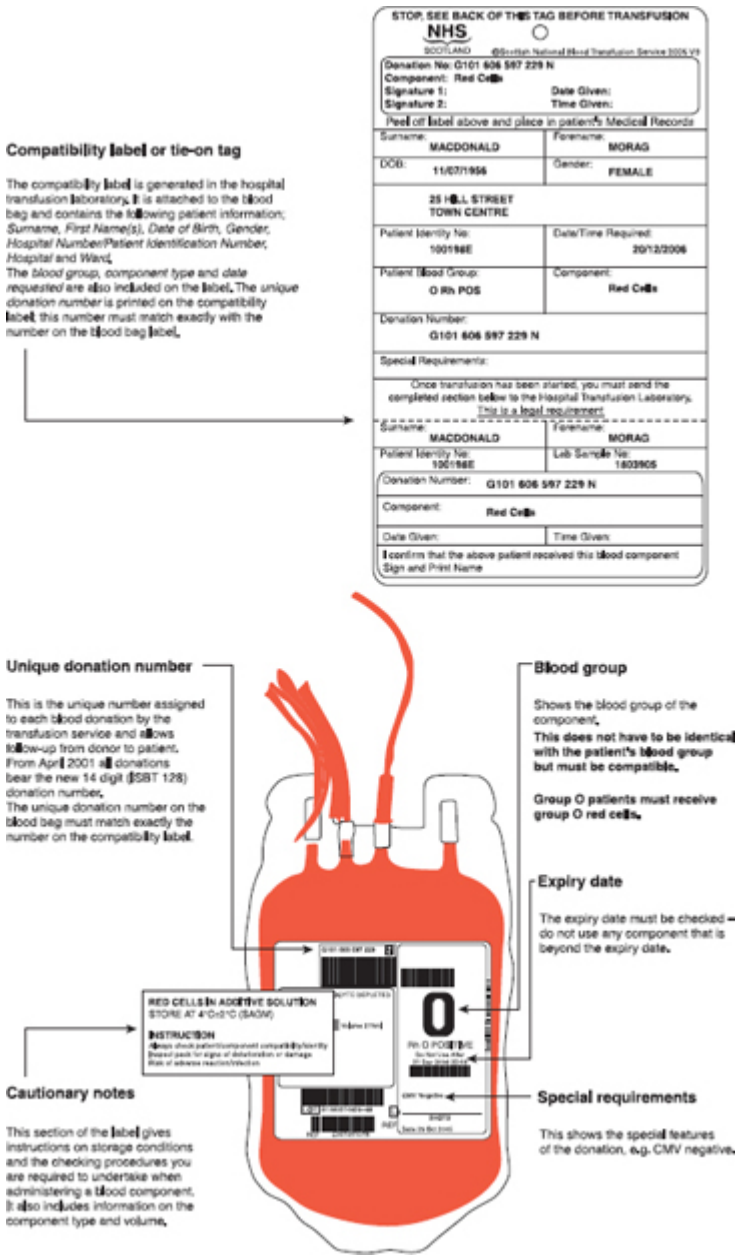
- Documentation containing the patient's three core identifiers – full name, date of birth and hospital number/unique identifying number – must be held by the person removing the component from storage

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Check that the reason for the transfusion has been documented in the patient notes.	To ensure the transfusion is appropriate and necessary (BCSH 2009, C).
2 Check that there is a valid written order for the administration of the component including special	To ensure the selected component meets the patient's individual requirements (BCSH 2009, C).

requirements – CMV negative or irradiated components.	
3 Check the patient is aware of and has 'consented' to the procedure.	To ensure the patient is fully informed (BCSH 2009, C).
4 Check the patient is available.	To avoid delays once the component has been removed from storage. E
5 Take baseline observations to include blood pressure, temperature, pulse and respiratory rate.	To ensure that any transfusion reaction can be immediately identified, due to changes in baseline (BCSH 2009, C), and managed appropriately (SNBTS 2004, C).
6 Check the patient has patent venous access.	To avoid any delay in commencement of the transfusion and adhere to 'cold chain' requirements (BCSH 2009, C).
7 Check the patient is wearing an identification wristband.	To avoid delays in confirming patient identity (BCSH 2009, C).
Procedure	
8 Where possible, the same person who will administer the component should collect from storage.	To minimize the number of people involved in the process (BCSH 2009, C).
9 Remove the component (using electronic or manual method) from storage in accordance with trust policy.	To ensure that only authorized, trained and competent staff may collect blood components (BCSH 2009, C).
10 Remove one component at a time, unless rapid transportation of large quantities is needed or if blood is being transported to remote areas in specifically designed validated blood transport containers.	To ensure components are stored in the appropriate conditions. E
11 Check the component at the point of removal for correct patient-identifying details. A visual inspection of the component should also be performed to check the expiry date and any signs of leakage, clumping or discoloration.	In order to minimize the risk of incorrectly administering the component to the wrong patient (BCSH 2009, C). Expired or damaged products must not be used (McClelland 2007, E).
12 Deliver the component to the clinical area where an appropriately trained and competent member of staff should check that the correct blood has been delivered.	To ensure the correct component has been received for the patient, to comply with traceability and cold chain requirements (BCSH 2009, C).

Figure 8.8 Blood pack labelling.



Procedure guideline 8.16 Blood component administration

Essential equipment

- Written order for blood component transfusion
- Blood administration administration set with 170–200 µm macroaggregate filter

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Check that the component has been correctly prescribed, including any special requirements such as irradiated or CMV-negative blood, and if the patient requires any other medications, for example diuretic, premedication.	To prevent Incorrect Blood Component Transfused (IBCT) error: ABO incompatibility or non-irradiated CMV-positive products may cause a fatal reaction if transfused (McClelland 2007, C). Negative and positive status should always be written in full and not as + or – as they may get defaced and be incorrectly processed. E
2 Check that the patient's baseline vital signs, temperature, pulse, blood pressure and respirations have been recorded.	To ensure that any transfusion reaction can be immediately identified, due to changes in baseline (E), and managed appropriately (SNBTS 2004, C).
3 Conduct a visual inspection of the component to be used for signs of clumping, discoloration, damage or leaks.	Expired or damaged products must not be used (McClelland 2007, E).
4 If there are any discrepancies at this point do not proceed until they have been resolved.	To ensure an IBCT event does not occur. E
5 Positively identify the patient by asking them to state the following information. **(a)** First name **(b)** Surname **(c)** Date of birth	This is the final check of identity which must be performed next to the patient prior to transfusion and is absolutely vital in minimizing the risk of IBCT errors (BCSH 2009, C; SNBTS 2004, C).
6 Check the details given against the patient's nameband and the patient details on the blood component.	To minimize the risk of error (SNBTS 2004, C).
7 Check that the information on the compatibility label matches the details on the blood component, checking expiry date, unique component donation number, blood group on the component label against the laboratory-produced label. Check special requirements have been met.	To minimize the risk of error (BCSH 2009, C; SNBTS 2004, C).
If there are any interruptions during this checking procedure, the entire process should be restarted from the beginning.	
8 If there are any discrepancies at this point do not proceed until they have been resolved.	To ensure an IBCT event does not occur (SHOT 2008, C).
Procedure	
9 Prime the set with blood unless there are concerns about patency of the device,	Other agents may damage the product components and precipitate transfusion complications (SNBTS 2004, C), for example dextrose should never be used to prime a set or flush the

then prime with 0.9% sodium chloride.	blood administration set following a transfusion as this can cause haemolysis (SNBTS 2004, C).
10 Set up infusion via a volumetric infusion pump if appropriate. Check the infusion pump and settings prior to use.	To ensure the pump is in working order (BCSH 2009, C). Some older infusion pumps can damage the red cells. Blood administration sets for specific infusion pumps must always be used. If none are available the standard blood administration set should be used via gravity and the rate monitored as necessary. E
11 Set the desired infusion rate as indicated by the blood component being used and the patient's condition.	The rate of administration is indicated by the patient's clinical condition (SNBTS 2004, C; Weinstein and Plumer 2007, E). Dictated by current guidelines (SNBTS 2004, C).
Either *Red cell administration* can range from 5–10 minutes in acute blood loss to the maximum time of 4 hours (from the time the component is removed from storage) in elderly patients (SNBTS 2004). **Or** *Platelets, fresh frozen plasma and cryoprecipitate* should be transfused over 30–60 minutes and must be completed within 4 hours of puncturing the blood component.	
12 Sign the written order 'prescription' as the person administering the component. The unique component donation number, the date and start time should be recorded in the patient's clinical notes.	To ensure documentation and traceability requirements are met (BCSH 2009, C).
13 Fifteen minutes after the commencement of each component, take and record patient observations – blood pressure, temperature, pulse and respiratory rate.	Adverse reactions will often occur during the first 15 minutes of transfusion (Gray and Illingworth 2005, C). Complaints of serious anxiety, transfusion site pain, loin pain, backache, fever, skin flushing or urticaria could be indicative of a serious transfusion reaction (McClelland 2007, E). In such cases the transfusion should be stopped immediately and urgent medical advice sought (SNBTS 2004, C).
14 Observe and monitor the patient throughout the transfusion episode. If there are any concerns, undertake	To monitor for any adverse reactions (McClelland 2007, E).

additional observations as appropriate.	
15 Record the finish time of each unit. All units must be completed within 4 hours of removal from storage.	Continuation of a transfusion beyond 4 hours increases the risk of transfusion reaction and complications (BCSH 2009, C).
16 Take and record the patient's observations on completion of each unit, ensuring that post-transfusion observations are performed within 60 minutes of completion of the unit.	To ensure the patient's progress is recorded and acts as a baseline for subsequent units (BCSH 2009, C).
Postprocedure	
17 Record the time the transfusion finished and the volume of the component transfused on the patient's fluid balance chart.	To ensure an accurate record of fluid is maintained as fluid balance monitoring can identify fluid overload in at-risk patients (Weinstein and Plumer 2007, E).
18 Carefully file all transfusion documentation in the patient's clinical record. In line with local policy, return information on the final fate of each blood component to the hospital laboratory manager.	To ensure the transfusion episode has been recorded, maintaining the clinical record for patient safety. To comply with Statutory Instrument No. 50 (Blood Safety and Quality Regulations 2005, C), where the final fate of all blood components must be held for a duration of 30 years.
19 Return any unused blood components to the laboratory promptly.	Unused components may be reallocated if returned in time. Refer to local guidelines. E.
20 Keep all empty blood component bags in the clinical area until the transfusion is completed. Once the transfusion is completed, dispose of in clinical waste.	To ensure transfused bags are available in the event of incident investigation (SNBTS 2004, C).
21 For patients receiving ongoing transfusion support, the blood administration set should be changed at least every 12 hours, or after every second unit transfused. Dispose of used set in clinical waste: refer to local guidelines/protocols.	Minimize risk from bacterial contamination (BCSH 2009, C; McClelland 2007, E; SNBTS 2004, E).

Problem-solving table 8.6 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guidelines 8.14–8.16)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Resolution
Unable to collect patient information	Unknown unconscious patient	Do not transfuse unless clinically essential	Assign unique hospital identification number to all requests and samples
	Major incident	Do not transfuse unless clinically essential	Use unique major incident identification number for all requests and samples
	Patient unable to communicate verbally	Follow hospital policy for identification of patients unable to confirm identity verbally. Consider the introduction of photo identification card	Confirm identity with a relative or second member of staff (SNBTS 2004)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Resolution
		Ensure interpreting services are available if appropriate	
Patient does not have a nameband	Nameband has been removed or is no longer legible	**Always** follow local policy and **never** use secondary identifiers such as bed numbers, notes or request forms that the patient may be carrying (BCSH 1999). If a person removes a patient's identification band, they are then responsible for ensuring that this is replaced	All inpatients are required to wear a nameband; therefore, replace nameband and reconfirm identity (NPSA 2005, RCN 2006)
	Patient is in an outpatient setting	Follow hospital policy for the identification of patients	Ensure patient has a correctly completed identification wristband prior to commencing a transfusion
Unable to obtain verbal confirmation	Patient unconscious	Ensure hospital policy for the identification of unconscious patients is followed	Confirm identity with a relative or second member of staff or use unique patient identifier
Patient unable to communicate verbally	Due to disease or language barrier	Follow hospital policy for the identification of patients unable to confirm their identity verbally. Consider the introduction of photo identification cards. Ensure interpreting services are available if appropriate	Confirm identity with a relative or second member of staff (SNBTS 2004). Always follow local policy and never use secondary identifiers such as bed numbers, notes or request forms that the patient may be carrying (BCSH 1999)
Infusion slows or stops	Venous spasm due to cold infusion	Apply a heat pad prior to the transfusion to reduce venous spasm	Apply warm compress to dilate the vein and increase the blood flow
	Occlusion	Check patency prior to administration. Always use a pulsatile flush ending with a positive pressure flush	Flush gently with 0.9% sodium chloride and resume infusion. If occlusion persists, consider resiting cannula. For a central venous access device occlusion

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Resolution
Elevation in temperature after commencing a unit of blood with no other symptoms. Temperature falls if the blood is slowed/stopped	Pyrogenic reaction	Take history to identify whether patient has had a reaction previously	Observe the patient's temperature, pulse and blood pressure during the transfusion as indicated. If the patient has received multiple transfusions or has previous history, ensure that appropriate medication is prescribed before commencing transfusions

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

The patient should be asked to inform a member of staff of any symptoms which may indicate a transfusion-related adverse event, such as feeling anxious, rigors (shivering), flushing, pain or shortness of breath. The patient should be cared for where they can be visually observed and should be shown how to use the nurse call system. The patient should have vital signs monitored as indicated in the procedure guidelines: however, it may be necessary to take additional observations if clinically indicated, such as if the patient complains of feeling unwell or they develop signs of a transfusion reaction (Gray and Illingworth 2005).

Many drugs may cause a pyretic hypersensitivity reaction (BNF 2011). There is at present insufficient evidence to allow guidance on the co-administration of drugs with red blood cell transfusion. A lack of clinical reporting of reactions in patients cannot be taken to indicate safe practice: adverse reactions may be attributed to other causes, subclinical haemolysis or agglutination may occur undetected and serious adverse effects may be masked by pre-existing illness in the patient (Murdock *et al.* 2009).

Ongoing care

On completion of a blood transfusion episode, observations to include blood pressure, temperature, pulse and respiratory rate should be taken and recorded. The patient's records should be updated to confirm that the transfusion has taken place, including the volume transfused, whether the transfusion achieved the desired effect (either post-transfusion increment rates or an improvement in the patient's symptoms) and the details of any reactions to the transfusion. If intravenous fluids are prescribed to follow the transfusion, these should be administered through a new administration set appropriate for that infusion. The traceability documentation confirming the fate of the component should be returned to the laboratory (Blood Safety and Quality Regulations 2005).

The SHOT report 2008 emphasizes that, on occasion, transfusion reactions can occur many hours and sometimes days after the transfusion is completed. Therefore, for patients receiving a transfusion as a day case, it is important to ensure that they are counselled on the possibility of later adverse reactions and that they have access to clinical advice at all times. The BCSH recommends that day-case and short-stay patients are issued with a contact card facilitating 24-hour access to appropriate clinical advice, similar to the scheme used for patients receiving chemotherapy treatments on an outpatient basis (BCSH 2009).

Complications

Transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease (TA-GVHD)

Although rare, TA-GVHD is a serious complication for recipients and is often fatal. TA-GVHD is usually caused by an IBCT incident where non-irradiated blood components containing immunocompetent T lymphocytes are given to severely immunocompromised recipients. The donor T lymphocytes engraft and multiply, reacting against the recipient's 'foreign' tissue, causing a graft-versus-host reaction (Davies and Williamson 1998). It is not commonly associated with fresh frozen

plasma (FFP) or cryoprecipitate. Onset occurs 1–2 weeks after transfusion and the condition is predominantly fatal (McClelland 2007). Irradiation (25 gray) of blood and blood products, to inactivate T lymphocytes (McClelland 2007), is essential in the prevention of TA-GVHD and is especially important in the following recipients:

- foetuses receiving intrauterine transfusions
- patients undergoing or who have undergone blood or bone marrow progenitor cell transplantation
- immunocompromised recipients.

Bacterial infections

Contamination of blood and blood products can occur during donation, collection, processing, storage and administration. Despite strict guidelines and procedures, the risk of contamination remains. Most common contaminating organisms are skin contaminants such as staphylococci, diphtheroids and micrococci, which enter the blood at the time of venesection (Barbara and Contreras 2009, Provan *et al.* 2009). Bacterial contamination can lead to severe septic reaction.

Viral infections

Viruses transmissible via blood transfusions can be either plasma borne or cell associated (Barbara and Contreras 2009, Williamson *et al.* 1999). Plasma-borne viruses include hepatitis B, hepatitis C, hepatitis A (rarely), serum parvovirus B19, and human immunodeficiency viruses (HIV-1 and HIV-2). Cell-associated viruses include cytomegalovirus (CMV), Epstein–Barr virus, human T cell leukaemia/lymphoma viruses (HTLV-1/HTLV-2) and HIV-1/HIV-2.

Human T cell leukaemia/lymphoma virus type 1 (HTLV-1)

Human T cell leukaemia/lymphoma virus type 1 is an oncogenic retrovirus, associated with the white cells that cause adult T cell leukaemia, and is connected with several degenerative neuromuscular syndromes. The enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) has been recommended because of concerns relating to the transmission of the

virus via blood transfusion, and the associated long incubation period of adult T cell leukaemia. In the UK all blood is tested for HTLV (JPAC 2005).

Cytomegalovirus (CMV)

Cytomegalovirus is classified as part of the herpes family and hence has the ability to establish latent infection with reactivation during periods of immunosuppression (Barbara and Contreras 2009, Louis and Heslop 2009). Approximately 50% of the population in the UK has antibodies to CMV. Therefore it is recognized that the virus may be transmitted by transfusion. Although it poses little threat to immunologically competent recipients, CMV infection in vulnerable patient groups can cause significant morbidity and mortality. For example, CMV pneumonitis carries an 85% mortality rate in blood and bone marrow transplant recipients (Mollison *et al.* 1997). Screening of donors and the use of CMV-seronegative or leucocyte-depleted blood and blood products are seen as essential for neonates and immunocompromised recipients who have tested negative to CMV (Louis and Heslop 2009).

Hepatitis B virus (HBV)

Screening for hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) in donor blood is mandatory as it is estimated that there are now more than 325,000 people in the UK with chronic hepatitis B and, allowing for factors such as under-reporting, the figure may be even higher (Hepatitis B Foundation UK 2007).

Hepatitis C virus (HCV)

Screening for hepatitis C using the ELISA is mandatory in the UK. Hepatitis C is transmitted primarily via contact with blood or blood products (Friedman 2001).

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV-1 and HIV-2)

The human immunodeficiency virus is a retrovirus that infects and kills helper T cells, also known as CD4-positive lymphocytes. Transmission of the virus can be via most blood products including red cells, platelets,

FFP, and factor VIII and IX concentrates. These viruses are not known to be transmitted in albumin, immunoglobulins or antithrombin III products (Barbara and Contreras 2009). The retrovirus invades cells and slowly destroys the immune system, rendering the individual susceptible to opportunistic infections. Since 1983, when it was recognized that the virus could be transmitted via transfusion, actions have been developed to safeguard blood supplies from transmitting the virus that caused acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). These include the careful screening of donors and the testing of donated blood.

Other infective agents

Parasites

Plasmodium falciparum is the most dangerous of the human malarial parasites (Barbara and Contreras 2009). Prevention is maintained by questioning donors about foreign travel, in particular those who have visited areas where the disease is prevalent (Bishop 2008).

Prion diseases

Known as transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs), these are a rare group of conditions which cause progressive neurodegeneration in humans and some animal species (Box 8.4). Prion diseases are believed to be caused by the presence of an abnormal form of a cellular protein (Aguzzi and Collinge 1997, Barbara and Contreras 2009, Vamvakas 1999). These abnormal proteins have an altered cellular shape, and become infectious and multiply by converting normal cellular protein to the irregular form. This irregular form is resistant to digestion and breakdown and, once accumulation occurs, can result in the formation of plaque in brain tissue. Transmission is thought to be by direct contact with infected brain or lymphoreticular tissue (Aguzzi and Collinge 1997, Barbara and Contreras 2009, Vamvakas 1999).

Box 8.4 Prion diseases

Prion diseases in animal species

- Scrapie, a disease of sheep.
- Bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE).
- Feline spongiform encephalopathy (FSE).
- Chronic wasting disease of deer, mule and elk.

Prion diseases in humans

- Sporadic: classic Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease (CJD).
- Inherited: CJD, Gerstmann–Sträussler–Scheinker disease, fatal familial insomnia (FFI).
- Acquired: kuru, vCJD.

There is evidence to suggest that in TSEs, of which vCJD is one, leucocytes, particularly lymphocytes, are the key cells in the transportation of the putative infectious agent to the brain (Aguzzi and Collinge 1997, Bradley 1999). There were a total of 163 deaths in cases of definite or probable vCJD in the UK up to 31 December 2007. A further three probable cases were alive on 31st December 2007. Analysis of the incidence of vCJD onsets and deaths from January 1994 to December 2007 indicates that a peak has passed. While this is an encouraging finding, the incidence of vCJD may increase again, particularly if different genetic subgroups with longer incubation periods exist (National CJD Surveillance Unit 2008).

In many developed countries, blood undergoes universal leucodepletion for a number of reasons: to reduce the risk of transmission of vCJD, to remove leucocyte-associated viruses such as CMV and to reduce other complications of transfusions related to white cell content (Contreras and Navarrete 2009).

Sepsis

Sepsis occurs when bacteria enter the blood or blood product that is to be infused. Bacteria can enter at any point from the time of collection, during storage through to administration to the patient. Organisms implicated in transfusion-related sepsis include Gram-negative *Pseudomonas*, *Yersinia* and *Flavobacterium* (Provan *et al.* 2009). Septic reactions usually present with a fever, tachycardia and/or hypotension, and can lead rapidly to systemic inflammatory response syndrome

(SIRS) (Porth 2005). This is a serious life-threatening condition, sometimes referred to as septic shock, and requires urgent medical attention.

Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI)

Transfusion-related acute lung injury is most frequently associated with plasma-rich products such as whole blood, platelets and FFP (Federico 2009). TRALI is usually caused by anti- leucocyte antibodies reacting against donor leucocytes. This reaction can result in 'leucoagglutination'. Leucoagglutinins can in turn become trapped in the pulmonary microvasculature, causing severe respiratory distress without evidence of circulatory overload or cardiac failure (Contreras and Navarrete 2009). TRALI presents with a rapid onset of breathlessness, a non-productive cough, distress, chills or fever, cyanosis, hypotension and coma. A chest X-ray will show bilateral nodular infiltrates in a characteristic 'bat wing' presentation (McClelland 2007).

Transfusion-related acute lung injury is usually treated as any adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) and therefore patients who develop TRALI may require ventilatory support (SNBTS 2004) and should be treated as an emergency. Diuretics should not be administered as patients are generally hypotensive and hypovolaemic. Although the symptoms resemble ARDS, TRALI is self-limiting and with most patients improving over a 4-day period, without long-term consequences (Federico 2009). As TRALI is donor related, it is essential that cases are reported to the blood transfusion services so that donors can be contacted and removed from the donor panel (McClelland 2007).

Transfusion-related immune modulation

The infusion of foreign antigen during a packed red blood cell (PRBC) transfusion induces a non-specific immunosuppression, which is known as transfusion-associated immunomodulation. Allogeneic plasma components, white blood cells, fibrin and accumulants from the storage process have all been implicated (Englesbe *et al.* 2005).

Urticaria

This uncommon reaction is caused by the recipient reacting to protein in the donor plasma (Davies and Williamson 1998). Urticaria is characterized by localized oedematous plaques, hives and itching and is usually mediated by histamines (Porth 2005). Therefore urticarial reactions usually respond well to antihistamines and they should be administered once the patient has been assessed and antihistamine therapy has been prescribed (SNBTS 2004). The infusion can then be recommenced; however, if symptoms return, the infusion should be discontinued.

Transfusion reactions

In November 1996 the SHOT scheme was launched. This voluntary and anonymized reporting scheme collects data from participating hospitals across the UK and Ireland. The purpose of SHOT is to collect data on the serious morbidity related to the transfusion of blood and blood products. These data have since been utilized to inform education programmes, policy development and guideline development, ultimately improving hospital transfusion practice (SNBTS 2004).

Although the Blood Safety and Quality Regulations (2005) have now made the reporting of such events via SABRE mandatory, the SHOT scheme remains active and important and has presented yearly retrospective reports of data collected since its inception. These data demonstrate improved performance in recognizing reporting of transfusion-related incidents and continue to generate key recommendations to improve all transfusion practice (SNBTS 2004). Despite significant improvement in the reduction of risk from transfusion-transmitted infection, human error which results in an IBCT – the transfusion of a blood product that is not suitable for or not intended for the recipient – remains the greatest risk to patients (SNBTS 2004). Figures from the 2008 SHOT report confirm 262 cases in this category.

The prompt management of any adverse transfusion reaction can reduce associated morbidity and can be life saving. Therefore staff

caring for patients receiving transfused products must be fully familiar with the immediate management of any suspected reaction. However, specialist advice should always be sought for the diagnosis and ongoing management of transfusion reactions, such as haemolytic, anaphylactic and septic reactions (McClelland 2007, SNBTS 2004).

Minor transfusion reactions

It should always be remembered that the symptoms of a 'minor' transfusion reaction may be the prelude to a major, life-threatening reaction. It is essential that staff take any transfusion reaction seriously. Symptomatic patients should have their vital signs monitored closely and they should be clearly observable. Patients with persistent or deteriorating symptoms should always be managed as a major reaction and urgent medical and specialist support should be sought (McClelland 2007, SNBTS 2004).

Allergic and anaphylactic reactions are more common and more severe with transfusion of FFP and platelets than with red blood cells (Domen and Hoeltge 2003).

Symptoms of minor reactions include a temperature rise of up to 1.5°C, rash without systemic disturbance and moderate tachycardia without hypotension (SNBTS 2004). Such reactions may be caused by an immunological reaction to components of the blood product. Whilst it may be possible to manage such symptoms and continue with the transfusion, the following action should always be taken (Contreras and Navarrete 2009).

- Stop the transfusion and inform the responsible medical team.
- Confirm the patient's identity and re-check their details against the product compatibility label.
- Antihistamines should be considered for skin rashes or urticarial itch.
- Antipyretic agents can be considered for mild fever.

It may be possible to continue with the transfusion at a reduced rate once the patient's symptoms are controlled; however, it may be necessary to increase the frequency of observations until the transfusion is completed. Some patients who have regular transfusions may experience recurrent febrile reactions and may benefit from an

antipyretic premedication. *Note*: aspirin and other non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) are contraindicated in patients with a thrombocytopenia or coagulopathy (BNF 2011).

Major transfusion reactions

Major transfusion reactions include anaphylaxis, haemolysis and sepsis and may present as a fever of >38.5°C, tachycardia ± hypotension. In such circumstances a severe reaction should always be considered and the transfusion should be stopped until a specialist assessment has been conducted (Box 8.5).

Box 8.5 Initial management of a suspected transfusion reaction

- Stop the transfusion and seek urgent medical help.
- Initiate appropriate emergency procedures, for example call resuscitation team.
- Depending on venous access, withdraw the contents of the lumen being used and disconnect the blood product.
- Keep venous access patent.
- Confirm the patient's identity and re-check their details against the product compatibility label.
- Keep the patient and relative informed of all progress and reassure as indicated.
- Initiate close and frequent observations of temperature, pulse, blood pressure, fluid balance.
- Inform the transfusion laboratory and seek the urgent advice of the haematologist for further management.
- Return the transfused product to the laboratory with new blood samples (10 mL clotted and 5 mL ethylenediamine tetra-acetic acid (EDTA)) from the patient's opposite arm (SNBTS 2004) with a completed transfusion reaction notification form (if available) or note the patient's details, the nature and timing of the reaction and details of the component transfused.

Care should be taken when returning the blood product to the laboratory, to ensure that the product does not leak and that no needles remain attached.

Any further products being held locally for the patient should also be returned to the hospital transfusion laboratory for assessment. The

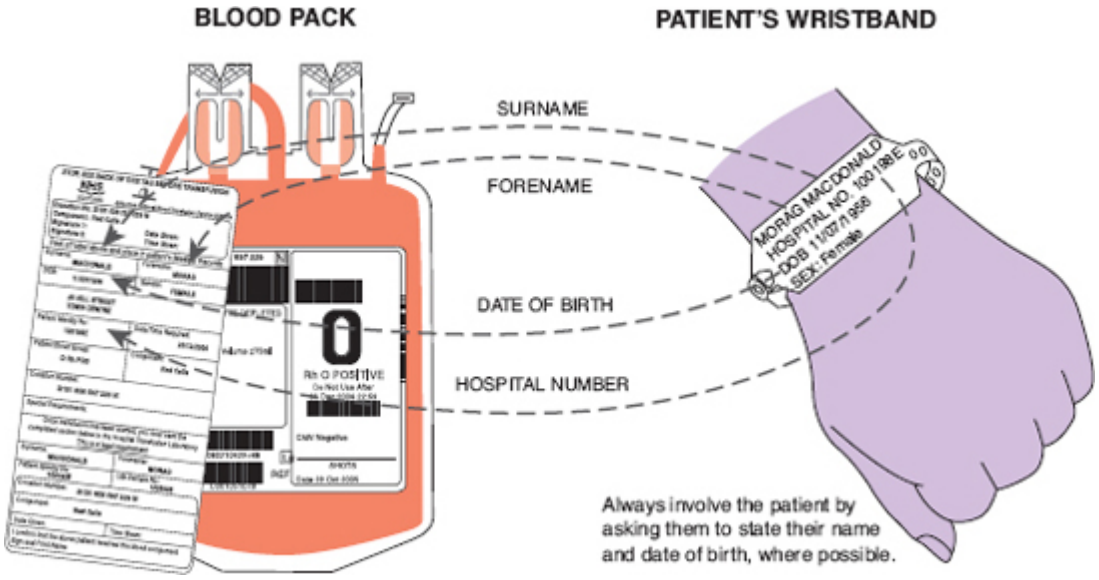
events surrounding the reaction should be clearly documented and reported in the following ways.

- Record the adverse event in the patient's clinical record.
- Complete a detailed incident form as per local policy.
- Follow local, regional and national criteria for reporting via SABRE and SHOT.

Acute haemolytic reactions

These are usually directly related to ABO incompatibilities due to an IBCT where antigen/antibody reactions occur when the recipient's antibodies react with surface antigens on the donor red cells. This reaction causes a cascade of events within the recipient. Such reaction can present with chills/rigors, facial flushing, pain/oozing at cannula site, burning along the vein, chest pain, lumbar or flank pain, or shock (Gillespie and Hillyer 2001, McClelland 2007). Patients may express a feeling of anxiety or doom, which may be associated with cytokine activity. Haemolytic shock can occur after only a few millilitres of blood have been infused. Treatment is often vigorous to reverse hypotension, aid adequate renal perfusion and renal flow to reduce potential damage to renal tubules, and appropriate therapy for DIC reactions (Provan *et al.* 2009). It is important to remember that most acute haemolytic reactions are preventable as they are usually caused by clerical or checking errors at the bedside, and as this is the final check before administration, it presents the last opportunity to identify and avert an error, thus emphasizing the importance of the final check before transfusion (McClelland 2007) (Figure 8.9).

Figure 8.9 Check the compatability label or tie-on-tag against the patient's wristband.



Acute anaphylactic reactions

These are rare and usually occur after only a few millilitres of blood or plasma have been infused (Weinstein and Plumer 2007) and present with bronchial spasm, respiratory distress, abdominal cramps, shock and potential loss of consciousness.

Circulatory overload (transfusion-associated circulatory overload: TACO)

Circulatory overload can occur when blood or any of its components are infused rapidly or administered to a patient with an increased plasma volume, causing hypervolaemia. Patients at risk are those with renal or cardiac deficiencies, the young and elderly (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). Patients with signs of cardiac failure should receive their transfusion slowly with diuretic support (McClelland 2007). The need for concomitant drugs such as diuretics should always be assessed before commencing treatment (SNBTS 2004).

Febrile non-haemolytic reactions

These reactions are due to an immunological response to the transfusion of cellular components such as donor leucocytes. Specific patient groups are at risk of greater sensitization to leucocytes, for example, critically

ill patients, those receiving anticancer therapies or patients requiring multiple transfusion therapy (Williamson *et al.* 1999). Such reactions present with a mild fever (up to 1.5°C), rash without systemic disturbance and moderate tachycardia without hypotension (SNBTS 2004).

Hypothermia

Infusing large quantities of cold blood rapidly can cause hypothermia. Patients likely to suffer from this reaction are those who have suffered massive blood loss due to trauma, haemorrhage, clotting disorders or thrombocytopenia (McClelland 2007). Such reactions present with alteration in vital signs, and development of pallor and chills.

Delayed effects

These reactions may occur days, months or even years after transfusion.

Delayed haemolytic reactions

These reactions are caused when immune antibodies react to a foreign antigen. Reactions are classified as primary or secondary. A *primary* reaction is often mild, occurring days or weeks after initial transfusion, and may be indicated by no clinical alteration in haemoglobin following transfusion therapy (Cook 1997a). *Secondary* reactions occur with re-exposure to the same antigen, and on rare occasions may be associated with ABO incompatibilities (Cook 1997a). The patient may present with a fever, mild jaundice and unexplained decrease in haemoglobin value and may require antiglobulin testing (McClelland 2007).

Hyperkalaemia

Hyperkalaemia is a rare complication associated with trauma and the subsequent infusion of large quantities of blood. Potassium is known to leak out of red cells during storage, thereby increasing circulatory levels in recipients receiving blood products (Cook 1997b). The process is exacerbated if products are kept too long at room temperature or gamma irradiated (Davies and Williamson 1998). From starting the infusion to

completion, the infusion should take a maximum of 4 hours (McClelland 2007). The patient may present with irritability, anxiety, abdominal cramps, diarrhoea and weakness in the extremities (Cook 1997b). The patient's medical team should be contacted to assess the patient.

Iron overload

Patients who are dependent on frequent transfusion, such as those with thalassaemic, sickle cell and other transfusion-dependent disorders, can become overloaded with iron (McClelland 2007). A unit of red blood cells contains 250 mg iron, which the body is unable to excrete, and as a result patients receiving large volumes of blood are at risk of iron overload (Davies and Williamson 1998). This can result in poor growth, pigment changes, hepatic cirrhosis, hypoparathyroidism, diabetes, arrhythmia, cardiac failure and death. Chelation therapy through the use of desferrioxamine, which induces iron excretion, is used to minimize the accumulation of iron (BNF 2011).

Websites and useful addresses

www.bda.uk.com/resources/Delivering_Nutritional_Care_through_Food_Beverage_Services.pdf

www.bapen.org.uk/ofnsh/OrganizationOfNutritionalSupportWithinHospitals.pdf

www.npsa.nhs.uk/nrls/improvingpatientsafety/cleaning-and-nutrition/nutrition/good-nutritional-care-in-hospitals/nutrition-fact-sheets

www.npsa.nhs.uk/nrls/improvingpatientsafety/cleaning-and-nutrition/nutrition/good-nutritional-care-in-hospitals/nutrition-fact-sheets

www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsPolicyAndGuidance/DH_079931

www.scie.org.uk/publications/guides/guide15/mealtimes

www.bapen.org.uk/pdfs/nsw/nsw07_report.pdf

www.bapen.org.uk/pdfs/nsw/nsw07_report.pdf

www.ageconcern.org.uk/AgeConcern/Hungry_to_be_Heard_August_2006.pdf

www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsPolicyAndGuidance/DH_079931

www.dh.gov.uk/en/SocialCare/Socialcarereform/Dignityincare/

www.dh.gov.uk/PolicyandGuidance/HealthandSocialCareTopics/SpecialisedServices

www.espen.org/espenguidelines.html

www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/cg032fullguideline.pdf

www.bcshguidelines.com

www.hospital.blood.co.uk

www.mhra.gov.uk

www.shotuk.org

www.transfusionguidelines.org.uk

Age Concern

Telephone: 0800 00 99 66

Website: www.ageuk.org.uk

Patients on Intravenous and Nasogastric Nutrition Therapy (PINNT)

Telephone: 01202 481 625

Website: www.pinnt.com

PINNT is a support group for patients receiving parenteral or enteral nutrition therapy.

References

Adam, S.K. and Osborne, S. (2005) *Critical Care Nursing: Science and Practice*, 2nd edn. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Age Concern (2006) *Hungry to be Heard*. Age Concern, London. www.ageconcern.org.uk/AgeConcern/Documents/Hungry_to_be_Heard_August_2006.pdf

Aguzzi, A. and Collinge, J. (1997) Post-exposure prophylaxis after accidental prion inoculation. *Lancet*, **350** (9090), 1519–1520.

Ainslie, P.N., Campbell, I.T., Frayn, K.N. et al. (2002) Energy balance, metabolism, hydration, and performance during strenuous hill walking: the effect of age. *Journal of Applied Physiology*, **93** (2), 714–723.

Alexander, M.F., Fawcett, J.N. and Runciman, P.J. (2000) *Nursing Practice: Hospital and Home: the Adult*, 2nd edn. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

BAPEN (1999) *Current Perspectives on Enteral Nutrition in Adults*. British Association for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition, Maidenhead.

BAPEN (2003a) *Malnutrition Universal Screeening Tool 'Must' Report*. British Association for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition, Maidenhead.

BAPEN (2003b) *Tube Feeding and Your Medicines: A Guide for Patients and Carers*. British Association for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition, Maidenhead.

BAPEN (2009) *Nutrition Screening Survey in the UK in 2008. Hospitals, Care Homes and Mental Health Units. A Report by the*

BAPEN. British Association for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition, Maidenhead. www.bapen.org.uk/pdfs/nsw/nsw_report2008–09.pdf

Baraz, S., Parvardeh, S., Mohammadi, E. and Broumand, B. (2009) Dietary and fluid compliance: an educational intervention for patients having haemodialysis. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **66** (1), 60–68.

Barbara, J.A.J. and Contreras, M. (2009) Infectious complications of blood transfusion: bacteria and parasites. In: Contreras, M. (ed) *ABC of Transfusion*, 4th edn. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford. pp. 69–73.

Battezzati, A., Bertoli, S., Testolin, C. and Testolin, G. (2003) Body composition assessment: an indispensable tool for disease management. *Acta Diabetologica*, **40** (Suppl 1), S151–S153.

Bauer, J., Capra, S. and Ferguson, M. (2002) Use of scored patient-generated subjective global assessment (PG-SGA) as a nutritional assessment tool in patients with cancer. *European Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, **56** (8), 779–785.

Baumberger-Henry, M. (2008) *Quick Look Nursing: Fluids and Electrolytes*, 2nd edn Jones and Barlett, Sudbury, MA.

BCSH (2009) *Guideline on the Administration of Blood Components*. British Society of Haematology, London. www.bcshguidelines.com/pdf/Admin_blood_components050110.pdf

BCSH, RCN, RCS (1999) The administration of blood components and the management of transfused patients. *Transfusion Medicine*, **9**, 227–238.

Bedogni, G., Borghi, A. and Battistini, N. (2003) Body water distribution and disease. *Acta Diabetologica*, **40** (Suppl 1), S200–S202.

Bedogni, G., Brambilla, A., Bellentani, S. and Tiribelli, C. (2006) The assessment of body composition in health and disease. *Human Ecology*, **14**, 21–25.

Bingham, S.A. (1987) The dietary assessment of individuals: methods, accuracy, new techniques and recommendations. *Nutrition Abstracts and Reviews*, **57**, 705–742.

Bishop, E. (2008) Blood transfusion therapy. In: Dougherty L. and Lamb J. (eds) *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice*, 2nd edn.

Blackwell Publishing, Oxford. pp. 377–394.

Blood Safety and Quality Regulations (2005) *SI 2005/50*. Stationery Office, London. www.opsi.gov.uk/si/si2005/20050050.htm

BNF (2011) *British National Formulary*. BMJ Group and RPS Publishing, London.

Bodger, K. and Heatley, R.V. (2001) The immune system and nutrition support. In: Payne-James, J., Grimble, G. and D.B.A., Silk (eds) *Artificial Nutrition Support in Clinical Practice*. Greenwich Medical Media, London, pp. 137–148.

Bozzetti, F. (2001) Nutrition support in patients with cancer. In: Payne-James, J., Grimble, G. and D.B.A., Silk (eds) *Artificial Nutrition Support in Clinical Practice*. Greenwich Medical Media, London, pp. 639–680.

Bradley, L. and Rees, C. (2003) Reducing nutritional risk in hospital: the red tray. *Nursing Standard*, **17** (26), 33–37.

Bradley, R. (1999) BSE transmission studies with particular reference to blood. *Developments in Biological Standardization*, **99**, 35–40.

Braga, M., Gianotti, L., Vignali, A. and Carlo, V.D. (2002) Preoperative oral arginine and n-3 fatty acid supplementation improves the immunometabolic host response and outcome after colorectal resection for cancer. *Surgery*, **132** (5), 805–814.

Brown, P. (2005) Blood infectivity, processing and screening tests in transmissible spongiform encephalopathy. *Vox sanguinis*, **89** (2), 63–70.

Bryant, H. (2007) Dehydration in older people: assessment and management. *Emergency Nurse*, **15** (4), 22–26.

Burnham, R. and Barton, S. (2001) The role of the nutrition support team. In: Payne-James, J., Grimble, G. and D.B.A., Silk (eds) *Artificial Nutrition Support in Clinical Practice*. Greenwich Medical Media, London, pp. 241–253.

Callum, K.G., Gray, A.J.G., Hoile, R.W. et al. (1999) *Extremes of Age: The 1999 Report of the National Confidential Enquiry in Perioperative Deaths*. National Confidential Enquiry into Perioperative Deaths, London. www.ncepod.org.uk/pdf/1999/99full.pdf

Carless, P., Moxey, A., O'Connell, D. and Henry, D. (2004) Autologous transfusion techniques: a systematic review of their efficacy. *Tranfusion Medicine*, **14** (2), 123–144.

Casey, G. (2004) Oedema: causes, physiology and nursing management. *Nursing Standard*, **18** (51), 45–51.

Cervenakova, L. and Brown, P. (2004) Advances in screening test development for transmissible spongiform encephalopathies. *Expert Review of Anti-Infective Therapy*, **2** (6), 873–880.

Chung, L.H., Chong, S. and French, P. (2002) The efficiency of fluid balance charting: an evidence-based management project. *Journal of Nursing Management*, **10** (2), 103–113.

Committee on Medical Aspects of Food Policy (COMA) and DH (1991) *Dietary Reference Values for Food Energy and Nutrients for the United Kingdom: Report of the Panel on Dietary Reference Values of the Committee on Medical Aspects of Food Policy*. HMSO, London.

Contreras, M. and Navarrete, C. (2009) Immunological complications of blood transfusion. In: Contreras, M. (ed) *ABC of Transfusion*, 4th edn. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford. pp. 61–68.

Council of Europe (2003) *Food and Nutritional Care in Hospitals: How to Prevent Undernutrition*. Council of Europe, Paris.

Cook (uk) Limited (2007) *Radiologically inserted gastrostomy and gastrojejunostomy*. Monroe House, Letchworth, Herts.

Cook, L.S. (1997a) Blood transfusion reactions involving an immune response. *Journal of Intravenous Nursing*, **20** (1), 5–14.

Cook, L.S. (1997b) Nonimmune transfusion reactions: when type-and-cross match aren't enough. *Journal of Intravenous Nursing*, **20** (1), 15–22.

Cook, N.F., Deeny, P. and Thompson, K. (2004) Management of fluid and hydration in patients with acute subarachnoid haemorrhage – an action research project. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **13** (7), 835–849.

Cummings, J.H. (2000) Nutritional management of diseases of the gut. In: Garrow, J.S., James W.P.T. and Ralph A. (eds) *Human Nutrition and Dietetics*, 10th edn. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh. pp. 547–573.

Davies, S.C. and Williamson, L.M. (1998) Transfusion of red cells. In: Contreras, M. (ed) *ABC of Transfusion*, 4th edn. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford. pp. 10–17.

DH (2001a) *National Service Framework for Older People*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2001b) *The Essence of Care: Patient-Focused Benchmarking for Health Care Practitioners*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2007) *Better Blood Tranfusion: Safe and Appropriate Use of Blood: HSC 2007/001*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/documents/digitalasset/dh_080803.pdf

Domen, R.E. and Hoeltge, G.A. (2003) Allergic transfusion reactions: an evaluation of 273 consecutive reactions. *Archives of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine*, **127** (3), 316–320.

Durnin, J.V. and Womersley, J. (1974) Body fat assessed from total body density and its estimation from skinfold thickness: measurements on 481 men and women aged from 16 to 72 years. *British Journal of Nutrition*, **32** (1), 77–97.

Edwards, S.L. (2000) Fluid overload and monitoring indices. *Professional Nurse*, **15** (9), 568–572.

Ekberg, O., Hamdy, S., Woisard, V. et al. (2002) Social and psychological burden of dysphagia: its impact on diagnosis and treatment. *Dysphagia*, **17** (2), 139–146.

Elebute, M., Stanworth, S. and Navarrete, C. (2009) Platelet and granulocyte transfusions. In: Contreras, M. (ed) *ABC of Transfusion*, 4th edn. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, pp. 22–26.

Elia, M. (2001) Metabolic response to starvation, injury and sepsis. In: Payne-James, J., Grimble, G. and D.B.A., Silk (eds) *Artificial Nutrition Support in Clinical Practice*. Greenwich Medical Media, London, pp. 1–24.

Englesbe, M.J., Pelletier, S.J., Diehl, K.M. et al. (2005) Transfusions in surgical patients. *Journal of the American College of Surgeons*, **200** (2), 249–254.

Epstein, O., Solomons, N.B. and Robins, A. (2003) *Clinical Examination,* 3rd edn. Mosby, Edinburgh.

Federico, A. (2009) Transfusion-related acute lung injury. *Journal of Perianesthesia Nursing*, **24** (1), 35–37.

Fields, R.C. and Meyers, B.F. (2006) The effects of perioperative blood transfusion on morbidity and mortality after esophagectomy. *Thoracic Surgery Clinics*, **16** (1), 75–86.

Flanagan, J., Melillo, K.D., Abdallah, L. and Remington, R. (2007) Interpreting laboratory values in the rehabilitation setting. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, **32** (2), 77–84.

Fraise, A.P. and Bradley, T. (eds) (2009) *Ayliffe's Control of Healthcare-associated Infection: A Practical Handbook,* 5th edn. Hodder Arnold, London.

Freeman, L. (2002) Food record charts. *Nursing Times*, **98** (34), 53–54.

Friedman, D. (2001) Hepatitis. In: Hillyer, C.D. (ed) *Handbook of Transfusion Medicine*. Academic, San Diego, pp. 275–284.

FSA and Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals (2003) *Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals*. Food Standards Agency, London. www.food.gov.uk/multimedia/pdfs/vitmin2003.pdf

Gaziano, J.E. (2002) Evaluation and management of oropharyngeal dysphagia in head and neck cancer. *Cancer Control*, **9** (5), 400–409.

Geissler, C. and Powers, H. (2005) *Human Nutrition*, 11th edn. Elsevier Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

Gidden, F. and Shenkin, A. (2000) Laboratory support of the clinical nutrition service. *Clinical Chemistry and Laboratory Medicine*, **38** (8), 693–714.

Gillespie, T.W. and Hillyer, D. (2001) Granulocytes. In: Hillyer, C.D. (ed) *Handbook of Transfusion Medicine*. Academic, San Diego, pp. 63–68.

Goertz, S. (2006) Gauging fluid balance with osmolality. *Nursing*, **36** (10), 70–71.

Gray, A. and Illingworth, J. (2005) *Right Blood, Right Patient, Right Time: RCN Guidance for Improving Transfusion Practice*. Royal

College of Nursing, London. http://www.rcn.org.uk/_data/assets/pdf_file/0009/78615/002306.pdf

Gray, A., Hearnshaw, K., Izatt, C. et al. (2007) Safe transfusion of blood and blood components. *Nursing Standard*, **21** (51), 40–47.

Green, J. and Pirie, L. (2009) *A Framework to Support Nurses and Midwives Making the Clinical Decision and Providing the Written Instruction for Blood Component Transfusion*. UK Blood Transfusion Services, London. www.transfusionguidelines.org.uk/docs/pdfs/BTFramework-final010909.pdf

Griffiths, M. (1996) Single-stage percutaneous gastrostomy button insertion: a leap forward. *Journal of Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition*, **20** (3), 237–239.

Groher, M.E. (1997) *Dysphagia: Diagnosis and Management*, 3rd edn. Butterworth-Heinemann, Boston.

Harrison, J. (2004) Getting your own back – an update on autologous transfusion. *Blood Matters*, **16**, 7–9. www.blood.co.uk/pdf/publications/blood_matters_16.pdf

Haskal, R. (2007) Current issues for nurse practitioners: hyponatremia. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, **19** (11), 563–579.

Healthcare Commission (2007) *Patient Survey Report 2007*. Healthcare Commission, London. www.nnuh.nhs.uk/viewdoc.asp?ID=329&t=TrustDoc

Henry, D.A., Carless, P.A., Moxey, A.J. *et al*. (2002) Pre-operative autologous donation for minimising perioperative allogeneic blood transfusion. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*, (2), CD003602.

Hepatitis B Foundation UK (2007) *Rising Curve: Chronic Hepatitis B Infection in the UK*. www.hepb.org.uk/information/resrources/rising-curve-chronic-hepatitis-b-infection-in-the-uk/.

Hoffbrand, A.V., Moss, P.A.H. and Pettit, J.E. (2006) *Essential Haematology*, 5th edn. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Horgan, G.W. and Stubbs, J. (2003) Predicting basal metabolic rate in the obese is difficult. *European Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, **57** (2), 335–340.

James, V. (2004) *A National Blood Conservation Strategy for NBTC and NBS: Report from the Working Party Autologous Transfusion and the Working Party on Alternatives to Transfusion of the NBS Sub-group on Appropriate use of Blood*. National Blood Service, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/documents/digitalasset/dh_4089513.pdf

James, V. (2005) *Guidelines for the Blood Transfusion Services in the United Kingdom*, 7th edn. Stationery Office, London.

James, V. and Harrison, J. (2002) The pros and cons of predeposit autologous donation and transfusion. *Blood Matters*, (11), 4–5. www.blood.co.uk/pdf/publications/blood_matters_11.pdf

Janssen, I., Heymsfield, S.B., Baumgartner, R.N. and Ross, R. (2000) Estimation of skeletal muscle mass by bioelectrical impedance analysis. *Journal of Applied Physiology*, **89** (2), 465–471.

Jevon, P. (2010) How to ensure patient observations lead to effective management of oliguria. *Nursing Times*, **106** (7), 18–19.

Jevon, P. and Ewens, B. (2007) *Monitoring the Critically Ill Patient*, 2nd edn. Blackwell, Oxford.

John, T., Rodeman, R. and Colvin, R. (2008) Blood conservation in a congenital cardiac surgery program. *AORN Journal*, **87** (6), 1180–1186.

JPAC (Joint UKBTS/NIBSC Professional Advisory Committee) (2007) *JPAC Donor Selection Guidelines*. www.transfusionguidelines.org.uk.

King's Fund Research Summary (2005) *Sustainable Food and The NHS*. www.kingsfund.org.uk/publications/kings_fund_publications/sustainable_food.html.

Kondrup, J., Allison, S.P., Elia, M. et al. (2003) ESPEN guidelines for nutrition screening 2002. *Clinical Nutrition*, **22** (4), 415–421.

Kroke, A., Klipstein-Grobusch, K., Voss, S. et al. (1999) Validation of a self-administered food-frequency questionnaire administered in the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC)

Study: comparison of energy, protein, and macronutrient intakes estimated with the doubly labeled water, urinary nitrogen, and repeated 24-h dietary recall methods. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, **70** (4), 439–447.

Kyle, U.G., Bosaeus, I., de Lorenzo, A.D. et al. (2004) Bioelectrical impedance analysis – part II: utilization in clinical practice. *Clinical Nutrition*, **23** (6), 1430–1453.

Langmore, S.E. (2001) *Endoscopic Evaluation and Treatment of Swallowing Disorders*. Thieme, New York.

Langmore, S.E., Terpenning, M.S., Schork, A. et al. (1998) Predictors of aspiration pneumonia: how important is dysphagia? *Dysphagia*, **13** (2), 69–81.

Leslie, P., Carding, P.N. and Wilson, J.A. (2003) Investigation and management of chronic dysphagia. *British Medical Journal (Clinical Research)*, **326** (7386), 433–436.

Levi, R. (2005) Nursing care to prevent dehydration in older adults. *Australian Nursing Journal*, **13** (3), 21–23.

Logemann, J.A. (1998) *Evaluation and Treatment of Swallowing Disorders*, 2nd edn. Pro-Ed, Austin, TX.

Logemann, J.A., Pauloski, B.R., Rademaker, A.W. et al. (2008) Swallowing disorders in the first year after radiation and chemoradiation. *Head Neck*, **30** (2), 148–158.

Loser, C., Aschl, G., Hebuterne, X. et al. (2005) ESPEN guidelines on artificial enteral nutrition – percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG). *Clinical Nutrition*, **24** (5), 848–861.

Louis, C.U. and Heslop, H.E. (2009) Viral infections. In: Treleaven, J. and Barrett, A.J. (eds) *Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation in Clinical Practice*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh, pp. 423–426.

Ludlam, C.A. and Turner, M.L. (2006) Managing the risk of transmission of variant Creutzfeldt Jakob disease by blood products. *British Journal of Haematology*, **132** (1), 13–24.

Marieb, E.N. and Hoehn, K. (2010) *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th edn. Benjamin Cummings, San Francisco.

Matlow, A., Jacobson, M., Wray, R. et al. (2006) Enteral tube hub as a reservoir for transmissible enteric bacteria. *American Journal of Infection Control*, **34** (3), 131–133.

McClelland, D.B.L. (2007) *Handbook of Transfusion Medicine*. Stationery Office, London.

MCS (2009) *Diet and Cancer: A Practical Guide to Living with and After Cancer*, 11th edn. Macmillan Cancer Support, London.

Mentes, J. (2006) Oral hydration in older adults: greater awareness is needed in preventing, recognizing, and treating dehydration. *American Journal of Nursing*, **106** (6), 40–49.

Metheny, N.A. and Meert, K.L. (2004) Monitoring feeding tube placement. *Nutrition in Clinical Practice*, **19** (5), 487–495.

Metheny, N.A. and Titler, M.G. (2001) Assessing placement of feeding tubes. *American Journal of Nursing*, **101** (5), 36–45; quiz 45–46.

Metheny, N., Reed, L., Wiersema, L. et al. (1993) Effectiveness of pH measurements in predicting feeding tube placement: an update. *Nursing Research*, **42** (6), 324–331.

Moftah, F. (2005) Blood transfusion and alternatives in elderly, malignancy and chronic disease. *Hematology*, **10** (Suppl 1), 82–85.

Mollison, P.L., Engelfriet, C.P. and Contreras, M. (1997) *Blood Transfusion in Clinical Medicine*, 10th edn. Blackwell Science, Oxford.

Mooney, G.P. (2007) Fluid balance. *Nursing Times*. www.nursingtimes.net/nursing-practice-clinical-research/fluid-balance/199391.article.

Murdock, J., Watson, D., Doree, C.J. et al. (2009) Drugs and blood transfusions: dogma- or evidence-based practice? *Transfusion Medicine*, **19** (1), 6–15.

NAGE (n.d.) *Have You Got a Small Appetite?* Nutrition Advisory Group for Elderly People of the British Dietetic Association, Rotherham.

National CJD Surveillance Unit (2008) *16th Annual Report*. www.cjd.ed.ac.uk/.

NCCAC (2006) *Nutrition Support for Adults: Oral Nutrition, Enteral Support, Enteral Tube Feeding and Parenteral Nutrition: Methods,*

Evidence and Guidance. National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care, London. www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/cg032fullguideline.pdf

Newman, L.A., Vieira, F., Schwiezer, V. et al. (1998) Eating and weight changes following chemoradiation therapy for advanced head and neck cancer. *Archives of Otolaryngology, Head and Neck Surgery*, **124** (5), 589–592.

NICE (2003) *Infection Control: Prevention of Healthcare-Associated Infection in Primary and Community Care: NICE Clinical Guideline 2*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London. www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/10922/29117/29117.pdf.

NICE (2007) *Acutely Ill Patients in Hospital: Recognition of and Response to Acute Illness in Adults in Hospital: NICE Clinical Guideline 50*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London. www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/10893/28816/28816.pdf

NMC (2008a) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2008b) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent.

NMC (2008c) *Standards for Medicines Management*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NPSA (2005) *Reducing the Harm Caused by Misplaced Nasogastric Feeding Tubes: Patient Safety Alert 5*. National Patient Safety Agency, London. www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/?entryid45=59794

NPSA (2007a) *Protected Mealtimes Review: Findings and Recommendations Report*. National Patient Safety Agency, London. www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/?entryid45=59806

NPSA (2007b) *Promoting Safer Measurement and Administration of Oral Liquid Medicines. Patient Briefing Alert*. National Patient Safety Agency, London. www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/?entryid45=59808.

NPSA (2009) 10 Key Charateristics of Good Nutritional Care: All Staff Volunteers have the Appropriate Skills and Competencies Needed to Ensure that the Nutritional and Fluid Needs of People Using Care Services are Met. *All Staff/Volunteers Receive Regular Training on Nutritional Care and Management: Nutrition Fact Sheet 8*. National Patient Safety Agency, London. www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/?EntryId45=59865

Nutrition Summit Stakeholder Group and DH (2007) *Improving Nutritional Care: A Joint Action Plan from the Department of Health and Nutrition Summit Stakeholders*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/documents/digitalasset/dh_079932.pdf

Oldham, J., Sinclair, L. and Hendry, C. (2009) Right patient, right blood, right care: safe transfusion practice. *British Journal of Nursing*, **18** (5), 312, 314, 316–320.

Pauloski, B.R., Rademaker, A.W., Logemann, J.A. et al. (2002) Swallow function and perception of dysphagia in patients with head and neck cancer. *Head Neck*, **24** (6), 555–565.

Payne-James, J., Grimble, G. and Silk, D. (2001) Enteral nutrition: tubes and techniques of delivery. In: Payne-James, J., Grimble, G. and D.B.A., Silk (eds) *Artificial Nutrition Support in Clinical Practice*. Greenwich Medical Media, London, pp. 281–302.

Pennington, C.R. (1997) Disease and malnutrition in British hospitals. *Proceedings of the Nutrition Society*, **56** (1B), 393–407.

Perel, P. and Roberts, I. (2007) Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, (4), CD000567.

Pickhardt, P.J., Rohrmann, C.A. Jr. and Cossentino, M.J. (2002) Stomal metastases complicating percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy: CT findings and the argument for radiologic tube placement. *American Journal of Roentgenology*, **179** (3), 735–739.

Pirie, E.S. and Gray, M.A. (2007) Exploring the assessors' and nurses' experience of formal assessment of clinical competency in the

administration of blood components. *Nurse Education in Practice*, **7** (4), 215–227.

Porth, C. (2005) *Pathophysiology: Concepts of Altered Health States*, 7th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia, PA.

Powell-Tuck, J., Gosling, P., Lobo, D.N. et al. (2009) *British Consensus Guidelines on Intravenous Fluid Therapy For Adult Surgical Patients*. British Association for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition, Maidenhead.

PPSA (2006) Confirming feeding tube placement: old habits die hard. Pennsylvania Patient Safety Authority, USA. www.patientsafetyauthority.org/ADVISORIES/AdvisoryLibrary/2006/Dec.

Provan, D., Singer, C.R.J., Baglin, T. and Dokal, I. (2009) *Oxford Handbook of Clinical Haematology*, 3rd edn. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

RCN (2006) *Right Blood, Right Patient, Right Time*. Royal College of Nursing, London.

Reid, J., Robb, E., Stone, D. et al. (2004) Improving the monitoring and assessment of fluid balance. *Nursing Times*, **100** (20), 36–39.

Resuscitation Council (2005) *Resuscitation Guidelines 2005*. Resuscitation Council, London. www.resus.org.uk/pages/guide.htm

Ripamonti, C. and Mercadante, S. (2004) How to use octreotide for malignant bowel obstruction. *Journal of Supportive Oncology*, **2** (4), 357–364.

Rollins, H. (1997) A nose for trouble. *Nursing Times*, **93** (49), 66–67.

Roubenoff, R. and Kehayias, J.J. (1991) The meaning and measurement of lean body mass. *Nutrition Reviews*, **49** (6), 163–175.

Royal Marsden NHS Trust (2002) *Eating Well When you Have Cancer – A Guide for Cancer Patients*. Royal Marsden NHS Trust, London.

Samuels, R. and Chadwick, D.D. (2006) Predictors of asphyxiation risk in adults with intellectual disabilities and dysphagia. *Journal of Intellectual Disability Research*, **50** (Pt 5), 362–370.

Scales, K. and Pilsworth, J. (2008) The importance of fluid balance in clinical practice. *Nursing Standard*, **22** (47), 50–57.

Schofield, W.N. (1985) Predicting basal metabolic rate, new standards and review of previous work. *Human Nutrition, Clinical Nutrition*, **39** (Suppl 1), 5–41.

Shaw, V. and Lawson, M. (2007) Nutritional assessment, dietary requirements and feed supplementation. In: Shaw, V. and Lawson, M. (eds) *Clinical Paediatric Dietetics*, 3rd edn. Blackwell, Oxford, pp. 3–20.

Shenkin, A. (2001) Adult micronutrient requirements. In: Payne-James, J., Grimble, G. and D.B.A., Silk (eds) *Artificial Nutrition Support in Clinical Practice*. Greenwich Medical Media, London, pp. 193–212.

Sheppard, M. and Wright, M.M.B.A. (2006) *Principles and Practice of High Dependency Nursing*, 2nd edn. Bailliére Tindall, Edinburgh.

SHOT (2005) *Annual Report 2005*. Serious Hazards of Transfusion, London.

SHOT (2008) *Annual Report 2008*. Serious Hazards of Transfusion, London.

Smith Hammond, C. (2008) Cough and aspiration of food and liquids due to oral pharyngeal dysphagia. *Lung*, **186** (Suppl 1), S35–S40.

SNBTS (2004) *Better Blood Transfusion Level 1: Safe Transfusion Practice : Self-Directed Learning Pack*. Effective Use of Blood Group, Scottish National Blood Transfusion Service, Edinburgh. www.learnbloodtransfusion.org.uk/Level_1_SDL.pdf

Sorkin, J.D., Muller, D.C. and Andres, R. (1999) Longitudinal change in height of men and women: implications for interpretation of the body mass index: the Baltimore longitudinal study of aging. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, **150** (9), 969–977.

Sumnall, R. (2007) Fluid management and diuretic therapy in acute renal failure. *Nursing in Critical Care*, **12** (1), 27–33.

Thomas, B. and Bishop, J. (2007) *Manual of Dietetic Practice*, 4th edn. Blackwell, Oxford.

Thomas, M.L. (2007) Strategies for achieving transfusion independence in myelodysplastic syndromes. *European Journal of Oncology Nursing*, **11** (2), 151–158.

Todorovic, V.E. and Micklewright, A. (eds) (2004) *A Pocket Guide to Clinical Nutrition*, 3rd edn. Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition Group of the British Dietetic Association, London.

Tolich, D.J. (2008) Alternatives to blood transfusion. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, **31** (1), 46–51.

Urden, L.D., Stacy, K.M., Lough, M.E. and Thelan, L.A.T.(eds) (2002) *Thelan's Critical Care Nursing: Diagnosis and Management*, 4th edn. Mosby, St. Louis, MO.

Vamvakas, E.C. (1999) Risk of transmission of Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease by transfusion of blood, plasma, and plasma derivatives. *Journal of Clinical Apheresis*, **14** (3), 135–143.

Van Loan, M.D. (2003) Body composition in disease: what can we measure and how can we measure it? *Acta Diabetologica*, **40** (Suppl 1), S154–S157.

Van Wissen, K. and Breton, C. (2004) Perioperative influences on fluid distribution. *Medsurg Nursing*, **13** (5), 304–311.

Weimann, A., Braga, M., Harsanyi, L. et al. (2006) ESPEN guidelines on enteral nutrition: surgery including organ transplantation. *Clinical Nutrition*, **25** (2), 224–244.

Weinstein, S.M. and Plumer, A.L. (eds) (2007) *Plumer's Principles and Practice of Intravenous Therapy*, 8th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia, PA.

WHO (2005) *The clinical use of blood*. WHO/BTS/99.2. whqlibdoc.who.int/hq/2001/a72894.pdf.

Wilkinson, J. and Wilkinson, C. (2001) Administration of blood transfusions to adults in general hospital settings: a review of the literature. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **10** (2), 161–170.

Williamson, L.M., Lowe, S., Love, E. et al. (1999) *Serious Hazards of Transfusion*. SHOT, Manchester. www.shotuk.org/wp-content/uploads/2010/04/SHOT-Report-1997–98.pdf

Wright, L., Cotter, D. and Hickson, M. (2008) The effectiveness of targeted feeding assistance to improve the nutritional intake of elderly

dysphagic patients in hospital. *Journal of Human Nutrition and Dietetics*, **21** (6), 555–562.

Multiple choice questions

1 Dehydration is of particular concern in ill heath. If a patient is receiving intravenous (IV) fluid replacement and is having their fluid balance recorded, which of the following statements is true of someone said to be in a 'positive fluid balance'?

a The fluid output has exceeded the input.

b The doctor may consider increasing the IV drip rate.

c The fluid balance chart can be stopped as 'positive' in this instance means 'good'.

d The fluid input has exceeded the output.

2 What specifically do you need to monitor to avoid complications and ensure optimal nutritional status in patients being enterally fed?

a Blood glucose levels, full blood count, stoma site and bodyweight.

b Eye sight, hearing, full blood count, lung function and stoma site.

c Assess swallowing, patient choice, fluid balance, capillary refill time.

d Daily urinalysis, ECG, protein levels and arterial pressure.

3 A patient needs weighing, as he is due a drug that is calculated on bodyweight. He experiences a lot of pain on movement so is reluctant to move, particularly stand up. What would you do?

a Document clearly in the patient's notes that a weight cannot be obtained.

b Offer the patient pain relief and either use bed scales or a hoist with scales built in.

c Discuss the case with your colleagues and agree to guess his bodyweight until he agrees to stand and use the chair scales.

d Omit the drug as it is not safe to give it without this information; inform the doctor and document your actions.

4 If the prescribed volume is taken, which of the following types of feed will provide all protein, vitamins, minerals and trace elements to meet a patient's nutritional requirements?

a Protein shakes/supplements.

b Sip feeds.

c Energy drinks.

d Mixed fat and glucose polymer solutions/powders.

5 A patient has been admitted for nutritional support and started receiving a hyperosmolar feed yesterday. He presents with diarrhoea but has no pyrexia. What is likely to be the cause?

a The feed.

b An infection.

c Food poisoning.

d Being in hospital.

6 Your patient has a bulky oesophageal tumour and is waiting for surgery. When he tries to eat, food gets stuck and gives him heartburn. What is the most likely route that will be chosen to provide him with the nutritional support he needs?

a Nasogastric tube feeding.

b Feeding via a percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG).

c Feeding via a radiologically inserted gastrostomy (RIG).

d Continue oral food.

7 What is the best way to prevent a patient who is receiving an enteral feed from aspirating?

a Lie them flat.

b Sit them at least at a 45° angle.

c Tell them to lie on their side.

d Check their oxygen saturations.

8 Which of the following medications are safe to be administered via a nasogastric tube?

a Enteric-coated drugs to minimize the impact of gastric irritation.

b A cocktail of all medications mixed together, to save time and prevent fluid overloading the patient.

c Any drugs that can be crushed.

d Drugs that can be absorbed via this route, can be crushed and given diluted or dissolved in 10–15 mL of water.

9 Which check do you need to carry out before setting up an enteral feed via a nasogastric tube?

a That when flushed with red juice, the red juice can be seen when the tube is aspirated.

b That air cannot be heard rushing into the lungs by doing the 'whoosh test'.

c That the pH of gastric aspirate is <5.5, and the measurement on the NG tube is the same length as the time insertion.

d That pH of gastric aspirate is >6.0, and the measurement on the NG tube is the same length as the time insertion.

10 Fred is going to receive a blood transfusion. How frequently should we do his observations?

a Temperature and pulse before the blood transfusion begins, then every hour, and at the end of bag/unit.

b Temperature, pulse, blood pressure and respiration before the blood transfusion begins, then after 15 minutes, then as indicated in local guidelines, and finally at the end of the bag/unit.

c Temperature, pulse, blood pressure and respiration and urinalysis before the blood transfusion, then at end of bag.

d Pulse, blood pressure and respiration every hour, and at the end of the bag.

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com **and select the Student Edition tab.**

Chapter 9

Patient Comfort

Overview

The aim of this chapter is to present the many varied procedures that contribute towards the comfort of patients at all times. This ranges from the very specific procedures that are involved in pain management to those that promote comfort from a wider perspective, such as personal hygiene. In ensuring patient comfort, it is necessary to consider aspects of any procedure from the preplanning stage to the return of the patient to their preprocedure position.

Comfort will mean different things to different patients. It may involve being in a relaxed state free from pain, disappointment or perhaps satisfaction or physical well-being provided by another person. For the nurse, aspects of care to be considered include discussions prior to undertaking the procedure, gaining consent, ensuring pain control and maintaining privacy and dignity, offering mouthcare as well as paying attention to the patient's immediate environment.

Personal hygiene

Definition

Good 'personal hygiene is imperative for individuals' health and wellbeing' (Pegram *et al.* 2007, p.356). It is the physical act of cleaning the body to ensure that the skin, hair and nails are maintained in an optimum condition (DH 2001).

Anatomy and physiology

Skin

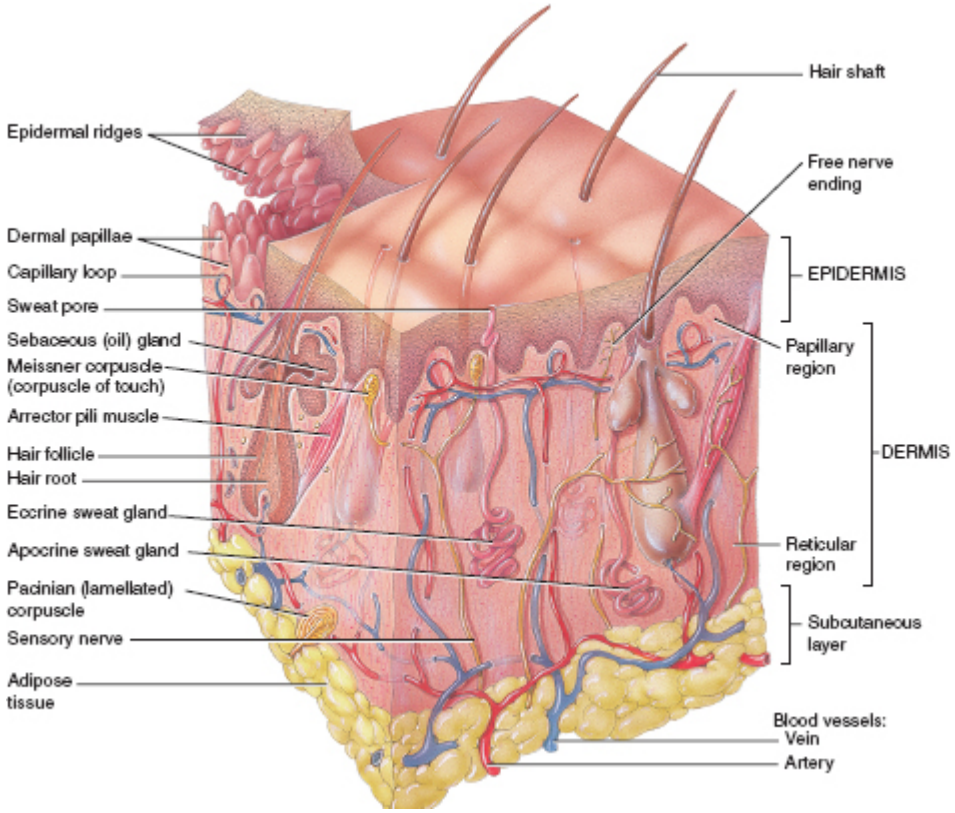
A definition of healthy skin is that it is fulfilling all of its functions, so an individual's quality of life is not adversely affected (Penzer and Finch 2001). Being the largest organ of the body, maintaining the skin's integrity is essential to the prevention of infection and the promotion of both physical and psychological health. The skin has several functions (Burr and Penzer 2005):

- regulation of temperature
- physical and immunological protection
- excretion and preservation of water balance
- sensory perception
- psychosocial: how the individual is perceived, and their own perceptions of their body image.

The skin is made up of three layers: epidermis, dermis and deep subcutaneous layer (Figure 9.1).

Figure 9.1 Skin and subcutaneous layer.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



Epidermis

The epidermis is the outer coating of the skin and contains no blood vessels or nerve endings. The cells on the surface are gradually shed and replaced by new cells which have developed from the deeper layers; this process takes approximately 28 days. The epidermis has hairs, sweat glands and the ducts of sebaceous glands passing through it. It provides an efficient natural barrier (Burr and Penzer 2005).

Dermis

The dermis is the thicker layer which contains blood and lymph vessels, nerve fibres, sweat and sebaceous glands. It is made up of white fibrous tissue and yellow elastic fibres which give the skin its toughness and elasticity. It provides the epidermis with structural and nutritional support (Holloway and Jones 2005).

Subcutaneous layer

The subcutaneous layer contains the deep fat cells (areolar and adipose tissue) and provides heat regulation for the body. It is also the support structure for the outer layers of the skin (Tortora and Derrickson 2009). Maintaining skin integrity, through good personal hygiene, will allow this complex system to provide an efficient natural barrier to the external environment.

It is important to remember that the skin is a changing organ, affected by internal and external factors, temperature, air humidity and age (Burr and Penzer 2005). It has a great ability to adapt to changes in the environment and stimuli but will be affected by ill health and immobility (McLoughlin 2005). Its integrity, continuity and cleanliness are essential to maintaining its physiological functions.

The ageing process can adversely affect the skin structure. Skin tissue becomes thin and less elastic and resistant to trauma and shearing forces. The blood supply is reduced as cells are replaced more slowly, which adversely affects healing. Transmission of stimuli from sensory receptors slows and can lead to damage. The production of natural oils declines and can lead to dry skin which increases the risk of infection and tissue breakdown (Penzer and Finch 2001). Hence extra care should

be taken when washing and drying elderly patients; nursing interventions can protect and restore the skin's natural barrier (Ersser *et al.* 2005).

Evidence-based approaches

Personal cleanliness is a fundamental value in society. Often, when patients become unwell they depend on nurses to assist them with meeting their personal hygiene needs. When this occurs, it is important that the nurse observes and assesses the patient's needs on an individual basis.

Hygiene is a personal entity and everyone will have their own individual requirements and standards of cleanliness. In this way, 'nurses must take care not to impose their own norms on patients and clients and should respect their autonomy in decisions concerning care' (Spiller 1992, p.431). Within the assessment, the patient's religious and cultural beliefs should be taken into account and incorporated into care. Personal hygiene is individual to that person and is also based on family influences, peer groups, economic and social factors (Cooper 1994).

In Western culture, privacy is of the utmost importance and considered to be a basic human right. However, in some religions like Islam, modesty is crucial and can be challenging to manage in the hospital setting (Hollins 2009). Patients may feel a great deal of embarrassment having to depend on another person to help them with this extremely private act. It is therefore surprising to find that so little reference is made to these elements in the literature. However, in the clinical situation the best person to refer to is the patient; this will encourage open honest communication between the patient and nurse (Pegram *et al.* 2007).

Florence Nightingale (1859) first noted the importance of good personal hygiene and the essential role nurses have in maintaining this, to prevent infection and increase well-being. Since then, nursing models have provided a conceptual framework for nursing practice and all make some reference to meeting patients' hygiene needs. Roper *et al.* 1981 adapted Henderson's original concept of nursing (Henderson 1966) to develop a model reflecting the activities of daily living. Another

example was given by Orem (1980) who focused on the ability of the patient to self-care and who refers to the universal self-care requisites of the skin, nail and hair condition and the patterns of standard hygiene. Gordon (1994) discusses formulation of nursing diagnosis. Following assessment, clusters of actual or potential health problems are established; specific diagnoses are used to describe these. Clinical knowledge is then applied, to provide problem-solving activities to achieve a set outcome.

The nurse's role is continued provision of appropriate levels of cleanliness (Young 1991), which promotes 'comfort, safety and well-being' for the patient and should be carried out with skill and knowledge (Whiting 1999, p.339). Frequently, the time taken to attend to personal hygiene will provide ample opportunity for communication. Wilson states:

> … a bed bath facilitates listening and enables the nurse to pick up cues to a patient's anxieties and fears. It provides the time and opportunity for the nurse to offer support and encouragement when difficult situations have to be confronted, solutions sought and decisions made …
>
> (Wilson 1986, p.81)

This also focuses on the nurse's ability to be with the patient as well as providing for the patient (Campbell 1984) and is part of the essence of nursing care (Kitson 1999).

It is during the delivery of personal hygiene that the nurse is able to demonstrate a wide range of skills such as assessment, communication, observation and caring for the patient. This can be the most significant social interaction of the day for the patient, as the nurse develops a deeper understanding of the patient's personality and needs, providing a personal bond between the nurse and patient (Hector and Touhy 1997). This relationship offers the nurse an opportunity to encourage the patient to reclaim autonomy and independence within this care need through participation, which can increase patients' feelings of self-worth and dignity.

Healthcare assistants with a recognized qualification such as a National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) can complement the role of the qualified nurse in the implementation of planned care. It is vital that health professionals share their knowledge and any changes identified during procedures; personal feedback and documentation are good vehicles for this.

Comfort, cleanliness, availability of washing facilities, privacy and assistance from nurses were expressed as being important in providing hygiene care by patients in a recent ward audit (unpublished) at the Royal Marsden Hospital. The prevention of infection is also pertinent and will be referred to, as is patient education and health promotion.

Within the activity, opportunities may arise for the patient to discuss issues, concerns or fears that they may have regarding admission, treatment, discharge planning or prognosis. This will help to build a therapeutic relationship and highlight health and social care needs.

The world of nursing is ever changing, and there is a risk that activities such as attending to the personal hygiene of patients may become devalued or just another routine (Voegeli 2008). The literature supports the enhanced quality of care for patients, when hygiene needs are attended to by qualified/experienced practitioners (Carr-Hill *et al.* 1992). Personal hygiene is considered part of the essence of care that nurses should never treat as ritualistic.

Principles of care

Skin care is particularly important to prevent the colonization of Gram-positive and -negative micro-organisms on the skin, which if permitted to colonize lead to healthcare-associated infection (Parker 2004). By implementing simple personal hygiene measures, the risk of infection can be reduced.

An initial assessment of the skin using observational skills is essential to ascertain the skin's general condition, colour, texture, smell and temperature (Penzer and Finch 2001). To accurately observe and assess changes in the skin, an understanding of the structure, function and factors that cause disruption is essential, to enable identification of those at increased risk (Ersser *et al.* 2005).

Factors that may influence the appearance of the tissue are as follows.

- *Nutritional and hydration state*: imbalances will cause loss of elasticity and drying of the skin. Oedema will cause stretching and thinning of the skin (Potter and Perry 1995).
- *Incontinence*: the presence of urine and/or faeces on the skin increases the normal pH of 4.0–5.5 and makes the skin wet, which increase the risks of tissue breakdown and infection (Ersser *et al.* 2005).
- *Age, health and mobility status of the individual*: for example, the presence of pressure ulcers (Smoker 1999, Stockton and Flynn 2009).
- *Treatment therapies*: for example, radiotherapy (skin may become moist and cracked), chemotherapy (some cytotoxic agents such as methotrexate can cause erythematous rashes), and continuous infusions of 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) can cause a condition called palmar–plantar erythrodysaesthesia syndrome, which presents with cracking and epidermal sloughing of the palms and soles (Lokich and Moore 1984). A low platelet count can lead to an increased risk of bruising and a decrease in the white blood cells can influence the rate of healing. Steroids may cause the skin to become papery and fragile.
- *Any concurrent conditions*: for example, eczema, psoriasis, diabetes or stress, can affect the ability of skin to maintain its integrity (Holloway and Jones 2005).

Box 9.1 lists the specific considerations for skin care.

Box 9.1 Specific areas for skin consideration

- *Frail and papery skin* should prompt the nurse to take extra care in the bathing process. Patients need to be involved in their care plans, ensuring that correct and or preferred lotions are used; this will maintain the integrity of the skin and prevent the skin from being compromised.
- *Areas of red skin*. If redness is noted, wound prevention measures need to be implemented to prevent sores and ulcers from developing. These include good pressure-relieving positioning and repositioning and the use of barrier products in the form of creams, ointments and films (Voegeli 2008).
- *Open wounds*. When open wounds are present, such as pressure ulcers, abrasions or cuts, preventive measures such as pressure-relieving mattresses should be used to

prevent further breakdown (Philips and Buttery 2009) and dressings such as hydrocolloids used where appropriate to promote wound healing (Bouza *et al.* 2005).

- *Intravenous devices and drains*. Frequently, patients have intravenous devices and wound drains inserted as part of their therapy and these should be handled with care to prevent the introduction of infection or the 'pulling' of the tubes.

Methods of perineal/perianal care

When the nurse is performing care of the perineal and/or perianal area, it is important that informed consent is sought and privacy maintained as the patient may be embarrassed or humiliated. It is important for the nurse and patient to engage in a two-way process where agreement is given for the nurse to provide care (DH 2001).

Meticulous care with these areas is vital, especially for those people who may be prone to infection. Problems can arise from treatment modalities; for example, radiotherapy can cause fistulas, diarrhoea, constipation and urinary tract infections. Vigilance with cleanliness can prevent some of these problems or reduce their severity. Whenever possible, patients should be encouraged and assisted to perform this care themselves (Haisfield-Wolfe 1998).

Ideally, perineal hygiene should be attended to after the general bath or, at the very least, the water and wipes should be changed and cleaned once utilized due to the large colonies of bacteria that tend to live in or around this area (Gooch 1989, Gould 1994). It is generally acknowledged that soap and lotions administered incorrectly to the perineum/perianal area can cause irritation and infection (Ersser *et al.* 2005, Holloway and Jones 2005). Many nurses will use soap or a similar chemical derivative in order to promote thorough cleaning, but frequently lack of knowledge can lead to further problems, especially if all the soap is not removed; this can lead to discomfort for the patient if this area is not treated sensitively (Lindell and Olsson 1989).

Methods for hair care

The way a person feels is often related to their appearance, and hair condition and style is usually pertinent to this. Hair care can be complex

and so it should be planned and delivered to the patient's personal preferences.

Washing the hair of a bed-bound patient can be challenging, but there are several ways to manage this. To wash a patient's hair, move the patient to the top of the bed and position their head so that it is supported over the end. The patient's condition must always be assessed before performing this task as it would not be appropriate for patients with head and neck or spinal injuries. Shampooing frequency depends on the patient's well-being and their hair condition. Referral to a hairdresser may be appropriate.

Grooming the hair provides an ideal opportunity to observe for dandruff, psoriasis, flaky skin and head lice. Head lice are extremely infectious so it is imperative to treat the hair with a medicated shampoo as soon as possible. Hospital policy/protocol should be followed regarding the disposal of infected linen. Towel drying of hair should occur and hairdryers can be used with the consent of the patient (NMC 2008a). However, use of a hairdryer may not be appropriate if patient has had recent alopecia (loss of hair) due to chemotherapy. Hairdryers should be checked for safety in accordance with local policy. In the oncology setting, chemotherapy is an established treatment and some cytotoxic drugs can cause alopecia. The patient's physical, psychological and social needs can be affected by the loss of hair. Special care and skilled advice are required regarding the adjustment to hair loss. Referral to the hospital surgical appliance officer is appropriate to discuss the choice and fitting of a wig. A shampoo with a neutral pH is recommended for patients who are at risk of alopecia.

Care of the beard and moustache is also important. Excess food can often become lodged here so regular grooming is essential for hygiene and comfort purposes. Beard trimmers can be used as appropriate.

Methods for care of the nails and feet

The feet and nails require special care in order to avoid pain and infection. Poor toe nail condition can affect mobility and compromise independence which can increase length of hospital stay (NHS 2004). Finger and toe nails should be kept short and neat; nail clippers are

recommended for the trimming of nails and emery boards for filing to prevent jagged edges (Malkin and Berridge 2009). Patients with visual impairment or dexterity problems and those with learning disabilities may require assistance with the trimming and filing of nails. Consideration should be given to the patient's medical history; for example, do they have peripheral neuropathy, diabetes, peripheral vascular disease, necrosis or infection? If so, additional care should be given and advice sought from a chiropodist and the patient's doctor (Malkin and Berridge 2009).

Specialist foot care advice from a chiropodist can be useful. Chronic diseases such as diabetes and the long-term use of steroids can result in problems such as pressure ulcers, breakdown of the skin integrity and delays in the healing process. Special attention should be paid to cleaning the feet and in between the toes to avoid any fungal infection (Geraghty 2005). Powders and creams are available that help with the treatment of infections and odour management, for example miconazole nitrate 2% for fungal infections (BNF 2011).

Methods for care of the ears and nose

Lack of attention to cleaning the ears and nose can lead to impairment of the senses. Usually these small organs require minimal care but observation for a build-up of wax in the ears and deposits in the nose is essential to maintain patency. The outer ear can be cleaned with cotton wool or gauze and warm water (Alexander *et al.* 2007).

Patients undergoing enteral feeding and/or oxygen therapy should have regular nasal care to avoid excessive drying and excoriating of the delicate air passages. Gentle cleaning of the nasal mucosa with wool/gauze and water is recommended. Coating the area with a thin water-based lubricant to prevent discomfort can be beneficial, but petroleum jelly is not recommended as a nasal skin barrier when oxygen therapy is in progress as it is highly flammable. These interventions will remove debris and maintain a moist environment (Geraghty 2005).

Patients who have had piercing to the ears or nose will require cleaning of the holes to avoid the risk of infection. Gently cleaning around the pierced area with cotton wool/gauze and warm water and

then towel drying is recommended. Observe for inflammation or oozing; if this occurs, inform the patient and doctor and seek permission from the patient to remove the device.

Legal and professional issues

Benchmarking

Benchmarking is a valid framework by which nurses can establish and share best practice throughout the work environment. Three benchmarks – hygiene, self-care and privacy and dignity – cited in the *Essence of Care* (DH 2001), are important to consider when reviewing patient hygiene and the care needs should be carried out to an uncompromising standard (Geraghty 2005) (Box 9.2).

Box 9.2 *Essence of Care* benchmarking standards for hygiene, self-care and privacy and dignity

- All patients are assessed to identify the advice and/or assistance required in maintaining and promoting their individual personal hygiene.
- Planned care is negotiated with patients and/or their carers and is based on assessment of their individual needs.
- Patients have access to an environment that is safe and acceptable to the individual.
- Patients are expected to supply their own toiletries but single-use toiletries are provided until they can supply their own.
- Patients have access to the level of assistance that they require to meet their individual personal hygiene needs.

(DH 2001).

Preprocedural considerations

Non-pharmacological support

Soap

Persistent use of some soaps can alter the pH of the skin and remove the natural oils, leading to drying and cracking (Smoker 1999), which provide an ideal environment for bacteria to multiply (Holloway and Jones 2005). According to Ersser *et al.* 2005, patients with dry skin have a 2.5-fold greater likelihood of skin breakdown. In addition, patients may like to use moisturizers and this should be respected. Care should be taken with skinfolds and crevices, paying particular attention to thorough drying of the areas and observing for any breaks in the skin. It is recommended that the skin is patted and not rubbed, to reduce damage caused by friction (Ersser *et al.* 2005).

Emollient therapy

Current evidence recommends a move away from the traditional washing using soap and water, and recent research demonstrates that surfactants found in soap are irritant to the skin (Voegeli 2008). Penzer and Finch (2001) and Burr and Penzer (2005) recommend the use of emollient therapy for washing and moisturizing to seal the skin. In a literature review of hygiene practices, the use of soap and water remained common practice but several studies suggest that skin cleansers, for example emollient creams, followed by moisturizing may be less likely to disrupt the skin barrier and have a therapeutic benefit (Ersser *et al.* 2005). These products allow the patient to have a more active role in their own care, as the products can be left within reach and the patient can initiate the activity without the need to access running water (Collins and Hampton 2003).

Prepackaged cloths

Prepackaged cloths impregnated with cleanser and moisturizers are a cost-effective and evidence-based alternative to soap and water (Sheppard and Brenner 2000). They require no rinsing and are as effective at cleansing and more skin preserving than soap and water (Byers *et al.* 1995).

Skin care consists of four main areas: cleansing, hydrating/moisturizing, protection and replenishing (Voegeli 2008). Individual care actions often address more than one area at once, for

example washing with water-based aqueous cream and water will cleanse and moisturize the skin.

Cultural and religious factors

The nurse must respect and consider the patient's cultural and religious factors, while maintaining privacy and dignity at all times; for example, some people prefer to sit under running water as opposed to sitting in a bath (Hollins 2009, Sampson 1982). Some religions do not allow hair washing or brushing, while others may require the hair to be covered by a turban. Similarly, in some countries facial hair is significant and should never be removed without the patient's/relatives' consent. Always establish any preferences before beginning care (Hollins 2009) (Box 9.3).

Box 9.3 Religion-specific considerations related to personal hygiene

- Those following *Islam* must perform ablution (*wudhu*, to use the Islamic term) before the daily prayer, which is the formal washing of the face, hands and forearms, and so on. One of the criteria for cleanliness is washing after the use of the lavatory. Any traces of urine or faeces must be eliminated by washing with running water, at least. The use of toilet tissues for cleaning is not sufficient. With such emphasis on washing and personal hygiene, adhering to the practical teaching of Islam on washing would enhance personal hygiene for the individual and therefore reduce the chance of disease and sickness individually and subsequently for the whole society.
- *Hindus* also place importance on washing before prayer; they believe the left hand should dominate in this process and therefore do not eat with the left hand as it is deemed unclean.
- *Sikhs* place great importance on not shaving or cutting hair, choosing to comb their hair twice a day and wash regularly. Male Sikhs wear their hair underneath a turban as a sign of respect for God.

Clothing

Effort should be made to encourage and empower patients to dress in their own clothing during the day, where possible, and in their own nightwear to sleep. This increases independence and well-being, encourages normality and promotes dignity. If the patient is too unwell

or does not have their own clothing, hospital provision should be made available to protect their modesty (Wilson 2006).

Bed bathing

Before commencing this procedure, read the patient's care plan, manual handling documentation and risk assessment to gain knowledge of safe practice. Prior to each part of the procedure, explain and obtain agreement from the patient (NMC 2008a). Planned care is negotiated with the patient and is based on assessment of their individual needs. Planned care should be documented and changed according to the patient's/carer's needs on a daily basis. Prior to commencing each step, the patient should be offered the opportunity to participate if able to, to encourage dignity, independence and autonomy.

Privacy and dignity must be maintained throughout, doors and curtains kept closed and only opened when absolutely necessary, with the patient's permission.

Procedure guideline 9.1 Bed bathing a patient

Essential equipment

- Disposable apron
- Non-sterile gloves
- Clean bedlinen
- Bath towels
- Laundry skip, applying local guidelines for soiled and/or infected linen
- Flannels, preferably disposable wipes
- Toiletries, as preferred by patient
- Comb/brush
- Equipment for oral hygiene
- Clean clothes
- Clean wash bowl

Optional equipment

- Antiembolic stockings
- Razor
- Scissors/nail clippers
- Emery boards
- Manual handling equipment
- Urinal, bedpan or commode

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Assess and plan care with the patient and family/friend as suitable. Note personal preferences, addressing religious and cultural beliefs; offer analgesia as appropriate.	To plan care and encourage participation and independence (Hollins 2009, C; NMC 2008b, E, C; Pegram *et al.* 2007, E).
2 Clear the area of any obstacles, ensure the environment is warm and draw curtains/close doors to guarantee privacy and dignity.	To maintain comfort and a safe environment and promote privacy and dignity (NMC 2008b, C).
3 Offer patient the opportunity to use a urinal, bedpan or commode.	To reduce any disruption to procedure and prevent any discomfort (NMC 2008b, C).
4 Collect all equipment by the bedside.	To minimize time away from patient during procedure. Disposable flannels are preferable as this reduces the risk of infection. To meet patient preference during procedure (NMC 2008b, C).
5 Ensure wash bowl is cleaned with hot soapy water before use, fill bowl with warm water, check temperature with patient and adjust if necessary.	To minimize cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Parker 2004, C). To promote patient comfort. E
6 Ensure the area is safe; check that the bed brakes are on and adjust the bed to an appropriate height.	To prevent the bed moving unexpectedly and to avoid poor manual handling techniques (Pegram *et al.* 2007, E).
7 Wash hands; use disposable gloves and aprons in accordance with local guidelines.	To minimize risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Parker 2004, C).
Procedure	
8 Assist the patient with the removal of clothing, wristwatches and any other items of personal property. Cover patient with bath towel or fleece and fold back bedclothes, incorporating appropriate manual handing procedures.	To maintain privacy and dignity, body temperature (NMC 2008b, C), and safety (Pegram *et al.* 2007, C).
9 Ask patient whether they use soap on their face; wash, rinse and dry face and neck, with a gentle wipe around and inside the outer ears.	To promote cleanliness and independence (NMC 2008b, C).

10 Assist male patients with facial shaving, apply chosen shaving foam/soap. Ensure skin is taut; begin shaving from cheeks down to neck in short strokes. Rinse razor as required. Change water and rinse face with clean water (or use electric shaver).	To promote positive body image (NMC 2008b, C).
11 Wash, rinse and pat dry top half of body, starting with the side furthest away from you. Care needs to be taken not to wet drains/dressings and IV devices. Apply toiletries as required.	To promote patient well-being and cleanliness and reduce the risk of cross-infection (NMC 2008b, C).
12 Change the water and your disposable gloves. Inform the patient that you are going to wash around the genitalia, gain verbal consent from the patient or ask the patient if they wish to wash this area themselves. Using a separate flannel or wipe, wash around the area and then dry it. Remove gloves, dispose as per hospital policy. When washing this area, remember that female patients wash from the front to back. Male patients should draw back the foreskin, if uncircumcised, when washing the penis. If there is an indwelling catheter, put on clean gloves and wash the tubing, moving the disposable cloth down the tube away from the genitalia area, then dry tubing and remove gloves as per hospital policy. (Patients may prefer to do this themselves.)	To reduce risk of infection and to maintain a safe environment (NMC 2008b, C; Pegram *et al.* 2007, C).
13 Ensure the patient is covered and has nurse call bell within easy reach. Change water and gloves.	To maintain cleanliness, preserving dignity and privacy (NMC 2008b, C).
14 Remove antiembolic stocking if present. Wash legs, rinse and pat dry, starting with the side furthest away from you. If necessary, request assistance from colleagues. Assess the need for possible chiropody referral. Re-fit antiembolic stocking as necessary, measuring according to local policy. Request assistance as necessary to roll patient, wash back and then, using disposable flannel, wash sacral area, observing pressure areas. Cover areas that are not being washed. Return patient onto their back, ensuring they are covered. Apply toiletries as required.	To prevent venous emboli and to prevent and treat pressure ulcers, ensuring appropriate referrals are made (NMC 2008b, C).
15 Inspect finger and toe nails, clean under nails using nail file. Cut or clip finger nails to top level of finger, edges can be shaped using an emery board. Toe nails should be cut/clipped straight across. Note any area of skin dryness, inflammation, calluses.	To enhance positive body image and patient comfort and reduce risk of infection (NMC 2008b, C).
16 If the patient is to remain in bed, replace clothes and change bottom sheet whilst the patient is being turned. Care should be taken to prevent shaking the sheets and allowing particles to enter the atmosphere. Contact with your clothing must be avoided so the linen should be placed directly into the linen skip. Ensure a minimum of two nurses are present during this procedure.	To reduce unnecessary activity for patient and nurse. To prevent any bacteria from the sheet entering the atmosphere and surrounding environment

	(Parker 2004, C; Pegram *et al.* 2007, C). To maintain safety of patient and safe manual handling, following risk assessment (NMC 2008b, C).
17 Provide appropriate equipment, and assist patient if required, to brush teeth and/or rinse mouth.	To maintain good oral hygiene and prevent infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Parker 2004, E).
18 Dry and comb patient's hair as desired.	To enhance patient comfort, and to promote positive body image (NMC 2008b, C).
19 Remake top bedclothes.	
20 Help patient to sit or lie in desired position.	To enhance patient comfort and reduce risk of pressure area breakdown (NMC 2008b, C).
21 Remove equipment from bedside; replace patient's possessions in their appropriate place. Place locker, bedside table and call bell within reach.	To maintain a safe environment and promote patient independence (NMC 2008b, C).
22 Remove apron and gloves and dispose of them according to local regulations.	To prevent cross-infection (Pratt *et al.* 2001, C).
23 Wash hands, using alcohol-based handwash.	To prevent cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Postprocedure	
24 Document any changes in planned care.	To provide recorded documentation of care and aid communication to the multiprofessional team (NMC 2009, C).

Eye care

Definition

Eye care is the process of assessing, cleaning and/or irrigating the eye, including the instillation of prescribed ocular preparations where applicable; patient education is also included (Stollery *et al.* 2005, Watkinson and Seewoodhary 2007).

Anatomy and physiology

The eye consists of three main parts: the orbit, the globe (eyeball) and the extrinsic structures.

The orbit

The orbit or socket is formed by seven bones of the skull and is lined with fat; it supports and protects the globe and its accessory structures (blood vessels and nerves) and provides attachments for the ocular muscles (Stollery *et al.* 2005).

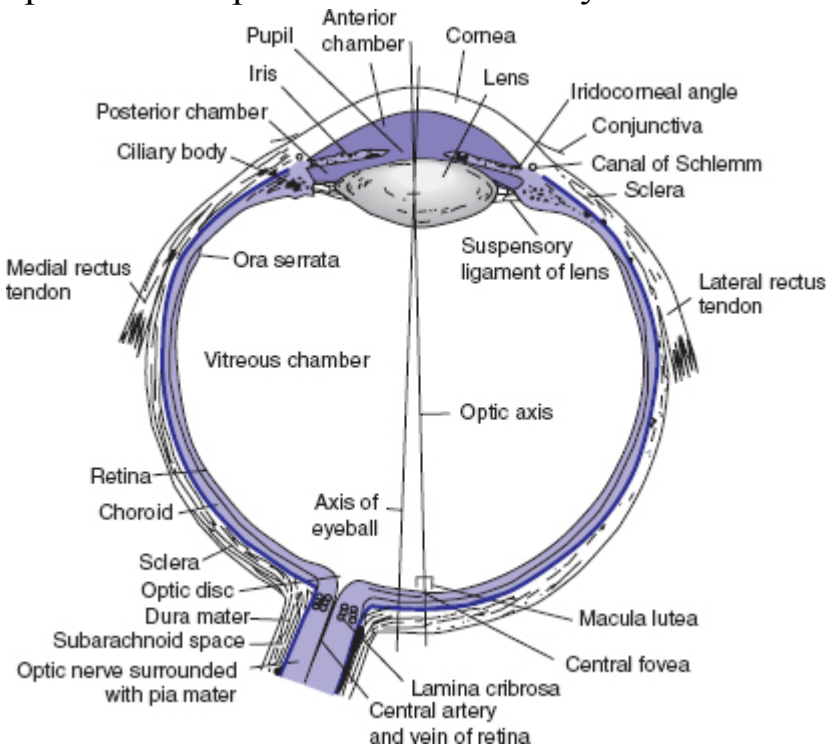
The globe

The globe is approximately 2.5 cm in diameter and can be divided into three layers (Figure 9.2).

- The outer layer or fibrous tunic is composed of the transparent cornea and the white sclera. The primary function of the outer layer, in particular the sclera, is protective and it gives shape to the eyeball. The cornea functions as a refracting and protective membrane through which light rays pass on their route to the retina (Watkinson and Seewoodhary 2007).
- The middle layer or vascular tunic comprises the choroid, ciliary body and iris; the globe's vascular supply is provided by the choroid.

- The inner layer or nervous tunic is composed of the retina, which contains the light-sensitive cells called the rods and cones and is responsible for converting light rays into electrical signals that are transmitted to the brain via the optic nerve. This area contains the macula lutea, also known as the yellow spot. The central fovea, the area of highest visual acuity, is also located here, as is the blind spot, the area of no visual field (Watkinson and Seewoodhary 2007).

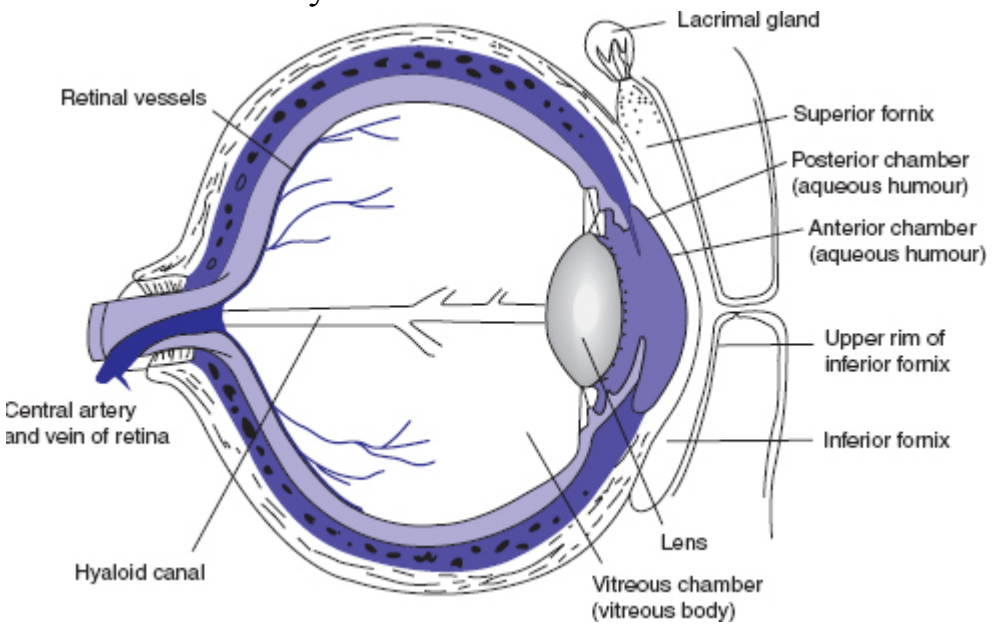
Figure 9.2 Horizontal section through the eyeball at the level of the optic nerve. Optic axis and axis of eyeball are included.



The globe – internally

The globe is divided into two chambers by the lens (see Figure 9.3): the anterior cavity, anterior to the lens, and the vitreous chamber, posterior to the lens. The anterior cavity is divided into the anterior chamber and the posterior chamber by the iris. It contains a clear, watery fluid called the aqueous humour. The vitreous chamber is filled with a jelly-like substance called the vitreous body or vitreous humour. Together, these two fluid-filled cavities help maintain the shape of the eyeball and the intraocular pressure (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Figure 9.3 The anterior cavity in front of the lens is incompletely divided into anterior chamber (anterior to iris) and posterior chamber (behind iris), which are continuous through the pupil. Aqueous humour, which fills the cavity, is formed by ciliary processes and reabsorbed into the venous blood by the canal of Schlemm.



The aqueous humour is continuously secreted by the ciliary process (a part of the ciliary body) located behind the iris. This fluid then permeates the posterior chamber, passing between the lens and the iris, and flows through the pupil into the anterior chamber. From the anterior chamber, the aqueous humour drains into the scleral venous sinus (canal of Schlemm) and is absorbed back into the bloodstream (Figure 9.2).

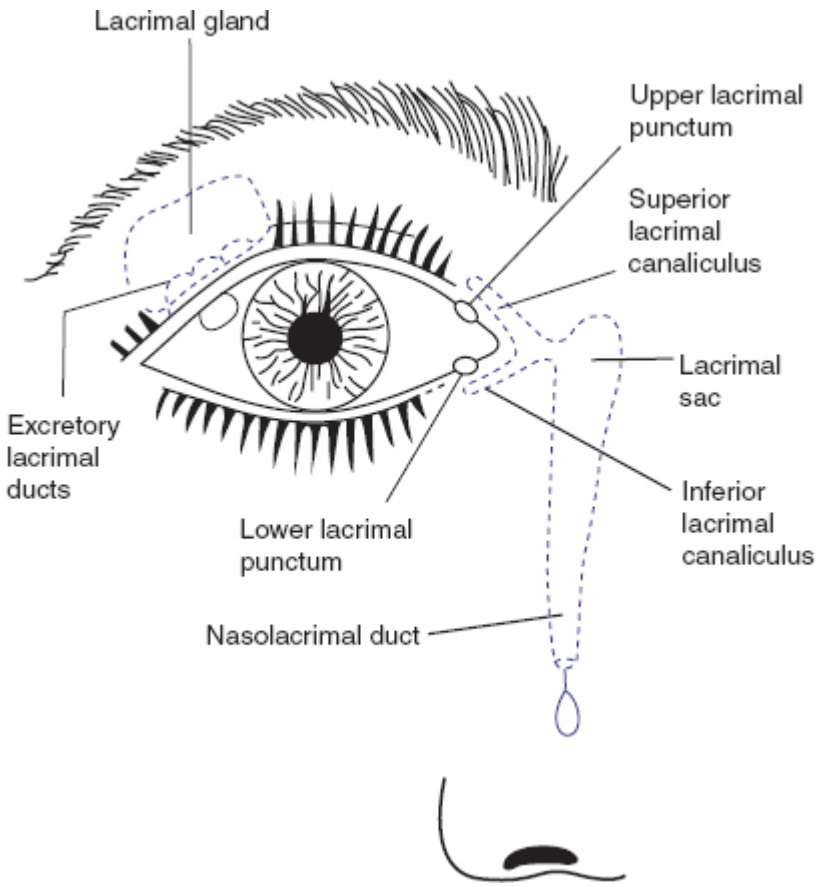
The aqueous humour is the principal source of nutrients and waste removal for the lens and cornea, as these structures have no direct blood supply. If the outflow of aqueous humour is blocked, excessive intraocular pressure may develop, leading to the disease process known as glaucoma. This excess pressure can cause degeneration of the retina, which may result in blindness (Lee 2006). The vitreous humour is a clear gelatinous substance which fills the vitreous chamber, which, unlike the aqueous humour, is produced during fetal development and is never replaced (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Extrinsic structures

Extrinsic structures of the eye protect the globe from external injury (Stollery *et al.* 2005).

- *Eyelashes*: protect the eye from debris.
- *Eyebrows*: prevent moisture, in particular sweat, from flowing into the eye.
- *Eyelids*: the eyelid is made up of complex muscles for eye movement, glands for tear and oil production that serve as a cleansing mechanism against dirt and foreign objects, and sensitive nerves for defence (Watkinson and Seewoodhary 2007).
- *Lacrimal (tear) apparatus*: tears are produced in the lacrimal glands located at the upper, outer edge of the eye. They are excreted onto the upper surface of the globe and wash over the ocular surface by the action of blinking. The function of tears is to clean, moisten and lubricate the ocular surface and eyelids. Tears also provide antisepsis as they contain an enzyme called lysozyme that is able to rupture the cell membranes of some bacteria, leading to their lysis and death (Forrester 2002). The tears collect in the nasal canthus (inner, medial aspect of the eye) from where they drain into the upper and lower lacrimal puncti which drain into the lacrimal sac. From here, the tears pass into the nasolacrimal duct and empty into the nasal cavity (Figure 9.4) (Marieb 2001, Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

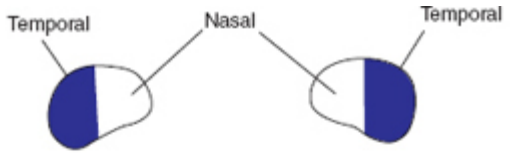
Figure 9.4 Lacrimal apparatus.



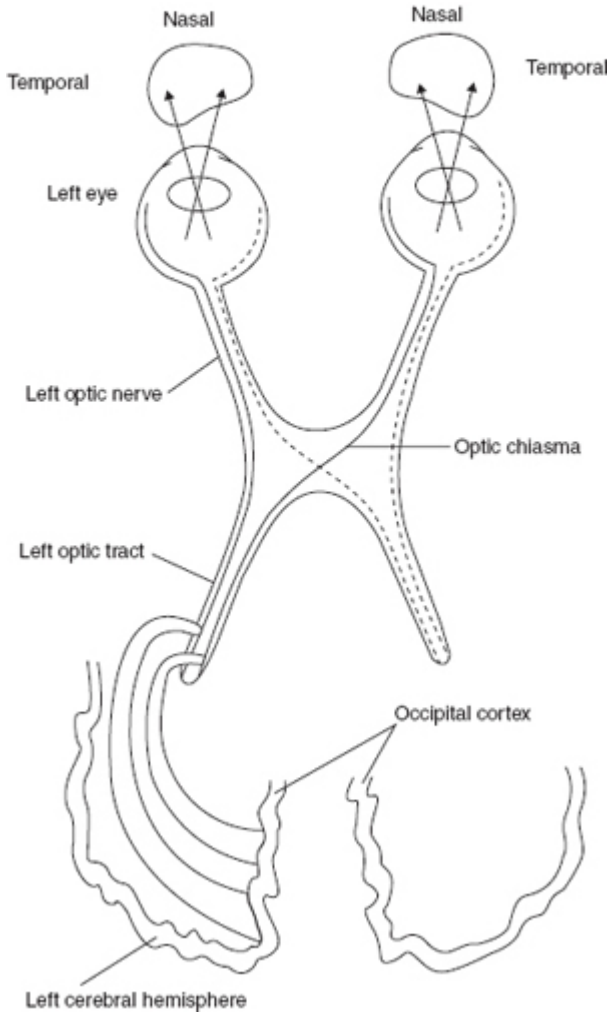
Optic nerve

The optic nerve, which is responsible for vision (cranial nerve II), exits the eye to the side of the macula lutea at an area called the optic disc (see Figure 9.2). This area is sometimes referred to as the anatomical blind spot. The optic nerve passes from the orbit through the optic foramen and into the brain. The two separate optic nerves meet at the optic chiasma and some optic nerve fibres cross over here to the opposite side of the brain. The nerves then continue along the optic tracts and terminate in the thalamus. From there, projections extend to the visual areas in the occipital lobe of the cerebral cortex (Tortora and Derrickson 2009) (Figure 9.5).

Figure 9.5 Visual pathways and visual fields.



Bitemporal hemianopia resulting from lesion in chiasma



An additional blind spot, or area of depressed vision called a scotoma, may be indicative of a brain tumour. For example, in pituitary gland tumours it is common to develop bilateral defects in the field of vision due to invasion of the optic chiasm (Goodman and Wickham 2005).

The ageing process

The eye changes with age. This process can start in the third decade of life, with most anatomical and physiological changes becoming more

prevalent the older a person becomes (Nigam and Knight 2008) (Boxes 9.4 and 9.5).

Box 9.4 Effects of ageing on the eye

Anatomical changes

- The retro-orbital fat atrophies.
- Eyelid tissues become weak.
- The levator muscle weakens, causing the eyelid to droop which can occlude the upper visual field.

Physiological changes

- Presbyopia – the distance from which print can be read increases.
- Reduced flexibility of the lens means it can no longer change shape to focus on close objects quickly.
- Cataracts – the lens become dense and yellow, affecting colour perceptions; it can become so dense that the lens proteins precipitate, creating a halo effect around bright lights.
- Night vision reduces.
- Diminished central vision caused by cells within the retina dying.
- Dry eyes from reduced tear production.

(Holman *et al.* 2005, Nigam and Knight 2008)

Box 9.5 Eye conditions common in the older population

- *Glaucoma*: the optic nerve is damaged by increased pressure in the eye, resulting in reduced visual field and pain.
- *Cataract*: as explained in Box 9.4.
- *Diabetic retinopathy*: blood vessels connected to the retina are damaged by the disease and sight becomes blurred and patchy, and can be totally lost.
- *Age-related macular degeneration* is a chronic disorder of the macula cells in the centre of the retina, a highly sensitive area responsible for detailed central vision. As this degenerates, central vision declines which can lead to blindness.

(Holman *et al.* 2005, Watkinson and Seewoodhary 2007)

Related theory

Sight provides us with important sensory input to enable self-care and pleasurable activities such as reading. 'Early detection of changes in the eye is important to enable effective treatment and prevent long-term problems and even blindness (Holman *et al.* 2005, p.37).

Reduced vision or blindness can make the hospital environment very unwelcoming. When caring for patients with eye problems, it is essential to promote a safe, secure environment, where the person is supported and encouraged to communicate their needs effectively.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

Eye care may be necessary under the following circumstances.

- After eye surgery to prevent postoperative complications.
- To relieve pain and discomfort.
- To prevent or treat infection.
- To prevent or treat injury to the eye, for example to remove sharp objects.
- For eye tests such as refraction.
- For screening to detect disease such as glaucoma.
- To treat existing problems such as conjunctivitis.
- To detect drug-induced toxicity at an early stage.
- To maintain contact lenses and care for false eye prostheses.
- To optimize the eye's visual function, especially with age-related degeneration.

(Boyd-Monk 2005, Cunningham and Gould 1998, Stollery *et al.* 2005, Watkinson and Seewoodhary 2007)

These problems may be experienced in isolation or in combination.

Eye care includes patient education of the eye and surrounding structures as well as health promotion and safety advice to promote quality of life (Watkinson and Seewoodhary 2007).

Principles of care

Eye care is performed to maintain healthy eyes through keeping them moist and infection free. The eye is an important organ and inadequate techniques may lead to the transmission of infection from one eye to the other or the development of irreversible damage to the eye which could lead to loss of sight (Ashurst 1997, Cunningham and Gould 1998). If an infection is present the infected eye should be cleaned and/or treated last to prevent transmission of infection to the uninfected eye (Holman *et al.* 2005).

A clean technique should be used for eye care procedures and an aseptic technique, if deemed necessary, for vulnerable exposed eyes or to reduce the risk of infection (Alexander *et al.* 2007).

The eye area must be treated gently and unnecessary pressure must be avoided, especially to the globe (Alexander *et al.* 2007). Low-linting swabs are generally used; lint from swabs can become detached and scratch the cornea so it is recommended where possible to use lint-free swabs (Woodrow 2006). The fluids most commonly used for eye care procedures are sterile 0.9% sodium chloride or sterile water for irrigation. Sterile 0.9% sodium chloride can irritate and sting the sensitive eye area so where possible it is recommended that sterile water is used (Woodrow 2006).

If able, and after appropriate instruction, patients should be encouraged to carry out eye care procedures themselves. However, in the case of postoperative, physically limited or unconscious patients, it is often the nurse who is responsible for eye care.

Consideration should always be given to patients' sight aids, such as glasses and contact lenses (Holman *et al.* 2005). Assistance may be required to help clean these aids and advice regarding the most appropriate method should be sought, preferably from the patient.

For all procedures which involve removal or insertion of contact lenses or prosthetic eyes, the patient should be encouraged to do this

themselves as they will have developed their own particular methods. However, the nurse must observe as the patient may still need education to improve upon their technique. Advice regarding the ideal method of removal and insertion should be sought from the local ophthalmology service or the nursing team in the ophthalmology unit.

Methods of eye assessment

Before beginning any eye care procedure, the eye and surrounding structures should be examined and assessed and then re-examined and reassessed after the intervention. Begin by examining the eye closed, looking carefully at the eyelids, noting any bruising, spasms, inflammation, discharge or crusting (Holman *et al.* 2005). Look for signs that the eyelids are closed properly, as an inability to close completely could indicate the presence of a cyst or lump that would require further investigation and reporting to the patient's doctor.

Ask the patient to open their eyes and, using a pen torch, look for abnormalities in the conjunctiva such as inflammation, redness or the presence of a discharge; the eye should be clear of clouding and redness (Alexander *et al.* 2007). Ask the patient whether they are experiencing any pain or photophobia. Any abnormalities need to be reported to the patient's doctor immediately, as eye complications can develop quickly. Any changes should also be documented (Alexander *et al.* 2007, Holman *et al*. 2005, NMC 2009).

Methods of eye swabbing

Eye swabbing is performed to clear the outer eye structures of foreign bodies, including discharges, which could be infected matter. The swab should be moistened with sterile water for irrigation and lightly wiped over the eyelid from the nose outward. This process should be repeated with clean gauze until the area is clean of discharge or encrustation.

Methods of eye irrigation

Eye irrigation is usually performed to remove foreign bodies or caustic substances from the eye, for example domestic cleaning agents or

medications, particularly cytotoxic material; it should be performed as soon as possible to minimize damage (Stollery *et al.* 2005). The procedure is also used for preoperative preparation or to remove infected material.

Using the least volume of sterile water for irrigation necessary will reduce the likelihood of deeper corneal damage which can be a side-effect of the corrosive chemicals due to water's hypotonic nature (Kuckelkorn *et al.* 2002). The volume required will vary depending on the degree of contamination; copious amounts are needed for corrosive chemicals and smaller volumes for removal of eye secretions. The solution may be directed to the area affected by using intravenous tubing. To avoid physical damage, the tubing should be held approximately 2.5 cm from the eye (Stollery *et al.* 2005) and directed to the inner canthus.

Care of contact lenses

Contact lenses are thin, curved discs made of hard or soft plastic or a combination of both. Hard contact lenses are made of a rigid plastic that does not absorb water or saline solutions and can be worn for a maximum of 12–14 hours continuously. Soft contact lenses are more pliable, retain more water and so can be worn for up to 30 days and cleaned once weekly. Ill-fitting lenses may reduce the tear film between lens and cornea, which may result in oxygen deprivation of the cornea, leading to corneal oedema and blurred vision. Further damage to the corneal epithelial cells may lead to corneal abrasion and pain. Gas-permeable lenses are a combination of both hard and soft plastic; these permit oxygen to reach the cornea, providing greater comfort, and can be left in for several days (Olver and Cassidy 2005).

Most people look after their own contact lenses. Cleaning and storage solutions depend on the type of lenses used; manufacturers provide specific instructions for the care of their products. They should be stored in a container with slots for right (R) and left (L) eye, so they can be worn in the correct eye. Seriously ill patients should have their lenses removed and stored correctly until they can reinsert them. Contact lenses are stored in a sterile solution when they are not in the eye; this helps to

lubricate the lens and enable it to glide over the cornea, reducing the risk of injury.

Artificial eyes

These are made of glass or plastic; some are permanently implanted. Most people who have artificial eyes care for them themselves. If the patient is unable to do this, it is recommended that the eye is removed once daily for cleaning; the patient will be able to advise how they would like this done (Alexander *et al.* 2007). However, if they are unable to do so, advice should be sought from the local ophthalmology service or the nursing team in the ophthalmology unit.

Preprocedural considerations

Light source

A good light source such as a minor procedure light or bright lamp is necessary to enable careful assessment of the eyes and to avoid damage to the delicate structures.

Position of light source

The light source should be positioned above and behind the nurse. It should never be allowed to shine directly into the patient's eyes, as this will be extremely uncomfortable for the patient (Shaw 2006).

Position of patient

The patient should be sitting or lying with their head tilted backwards and chin pointing upwards. This allows for easy access to the eyes and is usually a good position for patient comfort and compliance (Stollery *et al.* 2005).

Procedure guideline 9.2 Eye swabbing

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack

- Sterile low-linting or lint-free swabs
- Sterile water for irrigation
- Light source

Optional equipment

- Sterile/non-sterile powder-free gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient. Ask the patient to explain how their eyes feel, if they are able to.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C) To have a baseline understanding of current problems or changes the patient is experiencing. (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Assist the patient into the correct position: **(a)** Head well supported and tilted back **(b)** Preferably the patient should be in bed or lying on a couch.	The patient needs to be discouraged from flinching or making unexpected movements and so should be in the most comfortable, pain-free position possible at the start of the procedure (Shaw 2006, R5). To enable access and assessment of the eyes. E To enable patient comfort. E
3 Ensure an adequate light source, taking care not to dazzle the patient.	To enable maximum observation of the eyes without causing the patient harm or discomfort (Shaw 2006, R5).
4 Wash hands thoroughly using bactericidal soap and water or alcohol handrub, then dry hands.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
5 Always treat the uninfected or uninflamed eye first.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Always bathe lids with the eyes closed first.	To reduce the risk of damaging the cornea and to remove any crusted discharge. E
7 Ask the patient to look up and, using a slightly moistened swab, gently swab the lower lid from the inner canthus outwards. Use an aseptic technique for the damaged or postoperative eye.	If the swab is too wet, the solution will run down the patient's cheek. This increases the risk of cross-infection and causes the patient discomfort. Swabbing from the nasal corner outwards avoids the risk of swabbing discharge into the lacrimal punctum, or even across the bridge of the nose into the other eye. Aseptic technique reduces the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
8 Ensure that the edge of the swab is not above the lid margin.	To avoid touching the sensitive cornea. E
9 Using a new swab each time,	To reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

repeat the procedure until all the discharge has been removed.	
10 Gently swab the upper lid by slightly everting the lid margin and asking the patient to look down. Swab from the nasal corner outwards and use a new swab each time until all discharge has been removed.	To effectively remove any foreign material from the eye. E To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
11 Once both eyelids have been cleaned and dried, make the patient comfortable.	To ensure patient comfort. E
12 Remove and dispose of equipment.	To keep area clean and reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
13 Wash hands.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Postprocedure	
14 Discuss with the patient any changes post procedure; report any adverse effects to the patient's doctor. Record the procedure in the appropriate documents.	To monitor effectiveness of procedure, trends and fluctuations (NMC 2009, C).

Procedure guideline 9.3 Eye irrigation

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack
- Sterile water for irrigation (in an emergency, tap water may be used)
- Receiver
- Towel
- Plastic cape
- Irrigating flask
- Warm water in a bowl to warm irrigating fluid to tepid temperature
- Low-linting or lint-free swabs
- Light source

Optional equipment

- Anaesthetic drops

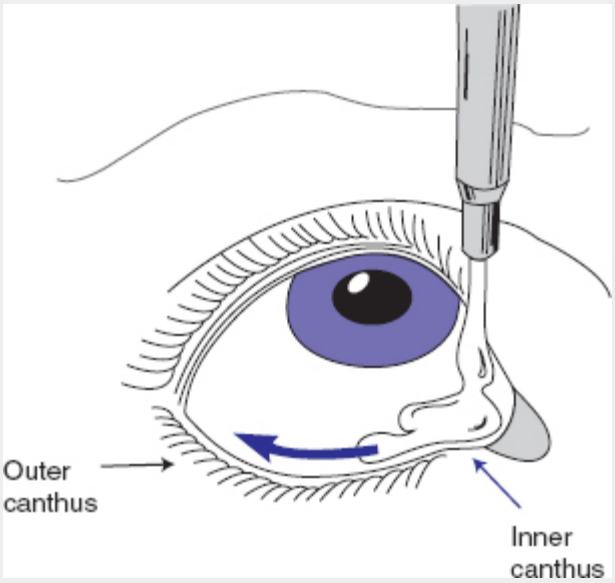
- Sterile/non-sterile powder-free gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient. Ask the patient to explain how their eyes feel, if they are able to.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C). To have a baseline understanding of current problems or changes the patient is experiencing. E
2 Instil anaesthetic drops if required.	To avoid any discomfort (Marsden 2006, R5).
3 Prepare the irrigation fluid to the appropriate temperature by placing in bowl of water until warmed.	Tepid fluid will be more comfortable for the patient. The solution should be poured across the inner aspect of the nurse's wrist to test the temperature. E
4 Assist the patient into the appropriate position, with their head comfortably supported with chin almost horizontal and the head inclined to the side of the eye to be treated.	To avoid the solution running either over the nose into the other eye, to avoid cross-infection, or out of the affected eye and down the side of the cheek (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E). To reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E). To prevent washing the discharge down the lacrimal duct or across the cheek. E
5 Wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or alcohol handrub, and dry.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
6 If possible, remove any contact lens (see Procedure guideline 9.4 and 9.5.	To ensure no reservoir of chemical remains in the eye (Marsden 2006, R5).
7 If there is any discharge proceed as for eye swabbing (see Procedure guideline 9.2).	To remove any infected material. E
8 Ask the patient to hold the receiver against the cheek below the eye being irrigated.	To collect irrigation fluid as it runs away from the eye. E
9 Position the towel and plastic cape.	To protect the patient's clothing. E
10 Hold the patient's eyelids apart, using your first and second fingers, against the orbital ridge.	The patient will be unable to hold the eye open once irrigation commences. E
11 Do not press on the eyeball.	To avoid causing the patient discomfort or pain (Alexander *et al.* 2007, C).
12 Warn the patient that the flow of solution is going to start and pour a little onto the cheek first.	To allow time to adjust to the feeling of water flow. E
13 Direct the flow of the fluid from the nasal corner outwards (see Action Figure 13).	To wash away from the lacrimal punctum and prevent contaminating other eye. E
14 Ask the patient to look up, down and to	To ensure that the whole area, including fornices,

either side while irrigating.	is irrigated (Stollery *et al.* 2005, E).
15 Evert upper and lower lids whilst irrigating.	To ensure complete removal of any foreign body. E
16 Keep the flow of irrigation fluid constant.	To ensure swift removal of any foreign body (Marsden 2006, R5).
17 When the eye has been thoroughly irrigated, ask the patient to close the eyes and use a new swab to dry the lids.	For patient comfort. E
18 Take the receiver from the patient and dry the cheek.	To prevent spillage of receiver contents and promote patient comfort. E
19 Make the patient comfortable.	
Postprocedure	
20 Remove and dispose of equipment.	To keep area clean and reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
21 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
22 Complete the patient's recording chart and other hospital and/or legally required documents.	To maintain accurate records. To provide a point of reference in the event of any queries. To prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2009, C).
23 Discuss with the patient any changes post procedure; report any adverse effects to the patient's doctor.	To monitor effectiveness of procedure, trends and fluctuations (NMC 2009, C).

Action Figure 13 Irrigation of the eye from inner to outer canthus.



Procedure guideline 9.4 Contact lens removal: hard lenses

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack
- Contact lens solution
- Low-linting or lint-free swabs

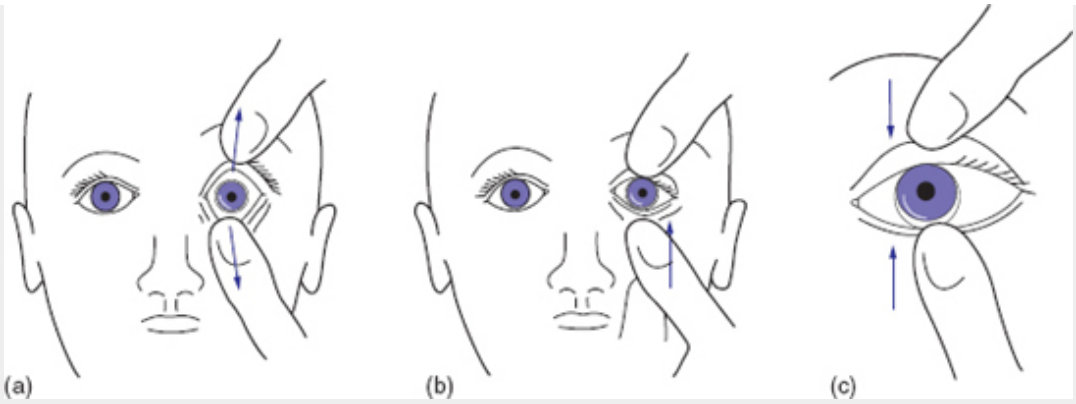
Optional equipment

- Sterile/non-sterile powder-free gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their consent (NMC 2008a, C).
2 Wash hands thoroughly using bactericidal soap or alcohol handrub.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
3 Using thumb and forefinger, separate the eyelids. Keeping the eyelid stationary, place the index finger on the lens. Gently move the lens to one side of the cornea and pull away (see Action Figure 3).	To minimize corneal trauma (Stollery *et al.* 2005, R5).
4 Store lenses in the appropriate solution as recommended by the manufacturer and ensure lenses are placed in the correct left and right storage pots.	To prevent deterioration and contamination (Stollery *et al.* 2005, R5).
5 Refer to manufacturer's instructions for further storage information, particularly if patient will not be using the lenses for a lengthy period of time.	To prevent deterioration of lens and growth of organisms. E
Postprocedure	
6 Remove and dispose of equipment.	To keep area clean and reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
7 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
8 Complete the patient's recording chart and other hospital and/or legally required documents.	To maintain accurate records. To provide a point of reference in the event of any queries. To prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2009, C).

Action Figure 3 Removing hard contact lenses.



Procedure guideline 9.5 Contact lens removal: soft lenses

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack
- Contact lens solution
- Low-linting or lint-free swabs

Optional equipment

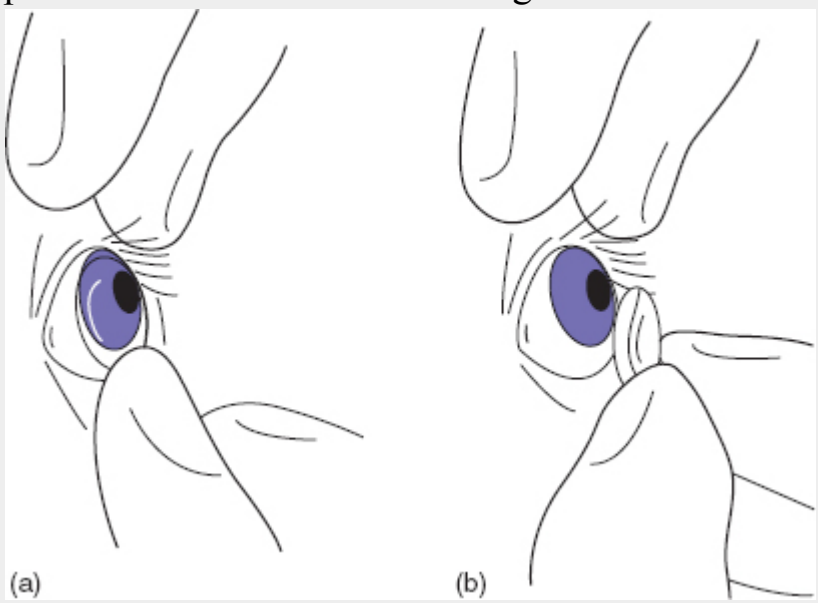
- Sterile/non-sterile powder-free gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their consent (NMC 2008a, C).
2 Wash hands thoroughly using bactericidal soap.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
3 Wearing gloves, gently pinch the lens between the thumb and index finger (see Action Figure 3).	To encourage the lens to fold together, allowing air to enter underneath the lens for easy removal. E
4 Store lenses in the appropriate solution as recommended by the manufacturer and ensure lenses are placed in the correct left and right storage pots.	To prevent deterioration and contamination (Stollery *et al.* 2005, E).
5 Refer to manufacturer's instructions for further storage information, particularly if patient will not be using the lenses for a lengthy period of time.	To prevent deterioration and growth of organisms. E
6 Make the patient comfortable.	

Postprocedure	
7 Remove and dispose of equipment.	To keep area clean and reduce risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
8 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
9 Complete the patient's recording chart and other hospital and/or legally required documents.	To maintain accurate records. To provide a point of reference in the event of any queries. To prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2009, C).

Action Figure 3 (a) Moving a soft lens down the interior part of the sclera. (b) Removing a soft lens by pinching it between the pads of the thumb and index finger.



Ear care

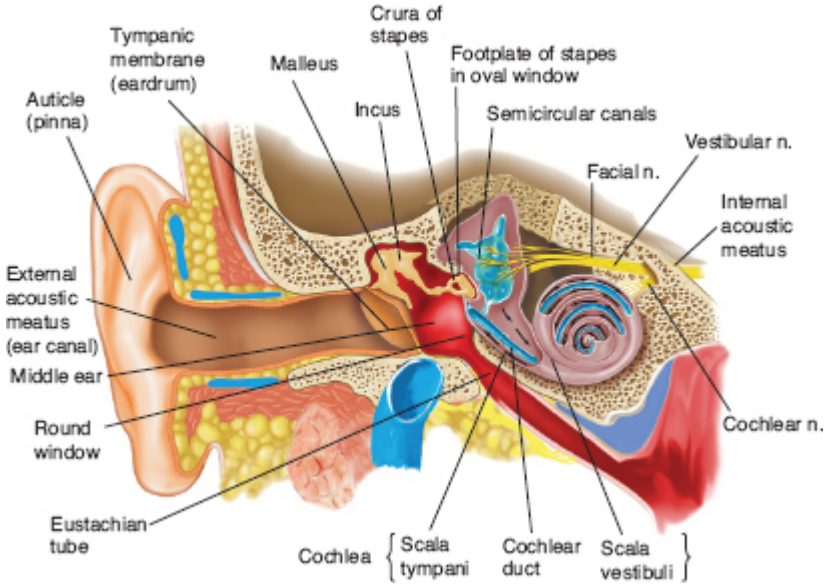
Definition

Ear care encompasses the assessment and cleaning of the ears, including the instillation of prescribed ear drops. The monitoring and maintenance of hearing and patient education are also included.

Anatomy and physiology

The ears capture sounds for hearing and maintain balance for equilibrium (Nigam and Knight 2008). The ear has three parts: external, middle and inner (Figure 9.6).

Figure 9.6 Internal structure of the ear.



External ear

The external ear is a protective funnel made up of the cartilaginous pinna and external acoustic canal and the eardrum (Figure 9.6). The external acoustic canal is lined with small hairs and next to it lie the ceruminous glands which produce cerumen or ear wax. The amalgamation of cerumen and hairs prevents foreign objects from entering the ear. As the cerumen dries, it usually falls out of the ear canal but in some circumstances the wax can become impacted (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

The pinna collects sound waves and delivers them via the external acoustic canal to the tympanic membrane or eardrum which vibrates in harmony (Nigam and Knight 2008, Richardson 2007). The eardrum separates the external and middle ear; it has a slight cone shape and the pointed end sits within the inner ear to assist the funnelling of sounds.

Middle ear

The middle ear is an air-filled chamber. It contains the three smallest bones in the body, the malleus, incus and stapes, collectively known as the auditory ossicles. To one side, it has a thin bony partition that holds two small membrane-covered apertures which are the oval and round windows (Tortora and Derrickson 2009). The auditory ossicles receive vibrations from the tympanic membrane. Vibrations are passed on to the oval window and through to the cochlea in the inner ear; within this process the sound waves are magnified (Alexander *et al.* 2007, Richardson 2007).

At the bottom of the chamber lies the eustachian tube which connects to the nasopharynx and regulates the pressure in the ear. It is usually closed but yawning or swallowing briefly opens it, allowing air to enter or leave until the pressure in the middle ear equalizes to that of external air pressure (Richardson 2007). When the pressures are equalized, the tympanic membrane vibrates freely as the sound waves hit it. However, if the pressures are not balanced, the individual may experience pain, hearing impairment, tinnitius and vertigo (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Inner ear

The inner ear is very small and includes the organ of Corti, which is situated inside the snail-shaped cochlea, the three semi-circular canals and vestibular apparatus (see Figure 9.6).

The organ of Corti is the organ for hearing. It is fluid-filled and has a membranous layer that connects to the end of the auditory nerve; the membrane is covered in tiny cells with hair-like projections (Alexander *et al.* 2007). Sound waves travel through the fluid and are distributed to the hair cells. At this point the sound waves change to impulses which pass along the auditory nerve to the brainstem and cortex, where they are interpreted as sound.

The semi-circular canals and vestibular apparatus maintain balance. These canals are highly sensitive; they contain fluid and hair cells that recognize when the head moves and send signals to the brain to maintain equilibrium. The brain interprets these messages along with visual input from the eyes (Nigam and Knight 2008). Adjustments to the muscles

and joints are made in response to the information received (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

If the inner ear structures are damaged, the patient may develop permanent vertigo or hearing loss (Pullen 2006).

Ear wax impaction

Ear wax (cerumen) is a waxy secretion of glands within the auditory canal, combined with skin scales and hair. Ear wax impaction is the biggest cause of ear problems; thousands of people in the UK have ear wax removed every week (Aung and Mulley 2002) (Box 9.6).

Box 9.6 Individuals prone to ear wax impaction

- Older people.
- Those with learning disabilities.
- Narrow ear canals.
- Hearing aid users.
- Those with a hereditary history.
- Those who use cotton buds to clean the ear as this causes the wax to be pushed further down the canal and can cause injury to the surface of the canal.

(Aung and Mulley 2002, Harkin 2008, Kraszewski 2008)

The symptoms of ear wax impaction are:

- dull hearing
- tinnitus
- disturbed balance (Alexander *et al.* 2007).

Related theory

Hearing is important for effective communication and balance and these can be affected by poor ear hygiene; for example, using cotton buds to clean the ears can result in ear wax impaction.

Hearing loss can develop over time and become less noticeable to the individual and those close to them, as they find alternative ways to cope.

It is imperative that nurses notice poor communications, such as patients not recalling being spoken to or feeling frustrated when communicating with others, and that they then investigate this (Harkin 2005). Nurses need to be aware of how ear problems occur so they are able to explore these with patients and their relatives, to identify problems early and provide appropriate patient education. All findings should be documented and handed over to the patient's doctor for further investigation such as hearing assessment.

Evidence-based approaches

After bathing or showering, the outer ear should be dried with tissue or alcohol-free wipes; nothing should be put into the ear to dry it (Harkin 2008). The ear canal is self-cleaning through jaw movement and epithelial migration action which moves wax and debris up to the outer ear skin (Harkin 2008).

Rationale

Indications

Ear care may be necessary under the following circumstances.

- To relieve pain and discomfort, including tinnitus.
- To prevent or treat infection.
- To prevent loss of hearing.
- To prevent vertigo.
- To prevent or treat injury.
- To detect disease at an early stage.
- Ear care also includes patient education and health and safety advice.

(Harkin 2008)

Contraindications

Ear care can cause:

- otitis media
- trauma to the external meatus

- tinnitus
- deafness
- perforation of the tympanic membrane.

Special care should be taken to avoid damage to the aural cavity and eardrum.

Principles of care

Assessment

Before proceeding with any form of invasive ear care, it is important to undertake careful examination of the ear, taking note of any discharge, redness or swelling, and the amount and texture of any ear wax present, as this will give an indication of the general health of the ear. A small amount of wax should be found in the ear canal. Its absence may be a sign of a dry skin condition, infection or excessive cleaning that has interfered with the normal wax production (Harkin 2008).

The nurse should discuss with the patient their current level of hearing and after the procedure they should ask the patient if there are any changes so as to monitor the effectiveness of the intervention.

Consideration should always be given to a patient's hearing aids and assistance given to help clean these. Advice regarding the most appropriate method should be sought, preferably from the patient.

Patient education should be provided when required to help the patient maintain healthy ears, hearing and balance.

Irrigation of the inner ear is sometimes necessary to remove foreign bodies from inside the ear or to clear excessive build-up of ear wax (cerumen) (Harkin 2007).

Methods of ear wax softener use

Due to the invasive nature of ear irrigation, it is advised that the patient first tries using wax softeners such as olive oil, which may avoid the need for irrigation (Kraszewski 2008). A typical treatment regime for ear wax softening is 2–3 drops of olive oil into the ear over a 5-day period (Aung and Mulley 2002).

Methods of ear irrigation

An electric oral jet irrigator fitted with a special ear irrigator tip is recommended for ear irrigation as the water pressure can be controlled more precisely, along with the direction of the water (Aung and Mulley 2002). The water temperature should be 37°; if too hot or cold, it can cause dizziness or vertigo (Aung and Mulley 2002). The traditional method of irrigation uses a metal water-filled, hand-held syringe but due to the high risk of infection and trauma to the ear, this is no longer recommended practice (Harkin 2008).

Ear irrigation is an invasive procedure that requires good understanding of the anatomy and physiology of the ear and competence with the procedure (Kraszewski 2008). The procedure is undertaken to remove impacted wax which can cause:

- some degree of hearing loss
- earache
- itchiness in the ear
- reflex cough
- dizziness
- vertigo
- tinnitus
- hearing impairment, which can cause frustration, stress, social isolation, paranoia and depression.

(Aung and Mulley 2002, p.327)

Ear irrigation is not recommended in the following circumstances.

- Perforated eardrums.
- Middle ear infection in the previous 6 weeks.
- Mucus discharge.
- *In situ* grommet.
- Cleft palate.
- Acute otitis externa with pain and tenderness to the pinna.
- History of ear surgery.

(Aung and Mulley 2002, Harkin 2007)

The potential adverse effects of this procedure are:

- perforated eardrums
- otitis externa
- damage to the canal
- pain
- deafness
- vertigo
- tinnitus.

(Aung and Mulley 2002)

If irrigation is unsuccessful, further interventions may be necessary, possibly in the form of removal of the wax under direct vision using suction, forceps or probes (Aung and Mulley 2002).

Preprocedural considerations

Specific patient preparations

The patient and nurse should be sitting at the same height to examine the outer ear and pinna (Harkin 2008). Any alteration to the appearance of the ear must be reported to the doctor. Ask the patient to tilt the ear to be treated up to allow the ear drops to reach the middle and inner ears.

Position of light source

A good light source such as a bull's eye lamp and head mirror or an operating lamp positioned above and behind the nurse is necessary prior to commencing ear care procedures to enable careful assessment of the ears and to avoid damage to the delicate structures (Alexander *et al.* 2007).

Mouth care

Definition

Mouth care is the care given to the oral mucosa, lips, teeth and gums in order to promote health and prevent or treat disease. It involves assessment, correct care and patient education to promote independence (Hahn and Jones 2000). Good oral hygiene is essential as poor oral health can affect a patient's ability to eat or taste food, affect verbal and non-verbal communication, limit self-confidence and desire to interact with others and cause pain and infection, in some cases leading to life-threatening illness (Malkin 2009).

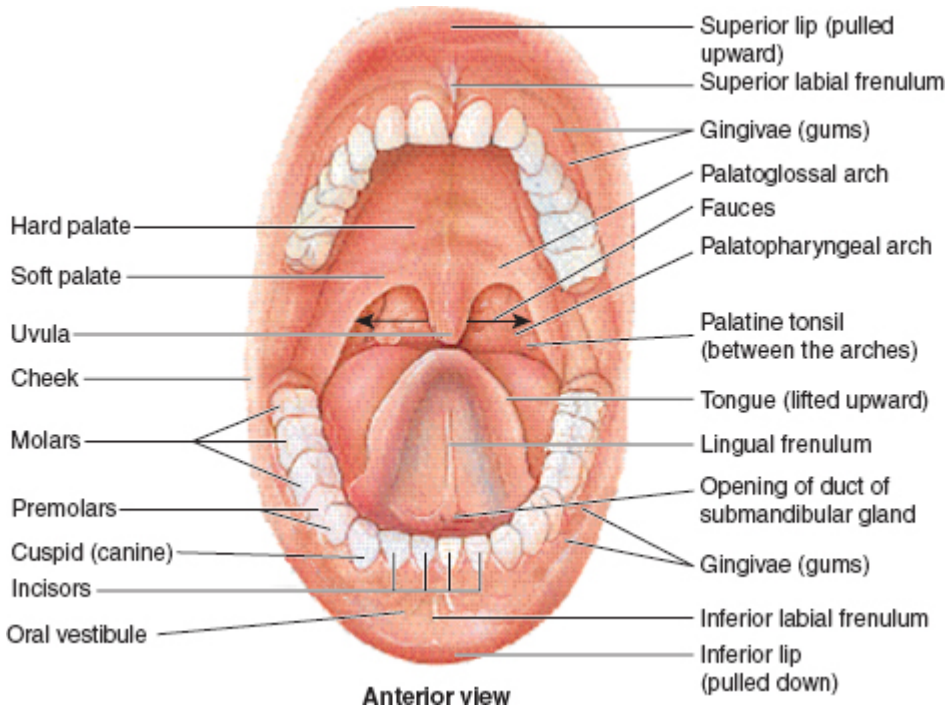
Anatomy and physiology

Structure of the oral cavity

The mouth consists of the vestibule and the oral cavity (Figure 9.7). The vestibule is the space between the lips and cheeks on the outside and the teeth and gingivae (gums) on the inside. The palate forms the roof of the oral cavity with the base of the tongue forming the floor of the mouth. It is bordered by the alveolar arches, teeth and gums at either side (Cooley 2002). The lips and cheeks are formed of skeletal muscle; the inner part of the cheeks is known as the buccal mucosa and consists of columnar epithelium. The lips are involved in speech and facial expression and keep food within the oral cavity. The cheeks control the location of food as the teeth break it down.

Figure 9.7 Structures of the mouth (oral cavity).

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



Teeth

Teeth are formed of the crown (the visible part) and the root. The crown is covered in enamel, a hard, dense material which cannot repair itself once damaged. Below the enamel cap, the tooth is formed of a bonelike material called dentine. This extends into the root and surrounds the pulp cavity, which contains nerve fibres, blood vessels and connective tissue. When the pulp cavity extends into the root, it is known as the root canal. Teeth are embedded in alveoli (sockets) in the maxilla and mandible and are held in place by periodontal ligaments and a substance known as cementum. Teeth are important in breaking down and grinding food and are also involved in producing sounds in speech (Marieb 2001).

Tongue

The tongue is a muscular structure extending from its tip (apex) to the posterior attachment in the oropharynx. It houses taste buds and is involved in taste, forming food into a bolus and pushing it to the back of the mouth for swallowing. It is also involved in the articulation of sounds in speech.

Palate

The palate consists of the hard palate anteriorly and the soft palate which is a muscular structure leading to the palatoglossal arches and the uvula. The hard and soft palates are involved in mastication, swallowing and production of speech (Lockhart and Resick 2006).

Saliva

Saliva is produced by the parotid glands (in front of the ears), which produce saliva rich in amylase, the submandibular glands (in the lower part of the floor of the mouth), which produce mucinous saliva, the sublingual glands (in the floor of the mouth between the side of the tongue and the teeth), producing viscous saliva, and many minor salivary glands throughout the oral cavity (Hahn and Jones 2000). One litre of saliva can be produced daily, consisting of mainly water with electrolytes, amylase, proteins such as mucin, lysozyme and IgA and metabolic wastes (Lockhart and Resick 2006). Saliva is slightly acidic and can act as a buffer. It is also important in mastication, taste and speech. It acts as a defence against infection by physically washing debris off teeth and its proteins also have an antibacterial action (Hahn and Jones 2000).

Related theory

Dental decay

Dental decay begins with the formation of a biofilm known as plaque which is made up of sugar, bacteria and other debris on the teeth. Tooth enamel can be damaged due to bacterial action, resulting in a drop in pH around the tooth. Once there is damage to the enamel then the inner dentine can also decay (Cooley 2002). Areas of decay in teeth are known as caries. Plaque can be physically removed by brushing and flossing teeth. If it is not regularly removed, it can harden to form calculus (tartar) which requires dental treatment for removal. Calculus can also disrupt the seal between the gingiva and the tooth, resulting in red, swollen and bleeding gums (gingivitis). This inflammation can

progress to the formation of deep pockets of infection, damaging the teeth and underlying bone (periodontitis) (Marieb 2001). Smoking is known to be a risk factor for periodontitis and other factors such as xerostomia can also increase the risk of such problems.

Xerostomia

Xerostomia is the subjective sensation of dry mouth, which does not always correlate to a reduction in saliva production (Maher 2004). It can be associated with thickened saliva, discomfort which may be burning in nature and difficulty eating or speaking (Davies 2005b). A variety of causes are known (Box 9.7).

Box 9.7 Causes of a dry mouth

- Many common drugs can cause dry mouth, including analgesic agents and antidepressants.
- Oxygen, due to its drying effect.
- Mouth breathing.
- Poor appetite.
- Anxiety and depression.
- Radiotherapy to the head and neck can affect the salivary glands; this may be irreversible.
- Chemotherapy, which normally resolves over time.
- Diseases such as Sjögren's syndrome.

(Maher 2004)

Where possible, the cause should be treated; sips of water normally only relieve the problem briefly. Artificial saliva may be helpful and mucin-based salivary substitutes are most effective, available in gel and spray forms. Production of saliva may be stimulated by use of sugar-free chewing gum but acidic sweets should be avoided as they may cause discomfort and increase the risk of dental caries (Davies 2000). Salivary stimulants such as pilocarpine can also be useful. Studies have also demonstrated that acupuncture can be helpful (Davies 2005b).

Patients with xerostomia must pay careful attention to oral hygiene as they are at greatly increased risk of oral complications such as caries and

periodontitis due to loss of the protective effect of saliva (Maher 2004).

Oral mucositis

Mucositis is inflammation of the mucous membranes of the oral cavity and gastrointestinal tract (Eilers and Million 2007). The terms 'oral mucositis' and 'stomatitis' refer to inflammation of the oral cavity. Chemotherapy and radiotherapy affect the ability of cells to reproduce and particularly affect areas which have a rapid proliferation rate such as the alimentary tract (Beck 2004). The surface epithelial layer in the oral mucosa is replaced every 7–14 days which means that the oral mucosa is particularly vulnerable to the direct effect of cell death following chemotherapy and subsequent indirect effects of treatment, such as neutropenia and thrombocytopenia, which can affect healing and vulnerability to infection (Cooley 2002, Otto 2001). The incidence of moderate to severe oral mucositis can be up to 100% in patients receiving radiotherapy to the head and neck (Peterson *et al.* 2009). For patients receiving standard-dose chemotherapy regimens, the incidence varies from 3% to 14% while up to 75% of patients having high-dose chemotherapy as conditioning prior to haematopoietic stem cell transplantation can experience moderate to severe oral mucositis (Peterson *et al.* 2009).

Mucositis is now better understood as a complex process whereby intracellular changes and reactions occur before damage to the mucosa is apparent (Sonis *et al.* 2004). The impact on the patient is that symptoms such as altered sensation or taste and pain may be experienced before there are obvious changes to the mucosa. This can progress to painful lesions or large ulcerated areas. Good nursing care is essential for the patient's well-being and comfort (Eilers and Million 2007). A variety of agents have been used to prevent and treat oral mucositis, with mixed results. Several systematic reviews have been carried out and recommendations formulated (Barasch *et al.* 2006, Clarkson *et al.* 2007a, Keefe *et al.* 2007, Rubenstein *et al.* 2004, Worthington *et al.* 2007a).

Evidence-based approaches

Principles of care

The aims of oral care are to:

- keep the oral mucosa and lips clean, soft, moist and intact
- keep natural teeth free from plaque and debris
- maintain denture hygiene and prevent disease related to dentures
- prevent oral infection
- prevent oral discomfort
- maintain the mouth in a state of normal function (Jones 1998).

Box 9.8 lists the recommendations for maintaining oral health.

Box 9.8 Factors that maintain good oral health

- Eating a healthy diet, particularly limiting sugary foods and drinks to reduce the build-up of plaque (this includes sugar-containing medicines).
- Stop smoking; it is known to increase the risk of gum disease and oral cancers.
- Limit alcohol consumption; high intake is a known risk factor for oral cancers.
- Have regular dental check-ups.
- Brush teeth for 2 minutes at least twice daily with a fluoride toothpaste and use floss or an interdental brush to clean areas that are hard to reach.
- Look for signs of oral disease; consult a dentist if anything unusual is seen.
- Take care in activities such as contact sports where facial injuries can occur.

(DH 2005)

Within a variety of care settings, patients can find themselves at risk of poor oral health. Patients in particular need of assistance or extra care include those with the following problems.

- Patients who are nil by mouth (including unconscious or ventilated patients).
- Patients who mouth breathe (including those on oxygen therapy or with a nasogastric tube).
- Cancer patients receiving radiotherapy to the head and neck or chemotherapy which can directly affect the oral cavity or result in reduced immunity to infection.

- Patients having oral surgery or who have traumatic injury to the head and neck.
- Older patients.
- Patients with diabetes.
- Patients unable to maintain their own oral hygiene due to physical disability or psychological disorders which could affect motivation.
- Patients with clotting disorders.
- Patients taking medication which have dry mouth or gum overgrowth as side-effects.

(Potter and Griffin Perry 2003)

There is a variety of evidence available to support practice, ranging from Cochrane reviews to expert opinion. At the very least, each patient should have a thorough assessment of the oral cavity.

Legal and professional issues

Nurses should provide a high standard of care to patients, based on the best evidence available, ensuring they have the necessary skills (NMC 2008b). Numerous studies have found that nurses feel they lack knowledge and training about providing oral care (Southern 2007). Although a number of training tools are available, the provision of adequate training before and after registration requires further attention (Doyle and Dalton 2008, NHSQIS 2004). As is the case for all procedures, a full explanation must be given to the patient and consent obtained (NMC 2008a).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Toothbrush

The toothbrush is recognized as being the most effective means of removing plaque and debris from the teeth and gums. A small-headed, medium-textured brush is most effective at reaching all areas of the

mouth. A gentle scrubbing action is recommended, using small movements with gentle pressure for 2 minutes (Sweeney 2005). The brush should be placed at a 45° angle against the teeth and overlaying the gum edge to allow cleaning of the gingival margin (Jones 1998). Powered toothbrushes have been shown to be as effective as manual toothbrushes and may be easier for patients with limited dexterity to use (Robinson *et al.* 2005). Aids such as foam handles can also be obtained from the occupational therapist to make a manual toothbrush easier to hold. The toothbrush should be allowed to air dry to reduce bacterial contamination and changed every 3 months or sooner if worn (Hahn and Jones 2000). For patients with a sore mouth, a soft or baby toothbrush can be used. A pea-sized amount of fluoride toothpaste should be used; fluoride is known to have an anti-caries activity and can reduce dentine sensitivity. If toothpaste is too abrasive for a patient whose mouth is painful, water alone can be used (Sweeney 2005).

Foam sticks

The foam stick is one of the most common pieces of equipment used in hospital to provide oral care although it is well known that less plaque is removed than with a toothbrush, particularly from less obvious areas of the teeth (Pearson and Hutton 2002). The foam stick should only be used on patients who cannot tolerate use of a toothbrush, such as those with painful or bleeding mouths. Foam sticks can be used with chlorhexidine rather than plain water for an antibacterial effect (Huskinson and Lloyd 2009). Care should be taken that the foam head is securely attached to avoid risk of accidental aspiration (Malkin 2009).

Interdental cleaning

The use of dental floss or other equipment is recommended to clean areas between the teeth which may be difficult to reach with a toothbrush (Huskinson and Lloyd 2009). There is currently limited evidence of the efficacy of flossing although it is generally believed to be beneficial (Berchier *et al.* 2008). A variety of equipment is available such as dental floss, dental tape, wood sticks or interdental brushes. For patients who have limited dexterity, this may be difficult or impossible

to carry out. Similarly, in patients with painful mouths or bleeding gums, this type of equipment could cause further discomfort or bleeding and should be avoided.

Oral irrigation devices such as the WaterPik® can also be used for interdental cleaning. Oral irrigation involves a jet of water being used to remove debris and plaque and can be useful for people who find it difficult to use dental floss or tape such as those with braces. A systematic review of oral irrigation has shown a positive tendency but no overall benefit in reducing plaque over use of a toothbrush alone (Husseini *et al.* 2008).

Assessment and recording tools

The mouth should be assessed as part of the initial nursing assessment and should be reassessed regularly thereafter (DH 2001, NHSQIS 2004). Frequency of assessment is often based on clinical judgement rather than evidence. For patients at high risk of changes to the condition of the mouth, such as those receiving high-dose chemotherapy, assessment should be carried out daily (Quinn *et al.* 2008). For elderly patients receiving long-term care, it has been recommended that reassessment takes place monthly (NHSQIS 2004). For certain patients, such as those receiving high-dose chemotherapy or radiotherapy to the head and neck, an assessment by a dentist is recommended prior to starting treatment.

The use of an oral assessment tool is recommended to ensure consistency between assessors and to monitor changes. A number of tools have been devised for different patient groups. Tools such as the WHO scale (WHO 1979) or the Oral Assessment Guide (OAG) (Eilers *et al.* 1988) are commonly used in assessing patients receiving anticancer treatments. Numerous other tools exist to assess oral mucositis, although some lack evidence of validity and reliability. Use of a validated tool is recommended (DH 2001). Several tools have also been designed to meet the needs of elderly patients and those with dementia (Kayser-Jones *et al.* 1995, Roberts 2001). The ideal assessment tool should measure:

- functional changes, for example ability to talk or eat
- physical changes, for example presence of ulcerated areas

- subjective changes, for example pain or dryness.

The ideal tool has not yet been developed and it may be necessary to use a combination of tools to make a thorough assessment. Patient education to encourage self-assessment is also recommended (Quinn *et al.* 2008).

Good assessment is vital before a care plan can be formulated. Assessment should include visual inspection and obtaining a history from the patient. Many factors should be considered when carrying out a full oral assessment (Box 9.9).

Box 9.9 Factors to consider when carrying out an oral assessment

- Usual oral hygiene practice and frequency.
- Regularity of dental visits.
- Oral discomfort or pain.
- Dry mouth.
- Difficulty chewing.
- Difficulty swallowing.
- Difficulty speaking.
- Halitosis (malodorous breath).
- Drooling.
- Presence of dentures and normal care routine.
- Current or past dental problems.
- Other risk factors, for example diabetes, steroid treatment, smoking, alcohol intake, altered nutritional status.

(Davies 2005a, Malkin 2009)

Inspection should be undertaken in good light, gloves should be worn, a pen torch should be available, and any dentures or plates should be removed. It is helpful to have a set order in which areas are examined so nothing is missed. The following areas should be inspected.

- *The lips*: are they dry, cracked or bleeding?
- *The upper and lower labial sulci (inner part of the lip towards the vestibule)*: the lip should be retracted with a gloved finger or tongue

depressor.

- *The buccal mucosa on the right and left sides*: is it intact, soft, moist, coated, ulcerated or inflamed?
- *The dorsal surface of the tongue (ask the patient to stick out the tongue)*: is it dry, coated or ulcerated?
- *The ventral surface of the tongue (ask the patient to lift the tongue up and move it from side to side)*: can the patient move it normally?
- *The floor of the mouth should also be inspected*: is the normal saliva pool present, is the saliva watery?
- *The hard and soft palate*: are they intact, ulcerated or red?
- *The gums*: are they inflamed or bleeding?
- *The teeth*: are they present, cared for, loose or stained, is debris present?

(Davies 2005a, Hahn and Jones 2000)

Pharmacological support

The choice of an oral care agent will be dependent on the aim of care. The agent may be used to remove debris and plaque, prevent superimposed infection, alleviate pain, provide comfort, stop bleeding, provide lubrication or treat specific problems (Dickinson and Porter 2006). A wide variety of agents are available and choice should be determined by the individual needs of the patient and the particular clinical situation together with a detailed nursing assessment. There is ongoing debate on the efficacy of agents presently available and there remains insufficient evidence to clearly state the best agents to use in the clinical setting.

Chlorhexidine gluconate

Chlorhexidine gluconate is an effective antibacterial and antiplaque agent. For the patient who is unable to use a toothbrush, it can provide a chemical method of stopping plaque build-up. As chlorhexidine is released from tissues for up to 12 hours, it only needs to be used twice daily. Chlorhexidine does not remove plaque which is already present so brushing of teeth should continue as far as possible (Sweeney 2005). It

is also available as a gel formulation which may be useful for those requiring a non-foaming alternative to toothpaste (patients at risk of aspiration or with swallowing difficulties). Chlorhexidine has not been shown to be effective in preventing oral mucositis in patients with head and neck cancers undergoing radiotherapy or in treating oral mucositis in patients receiving chemotherapy although it may be used as part of an oral protocol for its antiplaque and antibacterial action (Barasch *et al.* 2006, Rubenstein *et al.* 2004).

Artificial saliva

Saliva substitutes which are mucin based are more effective than those which are carboxymethylcellulose based for relieving dry mouth (xerostomia) (Davies 2005b). Recommendations are to use several sprays around the mouth, to use the tongue to spread the artificial saliva around the mouth and to use it at least prior to meals and at any other time when the mouth feels dry (Davies 2000).

Coating agents

Several agents have been used to coat the oral mucosa and they are thought to have a protective effect although there is limited evidence to support their use. Sucralfate has not been shown to be effective in preventing or treating chemotherapy- or radiotherapy-associated oral mucositis (Clarkson *et al.* 2007a, Worthington *et al.* 2007a).

Other agents

Several other treatments have been found to be useful in prevention of oral mucositis related to chemotherapy. Palifermin is a recombinant form of human keratinocyte growth factor which stimulates cell growth in the alimentary tract. In trials it has been found to have an effect in preventing oral mucositis in haemato-oncology patients having high-dose chemotherapy and total body irradiation with autologous stem cell transplantation and its use is recommended by the Multinational Association of Supportive Care in Cancer and the International Society for Oral Oncology (MASCC/ISOO) (Keefe *et al.* 2007).

The use of oral cryotherapy, in which ice chips are placed in the mouth during the administration of chemotherapy and for up to 30 minutes afterwards, is recommended for patients receiving 5-fluorouracil and edatrexate chemotherapy (Rubenstein *et al.* 2004). Oral cryotherapy for an hour is recommended for patients receiving high-dose melphalan as it can reduce the severity of mucositis (Keefe *et al.* 2007). Cryotherapy is thought to work by causing vasoconstriction, resulting in reduced delivery of the chemotherapy agent to the tissues in the mouth. Whilst it is a simple procedure, it can be uncomfortable for patients who may be unable to tolerate it for long periods and is only effective for chemotherapy drugs with a short half-life (Aisa *et al.* 2005).

Other agents for which there is limited evidence include allopurinol, benzydamine mouthwash, used to prevent oral mucositis in patients undergoing head and neck radiotherapy, and calcium phosphate mouthwash (Keefe *et al.* 2007, Worthington *et al.* 2007a).

Analgesic agents

For patients with oral mucositis, it is unclear if analgesic agents used topically are effective. There is evidence that systemic opioids are effective, and both continuous infusion and patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) using morphine have been used in patients receiving high-dose chemotherapy and stem cell transplantation. Patients using PCA have been found to use less opioid in total (Clarkson *et al.* 2007a, Rubenstein *et al.* 2004).

Antifungal agents

Colonization of the mouth with yeast occurs in one-third of the population. In patients receiving steroids or antibiotics, the balance of oral flora can be altered and oral candidosis can occur. Predisposing factors also include xerostomia and the presence of dentures. Topical treatment is normally effective using an antifungal oral suspension or lozenges (Finlay and Davies 2005). In patients having anticancer treatment, the use of prophylactic topical antifungal treatments has been investigated. These have not been shown to be useful in preventing oral

Candida and partly or fully absorbed antifungal agents such as fluconazole or miconazole are recommended (Clarkson *et al.* 2007b).

Contraindicated agents

A number of agents widely used in the past have been found to have detrimental effects and are no longer recommended. Glycerine and lemon swabs have been used for dry mouth but the acid content can damage tooth enamel and the overall effect is to increase oral dryness (Hahn and Jones 2000). Hydrogen peroxide is also not recommended as it can cause mucosal abnormalities (Berry *et al.* 2007).

Non-pharmacological support

Fluoride

Fluoride helps to prevent and arrest tooth decay, especially radiation caries, demineralization and decalcification. High-dose fluoride toothpaste may be recommended for patients with xerostomia (NHSQIS 2004).

Commercial mouthwash

Over-the-counter mouthwashes are not generally recommended. Many have a high alcohol content which can cause stinging, particularly for patients with sensitive mouths (Milligan *et al.* 2001).

Bland rinses

Several agents have been used to rinse the mouth, moisten the mucosa and loosen and remove debris. Normal saline has been recommended by a number of authors as part of a patient's oral care. This relatively cheap and generally well-tolerated solution can alleviate discomfort although it is not effective at removing heavy amounts of debris (Milligan *et al.* 2001). Patients with mucositis can benefit from frequent rinsing of the mouth with warm normal saline to remove debris without causing irritation (Meechan 2005). The use of water has also been suggested to rinse the mouth after meals to remove debris (Sweeney 2005). Its use in critical care has been discouraged due to risk of infection in vulnerable

patients, but sterile water may be an alternative (Berry *et al.* 2007). Sodium bicarbonate has been used in some centres although there is some evidence that patients find it unpleasant to taste and that it can alter pH in the mouth, predisposing to bacterial growth (Wood 2004).

Specific patient preparations

Patients with dentures

Patients with dentures should be encouraged or assisted to remove and clean the denture at least daily. The denture should be cleaned over a towel or a water-filled sink to reduce the risk of damage if it is dropped. It should be brushed with a large toothbrush, denture brush or personal nailbrush and soap and water or denture cleaner. It should be rinsed with water before being replaced in the mouth. Denture wearers are at risk of fungal infections developing under the denture and spreading to the hard palate and should be advised to remove and soak the denture ideally overnight or at least for 1 hour. The denture should be soaked in a solution of dilute sodium hypochlorite (1 part Milton® to 80 parts water). If the denture has metal parts or if infection is present, chlorhexidine 0.2% can be used to disinfect the denture (Sweeney 2005). The denture should be rinsed well before reinsertion. It should be marked with the wearer's name and the storage container should also be marked and should be either disposable or able to be sterilized (Chalmers and Pearson 2005). Denture wearers should also clean any remaining teeth and the gums and tongue with a soft toothbrush and fluoride toothpaste. They should also have regular dental check-ups as ill-fitting dentures can cause ulcers or irritation (Clay 2000, Duffin 2008).

Patients needing assistance

A variety of patient groups may need assistance. Patients with mental illness or learning disabilities may need encouragement or assistance to maintain their oral hygiene (Doyle and Dalton 2008, Griffiths *et al.* 2000). Patients with conditions affecting mobility, sight or dexterity may find it difficult to carry out oral hygiene without assistance. Practical

aids such as using a mirror and sitting down rather than standing can aid independence. Use of a foam handle aid to make the toothbrush easier to hold or a pump action toothpaste can also help (Holman *et al.* 2005). Privacy is essential to maintain the patient's dignity. Older patients may be at risk of oral problems due to a natural decline in salivary gland function, wear and tear of teeth, and taking medication with side-effects which can cause oral problems such as dry mouth, taste changes or increased risk of infection (Chalmers and Pearson 2005, Clay 2000, Fitzpatrick 2000). Regular assessment and assistance with maintaining oral hygiene are recommended (NHSQIS 2004). For the patient who needs assistance, it is recommended that the carer stands behind or to the side of the patient and supports the lower jaw (Sweeney 2005).

Unconscious patients

Unconscious patients require particular interventions to maintain oral hygiene and comfort. For patients who are close to death, there is a lack of evidence relating to oral care and the focus should be on patient comfort. Any interventions causing distress should be stopped; mouthcare can be offered 1–2 hourly but should be decided based on the individual's needs (Sweeney 2005). Gentle cleaning with a soft toothbrush or foam stick is recommended and a lubricant should be applied to the lips (Dahlin 2004). In critically ill patients who are unconscious and requiring mechanical ventilation, management is different (Box 9.10).

Box 9.10 Recommendations for oral care in critically ill patients

- Daily assessment.
- Oral care 2–4 hourly.
- Brushing with a small-headed soft toothbrush and fluoride toothpaste.
- Cleaning the mouth with foam sticks and chlorhexidine mouthwash or gel for patients for whom a toothbrush would be unsuitable, for example bleeding, severe ulcers.
- Use of suction to prevent aspiration.

(Abidia 2007, Stiefel *et al.* 2000)

It is well known that aspiration of oropharyngeal flora can cause bacterial pneumonia (Li *et al.* 2000). Ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP) is a serious complication which can occur in up to a quarter of ventilated patients and has a mortality of up to 50% (Berry *et al.* 2007). In critically ill patients the mouth can become colonized within 48 hours of admission to hospital with bacteria that tend to be more virulent than those normally found in the mouth (Grap *et al.* 2003). The oropharynx can become colonized, as can an artificial airway. This can allow pathogens to travel to the respiratory tract, resulting in pneumonia (Cutler and Davis 2005). It is well recognized that good oral care is essential in critically ill patients to reduce the incidence of VAP. Other contributing factors to poor oral health in this group of patients include dry mouth related to use of oxygen, mouth breathing and the patient being nil by mouth. The presence of tubes or securing tapes can make it difficult to view and clean the oral cavity.

Further research is needed in this area as there is a lack of trial-based evidence to support practice (Munro and Grap 2004).

Procedure guideline 9.6 Mouth care

Essential equipment

- Small torch
- Plastic cups
- Mouthwash or cleaning solutions
- Appropriate equipment for cleaning
- Clean receiver or bowl
- Paper tissues/gauze
- Wooden spatula
- Small-headed, soft toothbrush
- Toothpaste
- Non-sterile disposable gloves
- Denture pot

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale

1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient. When possible, encourage patients to carry out their own oral care.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C). To enable patients to gain confidence in managing their own symptom management (DH 2005, C).
2 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water and dry with paper towel or use alcohol handrub. Put on disposable gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
3 Prepare solutions required.	Solutions must always be prepared immediately before use to maximize their efficacy and minimize the risk of microbial contamination (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 If the patient cannot remove their own dentures, remove the lower denture first. **(a)** *Lower denture*: grasp it in the middle and lift it, rotating it gently to remove from the mouth, and place in denture pot. **(b)** *Upper denture*: remove the upper denture by grasping firmly in the middle and tilting the denture forward while putting pressure on the front teeth to break the seal with the palate. Rotate the denture from side to side to remove it from the mouth and place in denture pot.	The lower denture should be removed first to avoid the risk of aspiration (Sweeney 2005, R5). Removal of dentures is necessary for cleaning of underlying tissues (Sweeney 2005, R5).
5 Carry out oral assessment using an oral assessment tool.	Provides baseline to enable monitoring of mucosal changes and evaluate response to treatment and care (Eilers *et al.* 1988, R5; Sonis *et al.* 2004, R5).
6 Inspect the patient's mouth, including teeth, with the aid of a torch, spatula and gauze, paying special attention to the lips, buccal mucosa, lateral and ventral surfaces of the tongue, floor of the mouth and the soft palate. Ask the patient if they have any of the following: taste changes, change in saliva production and composition, oral discomfort or difficulty swallowing.	The mouth is examined for changes in condition with respect to moisture, cleanliness, infected or bleeding areas, ulcers, and so on. These areas are known to be more susceptible to cytoxic damage (Sonis *et al.* 2004, R5). To assess nutritional deficits, salivary changes and pain secondary to oral changes (Sonis *et al.* 2004, R5).
7 Using a soft, small toothbrush and toothpaste (or foam stick if the gingiva is damaged or susceptible to bleeding), brush the patient's natural teeth, gums and tongue. Stand	To remove adherent materials from the teeth, tongue and gum surfaces (Beck 2004, E). Brushing stimulates

behind or to the side of the patient and support the lower jaw with your free hand.	gingival tissues to maintain tone and prevent circulatory stasis (Clay 2000, E; Pearson and Hutton 2002, R1b). Foam stick reduces possibility of trauma (Cooley 2002, E).
8 Hold the brush against the teeth with the bristles at a 45° angle. The tips of the outer bristles should rest against and penetrate under the gingival sulcus. Then move the bristles back and forth using horizontal or circular strokes and a vibrating motion (bass sulcular technique), from the sulcus to the crowns of the teeth. Repeat until all teeth surfaces have been cleaned. Clean the biting surfaces by moving the toothbrush back and forth over them in short strokes and brush tongue to remove any debris.	Brushing loosens and removes debris trapped on and between the teeth and gums (DH 2005, C). This reduces the growth medium for pathogenic organisms and minimizes the risk of plaque formation and dental caries (Beck 2004, E; Clay 2000, E; Pearson and Hutton 2002, R1b). Foam sticks are ineffective for this (Beck 2004, E).
9 Give a beaker of water to the patient. Encourage patient to rinse the mouth vigorously then void contents into a receiver. Paper tissues should be to hand to dry any spillage of water.	Rinsing removes loosened debris and toothpaste and makes the mouth taste fresher (Beck 2004, E).
10 If the patient is unable to rinse and void, use a rinsed toothbrush to clean the teeth and moistened foam sticks to wipe the gums and oral mucosa. Foam sticks should be used with a rotating action so that most of the surface is utilized.	To remove debris as effectively as possible (Beck 2004, E; Sonis *et al.* 2004, R5).
11 Apply several sprays of artificial saliva to the mouth if appropriate and/or suitable lubricant to dry lips.	To increase the patient's feeling of comfort and well-being and prevent further tissue damage (Davies 2000, R1b).
12 Clean the patient's dentures on all surfaces with a denture brush or toothbrush and soap and water or denture cleaner. Check the dentures for cracks, sharp edges and missing teeth. Rinse them well and return them to the patient.	Cleaning dentures removes accumulated food debris which could be broken down by salivary enzymes to products which irritate and cause inflammation of the adjacent mucosal tissue (Sweeney 2005, R5).
13 Dentures should be removed for at least 1 hour but ideally overnight and placed in a suitable cleaning solution.	Dentures can easily become colonized by bacteria. Soaking can disinfect the denture, discouraging bacterial growth (Clay 2000, E; Sweeney 2005, R2b).
14 Floss teeth (unless contraindicated, for example clotting abnormality, thrombocytopenia) once in 24 hours using lightly waxed floss. To floss the upper teeth, use your thumb and index finger to stretch the floss and wrap one end of floss around the third finger of each hand. Move the floss up and down between the teeth from the tops of the crowns to the gum and along the gum lines wherever possible. To floss the lower teeth, use the index fingers to stretch the floss.	Flossing helps to remove debris between teeth. Flossing when patient has abnormal clotting or low platelets may lead to bleeding and predispose the oral mucosa to infection (Clay 2000, E; Beck 2004, E).
15 Discard remaining mouthwash solutions.	To prevent infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
16 Clean the toothbrush and allow it to air dry.	To prevent the risk of contamination (Jones 1998, E).

Postprocedure

17 Ensure the patient is comfortable.

18 Wash hands with soap and water and dry with paper towel or use alcohol handrub. To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Problem-solving table 9.1 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 9.6)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Dry mouth (xerostomia)	Oxygen therapy, mouth breathing, nil by mouth	Humidified oxygen	Swabbing the mouth with moistened foam stick or encouraging the patient to rinse the mouth with water and spit it out
Dry mouth (xerostomia)	Salivary gland hypofunction due to disease, drugs or side-effects of radiotherapy or chemotherapy	Not always possible to prevent	Good oral hygiene to prevent complications, use of salivary stimulants, for example chewing gum, pilocarpine or saliva substitutes
Patient unable to tolerate toothbrush	Pain, for example post surgery Mucositis	Consider anaesthetic mouth spray or mouthwash before mouth care. Give regular and/or prn analgesia	Use foam sticks and chlorhexidine 0.2% to clean the patient's teeth, gums and mucosa; 0.9% sodium chloride rinse can be used if the patient cannot tolerate any form of oral care
Toothbrush inappropriate or ineffective	Infected stomatis. Accumulation of dried mucus, new lesions, blood or debris	As above	As above and take a swab of any infected areas for culture before giving mouth care

Pain

Pain is a universal human experience. It is the third most common reason why people visit their General Practitioner.

Treating the disease or condition that causes pain often resolves the problem. However, on other occasions treatment is not totally successful (e.g. diabetic neuropathy) and sometimes the cause of the pain is not entirely clear (e.g. pain following surgery, low back pain). Pain then persists.

Chronic pain is defined as an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage, or described in terms of such damage. Statistics show that nearly one in seven people suffer from chronic pain and 20% have suffered for more than 20 years. It is hardly surprising that people suffering from chronic pain consult their doctor up to five times more frequently than others and that this results in nearly 5 million GP appointments a year.

Two-thirds of chronic pain sufferers surveyed in the UK reported inadequate pain control with only 16% saying they had seen a pain specialist. Despite the fact that many patients want more effective management and better understanding of their pain, 70% were very satisfied with the doctor who treats their pain.

(British Pain Society and Royal College of Physicians 2004)

Definition

Pain is difficult to define due to the complexity of its anatomical and physiological foundations, the experience and perceptions of each individual person and the social and cultural meanings of pain (Paz and Seymour 2008). It is not a simple sensation but a complex phenomenon, having both a physical and an affective (emotional) component. To reflect this, the International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP) 1994 published the following definition of pain: ‘An unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage, or described in terms of such damage’. Pain is subjective and another favoured definition for use in clinical practice, proposed originally by McCaffrey (1968) and cited in McCaffrey (2000), p.2), is: ‘Pain is whatever the experiencing person says it is, existing whenever the experiencing person says it does’.

Related theory

Many factors influence the expression of pain and may be associated with the patient, the nurse or the clinical environment (organizational aspects) (Carr and Mann 2000). Pain can have many dimensions including physical, psychological, spiritual and sociocultural.

There are several ways to categorize the types of pain that occur, for example, acute or chronic, nociceptive (somatic or visceral) or neuropathic. It is increasingly recognized that acute and chronic pain may represent a continuum rather than being distinct separate entities (Macintyre *et al.* 2010) and may combine different pain mechanisms and vary in duration.

Acute pain

The IASP has defined acute pain as: 'Pain of recent onset and probable limited duration. It usually has an identifiable temporal and causal relationship to injury or disease' (Ready and Edwards 1992, p.1). Acute pain is produced by a wide range of physiological processes, and includes inflammatory, neuropathic, sympathetically maintained, visceral and cancer pain (Walker *et al.* 2006). Acute pain serves a purpose by alerting the individual to a problem and acting as a warning of tissue damage or potential tissue damage. If left untreated, it may result in severe consequences; for example, not seeking help for acute abdominal pain may result in emergency care such as appendicitis progressing to peritonitis. Acute pain is short-term pain of less than 12 weeks' duration (British Pain Society 2008). It occurs in response to any type of injury to the body and resolves when the injury heals.

Chronic pain

Chronic pain is usually prolonged and defined as pain that exists for more than 3 months, lasting beyond the usual course of the acute disease or expected time of healing (IASP 1996). It is often associated with major changes in personality, lifestyle and functional ability (Foley 2004). Chronic pain occurs as a result of both cancer and non-malignant chronic conditions such as neuropathic, musculoskeletal and chronic postoperative pain syndromes.

The term 'breakthrough pain' is widely used. Within the medical literature, other terms are used in the description of breakthrough pain including episodic pain, exacerbation of pain, pain flare, transient pain and transitory pain (Colleau 1999).

The ethos of this section will be based on acute and chronic pain management in cancer and palliative care patients. Many of the principles are transferable to other pain situations.

Anatomy and physiology

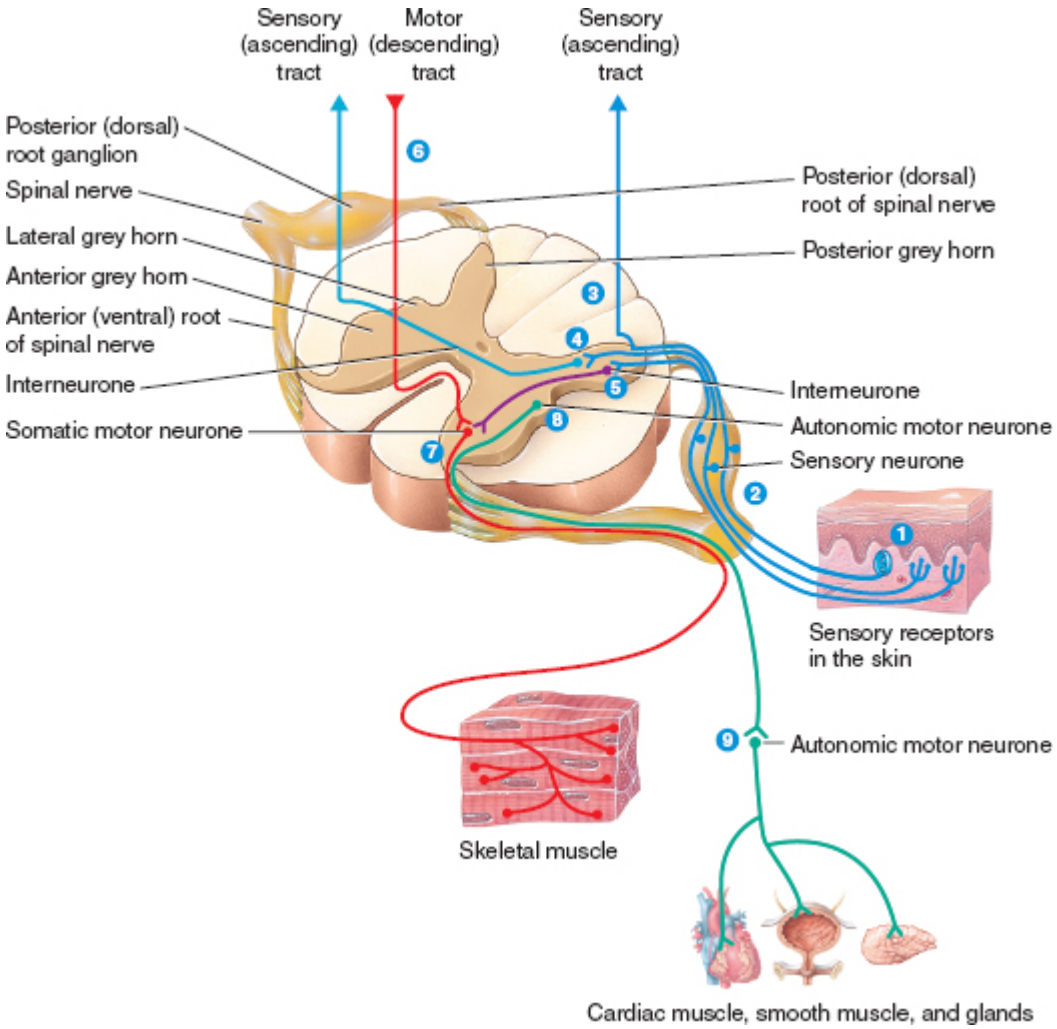
Pain mechanisms (anatomy and physiology) are usually described in terms of nociceptive pain or neuropathic pain. As with acute and chronic pain, it may be common for pain to be both nociceptive and neuropathic in origin rather than purely one or the other.

Nociceptive pain

Nociceptive pain is the 'normal' pain pathway that occurs in response to tissue injury or damage (Figure 9.8). It consists of four components: transduction, transmission, perception and modulation. Nociceptors are free nerve endings found at the end of pain neurones. They are found in skin and subcutaneous tissue, muscle, visceral organs, tendons, fascia, joint capsules and arterial walls (Godfrey 2005). Nociceptors respond to noxious thermal stimuli (heat and cold) and mechanical stimuli (stretching, compression, infiltration) and to the chemical mediators released as part of the inflammatory response to tissue injury. These chemical mediators include prostaglandins, bradykinin, substance P, serotonin and adenosine. As a result of this stimulation process, an action potential is generated in the nerve (*transduction*).

Figure 9.8 Processing of sensory input and motor output by the spinal cord.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).

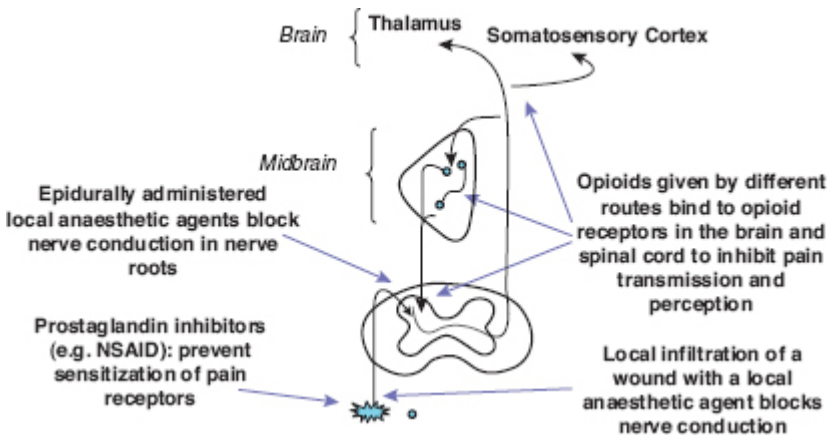


The pain signal is then transmitted along the peripheral nervous system (A delta and C fibres) to the central nervous system, arriving at the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. Neurotransmitters are released to allow the pain signal to be transmitted from the endings of the peripheral nerves to the nociceptors in the dorsal horn. The message is then transmitted to the brain where perception of the pain occurs (*transmission*). *Perception* is the end-result of the neuronal activity of pain transmission. The perception of pain includes behavioural, psychological and emotional components as well as physiological processes.

Modulation occurs when the transmission of pain impulses in the spinal cord is changed or inhibited. Modulatory influences on pain perception are complex, involving a gating system which is linked to a descending modulatory pathway. Modulation can occur as a result of a

natural release of inhibitory neurotransmitter chemicals that inhibit transmission of pain impulses and therefore produce analgesia. Other interventions, including distraction, relaxation, sense of well-being, heat/cold therapy, massage and TENS, can also help to modulate pain perception. Analgesic medications work by inhibiting some of the chemicals involved in pain transduction and transmission and thus modulating pain perception (Figure 9.9). Pain signals can also be increased by certain factors such as anxiety, fear and low mood/depression.

Figure 9.9 The pain pathway showing key sites for particular analgesic interventions.



Neuropathic pain

Neuropathic pain is not pain that originates as part of 'normal' pain pathways. It has been described as pain related to abnormal processing within the nervous system (Mann 2008). Nerve injury or dysfunction can be caused by a range of conditions such as infection, trauma, metabolic disorder, chemotherapy, surgery, radiation, neurotoxins, nerve compression, joint degeneration, tumour infiltration and malnutrition (Mann 2008).

The mechanisms by which neuropathic pain is generated and maintained are not fully understood but the following theories are currently thought to contribute.

- Damage or abnormalities in the nerves change the way that nerves communicate with each other.

- Pain receptors require less stimulation to initiate pain signals both in peripheral nerves and the central nervous system, where it is often referred to as central sensitization.
- Pain transmission is altered from its normal sequence.
- There may be an increase in the release of chemical neurotransmitters.
- There can be increased and chaotic firing of nerves.
- Damaged nerves spontaneously generate impulses in the absence of any stimulation.
- The descending inhibitory systems may also be reduced or lost.

These mechanisms result in increased activity or transmission of pain signals despite less input from the peripheral nervous system. Pain can be spontaneous, may be triggered by non-painful stimulus such as touch (allodynia), may be an exaggerated pain response (hyperalgesia) and patients may also experience non-painful sensations such as pins and needles and tingling (paraesthesias).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale for effective acute pain control

There are several reasons why pain needs to be well controlled following surgery, not least that patients have a right to expect adequate treatment of pain and that all members of the healthcare team have an ethical obligation to provide it (Audit Commission 1997). It is now known that undertreatment of acute pain coupled with the physiological response to surgery, known as the stress response, can have a number of adverse consequences (Macintyre and Schug 2007).

Pain can have long-lasting effects on the central nervous system, leaving an 'imprint' if pain is poorly controlled which may mean that future episodes of pain are difficult to control (Carr 2007). Uncontrolled pain can lead to increased anxiety, fear, sleeplessness and muscle tension which further exacerbate pain. It can delay the recovery process by hindering mobilization and deep breathing, which increases the risk of a patient developing a deep vein thrombosis, chest infection or pressure

ulcer. Pain can also lead to significant delays in gastric emptying and a reduction in intestinal motility (Macintyre and Schug 2007). With severe pain, activity of the sympathetic nervous system and the neuroendocrine 'stress response' causes platelet activation, changes in regional blood flow and stress on the heart. These can lead to impaired wound healing and myocardial ischaemia (Macintyre and Schug 2007). There is evidence to suggest that in the long term, poorly controlled acute pain may lead to the development of chronic pain. Perkins and Kehlet (2000) established that moderate to severe acute postoperative pain was a predictor for developing chronic pain after breast surgery, thoracic surgery and hernia repair.

Methods of pain assessment

Assessment is a key step in the process of managing pain. The aim of assessment is to identify all the factors, physical and non-physical, that affect the patient's perception of pain. A comprehensive clinical assessment is essential to gain a thorough understanding of the patient's pain, select an appropriate analgesic therapy, evaluate the effectiveness of interventions and modify therapy according to the patient's response.

Acute pain assessment for surgical patients

For surgical pain to be controlled effectively, pain must be assessed regularly and systematically. The process of pain assessment begins before surgery and continues through to discharge.

A number of psychosocial factors can influence pain. Pain is an individual, multifactorial experience influenced by previous pain events, beliefs about pain and pain management, anxiety, mood and culture (Macintyre *et al.* 2010). Patients may be anxious about the outcome of the surgery or how pain will be controlled, particularly if they have bad memories of previous pain experiences (Audit Commission 1997, Carr and Mann 2000). Anxiety in turn exacerbates pain by increasing muscle tension. Providing patients with appropriate support and information to address these concerns can reduce both anxiety and postoperative pain (Audit Commission 1997, Kalkman *et al.* 2003).

Assessment of pre-existing pain

Patients who have been taking regular opioid analgesics for a pre-existing chronic pain problem may require higher doses of analgesia to manage an acute pain episode (Lewis and Williams 2005, Macintyre 2001, Mehta and Langford 2006). It is therefore important to take a history of pre-existing pain and analgesic use so that appropriate analgesic measures can be planned in advance of surgery. This is particularly important for opioid-tolerant patients irrespective of whether opioid tolerance is due to analgesic therapy or recreational opioid drug use (Box 9.11).

Box 9.11 Key points for managing acute pain in opioid-dependent patients

- Good communication: patients at risk should be identified at preassessment and effective communication maintained between preassessment staff, recovery staff and anaesthetist/pain service.
- Formalization of peri- and postoperative pain management plan.
- Use of adjuvant drugs and regional analgesia peri- and postoperatively to spare opioid use.
- Physical dependence requires baseline preoperative opioids to be maintained to prevent acute withdrawal symptoms.
- Postoperative opioid requirements may vary depending on the effects of surgery.

(Bourne 2008)

Assessment of location and intensity of pain

Location

Many complex surgical procedures involve more than one incision site and the nature and extent of pain at each site may vary. A careful assessment of the location and type of pain is required, because each pain problem may respond to different pain management techniques. Pain location may also help to determine why pain is exacerbated by certain movements or positions (Anderson and Cleeland 2003).

Intensity

As part of the assessment process, it is important to assess the intensity of pain. Only then can the effects of any intervention be evaluated and care modified as appropriate. The simplest techniques for pain measurement involve the use of a verbal rating scale, numerical rating scale or visual analogue scale. Patients are asked to match pain intensity to the scale. Three principles apply to the use of these scales.

- The patient must be involved in scoring their own pain intensity. It provides the patient with an opportunity to express their pain intensity and also what it means to them and the effect it has on their lives. This is important because healthcare professionals frequently underestimate the intensity of a patient's pain and effectiveness of pain relief (Drayer *et al.* 1999, Idvall *et al.* 2002, Loveman and Gale 2000).
- Pain intensity assessment should incorporate different components of pain. This should include assessment of static (rest) pain and dynamic pain (on sitting, coughing or moving the affected part). For example, in a postoperative patient this is important to prevent complications of delayed recovery such as chest infections and emboli (deep vein thrombosis, pulmonary embolism) and to determine if analgesia is adequate for return of normal function (Hobbs and Hodgkinson 2003, Macintyre and Schug 2007).
- It is important to remember that a complete picture of a patient's pain cannot be derived solely from the use of a pain scale (Lawler 1997). Ongoing communication with the patient is required to uncover and manage any psychosocial factors that may be affecting the patient's pain experience.

Chronic pain assessment

The prevalence of chronic pain is approximated at being between 30% and 50% amongst patients with cancer who are undergoing active treatment for a solid tumour and between 70% and 90% among those patients with advanced disease (Portenoy and Lesage 1999). For example, approximately two-thirds of advanced cancer patients will also complain of anorexia, one-half will have a symptomatic dry mouth and

constipation, and one-third will suffer nausea, vomiting, insomnia, dyspnoea, cough or oedema (Donnelly and Walsh 1995).

It is clear from these figures that chronic pain assessment cannot be seen in isolation; identification of all related symptoms is of equal importance as they will contribute to a lowered pain threshold (the lowest stimulus intensity at which a person perceives pain) and impaired pain tolerance (the greatest stimulus intensity causing pain that a person is prepared to tolerate) (Grond *et al.* 1996). Furthermore, chronic cancer pain is often multifactorial. Adequate pain assessment requires a comprehensive evaluation of all factors that play a significant role in the cancer pain experience (Zaza and Baine 2002).

A diagnosis of cancer does not necessarily mean that the malignant process is the cause of the pain. Pain in chronic cancer may be:

- caused by the cancer itself
- caused by treatment
- associated with debilitating disease, such as a pressure ulcer
- unrelated to either the disease or the treatment, such as headache (Twycross and Wilcock 2001).

It is imperative to ascertain the patient's current level of anxiety and depression and to understand each patient's own understanding of the meaning of pain (Foley 2004). The cause of *each* pain should therefore be identified carefully; many pains unrelated to the cancer will respond to specific treatment. If the pain is due to the cancer, then it is important to determine the precise mechanism of pain because treatment will vary accordingly. Patients with cancer may experience a range of psychological and spiritual problems that extend far beyond the experience of physical pain (Paz and Seymour 2008).

The concept of total pain reminds practitioners that pain is a deeply personal experience and that one of the greatest challenges is for nurses to be able to facilitate the expression for each individual of that particular pain (Krishnasamy 2008). Pain assessment needs to acknowledge these facts and particular attention must be paid to factors that will modulate pain sensitivity (Table 9.1).

Table 9.1 Factors affecting pain sensitivity

Sensitivity increased	Sensitivity lowered

Discomfort	Relief of symptoms
Insomnia	Sleep
Fatigue	Rest
Anxiety	Sympathy
Fear	Understanding
Anger	Companionship
Sadness	Diversional activity
Depression	Reduction in anxiety
Boredom	Elevation of mood

Assessment in vulnerable and older adults

Pain assessment in vulnerable adults, for example those with cognitive impairment or dementia, and older adults may require careful consideration. Older adult patients may be reluctant to report pain due to previous bad experiences with healthcare services, anxieties about the potential cause of the pain, stoic attitudes ('put up with pain', 'don't make a fuss') and also have concerns about side-effects of analgesic medications. These issues create barriers to effective assessment and management of pain and need to be explored and strategies developed to overcome them.

Preprocedural considerations

Assessment and recording tools

Accurate pain assessment is a prerequisite of effective control and is an essential component of nursing care. In the assessment process, the nurse gathers information from the patient that allows an understanding of the patient's experience and its effect on their life. The information obtained guides the nurse in planning and evaluating strategies for care. Pain is rarely static; therefore, its assessment is not a one-time process but is ongoing.

Pain assessment can be difficult to achieve. For example, the tendency suggested by both research and clinical practice is for the patient not to report any pain or to do so inadequately or inaccurately, minimizing the pain experience (McCaffery and Beebe 1989). Nurses are influenced by

a number of variables when assessing the amount of pain a patient is suffering (Kitson 1994). Pargeon and Hailey (1999) demonstrated that healthcare providers usually over- or underestimate a patient's pain. It has also been suggested that nurses do not possess sufficient knowledge to care for patients in pain (Drayer *et al.* 1999, McCaffery and Ferrell 1997). A survey of over 3000 nurses (McCaffery and Robinson 2002) demonstrated that nurse education has improved confidence in the pain assessment process but that further education continues to be required in the pharmacology of pain medications and addressing nurses' fears of opioid addiction and respiratory depression, which continue to contribute to the undertreatment of pain.

A variety of pain assessment tools exist which can be used to assist nurses to assess pain and plan nursing care. They enable pain to be successfully assessed and monitored (McCaffery and Beebe 1989, Twycross *et al.* 1996, Walker *et al.* 1987) and improve communication between staff and patients (Raiman 1986). Higginson (1998), p.150) notes that: 'Taking assessments directly from the patient is the most valid way of collecting information on their quality of life'. Encouraging patients to take an active role in their pain assessment by using pain tools helps to increase their confidence and makes them feel part of the pain management process.

Some degree of caution, however, must be exercised with the use of pain assessment tools. The nurse must be careful to select the tool that is most appropriate for a particular type of pain experience (Box 9.12). For example, it would not be appropriate to use a pain assessment tool that had been designed for use with patients with chronic pain to assess postoperative pain. Furthermore, pain tools should not be used totally indiscriminately. Walker *et al.* 1987 found that pain tools appeared to have little value in cases of unresolved or intractable pain.

Box 9.12 Most commonly used pain assessment tools

The most commonly used pain assessment tools meet the following criteria (Fitzpatrick *et al.* 1998).

- *Simplicity*: ease of understanding for all patient groups.

- *Reliability*: reliability of the tool when used in similar patient groups; results are reproducible and consistent.
- *Valid*: the tool measures the patient's perception of pain.
- *Sensitivity*: sensitivity of the tool to the patient's pain.
- *Accuracy*: accurate and precise recording of data.
- *Interpretable*: meaningful pain scores or data are produced.
- *Feasiblity/practicality*: the degree of effort involved in using the tool is acceptable; a practical tool is more likely to be used by patients.

The use of pain assessment tools for acute pain has been shown both to increase the effectiveness of nursing interventions and to improve the management of pain (Harmer and Davies 1998, Scott 1994). Several pain assessment tools are available. Verbal descriptor scales (VDS) are based on numerically ranked words such as 'none', 'mild', 'moderate', 'severe' and 'very severe' for assessing both pain intensity and response to analgesia. Numerical rating scales (NRS) have both written and verbal forms. The written forms are either a vertical or a horizontal line with '0', indicating no pain, located on one extremity of the line and '10', indicating severe pain, at the other extremity. This type of scale is easily used as a verbal scale of 0–10 if patients are unable to see or focus on a written scale. Although originally published as a line with a scale of 0–10, there are many versions of it (Flaherty 1996). Since many of these scales focus on assessing the intensity of pain, it is important that nurses remember to combine their use of these tools with an assessment of the patient's psychosocial needs.

For practical purposes, a combined pain assessment and observation chart is frequently used in the postoperative period. The Royal Marsden Hospital Postoperative Observation and Pain Assessment Chart is one example of these (Figure 9.10). The patient's assessment of their pain is recorded on the numerical rating pain scale at the bottom of the chart at the same time that other observations are carried out (usually 2–4 hourly but more frequently if pain is not controlled).

Figure 9.10 The Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust Postoperative Observation and Pain Assessment Chart.

POST OPERATIVE OBSERVATION AND PAIN ASSESSMENT CHART

The Royal Marsden NHS Trust

Date	
Time	
Temp	40°C, 39°C, 38°C, 37°C, 36°C, 35°C
BLOOD PRESSURE	220-, 210-, 200-, 190-, 180-, 170-, 160-, 150-, 140-, 130-, 120-, 110-, 100-, 95-, 90-, 85-, 80-, 75-, 70-
PULSE	65-, 60-, 55-, 50-, 45-, 40-, 35-, 30-, 25-, 20-
Oxygen Saturation If on oxygen add amount	
Respiratory rate	
Sedation Score	
Hourly Rate of Epidural/IV Infusion	
S/C Analgesia Continuous (C), Intermittent (I)	
PCA Accumulative Total	
Height of Epidural Block	
Nausea and Vomiting	
Bowels	
CVP	
Drain	1
	2
	3
Pain Score (0–10)	At Rest
	On Movement

Other pain assessment tools have been developed to capture the multidimensional nature of pain. These specifically measure several features of the pain experience, including the location and intensity of pain, pattern of pain over time, the effect of pain on the patient's daily function and activities, the effect on the patient's mood and the ability to interact and socialize with others. Examples of these include the McGill Pain Questionnaire (MPQ) (Melzack 1975) and the Brief Pain Inventory (BPI) (Cleeland 1991). These are more commonly used in chronic pain assessment.

Neuropathic pain may require a specific assessment tool. Patients may describe spontaneous pain (arising without detectable stimulation) and evoked pain (abnormal responses to stimuli) (Bennett 2001). The Leeds Assessment of Neuropathic Symptoms and Signs (LANSS) pain scale (Bennett 2001) was developed to more accurately assess this type of pain.

The Royal Marsden NHS Foundation Trust currently uses a patient-held pain tool for patients with chronic cancer pain (Figure 9.11).

Figure 9.11 The Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust Patient-Held Pain Chart.

The Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
Patient Held Pain Chart

Surname: | Who completed the assessment: (specify if nurse or family member helped)

First name: | Date of this assessment:

Instructions for use:

1. This chart is for you to complete (you may want your family or a nurse to help you).

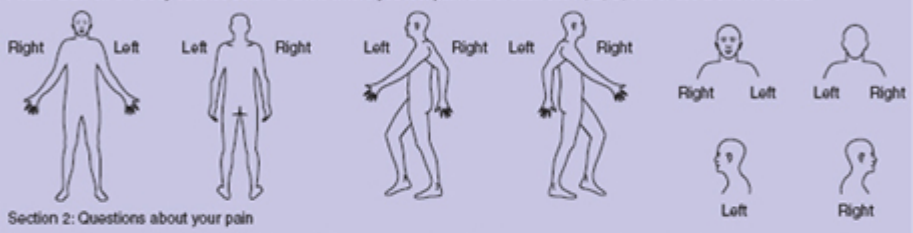
2. Work through the questions in section 1 and 2 of the chart. Do ask for help if you are not clear about any of the questions.

3. When you get to section 3 use the instructions at the top of the sheet to help you keep an ongoing record of your pain and the effect of any pain treatments.

Please keep this chart with you because the nurses and doctors who are looking after you will use it to help manage your pain(s).

Section 1: Where is your pain?

Please draw on the body outlines below to show where you feel pain. Label each site A, B, C, etc. or use a different colour



Section 2: Questions about your pain

How would you describe your pain(s) at the site(s) you drew on the body diagram? (e.g. aching, tender, sharp, shooting, burning).

What helps reduce your pain(s) at each site? (e.g. specific drugs, activities or treatments such as massage).

What makes your pain worse at each site? (e.g. specific activity or heat/cold).

How often do you get pain at each site? (e.g. all the time or at different times during the day).

How do you feel when you are in pain and how has it changed your daily activities? (e.g. moving, sleeping).

Section 3: Scoring and recording your pain scores

Pain Scores
0 = No pain
1–4 = Mild pain
5–6 = Moderate pain
7–9 = Severe pain
10 = Worst pain imaginable

Instructions for scoring and recording pain scores

1) In the column marked Pain scores use the scoring system shown here to record your pain score(s) at each site (see columns A, B, C, etc.) where you feel pain.
2) Score your pain at regular intervals. Do this before your pain treatments (e.g. analgesics/pain medicines, massage) and 30–45 minutes afterwards so that you can see if they have helped.

Date	Time	Pain scores Colours or A B C D	Analgesics (pain medicines) Write down any analgesics taken to reduce pain	Other treatments to reduce pain Write down other measures used to reduce pain (e.g. positioning relaxation, massage)	Factors influencing pain Write down any factors influencing pain (e.g. activity, rest) and how they affect the pain	Evaluation and comments Assess or evaluate how well the analgesics or other treatments worked to reduce the pain

In adults with no or mild cognitive impairment, both numerical rating scales (0–10) and verbal descriptor rating scales (no pain, mild, moderate or severe pain) are both reliable and valid for patients' self-report of pain intensity. Older or vulnerable adults with moderate to severe cognitive/communication impairment may be able to use pictorial rating scales such as the Pain Thermometer or the Faces Pain Scale (Royal College of Physicians, British Geriatric Society and British Pain Society 2007). For patients with dementia or who may be unable to vocalize, an observational tool that assesses pain behaviours may need

to be considered, such as the Abbey Scale (Royal College of Physicians, British Geriatric Society and British Pain Society 2007).

Fixed times for reviewing the pain have been omitted intentionally to allow for flexibility. It is suggested that, initially, the patient's pain is reviewed by the patient and nurse every 4 hours. When a patient's level of pain has stabilized, recordings may be made less frequently, for example 12-hourly or daily. The chart should be discontinued if a patient's pain becomes totally controlled.

Procedure guideline 9.7 Assessment and education of patients prior to surgery

1 If patient has had previous surgery, ask for details of:

(a) Previous and current pain control methods (pharmacological and non-pharmacological)

(b) Effectiveness of these methods

(c) Experience of side-effects, such as nausea and vomiting.

2 Assess patient for pre-existing long-term pain problems. Obtain information on:

(a) Pain type, location and intensity

(b) Use of analgesics.

3 Check patient suitability for various pain control methods, for example renal function, clotting abnormalities, dexterity, visual impairment.

4 Liaise with multidisciplinary team and patient to select most appropriate pain control method(s).

5 Explain and discuss with patient:

(a) How pain will be assessed and the use of a pain scale

(b) How pain will be controlled

(c) Goals for pain control at rest and on movement.

6 Provide patient with written information about pain control.

7 Where appropriate, demonstrate the use of pain control methods before surgery.

8 Document information in nursing and care plan.

Procedure guideline 9.8 Pain assessment chart: chronic pain recording

Essential equipment

- Copy of a pain assessment chart (Figure 9.11)

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain the purpose of using the chart to the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent and co-operation (NMC 2008a, C; Witt-Sherman *et al.* 2004, R4).
Procedure	
2 Encourage the patient, where appropriate, to identify pain themselves.	The body outline (see Figure 9.11) is a vehicle for the patient to describe their own pain experience (Witt-Sherman *et al.* 2004, R4).
3 When it is necessary for the nurse to complete the chart, ensure that the patient's own description of their pain is recorded.	To reduce the risk of misinterpretation. E
4 (a) Record any factors that influence the intensity of the pain, for example activities or interventions that reduce or increase the pain such as distractions or a heat pad.	Ascertaining how and when the patient experiences pain enables the nurse to plan realistic goals. For example, relieving the patient's pain during the night and while they are at rest is usually easier to achieve than relief from pain on movement (Davis and McVicker 2000, E).
(b) Record whether or not the patient is pain free at night, at rest or on movement.	To ascertain an understanding of the experience of pain for the patient (Twycross and Wilcock 2001, R5).
(c) Record frequency of pain, what helps to relieve the pain, what makes the pain worse and how the patient feels when they are in pain.	
5 Index each site (A–D; see Figure 9.11) in whatever way seems most appropriate, for example shading or colouring of areas or arrows to indicate shooting pains.	This enables individual pain sites to be located (Witt-Sherman *et al.* 2004, R4).
6 Give each pain site a numerical value according to the key to pain intensity or the pain scale and note time recorded.	To indicate the intensity of the pain at each site (Turk and Okifuji 1999, E).

7 Record any analgesia given and note route and dose.	To monitor efficacy of prescribed analgesia (Twycross and Wilcock 2001, R5).
Postprocedure	
8 Record any significant activities that are likely to influence the patient's pain.	Extra pharmacological or non-pharmacological interventions might be indicated (Disorbio *et al*. 2006, E; Turk and Okifuji 1999, E).

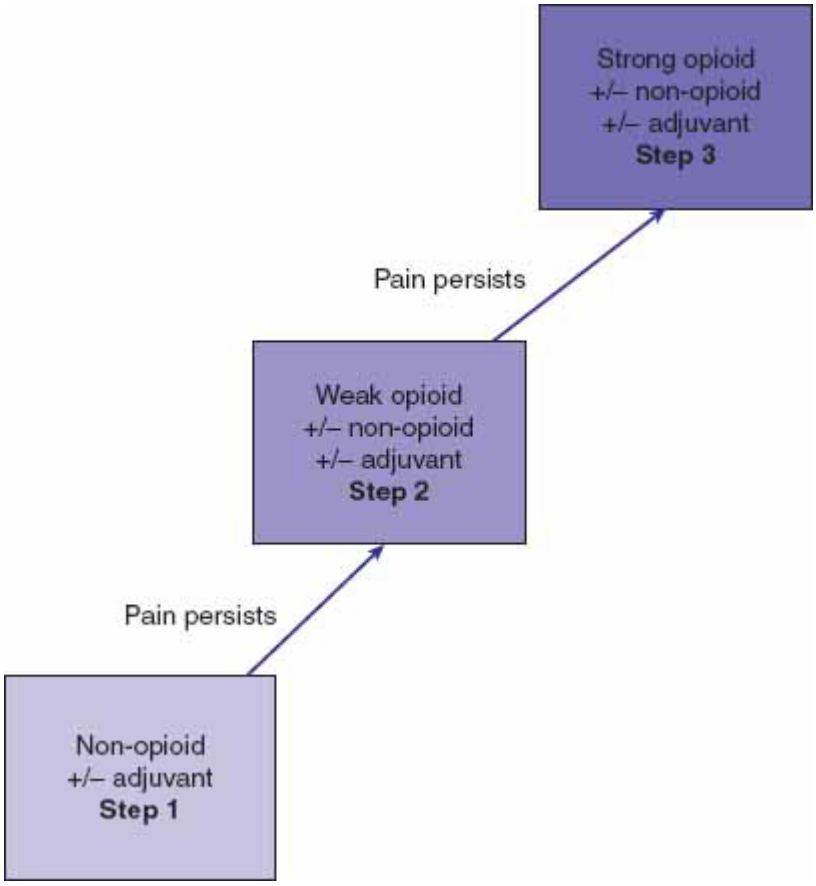
Pain management

Evidence-based approaches

Management of chronic pain

The control of pain is directed by the 'analgesic ladder', which was presented by the World Health Organization (WHO) in 1996 (Figure 9.12). Pharmacological intervention begins on the first step of the ladder and proceeds upwards as and when the pain reaches a higher level and the current analgesia is no longer effective. Analgesia should be administered 'around the clock' (ATC) to enable chronic persistent pain to be controlled.

Figure 9.12 The analgesic ladder.



It is important to remember that the patient will experience different types of pain due to different aetiological and physiological changes. It is important to make an assessment of each pain separately, since the pain may need to be managed in a different manner and one analgesic intervention will rarely be sufficient. Often the best practice is to combine the baseline analgesia with an appropriate adjuvant treatment in order to achieve maximum pain control (Table 9.2). It is also important to utilize non-pharmacological interventions at all stages of the treatment plan.

Table 9.2 The use of adjuvant drugs (co-analgesics)

Type	Use	Examples
NSAIDs	Bone pain Muscular pain Inflammation Visceral pain	Diclofenac Naproxen Ibuprofen
Steroids	Pressure Bone pain Inflammation Raised intracranial pressure	Dexametasone Prednisolone

Tricyclic antidepressants Anticonvulsants	Neuropathic pain	Amitriptyline Sodium valproate Carbamazepine Gabapentin Pregabalin
Antibiotics	Infection	Flucloxacillin Trimethoprim
Benzodiazepines	Anxiety	Diazepam Clonazepam
Antispasmodics	Spasms	Baclofen
Bisphosphonates	Bone pain	Sodium clodronate Disodium pamidronate Zoledronic acid

Oral administration of therapeutic interventions may not always be appropriate. In chronic cancer pain the European Association of Palliative Care (EAPC) recommends that if patients can no longer manage the oral route, the preferred alternative route is subcutaneous, which is simple and less painful than the intramuscular route (Hanks *et al.* 2001). In rare circumstances when rapid titration of analgesia is required, the intravenous route may also be used if patients have established intravenous access.

Accurate ongoing assessment is imperative for efficient and effective pain control.

Management of acute pain following surgery

Since nurses, surgeons, anaesthetists, pain specialists, pharmacists and physiotherapists are all involved in the management of surgical pain, teamwork is essential. Professionals must reach clear agreement as to their individual roles so that patients receive the best possible care from preadmission through to discharge (Audit Commission 1997).

A wide variety of pharmacological and non-pharmacological techniques are available for the management of surgical pain. The following basic principles apply to their use (Box 9.13).

Box 9.13 Principles of surgical pain management

- Tailor the treatments to:

(a) meet individual needs

(b) prevent pain, rather than allowing it to become established.

- Whenever possible, choose the simplest and safest techniques to achieve the desired level of pain relief (McQuay *et al.* 1997).
- Use the WHO analgesic ladder (see Figure 9.12) to select the most appropriate analgesics for mild, moderate and severe acute pain.
- Choose the most appropriate route for giving analgesia.
- Combine techniques to provide balanced analgesia and enhance overall pain control (Kehlet 1997).
- Ensure patients receive regular antiemetics to control postoperative nausea and vomiting. Vomiting increases muscle tension and exacerbates pain.

Methods of pain management

Using the WHO analgesic ladder

The analgesic ladder was designed as a framework for the management of chronic pain (see Figure 9.12). There are several drugs available to manage chronic pain and the analgesic ladder allows the flexibility to choose from the range according to the patient's requirements and tolerance (Hanks *et al.* 2001). For acute pain management, the WHO ladder can be used as a guide in reverse, starting at step 3 for immediate postoperative pain and moving down through step 2 and then step 1 as postoperative pain improves.

Step 1: non-opioid drugs

Examples of non-opioid drugs include paracetamol, aspirin and NSAIDs that are effective for mild to moderate pain. These drugs are especially effective for musculoskeletal and visceral pain (Twycross and Wilcock 2001).

Step 2: opioids for mild to moderate pain

Examples of opioids for mild to moderate pain include codeine, dihydrocodeine, tramadol and low-dose oxycodone (steps 2 and 3). These drugs are used when adequate pain management is not achieved with the use of non-opioids and are usually used in combination

formulations. It is not recommended to administer another analgesic from the same group if the drug being used is not controlling the pain. Uncontrolled pain needs to be assessed and managed with the titration of an opioid by moving up the ladder. The exception to this would be if the patient was experiencing intolerable side-effects on the weak opioid and an alternative drug might be beneficial.

In recent studies tramadol has been recognized as being efficacious in the management of chronic cancer pain of moderate severity (Davis *et al.* 2005). It is uncertain whether tramadol is more effective in neuropathic pain than other opioids for mild to moderate pain; one report suggests a reduction in allodynia (pain from stimuli which are not normally painful) (Sindrup and Jensen 1999, Twycross and Wilcock 2001). Nurses should be aware that circumstantial reports suggest that tramadol lowers seizure threshold, and therefore care needs to be taken in those patients who have a history of epilepsy, as well as any other medications that may contribute to the lowering of the seizure threshold, for example tricyclic antidepressants and selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) (Twycross and Wilcock 2001). Few patients with severe pain will achieve a satisfactory level of pain control with tramadol. It is available in immediate and modified-release preparations.

Step 3: opioids for moderate to severe pain

Examples of opioids for moderate to severe pain include morphine, oxycodone, fentanyl, diamorphine, methadone, buprenorphine, hydromorphone and alfentanil.

Breakthrough analgesia

Breakthrough pain refers to a transitory exacerbation of pain experienced by the patient who has relatively stable and adequately controlled background pain (Portenoy *et al.* 2004). There should not be a time limit on this type of prescription because it would need to be given when and if the patient demonstrated any signs of discomfort or pain (with the exception of renal failure where dosages would need to be limited).

Rescue doses are calculated on a 4-hour equivalence; for example, if a patient was prescribed 60 mg MXL (a modified form of morphine given once a day), the equivalent rescue dose would be 10 mg of the immediate-release formulation. If several rescue doses are required within a 24-hour period, then the background analgesia (modified-release preparation) would have to be increased (McMillan 2001). However, it is important to recognize the classifications of breakthrough pain, as increasing the background dose will not always be indicated. Increasing the background preparation for pain that only occurs at certain times or is related to a specific event, such as a patient attending for radiotherapy, can result in a patient experiencing side-effects as the medication is needed for a specific time only.

Breakthrough pain can be classified as follows.

- Spontaneous pain: this type of pain occurs unexpectedly.
- Incident pain: this pain is related to specific events and can be classified into four categories (Davies 2006).

1 Volitional pain is precipitated by a voluntary act, for example walking.

2 Non-volitional pain is precipitated by an involuntary act, for example coughing.

3 Procedural is a type of pain related to a therapeutic intervention, for example wound dressing.

4 End-of-dose failure is related to analgesic dosing (declining analgesic levels).

The ideal treatment for breakthrough pain is an analgesic with good efficacy, a rapid onset and short duration of action, and which causes minimal adverse effects. In order to try and deliver more effective treatment, various routes of administration have been explored including the transmucosal routes (Zeppetella 2009). These are discussed below.

Methods of drug delivery

Oral analgesia

Oral opioids are used less frequently in the immediate postoperative period because many patients may be nil by mouth or on restricted oral intake for a period of time. Often this route is used if patients require strong analgesics following discontinuation of epidural or intravenous analgesia. Morphine is an ideal oral preparation because it is available as a tablet (Sevredol) or an elixir (Oramorph). Oxycodone can be given as second-line opioid treatment if patients are allergic/sensitive to or fail to respond to morphine.

Intravenous analgesia

Continuous intravenous infusions of opioids such as morphine, diamorphine and fentanyl are effective for controlling pain in the immediate postoperative period. Their use is often restricted to critical care units where patients can be closely monitored because of the potential risk of respiratory depression (Macintyre and Schug 2007). Compared with PCA, continuous infusions of opioids for acute pain management in a general ward setting resulted in a fivefold increase in the incidence of respiratory depression (Schug and Torrie 1993).

Patient-controlled analgesia is an alternative and safer technique for giving intravenous opioids (usually morphine, diamorphine, fentanyl or oxycodone) in the ward environment (Sidebotham *et al.* 1997). With PCA, patients self-administer intermittent doses of opioids, by using an infusion pump and timing device. When in pain, the patient presses a button connected to the pump and a set dose of opioid is delivered (usually intravenously but it may also be given subcutaneously) to the patient (Macintyre and Schug 2007).

There are a number of advantages of using PCA.

- PCA is more likely to maintain reasonably constant blood concentrations of the opioid within the analgesic corridor. This is the blood level where analgesia is achieved without significant side-effects. The flexibility of PCA helps to overcome the wide interpatient variation in opioid requirements (Macintyre and Schug 2007).

- PCA allows patients to titrate analgesia against daily variations in the pain stimulus (Tye and Gell-Walker 2000). By using a PCA pump, patients can administer analgesia as soon as pain occurs and titrate the dose of analgesia according to increases and decreases in the pain stimulus. This is particularly helpful for controlling more intense pain during movement.
- PCA prevents delays in patients receiving analgesics (Chumbley *et al.* 2002).

Whilst PCA may be very effective for controlling pain for a number of patients undergoing surgery (Macintyre and Schug 2007), it is not suitable for the groups listed in Box 9.14.

Box 9.14 Patients for whom PCA is inappropriate

- Those who are unable to activate the PCA device due to problems with dexterity or visual impairment.
- Those who are unable to understand the concept of PCA, particularly the very young or patients who are confused.
- Those who do not wish to take responsibility for their pain control.

(Tye and Gell-Walker 2000)

Epidural analgesia

Epidural analgesia refers to the provision of pain relief by continuous administration of analgesic pharmacological agents (usually low concentrations of local anaesthetics and opioids) into the epidural space via an indwelling catheter (Macintyre *et al.* 2010). Giving analgesia epidurally is a particularly valuable technique for the prevention of postoperative pain in patients undergoing major thoracic, abdominal and lower limb surgery, and can sometimes be used to manage the pain associated with trauma. Commonly used opioids for epidural analgesia include fentanyl and diamorphine (Wheatley *et al.* 2001). Combinations of low concentrations of local anaesthetic agents and opioids have been shown to provide consistently superior pain relief compared with either drug alone (Macintyre and Schug 2007).

Subcutaneous analgesia

Opioids are often given subcutaneously to manage chronic cancer pain. More recently, there has been an increase in the use of subcutaneous opioids for postoperative pain control. Both PCA and nurse-administered opioid injections of morphine, diamorphine or oxycodone via an indwelling subcutaneous cannula have been used successfully to manage postoperative pain (Vijayan 1997). An advantage of giving analgesia subcutaneously is that it avoids the problems associated with maintaining intravenous access.

Intramuscular analgesia

Until the early 1990s, regular 3–4-hourly intramuscular injections of opioids such as pethidine and morphine were routinely used for the management of postoperative pain. Because alternative techniques such as PCA and epidural analgesia are now available, intramuscular analgesia is used less frequently. Some useful algorithms have been developed to give guidance on titrating intramuscular analgesia (Harmer and Davies 1998, Macintyre and Schug 2007). Absorption via this route may be impaired in conditions of poor perfusion (e.g. in hypovolaemia, shock, hypothermia or immobility). This may lead to inadequate early analgesia (the drug cannot be absorbed properly and reach the systemic circulation and forms a drug depot) and late absorption of the drug depot (where the drug has remained in the muscular tissue and is absorbed only once perfusion is restored) (Macintyre *et al.* 2010).

Nasal analgesia

It is suggested that the nasal route may be effective for a number of opioids (Hanks *et al.* 2004). Nasal diamorphine spray has been shown to provide effective pain relief in accident and emergency departments in children and teenagers who are experiencing acute pain. This approach is being investigated in adult cancer patients with acute, episodic pain (Hanks *et al.* 2004).

Preprocedural considerations

Pharmacological support

Non-opioid analgesics

Paracetamol and paracetamol combinations

The use of non-opioid analgesics such as paracetamol or paracetamol combined with a weak opioid such as codeine is recommended for managing pain following minor surgical procedures or when the pain following major surgery begins to subside (McQuay *et al.* 1997). Paracetamol can also be given rectally if the oral route is contraindicated. An intravenous preparation of paracetamol is now available and can provide effective analgesia after surgical procedures (Romsing *et al.* 2002). It is more effective and of faster onset than the same dose given enterally. The use of the intravenous form should be limited to patients in whom the enteral route cannot be used.

Paracetamol taken in the correct dose of not more than 4 g per day is relatively free of side-effects. When used in combination with codeine preparations, the most frequent side-effect is constipation.

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) have been shown to provide better pain relief than paracetamol combinations for acute pain (McQuay *et al.* 1997). These drugs can be used alone or in combination with both opioid and non-opioid analgesics. Two commonly used NSAIDs are diclofenac, which can be administered by the oral, parenteral, enteral or rectal route, and ibuprofen, which is available only as an oral or enteral preparation. The disadvantage of both of these is that often side-effects such as coagulation problems, renal impairment and gastrointestinal disturbances limit their use. Newer COX-2-specific NSAIDs have the advantage that they have similar analgesia and anti-inflammatory effects (Reicin *et al.* 2001) but have no effect on platelets or the gastric mucosa (Rowbotham 2000). As a result, coagulation problems and gastrointestinal irritation are likely to be significantly

reduced. However, recently several of these drugs have been withdrawn from the market due to long-term cardiovascular side-effects and it will take time for newer products with an improved safety profile to re-establish themselves in practice (Macintyre *et al.* 2010).

Opioid analgesics

Opioids are the first-line treatment for pain that follows major surgery (Macintyre and Jarvis 1996) and can also be prescribed for cancer and non-cancer related chronic pain. Opioid doses need to be titrated carefully to achieve pain relief to suit each individual patient while minimizing any unwanted side-effects (McQuay *et al.* 1997).

A number of opioids are used for controlling pain following surgery. These include morphine, diamorphine, fentanyl and oxycodone. The most common routes of opioid administration are intravenous, epidural, subcutaneous, intramuscular or oral.

Evidence for the concept of opioid rotation when patients have intolerable opioid-related side-effects originates from cancer pain studies (Quigley 2004) but it may be a useful strategy to consider in the management of acute pain as well.

Opioids for mild to moderate pain

Tramadol

Another opioid for mild to moderate pain, which has been shown to be an effective analgesic for postoperative pain, is tramadol (McQuay and Moore 1998, Reicin *et al.* 2001). Although tramadol does have some side-effects, which include nausea and dizziness, it is free of NSAID side-effects and causes less constipation than codeine preparations and opioids (Bamigbade and Langford 1998). The combination of tramadol with paracetamol is more effective than either of the two components administered alone (McQuay and Edwards 2003).

Codeine phosphate

Codeine is metabolized by the hepatic cytochrome CYP2D6 to morphine. Approximately 7% of Caucasians and 1–3% of the Asian population are poor CYP2D6 metabolizers and therefore do not experience effective analgesia with codeine.

Codeine is available in tablet and syrup formulations. Doses of 30–60 mg po qds are generally prescribed to a maximum of 240 mg/24 h. It is also available in combination preparations with a non-opioid. The combination preparations are available in varying strengths of codeine and paracetamol, including co-codamol 8 mg/500 mg, 15 mg/500 mg and 30 mg/500 mg.

Opioids for moderate to severe pain

Morphine

A large amount of information and research is available concerning morphine and therefore it tends to be the drug of choice within this category (Hanks *et al.* 2001, 2004). It is available in oral, rectal, parenteral and intraspinal preparations. A recent study of 43 European palliative care units showed that morphine was the most frequently used opioid for moderate to severe pain, with over 50% of patients taking oral or parenteral preparations (Klepstad *et al.* 2005).

All strong opioids require careful titration from an expert practitioner. It is better to begin with a small dose, usually one that is equivalent to the previous medication, and increase gradually in conjunction with careful assessment of its effectiveness (Hanks *et al.* 2001). Titration begins with the immediate-release form which is available in tablet (Sevredol) or elixir (Oramorph) preparations, and once pain control is achieved the patient can be converted to a modified-release preparation that acts over a 12- or 24-hour period (Zomorph or MXL respectively).

Breakthrough analgesia is administered using the equivalent 4-hourly dose of the immediate-release form. This dose can be given as required (hourly) and subsequent adjustments can be made to the modified form if the patient is requiring more than three breakthrough doses in a 24-hour period (Hanks *et al.* 2001).

Patients should be informed of potential side-effects such as constipation, nausea and increased sleepiness, in order to allay any fear. The patient should also be told that nausea and drowsiness are transitory and normally improve within 48 hours, but that constipation can be an ongoing problem and it is recommended that a laxative should be prescribed at the same time as the opioid is started. It is recommended that the most effective laxative for this group of patients is a combination of both a softening and a stimulating laxative (Davis *et al.* 2005).

Patients often have many concerns about commencing strong drugs such as morphine. Frequent fears centre around addiction and believing that its use signifies the terminal phase of the illness (McQuay 1999). Time should be taken to reassure patients and their families and provide verbal and written information.

Although morphine is still considered to be the opioid drug of choice for moderate to severe pain (Hanks *et al.* 2001), alternative opioids allow the practitioner to carefully assess the patient on an individual basis and select the most appropriate opioid to use.

Durogesic (fentanyl)

Fentanyl is a strong opioid, available in a patch, which is recommended in patients who have stable pain requirements. Transdermal patches are available in doses of 12, 25, 50, 75 or 100 μg/h. It is reported to have an improved side-effect profile in comparison to morphine (Ahmedzai and Brooks 1997), although some patients experience nausea and mild drowsiness (BMA/Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain 2008) and occasionally patients may develop a reaction to the adhesive in the patch (Ling 1997). Use of the patch has increased because it allows the patient freedom from taking tablets.

Changing of the patch is recommended every 3 days, and steady plasma levels are reported to be reached after 8–16 hours (Zech *et al.* 1994), although in some patients it may be necessary to change it more frequently. The patch should be applied to skin that is free from excess hair and any form of irritation and should not be applied to irradiated

areas. It is advisable to change the location on the body to avoid an adverse skin reaction. Occasionally difficulties arise relating to the titration of the patch as each patch is equivalent to a range of morphine (Table 9.3).

Table 9.3 Recommended conversion doses from morphine to a fentanyl patch

Morphine dose in 24 hours (mg)	Four-hourly morphine dose (mg)	Fentanyl TTS (µg/h)
<50	2.5–5	12
50–134	5–20	25
135–224	25–35	50
225–314	40–50	75
315–404	55–65	100
405–494	70–80	125
495–584	85–95	150
585–674	100–115	175
675–764	115–125	200
765–854	130–140	225
855–944	145–155	250
945–1034	160–170	275
1035–1124	175–190	300

Fentanyl is also available in parenteral preparations. There are potential problems with fentanyl due to dose limitations. The ampoules are available in 50 µg/1 mL. If the dose required is too large a volume to use in the syringe driver, then alfentanil may be a useful alternative (Dickman *et al.* 2002).

Palladone (hydromorphone)

Palladone (hydromorphone) is mostly used when patients experience unacceptable drowsiness with morphine. It is similar to morphine in its pharmacokinetic profile and it is approximately 5.0–7.5 times more potent than morphine. It is available in immediate-release and sustained-release preparations and titration occurs in the same manner as morphine (Hays *et al.* 1994).

The side-effects are similar to those of morphine (Ellershaw 1998).

Methadone

Methadone is a synthetic opioid developed more than 40 years ago (Riley 2006). It is available in oral, rectal and parenteral preparations. There has been some reluctance amongst professionals to use methadone, which arose from the difficulties experienced in titrating the drug due to its long half-life (15 hours) that caused accumulation to occur, especially in the elderly (Gannon 1997). There are different methods of achieving effective titration (Gannon 1997); for example, one regimen is to calculate one-tenth of the total daily dose of morphine (maximum starting dose must not exceed 30 mg). Administer the methadone to the patient on an as-required basis but not within 3 hours of the last fixed dose. The total dose required over a 24-hour period is calculated after 5–6 days, divided and given as a two or three times daily regimen and this avoids the build-up of methadone within the body (Morley and Makin 1998). Titration is recommended within a hospital setting to ensure accurate administration. This can be difficult for patients because they have to experience pain before they are administered a dose of methadone in the titration period.

Methadone can be a cheap, effective alternative to morphine if titration is supervised by the specialist pain or palliative care team (Gardner-Nix 1996).

It is particularly useful in patients with renal failure. Morphine is excreted via the kidneys and if renal failure occurs, this may lead to the patient experiencing severe drowsiness as a result of accumulation of morphine metabolites (Gannon 1997). Methadone is lipid soluble and is metabolized mainly in the liver. About half of the drug and its metabolites are excreted by the intestines and half by the kidneys.

Oxycodone

Oxycodone is available as an immediate- or modified-release preparation and titration should occur in the same way as morphine. Oxycodone is a useful opioid as an alternative to morphine (Riley 2006). It has similar properties to morphine and can be administered orally,

rectally and parenterally. Oxycodone has similar side-effects and it is usually given 4–6 hourly. Oxycodone has an analgesic potency of 1.5–2.0 times higher than morphine. It has similar side-effects to morphine, although oxycodone has been found to cause less nausea (Heiskanen and Kalso 1997) and significantly less itchiness (Mucci-LoRusso *et al.* 1998).

Targinact

This drug is a combination of modified-release oxycodone and naloxone. The aim of the combination of these medications is to prevent the potential negative effects on bowel function. It is suggested that approximately 97% of the naloxone is eliminated by first-pass metabolism in the healthy liver, preventing it from significantly affecting analgesic effects (Vondrackova *et al.* 2008).

Diamorphine

Diamorphine is used parenterally in a syringe driver pump for the control of moderate to severe pain when patients are unable to take the oral form of morphine. It is calculated by dividing the total daily dose of oral morphine by three. Breakthrough doses are calculated by dividing the 24-hour dose of diamorphine by six and administering on an as-required basis (Hanks *et al.* 2004). A recent problem with the supply of diamorphine nationally has resulted in centres using morphine sulphate or an alternative opioid as a substitute.

Alfentanil

Alfentanil is also a useful alternative to diamorphine and is used for those patients who have renal impairment. The onset of action is rapid owing to a more rapid blood–brain equilibration. It is 10 times more potent than diamorphine (i.e. diamorphine 10 mg = alfentanil 1 mg). The breakthrough dose can be calculated as one-tenth of the 24-hour dose as opposed to the usual one-sixth. For example, 1 mg of alfentanil over 24 hours will require a breakthrough dose of alfentanil 0.1 mg.

Buprenorphine

Buprenorphine is an alternative strong opioid available in a patch form. The patch has similar advantages to fentanyl but does not contain a reservoir of the drug. Instead it is contained in a matrix form with effective levels of the drug being reached within 24 hours. Titration is recommended with an alternative opioid initially and then transfer to the patch when stable requirements have been reached. A lower dose patch (Butrans) is available in strengths of 5, 10 and 20 μg/h that should be worn continuously by the patient for 7 days. The higher dose patch (Transtec) of 35, 52.5 and 70 μg/h is now licensed to be used up to 96 hours or twice weekly for patient convenience. Conversion is based on the chart supplied by the pharmaceutical company which demonstrates equivalent doses. Buprenorphine is also available as a sublingual tablet, which is titrated from 200 to 800 μg 6-hourly. Conversion is based on multiplying the total daily dose of buprenorphine by 100 to give the total daily dose of morphine (i.e. 200 μg buprenorphine/8-hourly = 600 μg buprenorphine/24 hours = 60 mg morphine/24 hours) (Budd 2002).

Opioids approved for oral transmucosal administration

Oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate (Actiq)

Licensed for the management of breakthrough pain in patients who are already on an established maintenance dose of opioid for cancer pain, oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate (OTFC) is a lozenge which is rubbed against the oral mucosa on the side of the cheek which leads to the lozenge being dissolved by the saliva. The advantage of OTFC is its fast onset via the buccal mucosa (5–15 minutes) and its short duration (up to 2 hours). It is available in a range of doses (200–1600 μg) but there is no direct relation between the baseline analgesia and the breakthrough dose. Titration can be difficult and lengthy as the recommended starting dose is 200 μg with titration upwards (Portenoy *et al.* 1999). It is recommended that the lozenge be removed from the mouth if the pain

subsides before it has completely dissolved. The lozenge should not be reused but should be dissolved under running hot water.

Fentanyl buccal tablet (Effentora)

This is a newly licensed medication for the treatment of breakthrough pain in adults with cancer who are already receiving a maintenance opioid for chronic cancer. Patients receiving maintenance opioid therapy are those who are taking at least 60 mg of oral morphine daily, at least 25 μg of transdermal fentanyl per hour, at least 30 mg of oxycodone daily, at least 8 mg of oral hydromorphone daily or an equi-analgesic dose of another opioid for a week or longer. This buccal tablet is available in 100, 200, 400, 600 and 800 μg. It is placed on the oral mucosa above the third upper molar which leads to the tablet being dissolved by the saliva. It usually takes 15–25 minutes for the tablet to dissolve. It is recommended that if the tablet has not completely dissolved within 30 minutes then the remainder of the tablet should be swallowed with water as it is thought that the tablet will then only be likely to consist of inactive properties rather than active fentanyl (Darwish *et al.* 2007).

Abstral is an oral transmucosal delivery formulation of fentanyl citrate, indicated for the management of breakthrough pain in patients using opioid therapy for chronic cancer pain (Rauch *et al*. 2009). The tablet is administered sublingually and it rapidly disintegrates, ensuring the fentanyl dissolves quickly. Abstral is available in six dosing strengths: 100, 200, 300, 400, 600 and 800 μg fentanyl citrate.

Adjuvant drugs (co-analgesics)

Adjuvant drugs are a miscellaneous group whose primary indication is for conditions other than pain which may, however, relieve pain in specific circumstances (Twycross and Wilcock 2001). Examples of this category include NSAIDs, steroids, antibiotics, antidepressants, antiepileptics, N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor channel blockers, antispasmodics and muscle relaxants (Twycross and Wilcock 2001).

The WHO analgesic ladder recommends the use of these drugs in combination with non-opioids, opioids for mild to moderate pain and opioids for moderate to severe pain (see Figure 9.12).

Nitrous oxide (Entonox)

Inhaled nitrous oxide provides analgesia that is short acting and works quickly. It has a special role in managing pain associated with wound dressings and drain removal.

Local anaesthetics

In addition to epidural analgesia, local anaesthetics may be used to block individual or groups of peripheral nerves during surgical procedures and to infiltrate surgical wounds at the end of an operation (Carroll and Bowsher 1993). Occasionally these techniques may be used to extend the duration of postoperative analgesia beyond the finite period that a single injection technique provides (Macintyre *et al.* 2010). Techniques include regular intermittent bolus doses or continuous infusions of local anaesthetic.

A topical preparation (patch) containing local anaesthetic is also available to manage acute or chronic neuropathic pain in areas of intact skin with hypersensitivity.

Cannabis

Studies are currently taking place to examine the potential benefits of using cannabis for the management of chronic conditions, for example multiple sclerosis and cancer. Good-quality research is sparse (Wall *et al.* 2001) but there are a number of studies that allude to its benefits in managing chronic pain, spasticity and muscle spasms (Consroe *et al.* 1997, Martyn *et al.* 1995).

Anaesthetic interventions

Sometimes it is difficult to attain and maintain adequate pain control without significant side-effects and it is in situations such as this that anaesthetic interventions may be of benefit.

Effective control can be achieved by epidural or intrathecal (spinal) infusions:

- as single injections for simple nerve blocks, or
- regional nerve blocks which target individual nerves, plexi or ganglia (Hicks and Simpson 2004).

Examples include managing pelvic pain and postradiation brachial plexopathy.

These interventions can be useful, but careful consideration and assessment must take place to ensure that any potential side-effects are discussed with the patient (anaesthetic interventions may severely limit the patient's activities) and that future planning is addressed with the patient and family as an epidural/intrathecal infusion may limit discharge options for the patient who is dying.

Non-pharmacological methods of managing pain

Optimal pain control is more likely to be achieved by combining non-pharmacological techniques with pharmacological techniques. Despite the lack of research evidence to support the effectiveness of many non-pharmacological techniques, their benefits to patients and families should not be underestimated.

Psychological interventions

A number of simple psychological interventions can improve a patient's pain control by:

- reducing anxiety, stress and muscle tension
- distraction (distraction plays a role in pain management by pushing awareness of pain out of central cognition)
- increasing control and pain-coping mechanisms
- improving general well-being.

Some simple interventions include the following.

Creating trusting therapeutic relationships

By creating trusting relationships with patients, nurses are instrumental in reducing anxiety and helping patients to cope with pain (Carr and Mann 2000). Nurses can help to create a trusting relationship by:

- listening to the patient
- believing the patient's pain experience (Seers 1996)
- acting as a patient advocate
- providing patients with appropriate physical and emotional support.

The use of gentle humour

Pasero (1998) suggests that many patients find gentle humour an effective way of coping with pain. Humour may be particularly helpful prior to a painful procedure as it can have a lasting effect. In the clinical setting, humorous tapes, books and videos can be made available for patient use.

Information/education

Patient information/education can make all the difference between effective and ineffective pain relief. Information/education helps to reduce anxiety (Hayward 1975, Taylor 2001) and enables patients to make informed decisions about their care. Patients should be given specific information about why pain control is important, what to expect in terms of pain relief, how they can participate in their management and what to do if pain is not controlled. Some caution is required, however, because not all patients respond positively to the same level of information. Patients with high levels of anxiety may find that detailed information can increase their anxiety and influence their pain control. To avoid this, patients can be given a choice of whether or not they receive simple or detailed information (Mitchell 1997).

Relaxation

Whilst scientific evidence for the effectiveness of relaxation techniques is limited (Carroll and Seers 1998, Seers and Carroll 1998), a number of

studies have shown benefits for patients experiencing pain (Good *et al.* 1999, Lang *et al.* 2000, Sloman *et al.* 1994). Payne (1995) describes several relaxation techniques ranging from simple breathing techniques to progressive muscle relaxation and more complex techniques. One simple relaxation technique script that has been adapted for use at the Royal Marsden Hospital is outlined in Box 9.15. This technique can be taught to patients and used during painful procedures or at times when the patient feels anxious or stressed. Patients should be encouraged to practise the technique to gain mastery.

Box 9.15 Simple relaxation technique script

Please note that breathing during this technique should be normal for the patient in their present condition.

- Loosen any tight clothing and position yourself comfortably, either lying or sitting. Have your arms and legs uncrossed. Ensure your back and head are well supported.
- Allow both your hands to rest on your abdomen, one on top of the other. It may be helpful to place a pillow on your lap for your hands to rest on.
- Gently allow your eyes to close. Breathe normally in and out through your nose if you find this comfortable.
- As you breathe in, be aware of your abdomen rising gently under your hands (do not force this movement).
- As you breathe out, be aware of your abdomen relaxing under your hands.
- Let your shoulders relax and drop down.
- Let your jaw relax.
- Now keep your attention softly focused on the rise and fall of your abdomen as this movement follows each breath.
- Repeat steps 4–8 for between 3 and 5 minutes or longer if appropriate.

During the exercise

As you become aware of any thoughts that arise, let them go and just bring your attention back to the rise and fall of the abdomen. If you are still having difficulty focusing on the technique, try saying the following phrases: ‘I am relaxed’ or ‘I feel calm’.

To finish the exercise

Now slowly become aware of your surroundings, stretch out your fingers and toes, gently open your eyes and come back to the room.

Music

The use of taped music in the healthcare setting can also provide relaxation and distraction from pain (Beck 1991, Good 1996, Heiser *et al.* 1997). Setting up a library of taped music (e.g. easy listening, classical) and having personal stereos available for patient use is a simple way to provide patients with relaxing music.

Art

Art therapies have also been used to assist the patient in moving the focus of attention away from the physical sensation of pain to other aspects of the person (Trauger-Querry and Haghighi 1999). The skills of an art therapist are required to ensure the successful use of this intervention.

Physical interventions

In addition to psychological interventions, a number of physical interventions can be helpful in reducing pain.

Comfort measures

Simple comfort measures such as careful body positioning (for example, supporting a painful arm on a pillow) and the use of soft and therapeutic mattresses (Ballard 1997) can help to improve patient comfort and pain control.

Exercise

Both passive and active physical exercises may benefit patients by increasing range of motion (Feine and Lund 1997), preventing joint stiffness and muscle wasting which may further compound pain problems. Exercise should always be tailored to the patient's tolerance and stamina. A simple exercise regimen which is practised regularly and supervised by a therapist can help patients feel better and more in control as well as having benefits in terms of pain relief.

Rest

In addition to exercise, teaching patients to rest comfortably in any position when in pain is a meaningful action and the base from which a person can learn to move more easily (O'Connor and Webb 2002). A person with a terminal illness may experience restriction of movement and neuromuscular pain with increased tension. For these patients, learning to rest and letting go of any tension can be helpful.

Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation

Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) (Figure 9.13) is thought to work by sending a weak electrical current through the skin to stimulate the sensory nerve endings. Depending on the stimulation parameters used, TENS is thought to modulate pain impulses by closing the gate to pain transmission within the spinal cord by stimulating the release of natural pain-relieving chemicals in the brain and spinal cord (King 1999).

Figure 9.13 TENS machine.

To date, there is limited scientific evidence for the effectiveness of TENS. Despite this, many healthcare professionals use TENS for a variety of chronic pain conditions and support the view that this is a useful form of analgesia (Walsh 1997). In contrast, TENS has not been

found to improve the control of acute pain following surgery (McQuay *et al.* 1997).

Acupuncture

This involves placing fine solid needles into the skin at acupoints or trigger points (Figure 9.14). Although the exact mechanism of action is unknown, acupuncture is believed to work in part by stimulating release of the body's own natural opioids. Although there is also limited scientific evidence for the pain-relieving effects of acupuncture, largely due to the poorly controlled studies (Ezzo *et al.* 2000), it is used widely and has an important role in pain management.

Figure 9.14 An increasing number of hospital pain clinics now offer acupuncture as a treatment for chronic pain.

© *istockphoto.com/Håvard Sæbø*.

Heat therapies

For decades superficial heat therapy has been used to relieve a variety of muscular and joint pains, including arthritis, back pain and period pain. There is much anecdotal and some scientific evidence to support the usefulness of heat as an adjunct to other pain treatments (Akin *et al.* 2001, Nadler *et al.* 2002).

Heat works by:

- stimulating thermoreceptors in the skin and deeper tissues, thereby reducing the sensitivity to pain by closing the gating system in the spinal cord
- reducing muscle spasm
- reducing the viscosity of synovial fluid which alleviates painful stiffness during movement and increases joint range (Carr and Mann 2000).

In the home environment people use a variety of different methods for applying heat therapies, such as warm baths, hot water bottles, wheat-based heat packs and electrical heating pads. In the hospital setting, caution is required with this equipment as it does not reach health and safety standards (no even and regular temperature distribution) and there have been incidences of serious burns (Barillo *et al.* 2000). Carr and Mann (2000) note that heat therapy should not be used immediately following tissue damage as it will increase swelling. The Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (MHRA 2005) has documented evidence of burns caused by using heat patches or packs and therefore urges caution in their use and also recommends regular checking of skin throughout therapy.

Cold therapies

Cold therapies can also be used to stimulate nerves and modulate pain (Carr and Mann 2000). Cold may be particularly valuable following an acute bruising injury where it can help to reduce inflammation and limit further damage. Cold can be applied in the form of crushed ice or gel-filled cold packs which should be wrapped in a towel to protect the skin from an ice burn.

Postprocedural considerations

Education of patient

Opioids and driving

In 2004, an article in the journal *Palliative Medicine* offered guidance for professionals on the advice they should offer to patients who were taking opioids and driving. One of the contributors to the guidance was the medical advisor to the Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency (DVLA) (Pease *et al.* 2004).

(a) A patient should not drive:

- for 5 days after starting or changing the dose of the recommended opioid
- if they feel sleepy
- after drinking alcohol or taking strong opioids which have not been recommended by the doctor or non-medical prescriber, for example cannabis
- on days when additional breakthrough medication of an opioid has been taken.

(b) Patients can restart driving:

- after 5 days starting or changing the dose of the recommended opioid and if the patient does not feel sleepy. But the patient:
  - —should make the first trip short
  - —should drive on roads that the patient is familiar with
  - —should drive at a time when the traffic is not too busy
  - —should be accompanied by an experienced driver as this may be helpful.

(c) Patients do not need to inform the DVLA about starting an opioid but may need to inform them of other aspects relating to their illness. The patient should be encouraged to inform their insurance company about their current state of health and current medications.

Complications

The use of opioids in renal failure

Renal failure can cause significant and dangerous side-effects due to the accumulation of the drug. Basic guidelines for pain management in renal failure include the following.

- Reduce analgesia dose and/or dose frequency (6-hourly instead of 4-hourly).
- Select a more appropriate drug (non-renally excreted).
- Avoid modified-release preparations.
- Seek advice from a specialist pain/palliative care team and/or pharmacist (Farrell and Rich 2000).

References

Abidia, R.F. (2007) Oral care in the intensive care unit: a review. *Journal of Contemporary Dental Practice*, **8** (1), 1–8.

Ahmedzai, S. and Brooks, D. (1997) Transdermal fentanyl versus sustained-release oral morphine in cancer pain: preference, efficacy, and quality of life. The TTS-Fentanyl Comparative Trial Group. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **13** (5), 254–261.

Aisa, Y., Mori, T., Kudo, M. *et al.* (2005) Oral cryotherapy for the prevention of high-dose melphalan-induced stomatitis in allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients. *Supportive Care in Cancer*, **13**, 266–269.

Akin, M.D., Weingand, K.W., Hengehold, D.A., Goodale, M.B., Hinkle, R.T. and Smith, R.P. (2001) Continuous low-level topical heat in the treatment of dysmenorrhea. *Obstetrics and Gynecology*, **97** (3), 343–349.

Alexander, M., Fawcett, J. and Runciman, P. (2007) *Nursing Practice: Hospital and Home*, 3rd edn. Churchill Livingstone, London.

Anderson, K.O. and Cleeland, C.S. (2003) The assessment of cancer pain, in *Cancer Pain: Assessment and Management* (eds E. Bruera and R.K. Portenoy). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 51–66.

Ashurst, S. (1997) Nursing care of the mechanically ventilated patient in ITU: 1. *British Journal of Nursing*, **6** (8), 447–454.

Audit Commission for Local Authorities and the National Health Service in England and Wales (1997) *Anaesthesia Under Examination: The Efficiency and Effectiveness of Anaesthesia and Pain Relief Services in England and Wales*. Audit Commission Publications, Abingdon.

Aung, T. and Mulley, G.P. (2002) Removal of ear wax. *BMJ*, **325** (7354), 27.

Ballard, K. (1997) Pressure-relief mattresses and patient comfort. *Professional Nurse*, **13** (1), 27–32.

Bamigbade, T.A. and Langford, R.M. (1998) Tramadol hydrochloride: an overview of current use. *Hospital Medicine*, **59** (5), 373–376.

Barasch, A., Elad, S., Altman, A. *et al.* (2006) Antimicrobials, mucosal coating agents, anesthetics, analgesics, and nutritional supplements for alimentary tract mucositis. *Supportive Care in Cancer*, **14**, 528–532.

Barillo, D.J., Coffey, E.C., Shirani, K.Z. and Goodwin, C.W. (2000) Burns caused by medical therapy. *Journal of Burn Care and Rehabilitation*, **21** (3), 269–273.

Beck, S. (1991) The therapeutic use of music for cancer-related pain. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, **18** (8), 1327–1337.

Beck, S. (2004) Mucositis, in Cancer Symptom Management Third Edition (eds C.H. Yarbro, M.H. Frogge and M. Goodman). *Jones and Bartlett, Sudbury, MA*, pp. 276–292.

Bennett, M. (2001) The LANSS Pain Scale: the Leeds assessment of neuropathic symptoms and signs. *Pain*, **92** (1–2), 147–157.

Berchier, C.E., Slot, D.E., Haps, S. and Van Der Weijden, G.A. (2008) The efficacy of dental floss in addition to a toothbrush on plaque and parameters of gingival inflammation: a systematic review. *International Journal of Dental Hygiene*, **6**, 265–279.

Berry, A.M., Davidson, P.M., Masters, J. and Rolls, K. (2007) Systematic literature review of oral hygiene practices for intensive care patients receiving mechanical ventilation. *American Journal of Critical Care*, **16** (6), 552–562.

BMA/Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain (2008) *British National Formulary*. Pharmaceutical Press, Oxford.

BNF (2011) *British National Formulary*. BMJ Group and RPS Publishing, London.

Bourne, N. (2008) Managing acute pain in opioid tolerant patients. *Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **18** (11), 498–503.

Bouza, C., Saz, Z., Munoz, A. and Amate, J.M. (2005) Efficacy of advanced dressings in the treatment of pressure ulcers: a systematic review. *Journal of Wound Care*, **14** (5), 193–199.

Boyd-Monk, H. (2005) Bringing common EYE emergencies into focus. *Nursing*, **35** (12), 46–51.

British Pain Society (2008) *FAQ's*. British Pain Society, London. www.britishpainsociety.org/media_faq.htm.

British Pain Society and Royal College of Physicians (2004) *A Practical Guide to the Provision of Chronic Pain Services for Adults in Primary Care*. British Pain Society and Royal College of Physicians, London.

Budd, K. (2002) *Evidence-based Medicine in Practice. Bupranorphine: A Review*. Haywood Medical, Newmarket.

Burr, S. and Penzer, R. (2005) Promoting skin health. *Nursing Standard*, **19** (36), 57–65.

Byers, P.H., Ryan, P.A., Regan, M. B., Shields, A. and Carta, S.G. (1995) Effects of incontinence care cleansing regimens on skin integrity. *Journal of Wound, Ostomy, and Continence Nursing*, **22** (4), 187–192.

Campbell, A.V. (1984) Nursing, nurturing and sexism, in *Moderated Love: A Theology of Professional Care*. Society for Promoting Christain Knowledge, London, pp. 34–51.

Carr, E. (2007) Barriers to effective pain management. *Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **17** (5), 200–203, 206–208.

Carr, E. and Mann, E.M. (2000) Recognising the barriers to effective pain relief, in *Pain: Creative Approaches to Effective Management*. Palgrave Macmillan, Basingstoke, pp. 109–129.

Carr-Hill, R., Dixon, P., Gibbs, I. *et al.* (1992) *Skill Mix and the Effectiveness of Nursing Care*. University of York, Centre for Health Economics, York.

Carroll, D. and Bowsher, D. (1993) *Pain: Management and Nursing Care*. Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford.

Carroll, D. and Seers, K. (1998) Relaxation for the relief of chronic pain: a systematic review. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **27** (3), 476–487.

Chalmers, J. and Pearson, A. (2005) Oral hygiene care for residents with dementia: a literature review. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **52** (4), 410–419.

Chumbley, G.M., Hall, G.M. and Salmon, P. (2002) Patient-controlled analgesia: what information does the patient want? *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **39** (5), 459–471.

Clarkson, J.E., Worthington, H.V. and Eden, T.O.B. (2007a) Interventions for treating oral mucositis for patients with cancer receiving treatment. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **2**, CD001973.

Clarkson, J.E., Worthington, H.V. and Eden, T.O.B. (2007b) Interventions for preventing oral candidiasis for patients with cancer receiving treatment. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **1**, CD003807.

Clay, M. (2000) Oral health in older people. *Nursing Older People*, **12** (7), 21–26.

Cleeland, C.S. (1991) *The Brief Pain Inventory*. www.mdanderson.org/education-and-research/departments-programs-and-labs/departments-and-divisions/symptom-research/symptom-assessment-tools/BPI_UserGuide.pdf.

Colleau, S.M. (1999) The significance of breakthrough pain in cancer. *Cancer Pain Release*, **12** (4), 1–4.

Collins, F. and Hampton, S. (2003) The cost-effective use of BagBath: a new concept in patient hygiene. *British Journal of Nursing*, **12** (16), 984, 986–990.

Consroe, P., Musty, R., Rein, J., Tillery, W. and Pertwee, R. (1997) The perceived effects of smoked cannabis on patients with multiple sclerosis. *European Neurology*, **38** (1), 44–48.

Cooley, C. (2002) Oral health: basic or essential care? *Cancer Nursing Practice*, **1** (3), 33–39.

Cooper, C. (1994) Hygiene and the client, in *Knowledge to Care* (eds C.A. McMahon and J. Harding). Blackwell Scientific, Oxford.

Cunningham, C. and Gould, D. (1998) Eyecare for the sedated patient undergoing mechanical ventilation: the use of evidence-based care. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, **35** (1–2), 32–40.

Cutler, C.J. and Davis, N. (2005) Improving oral care in patients receiving mechanical ventilation. *American Journal of Critical Care*, **14**, 389–394.

Dahlin, C. (2004) Oral complications at the end of life. *American Journal of Nursing*, **104** (7), 40–47.

Darwish, M., Kirby, M. and Giang, J.D. (2007) Effect of buccal dwell time on the pharmacokinetic profile of fentanyl buccal tablet. *Expert Opinion in Pharmacotherapy*, **8**, 2011–2016.

Davies, A. (2000) A comparison of artificial saliva and chewing gum in the management of xerostomia in patients with advanced cancer. *Palliative Medicine*, **14**, 197–203.

Davies, A. (2005a) Oral assessment, in Oral Care in Advanced Disease (eds A. Davies and I. Finlay). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 7–19.

Davies, A. (2005b) Salivary gland dysfunction, in Oral Care in Advanced Disease (eds A. Davies and I. Finlay). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 97–113.

Davies, A. (2006) *Cancer-Related Breakthrough Pain*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Davis, B.D. and McVicker, A. (2000) Issues in effective pain control: from assessment to management. *International Journal of Palliative Nursing*, **6** (4), 162–169.

Davis, M.P., Glare, P. and Hardy, J. (2005) *Opioids in Cancer Pain*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

DH (2001) *The Essence of Care: Patient Focussed Benchmarking for Healthcare Professionals*. HMSO, London.

DH (2005) *Choosing Better Oral Health: An Oral Health Plan for England*. Department of Health, London.

Dickinson, L. and Porter, H. (2006) *Oral care, in Nursing in Haematological Oncology*, 2nd edn (ed. M. Grundy). Bailliére Tindall, Philadelphia, pp. 371–385.

Dickman, A., Littlewood, C. and Varga, J. (2002) Drug information, in *The Syringe Driver: Continuous Subcutaneous Infusions in Palliative*

Care (eds A. Dickman, C. Littlewood and J. Varga). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 11–58.

Disorbio, J.M., Bruns, D. and Barolat, G. (2006) Assessment and treatment of chronic pain. A physician's guide to a biopsychosocial approach. *Practical Pain Management*, March. www.healthpsych.com/articles/biopsychosocial_tx.pdf

Donnelly, S. and Walsh, D. (1995) The symptoms of advanced cancer. *Seminars in Oncology*, **22** (2 Suppl 3), 67–72.

Doyle, S. and Dalton, C. (2008) Developing clinical guidelines on promoting oral health: an action research approach. *Learning Disability Practice*, **11** (2), 12–15.

Drayer, R.A., Henderson, J. and Reidenberg, M. (1999) Barriers to better pain control in hospitalized patients. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **17** (6), 434–440.

Duffin, C. (2008) Brushing up on oral hygiene. *Nursing Older People*, **20** (2), 14–16.

Eilers, J. and Million, R. (2007) Prevention and management of oral mucositis in patients with cancer. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing*, **23** (3), 201–212.

Eilers, J., Berger, A.M. and Petersen, M.C. (1988) Development, testing, and application of the oral assessment guide. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, **15** (3), 325–330.

Ellershaw, J. (1998) Hydromorphone: a new alternative to morphine. *Prescriber*, **9** (4), 21–27.

Engler, H. and Sweat, R. (1962) Volumetric arm measurements: techniques and results. *American Surgeon*, **28**, 465–468.

Ersser, S.J., Getliffe, K., Voegeli, D. and Regan, S. (2005) A critical review of the inter-relationship between skin vulnerability and urinary incontinence and related nursing intervention. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, **42** (7), 823–835.

Ezzo, J., Berman, B., Hadhazy, V.A. et al. (2000) Is acupuncture effective for the treatment of chronic pain? *A systematic review. Pain*, **86** (3), 217–225.

Farrell, A. and Rich, A. (2000) Analgesic use in patients with renal failure. *European Journal of Palliative Care*, **7** (6), 201–205.

Feine, J.S. and Lund, J.P. (1997) An assessment of the efficacy of physical therapy and physical modalities for the control of chronic musculoskeletal pain. *Pain*, **71** (1), 5–23.

Finlay, I. and Davies, A. (2005) Fungal infections, in Oral Care in Advanced Disease (eds A. Davies and I. Finlay). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 55–71.

Fitzpatrick, J. (2000) Oral health needs of dependent older people: responsibilities of nurses and care staff. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **32** (6), 1325–1332.

Fitzpatrick, R., Davey, C., Buxton, M.J. and Jones, D.R. (1998) Evaluating patient-based outcome measures for use in clinical trials. *Health Technology Assessment*, **2** (14), i–iv, 1–74. www.hta.ac.uk/execsumm/summ214.shtml.

Flaherty, S.A. (1996) Pain measurement tools for clinical practice and research. *AANA Journal*, **64** (2), 133–140.

Foley, K. (2004) Pain assessment and cancer pain syndromes, in *Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine*, 3rd edn (ed. D. Doyle). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 298–316.

Forrester, J.V. (2002) *The Eye: Basic Sciences in Practice*, 2nd edn. W.B. Saunders, Edinburgh.

Fraise, A.P. and Bradley, T. (eds) (2009) *Ayliffe's Control of Healthcare-associated Infection: A Practical Handbook*, 5th edn. Hodder Arnold, London.

Gannon, C. (1997) Clinical management. The use of methadone in the care of the dying. *European Journal of Palliative Care*, **4** (5), 152–159.

Gardner-Nix, J.S. (1996) Oral methadone for managing chronic nonmalignant pain. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **11** (5), 321–328.

Geraghty, M. (2005) Nursing the unconscious patient. *Nursing Standard*, **20** (1), 54–64.

Godfrey, H. (2005) Understanding pain, part 1: physiology of pain. *British Journal of Nursing*, **14** (16), 846–852.

Gooch, J. (1989) Skin hygiene. *Professional Nurse*, **5** (1), 13–18.

Good, M. (1996) Effects of relaxation and music on postoperative pain: a review. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **24** (5), 905–914.

Good, M., Stanton-Hicks, M., Grass, J.A. *et al.* (1999) Relief of postoperative pain with jaw relaxation, music and their combination. *Pain*, **81** (1–2), 163–172.

Goodman, M. and Wickham, R. (2005) Endocrine malignancies, in *Cancer Nursing: Principles and Practice*, 6th edn (eds C.H. Yarbro, M. Goodman and M.H. Frogge). Jones and Bartlett, Sudbury, MA, pp. 1215–1243.

Gordon, M. (1994) *Nursing Diagnosis: Process and Application*, 3rd edn. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

Gould, D. (1994) Helping the patient with personal hygiene. *Nursing Standard*, **8** (34), 30–32.

Grap, M.J., Munro, C.L., Ashtiani, B. and Bryant, S. (2003) Oral care interventions in critical care: frequency and documentation. *American Journal of Critical Care*, **12** (2), 113–118.

Griffiths, J., Jones, V., Leeman, I. *et al.* (2000) Oral Health Care for People with Mental Health Problems Guidelines and Recommendations. *British Society for Disability and Oral Health*, Gosforth.

Grond, S., Zech, D., Diefenbach, C., Radbruch, L. and Lehmann, K.A. (1996) Assessment of cancer pain: a prospective evaluation in 2266 cancer patients referred to a pain service. *Pain*, **64** (1), 107–114.

Hahn, M. and Jones, A. (2000) Head and Neck Nursing. Churchill Livingstone, London.

Haisfield-Wolfe, M.E. (1998) Providing effective perineal-rectal skin care to patients with cancer. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, **25** (3), 472.

Hanks, G.W., Conno, F., Cherny, N. *et al.* (2001) Morphine and alternative opioids in cancer pain: the EAPC recommendations. *British Journal of Cancer*, 84 (5), 587–593.

Hanks, G., Cherny, N. and Fallon, M. (2004) Opioid analgesic therapy, in *Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine*, 3rd edn (ed. D. Doyle). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 316–342.

Harkin, H. (2007) Ear Care Advice. www.entnursing.com/earcareadvice.htm.

Harkin, H. (2008) Guidance Document in Ear Care. www.earcarecentre.com/protocols.htm.

Harmer, M. and Davies, K.A. (1998) The effect of education, assessment and a standardised prescription on postoperative pain management. The value of clinical audit in the establishment of acute pain services. *Anaesthesia*, **53** (5), 424–430.

Hays, H., Hagen, N., Thirlwell, M. *et al.* (1994) Comparative clinical efficacy and safety of immediate release and controlled release hydromorphone for chronic severe cancer pain. *Cancer*, **74** (6), 1808–1816.

Hayward, J. (1975) *Information: A Prescription Against Pain*. Royal College of Nursing, London.

Hector, L.M. and Touhy, T.A. (1997) The history of the bath: from art to task? Reflections for the future. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, **23** (5), 7–15.

Heiser, R.M., Chiles, K., Fudge, M. and Gray, S.E. (1997) The use of music during the immediate postoperative recovery period. *AORN Journal*, **65** (4), 777–778, 781–785.

Heiskanen, T. and Kalso, E. (1997) Controlled-release oxycodone and morphine in cancer related pain. *Pain*, **73** (1), 37–45.

Henderson, V. (1966) *The Nature of Nursing; A Definition and Its Implications for Practice, Research, and Education*. Macmillan, New York.

Hicks, F. and Simpson, K.H. (2004) Regional nerve blocks, in *Nerve Blocks in Palliative Care* (eds F. Hicks and K.H. Simpson). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 53–55.

Higginson, I.J. (1998) Can professionals improve their assessments? *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **15** (3), 149–150.

Hobbs, G.J. and Hodgkinson, V. (2003) Assessment, measurement, history and examination, in *Acute Pain* (eds D.J. Rowbotham and P.E. Macintyre). Arnold, London, pp. 93–112.

Hollins, S. (2009) *Religions, Cultures and Healthcare*, 2nd edn. Radcliffe Publishing, Oxford.

Holloway, S. and Jones, V. (2005) The importance of skin care and assessment. *British Journal of Nursing*, **14** (22), 1172–1176.

Holman, C., Roberts, S. and Nicol, M. (2005) Promoting oral hygiene. *Nursing Older People*, **16** (10), 37–38.

Huskinson, W. and Lloyd, H. (2009) Oral health in hospitalised patients: assessment and hygiene. *Nursing Standard*, **23** (36), 43–47.

Husseini, A., Slot, D.E. and Van Der Weijden, G.A. (2008) The efficacy of oral irrigation in addition to a toothbrush on plaque and the clinical parameters of periodontal inflammation: a review. *International Journal of Dental Hygiene*, **6**, 304–314.

Idvall, E., Hamrin, E., Sjostrom, B. and Unosson, M. (2002) Patient and nurse assessment of quality of care in postoperative pain management. *Quality and Safety in Health Care*, **11** (4), 327–334.

IASP (1994) IASP pain terminology. www.iasp-pain.org/terms.

IASP (1996) Classification of chronic pain. *Pain*, **3** (Suppl), 51–226.

Jones, C.V. (1998) The importance of oral hygiene in nutritional support. *British Journal of Nursing*, **7** (2), 74–83.

Kalkman, C.J., Visser, K., Moen, J. *et al.* (2003) Preoperative prediction of severe postoperative pain. *Pain*, **105** (3), 415–423.

Kayser-Jones, J., Bird, W.F., Paul, S.M. *et al.* (1995) An instrument to assess the oral health status of nursing home residents. *Gerontologist*, **35** (6), 814–824.

Keefe, D.M., Schubert, M.M., Elting, L.S. *et al.* (2007) Updated clinical practice guidelines for the prevention and treatment of mucositis. *Cancer*, **109** (5), 820–831.

Kehlet, H. (1997) Multimodal approach to control postoperative pathophysiology and rehabilitation. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **78** (5), 606–617.

King, A. (1999) *King's Guide to TENS for Health Professionals: A Health Professionals' Guide to Transcutaneous Electrical Nerve Stimulation for the Treatment of Pain*. www.alanking.net/books.html.

Kitson, A. (1994) Post-operative pain management: a literature review. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **3** (1), 7–18.

Kitson, A. (1999) The essence of nursing. *Nursing Standard*, **13** (23), 42–46.

Klepstad, P., Kaasa, S., Cherny, N., Hanks, G. and de Conno, F. (2005) Pain and pain treatments in European palliative care units. A cross sectional survey from the European Association for Palliative Care Research Network. *Palliative Medicine*, **19** (6), 477–484.

Kraszewski, S. (2008) Safe and effective ear irrigation. *Nursing Standard*, **22** (43), 45–48.

Krishnasamy, M. (2008) Pain, in *Cancer Nursing: Care in Context*, 2nd edn (eds J. Corner and C.D. Bailey). Blackwell, Oxford, pp. 449–461.

Kuckelkorn, R., Schrage, N., Keller, G. and Redbrake, C. (2002) Emergency treatment of chemical and thermal eye burns. *Acta Ophthalmologica Scandinavica*, **80** (1), 4–10.

Lang, E.V., Benotsch, E.G., Fick, L.J. *et al.* (2000) Adjunctive non-pharmacological analgesia for invasive medical procedures: a randomised trial. *Lancet*, **355** (9214), 1486–1490.

Lawler, K. (1997) Pain assessment. *Professional Nurse*, **13** (1 Suppl), S5–8.

Lee, A. (2006) The angle and aqueous, in *Ophthalmic Care* (ed. J. Marsden). Wiley, Chichester, pp. 420–460.

Lewis, N.L. and Williams, J.E. (2005) Acute pain management in patients receiving opioids for chronic and cancer pain. *Contining Education in Anaesthesia and Critical Care Pain*, **5** (4), 127–129.

Li, X., Kolltveit, K.M., Tronstad, L. and Olsen, I. (2000) Systemic disease caused by oral infection. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews*, **13** (4), 547–558.

Lindell, M.E. and Olsson, H.M. (1989) Lack of care givers' knowledge causes unnecessary suffering in elderly patients. *Journal of Advanced*

Nursing, **14** (11), 976–979.

Ling, J. (1997) The use of transdermal fentanyl in palliative care. *International Journal of Palliative Nursing*, **3** (2) 65–68.

Lockhart, J.S. and Resick, L.K. (2006) Anatomy and physiology, in *Head and Neck Cancer* (eds L.K. Clarke and M.J. Dropkin). Oncology Nursing Society, Pittsburgh, PA.

Lokich, J.J. and Moore, C. (1984) Chemotherapy-associated palmar-plantar erythrodysesthesia syndrome. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, **101** (6), 798–799.

Loveman, E. and Gale, A. (2000) Factors influencing nurses' inferences about patient pain. *British Journal of Nursing*, **9** (6), 334–337.

Macintyre, P.E. (2001) Safety and efficacy of patient-controlled analgesia. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **87** (1), 36–46.

Macintyre, P.E. and Jarvis, D.A. (1996) Age is the best predictor of postoperative morphine requirements. *Pain*, **64** (2), 357–364.

Macintyre, P.E. and Schug, S.A. (2007) *Acute Pain Management: A Practical Guide*. Elsevier Saunders, Edinburgh.

Macintyre, P.E., Schug, S.A., Scott, D.A. *et al.*, for the Working Group of the Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists and Faculty of Pain Medicine (2010) *Acute Pain Management: Scientific Evidence*, 3rd edn. ANZCA and FPM, Melbourne.

Maher, K. (2004) Xerostomia, in *Cancer Symptom Management*, 3rd edn (eds C.H. Yarbro, M.H. Frogge and M. Goodman). Jones and Bartlett, Sudbury, MA.

Malkin, B. (2009) The important of patients' oral health and nurses' role in assessing and maintaining it. *Nursing Times*, **105** (17), 19–23.

Malkin, B. and Berridge, P. (2009) Guidance on maintaining personal hygiene in nail care. *Nursing Standard*, **23** (41), 35–38.

Mann, E. (2008) Neuropathic pain: could nurses become more involved? *British Journal of Nursing*, **17** (19), 1208–1213.

Marieb, E. (2001) Human Anatomy and Physiology, 5th edn. *Benjamin Cummings*, Boston.

Marsden, J. (2006) The care of patients presenting with acute problems, in *Ophthalmic Care* (ed. J.Marsden). Whurr, Chichester, pp. 209–252.

Martyn, C.N., Illis, L.S. and Thom, J. (1995) Nabilone in the treatment of multiple sclerosis. *Lancet*, **345** (8949), 579.

McCaffery, M. and Beebe, A. (1989) Perspectives on pain, in *Pain: Clinical Manual for Nursing Practice* (eds M. McCaffery and A. Beebe). Mosby, St Louis, MO, pp. 1–5.

McCaffery, M. and Ferrell, B.R. (1997) Nurses' knowledge of pain assessment and management: how much progress have we made? *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **14** (3), 175–188.

McCaffery, M. and Robinson, E.S. (2002) Your patient is in pain – here's how you respond. *Nursing*, **32** (10), 36–45.

McCaffrey, R. (1968) *Nursing Practice Theories Relating to Cognition, Bodily Pain and Man Environment*. University of California Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA.

McCaffrey, R. (2000) *Nursing Management of the Patient with Pain*, 3rd edn. Lippincott, Philadelphia.

McLoughlin, C. (2005) A guide to wash creams. *Professional Nurse*, **20** (6), 46–47.

McMillan, C. (2001) Breakthrough pain: assessment and management in cancer patients. *British Journal of Nursing*, **10** (13), 860–866.

McQuay, H. (1999) Opioids in pain management. *Lancet*, **353** (9171), 2229–2232.

McQuay, H. and Edwards, J. (2003) Meta-analysis of single dose oral tramadol plus acetaminophen in acute postoperative pain. *European Journal of Anaesthesiology*, **28** (Suppl), 19–22.

McQuay, H.J. and Moore, R.A. (1998) Oral tramadol versus placebo, codeine and combination analgesics, in *An Evidence-Based Resource for Pain Relief* (eds H.J. McQuay and R.A. Moore). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 138–146.

McQuay, H., Moore, A. and Justins, D. (1997) Treating acute pain in hospital. *BMJ*, **314** (7093), 1531–1535.

Meechan, J. (2005) Oral pain, in Oral Care in Advanced Disease (eds A. Davies and I. Finlay). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 133–143.

Mehta, V. and Langford, R.M. (2006) Acute pain management for opioid dependent patients. *Anaesthesia*, **61** (3), 269–276.

Melzack, R. (1975) The McGill Pain Questionnaire: major properties and scoring methods. *Pain*, **1** (3), 277–299.

MHRA (2005) Medical Device Alert Ref. MDA/2005/027. Heat patches or heat packs intended for pain relief. Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency, London.

Milligan, S., McGill, M., Sweeney, M.P. and Malarkey, C. (2001) Oral care for people with advanced cancer: an evidence-based protocol. *International Journal of Palliative Nursing*, **7** (9), 418–426.

Mitchell, M. (1997) Patients' perceptions of pre-operative preparation for day surgery. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **26** (2), 356–363.

Morley, J.S. and Makin, M.K. (1998) The use of methadone in cancer pain poorly responsive to other opioids. *Pain Reviews*, **5** (1), 51–59.

Mucci-LoRusso, P., Berman, B.S., Silberstein, P.T. *et al.* (1998) Controlled-release oxycodone compared with controlled-release morphine in the treatment of cancer pain: a randomized, double-blind, parallel-group study. *European Journal of Pain*, **2** (3), 239–249.

Munro, C.L. and Grap, M.J. (2004) Oral health and care in the intensive care unit: state of the science. *American Journal of Critical Care*, **13** (1), 25–33.

Nadler, S.F., Steiner, D.J., Erasala, G.N. *et al.* (2002) Continuous low-level heat wrap therapy provides more efficacy than Ibuprofen and acetaminophen for acute low back pain. *Spine*, **27** (10), 1012–1017.

NHS (2004) *10 High Impact Changes for Service Improvement and Delivery*. Stationery Office, London.

NHSQIS (2004) *Working with Dependent Older People to Achieve Good Oral Health*. NHS Quality Improvement Scotland, Edinburgh.

Nigam, Y. and Knight, J. (2008) Exploring the anatomy and physiology of ageing. Part 6 – the eye and ear. *Nursing Times*, **104** (36), 22–23.

Nightingale, F. (1859) Notes on Nursing – What It Is and What It Is Not. Churchill Livingstone, London.

NMC (2008a) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent.

NMC (2008b) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

O'Connor, M. and Webb, R. (2002) Learning to rest when in pain. *European Journal of Palliative Care*, **9** (2), 68–72.

Olver, J. and Cassidy, L. (2005) *Ophthalmology at a Glance*. Blackwell Science, Oxford.

Orem, D.E. (1980) *Nursing: Concepts of Practice*, 2nd edn. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Otto, S. (2001) *Oncology Nursing,* 4th edn. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

Pargeon, K.L. and Hailey, B.J. (1999) Barriers to effective cancer pain management: a review of the literature. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **18** (5), 358–368.

Parker, L. (2004) Infection control: maintaining the personal hygiene of patients and staff. *British Journal of Nursing*, **13** (4), 474–478.

Pasero, C. (1998) Pain control – is laughter the best medicine? *American Journal of Nursing*, **98** (12), 12–14.

Payne, R.A. (1995) *Relaxation Techniques: A Practical Handbook for the Health Care Professional*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

Paz, S. and Seymour, J.E. (2008) Pain theories, evaluation and management, in *Palliative Care Nursing: Principles and Evidence for Practice*. 2nd edn (eds S. Payne J. Seymour and C. Ingleton). Open University Press, Maidenhead, pp. 252–289.

Pearson, L.S. and Hutton, J.L. (2002) A controlled trial to compare the ability of foam swabs and toothbrushes to remove dental plaque. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **39** (5), 480–489.

Pease, N., Taylor, H. and Major, H. (2004) Strong painkillers and driving. *Palliative Medicine*, **18**, 663–668.

Pegram, A., Bloomfield, J. and Jones, A. (2007) Clinical skills: bed bathing and personal hygiene needs of patients. *British Journal of Nursing*, **16** (6), 356–358.

Penzer, R. and Finch, M. (2001) Promoting healthy skin in older people. *Nursing Standard*, **15** (34), 46–52.

Perkins, F.M. and Kehlet, H. (2000) Chronic pain as an outcome of surgery. A review of predictive factors. *Anesthesiology*, **93** (4), 1123–1133.

Peterson, D.E., Bensadoun, R.-J. and Roila, F. (2009) Management of oral and gastrointestinal mucositis: ESMO clinical recommendations. *Annals of Oncology*, **20** (Suppl 4), iv174–iv177.

Philips, L. and Buttery, J. (2009) *Exploring Pressure Ulcer Prevalence and Preventative Care. Nursing Times*, **16**, 105.

Portenoy, R.K. and Lesage, P. (1999) Management of cancer pain. *Lancet*, **353** (9165), 1695–1700.

Portenoy, R.K., Payne, R., Coluzzi, P. *et al.* (1999) Oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate (OTFC) for the treatment of breakthrough pain in cancer patients: a controlled dose titration study. *Pain*, **79** (2–3), 303–312.

Portenoy, R.K., Forbes, K, Lussier, D. and Hanks, G. (2004) Difficult pain problems: an integrated approach. In: *Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine* (ed. D. Doyle). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 316–336.

Potter, P.A. and Griffin Perry, A. (2003) Basic Nursing Essentials for Practice, 5th edn. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

Potter, P.A. and Perry, G. (1995) *Basic Nursing Theory and Practice*. Mosby, London.

Pratt, R.J., Pellowe, C., Loveday, H. (2001) Guidelines for preventing infections associated with the insertion and maintenance of short-term indwelling urethral catheters in acute care. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **47** (Supplement), S39–46.

Pullen, R.L. Jr. (2006) Spin control: caring for a patient with inner ear disease. *Nursing*, **36** (5), 48–51.

Quigley, C. (2004) Opioid switching to improve pain relief and drug tolerability. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **3**, CD004847.

Quinn, B., Potting, C.M.J., Stone, R. *et al.* (2008) Guidelines for the assessment of oral mucositis in adult chemotherapy, radiotherapy and haematopoietic stem cell transplant patients. European Journal of Cancer, **44**, 61–72.

Raiman, J. (1986) Coping with pain. Pain relief – a two-way process. *Nursing Times*, **82** (15), 24–28.

Rauch, R.L., Tark, M., Reyes, E. *et al.* (2009) Efficacy and long term tolerability of sublingual fentanyl oral disintegrating tablet in the treatment of breakthrough cancer pain. *Current Medical Research and Opinion*, **25** (12), 2877–2885.

Ready, L. and Edwards, W. (1992) *Management of Acute Pain: A Practical Guide*. IASP Publications, Seattle, WA.

Reicin, A., Brown, J., Jove, M. *et al.* (2001) Efficacy of single-dose and multidose rofecoxib in the treatment of post-orthopedic surgery pain. *American Journal of Orthopedics*, **30** (1), 40–48.

Richardson, M. (2007) Hearing and balance: The outer and middle ear. *Nursing Times*, **103** (38) 24–25.

Riley, J. (2006) An overview of opioids in palliative care. *European Journal of Palliative Care*, **13** (6), 230–233.

Roberts, J. (2001) Oral assessment and intervention. *Nursing Older People*, **13** (7), 14–16.

Robinson, P., Deacon, S.A., Deer, C. *et al.* (2005) Manual versus powered toothbrushing for oral health. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **2**, CD002281.

Romsing, J., Moiniche, S. and Dahl, J.B. (2002) Rectal and parenteral paracetamol, and paracetamol in combination with NSAIDs, for postoperative analgesia. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **88** (2), 215–226.

Roper, N., Logan, W.W. and Tierney, A.J. (1981) *Learning to Use the Process of Nursing*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

Rowbotham, D.J. (2000) Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and paracetamol, in *Chronic Pain* (ed. D.J. Rowbotham). Martin Dunitz, London, pp. 19–26.

Royal College of Physicians, British Geriatric Society and British Pain Society (2007) *The Assessment of Pain in Older People: National Guidelines*. Royal College of Physicians, London.

Rubenstein, E.B., Peterson, D.E., Schubert, M., *et al.* (2004) Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention and treatment of cancer therapy-induced oral and gastrointestinal mucositis. *Cancer*, **100** (S9), 2026–2046.

Sampson, A.C.M. (1982) *The Neglected Ethic: Cultural and Religious Factors in the Care of Patients*. McGraw-Hill, London.

Schug, S.A. and Torrie, J.J. (1993) Safety assessment of postoperative pain management by an acute pain service. *Pain*, **55** (3), 387–391.

Scott, I.E. (1994) Effectiveness of documented assessment of postoperative pain. *British Journal of Nursing*, **3** (10), 494–501.

Seers, K. (1996) The patients' experiences of their chronic nonmalignant pain. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **24** (6), 1160–1168.

Seers, K. and Carroll, D. (1998) Relaxation techniques for acute pain management: a systematic review. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **27** (3), 466–475.

Shaw, M.E. (2006) Examination of the eye, in *Ophthalmic Care* (ed. J. Marsden). Wiley, Chichester, pp. 66–84.

Sheppard, C.M. and Brenner, P.S. (2000) The effects of bathing and skin care practices on skin quality and satisfaction with an innovative product. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, **26** (10), 36–45.

Sidebotham, D., Dijkhuizen, M.R. and Schug, S.A. (1997) The safety and utilization of patient-controlled analgesia. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **14** (4), 202–209.

Sindrup, S.H. and Jensen, T.S. (1999) Efficacy of pharmacological treatments of neuropathic pain: an update and effect related to mechanism of drug action. *Pain*, **83** (3), 389–400.

Sloman, R., Brown, P., Aldana, E. and Chee, E. (1994) The use of relaxation for the promotion of comfort and pain relief in persons with advanced cancer. *Contemporary Nurse*, **3** (1), 6–12.

Smoker, A. (1999) Skin care in old age. *Nursing Standard*, **13** (48), 47–53.

Sonis, S.T., Elting, L.S., Keefe, D. *et al.* (2004) Perspectives on cancer therapy-induced mucosal injury. *Cancer*, **100** (S9), 1995–2024.

Southern, H. (2007) Oral care in cancer nursing: nurses' knowledge and education. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **57** (6), 631–638.

Spiller, J. (1992) For whose sake – patient or nurse? Ritual practices in patient washing. *Professional Nurse*, **7** (7), 431–434.

Stiefel, K.A., Damron, S., Sowers, N.J. and Velez, L. (2000) Improving oral hygiene for the seriously ill patient: implementing research-based practice. *Medsurg Nursing*, **9** (1), 40–46.

Stockton, L. and Flynn, M. (2009) Sitting and pressure ulcers. 1: Risk factors, self-repositioning and other interventions. *Nursing Times*, **105** (24), 12–14.

Stollery, R., Shaw, M.E. and Lee, A. (2005) *Ophthalmic Nursing*, 3rd edn. Blackwell, Oxford.

Sweeney, P. (2005) Oral hygiene, in *Oral Care in Advanced Disease* (eds A. Davies and I. Finlay). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 23–35.

Tortora, G.J. and Derrickson, B.H. (2009) Principles of Anatomy and Physiology, 12th edn. John Wiley, Hoboken, NJ.

Trauger-Querry, B. and Haghighi, K.R. (1999) Balancing the focus: art and music therapy for pain control and symptom management in hospice care. *Hospice Journal*, **14** (1), 25–38.

Turk, D.C. and Okifuji, A. (1999) Assessment of patients' reporting of pain: an integrated perspective. *Lancet*, **353** (9166), 1784–1788.

Twycross, R.G. and Wilcock, A. (2001) *Symptom Management in Advanced Cancer*, 3rd edn. Radcliffe Medical, Abingdon.

Twycross, R., Harcourt, J. and Bergl, S. (1996) A survey of pain in patients with advanced cancer. *Journal of Pain and Symptom*

Management, **12** (5), 273–282.

Tye, T. and Gell-Walker, V. (2000) Patient-controlled analgesia. *Nursing Times*, **96** (25), 38–39.

Vijayan, R. (1997) Subcutaneous morphine – a simple technique for postoperative analgesia. *Acute Pain*, **1** (1), 21–26.

Voegeli, D. (2008) Care or harm: exploring essential components in skin care regimens. *British Journal of Nursing*, **17** (1), 24–30.

Vondrackova, D., Leyendecker, P., Meissner, W. *et al.* (2008) Analgesic efficacy and safety of oxycodone in combination with naloxone as prolonged release tablets in patients with moderate to severe chronic pain. *Journal of Pain*, **9** (12), 1144–1154.

Walker, S.M., Macintyre, P.E., Visser, E. and Scott, D. (2006) Acute pain management: current best evidence provides guide for improved practice. *Pain Medicine*, **7** (1), 3–5.

Walker, V., Dicks, B. and Webb, P. (1987) Pain assessment charts in the management of chronic cancer pain. *Palliative Medicine*, **1** (2), 111–116.

Wall, J., Davis, S. and Ridgway, S. (2001) Cannabis: its therapeutic use. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (10), 39–44.

Walsh, D. (1997) Review of clinical studies on TENS, in *TENS: Clinical Applications and Related Theory* (eds D.M. Walsh and E.T. McAdams). Churchill Livingstone, New York, pp. 83–101.

Watkinson, S. and Seewoodhary, R. (2007) Common conditions and practical considerations in eye care. *Nursing Standard*, **21** (44), 42–47.

Wheatley, R.G., Schug, S.A. and Watson, D. (2001) Safety and efficacy of postoperative epidural analgesia. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **87** (1), 47–61.

Whiting, L.S. (1999) Maintaining patients' personal hygiene. *Professional Nurse*, **14** (5), 338–340.

WHO (1979) Handbook for Reporting Results of Cancer Treatment, vol. 48. World Health Organization, Geneva, pp. 15–22.

Wilson, M. (1986) Personal cleanliness. *Nursing (Lond)*, **3** (2), 80–81.

Witt-Sherman, D., Matzo, M., Paice, J. *et al.* (2004) Learning pain assessment and management. A goal of the end-of-life nursing education

consortium. *Journal of Continuing Education in Nursing*, **35** (3), 107–120.

Wood, A. (2004) Mouth care and ritualistic practice. *Cancer Nursing Practice*, **3** (4), 34–39.

Woodrow, P. (2006) *Intensive Care Nursing: A Framework for Practice*, 2nd edn. Routledge, London.

Worthington, H.V., Clarkson, J.E. and Eden, TOB. (2007a) Interventions for preventing oral mucositis for patients with cancer receiving treatment. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **4**, CD000978.

Worthington, H.V., Clarkson, J.E. and Eden, T.O.B. (2007b) Interventions for treating oral candidiasis for patients with cancer receiving treatment. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **2**, CD001972.

Young, L. (1991) Community care: the clean fight. *Nursing Standard*, **5** (35), 54–55.

Zaza, C. and Baine, N. (2002) Cancer pain and psychosocial factors: a critical review of the literature. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, **24** (5), 526–542.

Zech, D., Lehmann, A. and Ground, S. (1994) A new treatment option for chronic cancer pain. *European Journal of Palliative Care*, **1** (1), 26–30.

Zeppetella, G. (2009) Oral transmucosal opioids, in *Cancer Related Breakthrough Pain* (ed. A. Davies). Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Multiple choice questions

1 Why should healthcare professionals take extra care when washing and drying an elderly patient's skin?

a As the older generation deserve more respect and tender loving care (TLC).

b As the skin of an elder person has reduced blood supply, is thinner, less elastic and has less natural oil. This means the skin is less resistant to shearing forces and wound healing can be delayed.

c All elderly people lose dexterity and struggle to wash effectively so they need support with personal hygiene.

d As elderly people cannot reach all areas of their body, it is essential to ensure all body areas are washed well so that the colonization of Gram-positive and negative micro-organisms on the skin is avoided.

2 What would you do if a patient with diabetes and peripheral neuropathy requires assistance cutting his toe nails?

a Document clearly the reason for not cutting his toe nails and refer him to a chiropodist.

b Document clearly the reason for not cutting his nails and ask the ward sister to do it.

c Have a go and if you run into trouble, stop and refer to the chiropodist.

d Speak to the patient's GP to ask for referral to the chiropodist, but make a start while the patient is in hospital.

3 A patient is agitated and is unable to settle. She is also finding it difficult to sleep, reporting that she is in pain. What would you do at this point?

a Ask her to score her pain, describe its intensity, duration, the site, any relieving measures and what makes it worse, looking for non-verbal clues, so you can determine the appropriate method of pain management.

b Give her some sedatives so she goes to sleep.

c Calculate a pain score, suggest that she takes deep breaths, reposition her pillows, return in 5 minutes to gain a comparative pain score.

d Give her any analgesia she is due. If she hasn't any, contact the doctor to get some prescribed. Also give her a warm milky drink and reposition her pillows. Document your action.

4 On which step of the WHO analgesic ladder would you place tramadol and codeine?

a Step 1: Non-Opioid Drugs.

b Step 2: Opioids for Mild to Moderate Pain.

c Step 3: Opioids for Moderate to Severe Pain.

d Herbal medicine.

5 What does the term 'breakthrough pain' mean, and what type of prescription would you expect for it?

a A patient who has adequately controlled pain relief with short-lived exacerbation of pain, with a prescription that has no regular time of administration of analgesia.

b Pain on movement which is short-lived, with a q.d.s. prescription, when necessary.

c Pain that is intense, unexpected, in a location that differs from that previously assessed, needing a review before a prescription is written.

d A patient who has adequately controlled pain relief with short-lived exacerbation of pain, with a prescription that has 4-hourly frequency of analgesia if necessary.

6 A patient has just returned from theatre following surgery on their left arm. They have a PCA infusion connected and from the admission, you remember that they have poor dexterity with their right hand. They are currently pain free. What actions would you take?

a Educate the patient's family to push the button when the patient asks for it. Encourage them to tell the nursing staff when they leave the ward so that staff can take over.

b Routinely offer the patient a bolus and document this clearly.

c Contact the pain team/anaesthetist to discuss the situation and suggest that the means of delivery are changed.

d The patient has paracetamol q.d.s. written up, so this should be adequate pain relief.

7 In which of the following situations might nitrous oxide (Entonox) be considered?

a A wound dressing change for short-term pain relief or the removal of a chest drain for reduction of anxiety.

b Turning a patient who has bowel obstruction because there is an expectation that they may have pain from pathological

fractures.

c For pain relief during the insertion of a chest drain for the treatment of a pneumothorax.

d For pain relief during a wound dressing for a patient who has had radical head and neck cancer that involved the jaw.

8 What are the key nursing observations needed for a patient receiving opioids frequently?

a Respiratory rate, bowel movement record and pain assessment and score.

b Checking the patent is not addicted by looking at their blood pressure.

c Lung function tests, oxygen saturations and addiction levels.

d Daily completion of a Bristol stool chart, urinalysis, and a record of the frequency with which the patient reports breakthrough pain.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com **and select the Student Edition tab.**

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

Chapter 10

Respiratory Care

Overview

This chapter explains the nursing management and assessment of patients with respiratory problems. Administration of oxygen therapy, managing patients with chest drains and tracheostomies, counselling patients regarding smoking cessation and performing cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) will be discussed.

Respiratory therapy

Definition

The principle of oxygen therapy is the application of pharmacological and non-pharmacological means to improve breathing and therefore improve gaseous exchange. This will include an assessment of the cause of the impaired breathing, reversal of causes where possible and therapies to optimize respiratory function (Shelledy and Mikles 2002).

Anatomy and physiology

See also Chapter 12.

The respiratory system is a complex system that is responsible for the efficient exchange of the respiratory gases, primarily oxygen and carbon dioxide. The respiratory system is responsible for ensuring a continuous optimum supply of oxygen to the tissues and the elimination of carbon dioxide during expiration. Four separate functions are necessary to achieve optimal respiration (Marieb *et al.* 2010).

1 *Pulmonary ventilation*: adequate breathing and movement of air in and out of the lungs, ensuring a fresh supply of oxygen to the alveoli.

2 *External respiration*: ensuring adequate gas exchange, oxygen uptake and carbon dioxide unloading between the blood and the alveoli of the lungs.

3 *Transport of respiratory gases*: moving oxygen and carbon dioxide between the lungs and the body tissues. Transport is affected by the cardiovascular system and uses the blood as a carrying mechanism.

4 *Cellular respiration*: oxygen delivery and carbon dioxide uptake between the systemic blood and tissue cells.

The respiratory system is composed of the following structures.

- The two respiratory centres in the medulla oblongata and pons of the brain.
- The nose, mouth and connecting airways.
- The trachea, main bronchus, bronchioles and alveoli.
- The respiratory muscles: the diaphragm and the intercostal muscles.
- The respiratory nerves: the subphrenic nerve and the intercostal nerves.
- The bone structure of the thorax: the ribs, vertebrae and sternum.
- The lung parenchyma.
- The pleura.

Alteration, damage or blockage to any of the structures listed above may result in either respiratory impairment or respiratory failure. It is essential when considering respiratory function to remember the close association and dependence between the cardiovascular, neurological, musculoskeletal and respiratory systems.

Tissue oxygenation

All the cells of the body require a continuous supply of oxygen to ensure growth and repair of tissues and optimum metabolism. Oxygen is drawn into the body through the nose and mouth; it then travels down the trachea and into the smaller airways and alveoli of the lungs. Once it has reached the alveoli, oxygen in solution is able to transfer into the network of capillaries and from there travels via the venous network to

all cells of the body. This tissue oxygenation is known as cellular oxygenation. Low oxygen levels are called hypoxia. In low oxygen conditions, anaerobic cellular oxygenation will occur, generating the waste product lactic acid. If the low oxygen state is allowed to continue lactic acid will accumulate, leading to a metabolic acidosis and cell death (Berne 2004, Bersten *et al.* 2009, Guyton and Hall 2006, Hess 2000, Kumar and Clark 2009, Marieb *et al.* 2010, Pierson 2000, Tortora and Derrickson 2009, West 2008).

There are three components to oxygenation: oxygen uptake, oxygen transportation and oxygen utilization. *Oxygen uptake* is the process of extracting oxygen from the environment. *Oxygen transportation* is the mechanism by which the uptake of oxygen results in the delivery of oxygen to the cells. *Oxygen utilization* is the metabolic need for molecular oxygen by the cells of the body (Marieb *et al.* 2010, Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

In order for oxygenation to take place there needs to be an adequate cardiac output.

Oxygen uptake

The air that we breathe in during normal conditions from the atmosphere is composed of the following gases:

- oxygen 21%
- carbon dioxide 0.03%
- nitrogen 79%
- rare gases 0.003%.

Inspired air at sea level has a total atmospheric pressure of 760 mmHg. According to Dalton's Law, where there is a mixture of gases each gas exerts its own pressure as if there were no other gases present. The pressure of an individual gas in a mixture is called the partial pressure and is denoted as P, which is then followed by the type of gas, so that the partial pressure of oxygen is written PO_2 (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

- Oxygen 0.21 × 760 = 159 mmHg (21 kPa).
- Carbon dioxide 0.03 × 760 = 22.8 mmHg (3.0 kPa).

- Nitrogen 0.79 × 760 = 600 mmHg (80 kPa).

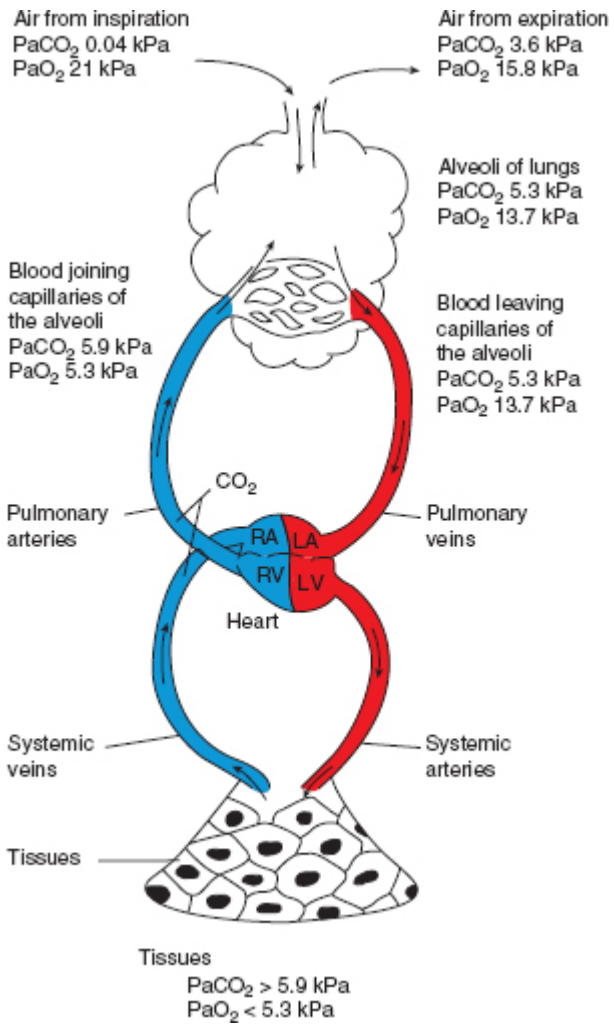
The partial pressure of gases controls the movement of oxygen and carbon dioxide through the body between the atmosphere and the lungs, the lungs and the blood and finally the blood and the cells.

Gaseous exchange

Movement of gases is by diffusion. Diffusion is the movement of gas molecules from an area of relatively high partial pressure to one of lower partial pressure (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Diffusion of oxygen takes place from the alveolus into the pulmonary capillaries and movement of carbon dioxide from the capillary into the alveolus. From the alveolus, the oxygen diffuses from the capillaries into the tissues and mitochondria of the cells (Figure 10.1).

Figure 10.01 Gas movement in the body is facilitated by partial pressure differences. Top of figure illustrates pressure gradients that facilitate oxygen and carbon dioxide exchange in the lungs. Bottom of figure shows pressure gradients that facilitate gas movements from systemic capillaries to tissues.



The alveolar oxygen partial pressure is higher than the arterial oxygen partial pressure in order to push the oxygen through the alveolar membrane into the interstitial spaces and from there into the pulmonary capillaries. Oxygen continues to diffuse from the capillaries into the tissues then to the mitochondria of the cells for metabolism (Berne 2004, Bersten *et al.* 2009, Carpenter 1991, Esmond 2001, Guyton and Hall 2006, Marieb *et al.* 2010, Pierce 1995, Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

As inspired air enters the respiratory tract, it encounters water vapour present in the upper airways which warms and humidifies it. Water vapour exerts its own partial pressure of 47 mmHg. The partial pressure of the water vapour must be subtracted from the total atmospheric pressure to give a corrected atmospheric pressure and partial pressure of each gas (Carpenter 1991, Marieb *et al*. 2010).

- Corrected total atmospheric pressure 760 − 47 = 713 mmHg.

- Oxygen 0.21 × 713 = 150 mmHg (20 kPa).
- Carbon dioxide 0.03 × 713 = 21 mmHg (2.8 kPa).

As oxygen continues to pass down the respiratory tract to the alveolus, it encounters carbon dioxide leaving the respiratory tract which also exerts a partial pressure, equal to 40 mmHg. This in turn must be subtracted to determine the correct values. Oxygen has a corrected value of 150 − 40 = 110−100 mmHg (14.6−13.3 kPa).

Oxygen transportation

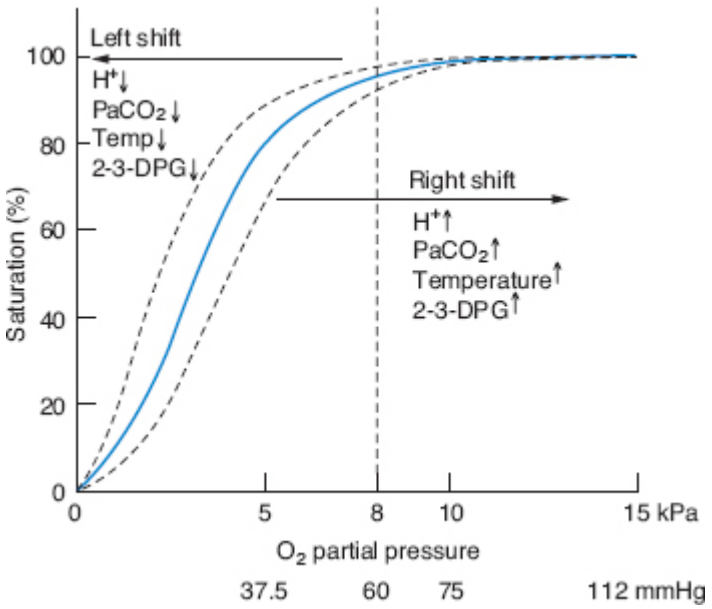
Oxygen is carried in the blood in two ways.

- *Dissolved in the plasma (serum)*: only 2–3% is carried in this way as oxygen is not very soluble (Ahrens and Tucker 1999, Marieb *et al*. 2010). This is measured as the PaO_2. There is 0.003 mL of blood for each 1 mmHg partial pressure oxygen. At 100 mmHg partial pressure, only 0.3 mL of oxygen would be carried per 100 mL of plasma.
- *Bound to haemoglobin in the red blood cells*: 95–98% of oxygen is carried in this way and is measured as the percentage of oxygen saturated (SaO_2). Each gram of haemoglobin can carry 1.34 mL of oxygen per 100 mL blood.

Haemoglobin is composed of haem (iron) and globulin (protein). Each haemoglobin molecule has four binding sites, each able to carry one molecule of oxygen. A haemoglobin molecule is said to be fully saturated with oxygen when all four haem sites are attached to oxygen. When fewer than four are attached the haemoglobin is said to be partially saturated.

The bond between haemoglobin and oxygen is affected by various physiological factors that shift the oxygen dissociation curve to the right or left (Figure 10.2) (Marieb *et al.* 2010, Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Figure 10.2 Oxyhaemoglobin dissociation curve. With a PaO_2 of 8 kPa and more, saturations will remain high (flat portion of curve). NB: The middle red line is the normal position of the curve.



Oxyhaemoglobin curve shift to the right

When a shift occurs to the right there is reduced binding of oxygen to haemoglobin and oxygen is given up more easily to the tissues. The saturation will be lower (Pierson 2000).

Factors that cause the curve to shift to the right are an increase in:

- body temperature due to infection, sepsis
- hydrogen ion content (acidaemia), known as the Bohr effect, due to infection, sepsis or other shock conditions
- carbon dioxide due to sepsis, pulmonary disease, postoperatively
- 2-3-DPG (an enzyme found in the red blood cells that affects haemoglobin and oxygen binding).

Oxyhaemoglobin curve shift to the left

When a shift occurs to the left there is an increase in the binding of oxygen to the haemoglobin, oxygen is given up less easily to the tissues and cellular hypoxia can occur (Pierson 2000).

Factors that cause the curve to shift to the left are a decrease in:

- body temperature due to exposure, near drowning, trauma
- hydrogen ion content (alkalaemia)
- carbon dioxide

- 2-3-DPG.

Oxygen utilization

The relationship between the PaO_2 and the SaO_2 is represented as the oxygen dissociation curve. Oxygen uptake in the lungs is shown by the upper flat part of the curve. When the PaO_2 is between 8.0 and 13.3 kPa (60–100 mmHg), the haemoglobin is 90% or more saturated with oxygen. At this point of the curve, large changes in the PaO_2 lead to small changes in the SaO_2 of haemoglobin, because the haemoglobin is almost completely saturated. Release of oxygen to the tissues is shown by the lower part of the curve. There is easy removal of oxygen from the haemoglobin for use by the cells. It is at this part of the curve that small changes in the PaO_2 cause major changes in the SaO_2. This is important clinically (Carpenter 1991, Guyton and Hall 2006, Hess 2000).

A patient's oxygen level must be kept at 8.5 kPa or above (60 mmHg). Below this level, desaturation can occur at a rapid rate, resulting in tissue hypoxia and cell death (Marieb *et al.* 2010).

Oxygen consumption

At rest the normal oxygen consumption is approximately 200–250 mL/min. As the available oxygen per minute in a normal man is about 700 mL, this means there is an oxygen reserve of 450–500 mL/min. Factors that increase the consumption of oxygen include fever, sepsis, shivering, restlessness and increased metabolism (Bersten *et al.* 2009). It is difficult to say at which absolute level oxygen therapy is necessary, as each situation should be judged by the requirements for oxygen and the availability of oxygen. Therefore, all the above information needs to be taken into account together with the measurement of the arterial blood gases.

Generally, additional oxygen will be required when the PaO_2 has fallen to 8.5 kPa (60 mmHg) or less (Bersten *et al.* 2009).

Carbon dioxide excretion

The second function of the respiratory system is to excrete carbonic acid from the lungs during expiration. The normal level of carbon dioxide in the blood is 3.5–5.3 kPa. Carbon dioxide has a direct effect on the respiratory centre in the brain. As the carbon dioxide level rises and diffuses from the blood into the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), it is hydrated and carbonic acid is formed. The acid then dissociates and hydrogen ions are liberated and as there are no proteins in the CSF to buffer the hydrogen ions, the pH of the CSF falls, which excites the central chemoreceptors and the respiratory rate is increased (Marieb *et al.* 2010).

Evidence-based approaches

Respiratory assessment

Once information about the person's past medical history has been obtained, one of the most reliable and important assessments is to closely observe and talk to the patient. During this time a patient's smoking status should be ascertained and, if appropriate, their smoking habits and the benefits of stopping should be discussed. For smoking cessation, brief interventions typically take about 5–10 minutes and may include one or more of the following.

- Simple opportunistic advice to stop.
- Assessment of patient's desire to stop.
- Offer of pharmacotherapy and/or behavioural support.
- Provision of self-help material and referral to more intensive support such as the NHS Stop Smoking Services.

Normal respiration is effortless and almost unconscious and the person can eat, drink and speak in full sentences without appearing breathless. Essential first steps in respiratory assessment are therefore to observe the person's breathing for the following.

- Ease and comfort.
- Rate.
- Pattern.

- Position the patient has adopted; for example, does the patient need to sit at 90° upright to breathe effectively?
- Rate and ease of breathing during speaking or movement.
- General colour and appearance: is there any evidence of greyness, cyanosis, pallor, sweating?
- Additional audible breath sounds: wheezing or stridor?

Having rapidly made this assessment, other essential assessments are a chest X-ray and arterial blood gas, and a computed tomography (CT) scan or ventilation/perfusion (V/Q) scan may also be necessary (see Chapter 12).

Having made a comprehensive assessment, the immediate cause of respiratory insufficiency should be corrected where possible. It is important to recognize that this may result from interruption to any part of respiration; for example, the patient may be in severe pain and appropriate pain management may improve their respiratory function, or conversely an opioid overdose may result in decreased or absent respiration and the antidote to the opioid will then need to be given. There may be a mechanical obstruction to respiration, such as an infective obstruction like epiglottitis, and the treatment is therefore directed at treating the infection whilst also oxygenating the patient.

Respiratory therapy therefore covers a wide area and will include any manipulation or management of alteration to any part of the respiratory tree. It may include pharmacological management including pain management, antidotes to drug toxicity, support and guidance on smoking cessation, antimicrobials for infections of the respiratory tract, respiratory stimulants, surgery to repair a ruptured diaphragm or to manage trauma, the insertion of a tracheostomy or chest drains, or a thoracoabdominal shunt for superior vena cava obstruction. Finally, positioning and physiotherapy play a major role in improving respiratory function.

Any person who is unable to maintain tissue oxygenation will need to receive supplemental oxygen until they are able to manage again on room air. This oxygen may be delivered in different ways depending on the severity of the condition and the level of hypoxia.

Oxygen therapy

Definition

Oxygen therapy is the administration of oxygen at concentrations greater than that in ambient air with the intention of treating or preventing the symptoms and manifestations of hypoxia.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

- Respiratory failure, of which there are two types, is characterized by problems with some or all of the four functions listed earlier Guyton and Hall 2006, Marieb *et al*. 2010, Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

  — *Type 1*, referred to as hypoxaemic respiratory failure (failure to oxygenate the tissues). The PaO_2 is <8 kPa (60 mmHg) while the carbon dioxide (PCO_2) is normal or low. Common causes include infectious conditions, pneumonia, pulmonary oedema and adult respiratory distress syndrome.

  — *Type 2*, referred to as hypercapnic (raised carbon dioxide) or respiratory pump failure. Alveolar ventilation is insufficient to excrete carbon dioxide accompanied by hypoxaemia (deficiency of oxygen in the arterial blood). The PCO_2 is >6 kPa (45 mmHg). Common causes include chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), chest wall deformities, drug overdose and chest injury.
- Acute myocardial infarction.
- Cardiac failure.
- Shock – haemorrhagic, bacteraemic and cardiogenic.
- Conditions in which there is a reduced ability to transport oxygen, for example anaemia.
- During anaesthesia.
- Postoperatively.

- Sleep apnoea.
- Severe pain.
- Asthma.
- Pulmonary embolus.
- Conditions that affect the neuromuscular control of breathing such as muscular dystrophy, Guillain–Barré.
- Severe trauma affecting the diaphragm, ribs, lungs or trachea.
- Tension pneumothorax.
- Pleural effusion.

Contraindications

No specific contraindications to oxygen therapy exist, but the following precautions or possible contraindications need to be considered.

- With increased PaO_2 ventilatory depression may occur in spontaneously breathing patients with elevated $PaCO_2$.
- With high flow of fractional inspired oxygen (FiO_2), absorption atelectasis, oxygen toxicity and/or depression of ciliary and/or leucocytic function may occur.
- Supplemental oxygen should be administered with caution to patients suffering from paraquat poisoning and those receiving bleomycin.
- During laser bronchoscopy, minimal levels of supplemental oxygen should be used to avoid intratracheal ignition.
- Fire hazard is increased in the presence of increased oxygen concentrations.
- Bacterial contamination associated with certain nebulization and humidification systems is a possible hazard.

Anticipated patient outcomes

Outcome is determined by clinical and physiological assessment to establish adequacy of the patient response to oxygen therapy.

Legal and professional issues

Competencies

Nursing staff must be trained to adequately administer oxygen therapy and their competency assessed. They should check and document that a device is being used appropriately and the flow is as prescribed and appropriate for the patient's needs. Nursing and physiotherapy staff may assess patients, initiate and monitor oxygen delivery systems within the prescribed parameters, except in emergencies when oxygen should be given first and documented later (NPSA 2009).

Preprocedural considerations

Before commencing oxygen therapy, it is essential that it should be prescribed. This should be in the form of parameters, for example 28–40% to keep saturations (sats) >92%. This will allow nursing staff to alter the oxygen setting to achieve the target saturations without requiring a change to the prescription on each occasion, as well as individualizing treatment to meet the patient's needs. The only exception to this situation is during immediate management of critical illness or emergency situations when oxygen should be given irrespective of it being formally prescribed (O'Driscoll *et al.* 2008). Regular pulse oximetry monitoring must be available in all clinical environments where oxygen may be administered. Oxygen therapy will need to be adjusted to achieve target saturations rather than giving a fixed dose to all patients with the same disease. Nurses can make these adjustments without requiring a change to the prescription on each occasion. Most oxygen therapy will be from nasal cannulas rather than masks and will not be given to patients who are not hypoxaemic (except during critical illness).

Equipment

Oxygen is an odourless, tasteless, colourless, transparent gas that is slightly heavier than air. Oxygen supports combustion so there is always a danger of fire when oxygen is being used. The following safety measures should be remembered.

- Oil or grease around oxygen connections should be avoided.

- Alcohol, ether and other inflammatory liquids should be used with caution in the vicinity of oxygen.
- No electrical device must be used in or near an oxygen tent.
- Oxygen cylinders should be kept secure in an upright position and away from heat.
- There must be no smoking in the vicinity of oxygen.
- A fire extinguisher should be readily available.
- Care should be taken with high concentrations of oxygen when using the defibrillator in a cardiorespiratory arrest, or during elective cardioversion.

All oxygen delivery systems should be checked at least once per day. Care should be taken to avoid interruption of oxygen therapy in situations including ambulation or transport for procedures.

Oxygen delivery

Any oxygen delivery system will include these basic components.

- *Oxygen supply*, from either a piped supply or a portable cylinder. All medical gas cylinders have to conform to a standardized colour coding: oxygen cylinders are black with a white shoulder and are labelled 'Oxygen' or 'O_2'. Since 2004, small portable oxygen cylinders have been in use: these are totally white and are a C-size cylinder.
- A *reduction gauge*: to reduce the pressure to atmospheric pressure.
- *Flowmeter*: a device that controls the flow of oxygen in litres per minute.
- *Tubing*: disposable tubing of varying diameter and length.
- *Mechanism for delivery*: a mask or nasal cannulas.
- *Humidifier*: to warm and moisten the oxygen before administration.
- *Water trap* if humidifier in use.

Nasal cannulas

Nasal cannulas (Figure 10.3) consist of two plastic prongs that are inserted inside the anterior nares and supported on a light frame. Advantages to the patient are that they may seem less claustrophobic and do not interfere with eating, drinking and communication (Fell and

Boehm 1998). Nasal cannulas provide an alternative to a mask, but can be used only where the patient requires a low percentage of oxygen and are usually used with flow rates of 1–4 litres of oxygen per minute and provide approximately 28–35% oxygen (Table 10.1). They cannot be attached satisfactorily to an external humidification device but in many cases the oxygen will be humidified as it passes through the nasal passages into the trachea (Marieb *et al*. 2010). They are generally well tolerated and are useful postoperatively or where the patient requires minimal support and are also used in the chronic setting where a patient at home requires long-term oxygen therapy.

Figure 10.3 Nasal cannulas.

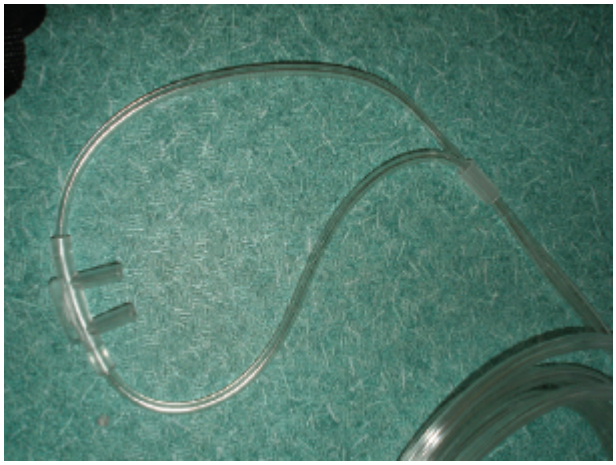


Table 10.1 Oxygen flow rates for nasal cannulas

Oxygen flow rate (L/min)	% Oxygen delivered
1	24
2	28
3	32
4	36
5	40
6	44

Simple semi-rigid plastic masks

Simple semi-rigid plastic masks (Figure 10.4) are low-flow masks which entrain the air from the atmosphere and therefore are able to deliver a variable oxygen percentage (anything from 21% to 60%) (Table 10.2). Large discrepancies between the delivered FiO_2 and the actual amount

received by the patient will occur, dependent on the patient's rate and depth of breathing. These masks are useful for patients who need a higher percentage of oxygen temporarily whilst the cause for their hypoxia is treated. This type of mask may be worn for hours or several days, but they should be used in conjunction with a humidifier if used for more than 12 hours. If the patient requires 60% added oxygen or more, this is the threshold for requiring more invasive respiratory support and expert help should be sought (NICE 2007).

Figure 10.4 Simple semi-rigid plastic mask.

Table 10.2 Approximate oxygen concentration related to flow rates of semi-rigid masks

Oxygen flow rate (L/min)	% Oxygen delivered
2	24
4	35
6	50
8	55
10	60
12	65
15	70

Partial rebreathing masks

These are similar to the simple semi-rigid plastic masks with the addition of a reservoir bag, which allows the oxygen delivered to increase beyond 60%. During inspiration, the patient draws air and oxygen from the mask, bag and through the holes in the side of the mask. When the patient expires, the initial one-third of the expired gases will flow back into the reservoir bag. The expired gas is rich in oxygen

and contains very little carbon dioxide. The patient is able to breathe the previously expired gas along with the oxygen from the source (Ball 2000).

Note: if the oxygen flow is too low, the carbon dioxide can accumulate in the reservoir bag and fail to meet the patient's requirements, resulting in an increase in carbon dioxide (Pierce 1995). This device should only be used in the presence of expert nursing and medical support and usually during emergency intervention or before more invasive ventilatory therapy is instituted.

Non-rebreathing mask

The semi-rigid mask (Figure 10.5) has the addition of a reservoir bag with a one-way valve between the reservoir bag and mask, preventing accumulation of expired gases in the reservoir bag and retention of carbon dioxide (Pierce 1995). Oxygen delivery of greater than 80% can be achieved (Ball 2000).

Figure 10.5 Non-rebreathing mask.

Fixed performance masks or high-flow masks (Venturi-type masks)

With fixed performance masks (Figure 10.6) it is possible to achieve an unvarying mixture of gases and a known concentration of oxygen using the high air flow oxygen enrichment principle (Table 10.3). These masks derive their name from the Venturi barrel in which a relatively low flow rate of oxygen is forced through a narrow jet. There are side holes in the barrel and this jet allows the air to be drawn in at a high rate. As the

mixture of gas created is at a flow rate above that of inspiration, the mixture will be constant (Foss 1990). There are many Venturi-type masks available, but the larger-capacity masks are the most accurate and therefore the safest when a known concentration of oxygen is required or when efficient elimination of carbon dioxide is essential, for example, to provide respiratory therapy for the patient with chronic respiratory disease (Fell and Boehm 1998).

Figure 10.6 High-flow mask with Venturi barrel.

Table 10.3 Fixed performance mask oxygen flow rates

Oxygen flow rate (L/min)	% Oxygen delivered
2	24
6	31
8	35
10	40
15	60

Tracheostomy mask

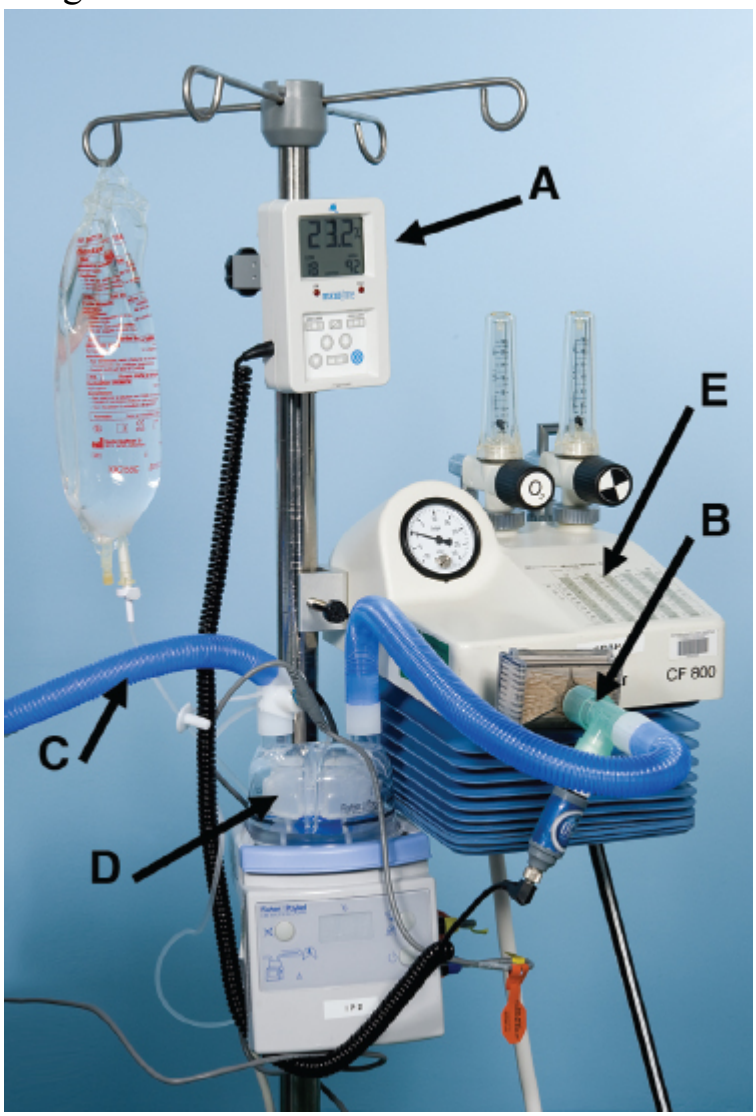
Tracheostomy masks perform in a similar way to the simple semi-rigid plastic facemask. The mask is placed over the tracheostomy tube or stoma.

T-piece circuit

The T-piece circuit is a simple, large-bore, non-rebreathing circuit which is attached directly to an endotracheal or tracheostomy tube (Figure 10.7B). Humidified oxygen is delivered through one part of the T and

expired gases leave through the other part. This device may be used as part of the weaning process when a patient has been ventilated previously by a mechanical ventilator (Bersten *et al.* 2009).

Figure 10.7 (A) Oxygen analyser. (B) T-piece. (C) Oxygen (elephant) tubing. (D) Warm bath humidifier. (E) Flow generator oxygen and air Drager bellows.



Assessment and recording tools

Clinical assessment including but not limited to cardiac, pulmonary and neurological status is essential. Observations for respiratory rate, oxygen saturation, heart rate and blood pressure need to be recorded on observation charts as well as documenting the oxygen flow rate and

method of delivery, for example mask or nasal cannulas. Other assessment methods include arterial blood gas sampling within a critical care environment or for a patient with acute deterioration (NICE 2007).

Pharmacological support

Oxygen cylinders and equipment may be ordered from the pharmacy whilst other medical equipment comes from external sources via stores and needs to be ordered before stocks run out to ensure ready availability in the event of an emergency. Nebulizers and broncholitic agents may improve respiratory status.

Domiciliary oxygen and portable oxygen

Some patients are so disabled by chronic respiratory disease that they require continual supplementary oxygen at home. Low-flow oxygen given over a period of time improves the prognosis of some patients (Benditt 2000).

Long-term oxygen may be prescribed for treatment of COPD, cystic fibrosis, interstitial lung disease, neuromuscular and skeletal disorders, pulmonary hypertension and palliation in lung cancer. It may be provided in the form of cylinders. The problem with this is that the cylinders need changing frequently. Oxygen condensers (concentrators) are far more economical than cylinders. A condenser consists of a compressor powered by electricity. The condenser works by drawing in room air that is passed through a bacterial filter and a sieve bed. The sieve bed contains zeolite which has an affinity with nitrogen and when under pressure works by removing nitrogen and other gases, concentrating oxygen and delivering it through a meter at the front of the compressor.

The oxygen can be delivered to the patient by nasal cannulas or mask (Esmond 2001).

Liquid oxygen

The use of liquid oxygen in a portable cylinder has been developed for portable oxygen delivery. The patient is provided with a large tank in their own home from which smaller cylinders can be filled.

Specific patient preparations

Oxygen delivery to the patient should be explained, including what equipment is to be used (such as a mask or nasal cannula) and the importance of keeping the apparatus in place. The patient should know of the flammability of oxygen and the dangers of any naked flames/lit cigarettes in their immediate vicinity. The nurse should instruct the patient to notify him or her of increasing distress, air hunger, nausea, anxiety, dry nasal passages or 'sore throat' (due to drying).

Procedure guideline 10.1 Oxygen therapy

Essential equipment

- Piped/wall oxygen and medical air
- Oxygen flow meter/regulator
- Oxygen cylinders for transport of patients
- Ambu-bag for emergencies
- Nasal cannulas
- Selection of oxygen masks
- Oxygen tubing, varying lengths and types
- Oxygen analysers

Optional equipment

- Non-invasive equipment in non-critical care areas (essential within critical care environments)
- High-flow O_2 and medical air mixers for use in HDU setting
- Humidification equipment
- Cold water bubble humidifiers

Medicinal products

- Asthma inhalers or nebulizers
- Oxygen as prescribed for patient
- Nicotine patches to aid smoking cessation

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Assess the patient's condition and level of oxygen therapy required, e.g. facemask, humidified oxygenation, nasal cannulas.	To ensure that the appropriate method for delivery of oxygen is chosen to suit the patient's

	condition (O'Driscoll *et al.* 2008, C).
2 Explain to the patient why they require oxygen therapy and the benefits and problems thereof.	To minimize apprehension and anxiety and improve understanding of treatment. E
3 Attach oxygen tubing to the correct port on the wall oxygen or cylinder, and not to the medical air port.	To ensure proper oxygen delivery and prevent hypoxia if connected to medical air port (NPSA 2007, C).
Procedure	
4 Set oxygen flowmeter to required setting (L/min) and check oxygen is flowing through system by using fingertips.	To ensure system is working properly. E
5 Either: *Apply a nasal cannula* by gently placing the nasal prongs of the cannula into the patient's nostrils, draping the tubing over the patient's ears and sliding the fit connector up under the chin to hold the tubing securely in place. **Or:** *Apply an oxygen mask* by placing the mask over the patient's mouth and nose, then pull the elastic strap over the head and adjust the strap on both sides to secure the mask in a position that seals it against the face.	To ensure the mask or cannula is applied correctly to enable the patient to receive the oxygen. E
Postprocedure	
6 Check that the patient is comfortable.	To ensure patient comfort. E
7 Record that oxygen therapy has been commenced, time and flow rate.	To maintain accurate records (NMC 2009, C).

Problem-solving table 10.1 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 10.1)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Suggested action
Maintenance of airway	Position of patient Airway secretions	Provide pillows to support patient Elevate head of bed Demonstrate to patient orthopnoeic position Provide sputum pot for expectoration Saline nebulizers if prescribed to loosen secretions	Position patient preferably sitting up at an angle of greater than 45° Encourage patient to cough and expectorate if able or remove secretions by suction if patient unable to do so

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Suggested action
Maintenance of adequate oxygenation	Inadequate oxygen delivery, patient's condition deteriorating More breathless Oxygen saturation decreased Deteriorating blood gases	Increased frequency and recording of cardiovascular observations and respiration rate Attach pulse oximeter Use of MEWS scoring	Assess level of oxygen support required by assessing previous medical history and current respiratory assessment. Increase oxygen delivery using the lowest percentage of oxygen to achieve the individual goal for the patient
Dry mouth	Oxygen therapy can lead to a dry mouth	Provide regular mouthcare or artificial saliva if prescribed	Add humidification to the circuit (see Procedure guideline 10.2). Give regular mouthcare
Nasal cannulas or mask discomfort	Position or use of cannulas and oxygen mask	Use appropriate size mask	Ensure correct placement and that the patient is comfortable. Cut off tip of cannulas that protrude into nares to a comfortable length
Intolerance of oxygen therapy	Fear and anxiety Confusion Hypoxia	Explain need for therapy and benefit it will have Allow patients to express their fears/concerns Encourage relatives/carers to stay with patient	Assess patient for change. Ensure continual reassurance given to patient. Ensure patient remains orientated to the environment and oxygen device. If intolerant of mask, nasal cannulas may be tolerated. If hypoxic, oxygen may need to be increased
Inability to communicate	Mask makes communication difficult; patient may not hear carer and nurse may not hear patient	Provide patient with non-verbal means of communication, either pen and paper or symbol board	Assist patient to move around bed area if not able to go far. Mobilize patient with portable oxygen cylinder if appropriate
Inability to maintain personal hygiene	Immobility On bed rest Mask restricting independence	Provide patient with hygiene wipes or offer assistance if unable to meet own hygiene needs	Provide reassurance for patient to remain independent where able. Allow them to carry out their own hygiene if able or help patient with hygiene if not
Inability to maintain safe environment	Detachment of oxygen from flowmeter Kinked or looped oxygen tubing Mask removed by patient	Pulse oximeter with audible alarm	Ensure oxygen attached to flowmeter. Check patient regularly. Ensure no kinks or loops arise. Ensure patient is attached to oxygen

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Consider talking to the patient and the family with regard to assisting patient if they remove the mask for a drink, how to put the mask back on and possible psychological issues regarding feeling claustrophobic with the mask, and the reasons for oxygen therapy. Document what percentage of oxygen was commenced and the patient's related observations, and continue to monitor the patient's respiratory status.

Ongoing care

For patients requiring oxygen therapy for more than 24 hours, humidification should be commenced to protect airway defences (Carroll 1997, Ward and Park 2000) as well as general comfort of the patient. Mobilizing patients sitting out in chairs rather than lying or even sitting up in bed will help prevent atelectasis and aid removal of secretions. Ensuring that postoperative patients have effective pain relief will allow for early ambulation, as well as deep breathing and other basic exercises which will help prevent postoperative atelectasis or possible chest infections (Shelledy and Mikles 2002). Preoperative education from physiotherapists and nursing staff about the benefits of these exercises and reinforcement postoperatively will also be of benefit. Accurate and frequent monitoring of vital signs and recording of observations as well as oxygen concentration and flow rates administered to the patient in conjunction with a Modified Early Warning System (MEWS) score allows for early identification and referral of patients at risk of deterioration (NICE 2007).

Documentation

Baseline vital signs and oxygen flow rates or concentrations administered as well as the patient's response to therapy must be recorded (NICE 2007).

Education of patient and relevant others

Patients should be educated regarding the necessity of keeping their oxygen masks on, and ambulatory patients must recommence oxygen with the help of nurses after mobilizing.

Before sending a patient home on oxygen, healthcare providers must be sure the patient and family members understand the dangers of smoking in an oxygen-enriched environment. An increased amount of oxygen in the environment increases the speed at which things burn once a fire starts. Oxygen can saturate clothing, fabric, hair, beards and anything in the area. Even flame-retardant clothing can burn when the oxygen content increases. It is important to keep all flames and heat sources away from oxygen containers and oxygen systems. Patients should be advised never to smoke or light a match while using oxygen or allow others in the same room to do so. Patients should also be advised not to smoke in bed. Every home should have at least one working smoke detector on every level and near all bedrooms. As many people on home oxygen therapy have limited mobility, home sprinkler systems can add an extra layer of protection (www.fireservice.co.uk/safety/smokealarms.php). They also need to inform their home and car insurers that oxygen therapy will be used, as well as the local Fire Brigade. They should also be reassured that a full written package of training on safe use and storage of equipment will be provided by the contractor supplying their home oxygen.

Nurses in primary and community care should advise everyone who smokes to try to stop and refer them to an intensive support service (for example, NHS Stop Smoking Services). If they are unwilling or unable to accept this referral they should be offered pharmacotherapy, in line with NICE guidance, and additional support. Nurses who are trained NHS Stop Smoking counsellors may 'refer' to themselves where appropriate. The smoking status of those who are not ready to stop should be recorded and reviewed with the individual once a year, where possible. The NICE recommendations include the following advice.

- Ask patients who smoke how interested they are in stopping.
- If they want to stop, refer them to an intensive support service such as NHS Stop Smoking Services.

- If they are unwilling or unable to accept a referral, offer a stop smoking aid (for example, nicotine replacement therapy (NRT), varenicline or bupropion).
- A range of NHS agencies can offer advice and support on how to stop smoking.
- Monitoring systems should be set up so that health professionals know whether or not their patients smoke (NICE 2006).

Complications

Carbon dioxide narcosis

Carbon dioxide is the chemical that most directly influences respiration by its effect on the efficiency of alveolar ventilation. The normal partial pressure of carbon dioxide in the blood is 4.0–6.0 kPa (30–45 mmHg). When this level rises, the pH of the CSF drops which in turn causes excitation of the central chemoreceptors, and hyperventilation occurs (Marieb *et al*. 2010).

In people who always retain carbon dioxide and are therefore usually hypercapnic because of chronic pulmonary disease such as chronic bronchitis, the chemoreceptors are no longer sensitive to a raised level of carbon dioxide. In these cases the falling PaO_2 becomes the principal respiratory stimulus (the hypoxic drive) (Marieb *et al*. 2010). Therefore, if a high level of supplementary oxygen was delivered to such patients in non-emergency situations severe respiratory depression would ensue and ultimately unconsciousness and death. The Resuscitation Council UK and British Thoracic Society advise the administration of high-flow oxygen during an acute respiratory distress or arrest situation. Start with 15 litres of oxygen per minute and wean down to the flow rate required to maintain adequate peripheral saturations of 94–98% (BTS 2008).

Oxygen toxicity

Pulmonary toxicity following prolonged higher percentages of oxygen therapy is recognized clinically, but there is still much to be learnt about the condition. The degree of injury is related to the length of time of

exposure and percentage of oxygen to which the individual is exposed. The pattern is one of decreasing lung compliance as a result of a sequence of events, tracheal bronchial inflammation, haemorrhagic interstitial and intra-alveolar oedema, leading ultimately to fibrosis (Bersten *et al.* 2009, Pierce 1995, Pierson 2000).

Where possible, long periods (i.e. 24 hours or more) of oxygen therapy above 50% should be avoided (Bryan-Brown and Dracup 2000, Cooper 2002).

Retrolental fibroplasia

Retrolental fibroplasia is a disease affecting premature babies that weigh under 1200 g (about 28 weeks' gestation) if they are exposed to high concentrations of oxygen within the first 3–4 weeks of life. It appears that the oxygen stimulates immature blood vessels in the eye to vasoconstrict and obliterate, which results in neovascularization, accompanied by haemorrhage, fibrosis and then retinal detachment and blindness (Bersten *et al.* 2009, Pierce 1995).

Humidification

Definition

Humidity is the amount of water vapour present in a gas. The terms used to define humidity are absolute humidity, maximum capacity and relative humidity. Absolute humidity is the mass of water vapour that a given volume of gas can carry at a set temperature. When a gas is at its maximum capacity, it is said to be fully saturated. Relative humidity is the ratio of the absolute humidity to the maximum capacity. The warmer the gas, the more vapour it can hold but if the temperature of the gas falls, water held as vapour will condense out of the gas into the surrounding atmosphere.

Anatomy and physiology

The respiratory tract is lined with ciliated epithelial cells that secrete mucus. Each cell has about 200 hair-like structures known as cilia, whose role is to remove unwanted mucus and secretions. Less than optimal humidification results in the slowing of the mucociliary transport system and pooling of mucus in the lower airways. Pooling of mucus may obstruct a small airway, restricting gas exchange. Pools of mucus also provide an ideal site for bacterial colonization. If less than optimal humidification continues, cell damage occurs and gas conditioning moves deeper into the lung (Estes and Meduri 1995).

Related theory

Normal room air has an approximate temperature of 22°C with a relative humidity of 50% and a water content of 10 mgH_2O. For effective gas exchange to occur in the lungs, the air would need to be at a temperature of 37°C with 100% humidity and a water content of 44 mgH_2O per litre by the time it reaches the bifurcation in the trachea, which is referred to as the isothermic point. When the temperature falls below 37°C and humidity falls below 100%, several changes take place in the airways. With a drop in temperature and humidity, the mucus that collects in the airways thickens and movement of the cilia is reduced. If there is no improvement the mucus will become thicker and immobile; the cilia will also lose their mobility so clearance of all secretions will stop and infection can set in (Marieb *et al.* 2008).

If there is a continuing lack of humidity further damage occurs. The cilia can break off, causing damage to the mucosal lining of the respiratory tract. The isothermic point of saturation moves from the bifurcation of the trachea to a lower point in the lungs, resulting in further damage which can lead to collapse of the alveoli, decrease in lung function and hypoxaemia (Carroll 1997, Fell and Boehm 1998, Ward and Park 2000).

Evidence-based approaches

Many devices can be used to supply humidification; the best of these will fulfil the following requirements.

- The inspired gas must be delivered to the trachea at a room temperature of 32–36°C with 100% humidity and should have a water content of 33–43 g/m^3 (Bersten *et al.* 2009).
- The set temperature should remain constant; humidification and temperature should not be affected by large ranges of flow.
- The device should have a safety and alarm system to guard against overheating, overhydration and electric shocks.
- It is important that the appliance should not increase resistance or affect the compliance of respiration.
- It is essential that whichever device is selected, wide-bore tubing (elephant tubing) is used to allow efficient formation of water vapour (Figure 10.7C).

Rationale

Inhalation of oxygen used during respiratory therapy, which is a dry gas, can cause evaporation of water from the respiratory tract and lead to the damage of mucosal lining if humidification is not provided. In patients who are intubated or have a tracheostomy, the natural pathway of humidification is bypassed (Wilson 2006).

Indications

- Used for mechanical ventilation and non-invasive ventilation such as continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP)/non-invasive positive end expiration (NIPEE).

Contraindications

- There are no contraindications to humidification, though the device chosen will depend upon type of oxygen therapy, tenacity of secretions, and the patient's clinical condition (i.e. mechanical ventilation, self-ventilating at home, etc.).
- Humidification should not be used for patients requiring open system (mask) ventilation when 'droplet contact' isolation precautions are required.

Anticipated patient outcomes

The provision of adequate humidification of gases enabling clearance of secretions, a reduction in the tenacity of secretions, and improved gas exchange. The patient's airway is to remain patent at all times.

Preprocedural considerations

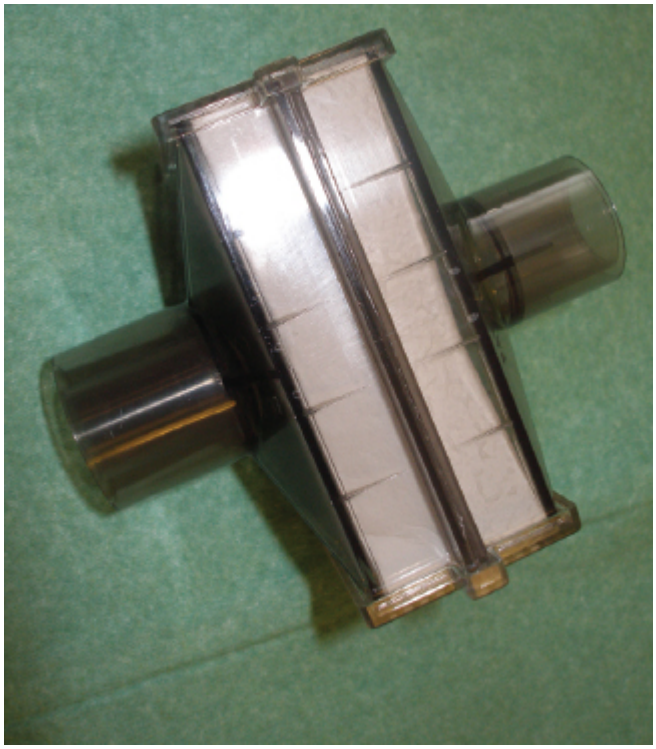
Equipment

Heat and moisture exchanger (HME)

During ventilatory humidification an HME performs the function of the nose and pharynx in conditioning the inspired air. It retains heat and moisture in the expired air and returns them to the patient in the next inspired breath. Many HMEs contain a bacterial filter. The HME consists of spun, pleated, highly thermal conductive material. It is also known as an artificial or 'Swedish' nose (Figure 10.8). It can be used in a self-ventilating patient with a tracheostomy who is being weaned from oxygen (Figure 10.9). It can also be used in ventilated patients, inserted between the patient's airway and the ventilator circuit.

Figure 10.8 Swedish nose.

Figure 10.9 Heat and moisture exchanger.



Cold water bubble humidifier

This device delivers partially humidified oxygen at about 50% relative humidity. Gas is either forced across or bubbled through water at room temperature (Figure 10.10). This method is not advised as it is inefficient (Bersten *et al.* 2009).

Figure 10.10 Cold water bubble humidifier.

Water bath humidifiers

With these devices, inspired gas is forced over or through a heated reservoir of water (Figure 10.7D). To achieve an adequate humidity for the patient, the water bath must reach a set temperature. The gas will then cool as it moves down the breathing circuit to the patient, and a relative humidity of 100% will be reached. Hot water bath humidifiers are therefore very efficient and useful for humidification for immobile patients, particularly if they are receiving mechanical ventilatory support. However, they have four main disadvantages.

- Danger of overheating and causing damage to the trachea.
- Their efficiency can alter with changes in gas flow rate, surface area and the water temperature.
- Condensation and collection of water in the oxygen delivery tubes.
- The possibility of microcontamination of stagnant water (Tinker and Zapol 1992).

Aerosol generators

These devices are not governed by temperature, but provide microdroplets of water suspended in the gas (Bersten *et al.* 2009). The gas provided through aerosol devices can be very highly saturated with water. There are three main types of aerosol humidifier.

- Gas-drive nebulizer
- Mechanical (spinning disc) nebulizer
- Ultrasonic nebulizer

These devices are useful for the spontaneously breathing patient with chronic chest disease.

Procedure guideline 10.2 Humidification for respiratory therapy

Various humidifiers exist. Select the system most appropriate for the patient.

Essential equipment

- Bath humidifier
- Heating equipment
- Oxygen (elephant) tubing (Figure 10.7C)
- Oxygen analyser (Figure 10.7A)
- Sterile H_2O bottle or bag depending on type of humidifier used

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Discuss with patient's doctor the choice of system to be used.	To ensure the most appropriate device is selected to meet the patient's needs. E
2 Explain to patient the reason for use of the humidifier and how it works.	To enable the patient to understand what is happening and to able to tolerate the humidification. E
Procedure	
3 Prepare the device to be used (although some circuits are ready prepared with humidifier).	To ensure the circuit is in working condition and patent to oxygen flow. E
(a) Prepare humidifier and circuit.	Connecting all equipment to oxygen and mask and ensuring all connections are secure. E
(b) Attach humidifier/wide-bore	

oxygen tubing: ensure minimal length of tubing, water trap and mask.	
4 Once circuit is set up, run the system to check it is functioning correctly and the circuit is intact and check oxygen is delivered through oxygen analyser.	To ensure that oxygen is being delivered through the circuit as set. E To ensure the system is humidifying the oxygen and that no leaks exist (MDA 2000, C).
5 If the hot water system is in use, check it is running within recommended temperature range and attach to patient.	To ensure no damage to the patient's lungs if temperature above range. E
6 Check water is present in water source of system; do not allow to run dry.	To aid adequate delivery of humidity to the patient and prevent damage to the humidifier. E
7 Position the circuit tubing below the patient.	To ensure collection of humidity in the circuit is able to drain into the water trap or circuit rather than into the patient. E
8 Ask the patient if they find the humidification comfortable.	To ensure patient comfort. E
Postprocedure	
9 Monitor the running of the system.	To ensure the system is functioning adequately and delivering humidity (MDA 2000, C).
10 Reassure the patient as they may find the system noisy and the excessive moisture in the circuit difficult to cope with.	To allow patient to adjust to the feel of the mask, preventing anxiety and panic at the initial increase of work of breathing (Moser and Chung 2003, C).
11 Assess the tenacity of secretions on a regular basis, and document all findings.	To assess how effective the choice of humidification device has been (E). This will enable the same care to be carried on or an alternative method to be evaluated. Documentation is imperative to the multidisciplinary approach to allow for ongoing best practice (Woodrow 2002, E).
12 Change the humidification and circuit on a weekly basis and document.	To prevent contamination of equipment and minimize risk of infection (Demers 2002, E).

Problem-solving table 10.2 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 10.2)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Suggested action
Potential blockage of humidifier	Kinking of oxygen tubing or secretions in humidification filter	Change filter 4–6 hourly or more frequently for patients with copious secretions Administer saline nebulizers if prescribed to loosen secretions Check tubing not kinked underneath the patient	Encourage patient to cough and expectorate if able or remove secretions by suction if patient unable to do so Ensure tubing is not too long which would allow kinking

Complications

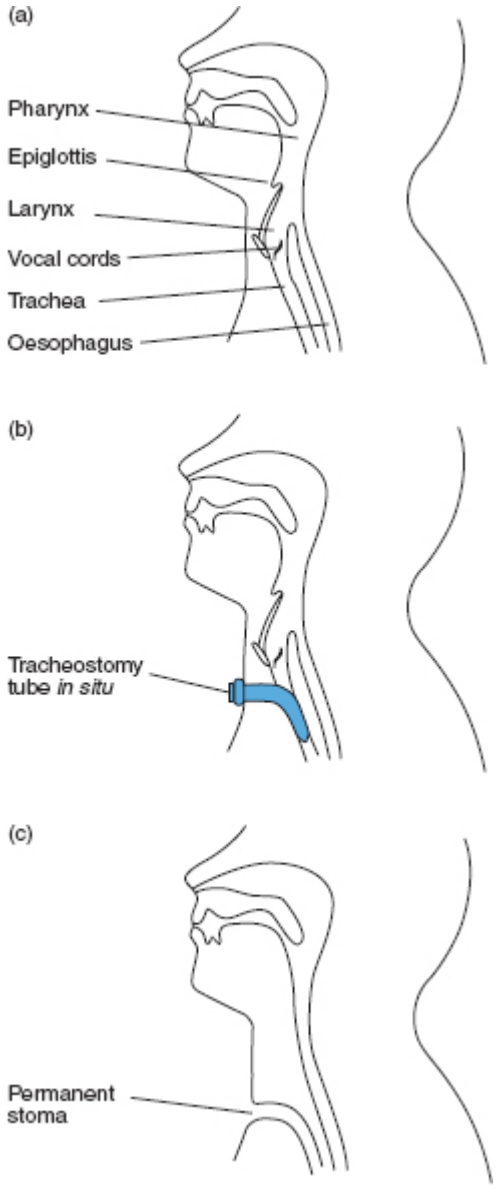
Possible contamination of water in humidification if tubing collects water and it is reintroduced into the humidification chamber. This chamber provides the perfect environment for contaminants to grow as it is moist and warm (Demers 2002).

Tracheostomy care

Definition

A tracheostomy is the surgical creation of an opening (stoma) into the trachea through the neck (Figure 10.11a). The opening is usually made at the level of the second or third cartilaginous ring (Woodrow 2002) and is kept patent with a tracheostomy tube, curved to accommodate the anatomy of the trachea. When a total laryngectomy (the surgical removal of the larynx) is performed, a permanent stoma is formed by stitching the end of the trachea to the skin of the neck (Woodrow 2002).

Figure 10.11 (a) Anatomy of the head and neck. (b) Temporary tracheostomy. (c) Permanent tracheostomy.



Anatomy and physiology

Figure 10.11a shows the anatomy of the neck. The larynx, situated at the top of the trachea, houses the vocal cords and is the point of transition between the upper and lower airways (Epstein 2009). It is made up of nine cartilage segments, the largest of which is called the thyroid cartilage. Inferior to this is the cricoid cartilage which attaches to the large cylindrical tube/elastic structure known as the trachea. This is usually approximately 11 cm long and is made up of rigid cartilage anteriorly and a posterior membranous portion (Epstein 2009). The

trachea then divides at the carina to form the right and left mainstem bronchi of the lungs.

Related theory

The exact location of the stoma will be determined on an individual basis according to the patient's neck and rationale for tracheostomy. Low stomas (i.e. beyond the third tracheal ring) increase the risk of bleeding from the brachiocephalic trunk, and a tracheostomy that is too close to the cricoid has an increased risk of subglottic stenosis, a condition that is difficult to treat (De Leyn *et al.* 2007).

Types of tracheostomy

A *temporary tracheostomy* usually refers to stomas formed as an elective procedure at the time of major surgery (such as a total glossectomy) (Prior and Russell 2004) (Figure 10.11b), although percutaneous techniques, performed by the bedside in intensive care units, are becoming commonplace (ICS 2008).

A *permanent tracheostomy* is the creation of a tracheostomy following a total laryngectomy (Prior and Russell 2004) (Figure 10.11c). The larynx is removed and the trachea is sutured in position to form a permanent stoma, known as a laryngectomy stoma (Clotworthy 2006a). The patient will breathe through this stoma for the remainder of their life. As a result, there is no connection between the nasal passages and the trachea (Edgtton-Winn and Wright 2005).

Percutaneous tracheostomy

The percutanous method most commonly used is known as percutaneous dilatational tracheostomy (PDT) (De Leyn *et al.* 2007), enabling the pretracheal tissues to be incised under local anaesthesia. A sheath is inserted into the trachea between the cricoid and the first tracheal ring or between the first and second rings. The trachea is progressively dilated with a series of conical dilators, which are slipped over a guidewire, ready for a tracheostomy tube to be inserted. Now frequently performed in the critical care setting as an early intervention

post initiation of mechanical ventilation, the procedure takes less time and requires fewer resources, such as theatres and surgeons, resulting in fewer costs, than a surgical tracheostomy (Patel and Matta 2004). Another potential benefit of percutaneous tracheostomy is more rapid stomal closure and smaller scar formation once the tracheostomy tube has been removed (Patel and Matta 2004).

Surgical

Elective surgical tracheostomy is ideally performed in the operating theatre under general anaesthetic, although it can be performed under local anaesthetic (De Leyn *et al.* 2007). A horizontal incision is made halfway between the sternal notch and the cricoid cartilage (Price 2004a). The strap muscles are divided and the thyroid isthmus is retracted/divided, enabling the trachea to be exposed and the tracheal cartilages to be counted. The tracheostomy should be sited over the second and third or third and fourth tracheal cartilages (Price 2004a).

Mini-tracheostomy

Unlike the previous two techniques, which enable oxygen therapy and mechanical ventilation, this method is used only when frequent aspiration of airway secretions is required. The procedure is also referred to as a cricothyroidotomy (De Leyn *et al.* 2007). The cricothyroid ligament is incised, enabling a small endotracheal tube or a mini-tracheostomy tube to be inserted (Price 2004b). The mini-tracheostomy tube has a small internal diameter, of often only 4 mm. This technique can also be used in an emergency to alleviate upper airway obstruction.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

There are four main indications for tracheostomy.

- To enable the aspiration of tracheobronchial secretions (e.g. excessive secretions/ poor cough).
- To maintain the airway (e.g. upper airway obstruction) (ICS 2008).
- To protect the airway (e.g. bulbar palsy) (ICS 2008).
- For long-term mechanical ventilation and to aid weaning off mechanical ventilation.

Contraindications

The only absolute contraindications for tracheostomy are severe localized sepsis/skin infection, uncontrollable coagulopathy (ICS 2008) or prior major neck surgery which completely obscures the anatomy (De Leyn *et al.* 2007).

Legal and professional issues

Competencies

The most common problems associated with tracheostomy, in both general wards and critical care, are related to obstruction or displacement (ICS 2008). All hospitals or community settings should have a procedure for managing such situations and all staff involved in the care of the patient must be both aware of the procedure and appropriately trained in either managing the situation or supporting additional staff. At all times if there is any doubt about the appropriate care that needs to be given or the management of a situation, call for more senior or emergency help, according to local policy, as soon as possible.

Having emergency equipment readily available is paramount at all times for all types of altered airways (see Preprocedural considerations for equipment required). All staff caring for the patient should also know the type of tube in place at any one time; this and details of all care provided should be clearly documented.

Managing difficult situations with a tracheostomy is stressful for both the patient and staff, so prevention is always better than cure. All procedures should be undertaken only after approved training,

supervised practice and competency assessment, and carried out in accordance with local policies and protocols.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

The following should always be at the bedside, during transfers or accessible if the patient is self-caring or ambulant.

- Operational oxygen with tracheostomy mask available.
- Operational suction, checked each shift, with a selection of suction catheters present.
- Sterile water (Serra 2000) can be used to help clear suction tubing of secretions after suctioning has been performed.
- Non-powdered latex-free gloves, aprons and eye protection (Day *et al.* 2002).
- Two spare cuffed tracheostomy tubes, one the same size as the patient is wearing, the other a size smaller, in case of an emergency tracheostomy tube change (Serra 2000, Tamburri 2000).
- One 10 mL syringe to inflate cuff.
- Tracheal dilators and artery forceps (ICS 2008) (Figure 10.12).
- Spare soft neck ties or tape.
- Suture cutter and lubricating gel.
- Cuff pressure manometer (Serra 2000) (Figure 10.13).
- Readily available rebreathe bag and resuscitation equipment (ICS 2008).

Figure 10.12 Tracheal dilator.

Figure 10.13 Cuff pressure manometer.

It can be useful to have the above equipment in a small ‘tracheostomy box’ that can remain by the patient’s bedside or move with the patient during transfer.

When caring for the patient who has undergone a total laryngectomy, the equipment listed above should always be by the bedside, and in addition the following equipment is recommended.

- Tilley’s forceps: these are angled forceps that can be used to remove crusts or plugs of mucus from in and around the stoma.

- Pen torch (or access to a light source).
- Micropore or Elastoplast tape for those patients with a tracheo-oesophageal puncture, to ensure that the catheter keeping the puncture patent is secured firmly with tape or a suture.

Tracheostomy tubes

Tracheostomy tubes are made of either metal or plastic, and therefore vary considerably in rigidity, durability and kink resistance (ICS 2008). Most tubes manufactured now are dual cannula tracheostomies and are inherently safer and most commonly preferred, particularly for use in acute settings. The outer tube maintains the patency of the airway while the inner tube, which fits snugly inside the outer tube, can be removed for cleaning without disturbing the stoma site. The major advantage of an inner cannula is that it allows immediate relief of life-threatening airway obstruction in the event of blockage of a tracheostomy tube with clots or tenacious secretions. Disposable inner tubes are now available; these single-use items are quicker to use (Dropkin 1996) and minimize cross-infection as no cleaning is required.

The majority of tracheostomy tubes are manufactured from plastics of varying types, some that become softer at body temperature (e.g. polyvinyl chloride construction). Some also have a high-volume, low-pressure cuff which distributes the pressure evenly on the tracheal wall and aims to minimize the risk of tracheal ulceration, necrosis and/or stenosis at the cuff site (ICS 2008, Russell 2004). The cuff when inflated provides a seal between the tube and tracheal wall, enabling effective ventilation and protection of the lower respiratory tract against aspiration (Russell 2004).

Most tubes are sized according to their internal diameter in millimetres, varying also in their length and shape. The size and style of the tube chosen will depend upon the size of the trachea and the needs of the individual patient (Bond *et al.* 2003, Lewarski 2005, Serra 2000). It is essential that all staff caring for a patient with a tracheostomy know the type of tube in place at any one time, and that this information is readily available and clearly documented in the patient's notes (ICS 2008).

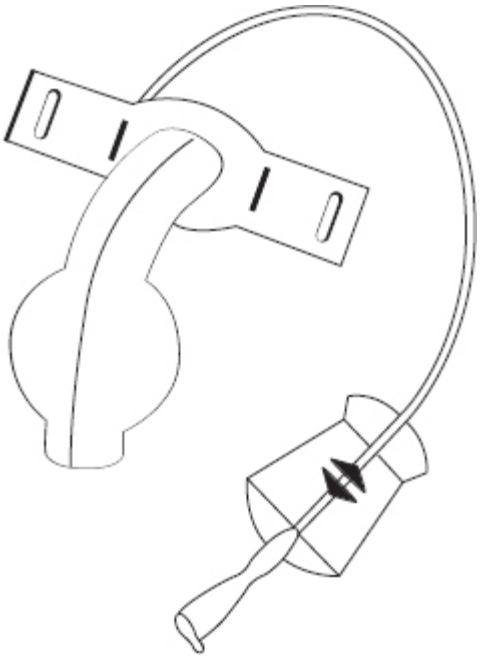
A selection of tube types and commonly seen tubes is described below.

Cuffed tracheostomy tubes

Portex® blue line and portex® blue line ultra® cuffed tracheostomy tubes

These are single-use tracheostomy tubes constructed of siliconized polyvinyl chloride with an introducer and inflatable cuff of 'high-volume/low-pressure' design (Figure 10.14). They are softer and more pliable and are often used when percutaneous tracheostomy is performed in the critical care setting. The cuff pressure should be monitored regularly. Once the stoma is well-formed, after about 7–10 days and depending on the patient's specific weaning needs, the Portex® tube may be replaced by a more suitable, sturdier tube such as a Shiley® tube (Hess 2005).

Figure 10.14 Portex cuffed tube.

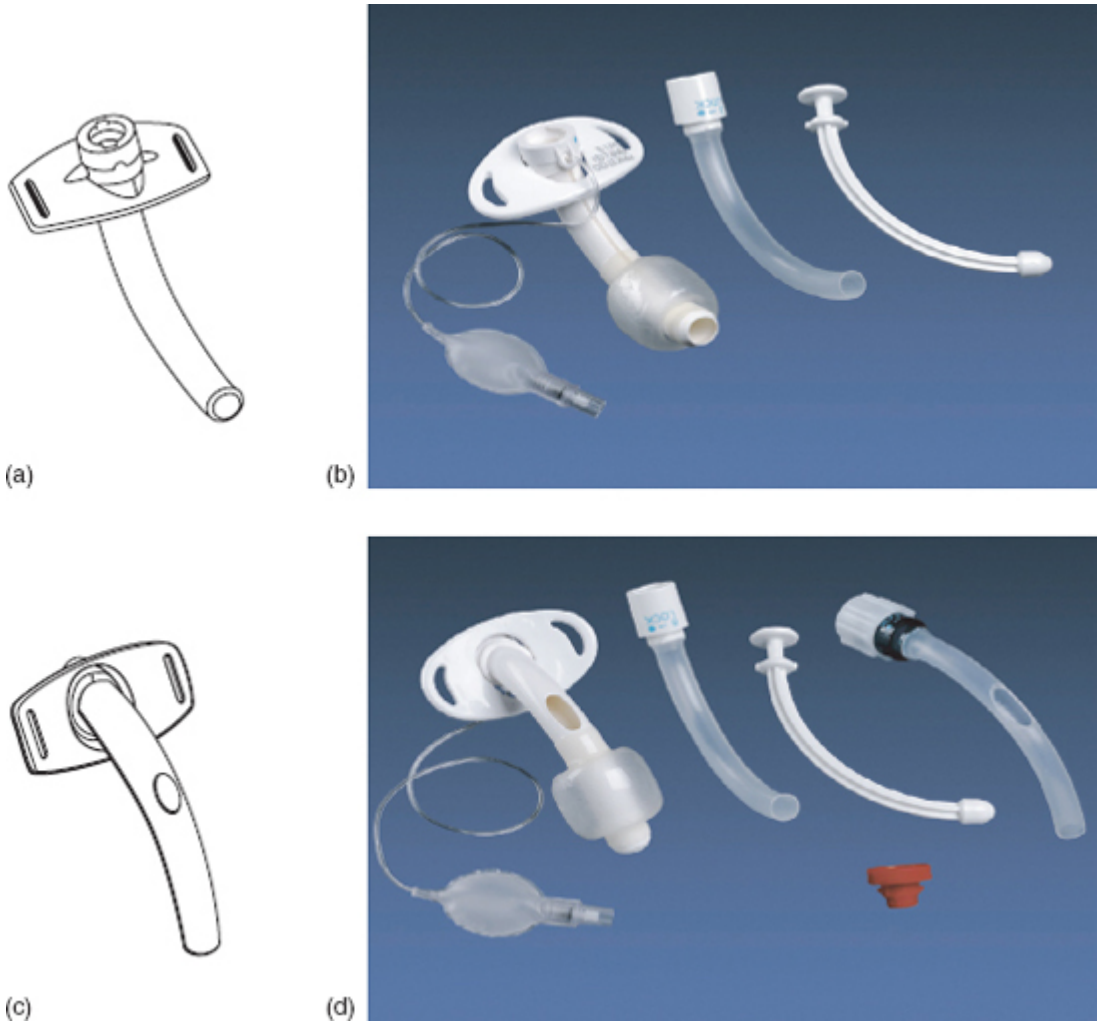


Shiley® cuffed tracheostomy tube

This is a plastic tube with an introducer and one inner tube (Figure 10.15a). The inner tube has the universal 15 mm extension at its upper aspect to facilitate connection to other equipment. The outer tube has an inflatable cuff to give an airtight seal and facilitate ventilation and prevention of aspiration. Shiley® tubes are often used in the immediate postoperative phase, that is, at 24–72 hours. As with all cuffed tracheostomies, the internal cuff pressure should not exceed 25 cmH_2O (ICS 2008) and should be monitored on a regular basis. The cuff should be deflated to remove the tube (to prevent mucosal damage and allow the tube to be removed safely) when the patient is eating and drinking, or when a speaking valve or decannulation plug is *in situ* (ICS 2008). Failure to deflate the cuff when a speaking valve or plug is in place will result in complete occlusion of the patient's airway.

Figure 10.15 (a) Shiley cuffed tube. (b) Shiley plain tube. Courtesy of Tyco Healthcare. (c) Shiley plain fenestrated tube. (d) Shiley cuffed fenestrated tube.

Courtesy of Tyco Healthcare.



Cuffless tracheostomy tubes

Shiley® cuffless tracheostomy tube

This is a plastic tube with an introducer and two inner tubes (Figure 10.15b). One inner tube has an extension known as a 15 mm hub or adaptor at its upper aspect. The majority of tracheostomy tubes used in the hospital setting have the universally sized 15 mm hub to allow attachment to speaking valves and other equipment (Russell 2004). The other tube has no 15 mm hub extension and is less obtrusive and suitable for those patients not requiring attachment to other equipment (Russell 2004).

A cuffless Shiley® tube is usually used for the following reasons.

- To keep the tracheostomy tract patent if the patient is going to have further surgery.
- In place of a metal tracheostomy tube if the patient is going to have radiotherapy to the neck area (Prior and Russell 2004). Keeping the metal tube *in situ* during radiotherapy can cause reactions due to interference of the metal with the radiotherapy beam and leads to an increased dose being given to the underlying stoma and surrounding skin (Prior and Russell 2004).
- For a laryngectomy patient who has a benign or malignant stenosis of the trachea and requires a longer tube than the regular length laryngectomy tube to keep the stenosis patent.

Fenestrated tracheostomy tubes

Shiley® fenestrated cuffless tube

The Shiley fenestrated cuffless tube (Figure 10.15c) is a plastic tube with an introducer and three inner tubes. One inner tube has no hub jutting out, is less obtrusive and is suitable for those patients not requiring attachment to other equipment (Russell 2004). The other two inner tubes have the universal 15 mm extension at the upper aspect to facilitate connection to other apparatus, and one of these (with a green coloured hub) also has a fenestration midway down the tube (the clear or white hubbed inner has no fenestrations down the side and sits flush with the outer tube). This is to encourage the passage of air and secretions into the oral and nasal passages. It is useful when attempting to encourage a return to normal function following long-term use of a temporary tracheostomy, for example enabling the patient to communicate verbally. Fenestrated tubes are not recommended for use following percutaneous tracheostomy or when patients are requiring mechanical ventilation due to a risk of surgical emphysema (ICS 2008).

A fenestrated tube is the most suitable for phonation and weaning. A cap (known as a decannulation plug – see Figure 10.21) is placed onto the tube, occluding the artificial airway. This enables air flow through as well as around the tracheostomy tube, allowing the patient to breathe via

the oral and nasal passages again. The cap can be left *in situ* for certain periods of time until the patient can tolerate the tube occluded continuously for an uninterrupted period of time. The Intensive Care Society (ICS 2008) states that this period of time should be a *minimum of 4 hours* uninterrupted, though common practice is 24 hours in ward environments. Once this has occurred, removal of the entire tube, known as decannulation, can be considered (Harkin 2004, Serra 2000). The decannulation procedure should ideally take place in the morning, during normal working hours, to ensure that a specialist assessment can be sought if the patient requires tracheostomy tube reinsertion (Harkin 2004).

Shiley® fenestrated cuffed tube

This tube is very similar to the cuffless fenestrated tube although it has an outer cuff to facilitate ventilation and protect against aspiration, and only two inner tubes (Figure 10.15d). Both inner tubes have the universal 15 mm extension at the upper aspect to facilitate connection to other apparatus, and one of these (with a green coloured hub) also has a fenestration midway down the tube. The outer tube also has a fenestration in the middle of the cannula, again to encourage a return to normal function. The fenestrated tube can also be occluded with a cap, to assess the patient's oral and nasal airway, first ensuring that the *cuff has been completely deflated* and that the fenestrated inner tube is *in situ*. This tube is particularly useful for weaning patients who require both periods of cuff inflation (to protect the airway) and cuff deflation (to enable a speaking valve to be used) (Russell 2004).

Specialist function tubes

Kapitex Tracheotwist® fenestrated tube

This is a plastic tube with an introducer and two inner tubes (Figure 10.16). One of these inner tubes has an extension at its upper end to facilitate connection to other apparatus. The other inner tube has a fenestration midway down the tube, while the outer tube also has a

fenestration consisting of a series of small holes. This helps to reduce the risk of granulation tissue growing through the fenestration. The neck plate or flange moves in a vertical and horizontal direction, enabling the plate to move as the patient moves. An inner tube with integrated speaking valve can be ordered separately.

Figure 10.16 Kapitex Tracheotwist cuffed fenestrated tube.

Portex® Blue Line Ultra® 'Suctionaid' and Tracheotwist® 306 tracheostomy tubes

These are specialist tracheostomy tubes that have a facility for aspiration of subglottic secretions (Figure 10.17). They are mostly used for the prevention of ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP) in critically ill patients, although they are now also indicated for use in patients with conditions such as bulbar palsy who are unable to effectively clear secretions accumulating above the tracheostomy tube. Suction should not be applied continuously due to the risk of laryngeal injury (ICS 2008).

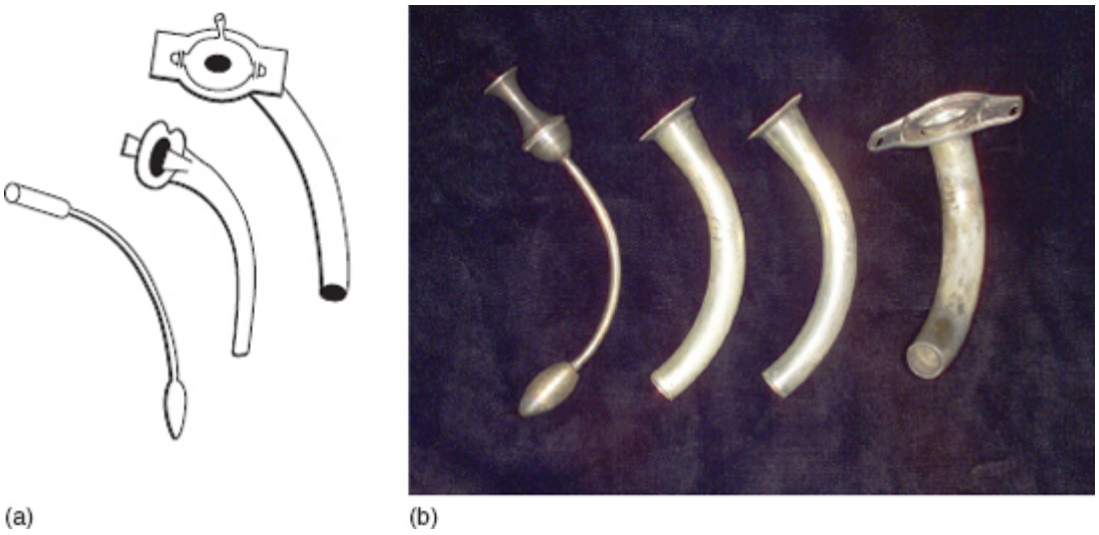
Figure 10.17 Portex Blue-Line 'Suctionaid' tracheostomy tube.

Metal tubes

Jackson® silver tracheostomy tube

This is a silver tube with an introducer and inner tube (Figure 10.18a). The inner tube is locked in position by a small catch on the outer tube and may be removed and cleaned as necessary without disturbing the outer tube.

Figure 10.18 (a) Jackson's silver tube. (b) Negus's silver tube.



Negus® silver tracheostomy tube

This is a silver tracheostomy tube with an introducer and a choice of inner tubes, with and without speaking valves (Figure 10.18b). The

outer tube does not have a safety catch so the inner tube can at times be coughed out inadvertently.

Additional tracheostomy supplies

Speaking valves

These are plastic devices with two-way valves that fit onto the 15 mm hub of the fenestrated inner tube. Distinction should be made between open and closed position valves.

- The open position speaking valve (e.g. Rusch® valve) (Figure 10.19) is open by default and closes with positive pressure (expiration) which diverts air through the upper airways past the vocal cords, thus allowing production of a voice.
- The closed position speaking valve (e.g. Passy Muir® valve) (Figure 10.20) is closed by default and requires negative pressure (i.e. the patient's inspiratory effort) to open. Once expiration starts, it closes, causing air to be diverted as described above. This type of valve can be used in ventilator circuits, always with cuff deflation, for patients who are mechanically ventilated.

Figure 10.19 Rusch speaking valve.

Figure 10.20 Passy Muir valve.

If a non-fenestrated cuffed tube is in place, the cuff should always be deflated before a speaking valve is fitted as the patient will not be able to exhale (Clotworthy 2006b). Ordinarily, practitioners will also consider changing a non-fenestrated tube for a fenestrated tube (double lumen, with fenestrated inner tube). This will allow air to be diverted through the fenestrations of the tube in addition to air already diverted around the tube to the upper airways. If a non-fenestrated tube is in place, depending on the size of the tracheostomy tube and the diameter of the patient's trachea, sufficient air may not be diverted past the cuff. This will result in pressure building up because the patient will not be able to breathe out and the valve will not be tolerated. In this case it will be necessary for a complete outer tube change to a fenestrated tube.

However, anecdotal evidence from practice (often in critical care environments) would suggest that in some instances cuff deflation alone (without changing a non-fenestrated tube for a fenestrated tube) may be sufficient to allow air diversion past the cuff through the upper airways as described above. It is important that each individual case is considered carefully and that practitioners weigh up the potential discomfort and distress a complete tracheostomy tube change may cause against the potential risks of fitting a speaking valve on a non-fenestrated tube. It is therefore imperative that when a speaking valve is used for the first time, the patient is carefully monitored for any signs of respiratory distress. If the patient experiences difficulty in breathing, an inability to vocalize or they begin to sound wheezy or stridulous, the speaking valve should be removed immediately and the patient reassessed (ICS 2008).

Decannulation plug

This is a small plastic plug which fits into the outer fenestrated tube (Figure 10.21). It is used to encourage patients to divert air around the tube past and into the nose and mouth before removal of the tracheostomy tube as described previously. Alternatively, a small plastic plug (Kapitex®) or a blind hub (Shiley®) can be fitted into or over the inner fenestrated tube. This is particularly useful for patients who are still producing tenacious secretions as the plug or hub can be removed to enable the inner tube to be cleaned (Harkin 2004).

Figure 10.21 Decannulation plug.

Specific patient preparations

Care of the patient with a tracheostomy requires a multidisciplinary approach. Patients may have issues with pain and discomfort, swallowing, speech, mobility and general care. Speech and language therapists will play a pivotal role in the assessment and management of the patient's impaired swallowing and speech. Specialized physiotherapists are skilled in mobilization rehabilitation (see Chapter 7 for information regarding mobilization of the patient with a tracheostomy), humidification techniques and general care for tracheostomies. Patients may have difficulty with an altered body image and need psychological support not only from the team closely involved in their care but also potentially from a formal psychological support team. Other key support teams include rehabilitation teams (for rehabilitation, relaxation and occupational therapy), critical care outreach teams (particularly for newly formed stomas in the ward environment and/or the deteriorating patient with airway difficulties), anaesthetists in the event of an airway emergency, discharge co-ordinators and community teams for patients with airways who are going home.

Humidification

Constant humidification is required while a new stoma adapts to the outside environment. Humidification also prevents the formation of crusts which are liable to obstruct the airway.

Humidification can be provided for patients requiring low rate (1–5 L/min) oxygen therapy by using a disposable nebulizer set with sterile 0.9% sodium chloride (approximately 5 mL), attached to the oxygen supply and setting the gas rate for the liquid to form into humidification droplets. The nebulizer is administered using a specific tracheostomy mask (Figure 10.22) rather than via the nose and mouth, as is usual practice. Local policy will determine frequency which may need to be every 4–6 hours or more frequently in patients with more tenacious secretions. 0.9% sodium chloride nebulizers can also be given using air instead of oxygen if the patient is not on oxygen therapy. Patients requiring continual high concentrations of oxygen (≥28%) require humidification via a heated circuit where possible or a cold water Venturi humidified system at all other times (see Figure 10.10). Patients no longer requiring oxygen therapy can receive humidification in the form of a HME and a patient with a laryngectomy stoma can effectively humidify using laryngeal stoma protectors that combine protection along with humidification, for example: Laryngofoam, Buchanan bib, Romet.

Figure 10.22 Tracheostomy mask.

Humidification of a tracheostomy is important to prevent drying of the airway which impairs mucus and cilia function resulting in thickened airway secretions. Devices such as HME filters or a Trachphone (Figure

10.23), which also has an integral speaking valve and oxygen port, may be used for tracheostomy patients (Woodrow 2002).

Figure 10.23 Trachphone.

Education

Patient education is paramount to providing quality care. In the initial postoperative/postprocedural phase, this may be purely to aid comfort and relaxation, explaining and stressing the rationale and importance of suctioning, positioning and how to strengthen cough. This will involve a multidisciplinary approach with all members of the team educating, supporting and providing comfort throughout all interventions.

For patients with long-term tracheostomy needs, early education is vital. Supporting an individual with a tracheostomy of any type requires an understanding of the impact the tracheostomy tube has on the patient's airway and knowing how to manage potential complications (Serra 2000). In order to support and teach the patient and/or their carer, staff must confirm whether the tube serves as the primary airway (i.e. a permanent stoma) or if the patient has a functioning upper airway (Bowers and Scase 2007).

Patient education will come from various sources but primarily the clinical nurse specialists, nursing staff, physiotherapists and community nursing teams will play pivotal roles. Education will be both practical (i.e. through demonstration with their own tracheostomy, possibly

utilizing mirrors) or through the use of posters and pictures. Practical tracheal suctioning on a specialized mannequin and examining the tracheostomy tubes can also be beneficial (Woodrow 2002).

Tracheostomy: dressing change

Evidence-based approaches

A tracheostomy is a surgical opening into the trachea and hence a potential route of infection, so the area should be kept clean. Tracheostomies can also cause damage to the surrounding tissues through pressure and the presence of irritant secretions (Woodrow 2002), necessitating regular inspection and appropriate care of the area to prevent tissue damage and wound breakdown. Changing the dressing will ensure that the surrounding skin remains clean, dry and free from irritation and infection (Edgtton-Winn and Wright 2005).

Rationale

Indications

In some patients, dressing may not be indicated as it creates an ideal environment for bacterial colonization (Higgins 2009). The decision to dress a tracheostomy should be based on clinical need, although a thorough assessment of the stoma is indicated for all patients with altered airways (i.e. tracheostomy or laryngectomy). The dressing around the tracheostomy tube can be renewed without removing the tube which should be done twice a day or more frequently if necessary (Serra 2000).

Contraindications

Occasionally a surgical team may request that the original dressing remain intact for a period of time, usually 24–48 hours. There may be an increased risk of bleeding associated with the stoma formation and in

this instance the dressing should not be changed until consultation with the surgeon has occurred.

Principles of care

Changing the tracheostomy dressing always requires two people (Woodrow 2002): one to secure the tracheostomy and the other to assess and dress the stoma site. When assessing the wound, if infection is suspected, that is, the area is reddened, excoriated, painful, discoloured or exudate is present, a microbiology swab should be sent for culture (Higgins 2009, ICS 2008, Woodrow 2002).

The stoma should be cleaned thoroughly with 0.9% sodium chloride (Woodrow 2002) and an appropriate dressing applied where indicated. This should be a foam dressing, usually manufactured with a cross-shaped incision to fit around the tracheostomy tube (Woodrow 2002). A moisturizing cream, such as E45, can be applied twice daily to the stoma once the tracheostomy tube and associated dressing are removed. For those patients with secretions that tend to accumulate around the stoma, a Cavilon wand can be used to prevent the skin becoming red and excoriated (Hampton 1998).

Stoma sutures (secured to the flange of the trachestomy tube) are removed on day 7 (day 7–10 if the tracheostomy has been inserted using a percutaneous technique). If the patient has previously received external beam radiotherapy to the neck, stoma sutures are removed on day 10.

Procedure guideline 10.3 Tracheostomy dressing change

This procedure requires two nurses. One is required to hold the tracheostomy in place, and the other to change the dressing.

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack
- Tracheostomy dressing or keyhole dressing
- Cleaning solution, such as 0.9% sodium chloride

- Tracheostomy securing tapes
- Bactericidal alcohol handrub

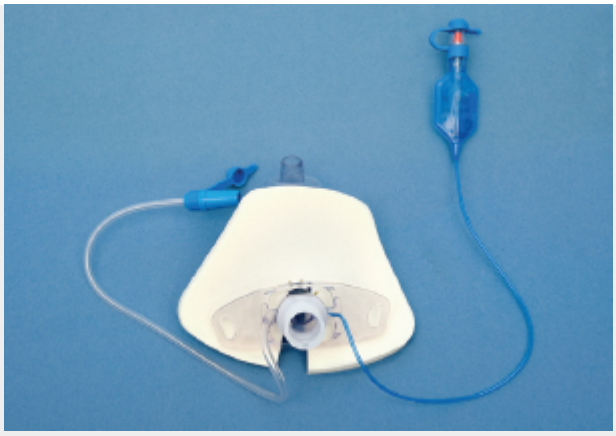
Medicinal products

- Review a possible need for analgesia

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Screen the bed or cubicle.	To ensure the patient's privacy. E
3 Wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and prepare the dressing tray or trolley.	To minimize the risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 Perform the procedure using aseptic technique.	To minimize the risk of infection. E
Procedure	
5 Remove the soiled dressing from around the tube, clean around the stoma with 0.9% sodium chloride using low-linting gauze.	To reduce the risk of dressing fragments entering the altered airway (Russell 2005, E) and to remove secretions and any crusts.
6 Replace with a tracheostomy dressing or a comfortable foam-backed keyhole dressing (Action Figure 6).	To ensure the patient's comfort. E To avoid pressure from the tube (Scase 2004, E).
7 Renew tracheostomy tapes, checking that 1–2 fingers can be placed between the tapes and neck.	To secure the tube. E To ensure that the tapes are not too tight (Woodrow 2002, E; Scase 2004, E) or too loose, thus decreasing the chance of necrosis caused by excessive pressure from the tapes (Serra 2000, E).
Postprocedure	
8 Monitor patient closely for changes in respiratory rate and pattern of breathing, pulse, dyspnoea.	Any procedure to the tracheostomy if not managed correctly may lead to possible dislodgement of tube or secretions, leading to respiratory deterioration or distress. E

Action Figure 6 Sterile tracheostomy dressing or tracheostomy/keyhole dressing.



Tracheostomy: suctioning

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

An effective cough requires the closure of the glottis, then the reopening of the glottis once an adequate intrathoracic pressure is achieved. When a tracheostomy is *in situ* the mechanism of closing the glottis is compromised, so the patient's ability to remove secretions is reduced as they are unable to generate the high flows required for coughing. In addition to this, the natural mechanisms of warming and humidifying the gases are lost, altering the consistency of secretions. Secretions become thick and dry, inhibiting mucociliary transport (Higgins 2009), leading to a potential blocking of the tracheostomy tube. Tracheal suction is an essential component of managing secretions, maintaining respiratory function and a patent airway.

Indications

The use of routine suctioning should be avoided and careful assessment of the patient's respiratory function should be carried out instead. Inspection, auscultation, percussion and palpation will help to determine the following (Hough 2001, Pryor and Prasad 2008).

- The patient's ability to clear their own secretions.

- Location of any secretions.
- Whether these secretions could be reached by the catheter.
- How detrimental these secretions might be for the patient.

The presence of prominent audible secretions, visible secretions, decreased oxygenation or diminished breath sounds during the assessment would indicate a need for suction (Ireton 2007).

Contraindications

Tracheal suction is an essential component of care for all patients with artificial airways. Most contraindications are relative to the patient's risk of developing adverse reactions or worsening clinical condition as a result of the procedure. Hence choosing to not suction in order to avoid a potential side-effect may sometimes be more harmful to the patient.

However, despite its necessity, suction may be painful and distressing to the patient and can also be complicated by hypoxaemia, bradycardia and cardiovascular compromise (particularly in patients with autonomic dysfunction such as spinal injuries), alveolar collapse, tracheal mucosal damage, bleeding, and the introduction of infection (Higgins 2009, ICS 2008).

Principles of care

Infection risk

Universal precautions must be used at all times when suctioning; this includes wearing aprons, gloves and eye protection. Both the caregiver and patient are at risk of infection when suctioning is performed and in order to minimize this, examination gloves should be worn and an aseptic technique should be used, decontaminating hands with an alcohol handrub before and after the suction procedure (DH and NHSMA 2005). Suction catheters (see Figure 10.42) are for single use only and should be disposed of after each suction.

Method of suctioning

Shallow suctioning, where the catheter is inserted to a premeasured depth not beyond the distal end of the tracheostomy tube, is preferred to deep suctioning, in which the suction catheter is inserted until resistance is met. Deep suctioning should be avoided as it is associated with increased risks of mucosal damage, inflammation (De Leyn *et al.* 2007) and bleeding, subsequently increasing the risk of airway occlusion. Always suction with the inner tube *in situ* and change to a non-fenestrated inner tube before the procedure. The instillation of 0.9% sodium chloride to 'aid' suctioning is not recommended (Celik and Kanan 2006, ICS 2008).

Anticipated patient outcomes

Suctioning can cause distress, is uncomfortable and is associated with airway changes and cardiovascular instability, and should therefore only be performed when indicated and not at fixed intervals. Frequency should be determined on an individual patient basis and suctioning should aim to clear airway secretions when the patient is not able to, ensuring airway patency and patient safety at all times.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Suction catheter size and suction pressure

Choosing the correct suction catheter size depends on the size of the tracheostomy tube. As a guide, the diameter of the suction catheter should not exceed one-half of the internal diameter of the tracheostomy tube (Griggs 1998, Hough 2001).

The following formula can be used to determine the correct size catheter.

Suction catheter size (Fg) = 2 × (size of tracheostomy tube − 2)

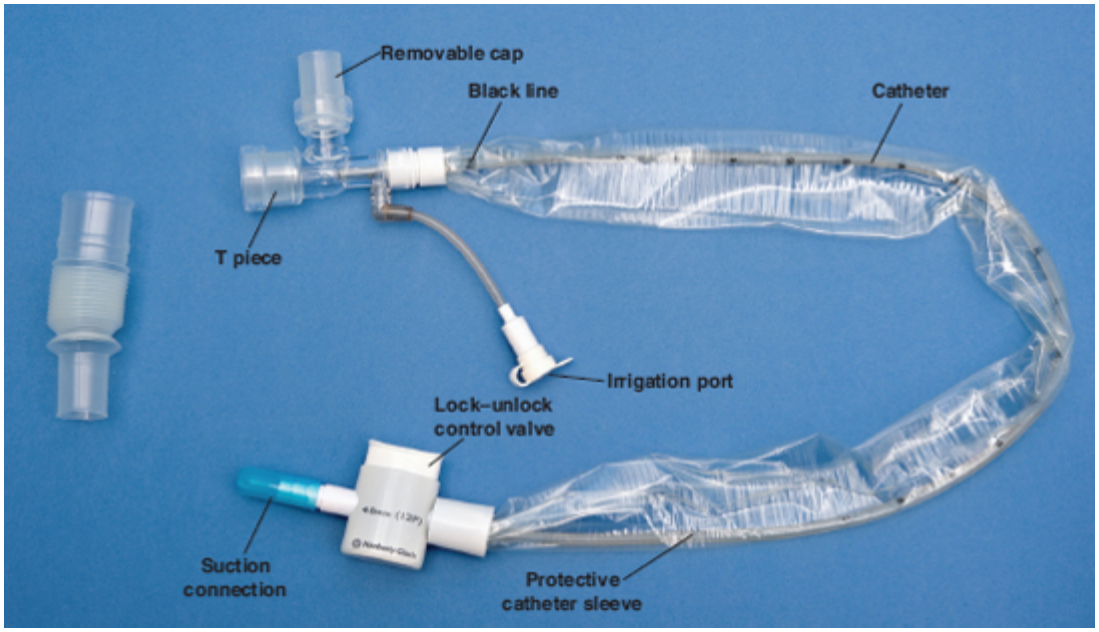
For example: 8.00 mm ID tube: 2 × (8−2) = 12 Fg (ICS 2008)

The incorrect choice of catheter, poor technique and the use of an excessively high suction pressure may all lead to mucosal trauma. The

lowest possible vacuum pressure should be used, ≤100–120 mmHg (13–16 kPa), to minimize atelectasis (ICS 2008) and mucosal damage.

Within a critical care setting, a closed-circuit suction system is an alternative method to the open suction system for patients being mechanically ventilated. This closed system has the catheter sealed in a protective plastic sleeve, which is connected permanently into a standard ventilator circuit, thus preventing the catheter becoming contaminated (Figure 10.24). This also reduces the number of times the patient is disconnected from the ventilator, avoiding further hypoxia and cross-infection. Patients who are immunosuppressed, actively infectious patients or those who require high levels of PEEP may in particular benefit from a closed unit (Billau 2004).

Figure 10.24 Components of a closed-circuit catheter. The control valve locks the vacuum on or off. The catheter is protected inside an airtight sleeve. A T-piece connects the device to the tracheal tube. The irrigation port allows saline instillation for irrigating the patient's airway or for cleaning the catheter.



Procedure guideline 10.4 Suctioning a patient with a tracheostomy

Essential equipment

- Suction source (wall or portable), collection container and tubing, changed every 24 hours to prevent growth of bacteria (Billau 2004)
- Disposable plastic apron
- Eye protection, for example goggles
- Bactericidal alcohol handrub
- Sterile suction catheters (assorted sizes according to tube size)
- A selection of non-sterile, powder-free, clean boxed gloves
- Sterile bottled water (labelled 'suction' with opening date), changed every 24 hours to prevent the growth of bacteria (Billau 2004)

Preprocedure

Action	**Rationale**
1 If secretions are tenacious, consider using, as prescribed, 2 hourly or more frequently 0.9% sterile sodium chloride nebulizers or other mucolytic agents such as nebulized acetylcysteine.	Suctioning may not be as effective if the secretions become too tenacious or dry. Anecdotal evidence through practice suggests that frequent 0.9% sterile sodium chloride or acetylcysteine nebulizers may assist in loosening dry and thick secretions. E
2 Explain procedure to patient and ensure upright position if possible. If the patient is able to perform their own suction, self-suction should be taught. This is not appropriate in critical care settings.	To obtain the patient's co-operation and to help them relax. E The procedure is unpleasant and can be frightening for the patient (Billau 2004, E). Reassurance is vital. E Self-control of the patient's suction is preferable with long-term stomas, if the patient is able to manage it. E
3 If a patient has a fenestrated outer tube, ensure that a plain inner tube is *in situ*, rather than a fenestrated inner tube (Russell 2005).	Suction via a fenestrated inner tube allows a catheter to pass through the fenestration and cause trauma to the tracheal wall (Billau 2004, E).
Procedure	
4 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and put on a disposable plastic apron, disposable gloves and eye protection.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection. E Gloves minimize the risk of infection transfer to the catheter or from the sputum to the nurse's hands (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E). Some patients may accidentally cough

	directly ahead at the nurse; standing to one side with tissues at the patient's tracheostomy minimizes this risk. E
5 If patient is oxygen dependent, hyperoxygenate for a period of 3 minutes.	To minimize the risk of acute hypoxia (Billau 2004, E).
6 Ensure that the suction pressure is set to the appropriate level.	Recommended suction pressure is ≤100–120 mmHg (13–16 kPa) to minimize atelectasis (ICS 2008, C).
7 Select the correct size catheter. As a guide, the diameter of the suction catheter should not exceed one-half of the internal diameter of the tracheostomy tube (Griggs 1998, Hough 2001). The following formula can be used to determine the correct size catheter:	This ensures that hypoxia does not occur while suctioning: the larger the volume, the greater the bore of the tube. E Incorrect choice of catheter size can cause mucosal damage. E
Suction catheter size (Fg) = 2 × (size of tracheostomy tube – 2) For example: 8.00 mm ID tube: 2 × (8–2) = 12 Fg (ICS 2008).	A tube with a too small diameter may not be able to remove thick secretions. E
8 Open the end of the suction catheter pack and use the pack to attach the catheter to the suction tubing. Keep the rest of the catheter in the sterile packet. Use an aseptic technique throughout.	To reduce the risk of transferring infection from hands to the catheter and to keep the catheter as clean as possible. E
9 An additional clean, disposable glove can be used on the dominant hand at this stage.	To facilitate easy disposal of the suction catheter after suction. E
10 Remove the catheter from the sleeve and introduce the catheter to about one-third of its length or approximately 10–15 cm (ICS 2008) or until the patient coughs. If resistance is felt, withdraw catheter approximately 1 cm before applying suction by placing the thumb over the suction port control and slowly withdraw the remainder of the catheter (Dean 1997, Wood 1998).	Gentleness is essential; damage to the tracheal mucosa can lead to trauma and respiratory infection. E The catheter should go no further than the carina to prevent trauma. R The catheter is inserted with the suction off to reduce the risk of trauma (Clotworthy 2006c, C).
11 Do not suction the patient for more than 10 seconds (ICS 2008).	Prolonged suctioning may result in acute hypoxia, cardiac arrhythmias (Day *et al.* 2002, C), mucosal trauma, infection and the patient experiencing a feeling of choking.
12 Wrap catheter around dominant hand, then pull back glove over soiled catheter, thus containing catheter in glove, then discard.	Catheters are used only once to reduce the risk of introducing infection. E
13 If the patient is oxygen dependent, reapply oxygen immediately.	To prevent hypoxia. E
14 Rinse the suction tubing by dipping its end into the sterile water bottle and applying suction until the solution has rinsed the tubing through.	To loosen secretions that have adhered to the inside of the tube. E

15 If the patient requires further suction, repeat the above actions using new gloves and a new catheter. Allow the patient sufficient time to recover between each suction (Billau 2004), particularly if oxygen saturation is low or if patient coughs several times during the procedure. The patient should be observed throughout the procedure.	To ensure general condition is stable. E
16 Repeat the suction until the airway is clear. No more than three suction passes should be made during any one suction episode (Day 2000, Glass and Grap 1995) unless in emergency such as tube occlusion (Nelson 1999).	To minimize the risk of hypoxaemia (Day 2000, E).
Postprocedure	
17 Where appropriate, reconnect the patient to oxygen within 10 seconds post suctioning.	To minimize the risk of hypoxaemia (Day 2000, E).
18 Observe patient's respiratory rate and pattern, oxygen saturations, heart rate and work of breathing closely over the following 15 minutes. Observe for signs of bleeding.	Suctioning can be complicated by hypoxaemia, bradycardia, tracheal mucosal damage and bleeding (ICS 2008, C).

Complications

Hypoxia

The act of suctioning reduces vital lung volume from the lungs and upper airways. Each suctioning procedure should last no longer than 10 seconds to decrease the risk of trauma, hypoxia and other side-effects (ICS 2008). Ventilator disconnection or the removal of the oxygen supply will also add to the risk of hypoxia prior to suctioning. Within a critical care setting, this risk can be avoided by hyperoxygenating the lungs with 100% oxygen, either manually or via a ventilator (Glass and Grap 1995, Hough 2001), which should be considered for all patients with high oxygen requirements.

Cardiac arrhythmias

Arrhythmias may be brought about by the onset of hypoxaemia or a vagal reflex instigated by tracheal stimulation by the catheter (MacIntyre and Branson 2009).

Raised intracranial pressure

This may occur if the suction catheter causes excessive tracheal stimulation and results in coughing and an increase in the patient's intrathoracic pressure, both of which compromise cerebral venous drainage (Pryor and Prasad 2008).

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation

Definition

The term cardiac arrest implies a sudden interruption of cardiac output. It may be reversible with appropriate treatment (Handley 2004). The patient will collapse, lose consciousness, stop breathing and will be pulseless (Jevon 2001, Paradis 2007).

The four arrhythmias that cause cardiac arrest are:

- asystole
- ventricular fibrillation (VF)
- pulseless ventricular tachycardia (VT)
- pulseless electrical activity (PEA).

For the purposes of resuscitation guidelines, these rhythms are divided into two groups by their treatment:

- VF and pulseless VT, which require defibrillation
- non-VF/VT, which do not require defibrillation (Resuscitation Council 2005).

Resuscitation is the emergency treatment of any condition in which the brain fails to receive enough oxygen.

Anatomy and physiology

The heart

The heart is made up of four chambers: two upper atria and two lower ventricles (see Figure 10.5 Conduction of the heart). The right atrium receives deoxygenated blood via the venous circulation. From the right

atrium, blood flows into the right ventricle which pumps it into the lungs via the pulmonary arteries. Carbon dioxide is released and oxygen is absorbed. This blood is called oxygenated and returns to the heart via the pulmonary veins that empty into the left atrium. The blood then passes into the left ventricle which pumps it into the aorta and arterial circulation (Waugh and Grant 2010).

The atrioventricular septum completely separates the right and left sides of the heart. From shortly after birth, the two sides of the heart never directly communicate. Blood travels from right side to left side via the lungs only. However, the chambers themselves work together. The two atria contract simultaneously, and the two ventricles contract simultaneously (Waugh and Grant 2010).

To prevent backflow of blood, the heart has valves. The atrioventricular (AV) valves are between the atria and ventricles. The right AV valve between the right atrium and right ventricle is also called the tricuspid valve because it consists of three cusps. The left AV valve between the left atrium and ventricle is called the bicuspid as it has two cusps. Both arteries that emerge from the heart have a valve to prevent blood from flowing back into the heart – the semi-lunar (SL) valves. The pulmonary SL valve lies where the pulmonary trunk leaves the right ventricle and the aortic SL valve is situated at the opening between the aorta and left ventricle. The valves open and close in response to pressure changes as the heart contracts and relaxes (Moran 2010, Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Cardiac conduction system

This pathway is made up of the:

- sinoatrial (SA) node
- AV node
- bundle of His
- left and right bundle branches
- Purkinje fibres.

The SA node is the natural pacemaker of the heart. It releases electrical stimuli at a regular rate, which will vary depending on whether

the body is at rest or in action. As each stimulus passes through the myocardial cells of the atria, it creates a wave of contraction which spreads rapidly through both atria.

The rapidity of atrial contraction is such that around 100 million myocardial cells contract in less than one-third of a second; this is so fast it appears instantaneous.

When the electrical stimulus from the SA node reaches the AV node, it is delayed briefly so that the contracting atria have enough time to pump all the blood into the ventricles. Once the atria are empty of blood, the valves between the atria and ventricles close. At this point the atria begin to refill and the electrical stimulus passes through the AV node, through the bundle of His, along the left and right bundle branches and the Purkinje fibres. In this way all the cells in the ventricles receive an electrical stimulus causing them to contract (Becker 2007).

Around 400 million myocardial cells that make up the ventricles contract in less than one-third of a second. As the ventricles contract, the right ventricle pumps blood to the lungs where carbon dioxide is released and oxygen is absorbed, whilst the left ventricle pumps blood into the aorta from where it passes into the coronary and arterial circulation.

At this point the ventricles are empty, the atria are full and the valves between them are closed. The SA node is about to release another electrical stimulus and the process is about to repeat itself. However, there is a third section to this process. The SA node and AV node contain only one stimulus. Therefore every time the nodes release a stimulus, they must recharge before they can do it again.

In the heart, the SA node recharges whilst the atria are refilling, and the AV node recharges when the ventricles are refilling. This means there is no need for a pause in heart function. Again, this process takes less than one-third of a second. (The times given for the three different stages are based on a heart rate of 60 beats per minute, or 1 beat per second.)

The term used for the release of an electrical stimulus is ‘depolarization’, and the term for recharging is ‘repolarization’.

So, the three stages of a single heart beat are:

- atrial depolarization
- ventricular depolarization
- atrial and ventricular repolarization (Moran 2010, Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Related theory

Potentially reversible causes of a cardiopulmonary arrest

During cardiac arrest, potential causes or aggravating factors for which specific treatment exists should be considered. For ease of memory, there are eight common causes of arrest, four of which begin with the letter H and four with the letter T.

- Hypoxia.
- Hypovolaemia.
- Hypothermia.
- Hypo/hyperkalaemia.
- Thromboembolism.
- Tension pneumothorax.
- Tamponade.
- Toxicity (metabolic or drug induced) (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Hypoxia

There are many reasons why a patient may become severely hypoxic (see Chapters X and X), the most common being the following.

- Acute respiratory failure.
- Airway difficulties.
- Acute lung injury.
- Severe anaemia.
- Neuromuscular disorders.

For healthy cell metabolism, the body requires a constant supply of oxygen. When this is interrupted for more than 3 minutes in most situations (except when there is severe hypothermia), cell death occurs,

followed by lactic acidosis and very rapidly a cardiorespiratory arrest. The risk of hypoxia is minimized by ensuring that the patient's lungs are ventilated adequately with 100% oxygen (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Hypovolaemia

Hypovolaemia in adults that results in PEA is usually due to severe blood loss. While it is not the nurse's role to make a medical diagnosis, they may be aware of significant factors in the history of a patient that may have led to PEA.

The most common causes of severe blood loss are:

- trauma
- surgical procedure
- gastrointestinal mucosa erosion
- oesophageal varices
- peripheral vessel erosion (by tumour usually)
- clotting abnormality.

Note: blood loss, although usually overt, can be covert such as a gastrointestinal bleed which may only become apparent when the patient collapses.

The treatment for hypovolaemia is identifying and stopping the source of fluid or blood loss, and replacing the circulating volume with the appropriate fluid. Fluid resuscitation is normally started with a crystalloid, for example 0.9% sodium chloride, and/or colloid, for example Gelofusin (depending on local protocols); there is no evidence that colloids are more effective than crystalloids. Blood is likely to be required rapidly if the blood loss exceeds 1500–2000 mL in an adult (Perel *et al.* 2007, Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Hypothermia

Hypothermia should be suspected in any submersion or immersion injury. During a prolonged resuscitation attempt, a patient who was normothermic at the onset of cardiac arrest may become hypothermic (Resuscitation Council 2010b). A low-reading thermometer should be

used if available. Resuscitation in the presence of hypothermia may be prolonged.

Hypo/hyperkalaemia and other metabolic disorders

Because potassium is so closely linked with muscle and nerve excitation, any imbalance will affect both the nervous conduction and the muscular working of the heart. Therefore a severe rise or fall in potassium can cause arrest arrhythmias. The causes of hypokalaemia are:

- gastrointestinal fluid losses
- urinary fluid loss
- drugs that affect cellular potassium, for example antifungal agents such as amphotericin.

The immediate treatment for hypokalaemia that has resulted in an arrest is to give concentrated infusions of potassium while carefully monitoring the serial potassium measurements. Most intensive care unit (ICU)/Accident and Emergency (A&E) departments and coronary care units (CCUs) will have an arterial blood gas analyser that enables the potassium to be measured in 1 minute.

The patients who are most at risk of hyperkalaemia are those with renal failure or Addison's disease. The immediate treatment for hyperkalaemia is to give intravenous calcium. This has the effect of protecting the myocardium during the cardiac arrest. If the patient is successfully resuscitated it will be essential to monitor their serum potassium and if it remains high, to commence therapy to lower or remove the potassium (Resuscitation Council 2006).

Thromboembolism

The most common cause of thromboembolic or mechanical circulatory obstruction is a massive pulmonary embolus. Options for definitive treatment include thrombolysis or, if available, cardiopulmonary bypass and operative removal of the clot (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Tension pneumothorax

A tension pneumothorax is the sudden collapse of a lung, usually under pressure, which results in a severe change in intrathoracic pressure and cessation of the heart as a pump (Bersten *et al*. 2009). The most common causes are:

- trauma
- acute lung injury
- mechanical ventilation of the newborn.

The immediate treatment is the insertion of a large-bore cannula into the second intercostal space at the midclavicular line of the affected side (Resuscitation Council 2010b). Arrangements should be made for the insertion of a formal chest tube and underwater seal drain.

Tamponade

This is where there is an acute effusion of fluid in the pericardial space and as it enlarges, the heart is splinted and finally cannot beat. The fluid is usually blood but can be malignant or infected fluid (Dolan and Preston 2006). The most common cause for a sudden tamponade is trauma. The immediate treatment is the insertion of a catheter or surgical drainage of the fluid. After drainage, the cause of the tamponade should be sought and corrected where possible, for example with appropriate antibiotic therapy for a bacterial aetiology or surgical repair of a myocardial laceration (Shoemaker 2000).

Toxicity: poisoning and drug intoxication

Poisoning rarely leads to cardiac arrest but it is a leading cause of death in patients less than 40 years old. Self-poisoning with therapeutic or recreational drugs is the main reason for hospital admission (Resuscitation Council 2010b). There are few specific therapeutic measures for poisons that are useful in the immediate situation. The emphasis must be on intensive supportive therapy, with correction of hypoxia, acid/base balance and electrolyte disorders. Specialist help can be obtained by telephoning one of the regional National Poisons Information Service Centres (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Evidence-based approaches

Sudden death as a result of cardiac arrest is responsible for 60% of ischaemic heart disease deaths across Europe (Resuscitation Council 2010b). Survival to hospital discharge is cited as 10.7% of all types of cardiac arrest with survival being higher (21.2%) in ventricular fibrillation arrests (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Changes to adult basic life support (BLS) guidelines have been made to reflect the importance of performing high quality chest compressions. The rescuer should reduce the number and duration of pauses during chest compressions (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation guidelines in the UK are researched and implemented by the Resuscitation Council UK, and BLS and ALS guidelines are changed according to their recommendations. Although the Resuscitation Council guidelines of 2000 recommended immediate defibrillation for all shockable rhythms, evidence indicates that a period of CPR before defibrillation may improve survival after prolonged collapse (>5 min) (Wik *et al.* 2003). The duration of collapse is frequently difficult to estimate accurately, so CPR should be given before attempted defibrillation outside hospital, unless the arrest is witnessed by a healthcare professional or an automated external defibrillator (AED) is being used (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

In contrast, there is no evidence to support or refute the use of CPR before defibrillation for in-hospital cardiac arrest. For this reason, after in-hospital VF/VT cardiac arrest, a shock should be given as soon as possible (Resuscitation Council 2010b). Continuing good-quality CPR may improve the amplitude and frequency of fine VF and improve the chance of successful defibrillation to a perfusing rhythm, as fine VF is difficult to distinguish from asystole and very unlikely to be shocked successfully.

Rationale

The basic technique involves a rapid simple assessment of the patient followed by the basic life support (BLS) resuscitation. The first international consensus evidence-based guidelines on resuscitation were

published in 2000 (AHA/ILCOR 2010, Shuster *et al*. 2010). These guidelines were reviewed in 2004/05 by the International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation and published in 2005 (AHA/ILCOR 2010). These internationally agreed guidelines based on research and audit now form the basis for the European resuscitation guidelines (Baskett *et al.* 2005) as well as the UK resuscitation guidelines (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Changes to Resuscitation Council UK guidelines suggest that the rescuer should not stop to check the patient or discontinue CPR unless the person starts to show signs of regaining consciousness, such as coughing, opening eyes, speaking or moving purposefully and starts to breathe normally (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Indications

- The patient is unconscious, has absent or agonal (gasping) respirations and has no pulse (Perkins *et al.* 2005). Other clinical features such as pupil size, cyanosis and pallor are unreliable and so the practitioner should not waste time looking for them (Skinner and Vincent 1997).

Contraindications

- Do not attempt resuscitation orders (DNAR) (Box 10.1).
- If the environment is going to place the rescuer at risk, do not attempt resuscitation until environment secured.

Box 10.1 Decision making: do not attempt resuscitation (DNAR)

In an attempt to reduce the number of futile resuscitation attempts, many hospitals have introduced formal DNAR policies, which can be applied to individual patients in specific circumstances. Healthcare professionals must be able to show that their decisions relating to CPR are compatible with the human rights set out in the Human Rights Act 1998 implemented on 2 October 2000 (e.g. the right to life, the right to be free from inhuman or degrading treatment and freedom of expression) (BMA 2000, BMA *et al.* 2002). The following guidelines are based on those provided in a joint statement by the British Medical Association (BMA), the Royal College of Nursing (RCN) and the Resuscitation Council UK (BMA *et al.* 2002). (*Note*: where

no decision has been made and the express wishes of the patient are unknown, CPR should be performed without delay.)

- Sensitive advance discussion between experienced medical/nursing staff and patients regarding attempting CPR should be encouraged but not forced. Where patients lack competence to participate, people close to them can be helpful in reflecting their views. (*Note*: in England, Wales and Northern Ireland, no person is legally entitled to give consent to medical treatment on behalf of another adult.) Information about CPR needs to be realistic. Written information explaining CPR should be available for patients and those close to them to read. The BMA, in liaison with the Resuscitation Council UK, RCN and Age Concern England, has published an information leaflet that may help patients and families to discuss DNAR with medical and nursing staff (BMA *et al.* 2002).
- Patients are entitled to refuse CPR even when there is a reasonable chance of success.
- Some patients may ask that no DNAR order be made. Patients cannot demand treatment which the healthcare team judges to be inappropriate, but all efforts should be made to accommodate their wishes and preferences.
- An advance DNAR order should only be made after consideration of the likely clinical outcome, the patient's wishes and the patient's human rights. It should be considered on an individual patient basis where:

— attempting CPR will not start the patient's heart and breathing

— there is no benefit in restarting the patient's heart and breathing

— the expected benefit is outweighed by the burdens (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

- The overall responsibility for decisions about CPR and DNAR orders rests with the consultant in charge of the patient's care. Issues should, however, be discussed with other members of the healthcare team, the patient and people close to the patient where appropriate.

- There are exceptional cases where resuscitation discussions with a patient may be inappropriate, for example where senior members of the medical and nursing team consider that CPR would be futile and that such a discussion would cause the patient unnecessary distress and anguish. This could apply to patients in the terminal phase of their illness.
- The most senior members of the medical and nursing team available should clearly document any decisions made about CPR in the patient's medical and nursing notes. The decision should be dated and the reasons for it given. This information must be communicated to all other relevant healthcare professionals. Unless it is against the wishes of the patient, their family should also be informed.
- The DNAR order should be reviewed on each admission or in light of changes in the patient's condition (BMA *et al.* 2002).
- Finally, it should be noted that a DNAR order applies only to CPR and should not reduce the standard of medical or nursing care.

Principles of care

Failure of the circulation for 3–4 minutes will lead to irreversible cerebral damage (Docherty and Hall 2002). BLS acts to slow down the deterioration of the brain and the heart until defibrillation and/or advanced life support (ALS) can be provided (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Assessment

There are two stages of assessment.

- An immediate assessment by the rescuer to ensure that CPR may safely proceed (i.e. checking there is no immediate danger to the rescuer from any hazard, for example electrical power supply).

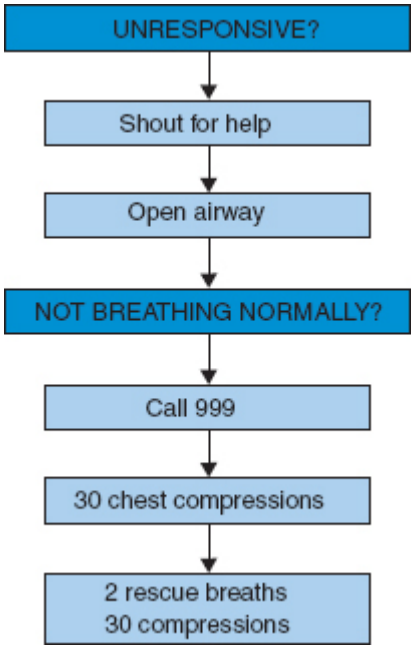
- Assessment by the rescuer of the likelihood of injury sustained by the patient, particularly injury to the cervical spine. Although there may be no external evidence of injury, the immediate situation may provide the necessary evidence. For example, trauma to the cervical spine should be suspected in an accelerating/decelerating injury such as a road traffic accident with a motorbike travelling at speed.

Once these two aspects have been assessed, the patient's level of consciousness should be checked by gently shaking his shoulders and asking loudly if he is all right (Figure 10.25). If there is no response, the rescuer should commence the BLS assessment (Figure 10.26) immediately.

Figure 10.25 Initial verbal assessment.

Figure 10.26 Basic life support algorithm.

Courtesy of Resuscitation Council (2010b)



Note: if the arrest is witnessed or monitored, and a defibrillator is not immediately to hand, a single precordial thump should be administered. If delivered within 30 seconds after cardiac arrest, a sharp blow with a closed fist on the patient's sternum may convert VF back to a perfusing rhythm (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Defibrillation

Defibrillation causes a simultaneous depolarization of the myocardium and aims to restore normal rhythm to the heart. This is the definitive treatment for VF and pulseless VT. It has been suggested that 80–90% of adults who collapse because of non-traumatic cardiac arrest are found to be in VF when first attached to a monitor (Varon *et al.* 1998). In hospital, cardiac arrest is more likely to present as non-VF/VT, in other words asystole or PEA. Early defibrillation is a vital link in the chain of survival and developments in public access defibrillation and first responder defibrillation by ward nurses in hospitals are focusing firmly on this link. Delay in defibrillation decreases the chances of success by 7–10% each minute (Robertson *et al.* 1998). Nurses are often first on the scene at a cardiac arrest, highlighting the obvious need for nurse-led defibrillation at ward level. While not all nurses are trained in defibrillation, they should understand why it is necessary and how it is done and be able to assist in an emergency (Austin and Snow 2000).

Resuscitation guidelines (Resuscitation Council 2010b) suggest asking for an automated external defibrillator (AED), if one is available, as it can be used safely and effectively without training. The aim of an effective defibrillation strategy is to reduce the preshock pause to less than 5 seconds by planning ahead and continuing cardiac compressions during charging, and using a very brief safety check (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

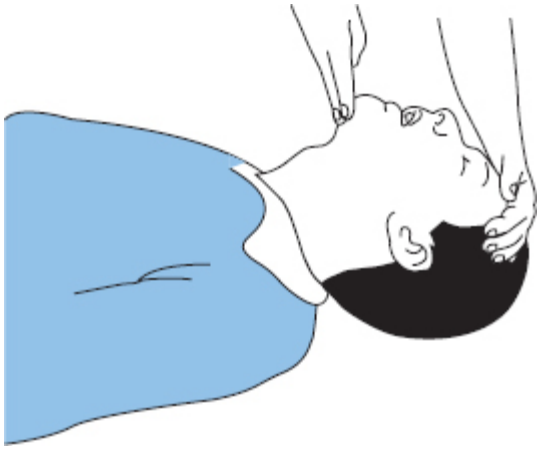
Method of basic life support

Basic life support is sometimes known as the 'ABC'.

Airway

The rescuer should look in the mouth and remove any visible obstruction (leave well-fitting dentures in place). The most likely obstruction in an unconscious person is the tongue. The head tilt/chin lift manoeuvre (Figure 10.27), which removes the tongue from occluding the oropharynx, is an effective method of opening an airway and relieving obstruction in 80% of patients (Simmons 2002).

Figure 10.27 Head tilt/chin lift manoeuvre.



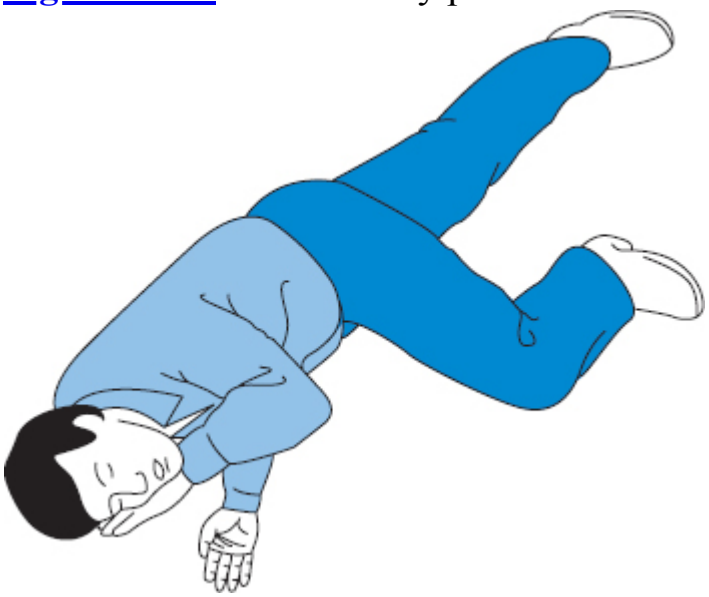
Note: if there is any suspicion of cervical spine injury, try to avoid head tilt.

Breathing

Keeping the airway open, the rescuer should look, listen and feel for breathing (more than an occasional gasp or weak attempts at breathing)

for up to 10 seconds. If the patient is breathing they should be turned into the recovery position (Figure 10.28). If the adult patient is not breathing and there is no suspicion of trauma or drowning, an immediate call for the cardiac arrest team should be made. It should be noted that in 40% of cases a person who has arrested still has agonal (gasping) respirations and these can be mistaken for normal breaths (Hauff *et al.* 2003).

Figure 10.28 The recovery position.



Artificial ventilation must then be commenced and maintained. If there are no aids to ventilation available then direct mouth-to-mouth ventilation should be used. There have been isolated reports of infections such as tuberculosis (TB) and severe acute respiratory distress syndrome (SARS) following mouth-to-mouth ventilation but never transmission of HIV. There is no evidence to quantify the degree of risk to the rescuer by performing mouth-to-mouth ventilation but, as it is widely acknowledged that there is reluctance by some people in spite of the lack of evidence, an allowance has been made for them to only perform chest compressions (Resuscitation Council 2010b). The recommended length for each breath is now 1 second (Resuscitation Council 2010b). When cardiac arrest occurs in hospital, the Resuscitation Council recommends the use of adjuncts such as the pocket mask or the bag mask unit. These can be used to avoid direct

person-to-person contact and some devices may reduce the risk of cross-infection between patient and rescuer (Resuscitation Council 2010b). In 2005, in recognition of the concern about providing mouth-to-mouth resuscitation, the guidelines changed and the BLS algorithm now starts with chest compressions and then proceeds to two breaths (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

One of the most easily learnt aids is the 'mouth-to-facemask' method (Figure 10.29) in which a ventilation mask with a one-way valve and an oxygen attachment port is used. The mask directs the patient's exhaled air and any fluid away from the rescuer and the oxygen port allows attachment of oxygen with enrichment up to 45%.

Figure 10.29 Mask with one-way valve over patient's nose and mouth and rescuer giving breath. Used with permission from Moule and Albarran (2009).

If the operator is skilled in airway management, an Ambu-bag and mask may be used. When the bag is attached to oxygen, high levels, of up to 85%, can be obtained. However, it should be emphasized that to manipulate the head tilt, and hold on a facemask while squeezing a bag is a procedure that requires practice and is most safely achieved by two people, one holding the mask and one squeezing the bag (Hodgetts and Castle 1999, Resuscitation Council 2010b) (Figure 10.30).

Figure 10.30 Two people using Ambu-bag and mask. Used with permission from Moule and Albarran (2009).

The most effective method of airway management is to use an endotracheal tube, thus enabling the application of 100% oxygen (Resuscitation Council 2010b, Robertson *et al.* 1998). This method of airway management is included in the advanced life support (ALS) algorithm.

Circulation

Circulation is assessed by looking for any signs of movement, including swallowing or breathing. If trained to do so, a check should also be made for the carotid pulse (Figure 10.31) for up to 10 seconds. If no circulation is detected, it must be maintained by compressions. The correct place to compress is in the centre of the lower half of the sternum (Figure 10.32). The rescuer should position themselves vertically above the patient with arms straight and elbows locked. The sternum should be pressed down to depress it by 5–6 cm. This should be repeated at a rate of about 100–120 times a minute. After 30 compressions two rescue breaths are given, continuing compressions and rescue breaths in a ratio of 30:2 (Resuscitation Council 2010b). There is evidence that chest compressions are often interrupted and that this is associated with a reduction in the chance of survival. New ALS guidelines (Resuscitation Council 2010b) suggest an increased emphasis on the importance of minimal interuption in high quality chest compressions throughout any ALS intervention. Therefore, chest compressions are now continued while a defibrillator is charging, which will minimize the preshock pause. It is therefore imperative that

interruptions to chest compressions are minimized by effective co-ordination between rescuers (Eftestol *et al.* 2002, van Alem *et al.* 2003, Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Figure 10.31 Carotid pulse check.

Figure 10.32 Correct positioning of hands for external compressions.

Legal and professional issues

All members of the healthcare professions who attempt resuscitation will be expected to employ the highest professional standard of care, in line with their level of training. In general, there are two means by which the risk of personal liability may be minimized. The first is by good practice and the second is by taking out adequate indemnity insurance (NMC 2008a, Resuscitation Council 2010a). To ensure best practice, make sure that regular updates for BLS and if appropriate ALS training are maintained.

The Resuscitation Council (UK) guidelines state that if rescuers are not able, or are unwilling, to give rescue breaths, they should give chest

compressions alone (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Whenever CPR is carried out (outside the hospital setting), particularly on an unknown victim, there is some risk of cross-infection, associated particularly with giving rescue breaths. Normally, this risk is very small and has to be set against the inevitability that a person in cardiac arrest will die if no assistance is given.

Competencies

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation standards and training

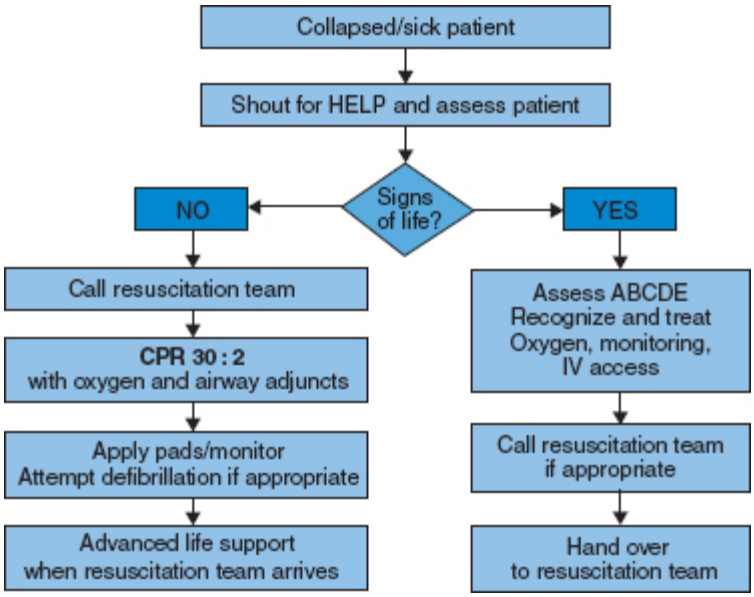
The Resuscitation Council UK (RCUK), formed in 1981, aims to promote the education of lay and professional personnel in the most effective methods of resuscitation appropriate to their needs. In its report *CPR Guidance for Clinical Practice and Training in Hospitals* (Resuscitation Council 2004), the Council made a number of recommendations relating to the provision of a resuscitation service in hospital.

- *Resuscitation committee*. This should comprise medical and nursing staff who advise on the role and composition of the cardiac arrest team, resuscitation equipment and resuscitation training equipment.
- *Resuscitation Training Officer* (RTO), who should be responsible for training in resuscitation, equipment maintenance and the auditing of resuscitation/clinical trials.
- *Resuscitation training*. Hospital staff should receive at least annual resuscitation training appropriate to their level and role. Medical and nursing staff should receive basic resuscitation training and should be encouraged to recognize patients who are at risk of having a cardiac arrest and call for appropriate help early. This is the most effective method of improving outcome (Jevon 2002). All medical staff should have advanced resuscitation training and senior nurses and doctors working in acute specialities (CCU, ITU, A&E) should hold a valid RCUK ALS certificate.
- *Cardiac arrest team*. Each hospital should have a team of approximately five people including a minimum of two doctors (physician and anaesthetist), an ALS-trained nurse, the RTO and a

porter when possible. Clear procedures should be available for calling the cardiac arrest team. The Resuscitation Council has recommended the development of a medical emergency team which recognizes patients at risk of having a cardiac arrest and initiates the most appropriate clinical intervention to prevent it (Jevon 2002). The development of Track and Trigger systems and MEWS (modified early warning system) alerts nurses to when a patient is deteriorating so that they can initiate interventions and early referral to critical care outreach teams or medical emergency teams (DH 2000, NICE 2007). Hospital staff are often trained in BLS techniques (see Figure 10.26) that are more appropriate for the single lay rescuer in an out-of-hospital environment. These new guidelines are aimed primarily at healthcare professionals who are first to respond to an in-hospital cardiac arrest (Figure 10.33). Some of the guidelines are also applicable to healthcare professionals in other clinical settings (Resuscitation Council 2004).

Figure 10.33 In-hospital resuscitation algorithm. CPR, cardiopulmonary resuscitation; IV, intravenous.

Courtesy of Resuscitation Council (2010b).



Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

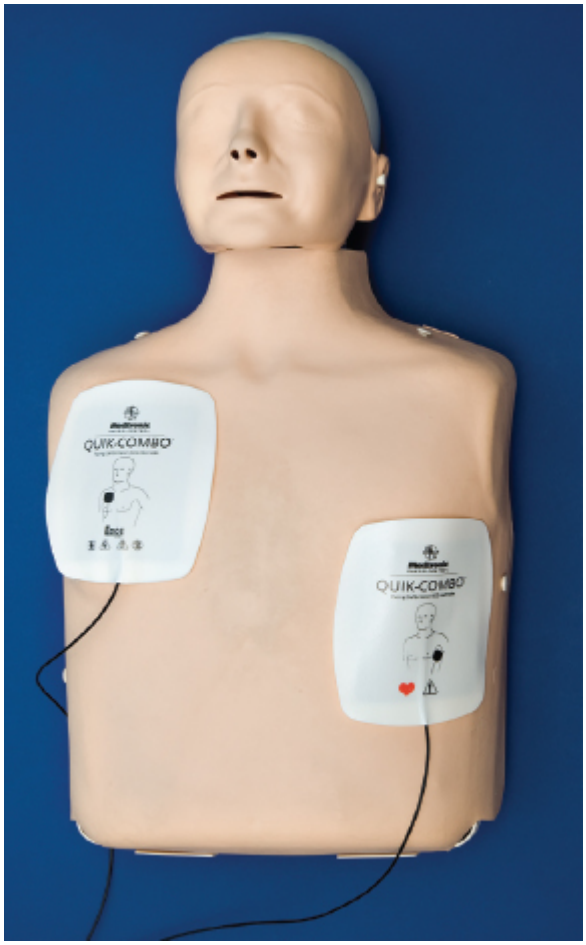
All hospital wards and appropriate departments, for example theatre, computed tomography (CT) scanning, should have a standardized cardiac arrest trolley or box. Resuscitation equipment should be checked on a daily basis (Resuscitation Council 2010b) by the staff on the wards or clinical areas responsible for it, and a record of this check should be maintained. Defibrillators should also be standardized. The use of AEDs or shock advisory defibrillators is recommended to reduce mortality from cardiac arrests related to ischaemic heart disease (Jevon 2002). Bossaert (1997) recommends that defibrillation should be a basic skill requirement of all nurses.

Training should be provided in the use of AEDs but if there is no trained individual present when a cardiac arrest occurs, the Resuscitation Council (UK) advises that an untrained individual should attempt AED defibrillation. The administration of a defibrillatory shock should not be delayed by waiting for more highly trained personnel to arrive. The same principle should apply to individuals whose period of qualification has expired (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Placement of paddles or self-adhesive electrodes

The right paddle or electrode should be placed to the right of the sternum below the clavicle and the left paddle vertically in the midaxillary line approximately level with the position V6 used in electrocardiogram (ECG) monitoring (see Figure 10.34).

Figure 10.34 Placement of defibrillation pads attached to defibrillator on patient's chest.



Safe defibrillation practice

Defibrillation in an environment where high flows of oxygen are present could represent a danger to patients and rescuers. It is therefore essential to ensure that oxygen tubing and equipment are moved away from the chest when defibrillation is performed. Using adhesive electrodes to deliver the shock as opposed to paddles may also minimize the danger (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

A *pocket mask with oxygen port* (Figure 10.35) may be used as an adjunct to administer mouth-to-mask ventilation for a patient with respiratory arrest. The patient should be in the supine position with the head in the sniffing position (head tilt, chin lift – see Figure 10.27). Apply the mask to the patient's face using the thumbs of both hands. Lift the jaw into the mask with the remaining fingers by exerting pressure behind the angles of the jaw (jaw thrust). Blow through the inspiratory

valve and watch the chest rise. Stop inflation and allow the chest to fall before blowing in the second breath.

Figure 10.35 Pocket mask with oxygen port.

A *self-inflating resuscitation bag* with oxygen reservoir and tubing (Figure 10.36) may be used to administer high inspired oxygen concentrations to a patient and can be connected to a facemask, laryngeal mask or tracheal mask. As the bag is squeezed, the contents are delivered to the patient's lungs and on release, the expired gas is diverted to the atmosphere via a one-way valve and the bag then refills automatically via an inlet at the opposite end. Used alone, the bag-valve apparatus ventilates the patient's lungs with ambient air only (FiO_2: 0.21), which can be increased to around 45% by attaching oxygen tubing and increasing the flow to 5–6 L/min directly to the bag adjacent to the air intake. If a reservoir system is attached and the oxygen flow is increased to 10 L/min, an inspired oxygen concentration of approximately 85% can be achieved (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Figure 10.36 Self-inflating resuscitation bag with oxygen reservoir.

An *oropharyngeal or Guedel airway* is a curved plastic tube, flanged and reinforced at the oral end with a flattened shape to ensure that it fits neatly between the tongue and the hard palate. It is used to overcome backward tongue displacement in an unconscious patient. Guedel airways come in sizes 2, 3 and 4, for small, medium and large adults respectively. Choosing the right size is done by measuring the Guedel airway from the corner of the mouth to the angle of the jaw/mandible, as indicated in Figure 10.37.

Figure 10.37 Measure the Guedel airway from the corner of the mouth to the angle of the jaw. Used with permission from Moule and Albarran (2009).

The technique for insertion of an oropharyngeal airway in the unconscious patient is as follows.

- Open the patient's mouth and ensure, by looking into the mouth, that there is no foreign material that may be pushed into the larynx.
- Insert the airway into the mouth in the 'upside-down' position as far as the junction of the hard and soft palate and then rotate the airway through 180° (Figures 10.38, 10.39, 10.40). Then insert the airway until it lies in the oropharynx. This rotation technique minimizes the chance of pushing the tongue backwards and downwards which would further obstruct the airway (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Figure 10.38 Insert the Guedel airway in an upside down position to the junction of the hard and soft palate. Used with permission from Moule and Albarran (2009).

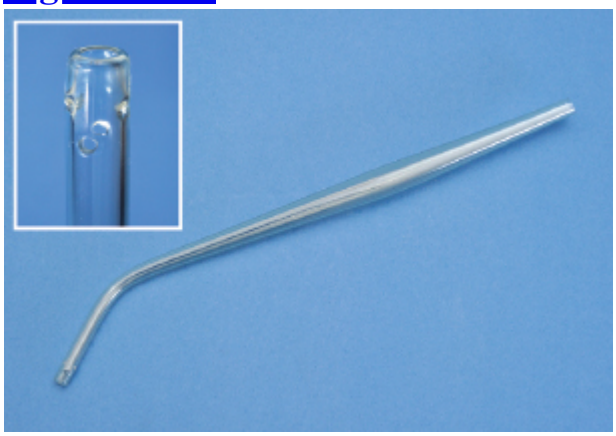
Figure 10.39 Rotate the Guedel airway 180° once you have reached the junction of the hard and soft palate. Used with permission from Moule and Albarran (2009).

Figure 10.40 Insert the Guedel airway until it lies in the oropharynx. Used with permission from Moule and Albarran (2009).

Use of the incorrect size oropharyngeal airway may result in trauma, laryngospasm and/or worsening of the airway obstruction.

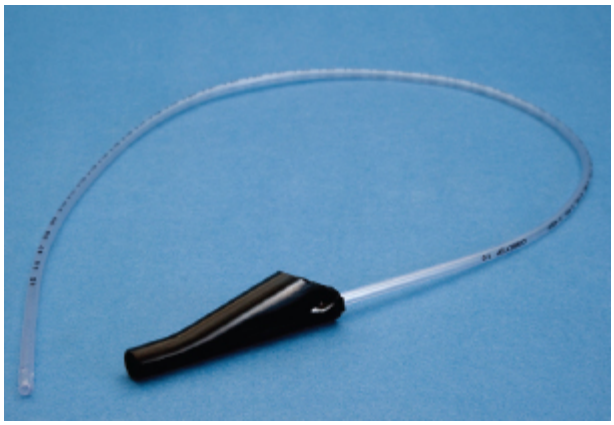
Suction equipment such as a wide-bore suction end (Yankauer sucker – Figure 10.41) should be used to remove liquid (blood, saliva and gastric contents) from the upper airway. This is done best under direct vision during intubation but should not result in any delay in achieving a definitive airway. If tracheal suction is necessary, it should be as brief as possible and preceded and followed by ventilation with 100% oxygen.

Figure 10.41 Yankauer sucker.



Endotracheal suction catheters (Figure 10.42) are used to clear secretions from endotracheal or tracheostomy tubes or laryngeal airway masks (Hallstrom *et al.* 2000, Resuscitation Council 2010b).

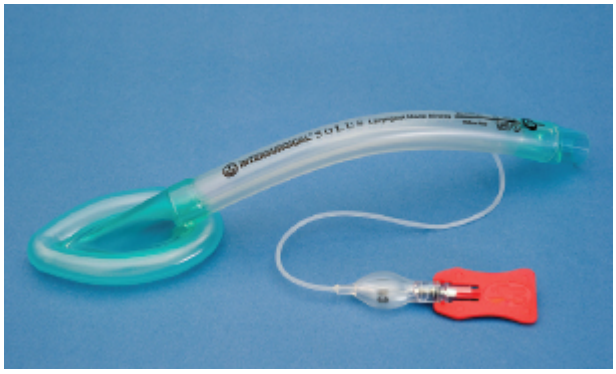
Figure 10.42 Endotracheal/tracheostomy suction catheter.



A *laryngeal mask airway* (LMA) (size 4) or Combitube (small) consists of a wide-bore tube with an elliptical inflated cuff designed to seal around the laryngeal opening. It is easier to ventilate a patient using

bag-valve-LMA ventilation than using bag-valve-facemask ventilation, because of difficulty of ensuring no air leak on the facemask, especially if there is only one person available to ventilate the patient. The LMA is a reliable and safe device and has a high success rate, after a short period of training (Figure 10.43) (Hallstrom *et al.* 2000, Resuscitation Council 2010b).

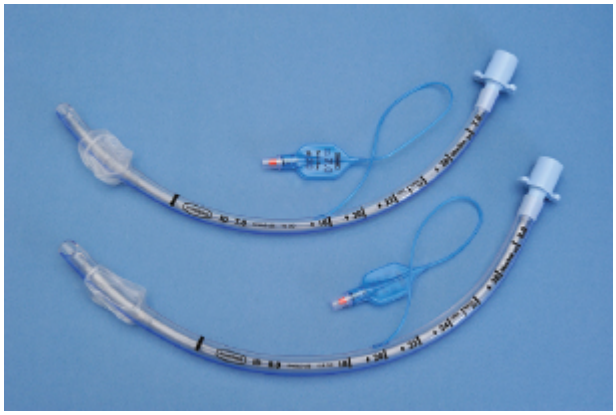
Figure 10.43 Laryngeal mask airway.



A *McGill forceps* (Figure 10.44) is a curved forceps which can be used by the anaesthetist for a difficult intubation and to help introduce an endotracheal tube during intubation (Figure 10.45). Tracheal intubation is considered to be superior to other advanced techniques of airway management because the airway is reliably isolated from foreign material in the oropharynx (Hallstrom *et al.* 2000). Extensive training and regular practice are required to acquire and maintain the skills of intubation, and endotracheal tubes (oral, cuffed, sizes 6, 7 and 8) are kept on emergency trolleys and should be sized according to the patient's size and gender.

Figure 10.44 McGill forceps.

Figure 10.45 Endotracheal tubes.



An *introducer* such as a gum elastic bougie (Figure 10.46) or a semi-rigid stylet is a useful aid to intubation. Water-soluble lubricating jelly is used prior to intubation or insertion of the LMA or nasopharyngeal airway to aid smooth insertion.

Figure 10.46 Bougie.

A *laryngoscope* (Figure 10.47) with both curved Macintosh and long blades is used by the anaesthetist to visualize the vocal cords prior to intubation. It consists of a handle with either rechargeable or removable batteries and a light source, which needs to be checked regularly, as well as just before use, and in case of malfunction spare batteries and light sources need to be available (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Figure 10.47 Laryngoscope handle and blade.

Assessment and recording tools

Decisions relating to CPR ideally should have been documented prior to a cardiac arrest. Every hospital should have a DNAR policy based on national guidelines (BMA *et al.* 2002, Jevon 2001).

During and after a cardiac arrest, all resuscitation attempts should be documented for auditing purposes, ideally using a nationally recognized template such as the Utstein template (recommended for use by the RCUK). If these recommendations are implemented, standards in resuscitation and resuscitation training should improve (Jevon 2002).

Pharmacological support

Only a few drugs are indicated during the immediate management of a cardiac arrest and there is only limited scientific evidence supporting their use. Drugs should be considered only after a sequence of shocks has been delivered (if indicated) and chest compressions and ventilation started (Resuscitation Council 2010b). Central venous access is optimum as it allows for drugs to be delivered rapidly. However, this is dependent on the skills available. If a peripheral intravenous cannula is already in place, it should be used first (Resuscitation Council 2010b). It is also possible to administer drugs using the intraosseous route, which is used commonly in the resuscitation of children.

The drugs used in the treatment of cardiac arrest are as follows.

- *Adrenaline* 1 mg (10 mL of a 1:10,000 solution) given intravenously. The main purpose of adrenaline is to utilize its inotropic effect to

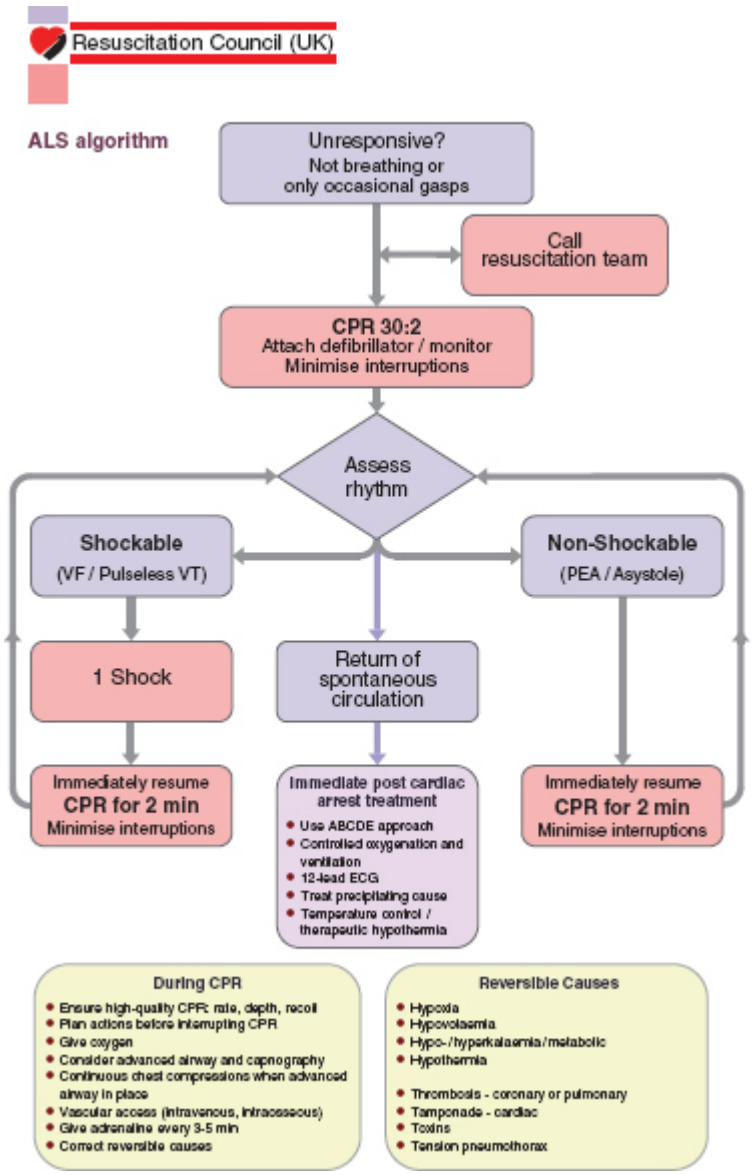
maintain coronary and cerebral perfusion during a prolonged resuscitation attempt. It is the first drug used in cardiac arrest of any aetiology. Adrenaline is included in the ALS universal algorithm (Figure 10.48), 1 mg to be given every 3–5 minutes (Resuscitation Council 2005).

- *Atropine* is no longer recommended routinely in patients with asystole or PEA (Resuscitation Council 2010b).
- *Amiodarone* (300 mg in 20 mL) should be considered in VF or pulseless VT. It increases the duration of the action potential in the atrial and ventricular myocardium; thus the QT interval is prolonged. In refractory VT or VF following recovery from cardiac arrest, a further 300 mg may be given followed by an infusion of 900 mg over 24 hours (Resuscitation Council 2010b). *Note*: lidocaine can still be considered if amiodarone is not available (Resuscitation Council 2010b).
- *Calcium chloride* (10 mL of 10%) is only given during resuscitation when specifically indicated, that is, for the treatment of PEA caused by hyperkalaemia, hypocalcaemia or overdose of calcium channel-blocking drugs (Resuscitation Council 2010b). Although it plays a vital role in the cellular mechanisms underlying myocardial contraction, there is little data supporting any beneficial action for calcium following most cases of cardiac arrest (Resuscitation Council 2010b).
- *Sodium bicarbonate* 8.4% is only used in prolonged cardiac arrest or according to serial blood gas analyses. Potential adverse effects of excessive sodium bicarbonate administration include hypokalaemia, exacerbation of respiratory acidosis and increased affinity of haemoglobin for oxygen. The high concentration of sodium can also exacerbate cerebral oedema. Other adverse effects are increased cardiac irritability and impaired myocardial performance. Sodium bicarbonate is usually given in 25–50 mmol aliquots and repeated as necessary. It can also be given in the special circumstances of tricyclic overdose or hyperkalaemia (Winser 2001).
- *Magnesium sulphate*. Magnesium (4–8 mmol of 50%) should be given in cardiac arrest where there is a suspicion of hypomagnesaemia

as this may precipitate refractory VF/VT (Winser 2001). It is important to recognize torsade de pointes. Many of these patients are hypomagnesaemic and/or hypokalaemic and part of effective treatment (prevention of recurrent episodes) will be giving intravenous magnesium and correction of any other electrolyte abnormality. The normal value for magnesium is 0.8–1.2 mmol/L (Wakeling and Mythen 2000).

Figure 10.48 The advanced life support algorithm for the management of cardiac arrest in adults. CPR, cardiopulmonary resuscitation; ECG, electrocardiogram; PEA, pulseless electrical activity; VF, ventricular fibrillation; VT, ventricular tachycardia.

Courtesy of Resuscitation Council (2010b).



Use prefilled syringes (mini-jets) whenever possible for speed and ease of use (Figures 10.49, 10.50, 10.51, 10.52. Drugs should be considered only after chest compressions and ventilation have been started and, where indicated, defibrillation attempted.

Figure 10.49 Mini-jet vial and administration chamber with Luer Lok connector. Used with permission from Moule and Albarran (2009).

Figure 10.50 Remove caps from both mini-jet vials and administration chamber. Used with permission from Moule and Albarran (2009).

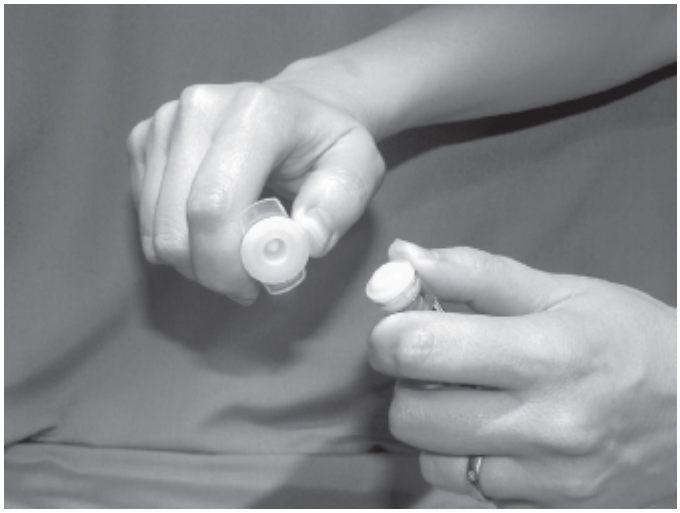


Figure 10.51 Screw mini-jet vial into administration chamber. Used with permission from Moule and Albarran (2009).

Figure 10.52 Push vial gently to ensure that medication can be administered and connect Luer Lok to intravenous device and inject entire contents. Used with permission from Moule and Albarran (2009).

Specific patient preparations

Education

Hospital staff should receive at least annual resuscitation training appropriate to their level and role. Medical and nursing staff should receive basic resuscitation training and should be encouraged to recognize patients who are at risk of having a cardiac arrest and call for appropriate help early. MEWS is a track and trigger system which alerts nurses to when a patient is deteriorating in order to initiate interventions

and early referral to critical care outreach teams (DH 2000, NICE 2007). This is the most effective method of improving outcome (Jevon 2002). All medical staff should have advanced resuscitation training and senior nurses and doctors working in acute specialties (CCU, ITU, A&E) should hold a valid RCUK ALS certificate. The importance of prevention of cardiac arrest cannot be highlighted enough. Using a structured communication tool, such as Situation, Background, Assessment, Recommendation (SBAR) may help to indentify patients at risk in a timely manner (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Procedure guideline 10.5
Cardiopulmonary resuscitation

Essential equipment

Airway management

- Pocket masks with oxygen port
- Self-inflating resuscitation bag with oxygen reservoir and tubing
- Clear facemasks in sizes 4, 5 and 6
- Oropharyngeal airways in sizes 2, 3 and 4
- Yankauer suckers × 2
- Endotracheal suction catheters × 10
- Laryngeal mask airway (size 4) or Combitube (small)
- McGill forceps
- Endotracheal tubes: oral, cuffed, sizes 6, 7 and 8
- Gum elastic bougie
- Lubricating jelly
- Laryngoscopes × 2: normal and long blades
- Spare laryngoscope bulbs and batteries
- 1 inch ribbon gauze/tape
- Scissors
- Syringe: 20 mL
- Clear oxygen mask with reservoir bag
- Oxygen cylinders × 2 (if no wall oxygen)

- Cylinder key

Circulation equipment

- Intravenous cannulas: 18 gauge × 3, 14 gauge × 3
- Hypodermic needles: 21 gauge × 10
- Syringes: 2 mL × 6, 5 mL × 6, 10 mL × 6, 20 mL × 6
- Cannula fixing dressings and tapes × 4
- Seldinger wire central venous catheter kits × 2
- 12 gauge non-Seldinger central venous catheter × 2
- Intravenous administration sets × 3
- 0.9% sodium chloride: 1000 mL bags × 2

Optional equipment

- Extra ECG electrodes
- Extra defibrillation gel pads unless using fast patch electrodes
- Clock
- Gloves/goggles/aprons
- A sliding sheet or similar device should be available for safe handling

Medicinal products

Immediately available prefilled syringes of:

- Atropine: 3 mg × 1
- Amiodarone: 300 mg × 1
- Adrenaline: 1 mg (1:10,000) × 4

Other readily available drugs used in CPR

- Epinephrine (adrenaline): 1 mg (1:10,000) × 4
- Sodium bicarbonate 8.4%: 50 mL × 1
- Calcium chloride 10%: 10 mL × 2
- Lidocaine: 100 mg × 2
- Atropine: 1 mg × 2
- 0.9% sodium chloride: 10 mL ampoules × 10
- Naloxone: 400 g × 2
- Epinephrine/adrenaline 1:1000 × 2
- Amiodarone: 150 mg × 4
- Magnesium sulphate 50% solution: 2 g (4 mL) × 1

- Potassium chloride 40 mmol × 1
- Adenosine: 6 mg × 10
- Hydrocortisone: 200 mg × 1
- Glucose 10%: 500 mL × 1

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Note time of arrest, if witnessed.	Lack of cerebral perfusion for approximately 3–4 minutes can lead to irreversible brain damage. E
Procedure	
2 Give patient precordial thump only in witnessed collapse and in cardiac monitored arrest if defibrillator not immediately available.	This may restore cardiac rhythm, which will give a cardiac output. E Single precordial thump has low success rate for cardioversion of shockable rhythm (Haman *et al.* 2009, E).
3 Summon help. If a second nurse is available, they can call for the cardiac arrest team, bring emergency equipment and screen off the area.	Maintain patient's privacy and dignity. CPR is more effective with two rescuers. One is responsible for inflating the lungs, and the other for chest compressions. Continue until medical help arrives (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C).
4 Lie patient flat on a firm surface/bed. If on a chair, lower the patient to the floor, ensuring that the head is supported.	Effective external cardiac massage can be performed only on a hard surface (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C).
5 If patient is in bed, remove bed head and ensure adequate space between back of bed and wall.	To allow easy access to patient's head in order to facilitate intubation. E
6 Ensure a clear airway. If cervical spine injury is excluded, extend, not hyperextend, the neck (thus lifting the tongue off the posterior wall of the pharynx). This is best achieved by lifting the chin forwards with the finger and thumb of one hand while pressing the forehead backwards with the heel of the other hand (see Figure 10.26). If this fails to establish an airway, there may be obstruction by a foreign body. Try to remove the obstruction if visible. Insert oropharyngeal Guedel airway if you have appropriate training. see Figures 10.37-10.40 Do not remove well-fitted dentures.	To establish and maintain airway, thus facilitating ventilation (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C). They help to create a mouth-to-mask seal during ventilation. E
7 Place the heel of one hand in the centre of the sternum and place the other on top, ensuring that the hands are located between the middle and the lower half of the sternum. Ensure that only the heel of the dominant hand is touching the sternum. Place the other hand on top, straighten the elbows and make sure shoulders are directly over the patient's chest. The sternum should be depressed sharply by 5–6 cm. The cardiac compressions should be forceful, and sustained at a rate of 100–120 per minute.	To ensure accuracy of external cardiac compression and reduced delay in commencing cardiac compressions (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C). This produces a cardiac output by applying direct downward force and compression (Smith 2000. R3).
8 Apply facemask with Ambu-bag over nose and mouth.	Room air contains only 21% oxygen.

Compress bag in a rhythmical fashion: the bag should be attached to an oxygen source, 12–15 litres. In order to deliver +85% oxygen, a reservoir may be attached to the Ambu-bag. If, however, oxygen is not immediately available, the Ambu-bag will deliver ambient air.	In shock, a low cardiac output, together with ventilation/perfusion mismatch, results in severe hypoxaemia. The importance of providing a high oxygen gradient from mouth to vital cells cannot be exaggerated and so oxygen should be added during CPR as soon as it is available (80–100% is desirable) (Simmons 2002, R3).
9 Maintain cardiac compression and ventilation at a ratio of 30:2. This rate can be achieved effectively by counting out loud 'one and two', and so on. There should be a slight pause to ensure that the delivered breath is sufficient to cause the patient's chest to rise. This must continue until cardiac output returns and the patient has a palpable blood pressure.	Counting aloud will ensure co-ordination of ventilation and compression ratio. To maintain circulation and oxygenation, thus reducing risk of damage to vital organs. E
10 When the cardiac arrest team arrives, it will assume responsibility for the arrest in liaison with the ward staff.	To ensure an effective expert team co-ordinates the resuscitation (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C).
11 Attach patient to ECG monitor using three electrodes or defibrillation patches/paddles.	To obtain adequate ECG signal. Accurate recording of cardiac rhythm will determine the appropriate treatment to be initiated. E
Intubation in CPR **12** Continue to ventilate and oxygenate the patient before intubation.	The risks of cardiac arrhythmias due to hypoxia are decreased (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C).
13 Equipment for intubation should be checked before handing to appropriate medical/nursing staff **(a)** Suction equipment is operational. **(b)** The cuff of the endotracheal tube inflates and deflates. **(c)** The endotracheal tube is well lubricated. **(d)** That catheter mount with swivel connector is ready for use.	To ensure all equipment is working prior to use. E
14 During intubation, the anaesthetist may request cricoid pressure. This involves compressing the oesophagus between the cricoid ring and the sixth cervical vertebra.	To prevent the risk of regurgitation of gastric contents and the consequent risk of pulmonary aspiration (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C).
15 Recommence ventilation and oxygenation once intubation is completed.	Intubation should interrupt resuscitation only for a maximum of 16 seconds to prevent the occurrence of

	cerebral anoxia (Handley *et al.* 1997, R3).
16 Once the patient's trachea has been intubated, chest compressions, at a rate of 100–120 per minute, should continue uninterrupted (except for defibrillation and pulse check when indicated) and ventilation should continue at approximately 12 breaths per minute. Compression should continue while the defibrillator is charging.	Uninterrupted compression results in a substantially higher mean coronary perfusion pressure. A pause in chest compressions allows the coronary perfusion pressure to fall. On resuming compressions, there is some delay before the original coronary perfusion pressure is restored (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C). Reducing preshock pause improves time of compression which has a more favourable outcome for patient.

Intravenous access in CPR

17 Venous access must be established through a large vein as soon as possible.	To administer emergency cardiac drugs and fluid replacement (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C).
18 Asepsis should be maintained throughout.	To prevent local and/or systemic infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
19 The correct rate of infusion is required.	To ensure maximum drug and/or solution effectiveness. E
20 Accurate recording of the administration of solutions infused and drugs added is essential.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2009, C).

Defibrillation

21 Apply pads/paddles to chest. It may be necessary to shave the chest.	To ensure the pads/paddles are applied correctly and make adequate contact which enhances electrical contact (van Alem *et al.* 2003, C).
22 Remove oxygen source at least 1 metre from patient unless intubated.	To reduce the risk of sparks from igniting the oxygen source (Nolan *et al.* 2005, C).
23 The person delivering the shock must ask all members of the resuscitation team to stand clear of the patient.	To ensure that none of the resuscitation team are in contact with the patient or the bed as they may also receive the shock (Perkins and Lockey 2008, C).
24 Deliver single shock to treat VF/ pulseless VT.	To terminate pulseless VT, VF and restart the heart by depolarizing its electrical conduction system and delivering brief measured electrical shocks to the chest wall or the heart muscle itself (Eftestol *et al.* 2002, C; Wik *et al.* 2003, R1).
Postprocedure	
25 Check patient by assessing airway, breathing, circulation, blood pressure and urine output.	To ensure a clear airway, adequate oxygenation and ventilation and aim to maintain normal sinus rhythm and a cardiac output adequate for perfusion of vital organs. To ensure adequacy of ventilation and oxygenation (Perkins and Lockey 2008, C).
26 Check arterial blood gases.	To ensure correction of acid/base balance (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C).
27 Check full blood count, clotting and biochemistry.	To exclude anaemia as a contributor to myocardial ischaemia. A clotting disorder

	may have contributed to a major haemorrhage. Replacement stored blood for transfusion has fewer clotting factors and the patient may require replacement of clotting factors usually in the form of fresh frozen plasma. E To assess renal function and electrolyte balance (K^+, Mg^{2+} and Ca^{2+}). To ensure normoglycaemia. To commence serial cardiac enzyme assay (Nolan *et al.* 2005, C; Resuscitation Council 2010b, C).
28 Monitor patient's cardiac rhythm and record 12-lead ECG.	Normal sinus rhythm is required for optimum cardiac function (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C). An assessment of whether cardiac arrest has been associated with a myocardial infarction should be made, as the patient may be suitable for coronary angioplasty or thrombolytic therapy (Nolan *et al.* 2005, C).
29 A chest X-ray should be taken.	To establish correct position of tracheal tube, gastric tube and central venous catheter. To exclude left ventricular failure, pulmonary aspiration and pneumothorax. To establish size and shape of heart (Nolan *et al.* 2006, C).
30 Continue respiratory therapy aiming for SaO_2 94–98% for adults.	Hypoxia and hypercarbia both increase the likelihood of a further cardiac arrest (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C).
31 Assess patient's level of consciousness. This can be done by use of the Glasgow Coma Scale. Although this is intended primarily for head injury, it is clinically relevant. It contains five levels of consciousness: **(a)** Conscious and alert **(b)** Drowsy but responsive to verbal commands **(c)** Unconscious but responsive to minimal painful stimuli **(d)** Unconscious and responsive to deep painful stimuli **(e)** Unconscious and unresponsive. See Chapter 12	Once a heart has been resuscitated to a stable rhythm and cardiac output, the organ that influences an individual's survival most significantly is the brain (Resuscitation Council 2010b, C). Initial assessment and regular monitoring will alert the nurse to any changes in function.

.

32 The patient should be stable prior to any transfer and nursed in the appropriate position, that is semi-Fowler or the recovery position. Avoid nursing supine as this physiologically hinders cardiac output and respiration, unless clinically indicated for patients with acute head or spinal cord injury. Careful explanation and reassurance are vital at all times, particularly if the patient is conscious and aware.

Transferring a patient post arrest may pose risks because of changes in their haemodynamic status. This is due to movement of the trolley – inertia, changes in environment and/or changing equipment, which may impact negatively on the patient's physiological status (Shirley and Bion 2004, E).

Nursing a patient in semi-Fowler's position ensures good air entry, and reduces risks for aspiration for patients not contraindicated for head of bed to be elevated (Tablan *et al.* 2004, C).

Problem-solving table 10.3 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 10.5)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Suggested action
Defibrillator not working	Battery pack not charged	Ensure defibrillator is plugged into the mains so battery can recharge	Check defibrillator when doing emergency trolley checks as per hospital policy
No trace when ECG dots or pads are on patient	ECG dots or pads dry Test plug connected to lead	Change ECG dots/pads as they can dry out Ensure that the test plug is not attached	Check expiratory dates of ECG dots/pads when checking emergency trolley/ equipment After emergency trolley checks, ensure that the test plug is no longer attached
Staff unable to use defibrillator	Not had training	Mandatory yearly BLS training for staff who will be present during CPR, and ALS every 3 years for staff who work in specialized areas for example critical care Standardize equipment throughout the hospital	Find a member of staff who is trained in using defibrillator. AED defibrillators should be available as they can be used by people without training.
Laryngoscope light not working	Laryngoscope handle not charged	Ensure that the laryngoscope handle is charged using rechargeable batteries or new batteries inserted Change laryngoscope light	Check laryngoscope when doing resuscitation equipment checks as per hospital policy If using rechargeable batteries, ensure laryngoscope handle is docked Have spare batteries if not using rechargeable Have spare light bulbs/ spare disposable laryngoscope blades on the emergency trolley
Problem	**Cause**	**Prevention**	**Suggested action**
Portable suction not working	Battery pack not charged Incorrectly connected tubing	Ensure that suction unit is plugged in so battery can charge Check that tubing correctly connected	Check portable suction is on charge and tubing correctly connected when checking resuscitation equipment as per hospital policy
Emergency drugs missing/expired	Trolley not checked Equipment removed without having been replaced	Have a checklist of the emergency drugs that need to be on the resuscitation trolley	Check drugs and expiry dates when checking resuscitation equipment and resuscitation trolley as per hospital policy and lock trolley for safekeeping of drugs
Equipment missing off resuscitation trolley	Removal of equipment without replacing or returning it	Have a checklist of all equipment needed on resuscitation trolley	Check resuscitation trolley list as per hospital policy. Replace any missing or expired equipment Seal/lock trolley after

checks/use

Educate all staff not to remove equipment from trolley other than in a cardiac arrest

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Following stabilization of the patient post cardiac or respiratory arrest, consideration should be given to moving them to an appropriate critical care or high-dependency environment. All established monitoring should continue during transfer and the patient should be transferred by individuals capable of monitoring the patient and responding appropriately to any change in the patient's condition, including a further cardiac arrest. A critical care outreach service or designated transfer team, if available, may contribute to the care of the patient during stabilization and transfer (Nolan *et al.* 2006, Resuscitation Council 2010b, Shirley and Bion 2004).

Ongoing care

The patient's haemodynamic status should be continually monitored post resuscitation, as well as observing the patient's level of consciousness, respiration rate and if possible urine output. Monitor blood glucose levels in adults with sustained return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC) after cardiac arrest. Maintaining blood glucose values > 10 mmol/L, they should be treated in an HDU/ICU environment, however hypoglycaemia must be avoided (Resuscitation Council 2010b). Documentation of physiological parameters needs to continue and any change in haemodynamic status needs to be reported to the medical team or senior nursing staff attending to the patient prior to transfer to the CCU or HDU.

The Intensive Care Society (UK) has published guidelines for the transport of the critically ill adult (www.ics.ac.uk). These outline the requirements for equipment and personnel when transferring critically ill

patients (Nolan *et al.* 2006, Resuscitation Council 2006, Sandroni *et al.* 2007, Shirley and Bion 2004).

Careful explanation and reassurance must be given to the patient before transfer, particularly if the patient is conscious and aware. The patient's relatives will require considerable support and will need to be kept informed of the transfer of their relative and to where. It is important that if the family were not present during the arrest, the appropriate member of the medical team contacts the next of kin and informs them of the arrest and its outcome. If the patient has survived, the next of kin/family will need to know that the patient has been moved to a more appropriate environment for continued monitoring.

Please note: whether the resuscitation attempt was successful or not, the pastoral needs of all those associated with the arrest should not be forgotten (Resuscitation Council 2010b, Sandroni *et al.* 2007).

Documentation

Good record keeping is an integral part of nursing practice, and is essential to the provision of safe and effective care (NMC 2009). There must be documentary evidence of how decisions relating to the patient were made. Accurate recording of the administration of solutions infused and drugs added is essential. All resuscitation attempts should be audited, ideally using a nationally recognized template such as the Utstein template (recommended for use by the Resuscitation Council 2010b). Hospitals should collect data regarding cardiac arrest for the National Cardiac Arrest Audit (NCAA) (Resuscitation Council 2010b).

Education of patient and relevant others

Prevention of cardiac arrest is the most important factor for survival. Education of the patient and relevant others needs to start at first contact with healthcare professionals regarding lifestyle changes, diet, exercise, smoking cessation, and regular check-ups to treat or control any underlying causes such as hypertension and diabetes.

Complications

Some possible complications may arise from cardiopulmonary resuscitation.

- Gastric distension due to bagging too forcefully and/or too quickly, causing air to enter the stomach. A nasogastric tube should be inserted as soon as the airway is secure, to help prevent and manage gastric distension which may cause vomiting and possible aspiration into the lungs.
- Fractured ribs, sternum, punctured lungs can occur as a result of chest compressions. The correct placement of hands during chest compression is vital in helping to prevent fracturing of ribs and sternum.
- Transmission of disease through mouth-to-mouth ventilation. The use of a pocket resuscitation mask with a one-way valve will prevent the transmission of infection from bodily fluids during ventilation (DH 2007).

Websites

British Lung Foundation: www.lunguk.org/

British Thoracic Society: www.brit-thoracic.org.uk

BTS guideline for emergency oxygen use in adult patients: www.brit-thoracic.org.uk/emergencyoxygen/

Intensive Care Society: www.ics.ac.uk/

NPSA Rapid Response Alert May 2008: www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk

Resuscitation Council UK: www.resus.org.uk

Smoking Cessation Programme Development Group at NICE: www.publichealth.nice.org.uk/page.aspx?o=SmokingCessationPGMain

References

AHA/ILCOR (American Heart Association/International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation) (2000) Guidelines 2000 for CPR and

emergency care: an international consensus on science. *Resuscitation*, **46** (1), 73–92, 109–114.

Ahrens, T. and Tucker, K. (1999) Pulse oximetry. *Critical Care Nursing Clinics of North America*, **11** (1), 87–98.

Austin, R. and Snow, A. (2000) Defibrillation, in *Resuscitation: A Guide for Nurses* (ed. A. Cheller). Harcourt, London, pp. 141–157.

Ball, C. (2000) Optimizing oxygen delivery: haemodynamic workshop. Part 3. *Intensive Care Nursing*, **16** (2), 84–87.

Baskett, P.J., Nolan, J.P., Handley, A., Soar, J., Biarent, D. and Richmond, S. (2005) European Resuscitation Council guidelines for resuscitation 2005. Section 9. Principles of training in resuscitation. *Resuscitation*, **67** (Suppl 1), S181–189.

Becker, D. (2007) Cardiac anatomy and physiology and assessment, in *Critical Care Nursing: Synergy for Optimal Outcomes* (eds R. Kaplow and S.R. Hardin). Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Sudbury, MA, pp. 121–138

Benditt, J.O. (2000) Adverse effects of low-flow oxygen therapy. *Respiratory Care*, **45** (1), 54–61.

Berne, R.M. (2004) *Physiology*, 5th edn. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

Bersten, A.D., Soni, N. and Oh, T.E. (2009) *Oh's Intensive Care Manual*, 6th edn. Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford.

Billau, C. (2004) Suctioning, in *Tracheostomy: A Multiprofessional Handbook* (eds. C. Russell and B.F. Matta). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 157–172.

BMA (2000) *The Impact of the Human Rights Act on Medical Decision-Making*. British Medical Association, London.

BMA, RCN, Resuscitation Council (UK) and Age Concern (2002) *Decisions Relating to Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation: Model Information Leaflet*. British Medical Association, London.

Bond, P., Grant, F., Coltart, L. and Elder, F. (2003) Best practice in the care of patients with a tracheostomy. *Nursing Times*, **99** (30), 24–25.

Bossaert, L.L. (1997) Fibrillation and defibrillation of the heart. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **79** (2), 203–213.

Bowers, B. and Scase, C. (2007) Tracheostomy: facilitating successful discharge from hospital to home. *British Journal of Nursing*, **16** (8), 476–479.

Bryan-Brown, C.W. and Dracup, K. (2000) Too much of a good thing? *American Journal of Critical Care*, **9** (5), 300–303.

BTS (British Thoracic Society) (2008) BTS guideline for emergency oxygen use in adult patients. www.brit-thoracic.org.uk/emergencyoxygen.

Carpenter, K.D. (1991) Oxygen transport in the blood. *Critical Care Nurse*, **11** (9), 20–33.

Carroll, P. (1997) When you want humidity. *RN*, **60** (5), 30–34.

Celik, S.A. and Kanan, N. (2006) A current conflict: use of isotonic sodium chloride solution on endotracheal suctioning in critically ill patients. *Dimensions of Critical Care Nursing: DCCN*, **25** (1), 11–14.

Clotworthy, N. (2006a) Post-operative care of the patient following a laryngectomy, in *Guidelines for the Care of Patients with Tracheostomy Tubes*. St George's Healthcare NHS Trust, London, pp. 15–16.

Clotworthy, N. (2006b) Tracheostomy tubes, in *Guidelines for the Care of Patients with Tracheostomy Tubes*. St George's Healthcare NHS Trust, London, pp. 9–14.

Clotworthy, N. (2006c) Suctioning, in *Guidelines for the Care of Patients with Tracheostomy Tubes*. St George's Healthcare NHS Trust, London, pp. 23–26.

Cooper, N. (2002) Oxygen therapy – myths and misconceptions. *Care of the Critically Ill*, **18** (3), 74–77.

Day, T. (2000) Tracheal suctioning: when, why and how. *Nursing Times*, **96** (20), 13–15.

Day, T., Farnell, S. and Wilson-Barnett, J. (2002) Suctioning: a review of current research recommendations. *Intensive Care Nursing*, **18** (2), 79–89.

Dean, B. (1997) Evidence-based suction management in accident and emergency: a vital component of airway care. *Accident and Emergency Nursing*, **5** (2), 92–98.

De Leyn, P., Bedert, L., Delcroix, M. *et al.* (2007) Tracheotomy: clinical review and guidelines. *European Journal of Cardio-Thoracic Surgery*, **32** (3), 412–421.

Demers, R.R. (2002) Bacterial/viral filtration. Let the breather beware! *Chest*, **120**, 1377–1389.

DH (2000) *Comprehensive Critical Care: A Review of Adult Critical Care Services*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2007) *Pandemic Influenza: Guidance for Infection Control in Hospitals and Primary Care Settings*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk.

Docherty, B. and Hall, S. (2002) Basic life support and AED. *Professional Nurse*, **17** (12), 705–706.

Dolan, S. and Preston, N.J. (2006) Malignant effusions, in *Nursing Patients with Cancer: Principles and Practice* (eds N. Kearney and A. Richardson). Elsevier Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh, pp. 619–632.

Dropkin, M.J. (1996) Nursing research: SOHN's 20-year experience. *Otorhinolaryngology-Head and Neck Nursing*, **14** (3), 14–16.

Edgtton-Winn, M. and Wright, K. (2005) Tracheostomy: a guide to nursing care. *Australian Nursing Journal*, **13** (5), 17–20.

Eftestol, T., Sunde, K. and Steen, P.A. (2002) Effects of interrupting precordial compressions on the calculated probability of defibrillation success during out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Circulation*, **105** (19), 2270–2273.

Epstein, O. (2009) *Pocket Guide to Clinical Examination*, 4th edn. Mosby, Edinburgh.

Esmond, G. (2001) *Respiratory Nursing*. Bailliére Tindall, London.

Estes, R.J. and Meduri, G.U. (1995) The pathogenesis of ventilator-associated pneumonia: I. Mechanisms of bacterial transcolonization and airway inoculation. *Intensive Care Medicine*, **21** (4), 365–383.

Fell, H. and Boehm, M. (1998) Easing the discomfort of oxygen therapy. *Nursing Times*, **94** (38), 56–58.

Foss, M.A. (1990) Oxygen therapy. *Professional Nurse*, **5** (4), 188–190.

Fraise, A.P. and Bradley, T. (eds) (2009) *Ayliffe's Control of Healthcare-associated Infection: A Practical Handbook*, 5th edn. Hodder Arnold, London.

Glass, C.A. and Grap, M.J. (1995) Ten tips for safer suctioning. *American Journal of Nursing*, **95** (5), 51–53.

Griggs, A. (1998) Tracheostomy: suctioning and humidification. *Nursing Standard*, **13** (2), 49–53.

Guyton, A.C. and Hall, J.E. (2006) *Textbook of Medical Physiology*, 11th edn. Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia.

Hallstrom, A., Cobb, L., Johnson, E. and Copass, M. (2000) Cardiopulmonary resuscitation by chest compression alone or with mouth-to-mouth ventilation. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **342**, 1546–1553.

Haman, L. Parizek, P. and Vojacek, J. (2009) Precordial thump efficacy in termination of induced ventricular arruthmias. *Resuscitation*, **80**, 14–16.

Hampton, S. (1998) Film subjects win the day. *Nursing Times*, **94** (24), 80–82.

Handley, A.J. (2004) Basic life support, in *ABC of Resuscitation* (eds M. Colqhoun, A. Handley and T. Evans), 4th edn. BMJ Books, London, pp. 1–4.

Handley, A.J., Becker, L.B., Allen, M., van Drenth, A., Kramer, E.B. and Montgomery, W.H. (1997) Single rescuer adult basic life support. An advisory statement from the Basic Life Support Working Group of the International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation (ILCOR). *Resuscitation*, **34** (2), 101–108.

Harkin, H. (2004) Decannulation, in *Tracheostomy: A Multiprofessional Handbook* (eds C. Russell and B.F. Matta). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 255–268.

Hauff, S.R., Rea, T.D., Culley, L.L. *et al.* (2003) Factors impeding dispatcher-assisted telephone cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Annals of Emergency Medicine*, **42** (6), 731–737.

Hess, D. (2000) Detection and monitoring of hypoxemia and oxygen therapy. *Respiratory Care*, **45** (1), 65–80.

Hess, D.R. (2005) Tracheostomy tubes and related appliances. *Respiratory Care*, **50** (4), 497–510.

Higgins, D. (2009) Basic nursing principles of caring for patients with a tracheostomy. *Nursing Times*, **105** (3), 14–15.

Hodgetts, T.J. and Castle, N. (1999) *Resuscitation Rules*. BMJ, London.

Hough, A. (2001) *Physiotherapy in Respiratory Care: An Evidence-Based Approach to Respiratory and Cardiac Management*, 3rd edn. Nelson Thornes, Cheltenham.

ICS (2008) *Standards for the Care of Adult Patients with a Temporary Tracheostomy*. Intensive Care Society, London. www.ics.ac.uk/intensive_care_professional/standards_and_guidelines/care_of_the_adult_patient_with_a_temporary_tracheostomy_2008.

Ireton, J. (2007) Tracheostomy suction: a protocol for practice. *Paediatric Nursing*, **19** (10), 14–18.

Jevon, P. (2001) Cardiopulmonary resuscitation. Initial assessment. *Nursing Times*, **97** (41), 41–42.

Jevon, P. (2002) Resuscitation in hospital: Resuscitation Council (UK) recommendations. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (33), 41–44.

Kumar, P.J. and Clark, M.L. (2009) *Kumar and Clark's Clinical Medicine*, 7th edn. Saunders/Elsevier, Edinburgh.

Lewarski, J.S. (2005) Long-term care of the patient with a tracheostomy. *Respiratory Care*, **50** (4), 534–537.

MacIntyre, N.R. and Branson, R.D. (2009) *Mechanical Ventilation*, 2nd edn. Saunders Elsevier, St Louis, MO.

Marieb, E.N., Kollett, L.S. and Zao, P.Z. (2008) *Human Anatomy and Physiology Laboratory Manual: Main Version*, 8th edn. Pearson Benjamin Cummings, San Francisco.

Marieb, E.N., Hoehn, K. and Hutchinson, M. (2010) *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th edn. Pearson Benjamin Cummings, San Francisco.

MDA (2000) *Continuous Positive Airway Pressure (CPAP) Circuits: Risk of Misassembly*.

www.mhra.gov.uk/Publications/Safetywarnings/MedicalDeviceAlerts/Safetynotices/CON008853.

Moran, G. (2010) *A Beginner's Guide to Normal Heart Function, Sinus Rhythm and Common Cardiac Arrhythmias*. Division of Nursing, University of Nottingham, Nottingham. www.nottingham.ac.uk/nursing/practice/resources/cardiology/introduction/index.php.

Moser, D.K. and Chung, M.L. (2003) Critical care nursing practice regarding patient anxiety assessment and management. *Intensive Care and Critical Care Nursing*, **19** (5), 275–288.

Moule, P and Albarran, J.W. (eds) (2009) *Practical Resuscitation for Healthcare Professionals*. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Nelson, L. (1999) Points of friction. *Nursing Times*, **95** (34), 72–75.

NICE (2006) *Brief Interventions and Referral for Smoking Cessation in Primary Care and Other Settings*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2007) *Acutely Ill Patients in Hospital: Recognition of and Response to Acute Illness in Adults in Hospital*. National Institute of Health and Clinical Excellence, London. www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/CG50FullGuidance.pdf.

NMC (2008a) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2008b) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent/.

NMC (2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

Nolan, J., Deakin, C.D., Soar, J., Bottiger, B.W. and Smith, G. (2005) European Resuscitation Council guidelines for resuscitation 2005. Section 4. Adult advanced life support. *Resuscitation*, **67** (Suppl 1), S39–86.

Nolan, J., Soar, J., Lockey, A. *et al.* (2006) *Advanced Life Support*, 5th edn. Resuscitation Council (UK), London.

NPSA (2007) *The Fifth Report from the Patient Safety Observatory. Safety Care for the Acutely Ill Patient: Learning from Incidents*. National Patient Safety Agency, London. www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/?entryid45=59828.

NPSA (2009) *Rapid Response Report NPSA/2009/RRR006: Oxygen Safety in Hospitals*. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

O'Driscoll, B.R., Howard, L.S., Davison, A.G. and British Thoracic Society (2008) BTS guideline for emergency oxygen use in adult patients. *Thorax*, **63** (Suppl VI), 1–73. www.brit-thoracic.org.uk/Portals/0/Clinical%20Information/Emergency%20Oxygen/Emergency%20oxygen%20guideline/THX-63-Suppl_6.pdf.

Paradis, N. (2007) *Cardiac: The Science and Practice of Resuscitation Medicine*, 2nd edn. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 3–26.

Patel, J. and Matta, B. (2004) Percutaneous dilatational tracheostomy, in *Tracheostomy: A Multiprofessional Handbook* (eds C. Russell and B.F. Matta). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 59–68.

Perel, P., Roberts, I. and Pearson, M. (2007) Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* **4**, CD000567-NaN.

Perkins, G.D. and Lockey, A.S. (2008) Defibrillation – safety versus efficacy. *Resuscitation*, **79**, 1–3.

Perkins, G.D., Stephenson, B., Hulme, J. and Monsieurs, K.G. (2005) Birmingham assessment of breathing study (BABS). *Resuscitation*, **64** (1), 109–113.

Pierce, L.N.B. (1995) *Guide to Mechanical Ventilation and Intensive Respiratory Care*. W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia.

Pierson, D.J. (2000) Pathophysiology and clinical effects of chronic hypoxia. *Respiratory Care*, **45** (1), 39–51.

Price, T. (2004a) Surgical tracheostomy, in *Tracheostomy: A Multiprofessional Handbook* (eds C. Russell and B.F. Matta). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 35–58.

Price, T. (2004b) What is a tracheostomy? in *Tracheostomy: A Multiprofessional Handbook* (eds C. Russell and B.F. Matta). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 29–34.

Prior, T. and Russell, S. (2004) Tracheostomy and head & neck cancer, in *Tracheostomy: A Multiprofessional Handbook* (eds C. Russell and B.F. Matta). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 269–283.

Pryor, J.A. and Prasad, S.A. (2008) *Physiotherapy for Respiratory and Cardiac Problems: Adults and Paediatrics*, 4th edn. Churchill Livingstone Elsevier, Edinburgh.

Resuscitation Council (2004) *CPR Guidance for Clinical Practice and Training in Hospitals*. Resuscitation Council, London. www.resus.org.uk/pages/standard.pdf.

Resuscitation Council (2006) *Advanced Life Support*, 5th edn. Resuscitation Council, London.

Resuscitation Council (2010a) *Legal Status of Those Who Attempt Resuscitation*. Resuscitation Council, London.

Resuscitation Council (2010b) *Resuscitation Guidelines October 2010*. www.resus.org.uk/page/guidehtm.

Robertson, C., Steen, P., Adgey, J. *et al.* (1998) The 1998 European Resuscitation Council Guidelines for adult advanced life support. *Resuscitation*, **37** (2), 81–90.

Russell, C. (2004) Tracheostomy tubes, in *Tracheostomy: A Multiprofessional Handbook* (eds C. Russell and B.F. Matta). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 85–114.

Russell, C. (2005) Providing the nurse with a guide to tracheostomy care and management. *British Journal of Nursing*, **14** (8), 428–433.

Sandroni, C., Nolan, J., Cavallaro, F. and Antonelli, M. (2007) In-hospital cardiac arrest: incidence, prognosis and possible measures to improve survival. *Intensive Care Medicine*, **33**, 237–245.

Scase, C. (2004) Wound care, in *Tracheostomy: A Multiprofessional Handbook* (eds C. Russell and B.F. Matta). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 173–186.

Serra, A. (2000) Tracheostomy care. *Nursing Standard*, **14** (42), 45–52.

Shelledy, D.C. and Mikles, S.P. (2002) Patient assessment and respiratory care plan development, in *Critical Thinking in Respiratory Care: A Problem-Based Learning Approach* (eds S.C. Mishoe and M.A. Welch). McGraw-Hill,, New York, pp. 181–234.

Shirley, P.J. and Bion, J.F. (2004) Intra-hospital transport of critically ill patients: minimising risk. *Intensive Care Medicine*, **30**, 1505–1510.

Shoemaker, W.C. (2000) Pericardial tamponade, in *Oxford Textbook of Critical Care* (ed. A. Webb). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 276–279.

Shuster, M., Billi, J.E., Bossaert, L. *et al.* (2010) International consensus on cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care science with treatment recommendations. *Part 4: Conflict of interest management before, during and after the 2010 International Consensus Conference on Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care Science with Treatment Recommendations Resuscitation*, **81**, e41–e47.

Simmons, R. (2002) The airway at risk, in *ABC of Resuscitation* (eds M. Colqhoun, A. Handley and T. Evans), 5th edn. BMJ Books, London, pp. 25–31.

Skinner, D.V. and Vincent, R. (1997) *Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation*, 2nd edn. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Smith, D. (2000) Basic life support, in *Resuscitation: A Guide for Nurses* (ed. A. Cheller). Harcourt, London, pp. 65–80.

Tablan, O.C., Anderson, L.J., Besser, R. *et al.* (2004) CDC Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee. Guidelines for preventing health care-associated pneumonia, 2003: recommendations of CDC and the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, **53** (RR-3), 1–36.

Tamburri, L.M. (2000) Care of the patient with a tracheostomy. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, **19** (2), 49–58.

Tinker, J. and Zapol, W.M. (1992) *Care of the Critically Ill Patient*, 2nd edn. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Tortora, G.J. and Derrickson, B. (2009) *Principles of Anatomy and Physiology*, 12th edn. John Wiley, Hoboken, NJ.

Van Alem, A.P., Sanou, B.T. and Koster, R.W. (2003) Interruption of cardiopulmonary resuscitation with the use of the automated external defibrillator in out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Annals of Emergency Medicine*, **42** (4), 449–457.

Varon, J., Marik, P.E. and Fromm, R.E. (1998) Cardiopulmonary resuscitation: a review for clinicians. *Resuscitation*, **36** (2), 133–145.

Wakeling, H.G. and Mythen, M.C. (2000) Hypomagnesemia, in *Oxford Textbook of Critical Care* (eds A. Webb *et al.*). Oxford University Press, London, pp. 561–564.

Ward, B. and Park, G.R. (2000) Humidification of inspired gases in the critically ill. *Clinical Intensive Care*, **11** (4), 169–176.

Waugh, A. and Grant, A. (2010) *Ross and Wilson's Anatomy and Physiology in Health and Illness*. Churchill Livingstone Elsevier, Edinburgh, pp. 77–129.

West, J.B. (2008) *Pulmonary Pathophysiology: The Essentials*, 7th edn. Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Wik, L., Hansen, T.B., Fylling, F. *et al.* (2003) Delaying defibrillation to give basic cardiopulmonary resuscitation to patients with out-of-hospital ventricular fibrillation: a randomized trial. *JAMA*, **289** (11), 1389–1395.

Wilson, J. (2006) *Infection Control in Clinical Practice*, 3rd edn. Bailliére Tindall/Elsevier, Edinburgh.

Winser, H. (2001) An evidence base for adult resuscitation. *Professional Nurse*, **16** (7), 1210–1213.

Wood, C.J. (1998) Endotracheal suctioning: a literature review. *Intensive Care Nursing*, **14** (3), 124–136.

Woodrow, P. (2002) Managing patients with a tracheostomy in acute care. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (44), 39–46.

Multiple choice questions

1 What should be included in your initial assessment of your patient's respiratory status?

a Review the patient's notes and charts, to obtain the patient's history.

b Review the results of routine investigations.

c Observe the patient's breathing for ease and comfort, rate and pattern.

d Perform a systematic examination and ask the relatives for the patient's history.

2 What should be included in a prescription for oxygen therapy?

a You don't need a prescription for oxygen unless in an emergency.

b The date it should commence, the doctor's signature and bleep number.

c The type of oxygen delivery system, inspired oxygen percentage and duration of the therapy.

d You only need a prescription if the patient is going to have home oxygen.

3 You are caring for a patient with a tracheostomy *in situ* who requires frequent suctioning. How long should you suction for?

a If you preoxygenate the patient, you can insert the catheter for 45 seconds.

a Never insert the catheter for longer than 10–15 seconds.

a Monitor the patient's oxygen saturations and suction for 30 seconds.

a Suction for 50 seconds and send a specimen to the laboratory if the secretions are purulent.

4 You are caring for a patient with a history of COAD who is requiring 70% humidified oxygen via a facemask. You are monitoring his response to therapy by observing his colour, degree of respiratory distress and respiratory rate. The patient's oxygen saturations have been between 95% and 98%. In addition, the doctor has been taking arterial blood gases. What is the reason for this?

a Oximeters may be unreliable under certain circumstances, e.g. if tissue perfusion is poor, if the environment is cold and if the patient's nails are covered with nail polish.

b Arterial blood gases should be sampled if the patient is receiving >60% oxygen.

c Pulse oximeters provide excellent evidence of oxygenation, but they do not measure the adequacy of ventilation.

d Arterial blood gases measure both oxygen and carbon dioxide levels and therefore give an indication of both ventilation and oxygenation.

5 When using nasal cannulae, the maximum oxygen flow rate that should be used is 6 litres/min. Why?

a Nasal cannulae are only capable of delivering an inspired oxygen concentration between 24% and 40%.

b For any given flow rate, the inspired oxygen concentration will vary between breaths, as it depends upon the rate and depth of the patient's breath and the inspiratory flow rate.

c Higher rates can cause nasal mucosal drying and may lead to epistaxis.

d If oxygen is administered at greater than 40% it should be humidified. You cannot humidify oxygen via nasal cannulae.

6 You are currently on placement in the emergency department (ED). A 55-year-old city worker is bluelighted into the ED having had a cardiorespiratory arrest at work. The paramedics have been resuscitating him for 3 minutes. On arrival, he is in ventricular fibrillation. Your mentor asks you the following question prior to your shift starting: *What will be the most important part of the patient's immediate advanced life support?*

a Early defibrillation to restart the heart.

a Early cardiopulmonary resuscitation.

a Administration of adrenaline every 3 minutes.

a Correction of reversible causes of hypoxia.

7 Why is it essential to humidify oxygen used during respiratory therapy?

a Oxygen is a very hot gas so if humidification isn't used, the oxygen will burn the respiratory tract and cause considerable pain for the patient when they breathe.

b Oxygen is a dry gas which can cause evaporation of water from the respiratory tract and lead to thickened mucus in the airways, reduction of the movement of cilia and increased susceptibility to respiratory infection.

c Humidification cleans the oxygen as it is administered to ensure it is free from any aerobic pathogens before it is inhaled by the patient.

d Humidifying oxygen adds hydrogen to it, which makes it easier for oxygen to be absorbed to the blood in the lungs. This means the cells that need it for intracellular function have their needs met in a more timely manner.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com **and select the Student Edition tab.**

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

Part three

Supporting the Patient Through the Diagnostic Process

11 Interpreting diagnostic tests
12 Observations

Chapter 11

Interpreting Diagnostic Tests

Overview

In clinical practice nursing staff are required to instigate, participate or assist in the collection of body fluids and/or specimens for varying purposes. Diagnostic tests are undertaken to aid in diagnosis and treatment of various conditions. This chapter will discuss common diagnostic and microbiological tests encountered in clinical practice.

Diagnostic tests include blood sampling from a vein or from central venous access devices to determine the haematological and biochemical status of patients, lumbar puncture for diagnostic and treatment purposes, liver biopsy, semen collection and cervical swabbing. Depending on the clinical picture, other more invasive diagnostic procedures such as endoscopy or the need for radiological investigations such as X-ray may be required.

Microbiological tests are essential in determining infective organisms in body fluids, compartments or tissues that complicate treatment or that can be implicated in chronic conditions.

Diagnostic tests

Definition

A clinical specimen can be defined as any bodily substance, solid or liquid, that is obtained for the purpose of analysis (Weston 2008). Specimen collection is required when microbiological, biochemical or other laboratory investigations are indicated. The collection of an appropriate specimen for microbiological analysis allows for the

isolation and identification of micro-organisms that cause disease, and the determination of antimicrobial sensitivity to guide the appropriate antibiotic treatment.

Related theory

A wide range of methods are available for obtaining cultures and identifying organisms from specimens or swabs. To employ all these tests would be time-consuming and costly, and therefore processing and analysis need to be selective. This is dependent on the type of specimen being processed, the patients' clinical presentations, relevant history, recent or current antimicrobial therapy and investigation required. Based on this information, the microbiology laboratory can select the most appropriate culture media to isolate and identify pathogenic organisms, be they bacterial, viral, fungal or parasitic (Weston 2008). For example, a faecal sample from a patient who also has a history of recent travel would be investigated for organisms not normally looked for in a specimen from a patient without such a history. The sensitivity of the organism to a range of antimicrobials can then be tested to decide on the most appropriate and effective mode of treatment (Higgins 2007).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Successful laboratory diagnosis depends upon the collection of specimens at the appropriate time, using the correct technique and equipment, and transporting them to the designated laboratory safely without delay (Box 11.1). For this to be achieved, it is essential that there is good liaison between medical, nursing, portering and laboratory staff (Mims 2004).

Box 11.1 Good practice in specimen collection

- Appropriate to the patient's clinical presentation.

- Collected at the right time.
- Collected in a way that minimizes the risk of contamination.
- Collected in a manner that minimizes the health and safety risk to all staff handling the sample.
- Collected using the correct technique, correct equipment and in the correct container.
- Documented clearly, informatively and accurately on the request forms.
- Stored/transported appropriately.

(Higgins 2008)

The clinical microbiology laboratory plays a fundamental role in the diagnosis of infection and an increasingly important role in reducing new antibiotic resistance (Woodford *et al.* 2004). A team approach helps to facilitate more effective infection prevention and control strategies. Close communication between the medical, nursing and laboratory teams is particularly important when unusual infections are suspected or if the patient is immunosuppressed as the infection may be caused by an unusual organism whose identification requires special processing techniques (Thomson 2002).

Indications

Collecting a specimen is often the first crucial step in determining diagnosis and subsequent mode of treatment for patients with suspected infections or to aid in the diagnosis of specific conditions. In other aspects the collection may help determine variation from normal values such as blood sampling or endoscopic findings.

Principles of care

Nursing staff are in a unique position and play a key role within the microbiological process because they often identify the need for microbiological investigations, initiate the collection of specimens and assume responsibility for timely and safe transportation to the laboratory (Higgins 2007). Specimen collection is often the first crucial step in

investigations that define the nature of the disease, determine a diagnosis and therefore the mode of treatment.

Methods of investigations

Initial examination

Specimens will be initially examined for clinical variables such as odour, appearance, consistency and turbidity. Foul-smelling, purulent material is suggestive of anaerobic bacteria, cloudy cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) or urine suggests the presence of neutrophils, stool may contain blood or mucus and parasites such as roundworms or tapeworms which are visible to the naked eye (Gould and Brooker 2008).

Direct microscopy

The majority of specimens will then undergo direct microscopic investigation which is valuable as an early indication of the causative organism. High magnification is required to visualize viruses, which are then identified according to their characteristic shapes (Gould and Brooker 2008). Certain parasitic protozoa, such as malaria, are identified by direct microscopy which necessitates the specimen being delivered to the laboratory as quickly as possible whilst the protozoa are mobile and therefore visible (Higgins 2007). In combination with clinical presentations, this may be enough to initiate or change targeted treatments until a more definitive diagnosis is reached (Weston 2008).

Gram staining

Gram staining is a process by which staining substances are added to a sample to differentiate the type of organisms present. Cells with differing properties stain differently in relation to the structure of their cell wall (Mims 2004).

Gram staining allows for the differentiation between Gram-positive bacteria (e.g. *Staphylococcus aureus*), which will stain purple, and Gram-negative bacteria (e.g. *Escherichia coli*), which will stain pink when viewed under the microscope. This can be used to guide the choice

of antimicrobial therapy until other investigation methods can provide a definitive identification of pathogenic micro-organisms (Mims 2004).

Culture

Depending upon the type of specimen sent to the laboratory and the suspected causative organism, a liquid or solid medium will be selected to enable further identification. Clinical specimens are inoculated onto agar plates or into nutrient broth, then incubated for a certain period of time and observed for growth (Weston 2008). Different species or strains have different growth rates; for example, *Pseudomonas* and *Clostridium* multiply in approximately 10 minutes, *Escherichia coli* has a growth rate of 8 hours whilst *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* takes 18–24 hours to grow (Weston 2008). Growth of bacteria is seen as colonies on the culture media and the size, colour and shape vary according to the type of bacteria identified (Gould and Brooker 2008).

Fungal organisms grow in the same type of media as those used for bacteria, although they generally require an incubation period of 24–48 hours (Higgins 2007). Pathogenic fungi can also be grown on special mycological media, upon which they grow better with less risk of bacterial overgrowth (Mims 2004). Fungi are identified from their characteristic appearance on the surface of the agar and microscopic appearance (Gould and Brooker 2008). The presence of fungi, such as *Candida albicans*, is sometime difficult to interpret because it is commonly present in the upper respiratory, alimentary and female genital tract, and on the skin of healthy people. However, in patients who are immunocompromised this fungus can lead to systemic disease (Garber 2001).

Viruses cannot be cultured outside living cells, although cells grown in nutrient material can be used to culture certain viruses. Their identification is indicated by the characteristic way in which they change the shape of the cell (Gould and Brooker 2008).

Antibiotic sensitivity

Once the pathogenic organism has been identified, it is vital to establish which antibiotics it is sensitive to so the appropriate therapy can be

prescribed (Gould and Brooker 2008). The bacteria are inoculated onto a solid media plate and paper discs impregnated with different antibiotics are placed over them and incubated. If the bacteria are sensitive to a particular antibiotic, their growth is inhibited, resulting in a clear zone around the disc.

Serology

Serology is useful in identifying viral infections and bacterial infections with difficult culture organisms and is based upon the host's immunological reaction. Detection of antigens or antibodies in serum, which are activated in response to infection, may suggest that the patient is, or has been, infected (Higgins 2007).

Despite the disadvantage of the test being performed retrospectively, antibody testing is the main method for diagnosing viral infections (Mims 2004). Two serum tests are collected, once at the beginning of the illness and again at 10–14 days, and compared for changes in antibody content. A raised content suggests that the patient's infection is current (Mims 2004).

Histology

Histology is the study of cells and tissues within the body. It also studies how the tissues are arranged to then form organs. The histological focus is on the individual cells' structure and how they are arranged to form the individual organs. The types of tissues that are recognized are epithelial, connective, muscular and nervous (Junqueira and Carneiro 2005).

The tissues are examined under a light microscope where light passes though the tissue components after they have been stained. As most tissues are colourless, they are stained with dyes to enable visualization. An alternative is the electron microscope in which the cells and tissue can be viewed at magnifications of about 120,000 times (Junqueira and Carneiro 2005).

Legal and professional issues

Competencies

In accordance with the NMC's *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics* (NMC 2008a), the collection of specimens should be undertaken by professionals who are competent and feel confident that they have the knowledge, skill and understanding to do so, following a period of appropriate training and assessment. For microbiological sampling, this will include a knowledge and understanding of the collection, handling and transportation of samples to optimize quality and minimize contamination and inadvertent subversion of the specimen, all of which may have subsequent implications on patient treatment and care.

Consent

The collection of specimens involves invasive procedures and it is therefore essential that practitioners gain consent before beginning any treatment or care (NMC 2008b). Consent is continuous throughout any patient episode and the practitioner must ensure that the patient is kept informed at every stage (Marsden 2007). For specimen collection this includes:

- informing the patient of the rationale for specimen collection
- what the procedure will involve
- ascertaining their level of understanding (especially if they need to be directly involved in the sampling technique)
- how long the results may take to be processed
- how the results will be made available
- information with regard to the implications this may have on their care.

Accurate record keeping and documentation

Good record keeping is an integral part of nursing practice, and it is essential to the provision of safe and effective care (NMC 2009). Accurate, specific and timely documentation of specimen collection should be recorded in the patient notes, care plan or designated record charts/forms such as a microbiological flow chart that details when a

specimen was collected, results of analysis, sensitivities or resistance to antimicrobials and changes/modifications to treatment. It is also important to ensure that electronic records are up to date. This assists in the communication and dissemination of information between members of the interprofessional healthcare team.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

There are a variety of collection equipment/tools designed for the collection of specimens such as sterile pots, swabs and other receptacles. Advice should be sought from the microbiology department about the best type of container for the required investigation (Higgins 2007). It is essential that the specimen and its transport container are appropriate for the type of organism being investigated; for example, bacterial swabs contain a transport medium that is incompatible with viral specimen analysis. Failure to utilize the correct collection method leads to inaccurate results so it is vital that an adequate quantity of material is obtained to allow complete microbiological examination.

Equipment used for transportation

Within healthcare institutions, specimens should be transported in deep-sided trays that are not used for any other purpose, and are disinfected weekly and whenever contaminated (HSE 2003), or robust, leak-proof containers that conform to 'Biological Substances, Category B – UN3373' regulations (HSE 2005). Specimens that need to be moved outside the hospital must be transported using a triple-packaging system (HSE 2005). This consists of a watertight leak-proof, absorbent primary container, a durable, watertight, leak-proof secondary container and an outer container that complies with 'Biological Substances, Category B – UN 3373' standards (Pankhurst and Coulter 2009). A box for transportation is essential and should carry a warning label for hazardous material. It must be made of smooth impervious material, such as plastic or metal, which will retain liquid and can be easily disinfected and cleaned in the event of a spillage (HSE 2003).

Handling specimens

Specimens should be obtained using safe techniques and practices and practitioners should be aware of the potential physical and infections hazards associated with the collection of diagnostic specimens within the healthcare environment. Standard (Universal) Infection Control Precautions should be adopted by healthcare workers who have direct contact or exposure to the blood, bodily fluids, secretions and excretions of patients (Gould and Brooker 2008). In addition to personal protection, the person collecting the specimen should also be mindful of the collective health and safety of other colleagues/persons who are involved in the handling of samples. Every health authority must ensure that medical, nursing, phlebotomy, portering and any other staff involved in handling specimens are trained to do so (RCN 2005).

In relation to specimen collection, Standard (Universal) Infection Control Precautions should include the following (Tilmouth and Tilmouth 2009).

- Hand hygiene.
- The use of personal protection equipment (PPE).
- Safe sharps management.
- Safe handling, storage and transportation of specimens.
- Waste management.
- Clean environment management.
- Personal and collective management of exposure to body fluids and blood.

Selection of PPE should be based upon an assessment of risk to exposure to body fluids (Hairon 2008). As minimum precautions, gloves and aprons should be worn when handling all body fluids. Protective face wear (e.g. goggles, masks and visors) should be worn during any procedure where there is risk of blood, bodily fluid, secretions or excretions splashing into the eyes or face (Gould 2002).

Specimens should be placed in a double, self-sealing bag with one compartment containing the specimen and the other containing the request form. The specimen container used should be appropriate for the purpose and the lid should be securely closed immediately to avoid

spillage and contamination. The specimen should not be overfilled and not be externally contaminated by the contents. Any accidental spillages must be cleaned up immediately by staff wearing appropriate protective equipment (HSE 2003).

If a specimen is suspected or known to present an infectious hazard, particularly Hazard Group 3 pathogens (such as hepatitis B or C virus, HIV, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*), this must be clearly indicated with a 'danger of infection' label on the specimen and the request form to enable those handling the specimen to take appropriate precautions (HSE 2003).

Specimens from patients who have recently been treated with toxic therapy such as gene therapy, cytotoxic drugs, radioactivity or active metabolites need to be handled with caution. Local guidelines on the labelling, bagging and transportation of such samples to the laboratory should be followed. For example, in the case of gene therapy, the specimen must be labelled with a 'biohazard' label, double bagged and transported to the laboratory in a secure box with a fastenable lid.

Selecting specimens

Selecting a specimen that is representative of the disease process is critical to the ability of the laboratory to provide information that is accurate, significant and clinically relevant (Miller 1998). Specimens should only be taken when there are clinical signs of infection (or in the case of specific swabs, such as skin or nasal swabs, as part of an infection screening regimen). Signs of infection such as fever should trigger a careful clinical assessment to ensure that unnecessary tests are avoided and the most useful laboratory samples are obtained to identify therapeutic options (Gould and Brooker 2008). Specimens may also be collected for other diagnostic procedures such as cervical smears, semen collection and lumbar puncture. Tissue sampling may also be indicated during endoscopy or biopsies.

Wherever possible, specimens should be collected before patients are commenced on any treatment such as antibiotics or antiseptics. Treatment with antibiotics before the causative organism has been identified may inhibit its growth, so that it is not easily detected during

analysis, yielding a misleading false negative (Weston 2008). If, however, the patient is already receiving such treatment, this must be clearly indicated on the requisition form.

Assessment and recording tools

Request forms

The form should include as much information as possible as this allows the laboratory to select the most appropriate media inoculation for examination and result interpretation (Weston 2008).

Request forms should include the following information.

- Patient's name, date of birth, ward and/or department.
- Hospital number.
- Investigation required so as to avoid indiscriminate specimen analysis which wastes time and money.
- Date and time of specimen collection.
- Type and site of specimen. This should specify the actual anatomical site, such as 'abdominal wound', as this allows the laboratory to differentiate and assess the significance of results based upon the flora normally associated with that site (Miller 1998).
- Diagnosis and relevant clinical information which can help in the interpretation of a sample (Higgins 2007).
- Relevant signs and symptoms.
- Relevant history, for example recent foreign travel.
- Present or recent antimicrobial therapy.
- Whether the patient is immunocompromised as these patients are highly susceptible to opportunistic infections and non-pathogenic organisms (Weston 2008).
- Consultant's name.
- Name and contact details of the doctor requesting the investigation, as it may be necessary to telephone the result before the report is dispatched.
- If a high-risk specimen, it should be labelled with a 'danger of infection' label (HSE 2003).

Communication

For certain specimens that have specific collection techniques or require prompt processing, communication with the laboratory before the sample collection and/or providing information that a sample is being sent to the laboratory can improve efficiency of processing and accuracy of results.

Collecting specimens

The production of high-quality, accurate results which are clinically useful is very much dependent upon the quality of the specimen collection (Higgins 2007). The greater the quantity of material sent for laboratory examination, the greater the chance of isolating a causative organism.

Specimens should be taken as soon as possible after the manifestation of clinical signs and symptoms. The timing of specimen collection is especially important during the acute phase of viral infections. Many viral illnesses have a prodromal phase where multiplication and shedding of the virus are usually at their peak and when the patient is most infective (Mims 2004). This is often before the onset of clinical illness and has often ceased by about day 5 from the onset of symptoms. At this stage, the patient's immune response against the virus has already been mounted and may therefore affect organism isolation (Winter 2005).

Specimens are readily contaminated by poor technique and analysis of such specimens could lead to adverse outcomes such as misdiagnosis, misleading results, extended length of stay or inappropriate therapy (Miller 1998). Therefore, a clean technique must be used to avoid inadvertent contamination of the site of the sample or the specimen itself. Specimens should also be collected in sterile containers with close-fitting lids or with sterile swabs.

Postprocedural considerations

Labelling specimens

Prompt microbiological analysis is only possible if specimens and their accompanying request forms are sent with specific, accurate and complete patient information. Incorrectly or unlabelled specimens will be discarded (HSE 2003).

Samples should include the following information.

- Patient's name, date of birth, ward and/or department.
- Hospital number.
- Date and time of specimen collection.
- Type and site of specimen. This should specify the actual anatomical site such as 'abdominal wound' as this allows the laboratory to differentiate and assess the significance of results based upon the flora normally associated with that site (Miller 1998).
- If a high-risk specimen, it should be labelled with a 'danger of infection' label (HSE 2003).

Transporting specimens

An awareness of the type of organism being investigated and their growth requirements gives the healthcare professional an insight into the correct collection, storage and transportation methods (Table 11.1). Most micro-organisms are also extremely susceptible to environmental fluctuations such as pH, temperature, ultraviolet rays and oxidizing agents (Gould and Brooker 2008). Incorrect or prolonged storage or transportation may result in the organism not surviving before cultures can be made (Gill *et al.* 2005). Delays in transporting a specimen to the laboratory can compromise the specimen's integrity, leading to false-negative or -positive results, because the sample is no longer representative of the disease process (Higgins 2007).

Table 11.1 Types of organisms

Organism	Definition
Aerobic	Aerobic bacteria will only grow in the presence of oxygen
Anaerobic	Anaerobic bacteria prefer an atmosphere of reduced oxygen, such as deep in wound bed tissue and facultative anaerobes can grow in either the presence or absence of oxygen
Bacteria	Bacteria are unicellular organisms that multiply and die very rapidly, especially once removed from their optimum environment
Virus	Viruses are intracellular parasites that hijack the genetic material of the host cell,

and are therefore unable to multiply outside living cells

Gould and Brooker (2008), Higgins (2007), Winter 2005.

The sooner a specimen arrives in the laboratory, the greater the chance of organisms being identified. Some pathogens do not survive once they have left the host, whilst normal body flora within the sample may proliferate and overgrow, inhibiting or killing the pathogen (Weston 2008).

If delays are anticipated, samples need to be stored appropriately, depending on the nature of the specimen, until they can be processed. For example, blood cultures need to be incubated at 37°C, whereas swabs must be either refrigerated or kept at ambient temperature, depending on the site from which they were taken.

The transport of clinical specimens must conform to health and safety legislation and regulations, and there are more specific guidelines on the labelling, transport and reception of specimens within clinical laboratories and similar facilities (HSE 2003).

Blood: obtaining samples from a peripheral vein (venepuncture)

Definition

Venepuncture is the procedure of entering a vein with a needle (Weller 2009).

Anatomy and physiology

The superficial veins of the upper limb are most commonly chosen for venepuncture. These veins are numerous and accessible, ensuring that the procedure can be performed safely and with minimum discomfort (Ernst 2005). In adults, veins located on the dorsal portion of the foot may be selected but there is an increased risk of deep vein thrombosis (Garza and Becan-McBride 2010) or tissue necrosis in diabetics (Ernst

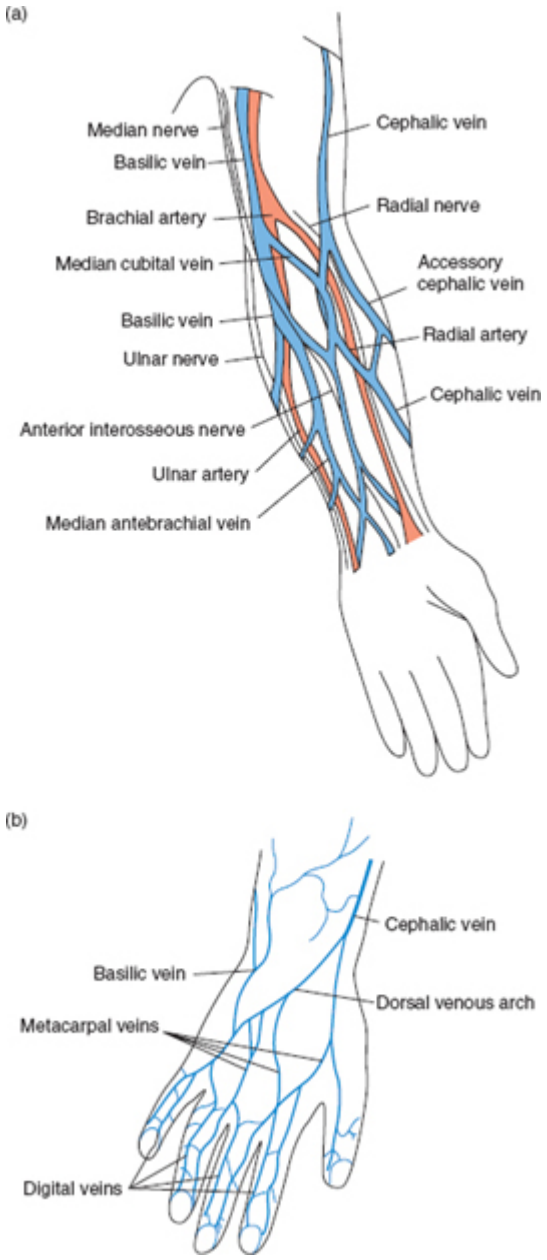
2005). Therefore, veins in the lower limbs should be avoided where possible.

Vein choice

The veins commonly used for venepuncture are those found in the antecubital fossa because they are sizeable veins capable of providing copious and repeated blood specimens (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). However, the venous anatomy of each individual may differ. The main veins of choice are the (Figure 11.1):

Figure 11.1 (a) Superficial veins of the forearm. (b) Superficial veins of dorsal aspect of the hand.

Reproduced with permission from Becton Dickinson and Company.



- median cubital veins
- cephalic vein
- basilic vein
- metacarpal veins (used only when the others are not accessible).

Median cubital vein

The median cubital vein may not always be visible, but its size and location make it easy to palpate. It is also well supported by subcutaneous tissue, which prevents it from rolling under the needle.

Cephalic vein

On the lateral aspect of the wrist, the cephalic vein rises from the dorsal veins and flows upwards along the radial border of the forearm as the median cephalic, crossing the antecubital fossa as the median cubital vein. Care must be taken to avoid accidental arterial puncture, as this vein crosses the brachial artery. It is also in close proximity to the radial nerve (Dougherty 2008, Masoorli 2002).

Basilic vein

The basilic vein, which has its origins in the ulnar border of the hand and forearm (Marieb and Hoehn 2010), is often overlooked as a site for venepuncture. It may well be prominent but is not well supported by subcutaneous tissue, making it roll easily, which can result in difficult venepuncture. Owing to its position, a haematoma may occur if the patient flexes the arm on removal of the needle, as this squeezes blood from the vein into the surrounding tissues (McCall and Tankersley 2008, Weinstein and Plumer 2007). Care must also be taken to avoid accidental puncture of the median nerve and brachial artery (Garza and Becan-McBride 2010).

Metacarpal veins

The metacarpal veins are easily visualized and palpated. However, the use of these veins is contraindicated in the elderly in whom skin turgor and subcutaneous tissue are diminished (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Layers of the vein

Veins consist of three layers: the tunica intima, the tunica media and the tunica adventitia.

Tunica intima

The tunica intima is a smooth endothelial lining, which allows the passage of blood cells. If it becomes damaged, the lining may become roughened, leading to an increased risk of thrombus formation (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). Within this layer are folds of endothelium

called valves, which keep blood moving towards the heart by preventing backflow. Valves are present in larger vessels and at points of branching and are seen as noticeable bulges in the veins (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). However, when suction is applied during venepuncture, the valve can compress and close the lumen of the vein, thus preventing the withdrawal of blood (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). Therefore, if detected, venepuncture should be performed above the valve in order to facilitate collection of the sample (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Tunica media

The tunica media, the middle layer of the vein wall, is composed of muscular tissue and nerve fibres, both vasoconstrictors and vasodilators, which can stimulate the vein to contract or relax. This layer is not as strong or stiff as an artery and therefore veins can distend or collapse as the pressure rises or falls (Waugh *et al.* 2006, Weinstein and Plumer 2007). Stimulation of this layer by a change in temperature, mechanical or chemical stimulation can produce venous spasm, which can make a venepuncture more difficult.

Tunica adventitia

The tunica adventitia is the outer layer and consists of connective tissue, which surrounds and supports the vessel.

Arteries tend to be placed more deeply than veins and can be distinguished by the thicker walls, which do not collapse, the presence of a pulse and the bright red blood. It should be noted that aberrant arteries may be present; these are arteries located superficially in an unusual place (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Choosing a vein

The choice of vein must be that which is best for the individual patient. The most prominent vein is not necessarily the most suitable vein for venepuncture (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). There are two stages to locating a vein:

1 visual inspection

2 palpation.

Visual inspection

Visual inspection is the scrutiny of the veins in both arms and is essential prior to choosing a vein. Veins adjacent to foci of infection, bruising and phlebitis should not be considered, owing to the risk of causing more local tissue damage or systemic infection (Dougherty 2008). An oedematous limb should be avoided as there is danger of stasis of lymph, predisposing to such complications as phlebitis and cellulitis (Hoeltke 2006, Smith 1998). Areas of previous venepuncture should be avoided as a build-up of scar tissue can cause difficulty in accessing the vein and can result in pain due to repeated trauma (Hoeltke 2006).

Palpation

Palpation is an important assessment technique, as it determines the location and condition of the vein, distinguishes veins from arteries and tendons, identifies the presence of valves and detects deeper veins (Dougherty 2008). The nurse should always use the same fingers for palpation as this will increase sensitivity and the ability of the nurse to know what they are feeling. The less dominant hand should be used for palpation so that in the event of a missed vein the nurse can repalpate and realign the needle (Hoeltke 2006). The thumb should not be used as it is not as sensitive and has a pulse, which may lead to confusion in distinguishing veins from arteries in the patient (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Thrombosed veins feel hard and cord-like, and should be avoided along with tortuous, sclerosed, fibrosed, inflamed or fragile veins, which may be unable to accommodate the device to be used and will result in pain and repeated venepunctures (Dougherty 2008). Use of veins which cross over joints or bony prominences and those with little skin or subcutaneous cover, for example the inner aspect of the wrist, will also subject the patient to more discomfort (Dougherty 2008). Therefore, preference should be given to a vessel that is unused, easily detected by inspection and palpation, patent and healthy. These veins feel soft and bouncy and will refill when depressed (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

Venepuncture is carried out for two reasons:

- to obtain a blood sample for diagnostic purposes
- to monitor levels of blood components.

Methods of improving venous access

There are a number of methods of improving venous access.

- *Application of a tourniquet*: this promotes venous distension. The tourniquet should be tight enough to impede venous return but not restrict arterial flow. The tourniquet should be placed about 7–8 cm above the venepuncture site. It may be more comfortable for the patient to position it over a sleeve or paper towel to prevent pinching the skin. The tourniquet should not be left on for longer than 1 minute as this may result in haemoconcentration or pooling of the blood, leading to inaccurate blood results (Hoeltke 2006).
- The patient may be asked to clench the fist and encourage venous distension but should avoid 'pumping' as this action may affect certain blood results, for example potassium (Ernst 2005, Garza and Becan-McBride 2010).
- Lowering the arm below heart level also increases blood supply to the veins.
- Light tapping of the vein may be useful but can be painful and may result in the formation of a haematoma in patients with fragile veins, for example thrombocytopenic patients (Dougherty 2008).
- The use of heat in the form of a warm pack or by immersing the arm in a bowl of warm water for 10 minutes helps to encourage venodilation and venous filling (Lenhardt *et al*. 2002).
- Ointment or patches containing small amounts of glyceryl trinitrate have been used to improve local vasodilation to aid venepuncture (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Methods for insertion

Asepsis is vital when performing a venepuncture as the skin is breached and a foreign device is introduced into a sterile circulatory system. The two major sources of microbial contamination are:

1 cross-infection from practitioner to patient

2 skin flora of the patient.

Good handwashing and drying techniques are essential on the part of the nurse; gloves should be changed between patients (see Chapter 3).

To remove the risk presented by the patient's skin flora, firm and prolonged rubbing with an alcohol-based solution, such as chlorhexidine 0.5% in 70% alcohol, is advised (RCN 2010). This cleaning should continue for about 30 seconds, although some authors state a minimum of 1 minute or longer (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). The area that has been cleaned should then be allowed to dry to: (i) facilitate coagulation of the organisms, thus ensuring disinfection, and (ii) prevent a stinging pain on insertion of the needle due to the alcohol on the end of the needle. The skin must not be touched or the vein repalpated prior to venepuncture.

Legal and professional issues

Venepuncture is one of the most commonly performed invasive procedures (Castledine 1996) and is now routinely being undertaken by nurses (Ernst 2005). In order to perform venepuncture safely, the nurse must have basic knowledge of the following.

- The relevant anatomy and physiology.
- The criteria for choosing both the vein and device to use.
- The potential problems which may be encountered, how to prevent them and necessary interventions.
- The health and safety/risk management of the procedure, as well as the correct disposal of equipment (RCN 2010).

Certain principles, such as adherence to an aseptic technique, must be applied throughout (see Chapter 3). The circulation is a closed sterile system and a venepuncture, however quickly completed, is a breach of this system, providing a means of entry for bacteria.

Nurses must be aware of the physical and psychological comfort of the patient (Hoeltke 2006). They must appreciate the value of adequate explanation and simple measures to prevent the complications of venepuncture, such as haematoma formation, when it is neither a natural nor acceptable consequence of the procedure (Hoeltke 2006).

The number of litigation cases within the healthcare environment has increased in recent years (Garza and Becan-McBride 2010). It is therefore vital that nurses receive accredited and appropriate training, supervision and assessment by an experienced member of staff (RCN 2010). The nurse is then accountable and responsible for ensuring that skills and competence are maintained and knowledge is kept up to date, in order to fulfil the criteria set out in the *The Code* (NMC 2008a).

Preprocedural considerations

Safety of the practitioner

It is recommended that well-fitting gloves are worn during any procedure that involves handling blood and body fluids, particularly venepuncture and cannulation (ICNA 2003, NHS Employers 2007, RCN 2010). This is to prevent contamination of the practitioner from potential blood spills. Whilst it is recognized that gloves will not prevent a needlestick injury, the wiping effect of a glove on a needle may reduce the volume of blood to which the hand is exposed, thereby reducing the volume inoculated and the risk of infection (ICNA 2003, Mitchell Higgs 2002, NAO 2003). However, there is no substitute for good technique and practitioners must always work carefully when performing venepuncture.

A range of safety devices are now available for venepuncture which can reduce the risk of occupational percutaneous injuries amongst healthcare workers, in particular vacuum blood collection systems (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 1997). Used needles should always be discarded directly into an approved sharps container, without being resheathed (Garza and Becan-McBride 2010, RCN 2010). Specimens from patients with known or suspected infections such as hepatitis or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) should have a

biohazard label attached. The accompanying request forms should be kept separately from the specimen to avoid contamination (HSE 2003). All other non-sharp disposables should be placed in a universal clinical waste bag.

Equipment

Tourniquets

There are several types of tourniquet available. A good-quality, buckle closure, single hand release type is most effective but the choice will depend on availability and operator. Consideration should be given to the type of material and the ability to decontaminate the tourniquet (Golder *et al.* 2000, RCN 2010). Disposable tourniquets are available for single use and should be discarded immediately after use (Warekois *et al.* 2007).

Needles

The intravenous devices commonly used to perform a venepuncture for blood sampling are a straight steel needle and a steel winged infusion device. The optimum gauge to use is 21 swg (standard wire gauge), which measures internal diameter: the smaller the gauge size, the larger the diameter. Standard wire gauge measurement is determined by how many cannulas fit into a tube with an inner diameter of 1 inch (2.5 cm), and uses consecutive numbers from 13 to 24. This enables blood to be withdrawn at a reasonable speed without undue discomfort to the patient or possible damage to the blood cells.

Vacuum systems

A vacuum system consists of a plastic holder which contains or is attached to a double-ended needle or adaptor. It is important to use the correct Luer adaptor to ensure a good connection and avoid blood leakage (Garza and Becan-McBride 2010). The blood tube is vacuumed in order to ensure that the exact amount of blood required is withdrawn when the tube is pushed into the holder. Filling ceases once the tube is full, which removes the need for decanting blood and also reduces blood

wastage. The system can also be attached to winged infusion devices (Dougherty 2008).

A number of vacuum systems are available that can be used for taking blood samples (Fig. 11.2). These are simple to use and cost-effective. The manufacturer's instructions should be followed if one of these systems is used. Vacuum systems reduce the risk of healthcare workers being contaminated, because they offer a completely closed system during the process of blood withdrawal and there is no necessity to decant blood into bottles (Dougherty 2008). This makes them the safest method for collecting blood samples.

Blood collection tubes are available in various sizes and have different coloured tops dependent on the type of additives in the tube. The correct volume of blood should be collected into each tube to prevent erroneous results. The expiry dates on the tubes should also be monitored regularly.

Equipment available will depend on local policy (Table 11.2), but with increasing concern about the possibility of contamination to the practitioner, blood collection systems with integrated safety devices are now readily available and should be used wherever possible (Garza and Becan-McBride 2010). However, the nurse must always select the device after assessing the condition and accessibility of the vein.

Table 11.2 Choice of intravenous device

Device	Gauge	Advantages	Disadvantages	Use
Needle	21	Cheaper than winged infusion devices. Easy to use with large veins	Rigid. Difficult to manipulate with smaller veins in less conventional sites. May cause more discomfort Venous access only confirmed when sample tube attached	In large, accessible veins in the antecubital fossa When small quantities of blood are to be drawn
Winged infusion device with or without safety shield	21	Flexible due to small needle shaft. Easy to manipulate and insert at any site. Increases the success rate of venepuncture and causes less discomfort (Hefler *et al.* 2004) Usually shows a 'flashback' of blood to indicate a successful venepuncture	More expensive than steel needles The 12–30 cm length of tubing on the device may be caught and dislodge the needle	Veins in sites other than the antecubital fossa When quantities of blood greater than 20 mL are required from any site
	23	Flexible due to small needle shaft. Easy to manipulate and insert at any site. Causes less discomfort. Smaller swg and therefore useful with fragile veins	More expensive than steel needles, plus there can be damage to cells which can cause inaccurate measurements in certain blood samples, for example potassium	Small veins in more painful sites, for example inner aspect of the wrist, especially if measurements are related to plasma and not cellular components

Pharmacological support

It is important to remember that patients may fear venepuncture and in some cases suffer from severe needle phobia. The use of topical local anaesthetic cream may be beneficial for anxious patients or for venepuncture in children (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Non-pharmacological support

Patient anxiety about the procedure may result in vasoconstriction. The nurse's manner and approach will also have a direct bearing on the patient's experience (Garza and Becan-McBride 2010). Approaching the patient with a confident manner and giving adequate explanation of the procedure may reduce anxiety. Careful preparation and an unhurried approach will help to relax the patient and this in turn will increase vasodilation (Dougherty 2008, Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Specific patient preparation

- Injury, disease or treatment, for example amputation, fracture and cerebrovascular accident, may prevent the use of a limb for venepuncture, thereby reducing the venous access. Use of a limb may be contraindicated because of an operation on one side of the body, for example mastectomy and axillary node dissection, as this can lead to impairment of lymphatic drainage, which can influence venous flow regardless of whether there is obvious lymphoedema (Berreth 2010, Cole 2006, Ernst 2005, Hoeltke 2006).
- The age and weight of the patient will also influence choice. Young children have short fine veins, and the elderly have prominent but fragile veins. Care must be taken with fragile veins and the largest vein should be chosen along with the smallest gauge device to reduce the amount of trauma to the vessel. Malnourished patients will often present with friable veins (Dougherty 2008).
- If the patient is in shock or dehydrated there will be poor superficial peripheral access. It may be necessary to take blood after the patient is rehydrated as this will promote venous filling and blood will be obtained more easily (Dougherty 2008).
- Medications can influence the choice of vein in that patients on anticoagulants or steroids or those who are thrombocytopenic tend to have more fragile veins and will be at greater risk of bruising both during venepuncture and on removal of the needle. Therefore choice may be limited by areas of bruising present or the inability to access the vessel without causing bruising (Dougherty 2008).
- The temperature of the environment will influence venous dilation. If the patient is cold, no veins may be evident on first inspection. Application of heat, for example in the form of a warm compress or soaking the arm in warm water, will increase the size and visibility of the veins, thus increasing the likelihood of a successful first attempt (Lenhardt et al. 2002, Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

- Venepuncture itself may cause the vein to collapse or go into a spasm. This will produce discomfort and a reduction in blood flow. Careful preparation and choice of vein will reduce the likelihood of this and stroking the vein or applying heat will help resolve it (Dougherty 2008).
- Involving patients in the choice of vein, even if it is simply to choose the non-dominant arm, can increase a feeling of control which in turn helps to relieve anxiety (Hudak 1986).
- The environment is also another important consideration. In the inpatient and outpatient setting, lighting, ventilation, privacy and position must be checked and optimized where possible. This will ensure that the patient and the operator are both comfortable. Having adequate lighting is also beneficial as it illuminates the procedure, ensuring the operator has a good view of the vein and equipment (Dougherty 2008).

Procedure guideline 11.1 Venepuncture

Essential equipment

- Clean tray or receiver
- Tourniquet or sphygmomanometer and cuff
- 21 swg multiple sample needle or 21 swg winged infusion device and multiple sample Luer adaptor
- Low-linting gauze swabs
- Sterile adhesive plaster or hypoallergenic tape
- Specimen request forms
- Plastic tube holder, standard or for blood cultures
- Appropriate vacuumed specimen tubes
- Swab saturated with chlorhexidine in 70% alcohol, or isopropyl alcohol 70%
- Non-sterile, well-fitting gloves
- Plastic apron (optional)
- Sharps bin

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale

1 Approach the patient in a confident manner and explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Allow the patient to ask questions and discuss any problems which have arisen previously.	Anxiety results in vasoconstriction; therefore, a patient who is relaxed will have dilated veins, making access easier. E
3 Consult the patient as to any preferences and problems that may have been experienced at previous venepunctures. Check if they have any allergies.	To involve the patient in the treatment. To acquaint the nurse fully with the patient's previous venous history and identify any changes in clinical status, for example mastectomy, as both may influence vein choice (Dougherty 2008, E). To prevent allergic reactions, for example to latex or chlorhexidine (McCall and Tankersley 2008, E).
4 Check that the identity of the patient matches the details on the request form by asking for their full name and date of birth and checking their identification bracelet.	To ensure the sample is taken from the correct patient (NPSA 2007, C; RCN 2010, C).
5 Assemble the equipment necessary for venepuncture.	To ensure that time is not wasted and that the procedure goes smoothly without unnecessary interruptions. E
6 Carefully wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and dry before commencement.	To minimize risk of infection (DH 2007a; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
7 Check hands for any visibly broken skin, and cover with a waterproof dressing.	To minimize the risk of contamination to the practitioner (DH 2007a, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
8 Check all packaging before opening and preparing the equipment on the chosen clean receptacle.	To maintain asepsis throughout and check that no equipment is damaged. E
Procedure	
9 Take all the equipment to the patient, exhibiting a competent manner.	To help the patient feel more at ease with the procedure. E
10 Support the chosen limb on a pillow.	To ensure the patient's comfort and facilitate venous access. E
11 Apply a tourniquet to the upper arm on the chosen side, making sure it does not obstruct arterial flow. If the radial pulse cannot be palpated then the tourniquet is too tight (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). The position of the tourniquet may be varied; for example, if a vein in the hand is to be used it may be placed on the forearm. A sphygmomanometer cuff may be used as an alternative.	To dilate the veins by obstructing the venous return (Dougherty 2008, E). To increase the prominence of the veins. E To promote blood flow and therefore distend the veins (Gunwardene and Davenport 1990, E; Lenhardt *et al*. 2002, R3).
12 If the tourniquet does not improve venous access the following methods can be used.	To improve venous access (Dougherty 2008, E).

Either The arm may be placed in a dependent position. The patient may be asked to clench their fist. **Or** The veins may be tapped gently or stroked. **Or** Remove the tourniquet and apply moist heat, for example a warm compress, soak limb in warm water or, with medical prescription, apply glyceryl trinitrate ointment/patch (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).	
13 Select the vein using the aforementioned criteria (see Action Figure 13).	To prevent haemoconcentration and pooling of the blood (Hoeltke 2006, E).
14 Release the tourniquet.	To ensure patient comfort. E
15 Select the device, based on vein size, site, and so on.	To reduce damage or trauma to the vein (Dougherty 2008, E; RCN 2010, C).
16 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To maintain asepsis, and minimize the risk of infection (DH 2007a; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
17 Reapply the tourniquet.	To dilate the veins by obstructing the venous return (Dougherty 2008, E).
18 Put on gloves.	To prevent possible contamination of the practitioner (NHS Employers 2007, C).
19 Clean the patient's skin carefully for 30 seconds using an appropriate preparation, for example chlorhexidine in 70% alcohol, and allow to dry. Do not repalpate or touch the skin (see Action Figure 19).	To maintain asepsis and minimize the risk of infection (DH 2007a; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E). To prevent pain on insertion (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Dougherty 2008, E; RCN 2010, C).
20 Remove the cover from the needle and inspect the device carefully.	To detect faulty equipment, for example bent or barbed needles. If these are present place them in a safe container, record batch details and return to manufacturer (MHRA 2005, C; RCN 2010, C).
21 Anchor the vein by applying manual traction on the skin a few centimetres below the proposed insertion site (see Action Figure 21).	To immobilize the vein. To provide countertension to the vein which will facilitate a smoother needle entry (Dougherty 2008, E).
22 Insert the needle smoothly at an angle of approximately 30°. However, the angle will depend on size and depth of the vein (also see Action Figure 21).	To facilitate a successful, pain-free venepuncture. E
23 Reduce the angle of descent of the needle as soon as a flashback of blood is seen in the tubing of a winged infusion device or when puncture of the vein wall is felt.	To prevent advancing too far through vein wall and causing damage to the vessel. E
24 Slightly advance the needle into the vein, if possible.	To stabilize the device within the vein and prevent it becoming dislodged during withdrawal of blood. E

25 Do not exert any pressure on the needle.	To prevent a puncture occurring through the vein wall. E
26 Withdraw the required amount of blood using a vacuumed blood collection system or syringes (see Action Figure 26). Collect blood samples in the following order: ■ blood culture ■ coagulation ■ serum tube with or without clot activator or gel separator (glass, non-additive tubes can be filled before the coagulation tube) ■ additive tubes such as: **(a)** gel separator tubes (may contain clot activator or heparin) **(b)** heparin tubes **(c)** EDTA ■ all other tubes (Garza and Becan-McBride 2010).	To minimize the risk of transferring additives from one tube to another and bacterial contamination of blood cultures (manufacturer's guidelines, C).
27 Release the tourniquet. In some instances this may be necessary at the beginning of sampling as inaccurate measurements may be caused by haemostasis, for example when taking blood to assess calcium levels.	To decrease the pressure within the vein. E
28 Remove tube from plastic tube holder.	To prevent blood spillage caused by vacuum in the tube (Campbell *et al*. 1999, E).
29 Pick up a low-linting swab and place it over the puncture point.	To apply pressure. E
30 Remove the needle, but do not apply pressure until the needle has been fully removed.	To prevent pain on removal and damage to the intima of the vein. E
31 Activate safety device, if applicable, and then discard the needle immediately in sharps bin.	To reduce the risk of accidental needlestick injury (NHS Employers 2007, C).
32 Apply digital pressure directly over the puncture site. Pressure should be applied until bleeding has ceased; approximately 1 minute or longer may be required if current disease or treatment interferes with clotting mechanisms.	To stop leakage and haematoma formation. To preserve vein by preventing bruising or haematoma formation. E
33 The patient may apply pressure with the finger but should be discouraged from bending the arm if a vein in the antecubital fossa is used.	To prevent leakage and haematoma formation (Ernst 2005, E).
34 Gently invert the tube at least six times.	To prevent damage to blood cells and to mix with additives (manufacturer's guidelines, C).
35 Label the bottles with the relevant details at the patient's side.	To ensure that the specimens from the right patient are delivered to the laboratory, the requested tests are performed and the results

	returned to the correct patient's records (NMC 2009, C; NPSA 2007, C).
Postprocedure	
36 Inspect the puncture point before applying a dressing.	To check that the puncture point has sealed. E
37 Ascertain whether the patient is allergic to adhesive plaster.	To prevent an allergic skin reaction. E
38 Apply an adhesive plaster or alternative dressing.	To cover the puncture and prevent leakage or contamination. E
39 Ensure that the patient is comfortable.	To ascertain whether patient wishes to rest before leaving (if an outpatient) or whether any other measures need to be taken. E
40 Remove gloves and discard waste, making sure it is placed in the correct containers, for example sharps into a designated receptacle.	To ensure safe disposal and avoid laceration or other injury of staff (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E). To prevent reuse of equipment (MDA 2000, C).
41 Follow hospital procedure for collection and transportation of specimens to the laboratory.	To make sure that specimens reach their intended destination. E

Action Figure 13 Palpating the vein.

Action Figure 19 Cleaning the skin.

Action Figure 21 Anchoring the skin.

Action Figure 26 Attach sample bottle to holder.

Problem-solving table 11.1 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 11.1)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Suggested action
Pain	Use of vein in sensitive area (e.g. wrist)	Avoid using veins in sensitive areas wherever possible. Use local anaesthetic cream	Complete procedure as quickly as possible
Anxiety	Previous trauma	Minimize the risk of a traumatic venepuncture. Use all methods available to ensure successful venepuncture	Approach patient in a calm and confident manner. Listen to the patient's fears and explain what the procedure involves. Offer patient opportunity to lie down. Suggest use of local anaesthetic cream (Lavery and Ingram 2005)
	Fear of needles		All of the above and perhaps referral to a psychologist if fear is of phobic proportions
Limited venous access	Repeated use of same veins	Use alternative sites if possible	Do not attempt the procedure unless experienced
	Peripheral shutdown	Ensure the room is not cold	Put patient's arm in warm water. Apply glycerol trinitrate patch
	Dehydration		May be necessary to rehydrate patient prior to venepuncture
	Hardened veins (due to scarring and thrombosis)		Do not use these veins as venepuncture will be unsuccessful
	Poor technique/choice of vein or device	Ensure correct device and technique are used	
Needle inoculation of or contamination to practitioner	Unsafe practice. Incorrect disposal of sharps	Maintain safe practice. Activate safety device if applicable. Ensure sharps are disposed of immediately and safely	Follow accident procedure for sharps injury, for example make site bleed and apply a waterproof dressing. Report and document. An injection of hepatitis B immunoglobulin or triple therapy may be required
Accidental blood spillage	Damaged/faulty equipment	Check equipment prior to use	Report within hospital and/or MHRA
	Reverse vacuum	Use vacuumed plastic blood collection system. Remove blood tube from plastic tube holder before removing needle	Ensure blood is handled and transported correctly

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Suggested action
Missed vein	Inadequate anchoring. Poor vein selection. Wrong positioning. Lack of concentration. Poor lighting	Ensure that only properly trained staff perform venepuncture or that those who are training are supervised. Ensure the environment is well lit	Withdraw the needle slightly and realign it, providing the patient is not feeling any discomfort. Ensure all learners are supervised. If the patient is feeling pain, then the needle should be removed immediately
	Difficult venous access		Ask experienced colleague to perform the procedure
Spurt of blood on entry	Bevel tip of needle enters the vein before entire bevel is under the skin; usually occurs		Reassure the patient. Wipe blood away on removal of needle

	when the vein is very superficial		
Blood stops flowing	Through puncture: needle inserted too far	Correct angle	Draw back the needle, but if bruising is evident, then remove the needle immediately and apply pressure
	Contact with valves	Palpate to locate	Withdraw needle slightly to move tip away from valve
	Venous spasm	Results from mechanical irritation and cannot be prevented	Gently massage above the vein or apply heat
	Vein collapse	Use veins with large lumen. Use a smaller device	Release tourniquet, allow veins to refill and retighten tourniquet
	Small vein	Avoid use of small veins wherever possible	May require another venepuncture
	Poor blood flow	Use veins with large lumens	Apply heat above vein

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

It is important to ensure that the needle is removed correctly on completion of blood sampling and that the risk of haematoma formation is minimized. Pressure should be applied as the needle is removed from the skin. If pressure is applied too early, it causes the tip of the needle to drag along the intima of the vein, resulting in sharp pain and damage to the lining of the vessel.

The practitioner should ensure that firm pressure is maintained until bleeding has stopped. The patient should also be instructed to keep their arm straight and not bend it as this also increases the risk of bruising (Ernst 2005). A longer period of pressure may be necessary where the patient's blood may take longer to clot, for example, if the patient is receiving anticoagulants or is thrombocytopenic. The practitioner may choose to apply the tourniquet over the venepuncture site to ensure even and constant pressure on the area (Dougherty 2008). Alternatively, they can elevate the arm slightly above the heart to decrease venous pressure (Garza and Becan-McBride 2010).

The practitioner should inspect the site carefully for bleeding or bruising before applying a dressing to the site, and the patient leaving the department. If bruising has occurred the patient should be informed of why this has happened and given instructions for what to do to reduce the bruising and any associated pain. Initially the application of an ice pack may help to soothe and decrease bruising. The application of Hirudoid cream, which is used for the treatment of thrombophlebitis, may be helpful (BNF 2011).

Complications

Complications that may occur when venepuncture is performed include arterial puncture, nerve injury, haematoma, fainting and infection. Careful assessment and preparation will minimize the risks but if they occur then appropriate action should be taken immediately.

Arterial puncture

To prevent an arterial puncture, careful assessment in vein selection is necessary. The nurse should palpate the vessel prior to needle insertion to confirm the absence of a pulse; the angle of insertion should be less than 40° and in the event of a missed vein, blind probing should be avoided.

An arterial puncture can be identified by bright red blood, rapid blood flow and pain. The needle should be removed immediately and pressure applied for 5 minutes by the nurse. A pressure dressing should be applied and the patient should receive verbal and written advice to follow in the event of increased pain, swelling or loss of sensation. No tourniquet or blood pressure cuff should be reapplied to the arm for 24 hours. The incident should be documented in the patient's notes (Dougherty 2008).

Nerve injury

Careful vein selection and needle insertion should minimize the risk of nerve injury. The angle of insertion should be less than 40° and blind probing should be avoided. In the event of a nerve injury, the patient

may complain of a sharp shooting pain, burning or electric shock sensation that radiates down the arm and they may experience numbness/tingling in the fingers. The needle should be removed immediately to prevent further nerve damage. The patient should receive verbal and written advice to follow in the event that the pain/numbness continues for more than a few hours. The incident should be documented in the patient's notes (Dougherty 2008).

Haematoma

Haematoma formation is the most common complication of venepuncture (McCall and Tankersley 2008). A haematoma develops when blood leaks from the vein into the surrounding tissues; it may be caused by the needle penetrating completely through the vein wall, the needle only being partially inserted or insufficient pressure on the site when the needle is removed. If a haematoma develops, the needle should be removed immediately and pressure applied. In the event of a large haematoma developing the nurse can apply an ice pack to relieve pain and swelling. The patient should receive verbal and written advice as a haematoma may lead to a compression injury to the nerve. The incident should be documented in the patient's notes (Dougherty 2008).

Fainting

Fainting may occur during or immediately following venepuncture. The patient may complain of feeling light-headed and appear pale and sweaty. Loss of consciousness may occur suddenly so the nurse should be vigilant throughout the procedure and routinely confirm with the patient that they do not feel unwell or faint. In the event of the patient feeling faint, the nurse should remove the device immediately, apply pressure to the site and encourage the patient to lower the head and breathe deeply. The application of a cold compress to the forehead and increased ventilation (open a window if clinically acceptable) may help to make the patient more comfortable. If the patient suffers a loss of consciousness the nurse should call for assistance and ensure the patient's safety until they recover. The patient should not be allowed to leave the department until fully recovered and be advised not to drive

for at least 30 minutes (Garza and Becan-McBride 2005, McCall and Tankersley 2008). The incident should be documented in the patient's notes and the patient advised to inform staff on future occasions.

Infection

Infection at the venepuncture site is a rare occurrence (McCall and Tankersley 2008).

Aseptic technique should be maintained with careful attention to handwashing and skin preparation. The venepuncture site should not be repalpated after cleaning and the site should be covered for 15–20 minutes after the procedure. Infection at the venepuncture site should be reported to a doctor as antibiotics may be required.

Blood tests

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Blood tests are routinely collected to:

- confirm disease
- monitor disease
- regulate therapy/treatment.

It is important that the correct blood tube is used for each test. The blood tubes contain special additives relevant to the type of test required, usually indicated by the colour of the tube top. The practitioner should ensure that the correct tube is selected by referring to local hospital guidelines. Correct 'order of draw' should be followed to avoid transferring additive from one bottle to another when filling (Garza and Becan-McBride 2010).

Numerous blood tests are available. Blood samples are sent to various departments within the laboratory, such as haematology, biochemistry and microbiology. Brief outlines of some routine tests are given below. Please refer to specialist reference texts for more detail.

Haematology

The full blood count (FBC) is the most commonly requested blood test (Higgins 2007). The FBC involves monitoring the levels of red blood cells (erythrocytes), white blood cells (leucocytes) and platelets (thrombocytes). Variations to normal values can indicate anaemia, infection and thrombocytopenia (Table 11.3).

Table 11.3 Haematology

Test	Reference range	Functions/additional information
RBC	Men 4.5–6.5 × 10^{12}/L Women 3.9–5.6 × 10^{12}/L	The main function of the RBC is the transport of oxygen and carbon dioxide
Hb	Men 13.5–17.5 g/dL Women 11.5–15.5 g/dL	Haemoglobin (Hb) is a protein pigment found within the RBC which carries the oxygen Anaemia (deficiency in the number of RBC or in the Hb content) may occur for many reasons. Changes to cell production, deficient dietary intake or blood loss may be relevant and need to be investigated further
WBC	Men 3.7–9.5 × 10^{9}/L Women 3.9–11.1 × 10^{9}/L	The function of the WBC is defence against infection There are different kinds of WBC: neutrophils, lymphocytes, monocytes, eosinophils and basophils Leucopenia is a WBC count lower than 3.7 and is usually associated with the use of cytotoxic drugs Leucocytosis (high levels of neutrophils and lymphocytes) occurs as the body's normal response to infection and after surgery Leukaemia involves an increased WBC count caused by changes in cell production in the bone marrow. The leukaemic cells enter the blood in increased numbers in an immature state
Platelets	Men 150–400 × 10^{9}/L Women 150–400 × 10^{9}/L	Clot formation occurs when platelets and the blood protein fibrin combine A patient may be thrombocytopenic (low platelet count) due to drugs/poor production or have a raised count (thrombocytosis) with infection or autoimmune disease
Coagulation/ INR	INR range 2–3 (in some cases a range of 3–4.5 is acceptable)	Coagulation occurs to prevent excessive blood loss by the formation of a clot (thrombus). However, a clot that forms in an artery may block the vessel and cause an infarction or ischaemia which can be fatal (Blann 2007) Aspirin, warfarin and heparin are three drugs used for the prevention and/or treatment of thrombosis It is imperative that patients on warfarin therapy receive regular monitoring to ensure a balance of slowing the clot-forming process and maintaining the ability of the blood to clot (Blann 2007)

Blood transfusion

All patients who require a blood transfusion need to have their blood type confirmed. It is essential that correct patient identification and accurate labelling are maintained. The sample will be screened to determine the ABO and Rh (Rhesus) type. All staff should receive formal documented training in blood transfusion practice. (Refer to Chapter 8.)

Biochemistry

Urea and electrolytes are the most common biochemistry tests requested (Table 11.4).

Table 11.1 Biochemistry

Test	Reference range	Functions/additional information
Sodium	135–145 mmol/L	The main function of sodium is to maintain extracellular volume (water stored outside the cells), acid/base balance and the transmitting of nerve impulses Hypernatraemia (serum sodium >145 mmol/L) may be an indication of dehydration due to fluid loss from diarrhoea, excessive sweating, increased urinary output or a poor oral intake of fluid. An increased salt intake may also cause an elevation Hyponatraemia (serum sodium <135 mmol/L) may be indicated in fluid retention (oedema)
Potassium	3.5–5.2 mmol/L	Potassium plays a major role in nerve conduction, muscle function, acid/base balance and osmotic pressure. It has a direct effect on cardiac muscle, influencing cardiac output by helping to control the rate and force of each contraction The most common cause of hyperkalaemia (serum potassium >5.2 mmol/L) is chronic renal failure. The kidneys are unable to excrete potassium. The level may be elevated due to an increased intake of potassium supplements during treatment. Tissue cell destruction caused by trauma/cytotoxic therapy may cause a release of potassium from the cells and an elevation in the potassium plasma level. It may also be observed in untreated diabetic ketoacidosis Urgent treatment is required as hyperkalaemia may lead to changes in cardiac muscle contraction and cause subsequent cardiac arrest The main cause of hypokalaemia (serum potassium <3.5 mmol/L) is the loss of potassium via the kidneys during

		treatment with thiazide diuretics. Excessive/chronic diarrhoea may also cause a decreased potassium level
Urea	2.5–6.5 mmol/L	Urea is a waste product of metabolism that is transported to the kidneys and excreted as urine. Elevated levels of urea may indicate poor kidney function
Creatinine	55–105 µmol/L	Creatinine is a waste product of metabolism that is transported to the kidneys and excreted as urine. Elevated levels of creatinine may indicate poor kidney function
Calcium	2.20–2.60 mmol/L	Most of the calcium in the body is stored in the bone, but ionized calcium, which circulates in the blood plasma, plays an important role in the transmission of nerve impulses and the functioning of cardiac and skeletal muscle. It is also vital for blood coagulation High calcium levels (hypercalcaemia >2.6 mmol/L) can be due to hyperthyroidism, hyperparathyroidism or malignancy. Elevation in calcium levels may cause cardiac arrhythmia, potentially leading to cardiac arrest (Blann 2007) Tumour cells can cause excessive production of a protein called parathormone-related polypeptide (PTHrp) which causes a loss of calcium from the bone and an increase in the blood calcium levels. This is a major reason for hypercalcaemia in cancer patients (Higgins 2007) Hypocalcaemia (<2.20 mmol/L) is often associated with vitamin D deficiency due to inadequate intake or increased loss due to GI disease. Mild hypocalcaemia may be symptomless but severe hypocalcaemia may cause increased neuromuscular excitability and cardiac arrhythmias. It is also a common feature of chronic renal failure (Higgins 2007)
C-reactive protein (CRP)	<10 mg/L	Elevation in the CRP level can be a useful indication of bacterial infection. CRP is monitored after surgery and for patients who have a high risk of infection. The CRP level can help monitor the severity of inflammation and assist in the diagnosis of conditions such as systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease (Higgins 2007)
Albumin	35–50 g/L	Albumin is a protein found in blood plasma which assists in the transport of water-soluble substances and the maintenance of blood plasma volume
Bilirubin	(total) <17 µmol/L	Bilirubin is produced from the breakdown of haemoglobin; it is transported to the liver for excretion in bile. Elevated levels of bilirubin may cause jaundice

Liver function tests

There are numerous tests which are used to assess liver function. Additional tests include alkaline phosphatase, gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT), aspartate aminotransferase (AST) and alanine aminotransferase (ALT).

Microbiology

Various types of sample may be sent to the microbiology laboratory for screening, for example blood, urine, faeces and sputum. Blood tests sent to microbiology may include screening for hepatitis B, hepatitis C and HIV.

Blood cultures

Definition

A blood culture is a specimen of blood obtained from a single venepuncture or CVAD for the purpose of detecting bloodborne organisms (bacteria or fungi) and their associated infections (Lee *et al.* 2007). Inoculation of an aerobic and an anaerobic sample in two separate bottles comprises a set of blood cultures.

Related theory

Blood cultures are an essential part of the management of patients with serious bloodborne infections, enabling the identification of the causative pathogens, antimicrobial susceptibility and treatment guidance (Shore and Sandoe 2008). Bacteraemia and fungaemia are associated with high morbidity and mortality amongst hospitalized patients, particularly those with compromised host defences (Panceri *et al.* 2004). The accurate and timely detection of these remains one of the most important functions of clinical microbiology as early detection has significant diagnostic and prognostic importance (HPA 2008f).

Micro-organisms may be present in the blood intermittently or continuously, depending upon the source of infection (HPA 2008f). The majority of bacteraemias are intermittent, so blood cultures should be taken when there are clinical signs of an infection such as fever, as this is when the concentration of bacteria in the blood is at its highest (Higgins 2007).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

There are many signs and symptoms in the patient which may suggest bacteraemia but clinical judgement is required. The following indicators should be taken into account when assessing a patient for signs of bacteraemia or sepsis which would then indicate the need for blood culture sampling (DH 2007a).

- Core temperature out of normal range (>38°C or <36°C).
- Focal signs of infection.
- Abnormal heart rate (raised), blood pressure (low or raised) or respiratory rate (raised).
- Chills or rigors.
- Raised or very low white blood cell count.
- New or worsening confusion/altered levels of consciousness.

Methods of blood culture specimen collection

In recognition of the importance of taking accurate blood cultures, there is now national guidance that implements procedure and policy to improve the quality of blood culture investigations and to reduce the risk of blood sample contamination (DH 2007a). Contamination can come from a number of sources: the patient's skin, the equipment used to obtain the sample, the practitioner or the general environment. Failure to use an aseptic technique or careful process procedures when obtaining blood cultures can result in a 'false-positive' result which may lead to extensive diagnostic testing, excessive antibiotic use, prolonged hospitalization and artificially raised incidence rates (Dellinger *et al.* 2008).

In order to optimize the identification of causative organisms, the taking of a peripheral sample is recommended and two sets of cultures should be taken at separate times and from separate sites (DH 2007a). In cases of suspected endocarditis, this should be three sets within a 24-

hour period. Drawing more than one culture set can help to distinguish true bacteraemia from contaminated cultures (Shafazand and Weinacker 2002). Samples should not be taken from existing peripheral cannulas but if the patient has an existing CVAD a sample can be taken from this following collection of a separate peripheral sample. The femoral vein should be avoided for venepuncture because it is difficult to ensure adequate skin cleansing and disinfection (DH 2007a).

Blood cultures should be taken prior to commencing or changing antimicrobial therapy as antibiotics may delay or prevent bacterial growth, causing a falsely negative result (Higgins 2007). However, in accordance with the Surviving Sepsis Campaign, antimicrobial therapy should be started within the first hour of recognition of severe sepsis and blood cultures should be taken before antimicrobial therapy is initiated. This is essential to confirm infection and the responsible pathogens whilst not causing significant delay in antibiotic administration (Dellinger *et al.* 2008). If antibiotic therapy has already been commenced, blood cultures should ideally be taken immediately prior to the next dose, except in paediatric patients (DH 2007a).

Legal and professional issues

Competencies

Blood cultures should be collected by practitioners who have been trained in the collection procedure and whose competence in blood culture collection has been assessed (DH 2007a). Practitioners must be competent and feel confident that they have the knowledge, skill and understanding to undertake blood culture sampling for microbiological analysis (NMC 2008a).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

The use of a needle to decant blood into the culture bottles is now largely redundant due to the wide use of closed, vacuumed blood

collection systems (for example, Bio-Merieux BacT/ALERT® system which utilizes either a holder for venous access device sampling or a Luer adaptor safety winged device for peripheral sampling). See Figure 11.2. This reduces the health and safety risk to the healthcare professional and the risk of culture contamination.

Figure 11.2 A vacuumed collection system: two blood culture bottles, Vacutainer holder® and Vacutainer 'butterfly'®.

However, if the use of the needle and syringe method is unavoidable, the needle should not be changed between sample collection and inoculation of blood into the culture bottles (DH 2007a). Care should be taken not to under- or overfill the bottles as it is difficult to accurately judge the sample volume with this method (Shore and Sandoe 2008).

Volume of blood culture specimen collection

The volume of blood taken for a culture is also critical to ensure correct blood to liquid culture medium ratio. A false-negative result could occur if an insufficient volume is introduced or if too much blood is introduced, due to the effect of the culture medium in the bottles being diluted (Higgins 2007). The liquid culture medium is a mixture of nutrients that supports microbial growth and inhibits phagocytosis and lysozyme activity (Shore and Sandoe 2008). This helps to determine if there are pathogenic micro-organsims present in the blood. As there are a number of systems in use, the manufacturer's instructions should be followed as to the total volume required for each bottle. Adult patients with clinically significant bacteraemias often have a low number of

colony-forming units per millilitre of blood and a minimum of 10 mL per culture bottle is recommended (Dellinger *et al.* 2008).

Non-pharmacological support

Skin preparation products

Poor aseptic technique and skin decontamination can cause contamination of a blood culture with the patient's own skin flora, such as coagulase-negative staphylococci (Weston 2008). A combination of 2% chlorhexidine gluconate in 70% isopropyl alcohol is recommended as being effective for skin antisepsis (DH 2007a, Madeo and Barlow 2008, Pratt *et al.* 2007). Chlorhexidine gluconate maintains a persistent antimicrobial function by disrupting the cell membrane and precipitating their contents, whilst the isopropyl alcohol quickly destroys micro-organisms by denaturing cell proteins (Inwood 2007). In order to achieve a reduction and inhibition of the micro-organisms living on the skin, gentle friction is required for 30 seconds and the solution should be allowed to dry to achieve good skin antisepsis and to expose the cracks and fissures of the skin to the solution (Pratt *et al.* 2007).

Central venous access device-related infection

A CVAD presents a high risk of infection with an incidence of bacteraemia of between 4% and 8% (HPA 2008f). When it is suspected that the CVAD is the source of infection, a blood culture sample should ideally be obtained from each lumen of the vascular device, as well as obtaining a peripherally drawn sample (Dellinger *et al.* 2008, DH 2007a, Gabriel 2008). Adequate hub cleansing with 2% chlorhexidine in 70% isopropyl alcohol is essential in reducing cross-contamination of the sample (Inwood 2007).

Blood cultures from a CVAD can identify colonization from either the device itself or the bloodstream (Penwarden and Montgomery 2002). To diagnose CVAD-related infections, comparison of the time it takes to achieve a positive result from both central and peripheral cultures is recommended (Catton *et al.* 2005). If a culture from the CVAD is positive much earlier than from the peripheral culture (>2 hours earlier)

then it can be assumed that the vascular access device is the source of the infection with up to 96% sensitivity and 92% specificity (Bouza *et al.* 2005). Results of such analysis can guide whether removal of the CVAD is indicated.

Procedure guideline 11.2 Blood cultures: peripheral (winged device collection method)

Essential equipment

- Alcohol-based skin cleaning preparation (2% chlorhexidine in 70% isopropyl alcohol)
- Alcohol-based swab for blood culture bottle decontamination (2% chlorhexidine in 70% isopropyl alcohol)
- A set of blood culture bottles (anaerobic and aerobic)
- Vacuum-assisted collection system (winged device for peripheral cultures)
- Non-sterile gloves
- Gauze swabs
- Appropriate document/form

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol-based handrub. Apply gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (DH 2007a, C).
3 Clean any visible soiled skin on the patient with soap and water then dry.	To reduce the risk of contamination (DH 2007a, C).
Procedure	
4 Apply a disposable tourniquet and palpate to identify vein.	In preparation for venepuncture. E
5 Clean skin with a 2% chlorhexidine in 70% isopropyl alcohol swab for 30 seconds and allow to dry for 30 seconds. Do not palpate site again after cleaning.	To enable adequate skin antisepsis and decontamination, and to prevent contamination from practitioner's fingers (DH 2007a, C; Inwood 2007, C).

6 Remove flip-off caps from culture bottles and clean with 2% chlorhexidine in 70% isopropyl alcohol swab and allow to dry.	To reduce the risk of environmental contamination causing false-positive results (DH 2007a, C).
7 Wash and dry hands again or use alcohol handrub and apply clean examination gloves (sterile gloves are not essential).	To decontaminate hands having been in contact with the patient's skin to palpate vein. E
8 Attach winged blood collection set into the appropriate vacuum holder for taking blood cultures. Remove sheath-covering needle at wings and perform venepuncture.	Reduces risk of contamination and health and safety risk to practitioner (DH 2006, C; DH 2007a, C).
9 If blood is being taken for other tests, collect the blood culture first. Inoculate the aerobic culture first.	To reduce the risk of contamination of culture bottles after inoculating other blood bottles. E
10 Place adaptor case over blood culture bottle and puncture septum.	To initiate vacuum collection action. E
11 Attach aerobic bottle, hold upright, and use bottle graduation lines to accurately gauge sample volumes (at least 10 mL in each bottle or as recommended by manufacturer). Remove bottle and replace with anaerobic bottle.	To reduce the risk of a false-negative result due to insufficient volume or overdiluted culture medium (Higgins 2007, C).
12 Remove winged device, apply pressure to the venepuncture site and apply appropriate dressing.	To prevent bleeding at the site. E
Postprocedure	
13 Discard winged collection set in sharps container.	To reduce risk of sharps injury. E
14 Remove gloves and wash/decontaminate hands.	To ensure correct clinical waste management and reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C).
15 Label bottles with appropriate patient details, ensuring the barcodes on the bottles are not covered or removed.	To ensure correct patient and sample identity and to aid traceability within the laboratory. E
16 Complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as indications, site and time of culture).	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, Weston 2008).
17 Arrange prompt delivery to the microbiology laboratory to process immediately (or incubate at 37°C).	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification (Higgins 2007, C).

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Blood cultures should be dispatched to the laboratory for immediate process. If cultures cannot be processed immediately they should be

incubated at 37°C in order for bacterial growth to begin and to prevent deterioration in pathogenic micro-organism yield (Higgins 2007).

Ongoing care

Decisions on commencing, changing or adding antimicrobial therapy may need to be considered depending upon the patient's condition and history. Drug-resistant micro-organisms have highlighted the need for prudent control of antibiotic prescribing and usage. It is estimated that up to 40% of patients with moderate to severe infections are given unnecessary or inappropriate antibiotics to treat the *in vitro* susceptibility of the pathogen that is subsequently cultured (Johannes 2008). Decisions regarding appropriate choice of empirical therapy as well as the duration and dosage should be made in conjunction with advice from the microbiology team (Tacconelli 2009).

Antimicrobial drug assay

Definition

Therapeutic drug monitoring of blood serum ensures that there are sufficient levels of particular antimicrobial drugs to be therapeutically effective, whilst avoiding potentially toxic excess that may lead to adverse side-effects (Thomson 2004).

Related theory

The majority of drugs used in clinical practice have a wide therapeutic window; that is, the difference between the therapeutic and toxic level is substantial, and quantitative analysis of serum levels is unnecessary. However, there are certain drugs that require monitoring of serum concentration levels due to their narrow therapeutic range where toxicity is associated with persistently high concentrations, whilst therapeutic failure can result from low concentrations (Thomson 2004).

Examples of drugs that need monitoring in clinical practice include lithium, digoxin, theophylline, phenytoin, ciclosporin and certain

antibiotics (Higgins 2007). This section will focus on aminoglycoside antibiotics, such as gentamicin and amikacin, and glycopeptide antibiotics such as vancomycin as these are the most commonly monitored antimicrobial assays.

These drugs are excreted almost entirely by glomerular filtration and are potentially nephrotoxic and ototoxic. When aminoglycosides or glycopeptides are used as single modes of treatment renal toxicity is estimated to be 5–10%, although this can increase to as much as 30% if both are used synergistically (Pannu and Nadim 2008).

- Nephrotoxicity involves the proximal tubules that are capable of regeneration; therefore adverse effects may be reversible over time (Hadaway and Chamallas 2003).
- Ototoxicity causes damage within the neuroepithelial cells of the inner ear, which can cause cochlear damage and/or vestibular impairment. These cells cannot be regenerated so the effects are irreversible (Hammett-Stabler and Johns 1998). Ototoxicity occurs in 0.5–3% of patients and is usually associated with very high serum concentrations of the drugs (Sha 2005).

Aminoglycoside antibiotics

Aminoglycosides such as gentamicin and amikacin are potent antibiotics, which are mainly used against aerobic, Gram-negative bacteria and are often used synergistically against certain Gram-positive organisms (Hammet-Stabler and Johns 1998). Single daily dosing of aminoglycosides is possible because of their rapid 'concentration-dependent' action, which increases both the rate and extent of bacterial cell death (Owens and Shorr 2009). The timing of serum sampling will be determined by the patient's clinical manifestations, particularly renal function. For gentamicin the trough levels should be <1 mg/L (18 hours post dose) and <0.5 mg/L (24 hours post dose). For amikacin the trough level should be <5 mg/L.

Glycopeptide antibiotics

Vancomycin is the glycopeptide antibiotic most widely used for the treatment of serious infections caused by Gram-positive pathogens (Jones 2006). Glycopeptides exhibit 'time-dependent' actions, meaning that their effectiveness increases with the duration of time that the antibiotic serum concentration is above the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) of susceptible pathogens (Owens and Shorr 2009).

The use and monitoring of vancomycin have increased due to the emergence of meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) but the emergence of vancomycin-resistant MRSA has further complicated its clinical use (Jones 2006).

Determination of serum blood levels of vancomycin depends on the frequency of administration. If given intermittently (usually twice-daily doses), trough levels should be taken at set times, immediately before the administration of the next bolus dose (Jones 2006). The use of the continuous infusion of vancomycin also occurs in clinical practice and it is suggested that this is a less toxic mode of administration (Hadaway and Chamallas 2003). If given intermittently, the trough level should be between 5 and 15 mg/L, whilst continuous infusions aim to maintain serum concentrations at between 15 and 25 mg/L.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

The main criterion for monitoring serum drug concentration is to ensure that there is enough drug given for efficacy whilst avoiding concentrations associated with a significant risk of toxicity (Catchpole and Hastings 1995).

Indications

Accurate and timely monitoring of microbial assay levels is indicated in patients receiving intravenous aminoglycoside or glycopeptide antibiotics:

- to ensure optimum therapeutic range

- to minimize high serum levels which may cause adverse side-effects of the drugs (particular caution should be exercised in patients who have renal impairment).

Contraindications

The samples should not be taken if there has been insufficient time lapse between dose administration and sample collection.

Principles of care

The initial dosage regimen should be appropriate for the clinical condition being treated, the patient's clinical characteristics (age, weight, renal function and so on) and concomitant drug therapy (Thomson 2004). The timing of the sample and interpretation of the results of analysis need consideration in relation to the dose given and the timing of previous dose administration.

Serum samples can be taken at two different times: the peak or the trough. A peak sample is collected at the drug's highest therapeutic concentration within the dosing period. The postdose peak level timing will vary depending on the drug; ordinarily this is 1 hour after the completion of an infusion, although in the case of vancomycin, which has a slow distribution phase, it is recommended that the sample is taken at least 1–2 hours after the infusion ends (Tobin *et al.* 2002).

Trough levels are measured just prior to the administration of the next dose, that is, at the lowest concentration in the dosing period (Tobin *et al.* 2002). Therefore, trough levels are more commonly used because the level is more representative of how the different variables such as drug absorption and renal function affect the concentration within a predetermined timeframe. The results can then be used to adjust dosages to achieve the optimal response with the minimal toxicity.

Abnormally elevated serum levels may be obtained if the samples are taken from a CVAD through which the drug has been administered. This is more likely when residual drugs remain in the catheter if it has not been flushed correctly following administration of the drug or the first 5–10 mL of blood has not been discarded (Himberger and Himberger

2001). If a multilumen CVAD is *in situ*, a different lumen from the one used to administer the drug should be used to obtain the blood specimen.

Procedure guideline 11.3 Blood sampling: antimicrobial drug assay

Essential equipment

- Appropriate blood sample bottles
- Vacuum-assisted collection system
- Gloves
- Apron
- Appropriate documentation/forms

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Discuss indication for procedure with patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol-based handrub. Apply gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (Fraise and Bradley, E).
Procedure	
3 For trough levels: Following venepuncture,withdraw the volume of blood appropriate to the blood sample bottle using the vacuum-assisted collection system.	To ensure the correct volume of blood is obtained and to reduce the safety risk to practitioner (DH 2006, C; DH 2007a, C).
4 Clearly label blood sample bottle and appropriate form with 'pre-drug administration blood'.	To ensure there is no confusion between the pre-drug and post-drug serum level specimens. E
5 Administer intravenous antibiotics as prescribed via the patient's established vascular access device.	To continue with patient's prescribed drug regimen. E
6 If peak level required: Within an allotted time after administration, repeat step 3. Clearly label blood sample bottle and appropriate form with 'post-drug administration blood'.	To allow time for even distribution of the drug through the blood for peak blood levels to be achieved (Jones 2006, E).
Postprocedure	
7 Ensure microbiology request forms are completed correctly including date, exact time and dosage of previously	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for

administered dose.	laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
8 Arrange prompt delivery to the microbiology laboratory.	To allow for prompt analysis and timely adjustments to patient's drug therapy regime if indicated. E

Postprocedural considerations

Ongoing care

Changes in dosage regimens will depend upon interpretation of the results by the microbiology, medical and nursing team. Notably high serum drug levels should prompt the microbiology team to telephone a result through to the medical team in charge of the patient's care, especially if this warrants withholding subsequent doses of the drug. A low drug serum level would instigate an increase in the dosage of the drug. Any changes to the drug regime should be communicated and clearly documented on the patient's prescription chart.

Documentation

In accordance with the principles of good record keeping, the date and time of when a trough and/or peak drug assay level is sent to the laboratory should be documented clearly and promptly in the patient's notes, care plan and/or on the patient's drug chart (or antimicrobial flow charts as provided by the pharmacy department) (NMC 2009). This assists in communication and the dissemination of information between members of the interprofessional healthcare team.

Specimen collection: swab sampling

Definition

Sterile swabs are commonly used in clinical practice to obtain samples of material from skin and mucous membranes. They are utilized to identify micro-organisms in suspected infection or as part of a screening

programme to identify patients who may be carrying pathogens without displaying clinical signs or symptoms (Ferguson 2005). The overall aim is to identify the causative organism and determine the most effective therapy.

Related theory

Rationale

Obtaining a swab is one of the easiest and most unequivocal methods of sampling in clinical practice (Lawrence 1999). Swabbing is aimed at quantitative or qualitative collection of bodily fluid or cutaneous material for the purpose of obtaining a specimen for microbiological analysis (Kingsley 2001). Samples of infected material can be obtained from any accessible part of the body by using a sterile swab tipped with cotton wool or synthetic material (Hampson 2006).

Swabs for screening programmes

Meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* is one of the most significant problematic organisms within healthcare (Weston 2008). Colonized and infected patients represent the most important reservoir of MRSA strains within hospitals (HPA 2008b) The transmission of MRSA and the risk of MRSA infection can only be effectively addressed if MRSA carriers are identified and treated to reduce this risk of transmission (DH 2006). These screening control measures guide staff in the protection of patients from MRSA colonization and infection. Active screening of patients for MRSA carriage is performed based on a risk assessment approach to the use of isolation and cohorting facilities (Coia *et al.* 2006).

Obtaining swabs is a key component of an effective MRSA prevention programme and certain patient groups are deemed to be at higher risk of contracting serious MRSA infections: critical care, burns, transplantation, cardiothoracic surgery, orthopaedic surgery, trauma, vascular surgery and renal patients (Coia *et al.* 2006).

The normal habitat of *Staphylococcus aureus*, including MRSA, is human skin, particularly the anterior nares (nose), axilla (armpit) and perineum (groin) (DH 2006). The most commonly sampled site for MRSA screening is the nose, which can detect up to 80% of MRSA-positive patients (DH 2006). If samples from other sites, such as the groin, are included in the screening regime, detection of MRSA-positive patients increases to 100% (DH 2006). Other samples can be taken from the following sites: skin lesions and wounds, invasive line sites and other skin breaks, tracheostomies, catheter specimens of urine (CSU) and sputum from patients with a productive cough (Coia *et al.* 2006). The microbiological request form should clearly indicate that the samples are for MRSA screening to ensure that correct laboratory techniques are used and to avoid potential waste of resources.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

Taking a swab is indicated:

- if there are clinical signs of infection which may manifest as symptoms such as pain, redness, inflammation, heat, pus, odour and so on
- if a patient shows signs of systemic infection or has a pyrexia of unknown origin (PUO)
- as part of a screening programme.

Contraindications

- As routine use (unless part of a screening regimen).
- On chronic wounds which will be colonized with skin flora.

Principles of care

Although swabs are relatively simple to use, absorbency of infected material is variable and adequate material collection that is

representative of pathogenic changes, for example to wounds, is often dependent upon correct sampling technique (Gould and Brooker 2008). Swab specimens should be collected using an aseptic technique using sterile swabs, with the principal aim of gathering as much material as possible from the site of infection/inflammation. Care should be taken to avoid contamination with anything other than sample material such as surrounding tissue, which will be contaminated with other pathogens such as skin flora (Weston 2008).

If an infected area is producing copious amounts of pus or exudate, a specimen should be aspirated using a sterile syringe because swabs tend to absorb excess overlying exudate, resulting in an inadequate specimen (Gilchrist 2000). If the area to be swabbed is relatively dry, for example nasal or skin swabs, the tip of the swab can be moistened with sterile 0.9% sodium chloride which makes it more absorbent and increases the survival of pathogens (Weston 2008).

Obtaining a swab should be considered in conjunction with a comprehensive nursing assessment. This could include observation of localized infection such as inflammation or discharge from a wound during a dressing change.

Practitioners should know what type of pathogenic micro-organisms they are testing for, for example whether a bacterial or viral infection is suspected, as this will determine which swab is the most appropriate. Advice should be sought from the microbiology laboratory prior to taking a swab to ensure appropriate and resource-effective sampling or specimen collection. For example, whilst viruses cause the majority of throat infections, group A streptococcus is the main bacterial cause of sore throats and therefore if suspected, a swab with bacterial transport medium would need to be used rather than one containing viral transport medium.

Legal and professional issues

Competencies

Obtaining specimens for microbiological analysis is a key component in the patient's assessment and subsequent nursing care. Therefore, practitioners must be competent and feel confident that they have the knowledge, skill and understanding to obtain and correctly process samples for specimen collection (NMC 2008a).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Commercially produced swabs are aseptically packaged in plastic transport tubes which contain either a bacterial or viral transport medium designed to maintain micro-organism viability between sampling and processing (Lawrence and Ameen 1998). If unsure, the practitioner should liaise with the microbiology laboratory to clarify which is the most suitable swab for a particular investigation or type of specimen.

Specific patient preparations

It may be necessary to position the patient in order to obtain the required sample.

Procedure guideline 11.4 Swab sampling: ear

Essential equipment

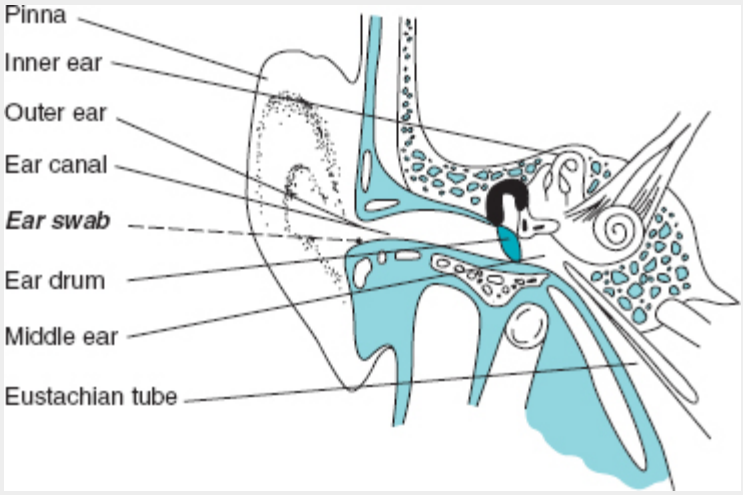
- Gloves
- Apron
- Sterile swab (with transport medium)
- Appropriate documentation/form

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (DH 2007a, C).

hands with alcohol-based handrub. Don apron and gloves.	
3 Ensure no antibiotics or other therapeutic drops have been used in the aural region 3 hours before taking the swab.	To prevent collection of such therapeutic agents which may mask pathogenic organisms and invalidate the specimen (Hampson 2006, E).
Procedure	
4 Remove the swab from outer packaging and place at the entrance of the auditory meatus as shown in Action Figure 4. Rotate gently once.	To avoid trauma to the ear and to collect secretions/suitable specimen material (Mims 2004, E).
Postprocedure	
5 Remove cap from plastic transport tube.	To avoid contamination of the swab and to maintain the viability of the sampled material during transportation (Ferguson 2005, E; HPA 2008a, C).
6 Remove gloves and apron and wash/decontaminate hands.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C).
7 Complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as exact site, nature of specimen and investigation required).	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
8 Arrange prompt delivery to the microbiology laboratory or refrigerate at 4–8°C.	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification and to ensure the best possible conditions for laboratory analysis (Higgins 2007, C; HPA 2008c, C).

Action Figure 4 Area to be swabbed when sampling the outer ear.



Procedure guideline 11.5 Swab sampling: eye

Essential equipment

- Gloves
- Apron
- Sterile bacterial or viral swab (with transport medium)
- Appropriate documentation/form

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol-based handrub. Don apron and gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (DH 2007a, C).
3 Seek advice from the microbiology laboratory as to the correct culture medium and swab required.	Different culture media and swabs are required for bacteria, viruses and chlamydia (Higgins 2007, C).
Procedure	
4 Ask patient to look upwards.	To prevent corneal damage (Stollery *et al.* 2005, E).
5 Hold the swab parallel to the cornea and gently rub the conjunctiva in the lower eyelids from nasal side outwards.	To ensure that a swab of the correct site is taken and to avoid contamination by touching the eyelid (Stollery *et al.* 2005, E).
6 *If for chlamydia specimen:* apply slightly more pressure when swabbing	To obtain as many organisms as possible from the follicles and to sweep organisms away from the lower punctum (Stollery *et al.* 2005, E).
7 If both eyes are to be swabbed, label swabs 'right' and 'left' accordingly.	To prevent the wrong swab being placed in the wrong culture medium. E
Postprocedure	
8 Remove cap from plastic transport tube.	To avoid contamination of the swab (HPA 2008a, C).
9 Carefully place swab into plastic transport tube, ensuring it is fully immersed in the transport medium. Ensure cap is firmly secured.	To avoid contamination of the swab and to maintain the viability of the sampled material during transportation (Ferguson 2005, E).
10 Remove gloves and apron and wash/decontaminate hands.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C).
11 Complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as exact site, nature of specimen and investigation required).	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
12 Arrange prompt delivery to the microbiology laboratory.	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification and to ensure the best possible conditions for laboratory analysis (Higgins 2007, C).

Procedure guideline 11.6 Swab sampling: nose

Essential equipment

- Gloves
- Apron
- Sterile bacterial or viral swab (with transport medium)
- Appropriate documentation/form

Optional equipment

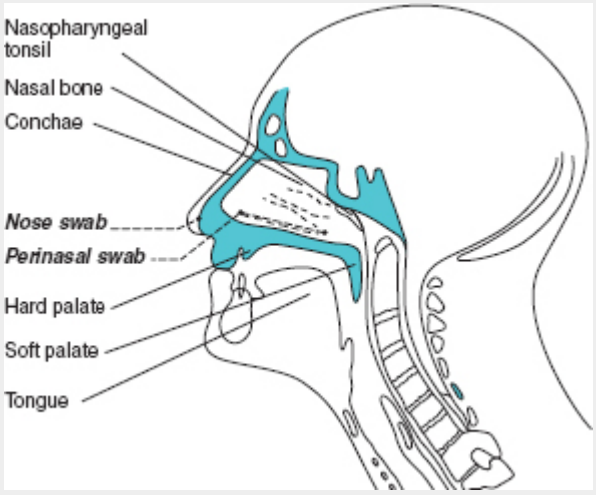
- 0.9% sodium chloride

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol-based handrub. Don apron and gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (DH 2007a, C).
Procedure	
3 Ask patient to tilt head backwards.	To optimize visualization of area to be swabbed (Gould and Brooker 2008, E).
4 Moisten swab with sterile saline	To prevent discomfort to the patient as the nasal mucosa is normally dry and organisms will adhere more easily to a moist swab (Hampson 2006, C).
5 Insert swab inside the anterior nares with the tip directed upwards and gently rotate (see Action Figure 5).	To ensure that an adequate specimen from the correct site is obtained and to avoid damage to the delicate epithelium (Gould and Brooker 2008, E).
6 Repeat the procedure with the same swab in the other nostril.	To optimize organism collection. E
Postprocedure	
7 Remove cap from plastic transport tube.	To avoid contamination of the swab (HPA 2008a, C).
8 Carefully place swab into plastic transport tube, ensuring it is fully immersed in the transport medium. Ensure cap is firmly secured.	To avoid contamination of the swab and to maintain the viability of the sampled material during transportation (Ferguson 2005, E).
9 Provide the patient with a tissue if required.	For patient comfort (Higgins 2008, E).
10 Remove gloves and apron and wash/decontaminate hands.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C).
11 Complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as exact	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).

site, nature of specimen and investigation required).	
12 *If sample taken for screening:* state clearly on the microbiology request form, for example for MRSA screening.	To ensure only these organisms are being analysed, so the result will only indicate their presence or absence, and sensitivities (HPA 2008d, C).
13 Arrange prompt delivery to the microbiology laboratory.	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification and to ensure the best possible conditions for laboratory analysis (Higgins 2007, C).

Action Figure 5 Area to be swabbed when sampling the nose.



Procedure guideline 11.8 Swab sampling: rectum

Essential equipment

- Gloves
- Apron
- Sterile bacterial or viral swab (with transport medium)
- Appropriate documentation/form

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Ensure a suitable location in which to carry out the procedure.	To maintain patient privacy and dignity (Gilbert 2006, E).
3 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (DH 2007a, C).

alcohol-based handrub. Don apron and gloves.	
Procedure	
4 Pass the swab, with care, through the anus into the rectum and rotate gently.	To avoid trauma and to ensure that a rectal, not an anal, sample is obtained. E
5 *If specimen is for suspected threadworm:* take swab from the perianal area.	Threadworms lay their ova on the perianal skin (Mims 2004, E).
Postprocedure	
6 Remove cap from plastic transport tube.	To avoid contamination of the swab (HPA 2008a, C).
7 Carefully place swab into plastic transport tube, ensuring it is fully immersed in the transport medium. Ensure cap is firmly secured.	To avoid contamination of the swab and to maintain viability of the sampled material during transportation (Ferguson 2005, E).
8 Remove gloves and apron and wash/decontaminate hands.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C).
9 Complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as exact site, nature of specimen and investigation required).	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
10 Arrange prompt delivery to the microbiology laboratory.	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification and to ensure the best possible conditions for laboratory analysis (Higgins 2007, C).

Procedure guideline 11.7 Swab sampling: penis

Essential equipment

- Gloves
- Apron
- Sterile bacterial or viral swab (with transport medium)
- Appropriate documentation/form

Preprocedure

Action	**Rationale**
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol-based handrub. Don apron and gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (DH 2007a, C).
Procedure	
3 The patient should not have passed urine for at least 1 hour.	To ensure a representative sample from the area being swabbed (HPA 2004, C).

4 Retract prepuce.	To obtain maximum visibility of area to be swabbed. E
5 Pass the swab gently through the urethral meatus and rotate gently.	To collect a specimen of discharge or secretions. E
Postprocedure	
6 Remove cap from plastic transport tube.	To avoid contamination of the swab (HPA 2008a, C).
7 Carefully place swab into plastic transport tube, ensuring it is fully immersed in the transport medium. Ensure cap is firmly secured.	To avoid contamination of the swab and to maintain viability of the sampled material during transportation (Ferguson 2005, E).
8 Remove gloves and apron and wash/decontaminate hands.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C).
9 Complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as exact site, nature of specimen and investigation required).	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
10 Arrange prompt delivery to the microbiology laboratory (within 4 hours).	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification and to ensure the best possible conditions for laboratory analysis (Higgins 2007, C).

Procedure guideline 11.9 Swab sampling: skin

Essential equipment

- Gloves
- Apron
- Sterile bacterial or viral swab (with transport medium)
- Appropriate documentation/form

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol-based handrub. Don apron and gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (DH 2007a, C).
Procedure	
3 *For cutaneous sampling (for screening, for example groin)*: moisten swab with sterile saline and roll one swab along the area of skin along the inside of the thighs closest to the genitalia.	Organisms adhere more easily to a moist swab (Hampson 2006, C).

Postprocedure

4*If for swab specimen*: remove cap from plastic transport tube.	To avoid contamination of the swab (HPA 2008a, C).
5 Carefully place swab into plastic transport tube, ensuring it is fully immersed in the transport medium. Ensure cap is firmly secured.	To avoid contamination of the swab and to maintain the viability of the sampled material during transportation (Ferguson 2005, E).
6 Remove gloves and apron and wash/decontaminate hands.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C).
7 Complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as exact site, nature of specimen and investigation required).	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
8 Arrange prompt delivery to the microbiology laboratory (keep at room temperature).	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification and to ensure the best possible conditions for laboratory analysis (Higgins 2007, C).

Procedure guideline 11.10 Swab sampling: throat

Essential equipment

- Gloves
- Apron
- Sterile bacterial or viral swab (with transport medium)
- Appropriate documentation/form
- Tongue spatula
- Light source

Preprocedure

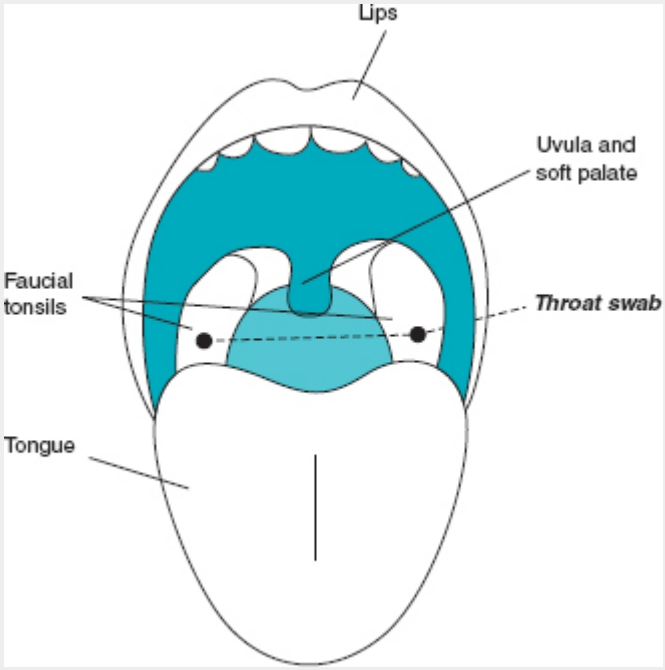
Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b,, C).
2 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol-based handrub. Don apron and gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (DH 2007a, C).

Procedure

3 Ask patient to sit upright facing a strong light, tilt head backwards, open mouth and stick out tongue.	To ensure maximum visibility of the area to be swabbed and avoid contact with the oral mucosa (Gould and Brooker 2008, E).
4 Depress tongue with a spatula.	The procedure may cause the patient to gag. The spatula prevents the tongue moving to the roof of the

	mouth, which would contaminate the specimen (Rushing 2006, E).
5 Ask patient to say 'Ah'.	To relax the throat muscles and help minimize the gag reflex (Rushing 2006, E).
6 Quickly but gently roll the swab over any area of exudate or inflammation or over the tonsils and posterior pharynx (see Action Figure 6).	To obtain the required sample (Weston 2008, E).
7 Carefully withdraw the swab, avoiding touching any other area of the mouth or tongue.	To prevent contamination of the specimen with the resident flora of the oropharynx (Weston 2008, E).
Postprocedure	
8 Remove cap from plastic transport tube.	To avoid contamination of the swab (HPA 2008a, C).
9 Carefully place swab into plastic transport tube, ensuring it is fully immersed in the transport medium. Ensure cap is firmly secured.	To avoid contamination of the swab and maintain the viability of the sampled material during transportation (Ferguson 2005, E).
10 Remove gloves and apron and wash/decontaminate hands.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C).
11 Complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as exact site, nature of specimen and investigation required).	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
12 Arrange prompt delivery to the microbiology laboratory.	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification and to ensure the best possible conditions for laboratory analysis (Higgins 2007, C).

Action Figure 6 Area to be swabbed when sampling the throat.



Procedure guideline 11.11 Swab sampling: low vagina

Essential equipment

- Gloves
- Apron
- Sterile bacterial or viral swab (with transport medium)
- Appropriate documentation/form
- Light source

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Ensure a suitable location in which to carry out the procedure.	To maintain patient privacy and dignity (Gilbert 2006, E).
3 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol-based handrub. Don apron and gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (DH 2007a, C).
4 Place the patient in a dorsal position supported by a pillow and ask her to bring her heels together, bend her legs and draw her heels towards her bottom.	To ensure patient assumes correct position for the procedure. E
Procedure	
5 *For low vaginal swab:* insert the swab into the lower part of the vagina and rotate gently but firmly.	To obtain appropriate sample. E
6 Allow patient to resume a comfortable position.	To aid patient comfort. E
Postprocedure	
7 Remove cap from plastic transport tube.	To avoid contamination of the swab (HPA 2008a, C).
8 Carefully place swab into plastic transport tube, ensuring it is fully immersed in the transport medium. Ensure cap is firmly secured.	To avoid contamination of the swab and to maintain the viability of the sampled material during transportation (HPA 2004, C; Ferguson 2005, E).
9 Remove gloves and apron and wash/decontaminate hands.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C).
10 Complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as exact site, nature of specimen and investigation required).	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
11 Arrange prompt delivery to the microbiology laboratory (within 4 hours).	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification and to ensure the best possible

	conditions for laboratory analysis (Higgins 2007, C).

Procedure guideline 11.12 Swab sampling: wound

Essential equipment

- Gloves
- Apron
- Sterile bacterial or viral swab (with transport medium)
- Appropriate documentation/form
- Dressing pack, cleansing solution and dressing (post sampling procedure)

Optional quipment

- 0.9% sodium chloride

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol-based handrub. Don apron and gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (DH 2007a, C).
3 Remove current dressing, if applicable.	To expose wound in preparation for swabbing. E
4 Rewash and decontaminate hands. Open sterile dressing pack, decant sterile swab and don sterile gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (DH 2007a, C) and prepare equipment for sampling.
Procedure	
5 Roll swab in a 'zig-zag' motion to cover the entire wound surface whilst simultaneously rotating the swab between the thumb and forefinger.	To maximize collection of micro-organisms within the wound bed (Rushing 2006, C).
6 Use enough pressure to express fluid from within the wound tissue but avoid taking a specimen from exudates or touching the wound margin at the skin.	To gather as much exudate as possible without contaminating the sterile swab with resident skin flora (Kingsley 2001, E).
7 If the wound is dry, the tip of the swab should be moistened with 0.9% sodium chloride.	To make the swab more absorbent and to increase survival of pathogens present prior to culture (Weston 2008, E).

8 If pus is present, it should be aspirated using a sterile syringe and decanted into a sterile specimen pot.	To yield the optimum number of micro-organisms present within the wound (Weston 2008, E).
Postprocedure	
9 Remove cap from plastic transport tube.	To avoid contamination of the swab (HPA 2008a, C).
10 Carefully place swab into plastic transport tube, ensuring it is fully immersed in the transport medium. Ensure cap is firmly secured.	To avoid contamination of the swab and to maintain the viability of the sampled material during transportation (Ferguson 2005, E).
11 Redress the wound, if applicable, as per patient care plan.	To redress the wound. E
12 Remove gloves and apron, discard all clinical waste and wash/decontaminate hands.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C).
13 Complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as exact site, nature of specimen and investigation required).	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston, 2008, E).
14 Arrange prompt delivery to the microbiology laboratory (keep at room temperature).	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification and to ensure the best possible conditions for laboratory analysis (Higgins, 2007, C).

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Specimens may be compromised by incorrect storage and transportation. If not processed immediately, swabs need to be refrigerated or kept at an ambient temperature, depending on where the swab was obtained from, to prevent deterioration of pathogenic micro-organisms (see specific procedure guidelines for exact storage requirements). Advice should be sought from the microbiology laboratory if practitioners are unsure of the storage requirements of the sample.

Documentation

Relevant and detailed information such as clinical presentation, signs and symptoms of infection, and the site and nature of the swab should be indicated on the sample and microbiology request form. This allows the microbiology laboratory to select the most appropriate processing technique and assist in differentiating organisms which would normally

be expected at a particular site from those causing infection (Weston 2008).

In accordance with the principles of good record keeping, the date and time of when a swab is sent to the laboratory should be documented clearly and promptly in the patient's notes and care plan (NMC 2009). This should be done alongside documentation of the clinical nursing assessment, particularly in relation to significant findings that have prompted the collection of the sample such as observation of inflammation or discharge at the site. This assists in communication and the dissemination of information between members of the interprofessional healthcare team.

Specimen collection: urine sampling

Definition

Urine samples are intended to identify any organisms causing infection within the urinary tract (Hampson 2006). Urinary tract infections (UTIs) result from the presence and multiplication of bacteria in one or more structures of the urinary tract with associated tissue invasion (HPA 2008g).

Related theory

Protection against infection is normally given by the constant flow of urine and regular bladder emptying, which prevent the colonization of micro-organisms (HPA 2008g). The urethra is colonized with naturally occurring flora but urine proximal to the distal urethra is normally sterile. As urine passes through the urethra some of these micro-organisms are flushed through and normal urine will naturally contain a small number of bacteria. Therefore, the presence of bacteriuria is insignificant in the absence of clinical symptoms of an infection (Weston 2008).

Urinary tract infections account for 19.7% of all overall hospital-acquired infections (DH 2007b). UTIs in adults are common,

particularly in women due to the short female urethra and its close proximity to the perineum (HPA 2008g).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Urine sample requests for Microscopy, Culture and Sensitivity (MC&S) constitute the largest single category of specimens examined in microbiological laboratories. The main value of urine culture is to identify bacteria and their sensitivity to antibiotics (Higgins 2007).

Urine sampling should be considered in combination with clinical assessment and urinalysis to avoid unnecessary sample processing which has time and cost implications for the microbiology laboratory (Simerville *et al.* 2005). A clinical assessment would involve examination of the odour, turbidity and colour, whether there are obvious signs of haematuria and pain particularly around the suprapubic area (Dulczak and Kirk 2005). Urinalysis may reveal a high pH, the presence of blood or positivity to leucocyte esterase (an enzyme released by white blood cells) or nitrite, all of which indicate a high probability of bacteriuria (Higgins 2007).

Indications

Obtaining a urine specimen is indicated:

- when there are clinical signs and symptoms to indicate an UTI
- if there are signs of a systemic infection or in patients with a PUO
- on development of new patient confusion as toxicity from infection can cause alterations in mental status or impairments in cognitive ability (Pellowe 2009).

Principles of care

Urine may be collected using a midstream clean-catch technique or from a catheter using a sterile syringe to access the sample port (Pellatt 2007a). To minimize the contamination of a specimen by bacteria, which may be present on the skin, the perianal region or the external

genital tract, good hand and genital hygiene should be encouraged. Therefore, patients should be encouraged to wash their hands prior to collecting a clean-catch midstream urine specimen and to clean around the urethral meatus prior to sample collection (Higgins 2007). The principle for obtaining a midstream collection of urine is that any bacteria present in the urethra are washed away in the first portion of urine voided and therefore the specimen collected more accurately represents the urine in the bladder (Dawson and Whitfield 1996).

Catheter-associated urinary tract infections (CAUTI)

The presence of a urinary catheter, and the duration of its insertion, are contributory factors in the development of a UTI. Some 60% of healthcare-associated UTIs are related to catheter insertion (DH 2007b). For every day the catheter remains *in situ*, the risk of bacteriuria is 5% so that 50% of patients catheterized for longer than 7–10 days will have bacteriuria (Pellowe 2009). Although often asymptomatic, 20–30% of patients with bacteriuria will develop a CAUTI and 1–4% will develop a bacteraemia, which has significant implications for patient morbidity, increased hospital stay and increased cost (Pellowe 2009).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Specimen jars for urine collection must be sterile to ensure no contamination occurs which may lead to an incorrect diagnosis and treatment. The jars must close securely to prevent leakage of the sample.

Specific patient preparations

When collecting a midstream specimen of urine (MSU), the patient must pass a small amount of urine before collecting the specimen. This reduces the risk of contamination of the specimen with naturally occurring micro-organisms/flora within the urethra (Rigby and Gray 2005).

Procedure guideline 11.13 Urine sampling: midstream specimen of urine: male

Essential equipment

- Cleaning solution (e.g. soap and water, 0.9% sodium chloride or disinfectant-free solution)
- Sterile specimen container (with wide opening)
- Gloves
- Apron
- Appropriate documentation/forms

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Discuss need and indication for procedure with patient.	To obtain valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Fully explain the steps of the procedure.	The procedure requires the patient to fully understand the procedure in order to avoid inadvertent contamination of specimen and optimize the quality of the sample (Higgins 2008, C).
3 Ensure a suitable, private location.	To maintain patient privacy and dignity (Gilbert 2006, E).
Procedure	
4 Ask patient to wash hands with soap and water.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2007a, C).
5 *If practitioner's assistance required:* wash hands with bactericidal soap or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol rub and don apron.	To prevent cross-contamination (DH 2007a, C).
6 Ask patient to retract the foreskin and clean the skin surrounding the urethral meatus with soap and water, 0.9% sodium chloride or a disinfectant-free solution.	To optimize general cleansing and minimize contamination of specimen with other organisms. E Disinfectant solutions may irritate the urethral mucous membrane (Higgins 2007, E).
7 Ask patient to begin voiding first stream of urine (approx. 15–30 mL) into a urinal, toilet or bedpan.	To commence the flow of urine and avoid contamination of specimen with naturally occurring micro-organisms/flora within the urethra (Rigby and Gray 2005, E).
8 Place the wide-necked sterile container into the urine stream without interrupting the	To prevent contamination of specimen and ensure the collection of the midstream of urine which most

flow.	accurately represents the urine in the bladder (Gilbert 2006, E).
9 Ask the patient to void his remaining urine into the urinal, toilet or bedpan.	For patient to comfortably continue passing urine. E
10 Transfer specimen into sterile universal container.	For despatch to the laboratory. E
11 Allow patient to wash hands.	To maintain personal hygiene. E
Postprocedure	
12 Label sample and complete microbiological request form including relevant clinical information, such as signs and symptoms of infection, antibiotic therapy.	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
13 Dispatch sample to laboratory immediately (within 2 hours) or refrigerate at 4°C.	To ensure the best possible conditions for microbiological analysis and to prevent micro-organism proliferation (Higgins 2007, C).

Procedure guideline 11.14 Urine sampling: midstream specimen of urine: female

Essential equipment

- Cleaning solution (e.g. soap and water, 0.9% sodium chloride or disinfectant-free solution)
- Sterile specimen container (with wide opening)
- Gloves
- Apron
- Appropriate documentation/forms

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Discuss need and indication for procedure with patient.	To obtain valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Fully explain the steps of the procedure.	The procedure requires the patient to fully understand the procedure in order to avoid inadvertent contamination of specimen and optimize the quality of the sample (Higgins 2008, C).
3 Ensure a suitable, private location.	To maintain patient privacy and dignity (Gilbert 2006a, E).

Procedure

4 Ask patient to wash hands with soap and water.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2007a, C).
5 *If practitioner's assistance required:* wash hands with bactericidal soap or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol rub and don apron.	To prevent cross-contamination (DH 2007a, C).
6 Ask patient to part the labia and clean the urethral meatus with soap and water, 0.9% sodium chloride or a disinfectant-free solution.	To optimize general cleansing and to minimize other organisms contaminating the specimen. E Disinfectant solutions may irritate the urethral mucous membrane (Higgins 2007, C).
7 Use a separate swab for each wipe and wipe downwards from front to back.	To prevent cross-infection and perianal contamination (Weston 2008, E).
8 Ask patient to begin voiding first stream of urine (approx. 15–30 mL) into a toilet or bedpan whilst separating the labia.	To commence the flow of urine and avoid contamination of specimen with naturally occurring micro-organisms/flora within the urethra (Rigby and Gray 2005, E).
9 Place the wide-necked sterile container into the urine stream without interrupting the flow.	To prevent contamination of specimen and to ensure the collection of the midstream of urine which most accurately represents the urine in the bladder (Gilbert 2006, E).
10 Ask the patient to void her remaining urine into the toilet or bedpan.	For patient to comfortably continue passing urine. E
11 Transfer specimen into sterile universal container.	For dispatch to the laboratory. E
12 Allow patient to wash hands.	To maintain personal hygiene. E
Postprocedure	
13 Label sample and complete microbiological request form including relevant clinical information, such as signs and symptoms of infection, antibiotic therapy.	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
14 Dispatch sample to laboratory immediately (within 2 hours) or refrigerate at 4°C.	To ensure the best possible conditions for microbiological analysis and to prevent micro-organism proliferation (Higgins 2007, C).

Procedure guideline 11.15 Urine sampling: catheter specimen of urine (CSU)

Essential equipment

- Sterile gloves

- Apron
- Syringe (and needle if not a needle-free system)
- Non-traumatic clamps
- Alcohol-based swab
- Universal specimen container
- Appropriate documentation/forms

Optional equipment

- Non-sterile gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Ensure a suitable, private location.	To maintain patient privacy and dignity (Gilbert 2006, E).
3 Prepare equipment and place on sterile trolley.	
Procedure	
4 *If no urine visible in catheter tubing*: wash/decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol rub, don apron and apply non-sterile gloves prior to manipulating the catheter tubing.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection (Pellowe 2009, C).
5 Apply non-traumatic clamp a few centimetres distal to the sampling port.	To ensure sufficient sample has collected to allow for accurate sampling (Higgins 2008, C).
6 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol rub and don sterile gloves.	To prevent cross-contamination (DH 2007a, C).
7 Wipe sampling port with 2% chlorhexidine in 70% isopropyl alcohol and allow drying for 30 seconds.	To decontaminate sampling port and prevent false-positive results (DH 2007a, C).
8 *If using needle and syringe:* using a sterile syringe and needle, insert needle into port at an angle of 45° and aspirate the required amount of urine, then withdraw needle.	To enable safe inoculation of urine specimen and to minimize the risk of penetration of the wall of the catheter tubing (Hampson 2006, C)
Or in a needle-less system: insert syringe firmly into centre sampling port (according to manufacturer's guidelines), aspirate the required amount of urine and remove syringe.	Reduces the risk of sharps injury (DH 2006, C).
9 Transfer an adequate volume of the urine specimen (approx. 10 mL) into a sterile container immediately.	To avoid contamination and to allow for accurate microbiological processing (Gilbert 2006, E).
10 Discard needle and syringe into sharps container.	To prevent the risk of needlestick injury. E
11 Wipe the sampling port with an alcohol wipe and allow to	To reduce contamination of access

dry.	port and to reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2007b, C).
Postprocedure	
12 Unclamp catheter tubing.	To allow drainage to continue. E
13 Dispose of waste, remove apron and gloves and wash hands.	To ensure correct clinical waste management and reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C).
14 Label sample and complete microbiological request form including relevant clinical information, such as signs and symptoms of infection, antibiotic therapy.	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
15 Dispatch sample to laboratory immediately (within 2 hours) or refrigerate at 4°C.	To ensure the best possible conditions for microbiological analysis and to prevent micro-organism proliferation (Higgins 2007, C).

Procedure guideline 11.16 Urine sampling: 24-hour urine collection

Essential equipment

- Clean urine collection containers (e.g. wide-necked pot)
- Large urine containers (with label attached for patient details)
- Appropriate documentation/forms

Optional equipment

- Written patient instruction sheet

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Discuss need and indication for procedure with patient.	To obtain valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Fully explain the steps of the procedure, emphasizing the importance of not discarding any urine within the 24-hour period (provide written information if needed).	The procedure requires the patient to fully understand the procedure in order to avoid inadvertent contamination of specimen and optimize the quality of the sample. E
Procedure	
3 Ask patient to void urine and discard this specimen.	To establish the exact start time of the 24-hour period. E
4 All urine passed in the next 24 hours from this appointed time should be collected in a clean urine collection container.	To ensure the specimen is representative of the variables of altering body chemistry within the 24 hours (Thomson 2002, C).
5 *If catheter in situ:* completely empty catheter	To clearly indicate to all practitioners the 24-

bag and hourly chamber (if applicable) or attach new catheter bag. Attach label indicating start time of 24-hour urine collection.	hour collection period. E
6 If applicable, transfer urine from collection container into large specimen container.	To ensure specimen is collected in a suitable container for safe transportation to the laboratory. E
Postprocedure	
7 Label sample and complete request form.	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
8 Dispatch sample to laboratory as soon as possible after completion of the 24-hour period.	To allow accurate laboratory processing and analysis (Higgins 2007, C).

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Urine is a very good culture medium so any bacteria present at the time of collection will continue to multiply in the specimen container. Rapid transport or special measures to ensure preservation of the sample are essential for laboratory diagnosis (Garibaldi 1992). Therefore, specimens should be processed immediately as delays of more than 2 hours at room temperature between collection and examination will yield unreliable results, suggesting falsely raised bacteriuria (Higgins 2007).

Where delays in processing are unavoidable, specimens should be refrigerated at 4°C or a boric acid preservative, which holds the bacterial population steady for 48–96 hours, should be utilized (HPA 2008g).

Specimen collection: faecal sampling

Definition

Faecal specimens are primarily obtained for microbiological analysis to isolate and identify pathogenic bacterial, viral or parasitic organisms suspected of causing gastrointestinal infections or in patients with diarrhoea of potentially infectious aetiology (Higgins 2008). Faecal

specimens may also be obtained for other non-microbiological testing to detect the presence of other substances, such as occult blood or as part of the national screening programme for colorectal cancer.

Related theory

There are a number of enteric pathogens normally present within the gastrointestinal (GI) tract, along with resident flora, that play an important role in digestion, and in forming a protective, structural and metabolic barrier against the growth of potentially pathogenic bacteria (Kelly *et al.* 2005). Pathogenic agents that disrupt the balance within the GI tract manifest in symptoms such as prolonged diarrhoea, bloody diarrhoea, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain and/or fever. Bacteria in faeces are representative of the bacteria present in the GI tract, so the culture of a faecal sample is necessary for identification of GI tract colonization (Lautenbach *et al.* 2005).

Laboratory investigations are requested for bacterial infections such as *Salmonella, Campylobacter, Shigella* and *Clostridium difficile*, viral infections such as norovirus and rotavirus, and parasitic pathogens such as protozoa, tapeworms and amoebiasis (Weston 2008).

Diarrhoea can be defined as an unusual frequency of bowel actions (>3 times in 24 hours) with the passage of loose, unformed faeces (HPA 2008d). It may be attributable to a variety of bacterial, viral or parasitic pathogens and may be associated with antibiotic use, food or travel-related agents (King 2002). Prompt collection of a faecal sample for microbiological investigation is essential in determining the presence and identification of such agents.

Clostridium difficile

Clostridium difficile (C. diff) is recognized as a major healthcare-acquired infection causing diarrhoea associated with antibiotic use and environmental contamination (DH 2006). It is an anaerobic, Gram-positive bacterium that produces spores that are resistant to many disinfectants and can survive in harsh environmental conditions for prolonged periods (Soyfoo and Shaw 2008). It is recognized as having a

significant impact upon patient morbidity and mortality and the signs and symptoms range from mild, self-limiting diarrhoea to severe, life-threatening conditions (DH 2007c). Those most at risk are older patients, immunocompromised patients, and those who have had a recent course of antibiotics.

Antimicrobials, particularly broad-spectrum antibiotics, alter the normal gut flora, allowing *C. diff* to proliferate and become pathogenic in the absence of other organisms (Carney *et al.* 2002). This leads to the production of toxins that irritate and cause mucosal damage of the intestinal tract.

The diagnosis of *C. diff* is through faecal sampling for culture and toxin analysis on patients who develop diarrhoea or who are admitted to healthcare institutions with unexplained diarrhoea.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Timely and accurate identification of patients with infective diarrhoea is crucial in individual management of colonization and within the context of effective infection control management. Obtaining the specimen provides important diagnostic information that can be used to decide how to manage the patient's condition and the mode of treatment (Kyle 2007). Prompt diagnosis can influence aspects of care such as isolation and cohort nursing of infected patients, infection control procedures, environmental decontamination and antibiotic prescribing (DH 2007c).

Indications

Collection of a faecal specimen is indicated:

- to identify an infective agent in the presence of chronic, persistent or extended periods of diarrhoea
- if patients are systemically unwell with symptoms of diarrhoea, nausea and vomiting, pain, abdominal cramps, weight loss and/or fever
- to investigate diarrhoea occurring after foreign travel
- to identify parasites, such as tapeworms (Pellatt 2007b)

- to identify occult (hidden) blood if rectal bleeding is suspected (Pellatt 2007b)
- in the presence of diarrhoea associated with prolonged antibiotic administration
- for symptomatic contacts of individuals with certain organisms (e.g. *E. coli* 0157) where an infection can have serious clinical sequelae (HPA 2008d).

Contraindications

- As routine testing.
- In the absence of diarrhoea in suspected infective colonization.

Principles of care

A sample should be obtained as soon as possible after the onset of symptoms, ideally within the first 48 hours of illness, as the chance of successfully identifying a pathogen diminishes once the acute stage of the illness passes (Weston 2008). The specimen should be obtained using a clean technique in order to avoid inadvertent contamination of the specimen (HPA 2008d).

Preprocedural considerations

Assessment and recording tools

Collecting a faecal sample should be considered in conjunction with a comprehensive nursing assessment. This includes the observation of faeces for colour, presence of blood, consistency and odour (Pellatt 2007b). The most widely used assessment tool is the Bristol Stool Chart (Lewis and Heaton 1997), which categorizes faeces into seven classifications (types) based upon the appearance and consistency. Samples sent to the microbiology laboratory for analysis of suspected *C. difficile* should be classified as Type 6/7 on the Bristol Stool Chart (HPA 2008d).

In addition to other associated symptomology such as vomiting, fever, myalgia or abdominal pain, an accurate history should also include the

onset, frequency and duration of diarrhoea, and other information such as history of foreign travel or potential food poisoning.

Procedure guideline 11.17 Faecal sampling

Essential quipment

- A clinically clean bedpan or disposable receiver
- Sterile specimen container (with integrated spoon)
- Gloves
- Apron
- Appropriate documentation/forms

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Discuss need and indication for procedure with patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water, or decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol-based handrub. Don apron and gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and specimen contamination (DH 2007a, C).
Procedure	
3 Ask patient to defaecate into a clinically clean bedpan or receiver.	To avoid unnecessary contamination from other organisms (Kyle 2007, E).
4 *If the patient has been incontinent:* a sample may be obtained from bedlinen or pads: try to avoid contamination with urine.	Urine would cause contamination of the sample (Higgins 2008, E).
5 Using the integrated 'spoon', scoop enough faecal material to fill a third of the specimen container (or 10–15 mL of liquid stool).	To obtain a suitable amount of specimen for laboratory analysis. E
6 Apply specimen container lid securely.	To prevent risk of spillage. E
Postprocedure	
7 Dispose of waste, remove apron and gloves, and wash hands with soap and water.	To reduce risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, C). Soap and water must be used as alcohol-based handrubs are ineffective for *C . diff* (DH 2007c, R).
8 Examine the specimen for features such as colour, consistency and odour. Record observations in nursing notes/care plans.	To complete as comprehensive nursing assessment (Pellatt 2007a, C).
9 *In cases of suspected tapeworms:* segments of tapeworm are easily seen in faeces and should be sent to the laboratory for identification.	Unless the head is dislodged, the tapeworm will continue to grow. Laboratory confirmation of the presence of the head is essential (Gould and Brooker 2008, E).

10 Label sample and complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as onset and duration of diarrhoea, fever or recent foreign travel).	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
11 Dispatch sample to the laboratory as soon as possible or refrigerate at 4–8°C and dispatch within 12 hours.	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification and to ensure the best possible conditions for laboratory analysis (Higgins 2007, E).
12 *In cases of suspected amoebic dysentery:* dispatch the sample to the laboratory immediately.	The parasite causing amoebiasis must be identified when mobile and survives for a short period only. Therefore, faeces should remain fresh and warm (Kyle 2007, E).
13 *In cases of prolonged diarrhoea, especially in the presence of a fever:* dispatch the sample to the laboratory immediately.	Due to the risk of *C. diff* and to ensure prompt diagnosis and initiation of appropriate infection control measures (DH 2007c, C).

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

A faecal sample should be transported to the laboratory and processed as soon as possible because a number of important pathogens, such as *Shigella*, may not survive changes in pH and temperature once outside the body (HPA 2008d). If there is an anticipated delay in despatching the sample to the laboratory, it should be refrigerated at 4–8°C and processed within 12 hours (HPA 2008d).

Ongoing care

The result of specimen analysis will determine the patient's ongoing care. The involvement of the microbiology and infection control teams is essential to ensure prudent and safe treatment and nursing care. This should include:

- effective handwashing techniques to minimize the transmission of organisms
- implementation of Standard Precautions (gloves and aprons)
- nursing patients with unexpected or unexplained diarrhoea in isolation *or* cohorted with other infected patients (DH 2007c)
- thorough environmental decontamination (DH 2007c)

- prudent antibiotic prescribing (DH 2007b).

Education of patient and others

Patients should be provided with information and involved in their care as much as they choose to be (NMC 2008a). Confirmation of an infection diagnosis should be relayed to patients and their families alongside information on management strategies (such as antibiotic therapy, the use of PPE, reasons for isolation and visiting restrictions). The provision of written information, such as leaflets, may also prove useful.

Specimen collection: respiratory tract secretion sampling

Definition

Obtaining a specimen from the respiratory tract is important in diagnosing illness, infections and conditions such as tuberculosis and lung cancer (Guest 2008). A sample can be obtained invasively or non-invasively and the correct technique will enable a representative sample to identify respiratory tract pathology and to guide treatment.

Related theory

Excessive respiratory secretions may be due to increased mucus production in cases of infection, impaired mucociliary transport or a weak cough reflex (Hess 2002). Lower airway secretions that are not cleared provide an ideal medium for bacterial growth. Suitable microbiological analysis in diagnosing infection will depend upon (HPA 2008a):

- the adequacy of lower respiratory tract specimens
- avoidance of contamination by upper respiratory tract and oral flora
- use of microscopic techniques and culture methods
- current and recent antimicrobial therapy.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

The main aim of sputum/secretion collection is to provide reliable information on the causative agent of bacterial, viral or fungal infection within the respiratory tract and its susceptibility to antibiotics for guiding treatment (Ioanas *et al.* 2001).

Indications

A respiratory tract secretion specimen is indicated:

- when there are clinical signs and symptoms of a chest infection, such as a productive cough, particularly with purulent secretions
- if there are signs of systemic infection or in patients with a PUO.

Methods of non-invasive and semi-invasive sampling

Obtaining a sputum sample

Sputum is a combination of mucus, inflammatory and epithelial cells, and degradation products from the lower respiratory tract (Dulak 2005). It is never free from organisms since material originating from the lower respiratory tract has to pass through the pharynx and the mouth, which have commensal populations of bacteria (Thomson 2002). However, it is important to ensure that material sent to the microbiology laboratory is of sputum rather than a saliva sample, which will contain squamous epithelial cells and be unrepresentative of the underlying pulmonary pathology.

Sputum produced as a result of infection is usually purulent and a good sample can yield a high bacterial load (Weston 2008). For patients who are self-ventilating, co-operative, able to cough and expectorate, and able to follow commands, a sputum sample is a suitable collection method. A sufficient quality of sputum will yield a representative specimen and an early morning specimen is thought to be of the best quality (Weston 2008). In cases of suspected *Mycobacterium*

tuberculosis, three sputum specimens need to be collected on consecutive days before the pathogenic organisms can be isolated and appropriate treatment initiated.

Legal and professional issues

Competencies

Practitioners must be competent and feel confident that they have the knowledge, skill and understanding to undertake respiratory tract secretion sampling for microbiological analysis (NMC 2008a). For more advanced skills of specimen collection such as suctioning, the practitioner should receive training and be assessed on their knowledge and understanding of the technique and potential adverse effects that may occur such as hypoxia, cardiovascular instability and mucosal trauma (Thomson 2000). Bronchoalvolar lavage is normally performed by a member of the medical team who has received specialist training and has been deemed competent in the skill.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

The use of vacuum-assisted and invasive suctioning techniques requires a comprehensive assessment of clinical indication and safety considerations. These include the following.

- The use of an appropriately sized, single-use, multi-eyed suction catheter which causes less tracheal mucosal trauma (NHSQIS 2007). If suctioning through an ETT, the suction catheter diameter should be half the diameter or less which prevents occlusion of the airway and avoids generation of large negative intrathoracic pressures (Thomson 2000) (see Table 11.5).
- The use of the lowest effective suction pressure that is high enough to clear secretions whilst avoiding trauma to the bronchial mucosa.
- Ensuring suction duration time of <10 seconds to decrease the risk of adverse side-effects (NHSQIS 2007).

Table 11.5 Catheter sizes and suction pressures

Patient age	Catheter size (French)	Suction pressure (mmHg)
Premature infant	6	80–100
Infant	8	80–100
Toddler/preschooler	10	100–120
School age	12	100–120
Adolescent/adult	14	120–150

Procedures that involve suctioning present a risk of suction-induced hypoxaemia, hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias and other problems that warrant patient monitoring, in particular oxygen saturation and cardiac monitoring (Thomson 2000).

Pharmacological support

Adequate analgesia is a key consideration in ensuring that an effective sputum expectoration technique can be achieved. For example, preprocedural analgesia should be given time to be effective, and wounds need to be supported to maximize inhalation and minimize pain (Guest 2008).

Nebulization of 0.9% sodium chloride and/or mucolytic agents, such as N-acetylcysteine, may need to be administered to help loosen tenacious secretions and to elicit an effective cough (Rajiv 2007).

Non-pharmacological support

Collaboration with the physiotherapy team may assist in obtaining a good-quality sample (Hess 2002). For sputum sampling, physiotherapeutic modalities implemented may include appropriate positioning, active cycle of breathing, deep breathing and effective coughing techniques (HPA 2008a).

Specific patient preparation

Patient position is important in optimizing secretion sampling. Patients should be sat upright or on the edge of the bed, if able, or in a high semi-Fowler position (head elevated to 30–45°) in bed supported by pillows (Dulak 2005).

The quality and quantity of secretion production and mucociliary clearance depend on systemic hydration. Patient hydration can boost sputum production to enable a good sample (Dulak 2005). This can be further enhanced with sufficient airway humidity and nebulization.

Procedure guideline 11.18 Sputum sampling

Essential equipment

- Universal container
- Apron
- Non-sterile gloves
- Eye protection (e.g. goggles/visor)
- Appropriate documentation/form

Optional equipment

- Nebulizer

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Fully explain the steps of the procedure.	The procedure requires the patient to fully understand and co-operate in order to optimize the quality of the sample (Dulak 2005, E).
3 Position patient upright in a chair or in a semi- or high-Fowler position, supported as necessary with pillows.	For comfort and to facilitate optimum chest/lung expansion. E
4 *If secretions thick/tenacious or having difficulty clearing secretions:* administer nebulization therapy and/or enlist help of the physiotherapist.	To loosen secretions and to assist in techniques that will optimize sputum sample collection (Hess 2002, C).
5 Wash hands with bactericidal soap/decontaminate physically clean hands with alcohol rub. Don apron, gloves and eye protection.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection or splash injury to practitioner and specimen collection (DH 2007a, C).
Procedure	
6 Ask patient to take three deep breaths in through their nose, exhale through pursed lips and then force a deep cough.	Deep breathing helps loosen secretions and a deep cough will ensure a lower respiratory tract sample is obtained (Dulak 2005, C).
7 Ask patient to expectorate into a clean container and secure lid.	To prevent contamination. E

Postprocedure	
8 Dispose of waste, remove apron, gloves and eye protection and wash/decontaminate hands.	To ensure correct clinical waste management and to reduce the risk of cross-infection (DH 2006, D).
9 Label sample and complete microbiology request form (including relevant information such as indication for sample and current/recent antimicrobial therapy).	To maintain accurate records and provide accurate information for laboratory analysis (NMC 2009, C; Weston 2008, E).
10 Dispatch to the laboratory as soon as possible within 2 hours.	To increase the chance of accurate organism identification (Higgins 2007, C).

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Many organisms responsible for infection of the lower respiratory tract do not survive well outside the host, so specimens should be dispatched to the laboratory immediately and processed within 2 hours (Gould and Brooker 2008). If there is an anticipated delay in despatching the sample to the laboratory, it should be refrigerated at 4–8°C and sent as soon as possible (HPA 2008a).

Documentation

The date and time of when a sputum sample is sent to the laboratory should be documented clearly and promptly in the patient's notes and care plan (NMC 2009). This should be done alongside documentation in relation to significant findings that have prompted the collection of the sample such as a description of the type and colour of sputum/secretions and method used to obtain the sample.

Endoscopic investigations

Definition

Occasionally patients will be required to undergo further invasive diagnostic procedures such as an endoscopy. An endoscopy is the direct

visual examination of the gastrointestinal tract which may include gastroscopy or colonoscopy. Endoscopy allows the practitioner to evaluate the appearance of the visualized mucosa for the purpose of diagnosis and therapeutic procedures (Smith and Watson 2005).

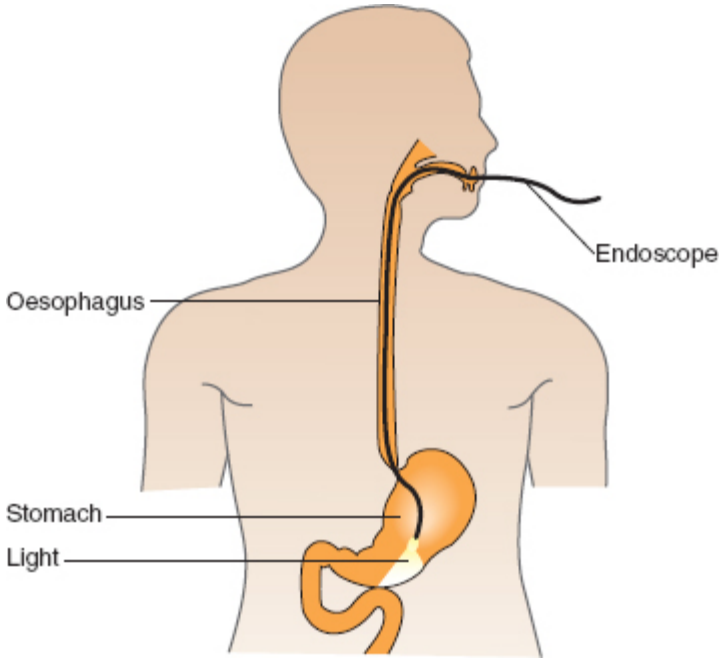
Gastroscopy

Definition

A gastroscopy or oesophagogastroduodenoscopy (OGD) is a procedure in which a long flexible endoscope is passed through the mouth, allowing the doctor or nurse endoscopist to look directly at the lining of the oesophagus, stomach and proximal duodenum. The endoscope is generally less than 10 mm in diameter but a larger scope may be required for therapeutic procedures where suction channels are required (Smith and Watson 2005) (Figure 11.3).

Figure 11.3 Endoscopy.

© Cancer Help UK, the patient information website of Cancer Research UK: www.cancerhelp.org.uk.com Used with permission.

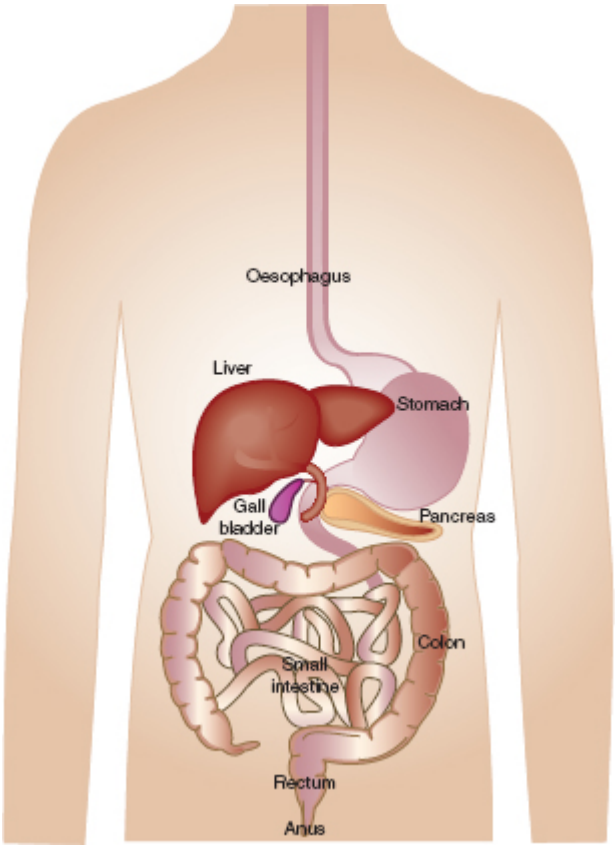


Anatomy and physiology

Oesophagus

The oesophagus is a muscular thin-walled tube approximately 25 cm long and about 2 cm in diameter. It is located behind the trachea and in front of the vertebral column. There are two sphincters within the oesophagus: the upper or hypopharyngeal sphincter and the lower gastro-oesophageal sphincter. Food passing into the stomach is controlled by the lower sphincter. The oesophagus has three layers, the mucosa, submucosa and the muscularis, with the innermost layer consisting of stratified squamous epithelium (Smith and Watson 2005, Waugh *et al.* 2006). See Figure 11.4.

Figure 11.4 Anatomy of the lower gastrointestinal tract.



Stomach

The stomach is located between the oesophagus and the small intestine. It is a J-shaped dilated portion of the alimentary tract. It is also located between the epigastric, umbilical and left hypochondriac regions of the abdomen. It is divided into three regions: the fundus, body and antrum. Distally, the pyloric sphincter is located between the stomach and the duodenum. The stomach has three muscle layers to allow for gastric motility to move the contents adequately whereas other parts of the alimentary tract only have two muscle layers (Smith and Watson 2005, Waugh *et al*. 2006). See Figure 11.4.

Duodenum

The duodenum is part of the small intestine. It is approximately 25 cm long and 3.5 cm in diameter. It is generally C-shaped and muscular, beginning at the pyloric sphincter of the stomach and joining the jejunum. Both the pancreas and the gall bladder release secretions into the duodenum (Smith and Watson 2005, Waugh *et al*. 2006). See Figure 11.4.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

A gastroscopy is undertaken to investigate symptoms originating from the upper GI tract such as reflux and dysphagia. The doctor or nurse endoscopist is able to use direct vision to diagnose, sample and document changes in the upper GI tract.

Indications

- Dysphagia.
- Odynophagia.
- Achalasia.
- Unresponsive reflux disease.
- Gastric and peptic ulcers.
- Haematemesis and melaena.
- Suspected carcinoma.

- Oesophageal or gastric varices.
- Monitoring Barrett's oesophagus disease.

Contraindications

- Fractured base of skull.
- Metastatic adenocarcinoma.
- Some head/neck tumours.
- Symptoms that are functional in origin.

Legal and professional issues

Nurse endoscopists

In some centres nurse endoscopists work alongside medical endoscopists undertaking endoscopy. In 1995 the British Society of Gastroenterology supported the development of non-medical endoscopists. The nurse endoscopist must work within their own professional boundaries and complement the medical endoscopist teams (Smith and Watson 2005). It is essential that all practitioners are adequately trained in the administration of conscious sedation, aware of its side-effects and reversal agents. Clinical units must also limit the possibility of overdose, particularly with midazolam, as highlighted by the NPSA (2008).

Consent

It is essential that informed consent is obtained as previously discussed in this chapter prior to any investigation. This is important as conscious sedation may be utilized during this procedure.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

To conduct a gastroscopy, a flexible side- or end-viewing endoscope is required. The endoscope allows visualization of the oesophagus,

stomach and proximal duodenum (Smith and Watson 2005). Access to resuscitation equipment is also essential if conscious sedation is going to be administered (BSG 2003).

Assessment and recording tools

A medical and nursing history and assessment must be taken to identify any care needs or concerns that may be significant, in particular, the patient's current drug therapy, drug reactions or allergies, any organ dysfunctions such as cardiac and/or respiratory disease and previous or current illnesses. It is also important to be aware of any coagulopathies as samples of tissue or biopsy may need to be taken during the procedure. This can be pre-empted by reviewing blood results prior to the gastroscopy. A set of observations including temperature, pulse, blood pressure, respiration rate and oxygen saturations should also be taken to identify any preprocedural abnormalities and to provide a baseline. If the patient has diabetes, a blood glucose level should also be checked (BSG 2003, Smith and Watson 2005).

Pharmacological support

Prior to the procedure a local anaesthetic spray may be used on the back of the throat. In some cases conscious sedation may be administered. This technique involves the administration of a benzodiazepine such as midazolam in small doses prescribed by a medical practitioner. Doses must be titrated for elderly patients or those with co-morbidities such as cardiac or renal failure. Oxygen therapy should also be administered for patients at risk or those requiring sedation. Generally 2 litres per minute is adequate for most circumstances to maintain oxygen saturation levels and prevent hypoxaemia (BSG 2003).

Specific patient preparations

The patient must fast for at least 4 hours prior to the gastroscopy to ensure that the stomach is relatively empty. This increases the visual field for the endoscopist and also minimizes the risk of aspiration if the patient vomits. The nurse can also assist by getting the patient to lie on

their left side on the trolley (Smith and Watson 2005). If a sedative is used it is essential that the patient is monitored with pulse oximetry and observed for any respiratory depression. Nursing staff can observe and record oxygen saturations and respiratory rate. ECG monitoring may only be required if a patient is at risk of cardiac instability during the procedure (BSG 2003).

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Physiological monitoring must continue in the immediate recovery period. Supplemental oxygen and oxygen saturations may be required especially if a sedative has been used. The patient should avoid drinking or eating for an hour after the use of the throat spray to minimize the risk of aspiration. Once stable, awake and reviewed by the team, the patient may be discharged or transferred to another department.

Ongoing care

It is recommended that patients who have been sedated with an intravenous benzodiazepine do not drive a car, operate machinery, sign legal documents or drink alcohol for 24 hours (BSG 2003). This is irrespective of whether their sedation has been reversed with flumazenil.The patient must be accompanied home if they have been given a sedative. The accompanying adult should stay with the patient for 12 hours at home if they live alone. It is important to remember that aspiration pneumonia may develop hours or days later and the patient should be informed to report any symptoms such as temperatures or breathing difficulty (BSG 2003, Smith and Watson 2005).

Documentation

Any samples should be clearly documented with the appropriate forms as previously discussed in this chapter. All drugs administered, complications and/or findings should be documented.

Complications

Respiratory depression

If oversedation occurs, respiratory function will be affected. It is essential that close monitoring occurs during and after the procedure. A reversal agent may be required such as flumezanil for midazolam (BSG 2003, Smith and Watson 2005).

Perforation

Although rare, it is possible that perforation of the oesophagus, stomach or duodenum may occur. Further medical and/or surgical intervention will be required to manage this potential complication (Putcha and Burdick 2003, Smith and Watson 2005).

Haemorrhage

Where biopsy samples have been taken, this may increase the risk of postprocedural bleeding. Further intervention may be required to stop the bleeding. Patients should be advised to seek medical assistance if there are signs of bleeding which include the presence of fresh blood in the sputum and melaena.

This will be dependent on the specific aetiology of the bleed, for example whether it is from varices when variceal band ligation may be required (SIGN 2008, Smith and Watson 2005).

Colonoscopy

Definition

A colonoscopy is conducted by inserting a colonoscope through the anus into the colon. It provides information regarding the lower GI tract and allows a complete examination of the colon. The colonoscope is similar to the endoscope used in gastroscopy. Its length ranges from 1.2 to 1.8

metres long. It is the most effective method of diagnosing rectal polyps and carcinoma (Smith and Watson 2005, Swan 2005, Taylor *et al.* 2009).

Anatomy and physiology

The colon is about 1.5 metres long. It begins at the caecum and ends at the rectum and anal canal (Waugh *et al.* 2006). See Figure 11.4.

Caecum

The caecum is about 8–9 cm long and opens from the ileum and ileocaecal valve (Waugh *et al.* 2006).

Colon

The colon consists of three parts. The ascending colon runs from the caecum and joins the transverse colon and the hepatic flexure. The transverse colon is in front of the duodenum where it joins the descending colon at the splenic flexure. The descending colon travels down toward the middle of the abdomen where it joins the sigmoid colon which is S-shaped and becomes the rectum (Waugh *et al.* 2006).

Rectum and anal canal

The rectum is approximately 13 cm long and is a dilated section of the colon. It joins the anal canal which is approximately 3.8 cm long (Waugh *et al.* 2006).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

A colonoscopy is performed to investigate specific symptoms originating from the lower GI tract such as bleeding. The doctor or nurse endoscopist is able to use direct vision to diagnose, sample and document changes in the lower GI tract (Swan 2005, Taylor *et al.* 2009).

Indications

- Screening of patients with family history of colon cancer, a serious but highly curable malignancy.
- Determining the presence of suspected polyps.
- Monitoring ulcerative colitis.
- Monitoring diverticulosis and diverticulitis.
- Active or occult lower gastrointestinal bleeding.
- Unexplained bleeding or faecal occult blood.
- Abdominal symptoms, such as pain or discomfort, particularly if associated with weight loss or anaemia.
- Chronic diarrhoea, constipation or a change in bowel habits.
- Palliative supportive treatments such as stent insertion.

Contraindications

- Upper gastrointestinal bleeding.
- Inflammatory bowel disease follow-up.
- Acute diarrhoea.

Legal and professional issues

Competencies and consent will be the same as those discussed in the Gastroscopy section.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

A colonoscope is a flexible endoscope that allows direct visualization of the rectum and colon (Smith and Watson 2005).

Pharmacological support

Bowel preparation agents, such as senna tablets and Citramag, are given to the patient to take 1 day prior to the colonoscopy to clear the bowel. A sedative and possibly an analgesic are usually administered before the procedure. This involves the administration of a benzodiazepine such as midazolam and an opioid such as fentanyl or pethidine which have been

prescribed by a medical practitioner. Doses must be titrated for elderly patients or those with co-morbidities such as cardiac or renal failure. An antispasmodic may also be given. Oxygen therapy should also be administered during sedation. Generally 2 litres per minute is adequate for most circumstances to maintain oxygen saturation levels and prevent hypoxaemia (BSG 2003, Riley 2008, Swan 2005).

Specific patient preparations

To complete a successful colonoscopy, the bowel must be clean so that the physician can clearly view the colon. It is very important that the patient follows all the instructions given for bowel preparation well in advance of the procedure. Without proper preparation, the colonoscopy will not be successful and the test may have to be repeated. If the patient feels nauseated or vomits while taking the bowel preparation, they are advised to wait 30 minutes before drinking more fluid and start with small sips of solution. Some activity such as walking or a few cream crackers may help decrease the nausea (Smith and Watson 2005, Swan 2005).

Two days prior to the endoscopy, specific light foods may be eaten, such as steamed white fish, and others avoided, such as high-fibre foods. On the day before the colonoscopy, breakfast from the approved food groups may be eaten while drinking plenty of clear fluids. On the day of the procedure patients can drink tea/coffee with no milk 4 hours before and water up to 2 hours before (Smith and Watson 2005, Swan 2005).

A medical and nursing history and assessment must be undertaken to identify any care needs or concerns that may be significant. In particular, this should cover the patient's current drug therapy, drug reactions or allergies, any organ dysfunctions such as cardiac and/or respiratory disease, and previous or current illnesses. It is also important to be aware of any coagulopathies as samples of tissue or biopsy may need to be taken during the procedure. This can be pre-empted by reviewing blood results prior to the colonoscopy. A set of observations including temperature, pulse, blood pressure, respiration rate and oxygen saturations should also be taken to identify any preprocedural abnormalities and to provide a baseline. If the patient has diabetes, a

blood glucose level should also be checked (BSG 2003, Smith and Watson 2005).

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Physiological monitoring and care post sedation should be the same as those for gastroscopy. However, larger doses of sedative and opioids may have been used so further observation is required. The patient may feel some cramping or a sensation of having gas, but this quickly passes on eating and drinking. Bloating and distension typically occur for about an hour after the examination until the air is expelled. Unless otherwise instructed, the patient may immediately resume a normal diet, but it is generally recommended that the patient waits until the day after the procedure to resume normal activities.

Ongoing care

If a biopsy was taken or a polyp was removed, the patient may notice light rectal bleeding for 1–2 days after the procedure; large amounts of bleeding, the passage of clots or abdominal pain should be reported immediately.

Complications

Perforation

During the procedure the greatest risk or possible complication is bowel perforation. This occurs in 1 in 1000 cases. The nurse monitoring the patient after colonoscopy should be familiar with potential signs and symptoms such as unresolved abdominal pain, rigidity and/or bleeding. If a perforation occurs surgical intervention is likely to be required (Smith and Watson 2005, Swan 2005).

Haemorrhage

On average, haemorrhage occurs in 3 in 1000 procedures but the incidence and complication rates may be higher where a procedure involves a polypectomy. The postprocedure monitoring by the nurse again includes observing for signs and symptoms of bleeding (Smith and Watson 2005, Swan 2005). Depending on the severity of the bleed, it may be managed conservatively or in haemodynamically unstable patients angiography may be required (Farrell and Friedman 2005).

Cystoscopy

Definition

Cystoscopy examines the inside of the urethra and bladder using a cystoscope and is one of the most widely used invasive urological investigations. It gives direct visualization of the urethra and bladder for both males and females but it is especially important in males as the urethra is much more complex (Fillingham and Douglas 2004, Rodgers *et al.* 2006).

Anatomy and physiology

Urethra

The urethra extends from the external urethral orifice to the bladder (Waugh *et al*. 2006).

Male urethra

The male urethra is approximately 19–20 cm long and provides a common pathway for urine, semen and reproductive organ secretions. The three parts of the male urethra are the prostatic, membranous and spongiose or penile urethra. Originating at the urethral orifice of the bladder, the prostatic urethra passes through the prostate gland. The narrowest and shortest part of the urethra is the membranous urethra, originating from the prostate gland and extending to the bulb of the

penis. The penile urethra ends at the urethral orifice (Fillingham and Douglas 2004, Waugh *et al*. 2006).

Female urethra

The female urethra is located behind the symphysis pubis and opens at the external urethral orifice. It is approximately 4 cm long (Waugh *et al.* 2006).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

A cystoscopy is undertaken to gain direct visualization of the urethra and the bladder to aid diagnosis of urological complications and diseases such as bladder cancer (Fillingham and Douglas 2004).

Indications

- Bladder dysfunction.
- Unexplained haematuria.
- Diagnosis of bladder cancer.
- Staging of bladder cancer.
- Obstruction or strictures.
- Dysuria.

Contraindications

- Confirmed urinary tract infection.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

A cystoscope may be flexible or rigid. A rigid cystoscope is utilized in the operating theatre where the patient is anaesthetized. The flexible cystoscope can be used in the outpatient setting with local anaesthesia. The flexible cystoscope is useful for patients who require more regular

examinations for follow-up after bladder cancer treatment (Fillingham and Douglas 2004).

Specific patient preparations

It is essential that the patient does not have a urinary tract infection as the organism that is responsible for the infection may be spread into the bloodstream during the procedure. If the patient is having a general anaesthetic, they will have to fast prior to the procedure, dependent on anaesthetic instruction. Patients undergoing a local anaesthetic can usually eat and drink as normal prior to the procedure. The patient should empty their bladder prior to the procedure (Fillingham and Douglas 2004). It may be necessary for some patients to be treated with antibiotics before the procedure to reduce the risk of infection (AUA 2008).

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Dependent on the type of procedure, recovery will vary. After a general anaesthetic, the patient will be recovered by recovery nursing staff. In the outpatient setting, physiological observations may be required. Nursing staff should monitor for signs of haematuria, infection and excessive pain.

Ongoing care

It is common for the patient to experience some burning sensations whilst passing urine for a few days. It is advised that the patient drink plenty of water post procedure to flush the bladder and reduce the risk of infection. Any signs of excessive bleeding should be reported to the medical team (Fillingham and Douglas 2004).

Complications

Infection

There is a risk of urinary infection in approximately 5% of cytoscopies performed. If an infection were to occur, relevant prescribed antimicrobial therapy may be required (Rodgers *et al.* 2006).

Liver biopsy

Definition

Liver biopsy involves percutaneous puncture using a biopsy needle and removal of a small piece of the liver (Al Knawy and Shiffman 2007).

Anatomy and physiology

The liver is the largest organ in the body. It weighs between 1 and 2.3 kg and is a highly vascular organ. It is incompletely covered by a layer of peritoneum and enclosed in a thin inelastic capsule. There are four lobes in the liver, with the two most obvious ones being the large right lobe and the smaller left lobe which is wedge shaped. The caudate and quadrate lobes are on the posterior surface (Waugh *et al.* 2006).

Functions of the liver

The liver has many functions including:

- carbohydrate metabolism and contributing to maintenance of plasma glucose levels
- fat metabolism
- protein metabolism
- defence against microbes and breakdown of erythrocytes
- detoxification
- inactivation of hormones
- bile secretion
- heat production

- storage of some vitamins, iron, copper and glycogen (Waugh *et al.* 2006).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

A liver biopsy is an invaluable tool for diagnosing or monitoring conditions affecting the liver, such as cirrhosis, inflammation or hepatitis of various causes and some metabolic liver disorders (Al Knawy and Shiffman 2007).

Indications

- Diagnosis of cirrhosis.
- Diagnosis of cancer both primary and secondary.
- Miliary tuberculosis.
- Amyloidosis.

Contraindications

- An unco-operative or confused patient.
- Severe purpura.
- Coagulation defects.
- Prolonged clotting time.
- Increased bleeding time.
- Severe jaundice.
- Under 3 years of age.
- Current right lower lobe pneumonia.
- Current pleuritis (Al Knawy and Shiffman 2007).

Methods of liver biopsy

There are a variety of methods for conducting a liver biopsy. A retrospective study by Manolakopoulos *et al.* (2007) found that the ultrasound-assisted approach was as safe as the ultrasound-guided approach and both obtained adequate samples.

Percussion palpation approach

This method is also known as the blind approach where the liver is palpated in order to determine the position required for the liver biopsy.

Image-guided approach

Image guidance may be conducted utilizing ultrasound, computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) but the preferred method is ultrasound. The ultrasound method utilizes continuous ultrasound or site marking immediately prior to the procedure (Al Knawy and Shiffman 2007).

Ultrasound-assisted approach

The ultrasound is utilized immediately prior to the procedure and a mark is left on the skin indicating the puncture site. It is also known as the 'X' marks the spot technique.

Ultrasound-guided approach

The ultrasound is utilized throughout the procedure where the liver and biopsy needle are viewed in real time (Al Knawy and Shiffman 2007).

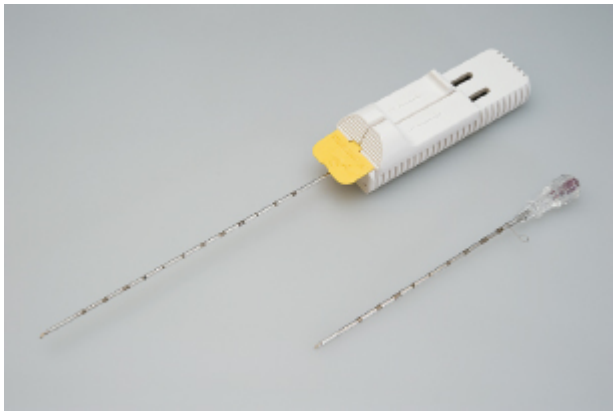
Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Aspiration or suction type needle

There are a few varieties of aspiration or suction type needles such as the Jamshidi, Klatskin and Menghini (Figure 11.5). The Menghini needle has a retaining device to minimize the risk of the sample being aspirated into the syringe and is the most commonly used. It is 6 cm long and approximately 1.4 mm wide.

Figure 11.5 Liver biopsy needles.



Cutting type needles

The Tru-Cut needle utilizes a cutting sheath to obtain the specimen. It is advanced approximately 2–3 cm into the liver and a sample of 12 cm with a diameter of 1 mm is collected.

Pharmacological support

Nursing staff should take a nursing history reviewing social and medical history and determining allergy status. Up to 7 days prior to the procedure, the referring medical team must ensure that a full blood count, clotting screen and biochemistry have been taken. Nursing staff should review bloods as part of their preprocedure assessment. If a patient is currently taking an anticoagulant such as warfarin, a clotting sample must be taken within 24 hours of the procedure. Medications should be reviewed by medical and nursing staff and arrangements made by the medical team for alternative anticoagulant and diabetic medication if necessary. A local anaesthetic such as lidocaine 2% is infiltrated into the area where the biopsy is to be taken. In some cases where the patient is extremely anxious, conscious sedation may be considered; however, management during and after the procedure would include physiological monitoring and recovery as in colonoscopy with conscious sedation (Al Knawy and Shiffman 2007).

Specific patient preparations

A baseline set of physiological observations must be undertaken. If conscious sedation is used the patient must be nil by mouth and they

must have patent IV access (Royal College of Radiologists 2006). The patient is usually in the supine position with the right side as close to the edge of the bed as possible. The left side may be supported by a pillow. The patient's right hand is positioned under their head and their head turned to the left. Oxygen therapy may be required if there are pre-existing conditions or when conscious sedation is used.

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Immediately following the procedure the patient must lie on their right side for 3 hours and remain on bed rest for a total of 6 hours. They may be able to go to the toilet after 3 hours. Physiological observations are required every 15 minutes for the first hour, every 30 minutes for the following 2 hours and then the frequency can be reviewed by the registered nurse. Any abnormality must be reported to the medical team immediately. The nurse should also observe the puncture site and abdomen for signs of bleeding and ensure that pain is adequately controlled.

Ongoing care/education

A postprocedure information sheet should be given to the patient identifying possible complications and instructions on what to do if any symptoms occur (Royal College of Radiologists 2006).

Complications

Haemorrhage

An inadvertent puncture of an intrahepatic or extrahepatic blood vessel can lead to haemorrhage manifesting within 4 hours. However, it is normal to lose approximately 5–10 mL of blood from the surface of the liver after the biopsy. Conservative management with blood products may be appropriate but surgical intervention may also be required to treat haemorrhage.

Peritonitis

An inadvertent puncture of the bile duct which consequently results in bile leaking into the peritoneal cavity can lead to peritonitis. Treatment may range from antimicrobial therapy to surgical and/or critical care intervention dependent on the severity.

Pneumothorax

An inadvertent puncture of the pleura can lead to a pneumothorax. If this occurs, urgent medical intervention is required. A formal chest drain may be necessary to relieve the pneumothorax (Denzer *et al.* 2007, Thampanitchawong and Piratvisuth 1999).

Radiological Investigations: X-ray

Definition

An X-ray is a short-wavelength electromagnetic radiation that passes through matter and is used in diagnostic radiology and radiotherapy (Martin 2010).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

The general X-ray department performs a wide range of examinations many of which require no patient preparation in advance, and can often be performed on the day of the request. In accordance with the Ionizing Radiation Regulations (1999), to ensure radiation safety, there is a requirement for radiographers to justify, optimize and limit radiation dosage to a patient.

Indications

Diagnostic X-rays are performed to diagnose medical conditions such as damage to the skeletal structures and organ dysfunction, for example

chest X-rays for respiratory complications.

Contraindications

The Ionizing Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations (2000) (Regulations 6 and 7) prohibit any medical exposure from being carried out which has not been justified and authorized, and provides an optimization process to ensure that doses arising from exposures are kept as low as reasonably practicable (ALARP).

In accordance with the *Medical and Dental Guidance Notes,* for women known or likely to be pregnant, where the examination has been justified on the basis of clinical urgency and involves irradiation of the abdomen, operators must optimize the technique to minimize irradiation of the foetus (IPEM 2002). Radiography of areas remote from the foetus, for example chest, skull or hand, may be carried out safely at any time during pregnancy as long as good beam collimation and proper shielding equipment are used.

Legal and professional issues

The Ionizing Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations (2000) set out the legal roles and responsibilities of all duty holders related to medical exposures to X-rays.

In accordance with the Ionizing Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations (IR(ME)R) (2000), the completed request form for a medical exposure must be clear and legible and the following information must be supplied.

(a) Unique patient identification – to include at least three identifiers from name, date of birth, hospital number or NHS number.

(b) Sufficient details of the clinical problem to allow the IR(ME)R practitioner to justify the medical exposure, and indication of examination thought to be appropriate.

(c) If applicable, information on the patient's possible pregnancy status.

(d) Signature uniquely identifying the referrer as it is important that the referrer is qualified to order an X-ray.

Blank request cards, pre-signed by a referrer, are a breach of the regulations and any entries on the request form made by others should be checked and initialled by the referrer prior to signing the form.

Preprocedural considerations

Pharmacological support

For some types of X-ray such as the barium swallow or enema, the patient is usually required to drink the contrast or have it administered via an enema and a series of X-ray pictures taken at various intervals. Afterwards the patient will be advised to drink plenty of fluids to clear their system of the contrast as quickly as possible.

Specific patient preparations

The radiology department will inform the patient of any requirements prior to the booked procedure such as being nil by mouth. For most examinations, the patient will be asked to remove some of their clothing and change into a hospital gown, to ensure that no artefacts (any feature in an image which misrepresents the object in the field of view) (McRobbie 2007) are caused in the area of clinical interest on the X-ray image. It is advisable for the patient not to wear jewellery at the time of the appointment as in most cases this will have to be removed, again to prevent the presence of artefacts on the image. For all X-rays the patient will be required to keep still to prevent any blurring of the images. Some procedures are performed on inspiration/expiration, and the patient will be given the appropriate breathing instruction by the operator performing the procedure.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

Definition

Magnetic resonance imaging provides cross-sectional images of the body. The patient lies inside the bore of a very strong magnet, typically

1.5 tesla. Protons in the body's water molecules spin or 'precess' when exposed to such a strong magnetic field. Radio waves are transmitted into the patient at the same frequency at which the protons are precessing and the patient transmits a signal that is detected by a receiver coil. This signal contains specific information or 'weighting' about the individual tissues that can be mapped to form a two- or three-dimensional image (Weishaupt *et al.* 2006).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Soft tissue structures such as the brain, spinal cord, musculoskeletal system, liver and pelvic structures are particularly well demonstrated using MRI. It is possible to scan the whole body but MRI tends to be a more targeted scan, and they take longer with scan times of 20–60 minutes. MRI does *not* use ionizing radiation and can therefore be used for repeated examinations. The magnetic field is always present so strict safety procedures are necessary to protect staff and patients (Shellock and Spinazzi 2008).

Indications

- Scanning of the brain to assess stroke, tumour, meningeal disease.
- Spinal pathology is particularly well demonstrated, including intervertebral disc pathology, tumour, infarction, spinal dysraphism, infection and degenerative diseases.
- Differentiation and characterization of benign versus malignant pathology in the liver.
- MRI is highly sensitive for imaging of the breast.
- MRI is the gold standard for assessment of pelvic malignancy and pelvic anatomy.

(Royal College of Radiologists 2006, 2007)

Contraindications

Patients with non-MRI compatible implanted devices, such as cardiac pacemakers and cochlear implants, must not be scanned. Other implanted devices, for example stents, must be confirmed as MR safe prior to scanning.

Magnetic resonance imaging tends not to be used for acute trauma or for primary whole-body staging of malignancies, for which CT is the preferred imaging modality.

Preprocedural considerations

Assessment and recording tools

A pre-MRI checklist is undertaken for all patients to identify risks from implanted devices which may be harmful to the patient or may severely degrade the image quality (Shellock and Spinazzi 2008).

Pharmacological support

The patient may require intravenous access for contrast injection, most often of a gadolinium-based contrast agent. This is used to enhance areas of suspected pathology, to define tumour bulk or to improve the efficacy of the scan by delineation or characterization of a pathological process (Runge *et al.* 2009). Claustrophobia can also be an issue and in some cases patients may require an oral sedative to relax them during the procedure. In severe claustrophobia or when scanning young children or individuals with learning difficulties, general anaesthetic may be necessary.

Non-pharmacological support

The scanner is very noisy so it is mandatory that patients are given ear protection during the scan. If the patient feels claustrophobia there are strategies to manage this such as:

- adapting the patient's position
- changing the scanning technique
- using blindfolds or mirrors

- relaxation therapy.

Specific patient preparations

Apart from safety checking, for most scans there is no preparation but for certain body scans the patient may have to abstain from food, but may drink clear (non-caffeine) fluids to ensure their bladder does not fill too quickly, resulting in movement artefacts.

Patients must be able to lie very still, usually lying on their back for significant time periods. Patient comfort is paramount so patients requiring pain relief should continue with pain medication as normal.

Computed tomography (CT)

Definition

Computed tomography images are created when radiation passes through a patient and is absorbed in varying degrees by the body tissue. Multislice data are acquired as a three-dimensional block in a matter of seconds and digitally displayed in coronal, sagittal or axial planes (Fishman and Jeffrey 2004).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Multislice CT has excellent image resolution and is used for diagnosis, staging and monitoring treatment response in the oncology setting, as well as being a research tool. Soft tissues as well as bone and lung anatomy are all seen well on CT scans. Routinely patients are given intravenous contrast medium which perfuses the body tissues and enhances the blood vessels and lesions (Husband and Reznek 2010).

Computed tomography does use radiation but protocols are optimized to give the best image with the lowest dose. Also, the number of body

areas scanned and the intervals between scans are closely monitored in accordance with IR(ME)R regulations.

Indications

Computed tomography can image all parts of the body and is used for:

- pretreatment staging
- interval scans to monitor treatment
- follow-up post treatment
- diagnosis and assessment of complications:
  - — bowel obstructions and perforation
  - — pulmonary embolism
  - — stroke, cerebral bleeds
- perfusion CT.

Contraindications

- Pregnancy: CT is not recommended unless clinical benefit outweighs radiation risk.
- Patients with poor renal function or those having iodine therapy may have CT without intravenous contrast.
- Previous CT within short timeframe unless clinically urgent.
- Patients who are unable to lie down in order to pass through the machine (Royal College of Radiologists 2010).

Preprocedural considerations

Assessment and recording tools

Patients complete a questionnaire prior to CT in order to assess their suitability for CT and intravenous (IV) contrast. Intravenous contrast contains iodine, therefore patients with an iodine allergy or previous history of reaction to IV contrast should have a non-IV contrast CT.

Pharmacological support

The patient is cannulated for the intravenous injection of iodine-based contrast medium to enhance the blood vessels and bodily organs. During the injection it is normal for the patient to transiently feel warm over their whole body and to experience a metallic taste at the back of the throat, and some patients feel nauseous. CT examinations such as CT pulmonary angiograms demand contrast to flow at a fast rate and therefore a large gauge cannula (20 G) is required (Thomsen *et al.* 2009).

Non-pharmacological support

Although CT is a fast imaging technique (5–20 seconds), some patients are very concerned about being claustrophobic during scanning but with kind careful explanation, most patients manage to be scanned.

Specific patient preparations

Patients are prepared for CT by drinking an oral contrast, usually water, which shows the digestive tract. This serves to hydrate the patient which is beneficial post IV contrast and also it acts as a negative contrast agent in the digestive tract. Patients refrain from eating for 2 hours prior to CT in order to allow them to drink easily and to reduce nausea post IV contrast medium (Thomsen *et al.* 2009).

Patients lie on the CT scan couch and pass through the doughnut-shaped machine. The examination is painless and the majority of patients tolerate the examinations well. Small children require general anaesthetic for CT (Thomsen *et al.* 2009).

Websites

Diagnostic tests: www.library.wmuh.nhs.uk/pil/diagnostictests.htm.com

Blood tests: www.library.wmuh.nhs.uk/pil/diagnostictests.htm#BloodTests.com

Endoscopy: www.library.wmuh.nhs.uk/pil/diagnostictests.htm#endoscopy.com

Colonoscopy: www.patient.co.uk/health/Colonoscopy.htm.com
Cytoscopy:
www.nhs.uk/Conditions/Cystoscopy/Pages/Introduction.aspx?
url=Pages/What-is-it.aspx.com
X-ray:
www.library.wmuh.nhs.uk/pil/diagnostictests.htm#xrays.com
MRI: www.library.wmuh.nhs.uk/pil/diagnostictests.htm#Magnetic
Resonance Imaging.com

References

Al Knawy, B. and Shiffman, M. (2007) Percutaneous liver biopsy in clinical practice. *Liver International*, **27** (9), 1166–1173.

AUA (2008) *Best Practice Policy Statement on Urologic Surgery Antimicrobial Prophylaxis*. American Urological Association Education and Research. www.auanet.org/content/media/antimicroprop08.pdf?CFID=2317518&CFTOKEN=12094021&jsessionid=8430364ab2795c3082622c78141f7b19487a.

Berreth, M. (2010) Minimising the risk of lymphodema: implications for the infusion nurses. *INS Newsline*, **32** (3), 6–7.

Blann, A.D. (2007) *Routine Blood Results Explained*, 2nd edn. M and K Update Ltd, Keswick, Cumbria.

BNF (2011) *British National Formulary*. BMJ Group and RPS Publishing, London.

Bouza, E., Munoz, P., Burillo, A. *et al.* (2005) The challenge of anticipating catheter tip colonization in major heart surgery patients in the intensive care unit: are surface cultures useful? *Critical Care Medicine*, **33** (9), 1953–1960.

BSG (2003) *Guidelines on Safety and Sedation During Endoscopic Procedures*. British Society of Gastroenterology, London. www.bsg.org.uk/clinical-guidelines/endoscopy/guidelines-on-safety-and-sedation-during-endoscopic-procedures.html.

Campbell, H., Carrington, M. and Limber, C. (1999) A practice guide to venepuncture and management of complications. *British Journal of Nursing*, **8** (7), 426–431.

Carney, T., Perry, J.D., Ford, M. *et al.* (2002) Evidence for antibiotic induced *Clostridium perfringens* diarrhoea. *Journal of Clinical Pathology*, **55** (3), 240.

Castledine, G. (1996) Nurses' role in peripheral venous cannulation. *British Journal of Nursing*, **5** (20), 1274–1275.

Catchpole, C. and Hastings, J.G. (1995) Measuring pre- and post-dose vancomycin levels – time for a change? *Journal of Medical Microbiology*, **42** (5), 309–311.

Catton, J.A., Dobbins, B.M., Kite, P. *et al.* (2005) In situ diagnosis of intravascular catheter-related bloodstream infection: a comparison of quantitative culture, differential time to positivity, and endoluminal brushing. *Critical Care Medicine*, **33** (4), 787–791.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (1997) Evaluation of safety devices for preventing percutaneous injuries among health-care workers during phlebotomy procedures – Minneapolis-St Paul, New York City, and San Francisco, 1993–1995. *JAMA*, **277** (6), 449–450.

Coia, J.E., Duckworth, G.J., Edwards, D.I. *et al.* (2006) Guidelines for the control and prevention of meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) in healthcare facilities. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **63** (Suppl 1), S1–S44.

Cole, T. (2006) Risks and benefits of needle use in patients after axillary surgery. *British Journal of Nursing*, **15** (18), 969–979.

Dawson, C. and Whitfield, H. (1996) ABC of urology. Urinary incontinence and urinary infection. *BMJ (Clinical Research)*, **312** (7036), 961–964.

Dellinger, R.P., Levy, M.M., Carlet, J.M. *et al.* (2008) Surviving Sepsis Campaign: international guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock: 2008. *Critical Care Medicine*, **36** (1), 296–327.

Denzer, U., Arnoldy, A., Kanzler, S. *et al.* (2007) Prospective randomized comparison of minilaparoscopy and percutaneous liver biopsy: diagnosis of cirrhosis and complications. *Journal of Clinical Gastroenterology*, **41** (1), 103–110.

DH (2006) *Health Management Memorandum 07–01: Safe Management of Healthcare Waste*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2007a) *Saving Lives: Reducing Infection, Delivering Clean and Safe Care: Taking Blood Cultures, Summary of Best Practice*. Department of Health, London. www.clean-safe-care.nhs.uk/toolfiles/80_blood20cultures_v2.pdf.

DH (2007b) *Saving Lives: Reducing Infection, Delivering Clean and Safe Health Care. High Impact Intervention no. 6: Urinary Catheter Care Bundle*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/documents/digitalasset/dh_078125.pdf.

DH (2007c) *Saving Lives: Reducing Infection, Delivering Clean and Safe Health Care. High Impact Intervention no. 7: Care Bundle to Reduce the Risk for Clostridium Difficile*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/documents/digitalasset/dh_078126.pdf.

DH (2007d) *Saving Lives: Reducing Infection, Delivering Clean and Safe Healthcare. High Impact Intervention no. 1: Central Venous Catheter Care Bundle*. Department of Health, London.

Dougherty, L. (2008) Obtaining peripheral venous access. In: Dougherty, L. and Lamb, J. (eds) *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice*, 2nd edn. Blackwell, Oxford, pp. 225–270.

Dulak, S.B. (2005) Sputum sample collection. *RN*, **68** (10), 36ac2–4.

Dulczak, S. and Kirk, J. (2005) Overview of the evaluation, diagnosis, and management of urinary tract infections in infants and children. *Urologic Nursing*, **25** (3), 185–191.

Ernst, D.J. (2005) *Applied Phlebotomy*. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia, PA.

Farrell, J.J. and Friedman, L.S. (2005) Review article: the management of lower gastrointestinal bleeding. *Alimentary Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, **21** (11), 1281–1298.

Ferguson, A. (2005) Taking a swab. *Nursing Times*, **101** (39), 26–27.

Fillingham, S. and Douglas, J. (2004) *Urological Nursing*, 3rd edn. Bailliére Tindall, Edinburgh.

Fishman, E.K. and Jeffrey, R.B. (2004) *Multidetector CT: Principles, Techniques, and Clinical Applications*. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia, PA.

Fraise, A.P. and Bradley, T. (eds) (2009) *Ayliffe's Control of Healthcare-associated Infection: A Practical Handbook,* 5th edn. Hodder Arnold, London.

Gabriel, J. (2008) Long term central venous access. In: Dougherty, L. and Lamb, J. (eds) *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice*, 2nd edn. Blackwell, Oxford.

Garber, G. (2001) An overview of fungal infections. *Drugs*, **61** (Suppl 1), 1–12.

Garibaldi, R.A. (1992) Catheter-associated urinary tract infection. *Current Opinion in Infectious Diseases*, **5** (4), 517–523.

Garza, D. and Becan-McBride, K. (2010) *Phlebotomy Handbook: Blood Specimen Collection from Basic to Advanced*, 8th edn. Pearson, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

Gilbert, R. (2006) Taking a midstream specimen of urine. *Nursing Times*, **102** (18), 22–23.

Gilchrist, B. (2000) Taking a wound swab. *Nursing Times*, **96** (4 Suppl), 2.

Gill, V., Fedorko, D. and Witebsky, F. (2005) The clinician and the microbiological laboratory. In: Mandell, G.L., Douglas, R.G., Bennett, J.E. and Dolin, R. (eds) *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th edn. Elsevier Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia, PA.

Golder, M., Chan, C.L.H., O'Shea, S. *et al.* (2000) Potential risk of cross-infection during peripheral-venous access by contamination of tourniquets. *Lancet*, **355** (9197), 44.

Gould, D. (2002) Preventing cross-infection. *Nursing Times*, **98** (46), 50–51.

Gould, D. and Brooker, C. (2008) *Infection Prevention and Control: Applied Microbiology for Healthcare*, 2nd edn. Palgrave Macmillan, Basingstoke.

Guest, J. (2008) Specimen collection. Part 5 – Obtaining a sputum sample. *Nursing Times*, **104** (21), 26–27.

Gunwardene, R.D. and Davenport, H.T. (1990) Local application of EMLA and glycerol trinitrate ointment before venepuncture. *Anesthesia*, **45**, 52–54.

Hadaway, L. and Chamallas, S.N. (2003) Vancomycin: new perspectives on an old drug. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, **26** (5), 278–284.

Hairon, N. (2008) Guidelines outline key actions to improve infection control. *Nursing Times*, **104** (36), 19–20.

Hammett-Stabler, C.A. and Johns, T. (1998) Laboratory guidelines for monitoring of antimicrobial drugs. National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry. *Clinical Chemistry*, **44** (5), 1129–1140.

Hampson, G.D. (2006) *Practice Nurse Handbook*, 5th edn. Blackwell, Oxford.

Hefler, L., Grimm, C., Leodolter, S. and Tempfer, C. (2004) To butterfly or to needle: the pilot phase. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, **140** (11), 935–936.

Hess, D.R. (2002) The evidence for secreting clearance techniques. *Cardiopulmonary Physical Therapy Journal*, **13** (4), 7–21.

Higgins, C.F. (2007) *Understanding Laboratory Investigations for Nurses and Health Professionals*, 2nd edn. Blackwell, Oxford.

Higgins, D. (2008) Specimen collection. Part 3 – collecting a stool specimen. *Nursing Times*, **104** (19), 22–23.

Himberger, J.R. and Himberger, L.C. (2001) Accuracy of drawing blood through infusing intravenous lines. *Heart and Lung: the Journal of Critical Care*, **30** (1), 66–73.

Hoeltke, L.B. (2006) *The Complete Textbook of Phlebotomy*, 3rd edn. Thomson/Delmar Learning, Clifton Park, NY.

HPA (2004) *Investigation of Genital Tract and Associated Specimens*. National Standard Methods, BSOP **28**, Issue 4. Health Protection Agency, London. www.hpa-standardmethods.org.uk/pdf_bacteriology.asp.

HPA (2008a) *Investigation for Bronchovascular Lavage, Sputum and Associated Specimens: BSOP57: Issue 2.3*. Health Protection Agency. www.hpa-standardmethods.org.uk/documents/bsop/pdf/bsop57.pdf.

HPA (2008b) *Investigation for Specimens Screening for MRSA*. Health Protection Agency. www.hpa-standardmethods.org.uk/documents/bsop/pdf/bsop29.pdf.

HPA (2008c) *Investigation of Ear Swabs and Associated Specimens: BSOP1: Issue 8.2*. Health Protection Agency. www.hpa-standardmethods.org.uk/documents/bsop/pdf/bsop1.pdf.

HPA (2008d) *Investigation of Faecal Specimens for Bacterial Pathogens: BSOP 30: Issue 6.1*. Health Protection Agency. www.hpa-standardmethods.org.uk/documents/bsop/pdf/bsop30.pdf.

HPA (2008e) *Investigation of Fluids from Normally Sterile Sites: BSOP 26: Issue 5*. Health Protection Agency. www.hpa-standardmethods.org.uk/documents/bsop/pdf/bsop26.pdf.

HPA (2008f) *Investigation of Intravascular Cannulae and Associated Specimens: BSOP 20: Issue 5*. Health Protection Agency. www.hpa-standardmethods.org.uk/documents/bsop/pdf/bsop20.pdf.

HPA (2008g) *Investigation of Urine: BSOP 41: Issue 7*. Health Protection Agency. www.hpa-standardmethods.org.uk/documents/bsop/pdf/bsop41.pdf.

HSE (2003) *Safe Working and the Prevention of Infection in Clinical Laboratories and Similar Facilities*, 2nd edn. HSE Books, Sudbury.

HSE (2005) *Biological Agents: Managing the Risks in Laboratories and Healthcare Premises*. HSE Books, Sudbury.

Hudak, K. (1986) Compliance in IV therapy. *Journal of the Canadian Intravenous Nurses Association*, **2** (3), 3–8.

Husband, J.E. and Reznek, R.H. (2010) *Husband and Reznek's Imaging in Oncology*, 3rd edn. Informa Healthcare, London.

ICNA (2003) *Reducing Sharps Injury – Prevention and Risk Management*. Infection Control Nurses Association, London.

Inwood, S. (2007) Skin antisepsis: using 2% chlorhexidine gluconate in 70% isopropyl alcohol. *British Journal of Nursing*, **16** (22), 1390, 1392–1394.

Ioanas, M., Ferrer, R., Angrill, J. *et al.* (2001) Microbial investigation in ventilator-associated pneumonia. *European Respiratory Journal*, **17** (4),

791–801.

Ionizing Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations (2000) *SI 2000/1059*. Stationery Office, London. www.opsi.gov.uk/si/si2000/20001059.htm.

Ionizing Radiation Regulations (1999) *SI 1999/3232*. Stationery Office, London. www.opsi.gov.uk/si/si1999/19993232.htm.

IPEM (2002) *Medical and Dental Guidance Notes: A Good Practice Guide on All Aspects of Ionising Radiation Protection in the Clinical Environment*. Institute of Physics and Engineering in Medicine, York.

Johannes, R.S. (2008) Epidemiology of early-onset bloodstream infection and implications for treatment. *American Journal of Infection Control*, **36** (10), S171.

Jones, R.N. (2006) Microbiological features of vancomycin in the 21st century: minimum inhibitory concentration creep, bactericidal/static activity, and applied breakpoints to predict clinical outcomes or detect resistant strains. *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, **42** (Suppl 1), S13–S24.

Junqeira, L.C. and Carneiro, J. (2005) *Basic Histology: Text and Atlas*, 11th edn. McGraw-Hill Medical, London.

Kelly, D., Conway, S. and Aminov, R. (2005) Commensal gut bacteria: mechanisms of immune modulation. *Trends in Immunology*, **26** (6), 326–333.

King, D. (2002) Determining the cause of diarrhoea. *Nursing Times*, **98** (23), 47–48.

Kingsley, A. (2001) A proactive approach to wound infection. *Nursing Standard*, **15** (30), 50–54, 56, 58.

Kyle, G. (2007) Bowel care. Part 3 – obtaining a stool sample. *Nursing Times*, **103** (44), 24–25.

Lautenbach, E., Harris, A.D., Perencevich, E.N. *et al.* (2005) Test characteristics of perirectal and rectal swab compared to stool sample for detection of fluoroquinolone-resistant *Escherichia coli* in the gastrointestinal tract. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy*, **49** (2), 798–800.

Lavery, I. and Ingram, P. (2005) Venepuncture: best practice. *Nursing Standard*, **19** (49), 55–65.

Lawrence, J.C. (1999) Swab taking. *Journal of Wound Care*, **8** (5), 251.

Lawrence, J.C. and Ameen, H. (1998) Swabs and other sampling techniques. *Journal of Wound Care*, **7** (5), 232–233.

Lee, A., Mirrett, S., Reller, L.B. and Weinstein, M.P. (2007) Detection of bloodstream infections in adults: how many blood cultures are needed? *Journal of Clinical Microbiology*, **45** (11), 3546–3548.

Lenhardt, R., Seybold, T., Kimberger, O. *et al.* (2002) Local warming and insertion of peripheral venous cannulas: single blinded prospective randomised controlled trial and single blinded randomised crossover trial. *BMJ*, **325** (7361), 409–410.

Lewis, S.J. and Heaton, K.W. (1997) Stool form scale as a useful guide to intestinal transit time. *Scandinavian Journal of Gastroenterology*, **32** (9), 920–924.

Madeo, M. and Barlow, G. (2008) Reducing blood-culture contamination rates by the use of a 2% chlorhexidine solution applicator in acute admission units. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **69** (3), 307–309.

Manolakopoulos, S., Triantos, C., Bethanis, S. *et al.* (2007) Ultrasound-guided liver biopsy in real life: comparison of same-day prebiopsy versus real-time ultrasound approach. *Journal of Gastroenterology and Hepatology*, **22** (9), 1490–1493.

Marieb, E.N. and Hoehn, K. (2010) *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th edn. Benjamin Cummings, San Francisco.

Marsden, J. (2007) *An Evidence Base for Ophthalmic Nursing Practice*. John Wiley, Chichester.

Martin, E.A. (2010) *Concise Colour Medical Dictionary*, 5th edn. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Masoorli, S. (2002) Catheter-related nerve injury: inherent risk of avoidable outcome? *Journal of Vascular Access Devices*, **7** (4), 49.

McCall, R.E. and Tankersley, C.M. (2008) *Phlebotomy Essentials*, 4th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia, PA.

McRobbie, D.W. (2007) *MRI from Picture to Proton*, 2nd edn. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

MDA (2000) *Single-Use Medical Devices: Implications and Consequences of Reuse. Device Bulletin 2000, 04*. Department of Health, London.

MHRA (2005) *Alert MDA 2005/01 and Device Bulletin DB 2005 (01): Reporting Adverse Incidents and Disseminating Medical Device Alerts*. Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, London.

Miller, J.M. (1998) The impact of specimen management in microbiology. *Medical Laboratory Observer*, **30** (5), 28–30, 32, 34.

Mims, C.A. (2004) *Medical Microbiology*, 3rd edn. Mosby, Edinburgh.

Mitchell Higgs, N. (2002) *Personal protective equipment – improving compliance. All Points Conference*, Safer Needles Network, London.

NAO (2003) *A Safer Place to Work: Improving the Management of Health and Safety Risks to Staff in NHS Trusts*. Stationery Office, London. www.nao.org.uk/publications/0203/nhs_health_and_safety.aspx.

NHS Employers (2007) Needlestick injury, in *The Healthy Workplaces Handbook*. NHS Employers, London.

NHSQIS (2007) *Caring for the Patient with a Tracheostomy: Best Practice Statement*. NHS Quality Improvement Scotland, Edinburgh. www.nhshealthquality.org/files/TRACHEOREV_BPS_MAR07.pdf.

NMC (2008a) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/aDisplayDocument.aspx?DocumentID=5982.

NMC (2008b) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent/.

NMC (2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/aDisplayDocument.aspx?DocumentID=6269.

NPSA (2007) *Standardising Wristbands Improves Patient Safety*. Safer Practice Notice 0507. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

NPSA (2008) *Reducing Risk Of Overdose With Midazolam Injection In Adults*. NPSA/2008/RRR011. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

Owens, R.C. Jr. and Shorr, A.F. (2009) Rational dosing of antimicrobial agents: pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic strategies. *American Journal of Health-System Pharmacy*, **66** (12 Suppl 4), S23–S30.

Panceri, M.L., Vegni, F.E., Goglio, A. *et al.* (2004) Aetiology and prognosis of bacteraemia in Italy. *Epidemiology and Infection*, **132** (4), 647–654.

Pankhurst, C. and Coulter, W. (2009) *Basic Guide to Infection Prevention and Control in Dentistry*. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford.

Pannu, N. and Nadim, M.K. (2008) An overview of drug-induced acute kidney injury. *Critical Care Medicine*, **36** (4 Suppl), S216–S223.

Pellatt, G.C. (2007a) Anatomy and physiology of urinary elimination. Part 1. *British Journal of Nursing*, **16** (7), 406–410.

Pellatt, G.C. (2007b) Clinical skills: bowel elimination and management of complications. *British Journal of Nursing*, **16** (6), 351–355.

Pellowe, C. (2009) Using evidence-based guidelines to reduce catheter related urinary tract infections in England. *Journal of Infection Prevention*, **10** (2), 44–49.

Penwarden, L.M. and Montgomery, P.G. (2002) Developing a protocol for obtaining blood cultures from central venous catheters and peripheral sites. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, **6** (5), 268–270.

Pratt, R., Pellowe, C., Wilson, J. *et al.* (2007) Epic 2: national evidence based guidelines for preventing healthcare-associated infections in NHS hospitals. *European Journal of Hospital Infection*, **65** (S1), S1–S64.

Putcha, R.V. and Burdick, J.S. (2003) Management of iatrogenic perforation. *Gastroenterology Clinics of North America*, **32** (4), 1289–1309.

Rajiv, D. (2007) Inhalation therapy in invasive and non-invasive mechanical ventilation. *Current Opinion in Critical Care*, **13** (1), 27–38.

RCN (2005) *Good Practice for Infection Prevention and Control*. Royal College of Nursing, London.

RCN (2010) *Standards for Infusion Therapy*, 3rd edn. Royal College of Nursing, London.

Rigby, D. and Gray, K. (2005) Understanding urine testing. *Nursing Times*, **101** (12), 60–62.

Riley, S. (2008) *Colonocopic Polypectomy and Endoscopic Mucosal Resection: a Practical Guide*. British Society of Gastroenterology, London. www.bsg.org.uk/pdf_word_docs/polypectomy_08.pdf.

Rodgers, M., Nixon, J., Hempel, S. *et al.* (2006) Diagnostic tests and algorithms used in the investigation of haematuria: systematic reviews and economic evaluation. *Health Technology Assessment*, **10** (18). www.hta.ac.uk/1363.

Royal College of Radiologists (2006) *Recommendations for Cross Sectional Imaging in Cancer Management*. Royal College of Radiologists, London.

Royal College of Radiologists (2007) *MBUR6: Royal College of Radiologists Referral Guidelines*, 6th edn. Royal College of Radiologists, London.

Royal College of Radiologists (2010) *Standards for Intravascular Contrast Agent Administration to Adult Patients*. Royal College of Radiologists, London.

Runge, V.M., Nitz, W.R. and Schmeets, S.H. (2009) *The Physics of Clinical MR Taught Through Images*, 2nd edn. Thieme, New York.

Rushing, J. (2006) Assisting with thoracentesis. *Nursing*, **36** (12 Pt.1), 18.

Sha, S. (2005) Physiological and molecular pathology of aminoglycoside ototoxicity. *Volta Review*, **105** (3), 325–335.

Shafazand, S. and Weinacker, A.B. (2002) Blood cultures in the critical care unit: improving utilization and yield. *Chest*, **122** (5), 1727–1736.

Shellock, F.G. and Spinazzi, A. (2008) MRI safety update 2008: part 2, screening patients for MRI. *American Journal of Roentgenology*, **191** (4), 1140–1149.

Shore, A. and Sandoe, J. (2008) Blood cultures. *BMJ*, **16**, 324–325.

SIGN (2008) *Management of Acute Upper and Lower Gastrointestinal Bleeding: A National Guideline*. NHS Quality Improvement Scotland, Edinburgh. www.sign.ac.uk/pdf/sign105.pdf.

Simerville, J.A., Maxted, W.C. and Pahira, J.J. (2005) Urinalysis: a comprehensive review. *American Family Physician*, **71** (6), 1153–1162.

Smith, J. (1998) The practice of venepuncture in lymphoedema. *European Journal of Cancer Care*, **7** (2), 97–99.

Smith, G.D. and Watson, R. (2005) *Gastrointestinal Nursing*, Blackwell, Oxford.

Soyfoo, R. and Shaw, K. (2008) How to cut *Clostridium difficile infection. Nursing Times*, **104** (25), 42–44.

Stollery, R., Shaw, M.E. and Lee, A. (2005) *Ophthalmic Nursing*, 3rd edn. Blackwell, Oxford.

Swan, E. (2005) *Colorectal Cancer*. Whurr Publishers, London.

Tacconelli, E. (2009) Antimicrobial use: risk driver of multidrug resistant microorganisms in healthcare settings. *Current Opinion in Infectious Diseases*, **22** (4), 352–358.

Taylor, I., Cutsem, E.V. and Garcia-Aguilar, J. (2009) *Colorectal Disease*, 3rd edn. Health Press, Albuquerque, NM.

Thampanitchawong, P. and Piratvisuth, T. (1999) Liver biopsy: complications and risk factors. *World Journal of Gastroenterology*, **5** (4), 301–304.

Thomsen, H.S., Webb, J.A.W. and Aspelin, P. (eds) (2009) *Contrast Media: Safety Issues and ESUR Guidelines*, 2nd rev edn. Springer, Berlin.

Thomson, A. (2004) Why do therapeutic drug monitoring? *Pharmaceutical Journal*, **273** (7310), 153–155.

Thomson, L. (2000) Tracheal suctioning of adults with an artificial airway. *Best Practice*, **4** (4), 1–7.

Thomson, R. (2002) Use of microbiology laboratory tests in the diagnosis of infectious disease. In: Tan, J.S. (ed) *Expert Guide to Infectious Diseases*. American College of Physicians, American Society of Internal Medicine, Philadelphia.

Tilmouth, T. and Tilmouth, S. (2009) *Safe and Clean Care: Infection Prevention and Control for Health and Social Care Students*. Reflect Press, Exeter.

Tobin, C.M., Darville, J.M., Thomson, A.H. *et al.* (2002) Vancomycin therapeutic drug monitoring: is there a consensus view? The results of a UK National External Quality Assessment Scheme (UK NEQAS) for Antibiotic Assays questionnaire. *Journal of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy*, **50** (5), 713–718.

Warekois, R.S., Robinson, R. and Sommer, S.R. (2007) *Phlebotomy: Worktext and Procedures Manual*, 2nd edn. Elsevier Saunders, St Louis, MO.

Waugh, A., Grant, A., Chambers, G. *et al.* (2006) *Ross and Wilson Anatomy and Physiology in Health and Illness*, 10th international edn. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

Weinstein, S. and Plumer, A.L. (2007) *Plumer's Principles and Practice of Intravenous Therapy*, 8th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Weishaupt, D., Köchli, V.D. and Marincek, B. (2006) *How does MRI Work? An Introduction to the Physics and Function of Magnetic Resonance Imaging*, 2nd edn. Springer, Berlin.

Weller, B.F. and Royal College of Nursing (2009) *Bailliére's Nurses' Dictionary*, 23rd edn. Elsevier, Edinburgh.

Weston, D. (2008) *Infection Prevention and Control: Theory and Clinical Practice for Healthcare Professionals*. John Wiley, Chichester.

Winter, G. (2005) It's probably a virus. *Practice Nurse*, **30** (3), 26–28.

Woodford, E.M., Wilson, K.A. and Marriott, J.F. (2004) Professionals' awareness of operational antibiotic prescribing controls in UK NHS hospitals. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **58** (3), 193–199.

Multiple choice questions

1 What action would you take if a specimen had a biohazard sticker on it?

a Double bag it, in a self-sealing bag, and wear gloves if handling the specimen.

b Wear gloves if handling the specimen, ring ahead and tell the laboratory the sample is on its way.

c Wear goggles and underfill the sample bottle.

d Wear appropriate PPE and overfill the bottle.

2 What is the best way to avoid a haematoma forming when undertaking venepuncture?

a Tap the vein hard which will 'get the vein up', especially if the patient has fragile veins. This will avoid bruising afterwards.

b It is unavoidable and an acceptable consequence of the procedure. This should be explained and documented in the patient's notes.

c Choosing a soft, bouncy vein that refills when depressed and is easily detected, and advising the patient to keep their arm straight whilst firm pressure is applied.

d Apply pressure to the vein early before the needle is removed, then get the patient to bend the arm at a right angle whilst applying firm pressure.

3 How do you ensure the correct blood to culture ratio when obtaining a blood culture specimen from an adult patient?

a Collect at least 10 mL of blood.

b Collect at least 5 mL of blood.

c Collect blood until the specimen bottle stops filling.

d Collect as much blood as the vein will give you.

4 If blood is being taken for other tests, and a patient requires collection of blood cultures, which should come first to reduce the risk of contamination?

a Inoculate the aerobic culture first.

b Take the other blood tests first.

c Inoculate the anaerobic culture first.

d The order does not matter as long as the bottles are clean.

5 Which of the following would indicate an infection?

a Hot, sweaty, a temperature of 36.5°C, and bradycardic.

b Temperature of 38.5°C, shivering, tachycardia and hypertensive.

c Raised WBC, elevated blood glucose and temperature of 36.0°C.

d Hypotensive, cold and clammy, and bradycardic.

6 Which of the following techniques is advisable when obtaining a urine specimen in order to minimize the contamination of a specimen?

a Clean around the urethral meatus prior to sample collection and get a midstream/clean catch urine specimen.

b Clean around the urethral meatus prior to sample collection and collect the first portion of urine as this is where the most bacteria will be.

c Do not clean the urethral meatus as we want these bacteria to analyse as well.

d Dip the urinalysis strip into the urine in a bedpan mixed with stool.

7 If a patient is experiencing dysphagia, which of the following investigations are they likely to have?

a Colonoscopy.

a Gastroscopy.

a Cystoscopy.

a Arthroscopy.

8 Which of the following can a patient not have if they have a pacemaker *in situ*?

a MRI.

a X-ray.

a Barium swallow.

a CT.

9 If a patient feels a cramping sensation in their abdomen after a colonoscopy, it is advisable that they should do/have which of the following?

a Eat and drink as soon as sedation has worn off.

b Drink 500 mL of fluid immediately to flush out any gas retained in the abdomen.

c Have half-hourly blood pressure performed for 12 hours.

d Be nursed flat and kept in bed for 12 hours.

10 A patient in your care is about to go for a liver biopsy. What are the most likely potential complications related to this procedure?

a Inadvertent puncture of the pleura, a blood vessel or bile duct.

b Inadvertent puncture of the heart, oesophagus or spleen.

c Cardiac arrest requiring resuscitation.

d Inadvertent puncture of the kidney and cardiac arrest.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com **and select the Student Edition tab.**

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

Chapter 12

Observations

Overview

The following observations will be discussed: pulse, blood pressure, respiration, peak flow, temperature, urinalysis, blood glucose, central venous pressure and neurological observations. For each observation discussed, we provide a definition, the rationale, legal and professional issues, procedural guidelines and a guide to problem solving.

Observations

Definitions

The term 'observation' refers to the physical assessment of a patient, including assessment of wounds, intravenous therapy, wound drains, pain and vital signs collection and specialized assessments such as neurological observations (Zeitz and McCutcheon 2006). 'Vital signs' are traditionally used in the context of the collection of a cluster of physical measures, such as pulse, respiration, temperature and blood pressure, and more recently pulse oximetry.

Evidence based approaches

Rationale

The taking of patient observations forms a fundamental part of the assessment process. The interpretation of the data from the assessment is vital in determining the level of care a patient requires, providing an

intervention or treatment and preventing a patient deteriorating from an otherwise preventable cause (Wheatley 2006) (see Chapter 2).

Indications

Observations are usually undertaken:

- to act as a baseline to help determine the patient's usual range (Bickley and Szilargyi 2009)
- to assist in recognizing if a patient's condition is deteriorating or indeed improving (Kisiel and Perkins 2006).

Principles of care

Adult patients in acute hospital settings should have:

- observations taken when they are admitted or initially assessed
- a clearly documented plan which identifies which observations should be taken and how frequently subsequent observations should be done. This plan should take into consideration:
  - the diagnosis
  - plan for patient's treatment
  - any co□morbidities which may affect their health.

(NICE 2007b)

All patients in hospital should have their observations taken at least once every 12 hours, unless specified otherwise by senior staff (NICE 2007b).

Methods of measuring and recording observations

To assist with the identification of critically ill patients and those at risk of deterioration, physiological scoring systems were introduced (Wheatley 2006). These include the Modified Early Warning System (MEWS) (see Figure 12.1), medical emergency team (MET) scoring and patient□at□risk team (PART) score (DH 2001, Hodgetts *et al.* 2002). These scoring systems rely on nursing staff performing basic patient observations, that is, respiratory rate, heart rate, blood pressure,

temperature and fluid balance (Wheatley 2006) and informing medical staff/outreach team of deviations from normal.

Figure 12.1 MEWS – Early Warning Scoring System (DH 2000).

MEWS - Early Warning Scoring System

A score of 3 or more should alert the ward nursing staff that the patient is at **risk of RAPID deterioration.**

Seek **immediate** review by outreach team / medical team / on call team

Critical Care Outreach Service

The outreach team can be contacted for any patient you are worried about, even if they do not fit the above criteria.

Chelsea
Out of hours:

Sutton
Out of hours:

Step Up Bay:

Score	3	2	1	0	1	2	3
Pulse		< 40	41 - 50	51 - 100	101 - 110	111 - 130	> 131
Systolic BP	< 70	71 - 80	81 - 100	101 - 149	150 - 199	> 200	
Respiratory rate		< 10		9 - 14	15 - 20	21 - 29	> 30
Temperature		<35	35.1 - 36	36.1 - 37.9	38 - 38.5	> 38.6	
Urine output	< 10 ml/hr	< 0.5 ml/kg/hr					
Neurological response	No response	To painful stimuli	To verbal stimuli	Alert & orientated	Confused / agitated		
GCS				15	14	9 - 13	< 8

There are many such scores in use although they should be used in conjunction with clinical judgement and a holistic assessment rather than being relied on as an absolute measure of the patient's condition (Critical Care Stakeholders Forum and National Outreach Forum 2007). They are of use in helping ward nurses to improve and focus their recognition of patients who may need further support and monitoring (DH 2000). Critical care outreach teams are available in many hospitals now and where present, they must be informed of any patients who are deteriorating or at risk of deteriorating, so that they can provide support to ward staff and assess the patient (DH 2000).

One tool that has been found to assist with structuring and standardizing communication is the Situation□Background□Assessment□Recommendations (SBAR) tool

(see Figure 12.2). SBAR is an easy to remember, concrete mechanism useful for framing any conversation, especially critical ones, requiring a clinician's immediate attention and action. It allows for an easy and focused way to set expectations for what will be communicated and how between members of the team, which is essential for developing teamwork and fostering a culture of patient safety (Woodhall 2008).

Figure 12.2 Situation Background Assessment Recommendations (SBAR) tool.

Royal Marsden NHS Foundation Trust
SBAR report to Doctor or Outreach Nurse about a critical situation
Hospital Number: **Date:** **Time:**

Situation

I am calling about <patient name and location>. Consultant:
The patient's resuscitation status is For Resus? Not for Resus?
The problem I am calling about is_____.
The patient was admitted with_____.
I have informed_____**the Nurse in Charge.**
□ I am afraid the patient is going to arrest.
I have just assessed the patient personally:
Observations are: BP_____, Pulse_____, Respirations_____and temperature_____.
Blood Glusose___mmol/l, Potassium_____mmol/l, Magnasium_____mmol/l.
Pain = Site / Duration Epidural Y/N or PCA Y/N
I am concerned about the:
Observation in the red or yellow bands on the observation chart
□ Blood pressure because it is □ over 150 systolic or □ less than 100 systolic or □ 30 mm Hg below usual
□ Pulse because it is □ over 110 or □ less than 50
□ Respiration because it is □ less than 9 or □ over 21
□ Temperature because it is □ less than 36°C or over 38°C
□ Conscious level / general condition is deteriorating
□ Urine output is less than 0.5ml/kg/hr
□ Oxygenation
□ The MEWS is_____.

Background

The patients mental status is:
□ Alert and orientated to person, place and time
□ Confused and □ cooperative or □ non-cooperative
□ Agilated
□ Lethargic but conversant and able to swallow
□ Drowsy and no talking clearly and possibly not able to swallow
□ Comatose □ Eyes closed □ Not responding to stimulation.
The skin is:
□ Warm and dry
□ Pale / Clammy
□ Sweaty
□ Extremities are cold
□ Extremities are warm
The patient □ is not or □ is on oxygen.
□ The patient has been on____(l/min) or (%) oxygen for____minutes (hours)
□ The oximeter is reading____%
□ The oximeter does not detect a good pulse and is giving erratic readings
The patient has □ no access □ a peripheral cannula □ a CVAD.

Assessment

□ I think the problem is_____.
□ I don't know what the problem is but the patient is deteriorating.
□ The patient has fallen in the ward

Recommendation

□ **Patient to be seen withing the next 30 minutes**
□ **Patient to be seen now**
□ **Would like approval of my course of action which is**_____.
Are any tests needed:
□ Do you need any tests?_____.
If a change in treatment is ordered then ask:
□ How often do you want the observations done?
□ If the patient does not get better when would you want us to call again?

Call initiated by Nurse:_____To:_____.

Anticipated patient outcomes

Physiological observations are extremely important in recognizing if a patient's condition is deteriorating or indeed improving (Kisiel and Perkins 2006).

Legal and professional issues

Nurses are accountable and responsible for providing optimum care for their patients. The Nursing and Midwifery Council's (NMC) *The Code* provides the main source of professional accountability for nurses (NMC 2008a). It is essential that nursing staff objectively examine the information gathered from assessments and observations as well as any information previously recorded (Crouch and Meurier 2005).

For nurses' own professional accountability and for the achievement of safe, effective and proficient care of the patient, it is essential that nurses are able to discuss (using physiological rationale) the potential reasons for the observations they have recorded (Kisiel and Perkins 2006). Professional accountability demands more than nurses just undertaking observations. It is about nurses being able to interpret them and then to take appropriate action (Kisiel and Perkins 2006).

Observations should be taken by staff who have undergone the appropriate training regarding the procedure, not only so that they are able to perform the procedure correctly and accurately but also, crucially, so they are able to act on and understand the clinical relevance of the results (NICE 2007b). The degree of training should be suitable to the level of care which the practitioner is providing (NICE 2007b). However, all staff should have competencies in relation to measuring, monitoring, interpretation and when to respond promptly (NICE 2007b).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

All practitioners need to be aware of the strengths and limitations of the devices they are using and need to have adequate training on the use of

all equipment. They must ensure that the devices are validated, checked, maintained and recalibrated regularly according to the manufacturer's instructions (NICE 2006). In addition, the use of the device should be within the permitted manufacturer's guidelines.

Prior to the procedure, check when the device was last serviced. All devices, manual or automated, are only accurate if they are working and used correctly. Most trusts have the devices checked annually and the date documented on the device and staff should check this and report when it is due for servicing (Woodrow 2004a).

Postprocedural considerations

Documentation

Adequate training on good record keeping and documentation is essential. The NMC (2009) states that the quality of good record keeping is also a reflection of the standard of the individual's professional practice. All records must be contemporaneous, accurate and unambiguous (Dawes and Durham 2007).

Pulse

Definition

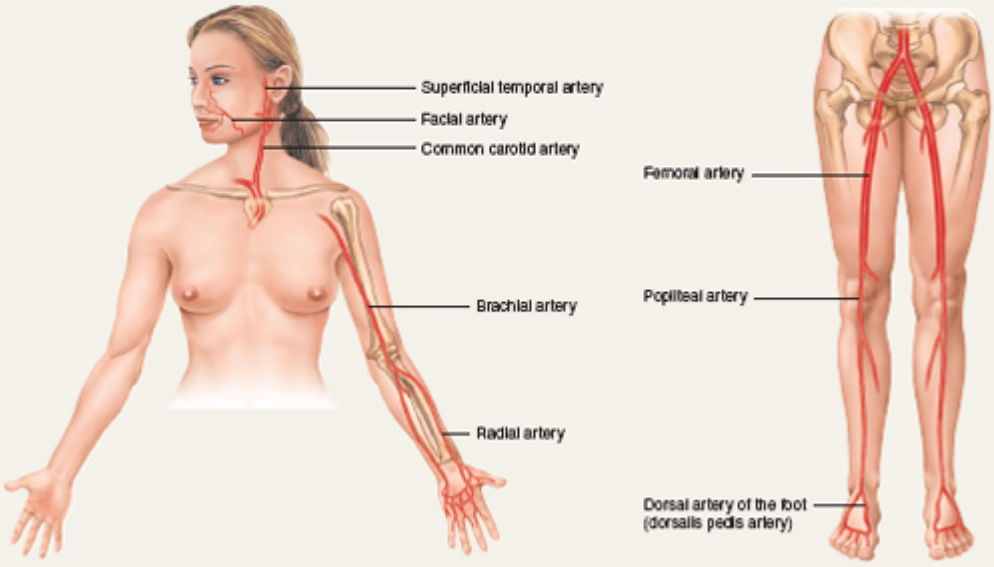
The pulse is a pressure wave that is transmitted through the arterial tree with each heart beat following the alternating expansion and recoil of arteries during each cardiac cycle (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). A pulse can be palpated in any artery that lies close to the surface of the body. The radial artery at the wrist is easily accessible and therefore the radial pulse is frequently used, but there are several other clinically important arterial pulse points, such as the carotid, femoral and brachial plexus (Marieb and Hoehn 2010) (see Figure 12.3).

Figure 12.3 Pulse points.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).

Pulse Points

STRUCTURE	LOCATION	STRUCTURE	LOCATION
Superficial temporal artery	Lateral to orbit of eye.	Femoral artery	Inferior to inguinal ligament.
Facial artery	Mandible (lower jawbone) on a line with the corners of the mouth.	Popliteal artery	Posterior to knee.
Common carotid artery	Lateral to larynx (voice box).	Radial artery	Distal aspect of wrist.
Brachial artery	Medial side of biceps brachii muscle.	Dorsal artery of the foot (dorsalis pedis artery)	Superior to instep of foot.



Anatomy and physiology

In health, the arterial pulse is one of the measurements used to assess the effects of activity, postural changes and emotions on the heart rate. In ill health, the pulse can be used to assess the effects of disease, treatments and response to therapy. Each time the heart beats, it pushes blood through the arteries. The pumping action of the heart causes the walls of the arteries to expand and distend, causing a wave□like sensation which can then be felt as the pulse (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The pulse is measured by lightly compressing the artery against firm tissue and by counting the number of beats in a minute.

The pulse is palpated to note the following:

- rate
- rhythm
- amplitude.

Rate

The normal pulse rate varies in different client groups as age-related changes affect the pulse rate (Weber and Kelley 2003). The approximate range is illustrated in Table 12.1.

Table 12.1 Normal pulse rates per minute at various ages

Age	Approximate range
1 week–3 months	100–160
3 months–2 years	80–150
2–10 years	70–110
10 years–adult	55–90

The pulse may vary depending on the posture of an individual. For example, the pulse of a healthy man may be around 66 beats per minute when he is lying down; this increases to 70 beats per minute when sitting up and 80 beats per minute when he suddenly stands (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

The rate of the pulse of an individual with a healthy heart tends to be relatively constant. However, when blood volume drops suddenly or when the heart has been weakened by disease, the stroke volume declines and cardiac output is maintained only by increasing the rate of heart beat.

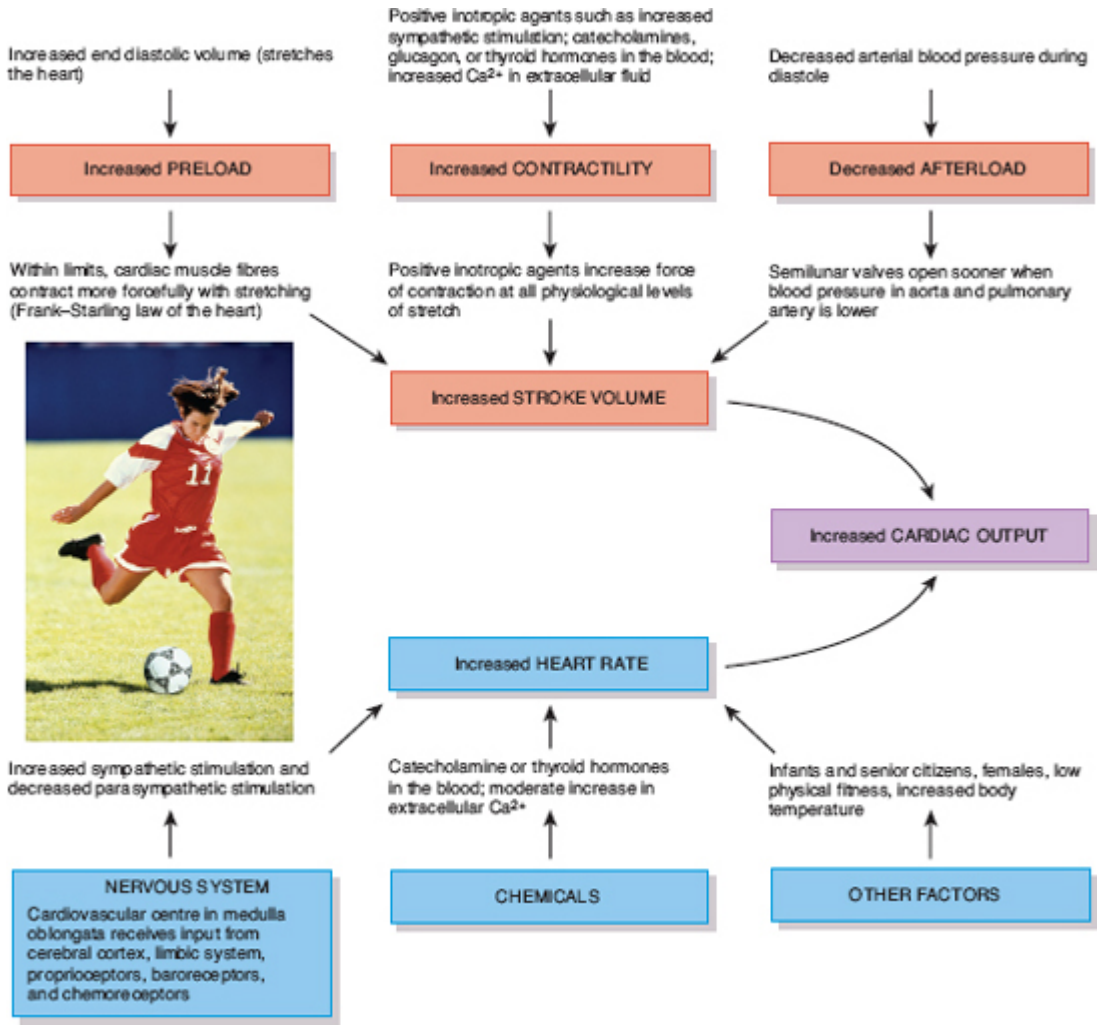
Cardiac output (CO) is the amount of blood pumped out by each ventricle in 1 minute. It is the product of heart rate (HR) and stroke volume (SV). Stroke volume is defined as the volume of blood pumped out by one ventricle with each beat. Using normal resting values for heart rate (75 beats/minute) and stroke volume (70 mL/beat), the average adult cardiac output can be calculated:

$$\begin{aligned} CO = HR \times SV &= 75 \text{ beats/min} \times 70 \text{ mL/beat} \\ &= 5250 \text{ mL/min} = 5.25 \text{ L/min (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).} \end{aligned}$$

The heart rate and hence pulse rate are influenced by various factors acting through neural, chemical and physically induced homoeostatic mechanisms (see Figure 12.4 for factors that increase cardiac output).

Figure 12.4 Factors that increase cardiac output.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



- Neural changes in heart rate are caused by the activation of the sympathetic nervous system which increases heart rate, while parasympathetic activation decreases heart rate (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009).
- Chemical regulation of the heart is affected by hormones (adrenaline and thyroxine) and electrolytes (sodium, potassium and calcium) (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). High or low levels of electrolytes, particularly potassium, magnesium and calcium, can cause an alteration in the heart's rhythm and rate.
- Other factors that influence heart rate are age, sex, exercise and body temperature (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Tachycardia

This is an abnormally fast heart rate, over 100 beats per minute in adults. It may result from an elevated body temperature, stress, certain drugs or heart disease (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Persistent tachycardia is considered pathological because tachycardia occasionally promotes fibrillation (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Bradycardia

This is a heart rate slower than 60 beats per minute (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). It may be the result of a low body temperature, certain drugs or parasympathetic nervous system activation. It is also found in fit athletes when physical and cardiovascular conditioning occurs (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). This results in hypertrophy of the heart with an increase in its stroke volume, leading to a lower resting heart rate but with the same cardiac output (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). If persistent bradycardia occurs in an individual as a result of ill health, this may result in inadequate blood circulation to body tissues. Bradycardia is often a warning of brain oedema after head trauma (Marieb and Hoehn 2010) and is one of the indications of raised intracranial pressure.

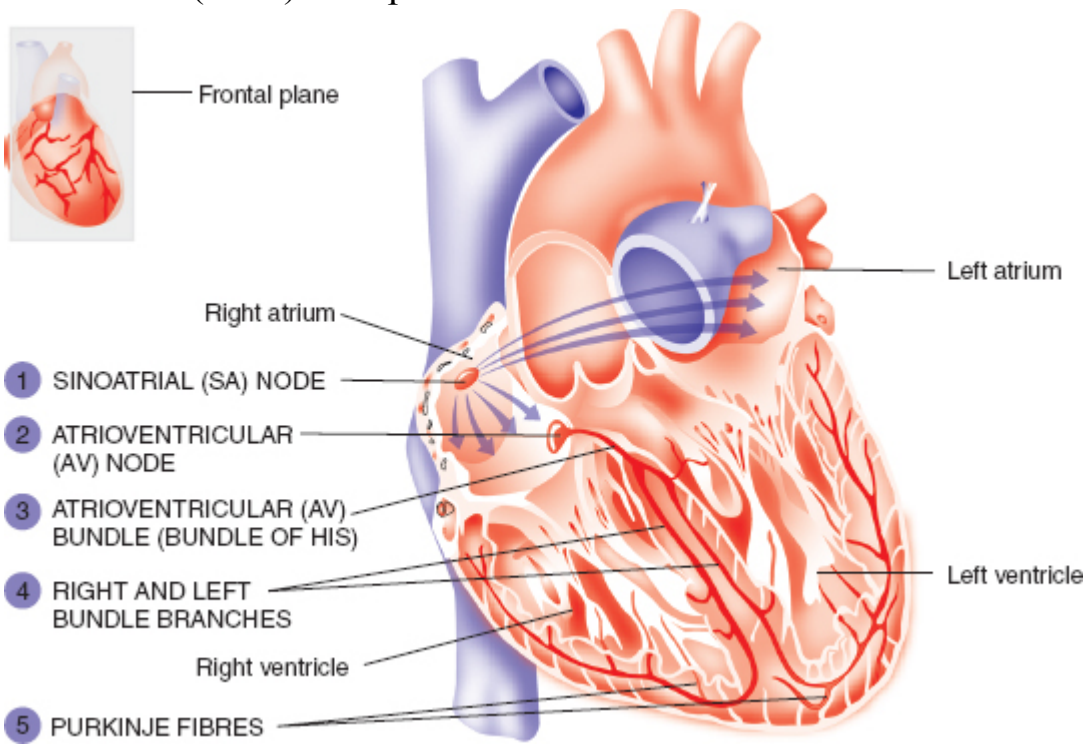
Rhythm

The pulse rhythm is the sequence of beats. In health, these are regular. The co□ordinated action of the muscles of the heart in producing a regular heart rhythm is due to the ability of cardiac muscle to contract inherently without nervous control (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The co□ordinated action of the muscles in the heart results from two physiological factors.

- Gap junctions in the cardiac muscles which form interconnections between adjacent cardiac muscles and allow transmission of nervous impulses from cell to cell (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).
- Specialized nerve□like cardiac cells that form the nodal system. These initiate and distribute impulses throughout the heart, so that the heart beats as one unit (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The nodal system is composed of the sinoatrial node, atrioventricular node, atrioventricular bundle and the Purkinje fibres.

The sinoatrial node is the pacemaker, initiating each wave of contraction. This sets the rhythm for the heart as a whole (see Figure 12.5). Its characteristic rhythm is called *sinus rhythm*.

Figure 12.5 Conduction system of the heart. Autorhythmic fibres in the SA node, located in the right atrial wall, act as the heart's pacemaker, initiating cardiac action potentials that cause contraction of the heart's chambers. The conduction system ensures that the chambers of the heart contract in a co□ordinated manner. Redrawn from Tortora and Derrickson (2009) with permission.



In patients younger than 40 years, irregularity may be linked to breathing, when the heart rate increases on inspiration and decreases on expiration. Although this is rarely noticeable in adults (Higgins 2008), it is normal and is known as sinus arrhythmia (Woods *et al.* 2005). Defects in the conduction system of the heart can cause irregular heart rhythms, or arrhythmias, resulting in unco□ordinated contraction of the heart.

Fibrillation

Fibrillation is a condition of rapid and irregular contractions. A fibrillating heart is ineffective as a pump (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Atrial fibrillation is a disruption of rhythm in the atrial areas of the heart occurring at extremely rapid and unco□ordinated intervals. The rapid impulses result in the ventricles not being able to respond to every atrial beat and, therefore, the ventricles contract irregularly (Adam and Osborne 2005). The incidence of atrial fibrillation in the general population is approximately 1%, rising to 10% in people aged over 70 years (Goodacre and Irons 2002).

There are many causes of this condition, but the following are the most common:

- ischaemic heart disease
- acute illness
- electrolyte abnormality
- thyrotoxicosis.

Atrial fibrillation can complicate or cause many other medical conditions, including stroke and heart failure (Navas 2003a). If poorly managed, patients are at increased risk of arterial thromboembolism and ischaemic stroke (Jevon 2007). If the patient has a fast ventricular rate some contractions may not be strong enough to transmit a pulse wave that is detectable at the radial artery. In this instance, checking the radial pulse is an unreliable method of assessing ventricular rate. Simultaneous monitoring of the apex beat and radial pulse is advisable in patients with atrial fibrillation, because it will determine the ventricular rate more reliably and identify whether there is an apex beat□radial pulse deficit (Jevon 2007).

This procedure requires two nurses and is described in Assessing gross pulse irregularity.

Ventricular fibrillation is an irregular heart rhythm characterized by chaotic contraction of the ventricles at very rapid rates (Adam and Osborne 2005). Ventricular fibrillation results in cardiac arrest and death if not reversed with defibrillation and the injection of adrenaline. The cause of this condition is often myocardial infarction (MI), electrical shock, acidosis, electrolyte disturbances and hypovolaemia (Resuscitation Council UK 2005).

Body fluids are good conductors of electricity so it is possible through electrocardiography to observe how the currents generated are

transmitted through the heart. The electrocardiograph provides a graphic representation and record (electrocardiogram (ECG)) of electrical activity as the heart beats (see Twelve□lead electrocardiogram (ECG)). The ECG makes it possible to identify abnormalities in electrical conduction within the heart. Changes in the pattern or timing of the deflection in the ECG may indicate problems with the heart's conduction system, such as those caused by MI (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). For examples of normal and abnormal ECGs, see Twelve□lead electrocardiogram (ECG).

Amplitude

Amplitude is a reflection of pulse strength and the elasticity of the arterial wall. This varies because of the alternating strong and weak ventricular contractions (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009). The flexibility of the artery of the young adult feels different from the hard artery of the patient suffering from arteriosclerosis. It takes some clinical experience to appreciate the differences in amplitude. However, it is important to be able to recognize major changes such as the faint flickering pulse of the severely hypovolaemic patient or the irregular pulse in cardiac arrhythmias.

Assessing gross pulse irregularity

Paradoxical pulse is a pulse that markedly decreases in amplitude during inspiration. On inspiration, more blood is pooled in the lungs and so decreases the return to the left side of the heart; this affects the consequent stroke volume. A paradoxical pulse is usually regarded as normal, although in conjunction with such features as hypotension and dyspnoea, it may indicate cardiac tamponade (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009), hypovolaemia, severe airway obstruction or tension pneumothorax (Wong 2007).

When there is a gross pulse irregularity, it may be useful to use a stethoscope to assess the apical heart beat. This is done by placing the diaphragm of the stethoscope over the apex of the heart and counting the beats for 60 seconds. A second nurse should record the radial pulse at the same time. The deficit between the two should be noted using, for

example, different colours on the patient's chart to indicate the apex and radial rates (Docherty 2002).

Evidence based approaches

Rationale

The pulse is taken for the following reasons.

- To gather information on the heart rate, pattern of beats (rhythm) and amplitude (strength) of pulse.
- To determine the individual's pulse on admission as a base for comparing future measurements.
- To monitor changes in pulse.

(Marieb and Hoehn 2010)

Indications

Conditions in which a patient's pulse may need careful monitoring are described below.

- Postoperative and critically ill patients require monitoring of the pulse to assess for cardiovascular stability. The patient's pulse should be recorded preoperatively in order to establish a baseline and to make comparisons. Hypovolaemic shock post surgery from the loss of plasma or whole blood results in a decrease in circulatory blood volume. The resulting acceleration in heart rate causes a tachycardia that can be felt in the pulse. The greater the loss in volume, the more thready the pulse is likely to feel.
- Blood transfusions require careful monitoring of the pulse as an incompatible blood transfusion may lead to a rise in pulse rate (British Committee for Standards in Haematology 1999) (see Chapter 8).
- Patients with local or systemic infections or inflammatory reactions require monitoring of their pulse to detect sepsis/severe sepsis. This is characterized by a decrease in the mean arterial pressure (MAP) and a rise in pulse rate (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

- Patients with cardiovascular conditions require regular assessment of the pulse to monitor their condition and the efficacy of medications.

Methods of pulse measurement

Manual

The pulse is measured by lightly compressing the artery against firm tissue and by counting the number of beats in a minute.

Electronic

Automated electronic equipment such as a pulse oximeter, blood pressure recording devices, 12□lead ECG or continuous cardiac monitoring may be used to determine the pulse. However, even where the patient has continuous ECG monitoring, it is still essential to manually feel for a pulse to determine amplitude and volume and whether the pulse is irregular. In pulseless electrical activity (PEA), normal sinus rhythm is shown on the monitor but a pulse is not palpable (Levine *et al.* 2008).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Pulse can be measured using a:

- *stethoscope*: instrument used for listening to internal body sounds, especially from the heart and lung. It consists of a hollow tube, one end of which is placed to the ear of the examiner (Weller 2005) and the other end consists of a diaphragm (disc), used to pick up high□pitched sounds, or bell (hollow cup), used to detect low□pitched sounds (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009)
- *electronic pulse measurement device* (pulse oximeter): a small electronic device, consisting of a probe which is placed onto the end of a finger to record pulse rate.

Specific patient preparations

Ideally a patient should be at rest for 20 minutes before trying to obtain an accurate pulse. Strenuous activity will result in falsely elevated readings (Rawlings□Anderson and Hunter 2008).

Procedure guideline 12.1 Pulse measurement

Essential equipment

- A watch that has a second hand
- Alcohol handrub
- Observations chart
- Black pen
- A stethoscope (if counting the apical beat)
- Electronic pulse measurement device, for example pulse oximeter, blood pressure measuring device or cardiac monitor

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Wash hands and dry hands.	To prevent cross□infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
2 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
Procedure	
3 Where possible, measure the pulse under the same conditions each time.	To ensure continuity and consistency in recording. E
4 Ensure that the patient is comfortable and relaxed. Ideally the patient should refrain from physical activity for 20 minutes.	To ensure that the patient is comfortable. E Strenous activity will result in falsely elevated readings (Rawlings□Anderson and Hunter 2008), E).
5 Place the first and second or in addition the third finger along the appropriate artery and apply light pressure until the pulse is felt (see Action Figure 5).	The fingertips are sensitive to touch. Practitioners should be aware that the thumb and forefinger have pulses of their own and therefore these may be mistaken for the patient's pulse (Docherty and Coote 2006, E).
6 Press gently against the peripheral artery being used to record the pulse.	The radial artery is usually used as it is often the most readily accessible (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, E).
7 The pulse should be counted for 60 seconds.	Sufficient time is required to detect irregularities in rhythm or volume. If the pulse is regular and of good volume subsequent readings may be taken for 30 seconds and then doubled to give beats per minute. If the rhythm or volume changes on

	subsequent readings then pulse must be taken for 60 seconds (Rawlings□Anderson and Hunter 2008, E).
8 Record the pulse rate on appropriate documentation. Additional factors such as the rhythm, volume and skin condition (dry, sweaty or clammy) may be described in the patient's nursing notes.	To monitor differences and detect trends; any irregularities should be brought to the attention of the appropriate senior nursing and medical teams (NMC 2008a, C). Additional qualitative characteristics of the pulse may aid diagnosis of the patient's condition (Rawlings□Anderson and Hunter 2008, E).
Postprocedure	
9 Discuss result and any further action with the patient.	To involve the patient in their care and provide assurance of a normal result or explain the actions to be undertaking in the event of an abnormal result. E,P
10 Wash and dry hands or decontaminate with alcohol handrub.	To prevent cross□infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Action Figure 5 Taking a pulse.

Problem-solving table 12.1 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 12.1)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
No pulse palpable	Incorrect positioning of fingers	Refer to Figure 12.3 for palpation sites.	Place 2 or 3 fingers over the appropriate artery and lighty depress against the tissue or bone. Try alternative sites such as brachial or carotid artery.
Absent or faint pulse	Poor perfusion	Assess patient's existing co-morbidities for further information. Identify any causes of hypovolaemia	Inform medical team if the patient is cardiovascularly compromised
	Obstruction, for example clot	Perform a venous thromboembolism (VTE) risk assessment for your patient on admission (NICE 2007a) and ensure appropriate preventive measures in place, for example antiembolism stockings, mechanical devices applying intermittent pneumatic pressure, for example Flowtron, or injections of low molecular weight heparin preparations (Lees and McAuliffe 2010)	Perform a neurovascular assessment, assessing all pulse sites to determine compromised area. Also feel for warmth and sensation and capillary refill to provide further information on the degree of vascular sufficiency
Pulse too fast and irregular to manually palpate	Patient may be in an abnormal rhythm	Haemodynamic assessment, monitoring and maintenance of electrolyte balance	Use electronic recording device. New-onset tachycardia and irregular rhythms should prompt a full set of observations: BP, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation and temperature. It is essential to perform a 12-lead ECG and have this reviewed by a doctor

Postprocedural considerations

Documentation

The pulse should be recorded in the patient's notes on the institution's approved observation chart. The recording should be dated and timed so that the pulse trend may be viewed easily as part of ongoing patient monitoring.

Twelve□lead electrocardiogram (ECG)

Definition

Electrical currents generated and transmitted through the heart also spread throughout the body and can be monitored and amplified with an instrument called an electrocardiogram (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

A 12□lead ECG is a quick non□invasive way of acquiring data to ascertain information about the electrophysiology of the heart (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Electrical changes, which take place as the cardiac muscle contracts and relaxes, are recorded on the ECG trace and produce 12 different tracings from different combinations of limb and chest leads (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

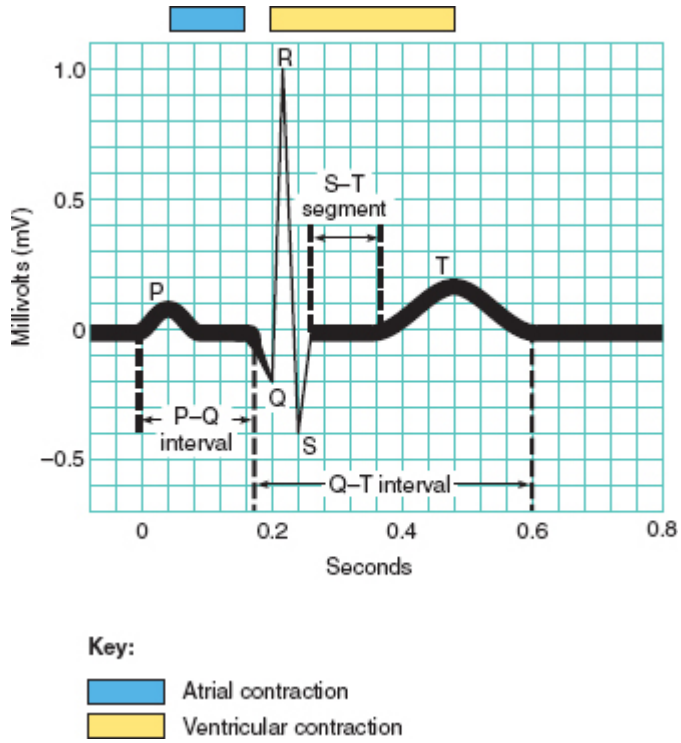
Anatomy and physiology

The starting point of the cardiac electrical cycle is the sinoatrial (SA) node. This is the heart's natural pacemaker, which can create impulses at 60–100 beats per minute. Its ability to spontaneously generate and discharge an electrical impulse is called automaticity (Docherty 2005).

A typical ECG consists of a series of three distinguishable waves called deflection waves (see Figure 12.6). The first wave, the small P wave, lasting about 0.08 seconds, results from movement of the depolarization wave from the SA node through the atria. The impulse travels from the atria to the ventricles via the atrioventricular (AV) node through internodal tracts (Lemery *et al*. 2003): this is the PR interval. From the AV node, the impulse travels down the His–Purkinje system and throughout the ventricles. The septal area contracts before the main ventricle muscle (Tortora and Derrickson 2009), giving rise to a small negatively deflected Q wave on the ECG.

Figure 12.6 Normal electrocardiograms or ECG (lead II). P□wave = arterial depolarization; QRS complex = onset of ventricular depolarization; T□wave = ventricular repolarization.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



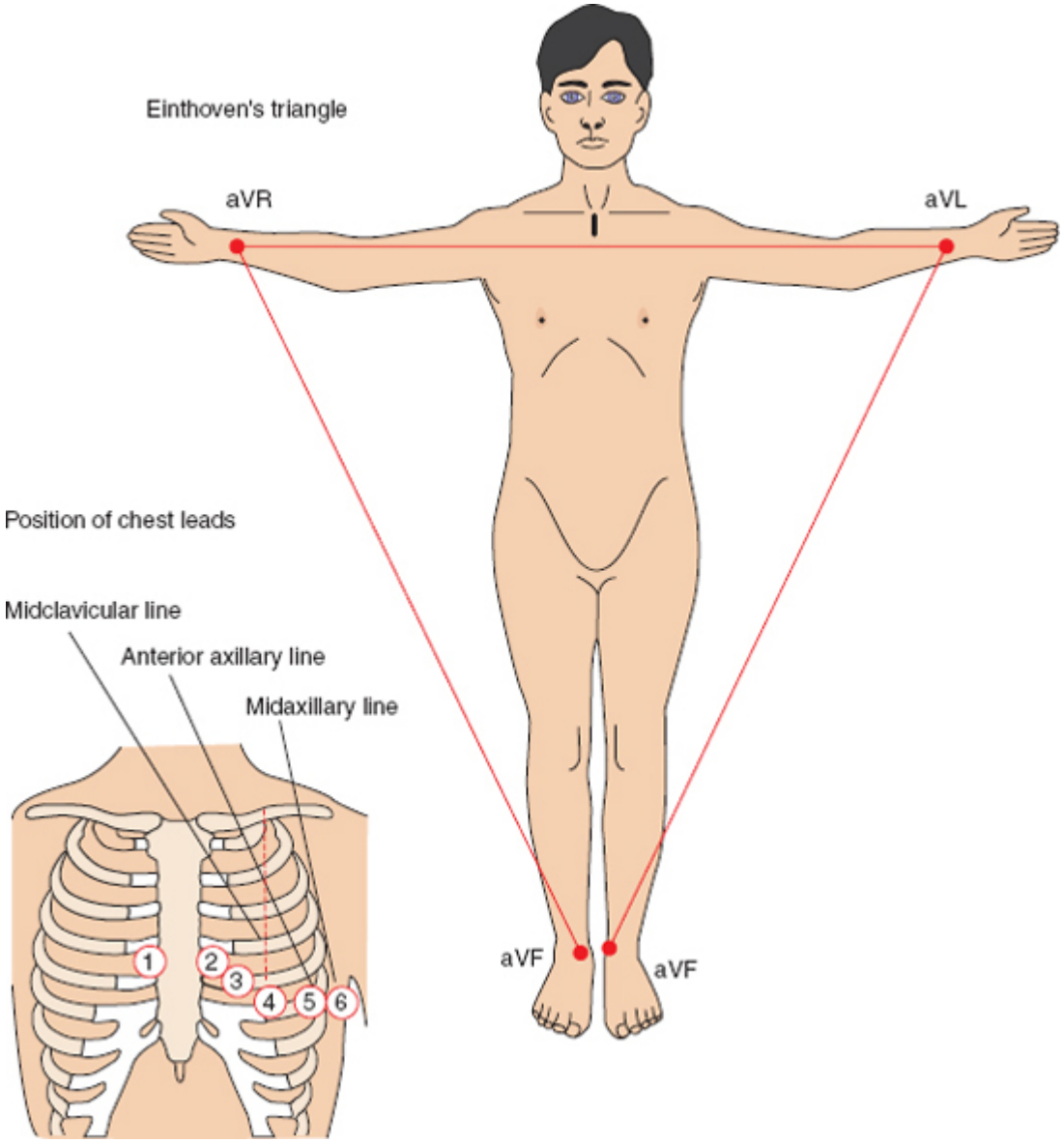
The His–Purkinje system consists of the His bundle, right bundle branch, left bundle branch and Purkinje fibres (Tortora and Derrickson 2009). The Purkinje fibres conduct impulses through the muscle assisting depolarization almost simultaneously (Philip and Kowery 2001), giving rise to the positive R□wave deflection on the ECG, followed by an S□wave as the ECG then detects the right ventricle muscle movement (Docherty 2005). The T□wave illustrates ventricular repolarization, commonly referred to as the resting phase of the ventricles. Sometime a small U□wave preceding the T□wave is noticeable and this represents relaxation of the ventricles (Chummun 2009). Atrial repolarization is not graphically represented on the ECG as it is hidden in the QRS complex (Sharman 2007).

Related theory

The first three leads or views of the heart (leads I, II and III) were introduced in 1902 by Willem Einthoven. Figure 12.7 illustrates the specific arrangement known as the Einthoven triangle together with normal ECG lead tracings (Einthoven 1902). In acute clinical areas where continuous cardiac monitoring is required, the three limb leads

can be placed according to Figure 12.7 and the monitor is set to show lead II as this gives the best picture and is the most accurate atrial monitoring lead (Docherty 2002, Navas 2003b). An ECG lead records the difference in electrical potential between a negative and positive electrode.

Figure 12.7 Position of electrodes for 12□lead ECG. Redrawn from Metcalf (2000) with permission.



Recording a 12□lead ECG requires the connection of two groups of electrodes to the patient.

- Limb leads (I, II, III, aVR, aVL, aVF).

- Chest or precordial leads (generally V1 to V6) (Wilson *et al.* 1944, Noble *et al*. 2010).

The 12□lead ECG is the gold standard for diagnostic purposes and the standard electrode placement is shown in Figure 12.7 and described in Procedure guideline 12.2. However, it should be noted that an alternative positioning of the limb leads on the torso, known as the Mason□Likar 12□lead system, can also be used. The Mason□Likar arrangement is more suitable in acute areas where continuous 12□lead ECG monitoring is required as the waveforms are easily viewed without interference from limb movement (Pelter 2008).

Evidence□based approaches

Rationale

An ECG is performed electively prior to various interventions such as surgery and anticancer chemotherapy. An ECG should also be considered to aid diagnosis during an acute situation, particularly in the presence of chest pain, haemodynamic disturbance or cardiac rhythm changes. Twenty□four hour ambulatory ECG monitoring, also known as 24□hour tape, may be used to record and analyse the patient's heart rhythm. This is useful to capture abnormalities that might be missed with a standard 12□lead ECG and is a specialist test. If required, up to 72 hours of ambulatory ECG monitoring may be recorded.

Legal and professional issues

Competencies

Any healthcare professional who has been trained and assessed as competent can take a 12□lead ECG in line with local hospital policy. However, its analysis and diagnosis are usually undertaken by medical staff or specialist nurses (Sharman 2007).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

- *12□lead ECG machine*: consisting of 12 wires which are connected to electrodes fixed to the body. The machine detects and amplifies the electrical impulses that occur at each heart beat and records them on to a paper or computer.
- *ECG paper (25 mm/s style)*: waveforms produced by the heart's electrical current are recorded on graphed ECG paper by a stylus. ECG paper consists of horizontal and vertical lines forming a grid. A piece of ECG paper is called an ECG strip or tracing. The horizontal axis of the strip represents time. Each small block equals 0.04 second, and five small blocks form a large block, which equals 0.2 second. Five large blocks equal 1 second (5 × 0.2). The ECG strip's vertical axis measures amplitude in millimetres (mm) or electrical volts in millivolts (mV) (Levine *et al.* 2008) (see Figure 12.6).
- *Filter selection*: modern ECG monitors offer multiple filters for signal processing. The most common settings are monitor mode and diagnostic mode. In monitor mode, the low□frequency filter is set at either 0.5 Hz or 1 Hz and the high□frequency filter is set at 40 Hz. This limits artefact for routine cardiac rhythm monitoring. The high□pass filter helps reduce wandering baseline and the low□pass filter helps reduce 50 or 60 Hz power line noise. In diagnostic mode, the high□pass filter is set at 0.05 Hz, which allows accurate ST segments to be recorded. The low□pass filter is set to 40, 100 or 150 Hz. Consequently, the monitor mode ECG display is more filtered than diagnostic mode, because its passband is narrower.
- *12 leads*: in electrocardiography, the word *lead* may refer to either the electrodes attached to the patient or the voltage between two electrodes. The electrodes are attached to the patient's body, usually with sticky circles of thick tape□like material (the electrode is embedded in the centre of this circle), onto which ECG leads clip, using different combinations of electrodes to measure various signals from the heart.
- *Abrasive strips*: can be used to aid electrode contact by gently rubbing over the skin in the position of the electrodes. Gentle friction

creates a roughened skin surface without causing cuts, which is helpful in creating a good contact between the electrode and the skin.

- *24–72 hour ambulatory ECG recorder*: a continuous recording of an ECG over a 24–72 hour period, which enables a patient to continue with their daily activities.

Use of filter

The filter should not be used for the initial recording as it will distort the ECG. The Society for Cardiology Science and Technology advises the use of the filter only once other efforts to reduce interference, for example attempts to relax the patient and promote their comfort, have been exhausted (SCST 2006). Use of the filter should be clearly identified on the ECG.

Specific patient preparations

Female patients

Placement of the lateral chest leads (V4, V5 and V6) is by convention under the left breast. Whilst there is emerging evidence to support the positioning of these electrodes over the breast, it is currently insufficient to suggest a change of procedure (SCST 2006).

Dextrocardia

Dextrocardia is used to describe a heart that is located within the right side of the chest rather than the left. It may be associated with the condition situs inversus where all the patient's organs are in a mirror image position.

The following are recommended by the SCST (2006).

Patients with an unknown dextrocardia

The initial ECG recorded in the standard arrangement will show an inverted P wave in lead I (P axis >90°) together with poor R wave progression across the chest leads. If suspected, a second ECG should be recorded with the chest electrodes positioned on the right side of the

chest using the same intercostal spacing and anatomical landmarks. This approach will provide a 'true' ECG representation. The limb lead complexes will continue to appear inverted, demonstrating the abnormal location of the heart. However, the repositioned chest leads will now show the appropriate R-wave progression. Both ECGs should be retained for inclusion in the patient's notes.

Patient known to have dextrocardia

The ECG should be recorded with the limb leads in the usual position and the chest lead should be placed across the right side of the chest. Note that swapping of the right and left limb leads will 'normalize' the appearance of the limb leads.

When swapping leads, it is imperative that the ECG is clearly annotated to describe the new positions of the electrodes (for example, V3R, V4R, etc.) to prevent possibility of dextrocardia being overlooked.

If there is difficulty attaching the ECG sticker, see Problem-solving Table 12.2.

Table 12.2 Blood pressure cuff sizes for mercury sphygmomanometer, semi-automatic and ambulatory monitors

Indication	Bladder width × length (cm)	Arm circumference (cm)
Small adult/child	12 × 18	<23
Standard adult	12 × 26	<33
Large adult	12 × 40	<50
Adult thigh cuff	20 × 42	<53

Reproduced with permission from Williams *et al.* (2004).

Procedure guideline 12.2 Electrocardiogram

Essential equipment

- ECG machine with chest and limb leads labelled respectively, for example LA to left arm, V1 to first chest lead
- Disposable electrodes

- Swabs saturated with 70% isopropyl alcohol to cleanse and prepare the skin prior to electrode placement
- Abrasive strips
- Alcohol handrub

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and dry.	To minimize the risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
2 Explain to the patient that the ECG is to be taken, that it is not a painful procedure and that it will be useful to aid diagnosis.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C; Roberts 2002, E).
3 Ensure that the patient is comfortably positioned either lying or sitting (preferably in semi□recumbent position). Any variations to standard recording techniques must be highlighted on the trace, for example 'ECG recorded whilst patient in wheelchair'.	To ensure optimal recording and comfort of the patient (Roberts 2002, E). The ECG may vary depending on the patient's position so it is important to note this on the ECG (SCST 2006, C).
4 Clean limb and chest electrode sites (see Figure 12.7). If necessary, prepare skin by clipping hairs or use abrasive strip.	To ensure good grip and therefore good contact between skin and electrode which results in less electrical artefact (Roberts 2002, E). Shaving should be avoided due to the risk of infection if the skin is grazed (Sharman 2007, E) or bleeding if the patient is on anticoagulation therapy (Pelter 2008, E).
Procedure	
5 Apply the chest electrodes as described in Figure 12.7. Apply the limb leads proximal to the appropriate wrist and ankle. For advice on placement in females and known cardiac abnormalities please see the Specific patient preparations.	To obtain the ECG recording from vertical and horizontal planes (Roberts 2002, E). Following a standard arrangement ensures consistency between recordings and prevents invalid recordings and false diagnosis (SCST 2006, C).
6 Attach the leads from the ECG machine to the electrodes.	To obtain the ECG recording (Roberts 2002, E).
7 Check that the leads are connected correctly and to the relevant electrode.	To ensure the correct polarity in the ECG recording (Roberts 2002, E).
8 Ensure that the leads are not pulling on the electrodes or lying over each other. Offer the patient a gown or sheet to place over their exposed chest.	To reduce electrical artefact and to obtain a good ECG recording (Roberts 2002, E). To promote patient dignity and reduce anxiety (SCST 2006, C).
9 Ask patient to relax and refrain from movement.	To obtain the optimal recording by the reduction of artefact from muscular movement (Roberts 2002, E; SCST 2006, C).
10 Encourage the patient to breath normally and not to speak while the trace is being taken.	Speaking can alter the recording (Roberts 2002, E).

11 Check that calibration is 10 mm/mV.	To ensure standard recording to aid interpretation. E
12 Commence the recording.	To obtain ECG. E
13 In the case of artefact or poor recording, check electrodes and connections.	To ensure optimal recording (Roberts 2002, E).
14 During the procedure give reassurance to the patient.	To ensure the patient feels informed and reassured (Roberts 2002, E).
15 If necessary, record a rhythm strip utilizing leads II and V1.	To assist with interpretation if there have been any acute rhythm disturbances. Can also ensure steady baseline (Roberts 2002, E).
16 Detach ECG print□out and label with patient's name, hospital number, date and time. File the ECG recording in the appropriate documentation.	To ensure that the ECG is labelled with the correct patient, date and time (NMC 2009, C). To ensure that the recording does not get lost (NMC 2009, C).
Postprocedure	
17 Inform patient that the procedure is now finished and help to remove the electrodes.	To ensure that the patient can relax and that the electrodes are removed. E
18 Wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and dry.	To minimize the risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
19 Inform nursing and medical staff that the ECG has been completed and its location.	To enable relevant nursing and medical staff to use the ECG data in their care planning and treatment (NMC 2008a, C).
20 Clean the ECG machine following manufacturer's advice after patient use and return it to its storage place and plug it in to keep the battery fully charged.	The ECG machine forms part of a ward's emergency equipment and should always be available and in good working order with a charged battery for use in an emergency (Metcalfe 2000, E).

Problem-solving table 12.2 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 12.2)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Unable to turn on the ECG machine	Low battery	Ensure the ECG is left on continuous charge when not in use	The ECG will function once it is connected to a power supply
ECG machine is working but the rhythm display is blank	Loose connection	Carefully store the leads after use to prevent damage	Check that each lead is connected to the electrode clip and that the base of the lead is connected to the ECG machine
	Electrode stickers peel off from the patient's skin	The patient may have used body lotion or the skin may be clammy, making adhesion difficult	Check if the patient has used body lotions; if so, cleanse the electrode sites with soap and water to remove the lotion and allow to dry then reapply new electrode stickers
		The patient's chest may be too hairy which makes adhesion difficult	If the patient has a hairy chest try to push the hair out of the way when applying stickers to make a better contact; sometimes reinforcement with tape is required. If this fails to work, ask the patient for permission to shave off a small amount of hair at the electrode sites, cleanse to remove loose hair, allow to dry and apply new electrode stickers

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
	The electrode stickers may be intact but there is still no rhythm – is the patient's skin excessively dry and flaky?	Identify underlying causes and severity of dry skin and address them with the MDT as appropriate	With the patient's permission, vigorous but gentle rubbing with soap and water, 2% chlorhexidine wipes or abrasive strips should be performed to remove the superficial dead skin cells. The skin should be allowed to dry and new electrode stickers applied
ECG is printing but some of the views are missing	A loose connection	Good skin preparation and maintenance of the ECG machine	Check that the electrode sticker is intact and follow above suggestions for skin preparation. Check that the leads are all connected properly
ECG is printing but there is interference, making it difficult to interpret safely	Patient movement	Ask the patient not to speak and remain still but breathe normally.	Ensure the patient is not moving or talking and repeat the ECG once the displayed rhythm has stabilized
		The patient may be cold and therefore involuntarily shivering	Once the electrodes are connected, place blankets over the patient to warm them
	Peripheral interference		Place the limb leads more centrally as shown in the Mason-Likar placement (see Figure 12.7) to reduce interference from limb movement
	General interference/wandering baseline	Poor skin contact with the electrodes, poor electrode placement or thoracic movement (Metcalfe 2000)	Ensure good skin preparation. Ask the patient to take shallow breaths if possible. Check that the leads are properly placed. If necessary, record an additional ECG with the 'filter' function on to limit interference. Write on the ECG that the 'filter' function was used
ECG is working and displays a rhythm but the print-out is blank	Different manufacturer's ECG paper has been loaded	Only use the manufacturer's recommended paper for the ECG machine	Reload using the correct paper
	Internal fault	Ensure manufacturer's recommendations re maintenance and servicing are followed	Contact in-house engineer or medical device technician or manufacturer for advice

Postprocedural considerations

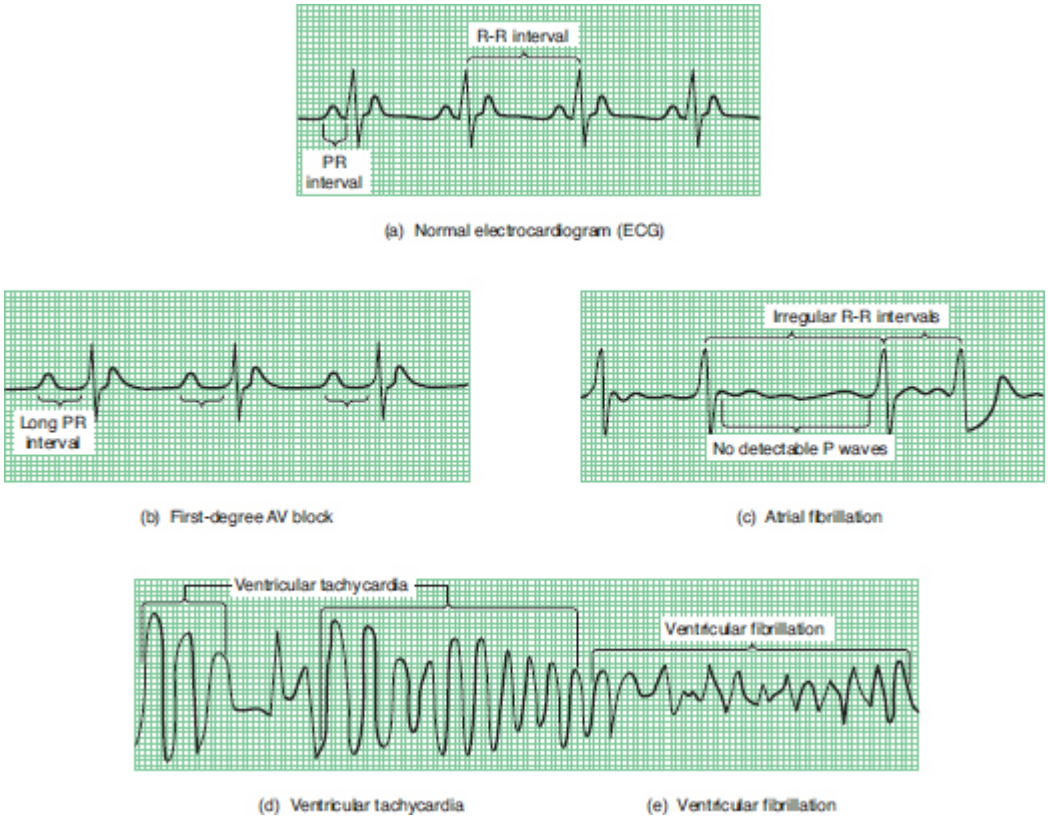
Immediate care

Any changes on the ECG that might require urgent medical attention should be identified and advice sought from a senior member of staff. If the patient has any cardiac symptoms at the time of recording, such as chest pain or palpitations, then this should be noted on the tracing and brought to the immediate attention of a doctor (SCST 2006). Examples

of normal and some important abnormal ECG tracings are shown in Figure 12.8.

Figure 12.8 Normal and abnormal ECG tracings.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



Documentation

Once the nurse has recorded the ECG, this should be reviewed by an appropriate member of the medical team, usually a doctor. It is good practice for the reviewer to document their interpretation of the ECG directly on to the ECG and to sign and date it. Once reviewed, the ECG should be filed in the patient's medical notes. Nurses should document in the nursing notes when the ECG was recorded, who was asked to review it and the actual time the ECG was reviewed and indicate whether it was normal or, if abnormal, what further action was taken.

Blood pressure

Definition

Blood pressure may be defined as the force of blood inside the blood vessels against the vessel walls (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Systolic pressure is the peak pressure of the left ventricle contracting and blood entering the aorta, causing it to stretch and therefore in part reflects the function of the left ventricle (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Diastolic pressure is when the aortic valve closes, blood flows from the aorta into the smaller vessels and the aorta recoils back. This is when the aortic pressure is at its lowest and tends to reflect the resistance of the blood vessels (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Related theory

Blood pressure is determined by cardiac output and vascular resistance and can be described as:

$$\underset{\text{(Blood pressure)}}{BP} = \underset{\text{(Cardiac output)}}{CO} \times \underset{\text{(Systemic vascular resistance)}}{SVR}$$

(Woodrow 2004b)

Cardiac output is the volume of blood which flows out of the heart over a specified length of time (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). It is governed by the stroke volume of the heart (the amount of blood pumped out of the ventricles per beat) and the heart rate. The relationship is:

$$\underset{\text{(Cardiac output)}}{CO} = \underset{\text{(Stroke volume)}}{SV} \times \underset{\text{(Heart rate)}}{HR}$$

(Patton and Thiobodeau 2009)

Therefore, if the two equations are combined, blood pressure could be seen as being:

$$BP = SV \times HR \times SVR$$

(Woodrow 2004b)

In theory, anything which alters one of the above components (stroke volume, heart rate and resistance) will therefore produce a change in blood pressure. However, this is not always the case as a drop in one may be compensated for by an increase in the other (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009).

Normal blood pressure

Normal blood pressure ranges between 110–140 mmHg systolic and 70–80 mmHg diastolic at rest (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). However, it varies depending on age (increasing with age), activity and sleep, emotion and positioning (Levick 2010). It also varies depending on the time of day, being at its lowest while we sleep (Levick 2010). Blood pressure therefore reflects individual variations but an abnormal blood pressure should not be assumed to be the individual's norm; rather, it will need to be assessed in relation to their previous results, general condition and other observations.

Hypotension

Hypotension is generally defined in adults as a systolic blood pressure below 100 mmHg (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). A low blood pressure may indicate orthostatic hypotension, that is, sudden drop in blood pressure when the patient rises from a supine or sitting position. This is usually compensated for by the baroreceptor reflex and the sympathetic nervous system but especially in older people, this may not work as efficiently (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Hypotension can also be a symptom of many other conditions including shock, haemorrhage and malnutrition (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Hypotension results in reduced tissue perfusion leading to hypoxia and an accumulation of waste products (Foxall 2009).

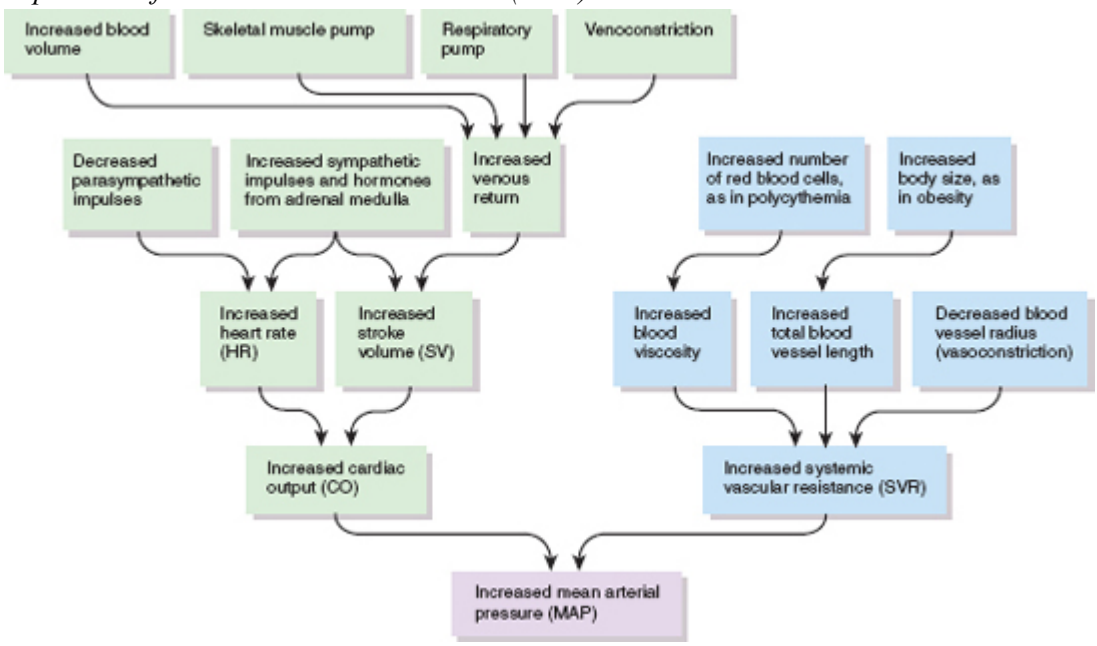
Hypertension

Hypertension is defined as sustained blood pressure greater than 140/90 mmHg (NICE 2006, Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). It can be either *primary* hypertension, with no single known cause, or *secondary* hypertension related to another factor such as kidney disease (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). Factors leading to hypertension include gender, genetic factors and age, alongside risk factors such as obesity, lack of exercise, smoking and high caffeine and alcohol intake (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). If hypertension is sustained, the heart will have an increased workload to maintain circulation; greater stress will be placed on the blood vessel walls and cardiac ischaemia can occur (Foxall 2009).

There are many illnesses and factors which can lead to changes in blood pressure (see Figure 12.9).

Figure 12.9 Factors that lead to an increase in blood pressure. Changes noted within green boxes increase cardiac output; changes noted within blue boxes increase systemic vascular resistance.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



Mean arterial pressure

The MAP indicates the average pressure of blood throughout the pulse cycle and thus is a reliable indication of perfusion (Woodrow 2004a). Mathematically, the MAP is derived from the diastolic pressure and the pulse pressure (which is the difference between systolic and diastolic blood pressure). The equation is:

$$\text{MAP} = \text{diastolic pressure} + (\text{pulse pressure}/3)$$

(Marieb and Hoehn 2010)

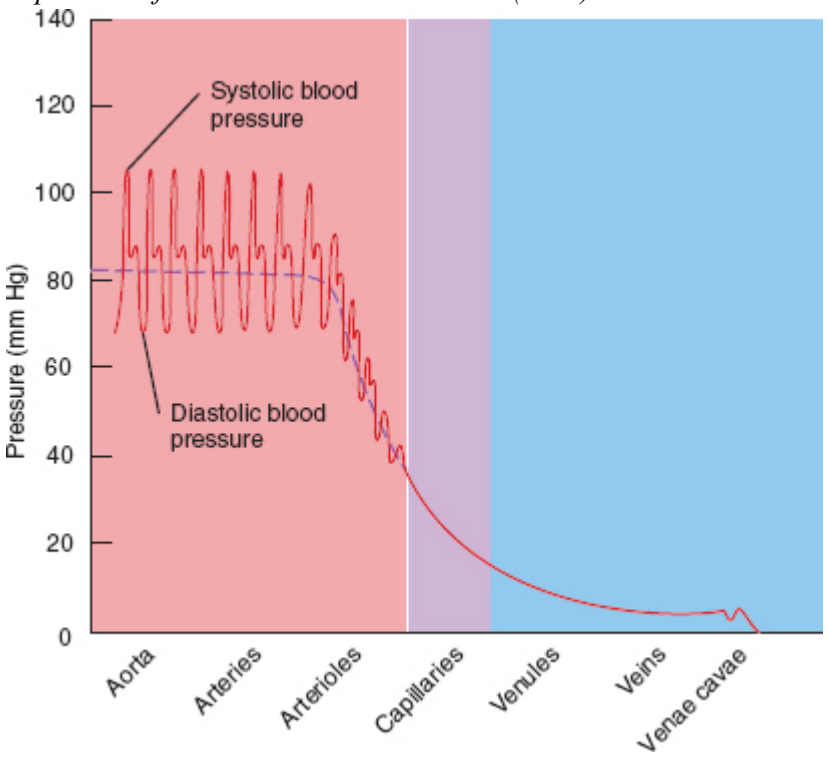
Therefore, a patient with a blood pressure of 123/90 mmHg has a MAP of 101 mmHg. An adequate MAP is usually deemed to be between 65 mmHg (Hinds and Watson 2009) and 70 mmHg (Woodrow 2004a).

Resistance

Resistance is effectively opposition to blood flow (Marieb and Hoehn 2010) and is created by friction between the walls of blood vessels and the blood itself (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). It is termed peripheral or systemic resistance because most of the resistance occurs in the vessels away from the heart (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Peripheral resistance varies depending on the degree of vasoconstriction or vasodilation, and the viscosity of blood and the length of the vessels, although the latter two factors generally remain relatively static (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Arterioles can dilate or contract; when contracted, peripheral resistance increases and blood flow to the tissues decreases, increasing the arterial blood pressure (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). This can occur systemically, when there is total peripheral resistance, or locally (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). Blood pressure in the vessels of the cardiovascular system can be seen in Figure 12.10.

Figure 12.10 Blood pressure in various parts of the cardiovascular system. The dashed line is the mean (average) blood pressure in the aorta, arteries and arterioles.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



Blood pressure control

There are many inter-related physiological mechanisms which control blood pressure.

Hormonal control

Many hormones help to regulate blood pressure, including adrenaline and noradrenaline which are released from the adrenal medullae in response to a drop in blood pressure; these hormones increase cardiac contractility and thus cardiac output (Foxall 2009). Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) is a hormone which is produced from the atria of the heart in response to hypertension. It works by inhibiting the renin-angiotensin system, raising the glomerular filtration rate by causing specific vasodilation, inhibiting sodium reabsorption and causing fluid transfer into the institial space (Levick 2010).

Neural control

When blood pressure increases, the baroreceptors, or stretch receptors, are stimulated and in turn stimulate the cardiac inhibitory centre, reducing sympathetic nerve impulses and increasing parasympathetic nerve impulses (Foxall 2009). This causes a vasodilation and a decrease in cardiac output, thereby reducing the blood pressure (Foxall 2009). Similarly, when blood pressure is low the opposite occurs. This response is termed a reflex arch, continually maintaining homoeostasis (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Baroreceptors are located in the aortic arch, carotid sinuses and in the walls of most of the large arteries in the thorax and neck (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Close to these are chemoreceptors which are stimulated when the pH of the blood drops or when the carbon dioxide rises, and when oxygen levels drop significantly, these cause an increase in cardiac output and vasoconstriction, leading to an increase in blood pressure (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Renal control

When there is a decrease in blood pressure, adrenaline, increased sympathetic activity and a reduction in the stimulation of stretch

receptors stimulate the juxtaglomerular cells within the kidneys to release renin (Levick 2010). This causes angiotensin I to be produced, leading to the production of angiotensin converting enzyme which converts angiotensin I to angiotensin II (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). Angiotensin II has a potent effect on blood pressure, causing cardiac output and vasoconstriction to increase, stimulating the production of aldosterone and antidiuretic hormone which leads to the reabsorption of water and sodium and stimulates the thirst receptors (Foxall 2009). This increases the circulatory volume of fluid and thereby blood pressure (Foxall 2009). Similarly, the reverse happens when fluid volume in the circulatory system is high.

Other mechanisms which influence blood pressure

Skeletal muscle contractions and respiration promote venous return of blood to the heart and therefore increase cardiac output. The skeletal muscles contract on movement, compressing the veins and pushing the blood towards the heart, and respiration causes a change in thoracic and abdominal pressure which acts to pump venous blood (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). A factor which affects stroke volume is Starling's Law of the heart which states that the force of the contraction of the heart is related to how much blood volume is in the heart (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). The more stretched the muscle fibres are prior to contraction, the stronger the contraction and the greater volume it will pump (Foxall 2009).

Evidence based approaches

Rationale

Indications

Blood pressure measurements should be taken as follows.

- On admission to a ward, in A&E departments when a decision to admit has been made (NICE 2007b).

- When a patient is transferred to a ward setting from intensive or high-dependency care (NICE 2007b).
- At least once every 12 hours while in hospital (NICE 2007b).
- For patients at risk of, or with known, infections (Chalmers *et al.* 2008).
- To assess response to interventions put in place to correct the patient's blood pressure (Curran 2009, NICE 2006).
- On patients preoperatively, to establish a baseline, and postoperatively to assess cardiovascular stability.
- Critically or acutely ill patients, or those who are at risk of rapid deterioration, will require close and potentially continuous monitoring.
- Patients who are receiving blood or blood products transfusions, to establish a baseline, during and after the transfusion (McClelland 2007).
- Any patient showing any signs of shock should have frequent monitoring.
- Any patient who is receiving medications which could alter their blood pressure, such as epidurals or anaesthetics.

Contraindications

There are contraindications or times when certain methods of blood pressure measurement should be used with caution.

- Oscillometric blood pressure devices may not be accurate in those with weak or thready pulse or patients with pre-eclampsia (MHRA 2005).
- The brachial artery should not be used to measure blood pressure in those with arteriovenous fistulas (Turner *et al.* 2008).
- Patients with atrial fibrillation should have auscultatory blood pressure measurements taken, rather than oscillometric, and may require multiple readings (Williams *et al.* 2004).
- Korotkoff sounds are not dependably audible in children under the age of 1 year, and many children under 5 years (Curran 2009). Therefore, ultrasound, Doppler or oscillometric devices are recommended (O'Brien *et al.* 2003).

- Patients who have had trauma to the upper arm, previous mastectomy or a forearm amputation should not have blood pressure measured on the affected side at the brachial artery (Turner *et al.* 2008).
- Oscillometric devices should be used with caution in those with atherosclerosis and/or high or low blood pressures, as they may not measure accurately (Bern *et al.* 2007).
- The manufacturer's guidance should be sought for contraindications specific to the device used.
- Blood pressure should not be measured on an arm that has had brachial artery surgery or is at risk of lymphoedema (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).

Methods of measuring blood pressure

There are two main methods of measuring blood pressure – direct and indirect.

Direct

The direct method enables continuous monitoring of the blood pressure and so is commonly used for critically ill patients, for example in intensive care units and theatres (Woodrow 2004a). To do this a cannula is inserted into an artery, most commonly the radial artery, as it is easy to access and monitor (Foxall 2009). The cannula has a transducer attached to it and is attached at the external end to a cardiac monitor where the blood pressure is shown as a waveform; it is also attached to a pressurized flush of solution to prevent blood backflow (Foxall 2009). This method has potential risks of severe haemorrhage, thrombosis and air embolism (Foxall 2009); therefore, it must only be used where patients can be continuously observed (Woodrow 2004a).

Indirect

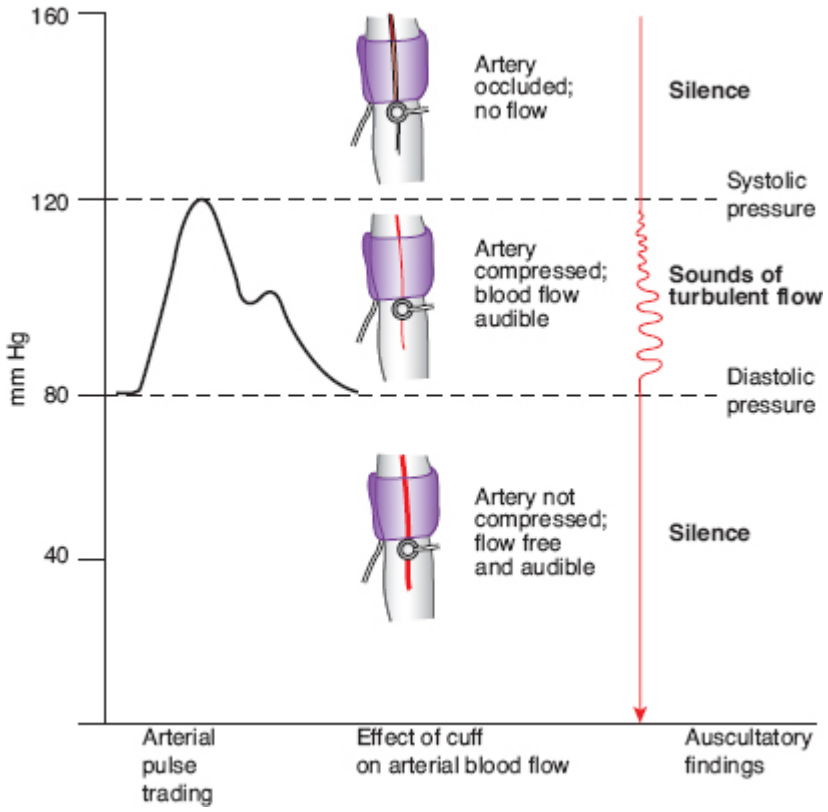
For indirect blood pressure measurement, either manual auscultatory sphygmomanometers or automated oscillometric devices are used (Bern *et al.* 2007). Oscillometric devices electronically measure blood pressure by measuring the oscillation of air pressure in the cuff, so when the artery begins to pulse it causes a corresponding oscillation of cuff

pressure (Levick 2010). Manual auscultatory blood pressure involves occluding the artery by use of a pressurized cuff and then gradually releasing the pressure; when the systolic blood pressure exceeds cuff pressure, blood re enters the arteries briefly, during systole, enabling a pulse to be palpated and producing vibrations in the artery (Levick 2010). As the cuff pressure descends, the sounds cease as the artery remains open throughout the pulse wave (Kacmerek *et al.* 2005).

Systolic blood pressure is usually defined as being at stage 1 of the Korotkoff sounds and diastolic at stage 5 (Curran 2009, Marieb and Hoehn 2010, NICE 2006, Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). See Box 12.1 for the Korotkoff sounds and the five phases. However, in some patients the Korotkoff sounds may continue until the cuff is completely deflated; in such cases stage 4 will represent the diastolic blood pressure (Williams *et al.* 2004). The auscultatory gap represents silence between the Korotkoff sounds and may sometimes be present; it is often associated with arterial stiffness, and it is vital not to mistake this for the actual blood pressure (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009). See Figure 12.11 for the Korotkoff sounds.

Figure 12.11 Korotkoff sounds.

Reproduced from Bickley and Szilagyi (2009).



Box 12.1 Korotkoff sounds

The sounds heard are called the Korotkoff sounds and have five phases.

1. The first phase is the clear tapping, repetitive sounds which increase in intensity and indicate the systolic pressure.

2. The second phase is murmuring or swishing sounds heard between systolic and diastolic pressures.

Some people may have an auscultatory gap – a disappearance of sounds between the second and third phases.

1. The third phase is sharper and crisper sounds.

2. The fourth phase is the distinct muffling of sounds which may sound soft and blowing.

3. The fifth phase is silence as the cuff pressure drops below the diastolic blood pressure. This disappearance is considered to be the diastolic blood pressure.

(NICE 2006, O'Brien *et al*. 2003)

Alternative sites/methods

Blood pressure measurement at the thigh

There may be some patients for whom brachial artery blood pressure measurement is inappropriate, therefore, alternative sites have to be considered. To measure the blood pressure in the thigh, the patient should be prone with the bladder centred over the posterior popliteal artery and the stethoscope placed over the artery below the cuff (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009). When the appropriate sized cuffs are used, they should give an equal pressure to that in the arm (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).

Measurement of orthostatic blood pressure

Orthostatic blood pressure measurement may be indicated if the patient has a history of dizziness or syncope on changing position (Lahrmann *et al*. 2006). The patient needs to rest on a bed in the supine position for 10 minutes prior to the initial blood pressure measurement being taken, then they should stand upright and have their blood pressure taken again within 3 minutes (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009). While in the standing position, the practitioner should support the patient's arm at the elbow, to maintain it at the correct level and ensure accuracy (O'Brien *et al.* 2003). Orthostatic hypotension is diagnosed if systolic blood pressure drops by at least 20 mmHg or the diastolic blood pressure reduces by at least 10 mmHg within the 3 minutes when the patient is upright (Consensus Committee of the American Autonomic Society and the American Academy of Neurology 1996).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Sphygmomanometers

Sphygmomanometers which are uncalibrated or not working accurately are a cause of potential blood pressure measurement error (Curran 2009). If using a manual sphygmomanometer, check that the dial is set

at zero or the mercury level is at zero prior to commencing (O'Brien *et al.* 2003). In addition, follow the manufacturer's recommendations and local policies regarding servicing and care of the device.

Manual mercury sphygmomanometers

The Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency suggests that manual mercury sphygmomanometers should be gradually phased out and replaced with a dial or electronic manometer due to potential mercury leaks which are hazardous to both the environment and humans (MHRA 2005). Where mercury sphygmomanometers are used, there should be appropriate health and safety guidelines in place to guide staff, they should have access to mercury spillage kits, be trained in their use and be aware of how to dispose of the sphygmomanometers safely (MHRA 2005).

Manual aneroid sphygmomanometers

Aneroid sphygmomanometers measure blood pressure through a lever and bellows system which is more complex than the mercury sphygmomanometer. However, if it is damaged it may become inaccurate (O'Brien *et al.* 2003). If aneroid sphygmomanometers have a dial gauge then there is a need to be aware of the risk of damage with significant errors occurring with the calibration and setting of zero (MHRA 2005). As a result, O'Brien *et al*. (2003) recommend that these devices are serviced every 6 months to ensure accuracy.

Automated oscillometric sphygmomanometers

These devices show blood pressure on an electronic display (MHRA 2005). Some studies have found that the results differ between automated and manual blood pressure devices (Bern *et al.* 2007). Indeed, there are concerns that there is a greater need for validation of the devices so it is recommended that only devices which have passed recognized validation criteria should be used (BHS 2006, MHRA 2005,

Stergiou *et al.* 2010, Williams *et al.* 2004). If levels of accuracy and reliability can be achieved then they do have certain advantages:

- many devices combine blood pressure with other observations (O'Brien *et al.* 2003)
- a print-out can be obtained, reducing the risk of bias (O'Brien *et al.* 2003)
- the preference of terminal digits (0 or 5) should be eradicated (O'Brien *et al.* 2003)
- data can be stored on the device (O'Brien *et al.* 2003)
- they enable the setting of alarms (MHRA 2005).

Practitioners must refer to the manufacturer's instructions and be aware of the limitations of the device. If there is any doubt about a measurement then it should be verified by an accurate manual blood pressure reading. Patients who have arrhythmias, hypotension or hypertension or are acutely unwell should have a manual blood pressure taken rather than an automated one.

The cuff

The cuff is made of an inelastic material which encloses an inflatable bladder and encircles the arm. Cuffs that are too small yield a reading that is falsely high and large cuffs give a falsely low reading (Williams *et al.* 2004). In the correct size cuff the bladder should encircle 80% of the patient's arm (Williams *et al.* 2004). Please see Table 12.2 for guidance to blood pressure cuff sizes.

Alternative adult cuffs (width × length, 12 × 35 cm) have been recommended for all adult patients, but can result in problems with over- and undercuffing. The British Hypertension Society recommends that cuff size be selected based on arm circumference (Williams *et al.* 2004).

The inflatable bladder, valve, pump and tubing

In a manual sphygmomanometer, the system used to inflate and deflate the bladder consists of a bulb attached to the bladder with rubber tubing. When the bulb is compressed, air is forced into the bladder; to deflate the bladder there is a release valve (O'Brien *et al.* 2003). The rubber

tubes have conventionally been placed so they are inferior to the cuff; however, it is now recommended that they are placed superiorly to prevent them impeding auscultation (O'Brien *et al.* 2003).

The stethoscope

It is recommended that the stethoscope be of high quality with well-fitting earpieces (O'Brien *et al.* 2003). It should be placed over the brachial artery at the antecubital fossa (O'Brien *et al.* 2003). The bell part of the stethoscope may capture the low pitch of the Korotkoff sounds better than the diaphragm but the diaphragm has a larger surface area and is easier to manipulate with one hand (O'Brien *et al.* 2003).

Specific patient preparations

It is important to maintain a standardized environment in which to take the patient's blood pressure (NICE 2006). The patient should be seated (unless thigh or orthostatic blood pressure measurements are required) in a relaxed, quiet, temperate setting (NICE 2006). Their arm should be outstretched and supported, as in unsupported arms diastolic blood pressure may be increased by 10% (O'Brien *et al.* 2003). The brachial artery at the antecubital fossa should be positioned equal to heart level, approximately equal to where the fourth intercostals space meets the sternum (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).

The patient's back should be supported (Turner *et al.* 2008) and their feet should be on the floor as systolic blood pressure can increase by an average of 6.6 mmHg in people with their legs crossed (van Groningen *et al.* 2008). Blood pressure should be taken after a short period of rest, as slight hypertension on standing and moving is initiated by the baroreceptor reflex (Turner *et al.* 2008). Correct patient positioning can be seen in Figure 12.12.

Figure 12.12 Correct blood pressure reading techniques.

Blood pressure should initially be measured in both arms as often people have a significant difference in blood pressure measurement between their arms (NICE 2006). Those patients who have a large and persistent disparity may have underlying conditions such as occlusive artery disease (Eguchi *et al.* 2007, O'Brien *et al.* 2003). Differences up to 10 mmHg can be due to random variation (Eguchi *et al.* 2007). The arm with the highest reading should be the one used for subsequent measurements (NICE 2006).

Procedure guideline 12.3 Blood pressure measurement (manual)

Essential equipment

- A range of cuffs
- Sphygmomanometer, working and calibrated

- Stethoscope
- Chair with arm rest
- Documentation
- Alcohol handrub
- Detergent wipes

Optional equipment

- Pillow if required to provide extra arm support
- If necessary a bed or examination bench, so the patient can have their blood pressure measured lying down

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain to the patient that you need to measure their blood pressure and discuss the procedure.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and dry.	To minimize the risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E)
3 Ask the patient if they have any of the following conditions: - lymphoedema or are at risk - an arteriovenous fistula - trauma to their arm - brachial artery surgery.	To ensure there are no contraindications to using a particular arm (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, E; Curran 2009, E; Turner *et al.* 2008, E).
4 Provide a standardized environment which should be relaxed and temperate. The patient needs to be seated comfortably, in a chair with back support, for at least 5 min prior to measuring blood pressure (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, O'Brien *et al.* 2003, Turner *et al.* 2008).	To enable comparisons to be drawn with prior blood pressure results (NICE 2006, C). Variations in temperature and emotions can alter blood pressure readings (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E).
5 Ensure the manometer is no more than 1 metre away, vertical and at eye level (O'Brien *et al.* 2003).	If using a mercury manometer, the meniscus should be close to eye level or the angle of vision will mean an inaccurate result will be taken (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E). With an aneroid scale, the eye level should be equal with the centre of the gauge (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E).
6 Ensure the cuff is the correct size for the arm. The cuff bladder length should be 80% of the arm circumference and its width 40% (BHS 2006).	Small cuffs give falsely high readings and large cuffs give falsely low readings (Williams *et al.* 2004, E).
7 Check the patient's arm is free from clothing, supported and placed at heart level (midsternal level) (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, NICE 2006, O'Brien *et al.* 2003). Their legs should be uncrossed	If the arm is lower than heart level it can lead to falsely high readings, and vice versa (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E). Diastolic pressure can increase by up to 10% if the arm is unsupported (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E). Blood

with feet flat on the floor (Turner *et al.* 2008). See Figure 12.12.	pressure results can be falsely high if the patient has their legs crossed (van Groningen *et al.* 2008, R).
Procedure	
8 Wrap the cuff of the sphygmomanometer around the arm, with the bladder centred over the artery and superior to the elbow (Marieb and Hoehn 2010, Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). The lower edge of the cuff should be 2–3 cm above the brachial artery pulsation (O'Brien *et al.* 2003).	To obtain an accurate reading (BHS 2006, C), and so that the artery can easily be palpated (NICE 2006, C).
9 Ask the patient to stop talking, eating and so on, during the procedure.	Activity can cause a falsely high blood pressure (BHS 2006, C).
10 Palpate the brachial artery while pumping air into the cuff using the bulb. Once the pulse can no longer be felt rapidly inflate the cuff for further 20–30 mmHg (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, NICE 2006).	Inflating the cuff to only 20/30 mmHg above the predicted systolic level prevents undue discomfort (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, E). The brachial pulse is advocated rather than the radial pulse (NICE 2006, C) and doing this locates the correct position for stethoscope placement (Valler□Jones and Wedgbury 2005, E).
11 Deflate the cuff and the point at which the pulse reappears approximates the systolic blood pressure (BHS 2006, NICE 2006, O'Brien *et al.* 2003).	This provides an indication of systolic pressure and can ensure accurate results in those who have an auscultatory gap (Curran 2009, E; BHS 2006, C).
12 Deflate the cuff completely and wait 15–30 seconds (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).	To allow venous congestion to resolve (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E).
13 The stethoscope should be firmly, but without too much pressure, placed on bare skin over the brachial artery where the pulse is palpable (O'Brien *et al.* 2003). The bell of the stethoscope may hear the tone of the Korotkoff sounds better (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009). However, the diaphragm has a larger surface area and is easier to hold in place (O'Brien *et al.* 2003).	If the stethoscope is in contact with material it may distort the Korotkoff sounds (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E). Applying pressure with the stethoscope may partially occlude the artery (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E).
14 Inflate the cuff again to 20–30 mmHg above the predicted systolic blood pressure (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, NICE 2006).	To ensure an accurate measurement (NICE 2006, C).
15 Release the air in the cuff slowly (at an approximate rate of 2–3 mmHg per pulsation) until the first tapping sounds are heard (first Korotkoff sound). This is the systolic blood pressure (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009).	The cuff should not be deflated too quickly as this may result in inaccurate readings being taken (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E).
16 Continue to slowly release the air, listening to the Korotkoff sounds; the point at which the sounds disappear is the best representation of the diastolic blood pressure (fifth Korofkoff sound). Continue to deflate the cuff slowly until you are sure the sounds have disappeared (after another 10–20 mmHg) (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).	To ensure an accurate diastolic blood pressure and that you note any irregularities such as if the sounds never disappear, or disappear significantly below the fourth Korotkoff sound (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, E).

17 Once no further sounds can be heard, the cuff should be rapidly deflated (O'Brien *et al.* 2003).	To prevent venous congestion to the arm (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E).
18 If you need to recheck the blood pressure wait 1–2 min before proceeding (BHS 2006).	Venous congestion may make the Korotkoff sounds less audible (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, E).
Postprocedure	
19 Inform patient that the procedure is now finished.	To reassure the patient. E
20 Wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and dry. Clean bell of stethoscope and cuff with detergent wipe (no alcohol).	To minimize the risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
21 Document fully as soon as the measurement has been taken and compare with previous results (O'Brien *et al.* 2003).	Any interruption in the process may result in the measurement being incorrectly remembered (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E).

Problem-solving table 12.3 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 12.3)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
The result is unexpectedly low or high	This may be due to poor technique or faulty equipment. It may also be due to the patient being incorrectly positioned or post exercise	Check the sphygmomanometer prior to use to see when it was last serviced. Check all the components for signs of damage. Ensure the patient is correctly positioned, and has rested prior to the procedure	Wait 1–2 min prior to repeating the blood pressure measurement (BHS 2006). If the measurement is still unexpected consider changing devices or asking a colleague to repeat the procedure. If it remains abnormal notify the medical team of the result
On auscultation the Korotkoff sounds disappear after the initial sound, then reappear and then disappear again (Curran 2009)	This is called the auscultatory gap – it may mislead the practitioner into obtaining an incorrect result (Curran 2009)	Palpate the pulse as the cuff is being deflated to gain an approximation of the systolic blood pressure (O'Brien *et al.* 2003)	Document that the patient has an auscultatory gap and ensure other practitioners are aware to prevent future errors (O'Brien *et al.* 2003). Recheck using the correct procedure
On auscultation the Korotkoff sounds are inaudible or very weak	May be due to poor placement of the stethoscope, a noisy environment, venous congestion;or the patient may be in shock (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, Verrij *et al.* 2009)	Find a quiet environment in which to measure the patient's blood pressure, listen with the bell of the stethoscope rather than the diaphragm, wait for venous congestion to resolve (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009)	If still inaudible ask the patient to elevate their arm overhead for 30 seconds, then bring it back to the correct height to inflate the cuff and measure their blood pressure; this increases the loudness of the sounds (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, Verrij *et al.* 2009)

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Notify medical staff of an abnormal blood pressure result. As the treatment will depend on what is causing the abnormality, and its severity, it is important that practitioners try to ascertain the possible cause for the physiological change in blood pressure (Kisiel and Perkins 2006). Hypovolaemia will require fluid replacement and, if persistent, then inotropes and other cardiovascular drugs may be necessary (Hinds and Watson 2009). If the hypertension is transient, for example related to anxiety or pain, then it is important to address that issue and monitor the blood pressure until it resolves. However, if the patient is diagnosed

as having hypertension they will require drug therapy to control their condition (NICE 2006). To determine the cause of the altered blood pressure more information will be required, including:

- gaining a comprehensive medical history from the patient (Steele and Hardin 2007)
- gaining a full set of observations
- an ECG (Steele and Hardin 2007)
- urinalysis including protein, leucocytes, blood and the osmolality of the urine (Steele and Hardin 2007)
- blood tests for full blood count, urea, creatinine and electrolytes (Steele and Hardin 2007) and fasting blood tests for glucose and lipids (Camm and Bunce 2009)
- a chest X□ray or further radiological investigations may be required (Camm and Bunce 2009)
- a septic screen including blood cultures, sputum specimen, swabs of any wounds or potential sites of infection (Hinds and Watson 2009)
- their current fluid balance (Kisiel and Perkins 2006).

Ongoing care

If the patient is hypertensive and in primary care, they will require at least monthly blood pressure measurement and more frequently if it is accelerated hypertension or there are any further concerns (NICE 2006). Additionally, it will be necessary to give lifestyle advice on, for example, eating healthily, smoking cessation (NICE 2006). If the hypotension is orthostatic then advise the patient to change position slowly so the baroreceptors and sympathetic nervous system have time to adapt the blood pressure to each stage (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Documentation

As well as the accurate recording of the blood pressure measurement it is also important to record:

- the position the patient was in
- the arm used, and if both arms were used initially, the pressure of each

- arm circumference and the cuff size used
- if there is an auscultatory gap or any difficulties in obtaining a reading, such as the absence of stage 5
- the state of the patient, for example were they in pain, frightened, and so on
- any medication they are on and when they last took it.

(O'Brien *et al.* 2003)

When documenting the medication the patient is on, it is important to include not only cardiovascular medication but also other medication which might affect their blood pressure, including tricyclic antidepressants, neuroleptic agents (O'Brien *et al.* 2003), contraceptives, decongestants, NSAIDs and cocaine (Steele and Hardin 2007).

Respiration and pulse oximetry

Definition

The function of the respiratory system is to ensure that the cells and tissues of the human body have oxygen supplied to them and carbon dioxide removed, in order that they can continue to carry out their functions (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). Respiration consists of four processes: ventilation; external respiration or gaseous exchange; transport; and internal respiration (Marieb and Hoehn 2010) (see Chapter 10).

Anatomy and physiology

For effective respiration to occur, effective functioning and interaction between the various body systems are required, including the circulatory system, nervous system and musculoskeletal system (Patton and Thiobodeau 2010). The organs and structures of the respiratory system can be split into two groups: the conducting zone and the respiratory zone (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The conducting zone consists of the respiratory passages through which air passes to get to the area of

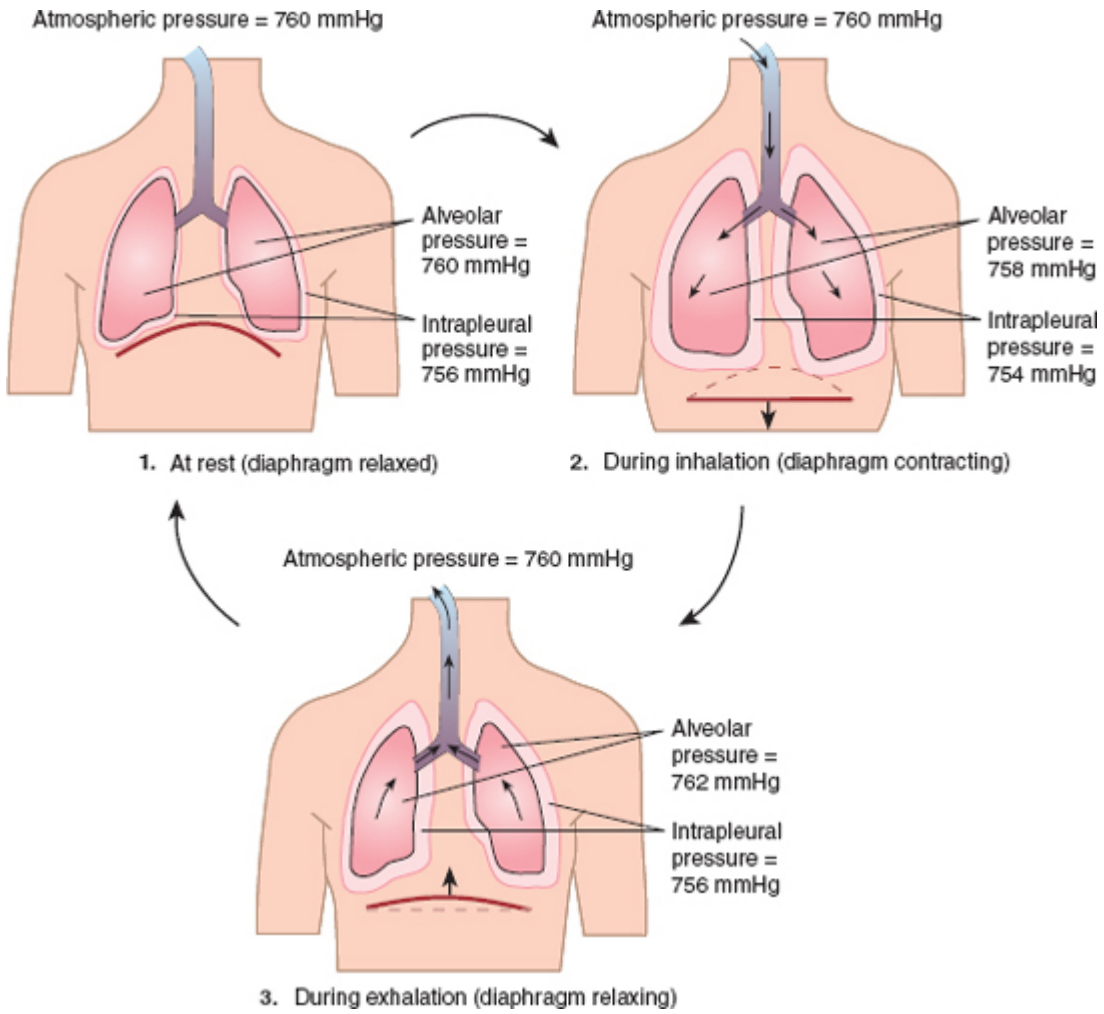
gaseous exchange, such as the nasal cavity and the bronchi; this area provides conduits through which air can pass and also be warmed, humidified and cleansed (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The respiratory zone consists of the bronchioles, alveolar ducts, alveoli and the microscopic anatomy which provide the site for gaseous exchange (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The respiratory muscles (the diaphragm and intercostal muscles) promote ventilation by causing volume and pressure changes within the respiratory system (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

The mechanism of breathing

The key mechanism of pulmonary ventilation is that changes of volume within the respiratory system lead to changes in pressure and these in turn lead to a flow of gases (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Indeed, the vital principle of respiration is that the flow of air will always go down a pressure gradient; this means that air will flow from an area of higher pressure to an area of lower pressure (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). The two main pressures are intrapulmonary, or intra□alveolar, pressure, which varies with breathing but which always eventually is equal to atmospheric pressure (the pressure of gases or air outside the body) (Marieb and Hoehn 2010), and intrapleural pressure, which also varies with breathing but which is generally about 4 mmHg less than the intrapulmonary pressure (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Boyle's Law describes how at a constant temperature, the pressure of a gas has an inverse relationship to its volume (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). Therefore, in a larger container the pressure of gas is less than in a smaller one. The relationship of these pressures can be seen in Figure 12.13.

Figure 12.13 Pressure changes in pulmonary ventilation.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



Inspiration

Inspiration occurs because the phrenic nerve stimulates the diaphragm to flatten and descend; this movement results in the greatest volume change in the lungs (Davies and Moores 2003). The intercostal muscles lift the rib cage and sternum, causing the ribs to broaden outwards and increasing the diameter of the thoracic cavity, both from side to side and front to back (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). This change in volume of the thoracic cavity causes the volume of the lungs to increase; therefore, according to Boyle's Law the pressure of gas within the lungs is less. This drop in pressure causes air to move in from outside the body, from an area of higher pressure to one of lower pressure (Marieb and Hoehn 2010), thereby causing inspiration.

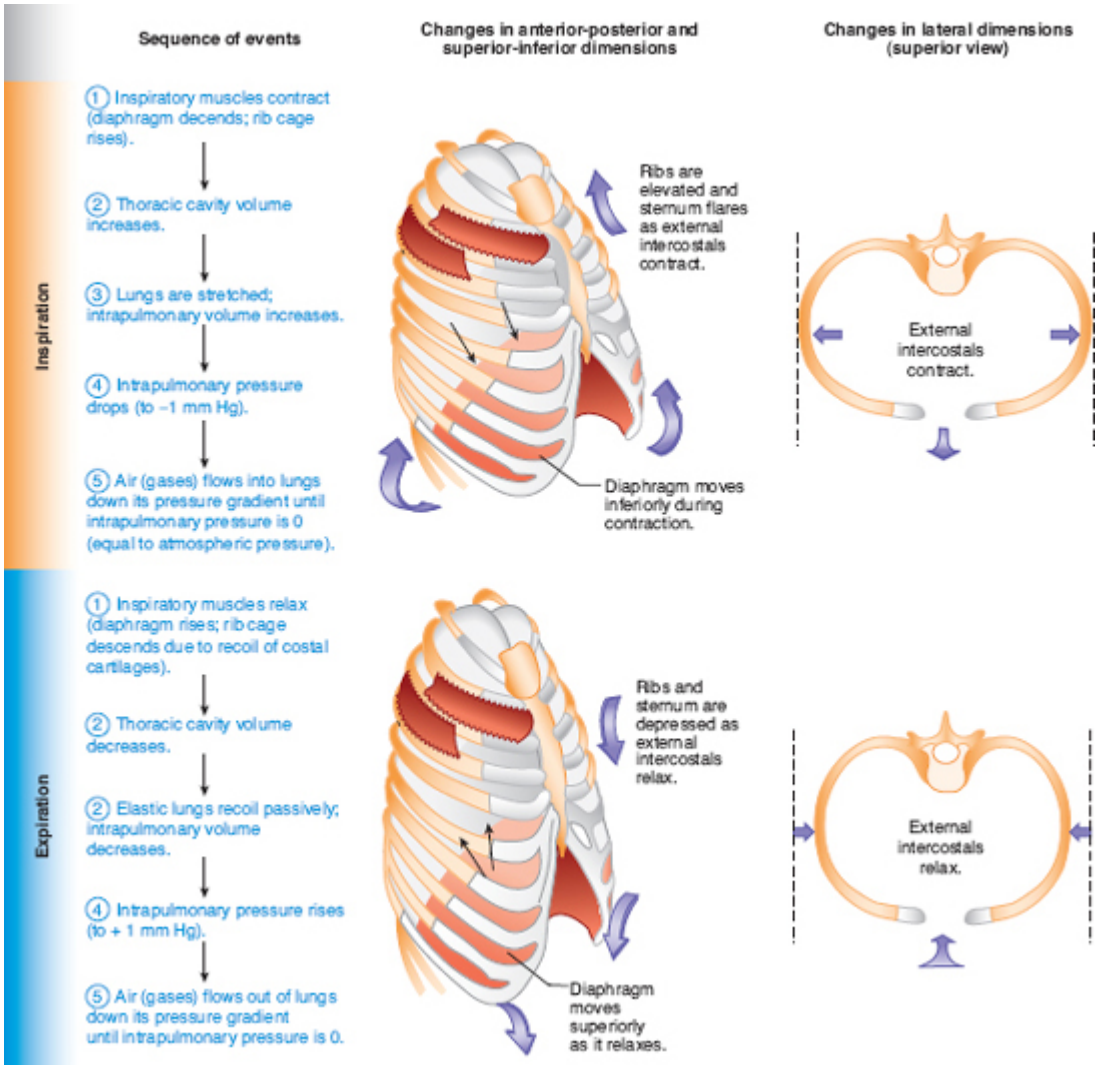
Expiration

The inspiratory muscles relax, causing the thoracic cavity to return to its normal size, the lungs recoil and this decrease in size compresses the alveoli, causing an increase in intrapulmonary pressures and forcing gases to flow out of the lungs into the atmosphere (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Therefore, in normal, gentle breathing the process of expiration is largely passive. The mechanism of inspiration and expiration in relation to pulmonary volume can be seen in Figure 12.14.

Figure 12.14 Changes in thoracic volume and sequence of events during inspiration and expiration. The sequence of events in the left column includes volume changes during inspiration (top) and expiration (bottom). The lateral views in the middle column show changes in the superior□inferior dimension (as the diaphragm alternately contracts and relaxes) and in the interior□posterior dimension (as the external intercostal muscles alternately contract and relax). The superior views of transverse thoracic sections in the right column show lateral dimension changes resulting from alternate contraction and relaxation of the external intercostal muscles.

Reproduced from Fig. 21.15d, p. 622 from Human Anatomy, 3rd edn, by E.N. Marieb and J. Mallatt.

© 2001 by Benjamin Cummings. Reprinted by permission of Pearson Education, Inc.



The accessory muscles

The accessory muscles of the neck (the scalenes and sternocleidomastoid muscles) and the chest (pectoralis minor) can increase the volume of the thoracic cavity and therefore increase the volume of breathing; this can occur during exercise or if the individual is in respiratory distress (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The muscles of the abdomen and those that cause flexion of the spine are also accessory muscles but aid with expiration (Davies and Moores 2003). When these muscles contract they press the abdominal organs upwards, forcing the diaphragm up, reducing the thoracic volume and causing expiration (Davies and Moores 2003).

Control of respiration

The respiratory centres

Within the medulla are two clusters of neurones which co-ordinate the respiratory system; these are the *dorsal respiratory group* and the *ventral respiratory group* (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The ventral respiratory group contains neurones that fire during inspiration, stimulating the diaphragm and the intercostal muscles to contract, via the phrenic and intercostal nerves, and other neurones which fire during expiration causing the stimulation to stop so the muscles relax. These neurones deliver our normal respiratory rate (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

The dorsal respiratory group co-ordinates input from the chemoreceptors and stretch receptors and relays this to the ventral respiratory group to alter respiratory rate as required (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Chemoreceptors monitor the arterial blood for changes in the partial pressure of carbon dioxide (PCO_2) and pH, but also, to a lesser extent, the partial pressure of oxygen (PO_2) (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). For more information on the chemical factors which affect respiration please, see Chapter 10.

The pontine respiratory centres also relay impulses to the ventral respiratory group to modify breathing rhythms so that there is a smooth transition from inspiration to expiration and so that breathing can be modified to allow for speech, exercise and sleeping patterns (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). In the higher cortical centres respiration can be altered through factors such as strong emotions, pain and alteration of temperature (Marieb and Hoehn 2010, Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). The cerebral motor cortex yields a degree of voluntary control over breathing; however, this can be over-ridden by the other mechanisms (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009).

Carbon dioxide

Although oxygen is essential for every cell in the body, the body's need to rid itself of carbon dioxide is the most vital stimulus to respiration in a healthy person (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The arterial PCO_2 is very

closely monitored and balanced and when it increases slightly, it causes the chemoreceptors to be stimulated (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). Carbon dioxide passes easily from the blood into the cerebrospinal fluid where it forms carbonic acid, releasing hydrogen ions (H^+) (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). This increase of H^+ causes the pH to drop, stimulating the central chemoreceptors, found in the brainstem, to increase the rate and depth of breathing and increasing the amount of carbon dioxide exhaled (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Similarly, metabolic causes for low pH levels, such as a build-up of lactic acid, will also cause an alteration of respiration (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Oxygen

The peripheral chemoreceptors, found in the aortic arch and carotid arteries, are responsible for the sensing the PO_2 in the body (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Normally, decreasing levels of oxygen only affect respiratory rate by causing the peripheral chemoreceptors to have increased sensitivity to carbon dioxide (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Arterial PO_2 must drop from the normal level of 100 mmHg to at least 60 mmHg before it stimulates respiratory function; at this point the central receptors become suppressed as a result but the peripheral receptors stimulate the respiratory centres and ventilation is increased (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). This mechanism usually only works as an emergency measure, because the level of oxygen has to drop significantly before stimulation of the chemoreceptors occurs (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009).

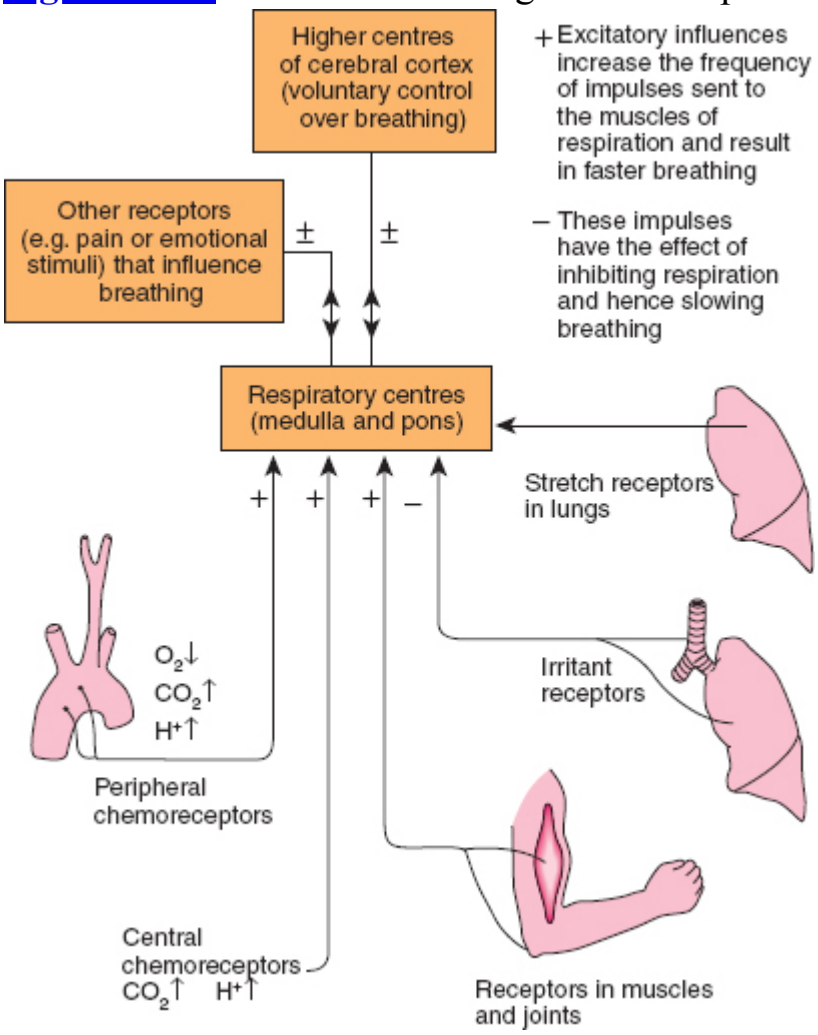
Other ways in which respiration is controlled

There are a number of irritant receptors in the lungs which can cause constriction of the air passages, and when stimulated in the bronchi or trachea, a cough is initiated (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). These have a protective mechanism to prevent obstruction or aspiration of food or liquids (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). There are also stretch receptors present in the conducting passages and the visceral pleura which are

stimulated when the lungs inflate; these then signal the respiratory centres to end inspiration (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Some of the mechanisms through which breathing is controlled are summarized in Figure 12.15.

Figure 12.15 Factors influencing rate and depth of breathing.



Related theory

Respiratory volumes

The quantity of air that is breathed in and out of the lungs varies depending on the condition of inspiration and expiration (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Therefore, information about the different volumes of the lungs and combinations or respiratory capacities of these various

volumes can give an indication about the respiratory condition of the individual (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). A summary of these volumes can be seen in Figure 12.16. See Table 12.3 for a summary of respiratory volumes and capacities for males and females.

Figure 12.16 Spirogram of lung volumes and capacities. The average values for a healthy average male and female are indicated, with the values for a female in parenthesis. Note that the spirogram is read from right (start of record) to left (end of record).

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).

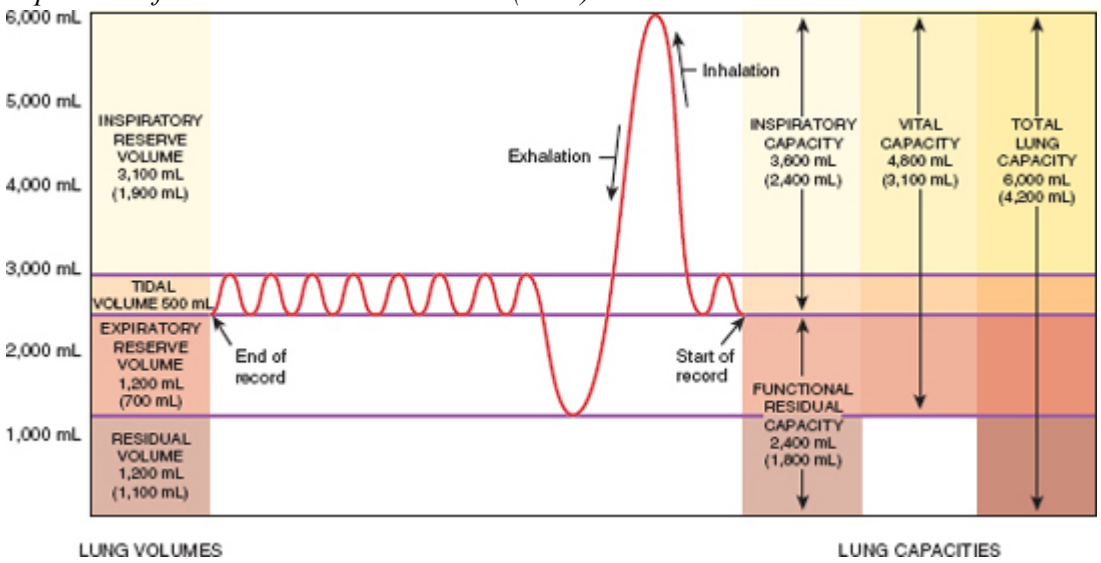


Table 12.3 Summary of respiratory volumes and capacities for males and females

	Measurement	Adult male average value (mL)	Adult female average value (mL)	Description
Respiratory volumes	Tidal volume (TV)	500	500	Amount of air inhaled with each breath under resting conditions
	Inspiratory reserve volume (IRV)	3100	1900	Amount of air that can be forcefully inhaled after a normal tidal volume inhalation
	Expiratory reserve volume (ERV)	1200	700	Amount of air that can be forcefully exhaled after a normal tidal volume exhalation
	Residual volume (RV)	1100	1100	Amount of air remaining in the lungs after a forced exhalation
Respiratory capacities	Total lung capacity (TLC)	6000	4200	Maximum amount of air contained in lungs after a maximum inspiratory effort: TLC = TV + IRV + REV + RV
	Vital capacity (VC)	4800	3100	Maximum amount of air that can be expired after a maximum inspiratory effort: VC = TV + IRV + ERV
	Inspiratory capacity (IC)	3600	2400	Maximum amount of air that can be inspired after a normal expiration: IC = TV + IRV
	Functional residual capacity (FRC)	2400	1800	Volume of air remaining in the lungs after a normal tidal volume expiration: FRC = ERV + RV

Reproduced from Fig. 22.16, p. 852 from *Human Anatomy & Physiology*, 7th edn, by E.N. Marieb and K. Hoehn. © 2007 by Pearson Education, Inc. Reprinted by permission.

Gaseous exchange

Gaseous exchange occurs during *external respiration* where oxygen and carbon dioxide diffuse into or out of the blood at the lungs (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). This occurs as there is a flow of gases from areas of higher pressure to areas of lower pressure, so oxygen diffuses from the alveoli into the blood, as the pressure of oxygen in the alveoli is higher than in the blood, and the reverse happens with carbon dioxide (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). *Internal respiration* takes place where the same gases move into or out of the tissues of the body by diffusion, so oxygen

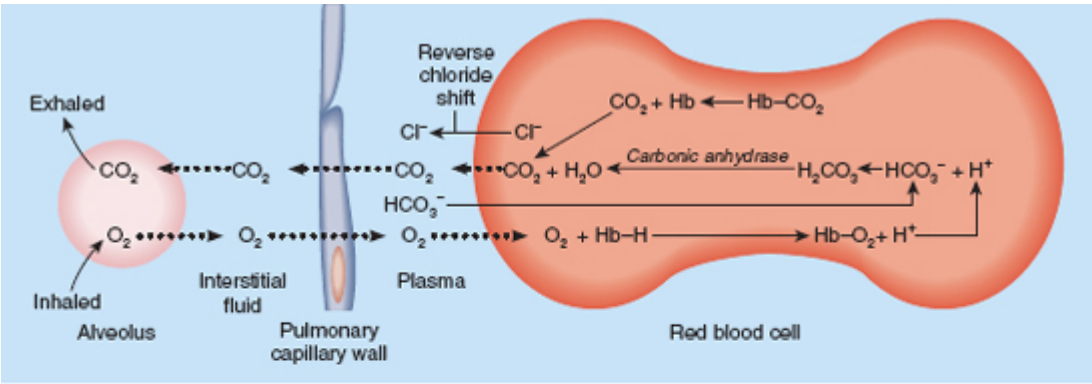
moves into the tissues and carbon dioxide moves out of them (Marieb and Hoehn 2010) (see Chapter 10 for further information).

Transport through the blood

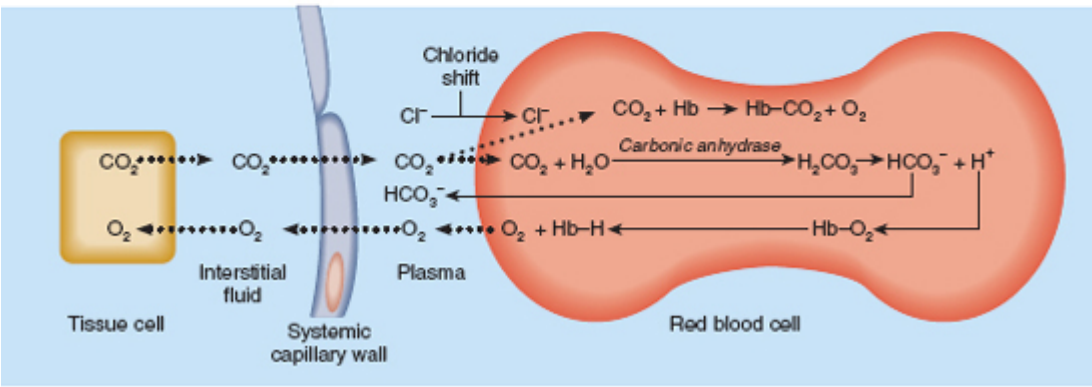
1.5% of the oxygen is transported through our blood by being dissolved in the plasma; the other 98.5% is bound to haemoglobin, forming oxyhaemoglobin, and carried in the red blood cells (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Carbon dioxide is transported in the blood chiefly as a bicarbonate ion within the plasma (70% is transported via this method), 20% is bound to haemoglobin forming carbaminohaemoglobin, and the other 7–10% is dissolved in the plasma (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). This process is summarized in Figure 12.17; see also Chapter 10.

Figure 12.17 Summary of chemical reactions that occur during gas exchange.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



(a) Exchange of O_2 and CO_2 in pulmonary capillaries (external respiration)



(b) Exchange of O_2 and CO_2 in systemic capillaries (internal respiration)

Hypercapnia and hypoxia

Hypercapnia is an elevated level of carbon dioxide level in the blood. Signs include tachypnoea (eventually becoming bradypnoea as it worsens), dyspnoea, tachycardia, hypertension, headaches, vasodilation, drowsiness, sweating and a red colouration (Shelledy 2009). Patients with hypercapnia will require urgent medical attention and close monitoring as hypercapnia will cause a respiratory acidosis (Beachy 2009). Patients with chronic hypercapnia have, at least partially, adapted to the chronically high levels of carbon dioxide, such as those who have COPD; in these patients oxygen therapy needs to be administered with caution (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Hypoxia is defined as a low level of oxygen delivery to the tissues and the signs of it include tachypnoea, dyspnoea, tachycardia, restlessness and confusion, headache, mild hypertension and pallor (Shelledy 2009). However, in its severe stages the symptoms will worsen leading to slow, irregular breathing, cyanosis, hypotension, altered level of consciousness, blurred vision and eventual respiratory arrest (Shelledy 2009). Hypoxia can have various causes.

- *Anaemic hypoxia*: low red blood cell counts or red blood cells which do not contain enough haemoglobin cannot transport adequate amounts of oxygen.
- *Ischaemic hypoxia*: this is where blood flow to a specific area is inadequate to supply enough oxygen, which can occur as a result of embolism or thrombosis.
- *Histotoxic hypoxia*: there is adequate oxygenation but the cells cannot use the oxygen; this can occur as a result of poisons such as cyanide.
- *Hypoxaemic hypoxia*: there is reduced arterial oxygen as a result of abnormal ventilation or perfusion to the lungs, or breathing air with inadequate amounts of oxygen. Carbon monoxide poisoning can also cause this.

(Marieb and Hoehn 2010)

Evidence based approaches

Rationale

A thorough respiratory assessment is vital to:

- identify patients who are at risk of deterioration
- commence treatment that may stabilize and improve the patient's condition and outcomes
- help prevent unnecessary admission to critical care or intensive care units.

(Higginson and Jones 2009)

An alteration in the respiratory observations can indicate a severe derangement in a range of body systems, not simply the respiratory system, so it is a vital indicator of morbidity (Cretikos *et al.* 2008). Indeed, respiratory observations are often the first sign to alter in a deteriorating patient so timely, accurate observations, leading to escalation of treatment, could prevent critical events occurring (Goldhill *et al.* 1999, Hunter and Rawlings□Anderson 2008).

Indications

- All patients who are in hospital should have observations taken at the time of their admission or their initial assessment (NICE 2007b).
- When a patient is transferred to a ward setting for intensive or high□dependency care (NICE 2007b).
- At least once every 12 hours while in hospital (NICE 2007b).
- If there is any change or deterioration in the patient's condition (NICE 2007b).
- If the patient is acutely ill or at risk of respiratory deterioration then they will require continuous pulse oximetry and frequent respiratory assessment (Booker 2009, Levine 2007).
- If the patient is receiving oxygen therapy then they will need to be closely monitored to ensure its efficacy (Higginson and Jones 2009).
- Following medical situations including surgery, trauma or infections (Booker 2009, Hunter and Rawlings□Anderson 2008).

- To monitor the patient who is receiving blood or blood product transfusions or intravenous fluids (Hunter and Rawlings Anderson 2008).
- Any patient who has, or is at risk of, chronic hypercapnia should have close monitoring of their respiratory function (O'Driscoll *et al.* 2008).
- To monitor the patient's response to medications, including opiates and bronchodilators (Hunter and Rawling Anderson 2008).

Methods of assessing respiration

Airway assessment

It is important to assess whether there is any obstruction to the patient's airway from vomit, foreign bodies or the patient's tongue (Higginson and Jones 2009). In the conscious patient, a way to check for a patent airway is to ask them a question; if they are able to answer normally then their airway is unobscured (Higginson and Jones 2009) (see Chapter 10 for further information).

Breathing assessment

Eupnoea, normal rate and rhythm of breathing, describes unconscious, gentle respiration (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009). It is important to observe the patient and the way they are breathing, including:

- the colour of the patient's skin and mucous membranes, which can show how well perfused and oxygenated they are; look for any cyanosis
- any use of accessory muscles or other respiratory signs
- the rhythm, rate and depth of respiration
- shape and expansion of the chest.

(Higginson and Jones 2009)

Skin colour

Cyanosis is a blue tone to the skin and mucous membranes (Parkman 2007). It can be either central, affecting the lips and oral mucosa, or

peripheral, best observed by looking at the patient's nail bed and skin (Simpson 2006). Peripheral cyanosis may be an indication of peripheral perfusion as it can be caused by vasoconstriction, whereas central cyanosis is more indicative of cardiorespiratory insufficiency. However, patients who are anaemic may not be cyanotic as there is insufficient haemoglobin (Moore 2007). Cyanosis is observable when oxygen saturations drop to 85–90% (Moore 2004b). A pale skin tone may indicate that the patient is anaemic or in shock (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).

Use of accessory muscles

When the patient is in respiratory distress they may use their abdominal, sternomastoid and scalene muscles to increase respiration (Higginson and Jones 2009). To observe these, look at the patient's neck during inspiration to see if there is any contraction of the sternomastoid or other accessory muscles (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009). In addition, some patients may breathe through pursed lips or have nasal flaring (Higginson and Jones 2009).

Rhythm, rate and depth of respiration

The normal respiratory rate is 12–18 breaths per minute with expiration lasting approximately twice as long as inspiration (Higginson and Jones 2009). The rate should be counted for 1 minute to fully assess both the rate and the rhythm (Moore 2004b). Patients with a respiratory rate greater than 24 breaths/min should have frequent observations and be closely monitored; if they also have other physiological alterations, they should receive prompt medical attention, as should all patients with a respiratory rate greater than 27 breaths/min (Cretikos *et al.* 2008). Respiratory rates which are 8 or less also require urgent medical care (Docherty 2002). Abnormalities in the rate and rhythm of breathing can take various forms, some of which are listed below.

- *Bradypneoa*: breathing which is slower than the normal range; it may indicate respiratory depression or increased intracranial pressure or a diabetic coma (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, Moore 2004b).

- *Tachypnoea*: breathing which is faster than the normal range and shallow; can indicate a number of conditions including anxiety, pain, restrictive lung disease, cardiac or circulatory problems, or pyrexia (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, Moore 2004b, Simpson 2006).
- *Dyspnoea*: breathing where the individual is conscious of the effort to breathe and finds it more difficult; when dyspnoea occurs when the patient lies flat, it is termed orthopnoea (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009).
- *Apnoea*: is a temporary cessation of breathing (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009).
- *Biot's breathing*: alternating periods of deep gasping with periods of apnoea, seen in patients with increased intracranial pressure and spinal meningitis (Patton and Thiobodeau 2009, Simpson 2006).
- *Cheyne–Stokes breathing*: alternating periods of deep breathing with periods of apnoea; can have many causes including heart failure or brain damage (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).
- *Hyperventilation*: this is rapid but deep breathing and can be caused by anxiety, exercise or metabolic acidosis (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).
- *Hypoventilation*: is shallow and irregular breathing and can be caused by an overdose of certain anaesthetic agents or opiate drugs (Simpson 2006).

Shape and expansion of the chest

This part of the assessment involves looking at the anteroposterior (AP) diameter which may give an indication of underlying respiratory conditions or problems (Higginson and Jones 2009). The AP diameter may change with ageing, and it might also increase in chronic pulmonary disease (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009). As well as observing the shape of the chest wall, it is also important to view the way the chest expands with each breath; when normal, it should be equal and bilateral (Higginson and Jones 2009). Any paradoxical movements should be noted as they can indicate a particular problem with one side of the chest (Higginson and Jones 2009).

Pulse oximetry

This is a continuous and non-invasive monitor which measures the oxygen saturation of the patient (Higginson and Jones 2009). These devices work by measuring the colour of the blood as oxyhaemoglobin is a brighter red than haemoglobin; from this, the device can work out what percentage of the haemoglobin is oxygenated (Davies and Moores 2003). A normal oxygen saturation will range between 95% and 100% (Parkman 2007) but patients with chronic respiratory conditions may have lower oxygen saturations which have become 'normal' for them (Higginson and Jones 2009). Therefore, the patient's doctor should specify what saturation is acceptable for patients with chronic respiratory conditions (Levine 2007).

The British Thoracic Society states that oxygen saturation should be kept at 94–98% for acutely ill adults and 88–92% for those at risk or known to have hypercapnia (O'Driscoll *et al.* 2008). In patients who are not hypoxic, a sudden drop of greater than 3% of their oxygen saturation should prompt the nurse to check that the device is working correctly and, if so, to undertake further assessment into the patient's condition (O'Driscoll *et al.* 2008). Arterial blood gases also produce a reading of oxygen saturation, but the use of pulse oximetry may reduce the need for arterial samples to be taken (Simpson 2006).

General condition or distress of the patient

Respiratory assessment also involves assessing the entire patient for other signs or symptoms of respiratory insufficiency; these include assessing the level of consciousness of the patient, how alert and orientated they are and if they appear distressed (Docherty 2002). If the patient can only speak in very short sentences or only a few words without needing to stop to breathe then they are in respiratory distress (Higginson and Jones 2009).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Pulse oximeter

In order to achieve a successful reading, the sensor of the pulse oximeter should be placed in the best location to achieve the reading. Therefore the sensor may be attached to the patient's fingers, ears, toes or nose (Higginson and Jones 2009, Moore 2004a). The sensor contains one red light emitting diode and one infra red light emitting diode, placed opposite a photodetector which measures the light of both frequencies absorbed by oxyhaemoglobin and deoxyhaemoglobin (Moore 2004a). Pulse oximetry does not give an indication of haemoglobin so if the patient is profoundly anaemic then their oxygen saturation may be normal but they may still be hypoxic (Levine 2007).

Pulse oximetry should not be used if there is a risk of light interference from surgical lamps, infra red warming lamps or even direct sunlight (Adam and Osborne 2005). It should not be used in patients with carbon monoxide poisoning as the device cannot differentiate between carbon monoxide and oxygen. Smoke inhalation causes similar problems so pulse oximetry should be cautiously (Levine 2007).

Specific patient preparations

Positioning of the patient can help ease any respiratory distress and facilitate the assessment and observation of their breathing (Moore 2004b). The patient should be positioned upright, if this is not contraindicated, with their head slightly forward and it may be useful to remove clothing from their thorax to aid with observation of their breathing (Moore 2004b). Positioning can also help to relax the patient and therefore potentially reduce the distress resulting from breathlessness (Gosselink *et al.* 2008). They should be asked to keep still while pulse oximetry is being performed so that an accurate result can be obtained (Hunter and Rawlings Anderson 2008). If the patient is vasoconstricted or has an occlusion superior to the pulse oximeter sensor then an inaccurate result will be obtained (Levine 2007). If the patient is having a seizure, shivering or moving then pulse oximetry will not be accurate (Levine 2007). Pulse oximetry must not be used on nails with nail polish or on patients who have received dye treatment such as methylene blue, indiocyanine green and indiocarmine (Levine 2007). It

should be used in caution with those with arrhythmias, and only be used if there is a correlation between the actual and recorded pulse (Booker 2008).

Procedure guideline 12.4 Respiratory assessment and pulse oximetry

Essential equipment

- Pulse oximeter
- Power source
- Cleaning materials (according to manufacturer's recommendations and local policy)
- Sensor applicable to the chosen site
- Appropriate method of documentation and a pen

Optional equipment

- Variety of sensors available for different sites

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Wash hands thoroughly with soap and water and dry.	To reduce the risk of cross□contamination (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Hunter and Rawlings□Anderson 2008, E).
2 Explain the procedure to the patient, answering any questions they may have, and gain their consent.	Consent must be gained prior to commencing any procedure (NMC 2008b, C).
3 While talking to the patient, assess their respiratory condition including their ability to talk in full sentences, the colour of their skin, whether they appear to be in distress or not, and whether they are alert and orientated.	This initial assessment can give important information about the patient's respiratory function and any potential problems (Higginson and Jones, 2009, E; Wilkins 2009, E).
4 Determine the site to be used to perform pulse oximetry. The site should have a good blood supply, determined by checking it is warm, with a proximal pulse and brisk capillary refill.	The sensor requires a well□perfused area or it will not get strong enough signals to produce a result (Adam

	and Osborne 2005, E; Levine 2007, E).
5 Ensure that the area to be used is clean and free from dirt, and that the sensor is also clean (Moore 2004a). If using the patient's fingers ensure that all nail polish has been removed.	Dirt or nail polish may interfere with the transmission of the light signals, causing inaccurate results (Moore 2004a, E).
6 Select the correct pulse oximeter sensor for the site which is most appropriate for your patient, dependent on circulation and the manufacturer's instructions.	The correct sensor should be used for each site to ensure good contact and not apply too much pressure (Levine 2007, E).
Procedure	
7 Position the sensor securely but do not secure it with tape, unless specifically recommended by the manufacturer (MHRA 2001) (see Action Figure 7). If the pulse oximetry is to be continuous then the site needs to be changed at least every 4 hours.	If it is too tight it may impede the blood flow, leading to inaccurate results and the potential for pressure ulcer formation to the site (Moore 2004a, E).
8 Turn the pulse oximeter on and set the alarms on the device dependent on the patient's condition and within locally agreed limits.	To ensure that it is ready to use (Adam and Osborne 2005, E).
9 Check that the pulse reading on the device corresponds with their actual pulse. Ask the patient not to talk while you palpate their pulse. Once the pulse rate has been obtained, keep your fingers on their wrist and count their respiratory rate for a full minute. One breath is equal to one inspiration and expiration and is done by watching the abdomen or chest wall move in and out. Assess the regularity and depth of breathing, the shape and expansion of the chest, and look for any use of accessory muscles.	Any large deviations in pulse may show that the device is not measuring accurately or is being affected by movement (Levine 2007, E). The patient should ideally not be aware that their respiratory rate is being counted as this may produce inaccurate results (Wilkins 2009, E).
Postprocedure	
10 Document results clearly, including the time and date of the reading.	Records must be kept of all assessments made and care provided (NMC 2009, C).
11 Clean the pulse oximeter according to manufacturer's recommendations and local policy.	It may become colonized and be a source of infection to another patient (Woodrow 1999, E).

Action Figure 7 Position of an oxygen probe.

Problem-solving table 12.4 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 12.4)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Movement due to patient having a seizure, shivering or tremors	Movement can affect the accuracy of the reading (Levine 2007)	Try to use a site which is less affected, for example an ear (Levine 2007)	If the finger has been used, compare the pulse rate as given by the oximeter with the palpated radial pulse – if there is a difference then the oxygen saturation reading will not be accurate (Levine 2007). Arterial blood gases may be required to monitor their oxygen saturation, if a saturation cannot be obtained (Levine 2007)
Unexpectedly low result which does not correlate with their clinical condition	The site chosen may not have an adequate blood supply (Adam and Osborne, 2005)	Check for perfusion by palpating for a pulse and checking the area is warm with good capillary refill	Reposition sensor to new site. If it remains low, arterial blood gases may need to be considered (Adam and Osborne 2005)

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Any abnormalities of respiration discovered during the respiratory assessment should prompt rapid action (Higginson and Jones 2009). If there is risk of a compromised airway or respiratory insufficiency/failure then senior nursing and medical assistance, including an anaesthetist,

will be required urgently (Docherty 2002). Further information will be needed, including obtaining:

- a history of their current condition and any past medical history, including a list of the medications they are taking (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009)
- a full set of observations including temperature, blood pressure and heart rate (Higginson and Jones 2009).

In addition, other tests may be required depending on the condition of the patient, including the following.

- Arterial blood gases to check for level of carbon dioxide, oxygen level, pH, acid/base balance (Higginson and Jones 2009).
- Sputum collection to assess for an infection or specific diseases such as tuberculosis (Docherty 2002, Simpson 2006).
- Chest X-ray or CT scan (Simpson 2006).
- Blood tests including a full blood count, urea and electrolytes, clotting and cross-match (Docherty 2002).
- Fluid balance to monitor for signs of fluid overload or dehydration (Docherty 2002).

Airway management and administration of oxygen

For further information on this, see Life support and Chapter 10.

Ongoing care

As well as involving senior nurses, the medical team and potentially anaesthestists in the care of the patient, it may also be useful to refer the patient to the physiotherapy team (Docherty 2002).

Documentation

It is vital that all documentation on oxygen saturations should state whether the patient was breathing air or oxygen, and the flow of oxygen and method of administration (O'Driscoll *et al.* 2008). If the oxygen is being given in an emergency situation without a prescription then subsequent documentation must state the rationale for the administration of oxygen and the flow rate (O'Driscoll *et al.* 2008).

Education of patient and relevant others

One of the key focuses of education to patients with respiratory conditions should be to ascertain if they smoke and if they do, to encourage them to stop as smoking cessation can help to improve their prognosis (Tonnesen *et al.* 2007). For more information on this topic see Chapter 10.

Complications

It is recommended that to prevent any tissue damage, the pulse oximeter sensor is not taped in place (unless recommended by the manufacturer) and that the sensor should be resited every 4 hours or more frequently if necessary, depending on the patient's condition and the manufacturer's recommendations (MHRA 2001).

Peak flow

Definition

Peak expiratory flow (PEF) is the maximum flow of air which can be achieved when air is expired with maximum force following maximal inspiration (Quanjer *et al.* 1997).

Anatomy and physiology

The factors which determine PEF are:

- the dimensions of the extra- and intrathoracic airways, including their diameter and compliance
- the force the expiratory muscles generate, which is related to the degree of lung inflation
- the volume of the lungs, which is affected by the stature of the person, and speed and degree of maximal alveolar pressure that the person can reach
- the degree of stretch the lungs have been subjected to previously and the recoil ability of the lung

- the resistance of the instrument used to measure peak expiratory flow.

(Quanjer *et al.* 1997)

Therefore, any condition which alters the above factors could affect PEF. However, a reduction in one of the above factors may be compensated for by an increase in one of the others, meaning that PEF does not alter, therefore potentially underestimating the severity of the condition (Quanjer *et al.* 1997).

Related theory

The most common disorders which affect PEF are those which increase the resistance to air flow in the intrathoracic airways, such as asthma (Quanjer *et al.* 1997). However, PEF may also be impaired by:

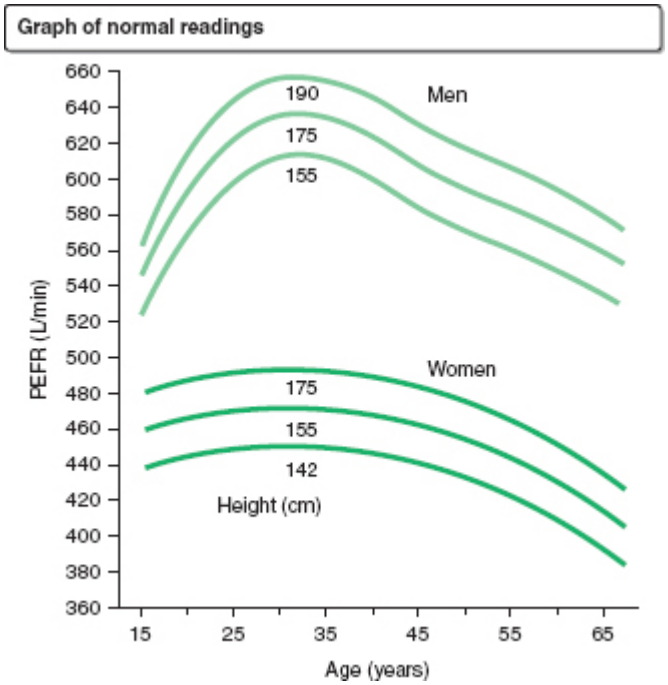
- disorders which limit chest movement and respiratory musculoskeletal problems
- obstruction of the extrathoracic airways
- impairment of nerves supplying the respiratory system.

(Quanjer *et al.* 1997)

Peak expiratory flow readings are subject to individual variation depending on the patient's age, gender, ethnic origin and stature (Quanjer *et al.* 1997). Therefore, results need to be compared against normal results for people of the same stature and gender (Figure 12.18) and against any previous results for that individual.

Figure 12.18 Normal peak flow measurements.

Reproduced from Kumar and Clarke (2009).



Peak expiratory flow is similar to forced expired volume in 1 second (FEV_1) measurements but the two are not interchangeable and both measure different aspects of lung function (Ruffin 2004). FEV_1 measures the volume of air exhaled during the first second of forced vital capacity (FVC), which occurs when an individual exhales forcefully to their maximum capacity following a deep inspiration (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). FEV_1 is usually 80% of FVC in healthy participants (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). FEV_1 is felt to be more sensitive in detecting mild airway obstruction, and peak expiratory flow is effort dependent and so can have a greater degree of intrasubject variability (Hansen *et al.* 2001). However, both FEV_1 and PEF were found to have similar predictive ability in relation to mortality in patients with COPD, although FEV_1 was found to be a better predictor in patients with asthma (Hansen *et al.* 2001).

Evidence based approaches

Rationale

Peak expiratory flow is a simple, objective procedure which can be used to measure the degree of air flow limitation and although it may not give a full representation of lung function, it can monitor efficacy of treatment and progression of the condition (Frew and Holgate 2009).

Indications

Peak expiratory flow can be used to:

- monitor the severity of the condition in patients with chronic severe asthma (Reddel 2006)
- monitor progression of respiratory disease (Frew and Holgate 2009)
- evaluate effectiveness of treatment (Frew and Holgate 2009)
- identify exacerbating factors (Reddel 2006).

Contraindications

Peak expiratory flow should be used with caution as follows.

- Severe air flow obstruction, as included in the measurement, may be air coming from the collapsing airway, yielding an erroneously high result (Quanjer *et al.* 1997).
- If the patient is unable to take a full inspiration, for example if they have a persistent cough, then the results will be inaccurate (Quanjer *et al.* 1997).
- If the procedure itself causes an exacerbation of the air flow limitation, shown by consecutive results producing a reduction in scoring (Quanjer *et al.* 1997).
- Young children may not understand the procedure correctly (Gorelick *et al.* 2004).

Methods for measuring peak flow

Treatment is often based on the PEF measurements so it is vital that they are as accurate as possible, and performed even when the patient is symptom free (Buist *et al.* 2006). Patients need to adhere to the peak flow monitoring regimen as trends can be more important than isolated results (unless the isolated results reflect an exacerbation) (Booker 2009). The patient needs to repeat the procedure three times with the

best result of the three being documented (Quanjer *et al.* 1997). Unless the procedure induces an exacerbation, there should be consistency between the three results. If the top two results have a greater disparity than 40 L/min then, as long as the patient is not fatigued, a further two attempts can be made to reach a greater level of consistency (Quanjer *et al.* 1997).

Timing of peak flow readings

While isolated PEF measurement can indicate a restriction in air flow, in general sequential measurements are of more use, displaying trends essential to understanding the severity and progression of the disease (Quanjer *et al.* 1997). However, there may be significant diurnal variations, with the lowest measurements occurring during the night and first thing in the morning (Quanjer *et al.* 1997). Therefore, it is recommended that measurements should be taken on waking, in the afternoon and prior to going to bed and the results documented (Frew and Holgate 2009). If it is suspected that the patient may have restricted air flow due to occupational causes, the patient should take measurements for a minimum of 2 weeks while at work and 2 weeks while not at work to enable a comparison (Frew and Holgate 2009).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

The Wright and mini□Wright peak flow meter

The Wright peak flow meter was developed in 1959 and was a portable, simple device for monitoring PEF in the home. It has since been redesigned as the mini□Wright peak flow meter which is commonly in use today (Ruffin 2004). Peak flow is measured by the patient exhaling as quickly and forcefully as possible following maximal inspiration; the maximum expiratory flow is measured and usually occurs early in expiration (Bongers and O'Driscoll 2006). In September 2004 the scales of measurement used on peak flow meters were changed to a new EU scale (Bongers and O'Driscoll 2006). This increased the accuracy of the

assessment and enhanced the ability to compare measurements with conventional spirometry (MHRA 2004). Although all new prescriptions of peak flow meters after this time were for the new model, some patients may still have the older one which will read up to 30% higher in the mid-range readings so it is important to check which device they are using; the new model is labelled as 'EN 13826' or 'EU scale' (MHRA 2004). If the patient is unable to use their own meter then multiple patient use meters are available in clinics and hospital; these are valved and have disposable single patient use mouthpieces to prevent infection (Booker 2009).

Spirometers

Spirometers can produce a reading for PEF alongside other lung function measurements such as FVC. However, these results may not be comparable to those obtained using a mini-Wright meter due to both the equipment and technique used. Therefore, the patient should use the same equipment and technique each time to enable comparisons with past results (Bongers and O'Driscoll 2006).

Assessment and recording tools

Recording peak flow measurements on individualized action plans/booklets gives patients a greater degree of control and awareness about when they need to access medical care. The use of these recording tools is strongly advocated (British Thoracic Society/Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network 2009, Gibson *et al.* 2002).

Specific patient preparations

The procedure should be performed when the patient is at rest (unless otherwise specified) and may be performed with them sitting upright or standing as long as their neck is not flexed (Quanjer *et al.* 1997). To increase reliability and enable comparisons to be drawn, it is advisable that they use the same posture each time (Booker 2009).

Education

The practitioner must ensure that the patient is fully informed about how to perform the procedure and performs it accurately, as even small alterations in technique may produce inaccurate results. If the patient has never performed the procedure, then education should be given and they should have the opportunity to have it demonstrated for them and have their own practice attempts (Quanjer *et al.* 1997).

Procedure guideline 12.5 Peak flow reading using a manual peak flow meter

Essential equipment

- Peak flow meter (calibrated and working correctly)
- Disposable mouthpiece
- Peak flow chart to document results on and a pen

Optional equipment

- Other lung function tests including pulse oximetry
- Oxygen mask and oxygen source
- Equipment to give a nebulizer
- Emergency resuscitation equipment

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain the procedure to the patient and obtain consent.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and gives valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Ask the patient what their best peak flow measurements have been and what their current peak flow readings are.	This will enable a comparison to be drawn between their current and previous results (British Thoracic Society/Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network 2009, C).
3 Wash and dry hands or use alcohol handrub.	To minimize the spread of cross□infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 Assemble equipment; ask the patient to use their own meter, if it is in good working order. If using a multiple patient use device ensure that it is valved and has disposable single patient use mouthpieces.	As different equipment might have slight variations in results (Bongers and O'Driscoll 2006, E). To prevent cross□infection (Booker 2009, E).
5 Ask the patient to stand or sit upright in whatever position they usually do their peak expiratory flow measurements in. They should be advised not to flex their neck.	So that their maximal lung volume can be reached and so that there is no positional obstruction which could affect the results, and to enable comparisons between results (Booker 2009, E; Quanjer *et al.* 1997, E).

6 Push needle on the gauge down to zero.	To ensure the results are accurate (Booker 2009, E).
Procedure	
7 Ask the patient to hold the peak flow meter horizontally, ensuring their fingers do not impede the gauge.	So that the movement of the needle is not obstructed and can move easily (Booker 2009, E; Frew and Holgate 2009, E).
8 Ask the patient to take a full inspiration to their total lung capacity through their mouth.	To ensure they achieve the greatest measurement (Frew and Holgate 2009, E; Quanjer *et al.* 1997, E).
9 Ask the patient to immediately place their lips tightly around the mouthpiece. The inspiration should be held for no longer than 2 s at total lung capacity.	To form an air seal and to prevent their tongue and teeth from obstructing it (Booker 2009, E; Quanjer *et al.* 1997, E).
10 Ask the patient to blow out down the meter in a short sharp 'huff' as forcefully as they can. See Action Figure 10.	This can be very quick and need only take about 1 s, to enable accuracy of results (Booker 2009, E; Quanjer *et al.* 1997, E).
11 Take a note of the reading. As results may vary, ask them to repeat the process a further 2 times and record the maximum measurement achieved.	To ensure that the best possible result is achieved (Frew and Holgate 2009, E; Quanjer *et al.* 1997, E).
Postprocedure	
12 Document the readings on the record chart and take further action if necessary.	Records must be kept of all assessments made, treatment or care provided and the outcome of this (NMC 2009, C).
13 Discard the mouthpiece and clean the meter in line with local policies and the manufacturer's recommendation. Wash hands.	To prevent the risk of cross□infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, C).

Action Figure 10 Manual peak fl ow meter technique.

Problem-solving table 12.5 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 12.5)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
A higher than expected result is obtained	May be caused by the needle not being pushed back to zero prior to commencement, or by poor technique leading to 'explosive decompression' whereby there is sudden opening of the glottis, or release of the tongue occluding the mouthpiece, or caused by spitting into the mouthpiece (Quanjer *et al.* 1997)	Allow practice runs prior to the procedure and ensure that the individual is educated on technique	Reset the needle back to zero, educate them on the correct technique, and if they appear fatigued, allow them to rest prior to repeating the procedure

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

A reduction in peak flow may indicate a life-threatening situation and so should receive urgent medical attention. The treatment provided will be aimed at increasing air flow and oxygenation. Oxygen therapy is usually applied with the aim of keeping oxygen saturations at 94–98% (British Thoracic Society/Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network, 2009). In patients who are known, or suspected, to have hypercapnia, oxygen should be initially administered at 28% via a Venturi mask out of hospital, and in hospital at 24% via a Venturi mask, unless their condition is of such severity to require a greater flow (O'Driscoll *et al.* 2008). However, if their oxygen saturation exceeds 92% then the flow of oxygen should be reduced (O'Driscoll *et al.* 2008). All of these patients will require arterial blood gas samples to be taken at the earliest opportunity to enable their condition to be more thoroughly assessed (O'Driscoll *et al.* 2008). Medication will be used to try and reverse the air flow reduction and this will usually include a combination of inhaled

bronchodilators and steroids (British Thoracic Society/Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network 2009).

Ongoing care

It should be noted if the patient had experienced/been in contact with any of the following prior to the exacerbation.

- Cold air.
- Heightened levels of emotion.
- Exposure to allergens.
- Viral infection.
- Inhaled irritants such as pollution or dust.
- Medication or drugs, including anti□inflammatories and beta□adrenoreceptor blocking agents.
- Occupational sensitizers.

(Frew and Holgate 2009)

The patient will probably require other medical tests to assess their condition; these may include chest X□ray, blood and sputum tests (Frew and Holgate 2009).

Education of patient and relevant others

Patient education is vital so that patients can manage their own condition (Buist *et al.* 2006). This will include information on exacerbating factors, smoking cessation and when to access medical help. A Cochrane review found that if patients received education on the self□management of asthma this led to a reduction of patients requiring hospitalization or emergency care for their asthma (Gibson *et al.* 2002).

Temperature

Definition

Body temperature represents the balance between heat production and heat loss (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). All body tissues produce heat

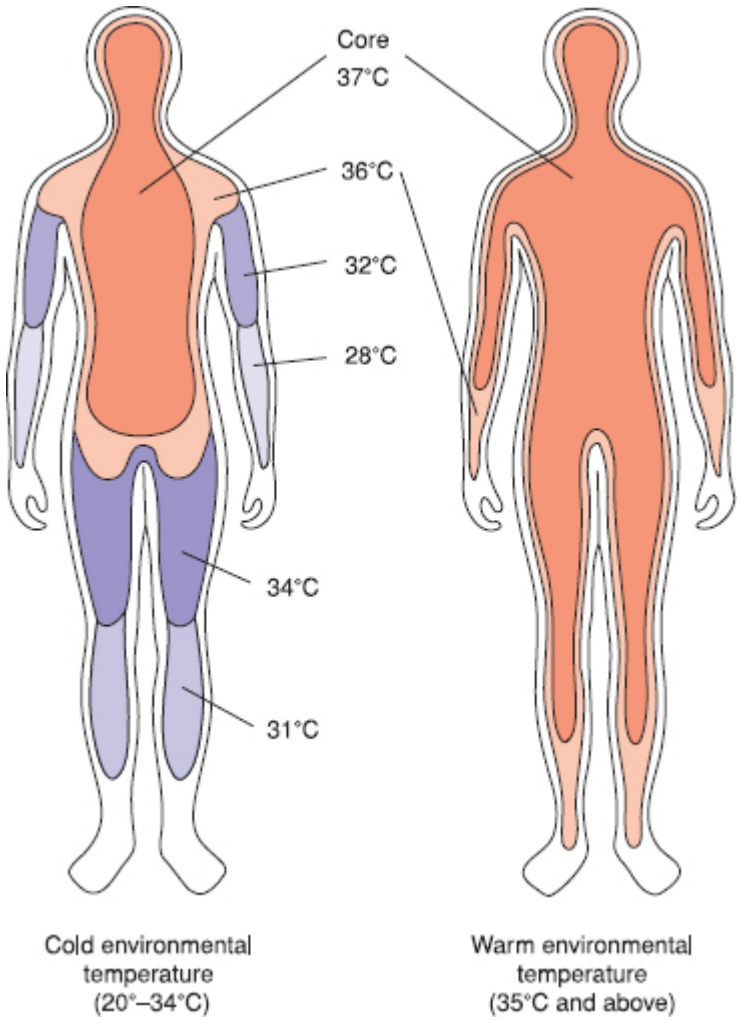
depending on how metabolically active they are. When the body is resting, most heat is generated by the heart, liver, brain and endocrine organs (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Anatomy and physiology

Core body temperature measurements are taken to assess for deviation from the normal range of 36–37.5°C, to maintain cell metabolic activity. The core body temperature is set and closely regulated by the thermoregulatory centre of the hypothalamus in the brain (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

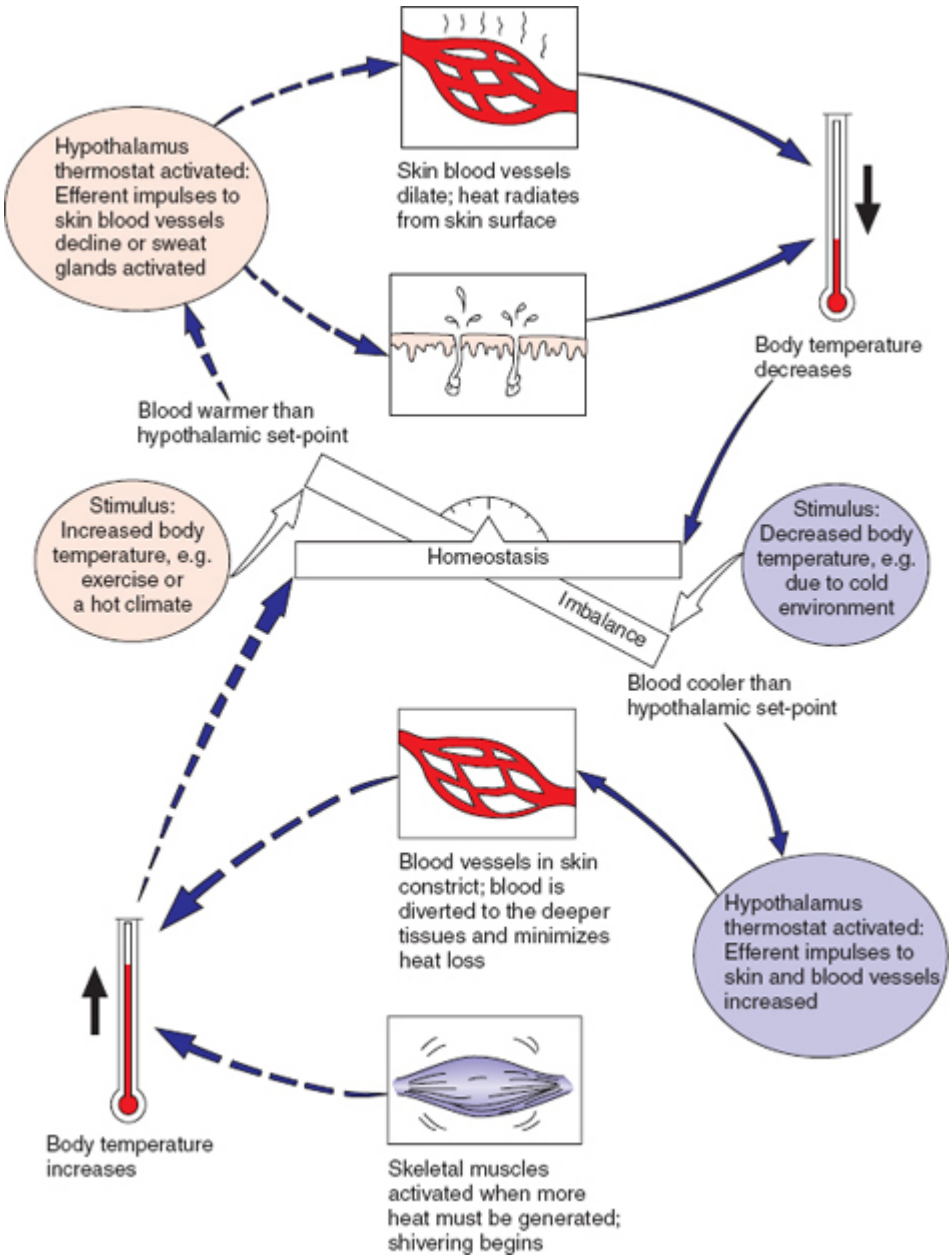
Body temperature is a regulated function of the hypothalamus, and is the balance between heat gain (metabolism) and heat loss (respiration). All tissues produce heat as a result of cell metabolism, and this is increased by exercise and activity (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Humans have the ability through homoeostasis to maintain a constant core temperature in spite of environmental changes. The body core generally has the highest temperature while the skin is the coolest (Figure 12.19). Core temperature reflects the heat of arterial blood and represents the balance between the heat generated by body tissues in metabolic activity and that lost through various mechanisms (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Figure 12.19 Body core and skin temperature.



The hypothalamus comprises a group of neurones in the anterior and posterior portions, referred to as the preoptic area (Tortora and Derrickson 2009), which works as a thermostat (Figure 12.20). A relatively constant temperature is maintained by homoeostasis, which is a constant process of heat gain and heat loss. The body requires stability of its temperature to produce an optimum environment for biochemical and enzymic reactions to maintain cellular function. Body temperature above or below this normal range affects total body function (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). A temperature above 41°C can cause convulsions and a temperature of 43°C renders life unsustainable.

Figure 12.20 Mechanisms of body temperature regulation.



Heat is gained through metabolic activity of the body, especially of the muscles and liver. Heat loss is achieved through the skin by the processes of radiation, convection, conduction and evaporation (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Various factors cause fluctuations of temperature.

- The body's circadian rhythms cause daily fluctuations. The body temperature is higher in the evening than in the morning (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Minor and Waterhouse (1981) recorded a difference of 0.5–1.5°C between morning and evening measurements.

- Ovulation can elevate the body's temperature as it influences the basal metabolic rate (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).
- Exercise and eating cause an elevation in temperature (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).
- Extremes of age affect a person's response to environmental change. While young people will shiver at a temperature of 36°, most people over the age of 80 will not shiver until the body temperature falls to 35.1° (Kenney and Munce 2003). Thermoregulation is inadequate in the newborn and especially in low-birthweight babies. In older people, there is an increased sensitivity to cold and the body temperature is generally lower (Nakamura *et al*. 1997).

Related theory

Hypothermia

Hypothermia is defined as a core temperature of 35°C that causes the metabolic rate to decrease (Trim 2005). Hypothermia may be classified as mild (32–35°C), moderate (28–32°C) and severe (less than 28°C) (Cuddy 2004). This occurs when the body loses more heat and is subsequently unable to maintain homoeostasis (Neno 2005). If the temperature does fall below 35°C, the patient will start to shiver severely (Edwards 1997). However, hypothermia frequently escapes detection due to symptoms being non-specific and an oral thermometer's failure to record in the appropriate range (Marini and Wheeler 2010). It can occur in all ages, although the elderly are at particular risk, and is often multifactorial in origin. It can arise as a result of:

- environmental exposure
- medications that can alter the perception of cold, increase heat loss through vasodilation or inhibit heat generation, for example alcohol, paracetamol
- metabolic conditions, for example hypoglycaemia and adrenal insufficiency

- the exposure of the body and internal organs during surgery and the use of drugs which dampen the vasoconstrictor response (Marini and Wheeler 2010).

Surgical patients having procedures longer than 1 hour have increased disruption to normal homoeostatic mechanisms resulting in a drop in temperature. Complications can include cardiovascular ischaemia, delayed wound healing and increased risk for wound infections and increase in postoperative recovery time (Wagner 2006).

Hyperthermia

Sudden temperature elevations usually indicate infection, making it prudent to perform a directed physical examination and, if indicated, obtain appropriate cultures and institute antibiotics. However, although infection is the most common explanation, several life‐threatening non‐infectious causes of fever are frequently overlooked (Marini and Wheeler 2010) (Table 12.4).

Table 12.4 Non-infectious causes of hyperthermia

Agonist drugs	Malignancy
Alcohol withdrawal	Malignant hyperthermia
Anticholinergic drugs	Neuroleptic malignant syndrome
Allergic drug or transfusion reaction	Pheochromocytoma
Autonomic insufficiency	Salicylate intoxication
Crystalline arthritis (gout)	Status epilepticus
Drug allergy	Stroke or central nervous system damage
Heat stroke	Vasculitis hyperthyroidism

Fever caused by pyrexia (elevated body temperature) is the result of the internal thermostat resetting to higher levels. This resetting of the thermostat is the result of the action of pyrogens, which are chemical substances now known to be cytokines. Cytokines are chemical mediators, which are involved in cellular immunity (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). They enhance the immune response and are released from white blood cells, injured tissues and macrophages. This causes the hypothalamus to release prostaglandins, which in turn reset the hypothalamic thermostat. The body then promotes heat‐producing mechanisms such as vasoconstriction. As a result of vasoconstriction,

heat loss from the body surface declines, the skin cools and shivering begins to generate heat. These ‘chills’ are a sign that body temperature is rising (Marieb and Hoehn 2010) and are often referred to as ‘rigors’. A rigor is marked by shivering and the patient complains of feeling cold. The temperature quickly rises as a result of the normal physiological response to cold. This results in the following physiological changes.

- Thermoreceptors in the skin are stimulated, resulting in vasoconstriction. This decreases heat loss through conduction and convection.
- Sweat gland activity is reduced to minimize evaporation.
- Shivering occurs; muscles contract and relax out of sequence with each other, thus generating heat.
- The body increases catecholamine and thyroxine levels, elevating the metabolic rate in an attempt to increase temperature.

(Marieb and Hoehn 2010)

All these changes contribute to a rise in metabolism with an increase in carbon dioxide excretion and the need for oxygen. This leads to an increased respiratory rate. When the body temperature reaches its new ‘setpoint’ the patient no longer complains of feeling cold, shivering ceases and sweating commences.

There are several grades of pyrexia, and these are described in Table 12.5.

Table 12.5 Grades of pyrexia

Low□grade pyrexia	Normal to 38°C	Indicative of an inflammatory response due to a mild infection, allergy, disturbance of body tissue by trauma, surgery, malignancy or thrombosis
Moderate to high□grade pyrexia	38–40°C	May be caused by wound, respiratory or urinary tract infections
Hyperpyrexia	40°C and above	May arise because of bacteraemia, damage to the hypothalamus or high environmental temperatures

Evidence□based approaches

Rationale

Core body temperature measurements are taken to assess for deviation from the normal range that may indicate disease, deterioration in condition, infection or reaction to treatment.

Body temperature measurement is part of routine care in clinical practice and can influence important decisions regarding tests, diagnosis and treatment (Le Frant *et al.* 2003). Temperature needs to be measured accurately and monitored effectively to enable temperature changes to be detected quickly and any necessary intervention commenced (Watson 1998). Temperature assessment accuracy depends on several factors: measurement technique, device type, body site, healthcare professionals' training and competence. Temperature recording is a core assessment (and reassessment) in nursing practice, but can create clinical issues if not performed appropriately (Docherty 2000).

Indications

Conditions in which a patient's temperature requires careful monitoring include the following.

- Patients with conditions that affect basal metabolic rate, such as disorders of the thyroid gland, require monitoring of body temperature. Hypothyroidism is a condition where an inadequate secretion of hormones from the thyroid gland results in slowing of physical and metabolic activity; thus the individual has a decrease in body temperature. Hyperthyroidism is excessive activity of the thyroid gland; a hypermetabolic condition results, with an increase in all metabolic processes. The patient complains of a low heat tolerance. Thyrotoxic crisis is a sudden increase in thyroid hormones and can cause a hyperpyrexia (Walsh 2002).
- Postoperative and critically ill patients require monitoring of temperature. The patient's temperature should be observed preoperatively in order to make any significant comparisons. In the postoperative period the nurse should observe the patient for hyperthermia or hypothermia as a reaction to the surgical procedures (Wagner 2006).
- Patients with a susceptibility to infection, for example those with a low white blood cell count (less than 1000 cells/mm^3) or those

undergoing radiotherapy, chemotherapy or steroid treatment, will require a more frequent observation of temperature. The fluctuation in temperature is influenced by the body's response to pyrogens. Immunocompromised patients are less able to respond to infection. Bacteraemia means a bacterial invasion of the bloodstream. Septic shock is a circulatory collapse as a result of severe infection. Pyrexia may be absent in those who are immunosuppressed or in the elderly (Neno 2005).

- Patients with a systemic or local infection require monitoring of temperature to assess development or regression of infection.
- Pyrexia can occur when patients are receiving a blood transfusion but severe transfusion reactions usually occur within the first 15 minutes of starting (BCSH 1999).

Methods of recording temperature

Traditionally, the mouth, axilla and rectum have been the preferred sites for obtaining temperature readings, due to their accessibility. With the development of new technology the use of the tympanic membrane is increasingly popular, as it is less invasive and provides rapid results (Burke 1996). It has been suggested that tympanic membrane thermometers give a more accurate representation of actual body temperature, as the tympanic membrane lies close to the temperature regulation centre in the hypothalamus and shares the same artery (van Staaij *et al.* 2003).

Oral

To most accurately measure the temperature orally, the thermometer is placed in the posterior sublingual pocket of tissue at the base of the tongue (Torrance and Semple 1998). It is important that the thermometer is placed in this region and not in the area under the front of the tongue, as there may be a temperature difference of up to 1.7°C between these areas. This temperature difference is due to the sublingual pockets being protected from the air currents, which cool the frontal areas (Neff *et al.* 1989). This area is in close proximity to the thermoreceptors which respond rapidly to changes in the core temperature, hence changes in

core temperatures are reflected quickly here (Carroll 2000, Stevenson 2004).

Oral temperatures are affected by the temperatures of ingested foods and fluids, smoking and by the muscular activity of chewing. It has been shown that oxygen therapy does not affect the oral temperature reading (Hasler and Cohen 1982, Lim□Levy 1982). A respiratory rate that exceeds 18 breaths per minute, together with a patient who smokes, will also reduce the core temperature values (Knies 2003).

Rectal

The rectal temperature is often higher than the oral temperature because this site is more sheltered from the external environment. Rectal thermometry has been demonstrated in clinical trials to be more accurate than oral or axillary thermometry; however, it is not advocated due to its invasive nature (Trim 2005). While other more precise methods can still detect fever, the rectal method offers greater precision. However, the presence of soft stool may separate the thermometer from the bowel wall and give a false reading, especially if the central temperature is changing rapidly. In infants this method is not recommended as it carries a risk of rectal ulceration or perforation (Jensen *et al.* 1994).

A rectal thermometer should be inserted at least 4 cm in an adult to obtain the most accurate reading.

Axillary

The axilla is considered less desirable than the other sites because of the difficulty in achieving accurate and reliable readings (Evans and Kenkre 2006) as it is not close to major vessels, and skin surface temperatures vary more with changes in temperature of the environment (Woollens 1996). It is usually only used for patients who are unsuitable for, or who cannot tolerate, oral thermometers, for example after general anaesthetic or patients with mouth injuries (Edwards 1997).

To take an axillary temperature reading, the thermometer should be placed in the centre of the armpit, with the patient's arm firmly against the side of the chest. It is important that the same arm is used for each

measurement as there is often a variation in temperature between left and right (Heindenreich and Giuffe 1990).

Whichever route is used for temperature measurement, it is important that this is then used consistently, as switching between sites can produce a record that is misleading or difficult to interpret.

Consideration is required when interpreting variations in 4–6 hourly observations, and when taking once only daily temperatures as the average person experiences circadian rhythms which make their highest body temperature occur in the late afternoon or early evening, that is between 4 pm and 8 pm. The most sensitive time for detecting pyrexias appears to be between 7 pm and 8 pm (Angerami 1980). Samples *et al*. (1985) found the highest temperature between 5 pm and 7 pm. These studies suggest that the most useful time to measure and detect an abnormal temperature would be approximately 6 pm.

Anticipated patient outcomes

To determine the patient's temperature on admission as a baseline for comparison with future measurements and to monitor fluctuations in temperature.

Preprocedural considerations

Temperature can be measured at a number of different sites, using different tools for measurement. When assessing the body temperature it is important to consider the methods and tools used for measurement (Docherty 2006).

The critical issue to consider when using any thermometer is whether you are controlling the factors that affect the accuracy and precision of the measurement. These factors must be addressed when educating staff on the use of different temperature measurement methods. It is therefore important to recall that therapeutic decisions should not be made on the basis of a single vital sign (Bridges 2009).

Equipment

A variety of thermometers are now available, from clinical glass thermometers with oral or rectal bulbs to the electronic sensor thermometer to the tympanic thermometer. Until recently, mercury in glass thermometers continued to be used, even though it had been shown that they were unable to detect temperatures lower than 34.5°C (94°F) or higher than 40.5°C (105°F) (Khorshid *et al.* 2005). The MHRA (2005) advises that, for safety, equipment with mercury should be replaced where possible. Mercury thermometers respond slowly to temperature changes, making use of an electronic device preferable when recording temperature extremes and rapid fluctuations (Marini and Wheeler 2010). Other types of thermometer include those listed by Docherty (2000).

- Single-use plastic-coated strips with heat-sensitive recorders (dots) which change colour to indicate the temperature (record from 35.5 to 40.4°C).
- Digital analogue probe thermometers with plastic disposable sheets (record from 32 to 42°C).
- Invasive thermometers attached to a pulmonary artery catheter (record from 0 to 50°C) (Braun *et al.* 1998, O'Toole 1997).

Tympanic membrane thermometer

Tympanic thermometers are small hand-held devices that have a disposable probe cover that is inserted into the patient's ear canal. The sensor at the end of the probe records the infra-red radiation (IRR) that is emitted by the tympanic membrane, as a result of its warmth, and converts this into a temperature reading presented on a digital screen (Jevon and Jevon 2001). The probe is protected by a disposable cover, which is changed between patients to prevent cross-infection (Gallimore 2004). Van Staaij *et al*. (2003) suggest that tympanic thermometers give a more accurate representation of actual body temperature because the tympanic membrane lies close to the temperature regulation centre in the hypothalamus and shares the same artery.

A common problem with using tympanic thermometers is poor technique leading to inaccurate temperature measurements (Gilbert *et al.* 2002). The placement of the probe to fit snugly within the ear canal (see

Figure 12.21) is crucial as differences between the opening of the ear canal and the tympanic membrane can be as much as 2.8°C (Hudek *et al.* 1998). Jevon and Jevon (2001) highlight other causes of false readings, which include dirty or cracked probe lens, incorrect installation of the probe cover and short time intervals between measurements (less than 2–3 minutes).

Figure 12.21 Tympanic membrane thermometer.

Specific patient preparations

Asking the patient when they last ate, smoked and had a drink as these may have influences on their temperature.

Procedure guideline 12.6 Temperature measurement

Essential equipment

- Tympanic membrane thermometer
- Disposable probe covers
- Alcohol handrub

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 Wash and dry hands.	To minimize the risks of cross□infection and contamination (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Procedure	
3 Document which ear is used to ensure consecutive readings.	Anatomical differences between the two ears can result in a difference of up to 1°C (Jevon and Jevon 2001, E).
4 Remove thermometer from the base unit and ensure the lens is clean and not cracked. Use a dry wipe to clean if required.	Alcohol□based wipes should not be used as this can lead to a false low temperature measurement (Jevon and Jevon 2001, E).
5 Place disposable probe cover on the probe tip, ensuring the manufacturer's instructions are followed.	The probe cover protects the tip of the probe and is necessary for the functioning of the instrument (Jevon and Jevon 2001, E).
6 Gently place the probe tip in the ear canal to seal the opening, ensuring a snug fit. See Figure 12.21.	To prevent air at the opening of the ear from entering it, causing a false low temperature measurement (Bayham *et al.* 1996, C; Jevon and Jevon 2001, E).
7 Press and release SCAN button.	To commence the scanning (Bayham *et al.* 1996, C).
8 Remove probe tip from the ear as soon as the thermometer display reads DONE, usually indicated by beeps.	To ensure procedure is carried out for allocated time. Measurement is usually complete within 2 seconds (Bayham *et al.* 1996, C).
9 Read the temperature display and document in the patient's records and compare with previous results.	Any interruption in the process may result in the measurement being incorrectly remembered (O'Brien *et al.* 2003, E). Deviations from normal temperature ranges may result in urgent medical/clinical attention (Jevon and Jevon 2001, E; NMC 2008a, C).
Postprocedure	
10 Press RELEASE/EJECT button to discard probe cover into domestic waste bin.	Probe covers are for single use only (Jevon and Jevon 2001, E).
11 Wipe thermometer clean and replace in base unit.	To reduce the risk of cross□infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Problem-solving table 12.6 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 12.6)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Thermometer is not working properly, for example 'error' is showing	The battery may be low	At the first level, the low battery sign is lit and approximately 100 more temperatures may be taken	Replace the battery
If the 'wait' indicator is on	Wait indicator will appear if you attempt to take successive temperatures in too short a period of time	Wait briefly until the 'wait' indicator disappears before taking another temperature	Retry and if still instructing to 'wait', send for repair
'Use new cover' showing even though probe cover has been installed.	Probe cover replaced too quickly	Check that probe cover has been fitted correctly	Press RELEASE/EJECT button and reinstall probe cover

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

There are different methods for lowering body temperature. Antipyretics, including paracetamol, can mask the function of the hypothalamus by reducing the temperature while hiding the underlying signs of disease (Cuddy 2004). It is thought that these drugs inhibit the inflammatory action of prostaglandins, affecting the hypothalamus by temporarily resetting the thermostat to normal levels. However, these drugs must be used with caution in patients with established liver disease or a history of gastric bleeding as they can cause gastric irritation and put an increased strain on a diseased liver to break down the drug.

Fanning is of benefit for moderate to high pyrexias. Fanning and tepid sponging are not recommended while the patient's temperature is still rising as this will only make the patient feel colder, cause distress (Sharber 1997) and cause the peripheral thermoreceptors to detect a decrease in temperature that leads the hypothalamus to initiate heat□gaining activities such as shivering and peripheral vasoconstriction (Krikler 1990).

Documentation

Recordings of body temperature are an index of biological function and are a valuable indicator of a patient's health.

Urinalysis

Definition

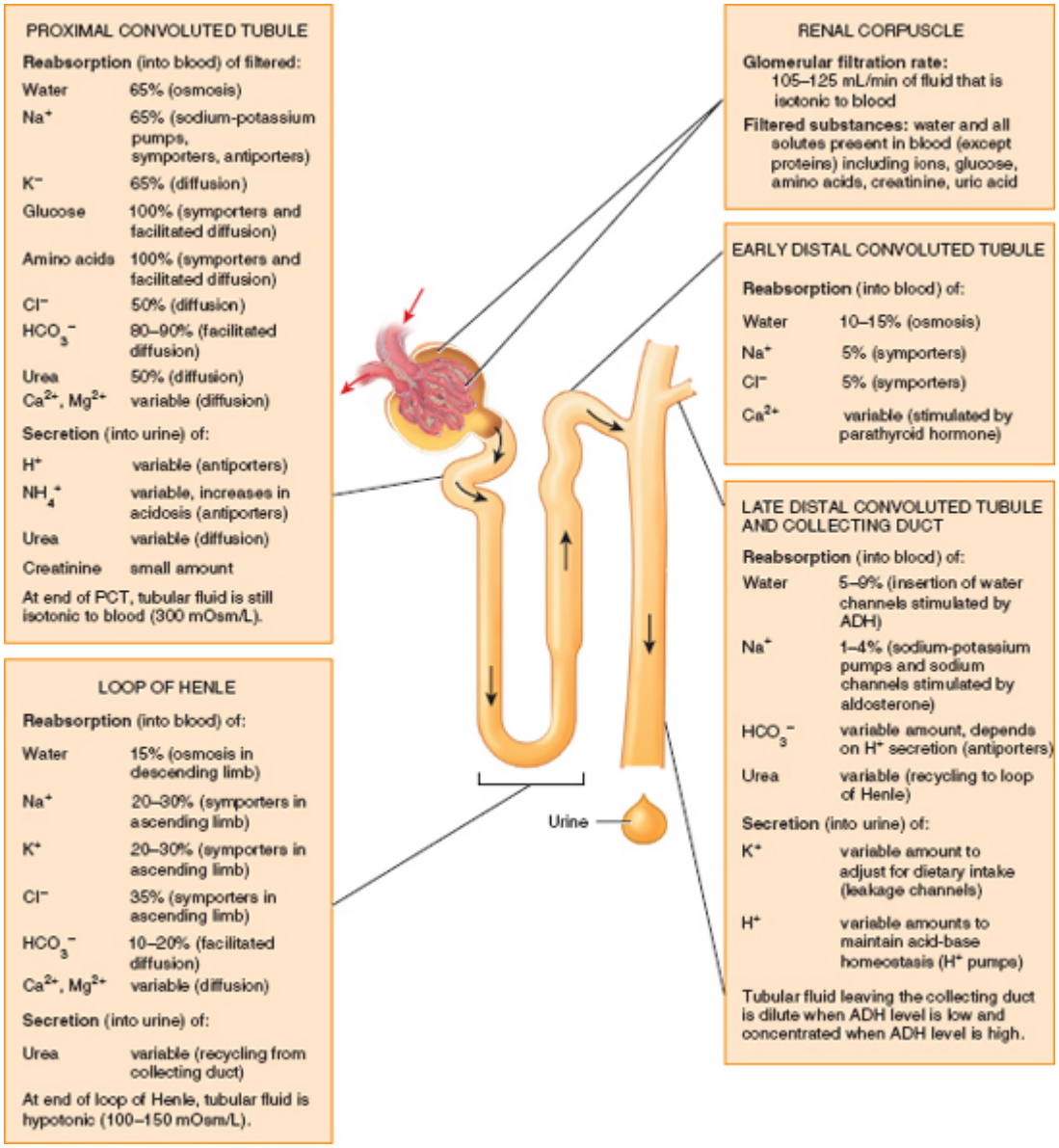
Urinalysis is the analysis of the volume and physical, chemical and microscopic properties of urine (Tortora and Derrickson 2009) and can provide valuable information about a patient's condition, allowing detection of systemic disease and infection (Bishop 2008).

Anatomy and physiology

Urine is formed in the kidneys, which process approximately 180 litres of blood□derived fluid a day. Approximately 1% of this total actually leaves the body as urine, the rest returns to the circulation (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Urine formation, and the simultaneous adjustment of blood composition, involves three processes (see Figure 12.22):

Figure 12.22 Summary of filtration, reabsorption and secretion in the nephron and collecting duct.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



- glomerular filtration
- tubular reabsorption
- tubular secretion (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Glomerular filtration

This occurs in the glomeruli of the kidney, which act as non□selective filters. Filtration occurs as a result of increased glomerular blood pressure caused by the difference in diameter between afferent and efferent arterioles. The effect is a simple mechanical filter that permits

substances smaller than plasma proteins to pass from the glomeruli to the glomerular capsule (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Tubular reabsorption

Tubular reabsorption then occurs, removing necessary substances from the filtrate and returning them to the peritubular capillaries. Tubular reabsorption is an active process that requires protein carriers and energy. Substances reabsorbed include nutrients and most ions. It is also a passive process, however, driven by electrochemical gradients. Substances reabsorbed in this way include sodium ions and water. Creatinine and the metabolites of drugs are not reabsorbed because of their size, insolubility or a lack of carriers. Most of the nutrients, 65% of the water and sodium ions, and the majority of actively transported ions are reabsorbed in the proximal convoluted tubules (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Reabsorption of additional sodium ions and water occurs in the distal tubules and collecting ducts and is hormonally controlled. Aldosterone increases the reabsorption of sodium, and antidiuretic hormone (ADH) enhances water reabsorption by the collecting ducts (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

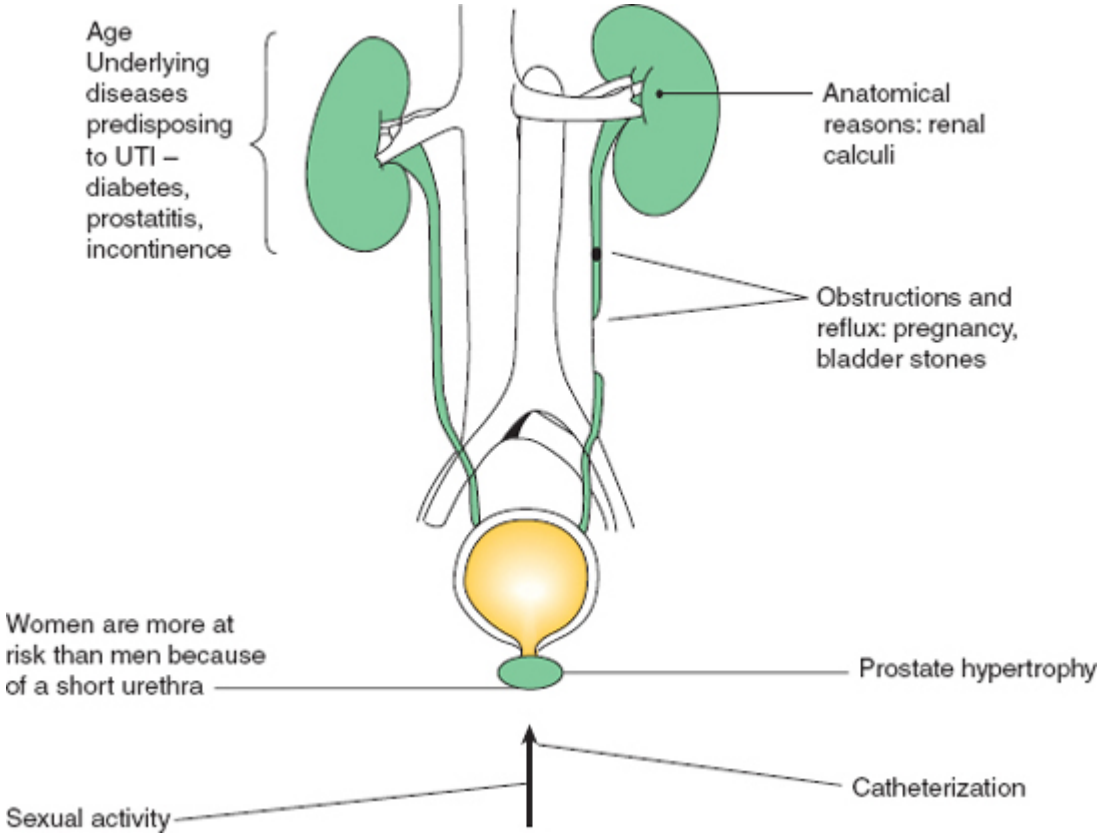
Tubular secretion

Tubular secretion is an active process that is important in eliminating drugs, certain wastes and excess ions and in maintaining the acid/base balance of blood (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Regulation of urine concentration and volume occurs in the loop of Henle, where the osmolarity of the filtrate is controlled. As the filtrate flows through the tubules, the permeability of the walls controls how dilute or concentrated the resulting urine will be. In the absence of ADH, dilute urine is formed because the filtrate is not reabsorbed as it passes through the kidneys. As levels of ADH increase, the collecting tubules become more permeable to water, and water moves out of the filtrate back into the blood. Consequently, more concentrated urine is produced, and in smaller amounts (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Urine is a clear, straw-coloured fluid. The normal composition of urine includes water, urea, creatinine, sodium, potassium, organic acids, protein, small traces of glucose and cellular components. The colour of urine is due to a pigment called urochrome which is derived from the body's destruction of haemoglobin. The more concentrated urine, the deeper yellow it becomes. An abnormal colour such as pink or brown may result from eating certain foods (beetroot or rhubarb), or may be due to the presence in the urine of bile products or blood (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). Often fresh urine appears turbid (cloudy), indicating that there may be an infection of the urinary tract. The urinary tract is the most common site of bacterial infection. Risk factors for urinary tract infections (UTI) include presence of a urinary catheter, female gender, diabetes and advanced age (Marini and Wheeler 2010). See Figure 12.23 for other UTI predisposing factors.

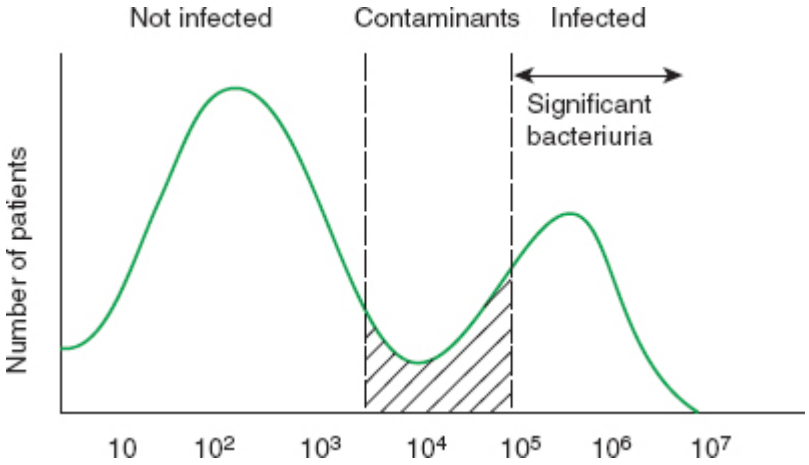
Figure 12.23 Predisposition to UTIs.



Bacteriuria is defined as the presence of bacteria in the urine (Rigby and Gray 2005). Urine specimens are rarely sterile, as a result of

contamination with periurethral flora during collection. Infection is distinguished by counting the number of bacteria. Significant bacteriuria is defined as the presence of more than 10^5 organisms per mL of urine in the presence of clinical symptoms (Marini and Wheeler 2010). See Figure 12.24 for illustration of significant bacteriuria.

Figure 12.24 Significant bacteriuria. Specimens of urine are rarely sterile. A cut□off point is identified to distinguish true infection (significant bacteriuria) from effects of contamination from surrounding tissues.



Fresh urine is slightly aromatic. This can change as a result of disease processes such as diabetes mellitus, when acetone is present in the urine, giving it a fruity smell (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The composition of urine can change dramatically as a result of disease, and abnormal substances may be present. Urinalysis can identify many of these substances, and should be part of every physical assessment (Cook 1996, Torrance and Elley 1998).

Evidence□based approaches

Rationale

Urinalysis (urine testing) is commonly undertaken in general practice, being one of a range of assessment and screening procedures, such as new patient registration, screening for diabetes mellitus and testing for infections and pregnancy.

Indications

The composition of urine can change dramatically as a result of disease processes. It may contain red blood cells, glucose, proteins, white blood cells or bile (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). It can reveal diseases that have gone unnoticed because they do not produce striking symptoms, and may also be used in ongoing management of conditions (Higgins 2008).

- *Screening*: for systemic disease, for example, diabetes mellitus or renal conditions.
- *Diagnosis*: to confirm or exclude suspected conditions, for example urinary tract infection.
- *Management and planning*: to ascertain as a baseline, monitor progress of an existing condition and/or plan programme of care and medication (Wilson 2005).

Methods of urinalysis

Renal clearance refers to the volume of plasma that is cleared of a particular substance in a given time, usually 1 minute. Renal clearance tests are done to determine the glomerular filtration rate (GFR), which allows us to detect glomerular damage and follow the progress of renal disease (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

In the microbiology laboratory, urine samples constitute about 40% of the total workload; of these, 70–80% of samples are not infected. This means that much time, energy and finances are wasted on unnecessary sample processing and investigation (Bayer Diagnostics 1997).

Further testing may be necessary, such as culture and sensitivity testing under laboratory conditions, to identify organisms responsible for infection and to determine the most effective treatment (Wilson 2005) (Table 12.6). Twenty-four hour collection is also used to measure substances such as steroids, white cells and electrolytes or to determine urine osmolarity (Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

Table 12.6 Routine observations of urine: possible indications and plan of action

Observation	Possible indications	Plan of action
Colour		

Green	*Pseudomonas* infection, presence of bilirubin	Culture and microscopy
	Excretion of cytotoxic agents, for example mitomycin, or substances, for example methylene blue	Discard with care
Pink/Red	Blood	Culture and microscopy. If currently receiving chemotherapy, for example ifosfamide, further mesna may need to be given
	Excretion of cytotoxic agents, for example doxorubicin	Discard with care
Orange	Excess urobiliogen, rifampicin	Discard
Yellow	Bilirubin	Discard
Brown	Bilirubin	Discard
Odour		
Fishy	Infection	Culture and microscopy
Sweet smelling	Ketones	Culture and microscopy
Debris		
Cloudy	Infection, stale urine	Culture and microscopy
Sediment	Infection, contamination	Culture and microscopy

Modifi ed from Rigby and Gray (2005) with kind permission from *Nursing Times*

Before using a reagent strip to analyse a sample of urine, the following observations should be made.

- Colour.
- Clarity.
- Odour.

These properties should be considered with reference to clinical condition, urine output and fluid balance records over the past 24 hours.

The following factors can affect the analysis of results.

- Bilirubin and urobilinogen are relatively unstable compounds when subjected to light and at room temperature, so it is important to use fresh urine to obtain the most accurate result.
- Exposure of unpreserved urine at room temperature for a considerable period of time may result in an increase in micro□organisms in the urine and change in pH.
- Bacterial growth of contaminated organisms in urine may produce a positive blood reaction.

- Urine that is high in alkaline may show false□positive results in respect of presence of protein.
- Glucose in urine may reduce its pH as a result of metabolism of glucose by organisms present in the urine.
- The presence of urea□splitting organisms that convert urea to ammonia may cause urine to become more alkaline.

(Wilson 2005)

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Dipstick (reagent) tests

Strips that have been impregnated with chemicals are dipped quickly in urine and read. When dipped in urine, the chemicals react with abnormal substances and change colour. Although dipstick reagents have been primarily used as screening tools for protein or glucose in the urine, more sophisticated reagents are now available. These reagents test for nitrites and leucocyte esterase as indicators of bacterial infection. Leucocyte esterase is an enzyme from neutrophils not normally found in urine and is a marker of infection. Nitrites are produced by the bacterial breakdown of dietary nitrate, which is a waste product of protein metabolism (Rigby and Gray 2005). It is essential to use the strips according to the manufacturer's instructions and be aware of factors that may affect the results, including specific drugs (Table 12.7), the quality of the urine specimen itself and the possibility of false□negative results.

Table 12.7 How drugs may infl uence the results of reagent sticks

Drug	Reagent test	Effect on the results
Ascorbic acid	Glucose, blood, nitrite	High concentrations may diminish colour
L□Dopa	Glucose	High concentrations may give a false□negative reaction
	Ketones	Atypical colour
Nalidixic acid	Urobilinogen	Atypical colour – probenacid
Phenazopyridine (pyridium)	Protein	May give atypical colour

Ketones	Coloured metabolites may mask a small reaction	
	Urobilinogen, bilirubin	May mimic a positive reaction
	Nitrite	
Rifampicin	Bilirubin	Coloured metabolites may mask a small reaction
Salicylates (aspirin)	Glucose	High doses may give a false□negative reaction

Specific patient preparations

Education

Most patients need advice on hygiene and technique before the procedure to prevent contamination from hands or the genital area (Higgins 2008) and to ensure that the midstream sample is collected correctly. Midstream urine specimens are indicated in adults and children who are continent and can empty their bladder on request (Gilbert 2006).

Procedure guideline 12.7 Urinalysis: reagent strip procedure

Essential equipment

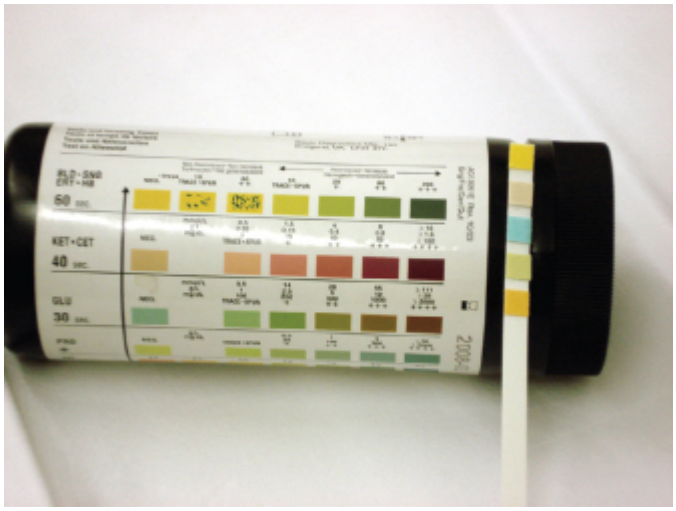
- Non□sterile disposable gloves
- Apron
- Urine dipsticks, that are in date; make sure they have been stored according to the manufacturer's recommendations
- Appropriate urine specimen pot

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).
2 If taking the specimen from a urinary catheter it should be collected using an aseptic technique.	To avoid contamination (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Wash and dry hands and put on gloves and apron.	To maintain infection control and prevent cross□infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Procedure	
4 Obtain clean specimen of fresh urine from patient.	Urine that has been stored deteriorates rapidly and can give false results (Bayer Diagnostics 2006, C).
5 Check reagent sticks have been stored in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. This is usually a dark dry place.	Tests may depend on enzymic reaction. To ensure reliable results (Bayer Diagnostics 2006, C).
6 Dip the reagent strip into the urine. The strip should be completely immersed in the urine and then removed immediately. Run edge of strip along the container. This will remove excess urine and prevent mixing of chemicals from adjacent reagent areas.	To remove any excess urine (Bayer Diagnostics 2006, C).
7 Hold the stick at an angle.	Urine reagent strips should not be held upright when reading them because urine may run from square to square, mixing various reagents (Bayer Diagnostics 2006, C).
8 Wait the required time interval before reading the strip against the colour chart (see Action Figure 8).	The strips must be read at exactly the time interval specified or the reagents will not have time to react, or may be inaccurate (Bayer Diagnostics 2006, C).
Postprocedure	
9 Dispose of urine sample appropriately in either sluice or toilet. Dispose of urinalysis stick and gloves in correct wastage bin. Ensure cap to urine reagent strips is replaced immediately and closed tightly.	To ensure strips are in airtight container according to storage guidelines. C
10 Wash and dry hands.	To maintain infection control and prevent cross□infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
11 Document urinalysis readings and inform medical staff of any abnormal readings.	To allow prompt action if change to treatment plan required (NMC 2009, C).

Action Figure 8 Compare urinalysis results and document results on appropriate forms.



Postprocedural considerations

When sending a urine specimen to the laboratory, check that the laboratory form is completed and that all relevant information is included. Take care not to contaminate the outside of the container or the request forms (Bishop 2008).

Reagent strips are a quick and easy method of testing urine and can provide valuable information about a patient's condition. However, patients should be made aware that further tests and investigations may be required if the urine sample indicates any abnormality (Steggall 2007).

Blood glucose

Definition

Blood glucose is the amount of glucose in the blood (Brooker 2010). See Table 12.8 for normal target ranges, which are expressed as millimoles per litre (mmol/L) (NICE 2004).

Table 12.8 Normal target blood glucose ranges

Children ≤18 years of age	Adults >18 years of age
Preprandial blood glucose levels 4–8 mmol/L	Preprandial blood glucose levels 4–7 mmol/L
Postprandial blood glucose levels of less than 10 mmol/L	Postprandial blood glucose levels of less than 9 mmol/L

Normally blood glucose levels stay within narrow limits throughout the day: 4–8 mmol/L. But they are higher after meals and usually lowest in the morning.

Anatomy and physiology

Blood glucose is regulated by insulin and glucogon. Insulin is synthesized and secreted from the beta cells within the islets of Langerhans found in the pancreas (Wallymahmed 2007). It is produced in response to high blood glucose levels (i.e. after meals) promoting the uptake and storage of sugar by fat and muscle tissue as glycogen (Crosser and McDowell 2007). Glucagon is secreted by the alpha cells in response to low blood glucose levels and results in the release of stored sugar back into the blood (Wallymahmed 2007). These processes maintain the blood glucose stability within the body (homoeostasis) (Crosser and McDowell 2007).

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is a heterogeneous disorder characterized by chronic hyperglycaemia due to lack of insulin or complete insulin deficiency or the body's resistance to it (Blake and Nathan 2004, WHO 2006). There are two main types of DM: type 1 and type 2. Type 1 is believed to be triggered by an autoimmune process causing destruction of the beta cells in the pancreas, which produce insulin, resulting in complete loss of insulin production. Type 2 diabetes is characterized by a resistance to insulin (Thornton 2009).

People with type 1 or type 2 diabetes will have total or partial disruption to this normal metabolic regulatory system. Type 1 diabetes normally occurs in the younger population (Gillibrand *et al.* 2009) and means that they will need replacement injected insulin to compensate (Crosser and McDowell 2007). Type 2 diabetes is strongly linked to obesity, age and family history (Gillibrand *et al.* 2009) but can also be a result of steroid use and pancreatic cancer (Schwab and Porter 2007). Both these can result in hyperglycaemia (high blood glucose) which may cause degenerative changes affecting the kidneys, nerves and eyes (Wallymahmed 2007), resulting in blindness, renal failure and neuropathies. Further complications including coronary artery and peripheral vascular disease, stroke, renal disease, central and peripheral

nerve damage, amputations and blindness are also serious consequences of uncontrolled blood glucose (Gillibrand *et al.* 2009, WHO 2006).

A diagnosis of diabetes can primarily be based on a fasting blood glucose of more than or equal to 7 mmol/L or a random plasma glucose of more than or equal to 11.1 mmol/L accompanied by symptoms associated with diabetes such as polydipsia, polyuria and weight loss (Blake and Nathan 2004, WHO 2006). These features of diabetes do not appear until 80% of beta cells are lost and so it is possible to reverse type 2 diabetes if it is picked up early enough (Schwab and Porter 2007).

Furthermore, during infection, major surgery or critical illness such as sepsis, pancreatitis or respiratory distress, counter□regulatory or stress hormones (adrenaline, noradrenaline, cortisol, growth hormone and glucagon) are released causing significant metabolic alterations. These hormones increase insulin resistance which decreases peripheral intake of glucose and also promotes glucogenesis by stimulating glycogen and fat breakdown, causing hyperglycaemia (Crosser and McDowell 2007). For this reason patients with diabetes may need treatment of insulin or antidiabetic medication during acute illness, in order to replicate this homoeostasis or improve the body's ability to produce insulin or use it.

Hyperglycaemia

Hyperglycaemia is defined as a random blood glucose of more than 11.1 mmol/L (WHO 2006). When insulin is deficient or absent as in type 1 or 2 diabetes, blood glucose levels will remain high after a meal, in times of illness or stress because it is unable to enter most cells (Wallymahmed 2007). Therefore cells are starved of glucose and the body reacts inappropriately by producing stress hormones that cause glycogenolysis (the breakdown of glycogen to release glucose), lipolysis (the breakdown of stored fat into glycerol and fatty acids) and gluconeogenesis (the conversion of glycerol and amino acids into glucose) (D'Hondt 2008, Marieb and Hoehn 2010) (see Figure 12.25).

Figure 12.25 Consequences of insulin deficiency.

Organs/tissue involved	Organ/tissue responses to insulin deficiency	Resulting conditions		Signs and symptoms
		In blood	In urine	
	Decreased glucose uptake and utilization	Hyperglycaemia	Glycosuria	
	Glycogenolysis		Osmotic diuresis	Polydipsia (and fatigue, weight loss)
	Protein catabolism and gluconeogenesis			Polyphagia
	Lipolysis and ketogenesis	Lipidaemia and ketoacidosis	Ketonuria Loss of Na^+, K^+; electrolyte and acid–base imbalances	Acetone breath Hyperpnoea Nausea/vomiting/ abdominal pain Cardiac irregularities Central nervous system depression; coma

= Muscle = Adipose tissue = Liver

This causes the blood glucose to rise further which results in a number of signs and symptoms. Water reabsorption in the kidneys becomes inhibited, resulting in frequent, large volumes of urine (polyuria). This will cause the person to feel excessive thirst (polydipsia) and may also result in extreme hunger (polyphagia). Polyuria and polydipsia will cause dehydration, a fall in blood pressure and electrolyte imbalance (Marini and Wheeler 2010). Moreover, the subsequent loss of sodium (hyponatraemia) and potassium (hypokalaemia) leads to muscle cramps, nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea, confusion, blurred vision, lethargy, cardiac events, coma and death.

Despite the excessive glucose in the body, the body cannot utilize it, so the body starts to break down its fat and protein stores for energy, which leads to high levels of fatty acids in the blood (lipidaemia) (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). This can also cause sudden and dramatic weight loss. These fatty acids are converted to ketones. They accumulate in the blood more quickly than they can be excreted or used and cause the blood pH to fall, resulting in ketoacidosis. Ketones will also be present in the urine. If ketoacidosis is allowed to continue it can become life threatening, disrupting all physiological processes, including oxygen transportation and heart activity and depression of the nervous system, leading to coma and death (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Reasons for hyperglyceamia include:

- inadequate doses of insulin

- stress
- infection/sepsis
- surgery
- medications, for example steroids
- nutritional support, for example parenteral nutrition (PN) or enteral nutrition.

It has been found that enteral and parenteral feeding contributes to hyperglycaemia in both patients with a diagnosis of diabetes and those without (McNight and Carter 2008). This is particularly true of patients receiving PN which bypasses the gut and therefore the incretin hormones that also help to maintain glucose homoeostasis (McNight and Carter 2008). Hyperglycaemia in response to steroids, for example dexamethasone, is another consideration and some researchers believe that their hypermetabolic action decreases glucose uptake, increases hepatic glucose production and may directly inhibit insulin release (Delaunay *et al.* 1997, Ogawa *et al.* 1992, Wallymahmed 2007). For this reason these patients will need blood glucose monitoring and potential changes to their insulin needs or to temporarily commence insulin.

Hypoglycaemia

Hypoglycaemia is described as a blood glucose level that is unable to meet the metabolic needs of the body (Marini and Wheeler 2010), normally lower than 4 mmol/L (Wallymahmed 2007). Often young, healthy individuals can be asymptomatic during this inadequate level of glucose in the blood but early symptoms can be sweating, tremor, weakness, nervousness, tachycardia and hypertension (Wallymahmed 2007), although these depend on not only the absolute blood glucose but also its rate of decline (Tortora and Derrickson 2009). Severe hypoglycaemia can lead to mental disorientation, convulsions, unconsciousness and death but a blood glucose less than 3 mmol can start to affect the brain.

The most common causes of hypoglycaemia are missed or delayed meals, not eating enough, exercise without carbohydrate compensation, too much glucose-lowering medication (e.g. insulin) and excessive alcohol (Wallymahmed 2007). Other causes could be infection, muscle

and fat depletion (e.g. anorexia), diarrhoea and vomiting, hepatic failure due to tumour or cirrhosis, salicylate poisoning, insulin-secreting tumours, ventilation, congestive heart failure, cerebral vascular accident, concurrent medications (beta-blockers, adrenaline) and surgery (D'Hondt 2008, Marini and Wheeler 2010).

Treatment should ideally be the administration of glucose. The route will depend on the consciousness level of the patient, their treatment and their ability to take oral substances (Marini and Wheeler 2010). If they can tolerate an oral or enteral intake they should be given a fast-acting carbohydrate such as 3–6 glucose tablets, 150 mL sugary fizzy drink or 50–100 mL Lucozade followed by a longer acting carbohydrate such as a sandwich or biscuits. If unconscious or unable to take food and drink then they can receive intramuscular glucagon or intravenous dextrose (Wallymahmed 2007). Blood glucose needs to be checked 5–10 minutes after treatment and then as necessary. Diabetic treatment should not be omitted because of a single episode of hypoglycaemia, but if it remains a consistent problem treatment should be reviewed (Wallymahmed 2007).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Blood glucose monitoring provides an accurate indication of how the body is controlling glucose metabolism and provides feedback to guide clinicians and patients about their treatment adjustments in order to achieve optimal glucose control. In the short term it can prevent hypo- and hyperglycaemia and in the long term it can significantly reduce the risk of prolonged, life-threatening microvascular complications (Rizvi and Saunders 2006).

Capillary blood glucose monitoring is preferred due to immediacy of results and its ability to inform us whether blood sugar is high or low, whereas urine testing only indicates instances of high blood sugar (Wallymahmed 2007). Capillary blood glucose monitoring is also referred to as point-of-care testing (POCT).

Indications

Conditions in which blood glucose monitoring will need to take place include the following.

- To make a diagnosis of diabetes indicated by signs and symptoms of polyuria, polydipsia, weightloss for type 1 or weight gain, family history for type 2 (WHO 2006).
- To monitor and manage the day-to-day treatment of known type 1 and type 2 diabetes (Wallymahmed 2007).
- In acute management of unstable diabetes, that is, evidence of hyperglycaemia, hypoglycaemia, diabetic ketoacidosis, hyperosmolar non-ketonic coma (once severe dehydration is corrected) (Wallymahmed 2007).
- Hospitalized patients with diabetes according to morbidity and treatment, that is, sliding scales, nutritional intake/support (McNight and Carter 2008, Wallymahmed 2007).
- Initial parenteral and enteral nutritional support of all patients (McNight and Carter 2008).
- Patients taking steroids and other drugs that cause raised blood glucose (Schwab and Porter 2007).

Contraindications

The following conditions can affect the accuracy of blood glucose monitoring and it may be necessary to obtain a venous sample for more accurate results (DH 2005).

- Peripheral circulatory failure and severe dehydration, for example diabetic ketoacidosis, hyperosmolor non-ketotic coma, shock, hypotension. These conditions cause peripheral shutdown, which can cause artificially low capillary readings.
- Haematocrit values above 55% may lead to inaccurate levels if the blood glucose level is more than 11 mmol/L.
- Intravenous infusion of ascorbic acid.
- Pre-eclampsia.
- Some renal dialysis treatments.
- Hyperlipidaemia: cholesterol levels above 13 mmol/L may lead to artificially raised capillary blood glucose readings.

Principles of care

Although capillary blood glucose monitoring is an essential part of diabetic management, it can have severe consequences if not done correctly (Wallymahmed 2007). The Department of Health issued a hazard warning in 1987 and a safety notice in 1996 highlighting the need for formal training and strict quality control (DH 1996).

Blood glucose monitoring needs to be performed regularly enough for patterns to be established on which treatment changes can be based (Walker 2004). 'Regularly' will vary in different circumstances and any unusual situation, for example illness, change of daily routine, hospitalization, will affect diabetes control and therefore require more frequent testing (Walker 2004). Generally people with type 1 diabetes will need to test blood glucose several times a day or more depending on treatment while those with type 2 will require less testing due to a lower risk of such great fluctuations in blood glucose levels (Goldie 2008). The following list provides guidance on frequency and timing of blood glucose monitoring depending on the type of diabetes and its treatment.

- *Type 1 diabetes:* four or more times daily; more often in unusual circumstances, for example impaired hypoglycaemia awareness, illness, terminal care.
- *Type 2 diabetes (intensive insulin treatment):* as type 1 diabetes.
- *Type 2 diabetes (conventional insulin):* once per day on once□daily insulin; twice per day on twice□daily insulin.
- *Type 2 diabetes (insulin and oral treatment):* one test a day if on daily insulin or more if control fluctuates.
- *Type 2 diabetes (diet and exercise; metformin +/− glitazone, glitazone +/− metformin):* routine testing not required as low risk of hypoglycaemia.
- *Type 2 diabetes (sulphonylurea alone or in combination with other oral hypoglycaemic agents):* test at least three times a week to detect any unknown hypoglycaemia.

(Owens *et al.* 2004)

In all the above types of diabetes more regular testing will be required in certain circumstances, for example illness, steroid treatment, changes

in diet, exercise and routine (Owens *et al.* 2004).

For all patients (irrespective of previous diabetic diagnosis) receiving nutritional support, that is enteral or parenteral feeding, blood glucose levels should be checked once or twice daily (or more if needed) until stable and then weekly (NICE 2008).

Methods of blood glucose testing

Blood glucose testing involves obtaining a drop of capillary blood and putting it on a testing strip that is read by a blood glucose meter (Goldie 2008). Most meters offer the option of using blood from the finger tips, palm of the hand, upper arm, forearm, calf or thigh (Dale 2006). The most commonly used site is the finger tip as the blood from this area responds rapidly to changes in blood glucose level, as does the blood from the palm of the hand, and therefore delivers the most accurate results (Dale 2006, Goldie 2008). However, the finger tips contain nerve endings which can become sore and less sensitive with frequent testing. The outer parts of the finger are less painful to prick and the thumb and forefinger should be used sparingly due to their continual use in apposition (Goldie 2008). It is important to rotate areas used for blood glucose testing to avoid infection from multiple stabbings, areas becoming toughened and to reduce pain (Roche Diagnostics 2004).

Anticipated patient outcomes

There have been several trials investigating the benefits of tight glycaemic control to near normal levels. D'Hondt (2008) refers to three randomized controlled trials in which intensive insulin treatment was used in hospitalized patients. The trials showed that intensive insulin treatment to achieve tight glycaemic control did result in reductions in length of stay, sepsis, dialysis and hospital mortality and morbidity (Furnary *et al.* 2000, Krinsley 2004, van den Berghe *et al.* 2001). Blood glucose testing is integral to achieving this tight control but there is currently no absolute conclusion for the standardization of this treatment (D'Hondt 2008). It does, however, indicate that keeping blood sugar levels as near normal as possible should be the ultimate aim of blood glucose testing.

Legal and professional issues

The DH report (1996) highlights that there must be standardization in training, reliability and quality control for blood glucose testing. In order to achieve this, the following aspects must be considered when selecting monitoring devices.

1. Equipment is designed for use by non□laboratory staff and is suitable for use in the clinical environment.

2. All equipment is compatible and will give reliable results.

3. The biochemistry laboratory is involved in the purchase and maintenance of the equipment. This may involve the purchase of one type of device from one company for the whole hospital, to reduce costs and provide standardization (Lowe 1995).

4. The equipment should be easy to use and the staff should be involved in the choice of device (Hall 2005).

5. The ongoing cost and maintenance of the device need to be considered, including buying strips, control solutions and replacement devices (Hall 2005).

6. Written standard operating procedures should be available and kept with the device.

7. Training is given to the operators of the equipment and records are kept of this. After training, the following learning outcomes should be demonstrated by the operator (MDA 2002):

– knowledge of the basic principles of measurement and normal ranges

– the proper use of equipment as stated by the operating instructions

– the consequences of incorrect use

– health and safety procedures for the collection of blood samples, that is, to prevent spillage and needlestick injuries

– the importance of complete documentation

– use of appropriate calibration and quality control techniques

– an understanding that blood sugar analysis should only be used as a guide to diagnosis and treatment and decisions should be made formally with laboratory results (DH 1996).

It is a hospital and government directive to keep records of training and quality testing results and the frequency of these quality control tests may vary according to manufacturer or hospital policy (Walker 2004). Independent quality control should be carried out with the collaboration of the biochemistry laboratory and external auditing of quality control should be undertaken, which may be provided by the company providing the equipment.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

All equipment should be checked for expiry dates (according to individual hospital trust policy) and successful calibration, and stored according to manufacturer's guidelines.

- *Blood glucose monitor*: a medical device which measures the concentration of glucose in a human blood sample using a blood glucose test strip (Roche Diagnostics 2004).
- *Testing strip*: strip with a small window used to collect a sample of the patient's blood to be inserted into the blood glucose monitor. The strips must be calibrated with the monitor prior to use (Roche Diagnostics 2004)
- *Lancet*: a device used to draw out a small amount of blood from the patient for testing of glucose level. Single-use lancets are used to minimize the risk of cross-infection and accidental needlestick injury and set to the correct depth according to the skin turgor (Roche Diagnostics 2004). Disposable lancets are advisable following an outbreak of hepatitis B in French and US hospitals (DH 1996, Roche Diagnostics 2004).

Specific patient preparations

Patients should be advised to wash their hands prior to testing or the test area should be cleaned with soap and water and then dried. Use of alcohol gel should be avoided to ensure non-contamination of the result. The patient should be encouraged to warm their hands before

sampling to encourage blood flow and to obtain an adequate amount of blood to cover the test strip (Dale 2006, Wallymahmed 2007).

Procedure guideline 12.8 Blood glucose monitoring

Essential equipment

- Blood glucose monitor
- Test strips
- Control solution
- Single□use safety lancets
- Gloves
- Cotton wool/gauze
- Sharps box

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Before taking the device to the patient, the monitor needs to be checked for the following: ■ Testing trips are in date and have not been left exposed to air ■ The monitor and test strips have been calibrated together ■ If a new pack of strips is required, the monitor is recalibrated ■ Internal quality control carried out in accordance to trust guidelines ■ Result of internal quality control is recorded in equipment log book and signed.	To ensure accuracy of the result and ensure patient safety (Roche Diagnostics 2004, C).
2 Explain procedure to the patient.	The patient should give consent to the procedure. Explanation may allay any fear or anxieties (NMC 2008b, C).

Procedure

3 Ask patient to sit or lie down.	To ensure the patient's safety and minimize the risks if they feel faint when blood is taken (Roche Diagnostics 2004, C).
4 Wash hands and put on gloves.	To minimize the risk of

	cross□infection and contamination (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
5 Take a single□use lancet and if it has depth settings, ensure the correct setting is used (most commonly middle one).	To minimize the risk of cross□infection and accidental needlestick injury (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Take a blood sample from the side of the finger using the lancet, ensuring that the site of piercing is rotated (see Action Figure 6). Avoid frequent use of index finger and thumb. Other areas may be used if finger or palm of hand unusable. The finger tip may need 'milking' from palm of hand towards finger to gain a large enough droplet of blood.	The side of the finger is less painful and easier to obtain a hanging droplet of blood. Sites are rotated to avoid infection from multiple stabbings, area becoming toughened and to reduce pain (Roche Diagnostics 2004, C).
7 Insert testing strip into blood glucose monitor and apply the blood to the testing strip. Some strips are hydrophilic and are dosed/filled from the side instead of dropping blood directly onto the strip. Ensure that the window on the test strip is entirely covered with blood (see Action Figure 7).	The window on the test strip allows verification of a correctly dosed strip which needs to be covered to ensure accurate results (Blake and Nathan 2004, E; Roche Diagnostics 2004, C).
8 Insert testing strip into blood glucose monitor.	To initiate the process of analysis. E
9 Dispose of lancet in a sharps container.	To reduce the risk of needlestick injury (Roche Diagnostics 2004, C).
10 Place gauze over puncture site and monitor for excess bleeding.	To ensure patient safety (Wallymahmed 2007, C).
Postprocedure	
11 Once result is obtained (see Action Figure 11), document and sign.	To ensure accuracy (NMC 2009, C; Roche Diagnostics 2004, C).
12 Report any unexpected results.	To ensure appropriate treatment and obtain optimal blood glucose range (Wallymahmed 2007, E).

Action Figure 6 Blood glucose taking: Step 1. Take a blood sample from the side of the fi nger using a lancet, ensuring that the site of piercing is rotated.

Action Figure 7 Blood glucose taking: Step 2. Insert the test strip into the blood glucose monitor and apply the blood to the test strip. Ensure that the window on the test strip is entirely covered with blood.

Action Figure 11 Blood glucose taking: Step 3. Read the result.

Problem-solving table 12.7 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 12.8)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Inaccurate results	User error including: ■ inadequate meter calibration ■ failure to code correctly ■ poor meter maintenance ■ incorrect user technique 50% of errors are due to an inadequate amount of blood on the test strip, which can lead to a falsely low reading (Blake and Nathan 2004). Out of date or incorrectly stored test strips are other common errors leading to lower glucose levels	Staff training and education about diabetes are essential in prevention of these errors (D'Hondt 2008)	Contact colleague to repeat test and if error persists, report glucose meter to technician and use another machine

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

If a true abnormal blood glucose result is detected then the appropriate action should be taken according to medical advice and hospital policy.

Education of patient and relevant others

Diabetes mellitus is a long□term, often lifelong condition affecting all aspects of a person's life. Ninety□five percent of diabetes care is self□care and all people with type 1 and type 2 diabetes should have access to self□monitoring. The nurse has a role in educating and promoting self□management of diabetes and advising patients on the type and frequency of monitoring based on individual clinical need so that patients can monitor and adjust their own treatment (Diabetes UK 2008). NICE and the Department of Health also recommend that people are given annual updates to ensure they are still able to perform tests accurately and learn about any new developments (DH 2008, NICE 2004, NICE 2008). Healthcare professionals should advocate a healthy lifestyle for patients with diabetes, including regulating blood pressure, low□sugar diet and exercise (NICE 2008).

Neurological observations

Definition

Neurological observations relate to the assessment and evaluation of the integrity and function of an individual's nervous system (Rowley and Fielding 1991).

Anatomy and physiology

The nervous system co□ordinates all body functions, enabling a person to adapt to changes in internal and external environments. It has two main types of neurones: the conducting cells and neuroglia, the supportive cells.

The central nervous system

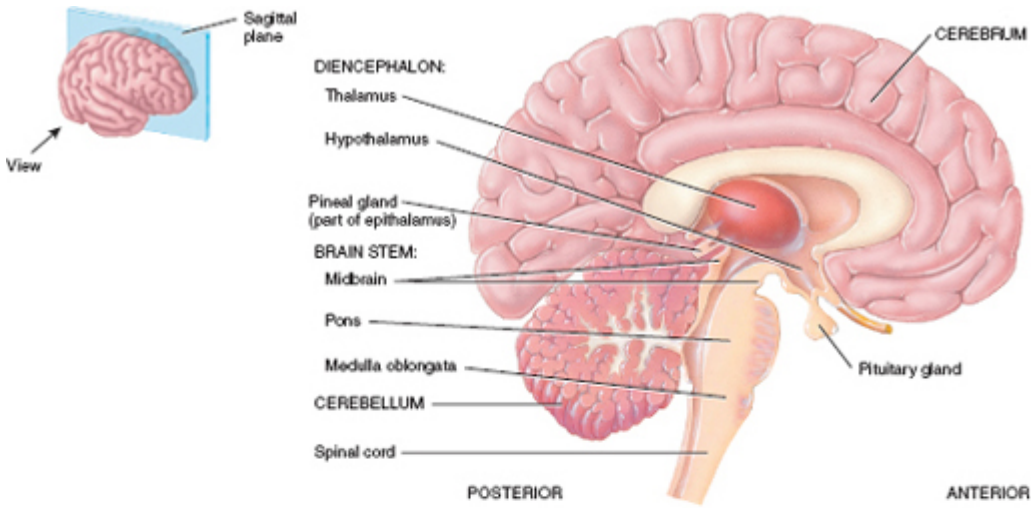
The central nervous system consists of the brain and spinal cord (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).

The brain

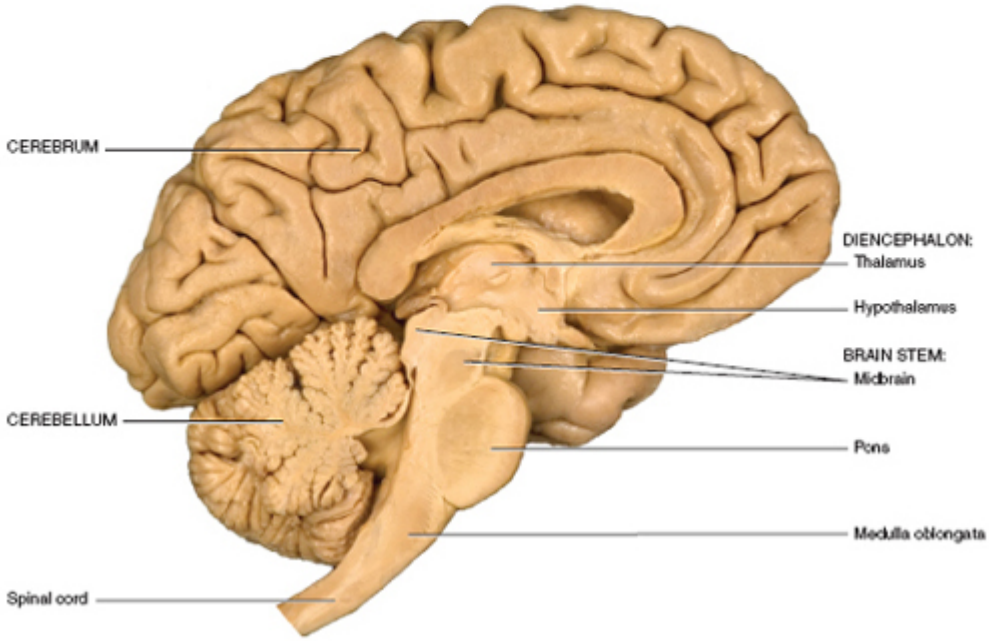
The brain has four regions: the cerebrum, the diencephalon, the brainstem and the cerebellum. The cerebral hemispheres contain the greatest mass of brain tissue. Each hemisphere is subdivided into frontal, parietal, temporal and occipital lobes, as seen in Figure 12.26.

Figure 12.26 The brain.

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



(a) Medial view of sagittal section



(b) Medial view of sagittal section

Each lobe has a particular function.

- The frontal lobe is the primary motor area of the cerebrum which influences personality and abstract reasoning. It also controls the skeletal muscle influencing voluntary movement.
- The parietal lobe is the primary sensory area which integrates the senses of touch and pain.
- The occipital lobe integrates visual stimuli and is primarily responsible for sight.

- The temporal lobe is responsible for olfactory (smell) and auditory (sound) areas (Clark 2005).

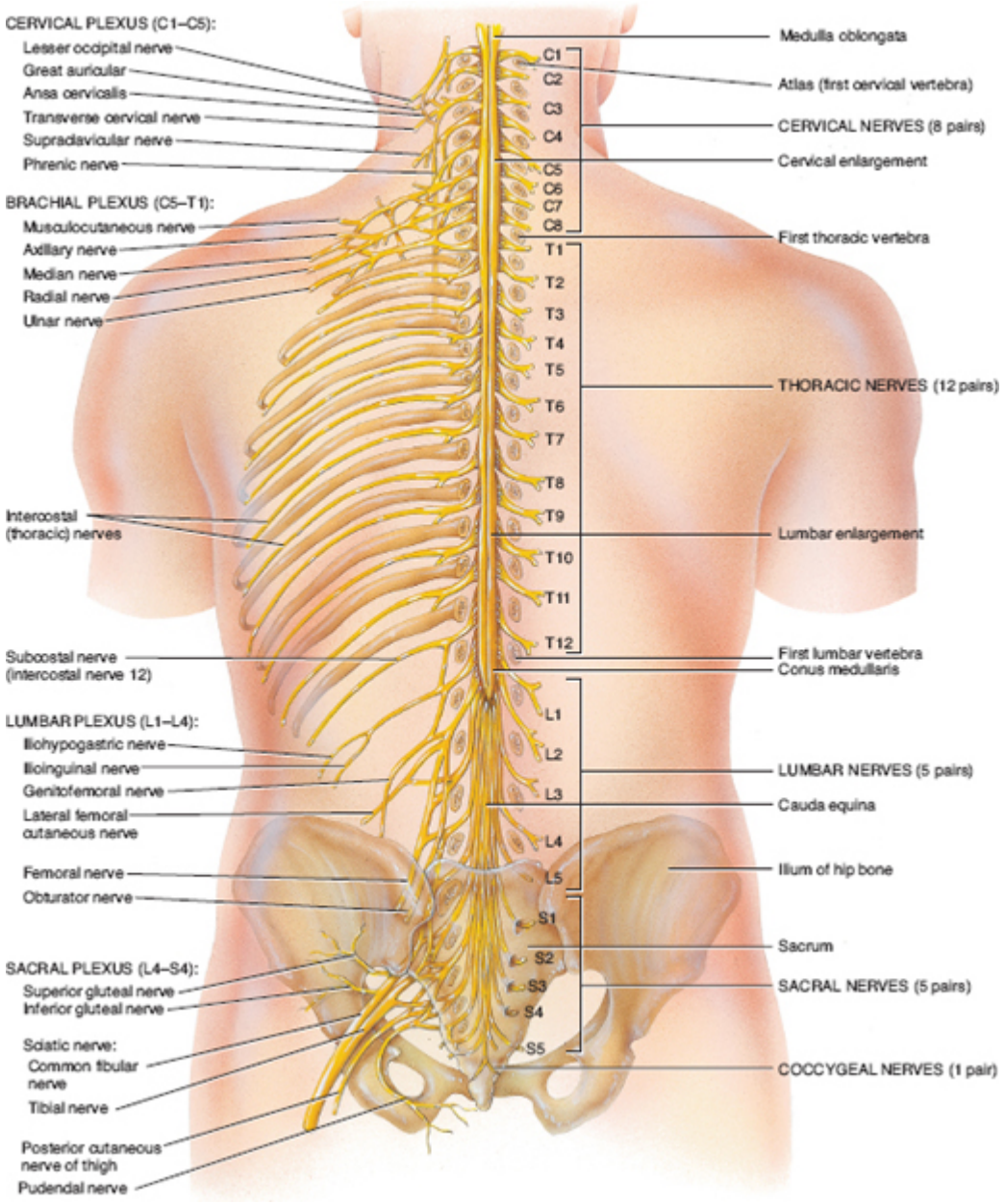
The spinal cord

This is a cylindrical mass of nerve tissue encased within the bony vertebral column, extending from the medulla to the first or second lumbar vertebra. It contains important motor and sensory nerve pathways that exit and enter the cord through anterior and posterior nerve roots and spinal and peripheral nerves. The spinal cord also mediates reflex activity of the deep tendon reflexes from the spinal nerves.

The spinal cord is divided into five segments: cervical, from C1 to C8; thoracic, from T1 to T12; lumbar, from L1 to L5; sacral, from S1 to S5; and coccygeal (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009) (see Figure 12.27).

Figure 12.27 External anatomy of the spinal cord and the spinal nerves (posterior view).

Reproduced from Tortora and Derrickson (2009).



The peripheral nervous system

The peripheral nervous system consists of the 12 pairs of cranial nerves and the spinal and peripheral nerves. Most of the peripheral nerves contain both motor and sensory fibres (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).

The cranial nerves

Twelve pairs of special nerves called cranial nerves emerge within the skull or cranium. Cranial nerves II–XII arise from the diencephalon and

the brainstem (see Table 12.9). Cranial nerves I and II are actually fibre tracts emerging from the brain. Some cranial nerves are limited to general motor or sensory functions, whereas others are specialized, producing smell, vision or hearing (I, II, VIII) (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).

Table 12.9 The functions of the cranial nerves

Number	Name	Function
I	Olfactory	Sense of smell
II	Optic	Vision
III	Oculomotor	Pupillary constriction, opening the eye, and most extraocular movements
IV	Trochlear	Downward, inward movement of the eye
VI	Abducens	Lateral deviation of the eye
V	Trigeminal	*Motor* – temporal and masseter muscles (jaw clenching), also lateral movement of the jaw *Sensory* – facial. The nerve has three divisions: (1) ophthalmic, (2) maxillary and (3) mandibular
VII	Facial	*Motor* – facial movements, including those of facial expression, closing the eye, and closing the mouth *Sensory* – taste for salty, sweet, sour and bitter substances on the anterior two□thirds of the tongue
VIII	Acoustic	Hearing (cochlear division) and balance (vestibular division)
IX	Glossopharyngeal	*Motor* – pharynx *Sensory* – posterior portions of the eardrum and ear canal, the pharynx, and the posterior tongue, including taste (salty, sweet, sour, bitter)
X	Vagus	*Motor* – palate, pharynx and larynx *Sensory* – pharynx and larynx
XI	Spinal accessory	*Motor* – the sternomastoid and upper portion of the trapezius
XII	Hypoglossal	*Motor* – tongue

The peripheral nerves

In addition to cranial nerves, the peripheral nervous system also includes spinal and peripheral nerves that carry impulses to and from the cord. Thirty□one pairs of nerves attach to the spinal cord: eight cervical, 12 thoracic, five lumbar, five sacral and one coccygeal. Most peripheral nerves contain both sensory and motor fibres (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009).

Related theory

Changes in neurological status can be rapid and dramatic or subtle, developing over minutes, hours, days, weeks or even months depending on the insult (Aucken and Crawford 1998). Therefore the frequency of neurological observations will depend upon the patient's condition and the rapidity with which changes are occurring or expected to occur.

Neurological function is assessed by observing five critical areas:

- level of consciousness
- pupillary activity
- motor function
- sensory function
- vital signs.

Level of consciousness

Consciousness is a state of awareness of self and the environment and is dependent upon two components:

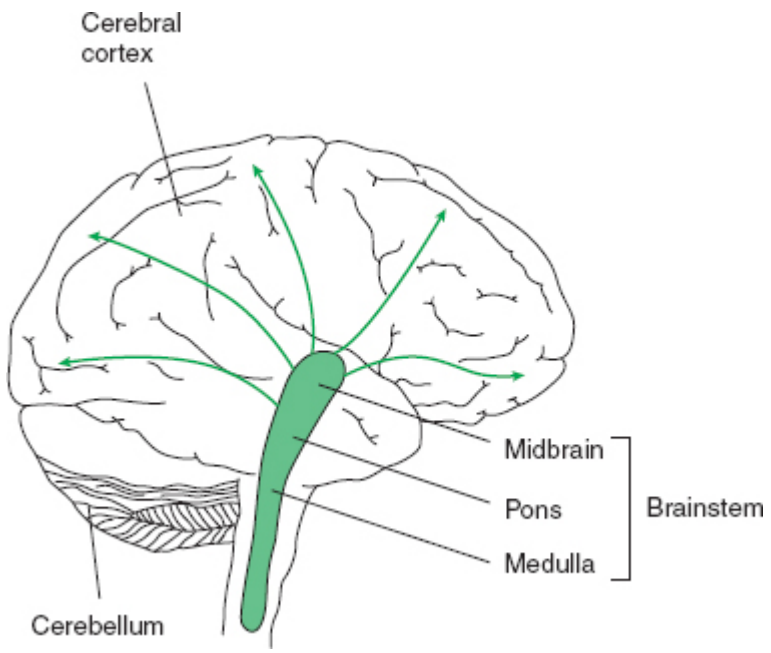
- arousability
- awareness.

(Carlson 2002a)

Arousability

This depends on the integrity of the reticular activating system (RAS) (Figure 12.28). The core of nuclei which make up the RAS extends from the brainstem to the thalamic nuclei in the cerebral hemispheres. Thus cognitive ability depends on the ability of the cerebral cortex to permit reciprocal stimulation and conscious behaviour. Consciousness therefore depends on the intactness of the cerebral cortex and the RAS and their ability to communicate effectively (Carlson 2002b, Fairley and McLernon 2005).

Figure 12.28 Reticular activating system.



Awareness

This requires an intact cerebral cortex to interpret sensory input and respond accordingly. This is the content of the consciousness (Bateman 2001, Scherer 1986).

Levels of consciousness may vary and are dependent on the location and extent of any neurological damage (Aucken and Crawford 1998). Previous and/or co□existing problems should be heeded when noting levels of consciousness, for example deafness, hemiparesis/hemiplegia.

Alterations in level of consciousness can vary from slight to severe changes, indicating the degree of brain dysfunction (Aucken and Crawford 1998). Consciousness ranges on a continuum from alert wakefulness to deep coma with no apparent responsiveness. Therefore, nurses must ensure that families and friends are involved at initial history taking and throughout care so as to chronicle accurately any change in neurological symptoms.

Terms such as ‘fully conscious’, ‘semi□conscious’, ‘lethargic’ or ‘stuporous’ used to describe levels of consciousness are subjective and open to misinterpretation. Thus, level of consciousness is often measured using the Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) (see Assessment and recording tools).

Application of painful stimuli

Painful stimuli should be employed only if the patient does not respond to firm and clear commands. It is always important that the least amount of pressure to elicit a response is applied so as to avoid bruising or paining the patient. As such, it should only be undertaken by experienced professionals.

As the ability to localize pain is lost, various responses may be observed when painful stimuli are applied (Carlson 2002a). It is important to note, when applying a painful stimulus, that the brain responds to central stimulation and the spine responds first to peripheral stimulation (Aucken and Crawford 1998).

Central stimulation can be applied in the following ways (Aucken and Crawford 1998, Carlson 2002a, Price 2002).

- *Trapezium squeeze*: using the thumb and two fingers, hold 5 cm of the trapezius muscle where the neck meets the shoulder and twist the muscle.
- *Supraorbital pressure*: running a finger along the supraorbital margin, a notch is felt. Applying pressure to the notch causes an ipsilateral (on that side) sinus headache. This method is not to be used if the facial or cranial bones are unstable, facial fractures are suspected, after facial surgery or if the assessor has sharp fingernails.
- *Sternal rub*: using the knuckles of a clenched fist to grind on the centre of the sternum. When applied adequately, marks are left on the skin as sternal tissue is tender and bruises easily. Please note that because of the danger of bruising, this method should not be used for repeated assessment but may be indicated if a decision as to whether to re-scan or alter management, for example proceed to surgery, is necessary.

Peripheral stimulation can be applied in the following way. Place the patient's finger between the assessor's thumb and a pencil or pen. Pressure is gradually increased over a few seconds until the slightest response is seen. Any finger can be used, although the third and fourth fingers are often most sensitive (Frawley 1990). Please note that because of the risk of bruising, pressure should not be applied to the nailbed. It must be remembered that nailbed pressure is a peripheral stimulus and

should only be used to assess limbs that have not moved in response to a central stimulus (Aucken and Crawford 1998).

It cannot be overemphasized that the above methods of patient assessment should only be undertaken by appropriately qualified and trained nurses.

Pupillary activity

Careful examination of the reactions of the pupils to light is an important part of neurological assessment (Table 12.10). The size, shape, equality, reaction to light (both direct and consensual responses, that is, the response from the eye that is not directly exposed to light) and position of the eyes should be noted. Are the eyes deviated upwards or downwards? Are both eyes conjugate (moving together) or dysconjugate (not moving together)? Impaired pupillary accommodation (adjustment of the eye resulting in pupil constriction or dilation) signifies that the midbrain itself may be suffering from pressure exerted by a swelling mass in the brain. Pupillary constriction and dilation are controlled by cranial nerve III (oculomotor) and any changes may indicate pressure on this nerve or brainstem damage (Figure 12.29) (Fuller 2004).

Figure 12.29 Pressure from expanding mass and/or cerebral oedema.

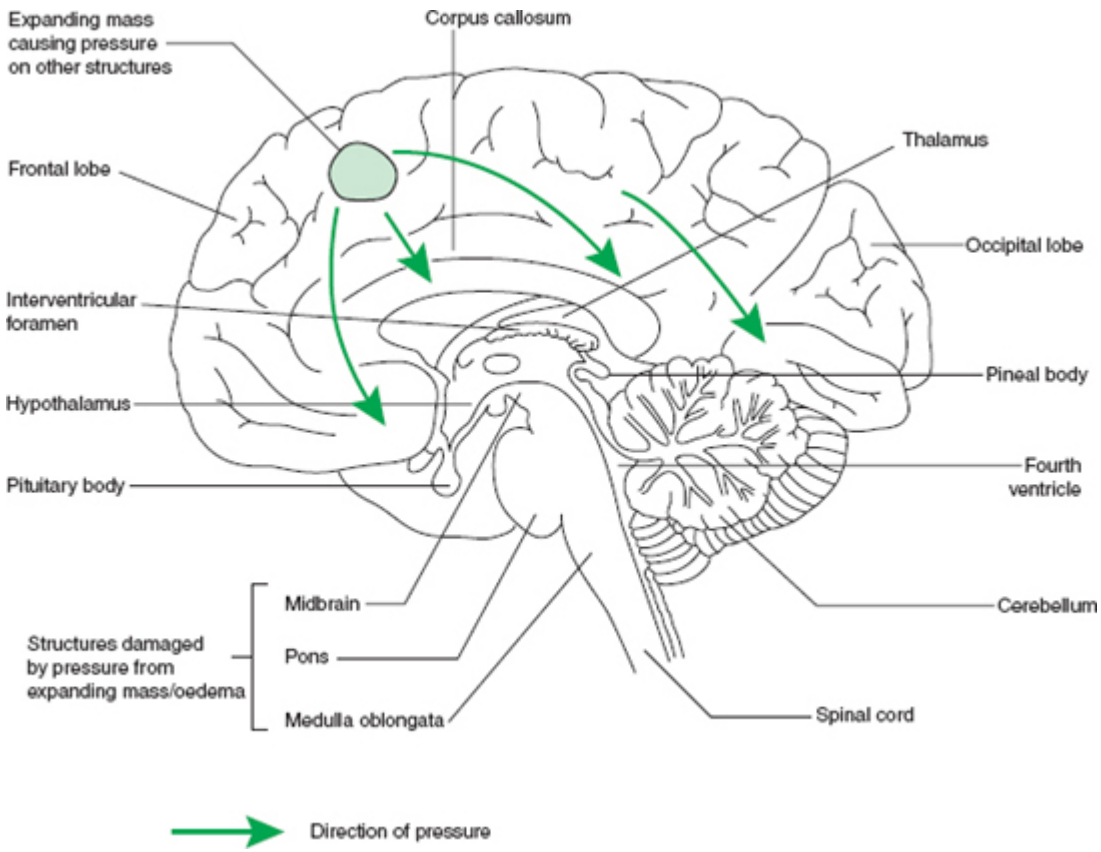


Table 12.10 Examination of pupils

Observation	Pupil size	Pupil reactiveness	Possible indication
Pupils equal	Pinpoint	—	Opiates or pontine lesion
	Small	Reactive	Metabolic encephalopathy
	Mid-sized	Fixed	Midbrain lesion
		Reactive	Metabolic lesion
Pupils unequal	Dilated	Unreactive	3rd nerve palsy
	Small	Reactive	Horner's syndrome

Reproduced with permission from Fuller (2004).

It should be noted that 'normal' visual function depends on a full and conjugate range of eye movements (involving cranial nerves III, IV, VI) in addition to normally functioning optic and oculomotor nerves and an intact visual centre in the occipital cortex (Aucken and Crawford 1998).

Motor function

Damage to any part of the motor nervous system can affect the ability to move. After assessing motor function on one side of the body, the contralateral muscle group should also be evaluated to detect asymmetry. Motor function assessment involves an evaluation of the following.

- Muscle strength.
- Muscle tone.
- Muscle co□ordination.
- Reflexes.
- Abnormal movements.

(Aucken and Crawford 1998, Fuller 2004)

Muscle strength

This involves testing the patient's muscle strength against the pull of gravity and then against one's own resistance. Changes in motor strength, especially between right and left sides, may indicate imminent neurological failure (Carlson 2002a).

Muscle tone

This involves flexing and extending the patient's limbs on both sides and noting how well such movements are resisted. Increased resistance would denote increased muscle tone and vice versa.

Muscle co□ordination

Any disease or injury that involves the cerebellum or basal ganglia will affect co□ordination. Assessment of hand and leg co□ordination can be achieved by testing the rapidity and rhythm of alternating movements and point□to□point movements.

Reflexes

Amongst the most important reflexes are blink, gag and swallow, oculocephalic and plantar.

- *Blink*: this is a protective reflex and can be affected by damage to the Vth cranial nerve (trigeminal) and the VIIth cranial nerve (facial).

Absence of the corneal reflex (Vth and VIIth cranial nerves) may result in corneal damage. Facial weakness (VIIth cranial nerve) will affect eye closure.

- *Gag and swallow*: damage to the IXth cranial nerve (glossopharyngeal) and Xth cranial nerve (vagus) may impair protective reflexes. These two cranial nerves are always assessed together as their functions overlap. Muscle innervation of the palate is from the vagus, while sensation is supplied by the glossopharyngeal nerves (Aucken and Crawford 1998, Fuller 2004).
- *Oculocephalic*: this reflex is an eye movement that occurs only in patients with a severely decreased level of consciousness. In conscious patients this reflex is not present. When the reflex is present, the patient's eyes will move in the opposite direction from the side to which the head is turned. However, in patients with absent brainstem reflexes, the eyes will appear to remain stationary in the centre. Assessing this reflex should not be carried out if there is suspected instability of the cervical spine as this reflex can involve head movement which could exacerbate any spinal injury (Aucken and Crawford 1998).
- *Plantar*: abnormalities of plantar reflex will help to locate the anatomical site of the lesion. Upgoing plantar (extension) reflex is termed 'positive Babinski' and indicates an upper motor neurone lesion. It should be noted that in babies under 1 year of age upgoing plantar is normal (Aucken and Crawford 1998).

Abnormal movements

When carrying out neurological observations, any abnormal movements such as seizures, tics and tremors must be noted.

Sensory functions

Constant sensory input enables an individual to alter responses and behaviour to suit the environment. When disease or injury damages the sensory pathways, the sensory responses are always affected. Any assessment of sensory function should include an evaluation of the following.

- Central and peripheral vision.
- Hearing and ability to understand verbal communication.
- Superficial sensations (light touch, pain) and deep sensations (muscle and joint pain, muscle and joint position).

(Carlson 2002a, Fuller 2004)

Visual acuity

The clarity or clearness of vision may be tested with a Snellen chart, which uses decreasing letter size, or newspaper prints, with and without glasses if worn.

Visual fields

Lesions at different points in the visual pathways affect vision (Table 12.11). It should be noted that loss of vision is always described with reference to the visual fields rather than the retinal fields (Weldon 1998).

Table 12.11 Visual pathways

Vital signs

It is recommended that assessments of vital signs should be made in the following order.

1. Respirations.
2. Temperature.
3. Blood pressure.
4. Pulse.

See relevant sections in this chapter.

Respirations

Of these four vital signs, respiratory patterns give the clearest indication of how the brain is functioning because the complex process of respiration is controlled by more than one area of the brain. Any disease or injury that affects these areas may produce respiratory changes. The rate, character and pattern of a patient's respiration must be noted. Abnormal respiratory patterns are listed in Table 12.12.

Table 12.12 Abnormal respiratory patterns

Type	Pattern	Significance
Cheyne–Stokes	Rhythmic waxing and waning of both rate and depth of respirations, alternating regularly with briefer periods of apnoea. Greater than normal respiration, that is 16–24 breaths per minute	May indicate deep cerebral or cerebellar lesions, usually bilateral; may occur with upper brainstem involvement
Central neurogenic hyperventilation	Sustained, regular, rapid respirations, with forced inspiration and expiration	May indicate a lesion of the low midbrain or upper pons areas of the brainstem
Apneustic	Prolonged inspiration with a pause at full inspiration; there may also be expiratory pauses	May indicate a lesion of the lower pons or upper medulla, hypoglycaemia or drug□induced respiratory depression
Cluster breathing	Clusters of irregular respirations alternating with longer periods of apnoea	May indicate a lesion of lower pons or upper medulla
Ataxic breathing	A completely irregular pattern with random deep and shallow respirations; irregular pauses may also appear	May indicate a lesion of the medulla

Constant re□evaluation of the patient's ability to maintain and protect their airway is a concern when there is evidence of reduced consciousness or coma (GCS score is less than 8). At this stage, muscles often become flaccid and the use of the recovery position may need to be considered. Patients who have deteriorated may require adjuncts to protect the airway and possibly artificial ventilation (Resuscitation Council 2006). Close working liaison with physiotherapists and speech and language therapists is important to minimize the danger of chest infections.

Temperature

Damage to the hypothalamus, the temperature□regulating centre, may result in grossly fluctuating temperatures (Fairley and McLernon 2005).

Blood pressure, pulse and respirations

Observations of blood pressure, pulse and respirations will provide evidence of increased intracranial pressure. When intracranial pressure is greater than 33 mmHg for even a short time, cerebral blood flow is significantly reduced. The resulting ischaemia stimulates the vasomotor centre, causing systemic blood pressure to rise. The patient becomes bradycardic and the respiratory rate falls. Abnormalities of blood pressure and pulse usually occur late, after the patient's level of

consciousness has begun to deteriorate. This change in the blood pressure was first described by Cushing and is known as the Cushing reflex (Carlson 2002b).

Evidence based approaches

Rationale

Indications

An accurate neurological assessment is essential in planning patient care. The information gained from a neurological assessment can be used in the following ways.

- To aid diagnosis (Douglas *et al.* 2005).
- As a baseline for observations (Crouch and Meurier 2005).
- To determine both subtle and rapid changes in an individual's condition (Crouch and Meurier 2005).
- To monitor neurological status following a neurological procedure (Mooney and Comeford 2003).
- To observe for deterioration and establish the extent of a traumatic head injury (Walsh 2006).
- To detect life threatening situations (Alcock *et al.* 2002).

Frequency of observations

The frequency and type of neurological observation are matters of much debate (Price 2002). It is therefore not possible to be prescriptive, as the frequency will depend on the underlying pathology and possible consequences. For example, in a patient with a head injury and a skull fracture, there may be bruising to the brain (contusion), cerebral oedema and an extradural haemorrhage which may increase in size. The bruising and oedema may develop over a couple of days and gradually give rise to subtle neurological changes, whilst the extradural haemorrhage can develop very quickly and cause profound neurological changes over a matter of a few hours. Therefore such a patient may require frequent 30 minute GCS observations for the first 6 hours followed by 1–

2□hourly observations for a further 48 hours. The nurse must be competent and take appropriate action if changes in the patient's neurological status occur, as well as reporting any subtle signs that may indicate deterioration, for example if the patient is incontinent, reluctant to eat, drink or initiate interaction. It should never be assumed that difficulty to rouse a patient is due to night□time sleep as even a deeply asleep patient with no focal deficit should respond to pain. Therefore if the patient requires an increased amount of stimulus to achieve the same GCS score, this may also be a pointer to subtle deterioration (Table 12.13) (Aucken and Crawford 1998, Waterhouse 2005).

Table 12.13 Frequency of observations

Category	Frequency	Rationale
All patients diagnosed as suffering from neurological or neurosurgical conditions. Unconscious patients (including ventilated and anaesthetized)	At least 4□hourly, affected by the patient's condition. Frequency indicated by patient's condition	To monitor the condition of the patient so that any necessary action can be instigated. To monitor the condition closely and to detect trends so that appropriate action may be taken

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

The following equipment may be used as part of the neurological assessment.

- *Pen torch*: used to assess the reaction of the pupils to light and consensual light reflex (Aucken and Crawford 1998).
- *Tongue depressor*: device used to depress the tongue to allow for examination of mouth and throat (Fuller 2004).
- *Patella hammer*: a tendon hammer used to strike the patella tendon below the knee to assess the deep knee jerk/reflex (Fuller 2004).
- *Neuro tips*: sharp instrument used to apply pressure and test for superficial sensations to pain. Can be replaced by a safety pin or other suitable sharp object (Fuller 2004).
- *Snellen chart*: an eye chart used to measure visual acuity.
- *Ophthalmoscope*: instrument used to examine the eye.

Assessment and recording tools

The initial assessment of a patient should include a history (taken from relatives or friends if appropriate), noting changes in mood, intellect, memory and personality, since these may be indicators of a long-standing problem, for example brain tumour (Belford 2005).

The GCS, first developed by Teasdale and Jennett (1974), is a common way to assess a patient's conscious level. It forms a quick, objective and easily interpreted mode of neurological assessment. The GCS measures arousal, awareness and activity, by assessing three different areas of the patient's behaviour: eye opening, verbal response and motor response (Dawes and Durham 2007).

Each area is allocated a score, enabling objectivity, ease of recording and comparison between recordings. The total sum provides a score out of 15. A score of 15 indicates a fully alert and responsive patient, whereas a score of 3 (the lowest possible score) indicates unconsciousness (Dawes and Durham 2007). When used consistently, the GCS provides a graphical representation that shows improvement or deterioration of the patient's conscious level at a glance (see Figure 12.30 and Table 12.14).

Figure 12.30 The Glasgow Coma Scale.

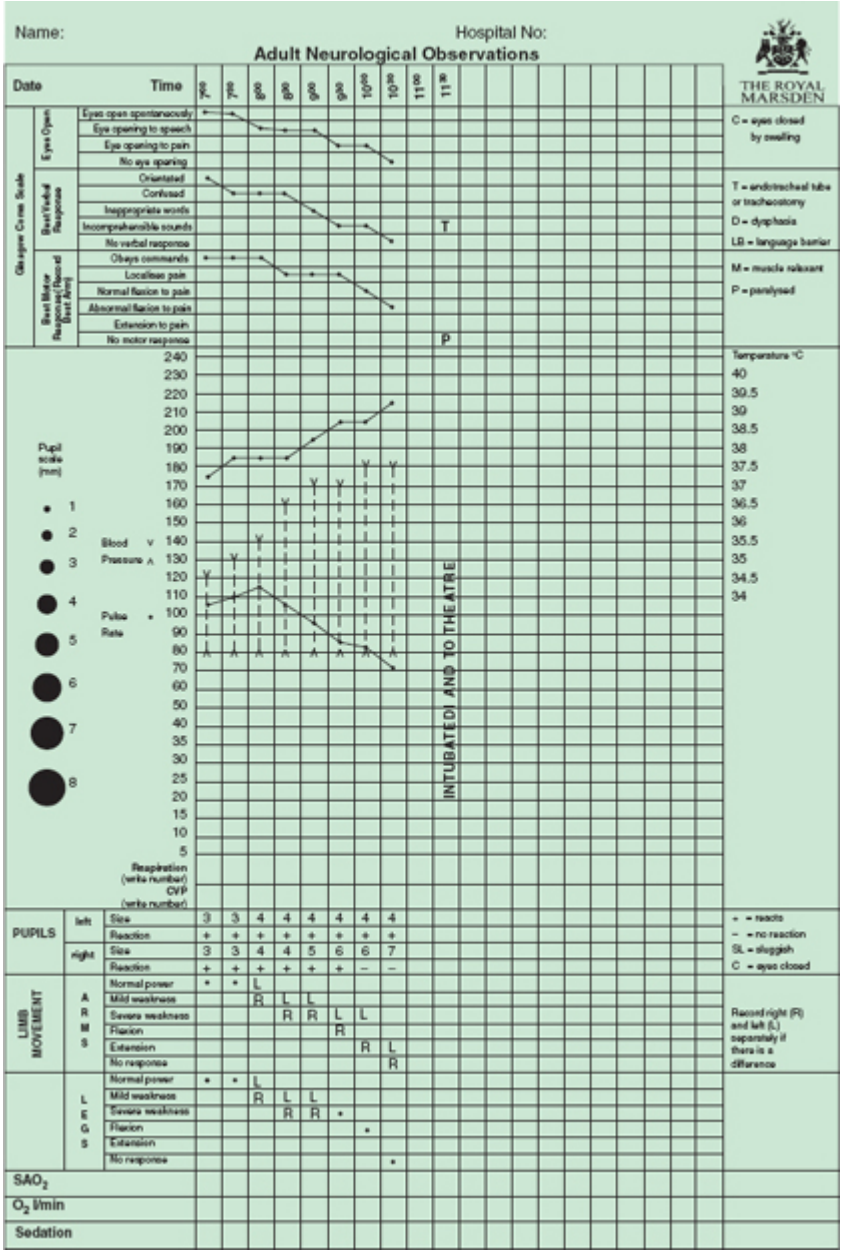


Table 12.14 Scoring activities of the Glasgow Coma Scale. Scores are added, with the highest score 15 indicating full consciousness

Category	Score	Response
Eye opening		
Spontaneous	4	Eyes open spontaneously without stimulation
To speech	3	Eyes open to verbal stimulation (normal, raised or repeated)
To pain	2	Eyes open with painful/noxious stimuli
None	1	No eye opening regardless of level of stimulation
Verbal response		
Orientated	5	Able to give accurate information regarding time, person and place

Confused	4	Able to answer in sentences using correct language but cannot answer orientation questions appropriately
Inappropriate words	3	Uses incomprehensible words in a random or disorganized fashion
Incomprehensible sounds	2	Makes unintelligible sounds, for example moans and groans
None	1	No verbal response despite verbal or other stimuli
Best motor response		
Obeys commands	6	Obeys and can repeat simple commands, for example arm raise
Localizes to pain	5	Purposeful movement to remove painful stimuli
Normal flexion	4	Withdraws extremity from source of pain, for example flexes arm at elbow without wrist rotation in response to painful stimuli
Abnormal flexion	3	Decorticate posturing (flexion of arms, hyperextension of legs) spontaneously or in response to noxious stimuli
Extension	2	Decerebrate posturing (limbs extended and internally rotated) spontaneously or in response to noxious stimuli
None	1	No response to noxious stimuli. Flaccid limbs

Aucken and Crawford (1998), Carlson (2002a).

Assessment of level of consciousness

Assessment using the GCS involves three phases (Teasdale and Jennett 1974).

1. Eye opening.
2. Evaluation of verbal response.
3. Evaluation of motor response.

Evaluation of eye opening

Eye opening indicates that the arousal mechanism in the brain is active. Eye opening may be: spontaneous; to speech, for example spoken name; to painful stimulus; or not at all. Arousal (eye opening) is always the first measurement undertaken when performing the GCS, as without arousal, cognition cannot occur (Aucken and Crawford 1998). It must, however, be remembered that swollen or permanently closed eyes (e.g. after tarsorrhaphy surgery in which the upper and lower eyelids are partially or wholly joined to protect the cornea; Martin 2003) will not open and do not necessarily indicate a falling conscious level.

Evaluation of verbal response

- *Orientated*: the patient is aware of self and environment.
- *Confused*: the patient's responses to questions are incorrect and patient is unaware of self or environment.
- *Inappropriate words:* the patient responds using intelligible words which are unsuitable as responses.
- *Incomprehensible*: the patient may moan and groan without recognizable words.
- *Absent*: the patient does not speak or make sounds at all.

The absence of speech may not always indicate a falling level of consciousness. The patient may not speak English (though they can still speak), may have a tracheostomy or may be dysphasic. The patient may have a motor (expressive) dysphasia, and therefore be able to understand but be unable to find the right word, or a sensory (receptive) dysphasia, being unable to comprehend what is being told to them (Aucken and Crawford 1998, Shah 1999). At times patients with expressive dysphasia may also have receptive problems; therefore it is important to make an early referral to a speech and language therapist. The nurse should also bear in mind that some patients may need a lot of stimulation to maintain their concentration to answer questions, even though they can answer them correctly. It is, therefore, important to note the amount of stimulation that the patient required as part of the baseline assessment (Aucken and Crawford 1998). If a patient cannot follow the instruction due to a language barrier or unconsciousness, observe spontaneous movements and note how strong they appear. Then, if necessary, apply painful stimuli.

Evaluation of motor response

To obtain an accurate picture of brain function, motor response is tested by using the upper limbs because responses in the lower limbs reflect spinal function (Aucken and Crawford 1998). The patient should be asked to obey commands; for example, the patient should be asked to squeeze the examiner's hands (both sides) with the best motor response recorded. The nurse should note power in the hands and the patient's ability to release the grip. This is because some patients with cerebral

dysfunction, for example those with diffuse brain disease, may show an involuntary grasp reflex where stimulation of the palm of their hand causes them to grip (Aucken and Crawford 1998). If movement is spontaneous, the nurse should note which limbs move, and how, for example whether the movement is purposeful.

Response to painful stimulus may be:

- *localized*: the patient moves the other hand to the site of the stimulus
- *flexor*: the patient's limb flexes away from pain
- *extensor*: the patient's limb extends from pain
- *flaccid*: no motor response at all.

(Aucken and Crawford 1998, Shah 1999)

Procedure guideline 12.9 Neurological observations and assessment

Essential equipment

- Pen torch
- Thermometer
- Sphygmomanometer
- Tongue depressor
- Patella hammer
- Neuro tips
- Alcohol handrub

Optional equipment

- Low□linting swabs
- Two test tubes
- Snellen chart
- Ophthalmoscope

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Inform the patient of the procedure, whether conscious or not, and explain and discuss the observations.	Sense of hearing is frequently unimpaired even in unconscious patients. It is important, as far as is possible, that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008b, C).

Procedure	
2 Wash and dry hands.	To minimize the risk of cross infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Talk to the patient. Note whether they are alert and giving full attention or restless or lethargic and drowsy. Ask the patient who they are, the correct day, month and year, where they are and to give details about family.	To establish whether the patient's level of consciousness is deteriorating. If the patient is becoming disorientated, changes will occur in this order: **(a)** disorientation as to time **(b)** disorientation as to place **(c)** disorientation as to person (Aucken and Crawford 1998, R5).
4 Ask the patient to squeeze and release your fingers (include both sides of the body) and then to stick out their tongue.	To evaluate motor responses and to ensure that the responses are equal and are not reflexive (Carlson 2002a, R5).
5 If the patient does not respond, apply painful stimuli. Suggested methods have been discussed earlier.	Responses grow less purposeful as the patient's level of consciousness deteriorates. As the condition worsens, the patient may no longer localize pain and respond to it in a purposeful way (Aucken and Crawford 1998, R5).
6 Record the findings precisely, recording the patient's best response. Write exactly what stimulus was used, where it was applied, how much pressure was needed to elicit the response, and how the patient responded.	Vague terms can be easily misinterpreted. Accurate recording will enable continuity of assessment and comply with NMC guidelines (NMC 2009, C).
7 Extend both hands and ask the patient to squeeze your fingers as hard as possible. Compare grip and strength.	To test grip and ascertain strength. Record best arm in GCS chart to reflect best outcome (Carlson 2002a, R5).
8 Darken the room, if necessary, or shield the patient's eyes with your hands.	To enable a better view of the eye. E
9 Ask the patient to open their eyes. If the patient cannot do so, hold the eyelids open and note the size, shape and equality of the pupils.	To assess the size, shape and equality of the pupils as an indication of brain damage. Normal pupils are spherical, usually at mid□position and have a diameter ranging from 2 to 5 mm (Shah 1999, R5).
10 Hold each eyelid open in turn. Move torch towards the patient from the side. Shine it directly into the eye. This should cause the pupil to constrict promptly.	To assess the reaction of the pupils to light. A normal reaction indicates no lesions in the area of the brainstem regulating pupil constriction (Aucken and Crawford 1998, R5).
11 Hold both eyelids open but shine the light into one eye only. The pupil into which the light is not shone should also constrict.	To assess consensual light reflex. Prompt constriction indicates intact connections between the brainstem areas regulating pupil constriction (Scherer 1986, R5).
12 Record unusual eye movements.	To assess cranial nerve damage (Aucken and Crawford 1998, R5).
13 Note the rate, character and pattern of the	Respirations are controlled by different areas

patient's respirations.	of the brain. When disease or injury affects these areas, respiratory changes may occur (Carlson 2002a, R5).
14 Take and record the patient's temperature at specified intervals.	Damage to the hypothalamus, the temperature□regulating centre in the brain, will be reflected in grossly abnormal temperatures (Fairley and McLernon 2005, R5).
15 Take and record the patient's blood pressure and pulse at specified intervals.	To monitor signs of increased intracranial pressure. Hypertension and bradycardia usually occur late, after the patient's level of consciousness has begun to deteriorate. Call for medical assistance as soon as it is evident that there is a deterioration in the patient's level of consciousness (Scherer 1986, R5; Tortora and Derrickson 2009, R5).
16 Ask the patient to close the eyes and hold the arms straight out in front, with palms upwards, for 20–30 seconds. The weaker limb will 'fall away'.	To show weakness and difference in limbs (Carlson 2002a, R5).
17 Stand in front of the patient and extend your hands. Ask the patient to push and pull against your hands. Ask the patient to lie on their back in bed. Place the patient's leg with knee flexed and foot resting on the bed. Instruct the patient to keep the foot down as you attempt to extend the leg. Then instruct the patient to straighten the leg while you offer resistance.	To test arm strength. If one arm drifts downwards or turns inwards, it may indicate hemiparesis. To test flexion and extension strength in the patient's extremities by having the patient push and pull against your resistance (Carlson 2002a, R5).
18 Flex and extend all the patient's limbs. Note how well the movements are resisted.	To test muscle tone (Carlson 2002a, R5).
19 Ask the patient to pat the thigh as fast as possible. Note whether the movements seem slow or clumsy. Ask the patient to turn the hand over and back several times in succession. Evaluate co□ordination. Ask the patient to touch the back of the fingers with the thumb in sequence rapidly.	To assess hand and arm co□ordination. The dominant hand should perform better (Carlson 2002a, R5).
20 Extend one of your hands towards the patient. Ask the patient to touch your index finger, then their nose, several times in succession. Repeat the test with the patient's eyes closed.	To assess hand and arm co□ordination/cerebellar function (Carlson 2002a, R5).
21 Ask the patient to place a heel on the opposite knee and slide it down the shin to the foot. Check each leg separately.	To assess leg co□ordination (Fuller 2004, R5).
22 Ask the patient to look up or hold the eyelid open. With your hand, approach the eye unexpectedly or touch the eyelashes.	To test the corneal (blink) reflex (Fuller 2004, R5).
23 Ask the patient to open the mouth, and hold down the tongue with a tongue depressor. Touch the back of the pharynx, on each side, with a low□linting swab.	To test the gag reflex (Fuller 2004, R5).

24 Ask the patient to lie on their back in bed. Place your hand under the knee, raise and flex it. Tap the patellar tendon. Note whether the leg responds.	To assess the deep tendon knee□jerk reflex (Fuller 2004, R5).
25 Stroke the lateral aspect of the sole of the patient's foot. If the response is abnormal (Babinski's response), the big toe will dorsiflex and the remaining toes will fan out.	To assess for upper motor neurone lesion (Fuller 2004, R5).
26 Ask the patient to read something aloud. Check each eye separately. If vision is so poor that the patient is unable to read, ask the patient to count your upraised fingers or distinguish light from dark.	To test for visual acuity (Fuller 2004, R5).
27 Occlude one ear with a low□linting swab. Stand a short way from the patient. Whisper numbers into the open ear. Ask for feedback. Repeat for the other ear.	To test hearing and comprehension (Fuller 2004, R5).
28 Ask the patient to close the eyes. Using the point of a Neuro tip (sharp instrument for applying pressure), stroke the skin. Use the blunt end occasionally. Ask patient to tell you what is felt. See if the patient can distinguish between sharp and dull sensations.	To test superficial sensations to pain (Fuller 2004, R5).
29 Ask the patient to close the eyes. Fill two test tubes with water: one warm, one cold. Touch the patient's skin with each test tube and ask patient to distinguish between them.	To test superficial sensations to temperature (Fuller 2004, R5).
30 Stroke a low□linting swab lightly over the patient's skin. Ask the patient to say what they feel.	To test superficial sensations to touch (Fuller 2004, R5).
31 Ask the patient to close the eyes. Hold the tip of one of the patient's fingers between your thumb and index finger. Move it up and down and ask the patient to say in which direction it is moving. Repeat with the other hand. For the legs, hold the big toe.	To test proprioception. (Bickley and Szilagyi 2009, E). *Proprioception* is the receipt of information from muscles and tendons in the labyrinth that enables the brain to determine movements and the position of the body (Tortora and Derrickson 2009, E).
Postprocedure	
32 Document the observation recordings on the patient's observation chart, record only what you see and do not be influenced by previous observations.	To ensure adequate records and enable continued care of the patient (NMC 2009, C).
33 Report any abnormal findings to medical staff.	To prevent further deterioration. E
34 Clean the equipment after use.	To prevent cross□infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Problem-solving Table 12.8 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 12.9)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Language difficulties or dysphasia	Difficulty making accurate assessment of consciousness	Knowledge of language difficulties	Use of interpreter for language barrier Consideration when taking into account overall assessment process
Patient unable to open eye(s)	Result of swelling	Unable to prevent	Does not necessarily indicate a low or falling conscious level

Postprocedural considerations

Documentation

A validated observation chart is the most common method of monitoring and recording neurological observations. Although the layout may differ from chart to chart, in essence all neurological observation charts measure and record the same clinical information, including the level of consciousness, pupil size and response, motor and sensory response and vital signs (Dawes and Durham 2007).

Observation charts ensure a systematic approach to collecting and analysing essential information regarding a patient's condition. Such charts also act as a means of communication between nurses and other healthcare professionals (Dawes and Durham 2007).

References

Adam, S.K. and Osborne, S. (2005) *Critical Care Nursing: Science and Practice*, 2nd edn. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Alcock, K., Clancy, M. and Crouch, R. (2002) Physiological observations of patients admitted from A and E. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (34), 33–37.

Angerami, E.L.S. (1980) Epidemiological study of body temperature in patients in a teaching hospital. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, **17**, 91–99.

Aucken, S. and Crawford, B. (1998) Neurological observations, in *Neuro□Oncology for Nurses* (ed. D. Guerrero). Whurr, London, pp. 29–65.

Bateman, D. (2001) Neurological assessment of coma. *Journal of Neurology Neurosurgery and Psychiatry*, **71** (Suppl 1), i13–i17.

Bayer Diagnostics (1997) *Urinary Tract Infection*. Technical Information Bulletin No. 8. Bayer Diagnostics, Newbury.

Bayer Diagnostics (2006) *Your Practical Guide to Urine Analysis*. Bayer Diagnostics, Newbury.

Bayham, E., Fucile, F., McKenzie, N. and O'Hara, O (1996) *Clinical Considerations for Use of First Temp R and First Temp Tympanic Thermometers*, Sherwood Davis and Geck, St Louis, MO.

BCSH (1999) The administration of blood and blood components and the management of transfused patients. *Transfusion Medicine*, **9**, 227–238.

Beachy, W. (2009) Acid□base balance, in *Egan's Fundamentals of Respiratory Care*, 9th edn (eds R.L. Wilkins, J.K. Stoller and R.M. Kacmarek). Mosby Elsevier, St Louis, MO.

Belford, K. (2005) Central nervous system cancers, in *Cancer Nursing: Principles and Practice*, 6th edn (eds C. Henke□Yarbro, M. Frogge and M. Goodman). Jones and Bartlett, Sudbury, MA, pp. 1089–1136.

Bern, L., Brandt, M., Mbelu, N. *et al.* (2007) Differences in blood pressure values obtained with automated and manual methods in medical inpatients. *MEDSURG Nursing*, **16** (6), 356–361.

BHS (2006) *Factfile 01/2006 – Blood pressure measurement*. www.bhsoc.org/bhf_factfiles/bhf_factfile_jan_2006.doc.

Bickley, L.S., and Szilagyi, P.G. (2009) *Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking*, 10th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, London.

Bishop, T. (2008) Urine testing. *Practice Nurse*, **35** (12), 18–20.

Blake D.R. and Nathan D.M. (2004) Point□of□care testing for diabetes. *Critical Care Nurse*, **27** (2), 150–161.

Booker, R. (2008) Pulse oximetry. *Nursing Standard*, **22** (30), 39–41.

Booker, R. (2009) Interpretation and evaluation of pulmonary function tests. *Nursing Standard*, **23** (39), 46–56.

Bongers, T, and O'Driscoll, B.R. (2006) Effects of equipment and technique on peak flow measurements. *BMC Pulmonary Medicine*, **6** (14), 1–6.

Braun, S.K., Preston, P. and Smith, R.N. (1998) Getting a better read on thermometry. *Registered Nurses*, **61** (3), 57–60.

Bridges, E. (2009) Noninvasive measurements of body temperature in critically ill patients. *Critical Care Nurse*, **29** (3), pp 94–97.

British Committee for Standards in Haematology (1999) The administration of blood and blood components and the management of the transfused patient. *Transfusion Medicine*, **9**, 227–238.

British Thoracic Society/Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (2009) *British Guideline on the Management of Asthma: Quick Reference Guide*. British Thoracic Society, London.

Brooker, C. (2010) *Mosby's Dictionary of Medicine, Nursing and Health Professions*. Mosby Elsevier, London.

Buist, A.S., Vollmer, W.M., Wilson, S.R. *et al.* (2006) A randomized clinical trial of peak flow versus symptom monitoring in older patients with asthma. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, **74** (10), 1077–1087.

Burke, K. (1996) The tympanic membrane thermometer in paediatrics: a review of the literature. *Accident and Emergency Nursing*, **4** (4), 190–193.

Camm, A.J. and Bunce, N. (2009) Cardiovascular disease, in *Clinical Medicine*, 7th edn (eds P. Kumar and M. Clarke). Elsevier, London.

Carlson, B.A. (2002a) Neurologic clinical assessment, in *Critical Care Nursing: Diagnosis and Management* (eds L. Urden, K. Stacy and M. Lough), 4th edn. Mosby, St Louis, MO, pp. 645–657.

Carlson, B.A. (2002b) Neurologic anatomy and physiology, in *Critical Care Nursing: Diagnosis and Management*, 4th edn (eds L. Urden, K. Stacy and M. Lough). Mosby, St Louis, MO, pp. 617–44.

Carroll, M. (2000) An evaluation of temperature measurement. *Nursing Standard*, **14** (4), 39–43.

Chalmers, J.D., Singanayagam, A. and Hill, A.T. (2008) Systolic blood pressure is superior to other haemodynamic predictors of outcome in community acquired pneumonia. *Thorax*, **63**, 698–702.

Chummun, H. (2009) Understanding changes in cardiovascular pathophysiology. *British Journal of Nursing*, **18** (6), 359–364.

Clark, R. K. (2005) *Anatomy and Physiology: Understanding the Human Body*. Jones and Bartlett Publishers, London.

Consensus Committee of the American Autonomic Society and the American Academy of Neurology (1996) Consensus statement on the definition of orthostatic hypotension, pure autonomic failure, and multiple system atrophy. *Neurology*, **46** (5), 1470.

Cook, R. (1996) Urinalysis: ensuring accurate urine testing. *Nursing Standard*, **10** (46), 49–55.

Cretikos, M.A., Bellomo, R., Hillman, K. *et al.* (2008) Respiratory rate: the neglected vital sign. *Medical Journal of Australia*, **188** (11), 657–659.

Critical Care Stakeholders Forum and National Outreach Forum (2007) *Clinical Indicators for Critical Care Outreach Services*. www.dh.gov.uk.

Crosser, A. and McDowell, J.R.S. (2007) Nurses' rationale for blood glucose monitoring in critical care. *British Journal of Nursing*, **16** (10), 576–580.

Crouch, A. and Meurier, C. (2005) *Vital Notes for Nurses: Health Assessment*. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Cuddy, M. (2004) The effects of drugs on thermoregulation. *Advanced Practice in Acute Critical Care*, **15** (2), 238–253.

Curran, R. (2009) The vital signs, part 1: blood pressure. *EMS*, **38** (3), 62–66.

Dale, L. (2006) Make a point about alternate site blood glucose sampling. *Nursing*, **36** (2), 52–53.

Davies, A, and Moores, C. (2003) *The Respiratory System*. Churchill Livingstone, London.

Dawes, E. and Durham, L. (2007) Monitoring and recording patients' neurological observations. *Nursing Standard*, **22** (10), 40–45.

Delaunay, F., Khan, A., Cintra, A. *et al.* (1997) Pancreatic beta cells are important targets for diabetogenic effects of glucocorticoids. *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, **100**, 2094–2098.

DH (1996) *Extra□Laboratory Use of Blood Glucose Meters and Test Strips: Contraindications, Training and Advice to Users*. Medical Devices Agency Adverse Incident Centre Safety Notice 9616. Department of Health, London.

DH (2000) *Comprehensive Critical Care: A Review of Adult Critical Care Services*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2001) *The Nursing Contribution to the Provision of a Comprehensive Critical Care for Adults. A Strategic Programme of Action*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2005) *Point of Care Testing. Blood Glucose Meters. Advice for Health Care Professionals*. Department of Health, London. www.mhra.gov.uk.

DH (2005b) *Saving Lives: A Delivery Programme to Reduce Healthcare Associated Infection Including MRSA: Skills for Implementation*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/publications.

DH (2008) *Five Years On: Delivering the Diabetes National Service Framework*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk.

D'Hondt, J.N. (2008) Continuous intravenous insulin ready for prime time. *Diabetes Spectrum*, **21** (4), 255–261.

Diabetes UK (2008) *Position statements: self□monitoring of blood glucose*. www.diabetes.org.uk.

Docherty, B. (2000) Temperature recording. *Professional Nurse*, **16** (3), 943.

Docherty, B. (2002) Cardiorespiratory physical assessment for the acutely ill: 1. *British Journal of Nursing*, **11** (11), 750–758.

Docherty, B. (2005) The arteriovenous system: part one, the anatomy. *Nursing Times*, **101** (34), 28–29.

Docherty, B. (2006) Homeostasis part 3: temperature regulation. *Nursing Times*, **102** (16), 21–21.

Docherty, B. and Coote, S. (2006) Monitoring the pulse as part of the track and trigger. *Nursing Times*, **102** (43), 28–29.

Douglas, G., Nicol, F. and Robertson, C. (2005) *MacLeod's Clinical Examination*, 11th edn. Churchill Livingstone, London.

Edwards, L. and Manley, K.L. (1998) *Care of Adults in Hospital*. Edward Arnold, London.

Edwards S. (1997) Measuring temperature. *Professional Nurse*, **13** (2), 55–57.

Eguchi, K., Yacoub, M., Jhalani, J. *et al.* (2007) Consistency of blood pressure differences between the right and left arms. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, **167** (4), 388–393.

Einthoven, W. (1902) Galvanometrische registratie van het menschilijk electrocardiogram, in *Herinneringsbundel* (ed. S.S. Rosenstein). Eduard Ijdo, Leiden.

Evans, J. and Kenkre, J. (2006) Current practice and knowledge of nurses regarding patient temperature measurement. *Journal of Medical Engineering and Technology*, **30** (4), 218–223.

Fairley, S. and McLernon S. (2005) Neurological problems, in *Critical Care Nursing: Science and Practice*, 2nd edn (eds S. Adam and S. Osborne). Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 285–327.

Foxall, F. (2009) *Haemodynamic Monitoring and Manipulation: An Easy Learning Guide*. M & K Publishing, Keswick.

Fraise, A.P. and Bradley, T. (eds) (2009) *Ayliffe's Control of Healthcare associated Infection: A Practical Handbook,* 5th edn. Hodder Arnold, London.

Frawley, P. (1990) Neurological observations. *Nursing Times*, **86** (35), 29–34.

Frew, A.J., and Holgate, S.T. (2009) Respiratory disease, in *Clinical Medicine*, 7th edn (eds P. Kumar and M. Clarke). Elsevier, London.

Fuller, G. (2004) *Neurological Examinations Made Easy*, 3rd edn. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

Furnary, A.P., Chaugle, H., Kerr, K.J. and Grunkmeier, G.L. (2000) Postoperative hyperglycaemia prolongs length of stay in diabetic CABG patients. *Circulation*, **102**, 11–556.

Gallimore, D. (2004) Reviewing the effectiveness of tympanic thermometers. *Nursing Times*, **100** (32), 32–35.

Gibson, P.G., Powell, H., Wilson, A. *et al.* (2002) Self management education and regular practitioner review for adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **1**, CD001117.

Gilbert, M., Barton, A.J. and Counsell, C.M. (2002) Comparison of oral and tympanic temperatures in adult surgical patients. *Applied Nursing Research*, **15** (1), 42–47.

Gilbert, R. (2006) Taking a midstream specimen of urine. *Nursing Times*, **102** (18), 22–23.

Gillibrand, W., Holdich, P. and Covill, C. (2009) Managing type 2 diabetes: new policy and interventions. *British Journal of Community Nursing*, **14** (7), 285–291.

Goldhill, D.R., White, S.A. and Sumner, A. (1999) Physiological values and procedures in the 24 h before ICU admission from the ward. *Anaesthesia*, **54** (6), 529–534.

Goldie L. (2008) Insulin injection and blood glucose monitoring. *Practice Nurse*, **36** (2), 11–14.

Goodacre, S. and Irons, R. (2002) ABC of clinical electrocardiography: atrial arrhythmias. *British Medical Journal*, **324**, 594–597.

Gorelick, M.H., Stevens, M.W., Schultz, T. and Scribano, P.V. (2004) Difficulty in obtaining peak expiratory flow measurements in children with acute asthma. *Pediatric Emergency Care*, **20** (1), 22–26.

Gosselink, R., Bott, J., Johnson, M. *et al.* (2008) Physiotherapy for adult patients with critical illness: recommendations of the European Respiratory Society and European Society of Intensive Care Medicine Task Force on Physiotherapy for Critically Ill Patients. *Intensive Care Medicine*, **34** (7), 1188–1199.

Hall G. (2005) Choosing and teaching the use of blood glucose monitors. *Practice Nurse*, **30** (7), 46–50.

Hansen, E.F., Vestbo, J., Phanareth, K. *et al.* (2001) Peak flow as a predictor of overall mortality in asthma and chronic pulmonary disease. *American Journal of Respiratory Critical Care Medicine*, **163**, 690–693.

Hasler, M. and Cohen, J. (1982) The effect of oxygen administration on oral temperature assessment. *Nursing Research*, **31**, 265–268.

Heindenreich, T. and Giuffe, M. (1990) Postoperative temperature measurement. *Nursing Research*, **39** (3), 153–155.

Higgins, D. (2008) Patient assessment part 5 – measuring pulse. *Nursing Times*, **104** (11), 24–25.

Higginson, R, and Jones, B. (2009) Respiratory assessment in critically ill patients: airway and breathing. *British Journal of Nursing*, **18** (8), 456–461.

Hinds, C.J. and Watson, D. (2009) Intensive care medicine, in *Clinical Medicine*, 7th edn (eds P. Kumar and M. Clarke). Elsevier, London.

Hodgetts, T., Kenward, G., Vlackonikolis, I. *et al.* (2002) The identification of risk factors for cardiac arrest and formulation of activation criteria to alert a medical emergency team. *Resuscitation*, **54**, 125–131.

Hudek, C.M., Gallo, B.M. and Morton, P.G. (1998) *Critical Care Nursing: A Holistic Approach*, 7th edn. Lippincott, New York.

Hunter, J., and Rawlings□Anderson, K. (2008) Respiratory assessment. *Nursing Standard*, **22** (41), 41–43.

Jensen, B.N., Jeppesen, L., Mortensen, B. *et al.* (1994) The superiority of rectal thermometry to oral thermometry with regard to accuracy. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **20**, 660–665.

Jevon, P. (2007) Cardiac monitoring part 4 – monitoring the apex beat. *Nursing Times*, **103** (4), 28–29.

Jevon, P. and Jevon, M. (2001) Using a tympanic thermometer. *Nursing Times*, **97** (9), 43–44.

Kacmerek, R.M., Dimas, S. and Mack, C.W. (2005) *The Essentials of Respiratory Care*, 4th edn. Elsevier Mosby, St Louis, MO.

Kenney, W.L, and Munce, T.A. (2003) Invited review: aging and human temperature regulation. *Journal of Applied Physiology*, **95**, 2598–2603.

Khorshid, L., Eser, I., Zaybak, A. and Yapucu, U. (2005) Comparing mercury□in□glass, tympanic and disposable thermometers in measuring body temperature in healthy young people. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **14** (4), 496–500.

Kisiel, M. and Perkins, C. (2006) Nursing observations: knowledge to help prevent critical illness. *British Journal of Nursing*, **15** (19), 1052–1056.

fKnies, R. (2003) Temperature measurement in acute care: the who, what, where, when, why, and how? www.enw.org/Research□Thermometry.htm.

Krikler, S. (1990) Pyrexia: what to do about temperatures. *Nursing Standard*, **4** (25), 37–38.

Krinsley, J.S. (2004) Effect of an intensive glucose management protocol on the mortality of critically ill adult patients. *Mayo Clinical Proceedings*, **79**, 992–1000.

Kumar, P. and Clarke, M. (2009) *Clinical Medicine*, 7th edn. Elsevier Saunders, London.

Lahrmann, H., Cortelli, P., Hilz, M., Mathias, C. J., Struhal, W. and Tassinari, M. (2006) EFNS guidelines on the diagnosis and management of orthostatic hypotension. *European Journal of Neurology*, **13** (9), 930–936.

Lees, L. and McAuliffe, M. (2010) Venous thromboembolism risk assessments in acute care. *Nursing Standard*, **24** (22), 35–41.

Le Frant, J.Y., Muller, L., de la Coussaye, J. *et al.* (2003) Temperature measurement in intensive care patients: comparison of urinary bladder, oesophageal, rectal, axillary and inguinal methods versus pulmonary artery core method. *Intensive Care Medicine*, **29**, 414–418.

Lemery, R., Guiraudon, G. and Veinot, J. (2003) Anatomic description of Bachmann's bundle and its relation to the atria septum. *American Journal of Cardiology*, **91** (12), 1482–1485.

Levick, J.R. (2010) *An Introduction to Cardiovascular Physiology*, 5th edn. Hodder Arnold, London.

Levine, D. (2007) Respiratory monitoring, in *Critical Care Nursing: Synergy for Optimal Outcomes* (eds R. Kaplow and S.R. Hardin). Jones and Bartlett, London.

Levine, J., Munden, J. and Thompson, G. (2008) *ECG Interpretation Made Incredibly Easy*. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, London.

Lim□Levy, F. (1982) The effect of oxygen inhalation on oral temperature. *Nursing Research*, **31**, 150–152.

Lowe, L. (1995) Accuracy in ward□based blood glucose monitoring. *Nursing Times*, **91** (13), 44–45.

Marieb, E.M. and Hoehn, K. (2010) *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th edn. Pearson Benjamin Cummings, San Francisco.

Marini, J. and Wheeler, A. (2010) *Critical Care Medicine: The Essentials*, 4th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Martin, E.A. (2003) *Oxford Concise Colour Medical Dictionary*, 3rd edn. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

McClelland, D.B.L. (ed.) (2007) *Handbook of Transfusion Medicine*, 4th edn. Stationery Office, London.

McKnight, K.A. and Carter, L. (2008) From trays to tube feedings: overcoming the challenges of hospital nutrition and glycemic control. *Diabetes Spectrum*, **21** (4), 233–240.

MDA (2002) Self monitoring in type 2 diabetes mellitus: a meta□analysis. *Diabetic Medicine*, **11**, 755–761.

Metcalfe, H. (2000) Recording a 12□lead electrocardiogram – 1. *Nursing Times*, **96** (19), 43–44.

MHRA (2001) Tissue Necrosis Caused by Pulse Oximeter Probes. SN 2001 (08). www.mhra.gov.uk/home.

MHRA (2004) Medical Device ALERT: Peak expiratory flow meter (PFM) all makes. www.mhra.gov.uk/home.

MHRA (2005) Report of the Independent Advisory Group on Blood Pressure Monitoring in Clinical Practice. www.mhra.gov.uk/home.

Minor, D.G. and Waterhouse, J.M. (1981) *Circadian Rhythms and the Human*. Wright, Bristol.

Moore, T. (2004a) Pulse oximetry, in *High Dependency Nursing Care: Observation, Intervention and Support* (eds T. Moore and P. Woodrow). Routledge, London.

Moore, T. (2004b) Respiratory assessment, in *High Dependency Nursing Care: Observation, Intervention and Support* (eds T. Moore and P. Woodrow). Routledge, London.

Moore, T. (2007) Respiratory assessment in adults. *Nursing Standard*, **21** (49), 48–56.

Nakamura, K., Tanaka, M., Motohashi, Y. and Maeda, A. (1997) Oral temperatures in the elderly in nursing homes in summer and winter in relation to activities of daily living. *International Journal of Biometerology*, **40** (2), 103–106.

Navas, S. (2003a) Atrial fibrillation: part 2. *Nursing Standard*, **17** (38), 47–54.

Navas, S. (2003b) Atrial fibrillation: part 1. *Nursing Standard*, **17** (37), 45–54.

Neff, J., Ayoub, J., Longman, A. and Noyes, A. (1989) Effect of respiratory rate, respiratory depth, and open versus closed mouth breathing on sublingual temperature. *Research in Nursing and Health*, **12**, 195–202.

Neno, R. (2005) Hypothermia: assessment, treatment and prevention. *Nursing Standard*, **19** (20), 47–52.

NICE (2004) Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of Type 1 diabetes in children, young people and adults. Guideline Number 15. www.nice.org.uk.

NICE (2006) *Hypertension: Management of Hypertension in Adults in Primary Care (a Partial Update of NICE Clinical Guideline 18)*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2007a) *Venous Thromboembolism: Reducing the Risk of Venous Thromboembolism (Deep Vein Thrombosis and Pulmonary Embolism) in Inpatients Undergoing Surgery*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2007b) *Acutely Ill Patients in Hospital: Recognition of and Response to Acute Illness in Adults in Hospital*, National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London.

NICE (2008) Guideline for type 2 diabetes. www.nice.org.uk/CG66.

NMC (2008a) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc□uk.org.

NMC (2008b) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc□uk.org/Nurses□and□midwives/Advice□by□topic/A/Advice/Consent/.

NMC (2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

Noble, R., Johnson, R., Thomas, A. and Bass, P. (2010) *The Cardiovascular System: Basic Science and Clinical Conditions*, 2nd edn. Churchill Livingston Elsevier: Edinburgh

O'Brien, E., Asmar, R., Beilin, L. *et al.*, on behalf of the European Society of Hypertension Working Group on Blood Pressure Monitoring (2003) European Society of Hypertension recommendations for conventional, ambulatory and home blood pressure measurement. *Journal of Hypertension*, **21**, 821–848.

O'Driscoll, B.R., Howard, L.S., Davison, A.G., on behalf of the British Thoracic Society (2008) *BTS Guideline for Emergency Oxygen use in Adult Patients*. www.brit□thoracic.org.uk.

Ogawa, A., Johnson, J.H., Ohneda, M. *et al.* (1992) Roles of insulin resistance and beta□cell dysfunction in dexamethasone□induced diabetes. *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, **90**, 497–509.

O'Toole, S. (1997) Alternatives to mercury thermometers. *Professional Nurse*, **12** (11), 783–786.

Owens D., Barnett A.H., Pickup J. *et al.* (2004) Blood glucose self□monitoring in type 1 and type 2 diabetes: reaching a multidisciplinary consensus. *Diabetes and Primary Care*, **6** (1), 8–16.

Parkman, S. (2007) Respiratory anatomy, physiology and assessment, in *Critical Care Nursing: Synergy for Optimal Outcomes* (eds R. Kaplow

and S.R. Hardin). Jones and Bartlett, London.

Patton, K.T. and Thiobodeau, G.A. (2009) *Anatomy and Physiology*, 7th edn. Mosby Elsevier, St Louis, MO.

Pelter, M. (2008) Electrocardiographic monitoring in the medical surgical setting: clinical implications, bases, lead configurations, and nursing implications. *MEDSURG Nursing*, **17** (6), 421–428.

Philip, J.P. and Kowery, P.R. (2001) *Cardiac Arrhythmia: Mechanisms, Diagnosis and Management*, 2nd edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Price, T. (2002) Painful stimuli and the Glasgow Coma Scale. *Nursing Critical Care*, **7** (1), 17–23.

Quanjer, P.H., Lebowitz, M.D., Gregg, I. *et al.* (1997) Peak expiratory flow: conclusions and recommendations of a Working Party of the European Respiratory Society. *European Respiratory Journal*, **10** (24), 2s–8s.

Rawlings Anderson, K. and Hunter, J. (2008) Monitoring pulse rate. *Nursing Standard*, **22** (31), 41–43.

Reddel, H.K. (2006) Peak flow monitoring in clinical practice and clinical asthma trials. *Current Opinion in Pulmonary Medicine*, **12** (1), 75–81.

Resuscitation Council UK (2005) *Resuscitation Guidelines*. RCUK Publications, London.

Resuscitation Council (UK) (2006) Airway management and ventilation, in *Advanced Life Support*, 5th edn. Resuscitation Council (UK), London, pp. 41–57.

Rigby, D. and Gray, K. (2005) Understanding urine testing. *Nursing Times*, **101** (12), 60–61.

Rizvi A.A. and Saunders M.B. (2006) Assessment and monitoring of glycemic control in primary care: monitoring techniques, record keeping, meter downloads, tests of average glycemia and point of care evaluation. *Journal of American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, **18**, 11–21.

Roberts, A. (2002) The role of anatomy and physiology in interpreting ECGs. *Nursing Times*, **98** (20), 34–36.

Roche Diagnostics (2004) *Accu□Chem Safe T□Pro Plus: Information Leaflet*. Roche, East Sussex.

Rowley, G. and Fielding, K. (1991) Reliability and accuracy of the Glasgow Coma Scale with experienced and inexperienced users. *Lancet*, **337** (8740), 535–538.

Ruffin, R. (2004) Peak expiratory flow (PEF) monitoring. *Thorax*, **59**, 913.

Samples, F., van Cott, M., Long, C. *et al.* (1985) Circadian rhythms: basis for screening for fever. *Nursing Research*, **34** (6), 377–379.

Scherer, P. (1986) The logic of coma. *American Journal of Nursing*, **86**, 542–549.

Schwab, M. and Porter, M. (2007) Inpatient diabetes mellitus in the oncology setting. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, **11** (4), 489–492.

SCST (2006) Clinical guidelines by consensus recording a standard 12□lead electrocardiogram an approved methodology. Society for Cardiology Science and Technology. www.scst.org.uk.

Shah, S. (1999) Neurological assessment. *Nursing Times*, **13**, 49–56.

Sharber, J. (1997) The efficacy of tepid sponge bathing to reduce fever in young children. *American Journal of Emergency Medicine*, **15** (2), 188–192.

Sharman, J. (2007) Clinical skills: cardiac rhythm recognition and monitoring. *British Journal of Nursing*, **16** (5), 306–311.

Shelledy, D.C. (2009) Initiating and adjusting ventilatory support, in *Egan's Fundamentals of Respiratory Care*, 9th edn (eds R.L. Wilkins, J.K. Stoller and R.M. Kacmarek). Mosby Elsevier, St Louis, MO.

Simpson, H. (2006) Respiratory assessment. *British Journal of Nursing*, **15** (9), 484–488.

Steele, J.R. and Hardin, S.R. (2007) Hypertension, in *Critical Care Nursing: Synergy for Optimal Outcomes* (eds R. Kaplow and S.R. Hardin). Jones and Bartlett, London.

Steggall, M. (2007) Urine samples and urinalysis. *Nursing Standard*, **22** (14), 42–45.

Stergiou, G.S., Karpettas, N., Atkins, N. and O'Brien, E. (2010) European Society of Hypertension International Protocol for the validation of blood pressure monitors: a critical review of its application and rationale for revision. *Blood Pressure Monitoring*, **15** (1), 39–48.

Stevenson, T. (2004) Achieving best practice in routine observation of hospital patients. *Nursing Times*, **100** (30), 34–35.

Teasdale, G. and Jennett, B. (1974) Assessment of coma and impaired consciousness: a practical scale. *Lancet*, **2**, 81–84.

Thornton, H. (2009) Type 1 diabetes, part 1: An introduction. *British Journal of Nursing*, **4** (5), 223–227.

Tonnesen, P., Carrozzi, L., Fagerstrom, K. *et al.* (2007) Smoking cessation in patients with respiratory diseases: a high priority, integral component of therapy. *European Respiratory Journal*, **29**, 390–417.

Torrance, C. and Elley, K. (1998) Urine testing 2 – urinalysis. *Nursing Times*, **94** (5), 1–2.

Torrance, C. and Semple, M. (1998) Recording temperature. *Nursing Times*, **94** (2), 1–2.

Tortora G.J. and Derrickson B. (2009) *Principles of Anatomy and Physiology*, 12th edn. John Wiley, New Jersey.

Trim, J. (2005) Monitoring temperature. *Nursing Times*, **101** (20), 30–31.

Turner, M., Burns, S., Chaney, C. *et al.* (2008) Measuring blood pressure accurately in an ambulatory cardiology clinic setting: do patient position and timing really matter? *MEDSURG Nursing*, **17** (2), 93–98.

Valler-Jones, T. and Wedgbury, K. (2005) Measuring blood pressure using the mercury sphygmomanometer. *British Journal of Nursing*, **14** (3), 145–150.

Van Den Berghe, G., Wouters, P., Weekers, F. *et al.* (2001) Intensive insulin therapy in critically ill patients. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **345** (19), 1359–1367.

Van Groningen, L., Adiyaman, A., Elving, L. *et al.* (2008) Which physiological mechanism is responsible for the increase in blood pressure during leg crossing? *Journal of Hypertension*, **26** (3), 433–437.

Van Staaij, B.K., Rovers, M., Schilder, A. and Hoes, A.W. (2003) Accuracy and feasibility of daily infrared tympanic membrane temperature measurements in identification of fever in children. *International Journal of Pediatric Otorhinolaryngology*, **67**, 1091–1097.

Verrij, E.A., Nieuwenhuizen, L. and Bos, W.J.W. (2009) Raising the arm before cuff inflation increases the loudness of Korotkoff sounds. *Blood Pressure Monitoring*, **14** (6), 268–273.

Wagner, D. (2006) Unplanned perioperative hypothermia. *AORN Journal*, **83** (2), 470–476.

Walker, R. (2004) Capillary blood glucose monitoring and its role in diabetes management. *British Journal of Community Nursing*, **9** (10), 438–440.

Wallymahmed, M. (2007) Capillary blood glucose monitoring. *Nursing Standard*, **21** (38), 35–38.

Walsh, M. (2002) *Watson's Clinical Nursing and Related Sciences*, 6th edn. Bailliére Tindall, London.

Walsh, M. (2006) *Nurse Practitioners: Clinical Skills and Professional Issues*, 2nd edn. Butterworth□Heinemann, Edinburgh.

Waterhouse, C. (2005) The Glasgow Coma Scale and other neurological observations. *Nursing Standard*, **19** (33), 56–64.

Watson, R. (1998) Controlling body temperature in adults. *Nursing Standard*, **12** (20), 49–55.

Weber, J. and Kelley, J. (2003) *Health Assessment in Nursing*, 2nd edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Weldon, K. (1998) Neurological observations, in *Neuro□Oncology for Nurses* (ed. D. Guerrero). Whurr, London, pp. 1–28.

Weller, B (2005) *Bailliére's Nurses' Dictionary for Nurses and Healthcare Workers*, 24th edn. Elsevier, Edinburgh.

Wheatley, I. (2006) The nursing practice of taking level 1 patient observations. *Intensive and Critical Care Nursing*, **22**, 115–121.

WHO (2006) *Definition and Diagnosis of Diabetes Mellitus and Intermediate Hyperglycaemia*. World Health Organization, Geneva. www.who.int/diabetes/publications/en/.

Wilkins, R.L. (2009) Bedside assessment of the patient, in *Egan's Fundamentals of Respiratory Care*, 9th edn (eds R.L. Wilkins, J.K. Stoller and R.M. Kacmarek). Mosby Elsevier, St Louis, MO.

Williams, B., Poulter, N., Brown, M. *et al.* (2004) Guidelines for management of hypertension: report of the fourth working party of the British Hypertension Society 2004 – BHS IV. *Journal of Human Hyptertension*, **18** (3), 139–185.

Wilson, F., Johnson, F. and Rosenbaum, F. (1944) The precordial electrocardiogram. *American Heart Journal*, **27**, 19–85.

Wilson, L.A. (2005) *Urinalysis. Nursing Standard*, **19** (35), 51–54.

Wong, F. (2007) Pulsus paradoxus in ventilated and non□ventilated patients. *Dynamics*, **18** (3), 16–18.

Woodhall, L. (2008) Implementation of the SBAR communication technique in a tertiary centre. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, **34** (4), 314–317.

Woodrow, P. (1999) Pulse oximetry. *Nursing Standard*, **13** (42), 42–46.

Woodrow, P. (2004a) Arterial blood pressure monitoring, in *High Dependency Nursing Care: Observation, Intervention and Support* (eds T. Moore and P. Woodrow). Routledge, London.

Woodrow, P. (2004b) Central venous pressure measurement and cardiac studies, in *High Dependency Nursing Care: Observation, Intervention and Support* (eds T. Moore and P. Woodrow). Routledge, London.

Woods, S., Froelicher, E.S., Motzer, S.A. *et al.* (2005) *Cardiac Nursing*, 5th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Woollens, S. (1996) Temperature measurement devices. *Professional Nurse*, **11** (8), 541–547.

Zietz, K. and McCutcheon, H. (2006) Observations and vital signs: ritual or vital for the monitoring of postoperative patients? *Applied Nursing Research*, **19**, 204–211.

Multiple choice questions

1 When should adult patients in acute hospital settings have observations taken?

a When they are admitted or initially assessed. A plan should be clearly documented which identifies which observations should be taken and how frequently subsequent observations should be done.

b When they are admitted and then once daily unless they deteriorate.

c As indicated by the doctor.

d Temperature should be taken daily, respirations at night, pulse and blood pressure 4 hourly.

2 Why are physiological scoring systems or early warning scoring systems used in clinical practice?

a They help the nursing staff to accurately predict patient dependency on a shift□by□shift basis.

b The system provides an early accurate predictor of deterioration by identifying physiological criteria that alert the nursing staff to a patient at risk.

c These scoring systems are carried out as part of a national audit so we know how sick patients are in the United Kingdom.

d They enable nurses to call for assistance from the outreach team or the doctors via an electronic communication system.

3 A patient on your ward complains that her heart is 'racing' and you find that the pulse is too fast to manually palpate. What would your actions be?

a Shout for help and run to collect the crash trolley.

b Ask the patient to calm down and check her most recent set of bloods and fluid balance.

c A full set of observations: blood pressure, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation and temperature. It is essential to perform a 12□lead ECG. The patient should then be reviewed by the doctor.

d Check baseline observations and refer to the cardiology team.

4 When would an orthostatic blood pressure measurement be indicated?

a If the patient has a recent history of falls.

b If the patient has a history of dizziness or syncope on changing position.

c If the patient has a history of hypertension.

d If the patient has a history of hypotension.

5 What do the adverse effects of hypotension include?

a Decreased conscious level, reduced blood flow to vital organs and renal failure.

b The patient could become confused and not know who they are.

c Decreased conscious level, oliguria and reduced coronary blood flow.

d The patient feeling very cold.

6 What are the contraindications for the use of the blood glucose meter for blood glucose monitoring?

a The patient has a needle phobia and prefers to have a urinalysis.

b If the patient is in a critical care setting, staff will send venous samples to the laboratory for verification of blood glucose level.

c If the machine hasn't been calibrated.

d If peripheral circulation is impaired, collection of capillary blood is not advised as the results might not be a true reflection of the physiological blood glucose level.

7You are caring for a patient who has had a recent head injury and you have been asked to carry out neurological observations every 15 minutes. You assess and find that his pupils are unequal and one is not reactive to light. You are no longer able to rouse him. What are your actions?

a Continue with your neurological assessment, calculate your Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) and document clearly.

b This is a medical emergency. Basic airway, breathing and circulation should be attended to urgently and senior help should be sought.

c Refer to the neurology team.

ad Break down the patient's Glasgow Coma Scale as follows: best verbal response V = XX, best motor response M = XX and eye opening E = XX. Use this when you hand over.

8What is the most accurate method of calculating a respiratory rate?

a Counting the number of respiratory cycles in 15 seconds and multiplying by 4.

b Counting the number of respiratory cycles in 1 minute. One cycle is equal to the complete rise and fall of the patient's chest.

c Not telling the patient as this may make them conscious of their breathing pattern and influence the accuracy of the rate.

d Placing your hand on the patient's chest and counting the number of respiratory cycles in 30 seconds and multiplying by 2.

9You are caring for a 17□year□old woman who has been admitted with acute exacerbation of asthma. Her peak flow readings are deteriorating and she is becoming wheezy. What would you do?

a Sit her upright, listen to her chest and refer to the chest physiotherapist.

b Suggest that the patient takes her Ventolin inhaler and continue to monitor the patient.

c Undertake a full set of observations to include oxygen saturations and respiratory rate. Administer humidified oxygen, bronchodilators, corticosteroids and antimicrobial therapy as prescribed.

d Reassure the patient: you know from reading her notes that stress and anxiety often trigger her asthma.

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online.

Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com and select the Student Edition tab.

Part four

Supporting the patient through treatment

13 Medicines management
14 Perioperative care
15 Wound management

Chapter 13

Medicines management

Overview

This chapter will provide an overview of medicine management and the main routes of administration such as oral and injections. Other routes such as inhalation, topical and vaginal will also be discussed.

Medicines management

Definitions

Medicines management can be defined as the way medicines are selected, procured, delivered, prescribed, administered and reviewed to optimize the contributions that medicines make to producing informed and desired outcomes of patient care (Audit Commission 2001). The Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (MHRA 2004) defines it as the clinical, cost-effective and safe use of medicines to ensure patients get the maximum benefit from the medicines they need, while at the same time minimizing potential harm. The professional role of the nurse in medicines management is the safe handling and administration of medicines, including a responsibility for making sure that patients understand what medicines they are taking and why, including the likely side-effects (Luker and Wolfson 1999). Medicinal products are defined, according to the Medicines Act 1968, as, 'substances sold or supplied for administration to humans (or animals) for medicinal purposes' (HMSO 1968), and can be used for treating or preventing disease, making a medical diagnosis or restoring, correcting or modifying physiological functions (Council Directive 65/65/EEC).

Related theory

Pharmacology is a wide-ranging subject which looks at the history of drugs, where they are sourced from, what properties they have, how they are made, what effects they have and how they are processed by the body (Hardman *et al.* 1996).

Pharmacokinetics looks at the absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of drugs within the body. When these four factors are considered, with the dose of a drug given, the concentration of drug in the body over a period of time can be determined. Pharmacokinetics is most useful when considered with pharmacodynamics which is the study of the mechanisms of action of drugs and other biochemical and physiological effects (Hardman *et al.* 1996).

The effects of most drugs arise from the way they interact with receptors in the body. The most important type of receptor is a protein receptor. These proteins can be regulatory proteins involved in the mediating effects of neurotransmitters and hormones, enzymes involved in metabolic or regulatory pathways, transport proteins or structural proteins (Hardman *et al.* 1996).

Some drugs do not exert their effect through combination with receptors but by interacting with small molecules that can be normally or abnormally present in the body; for example, mesna assists in neutralizing the urotoxic metabolites of ifosfamide and cyclophosphamide to reduce the incidence of haemorrhagic cystitis and haematuria (Brock and Pohl 1983).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Indications

Medicines can be administered for the following purposes.

- Diagnostic purposes, for example assessment of liver function.
- Prophylaxis, for example heparin to prevent thrombosis or antibiotics to prevent infection.

- Therapeutic purposes, for example replacement of fluids and vitamins, supportive purposes (to enable other treatments such as anaesthesia), palliation of pain and cure (as in the case of antibiotics).

Contraindications

Whilst there are no contraindications to the overall administration of medications, there will be contraindications for individual medications or patients such as:

- allergic to medication
- medication interactions
- medication given based on patient's condition, for example digoxin, chemotherapy
- certain preparations can only be administered via certain routes.

Methods for the safe and secure handling of medicines

Administration of medicines is an everyday activity that carries great responsibility and is one of the greatest areas of risk in nursing practice (Hand and Barber 2000). However, although it requires clinical decision making by nurses, it is often associated with routinized behaviour because it is carried out so frequently (Armitage and Knapman 2003). Incidents involving medicines were the third largest group of all incidents reported to the National Patient Safety Agency (NPSA) although the majority of the outcomes are of no or low harm (NPSA/NRLS 2009). It seems that nearly half the reports describe incidents with the administration or supply of a medicine in a clinical area (NPSA/NRLS 2009). The NPSA (2007a) has listed the key areas of risk for medication error (Box 13.1).

Box 13.1 Key areas of risk for medication error

- Wrong drug/diluents.
- Calculation errors.

- Level of knowledge.
- Administration to wrong patient.
- Administration via wrong route.
- Unsafe handling/poor aseptic technique.

(NPSA 2007a)

Incidents involving injectable medicine represented 62% of all reported incidents leading to death or severe harm (NPSA/NRLS 2009). There are seven key actions to improve medication safety (Box 13.2).

Box 13.2 Seven key actions to improve medication safety

- Increase reporting and learning from medication incidents.
- Implement NPSA safer medication practice recommendations.
- Improve staff skills and competencies.
- Minimize dosing errors.
- Ensure medicines are not omitted.
- Ensure the correct medicines are given to the correct patients.
- Document patients' medicine allergy status.

(NPSA 2007a)

The effective and safe prescribing, dispensing and administration of medicines to patients demands a partnership between the various health professionals concerned, that is doctors, pharmacists and nurses. The revised Duthie Report, *The Safe and Secure of Handling of Medicines: A Team Approach* (RPSGB 2005) defined a medicine as 'all products administered by mouth, applied to the body or introduced into the body for the purpose of treating or preventing disease, diagnosing disease or ascertaining the existence, degree or extent of a physiological condition, contraception, inducing anaesthesia, or otherwise preventing or interfering with the normal operation of a physiological function'. It follows from this definition that infusions or injections of sodium chloride 0.9% and water for injection are included, as are all medicinal

products covered by the European Directive on Medicines. This report details how the key principles of compliance with legislation, adherence to guidance and safety of patients and staff should be applied to the management and handling of medicines. In order to achieve this, organizations should have in place Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs) for each activity in the medicines trail, also indicating clear responsibilities, training, competencies and performance standards for each member of staff. Processes for validation, audit and risk assessment of the activities also need to be included.

The activities defined in the medicines trail are:

- prescribing/initiation of treatment
- procurement/acquisition of medicines
- manufacture/manipulation of medicines
- receipt of medicines
- issue to point of use/dispensing or supply
- preparation/manipulation of medicines for administration
- use of medicines/administration
- removal/disposal of surplus/waste medicines from wards and departments
- removal/disposal of surplus/waste medicines or related materials from the hospital.

Principles of care

Prescribing

All medicines administered in hospital must be considered prescription only. This is because administration, whether by a nurse or by a patient to themselves, may only take place in accordance with one or more of the following processes:

- patient-specific direction (PSD)
- patient medicines administration chart may also be called a medicines administration record (MAR)
- patient group directions (PGD)
- Medicines Act exemplar

- standing orders
- homely remedy protocol
- prescription form.

(NMC 2008a, pp. 13–16)

Prescriptions can be handwritten on a chart, a prescription pad or provided electronically. E-prescribing has been defined as the 'utilization of electronic systems to facilitate and enhance the communication of a prescription or medicine order, aiding the choice, administration and supply of a medicine through knowledge and decision support and providing a robust audit trail for the entire medicines uses process' (NHS Connecting for Health 2009). Some of the benefits include:

- prescibers can accurately and clearly enter complete medication orders
- the system can provide relevant patient information, for example allergies
- prescription data can be stored securely and communicated to other members of the healthcare team without the risk of paper records being lost
- pharmacists can access medication orders remotely and check and amend as required
- nurses have clear and legible medication orders
- medication records can be accessed remotely by all healthcare professionals (NHS Connecting for Health 2009) (see Box 13.3).

Box 13.3 Benefi ts of e-prescribing systems

The Connecting for Health programme has outlined the benefits of e-prescribing systems as:

- computerized entry and management of prescriptions
- knowledge support, with immediate access to medicines information, for example British National Formulary
- decision support, aiding the choice of medicines and other therapies, with alerts such as drug interactions

- computerized links between hospital wards/departments and pharmacies
- ultimately, links to other elements of patients' individual care records
- improvements in existing work processes
- a robust audit trail for the entire medicines use process
- a reduction in the risk of medication errors as a result of several factors, including:
  - more legible prescriptions
  - alerts for contraindications, allergic reactions and drug interactions
  - guidance for inexperienced prescribers
  - improved communication between different departments and care settings
  - reduction in paperwork-related problems, for example fewer lost or illegible prescriptions
  - clearer, and more complete, audit trails of medication administration
  - improved formulary guidance and management and appropriate reminders within care pathways.

(www.connectingforhealth.nhs.uk/systemsandservices/eprescribing)

A growing number of hospitals in the UK have introduced e-prescribing systems. One major motivation for introducing them is to improve the safety of medicines used and reduce the current and unacceptable levels of adverse drug events. In a systematic review, nine of the 13 studies demonstrated a significant reduction in prescribing errors for all or some drug types when electonic prescribing was used (Reckmann *et al.* 2009).

'Verbal orders'

The NMC (2008a) clearly states that a verbal order is not acceptable on its own. 'In exceptional circumstances, where the medication (NOT including controlled drugs) has been previously prescribed and the prescriber is unable to issue a new prescription, but where changes to the dose are considered necessary, the use of information technology (such as fax or e-mail) may be used but must confirm any changes to the original prescription' (NMC 2008a, p. 32). This should be followed up by a new prescription confirming the changes, signed by the prescriber within a maximum of 24 hours. The changes must be authorized before the new dosage is administered (NMC 2008a).

Nurse prescribing and patient group directions

As nurses have undertaken increasingly specialized roles, the need for them to have powers to prescribe has become more apparent. The report of the Advisory Committee on Nurse Prescribing (DH 1989) initially recommended a limited nurses' formulary for district nurses and health visitors. The Medicinal Products: Prescription by Nurse, etc. Act (1992) granted the statutory authority for this to occur. The Crown Report (DH 1989) also recommended that doctors and nurses collaborate in drawing up local protocols for the administration of medicines in situations that would benefit specific groups of patients, for example those requiring vaccinations.

The practice of prescribing under group protocols became widespread across the NHS, and they were used to support initiatives such as nurse-led clinics (Laverty *et al.* 1997, Mallett *et al.* 1997). The legality of this practice was then questioned. Section 58 of the Medicines Act (1968) states that 'no one should administer any medication (other than to himself) unless he is the appropriate practitioner or a person who is acting according to directions from an appropriate practitioner'. The terms *direction* and *administration* were open to interpretation and how they were used varied across the country (McHale 2002).

Nurse prescribing was therefore reviewed and two further reports were published:

- *Review of Prescribing, Supply and Administration of Medicines. A Report on the Supply and Administration of Medicines under Group Protocols* (DH 1998)
- *Review of Prescribing, Supply and Administration of Medicines. Final Report* (DH 1999).

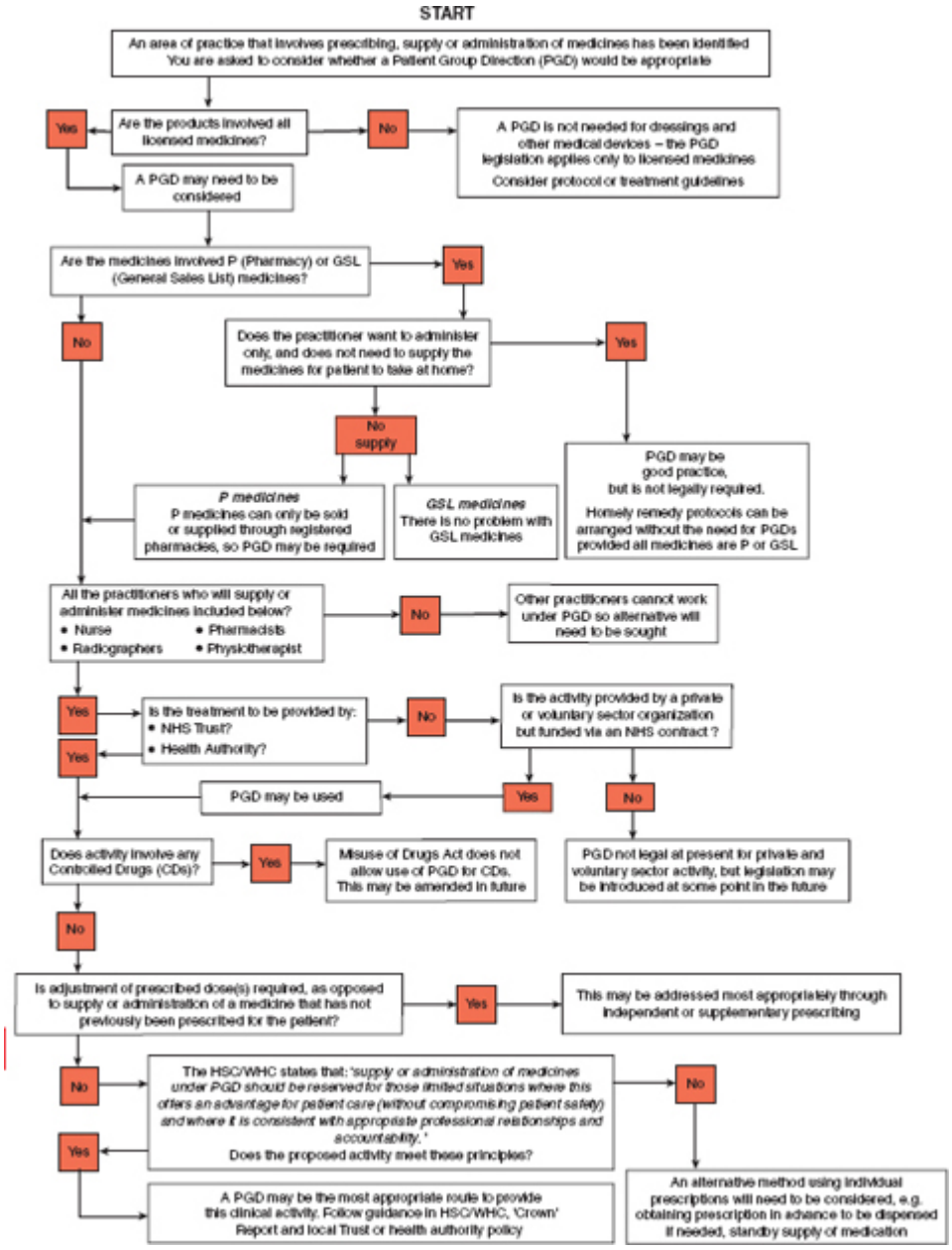
The first specifically offered guidance about group protocols, including changing the name to patient group directions (PGD) (see Box 13.4).

Box 13.4 Patient group directions

The legal definition of a patient group direction is 'a written instruction for the supply and/or administration of a licensed medicine (or medicines) in an identified clinical situation signed by a doctor or dentist and a pharmacist' (NPC 2009). It is drawn up locally by doctors, pharmacists and other appropriate professionals and must be approved by the employer, advised by the relevant professional advisory committee. It applies to groups of patients or other service users who may not be

individually identified before presentation for treatment (DH 2004). The Health and Safety Commission (HSC) advised that the majority of medication 'should be prescribed and administered on an individual patient specific basis', but that it is appropriate to use PGDs for the supply and administration of medicines in situations where this offers an advantage for patient care (DH 2000). Shepherd suggests that this means 'where medical staff are either inaccessible or unavailable' (Shepherd 2002b, p. 44). The flowchart in Figure 13.1 aims to assist practitioners in deciding the appropriate system for the prescription, supply or administration of medicines. Using a PGD is not a form of prescribing.

Figure 13.1 Patient group directions (PGDs) flowchart. The diagram takes the practitioner through a logical process that aims to assist decision making. *The majority of clinical care should still be provided on an individual, patient-specific basis.*



The second report looked at the existing arrangements for prescribing, supply and administration of medicines and suggested the introduction of a new form of prescribing to be undertaken by non-medical health professionals (DH 2003a). Independent nurse prescribing was initially allowed from an extremely limited formulary (Shuttleworth 2005). It was then extended a number of times until finally, appropriately qualified nurses were allowed to prescribe from the whole British National Formulary.

- *Independent prescribing:* this allows nurses who are registered as independent prescribers to prescribe any licensed medicine (and now unlicensed; DH 2009) for any medical condition

(this also includes some controlled drugs) but only within their own level of experience and competence, and acting in accordance with the NMC *Code* (DH 2006, NMC 2008b). Only those who have undergone appropriate training and are registered with the NMC as an independent prescriber can prescribe (NMC 2006a). It must also be considered to be part of that nurse's role.

- *Supplementary prescribing* has been defined as: 'A voluntary prescribing partnership between an independent prescriber and a supplementary prescriber to implement an agreed patient specific clinical management plan with the patient's agreement' (DH 2003a). Amendments to the Prescription Only Medicines Order and the NHS regulations allowed supplementary prescribing by suitably trained nurses from April 2003. Supplementary prescribers prescribe in partnership with a doctor or dentist (the independent prescriber) and are able to prescribe any medicine, including controlled drugs and unlicensed medicines that are listed in an agreed clinical management plan. The plan is drawn up with the patient's agreement, following diagnosis of the patient by an independent prescriber and following consultation and agreement between the independent and supplementary prescribers.

(DH 2003a, pp. 6, 7)

The key principles that underpin supplementary prescribing are:

- the importance of communication between prescribing partners
- the need for access to shared patient records
- the patient is treated as a partner in their care and is involved at all stages in decision making, including whether part of their care is delivered via supplementary prescribing (NPC 2003a).

Preparation for both independent nurse prescribing and supplementary prescribing is at least 26 days in length and must follow the standards set out in the NMC *Circular 25/2002* (NMC 2001c). Any preparation must enable independent and supplementary non-medical prescribers to reach the competencies outlined in *Maintaining Competency in Prescribing: An Outline Framework to Help Nurse Prescribers* (NPC 2001), *Maintaining Competency in Prescribing: An Outline Framework to Help Nurse Supplementary Prescribers* (NPC 2003b) and the competences in shared decision making within the Medicines Partnership document (Medicines Partnership Programme 2007).

The addition of prescriptive authority to the nurse role has been a positive way of not only making a service more responsive for service users, but also has helped to meet increasing demands on health services (Bridge *et al.* 2005). Patients are satisfied with nurse prescribing (Latter *et al.* 2005). In 2005 it was estimated that there were 28,000 nurses who were able to prescribe from the limited formulary and 4000 extended

prescribers (MHRA 2005). A national survey of 246 nurse prescribers concluded that nurse prescribing is largely successful in both practice and policy terms (Latter *et al.* 2005): this is discussed in more detail in Box 13.5. A range of competencies and skills are required to ensure quality and safe prescribing – the nurse prescriber:

Box 13.5 An evaluation of nurse prescribing (Latter *et al.* 2005)

- Most nurse prescribers were confident in their prescribing practice.
- Most felt extended prescribing had a positive impact on patient care and enabled them to make better use of their skills.
- Most felt that the limited nurse formulary imposed unhelpful limitations on their practice.
- Nurses were satisfied with the support received from their medical practitioner.
- Patients were positive about their experience of nurse prescribing.
- Doctors were positive about the development of nurse prescribers in their teams.

- identifies main medical condition
- explores patient's presenting symptoms and their management
- explores past medical history, current medication, including over-the-counter (OTC), allergies and family history
- is able to initiate a physical examination
- is able to request and interepret diagnostic tests.

The evidence is that nurses need greater consistency in the frequency with which they apply these skills (Latter 2008).

Unlicensed and 'off-label' medicines

Under European medicines legislation, a medicinal product placed on the market is required to have a marketing authorization (product

licence) granted following demonstration of safety, quality and efficacy. However, member states can put in place arrangements to allow an authorized healthcare professional to gain access to an unlicensed medicine, that is, a medicine that doesn't have a marketing authorization, to meet the special needs of individual patients. In the UK, this occurs via the arrangements for 'specials' manufactured in the UK and the notification scheme for products imported into the UK.

'Specials' can be supplied if there is an order for them, a registered doctor has requested the product and the product will be used for a patient under the care of that doctor and under that doctor's supervision. A 'special' cannot be supplied if an equivalent licensed product is available which will meet the patient's needs. If a 'special' is manufactured in the UK, the manufacturer must hold a manufacturer's (special) licence issued by the MHRA. An unlicensed medicine may also be imported if the importer holds the appropriate wholesaler dealer license or wholesaler dealer import license issued by the MHRA. The importer will need to inform the MHRA on each occasion that they intend to import the product. 'Off label' refers to the use of a medicine outside the terms of its licence.

For herbal medicines, there are three possible regulatory routes by which they can reach the market in the UK: as an unlicensed herbal remedy, as a registered traditional herbal medicine (identified as the product container or packaging will include a nine-digit registration number starting with the letters THR (MHRA 2009) and as a licensed herbal medicine. Unlicensed herbal remedies are the most common route for such medicines to reach the market.

Unlicensed medicines can be prescribed by doctors, dentists and nurse independent prescribers (DH 2009). 'Off-label' medicines can be prescribed by doctors, dentists, independent nurse prescribers, independent pharmacist prescribers and independent optometrist prescribers. The MHRA has published advice for prescribers on the use of unlicensed and off-label medicines due to the responsibility for prescribing such medicines being potentially greater than for licensed products (Box 13.6). Nurse independent prescribers can also mix

medicines prior to administration and direct others to mix, for example for use within syringe pumps/drivers (DH 2009).

Box 13.6 MHRA advice for prescribers on the use of unlicensed and off-label medicines

- Before prescribing an unlicensed medicine, be satisfied that an alternative, licensed medicine would not meet the patient's needs.
- Before prescribing a medicine off label, be satisfied that such use would better serve the patient's needs than an appropriately licensed alternative.
- Before prescribing an unlicensed medicine or using a medicine off-label:
  - be satisfied that there is a sufficient evidence base and/or experience of using the medicine to show its safety and efficacy
  - take responsibility for prescribing the medicine and for overseeing the patient's care, including monitoring and follow-up
  - record the medicine prescribed and, where common practice is not being followed, the reasons for prescribing this medicine; you may wish to record that you have discussed the issue with the patient.

The MHRA also advises that best practice suggests that:

- you give patients, or those authorizing treatment on their behalf, sufficient information about the proposed treatment, including known serious or common adverse reactions, to enable them to make an informed decision
- where current practice supports the use of a medicine outside the terms of its licence, it may not be necessary to draw attention to the licence when seeking consent. However, it is good practice to give as much information as patients or carers require or which they may see as relevant
- you explain the reasons for prescribing a medicine off label or an unlicensed medicine where there is little evidence to support its use, or where such use of a medicine is innovative.

Finally, the MHRA advises that healthcare professionals have a responsibility to help monitor the safety of medicines in clinical use through submission of suspected adverse drug reactions to the MHRA and CHM via the Yellow Card Scheme (www.yellowcard.gov.uk). Such reporting is equally important for unlicensed medicines or those used off-label as for those that are licensed (MHRA 2009).

Dispensing

Dispensing is defined as 'to label from stock and supply a clinically appropriate medicine to a patient/client/carer usually against a written prescription, for self administration or administration by another professional and to advise on safe and effective use' (NMC 2008a, p.28). The majority of these activities in hospitals are undertaken by the pharmacy department. They can supply medicines as stock to a ward or for specific patients, either as inpatients or outpatients. Pharmacists are professionally accountable for all decisions to supply a medicine and offer advice. As part of this accountability, they must ensure that if any tasks are to be delegated, they are delegated to persons competent to perform them. Nurses may only dispense in exceptional circumstances (NMC 2008a).

A pharmaceutical assessment of a prescription, which is the point at which pharmacists apply their knowledge to establish the safety, quality, efficacy and perhaps cost-effective use of drug treatments specified by a prescriber, must be performed by a pharmacist and must be carried out on every prescription (RPSGB 2007a). Following this assessment, the assembly of the prescription can be delegated to a pharmacy technician or a pharmacy assistant. Once the prescription is assembled, it will be presented for accuracy checking by a pharmacist or a suitably qualified pharmacy technician.

Many pharmacies have also now adopted practices of one-stop dispensing and robotic dispensing. One-stop dispensing involves the medicine supply for inpatients being supplied in a form ready for discharge. Robotic and automated systems can be used to pick and label medicines in order to reduce errors in these areas (RPSGB 2007a).

Methods for storage of medicines

The report *The Safe and Secure of Handling of Medicines: A Team Approach* (RPSGB 2005) details that the responsibility for establishing and maintaining a system for the security of medicines should be that of the senior pharmacist in the hospital. They should do this in consultation with senior nursing staff and appropriate medical staff. The appointed nurse in charge of the area will have the responsibility of ensuring that this system is followed and that the security of medicines is maintained. The nurse in charge may delegate some of these duties but always remains responsible for this task. The safe and secure handling of medicines on the ward is governed by the following principles.

Security

All drugs should be stored in locked cupboards with separate storage for internal medicines, external medicines, controlled drugs and medicines needing refrigeration or storage in a freezer.

Diagnostic reagents, intravenous and topical agents should also be kept separately in individual storage.

Stability

No medicinal preparation should be stored where it may be subject to substantial variations in temperature, for example not in direct sunlight.

The normal temperature ranges for storage are as follows.

- *Cold storage:* products to be stored between 2°C and 8°C. Refrigerators should be placed in an area where the ambient temperature does not affect the temperature control within it. Most refrigerators will function effectively in an environment of 10–32°C. Refrigerators should have a minimum and maximum thermometer fitted which should be read and reset daily (MHRA 2001).
- *Cool storage:* products that need to be stored in a cool place or between 8°C and 15°C. If these temperatures cannot be achieved, these products should be stored in a fridge provided that temperatures below 8°C do not affect the stability of the product. If lower temperatures do

affect the stability, it is recommended that they are stored in an area where the temperature will not exceed 18°C (MHRA 2001).

- *Room temperature:* for products that need to be stored at room temperature or not above 25°C (MHRA 2001).

Containers

The type of container used may have been chosen for specific reasons. Therefore all medicines should be stored in the containers in which they were supplied by pharmacy. Medicinal preparations should never be transferred (in bulk) from one container to another except in the pharmacy.

Stock control

A system of stock rotation must be operated (e.g. first in, first out) to ensure that there is no accumulation of old stocks. Only one pack/container of a named medicine should be in use at any one time. A list of stock medicines to be kept on the ward should be regularly reviewed according to usage figures. The medicines to be held on the ward should be discussed between the nurse in charge and a pharmacist with relevant medical staff.

Storage requirements of specific preparations

- *Aerosol containers* should not be stored in direct sunlight or over radiators: there is a risk of explosion if they are heated.
- *Creams* may deteriorate rapidly if subjected to extremes of temperature.
- *Eye drops and ointments* may become contaminated with micro-organisms during use and thus pose a danger to the recipient. Therefore in hospitals, eye preparations should be discarded 7 days after they are first opened. For use at home, this limit is extended to 28 days.
- *Mixtures* may have a relatively short shelf-life. Most antibiotic mixtures require refrigerated storage and even then have a shelf-life of only 7–14 days. Always check the label for details.
- *Tablets and capsules* are relatively stable but are susceptible to moisture unless correctly packed. They should be stored only in the

containers in which they were supplied by the pharmacy.

- *Vaccines* and similar preparations usually require refrigerated storage and may deteriorate rapidly if exposed to heat.

Patient's own drugs

Patients are encouraged to bring their medication into hospital with them to facilitate a comprehensive medicines reconciliation process. This can also be useful if the organization has a policy of using the patient's own drugs.

These medicines remain the property of the patient and should not be destroyed without prior consent from the patient or their representative. If the patient does agree to the destruction of the medicines, they must be sent to the pharmacy for destruction. If the patient does not want the medicines to be stored in the hospital or sent to pharmacy for destruction, they must be sent home with the patient's representative. These medicines should only be used if they can be positively identified, are of a suitable quality and are labelled according to labelling requirements. They should be stored to the same security standards as other medicine stock on the ward. They should be used for the sole use of the patient whose property they remain (RPSGB 2005).

Methods for preparation

The NMC clearly states that:

> It is unacceptable to prepare substances for injection in advance of their immediate use or to administer medication drawn into a syringe or container by another registrant when not in their presence. An exception of this is an already established infusion which has been instigated by another registrant following the principles set out above, or medication prepared under the direction of a pharmacist from a central intravenous additive service and clearly labelled for that patient/client.
>
> (NMC 2008a, p. 28)

However, the NMC acknowledges that a registrant 'may be required in an emergency to prepare substances for other professionals' (NMC

2008a).

Methods for administration

The nurse is responsible for the administration of drugs by a variety of methods. The NMC *Standards for Medicines Management* emphasizes that this 'is not solely a mechanistic task to be performed in strict compliance with the written prescription of a medical practitioner (now independent supplementary prescriber). It requires thought and the exercise of professional judgement …' (NMC 2008a, p. 6). Shepherd (2002b) maintains that the administration of a medicine is arguably the most common clinical procedure that a nurse will undertake. He goes on to state that it is the manner in which a medicine is administered that determines to some extent whether or not the patient gains any clinical benefit and whether any adverse effect is experienced.

The nurse is accountable for the safe administration of medicines. In order to do this, the nurse requires a thorough knowledge of the principles and their application and a responsible attitude, which ensures that medications are not given without full knowledge of immediate and late effects, toxicities and nursing implications (NMC 2008a). The nurse must also be able to justify any actions taken and be accountable for the action taken (NMC 2008a). If they delegate any of aspects of the administration of a medicinal product, they are also accountable for ensuring that the patient or carer/care assistant is competent to carry out the task (NMC 2008a). In delegating to unregistered practitioners, it is the registered nurse who must apply the principles of administration and they may then delegate the unregistered practitioner to assist the patient in the ingestion or application of the medicinal product (NMC 2008a, p. 31). Student nurses must never administer/supply medicinal products without direct supervision and both student and registered nurse must sign the medication chart or document the administration in the notes (NMC 2008a).

Medicine administration should ensure that the correct patient receives:

- the appropriate medicine
- in the appropriate formulation

- by the appropriate route
- at the appropriate dose
- at the appropriate time
- at the appropriate rate
- for the appropriate duration of therapy
- with the appropriate monitoring to ensure safety and efficacy of therapy
- with the appropriate reporting of adverse drug reactions (Sexton 1999, p. 240).

To achieve this, the nurse must have a sound knowledge of the use, action, usual dose and side-effects of the drugs being administered. Institutional policies and procedures also assist the nurse to administer drugs safely and a sound knowledge of local procedures is essential. Organizational policies therefore need to reflect a culture that encourages disclosure and in which the management of medication errors is viewed as a learning process as opposed to a punitive act (Gladstone 1995, Martin 1994). The NMC states that all errors and incidents require a thorough and careful investigation at a local level, taking full account of the context, circumstances and position of the practitioner involved. Such incidents require a sensitive management and a comprehensive assessment of all the circumstances before a professional and managerial decision is reached on the appropriate way to proceed (NMC 2008a). It must be recognized, however, that errors in drug administration can have traumatic consequences for the individual nurse involved and that disciplinary procedures invoke fear in most nurses (Arndt 1994).

Single or double checking of medicines

Medicines can be prepared and administered by a single qualified nurse or by two nurses checking (known as double checking). There are certain times when double or second checking is required. It is recommended that for the administration of controlled drugs, a secondary signature is required (NMC 2008a). The NMC *Standards for Medicines Management* also states that 'wherever possible two registrants should check medication to be administered intravenously,

one of whom should also be the registrant who then administers the intravenous medication' (NMC 2008a, p. 31). Where the administration of a medicine requires complex calculations, it is deemed good practice for a second practitioner (a registered professional) to check the calculation independently to minimize the risk of error (NMC 2008a).

Jarman *et al.*'s (2002) review of 129 nurses, using questionnaires and reviewing incidents, both during double checking and then once single checking had been introduced, demonstrated no increase in drug errors following the change. Single checking provided satisfaction for nurses and more effective use of time and the nurses felt that single checking allowed them more autonomy and that it was more beneficial to patients and enabled them to be more responsive to their needs. Armitage (2008) suggested that double checking is a common but inconsistent process. Athough often seen to be integral to safe practice, it is often sacrificed when there is a shortage of time or staff (Armitage 2008). He listed the issues with double checking as:

- deference to authority
- reduction of responsibility
- auto processing (familiarity)
- lack of time (to check properly)
- solutions (how to do it).

A recent study viewed independent double checking as an alternative. This is when two nurses check a drug independently of each other. In this study nurses were observed during the setting up of ambulatory chemotherapy pumps. When compared with the old system of double checking, the new system showed no significantly statistical difference in reducing errors in dose, rate or documentation but did show a reduction in errors related to patient identification (Savage and Tripp 2008).

Those nurses who wish or need to have their administration supervised will retain the right to do so until such time as all parties agree that the requested level of proficiency has been achieved. The nurse checking the medicine must be able to justify any action taken and be accountable for the action taken. This is in keeping with the principles of *The Code* (NMC 2008b).

Patient identification

Patient misidentification can occur at any stage of a patient's journey and as it is under-reported, its 'true' incidence unknown (Rosenthal 2003). Not identifying the patient correctly can result in the administration of a wrong drug or dose and can sometimes be fatal, such as transfusion of blood to the wrong patient (Schulmeister 2008). The NMC (2008a) is clear that the nurse must be certain of the identity of the patient to whom the medicine is to be administered. The NPSA (2007b) recommended that to avoid misidentification of patients, staff should check the patient's identity using an identification wristband. The NPSA (2007b) issued guidance on the use of wristband for patient identification, which also encompasses the use of wristbands to identify allergy status. It recommends that the NHS should be supporting patients with auto identity technology. Where there are difficulties in clarifying an individual's identity, an up-to-date photograph can be attached to the prescription charts (NMC 2008a). Schulmeister (2008) suggested that one strategy to reduce the risk of patient misidentification would be to instruct patients to show their namebands to nurses rather than passively wait to be asked to see the nameband.

Legal and professional issues

Administration of medicines has been one of the most common clinical procedures undertaken by nurses for at least the past 50 years (Shepherd 2002a). With changes in legal, professional and cultural boundaries in healthcare, the role of the nurse has broadened to one of medicines management. Medicines management and specifically medicines administration require thought and professional judgement (Luker and Wolfson 1999, NMC 2008a). All aspects of a medicine's use must be managed with a multidisciplinary approach to ensure it is supported by a strong evidence base and that the safety and well-being of the patient remain paramount (NMC 2008b, Shepherd 2002a). Nurses are taught how to prepare and administer medication via the common routes during their basic training. This includes calculation, which is vital as any miscalculation of medication dosage represents a potential threat to both patient safety and clinical effectiveness (Weeks *et al.* 2000). There are

now a number of computer-based programmes on infection control and IV therapy, infusion pumps (NHSCLU 2009) and medication dosage calculation problem-solving skills (Weeks *et al*. 2001) which provide knowledge and competency for nurses.

Legislation

Legislative frameworks, government guidelines and professional regulations govern medicines management in the UK. The primary pieces of legislation are the Medicines Act 1968, European Directives and the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971 (HMSO 1971).

The Medicines Act 1968

European Community Council Directives and Regulations and the Medicines Act 1968 (HMSO 1968) regulate the manufacture, distribution and importation of medicines for human use. The Medicines and Health Care Products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) in the UK and the European Medicines Agency (EMEA) are responsible for the licensing procedures for medicinal products. The availability of products is restricted by defining which of the following legal categories they are in:

- prescription-only medicines (POM)
- pharmacy-only medicines (P)
- general sales list medicines (GSL).

Different requirements apply to the sale, supply and labelling of medicines in each category. In hospitals, medicines can be supplied in line with patient-specific directions, from an appropriate practitioner in relation to the medicine, which in most cases will be an instruction on the patient ward drug chart. This written instruction does not need to comply with the requirements specified for prescriptions but does need to relate to a specific patient. The legislation also allows the supply of prescription-only medicines to be made under a PGD. A PGD needs to be signed by a doctor and a pharmacist. The regulations permit certain registered professionals to supply or administer under a PGD.

In addition to the above, there are also a range of exemptions from the regulations which allow certain groups of health professionals to sell,

supply and administer particular medicines direct to patients (Applebe and Wingfield 2005, RPSGB 2009).

Complications

Drug interactions

As well as adverse drug reactions and allergic reactions to drugs, consideration should be given to the interactions between drugs.

A drug interaction occurs when the effect of a particular drug is altered when it is taken with another drug, herbal medicine, food or drink (Baxter 2008). These interactions can result in an increased effect, causing toxicity, or a decreased effect, resulting in a decreased efficacy of the drug. Interactions can be unwanted but in some cases they can be desirable, for example vitamin K is used to oppose the effects of warfarin when toxicity has occurred.

Drug interactions can be divided into pharmacokinetic (Table 13.1) and pharmacodynamic interactions (Table 13.2).

Table 13.1 Types of pharmacokinetic interactions

Type of interaction	Interaction caused by	Example of when to consider in clinical practice
Drug absorption interactions	Changes in the GI pH Adsorption or chelation in the GI tract Changes in GI motility Induction or inhibition of transporter proteins or malabsorption	Allopurinol and mercaptopurine – allopurinol inhibits xanthane oxidase, an enzyme which metabolizes mercaptopurine to an inactive metabolite, thereby resulting in increased mercaptopurine toxicity such as bone marrow suppression. If used together, the mercaptopurine dose should be decreased to a third of the original dose (Baxter 2008)
Drug distribution interactions	Protein binding or inhibition or induction of drug transporter proteins	Therapeutic drug monitoring as drugs that can be displaced in this way can appear subtherapeutic when monitored but doses would not need to be increased (Baxter 2008)
Drug metabolism interactions	Changes in first-pass metabolism, enzyme induction, enzyme	Grapefruit juice can inhibit the cytochrome P450 isoenzyme CYP3A4, thus reducing the metabolism of calcium channel blockers (Baxter 2008)

	inhibition and genetic factors The hepatic cytochrome P450 enzyme system is the major site of drug metabolism and most drug–drug interactions occur at this site	
Drug excretion interactions	Changes in urinary pH, active renal tubular excretion, renal blood flow and biliary excretion or the enterohepatic shunt	Probenecid and penicillin compete for the same active transport systems in the renal tubules. As a result, probenecid reduces the excretion of penicillin which can lead to penicillin toxicity (Baxter 2008)

Table 13.2 Types of pharmacodynamic interactions

Type of interaction	Interaction caused by	Example of when to consider in clinical practice
Additive or synergistic interactions	Two drugs have the same pharmacological effect and therefore the results can be additive	Opioids with benzodiazepines causing increased drowsiness (Baxter 2008)
Antagonistic or opposing interactions	Two drugs have opposing activities	Vitamin K and warfarin resulting in the effects of the anticoagulant being opposed (Baxter 2008)

Beijnen and Schellens (2004).

Herbal and complementary medicines have been increasingly used in the UK over recent years and as a result there has been an increase in the reporting of interactions between these agents and conventional drugs. Some of the most common herbal interactions are those involving St John's wort, a popular herbal product used as an antidepressant. Mathijssen *et al.* (2002) found that St Johns wort (or *Hypericum perforatum*) interacts with irinotecan. Five patients with various types of cancer were given 350 mg/m^2 irinotecan intravenously with or without 900 mg St Johns wort once a day orally for 18 days. The researchers found that in the presence of St Johns wort the plasma concentrations of the active metabolite of irinotecan decreased by 42% and myelosuppression was worse in the absence of St Johns wort.

Interactions can also occur between drugs and food. Food can have an effect on drugs by changing GI motility or by binding to drugs whilst in GI transit. An example of interactions between food and a drug can be

seen with procarbazine and tyramine-containing foods. Tyramine is a chemical present in certain foods that are rich in protein and can interact with monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). As procarbazine has mild MAOI properties, it is possible that taking both together could result in a hypertensive reaction which can cause symptoms of raised blood pressure, headache, pounding heart, neck stiffness, sweating, flushing and vomiting. Patients should therefore be advised to avoid tyramine-rich foods such as mature and aged cheeses, yeast or meat extracts, pickled fish, salami and heavy red wines (Baxter 2008).

Adverse drug reactions

Although we use drugs to diagnose, prevent or treat disease, no drug is administered without risk. However, it is important when choosing a drug treatment that consideration is given to the balance between clinical effect and undesired effects. The World Health Organization definition of adverse drug reactions (ADRs) is 'harmful, unintended reactions to medicines that occur at doses normally used for treatment' (WHO 2008). ADRs can be classified as type A or type B reactions. Type A reactions are pharmacologically predictable and usually dose dependent and therefore reversible by reducing or withdrawing the drug in question. An example of a type A reaction would be antidiabetic drugs causing hypoglycaemia. Type B reactions cannot be related to the pharmacological action of the drug, are not dose related and therefore cannot be controlled by dose reduction. An example of a type B reaction would be anaphylaxis due to penicillins. Type A reactions are more common than type B but type B reactions tend to cause a higher rate of serious illness and mortality (Rawlins and Thompson 1977).

The WHO states that 'ADRs are amongst the leading causes of death in many countries and that in some countries ADR-related costs, such as hospitalization, surgery and lost productivity, exceed the cost of the medications' (WHO 2008). One study found that the median percentage of preventable drug-related admissions to hospital was 3.7% (the range was between 1.4% and 15.4%). The majority (51%) of preventable drug-related admissions involved either antiplatelets (16%), diuretics (16%),

non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (11%) or anticoagulants (8%) (Howard *et al.* 2007).

Although the effect of a drug cannot always be predicted, it is important that when a drug is given to a patient, the risk of harm is minimized by ensuring that good-quality medicines are used and that they are safe and effective. Consideration should always be given to predisposing factors that drugs or a patient may have which could increase the risk of ADRs, including:

- polypharmacy
- age of the patient
- gender
- co-morbidities such as renal disease, race, genetic factors such as G6PD deficiency (some children and adults with G6PD deficiency may develop haemolysis and anaemia if they get a fever or if they take certain medicines (UCL Institute of Child Health 2008))
- allergies
- drug–drug interactions.

(Koda-Kimble *et al.* 2005, Walker and Edwards 2003)

Pharmacovigilance is an important aspect for all healthcare professionals to consider in order to identify information about potential new hazards related to medicines and prevent harm to patients (MHRA 2010a).

Although medicines are widely tested within clinical trials before they become commercially available, information on patient populations different from those in the trials cannot be provided. The only way for this information to be collected is through careful patient monitoring and further collection of data through postmarketing surveillance. In the UK this information is collected through the Yellow Card Scheme which is run by the MHRA and the Commission on Human Medicines (CHM). The scheme is used to collect information from both health professionals and patients on suspected ADR with prescribed medicines, OTC medicines and herbal medicines. Yellow Cards can be completed by using the MHRA website or by completing a hard copy found in the

British National Formulary (BNF), the ABPI Medicines Compendium or in the MIMS Companion.

Allergic reactions

Allergic reactions are specific types of adverse drug reactions. They are immune mediated and can be classified as in Table 13.3.

Table 13.3 Types of allergic reactions

Type of reaction	Result of reaction	Example of reaction
Type I – IgE-mediated reactions	Urticaria, angio-oedema, anaphylaxis and bronchospasm	Anaphylaxis from beta-lactam antibiotic
Type II – IgG/M-mediated cytotoxic reaction	Anaemia, cytopenia and thrombocytopenia	Haemolytic anaemia from penicillin
Type III – IgG/M-mediated immune complexes	Vasculitis, lymphadenopathy, fever, arthropathy and rashes Can also be known as serum sickness	Serum sickness from antithymocyte globulin
Type IV – delayed hypersensitivity reactions	Dermatitis, bullous exanthema, maculopapular and pustular xanthemata	Contact dermatitis from topical antihistamine

Beijnen and Schellens (2004), Riedl and Casillas (2003).

There are many risk factors that increase the likelihood of having an allergic reaction. These can be split into those that are specific to the patient and those that are specific to the drug.

The patient-related factors include the following.

- *Immune status*: previous reaction to the same or related compound.
- *Age*: younger adults are more likely to have allergic reactions than infants or the elderly.
- *Gender*: women are more likely than men to suffer cutaneous reactions.
- *Genetic*: atopic predisposition is more likely to result in a severe reaction and genetic polymorphisms may predispose to drug hypersensitivity, for example G6PD deficiency, slow acetylators.
- *Concomitant disease*: viral infections such as HIV and herpes are associated with an increased risk of allergic reactions; cystic fibrosis is associated with an increased risk of allergic reactions to antibiotics,

which is though to be due to the prolonged use in this group of patients.

(Mirakian *et al.* 2009)

The drug-related risk factors include the following.

- *Drug chemistry*: some drugs are more likely to cause reactions than others. These are high molecular weight compounds, for example dextran and insulin. Also, drugs that bind to proteins called haptens, forming complexes that can cause an immune response, for example beta-lactam antibiotics.
- *Route of administration*: the topical route is most likely to cause an allergy, with the oral route being least likely. The intramuscular route is more likely than the intravenous route.
- *Dose*: a large single dose is less likely to cause a reaction than prolonged or frequent doses.

(Mirakian *et al.* 2009)

Although the incidence of true allergic drug reactions is low, the potential morbidity and mortality related to these reactions can be high, so it is important that drug allergies are accurately diagnosed and treated. The first step towards an accurate diagnosis is a detailed history (Mirakian *et al.* 2009). Guidance on what information should be collated is detailed in the BSACI drug allergy guidelines which can be found on the website at www.bscaci.com and includes the following.

- Detailed description of reaction:
  - symptom sequence and duration
  - treatment provided
  - outcome.
- Timing of symptoms in relation to drug administration.
- Has the patient had the suspected drug before this course of treatment?
  - How long had the drug(s) been taken before onset of reaction?
  - When was/were the drug(s) stopped?
  - What was the effect?
- Witness description (patient, relative, doctor).
- Is there a photograph of the reaction?

- Illness for which suspected drug was being taken, that is, underlying illness (this may be the cause of the symptoms, rather than the drug).
- List of all drugs taken at the time of the reaction (including regular medication, OTC and 'alternative' remedies).
- Previous history:
  - other drug reactions
  - other allergies
  - other illnesses.

(Mirakian *et al.* 2009)

This guideline also gives details on further investigations which may be required in order to accurately diagnose an allergic reaction (Box 13.7).

Box 13.7 Treatment of acute drug reaction

An acute drug reaction must be treated promptly and appropriately.

- Stop the suspected drug.
- Treat the reaction.
- Identify and avoid potential cross-reacting drugs.
- Record precise details of the reaction and its treatment.
- Identify a safe alternative. In some cases this may not be possible so where the case is less severe, it may be decided to continue with the medication with suppression of the symptoms with, for example, a corticosteroid and an antihistamine.

See also Complications of intravenous injections and infusions.

(Mirakian *et al.* 2009)

In some cases, desensitization may be considered but this is rarely indicated.

In addition to the treatment of drug allergies, it is extremely important that the patient is given information regarding what medication they should avoid. The drugs to avoid should also be recorded clearly in medical records, including paper and electronic records. All inpatients should have their allergy indicated by wearing a red-coloured identity

band (NPSA 2007b). Allergic drug reactions should be reported using the Yellow Card Scheme (Mirakian *et al.* 2009).

Self-administration of medicines

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

The report by the Audit Commission, *A Spoonful of Sugar – Medicines Management in NHS Hospitals* (2001) recommended self-administration of medicines by patients. This report detailed how studies have shown that only one-half of patients take their medicines properly when they get home. The National Institute for Clinical Excellence (NICE) published Clinical Guideline 76 on medicines adherence (NICE 2009) which states that between a third and a half of medicines that are prescribed for long-term conditions are not used. This non-adherence has quality and cost implications for the NHS due to wasted medicines and readmissions for patients.

The Audit Commission states that self-administration is beneficial to patients because it allows the patient to take medication when they should, for example painkillers when they are in pain and medicines to be taken before and after food. It simplifies the medicine regimen for patients, especially those who take many medicines, as it allows a fuller assessment of the benefits of all the medicines that a patient may be taking. It allows patients to practise taking their medicines in hospital under supervision so that any problems that may arise can be dealt with. It has also been found that patients who had administered their own medications in hospital were more likely to report that their overall care was excellent and that they were satisfied with the discharge process than patients who had not (Deeks and Byatt 2000).

The Healthcare Commission report, *The Best Medicine – The Management of Medicines in Acute and Specialist Trusts* (2007) states that where patients are self-administering, it is important that medicines

are stored securely in suitable storage near to the bedside and that procedures and training will need to be in place which should cover the assessment process and the patient's suitability for self-administration. Although, by definition, self-administration of medicines shifts the balance of responsibility for this part of care towards the patient, it in no way diminishes the fundamental professional duty of care. It is therefore essential that local policies, procedures and records are adequate to ensure that this duty is, and can be shown to be, discharged. The revised Duthie Report (RPSGB 2005) states that any transfer of responsibility should occur on the basis of an assessment of the patient's ability to manage the tasks involved and with the patient's agreement. The patient's agreement should be recorded with the date and time.

The NMC sets out the responsibilities of the nurse regarding the self-administration of medicines which includes viewing the medicines, checking the suitability of use and that they have been prescribed, assessment of the patient, what should be documented and how they should be stored (NMC 2008a).

Assessments of patients for self-administration normally results in the allocation of a level of supervision. Examples of levels of supervision can be seen in Table 13.4.

Table 13.4 Examples of levels of supervision for self-administration of medicines

Level of supervision	Role of patient	Role of nurse
Level 1	None	Nurse administers medicine from cabinet Key locked in cabinet and nurse uses master Nurse signs drug administration chart
Level 2	Patient administers medicine with nurse supervision	Cabinet is opened by nurse Nurse supervises patient administration Nurse signs drug administration chart
Level 3	Key kept by patient Patient administers their own medicines	Nurse must check that the appropriate medication was taken and endorse the chart with an identifier to indicate that the patient is self-administering and their initials

NPC (2007).

Even if a patient is self-administering their medication, continual assessment of this aspect of their care while they are in hospital is important. The nurse must continually be aware of the patient's capability to self-administer and the action of the drugs the patient is taking (NPSA 2007c).

Preprocedural considerations

A medicines reconciliation needs to be carried out with the patient and they will be assessed for their ability to self-administer. Any constraint such as physical or visual handicap must be addressed. Changes in performance status may result from the underlying condition or its treatment, and must be allowed for (NMC 2008a, Shepherd 2002a).

If a compliance aid such as a 'dosette' box is to be used, responsibility for filling and labelling the aid, especially whilst used on the ward, must be agreed and documented in local policies (NMC 2008a, Shepherd 2002a).

Procedure guideline 13.1 Medication: self-administration

Essential equipment

- Drugs to be administered
- Recording sheet or book as required by law or hospital policy
- Patient's prescription chart, to check dose, route and so on
- Any protective clothing required by hospital policy for specified drugs, such as antibiotics or cytotoxic drugs

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Carry out a medicines reconciliation with the patient on admission by reviewing proposed (inpatient) prescription in liaison with the pharmacist and compare with details given by the patient and medicines in their possession. Any differences should be investigated and highlighted with the medical team.	To ensure an accurate record of: all medicines being taken (prescribed or otherwise); dietary supplements, for example multivitamins, herbal remedies, complementary therapies; allergies or hypersensitivities; understanding of current medicines; possible problems with self-administration (Jordan *et al.* 2003, E; NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C; Shepherd 2002b, E NPSA/NICE 2007, C).
2 Carry out an assessment of the patient's	Technical patient safety solutions for medicines

ability to self-administer medication using an assessment form with the criteria in Table 13.5.	reconciliation on admission of adults to hospital (NPSA/NICE 2007, C).
3 Consider whether there are any constraints on self-administration and if so, how they might be overcome. Discuss this with appropriate members of the multidisciplinary team.	To promote successful and safe self-administration and ensure that medicines are dispensed and labelled appropriately for the patient's needs (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C; Shepherd 2002a, E).
4 Following the assessment, a level of supervision will be recommended and entered on the assessment form. The assessment form and the consent will be filed in the nursing notes. For examples of levels see Table 13.4.	To ensure that the correct level of supervsion is selected and communicated to other staff. E
Procedure	
5 Discuss with the patient their medication and any problems they may be having with the regimen. Document discussions in the care plan. Teach any special skills required, for example correct use of aerosol inhalers. Reassess whether they need any changes to their levels of supervision, either up or down.	To promote the informed commitment and involvement of patients in their own care, where appropriate. To ensure that treatment is received as intended (NMC 2008a, C; Shepherd 2002b, E).
Postprocedure	
6 Check every day that drugs are taken as intended, and that the necessary records are kept.	To ensure that the patient is taking the medication as the nurse continues to take overall responsibility for patient care and well-being. To maintain a record of responsibilities undertaken (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2009, C).
7 Monitor changes in the patient's prescription.	To ensure that changes are put into effect promptly; drugs are properly relabelled or redispensed; any discontinued drugs are retrieved from the patient (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C; Shepherd 2002b, E).
8 Check when drug supplies are expected to run out and make arrangements for resupply. Order drugs to take out (TTO) as far in advance as possible.	To ensure that drugs are represcribed and dispensed in time to allow uninterrupted treatment and to facilitate planned discharge (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C; Shepherd 2002b, E).
9 Evaluate the effectiveness of the self-administration teaching programme and record any difficulties encountered and interventions made.	To identify further learning and teaching needs and modify care plan accordingly (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2009, C; Shepherd 2002b, E).

Table 13.5 Assessment form

Assessment criteria	Rationale
Is the patient willing to participate in self-administration after being given information explaining the scheme	Patient's agreement should be recorded with a date and time (RPSGB 2005)

with associated time to read and understand it?	
■ Has the patient signed a consent form agreeing to self-administration?	Patient's agreement should be recorded with a date and time (RPSGB 2005)
■ Is the patient sufficiently well to take part in the scheme?	Patients who are not well enough or who are undergoing surgery will not be able to self-administer until they have recovered and have been reassessed If frequent changes of drug or dose are expected, immediate self-administration may be undesirable and/or impractical
■ Is the patient confused, forgetful or disorientated?	Patients who are confused, forgetful or disorientated will need to have their medicines administered by a nurse in the usual way. This may be assessed by asking relatives or carers or by asking specific questions for assessing state of mind
■ Does the patient have a history of drug/alcohol abuse/self-harm?	Patients with this history can self-administer under the supervision of a nurse
■ Does the patient self-administer medicines at home?	Patients who are not responsible for self-administering their medicines in the community will need to have their medicines administered by a nurse in the usual way
■ Can the patient read the labels on the medicines?	These patients can either self-administer with supervision or have their medicines administered by a nurse. Referral can be made to pharmacy around assessment of labels. Can they be given extra large or Braille labels if necessary?
■ Can the patient open the medicine bottles and foil strips?	These patients can either self-administer with supervision or have their medicines administered by a nurse. Referral can be made to pharmacy for assessment and provision of appropriate containers
■ Can the patient open the locker where the medicines are stored while they are in hospital?	Patients who cannot open the locker can self-administer with nurse supervision
■ Does the patient know what their medicines are for, their dosage, instructions and potential side-effects (Shepherd 2002b)?	Patients who don't know this can be allowed to self-administer with nurse supervision. Re-education can take place in order to achieve full self-administration

Postprocedural considerations

Ongoing care

The nurse must monitor for any changes in the patient's prescription and condition. They must check when drugs supplied are expected to run out and ensure that drugs are ordered along with any TTOs. The effectiveness of the self-administration teaching programme must be evaluated (Shepherd 2002b).

Documentation

Particular care with record keeping is needed in the period of gradual transition from nurse administration to self-administration. Any problems encountered must be addressed (NMC 2008a, NMC 2008b, NMC 2009).

The detail and format of the record may vary according to the patient's needs and performance status the complexity of treatment, and local circumstances and policy (NMC 2008a, NMC 2008b, NMC 2009).

Controlled drugs

Definition

Controlled drugs are those drugs that are classified under the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971 and have controls around certain activities related to them, for example diamorphine, morphine, amphetamines, benzodiazepines. The use of controlled drugs in medicine is permitted by the Misuse of Drugs Regulations and related regulations, as detailed in the next section.

Legal and professional issues

Legislation

Medicines Act 1968

The Act and the regulations under it allow midwives to supply and/or administer diamorphine, morphine, pethidine and pentazocine. A number of healthcare professionals are also permitted to supply and/or administer controlled drugs in accordance with a PGD.

Misuse of Drugs Act 1971

For reasons of public safety, the Misuse of Drugs Act (1971) controls the import, export, production, supply, possession and manufacture of controlled drugs to prevent abuse as most are potentially addictive or

habit forming. Other regulations of the Act govern safe storage, destruction and supply to known addicts.

Misuse of Drugs (Safe Custody) Regulations 1973

These regulations controlled the storage of controlled drugs. The level of control of storage depends on the premises in which they are being stored.

Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001

Under these regulations, controlled drugs are classified into five schedules, each representing a different level of control (Table 13.6).

Table 13.6 Legal requirements for the schedules of controlled drugs (CDs)

	Schedule 2 Includes opioids and major stimulants, for example amphetamines	Schedule 3 Includes minor stimulants, temazepam, barbiturates	Schedule 4 part I Includes benzodiaz-epines	Schedule 4 part II Includes anabolic steroids, growth hormones	Schedule 5 Includes low-dose opioids
Designation	**CD**	**CD No Reg**	**CD Benz**	**CD Anab**	**CD Inv**
Safe custody	Yes, except quinalbarbitone	Yes, except certain exemptions listed in the Medicines, Ethics and Practices inc. phenobarbitone	No	No	No
Prescription requirements inc. handwriting requirements	Yes	Yes, except temazepam	No	No	No
Requisitions necessary	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Records to be kept in CD register	Yes	No	No	No	No
Pharmacist must ascertain the identity of the person collecting the CD	Yes	No	No	No	No
Emergency supplies allowed	No	No, except phenobarbitone for epilepsy	Yes	Yes	Yes
Validity of prescription	28 days	28 days	28 days	28 days	6 months
Maximum duration that can be prescribed	30 days as good practice	30 days as good practice	30 days as good practice	30 days as good practice	

Adapted from DH (2007).

The requirements of the Act as they apply to nurses working in a hospital with a pharmacy department are described in Table 13.7.

Table 13.7 Summary of legal requirements for handling of controlled drugs (CDs) as they apply to nurses in hospitals with a pharmacy

	Schedule 1: CDs Home Office licence	Schedule 2: CDs subject to full controls	Schedule 3: CDs with no register entry	Schedule 4: CDs anabolic steroids/ benzodiazepines	Schedule 5: CDs needing invoice retention
Drugs in the schedule	Cannabis + derivatives but excluding nabilone, LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide)	Most opioids in common use including: alfentanyl; amphetamines; cocaine; diamorphine; methadone; morphine papaveretum; fentanyl; phenoperidine; pethidine; codeine; dihydrocodeine injections; pentazocine	Minor stimulants; barbiturates (but excluding hexobarbitone, thiopentone); diethylpropion; buprenorphine; temazepam[a]	Part 1: anabolic steroids Part 2: benzodiazepines	Some preparations containing very low strengths of cocaine; codeine; morphine; pholcodine and some other opioids
Ordering	Possession and supply permitted only by special licence from the Secretary of State issued (to a doctor only) for scientific or research purposes	A requisition must be signed in duplicate by the nurse in charge. The requisition must be endorsed to indicate that the drugs have been supplied. Copies should be kept for 2 years	As Schedule 2	No requirement[b]	No requirement[b]
Storage	Must be kept in a suitable locked cupboard to which access is restricted	As Schedule 1	Buprenorphine and diethylpropion: as Schedule 1 drugs. All other drugs. no requirement	No requirement[b]	No requirement[b]
Record keeping	Controlled drug register must be used	As Schedule 1	No requirement	No requirement[b]	No requirement[b]
Prescription	Prescription must include: ■ the name and address of patient ■ the drug, the dose, the form of preparation ■ the total quantity of drug or the total number of dosage units to be supplied. This quantity must be stated in words and figures The prescription must be written indelibly in the prescriber's own handwriting	As Schedule 1	As Schedule 1 except for phenobarbitone (this includes all preparations of phenobarbitone and phenobarbitone sodium). Because of its use as an antiepileptic, it does not need to be written in the prescriber's own handwriting	No requirement[b]	No requirement[b]
Administration to patients	Under special licence only A doctor or dentist or anyone acting on their instructions may administer these drugs to anyone for whom they have been prescribed	A doctor or dentist or anyone acting on their instructions may administer these drugs to anyone for whom they have been prescribed	A doctor or dentist or anyone acting on their instructions may administer these drugs to anyone for whom they have been prescribed	No requirement[b]	No requirement[b]

[a] Temazepam preparations are exempt from record-keeping and prescription requirements, but are subject to storage requirements.
[b] 'No requirement' indicates that the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971 imposes no legal requirements additional to those imposed by the Medicines Act 1968 (HMSO 1968).

Controlled Drugs (Supervision of Management and Use) Regulations 2006

These regulations set out the requirements for certain NHS bodies and independent hospitals to appoint an accountable officer. The duties and responsibilities of the accountable officer are to improve the management and use of controlled drugs. These regulations also allow the periodic inspection of premises.

Misuse of Drugs and Misuse of Drugs (Safe Custody) (Amendment) Regulations 2007

These regulations give accountable officers authority to nominate persons to witness the destruction of controlled drugs within their organization. They also allow operating department practitioners to order, possess and supply controlled drugs.

In addition, they set out changes to the record keeping for controlled drugs, with requirements for recording in the controlled drug register the person (the patient, patient's representative or a healthcare professional) collecting the Schedule 2 controlled drug. If it is a healthcare professional, there is a requirement for the name and address of that person. Records need to be kept regarding whether proof of identity was requested of the patient or the patient's representative and whether this proof of identity was provided. These requirements also changed midazolam from Schedule 4 to Schedule 3.

Implications of the regulations for nursing practice

Accountability and responsibility

The nurse in charge of an area is responsible for the safe and appropriate management of controlled drugs in that area. Certain tasks such as holding of the keys can be delegated to a registered nurse but the overall responsibility remains with the nurse in charge.

Requisition

The nurse in charge of an area is responsible for the requisition of controlled drugs for that area. This task can be delegated to a registered nurse but the overall responsibility remains with that nurse in charge. Orders should be written on suitable stationery and must be signed by an authorized signatory. All those who are authorized to order should have a copy of their signatures kept in pharmacy for validation.

Receipt

When controlled drugs are delivered to the ward they must be handed to an appropriate individual and not left unattended. A registered nurse in charge should check the order against the requisition, including the number ordered and received, and if all is correct they should sign the 'received by' section of the order book (Figure 13.2).

Figure 13.2 Controlled drugs order book.

68 NAME, FORM OF PREPARATION AND STRENGTH Morphine Sulphate Injection 10mg / 1 mL

AMOUNT(S) OBTAINED			AMOUNT(S) ADMINISTERED						
Amount	Date Received	Serial No. of Requisition	Date	Time	Patient's Name	Amount given	Given by (Signature)	Witnessed by (Signature)	STOCK BALANCE
10 ampoules	26/5/2010	12	26/5/2010	14:00	Received from Pharmacy		[illegible]	[illegible]	10
			27/5/10	14:15	Mr. John Smith	10 mg	[illegible]	[illegible]	9
			27/5/10	18:00	Mrs. Dorothy Rose	5mg given/5mg wasted	[illegible]	[illegible]	8

The controlled drug should be entered in the controlled drug register, recording the following information: date, number of requisition, quantity, name, formulation and strength of drug, name and signature of person making the entry, name and signature of witness and the balance in stock. The updated balance should be checked against the controlled drugs physically present and that these are the same. The number of units received should be written in words not figures. The controlled drugs will then be placed in the controlled drug cupboard.

Storage

Controlled drugs should be stored in controlled drug cupboards that conform to British Standard BS2881. If the amount of controlled drugs that are stored is large or in areas where there is not a 24-hour staff presence, a security cabinet that has been evaluated against the SOLD SECURE standard SS304 should be used.

Cupboards should be locked when not in use. The lock must not be common to any other lock in the hospital. Keys must only be available to authorized members of staff and at any time the key holder should be readily identifiable. The cupboard must be dedicated to the storage of controlled drugs. Controlled drugs must be locked away when not in use. There must be arrangements for keeping keys secure, especially in areas that are not operational at all times.

Key holding and access

The nurse in charge is responsible for the controlled drug keys. Key holding may be delegated but the legal responsibility lies with the nurse in charge. The controlled drug keys should be returned to the nurse in charge immediately after use.

For the purpose of stock checking, the key may be handed to an authorized member of pharmacy staff. If keys are lost, the senior nurse,

the pharmacy manager and accountable officer must be contacted. Spare keys can be issued to ensure that patient care is not impeded.

Record keeping

Each ward that holds controlled drugs should keep a record of received and administered controlled drugs in a controlled drug record book. The nurse in charge is responsible for keeping the controlled drug record book up to date and in good order.

The controlled drug record book should have sequentially numbered pages, have a separate page for each drug and strength, entries should be in chronological order and in ink. The entries in the controlled drug record book should be signed by a registered nurse and then witnessed by a second registered nurse. If a second nurse is unavailable, the transaction can be witnessed by another practitioner such as a doctor, pharmacist or pharmacy technician.

When the end of a page is reached, the balance should be transferred to another page. The new number should be written on the bottom of the finished page and as a matter of good practice the transfer should be witnessed. If a mistake is made in the record book, the mistake should be bracketed so that the original entry is still clear and then signed, dated and witnessed by another nurse or registered professional who will also do the same for the correction.

Stock checks and discrepancies

The stock balance entered in the controlled drug record book should be checked against the amounts in the cupboard. In addition, regular stock checks should be carried out by pharmacy. The nurse in charge is responsible for ensuring that the stock checks are carried out. The stock checks should be carried out by two registered nurses. When checking the balance, the record book should be checked against the contents of the cupboard, not the reverse. Packs with unopened tamper-evident seals do not need to be opened during the check and liquid medicines can be checked by visual inspection. A record should be made in the record book that the stock has been checked with words such as ‘check of stock level’ and a signature of the registered nurse and the witness.

If a discrepancy is found it should be checked that all requisitions have been entered, that all drugs administered have been entered, that items have not been recorded in the wrong place in the record book, that the drugs have not been placed in the wrong cupboard and that the balances have been added correctly. If an error is found, the nurse in charge should make an entry to correct the balance which should be witnessed. If the error cannot be found, the chief pharmacist and the accountable officer should be contacted immediately.

Archiving

Controlled drug record books should be stored for a minimum of 2 years from the date the last entry was made/date of use.

Administration

Any registered practitioner can administer any drug specified as Schedule 2, 3 and 4 provided they are acting in accordance with the directions of an appropriately qualified prescriber (see Prescribing).

Two practitioners must be involved in the administration of controlled drugs, and both practitioners should be present during the whole administration procedure (NMC 2008a). The two practitioners should have clearly defined roles. One should be the checker and the other should take responsibility for taking the drug out of the cupboard, preparing and administering the drug. These roles should not be interchangeable during the procedure as this can result in errors. They should both witness the preparation, the controlled drug being administered and the destruction of any surplus drug. An entry should be made in the controlled drug record book recording the following information:

- the date and time the dose was administered
- the name of the patient
- quantity administered
- the name
- formulation
- the strength being administered
- the name and signature of the person administering

- the name and signature of the witness
- the balance in stock (see procedure).

Return and disposal including part vials

Unused controlled drug stock should be returned to pharmacy. Controlled drugs that are expired should also be returned to pharmacy for safe destruction. An entry should be made in the relevant page of the record book recording the following information:

- date
- reason for return
- name and signature of registered nurse
- name and signature of witness
- quantity removed
- name, form and strength
- the balance remaining.

Disposal of controlled drugs can take place on the ward if a part vial is administered to the patient or if individual doses of controlled drugs were prepared and not administered. If destroying a part vial, the registered nurse should record the amount given and the amount wasted under the administration entry in the record book. The entry and destruction should be witnessed by a registered nurse or other registered professional. If destroying an unused prepared controlled drug, this should also be recorded in the record book and the entry and destruction witnessed by another registered professional.

Stationery

Controlled drug stationery should be stored in a locked cupboard or drawer. Controlled drug stationery will be issued from pharmacy against a written requisition signed by an appropriate member of staff. Only one requisition book should be in use by a ward. If a new record book is started, the stock balance transfer should be witnessed by a registered nurse.

Transport

Controlled drugs should be transferred in a secure, locked or sealed, tamper-evident container.

A person collecting controlled drugs should be aware of safe storage and security and the importance of handing over to an authorized person to obtain a signature. They must also have a valid ID badge.

Supply under PGD

Registered nurses in accident and emergency departments and coronary care units can supply or administer diamorphine for the treatment of cardiac pain in accordance with a PGD.

They can also supply or administer any Schedule 3 or 4 controlled drug in accordance with a PGD (except anabolic steroids in Schedule 4 Part 2 and injectable formulations for the purpose of treating a person who is addicted to a drug).

Prescribing

A supplementary prescriber, when acting in accordance with a clinical management plan, can prescribe a controlled drug provided the controlled drug is included in the clinical management plan. An independent nurse prescriber can prescribe from the list of controlled drugs included in the nurse prescribers' formulary solely for the medical conditions indicated (DH 2007). The controlled drugs most commonly prescribed by nurses between 2007 and 2008 were methadone, buprenophine, diazepam and co-codamol (Care Quality Commission 2009).

In response to seven case reports, published between 2000 and 2005, regarding deaths due to the administration of high-dose (30 mg or greater) morphine or diamorphine to patients who had not previously received doses of opiates, the NPSA released a safer practice notice in 2006, *Ensuring Safer Practice with High Dose Ampoules of Morphine and Diamorphine* (NPSA 2006). In line with this safer practice notice, the following guidance should be adhered to (Box 13.8).

Box 13.8 High-dose opiate guidance

- High-strength preparations of morphine or diamorphine (30 mg or above) should be stored in a location separate from lower-strength preparations (10 mg) within the controlled drugs cupboard.
- Awareness should be raised of the similarities of drug packaging, and consider use of alert stickers being attached to high-strength preparations by pharmacy.
- A review of stock levels should be undertaken in all clinical areas where morphine and diamorphine are stored to assess whether high-strength preparations need to be kept on a permanent basis or whether they could be ordered according to specific patient requirements.
- Clear guidance should be provided to ensure that the correct doses of diamorphine and morphine are prepared in the appropriate clinical situation. For example, diamorphine 5 mg and 10 mg ampoules could be used for both bolus administration and patients newly commenced on diamorphine infusions; diamorphine 30 mg ampoules could be reserved for patients already receiving diamorphine infusions and who require higher daily doses.
- Patients should be observed for the first hour after receiving their first dose of diamorphine or morphine injection.
- Naloxone injections should be available in all clinical areas where morphine and diamorphine are stored.

(NPSA 2006)

Between 2005 and 2008, 4223 incidents were reported to the NRLS involving opioid medicines and the 'wrong/unclear dose or strength' or 'wrong frequency' of medication. As a result, the NPSA released a Rapid Response Report in July 2008. The guidance shown in Box 13.9 has been given.

Box 13.9 Opioid dose/strength guidance

- Confirm any recent opioid dose, formulation, frequency of administration and any other analgesic medicines prescribed for the patient. This may be done, for example, through discussion with the patient or their representative (although not in the case of treatment for addiction), the prescriber or through medication records.
- Where a dose increase is intended, ensure that the calculated dose is safe for the patient (e.g. for oral morphine or oxycodone in adult patients, not normally more than 50% higher than the previous dose).
- Ensure they are familiar with the following characteristics of that medicine and formulation: usual starting dose, frequency of administration, standard dosing increments, symptoms of overdose, common side-effects.

(NPSA 2008a)

The NPSA was notified of 498 midazolam patient safety incidents between November 2004 and November 2008 where the dose prescribed or administered to the patient was inappropriate. Three midazolam-related incidents have resulted in death. As a result, the NPSA released a Rapid Response Report in December 2008. The guidance in Box 13.10 has been given.

Box 13.10 Midazolam guidance

- Ensure that the storage and use of high-strength midazolam (5 mg/mL in 2 mL and 10 mL ampoules, or 2 mg/mL in 5 mL ampoules) are restricted to general anaesthesia, intensive care, palliative medicine and clinical areas/situations where its use has been formally risk assessed, for example, where syringe drivers are used.
- Ensure that in other clinical areas, storage and use of high-strength midazolam are replaced with low-strength midazolam (1 mg/mL in 2 mL or 5 mL ampoules).

- Review therapeutic protocols to ensure that guidance on use of midazolam is clear and that the risks, particularly for the elderly or frail, are fully assessed.
- Ensure that all healthcare practitioners involved directly or participating in sedation techniques have the necessary knowledge, skills and competences.
- Ensure that stocks of flumazenil are available where midazolam is used and that the use of flumazenil is regularly audited as a marker of excessive dosing of midazolam.
- Ensure that sedation is covered by organizational policy and that overall responsibility is assigned to a senior clinician which, in most cases, will be an anaesthetist.

(NPSA 2008b)

Procedure guideline 13.2 Medication: controlled drug administration

Essential equipment

- Prescription chart
- Controlled drug record book
- Appropriate medication container, for example medicine pot or syringe

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Consult the patient's prescription chart, checking the name, date of birth, hospital number, allergy status and then ascertain the following:	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug, in the correct formulation, in the prescribed dose using the appropriate diluent and by the correct route (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C).
(a) Drug name (generic)	
(b) Dose	
(c) Date and time of administration	
(d) Frequency	
(e) Route and method of administration	
(f) Formulation of oral preparation, e.g. modified release, immediate release	To ensure the correct formulation is given as many different formulations are available for the same drug. E

(g) Diluent as appropriate	
(h) Validity of prescription	Ensure prescription is legal (DH 2003b, C).
(i) Legible signature and contact details of prescriber.	To ensure prescription is legal and complies with hospital policy (DH 2003b, C).
(j) Check when the drug was last administered.	To ensure that the patient requires the drug at this time. E
Procedure	
2 With the second Registered Nurse, take the keys and open the controlled drug cupboard. Take the ward controlled drug record book that contains the prescribed controlled drug and turn to the relevant page headed with the name and strength of the controlled drug.	To be able to check the stock and to enter the details into the controlled drug record book (DH 2003b, C).
3 With the second Registered Nurse, select the correct drug from the controlled drug cupboard.	To comply with hospital policy and to ensure patient receives the correct medicine (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2006, C).
4 With the second Registered Nurse, check the stock level against the last entry in the ward record book.	To comply with hospital policy (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2006, C).
5 With the second Registered Nurse, check the appropriate dose and concentration/strength (e.g. 10 mg in 1 mL or 5 mg in 5 mL) and formulation against the prescription chart and remove the dose from the box/bottle and place into an appropriate container, e.g. medicine pot or syringe.	To comply with hospital policy and to ensure patient receives the correct dose and strength of medicine (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2006, C).
6 Return the remaining stock to the cupboard and lock the cupboard.	To comply with hospital policy (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2006, C).
7 Enter the date, dose, new stock level and the patient's name in the ward record book, ensuring that both you and the second Registered Nurse sign the entry. NB: May require entry into different sections if the dose is to be made up of different doses, e.g. 70 mg = 1 × 50 mg and 2 × 10 mg). If any is wasted then ensure it is documented correctly, e.g. 5 mg given and 5 mg wasted.	To comply with hospital policy (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2006, C).
8 With the second Registered Nurse, take the prepared dose to the patient and check the patient's identity by asking them to verbally identify themselves (where possible) and check against the patient's identification wristband. Also ask and check allergy status.	To prevent error and confirm patient's identity (NPSA 2005, C; NPSA 2007b, C).
9 Administer the drug after checking the prescription chart again. If given orally, wait until the patient has swallowed the medication.	To ensure the patient receives the medicines (DH 2003b, C).
Postprocedure	
10 Once the drug has been administered, the	To prevent duplication of treatment. To comply

prescription chart is signed by the nurse responsible for administering the medication and the Registered Nurse who witnessed the administration.	with hospital policy (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2006, C). To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2009, C).
11 The nurse should check the patient after administration to check for effectiveness and/or toxicity.	To ensure that the drug has been effective and to administer a breakthrough dose if necessary. To check that the patient has not experienced any toxicity that may require interventions. E
12 If drug given via a syringe driver/pump, the nurse should return to check the infusion and site and document in the appropriate records.	To ensure that the infusion is infusing at the correct rate and the site is suitable. E

Postprocedural considerations

Ongoing care

Patients should be monitored for signs of adverse effects from opioids and for signs of toxicity.

The most common side-effects are constipation, nausea and vomiting and drowsiness. All patients who are prescribed an opioid regularly should be prescribed laxatives concurrently to prevent constipation. Nausea and vomiting should subside after a few days but patients should be prescribed antiemetics and given reassurance. Drowsiness due to opioids should also subside after a few days so patients should be given reassurance. (Regnard and Hockley 2004)

The warning signs of toxicity due to opioids are:

- drowsiness
- confusion
- myoclonus
- hallucinations and nightmares
- respiratory depression.

If patients are showing signs of toxicity the opioid dose should be reduced or stopped and as-required opioid pain relief given (Regnard and Hockley 2004). Changing to an alternative opioid can also be considered (Regnard and Hockley 2004).

Naloxone, a specific opioid antagonist, has a high affinity for opioid receptors and reverses the effect of opioid analgesics. It is rarely needed in palliative care but may be needed in the case of opioid-induced respiratory depression (with respiration rate of 8 or below).

Care must be taken not to give naloxone to patients who have opioid-induced drowsiness, confusion or hallucinations that are not life threatening due to the risk of reversing the opioid analgesic effect (Twycross and Wilcock 2007).

Naloxone should be given in stat doses every 2 minutes until respiratory function is satisfactory and doses should be titrated against respiratory function and not consciousness in order to avoid total reversal of the analgesic effect (Twycross and Wilcock 2007). Flumazanil may be required for reversal of midazolam.

Routes of administration

The three basic routes of administration are enteral, parenteral and topical. The enteral route uses the gastrointestinal (GI) tract for absorption of drugs. The parenteral route bypasses the GI tract and is associated with all forms of injections. The topical route also bypasses the GI tract and is associated with drugs that are administered to the skin and mucous membranes (see Table 13.8).

Table 13.8 Advantages and disadvantages of the routes of administration

Route	Advantages	Disadvantages
Oral	Convenient Easy to administer Least expensive	Compliance Some drugs not suitable for oral route May not be able to swallow or take oral medications
Topical	Easy to apply Local effects	Can stain clothing Local irritation
Injections	Absorbed quickly Avoids GI tract	Invasive Pain Complications such as infection May be difficult to self-administer
Site specific, for example eye, ear, nasal, vaginal, rectal, pulmonary	Often for local effects	Discomfort and embarrassment May be difficult to self-administer

Oral administration

Definition

Medication taken either through the mouth that is swallowed by the patient or administered via a feeding tube for example nasogastric, percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) (Snyder 2007).

Oral administration is the most convenient route for drug administration and may result in better compliance (Kelly and Wright 2009). It is the least expensive and is usually the safest. Due to their widespread use, oral drugs are prepared in a variety of dosage forms.

Related theory

Tablets

These come in a great variety of shapes, sizes, colours and types. The formulation may be very simple, presenting as a plain, white, uncoated tablet, or complex, designed with specific therapeutic aims. Sugar coatings are used to improve appearance and palatability. In cases where the drug is a gastric irritant or is broken down by gastric acid, an enteric coating may be used; this is designed to allow the tablet to remain intact in the stomach and to pass unchanged into the small bowel where the coating dissolves and the drug is released and absorbed. Tablets may be formulated specifically to achieve control of the rate of release of drug from the tablet as it passes through the alimentary tract. Terms such as ‘sustained-release’, ‘controlled-release’ and ‘modified-release’ are used by manufacturers to describe these preparations. Tablets may also be formulated specifically to dissolve readily (‘soluble’ or ‘effervescent’), to be chewed or to be held under the tongue (‘sublingual’) or placed between the gum and inside of the mouth (‘buccal’). Unscored or coated tablets should not be crushed or broken, nor should most ‘slow-release’ or ‘sustained-action’ tablets, since this can alter the rate of release of drug from the tablet (Smyth 2006).

Capsules

These offer a useful method of formulating drugs which are difficult to make into a tablet or are particularly unpalatable.

The capsule shells are usually made of gelatine and the contents of the capsules may be solid, liquid or of a paste-like consistency. The contents do not cause deterioration of the shell. The shell, however, is attacked by the digestive fluids and the contents are then released. Delayed-release capsule formulations also exist. Gastro-resistant capsules are delayed-release capsules that are intended to resist the gastric fluid and to release their active substance or substances in the intestinal fluid (British Pharmacopoeia 2007). If for any reason the capsule is unpalatable or the patient is unable to take it, the contents should not routinely be removed from the shell without first seeking advice from a pharmacist. Removing contents from the capsule could destroy their properties and cause gastric irritation or premature release of the drug into an incompatible pH (Downie *et al.* 2003).

Lozenges and pastilles

Lozenges and pastilles are solid, single-dose preparations intended to be sucked to obtain a local or systemic effect to the mouth and/or throat (British Pharmacopoeia 2007).

Linctuses, elixirs and mixtures

Linctuses

These are viscous oral liquids that may contain one or more active ingredients; the solution usually contains a high proportion of sucrose. Linctuses are intended for use in the treatment or relief of cough.

Elixirs

These are clear, flavoured oral liquids containing one or more active ingredients dissolved in a vehicle that usually contains a high proportion of sucrose. A vehicle is a substance usually without therapeutic action used as a medium to give bulk for the administration of medicines. If the

active drug is sensitive to moisture it may be formulated as a flavoured powder or granulation and then dissolved in water just before use.

Mixtures

Mixtures are usually aqueous preparations, containing one or more drug, which can be in the form of either a solution or a suspension. Mixtures are normally made up when required as they have a shelf-life of 2 weeks from preparation. Suspended drugs may slowly separate on standing but are easily redispersed by shaking which should be done before every use.

Drugs suspended, mixed or dispersed in liquids are often referred to as syrups. However, syrups do not contain active ingredients but are used as a vehicle for medications in order to decrease crystallization, increase solubility and provide aromatic and flavouring properties (British Pharmacopoeia 2007).

Evidence-based approaches

Observational studies suggest that medication administration errors for oral medicine range from 3% to 8% (Ho *et al.* 1997, Taxis *et al.* 1999) but this has been found to be twice as high in mental health patients who have swallowing difficulties (Haw *et al.* 2007). A proportion of these difficulties are due to an aversion to swallowing tablets, the most common cause being dysphagia (Kelly and Wright 2009). Guidance on medicines management related to dysphagia can be found within the NMC *Standards for Medicines Management* (NMC 2008a). When giving medicines to patients with dysphagia, both the patient and the medicine should be reviewed on a regular basis. If they cannot swallow tablets then liquid or dispersible medications should be the first consideration (Kelly and Wright 2009). If the oral route is not patent then alternative routes should be used.

Covert drug administration

The NMC recognizes that ‘this is a complex issue’, as covert drug administration involves the fundamental principles of patient and client

autonomy and consent to treatment, which are set out in common law and statute and underpinned by the Human Rights Act 1998 (NMC 2008a). The covert administration of medicines should not be confused with the administration of medicines against someone's will, which in itself may not be deceptive, but may be unlawful (NMC 2008a).

Some vulnerable groups of patients, such as those who are confused, may refuse to take medication. Traditionally, in some places, medication has therefore been hidden or disguised in food. The NMC ((2001a), 2001b, 2008a) offered the following position statement.

> As a general principle, by disguising medication in food or drink, the patient or client is being led to believe that they are not receiving medication when in fact they are. The registered nurse, midwife or health visitor will need to be sure that what they are doing is in the best interests of the patient or client and be accountable for this decision.

Disguising medication in food and drink is acceptable under exceptional circumstances in which covert administration may be considered to prevent a patient, who is incapable of informed consent, from missing out on essential treatment (NMC 2001b, NMC 2008a). The following principles should be followed when making such a decision.

- The medication must be considered essential for the patient's health and well-being.
- The decision to administer medication covertly should be considered only as a contingency in an emergency, not as regular practice.
- The registered practitioner must make the decision only after discussion and with the support of the multiprofessional team and, if appropriate, the patient's relatives, carers or advocates.
- The pharmacist must be involved in these decisions as adding medication to food or drink can alter its pharmacological properties and thereby affect its performance.
- The decision and action taken must be fully documented in the patient's care plan and regularly reviewed.
- Regular attempts should continue to be made to encourage the patient to take the medication voluntarily (NMC 2001b, NMC 2008a, Treloar

et al. 2000).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Medicine pots

Medicine pots (Figure 13.3) allow a dosage form to be taken from its original container to allow immediate administration to a patient. The person who removes medication from its original container and places it into a medicine pot must oversee the administration of this medication. This responsibility cannot be transferred to someone else.

Figure 13.3 Medicine pot.

Tablet splitters

Commercially available tablet splitters (Figure 13.4) may increase the accuracy of tablet splitting when this activity is necessary. Tablets that are unscored, unusually thick or oddly shaped, sugar coated, enteric coated and sustained-release tablets are not suitable for splitting. Areas for consideration when using a tablet splitter include the following.

Figure 13.4 Tablet splitter.

- Can the tablets be split? This must always be discussed with the pharmacy department.
- Do patients have the manual dexterity to use a tablet splitter when at home?
- Will splitting the tablets affect patient adherence when they are at home? Will patients skip or double dose rather than split tablets?
- How will the storage of split tablets affect the stability of the tablets? What about the effect of light and air (Marriott and Nation 2002)?

Tablet crushers

Tablet crushers (Figure 13.5) can be used when a patient has swallowing difficulties and no alternative dosage form exists. Crushing tablets is usually outside the product licence. The Medicines Act 1968 states that unlicensed medicines can only be authorized by a medical or dental practitioner so if the activity of crushing tablets is going to take place, there should be discussion and agreement between the prescriber and the person who will administer the medicine. Discussion should also take place with the pharmacist to check that the tablet is suitable for crushing and that the efficacy of the medication is not changed as a result. Tablets that are enteric coated, sustained release or chewable cannot be crushed. Areas for consideration when crushing a tablet include the following.

Figure 13.5 Tablet crusher.

- Can the tablet be crushed? This must always be discussed with the pharmacy department.
- Will crushing make the tablet unpalatable?
- Will crushing the tablet cause any adverse effects to the patient, for example burning of the oral mucosa?
- Will crushing the tablet result in inaccurate dosing (Kelly and Wright 2009)?

When a tablet crusher is used, water should be added to the crushed tablet and the resulting solution drawn up using an oral syringe. The crusher should then be rinsed and the process repeated. Tablet crushers should be rinsed before and after use to prevent cross-contamination with other medicines (Fair and Proctor 2007, Smyth 2006).

When a tablet crusher has been used, it should be opened and washed under running water, dried with a tissue and left to air dry on a tissue or paper towel.

Monitored dosage systems and compliance aids

Monitored dosage systems and compliance aids, for example dosette boxes (Figure 13.6), are designed to help patients remember when to take their medication. They can also let carers know whether patients have taken their medication. The following should be considered when using these systems.

Figure 13.6 Dosette box.

- They can only be used for tablets and capsules.
- Medicines that are susceptible to moisture should not be put in these systems.
- Light-sensitive medicines should not be put in these systems.
- Medicines that are harmful when handled should not be put in these systems.
- If the patient is on medications that cannot be stored in these systems, precautions should be put in place to ensure that they can cope with two systems.
- If the patient's drug regimen is not stable, consideration should be given to how easy it will be to make changes to the system.
- As-required medication cannot be placed in these systems.
- These systems comply with labelling and leaflet legislation so they must always be dispensed by a pharmacy department (RPSGB 2007b).

Oral syringes

If a syringe is needed to measure and administer an oral dose, an oral syringe (Figure 13.7) that cannot be attached to intravenous catheters or ports should be used. These syringes are purple in colour. All oral syringes containing oral liquid medicines must be labelled by the person who prepared the syringe with the name and strength of the medicine, the patient name and the time it was prepared. Labelling is unecessary if the preparation and administration is one uninterrupted process and the labelled syringe does not leave the hands of the person who prepared it. Only one unlabelled syringe should be handled at any one time (NPSA 2007d).

Figure 13.7 Oral syringe (compliant with NPSA guidance).

Specific patient preparations

Before administering oral medication, the nurses should assess for:

- the patient's ability to understand the purpose of the medication being administered
- any medication allergies and hypersensitivities
- nil by mouth status
- the patient's ability to swallow the form of medication
- the patient's cough and gag reflexes
- any contraindications to oral medications including nausea and vomiting, absence of bowel sounds/reduced peristalsis, nasogastric suctioning or any circumstance affecting bowel motility or absorption of medication, for example general anaesthesia, GI surgery, inflammatory bowel disease
- any possibility of drug–drug or drug–food interactions
- any preadministration assessment for specific medications, for example pulse or blood pressure.

(Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007)

Procedure guideline 13.3 Medication: oral drug administration

See also Table 13.9

Essential equipment

- Drugs to be administered

- Recording sheet or book as required by law or hospital policy
- Patient's prescription chart, to check dose, route and so on
- Glass of water
- Any protective clothing required by hospital policy for specified drugs, such as antibiotics or cytotoxic drugs, for example gloves
- Medicine container (disposable if possible)

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
2 Before administering any prescribed drug, check that it is due and has not already been given. Check that the information contained in the prescription chart is complete, correct and legible.	To protect the patient from harm (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C).
3 Before administering any prescribed drug, consult the patient's prescription chart and ascertain the following:	
(a) Drug **(b)** Dose **(c)** Date and time of administration **(d)** Route and method of administration **(e)** Diluent as appropriate **(f)** Validity of prescription **(g)** Signature of prescriber **(h)** The prescription is legible.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate diluent and by the correct route (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C). To protect the patient from harm (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C).

Procedure

4 Select the required medication and check the expiry date.	Treatment with medication that is outside the expiry date is dangerous. Drugs deteriorate with storage. The expiry date indicates when a particular drug is no longer pharmacologically efficacious (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C).
5 Empty the required dose into a medicine container. Avoid touching the preparation.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection. To minimize the risk of harm to the nurse (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

6 Take the medication and the prescription chart to the patient. Check the patient's identity by asking the patient to state their full name and date of birth. If the patient is unable to confirm details then check patient identity band against prescription chart.	To ensure that the medication is administered to the correct patient (NPSA 2005, C).
7 Evaluate the patient's knowledge of the medication being offered. If this knowledge appears to be faulty or incorrect, offer an explanation of the use, action, dose and potential side-effects of the drug or drugs involved.	A patient has a right to information about treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2008b, C).
8 Assist the patient to a sitting position where possible. A side-lying position may also be used if the patient is unable to sit.	To ease swallowing and prevent aspiration (Chernecky *et al*. 2002, E).
9 Make any required assessments such as pulse, BP or respiration.	These are required to ensure the patient is fit enough to receive medication, for example BP before antihypertensives (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, E).
10 Administer the drug as prescribed.	To meet legal requirements and hospital policy (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2009, C).
11 Offer a glass of water, if allowed, assisting the patient where necessary.	To facilitate swallowing of the medication (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, E; Jordan *et al.* 2003, E).
12 Stay with the patient until they have swallowed all the medication.	To ensure that medication has been taken on time (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, E).
Postprocedure	
13 Record the dose given in the prescription chart and in any other place made necessary by legal requirement or hospital policy.	To meet legal requirements and hospital policy (DH 2003b, C; NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2009, C).

Problem-solving table 13.1 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 13.3)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Patient vomits when taking or after taking tablets	Patient suffering from nausea and vomiting	Administer antiemetics prior to administration of tablets. These may need to be given via rectal, IM or IV route	If patient vomits immediately after tablet swallowed then it may be given again (maybe after antiemetics). If vomits some time after tablet taken it may depend on type and frequency of medication as to whether it can be retaken. Patients are advised to retake if they can see a whole tablet in vomit
Patient unable to swallow tablets	Patient suffering from dysphagia or has issues swallowing tablets	Discuss with pharmacy regarding availability of medication in liquid form	Discuss with prescriber as to administering the medicine in another form or route

Table 13.9 Considerations for specific types of administration

Consideration	Rationale
Administer irritant drugs with meals or snacks	To minimize their effect on the gastric mucosa (Jordan *et al.* 2003, Shepherd 2002a)
Administer drugs that interact with food, or that are destroyed in significant proportions by digestive enzymes, between meals or on an empty stomach	To prevent interference with the absorption of the drug (Jordan *et al.* 2003, Shepherd 2002a)
Do not break a tablet unless it is scored and appropriate to do so. Break scored tablets with a file or a tablet cutter. Wash after use	Breaking may cause incorrect dosage, gastrointestinal irritation or destruction of a drug in an incompatible pH. To reduce risk of contamination between tablets (DH 2007, Jordan *et al.* 2003, NMC 2008a, Shepherd 2002a)
Do not interfere with time-release capsules and enteric-coated tablets. Ask patients to swallow these whole and not to chew them	The absorption rate of the drug will be altered (Jordan *et al.* 2003, Perry 2007)
Sublingual tablets must be placed under the tongue and buccal tablets between gum and cheek	To allow for correct absorption (Perry 2007)
When administering liquids to babies and young children, or when an accurately measured dose in multiples of 1 mL is needed for an adult, an oral syringe should be used in preference to a medicine spoon or measure	An oral syringe is much more accurate than a measure or a 5 mL spoon Use of a syringe makes administration of the correct dose much easier in an uncooperative child

	Oral syringes are available and are designed to be washable and reused for the same patient. However, in the immunocompromised patient single use only is recommended. Oral syringes must be clearly labelled for oral or enteral use only (DH 2007, NPSA 2007d)
In babies and children especially, correct use of the syringe is very important. The tip should be gently pushed into and towards the side of the mouth. The contents are then *slowly* discharged towards the inside of the cheek, pausing if necessary to allow the liquid to be swallowed. If children are unco-operative it may help to place the end of the barrel between the teeth	To prevent injury to the mouth and eliminate the danger of choking the patient (Watt 2003) To get the dose in and to prevent the patient spitting it out (Watt 2003)
When administering gargling medication, throat irrigations should not be warmer than body temperature	Liquid warmer than body temperature may cause discomfort or damage tissue.

Topical administration

Definition

Medication applied onto the skin and mucous membranes primarily for its local effects, for example creams and ointments (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007).

Related theory

Creams

Creams are emulsions of oil and water and are generally well absorbed into the skin. They are usually more cosmetically acceptable than ointments because they are less greasy and easier to apply (BNF 2011). They may be used as a 'base' in which a variety of drugs may be applied for local therapy (BNF 2011).

Ointments

Ointments are greasy preparations, which are normally anhydrous and insoluble in water, and are more occlusive than creams (BNF 2011).

They are absorbed more slowly into the skin and leave a greasy residue. They have similar uses to creams and are particularly suitable for dry, scaly lesions (BNF 2011).

Lotions

These are emollient liquid solutions, emuslions or suspensions which may be water or oil based (Snyder 2007).

Pastes

These are semi-solid preparations with adhesive properties and they tend to be thicker than ointment or creams (Snyder 2007).

Wound products

See Chapter 15.

Evidence-based approaches

The risk of serious effects is generally low but systemic effects can occur if the skin is thin, if drug concentration is high or contact is prolonged (Snyder 2007).

Preprocedural considerations

Specific patient preparations

The condition of the affected site should be assessed for altered skin integrity as applying medicines to broken skin could cause them to be absorbed too rapidly, resulting in systemic effects (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007). The affected area must be washed and dried before applying the topical medicines where appropriate, unless the prescription directs otherwise.

Procedure guideline 13.4 Medication: topical applications

Essential equipment

- Clean non-sterile gloves
- Sterile topical swabs
- Applicators

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C).
2 Check the patient's prescription chart and the patient's identity.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug and dose (NMC 2008a, C).
Procedure	
3 Assist the patient into the required position.	To allow access to the affected area of skin. E
4 Close room door or curtains if appropriate.	To ensure patient privacy and dignity. E
5 Assess the condition of the skin and use aseptic technique if the skin is broken.	To prevent local or systemic infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 If the medication is to be rubbed into the skin, the preparation should be placed on a sterile topical swab.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection. To protect the nurse (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
7 If the preparation causes staining, advise the patient of this.	To ensure that adequate precautions are taken beforehand such as removal of clothing and to prevent stains (NMC 2008b, C).
8 Use a sterile dressing if required.	To ensure the ointment remains in place (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, E).
Postprocedure	
9 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C)

Postprocedural considerations

Educate the patient to inform the nurse if there is any itching, skin colour change or signs of a rash following application.

Complications

Local skin reaction

The skin site may appear inflamed and oedema with blistering indicates subacute inflammation or eczema has developed from worsening of skin lesions. Patients may also complain of pruritus and tenderness which could indicate slow or impaired healing and should be referred to the prescriber; alternative therapies may be required (Snyder 2007).

Transdermal administration

Definition

Medication applied to the outermost layer of the skin, the stratum corneum, usually as an adhesive medicated disc that allows the medication to be absorbed at a slow and constant rate in order to produce a systemic effect (Chernecky *et al.* 2002).

Related theory

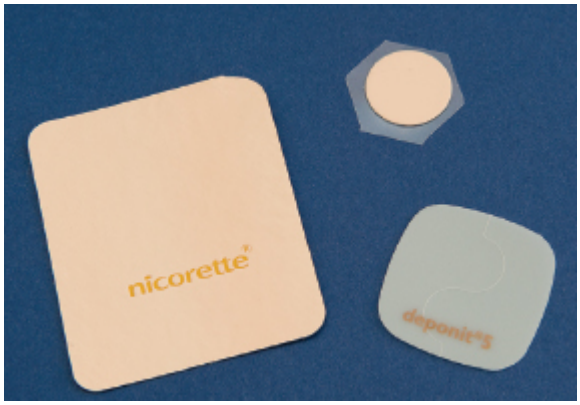
Conventional transdermal systems

These systems consist of a gel or ointment which is measured and placed directly onto the skin. Drugs that are used in this way include glyceryl trinitrate and oestradiol. Delivering drugs in this way can be messy for patients and can also result in variations of the dose delivered due to the amount applied, the amount of rubbing in of the product, the amount of product transferred onto clothing and so on.

Transdermal patches

A transdermal patch (Figure 13.8) contains a certain amount of drug and delivers it in a quantity which is sufficient to cause the desired pharmacological effect when it crosses the skin and into the systemic system.

Figure 13.8 Transdermal patches.



Three types of transdermal patch are available.

Adhesive

These are simply designed patches which consist of a drug-containing adhesive and a backing material. These patches do not provide much control over the rate of delivery and in most cases the stratum corneum controls the rate (Hillery *et al*. 2001).

Layered or matrix patches

Layered patches consist of a drug-containing matrix, an adhesive layer and a backing material. The drug-containing matrix controls the release of drug from the system (Hillery *et al.* 2001).

Reservoir

Reservoir patches consist of an enclosed reservoir of drug, a membrane layer, an adhesive layer and a backing material. The membrane layer controls the rate of drug delivery from the reservoir of drug.

Drugs which can be delivered in a transdermal system include fentanyl, hyoscine, nicotine and oestradiol (Hillery *et al.* 2001).

Evidence-based approaches

The advantages of transdermal systems are the avoidance of the presystemic metabolism, the drug effects can be maintained within the therapeutic window for longer which reduces side-effects and maintains constant dosing, there can be improved patient compliance and drug effects can be stopped with the withdrawal of the patch and the

avoidance of the first-pass metabolism (Hillery *et al.* 2001). First-pass metabolism occurs when a drug passes through the digestive system and enters the hepatic portal system and the liver before it reaches the rest of the body. The liver metabolizes many drugs, thus reducing their bio-availability before reaching the rest of the circulatory system (Hardman *et al.* 1996).

A disadvantage of transdermal systems is the limited number of drugs for which the system is suitable; for example, drugs have to have a suitable potency to allow them to absorb across the skin and cause an effect. Tolerance-inducing drugs would need a period during which they were not administered, which is not always possible with transdermal systems. In addition, drugs to be used in transdermal systems cannot be irritating to the skin otherwise they would not be tolerated by patients (Hillery *et al.* 2001).

Preprocedural considerations

Specific patient preparations

The condition of the affected site should be assessed for altered skin integrity as applying medicines to broken skin could cause too rapid absorption, resulting in systemic effects (Cherneck *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007). The affected area must be washed and dried before applying the patch, which should be attached to hairless areas of skin. The upper chest, upper arms and upper back are recommended sites and the distal areas of extermities should be avoided (Chernecky *et al.* 2002). Patches should not be trimmed or cut. Contact with water does not affect the patch (Chernecky *et al.* 2002).

Procedure guideline 13.5 Medication: transdermal applications

Essential equipment

- Transdermal patch

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale

1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C).
2 Check the patient's prescription chart and the patient's identity.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug and dose (NMC 2008a, C).
Procedure	
3 Close room door or curtains if appropriate.	To ensure patient privacy and dignity. E
4 Assist the patient into the required position.	To allow access to the affected area of skin. E
5 Assess the condition of the skin and do not apply to skin that is oily, burnt, cut or irritated in any way.	To prevent local or systemic effects and to ensure the patch will remain in place (DH 2007, C; Snyder 2007, E).
6 Remove any drug residue from the former site before placing the next patch.	To avoid any skin irritation (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, E).
7 Carefully remove the patch from its protective cover and hold it by the edge without touching the adhesive edges.	To ensure the patch will adhere and the medication dose will not be affected (Snyder 2007, E).
8 Apply the patch immediately, pressing firmly with the palm of the hand for up to 10 seconds, making sure the patch sticks well around the edges.	To ensure adequate adhesion and prevent loss of patch which would result in reduced dose and effectiveness (Snyder 2007, E).
9 Date and initial the patch	To ensure all staff know when it must be changed (Snyder 2007, E).
Postprocedure	
10 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C).

Postprocedural considerations

Ongoing care

To avoid skin irritation, the sites of transdermal patches should be rotated (Chernecky *et al.* 2002). After use, the patch still contains substantial quantities of active ingredients which may have harmful effects if they reach the aquatic environment. Hence, after removal, the used patch should be folded in half, adhesive side inwards so that the release membrane is not exposed, placed in the original sachet and then discarded safely out of reach of children. Any used or unused patches should be discarded according to local policy or returned to the

pharmacy. Used patches should not be flushed down the toilet or placed in liquid waste disposal systems (www.medicines.org.uk).

Complications

See Topical applications.

Rectal administration

Definition

These are medications administered via the rectum which may exert a local effect on the GI mucosa such as promoting defaecation or systemic effects such as providing analgesia or relieving nausea and vomiting (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007).

Related theory

Suppositories

Suppositories are solid preparations which may contain one or more drug. The drugs are normally ground or sieved and then dissolved or dispersed into a glyceride-type fatty acid base or a water-soluble one. These suppositories will either melt after insertion into the body or dissolve and mix with the available volume of rectal fluid (Aulton 1988).

Enemas

Enemas are solutions or dispersions of a drug in a small volume of water or oil. These preparations are presented in a small plastic container made of a bulb which contains the drug and an application tube. The bulb can be compressed when the tube has been inserted in the rectum to deliver the drug. Enemas can be difficult for patients to use by themselves compared to suppositories and therefore their use is not as widespread (Aulton 1988).

Evidence-based approaches

The advantages of rectal administration include the following.

- The drug can be administered when the patient is not able to make use of the oral route, for example if the patient is vomiting or is postoperative and therefore either unconscious or unable to ingest via the oral route.
- In some categories of patient it may be easier to use the rectal route than the oral one as it does not require swallowing, for example children, the elderly.
- The drug may be less suited to the oral route, for example the oral route can cause severe local GI side-effects. The drug may not be stable after GI administration or it may have an unacceptable taste which makes it unpalatable via the oral route.
- Rarely cause local irritation or side-effects.

(Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007)

The disadvantages of the rectal route include the following.

- Strong feelings against the rectal route by some patients in some countries and also feelings of discomfort and embarrassment.
- There can be slow and incomplete absorption via the rectal route.
- The development of proctitis has been reported with rectal drug administration.
- Contraindicated in patients who have had rectal surgery or have active rectal bleeding.

(Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Downie *et al.* 2003, Snyder 2007)

After a suppository is inserted into the rectum, body temperature melts the suppository so it can be distributed. Proper placement is important to promote retention of the medication until it dissolves and is absorbed into the mucosa (Snyder 2007).

For further information about the administration of rectal medication, see Chapter 6.

Vaginal administration

Definition

Medications are inserted into the vaginal canal usually for local effects such as treatment of infections (e.g. *Trichomonas* and *Candida* infections) and contraceptive purposes. They are used less commonly for systemic effects (such as oestrogens and progesterones) (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007).

Related theory

Vaginal preparations can be delivered in a wide variety of dosage forms including pessaries, creams, aerosol foams, gels and tablets (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007).

Evidence-based approaches

The advantages of the vaginal route include the following.

- The vagina offers a large surface area for drug absorption.
- A rich blood supply ensures a rapid absorption of drug.
- This route can act as an alternative to drugs that cannot be delivered via the oral route (as for suppositories).
- This route can be used when patients cannot take drugs via the oral route (as for suppositories).
- The vaginal route can deliver drug over a controlled period of time, thus avoiding peaks and troughs which result in less toxicity and risk of ineffectiveness.

The disadvantages include the following.

- The route is limited to drugs that are potent molecules and are therefore easily absorbed.
- The vagina can be easily irritated by the use of devices or locally irritating drugs.
- Care must be taken with the use of vaginal devices to ensure they are sterilized and not acting as a growth medium for bacteria.
- The vaginal bio-availability can be affected by hormone levels and can therefore change during menstrual cycles, with age and during pregnancy.

- Leakage can occur with vaginal preparations. This can be alleviated by using the preparation at night.
- This route may not be acceptable to some patients.

(Hillery *et al.* 2001)

Preprocedural considerations

Specific patient preparations

Check patient for any allergies and also whether they have recently given birth or undergone vaginal surgery as this may alter tissue integrity and the level of discomfort. The nurse should also review the patient's willingness and ability to self administer the medication (Chernecky *et al.* 2002; Snyder 2007).

Procedure guideline 13.6 Medication: vaginal administration

Essential equipment

- Disposable gloves
- Topical swabs
- Disposable sanitary pad

Medicinal products

- Pessary
- Lubricating jelly
- Prescription chart
- Warm water
- Pen torch

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives her valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C).
2 Consult the patient's prescription sheet and ascertain the following:	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose and by the correct route

(a) Drug **(b)** Dose **(c)** Date and time of administration **(d)** Route and method of administration **(e)** Validity of prescription **(f)** Signature of doctor	(NMC 2008a, C).
3 Select the appropriate pessary and check it with the prescription chart.	To ensure that the correct medication is given to the correct patient at the appropriate time (NMC 2008a, C).
Procedure	
4 Close room door or curtains, keeping the patient covered as much as possible.	To ensure patient privacy and dignity. E
5 Assist the patient into the appropriate position, either left lateral with buttocks to the edge of the bed or supine with the knees drawn up and legs parted. May require a light source, e.g. lamp or torch.	To facilitate easy access to the vaginal canal, visualize the external genitalia and vaginal canal and facilitate correct insertion of the pessary (manufacturer's instruction, C; Chernecky *et al.* 2002, E; Snyder 2007, E).
6 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and put on gloves.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
7 Clean the area with warm water if necessary.	To remove any previously applied creams (Downie *et al.* 2003, E).
8 Remove the pessary from wrapper and apply lubricating jelly to a topical swab and from the swab on to the pessary. Lubricate gloved index finger of dominant hand.	To facilitate insertion of the pessary and ensure the patient's comfort (manufacturer's instruction, C).
9 With non-dominant gloved hand gently retract labial folds to expose vaginal orifice.	To enable insertion of pessary into correct orifice (Snyder 2007, E).
10 Insert the rounded end of the pessary along the posterior vaginal wall and into the top of the vagina (entire length of finger).	To ensure the pessary is inserted into the correct position to ensure equal distribution of medication (Snyder 2007, E). To ensure that the pessary is retained and that the medication can reach its maximum efficiency (manufacturer's instruction, C; Chernecky *et al.* 2002, E).
11 Wipe away any excess lubricating jelly from the patient's vulval and/or perineal area with a topical swab.	To promote patient comfort (Snyder 2007, E).
12 Make the patient comfortable and explain	To absorb any excess discharge (Snyder 2007, E).

to her that there may be a small amount of discharge and apply a clean sanitary pad.	
Postprocedure	
13 Remove and dispose of gloves safely and in accordance with locally approved procedures.	To ensure safe disposal (DH 2005, C; MHRA, 2004 C).
14 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C).

Postprocedural considerations

The patient needs to retain the medication so it is recommended that the medication is administered prior to going to bed or the patient should remain supine for 5–10 minutes after instilling the pessary (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007). It should be explained to the patient that she may also notice a discharge following administration and that it is nothing to be concerned about.

Pulmonary administration

Definition

'Dosage forms introduced into the body via the lungs in an aerosol form to achieve local effects such as to improve bronchodilation or to improve clearance of pulmonary secretions' (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007). Systemic effects can also be achieved through the pulmonary route, for example volatile anaesthetics (Hillery *et al.* 2001). Some are inhaled via the mouth, some via the nose and some via nose and mouth (Downie *et al.* 2003).

Related theory

In order for drugs to reach the lungs, they must be delivered in an aerosol form. The aerosol penetrates the lung airways and the deeper passages of the respiratory tract provide a large surface area for drug absorption and the alveolar-capillary network absorbs medication

rapidly (Snyder 2007). There are three ways in which this aerosol can be produced: by nebulizer, by pressurized metered dose inhalers and by drug powder inhalers.

- *Nebulization* involves the passage of air or oxygen driven through a solution of a drug. The resulting fine mist is then inhaled via a facemask (Trounce and Gould 2000). Some antibiotics and bronchodilators may be given in this way (Figure 13.9).
- *Metered dose inhalers* (MDI) involve a drug being suspended in a propellant in a small hand-held aerosol can in the form of a spray, mist or fine powder. Metered doses can then be delivered from the aerosol by the use of a metering valve within the device which is designed to release a fixed volume, for example ventolin. Steroid medications are often administered by MDI to treat long-term reactive airway disease (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007) (Figure 13.10).
- *Dry powder inhalers* (DPI) involve a powder being delivered to the lung via a breath-actuated device. Examples of inhalers in this group are the Accuhaler® (Figure 13.11) and the Turbohaler® (Figure 13.12).

Figure 13.9 Nebulizer.

Figure 13.10 Metered dose inhaler (MDI).

Figure 13.11 Accuhaler®.

Figure 13.12 Turbohaler®.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Nebulizer

The advantage of nebulizers is that they can deliver more drug to the lungs than standard inhalers because of the smaller particles that are generated. They also do not require any co-ordination in order to deliver the drug to the lungs. The disadvantages are that they are expensive, they are not easily portable and the delivery of drug can be difficult to control, for example due to loss in the tubing and mouthpiece.

Metered dose inhaler (MDI)

The advantages of MDIs are that they are convenient, can deliver a fixed dose and are inexpensive. The disadvantage can be the co-ordination

needed to use one. In order to be effective, the patient needs to trigger the MDI during a deep slow inhalation and then hold their breath for around 10 seconds. This need for co-ordination between actuation of the dose and inhalation can be removed by using a spacer device (Figure 13.13). The spacer device reduces the speed with which the dose is delivered and the resultant 'cold freon' effect that can occur, which can prevent a patient from continuing to inhale after actuation of the MDI. Spacers are also useful for patients on high-dose inhaled steroids in order to prevent oral candidiasis, children and patients requiring higher doses, and can improve dose delivery to 15% (Downie *et al.* 2003). Spacer devices are designed to be compatible with specific inhalers and therefore care should be taken to ensure the correct spacer device is used.

Figure 13.13 Spacer device.

Medication in MDIs is under pressure and so they should not be punctured or stored near heat or in hot conditions (e.g. patients must be taught not to leave their MDI in a hot car) (Chernecky *et al.* 2002).

Dry powder inhaler (DPI)

Dry powder inhalers are also useful when there are problems with co-ordination. However, they can initiate a cough reflex and patients need to have sufficient breath inhalation to activate the device.

It is also important to remember that because these medications are absorbed rapidly through the pulmonary circulation, most create systemic side-effects (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007).

Specific patient preparations

Patients who suffer from chronic respiratory disease and require airway management frequently receive inhalational medications. Maximum benefit is obtained only when the correct technique of inhalation is used so it is vital that patients are taught how to use these devices correctly and safely. Periodic checks should be carried out to ensure that efficiency is being maintained. Use of a MDI requires co-ordination during the breathing cycle and impairment of grasp or presence of tremors of the hands interferes with patient ability to depress the canister within the inhaler (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007). Studies have shown that both adults and children have difficulties with aerosol inhalers and problems include co-ordinating activation and inhalation, too rapid inhalation and too short breaths after inspiration (Hilton 1990). Baseline observations of pulse, respirations and breath sounds should be performed before beginning treatment to use as a comparison during and after treatment (Snyder 2007). Patients who are to receive nebulized medicines should be in a sitting position either in bed or a chair (Downie *et al.* 2003).

Education

Compliance is more likely to be achieved if the patient is well informed. It is the responsibilty of the nurse, doctor and pharamcists to ensure that patients have adequate teaching and demonstration and are monitored at intervals. Downie *et al.* (2003) suggest that the patient should know the following.

- About the disease, the purpose of the therapy, how to recognize and report deterioration in the condition.
- How to use and care for the inhaler.
- The dose to be taken.
- The time interval.
- The maximum number of inhalations which should be taken in 24 hours.

Procedure guideline 13.7 Medication: administration by inhalation using a metered dose inhaler

Essential equipment

- MDI device
- Spacer device

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C).
2 Correct use of inhalers is essential (see manufacturer's information leaflet) and will be achieved only if this is carefully explained and demonstrated to the patient. If further advice is required, contact the hospital pharmacist.	Incorrect use may result in most of the dose remaining in the mouth and/or being expelled almost immediately. This renders treatment ineffective (Watt 2003, E; manufacturer's instructions, C).
Procedure	
3 Sit the patient in an upright position if possible in the bed or a chair.	To permit full expansion of the diaphragm. E
4 Consult the patient's prescription chart, and ascertain the following: **(a)** Drug **(b)** Dose **(c)** Date and time of administration **(d)** Route and method of administration **(e)** Diluent as appropriate **(f)** Validity of prescription **(e)** Signature of doctor.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate diluent and by the correct route (NMC 2006b, C).
5 Remove mouthpiece cover from inhaler.	To expose the area for use. E
6 Shake inhaler well for 2–5 seconds.	To ensure mixing of medication in canister (Snyder 2007, E).
7 Without a spacer device: Ask patient to take a deep breath and exhale completely, open lips and place inhaler opening 1–2 cm from mouth but not touching the lips.	To avoid rapid influx of inhaled medication and possible irritation of the airway (Snyder 2007, E).
With a spacer device: Ask the patient to exhale and then grasp spacer	To enable the medication to reach the airways instead of hitting the back of the throat (Snyder 2007, E).

mouthpiece with teeth and lips while holding inhaler.	
8 Ask the patient to tip head back slightly, inhale slowly and deeply through the mouth whilst depressing canister.	To allow medication to be distrubted to airways during inhalation (Snyder 2007, E).
9 Instruct the patient to breathe in slowly for 2–3 seconds and hold their breath for approximately 10 seconds, then to exhale slowly through pursed lips.	To enable aerosol spray to reach deeper branches of airways (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, E; Snyder 2007, E).
10 Instruct the patient to wait 2–5 minutes between puffs and if more than one type of inhaled medication is prescribed, to wait 5–10 minutes between inhalations.	To ensure that the medication has optimum effect and minimal side-effects (Snyder 2007, E).
11 If steroid medication is administered ask the patient to rinse their mouth after the procedure.	To remove any medication residue from oral cavity area to reduce risk of oral yeast infection (Snyder 2007, E).
Postprocedure	
12 Clean any equipment used and discard all disposable equipment in appropriate containers.	To minimize the risk of infection (DH 2007c, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
13 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2007c, C; NMC 2009, C).

Procedure guideline 13.8 Medication: administration by inhalation using a nebulizer

Essential equipment

- Facemask or mouthpiece
- Nebulizer and tubing
- Medication required

Medicinal products

Preprocedure

Action	**Rationale**
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C).
2 Sit the patient in an upright position if possible in the bed or a chair.	To permit full expansion of the diaphragm. E
3 Consult the patient's prescription chart and ascertain the following:	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate

(a) Drug **(b)** Dose **(c)** Date and time of administration **(d)** Route and method of administration **(e)** Diluent as appropriate **(f)** Validity of prescription **(g)** Signature of doctor.	diluent and by the correct route (NMC 2006b, C).
Procedure	
4 Administer only one drug at a time unless specifically instructed to the contrary.	Several drugs used together may cause undesirable reactions or may inactivate each other (Jordan *et al.* 2003, E).
5 Assemble the nebulizer equipment as per manufacturer's instructions.	To ensure correct administration (manufacturer's instructions, C).
6 Measure any liquid medication with a syringe. Add the prescribed medication and diluent (if needed) to the nebulizer.	To ensure the correct dose (DH 2007, C).
7 Ask the patient to hold the mouthpiece between the lips or apply the facemask and take a slow deep breath.	To promote greater deposition of medication in the airways (Snyder 2007, E).
8 After inspiration, the patient should pause briefly and then exhale.	To ensure correct administration.
9 Turn on the O2 and ensure sufficient mist is formed. A minimum flow rate of 6 litres per minute is required. This will deliver 65% of the medication.	To ensure at least 65% of the droplets are of a size which enables drug penetration into the distal airways (Downie *et al.* 2003, E).
10 The patient should continue to breathe as above until all the nebulized medication is completed (0.5 mL will remain in chamber).	To ensure all medication has been received. E
11 Optimal nebulization of 4 mL takes approximately 10 minutes.	To ensure it is effective. E
Postprocedure	
12 Clean any equipment used and/or discard all single use disposable equipment in appropriate containers.	To minimize the risk of infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
13 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C).

Postprocedural considerations

If the nebulizer is marked as single use then it must be discarded after each use. However, nebulizers should not be used for single patient use unless clearly indicated by the manufacturer. If it can be reused, then the nebulizer chamber and mask should be washed in hot soapy water, rinsed thoroughly and dried with paper towels to reduce bacterial contamination and also to prevent any build-up of crystallized medication in the nebulizer (Downie *et al*. 2003). Spacer devices should be washed, rinsed and allowed to dry naturally on a weekly basis and replaced after 6–12 months (Downie *et al*. 2003).

Complications

There is a risk of patients developing oral candidiasis when using a MDI. This can be reduced by using a spacer device. Overuse of some inhalers can result in cardiac dysrhythmias and patients may suffer from tachycardia, palpitations, headache, restlessness and insomnia. The doctor should be informed and observations commenced (Snyder 2007).

Ophthalmic administration

Definition

Dosage forms introduced into the eye for local effects, for example, to treat infections, to dilate or constrict the pupil, or to treat eye conditions such as glaucoma (Snyder 2007).

Related theory

The topical route is the most popular way to introduce drugs into the eye in the form of eye drops or eye ointment. Most types of drops are instilled into the inferior fornix, the pocket formed by gently pulling on the lower eyelid as the conjunctiva in this area is less sensitive than that overlying the cornea. Administering medications in this area prevents immediate loss of the drops into the nasolacrimal drainage system.

There are many factors that affect how much of this drug will have an effect on the eye. The eye has a highly selective corneal barrier which

can prevent absorption of drug. It also has a tear film which provides an effective clearance mechanism. When an excess volume of fluid is present in the eye, this fluid will either be spilled onto the cheeks and eyelashes or will enter the nasolacrimal drainage system with a potential for systemic absorption of drug. Drugs also need to be introduced to the eye at a neutral pH, as acidic or alkaline preparations will result in reflex lacrimation which will remove the drug from the eye.

Evidence-based approaches

In order to optimize the effects of topical eye preparations, attempts should be made to ensure that there is proper placement of eye drops and ointments and that the volume applied is kept to a minimum. The number of drops instilled depends on the type of solution used and its purpose. Usually one drop only is ordered and will be sufficient if it is instilled in the correct manner. The exceptions to the 'one drop' rule are as follows.

- *Oil-based solutions*: these are used for lubricating the eyeball. Usually one drop is instilled and repeated as required.
- *Anaesthetic drops*: used to anaesthetize the eye; one drop should be instilled at a time. This is repeated until the drop cannot be felt on the eye.

The dropper should be held as close to the eye as possible without touching the lids or the cornea. This will avoid corneal damage and reduce the risk of cross-infection. If the drop falls from too great a height, it is difficult to control and will be uncomfortable for the patient. The eye should be closed for as long as possible after application, preferably for 1–2 minutes.

Useful properties of eye ointment include:

- longer duration of action than eye drops
- a soothing emollient action
- easy to apply
- long shelf-life (Downie *et al*. 2003).

Ointments are applied to the upper rim of the inferior fornix using a similar technique to eye drops (Figures 13.14, 13.15). A 2 cm line of

ointment should be applied from the nasal canthus outwards. Similarly to the instillation of eye drops, the nozzle should be held approximately 2.5 cm above the eye to avoid contract with the cornea and eyelids (Aldridge 2010, Alexander *et al.* 2007).

Figure 13.14 How to instil eye drops.

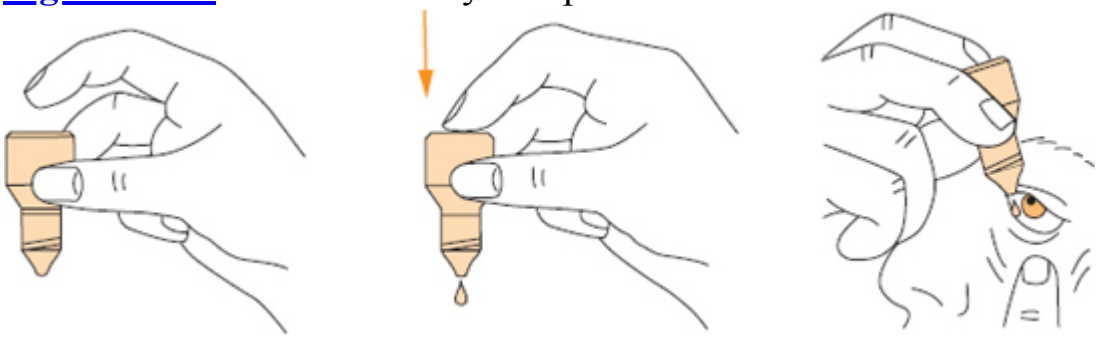
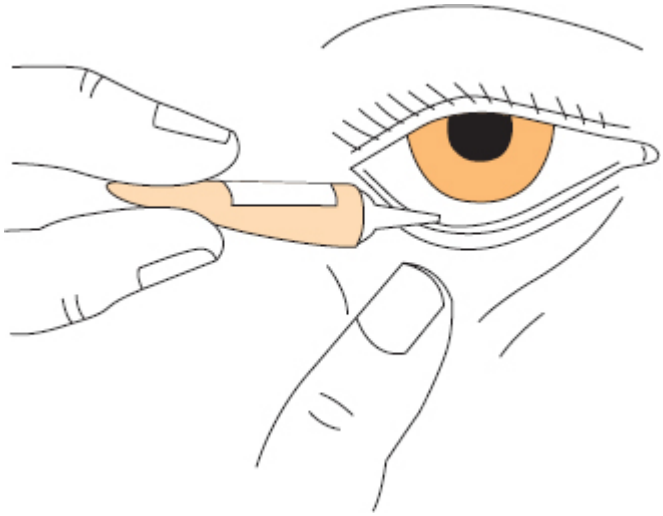


Figure 13.15 How to instil eye ointment.



Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

A variety of droppers and bottles are available for the instillation of eye preparations. These include pipettes, bottles incorporating pipettes, plastic bottles with a dropper attachment and single-dose packs. Pipettes are easy to use but need to be dried and sterilized between doses. Plastic bottles can be squeezed and so avoid the need for a pipette and they are also cheaper than glass bottles with a dropper. Each patient should have

their own indivdual eye drop container for each eye and single-dose containers should be used for all patients in eye clinics or in accident and emergency departments (BNF 2011).

It is important that eye preparations are sterile before use and attempts are made to reduce microbial contamination. Eye preparations being used at home should be discarded after 4 weeks whereas eye preparations being used in hospital should be discarded after 1 week. If concerns exist around cross-contamination from one eye to another, separate bottles should be issued.

A number of patients experience problems instilling eye medication. This may be due to difficulty aiming eye drops or squeezing the bottle. Aids are available to assist patients with both these problems. Patients will need guidance in how to use any aids (Downie *et al.* 2003).

If patients are going to use more than one eye drop preparation, they may experience overflow and dilution so they should be advised to leave an interval of 5 minutes between the two (BNF 2011). If both drops and ointments are prescribed, the drops should be applied before the ointment as ointment will leave a film on the eye and hamper the the absorption of the medication in drop form (Aldridge 2010).

Pharmacological support

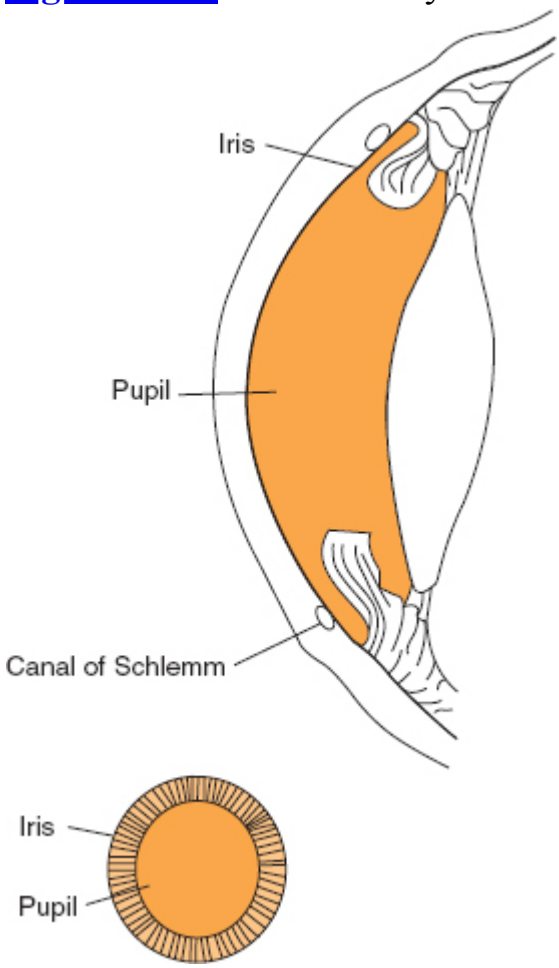
Drugs may be given either systemically or topically to exert an effect on the eye (BNF 2011). However, if given systemically, the prescribing doctor needs to take account of the blood–aqueous barrier which exists within the eye. This barrier is selective in allowing drugs to pass into the intraocular fluids. The permeability of this barrier may increase during inflammatory conditions or following paracentesis – the removal of excess fluid with a needle or cannula (Andrew 2006).

Medications applied topically meet some resistance at the barrier presented by the lacrimal system (tear film barrier). A further barrier is the cornea which is selectively permeable and only allows the passage of water and not drugs. However, corneal resistance may alter if there is damage to the corneal epithelium (Kirkwood 2006). Many drugs will produce a similar effect on both the healthy and diseased eye. Drugs for use in the eye are usually classified according to their action.

Mydriatics and cycloplegics

These drugs cause pupil dilation and produce their effects by paralysing the ciliary muscle, stimulating the dilator muscle of the pupil (Figure 13.16) or by a combination of both. They are used mainly for diagnostic purposes and most have an anticholinergic action. The most commonly used preparations are cyclopentolate hydrochloride, tropicamide and atropine (BNF 2011).

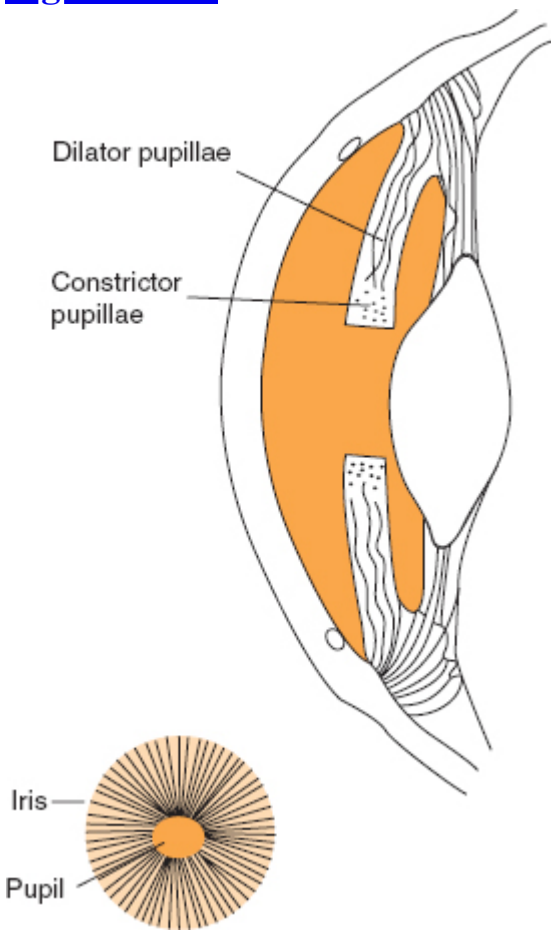
Figure 13.16 Effects of mydriatics.



Miotics

These drugs produce their effects by contracting the ciliary muscle and constricting the pupil (Figure 13.17). Miotics help in the drainage of aqueous humour and are used primarily in the treatment of glaucoma. Examples are pilocarpine and carbachol (BNF 2011).

Figure 13.17 Effect of miotics.



Local anaesthetics

These render the eye and the inner surfaces of the lids insensitive. They are used before minor surgery, removal of foreign bodies and tonometry (measurement of intraocular pressure). The most widely used eye anaesthetics are oxybuprocaine and amethocaine (BNF 2011).

Anti-inflammatories

Anti-inflammatory drugs include steroids, antihistamines, lodoxamide and sodium cromoglycate. The most commonly used steroid preparations are dexametasone, prednisolone and betametasone (BNF 2011).

Corticosteroid eye drops should be used with caution as they can cause cataract formation or a gradual rise in intraocular pressure in a

small percentage of people, particularly if they have a history of glaucoma (Forrester *et al.* 2002).

Antibacterials/antivirals/antifungals

Antibacterials and antivirals can be used for the active treatment of infections or as prophylactic treatment for eye surgery, after removal of a foreign body or following an eye injury. Antibiotic preparations in common use are chloramphenicol, neomycin and framycetin. Aciclovir is the only commonly used antiviral available as an eye preparation although ganciclovir is licensed for the treatment of acute herpetic keratitis (BNF 2011).

Artificial tears

Artificial tears are used when there is a deficiency in natural tear production. This can be due to a disease process, postradiotherapy treatment, as a side-effect of certain drugs or when the eye-blink reflex is absent. These artificial lubricants commonly contain hypromellose or hydroxyethylcellulose (BNF 2011). Additionally, pilocarpine can be given orally. The severity of the problem and the patient's choice will determine the treatment.

Specific patient preparations

The eye to be treated must be ascertained and the unaffected eye should not be dosed. Ascertain if the patient is wearing contact lenses as contact of the medication with the lens can lead to increased drug absoprtion, visual distortion and discolouration of the lens (Chernecky *et al.* 2002). It may be necessary for the patient to remove the lenses and replace them with glasses for the duration of their treatment.

Procedure guideline 13.9 Medication: eye administration

Essential equipment

- Non-sterile powder-free gloves

- Low-linting swabs
- Sterile 0.9% sodium chloride or warm water

Optional equipment

- Eye swab

Medicinal products

- Eye drops at room temperature

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient. Ask the patient to explain how their eyes feel, if they are able to.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C). To gain a baseline understanding of current problems or changes the patient is experiencing. E
2 Wash hands and apply gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
3 Ask the patient to sit back with neck slightly hyperextended or lie down.	To ensure a position that allows easy access for medication instillation and to avoid excess running down the patient's cheek (Stollery *et al.* 2005, E). Correct positioning minimizes drainage of eye medication into tear duct (Snyder 2007, E).
4 Consult the patient's prescription chart and ascertain the following: - Drug - Dose - Date and time of administration - Route and method of administration, including which eye the drops are prescribed for - Expiry date on bottle - Validity of prescription - Signature of doctor.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate diluent and by the correct route (NMC 2006b, C).
5 If there is any discharge, proceed as for eye swabbing (see Chapter 11). If any crusting or drainage is present around the eye, gently wash away with warm water or 0.9% sodium chloride.	To prevent the introduction of micro-organisms into the lacrimal ducts (Snyder 2007, E).
6 Ask the patient to look at the ceiling and carefully pull the skin below the affected eye using a wet swab to expose the conjunctival sac.	To move the sensitive cornea up and away from the conjunctival sac and reduce stimulation of blink reflex (Snyder 2007, E).

7 Either: Administer the prescribed number of drops holding the eye dropper 1–2 cm above the eye. If the patient blinks or closes their eye, repeat the procedure.	To provide even distribution of medication across the eye (Snyder 2007, E).
Or: Apply a thin stream of ointment along the upper lid margin on the inner conjunctiva from the nasal corner outwards. If there is excess medication on the eyelid, gently wipe it from inner to outer canthus.	To provide even distribution of medication across the eye and reduce the risk of cross-infection, contamination of the tube and trauma to the eye (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Snyder 2007, E; Stollery *et al.* 2005, E). To avoid excess ointment irritating the suroounding skin (Stollery *et al.* 2005, E).
8 Ask the patient to close their eyes and keep them closed for 1–2 minutes.	To help distribute medication (Snyder 2007, E; Aldridge 2010, E).
9 Explain to the patient that they may have blurred vision for a few minutes after application.	To ensure the patient understands why they have blurred vision and to refrain from driving or operating machinery until their vision returns to normal (Aldridge 2010, E).
Postprocedure	
10 Clean any equipment used and discard all disposable equipment in appropriate containers.	To minimize the risk of infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
11 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a; NMC 2009, C).

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

After using any eye medications, any excess medication should be wiped off from inner to outer canthus. If an eye patch is to be worn, it should be secured without putting any pressure on the eye. Patients should be warned not to drive for 1–2 hours after instillation of mydriatics (which dilate the pupil and paralyse the ciliary muscle) (BNF 2011). Patients should be taught how to instil eye medication. If it is difficult for them to do so then it may be necessary for a community nurse to attend and administer the eye medications (Chernecky *et al.* 2002).

Nasal administration

Definition

Medication introduced to the cavity of the nose for local or systemic effects (Aldridge 2010).

Related theory

The nasal passages are lined with highly vascular mucous membranes covered with ciliated epithelium which warms and moistens air and traps dust. Medication can be delivered directly to the nasal cavity to relieve local symptoms such as allergic rhinitis in the form of nasal drops or nasal sprays (Aldridge 2010).

The nasal cavity can also be used to allow the delivery of drugs systemically. Examples include sumatriptan for migraine, desmopressin for the treatment of diabetes insipidus and nocturia and fentanyl for the treatment of breakthrough pain.

Evidence-based approaches

The advantages of the delivery of drugs using the nasal route include the large vascular surface of the nasal cavity which allows rapid absorption, the avoidance of first-pass metabolism, the accessibility of the nose, the ease of administration and the fact that this route can be used when patients are unable to swallow. There are some disadvantages to the nasal route, including the presence of mucus which acts as a barrier to absorption, the mucociliary clearance which reduces the time that drugs are held in the nasal cavity, disorders such as colds that can affect absorption from the nasal cavity, and drugs can have an irritating effect on the nasal cavity.

Preprocedural considerations

Specific patient preparations

The patient should be encouraged to clear their nostrils by blowing or manually cleaning with a tissue or damp cotton bud to ensure that the drug has access to the nasal mucosa (Aldridge 2010).

Procedure guideline 13.10 Medication: nasal drop administration

Essential equipment

- Tissues
- Clean non-sterile gloves

Optional equipment

- Cotton bud

Medicinal products

- Nasal spray or drops

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C).
2 Consult the patient's prescription sheet and ascertain the following: ■ Drug ■ Dose ■ Date and time of administration ■ Route and method of administration ■ Validity of prescription ■ Signature of doctor.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose and by the correct route (NMC 2006b, C).
3 Have paper tissues available.	To wipe away secretions and/or medication. E
Procedure	
4 Ask the patient to blow their nose to clear the nasal passages, if appropriate.	To ensure maximum penetration for the medication (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, E).
5 Place the patient in a supine position and hyperextend the patient's neck (unless clinically contraindicated, for example cervical spondylosis).	To obtain a safe optimum position for insertion of the medication. E
6 Wash hands and put on gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
7 With the non-dominant hand, gently push upward on the end of the patient's nose.	To aid in opening the nostrils. E
8 Avoid touching the external nares with the dropper and instil the drops just inside the	To prevent the patient from sneezing. E

nostril of affected side.	
9 Ask the patient to sniff back any liquid into the back of the nose or to maintain their position for 2 or 3 minutes.	To ensure full absorption of the medication. E
10 Discard any remaining medication in the dropper into the sink before returning it to the container.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, E; DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
11 Instruct patient not to blow their nose.	To maintain the medication in contact with nasal passages. E.
12 Each patient should have their own medication and dropper.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Postprocedure	
13 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C).

Postprocedural considerations

The patient should be discouraged from sniffing too vigorously post administraton as this can cause 'run-off' of the medication down the nasopharynx. This can cause an unpleasant taste in the throat and affect absorption of the medication (Aldridge 2010).

Otic administration

Definition

Medication introduced into the ear for local effects such as treatment of ear infections and softening of ear wax (cerumen) (Aldridge 2010, Chernecky *et al.* 2002).

Related theory

Drugs administered via this route are intended to have a localized effect and act within the anatomy of the ear and auditory canal (Aldridge 2010). Ear preparations can be presented in the form of drops, sprays, ointments and solutions. Certain factors can affect the absorption or

action of drugs in the ear, including ear wax and the acidic environment around the ear skin surface.

Evidence-based approaches

Internal ear structures are very sensitive to temperature extremes and so solutions should be administered at room temperature. When drops are instilled cold, patients may experience vertigo, ataxia or nausea (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Snyder 2007). Solutions should never be forced into the ear canal as medication administered under pressure can injure the eardrum. The ear drop solution should be labelled for the ear it is intended to treat. The dropper should be held as close to the ear as possile without touching to reduce the risk of cross-infection.

Preprocedural considerations

Specific patient preparations

The nurse should examine the ear, taking note of any discharge, redness, swelling and the amount and texture of any ear wax present as these will give an indication of the general health of the ear (Harkin 2008). The nurse should also discuss with the patient their current level of hearing. It should be explained to the patient that they must lie still as sudden movements could cause injury from the ear dropper.

Procedure guideline 13.11 Medication: ear drop administration

Essential equipment

- Clean non-sterile gloves
- Tissues

Medicinal products

- Ear drops

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure

the patient.	and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C).
2 Consult the patient's prescription chart and ascertain the following: ■ Drug ■ Dose ■ Date and time of administration ■ Route and method of administration ■ Validity of prescription ■ Signature of doctor.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate diluent and by the correct route (NMC 2008a, C).
Procedure	
3 Ask the patient to lie on their side with the ear to be treated uppermost.	To ensure the best position for insertion of the drops. E
4 Warm the drops to body temperature if allowed.	To prevent trauma to the patient (Harkin 2008, E; Snyder 2007, E).
5 Wash hands and apply gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Pull the cartilaginous part of the pinna backwards and upwards (see Action Figure 6).	To prepare the auditory meatus for instillation of the drops (Harkin 2008, E).
7 If cerumen (ear wax) or drainage occludes outermost portion of the ear canal, wipe out gently with cotton-tipped applicator.	To enable the medication to enter the ear. E
8 Allow the drop(s) to fall in direction of the external canal. The dropper should not touch the ear.	To ensure that the medication reaches the area requiring therapy. E
9 Gently massage over tragus to help work in the drops.	To aid the passge of medication into the ear and prevent escape of medication. E
10 It may be necessary to temporarily place a gauze swab over the ear canal.	To prevent escape of the medication (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, E).
11 Request the patient to remain in this position for 2–3 minutes.	To allow the medication to reach the eardrum and be absorbed. To prevent escape of the medication (Aldridge, 2010, E; Snyder 2007, E).
Postprocedure	
12 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C).

Action Figure 6 Holding ear for ear drops.

Postprocedural considerations

The nurse should ask the patient if there are any changes in order to monitor effectiveness of the intervention. Consideration should also be given to the patient's hearing aids and assistance given to help clean these.

Injections and infusions

Definitions

Injections are sterile solutions, emulsions or suspensions. They are prepared by dissolving, emulsifying or suspending the active ingredient and any added substances in either water for injections or a suitable non-aqueous liquid or in a mixture of these vehicles (British Pharmacopoeia 2007). Box 13.11 lists the types of injections and infusions.

Box 13.11 Types of injections and infusions

- Intradermal injection.
- Subcutaneous injection and infusion.
- Intramuscular injection.
- Intra-arterial injection.
- Intraosseous injection.

- Intra-articular injection.
- Intrathecal injection and infusion.
- Intravenous:
  - Bolus injection
  - Intermittent and continuous infusion.

Injections can be described as the act of giving medication by use of a syringe and needle. An infusion is defined as an amount of fluid in excess of 100 mL designated for parenteral infusion because the volume must be administered over a long period of time. However, medications may be given in small volumes (50–100 mL) or over a shorter period (30–60 minutes) (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Anatomy and physiology

The skin is made up of two layers: the dermis and epidermis. Within the dermis there is the papillary layer (upper dermal region) which contains capillaries, pain and touch receptors. The reticular layer contains blood vessels, sweat and oil glands. Both collagen and elastic fibres are found throughout the dermis. Collagen fibres are responsible for the toughness of the dermis. The skin also has a rich nerve supply (Marieb and Hoehn 2007). There are three types of muscles – skeletal, cardiac and smooth. Skeletal muscles are attached to the body's skeleton and are also known as striated muscle because the fibres appear to be striped (Marieb and Hoehn 2007). For specific muscles used for injections, see intramuscular injection sites.

Evidence-based approaches

Medicines should only be administered by injection when no other route is suitable or available. As injections avoid the GI tract, this is described as parenteral administration. Injections would be administered when the medications might be destroyed by the stomach; rapid first-pass metabolism may be extensive; the drug is not absorbed when given orally; precise control over dosage is required; unable to be given by mouth; achieve high drug plasma levels (Downie *et al*. 2003, Perry

2007). There are disadvantages as injections are invasive, cause pain and discomfort, and can put the patient at risk of infection and, in the case of intravenous injections, infiltration and extravasation.

Methods for injection or infusion

There are a number of routes for injection or infusion. See Box 13.11. The selection may be predetermined, for example intra-arterial, intracardiac injections. The choice of other routes will normally depend on the desired therapeutic effect and the patient's safety and comfort.

Intra-arterial

This special technique allows the delivery of a high concentration of drug to the tissues or organ supplied by a particular artery if the medications are rapidly metabolized or systematically toxic (Downie *et al*. 2003). This route can be used for the administration of chemotherapy and vasodilators and for diagnostic purposes. Injection of drugs into an artery is a rare and hazardous procedure. The introduction of the cannula or catheter must be performed with care as the vessel may go into spasm, causing pain and occlusion. This could result in necrosis of an organ or part of a limb. Injection of irritant chemicals increases the risk of spasm and its sequelae; however, arterial catheterization is occasionally performed when it is desirable to deliver a high concentration of a drug to a tumour mass. The most common procedures are catheterization of the hepatic artery and isolated limb perfusion.

Intra-articular

In inflammatory conditions of the joints, corticosteroids are given by intra-articular injection to relieve inflammation and increase joint mobility (Downie *et al.* 2003).

Intraosseous

This route is used for emergency or short-term treatment when access by the vascular route is difficult or cannot be achieved and the patient's condition is considered life threatening (RCN 2010). The preferred sites

are the iliac crest or sternum (RCN 2010). Any drug administered intravenously can be administered via the intraosseous route.

Intrathecal

Medications can be administered intrathecally if they have poor lipid solubility and therefore do not pass the blood–brain barrier (Downie *et al*. 2003). Only medication specially prepared for the intrathecal route should be used; doses should be carefully calculated and are usually much smaller than would be given by intramuscular or intravenous injection. Water-soluble antibiotics are administered by the intrathecal route to achieve adequate concentrations in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) in the treatment of meningitis. Other medicines administered via this route include antifungal agents, opioids, cytotoxic therapy and radiopaque substances (used in the diagnosis of spinal lesions) (Downie *et al*. 2003) (see Chapter 11).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Ampoules

Ampoules (Figure 13.18) are single-dose glass containers although plastic ampoules are now used for certain products (Downie *et al.* 2003). They have a wide-ranging capacity and are sealed by heat fusion to exclude any contamination. They have a thin wall which allows rupture of the glass to expose the contents of liquid or powder. There is a narrow constriction leading to the neck which is often marked with a white ring which indicates the place where the neck can be snapped off (Downie *et al*. 2003). Ampoule opening devices of various designs are available. They are available in several sizes from 1 to 20 mL (Perry 2007).

Figure 13.18 Ampoules.

Vials

Vials (Figure 13.19) are glass containers which have a rubber closure which can be penetrated to allow the addition of a vehicle to dissolve powder contents and to allow the withdrawal of a dose via the needle. The exposed rubber surface is usually covered by a protective pull-off metal or plastic cap which prevents tampering or damage but does not provide sterility (Downie *et al.* 2003, Perry 2007). The vials may be packaged with a specific transfer needle, and the nurse should follow the manufacturer's instructions in these instances.

Figure 13.19 Vials.

Syringes

Syringes are commonly plastic and disposable, although some medicines must be administered via glass syringes. They consist of a graduated barrel and a plunger and a tip. It is the tip that classifies the type of syringe as Luer-Lok or Luer-Slip (see Figure 13.20). Syringes come in various sizes from 1 to 60 mL. The choice of syringe is made according to the volume of medication to be administered so it is important to choose the smallest syringe possible to ensure accuracy (Downie *et al.* 2003, Perry 2007). Luer-Lok requires the needle to be twisted onto the tip and 'locked' into position. This provides security and these syringes are recommended for use with intravenous medicines, especially cytotoxic medications and any medicines administered via a syringe pump. Luer-Slip syringes tend to be used for intramuscular and subcutaneous injections. Insulin syringes are low-dose syringes and are often calibrated in units and are only used for insulin administration (Downie *et al.* 2003, Perry 2007). There are now a number of pre-prepared syringes that contain 0.9% sodium chloride specifically for flushing or ready to administer medicines often used in emergency situations.

Figure 13.20 Syringes: Luer-Lok and Luer-Slip.

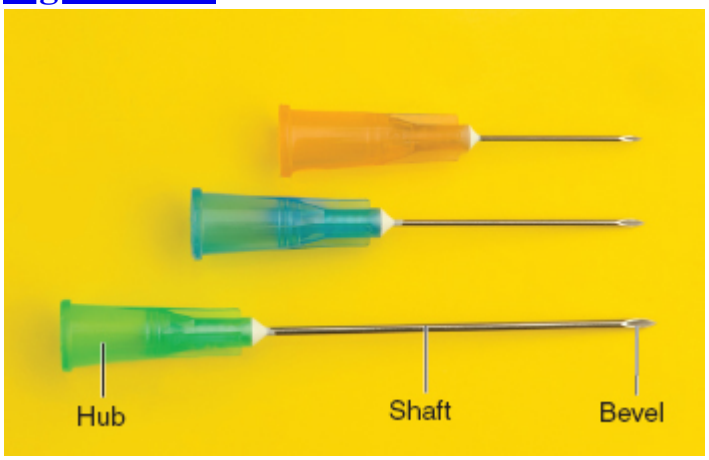
Needles

A needle is composed of three parts (see Figure 13.21):

- the hub which fits onto the tip of a syringe
- the shaft which connects the hub
- the bevel or slanted tip or eye of the needle (different bevels are required depending on use of needle).

Needle sizes are known as gauges, for example 19 G, 21 G (used for IM injections), 23 G (subcutaneous injections) and 25 G (intradermal injections). This indicates their diameter. The higher the gauge, the finer the needle and selection is made depending on the viscosity of the liquid to be injected (Downie *et al.* 2003, Perry 2007). Needles vary in length from 10 to 16 mm and selection of length will depend on the size and weight of patient, and the type of tissue into which the drug is to be injected, for example longer for IM and shorter for SC. Each needle is enclosed in a removable plastic guard and then sealed in a sterile pack. Filter needles may be used to prevent drawing up glass and rubber particles into the syringe (Downie *et al.* 2003, Perry 2007). There are now a variety of safety needles available to prevent needlestick injury where a plastic guard or sheath slips over the needle after an injection.

Figure 13.21 Needles.



Three categories of needle bevel are available.

- *Regular*: for all intramuscular and subcutaneous injections.
- *Intradermal*: for diagnostic injections and other injections into the epidermis.
- *Short*: rarely used.

Medication preparation

Medicines are presented as liquids and can be drawn up directly from the vial or ampoule. If the medicine has been presented in a powder form it will need to be reconstituted. This is usually done using water for injections but some medications will require special diluents which are

often supplied with the medication. When adding diluent to a powder, for example 2 mL to a 100 mg vial, the final volume will exceed 2 mL although this is usually not of any consequence if the total dose is to be administered (Downie *et al.* 2003). In order to ensure that the correct volume is withdrawn, it will be necessary to perform a calculation.

Medication calculations

The drug volume required from stock strength:

$$\frac{\text{Strength required}}{\text{Stock strength}} \times \text{Volume of stock solution} = \text{Volume required}$$

$$\text{What you want / What you have got} \times \text{Volume of stock solution}$$

It is important to note that the 'use of calculators to determine the volume or quantity of medication should not act as a substitute for arithmetical knowledge and skill' (NMC 2008a).

Single-dose preparations

The volume of the injection in a single-dose container is sufficient to permit the withdrawal and administration of the nominal dose using a normal technique.

Multidose preparations

Multidose aqueous injections contain a suitable antimicrobial preservative at an appropriate concentration except when the preparation itself has adequate antimicrobial properties. When it is necessary to present a preparation for parenteral use in a multidose container, the precautions to be taken for its administration and more particularly for its storage between successive withdrawals are given.

Parenteral infusions

Parenteral infusions are sterile, aqueous solutions or emulsions with water; they are free from pyrogens and are usually made isotonic with blood. They are principally intended for administration in large volume. Parenteral infusions do not contain any added antimicrobial preservative (British Pharmacopoeia 2007, Hilary *et al.* 2001).

Specific patient preparations

Reducing pain of injections

Patients are often afraid of receiving injections because they perceive the injection will be painful (Downie *et al.* 2003). Torrence (1989) listed a number of factors that cause pain.

- The needle.
- The chemical composition of the drug/solution.
- The technique.
- The speed of the injection.
- The volume of drug.

Applying manual pressure to an injection site before performing an injection can be an effective means of reducing pain intensity (Chung *et al.* 2002). Other ways of reducing pain during injections are covered in Box 13.12.

Box 13.12 Reducing the pain of injections

- Correct length and gauge of needle.
- Correct site.
- Correct angle (90° for IM).
- Correct volume (no more than 3 mL at a site for IM).
- Rotate sites.
- Consider using ice, freezing spray or topical local anaesthetic to numb the skin.
- Listen to views of the experienced patient.
- Explain the benefits of the injection.
- Positioning of the patient so that the muscles are relaxed.
- Use distraction.
- If appropriate, ask the patient to turn their foot inwards (IM).
- Insert and remove the needle quickly.
- Inject medication slowly.

(Dickerson 1992, Downie *et al.* 2003)

Procedure guideline 13.12 Medication: single-dose ampoule: solution preparation

Essential equipment

- Medication ampoule
- Needle
- Syringe
- Sterile topical swab
- Sharps container
- Ampoule opening aid

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To prevent contamination of medication and equipment (DH 2007, C).
2 Inspect the solution for cloudiness or particulate matter. If this is present, discard and follow hospital guidelines on what action to take, for example return drug to pharmacy.	To prevent the patient from receiving an unstable or contaminated drug (NPSA 2007d, C).
Procedure	
3 Tap the neck of the ampoule gently.	To ensure that all the solution is in the bottom of the ampoule (NPSA 2007d, C).
4 Cover the neck of the ampoule with a sterile topical swab and snap it open. If there is any difficulty, a file or ampoule opening aid may be required.	To minimize the risk of contamination. To prevent aerosol formation or contact with the drug which could lead to a sensitivity reaction. To reduce the risk of injury to the nurse (NPSA 2007d, C).
5 Inspect the solution for glass fragments; if present, discard.	To minimize the risk of injection of foreign matter into the patient (NPSA 2007d, C).
6 Open packaging and attach the needle onto the syringe.	To assemble equipment. E
7 Withdraw the required amount of solution, tilting the ampoule if necessary.	To avoid drawing in any air (NPSA 2007d, C).
8 Replace the sheath on the needle using one-handed scooping method and tap the syringe to dislodge any air bubbles. Expel air (replacing the sheath should not be confused with resheathing used needles). **Or:** An alternative to expelling the air with the needle sheath in place would be to use the ampoule or vial to receive any air and/or drug.	To prevent needlestick injury and aerosol formation (NPSA 2007d, C). To ensure that the correct amount of drug is in the syringe (NPSA 2007d, C).
9 Attach a new needle if required (and	To reduce the risk of contamination of the syringe tip.

discard used needle into appropriate sharps container) or attach a plastic end cap or insert syringe into the syringe packet.	To avoid tracking medications through superficial tissues and to ensure that the correct size of needle is used for intramuscular or subcutaneous injection. To reduce the risk of injury to the nurse (NPSA 2007d, C).
10 Attach a label to the syringe.	To ensure practitioner can identify medication in syringe (NPSA 2007d, C).

Procedure guideline 13.13 Medication: single-dose ampoule: powder preparation

Essential equipment

- Medication ampoule
- Diluent
- Needle
- Syringe
- Sharps container
- Swab

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To prevent contamination of medication and equipment (DH 2007, C).
2 Open packaging and attach needle to the syringe.	To assemble the equipment. E
Procedure	
3 Open the diluent and draw up required volume.	To ensure the correct volume of diluent. E
4 Tap the neck of the ampoule gently.	To ensure that any powder lodged here falls to the bottom of the ampoule (NPSA 2007d, C).
5 Cover the neck of the ampoule with a sterile topical swab and snap it open. If there is any difficulty, an ampoule opening device may be required.	To minimize the risk of contamination. To prevent contact with the drug which could cause a sensitivity reaction. To prevent injury to the nurse (NPSA 2007d, C).
6 Inject the correct diluent slowly into the powder within the ampoule.	To ensure that the powder is thoroughly wet before agitation and is not released into the atmosphere (NPSA 2007d, C).
7 Agitate the ampoule.	To dissolve the drug (NPSA 2007d, C).
8 Inspect the contents.	To detect any glass fragments or any other particulate matter. If present, continue agitation or discard as appropriate (NPSA 2007d,

	C).
9 When the solution is clear, withdraw the prescribed amount, tilting the ampoule if necessary.	To ensure the powder is dissolved and has formed a solution with the diluent. To avoid drawing in air (NPSA 2007d C).
10 Replace the sheath on the needle using a one-handed scooping method and tap the syringe to dislodge any air bubbles. Expel air.	To prevent aerosol formation. To ensure that the correct amount of drug is in the syringe (NPSA 2007d, C).
11 Attach a new needle if required (and discard used needle into appropriate sharps container) or attach a plastic end cap or insert syringe into the syringe packet.	To reduce the risk of contamination of the syringe tip. To avoid possible trauma to the patient if the needle has barbed (become bent/hooked), to avoid tracking medications through superficial tissues and to ensure that the correct size of needle is used for intramuscular or subcutaneous injection. To reduce the risk of injury to the nurse. (NPSA 2007d, C).
12 Attach a label to the syringe.	To ensure practitioner can identify medication in syringe (NPSA 2007d, C).

Procedure guideline 13.14 Multidose vial: powder preparation using a venting needle

Equipment

- Medication ampoule
- Diluent
- Needle
- Syringe
- Alcohol swab

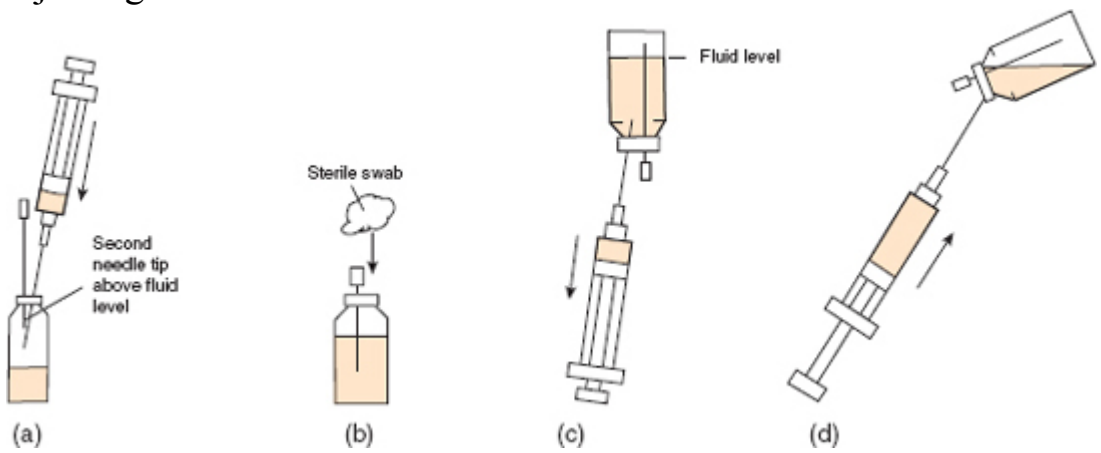
Preprocedure

Action	**Rationale**
1 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To prevent contamination of medication and equipment (DH 2007, C).
2 Open packaging and attach needle to the syringe	To assemble the equipment. E
Procedure	
3 Open the diluent and draw up required volume.	To ensure the correct volume of diluent. E
4 Remove the tamper-evident seal and clean the rubber septum with the chosen	To prevent bacterial contamination of the drug, as the plastic lid prevents damage but does not ensure sterility (NPSA 2007d, C).

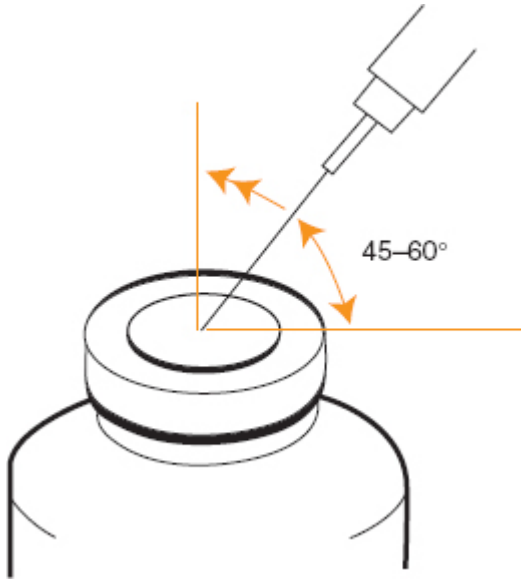
antiseptic and let it air dry for at least 30 seconds.	
5 Insert a 21 G needle into the cap to vent the bottle (see Action Figure 5a).	To prevent pressure differentials, which can cause separation of needle and syringe (NPSA 2007d, C).
6 Insert the needle bevel up, at an angle of 45° to 60°. Before completing the insertion of the needle tip, lift the needle to 90° and proceed (see Action Figure 6).	To minimize the risk of coring when inserting the needle into the cap. E
7 Inject the correct diluent slowly into the powder within the ampoule.	To ensure that the powder is thoroughly wet before it is shaken and is not released into the atmosphere (NPSA 2007d, C).
8 Remove the needle and the syringe.	To enable adequate mixing of the solution. E
9 Place a sterile topical swab over the venting needle (see Action Figure 5b) and shake to dissolve the powder.	To prevent contamination of the drug or the atmosphere. To mix the diluent with the powder and dissolve the drug (NPSA 2007d, C).
10 Inspect the solution for cloudiness or particulate matter. If this is present, discard. Follow hospital guidelines on what action to take, for example return drug to pharmacy.	To prevent patient from receiving an unstable or contaminated drug (NPSA 2007d, C).
11 Withdraw the prescribed amount of solution, and inspect for pieces of rubber which may have 'cored out' of the cap (see Action Figure 5c in Procedure guideline 13.14).	To ensure that the correct amount of drug is in the syringe (NPSA 2007d, C). To prevent the injection of foreign matter into the patient (NPSA 2007d, C).
12 Remove air from syringe without spraying into the atmosphere by injecting air back into the vial (see Action Figure 5d in Procedure guideline 13.14) or replace the sheath on the needle using a one-handed scooping method and tap the syringe to dislodge any air bubbles. Expel air.	To reduce risk of contamination of practitioner. To prevent aerosol formation (NPSA 2007d, C).
13 Attach a new needle if required (and discard used needle into appropriate sharps container) or attach a plastic end cap or insert syringe into the syringe packet.	To reduce the risk of contamination of the syringe tip. To avoid possible trauma to the patient if the needle has barbed (become bent/hooked), to avoid tracking medications through superficial tissues and to ensure that the correct size of needle is used for intramuscular or subcutaneous injection. To reduce the risk of injury to the nurse (NPSA 2007d, C).
14 Attach a label to the syringe.	To ensure practitioner can identify medication in syringe (NPSA 2007d, C).

Action Figure 5 Suggested method of vial reconstitution to avoid environmental exposure. (a) When reconstituting vial, insert a second needle to allow air to escape when adding diluent for injection. (b) When shaking the vial to dissolve the powder, push in second needle up

to Luer connection and cover with a sterile swab. (c) To remove reconstituted solution, insert syringe needle and then invert vial. Ensuring that tip of second needle is above fluid, withdraw the solution. (d) Remove air from syringe without spraying into the atmosphere by injecting air back into vial.



Action Figure 6 Method to minimize coring.



Procedure guideline 13.15 Multidose vial: powder preparation using equilibrium method

Essential equipment

- Medication vial

- Diluent
- Needle
- Syringe
- Alcohol swab

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To prevent contamination of medication and equipment (DH 2007, C).
2 Open packaging and attach needle to the syringe	To assemble the equipment. E
Procedure	
3 Open the diluent and draw up required volume.	To ensure the correct volume of diluent. E
4 Remove the tamper-evident seal and clean the rubber septum with the chosen antiseptic and let it air dry for at least 30 seconds.	To prevent bacterial contamination of the drug, as the plastic lid prevents damage but does not ensure sterility (NPSA 2007d, C).
5 With the needle sheathed, draw into the syringe a volume of air equivalent to the required volume of solution to be drawn up.	To prevent bacterial contamination of the drug (NPSA 2007d, C).
6 Remove the needle cover and insert the needle bevel up, at an angle of 45–60°, into the rubber septum. Before complete insertion of the needle tip, lift the needle to 90° and proceed (see (see Action Figure 6 in Procedure guideline 13.14).	To gain access to the vial and reduce the risk of coring. E
7 Invert the vial. Keep the needle in the solution and slowly depress the plunger to push the air into the vial.	To create an equilibrium in the vial (NPSA 2007d, C).
8 Release the plunger so that the solution flows back into the syringe (if a large volume of solution is to be withdrawn, use a push-pull technique).	To create an equilibrium in the vial (NPSA 2007d, C).
9 Inject the diluent into the vial. Keeping the tip of the needle above the level of the solution in the vial, release the plunger. The syringe will fill with the air which has been displaced by the solution.	This ‘equilibrium method’ helps to minimize the build-up of pressure in the vial (NPSA 2007d, C).
10 With the needle and syringe in place, gently swirl the vial to dissolve all the powder.	To mix the diluent with the powder and dissolve the drug (NPSA 2007d, C).
11 Inspect the solution for cloudiness or particulate matter. If this is present, discard. Follow hospital guidelines on what action to take, for example return drug to pharmacy.	To prevent patient from receiving an unstable or contaminated drug (NPSA 2007d, C).

12 Withdraw the prescribed amount of solution, and inspect for pieces of rubber which may have 'cored out' of the cap (see Action Figure 5c in Procedure guideline 13.14).	To ensure that the correct amount of drug is in the syringe (NPSA 2007d, C). To prevent the injection of foreign matter into the patient (NPSA 2007d, C).
13 Remove air from syringe without spraying into the atmosphere by injecting air back into the vial (see Action Figure 5d in Procedure guideline 13.14) or replace the sheath on the needle using a one handed scooping method and tap the syringe to dislodge any air bubbles. Expel air.	To reduce risk of contamination of practitioner. To prevent aerosol formation (NPSA 2007d, C).
14 Attach a new needle if required (and discard used needle into appropriate sharps container) or attach a plastic end cap or insert syringe into the syringe packet.	To reduce the risk of contamination of the syringe tip. To avoid possible trauma to the patient if the needle has barbed (become bent/hooked), to avoid tracking medications through superficial tissues and to ensure that the correct size of needle is used for intramuscular or subcutaneous injection. To reduce the risk of injury to the nurse. (NPSA 2007d, C).
15 Attach a label to the syringe.	To ensure practitioner can identify medication in syringe (NPSA 2007d, C).

Procedure guideline 13.16 Medication: injection administration

Essential equipment

- Clean tray or receiver in which to place drug and equipment
- Sterile topical swab, if drug is presented in ampoule form
- 21 G needle(s) to ease reconstitution and drawing up, 23 G if from a glass ampoule
- Drug(s) to be administered
- Patient's prescription chart, to check dose, route and so on
- 21, 23 or 25 G needle, size dependent on route of administration
- Recording sheet or book as required by law or hospital policy
- Syringe(s) of appropriate size for amount of drug to be given
- Swabs saturated with isopropyl alcohol 70%

- Any protective clothing required by hospital policy for specified drugs, such as antibiotics or cytotoxic drugs, such as goggles or gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Collect and check all equipment.	To prevent delays and enable full concentration on the procedure. E.
2 Check that the packaging of all equipment is intact.	To ensure sterility. If the seal is damaged, discard (NPSA 2007d, C).
3 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To prevent contamination of medication and equipment (DH 2007, C).
Procedure	
4 Prepare needle(s), syringe(s), and so on, on a tray or receiver.	To contain all items in a clean area. E.
5 Inspect all equipment.	To check that none is damaged; if so, discard or report to MHRA. C
6 Consult the patient's prescription chart and ascertain the following: - Drug - Dose - Date and time of administration - Route and method of administration - Diluent as appropriate - Validity of prescription - Signature of doctor.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate diluent and by the correct route (NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2007d, C).
7 Check all details with another nurse if required by hospital policy.	To minimize any risk of error (NMC 2008a, C).
8 Select the drug in the appropriate volume, dilution or dosage and check the expiry date.	To reduce wastage. Treatment with medication that is outside the expiry date is dangerous. Drugs deteriorate with storage. The expiry date indicates when a particular drug is no longer pharmacologically efficacious (NPSA 2007d, C).
9 Proceed with the preparation of the drug, using protective clothing if advisable.	To protect practitioner during preparation (NPSA 2007d, C).
10 Take the prepared dose to the patient and close the door or curtains as appropriate	To ensure patient privacy and dignity. E
11 Check patient's identity	To prevent error and confirm patient's identity (NPSA 2005, C).
12 Evaluate the patient's knowledge of the medication being offered. If this knowledge	A patient has a right to information about treatment (NMC 2008a, C).

appears to be faulty or incorrect, offer an explanation of the use, action, dose and potential side-effects of the drug or drugs involved.	
13 Administer the drug as prescribed.	To ensure patient receives treatment. E.
Postprocedure	
14 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C; NPSA 2007d, C).

Intradermal injection

Definition

The intradermal route provides a local rather than systemic effect and is used primarily for administering small amounts of local anaesthetic and skin testing, for example allergy or tuberculin testing (Snyder 2007). The injection is given into the dermis of the skin just below the epidermis where the blood supply is reduced and drug absorption can occur slowly (Chernecky *et al.* 2002).

Evidence-based approaches

Observation of an inflammatory reaction is a priority, so the best sites are those that are lowly pigmented, thinly keratinized and hairless. Chosen sites are the inner forearms and the scapulae. The injection site most commonly used is the medial forearm area as this allows for easy inspection (Downie *et al*. 2003). Volumes of 0.5 mL or less should be used (Chernecky *et al.* 2002).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

The injections are best performed using a 25 or 27 G needle inserted at a 10–15° angle, bevel up, just under the epidermis. Usually a TB (tuberculosis) or 1 mL syringe is used to ensure accuracy of dose.

Procedure guideline 13.17 Medication: intradermal injection

Essential equipment

- Needle 25–27 G
- 1 mL syringe containing medication

- Alcohol swab
- Non-sterile gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C).
2 Consult the patient's prescription chart and ascertain the following: ■ Drug ■ Dose ■ Date and time of administration ■ Route and method of administration ■ Diluent as appropriate ■ Validity of prescription ■ Signature of doctor.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate diluent and by the correct route (NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2007d, C).

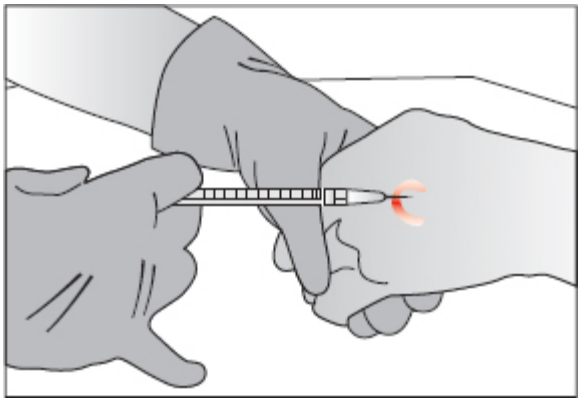
Procedure

3 Close the curtains or door and assist the patient into the required position.	To ensure patient privacy and dignity. E To allow access to the appropriate injection site (Workman 1999, E).
4 Remove appropriate garments to expose the injection site.	To gain access for injection (Workman 1999, E).
5 Assess the injection site for signs of inflammation, oedema, infection and skin lesions.	To promote effectiveness of administration (Workman 1999, E). To reduce the risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Workman 1999, E). To avoid skin lesions and avoid possible trauma to the patient (Workman 1999, E).
6 Choose the correct needle size and attach the needle.	To minimize the risk of missing the subcutaneous tissue and any ensuing pain (Workman 1999, E).
7 Clean the injection site with a swab saturated with isopropyl alcohol 70% and apply gloves.	To reduce the number of pathogens introduced into the skin by the needle at the

	time of insertion. E (For further information on this action see Skin preparation.)
8 Remove the needle sheath and hold syringe with the dominant hand with the bevel of needle pointing up.	To facilitate needle placement (Perry 2007, E).
9 With the non-dominant hand, stretch skin over the site with forefinger and thumb.	To facilitate the needle piercing the skin more easily (Perry 2007, E).
10 With the needle almost against the patient's skin, insert the needle into the skin at an angle of 10–15° and advance through the epidermis so the needle tip can be seen through the skin.	To ensure the needle tip is in the dermis (Perry 2007, E).
11 Inject medication slowly. It is not necessary to aspirate as the dermis is relatively avascular.	To minimize the discomfort at site (Perry 2007, E).
12 While injecting medication, a bleb (resembling a mosquito bite) will form (see Action Figure 12).	To indicate medication is in dermis (Perry 2007, E).
13 Withdraw the needle rapidly and apply pressure gently. Do not massage the site.	To prevent dispersing medication into underlying tissue layers and altering test results (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Perry 2007, E).
Postprocedure	
14 Ensure that all sharps and non-sharp waste are disposed of safely and in accordance with locally approved procedures. For example, sharps into sharps bin and syringes into an orange clinical waste bag.	To ensure safe disposal and to avoid laceration or other injury to staff (DH 2005, C; MHRA 2004, C).
15 Record the administration on appropriate sheets.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C; NPSA 2007d, C).

Action Figure 12 Intradermal bleb. After Springhouse (2005).

Reproduced with permission of Lippincott Williams and Wilkins.



Subcutaneous injection

Definition

These are given beneath the epidermis into the loose fat and connective tissue underlying the dermis and are used for administering small doses of non-irritating water-soluble substances for example insulin, heparin (Downie *et al.* 2003).

Related theory

Subcutaneous tissue is not richly supplied with blood vessels and so medication is absorbed more slowly than when given intramuscularly. The rate of absorption is influenced by factors that affect blood flow to tissues such as physical exercise or local application of hot or cold compresses (Perry 2007). Other conditions can prevent or delay absorption due to an impaired blood flow so in these conditions subcutaeous injections are contraindicated, for example circulatory shock, occlusive vascular disease (Perry 2007).

Evidence-based approaches

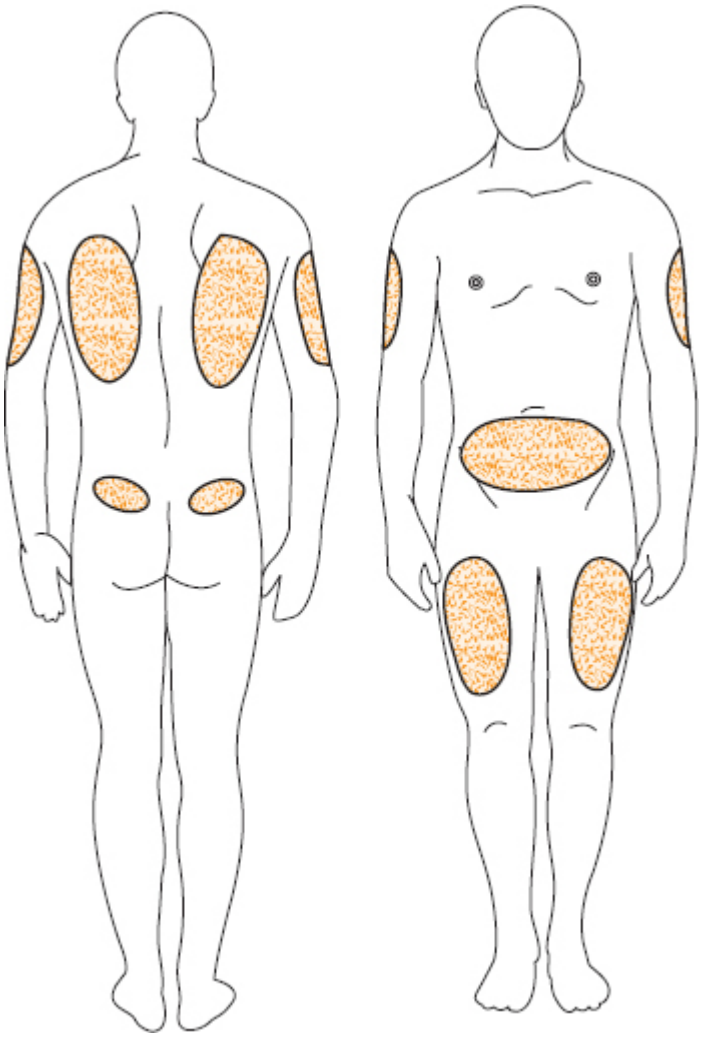
Injection sites

Sites recommended are the abdomen in the umbilical region, the lateral or posterior aspect of the lower part of the upper arm, the thighs (under the greater trochanter rather than mid-thigh) and the buttocks (Downie *et al*. 2003) (Figure 13.22). It has been found that the amount of subcutaneous tissue varies more than was previously thought; this is particularly significant for administration of insulin as inadvertent intramuscular administration can result in rapid absorption and hypoglycaemic episodes (King 2003). Rotation of sites can decrease the likelihood of irritation and ensure improved absorption. If using the abdominal area then try to inject each subsequent injection 2.5 cm from the previous one (Chernecky *et al.* 2002). Injection sites should be free

of infection, skin lesions, scars, birthmarks, bony prominences and large underlying muscles or nerves (Perry 2007).

Figure 13.22 Sites recommended for subcutaneous injection.

Reproduced from Elkin et al. (2007).



The skin should be gently pinched into a fold to elevate the subcutaneous tissue which lifts the adipose tissue away from the underlying muscle (Workman 1999). The practice of aspirating to ensure a blood vessel has not been pierced is no longer recommended as it has been shown that this is unlikely to occur (Peragallo-Dittko 1997, Perry 2007). The maximum volume tolerable using this route for injection is 2 mL and drugs should be highly soluble to prevent irritation (Downie *et al.* 2003).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Injections are usually given using a 25 G needle. To ensure medication reaches the subcutaneous tissue, the rule is: if you can grasp 2 inches of tissue, insert the needle at a 90° angle and for 1 inch, insert needle at a 45° angle (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Perry 2007). With the introduction of shorter needles (13 mm), it is recommended that insulin injections be given at an angle of 90° (King 2003). The length of the needle should be selected by pinching the skin tissue and selecting a needle one-half the width of the skinfold (Chernecky *et al.* 2002). Shorter needles should also be used at a 45° angle in children and underweight adults.

Specific patient preparations

It has been stated that it is not necessary to use an alcohol swab to clean the skin prior to administration of injections providing the skin is socially clean. If unsure or in immunocompromised patients, the skin should be prepared using an antiseptic swab (Dann 1969, Downie *et al*. 2003).

Procedure guideline 13.18 Medication: subcutaneous injection

Essential equipment

- Alcohol swab
- Needle
- Syringe containing prepared medication
- Sharps bin
- Non-sterile gloves

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C).

2 Consult the patient's prescription chart and ascertain the following: ■ Drug ■ Dose ■ Date and time of administration ■ Route and method of administration ■ Diluent as appropriate ■ Validity of prescription ■ Signature of doctor.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate diluent and by the correct route (NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2007d, C).
3 Wash hands.	To prevent contamination of medication and equipment (DH 2007, C).
Procedure	
4 Close the curtains or door and assist the patient into the required position.	To ensure patient's privacy and dignity. E To allow access to the appropriate injection site (Perry 2007, E).
5 Remove appropriate garments to expose the injection site.	To gain access for injection. E.
6 Assess the injection site for signs of inflammation, oedema, infection and skin lesions.	To promote effectiveness of administration (Perry 2007, E). To reduce the risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Workman 1999, E). To avoid skin lesions and possible trauma to the patient (Perry 2007, E).
7 Pinch the skin of the area and select the correct needle size.	To minimize the risk of missing the subcutaneous tissue and any ensuing pain (Perry 2007, E).
8 Clean the injection site with a swab saturated with isopropyl alcohol 70% and apply gloves.	To reduce the number of pathogens introduced into the skin by the needle at the time of insertion. E (For further information on this action see Skin preparation.)
9 Gently pinch the skin up into a fold.	To elevate the subcutaneous tissue, and lift the adipose tissue away from the underlying muscle (Perry 2007, E).
10 Remove the needle sheath and hold syringe between thumb and forefinger of dominant hand as if grasping a dart.	To enable a quick smooth injection (Perry 2007, E).
11 Insert the needle into the skin at an angle of 45° and release the grasped skin (unless administering insulin when an angle of 90° should be used). Inject the drug slowly.	Injecting medication into compressed tissue irritates nerve fibres and causes the patient discomfort (Perry 2007, E). The introduction of shorter insulin needles makes 90° the more appropriate angle (Trounce and Gould 2000, E).
12 Withdraw the needle rapidly. Apply gentle	To aid absorption. Massage can injure underlying

pressure. Do not massage area.	tissue (Perry 2007, E).
Postprocedure	
13 Ensure that all sharps and non-sharp waste are disposed of safely and in accordance with locally approved procedures.	To ensure safe disposal and to avoid laceration or other injury to staff (MHRA, 2004, C; DH, 2005b, C).
14 Record the administration on appropriate sheets.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C; NPSA 2007d, C).

Postprocedural considerations

Education of patient and relevant others

Patients often have to administer their own subcutaneous injections, for example insulin for diabetics. The nurse must teach the patient how to prepare and administer self-injection, including aspects such as equipment, storage, handwashing, injection technique and safe disposal of equipment and sharps (Perry 2007).

Complications

Medications collecting within the tissues can cause sterile abscesses, which appear as hardened, painful lumps (Perry 2007). The nurse must monitor and report these.

Intramuscular injections

Definition

An intramuscular injection deposits medication into deep muscle tissue under the subcutaneous tissue (Chernecky *et al.* 2002). The vascularity of muscle aids the rapid absorption of medication (Perry 2007).

Evidence-based approaches

Site and volume of injection

Selecting the site requires correct identification of the muscle groups by landmarking correct anatomical features (Hunter 2008). Choice will be influenced by the patient's physical condition and age. Intramuscular injections should be given into the densest part of the muscle (Pope 2002). An active patient will probably have a greater muscle mass than older or emaciated patients (Hunter 2008).

The injectable volume will depend on the muscle bed. In children, injectable volumes should be halved because muscle mass is less (Workman 1999). However, it appears that it is the medicine rather than just the volume that affects how a patient tolerates the injection. Malkin (2008) uses Botox injections as an example where a volume of 1–3 mL can be injected into facial muscle groups, supporting the view that tolerance of the drug is more important than the volume.

Current research evidence suggests that there are five sites that can be utilized for the administration of intramuscular injections (Rodger and King 2000, Tortora and Derrickson 2009).

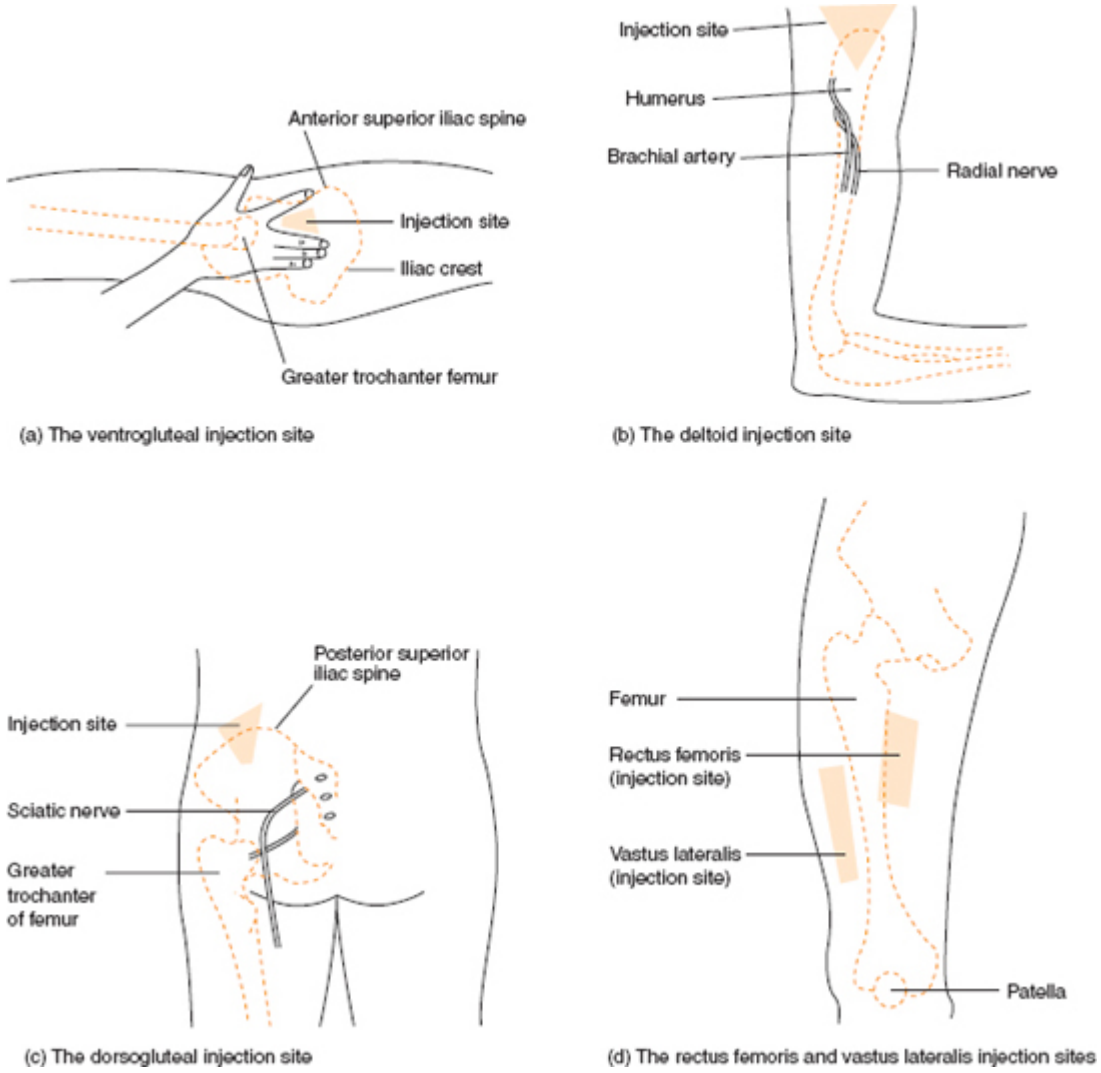
- The *ventrogluteal site* (Figure 13.23a) is relatively free of major nerves and blood vessels and the muscle is large and well defined, making it easy to locate (Greenway 2004). It is located by placing the palm of the hand on the patient's opposite greater trochanter (right hand on left hip). The index finger is then extended to the anterior superior iliac spine to make a V. Injection in the centre of the V will ensure the injection is given into the gluteus medius muscle (Hunter 2008). This is the site of choice for intramuscular injections (Rodger and King 2000) and used for antibiotics, antiemetics, deep intramuscular and Z-track injections in oil, narcotics and sedatives. Up to 2.5 mL can be safely injected into the ventrogluteal site (Rodger and King 2000).
- The *deltoid site* (Figure 13.23b) has the advantage of being easily accessible whether the patient is standing, sitting or lying down. It is found by visualizing a triangle where the horizontal line is located 2.5–5 cm below the acromial process and midpoint of the lateral aspect of the arm, in line with the axilla to form the apex (Hunter 2008). The injection is then given 2.5 cm down from the acromial process,

avoiding the radial and brachial nerves. Owing to the small area of this site, the number and volume of injections which can be given into it are limited. Drugs such as narcotics, sedatives and vaccines, which are usually small in volume, tend to be administered into the deltoid site (Workman 1999). Rodger and King (2000) state that the maximum volume that should be administered at this site is 1 mL.

- The *dorsogluteal site* (Figure 13.23c) or upper outer quadrant is the traditional site of choice and is used for deep intramuscular and Z-track injections. It is located by using imaginary lines to divide the buttocks into four quarters. However, this site carries the danger of the needle hitting the sciatic nerve and the superior gluteal arteries (Workman 1999). The gluteus muscle has the lowest drug absorption rate and this can result in a build-up in the tissues, increasing the risk of overdose (Malkin 2008). The muscle mass is also likely to have atrophied in elderly, non-ambulant and emaciated patients. Finally, it appears that there is a risk that the medication will not reach the muscle due to the amount of subcutaneous tissue in this area (Greenway 2004) and so it is not recommended for routine immunizations due to the poor absorption and risk of nerve injury (DH 2006, WHO 2004). In adults, up to 4 mL can be safely injected into this site (Rodger and King 2000).
- The *rectus femoris site* (Figure 13.23d) is a well-defined muscle found by measuring a hand's breadth from the greater trochanter and the knee joint, which identifies the middle third of the quadriceps muscle (Hunter 2008). It is used for antiemetics, narcotics, sedatives, injections in oil, deep intramuscular and Z-track injections. It is rarely used by nurses, but is easily accessed for self-administration of injections or for infants (Workman 1999). 1-5 mL can be injected (1–3 mL in children).
- The *vastus lateralis site* (Figure 13.23d) is used for deep intramuscular and Z-track injections. One of the advantages of this site is its ease of access but more importantly, there are no major blood vessels or significant nerve structures associated with this site. It is the better option in the obese patient (Nisbet 2006). Up to 5 mL can be safely injected (Rodger and King 2000).

Figure 13.23 Intramuscular injection sites.

Reproduced from Rodger and King (2000) with permission.



There is debate over which site to use. The two recommended are the vastus lateralis and the ventrogluteal, but most nurses tend to use the dorsogluteal as it is more familiar (Greenway 2004).

Rate of administration

It is recommended that the plunger is depressed at a rate of 10 seconds per millilitre.

Technique

The Z-track method involves pulling the skin downwards or to one side of the injection site and inserting the needle at a right angle to the skin, which moves the cutaneous and subcutaneous tissues by approximately 1–2 cm (Workman 1999). The injection is given and the needle withdrawn, while releasing the retracted skin at the same time. This manoeuvre seals off the puncture track. An angle of 90° is supported by the DH (2006). The syringe should be held like a pen to insert with a dart-like motion. Aspiration is still an accepted part of an IM injection to ensure that the medication does not enter the capillaries or is inadvertently given intravenously (Hunter 2008), but there is no evidence to support this. Some centres have had to adapt as safety devices do not allow the withdrawal of the plunger as the safety system can then be activated.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

The most common size of needle is 21 G (23 G may also be used in a thin patient) but it does depend on the viscosity of the medication. The important aspect of the needle is the length. The correct use of needle length will result in fewer adverse events and reduce complications of absecess, pain and bruising (Malkin 2008). Needles should be long enough to penetrate the muscle and still allow a quarter of the needle to remain external to the skin (Workman 1999). Lenz (1983) states that when choosing the correct needle length for intramuscular injections, it is important to assess the muscle mass of the injection site, the amount of subcutaneous fat and the weight of the patient. It may be necessary to calibrate the BMI to calculate body fat (DH 2006). Without such an assessment, most injections intended for gluteal muscle are deposited in the gluteal fat. The following are suggested as ways of determining the most suitable size of needle to use.

Deltoid and vastus lateralis muscles

The muscle to be used should be grasped between the thumb and forefinger to determine the depth of the muscle mass or the amount of

subcutaneous fat at the injection site.

Gluteal muscles

The layer of fat and skin above the muscle should be gently lifted with the thumb and forefinger for the same reasons as before. Use the patient's weight to calculate the needle length required.

The following are recommended but remembering that women have more subcutaneous tissue than men.

- Children 16 mm needle
- 31.5–40.0 kg 25 mm needle
- 40.5–90.0 kg 25 mm needle
- 90 kg 38 mm needle

(Pope 2002)

Specific patient preparations

Skin preparation

There are many inconsistencies regarding skin cleaning prior to subcutaneous or intramuscular injections. Previous studies have suggested that cleaning with an alcohol swab is not always necessary, as not cleaning the site does not result in infections and may predispose the skin to hardening (Dann 1969, Koivistov and Felig 1978, Workman 1999).

Dann (1969), in a study over a period of 6 years involving more than 5000 injections, found no single case of local and/or systemic infection. Koivistov and Felig (1978) concluded that whilst skin preparations did reduce skin bacterial count, they are not necessary to prevent infections at the injection site. Some hospitals accept that if the patient is physically clean and the nurse maintains a high standard of hand hygiene and asepsis during the procedure, skin disinfection is not necessary (Workman 1999).

In the immunosuppressed patient, the skin should be cleaned as such patients may become infected by inoculation of a relatively small number of pathogens (Downie *et al.* 2003). The practice at the Royal

Marsden Hospital is to clean the skin prior to injection in order to reduce the risk of contamination from the patient's skin flora. The skin should be cleaned using an 'alcohol swab' (containing 70% isopropyl alcohol) for 30 seconds and then allowed to dry. If the skin is not dry before proceeding, skin cleaning is ineffective and the antiseptic may cause irritation by being injected into the tissues (Downie *et al*. 2003).

Procedure guideline 13.19 Medication: intramuscular injection

Essential equipment

- Alcohol swab
- Needle
- Syringe containing prepared IM medication

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C).
2 Consult the patient's prescription sheet and ascertain the following: ■ Drug ■ Dose ■ Date and time of administration ■ Route and method of administration ■ Diluent as appropriate ■ Validity of prescription ■ Signature of doctor.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate diluent and by the correct route (NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2007d, C).

Procedure

3 Close the curtains or door and assist the patient into the required position.	To ensure patient privacy and dignity. E To allow access to the injection site and to ensure the designated muscle group is flexed and therefore relaxed (Workman 1999, E).

4 Remove the appropriate garment to expose the injection site.	To gain access for injection (Workman 1999, E).
5 Assess the injection site for signs of inflammation, oedema, infection and skin lesions.	To promote effectiveness of administration (Workman 1999, E). To reduce the risk of infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Workman 1999, E). To avoid skin lesions and avoid possible trauma to the patient (Perry 2007, E; Workman 1999, E).
6 Clean the injection site with a swab saturated with isopropyl alcohol 70% for 30 seconds and allow to dry for 30 seconds (Workman 1999).	To reduce the number of pathogens introduced into the skin by the needle at the time of insertion and to prevent stinging sensation if alcohol is taken into the tissues upon needle entry (Hunter 2008, E; Workman 1999, E). (For further information on this action see Skin preparation.)
7 With the non-dominant hand, stretch the skin slightly around the injection site.	To displace the underlying subcutaneous tissues, facilitate the insertion of the needle and reduce the sensitivity of nerve endings (Hunter 2008, E; Workman 1999, E).
8 Holding the syringe in the dominant hand like a dart, inform the patient and quickly plunge the needle at an angle of 90º into the skin until about 1 cm of the needle is left showing.	To ensure that the needle penetrates the muscle (Hunter 2008, E; Workman 1999, E).
9 Pull back the plunger. If no blood is aspirated, depress the plunger at approximately 1 mL every 10 seconds and inject the drug slowly. If blood appears, withdraw the needle completely, replace it and begin again. Explain to the patient what has occurred.	To confirm that the needle is in the correct position and not in a vein (Workman 1999, E). This allows time for the muscle fibres to expand and absorb the solution (Hunter 2008, E; Workman 1999, E). To prevent pain and ensure even distribution of the drug (Perry 2007, E).
10 Wait 10 seconds before withdrawing the needle.	To allow the medication to diffuse into the tissue (Perry 2007, E; Workman 1999, E).
11 Withdraw the needle rapidly. Apply gentle pressure to any bleeding point and then apply a small plaster over the puncture site.	To prevent tissue injury and haematoma formation (Perry 2007, E).
Postprocedure	
12 Ensure that all sharps and non-sharp waste are disposed of safely and in accordance with locally approved procedures, for example put sharps into sharps bin and syringes into orange clinical waste bag.	To ensure safe disposal and to avoid laceration or other injury to staff (DH 2005, C; MHRA 2004, C).
13 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2008a, C; NMC 2009, C; NPSA 2007d, C).

Intravenous injections and infusions

Definition

The introduction of medication or solutions into the circulatory system via a peripheral or central vein (Chernecky *et al.* 2002).

Related theory

Intravenous therapy is now an integral part of the majority of nurses' professional practice (RCN 2010). The nurse's role has progressed considerably from being able to add drugs to infusion bags (DHSS 1976) to now assessing patients and inserting the appropriate vascular access device (VAD) prior to drug administration (Gabriel 2005).

Any nurse administering intravenous drugs must be competent in all aspects of intravenous therapy and act in accordance with *The Code* (NMC 2008b), that is, to maintain knowledge and skills (Hyde 2008, RCN 2010). Training and assessment should comprise both theoretical and practical components and include legal and professional issues, fluid balance, pharmacology, drug administration, local and systemic complications, infection control issues, use of equipment and risk management (Hyde 2008, RCN 2010).

The nurse's responsibilities in relation to intravenous drug administration include the following.

- Knowing the therapeutic use of the drug or solution, its normal dosage, side-effects, precautions and contraindications.
- Preparing the drug aseptically and safely, checking the container and drug for faults, using the correct diluent and only preparing it immediately prior to administration.
- Identifying the patient and checking allergy status.
- Checking the prescription chart.
- Checking and maintaining patency of the VAD.
- Inspecting the site of the VAD and managing/reporting complications where appropriate.
- Controlling the flow rate of infusion and/or speed of injection.

- Monitoring the condition of the patient and reporting changes.
- Making clear and immediate records of all drugs administered (Finlay 2008, NMC 2008a, NMC 2008b, RCN 2010).

Evidence-based approaches

Methods of administering intravenous drugs

There are three methods of administering intravenous drugs: continuous infusion, intermittent infusion and direct intermittent injection.

Continuous infusion

Continuous infusion may be defined as the intravenous delivery of a medication or fluid at a constant rate over a prescribed time period, ranging from several hours to several days to achieve a controlled therapeutic response (Turner and Hankins 2010). The greater dilution also helps to reduce venous irritation (Weinstein and Plumer 2007, Whittington 2008).

A continuous infusion may be used when:

- the drugs to be administered must be highly diluted
- a maintenance of steady blood levels of the drug is required (Turner and Hankins 2010).

Pre-prepared infusion fluids with additives such as those containing potassium chloride should be used whenever possible. This reduces the risk of extrinsic contamination, which can occur during the mixing of drugs (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). Only one addition should be made to each bottle or bag of fluid after the compatibility has been ascertained. More additions can increase the risk of incompatibility occurring, for example precipitation (Weinstein and Plumer 2007, Whittington 2008). The additive and fluid must be mixed well to prevent a layering effect which can occur with some drugs (Whittington 2008). The danger is that a bolus injection of the drug may be delivered. To safeguard against this, any additions should be made to the infusion fluid and the container inverted a number of times to ensure mixing of the drug, before the fluid is hung on the infusion stand (NPSA 2007d).

The infusion container should be labelled clearly after the addition has been made. Constant monitoring of the infusion fluid mixture (Weinstein and Plumer 2007, Whittington 2008) for cloudiness or presence of particles should occur, as well as checking the patient's condition and intravenous site for patency, extravasation or infiltration (Downie *et al.* 2003).

Intermittent infusion

Intermittent infusion is the administration of a small-volume infusion, that is, 25–250 mL, over a period of between 15 minutes and 2 hours (Turner and Hankins 2010). This may be given as a specific dose at one time or at repeated intervals during 24 hours (Pickstone 1999).

An intermittent infusion may be used when:

- a peak plasma level is required therapeutically
- the pharmacology of the drug dictates this specific dilution
- the drug will not remain stable for the time required to administer a more dilute volume
- the patient is on a restricted intake of fluids (Whittington 2008).

Delivery of the drug by intermittent infusion can be piggy-backed (via a needle-free injection port), if the primary infusion is of a compatible fluid, may utilize a system such as a 'Y' set or or a burette set with a chamber capacity of 100 or 150 mL (Turner and Hankins 2010). This is when the drug can be added to the burette and infused while the primary infusion is switched off. A small-volume infusion may also be connected to a cannula specifically to keep the vein open, and maintain patency.

All the points considered when preparing for a continuous infusion should be taken into account here, for example pre-prepared fluids, single additions of drugs, adequate mixing, labelling and monitoring.

Direct intermittent injection

Direct intermittent injection (also known as intravenous push or bolus) involves the injection of a drug from a syringe into the injection port of the administration set or directly into a VAD (Chernecky *et al.* 2002, Turner and Hankins 2010). Most are administered anywhere from 3 to

10 minutes depending upon the drug (Weinstein and Plumer 2007, Whittington 2008).

A direct injection may be used when:

- a maximum concentration of the drug is required to vital organs. This is a 'bolus' injection which is given rapidly over seconds, as in an emergency, for example adrenaline
- the drug cannot be further diluted for pharmacological or therapeutic reasons or does not require dilution. This is given as a controlled 'push' injection over a few minutes
- a peak blood level is required and cannot be achieved by small-volume infusion (Turner and Hankins 2010).

Rapid administration could result in toxic levels and an anaphylactic-type reaction. Manufacturer's recommendations of rates of administration (i.e. millilitres or milligrams per minute) should be adhered to. In the absence of such recommendations, administration should proceed slowly, over 5–10 minutes (Dougherty 2002).

Delivery of the drug by direct injection may be via the cannula through a resealable needle-less injection cap, extension set or via the injection site of an administration set.

- If a peripheral device is *in situ*, the bandage and dressing must be removed to inspect the insertion of the cannula, unless a transparent dressing is in place (Finlay 2008).
- Patency of the vein must be confirmed prior to administration and the vein's ability to accept an extra flow of fluid or irritant chemical must also be checked (Dougherty 2008).

Administration into the injection site of a fast-running drip may be advised if the infusion in progress is compatible in order to dilute the drug further and reduce local chemical irritation (Dougherty 2002). Alternatively, a stop–start procedure may be employed if there is doubt about venous patency. This allows the nurse to constantly check the patency of the vein and detect early signs of extravasation. If the infusion fluid is incompatible with the drug, the administration set may be switched off and a compatible solution may be used as a flush (NPSA 2007d).

If a number of drugs are being administered, 0.9% sodium chloride must be used to flush in between each drug to prevent interactions. In addition, 0.9% sodium chloride should be used at the end of the administration to ensure that all the drug has been delivered. The device should then be flushed to ensure patency is maintained (Dougherty 2008).

The following principles are to be applied throughout preparation and administration.

Asepsis and reducing the risk of infection

Microbes on the hands of healthcare personnel contribute to healthcare-associated infection (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). Therefore aseptic technique must be adhered to throughout all intravenous procedures. The nurse must employ good handwashing and drying techniques using a bactericidal soap or a bactericidal alcohol handrub. If asepsis is not maintained, local infection, septic phlebitis or septicaemia may result (Hart 2008, Pratt *et al.* 2007, RCN 2010).

The insertion site should be inspected at least once a day for complications such as infiltration, phlebitis or any indication of infection, for example redness at the insertion site of the device or pyrexia (RCN 2010). These problems may necessitate the removal of the device and/or further investigation (Finlay 2008).

It is desirable that a closed system of infusion is maintained wherever possible, with as few connections as is necessary for its purpose (Finlay 2008, Hart 2008). This reduces the risk of bacterial contamination. Any extra connections within the administration system increase the risk of infection. Three-way taps have been shown to encourage the growth of micro-organisms. They are difficult to clean due to their design, as micro-organisms can become lodged and are then able to multiply in the warm, moist environment (Finlay 2008, Hart 2008). This reservoir for micro-organisms may then be released into the circulation.

The injection sites on administration sets or injection caps should be cleaned using a 2% chlorhexidine alcohol-based antiseptic, allowing time for it to dry (Pratt *et al.* 2007). Connections should be cleaned before changing administration sets and manipulations kept to a

minimum. Administration sets should be changed according to use (intermittent/continuous therapy), type of device and type of solution, and the set must be labelled with the date and time of change (NPSA 2007d, RCN 2010).

To ensure safe delivery of intravenous fluids and medication:

- replace all tubing when the vascular device is replaced (Pratt *et al.* 2007)
- replace solution administration sets and stopcocks used for continuous infusions every 72 hours unless clinically indicated, for example, if drug stability data indicate otherwise (Pratt *et al.* 2007, RCN 2010). Research has indicated that routine changing of administration sets (used for infusing solutions) every 48–72 hours instead of every 24 hours is not associated with an increase in infection and could result in considerable savings for hospitals (Pratt *et al.* 2007, RCN 2010)
- replace solution administration sets used for lipid emulsions and parenteral nutrition at the end of the infusion or within 24 hours of initiating the infusion (Pratt *et al.* 2007, RCN 2010). Certain intravenous fluids including lipid emulsions, blood and blood products are more likely than other parenteral fluids to support microbial growth if contaminated and therefore replacement of the intravenous tubing is required more frequently than 48–72 hours (Pratt *et al.* 2007)
- replace blood administration sets at least every 12 hours and after every second unit of blood (McClelland 2007, Pratt *et al.* 2007, RCN 2010)
- all solution sets used for intermittent infusions, for example antibiotics, should be discarded immediately after use and not allowed to hang for reuse (RCN 2010).
- if administering more than one infusion via a multi lumen extension set or multipl ports, be aware of the risk of back tracking of medication and consider using sets with one way, non return or anti reflux valves (MHRA 2010a).

Inspection of fluids, drugs, equipment and their packaging must be undertaken to detect any points where contamination may have occurred during manufacture and/or transport. This intrinsic contamination may

be detected as cloudiness, discoloration or the presence of particles (BNF 2011, RCN 2010, Weinstein and Plumer 2007). Infusion bags should not be left hanging for longer than 24 hours. In the case of blood and blood products, this is reduced to 5 hours (McClelland 2007, RCN 2010).

Safety

All details of the prescription and all calculations must be checked carefully in accordance with hospital policy in order to ensure safe preparation and administration of the drug(s).

The nurse must also check the compatibility of the drug with the diluent or infusion fluid. The nurse should be aware of the types of incompatibilities and the factors which could influence them. These include pH, concentration, time, temperature, light and the brand of the drug. If insufficient information is available, a reference book (e.g. *British National Formulary*) or the product data sheet must be consulted (NPSA 2007d, Whittington 2008). If the nurse is unsure about any aspect of the preparation and/or administration of a drug, they should not proceed and should consult with a senior member of staff (NMC 2008a). Constant monitoring of both the mixture and the patient is important. The preferred method and rate of intravenous administration must be determined.

Drugs should never be added to the following: blood; blood products, that is plasma or platelet concentrate (see Chapter 8); mannitol solutions; sodium bicarbonate solution; and so on. Only specially prepared additives should be used with fat emulsions or amino acid preparations (Downie *et al*. 2003).

Accurate labelling of additives and records of administration are essential (NPSA 2007d, RCN 2010).

Any protective clothing which is advised should be worn, and vinyl gloves should be used to reduce the risk of latex allergy (Hart 2008). Healthcare professionals who use gloves frequently or for long periods face a high risk of allergy from latex products. All healthcare facilities should develop policies and procedures that determine measures to

protect staff and patients from latex exposure and outline a treatment plan for latex reactions (Dougherty 2002).

Preventing needlestick injuries should be key in any health and safety programme and organizations should introduce safety devices and needle-free systems wherever possible (NHS Employers 2007). Basic rules of safety include not resheathing needles, disposal of needles immediately after use into a recognized sharps bin and convenient location of sharps bins in all areas where needles and sharps are used (Hart 2008, MHRA 2004, RCN 2010).

Comfort

Both the physical and psychological comfort of the patient must be considered. Comprehensive explanation of the practical aspects of the procedure together with information about the effects of treatment will contribute to reducing anxiety and will need to be tailored to each patient's individual needs.

Legal and professional issues

At least one patient will experience a potentially serious intravenous (IV) drug error every day in an 'average' hospital. IV drug errors have been estimated to be a third of all drug errors. 'Fifteen million infusions are performed in the NHS every year and 700 unsafe incidents are reported each year with 19% attributed to user error' (NPSA 2004, p.1). Between 1990 and 2000, there were 1485 incidents reported to the Medical Devices Agency which involved infusion pumps (MHRA 2010b). In 50% of incidents no cause was established. However, of the remaining incidents, 27% were attributed to user error (e.g. misloading of the administration set or syringe, setting the wrong rate, confusing pump type) and 20% to device-related issues (e.g. poor maintenance, cleaning) (MHRA 2010b, Williams and Lefever 2000). Syringe pumps have given rise to the most significant problems in terms of patient mortality and morbidity (Fox 2000, MHRA 2010b, NPSA 2003).

The high frequency of human error has highlighted the need for more formalized, validated, competency-based training and assessment

(MHRA 2010b, NPSA 2003, 2004, Pickstone 2000, Quinn 2000). Nurses must be familiar with the device they are using and not attempt to operate any device that they have not been fully trained to use (Murray and Glenister 2001, NPSA 2003). As a minimum, the training should cover the device, drugs and solutions, and the practical procedures related to setting up the device and problem solving (Medical Devices Agency 2000, MHRA 2010b). Staff should also be made aware of the mechanisms for reporting faults with devices and procedures for adverse incident reporting within their trust and to the MHRA and the NPSA (MHRA 2006b).

A useful checklist (Box 13.13) has been produced by the Medical Devices Agency for staff to follow prior to using a medical device to ensure safe practice (Medical Devices Agency 2000, MHRA 2010b).

Box 13.13 Checklist: how safe is your practice?

- Have I been trained in the use of the infusion device?
- Was the training formalized and recorded or did I just pick it up as I went along?
- How was my competency in relation to the infusion device assessed?
- Have I read the user instructions on how to use the infusion device and am I familiar with any warning labels?
- When was the infusion device last serviced?
- Are there any signs of wear, damage or faults?
- Do I know how to set up and use the infusion device?
- Is the infusion device and any additional equipment in good working order?
- Do I know how the infusion device should perform and the monitoring that needs to be done to check its performance?
- Am I using the correct additional equipment, for example the appropriate disposable administration set for the infusion pump?

- Do I know how to recognize whether the infusion device has failed?
- Do I know what to do if the infusion device fails?
- Do I know how and to whom to report an infusion device-related adverse incident?
- Does checking the infusion device indicate it is functioning correctly and to the manufacturer's specification?
- What action should be taken if the infusion device is not functioning properly?
- Is there up-to-date documentation to record regular checking of the infusion device?
- What are the details (name and serial number) of the infusion device being used?
- What is the cleaning and/or decontamination procedure for the infusion device and what are my responsibilities in this process?
- Do I know how to report an adverse incident?
- Do I have access to MHRA device bulletins of relevance to my area of practice and do I read and take note of hazard and safety notices?

(Adapted from Medical Devices Agency 2000, p.10; 2001, pp.8, 9)

The nurse must have knowledge of the solutions, their effects, rate of administration, factors that affect flow of infusion, as well as the complications which could occur when flow is not controlled (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). The nurse should have an understanding of which groups require accurate flow control in order to prevent complications (Box 13.14) and how to select the most appropriate device for accuracy of delivery to best meet the patient's flow control needs (according to age, condition, setting and prescribed therapy) (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Box 13.14 Groups at risk of complications associated with flow control

- Infants and young children.
- The elderly.
- Patients with compromised cardiovascular status.
- Patients with impairment or failure of organs, for example kidneys.
- Patients with major sepsis.
- Patients suffering from shock, whatever the cause.
- Postoperative or post-trauma patients.
- Stressed patients, whose endocrine homoeostatic controls may be affected.
- Patients receiving multiple medications, whose clinical status may change rapidly.

(Adapted from Quinn 2008)

The identification of risks is crucial, for example complex calculations, prescription errors (Dougherty 2002, Weinstein and Plumer 2007) and the risks associated with infusions, such as neonatal risk infusions, high-risk infusions, low-risk infusions and ambulatory infusions (MHRA 2010b, Quinn 2000). The early detection of errors and infusion-related complications, for example over- and underinfusion (Box 13.15), is imperative in order to instigate the appropriate interventions in response to an error or to manage any complications, as serious errors or complications can result in patient death (Dougherty 2002, NPSA 2003, Quinn 2008). Overinfusion accounts for about half of the reported errors involving infusion pumps, with 80% due to user error rather than a fault with the device (Medical Devices Agency 2000). The use of infusion devices, both mechanical and electronic, has increased the level of safety in intravenous therapy. However, it is recommended that a clearly defined structure for management of infusion systems must exist within a hospital (Department of Health,

Social Services and Public Safety 2006, MHRA 2010b, NHS Litigation Authority 2007, NPSA 2004) (Box 13.16).

Box 13.15 Complications of inadequate flow control

Complications associated with overinfusion

- Fluid overload with accompanying electrolyte imbalance.
- Metabolic disturbances during parenteral nutrition, mainly related to serum glucose levels.
- Toxic concentrations of medications, which may result in a shock-like syndrome ('speed shock').
- Air embolism, due to containers running dry before expected.
- An increase in venous complications, for example chemical phlebitis, caused by reduced dilution of irritant substances (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Complications associated with underinfusion

- Dehydration.
- Metabolic disturbances.
- A delayed response to medications or below therapeutic dose.
- Occlusion of a cannula/catheter due to slow flow or cessation of flow.

(Quinn 2008, p.195)

Box 13.16 Criteria for selection of an infusion device

- Rationalization of devices.
- Clinical requirement.
- Education.
- Compatibility with other equipment.
- Disposables.
- Product support.

- Costs.
- Service and maintenance.
- Regulatory issues, for example compliance with European Community Directives (Department of Health, Social Services and Public Safety 2006, Health Care Standards Unit, 2007a, 2007b, MHRA 2010b, NHS Litigation Authority 2007, Quinn 2000).

Strategies need to be developed for replacement of old, obsolete or inappropriate devices (Department of Health, Social Services and Public Safety 2006, Health Care Standards Unit 2007a, 2007b, MHRA 2010b, NHS Litigation Authority 2007, Quinn 2000), planned service maintenance programmes and acceptance testing (MHRA 2010b).

Healthcare professionals are personally accountable for their use of infusion devices and they must therefore ensure they have appropriate training before using the pump (MHRA 2008a, Quinn 2008). Records of training should also be maintained.

Improving infusion device safety

A high frequency of human error is reported in the use of infusion device systems, so competence-based training is advocated for users of these systems (MHRA 2010b, NPSA 2004). By rationalizing the range of infusion device types within organizations and the establishment of a centralized equipment library, the number of patient safety incidents will be reduced (MHRA 2010b, NPSA 2004). Smart infusion pumps reduce pump programming errors by the setting of pre-programmed upper and lower dose limits for specific drugs. The pump will alert the nurse when setting the infusion device if the pump has been set outside the preset dose limits (Keohane *et al.* 2005, Weinstein and Plumer 2007, Wilson and Sullivan 2004). Whatever infusion device is used, the need to monitor the patient and the device remains paramount for patient safety (Quinn 2008, RCN 2010).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Vascular access devices

Administration sets

An administration set is used to administer fluids or medications via an infusion bag into a VAD. The set comprises a number of components (see Figures 13.24, 13.25). At the top is a spike which is inserted into the infusion container via an entry port. This is covered by a sterile plastic lid which is removed just prior to insertion into the container (Downie *et al*. 2003). The plastic tubing continues from the spike to a drip chamber which may contain a filter. This is filled by squeezing it when attached to the fluid and waiting for the chamber to fill halfway, thus allowing the practitioner to observe the drops. Along the tubing is a roller clamp which allows the tubing to be incrementally occluded by pinching the tubing as the clamp is tightened; this is used to adjust the rate of flow (Hadaway 2010). It is usually positioned on the upper third of the administration set but should be repositioned along the set at intervals as the tubing can develop a 'memory' and not regain its shape, making it difficult to regulate (Hadaway 2010). It is opened to allow the fluid along the tubing to remove the air and then closed until attached to the patient's VAD. Finally the Luer-Lok end is covered with a plastic cap to maintain sterility until ready to be attached (Downie *et al*. 2003).

Figure 13.24 Fluid administration set.

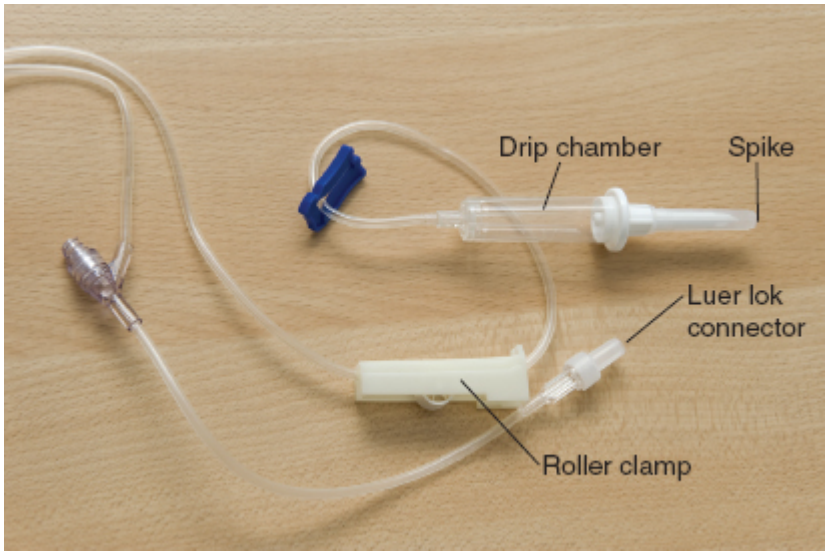


Figure 13.25 Labelled administration set.

There is a variety of sets. A solution set is used to administer crystalloid solutions (it can be used as a primary or secondary set and is also available as a Y-set to allow for dual administration of compatible solutions). Parenteral nutrition is also administered via solution sets. Solution sets may have needle-free injection ports which allow for the administration of bolus injections or connection of secondary infusions. Sets may also have back check valves which allow solutions to flow in

one direction only and are used especially when a secondary set is used (Hadaway 2010).

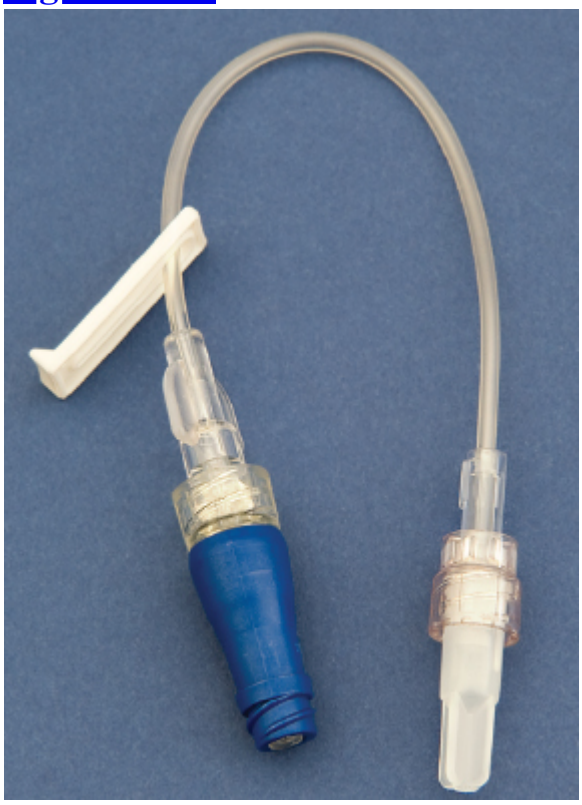
Blood and blood products are administered via a blood administration set (Figure 13.26) which has a special filter. Platelets can be administered via blood sets (check with manufacturer) or specialist platelet administration sets. Some medications such as taxanes must be administered via special taxane administration sets as they have a filter.

Figure 13.26 Blood administration set.

Extension sets

Extension sets are used to add length (Hadaway 2010). The short extension sets tend to have a needle-free connector (Figure 13.27) and are attached directly to the VAD to provide a closed system and other equipment is then attached via the needle-free connector. The long (50–200 cm) extension sets are used to connect from syringe pumps or drivers to a VAD and usually have a back check or antisyphon valve. They can be single, double or triple and may contain a slide or pinch clamp but do not regulate flow (Hadaway 2010).

Figure 13.27 Extension set with needle-free injection cap.



Needle-free injection caps

These are caps that are attached to the end of a VAD or extension set (Figure 13.27) to provide a closed system and remove the need for needles when administering medications, thus removing the risk of needlestick injury. There are various types available and differences include the type of septum (split septum or mechanical valve) (Hadaway 2010). Some provide positive or neutral displacement (to reduce risk of blood reflux and occlusion) and others are coated with antimicrobial or

antibactericidal solutions on external or internal parts to reduce the risk of infection (Hadaway 2010). These require regular changing in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions as well as cleaning before and after each use (MHRA 2007, 2008).

It has been suggested that needle-free systems can increase the risk of bloodstream infections (Danzig *et al.* 1995). However, most studies have found no difference in microbial contamination when comparing conventional and needle-free systems (Brown *et al.* 1997, Luebke *et al.* 1998, Mendelson *et al.* 1998). It appears that an increased risk is only likely where there is lack of compliance with cleaning protocols or changing of equipment (Pratt *et al.* 2007).

Other equipment

Other IV equipment includes stopcocks (used to direct flow) usually three- or four-way devices. These tend to be used in critical care but are discouraged in the general setting due to misuse and contamination issues. If used, they should be capped off (Hadaway 2010).

Infusion devices

An infusion device is designed to accurately deliver measured amounts of fluid or drug via a number of routes (intravenous, subcutaneous or epidural) over a period of time. The infusion device is set at an appropriate rate to achieve the desired therapeutic response and prevent complications (Dougherty 2002, MHRA 2010b, Quinn 2000).

Gravity infusion devices

Gravity infusion devices depend entirely on gravity to deliver the infusion. The system consists of an administration set containing a drip chamber and a roller clamp to control the flow, which is usually measured by counting drops (Pickstone 1999). The indications for use are:

- delivery of fluids without additives

- administration of drugs or fluids where adverse effects are not anticipated and which do not need to be infused with absolute precision
- where the patient's condition does not give cause for concern and no complication is predicted (Quinn 2008).

The flow rate is calculated using a formula that requires the following information: the volume to be infused; the number of hours the infusion is running over; and the drop rate of the administration set (which will differ depending on type of set). The number of drops per millilitre is dependent on the type of administration set used and the viscosity of the infusion fluid. Increased viscosity causes the size of the drop to increase. For example, crystalloid fluid administered via a solution set is delivered at the rate of 20 drops/mL; the rate of packed red cells given via a blood set will be calculated at 15 drops/mL (Quinn 2008).

The rate of administration of a continuous or intermittent infusion may be calculated from the following equation (Pickstone 1999):

$$\frac{\text{Volume to be infused}}{\text{Time in hours}} \times \frac{\text{Drop rate}}{\text{60 minutes}} = \text{Drops per minute}$$

In this equation, 60 is a factor for the conversion of the number of hours to the number of minutes. Factors influencing flow rates are as follows.

Type of fluid

The composition, viscosity and concentration of the fluid affect flow (Pickstone 1999, Quinn 2000, Springhouse 2005, Weinstein and Plumer 2007). Irritating solutions may result in venospasm and impede the flow rate, which may be resolved by the use of a warm pack over the cannula site and the limb (Springhouse 2005, Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Height of the infusion container

Intravenous fluids run by gravity and so any changes in the height of the container will alter the flow rate. The container can be hung up to 1.5 m above the infusion site which will provide a hydrostatic pressure of 110 mmHg (MHRA 2010b, Springhouse 2005). One metre above the

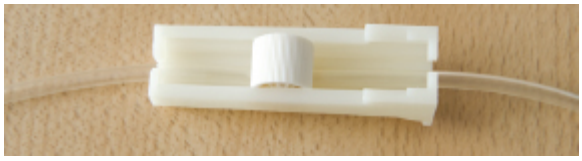
infusion site would create 70 mmHg of pressure, which is adequate to overcome venous pressure (normal range in an adult is 25–80 mmHg) (Pickstone 1999). If it is hung too high then it can create too greater pressure within the vein, leading to infiltration of the medication (MHRA 2006a). Therefore any alterations in the patient's position may alter the flow rate and necessitate a change in the speed of the infusion to maintain the appropriate rate of flow (Hadaway 2010, Weinstein and Plumer 2007). Positioning of the patient will affect flow and patients should be instructed to keep the arm lower than the infusion, if the infusion is reliant on gravity (Quinn 2008).

Administration set

The flow rate of the infusion may be affected in several ways.

- Roller clamps (Figure 13.28) or screw clamps, used to adjust and maintain rates of flow on gravity infusions, vary considerably in their efficiency and accuracy which are often dependent on a number of variables such as patient movement and height of infusion container (Hadaway 2010). The roller clamp should be used as the primary means of occluding the tubing even if there is an anti-free flow device (MHRA 2010b).
- The inner diameter of the lumen and the length of tubing will also affect flow. Microbore sets have a narrow lumen, so flow is restricted to some degree. However, these sets may be used as a safeguard against 'runaway' or bolus infusions by either an integrated antisyphon valve or anti-free flow device (Hadaway 2010, Quinn 2000, Weinstein and Plumer 2007).
- Inclusion of other in-line devices, for example filters, may also affect the flow rate (Hadaway 2010, MHRA 2010b).

Figure 13.28 Roller clamp.



Vascular access device

The flow rate may be affected by any of the following.

- The condition and size of the vein; for example, phlebitis can reduce the lumen size and decrease flow (Quinn 2008, Weinstein and Plumer 2007).
- The gauge of the cannula/catheter (MHRA 2010b, Springhouse 2005, Weinstein and Plumer 2007).
- The position of the device within the vein; that is, whether it is up against the vein wall (Quinn 2008).
- The site of the vascular access device, for example, the flow may be affected by the change in position of a limb, such as a decrease in flow when a patient bends their arm if a cannula is sited over the elbow joint (Springhouse 2005).
- Kinking, pinching or compression of the cannula/catheter or tubing of the administration set may cause variation in the set rate (MHRA 2010b, Springhouse 2005).
- Restricted venous circulation; for example, a blood pressure cuff or the patient lying on the limb increases the risk of occlusion of the device and may result in clot formation (Quinn 2008).

The patient

Patients occasionally adjust the control clamp or other parts of the delivery system, for example, change the height of the container, thereby making flow unreliable. Some pumps have tamper-proof features to minimize the risk of accidental manipulation of the infusion device (Hadaway 2010) or unauthorized changing of infusion device controls (Amoore and Adamson 2003).

Advantages and disadvantages of gravity infusion devices

A gravity flow system is simple to set up. It is low cost and the infusion of air is less likely than with electronic devices (Pickstone 1999). However, the system does require frequent observation and adjustment due to:

- the tubing changing shape over time

- creep or distortion of tubing made of polyvinyl chloride (PVC)
- fluctuations of venous pressure which can affect the flow of the solution
- the roller clamp can be unreliable, leading to inconsistent flow rates.

There can also be variability of drop size and if the roller clamp is inadvertently left open, free flow will occur. Infusion rates with viscous fluids can be reduced (particularly if administered via small cannulas) and there is a limitation on the type of infusion as it is not suitable for arterial infusions: this is because viscosity and arterial flow offer a high resistance to flow which cannot be overcome by gravity (Pickstone 1999, Quinn 2008). If more than one infusion is infusing and one is slower than the other or there is no flow in the second set then there is a risk of back tracking which leads to underinfusion or bolus delivery of medicines. The MHRA recommends that in these systems, the sets should include antireflux valves (MHRA 2007).

Gravity drip rate controllers

A controller is a mechanical device that operates by gravity. These devices use standard solution sets and although they look much like a pump, they have no pumping mechanism. The desired flow rate is set in drops per minute and controlled by battery- or mains-powered occlusion valves (MHRA 2010b).

Advantages and disadvantages of gravity drip rate controllers

Although they can maintain a drip rate within 1%, volumetric accuracy is not guaranteed and many of the disadvantages associated with gravity flow still remain. The main advantages are that they are relatively inexpensive and can usually use standard gravity sets. They also incorporate some audible and visual alarm systems (MHRA 2010b).

Infusion pumps

These devices use pressure to overcome resistance from many causes along the fluid pathway, for example length and bore of tubing or

particulate matter in the tubing (Hadaway 2010). There are a number of general features required in infusion pumps.

Accuracy of delivery

In order to meet requirements for high-risk and neonatal infusions, pumps must be accurate to within ±5% of the set rate when measured over a 60-minute period although some may be as accurate as ±2% (Hadaway 2010, MHRA 2010b). They also have to satisfy short-term, minute-to-minute accuracy requirements, which demand smoothness and consistency of output (MHRA 2010b).

Occlusion response and pressure

Flow will occur if the pressure at the tip of an intravascular device is just fractionally above the pressure in the vein; the pressure does not need to be excessive. In an adult peripheral vein, pressure is approximately 25 mmHg, while in a neonate it measures 5 mmHg (Quinn 2000). Most pumps have a variable pressure setting which allows the user to use their own judgement about the pressure needed to deliver therapy safely. The normal pumping pressure is only slightly lower than the occlusion pressure (Hadaway 2010). Flow is dependent upon pressure divided by resistance. If long extension sets of small internal bore are used, the resistance to flow will increase (Pickstone 1999, Quinn 2000).

If an administration set occludes, the resistance increases and the infusion will not flow into the vein. The longer the occlusion occurs, the greater the pressure and the pump will continue to pump until an occlusion alarm is activated. There are two types of occlusions: upstream, between the pump and the container, and downstream, which is between the pump and the patient. An upstream occlusion alarms when a vacuum is created in the upstream tubing or full reservoir, due to a collapsed or empty plastic fluid container or clamped/kinking tubing. A downstream occlusion is when the pressure required by the pump exceeds a certain pounds per square inch (psi) limit to overcome the pressure created by the occlusion. Downstream occlusion pressures range from 1.5 to 15 psi (Hadaway 2010).

Pumps alarm at ‘occlusion alarm pressure’ and many pumps allow the user to set the pressure within a range (MHRA 2010b). Therefore, the time it takes to alarm depends on the rate of flow: high rates alarm more quickly. When the alarm is activated, a certain amount of stored medication will be present and it is important that what could be a potentially large bolus is not released into the vein. The release of the stored bolus could lead to rupture of the vein or constitute overinfusion, which may be detrimental to the patient, particularly if it is a critical medication (Amoore and Adamson 2003, MHRA 2010b). With a syringe pump, to prevent a bolus being delivered to the patient, the clamp should not be opened as this will release the bolus: the first action is to remove the pressure by opening the syringe plunger clamp and then deal with the occlusion.

While pressure occlusion may not prevent extravasation, it may minimize the risk of resulting complications (Quinn and Upton 2006). Single-unit variable pressure pump settings which allow an earlier alarm alert are used in neonatal and paediatric units (Quinn 2008).

Air in line

Air-in-line detectors are designed to detect only visible or microscopic ‘champagne’ bubbles. They should not create anxiety over small particles of air but alert the nurse to the integrity of the system. Most air bubbles detected are too small to have a harmful effect but the nurse should clarify the cause of any alarms (MHRA 2010b).

Antisyphonage

Uncontrolled flow from a syringe is called siphonage; this is a result of gravity or leakage of air into the syringe and administration set. Siphonage can occur whether or not the syringe is fixed into an infusion device (Quinn 2008). It has been reported that ‘in practice, a 50 mL syringe attached to a length of administration set with an internal diameter of 3 mm has been shown to empty by siphonage in less than 1 minute’ (Pickstone 1999, p.57).

To minimize the risk of siphonage, the following safe practice should be undertaken.

- The syringe (plunger and barrel) should be correctly located and secured.
- Intravenous administration extension sets should always be micro/narrow bore in diameter to increase the resistance to flow; wide-bore extension sets should be avoided.
- Position of the syringe pump should always be the same level as the infusion site (MHRA 2010b).
- Extension sets with an integral antisiphonage/antireflux valve should be used (MHRA 2010b, MHRA 2007, Quinn 2008).

Safety software

Smart pumps contain safety software also known as dose error reduction systems (Hertzel and Sousa 2009). There is an internal drug library, meaning that pumps are programmed to contain information on medications with upper and lower dosing limits (Hadaway 2010). A number of studies have evaluated the effectiveness of using smart pumps to prevent medication errors, showing the success of these systems (Dennison 2007, Fields and Peterson 2005, Larson *et al.* 2005, Rothschild *et al.* 2005).

Volumetric pumps

Volumetric pumps (Figure 13.29) pump fluid from an infusion bag or bottle via an administration set and work by calculating the volume delivered (Quinn 2008). This is achieved when the pump measures the volume displaced in a 'reservoir'. The reservoir is an integral component of the administration set (Hadaway 2010). The mechanism of action may be piston or peristaltic (Hadaway 2010). The indications for use are all large-volume infusions, both venous and arterial.

Figure 13.29 Volumetric pump.

All are mains and battery powered, with the rate selected in millilitres per hour. The accuracy of flow is usually within 5% when measured over a period of time, which is more than adequate for most clinical applications (MHRA 2010b, Pickstone 1999).

Advantages and disadvantages of volumetric pumps

These pumps are able to overcome resistance to flow by increased delivery pressure and do not rely on gravity. This generally makes the performance of pumps predictable and capable of accurate delivery over a wider range of flow rates (MHRA 2010b).

The pumps also incorporate a wide range of features, including air-in-line detectors, variable pressure settings and comprehensive alarms such as end of infusion, keep vein open (KVO, where the pump switches to a low flow rate, for example 5 mL/h, in order to continue flow to prevent occlusion of the device) and low battery. Many have a secondary infusion facility, which allows for intermittent therapy, for example antibiotics. The pump is programmed to switch to a secondary set and,

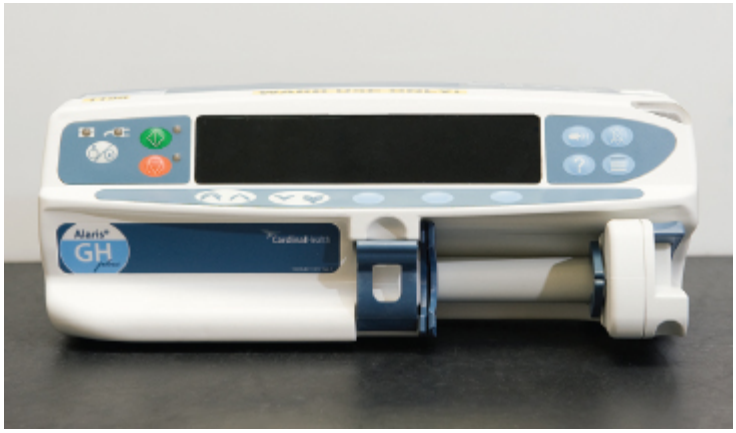
when completed, it reverts back to the primary infusion at the previously set rate. The changing hospital environment has led to an increased demand on volumetric pumps, which in turn has resulted in the development of multichannel and dual-channel infusion pumps. These may consist of two devices with an attached housing or of several infusion channels within a single device (Hadaway 2010).

The disadvantages are that these are usually relatively expensive and often dedicated administration sets are required. The use of the wrong set could result in error even if the pump appears to work. Some are complicated to set up, which can also lead to errors (MHRA 2010b).

Syringe pumps

Syringe pumps (Figure 13.30) are low-volume, high-accuracy devices designed to infuse at low flow rates. The plunger of a syringe containing the substance to be infused is driven forward by the syringe pump at a controlled rate to deliver it to the patient (MHRA 2010b).

Figure 13.30 The Alaris GH syringe pump.



Syringe pumps are useful where small volumes of highly concentrated drugs need to be infused at low flow rates (Quinn 2008). The volume for infusion is limited to the size of the syringe used in the device, which is usually a 60 mL syringe, but most pumps will accept different sizes and brands of syringe.

These devices are calibrated for delivery in millilitres per hour (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Advantages and disadvantages of syringe pumps

Syringe pumps are mains and/or battery powered, are usually easy to operate, and tend to cost less than volumetric pumps. The alarm systems are becoming more comprehensive and include low battery, end of infusion and syringe clamp open alarms. Most of the problems associated with the older models, for example free flow, mechanical backlash (slackness which delays the start-up time of the infusion) and incorrect fitting of the syringe, have been eliminated in the newer models (MHRA 2010b, Quinn 2008). The risk of free flow is minimized by the use of an antisiphonage valve which may be integral to the administration set (Pickstone 1999). Despite the use of an antisiphonage valve, the clamp of the administration set must still be used (MHRA 2010b). Where mechanical backlash is an issue and there is a prime or purge option, this should be used at the start of the infusion to take up the mechanical slack (Amoore *et al.* 2001).

Specific patient preparations

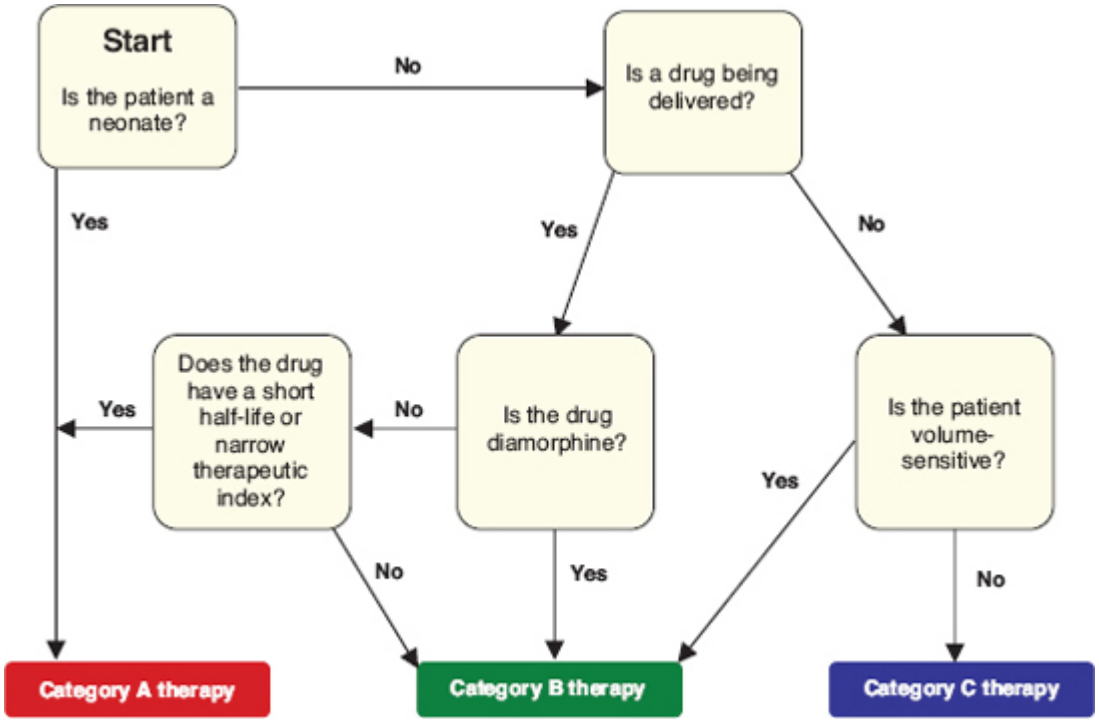
Selecting the appropriate infusion device for the patient

The nurse has a responsibility to determine when and how to use an infusion device to deliver hydration, drugs, transfusions and nutritional support, and how to select the appropriate device (Figure 13.31) in order to manage the needs of the patient. The following factors should be considered when selecting an appropriate infusion delivery system (Quinn 2008).

Figure 13.31 Decision tree for selection of infusion device. MHRA (2010b).

© Crown copyright.

Reproduced under the terms of the Click-use Licence.



- Risk to the patient of:

(a) overinfusion

(b) underinfusion

(c) uneven flow

(d) inadvertent bolus

(e) high-pressure delivery

(f) extravascular infusion.

- Delivery parameters:

(a) infusion rate and volume required

(b) accuracy required (over a long or short period of time)

(c) alarms required

(d) ability to infuse into site chosen (venous, arterial, subcutaneous)

(e) suitability of device for infusing drug (e.g. ability to infuse viscous drugs).

- Environmental features:

(a) ease of operation

(b) frequency of observation and adjustment

(c) type of patient (neonate, child, critically ill)

(d) mobility of patient.

Paediatric considerations

The MHRA classifies infusion devices into categories of infusion risk. Neonatal infusions are the highest risk category; high-risk infusions are typically the infusion of fluids in children where accuracy of the flow rate is essential (MHRA 2010b). Infusion therapy within the paediatric setting requires very specific skills (Frey and Pettit 2010). Competency in calculation of paediatric dosages, maintaining a stringent fluid balance, use of paediatric-specific devices and management of complications are paramount.

The MHRA has made recommendations on the safety and performance of infusion devices in order to enable users to make the appropriate choice of equipment to suit most applications (MHRA 2010b). The classification system is divided into three major categories according to the potential risks involved. These are shown in Table 13.10. A pump suited to the most risky category of therapy (A) can be safely used for the other categories (B and C). A pump suited to category B can be used for B and C, whereas a pump with the lowest specification (C) is suited only to category C therapies (MHRA 2010b) (Figure 13.29). Hospitals are required to label each infusion pump with its category and it is necessary to know the category of the proposed therapy and match it with a pump of the same or better category. A locally produced list of drugs/fluids by their categories will need to be provided to all device users (MHRA 2010b).

Table 13.10 Therapy categories and performance parameters

Therapy category	Therapy description	Patient group	Critical performance parameters
A	Drugs with narrow therapeutic margin	Any	Good long-term accuracy Good short-term accuracy
	Drugs with short half-life	Any	Rapid alarm after occlusion Small occlusion bolus
	Any infusion given to neonates	Neonates	Able to detect very small air embolus (volumetric pumps only) Small flow rate increments Good bolus accuracy Rapid start-up time (syringe pumps only)
B	Drugs other than those with a short half-life	Any except neonates	Good long-term accuracy Alarm after occlusion
	Total parenteral nutrition	Volume sensitive except neonates	Small occlusion bolus
	Fluid maintenance Transfusions		Able to detect small air embolus (volumetric pumps only) Small flow rate increments
C	Diamorphine	Any except neonates	Bolus accuracy
	Total parenteral nutrition Fluid maintenance Transfusions	Any except volume sensitive or neonates	Long-term accuracy Alarm after occlusion Small occlusion bolus Able to detect air embolus (volumetric pumps only) Incremental flow rates

MHRA (2010b).© Crown copyright. Reproduced under the terms of the Click-Use Licence.

Procedure guideline 13.20 Medication: continuous infusion of intravenous drugs

This procedure may be carried out by the infusion of drugs from a bag, bottle or burette.

Essential equipment

- Clinically clean receiver or tray containing the prepared drug to be administered
- Patient's prescription chart
- Recording chart or book as required by law or hospital policy
- Gloves
- Protective clothing as required by hospital policy for specific drugs
- Container of appropriate intravenous infusion fluid

- 2% chlorhexidine swab
- Drug additive label

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2008b, C; NMC 2008c, C).
2 Inspect the infusion in progress.	To check it is the correct infusion being administered at the correct rate and that the contents are due to be delivered on time in order for the next prepared infusion bag to be connected. To check whether the patient is experiencing any discomfort at the site of insertion, which might indicate the peripheral device needs to be resited (NPSA 2007d, C).
3 Before administering any prescribed drug, check that it is due and has not already been given.	To protect the patient from harm (NPSA 2007d, C).
4 Before administering any prescribed drug, consult the patient's prescription chart and ascertain the following: **(a)** Drug **(b)** Dose **(c)** Date and time of administration **(d)** Route and method of administration **(e)** Diluent as appropriate **(f)** Validity of prescription **(g)** Signature of doctor **(h)** The prescription is legible.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate diluent and by the correct route. To protect the patient from harm (NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2007d, C). To comply with NMC (2008a) *Standards for Medicines Management*.
5 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and assemble the necessary equipment.	To minimize the risk of infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Prepare the drug for injection as described in Procedure guidelines 13.12–13.15	To ensure the drug is prepared (NPSA 2007d, C).
7 Check the name, strength and volume of intravenous fluid against the prescription chart.	To ensure that the correct type and quantity of fluid are administered (NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2007d, C).
8 Check the expiry date of the	To prevent an ineffective or toxic compound being administered to

fluid.	the patient (NPSA 2007d, C).
9 Check that the packaging is intact and inspect the container and contents in a good light for cracks, punctures, air bubbles.	To check that no contamination of the infusion container has occurred (NPSA 2007d, C).
10 Inspect the fluid for discoloration, haziness and crystalline or particulate matter.	To prevent any toxic or foreign matter being infused into the patient (NPSA 2007d, C).
11 Check the identity and amount of drug to be added. Consider: **(a)** Compatibility of fluid and additive **(b)** Stability of mixture over the prescription time **(c)** Any special directions for dilution, for example pH, optimum concentration **(d)** Sensitivity to external factors such as light **(e)** Any anticipated allergic reaction. If any doubts exist about the listed points, consult the pharmacist or appropriate reference works.	To minimize any risk of error. To ensure safe and effective administration of the drug. To enable anticipation of toxicities and the nursing implications of these (NPSA 2007d, C).
12 Any additions must be made immediately before use.	To prevent any possible microbial growth or degradation (NPSA 2007d, C).
13 Wash hands thoroughly using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
14 Place infusion bag on flat surface.	To prevent puncturing the side of the infusion bag when making additions (NPSA 2007d, C).
15 Remove any seal present.	To expose the injection site on the container. E
Procedure	
16 Clean the site with the swab and allow it to dry.	To reduce the risk of contamination (NPSA 2007d, C).
17 Inject the drug using a new sterile needle into the bag, bottle or burette. A 23 or 25 G needle should be used. If the addition is made into a burette at the bedside:	To minimize the risk of contamination. To enable resealing of the latex or rubber injection site (NPSA 2007d, C).

(a) Avoid contamination of the needle and inlet port	To minimize the risk of contamination (NPSA 2007d, C).
(b) Check that the correct quantity of fluid is in the chamber	To ensure the correct dilution (NPSA 2007d, C).
(c) Switch the infusion off briefly (d) Add the drug.	To ensure a bolus injection is not given (NPSA 2007d, C).
18 Invert the container a number of times, especially if adding to a flexible infusion bag.	To ensure adequate mixing of the drug (NPSA 2007d, C).
19 Check again for haziness, discoloration and particles. This can occur even if the mixture is theoretically compatible, thus making vigilance essential.	To detect any incompatibility or degradation (NPSA 2007d, C).
20 Complete the drug additive label and fix it on the bag, bottle or burette.	To identify which drug has been added, when and by whom (NPSA 2007d, C).
21 Place the container in a clean receptacle. Wash hands and proceed to the patient.	To minimize the risk of contamination (DH 2007, C).
22 Check the identity of the patient against the prescription chart and infusion bag.	To minimize the risk of error and ensure the correct infusion is administered to the correct patient (NPSA 2007d, C).
23 Check that the contents of the previous container have been fully delivered.	To ensure that the preceding prescription has been administered (NPSA 2007d, C).
24 Switch off the infusion. Apply gloves. Place the new infusion bag on a flat surface and then disconnect empty infusion bag.	To ensure that the administration set spike will not puncture the side wall of the infusion bag (Finlay 2008, E; NPSA 2007d, C).
25 Push the spike in fully without touching it and hang the new infusion bag on the infusion stand. Insert tubing into an infusion pump where appropriate.	To reduce the risk of contamination (DH 2007, C). To ensure accuracy of delivery (Quinn 2008, E).
26 For gravity infusion, restart the infusion and adjust the rate of flow as prescribed. If via an infusion pump, start the pump and set rate.	To ensure that the infusion will be delivered at the correct rate over the correct period of time (NPSA 2007d, C).
27 If the addition is made into a burette, the infusion can be	To ensure that the infusion will be delivered correctly (NPSA 2007d, C).

restarted immediately following mixing and recording and the infusion rate adjusted accordingly.	
28 Ask the patient whether any abnormal sensations, and so on, are experienced.	To ascertain whether there are any problems that may require nursing care and refer to medical staff where appropriate. E.
Postprocedure	
29 Discard waste, making sure that it is placed in the correct containers, for example sharps into a designated receptacle.	To ensure safe disposal and avoid injury to staff. To prevent reuse of equipment (DH 2005, C; MHRA 2004, C).
30 Complete the patient's recording chart and other hospital and/or legally required documents.	To maintain accurate records. To provide a point of reference in the event of any queries. To prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2009, C).

Procedure guideline 13.21 Medication: intermittent infusion of intravenous drugs

Essential equipment

- Patient's prescription chart
- Recording chart or book as required by law or hospital policy
- Protective clothing as required by hospital policy for specific drugs
- Container of appropropriate intravenous infusion fluid
- Drug additive label
- Intravenous administration set
- Intravenous infusion stand
- Clean dressing trolley
- Clinically clean receiver or tray containing the prepared drug to be administered
- Sterile needles and syringes
- 10 mL for injection of a compatible flush solution, for example 0.9% sodium chloride or 5% dextrose
- Flushing solution to maintain patency plus sterile injection cap
- 2% chlorhexidine swab
- Gloves

- Alcohol-based hand wash solution or rub
- Sterile dressing pack
- Hypoallergenic tape
- Sharps bin

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2006c, C; NMC 2008b, C).
2 Before administering any prescribed drug, check that it is due and has not been given already. Check that the information contained in the prescription chart is complete, correct and legible.	To protect the patient from harm (NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2007d, C).
3 Before administering any prescribed drug, consult the patient's prescription chart and ascertain the following: ■ Drug ■ Dose ■ Date and time of administration ■ Route and method of administration ■ Diluent as appropriate ■ Validity of prescription ■ Signature of prescriber.	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate diluent and by the correct route. To protect the patient from harm. To comply with NMC (2008a) *Standards for Medicines Management* (NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2007d, C).
4 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To prevent contamination of medication and equipment (DH 2007, C).
5 Prepare the intravenous infusion and additive as described in Procedure guidelines 13.12–13.15	To ensure the drug is prepared correctly (NPSA 2007d, C).
6 Prime the intravenous administration set with infusion fluid mixture and hang it on the infusion stand.	To ensure removal of air from set and check that tubing is patent. To prepare for administration (NPSA 2007d, C).
7 Draw up 10 mL of compatible flush solution for injection using an aseptic technique.	To ensure sufficient flushing solution is available. E
8 Draw up solution (as per hospital policy) to be used for maintaining patency, for example 0.9% sodium chloride.	To prepare for administration. E
9 Place the syringes in a clinically clean receiver or tray on the bottom shelf of the dressing trolley.	To ensure top shelf is used for sterile dressing pack in order to minimize the risk of contamination. E
10 Collect the other equipment and place it on the bottom shelf of the dressing trolley.	To ensure all equipment is available to commence procedure. E
11 Place a sterile dressing pack on top of the trolley.	To minimize risk of contamination. E
12 Check that all necessary equipment is present.	To prevent delays and interruption of the

	procedure. E
13 Wash hands thoroughly using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub before leaving the clinical room.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
14 Proceed to the patient. Check patient's identity against prescription chart and prepared drugs.	To minimize the risk of error and ensure the correct drug is given to the correct patient (NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2007d, C).
Procedure	
15 Open the sterile dressing pack.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
16 Open the 2% chlorhexidine swab packet and empty it onto the pack.	To ensure the correct cleaning swab is available (DH 2007, E).
17 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or with a bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To minimize the risk of cross-infection. (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
18 If peripheral device is *in situ* remove the patient's bandage and dressing.	To observe the insertion site (Dougherty 2008, E).
19 Inspect the insertion site of the device.	To detect any signs of inflammation, infiltration, and so on. If present, take appropriate action (DH 2003c, C).
20 Wash and dry hands.	To minimize the risk of contamination (DH 2007, C).
21 Put on gloves.	To protect against contamination with hazardous substances, for example cytotoxic drugs (NPSA 2007d, C).
22 Place a sterile towel under the patient's arm.	To create a sterile area on which to work. E
23 Clean the needle-free cap with 2% chlorhexidine swab.	To minimize the risk of contamination and maintain a closed system (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
24 Inject gently 10 mL of 0.9% sodium chloride for injection.	To confirm the patency of the device. E
25 Check that no resistance is met, no pain or discomfort is felt by the patient, no swelling is evident, no leakage occurs around the device and there is a good backflow of blood on aspiration.	To ensure the device is patent (Dougherty 2008, E).
26 Connect the infusion to the device.	To commence treatment. E
27 Open the roller clamp or insert the tubing into an infusion pump and start pump.	To check the infusion is flowing freely. E
28 Check the insertion site and ask the patient if they are comfortable.	To confirm that the vein can accommodate the extra fluid flow and that the patient experiences no pain. E
29 Adjust the flow rate as prescribed.	To ensure that the correct speed of administration is established (NPSA 2007d, C).
30 Tape the administration set in a way that places no strain on the device, which could in turn damage the vein.	To reduce the risk of mechanical phlebitis or infiltration (Dougherty 2008, E).

31 If a peripheral device is *in situ*, cover it with a sterile topical swab and tape it in place.	To maintain asepsis (Dougherty 2008, E).
32 Remove gloves.	To ensure disposal. E
33 If the infusion is to be completed within 30 minutes, bandaging is unnecessary and the patient may be instructed to keep the arm resting on the sterile towel. Otherwise reapply bandage.	To reduce the risk of dislodging the device. E
34 The equipment must be cleared away and new equipment only prepared when required at the end of the infusion.	To ensure that the equipment used is sterile prior to use. E
35 Monitor flow rate and device site frequently.	To ensure the flow rate is correct and the patient is comfortable, and to check for signs of infiltration (NPSA 2007d, C).
36 When the infusion is complete, wash hands using bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and recheck that all the equipment required is present.	To maintain asepsis and ensure that the procedure runs smoothly (DH 2007, C; Finlay 2008, E).
37 Stop the infusion when all the fluid has been delivered.	To ensure that all the prescribed mixture has been delivered and prevent air infusing into the patient (NPSA 2007d, C).
38 Put on non-sterile gloves.	To protect against contamination with hazardous substances. E
39 Disconnect the infusion set and flush the device with 10 mL of 0.9% sodium chloride or other compatible solution for injection. (A 'minibag' may be used to flush the drug through the tubing but the cost implications of this as well as the risk to patients on restricted intake should be considered before this is adopted routinely.)	To flush any remaining irritating solution away from the cannula. E
40 Attach a new sterile injection cap if necessary.	To maintain a closed system (Hart 2008, E).
41 Flushing must follow.	To maintain the patency of the device (Dougherty 2008, E).
42 Clean the injection site of the cap with 2% chlorhexidine swab.	To minimize the risk of contamination (Hart 2008, E).
43 Administer flushing solution using the push- pause technique and ending with positive pressure.	To maintain the patency of the device and if needle was used, to enable reseal of the injection site (Dougherty 2008, E).
44 If a peripheral device is *in situ*, cover the insertion site and cannula with a new sterile low-linting swab. Tape it in place. Apply a bandage.	To minimize the risk of contamination of the insertion site. To reduce the risk of dislodging the cannula. E
45 Remove gloves.	To ensure disposal. E
46 Assist the patient into a comfortable position.	To ensure the patient is comfortable. E
Postprocedure	
47 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any

	queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2009, C).
48 Discard waste, placing it in the correct containers, for example sharps into a designated container.	To ensure safe disposal and avoid injury to staff (DH 2005, C; MHRA 2004, C; NHS Employers 2007, C).

Procedure guideline 13.22 Medication: injection (bolus or push) of intravenous drugs

Essential equipment

- Clinically clean receiver or tray containing the prepared drug(s) to be administered
- Patient's prescription chart
- Protective clothing as required by hospital policy or specific drugs
- Clean dressing trolley
- Sterile needles and syringes
- 0.9% sodium chloride, 20 mL for injection, or compatible solution
- Flushing solution, in accordance with hospital policy
- 2% chlorhexidine swab
- Sterile dressing pack
- Hypoallergenic tape
- Sharps container

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (Griffith and Jordan 2003, E; NMC 2006c, C; NMC 2008b, C).
2 Before administering any prescribed drug, check that it is due and has not been given already. Check that the information contained in the prescription chart is complete, correct and legible.	To protect the patient from harm (NMC 2008b, C).
3 Before administering any prescribed drug, consult the patient's prescription sheet and	To ensure that the patient is given the correct drug in the prescribed dose using the appropriate

ascertain the following: **(a)** Drug **(b)** Dose **(c)** Date and time of administration **(d)** Route and method of administration **(e)** Diluent as appropriate **(f)** Validity of prescription **(g)** Signature of prescriber **(h)** The prescription is legible.	diluent and by the correct route (NMC 2008a, C; NPSA 2007d, C). To protect the patient from harm. To comply with NMC (2008a) *Standards for Medicines Management.*
Procedure	
4 Select the required medication and check the expiry date.	Treatment with medication that is outside the expiry date is dangerous. Drugs deteriorate with storage. The expiry date indicates when a particular drug is no longer pharmacologically efficacious (NPSA 2007d, C).
5 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or bactericidal alcohol handrub, and assemble necessary equipment.	To minimize the risk of infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Prepare the drug for injection as Procedure guidelines 13.12–13.15.	To prepare the drug correctly. E
7 Prepare a 20 mL syringe of 0.9% sodium chloride (or compatible solution) for injection, as described, using aseptic technique.	To use for flushing between each drug (NPSA 2007d, C).
8 Draw up the flushing solution, as indicated by local hospital policy.	To prepare for administration. E
9 Place syringes in a clinically clean receptacle on the bottom shelf of the dressing trolley, along with the receptacle containing any drug(s) to be administered.	To ensure top shelf is used for sterile dressing pack in order to minimize the risk of contamination. E
10 Collect the other equipment and place it on the bottom of the trolley.	To ensure all equipment is available to commence procedure. E
11 Place a sterile dressing pack on top of the trolley.	To minimize the risk of contamination. E
12 Check that all necessary equipment is present.	To prevent delays and interruption of the procedure. E
13 Wash hands thoroughly.	To minimize the risk of infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
14 Proceed to the patient and check identity with prescription chart and prepared drug.	To minimize the risk of error and ensure the correct patient (NPSA 2007d, C).
15 Open the sterile dressing pack and 2% chlorhexidine swab and empty onto pack.	To gain access to equipment and to ensure there is a cleaning swab available (DH 2007, C).
16 Wash hands with bactericidal soap and water or with bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To reduce the risk of infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
17 If a peripheral device is *in situ,* remove the bandage and dressing (if appropriate).	To observe the insertion site. E

18 Inspect the insertion site of the device.	To detect any signs of inflammation, infiltration, and so on. If present, take appropriate action (see Problem-solving table 13.2) (DH 2003c, C).
19 Observe the infusion, if in progress.	To confirm that it is infusing as desired (NPSA 2007d, C).
20 Check whether the infusion fluid and the drugs are compatible. If not, change the infusion fluid to 0.9% sodium chloride to flush between the drugs if necesary.	To prevent drug interaction. Some manufacturers may recommend that the drug is given into the injection site of a rapidly running infusion (NPSA 2007d, C). A compatible fluid must be used to remove the medication and prevent precipitation or drug incompatibility if medications mix in the tubing (Whittington 2008, E).
21 Wash hands or clean them with an alcohol handrub.	To minimize the risk of infection (DH 2007, C; Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
22 Place a sterile towel under the patient's arm.	To create a sterile field. E
23 Clean the injection site with a 2% chlorhexidine swab and allow to dry.	To reduce the number of pathogens introduced by the needle at the time of the insertion. To ensure complete disinfection has occurred (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
24 Switch off the infusion.	To prevent excessive pressure within the vein. To prevent contact with an incompatible infusion fluid. To allow the nurse to concentrate on the site of insertion and injection (NPSA 2007d, C).
25 If a peripheral device is *in situ,* gently inject 0.9% sodium chloride. This may not be necessary if the patient has a 0.9% sodium chloride infusion in progress.	To confirm patency of the vein. To prevent contact with an incompatible infusion solution (NPSA 2007d, C).
26 Open the roller clamp of the administration set fully. Inject the drug at a speed sufficient to slow but not stop the infusion and inject the drug smoothly in the direction of flow at the specified rate.	To prevent backflow of drug up the tubing. To prevent excessive pressure within the vein. To prevent speed shock (NPSA 2007d, C).
27 Ensure used needles and syringes are disposed of immediately into appropriate sharps container (or are returned to tray). Do not leave any sharps on opened sterile pack.	To reduce the risk of needlestick injury and to prevent contamination of pack (RCN 2010, C).
28 Observe the insertion site of the device throughout.	To detect any complications at an early stage, for example extravasation or local allergic reaction (Dougherty 2008, E).
29 Blood return 'flashback' must be checked frequently throughout the injection (that is, every 3–5 mL) but other signs and symptoms must be taken into consideration.	To confirm that the device is correctly placed and that the vein remains patent (Weinstein and Plumer 2007, E). Flashback alone is not an indicator that the vein is patent (Dougherty 2008, E).
30 Consult the patient during the injection about any discomfort, and so on.	To detect any complications at an early stage, and ensure patient comfort (Dougherty 2008, E).
31 If more than one drug is to be administered, flush with 0.9% sodium chloride between	To prevent drug interactions (NPSA 2007d, C).

administrations by restarting the infusion or changing syringes.	
32 At the end of the injection, flush with 0.9% sodium chloride by restarting the infusion or attaching a syringe containing 0.9% sodium chloride.	To flush any remaining irritant solution away from the device site (NPSA 2007d, C).
33 Observe the insertion site of the cannula carefully.	To detect any complications at an early stage. Extra pressure within the vein caused by both fluid flow and injection of the drug may cause rupture of the vessel (Dougherty 2008, E).
34 After the final flush of 0.9% sodium chloride, adjust the infusion rate as prescribed or open the fluid path of the tap/stopcock or administer the flushing solution using pulsatile flush and ending with positive pressure.	To continue delivery of therapy. To maintain the patency of the cannula (Finlay 2008, E).
35 If a peripheral device is *in situ,* cover the insertion site with new sterile low-linting swab and tape it in place.	To minimize the risk of contamination of the insertion site. E
36 Apply a bandage.	To reduce the risk of dislodging the cannula. E
37 Assist the patient into a comfortable position.	To ensure the patient is comfortable. E
Postprocedure	
38 Record the administration on appropriate charts.	To maintain accurate records, provide a point of reference in the event of any queries and prevent any duplication of treatment (NMC 2009, C).
39 Dispose of used syringes with needles, unsheathed, directly into a sharps container during procedure or place back on to plastic tray and then dispose of in a sharps container as soon as possible. *Do not* disconnect needle from syringe prior to disposal. Other waste should be placed into the appropriate plastic bags.	To avoid needlestick injury (MHRA 2004, C; NHS Employers 2007, C).

Problem-solving table 13.2 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guidelines 13.20–13.22)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
Infusion slows or stops (part 1)	Change in position of the following:		
	(a) Patient	Check the height of the fluid container if the patient is active and receiving an infusion using gravity flow	Adjust the height of the container accordingly. The infusion should not hang higher than 1 m above the patient as the increased height will result in increased pressure and possible rupture of the vessel/device (Quinn 2008)
	(b) Limb	Prevent by avoiding inserting peripheral devices at joints of limbs	Move the arm or hand until infusion starts again. Secure the device, then bandage or splint the limb again carefully in the desired position. Take care not to cause damage to the limb
		Instruct the patient on the amount of movement permitted. Continued movement could result in mechanical phlebitis (Lamb and Dougherty 2008)	
	(c) Administration set	Tape the administration set so that it cannot become kinked or occluded	Check for kinks and/or compression if the patient is active or restless and correct accordingly
	(d) Cannula	Secure the cannula firmly to prevent movement. It may come into contact with the vein wall or a valve. Infusions sited in small veins are prone to this problem	Remove the bandage and dressing and manoeuvre the peripheral device gently, without pulling it out of the vein, until the infusion starts again. Secure adequately
Infusion slows or stops (part 2)	Technical problems:		
	(a) Negative pressure prevents flow of fluid	Ensure that the container is vented using an air inlet	Vent if necessary, using venting needle
	(b) Empty container	Check fluid levels regularly	Replace the fluid container before it runs dry
	(c) Venous spasm due to chemical irritation or cold fluids/drugs	Dilute drugs as recommended. Remove solutions from the refrigerator a short time before use	Apply a warm compress to soothe and dilate the vein, increase the blood flow and dilute the infusion mixture

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
	(d) Injury to the vein	Detect any injury early as it is likely to progress and cause more serious conditions (see below)	Stop the infusion and resite the cannula
	(e) Occlusion of the device due to fibrin formation	Maintain a continuous, regular fluid flow or ensure that patency is maintained by flushing. Instruct the patient to keep arm below the level of the heart if ambulant and attached to a gravity flow infusion	**If peripheral device**: remove extension set/injection cap and attempt to flush the cannula gently using a 10 mL syringe of 0.9% sodium chloride. If resistance is met, stop and request a resiting of the peripheral device **If CVAD**: remove injection cap and attempt to flush the cannula gently using a 10 mL syringe of 0.9% sodium chloride. If resistance is met, attempt to instil fibrinolytic agent such as urokinase
	(f) The cannula has become displaced either completely or partially, that is, fluid or drug has leaked into the surrounding tissues (infiltration). If the drugs were vesicant in nature this would then be defined as extravasation	Secure the cannula and tape the administration set to prevent pulling and dislodgement. Instruct the patient on the amount of movement permitted with the limb that has the device *in situ* (Fabian 2000)	Confirm that infiltration of drugs has/has not occurred by: (i) inspecting the site for leakage, swelling, and so on (ii) testing the temperature of the skin: it will be cooler if infiltration has occurred (iii) comparing the size of the limb with the opposite limb Once infiltration has been confirmed, stop the infusion and request a resiting of the device. If the infusion is allowed to progress, discomfort and tissue damage will result. Apply cold or warm compresses to provide symptomatic relief, whichever provides the most comfort for the patient. Reassure the patient by explaining what is happening. Document in care plan and monitor site (Lamb and Dougherty 2008) If extravasation, follow hospital policy and procedure
Infusion pump alarming			
(a) Air detected	Air bubbles in administration set	Ensure all air is removed from all equipment prior to use	Remove all air from the administration set and restart the infusion

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Action
(b) Tube misload	Administration set has been incorrectly loaded	Ensure set is loaded correctly	Check that the set is loaded correctly and reload if necessary
(c) Upstream occlusion	Closed clamp, obstruction or kink in the administration set is preventing fluid flow	Ensure the container/fluid bag has been adequately pierced by the administration spike	Inspect the administration set and restart the infusion
		Ensure that the tubing is taped to prevent kinking	If tubing is kinked, reposition, tape and restart infusion
		Ensure the regulating (roller) clamp is open	Check the administration set and open the clamp; restart the infusion
(d) Downstream occlusion	Phlebitis/infiltration or extravasation	Observe site regularly for signs of swelling, pain and erythema	Remove peripheral device, provide symptomatic relief where appropriate. Initiate extravasation procedure. Resite as appropriate
	Closed distal clamp	Ensure clamps are open	Locate distal occlusion, restart infusion
(e) KVO alert (keep vein open)	The volume infused is complete and the device is infusing at the KVO rate	Program in a new volume as appropriate	Do not turn the device off. Allow KVO mode to run to maintain patency of device Prepare new infusion or discontinue as appropriate
Infusion devices malfunctioning (electrical/mechanical)	Not charging at mains	Ensure that the device is kept plugged in where appropriate	Change device and remove device from use until fully charged. Send to works department to check plug
	Low battery	Check lead is pushed in adequately	
	Batteries keep requiring replacement	Do not use small rechargeable batteries in ambulatory devices	
	Technical fault	Ensure all infusion devices are serviced regularly	Remove infusion device from use and contact biomedical engineering department or relevant personnel
	Device soiled inside mechanism	Maintain equipment and keep clean and free from contamination	Remove administration set, wipe pump, reload. Do not use alcohol-based solutions on internal mechanisms
Unstable infusion device	Mounted on old, poorly maintained stands	Ensure that stands are maintained and kept clean. Replace old stands	Remove device from stand. Remove stand and send to works department for repair
	Mounted on incorrect stands	Ensure the correct stands are used	Check the stand and change to appropriate stand
	Equipment not balanced on stand	Ensure that all equipment is balanced around the stand	Remove devices and attach to two stands if necessary. Balance equipment

Postprocedural considerations

Ongoing care

Monitoring of the infusion while in progress includes monitoring of the patient's condition and response to therapy, the VAD site, the rate and volume infused. It may also include the battery life and occlusion pressure. The frequency of monitoring is often based on the type of therapy and patient condition, for example 15 minutes after setting up

infusion, at 1 hour and then 4 hourly. This information must be documented on the patient's fluid balance chart or in their notes. The type and make of pump along with the serial number should also be documented (useful if any errors occur) (MHRA 2008a).

Complications

Allergic reaction

This is a complication associated with any medication administration but because it happens more rapidly when IV medication is administered, it is often considered as more of an issue.

An allergic reaction is a response to a medication or solution to which the patient is sensitive and may be immediate or delayed (Lamb and Dougherty 2008, Perucca 2010). Clinical features may start with chills and fever, with or without urticaria, erythema and itching. The patient could then go onto experience shortness of breath with or without wheezing, then angioneurotic oedema and in severe cases anaphylactic shock (Lamb and Dougherty 2008). Prevention is by assessment and recording of patient allergies (drug, food and products) and application of allergy identification wristbands (NPSA 2008, Perucca 2010). In the event of an allergic reaction, the infusion should be stopped immediately, the tubing and container changed and the vein kept patent. The doctor should be notified and any interventions undertaken (Lamb and Dougherty 2008).

Circulatory overload (isotonic fluid expansion)

A critical and common complication of intravenous therapy is circulatory overload, which is *isotonic fluid expansion*. It is caused by infusion of fluids of the same tonicity as plasma into the vascular circulation, for example sodium chloride 0.9%. As isotonic solutions do not affect osmolarity, water does not flow from the extracellular to the intracellular compartment. The result is that the extracellular compartment expands in proportion to the fluid infused (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). Because of the electrolyte concentration, no extra water is

available to enable the kidneys selectively to excrete and restore the balance. It can also occur due to:

- infusing excessive amounts of soduim chloride solutions
- large volume infusions running over multiple days
- rapid fluid infusion into patients with compromised cardiac, liver or renal status (Lamb and Dougherty 2008, Macklin and Chernecky 2004).

Prevention includes thorough assessment of the patient before commencing IV therapy, close monitoring of patient; maintaining infusion rates as prescribed and use of infusion devices where required (Lamb and Dougherty 2008). If circulatory overload is detected early, place the patient in an upright position (Macklin and Chernecky 2004). Treatment consists of withholding all fluids until excess water and electrolytes have been eliminated by the body and/or administration of diuretics to promote rapid diuresis (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). However, careful monitoring should continue to prevent isotonic contraction occurring (where there is loss of fluid and electrolytes isotonic to the extracellular fluid such as blood and large volumes of fluid from diarrhoea and vomiting; Weinstein and Plumer 2007). If fluid administration is allowed to continue unchecked, it can result in left-sided heart failure, circulatory collapse and cardiac arrest (Dougherty 2002).

Dehydration

Dehydration may be categorized as either hypertonic or hypotonic contraction and may be caused by underinfusion. Hypertonic contraction occurs when water is lost without corresponding loss of salts (Weinstein and Plumer 2007) and occurs in patients unable to take sufficient fluids (elderly, unconscious or incontinent patients) or who have excess insensible water loss via skin and lungs or as a result of certain drugs in excess. Hypotonic contraction occurs when fluids containing more salt than water are lost and this results in a decrease in osmolarity of the extracellular compartment (Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

It is important that the nurse recognizes the symptoms of overinfusion or underinfusion and certain factors should be considered when

monitoring patients (Weinstein and Plumer 2007) (see Table 13.11).

Table 13.1

Type of fluid/ electrolyte imbalance	Patients at risk	Signs and symptoms	Treatment
Circulatory overload (isotonic fluid expansion)	Early postoperative or post-trauma patients, older people, those with impaired renal and cardiac function and children	Weight gain A relative increase in fluid intake compared to output A high bounding pulse pressure, indicating a high cardiac output Raised central venous pressure measurements Peripheral hand vein emptying time longer than normal (peripheral veins will usually empty in 3–5 seconds when the hand is elevated and will fill in the same length of time when the hand is lowered to a dependent position) Peripheral oedema Hoarseness Dyspnoea, cyanosis and coughing due to pulmonary oedema and neck vein engorgement	If detected early: withholding all fluids until excess water and electrolytes have been eliminated by the body and/or administration of diuretics to promote rapid diuresis
Dehydration (hypertonic contraction or hypotonic contraction)	*Hypertonic:* elderly, unconscious or incontinent patients *Hypotonic:* infants are at greatest risk, especially if they have diarrhoea. Loss of salt from various sources: excess diuresis, fistula drainage, burns, vomiting or sweating	*Hyper/hypotonic contraction* Weight loss *Hypercontraction* Thirst (although this may be absent in the elderly) Irritability and restlessness and possible confusion Diminished skin turgor Dry mouth and furred tongue *Hypocontraction* Negative fluid balance Weak, thready, rapid pulse rate Increased 'hand filling time' Increased skin turgor	Replacement of fluids and electrolytes

Speed shock

Speed shock is a systemic reaction that occurs when a substance foreign to the body is rapidly introduced into the circulation (Perucca 2010, Weinstein and Plumer 2007). This complication can manifest following administration of intravenous bolus injections or when large volumes of

fluid are given too rapidly (Perucca 2010). This should not be confused with pulmonary oedema, which relates to the volume of fluid infused into the patient. Rapid, uncontrolled administration of drugs will result in toxic concentrations reaching vital organs (Lamb and Dougherty 2008). Toxicity may be manifested by an exaggeration of the usual pharmacological actions of the drug or by signs and symptoms specific for that drug or class of drugs. The most extreme toxic response which can occur if a drug is given at a dose or rate exceeding that recommended is termed the lethal response.

Signs of speed shock may include:

- flushed face
- headache and dizziness
- congestion of the chest
- tachycardia and fall in blood pressure
- syncope
- shock
- cardiovascular collapse (Perucca 2010, Weinstein and Plumer 2007).

Prevention of speed shock involves the nurse having knowledge of the drug and the recommended rate of administration. When commencing an infusion using gravity flow, check that the solution is flowing freely before adjusting the rate and monitored regularly (Perucca 2010). Movement of the patient or the device within the vessel can cause the infusion to flow more or less freely after a few minutes of setting the rate (Weinstein and Plumer 2007). For high-risk medications an electronic flow control device is recommended (RCN 2010). Although most pumps have an anti-free flow mechanism, always close the roller clamp prior to removing the set from the pump (MHRA 2006a, Pickstone 1999). If speed shock occurs, the infusion must be slowed down or discontinued. Medical staff should be notified immediately and the patient's condition treated as clinically indicated (Perucca 2010).

Websites

MHRA. How we regulate medicines section: www.mhra.gov.uk

WHO. Medicines: safety of medicines – adverse drug reactions. Factsheet No.293:

www.medicines.org.uk/EMC/medicine/21309/SPC/Kentura+oxybutynin+transdermal+patch

References

Aldridge, M. (2010) Miscellaneous routes of medication administration, in *Medicines Management* (eds A. Jevon *et al.*). Wiley Blackwell, Oxford, pp. 239–261.

Alexander, M., Fawcett, J. and Runciman P. (2007) *Nursing Practice: Hospital and Home*, 3rd edn. Churchill Livingstone, London.

Amoore, J. and Adamson, L. (2003) Infusion devices: characteristics, limitations and risk management. *Nursing Standard*, **17** (28), 45–52.

Amoore, J., Dewar, D., Ingram, P. and Lowe, D. (2001) Syringe pumps and start up time: ensuring safe practice. *Nursing Standard*, **15** (17), 43–45.

Andrew, S. (2006) Pharmacology, in *Ophthalmic Care* (ed. J. Marsden). Whurr, Chichester, pp. 42–65.

Applebe, G.E. and Wingfield, J. (2005) *Dale and Appelbe's Pharmacy Law and Ethics*, 8th edn Pharmaceutical Press, London.

Armitage, G. (2008) Double checking medicines: defence against error or contributory factor? *Journal of Evaluation in Clinical Practice*, **14** (4), 513–517.

Armitage, G. and Knapman, H. (2003) Adverse events in drug administration: a literature review. *Journal of Nursing Management*, **11**, 130–140.

Arndt, M. (1994) Research and practice: how drug mistakes affect self-esteem. *Nursing Times*, **90** (15), 27–31.

Audit Commission (2001) *A Spoonful of Sugar: Medicines Management in NHS Hospitals*. Audit Commission, London.

Aulton, M.E. (ed.) (1988) *Pharmaceutics. The Science of Dosage Form Design*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh.

Baxter, K. (ed.) (2008) *Stockley's Drug Interactions*, 8th edn. Pharmaceutical Press, London.

Beijnen, J. H. and Schellens, J. H.M. (2004) Drug interactions in oncology. *Lancet Oncology*, **5**, 489–496.

BNF (2011) *British National Formulary*. BMJ Group and RPS Publishing, London.

Bridge, J., Hemingway, S. and Murphy, K. (2005) Implications of non medical prescribing of controlled drugs. *Nursing Times*, **101** (44), 32–33.

British Pharmacopoeia (2007) *British Pharmacopoeia*. Stationery Office, London.

Brock, N. and Pohl, J. (1983) The development of mesna for regional detoxification. *Cancer Treat Review*, **10** (suppl A), 33–43.

Brown, J., Moss, H. and Elliot, T. (1997) The potential for catheter microbial contamination from a needleless connector. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **36** (3), 181–189.

Care Quality Commission (2009) *The safer management of controlled drugs. Annual report 2008*. Care Quality Commission, London.

Chernecky, C., Butler, S. W., Graham, P. and Infortuna, H. (2002) *Drug Calculations and Drug Administration*. W.B Saunders, Philadelphia.

Chung, J. W.Y., Ng, W.M.Y. and Wong, T. K. S. (2002) An experimental study on the use of manual pressure to reduce pain in intramuscular injection. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **11**, 457–461.

Cookson, S, Ihrig, M., O'Mara, E.M. *et al.* (1998) Increased blood stream infection rates in surgical patients associated with variation from recommended use and care following implementation of a needleless device. *Infection Control and Hospital Epidemiology*, **19** (1), 23–27.

Dann, T. C. (1969) Routine skin preparation before injection: an unnecessary procedure. *Lancet*, **ii**, 96–97.

Danzig, L.E., Short, L., Collins, K. *et al.* (1995) Bloodstream infections associated with a needleless intravenous infusion system in patients receiving home infusion therapy. *JAMA*, **273** (23), 1862–1864.

Deeks, P. and Byatt, K. (2000) Are patients who self-administer their medicines in hospital more satisfied with their care? *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **31** (2), 395–400.

Dennison, R.D. (2007) A medication safety education program to reduce the risk of harm caused by medication errors. *Journal of Continuing Education in Nursing*, **38** (4), 176–184.

Department of Health, Social Services and Public Safety (2006) *Controls Assurance Standards: Medical Devices and Equipment Management*. www.dhsspsni.gov.uk/medical_devices_06_pdf.

DH (1989) *Report of the Advisory Group on Nurse Prescribing (Crown One)*. HMSO, London.

DH (1998) *Review of Prescribing, Supply and Administration of Medicines. A Report on the Supply and Administration of Medicines under Group Protocols (Crown Two)*. HMSO, London.

DH (1999) *Review of Prescribing, Supply and Administration of Medicines. Final Report (Crown Three)*. HMSO, London.

DH (2000) *Patient Group Directions*. HSC 2000/026. Health and Safety Commission, London.

DH (2003 a) *Supplementary Prescribing by Nurses and Pharmacists within the NHS in England: a Guide for Implementation*. National Health Service, London.

DH (2003b) *Building a Safer NHS for Patients: Improving Medication Safety*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2003 c) *Winning Ways: Working Together to Reduce Healthcare-Associated Infection in England*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2004) *Extending Independent Nurse Prescribing within the NHS in England: a Guide to Implementation*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2005) *Hazardous Waste (England) Regulations*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2007) Safer Management of Controlled Drugs. *A Guide to Good Practice in Secondary Care (England)*. Department of Health, London.

DH (2009) *Changes to Medicines Legislation to Enable Mixing of Medicines Prior to Administration in Clinical Practice*. Department of

Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk.

DHSS (1976) *Health Services Development, Addition of Drugs to Intravenous Fluids, HC(76)9 (Breckenridge Report)*. HMSO, London.

Dickerson, R. J. (1992) 10 tips for easing the pain of intramuscular injections. *Nursing*, **92**, 55.

Dirckx, J. H. (2001) *Stedman's Concise Medical Dictionary for the Health Professions*, 4th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Dougherty, L. (2002) Delivery of intravenous therapy. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (16), 45–56.

Dougherty, L. (2008) Obtaining peripheral access, in *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice*, 2 nd edn (eds L. Dougherty and J. Lamb). Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Downie, G., MacKenzie, J. and Williams, A. (eds) (2003) Medicine management, in *Pharmacology and Medicines Management for Nurses*, 3rd edn. Churchill Livingstone, London, pp. 49–91.

Elkin, M. K., Perry, A.G. and Potter, P. A. (eds) (2007) *Nursing Interventions and Clincial Skills*, 4th edn. Mosby Elsevier, St Louis, MO.

Fabian, B. (2000) IV complications: Infiltration. *Journal of Intravenous Nursing*, **23** (4), 229–231.

Fair, R. and Proctor, B. (2007) *Administering Medicines through Enteral Feeding Tubes*, 2 nd edn. Royal Hospitals, Belfast.

Fields, M. and Peterson, J. (2005) Intravenous medication safety systems averts high risk medication errors and provides actionable data. *Nursing Administration Quarterly*, **29** (1) 78–87.

Finlay, T. (2008) Safe administration of IV therapy, in *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice*, 2nd edn (eds L. Dougherty and J. Lamb). Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Forrester, J., Dick, A.D., McMenamin, P.G. and Lee, W.R. (2002) *The Eye: Basic Science in Practice*, 2nd edn. Saunders, Edinburgh.

Fox, N. (2000) Armed and dangerous. *Nursing Times*, **96** (44), 24–26.

Fraise, A.P. and Bradley, T. (eds) (2009) *Ayliffe's Control of Healthcare-associated Infection: A Practical Handbook*, 5th edn. Hodder Arnold, London.

Frey, A.M. and Pettit, J. (2010) Infusion therapy in children, in *Infusion Nursing: An Evidence-Based Approach*, 3rd edn (eds M. Alexander, A. Corrigan, L. Gorski, J. Hankins and R. Perucca). Saunders Elsevier, St Louis, MO, pp. 550–568.

Gladstone, J. (1995) Drug administration errors: a study into the factors underlying the occurrence and reporting of drug errors in a district general hospital. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **22** (4), 628–637.

Greenway, K. (2004) Using the ventrogluteal site for intramuscular injection. *Nursing Standard*, **18** (25) 39–42.

Griffith, R. and Jordan, S. (2003) Administration of medicines part 1: the law and nursing. Nursing *Standard*, **18** (2), 47–53.

Hadaway, L.C. (2010) Anatomy and physiology related to infusion therapy, in *Infusion Nursing: An Evidence-Based Approach*, 3rd edn (eds M. Alexander, A. Corrigan, L. Gorski, J. Hankins and R. Perucca). Saunders Elsevier, St Louis, MO, pp. 139–177.

Hand, K. and Barber, N. (2000) Nurses' attitudes and beliefs about medication errors in a UK hospital. *International Journal of Pharmacy Practice*, **8**, 128–134.

Hardman, J.G. Limbird, L.E., Molinoff, P.B. et al. (eds) (1996) *Goodman and Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, 9th edn. McGraw-Hill, New Jersey.

Harkin, H. (2008) Guidance document in ear care. www.earcarecentre.com/protocols.htm.

Hart, S. (2008) Infection control in IV therapy, in *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice*, 2nd edn (eds L. Dougherty and J. Lamb). Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Haw, C., Stubbs, J. and Dickens, G. (2007) An observational study of medication administration: errors in old age psychiatric inpatients. *International Journal of Quality in Health Care*, **19** (4), 210–216.

Healthcare Commission (2007) The Best Medicine. *The Management of Medicines in Acute and Specialist Trusts*. Healthcare Commission, London.

Health Care Standards Unit (2007a) *First Domain – Safety (Info Bank) C4b*. www.hcsu.org.uk/index.php?option=com_content&task=view&id=197&Itemid=109.

Health Care Standards Unit (2007b) *Updated signpost C4b*. www.hcsu.org.uk/index.php?option=com_content&task=view&id=309&Itemid=111.

Hertzel, C. and Sousa, V.D. (2009) The use of smart pumps for preventing medication errors. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, **32** (5) 257–267.

Hillery, A., Lloyd, A. and Swarbrick, J. (eds) (2001) *Drug Delivery and Targeting for Pharmacists and Pharmaceutical Scientists*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Hilton, S. (1990) An audit of inhaler technique among patients of 34general practitioners. *British Journal of General Practice*, **40** (341), 505–506.

HMSO (1968) *Medicines Act*. HMSO, London.

HMSO (1971) *Misuse of Drugs Act*. HMSO, London.

Ho, C.Y.W., Dean, B.S. and Barber, N. (1997) When do medication administration errors happen to hospital in-patients? *International Journal of Pharmacy Practice*, **5**, 91–96.

Howard, R.L, Avery, A., Slavenburg, S. *et al.* (2007) Which drugs cause preventable admissions to hospital? A systematic review. *British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, **63** (2), 136–147.

Hutton, M. (1998) Numeracy skills for IV calculations. *Nursing Standard*, **12** (43), 49–56.

Hyde, L. (2008) Legal and professional aspects of IV therapy, in *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice*, 2nd edn (eds L. Dougherty and J. Lamb). Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Jarman, H., Jacobs, E. and Zielinski, V. (2002) Medication study supports registered nurses' competence for single checking.

International Journal of Nursing Practice, **8**, 330–335.

Jordan, S., Griffiths, H. and Griffith, R. (2003) Administration of medicines part 2: pharmacology. *Nursing Standard*, **18** (3), 45–54.

Kelly, J. and Wright, D. (2009) Administering medication to adult patients with dysphagia. *Nursing Standard*, **23**, 29, 61–68.

Keohane, C.A., Hayes, J., Saniuk, C. *et al.* (2005) Intravenous medication safety and smart infusion systems. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, **28** (5), 321–328.

King, L. (2003) Subcutaneous insulin injection technique. *Nursing Standard*, **17** (34), 45–52.

Kirkwood, B. (2006) The cornea, in *Ophthalmic Care* (ed. J. Marsden). Whurr, Chichester, pp. 339–69.

Koda-Kimble, M.A., Young, L.Y., Kradjan, W. A. and Guglielmo, B.J. (eds) (2005) *Applied Therapeutics: The Clinical Use of Drugs*, 8th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Koivistov, V.A. and Felig, P. (1978) Is skin preparation necessary before insulin injection? *Lancet*, **i**, 1072–1073.

Lamb, J. and Dougherty, L. (2008) Local and systemic complications of intravenous therapy, in *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice*, 2nd edn (eds L. Dougherty and J. Lamb). Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Larson, G.Y., Parker, H., Cash, J. *et al.* (2005) Standard drug concentrations and smart pump technology reduce continuous medication infusion errors in pediatric patients. Pediatrics, **116** (1), 21–25.

Latter, S. (2008) Safety and quality in independent prescribing: an evidence review. *Nurse Prescribing*, **6** (2), 59–65.

Latter, S., Maben, J., Myall, M. *et al.* (2005) *An Evaluation of Extended Formulary Independent Nurse Prescribing: Executive Summary of Final Report*. University of Southampton, Southampton.

Laverty, D., Mallett, J. and Mulholland, J. (1997) Protocols and guidelines for managing wounds. *Professional Nurse*, **13** (2), 79–80.

Lenz, C.L. (1983) Make your needle selection right to the point. *Nursing*, **13** (2), 50–51.

Luebke, M.A, Arduino, M., Duda, D. *et al.* (1998) Comparison of the microbial barrier properties of a needleless and conventional needle based intravenous access system. *American Journal of Infection Control*, **26**, 437–441.

Luker, K. and Wolfson, D. (1999) Introduction, in *Medicines Management for Clinical Nurses* (eds K. Luker and D. Wolfson). Blackwell Science, Oxford.

Macklin, D. and Chernecky, C.C. (2004) *IV Therapy*. Saunders, St Louis, MO.

Malkin, B. (2008) Are techniques used for intramuscular injection based on research evidence? *Nursing Times*, **104** (50/51), 48–51.

Mallett, J., Faithfull, S., Guerrero, D. *et al.* (1997) Nurse prescribing by protocol. *Nursing Times*, **93** (8), 50–52.

Marieb, E.N. and Hoehn, K. (2007) *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 7th edn. Pearson Benjamin Cummings, San Francisco.

Marriott, J.L. and Nation, R.L. (2002) Splitting tablets. *Australian Prescriber*, **25** (6), 133–135.

Martin, P.J. (1994) Professional updating through open learning as a method of reducing errors in the administration of medicines. *Journal of Nursing Management*, **2** (5), 209–212.

Mathijssen, R.H.J., Verweij, J., de Bruijn, P. *et al.* (2002) Effects of St. John's wort on irinotecan metabolism. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, **94**, 1247–1249.

McClelland, B. (2007) *Handbook of Transfusion Medicine*, 3rd edn. HMSO, London.

McHale, J. (2002) Extended prescribing: the legal implications. *Nursing Times*, **98** (32), 36–38.

Medical Devices Agency (2000) *Equipped to Care*. Medical Devices Agency, London. www.mhra.gov.uk/home/idcplg?IdcService=SS_GET_PAGE&useSecondary=true&ssDocName=CON007425&ssTargetNodeId=575.

Medicines Partnership Programme (2007) *A Competency Framework For Shared Decision-Making With Patients: Achieving Concordance*

For Taking Medicines. NPC plus and Medicines Partnership Programme, Keele.

Mendelson, M.H., Short, L., Schechter, C. *et al.* (1998) Study of a needleless intermittent intravenous access system for peripheral infusions: analysis of staff, patient and institutional outcomes. *Infection Control and Hospital Epidemiology*, **19** (6), 401–406.

MHRA (2001) *Recommendations on the control and monitoring of storage and transportation of medicinal products*. Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, London.

MHRA (2004) *Reducing Needlestick and Sharps Injuries*. Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, London.

MHRA (2005) *Consultation on Options for the Future of Independent Prescribing by Extended Formulary Nurse Prescribers*. Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, London.

MHRA (2006a) *Free-flow situations*. www.mhra.gov.uk/home/idcplg?IdcService=GET_FILE&dID=20057&noSaveAs=0&Rendition=WEB.

MHRA (2006b) *Reporting adverse incidents and disseminating medical device alerts*. DB2006(01). www.mhra.gov.uk/home/idcplg?IdcService=SS_GET_PAGE&useSecondary=true&ssDocName=CON007304&ssTargetNodeId=572.

MHRA (2007) *Medical Device Alert/2007/089. Intravenous (IV) infusion lines all brands*. Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, London.

MHRA (2008a) *Devices in practice: a guide for professionals in health and social care*. Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, London.

MHRA (2008b) *Medical Device Alert 2008/016. Needle-free intravascular connectors. All brands*. Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, London.

MHRA (2009) *Drug Safety Update: Volume 2, Issue 9*. Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, London.

MHRA (2010a) *Good Pharmacovigilance Practice*. Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, London.

MHRA (2010b) *Device Bulletin Infusion Systems*. DB 2003 (02) v2.0November. Medicine and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, London.

Mirakian, R., Ewan, P.W., Durham, S.R. *et al.* (2009) BSACI guidelines for the management of drug allergy. *Clinical and Experimental Allergy*, **39**, 43–61.

Murray, W. and Glenister, H. (2001) How to use medical devices safely. *Nursing Times*, **97** (43), 36–38.

NHSCLU (2009) www.corelearningunit.nhs.uk.

NHS Connecting for Health (2009) Electronic prescribing in hospitals: challenges and lessons learned. www2.lse.ac.uk/LSEHealthAndSocialCare/LSEHealth/News/ePrescribing%20Report.pdf

NHS Employers (2007) *The Management of Health, Safety and Welfare Issues for NHS Staff*. NHS Confederation (Employers), London.

NHS Litigation Authority (2007) *NHSLA Risk Management Standards for Acute Trusts*. www.nhsla.com/NR/rdonlyres/F9DA791B-AF6D-4198-AC49-EE9B81A91B17/0/NHSLARiskManagementStandardsforAcuteTrusts200708website.doc.

Nisbet, A. (2006) Intramuscular gluteal injections in the increasingly obese population: retrospective study. *BMJ*, **332**, 637–638.

NMC (2001a) *Press statement: covert administration of medicines can be justified*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2001b) *UKCC Position Statement on the Covert Administration of Medicines – Disguising Medicine in Food and Drink*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2001c) *Circular 25/2002*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2006a) *Medicines Management A–Z Advice Sheet*. Nursing and Midwifery Council. www.nmc-uk.org/aFrameDisplay.aspx?DocumentID=1801.

NMC (2006b) *Standards of Proficiency for Nurse and Midwife Prescribers*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2008a) *Standards for Medicines Management*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2008b) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2008c) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent/.

NMC (2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NPC (2001) *Maintaining Competency in Prescribing: an Outline Framework to Help Nurse Prescribers*. National Health Service, London.

NPC (2003a) *Supplementary Prescribing. A Resource to Help Healthcare Professionals to Understand the Framework and Opportunities*. National Health Service, London.

NPC (2003b) *Maintaining Competency in Prescribing: an Outline Framework to Help Nurse Supplementary Prescribers*. National Health Service, London.

NPC (2007) *Self Administration of Medicines: 5Minute Guide Series*. National Prescribing Centre, Keele. www.npci.org.uk/medicines_management/safety/selfadmin/library/library_fivemin_guides.php.

NPC (2009) *Patient Group Directions: A Practical Guide and Framework of Competencies for All Professionals Using Patient Group Directions*. National Prescribing Centre, London.

NPSA (2003) *Risk Analysis of Infusion Devices*. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

NPSA (2004) *Safer Practice Notice 01: Infusion Devices*. National Patient Safety Agency, London. www.npsa.nhs.uk/Patientsafety/alerts-and-directives/notices/infusion-device.

NPSA (2005) *Wristbands for Hospital Inpatients Improve Safety (Safer Practice Notice 11)*. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

NPSA (2006) *Ensuring Safer Practice with High Dose Ampoules of Morphine and Diamorphine, Alert No. 2006/12*. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

NPSA (2007a) *Safety in Doses: Medication Safety Incidents in the NHS, PSO/4*. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

NPSA (2007b) *Standardising Wristbands Improves Patient Safety*. Safer Practice Notice 0507. NPSA, London.

NPSA (2007c) Patient Safety Alert 19. Promoting Safer Measurement and Administration of Liquid Medicines via Oral and other Enteral Routes. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

NPSA (2007d) *Promoting Safer Use of Injectable Medicines. Alert No. 2007/20*. National Patient Safety Agency, London. www.npsa.nhs.uk/Patientsafety/alerts-and-directives/alerts/injectable-medicines.

NPSA (2008a) *Rapid Response Report 05: Reducing Dosing Errors with Opioid Medicines*. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

NPSA (2008b) *Rapid Response Report 11: Reducing risk of overdose with midazolam injection in adults*. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

NPSA/NICE (2007) Patient Safety Guidance 001. *Technical patient safety solutions for medicines reconciliation on admission of adults to hospital*. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

NPSA/NRLS (2009) *Safety in Doses. Improving the Use of Medicines in the NHS*. National Patient Safety Agency, London.

Peragallo-Dittko, V. (1997) Rethinking subcutaneous injection technique. *American Journal of Nursing*, **97** (5), 71–72.

Perry, A.G. (2007) Administration of injections, in *Nursing Interventions and Clinical Skills*, 4th edn (eds M.K. Elkin, A.G. Perry and P.A. Potter). Mosby Elsevier, St Louis, MO, pp. 416–446.

Perucca, R. (2010) Peripheral venous access devices, in *Infusion Nursing: An Evidence-Based Approach*, 3rd edn (eds M. Alexander, A.

Corrigan, L. Gorski, J. Hankins and R. Perucca). Saunders Elsevier, St Louis, MO, pp. 456–479.

Pickstone, M. (1999) *A Pocketbook for Safer IV Therapy*. Medical Technology and Risk Series. Scitech Educational, Kent.

Pickstone, M. (2000) Using the technology triangle to assess the safety of technology-controlled clinical procedures in critical care. *International Journal of Intensive Care*, **7** (2), 90–96.

Pope, B.B. (2002) How to administer subcutaneous and intramuscular injection. *Nursing*, **32** (1), 50–51.

Pratt, R.J., Pellowe, C., Wilson, J. *et al.* (2007) Epic 2: national evidence-based guidelines for preventing healthcare-associated infections in NHS hospitals in England. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **65** (1) (Suppl), S1–S12.

Quinn, C. (2000) Infusion devices: risks, functions and management. *Nursing Standard*, **14** (26), 35–41.

Quinn, C. (2008) Intravenous flow control and infusion devices, in *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice*, 2nd edn (eds L. Dougherty and J. Lamb). Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, pp. 197–224.

Quinn, C. and Upton, D. (2006) A review of claims against the NHS relating to IV therapy. *Health Care Risk Report*, **12** (14), 15–18.

Rawlins, M.D. and Thompson, J.W. (1977) Pathogenesis of adverse drug reactions, in *Textbook of Adverse Drug Reactions* (ed. D.M. Davies). Oxford University Press, Oxford.

RCN (2010) *Standards for Infusion Therapy*, 3rd edn. Royal College of Nursing, London.

Reckmann, M.H., Westbrook, J.I. and Koh, Y. *et al.* (2009) Does computerised provider order entry reduce prescribing errors for hospital inpatients? *A systematic review. JAMA*, **10**, 1197.

Regnard, C. and Hockley, J. (2004) *A Guide to Symptom Relief in Palliative Care*, 5th edn. Radcliffe Medical Press.

Riedl, M.A. and Casillas, A.M. (2003) Adverse drug reactions: types and treatment options. *American Family Physician*, **68**, 1781–1790.

Rodger, M.A. and King, L. (2000) Drawing up and administering intramuscular injection: a review of the literature. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **31** (3), 574–582.

Rosenthal, M.M. (2003) Check the wristband. www.webmm.rhq.gov/case.aspx?/caseID=22+searchStr=wristband.

Rothschild, J.M., Keohane, C.A., Cook, E. F. *et al.* (2005) A controlled trial of smart infusion pumps to improve medication safety in critically ill patients. *Critical Care Medicine*, **33**, 533–540.

RPSGB (2005) *The Safe and Secure Handling of Medicines.A Team Approach*. Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain, London.

RPSGB (2007a) *Developing and Implementing Standard Operating Procedures for Dispensing*. Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain, London.

RPSGB (2007b) Legal and Advisory Service Fact Sheet Six. *Monitored Dosage Systems and Compliance Aids*. Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain, London.

RPSGB (2009) Medicines, Ethics and Practice. *A Guide for Pharmacists and Pharmacy Technicians, No. 33*. Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain, London.

Savage, P. and Tripp, K. (2008) A study of independent double checking processes for chemotherapy administration via an ambulatory infusion pump. 15th International Conference on Cancer Nursing, Singapore 17–21 August 2008. Abstract Q116.

Schulmeister, L. (2008) Patient misidentification. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, **12** (3), 495–498.

Sexton, J. (1999) The nurse's role in medicines administration – legal and procedural framework, in *Medicines Management for Clinical Nurses* (eds K. Luker and D. Wolfson). Blackwell Science, Oxford.

Shepherd, M. (2002a) Medicines 2. Administration of medicines. *Nursing Times*, **98** (16), 45–48.

Shepherd, M. (2002b) Medicines 3. Managing medicines. *Nursing Times*, **98** (17), 43–46.

Shuttleworth, A. (2005) Are nurses ready to take on the BNF? *Nursing Times*, **101** (48), 29–30.

Smyth, J. (ed.) (2006) *The NEWT guidelines for administration of medication to patients with enteral feeding tubes and swallowing difficulties*. North East Wales NHS Trust, Wrexham.

Snyder J. (2007) Administration of nonparenteral medications, in *Nursing Interventions and Clincial Skills*, 4th edn (eds M.K. Elkin, A.G. Perry and P.A. Potter) Mosby Elsevier, St Louis, MO, pp. 379–415.

Springhouse (2005) *Intravenous Therapy Made Incredibly Easy*, 3rd edn (ed.L. Bruck). Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Stollery, R., Shaw, M. and Lee, A. (2005) *Ophthalmic Nursing*, 3rd edn. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Taxis, K. and Barber, N. (2003) Ethnographic study on the incidence and severity of intravenous drug errors. *BMJ*, **326**, 684–687.

Taxis, K., Dean, B. and Barber, N. (1999) Hospital drug distribution systems in the UK and Germany: a study of medication errors. *Pharmacy World and Science*, **21** (1), 25–31.

Taylor, N.J. (2000) Fascination with phlebitis. *Vascular Access Devices*, **5** (3), 24–28.

Torrance, C. (1989) Intramuscular injection, part 1and 2. *Surgical Nurse, 2 (5), 6–10*; **2** (6), 24–7.

Tortora, G.J. and Derrickson, B. (2009) *Principles of Anatomy and Physiology*, 12th edn. John Wiley, Hoboken, New Jersey.

Treloar, A., Beats, B. and Philpot, M. (2000) A pill in the sandwich: covert medication in food and drink. *Journal of the Royal Society of Medicine*, **93**, 408–411.

Trounce, J. and Gould, D. (2000) *Clinical Pharmacology for Nurses*, 16th edn. Churchill Livingstone, London.

Turner, M.S. and Hankins, J. (2010) Pharmacology, in *Infusion Nursing: An Evidence-Based Approach*, 3rd edn (eds M. Alexander, A. Corrigan, L. Gorski, J. Hankins and R. Perucca). Saunders Elsevier, St Louis, MO.

Twycross, R., Wilcock, A., Dean, M. and Kennedy, B. (2007) *Palliative Care Formulary*, 3rd edn. www.palliativedrugs.com.

UCL Institute of Child Health (2008) *Information Sheet on G6PD Deficiency*, 2nd edn. UCL Institute of Child Health, London.

Walker, R. and Edwards, C. (2003) *Clinical Pharmacy and Therapeutics*, 3rd edn. Churchill Livingstone, London.

Watt, S. (2003) Safe administration of medines to children: part 2. *Paediatric Nurse*, **15** (5), 40–44.

Weeks, K.W., Lyne, P. and Torrance, C. (2000) Written drug dosage errors made by students: the threat to clinical effectiveness and the need for a new approach. *Clinical Effectiveness in Nursing*, **4**, 20–29.

Weeks, K.W., Lyne, P., Mosely, L. and Torrance, C. (2001) The strive for clinical effectiveness in medication dosage calculation problem solving skills: the role of constructivist learning theory in the desing of a computer based 'authentic world' learning environment. *Clinical Effectiveness in Nursing*, **5**, 18–25.

Weinstein, S. and Plumer, A. (2007) *Plumer's Principles and Practices of Intravenous Therapy*, 8th edn. Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Whittington, Z. (2008) Pharmacological aspects of IV therapy, in *Intravenous Therapy in Nursing Practice*, 2nd edn (eds L. Dougherty and J. Lamb). Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

WHO (2004) Immunization in Practice. *Module 6: Holding an Immunization Session*. World Health Organization, Geneva.

WHO (2008) Medicines: safety of medicines – adverse drug reactions. *Factsheet No*. **293**. www.medicines.org.uk/EMC/medicine/21309/SPC/Kentura+oxybutynin+transdermmal+patch.

Williams, C. and Lefever, J. (2000) Reducing the risk of user error with infusion pumps. *Professional Nurse*, **15** (6), 382–384.

Wilson, K. and Sullivan, M. (2004) Preventing medication errors with smart infusion technology. *American Journal of Health System Pharmacists*, **61** (2), 177–183.

Workman, B. (1999) Safe injection techniques. *Nursing Standard*, **13** (39), 47–52.

Wright, A., Hecker, J. and Lewis, G. (1985) Use of transdermal glyceryl trinitrate to reduce failure of intravenous infusion due to phlebitis and extravasation. *Lancet*, **ii**, 1148–1150.

Multiple choice questions

1 What are the professional responsibilities of the qualified nurse in medicines management?

a Making sure that the group of patients that they are caring for receive their medications on time. If they are not competent to administer intravenous medications, they should ask a competent nursing colleague to do so on their behalf.

b The safe handling and administration of all medicines to patients in their care. This includes making sure that patients understand the medicines they are taking, the reason they are taking them and the likely side effects.

c Making sure they know the names, actions, doses and side effects of all the medications used in their area of clinical practice.

d To liaise closely with pharmacy so that their knowledge is kept up to date.

2 What are the key reasons for administering medications to patients?

a To provide relief from specific symptoms, for example pain, and managing side effects as well as therapeutic purposes.

b As part of the process of diagnosing their illness, to prevent an illness, disease or side effect, to offer relief from symptoms or to treat a disease.

c As part of the treatment of long-term diseases, for example heart failure, and the prevention of diseases such as asthma.

d To treat acute illness, for example antibiotic therapy for a chest infection, and side effects such as nausea.

3 What are the most common types of medication error?

a Nurses being interrupted when completing their drug rounds, different drugs being packaged similarly and stored in the same place and calculation errors.

b Unsafe handling and poor aseptic technique.

c Doctors not prescribing correctly and poor communication with the multidisciplinary team.

d Administration of the wrong drug, in the wrong amount to the wrong patient, via the wrong route.

4 A patient has collapsed with an anaphylactic reaction. What symptoms would you expect to see?

a The patient will have a low blood pressure (hypotensive) and will have a fast heart rate (tachycardia) usually associated with skin and mucosal changes.

b The patient will have a high blood pressure (hypertensive) and will have a fast heart rate (tachycardia).

c The patient will quickly find breathing very difficult because of compromise to their airway or circulation. This is accompanied by skin and mucosal changes.

d The patient will experience a sense of impending doom, hyperventilate and be itchy all over.

5 What are the potential benefits of self-administration of medicines by patients?

a Nurses have more time for other aspects of patient care and it therefore reduces length of stay.

b It gives patients more control and allows them to take the medications on time, as well as giving them the opportunity to address any concerns with their medication before they are discharged home.

c Reduces the risk of medication errors, because patients are in charge of their own medication.

d Creates more space in the treatment room, so there are fewer medication errors.

6 On checking the stock balance in the controlled drug record book as a newly qualified nurse, you and a colleague notice a discrepancy. What would you do?

a Check the cupboard, record book and order book. If the missing drugs aren't found, contact pharmacy to resolve the issue. You will also complete an incident form.

b Document the discrepancy on an incident form and contact the senior pharmacist on duty.

c Check the cupboard, record book and order book. If the missing drugs aren't found the police need to be informed.

d Check the cupboard, record book and order book and inform the registered nurse or person in charge of the clinical area. If the missing drugs are not found then inform the most senior nurse on duty. You will also complete an incident form.

7 A patient in your care is on regular oral morphine sulphate. As a qualified nurse, what legal checks do you need to carry out every time you administer it, which are in addition to those you would check for every other drug you administer?

a Check to see if the patient has become tolerant to the medication so it is no longer effective as analgesia.

b Check to see whether the patient has become addicted.

c Check the stock of oral morphine sulphate in the CD cupboard with another registered nurse and record this in the control drug book; together, check the correct prescription and the identity of the patient.

d Check the stock of oral morphine sulphate in the CD cupboard with another registered nurse and record this in the control drug book; then ask the patient to prove their identity to you.

8 As a newly qualified nurse, what would you do if a patient vomits when taking or immediately after taking tablets?

a Comfort the patient, check to see if they have vomited the tablets, and ask the doctor to prescribe something different as these obviously don't agree with the patient.

b Check to see if the patient has vomited the tablets and, if so, document this on the prescription chart. If possible, the drugs may be given again after the administration of antiemetics or when the patient no longer feels nauseous. It may be necessary to discuss an alternative route of administration with the doctor.

c In the future administer antiemetics prior to administration of all tablets.

d Discuss with pharmacy the availability of medication in a liquid form or hide the tablets in food to take the taste away.

9 Why would the intravenous route be used for the administration of medications?

a It is a useful form of medication for patients who refuse to take tablets because they don't want to comply with treatment.

b It is cost effective because there is less waste as patients forget to take oral medication.

c The intravenous route reduces the risk of infection because the drugs are made in a sterile environment and kept in aseptic conditions.

d The intravenous route provides an immediate therapeutic effect and gives better control of the rate of administration as a more precise dose can be calculated so treatment can be more reliable.

10 You have been asked to give Mrs Patel her mid-day oral metronidazole. You have never met her before. What do you need to check on the drug chart before you administer it?

a Her name and address, the date of the prescription and dose.

b Her name, date of birth, the ward, consultant, the dose and route, and that it is due at 12.00.

c Her name, date of birth, hospital number, if she has any known allergies, the prescription for metronidazole: dose, route, time, date and that it is signed by the doctor, and when it was last given.

d Her name and address, date of birth, name of ward and consultant, if she has any known allergies specifically to penicillin, that prescription is for metronidazole: dose, route, time, date and that it is signed by the doctor, and when it was last given and who gave it so you can check with them how she reacted.

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com **and select the Student Edition tab.**

Chapter 14

Perioperative Care

Overview

This chapter relates to the care provided to the patient in the three stages of surgery:

- preoperative care
- intraoperative care
- postoperative care.

Preoperative care

Definition

Preoperative care is the physical and psychological care provided to the patient to help them prepare to undergo surgery.

Related theory

Venous thromboembolism (VTE) is a condition where a blood clot is formed inside a vein. This is normally due to stasis of blood within the vessel, trauma to the vessel or an increase in the ability of the blood to clot. This most frequently happens in the deep veins of the leg which is termed a deep vein thrombosis or DVT. If one of these clots dislodges from the leg and travel to the lung via the bloodstream, it is called a pulmonary embolus or PE. This is a potentially fatal complaint (NICE 2010) (Box 14.1).

Box 14.1 Signs of DVT/PE

- Complaints of calf or thigh pain.
- Erythema, warmth, tenderness and abnormal swelling of the calf or thigh in the affected limb.
- Numbness or tingling of the feet.
- Dyspnoea, chest pain or signs of shock.
- Pain in the chest, back or ribs which gets worse when the patient breathes in deeply.
- Coughing up blood.

Patients should be assessed for the individual risk factors for VTE when hospitalized in order to determine the most appropriate thromboprophylaxis (HoCHC 2005, NICE 2010). Patients at higher risk include those with major illness, for example acute cardiac or respiratory failure, major surgery, older patients, patients who are obese or with a previous history of DVT or PE (NICE 2010, SIGN 2002) (Box 14.2). All patients requiring an inpatient stay for surgery should have prophylactic treatment to reduce the risk of DVT, which may include anticoagulation and mechanical compression methods, for example antiembolic stockings and intermittent pneumatic compression methods (NICE 2010, Roderick *et al.* 2005, SIGN 2002).

Box 14.2 Venous thrombus risk factors

- Patient undergoing major surgery or abdominal/pelvic surgery.
- Immobility, for example prolonged bed rest.
- Active cancer.
- Severe cardiac failure or recent myocardial infarction.
- Acute respiratory failure.
- Elderly.
- Previous history of DVT or PE.
- Acute infection/inflammation.
- Diabetes.
- Smoker.
- Obesity.
- Gross varicose veins.
- Paralysis of lower limbs.
- Clotting disorders.

- Hormone replacement therapy.
- Oral contraceptives.

(HoCHC 2005, NICE 2010, Rashid *et al.* 2005, SIGN 2002)

Patients should be given verbal and written information before surgery about the risks of VTE and the effectiveness of prophylaxis (NICE 2010). It is estimated that 20% of patients undergoing major surgery will develop a DVT with the risk increasing to 40% of patients undergoing major orthopaedic surgery (SIGN 2002). Mechanical compression methods reduce the risk of DVT by about two-thirds when used as monotherapy and by about half when added to pharmacological methods (Roderick *et al.* 2005). Graduated compression (antiembolic) stockings promote venous flow and reduce venous stasis not only in the legs but also in the pelvic veins and inferior vena cava (Hayes *et al.* 2002, Rashid *et al.* 2005, Roderick *et al.* 2005). See Chapter 4 for more information.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

To ensure patient safety at all times and minimize intra/postoperative complications by:

- delivering the required nursing care for the preoperative patient
- minimizing potential problems by ensuring patients have carried out certain procedures and are prepared safely for theatre. These include:
  - preoperative fasting
  - skin preparation
  - marking skin for surgery
  - preoperative pregnancy testing
  - preventing toxic shock syndrome from tampons (female only)
  - patient education
  - application of antiembolic stockings (graduated elastic compression stockings)
  - assessment for latex allergy
  - consent.

Legal and professional issues

Consent

For consent to be valid it must encompass several factors.

- The patient must have capacity – that is, the ability to understand and retain the information provided, especially around the consequences of having or not having the procedure.
- Consent must be given willingly – this is without pressure or undue influence to either undertake or not undertake treatment.
- Has sufficient information been provided? This is so the patient has a understanding of the procedure and the purpose behind it.

(DH 2009)

The person obtaining the patient's consent for surgery should be the surgeon performing the procedure or someone who is sufficiently trained to undertake it (DH 2009).

The gaining of consent, unless it is an emergency, should be treated as a process, rather than a one-off event. For major operations, it should be considered good practice where possible to look for a person's consent to the proposed procedure well in advance, when there is time to respond to the person's questions and provide adequate information. Before the procedure starts, the clinician should check that the person still consents. Gaining a person's signature to confirm their consent immediately before the procedure is due to start, at a time when they may be feeling particularly vulnerable, would shed real doubt as to its validity. Patients should not in any situation be given routine preoperative medication before being asked for their consent to proceed with the treatment (NMC 2008).

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Antiembolic stockings (graduated elastic compression stockings thromboembolic deterrent)

For patients with VTE thigh-length graduated compression/antiembolic stockings should be fitted from the time of admission to hospital unless contraindicated, for example if the patient has peripheral arterial disease or diabetic neuropathy (NICE 2007) (Box 14.3). The patient should continue wearing them until they have returned to their usual level of mobility.

Box 14.3 Contraindications for antiembolus stockings

- Severe peripheral arterial disease.
- Severe peripheral neuropathy.
- Vascular disease resulting from congestive heart conditions.
- Gangrene.
- Pulmonary oedema or massive oedema of the legs.
- Major leg deformity.
- Certain types of skin disease, for example weeping skin lesions/dermatitis. The stockings would hinder healing of local leg conditions, for example dermatitis.
  - Recent skin graft.
  - Cellulitis.
  - Pressure sores to heels. Pressure sores are a complication of antiembolic stockings and stockings should not be applied (NICE 2005).

Thigh-length stockings are difficult to put on and can roll down, creating a tourniquet just above the knee which restricts blood supply, so patient monitoring and/or assistance should take place to ensure that stockings are fitted smoothly, are not rolled down or the top band not folded down. If thigh-length stockings are inappropriate for a particular patient for reasons of compliance or fit, knee-length stockings may be a suitable alternative. It has been suggested that 15–20% of patients cannot effectively wear thigh-length antiembolic stockings because of unusual limb size or shape (SIGN 2002). In reality, knee-high stockings have the advantage of simplicity, with greater patient compliance and

economy (Barker and Hollingsworth 2004, Byrne 2002, Parnaby 2004). When applying the stockings, it is important that correct measurements are taken so that the appropriate stocking size is fitted for optimum effectiveness. The stocking compression profile should be equivalent to the Sigel profile, and approximately 18 mmHg at the ankle, 14 mmHg at the mid-calf and 8 mmHg at the upper thigh (NICE 2007).

During surgery, the use of heel supports which reduce the pressure of the calves on the operating table will also encourage venous return. Intermittent calf compression air boots that promote venous flow during surgery have also been reported to be effective (Davis and O'Neill 2002, NICE 2010). The intermittent calf compression boots can be used in conjunction with antiembolic stockings, providing double protection. The only time this needs to be reviewed is when the patient is placed in the Lloyd Davis position as there is a risk of developing compartment syndrome. In this instance, either the antiembolic stockings or the intermittent calf compression boots should be used: this decision will be made by the surgeon and the anaesthetist.

Namebands

Namebands (otherwise known as identity bands or wristbands) are fundamental in the identification of patients. In the most recent guidance, the information to be included on the namebands is: date of birth, in the format dd.mm.yyyy, name (surname first in capitals followed by the first name with the first letter in capitals) and the patient's 10-digit NHS number (NPSA 2007). The NPSA Alert (2007) 'Standardising wristbands improves patient safety' states that within 2 years all NHS organizations in England and Wales where wristbands are used should generate and print all patient wristbands from the hospital electronic demographic system.

Specific patient preparations

Fasting

General anaesthesia carries the risk of the patient inhaling gastric contents during induction, which could lead to serious complications

and can even be fatal although this is relatively rare (Dean and Fawcett 2002). This is due to the potential for airway reflexes (such as coughing or laryngospasm) or gastrointestinal motor responses (such as gagging or recurrent swallowing) occurring during surgery (Asai 2004). Surgery itself can be a factor as manipulation of organs in the chest or abdominal cavities may force gastric contents up the oesophagus (Asai 2004).

Ensuring that the patient understands the rationale for fasting is important in order to reduce anxiety. For elective surgery patients are kept 'nil by mouth' long enough to allow the stomach to empty. This means that patients can have water or clear fluids up to 2 hours before surgery and solid foods up to 6 hours before, provided this is light food (AAGBI 2010, RCN 2005). However, gastric emptying can be delayed by anxiety or the action of some opiates, for example morphine (O'Callaghan 2002), so it is important to be aware of this when deciding when to commence patients 'nil by mouth'. Most patients prefer not to eat but would like to have a drink to keep their mouth moist before surgery and so are happy to comply with only fasting from water and clear fluids for 2 hours prior to surgery. Patients being fed via a nasogastric or gastrostomy tube should have their feed stopped 6 hours prior to surgery but they are able to have water up to 2 hours before surgery. Depriving elderly or unwell patients of fluids for a length of time can be detrimental to their health so in these cases other methods of hydration such as intravenous fluids should be considered (AAGBI 2010).

Skin preparation

Traditionally perioperative preparation has included the removal of body hair from the planned surgical wound site. Hair can interfere with the exposure of the incision, suturing and application of tape or dressings as well as increasing the risk of acquiring a surgical site infection (SSI) due to its associated bacteria (JBI 2008). There is around a 10% incidence of SSIs in UK patients every year, which can increase hospital stay and morbidity by delaying wound healing and causing unnecessary pain (JBI 2008).

Three methods of hair removal are currently used.

- *Shaving:* using a sharp blade held within a razor which is drawn over the patient's skin to cut hair close to the skin's surface.
- *Clipping:* using clippers with fine teeth to cut hair to about 1 mm from patient's skin. Heads of clippers are either disposable or disinfected (JBI 2008).
- *Chemical depilation:* using chemicals to dissolve hair. Cream needs to remain in contact with skin for 5–20 minutes. There is a risk of causing irritation or allergic reaction so a patch test needs to be carried out 24 hours before cream applied.

There have been two systematic reviews examining perioperative shaving (Kjonniksen *et al.* 2002, Tanner *et al.* 2006). Both conclude that shaving is not advisable. Shaving has been found to cause cuts and abrasions whereby micro-organisms can enter and colonize these cuts, contaminating the surgical sites, and any exudate produced provides a culture medium which can cause postoperative wound infections (Taylor and Tanner 2005). Clippers do not come into contact with the skin and therefore reduce the risk of cuts and abrasions (Taylor and Tanner 2005).

Research from one systematic review found that the surgical site infection rates amongst patients who had hair removed prior to surgery and those who had not were not significantly different (Tanner *et al.* 2006). However, if hair will interfere with the surgical procedure and removal is essential then the following best practice is advised.

- Hair removal should be done on the day of surgery, in a location outside the operating room such as the anaesthetic room or ward. *Rationale*: prevents infection risk in operating room (Kjonniksen *et al.* 2002, Murkin 2009).
- Only hair interfering with the surgical procedure should be removed (Murkin 2009). *Rationale*: to prevent unnecessary trauma or visible difference for the patient.
- Depilation creams or clipping should be used to remove hair instead of shaving. *Rationale*: causes fewer SSIs than shaving (JBI 2008).
- If clipping is used then the clipper should be single-use electric or battery operated, or a clipper with a reusable head that can be disinfected between patients. *Rationale*: prevents cross-infection (AORN 2008).

- If using clippers it is recommended to do this on the day of surgery. *Rationale*: fewer SSIs (JBI 2008).

Marking skin for surgery

It may be that the surgeon needs to mark an area of the body for surgery. This is normally a limb to be operated on or the position of an organ such as a specific kidney in a patient undergoing a nephrectomy. The marking should be undertaken by the surgeon performing the operation or a deputy who will be present at the surgery, using an indelible pen, to ensure the correct site is marked and this should be checked against the patient's consent form (Haynes *et al.* 2009).

There are some situations in which a specialist nurse may mark the skin. Stoma therapists mark the position on the patient's skin which is the optimum place for the stoma to be placed (see Chapter 6 for further information).

Preoperative pregnancy testing

A review of the literature regarding the concerns that surgery and anaesthesia can cause congenital abnormalities or spontaneous abortion during the early gestation period has shown that there is no increase in the rate of congenital defects (Allaert *et al.* 2007). However, there is an increased risk of spontaneously aborting the foetus when undertaking surgery during the first trimester of pregnancy. It is possible that this is affected by surgical manipulation and the patient's underlying medical condition rather than exposure to anaesthesia (Allaert *et al.* 2007, Kuczkowski 2004).

Recent guidelines suggest that all women who are able to bear children should undergo pregnancy testing preoperatively to rule out this possibility (NPSA 2010). Local procedures and guidelines should be followed to ensure that the possibility of this is excluded, and that all patients have provided informed consent prior to the test being carried out. (NPSA 2010).

Prevention of toxic shock syndrome from tampon use

Toxic shock syndrome (TSS) is a rare, life-threatening bacterial infection. It happens when the bacteria *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Streptococcus pyogenes*, which normally live harmlessly on the skin, enter the body's bloodstream and produce poisonous toxins. These toxins cause severe vasodilation which in turn causes a large drop in blood pressure (shock), resulting in dizziness and confusion. They also begin to damage tissue, including skin and organs, and can disturb many vital organ functions. If TSS is left untreated, the combination of shock and organ damage can result in death.

Female patients of menstruating age therefore need to be made aware of the dangers of using tampons which can cause infection leading to toxic shock syndrome.

At the time of admission it is important to ask patients if they are menstruating and to highlight the dangers of using tampons during surgery. If these are left *in situ* for longer than 6 hours, infection may develop. Nurses can offer a sanitary pad as an alternative.

Patient education

Research by several authors has shown that preoperative patient education not only meets patients' information needs but also assists in reducing anxiety levels and promotes the patients' well-being (Bondy *et al.* 1999, Jlala *et al.* 2010, Klopfenstein *et al.* 2000, Walker 2002).

Patient information booklets can also help patients to gain a greater understanding of surgery and what is expected of them.

Preoperative education can address some of the patients' concerns and fears. As pain and anaesthesia are patients' greatest worries, they need to be discussed in the preoperative period so that anxiety can be reduced (Mitchell 2000), which may result in patients requiring less analgesia (Beddows 1997). Preoperative visiting by recovery staff allows patients to ask questions, which could help them to manage their anxiety and provide baseline information about patients, which is important for effective management postoperatively, for example, of pain. It also gives information to the surgical team to allow them to maintain continuity of care in the operating department (Beddows 1997).

The control of pain while the patient is still in the operating theatre and recovering from their surgery is vital to further reduce anxiety and promote general well-being. Use of patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) gives the patient a sense of autonomy, which may decrease anxiety and which will in turn influence the patient's pain perception (Field and Adams 2001). For further information see Chapter 9.

Information about the equipment and intravenous access extension sets that the patient will be attached to postoperatively should also be provided to ensure they know what to expect and are fully informed as this can be disconcerting to both the patient when they return from theatre and the patient's relatives when they see them immediately post surgery. Additional information on when the patient will be expected to mobilize, when they can eat and drink and the length of time they can expect to be in hospital is also important at this time.

Assessment of latex allergy

latex is a natural rubber composed of proteins and added chemicals. Its durable, flexible properties give it a high degree of protection from many micro-organisms, which make it an ideal fibre to use for many healthcare products. It currently provides the best protection against infection and gives the sensitivity and control needed in the healthcare field. It is found in the following products (AORN 2004, HSE 2004).

- Gloves.
- Airways.
- Intravenous tubing.
- Stethoscopes.
- Catheters.
- Dressings and bandages.

Some of the proteins in the natural rubber latex can cause allergic reactions and sensitivity and the incidence of latex hypersensitivity seems to be increasing (Rose 2005). Sensitivity can be described as the development of an immunological memory to specific latex proteins, which can be asymptomatic. Allergy is the visible reaction of the sensitivity, for example hives, rhinitis, conjunctivitis, anaphylaxis (AORN 2004). Anyone with sensitivity to latex is at risk of an allergic

reaction, which can be serious or potentially life-threatening, and therefore sensitivities and allergies should be treated in the same way (AORN 2004). There are various types of reaction.

- *Irritation:* irritant contact dermatitis, a non-allergenic reaction caused by soaps, gloves, glove powder and hand creams. Symptoms range from dry, crusty, itchy skin to rashes and inflammation, which usually resolves when use is discontinued (AORN 2004, HSE 2004, Rose 2005).
- *Type IV reaction:* delayed hypersensitivity, sometimes known as allergic contact dermatitis caused by exposure to chemicals used in latex manufacturing. Results in red, raised, palpable area with bumps, sores and cracks usually occurring several hours within 6–48 hours of contact (AORN 2004, Rose 2005).
- *Type I reaction:* immediate hypersensitivity, sometimes called immunoglobulin E response. Caused by exposure to proteins in latex on glove surface and/or bound to powder and it can also be caused by proteins in food such as peanuts, watermelons, bananas, avocados, potatoes, tomatoes and some seafood. Symptoms include wheal and flare response, irritant and allergic contact dermatitis, facial swelling, rhinitis, urticaria, respiratory distress and asthma and on rare occasions anaphylactic shock. It occurs within minutes and can fade rapidly after removal of the latex (AORN 2004, Rose 2005).

Once sensitization has taken place, further exposure will cause symptoms to recur and increasing exposure to latex proteins increases the risk of developing allergic symptoms (HSE 2004).

Powdered gloves can create the greatest risk as proteins leak into the powder which can become airborne when gloves are removed and inhaling the powder may lead to respiratory sensitization (AORN 2004, HSE 2004).

Healthcare providers have an ethical responsibility to prevent latex sensitization and because there is no cure, protection must be paramount (AORN 2004).

Employers should have a policy on glove use which will give you information and instruction on risk of latex, safe working methods, recognizing symptoms of sensitization and the action to be taken if a

sensitization is suspected (HSE 2004). There is also a voluntary scheme in place for reporting cases of latex sensitization, both of staff and patients, to the Medical Devices Agency (MDA), which is an executive agency of the Department of Health (HSE 2004).

Assessment and monitoring for symptoms of latex allergy in both the conscious and unconscious patient are required at all stages of perioperative care. The assessment should cover the following known risk factors for latex allergy (Box 14.4) (AORN 2004).

Box 14.4 Risk factors for latex allergy

- History of multiple surgeries beginning at an early age (e.g. spina bifida, urinary malformation).
- Known food allergies (avocado, chestnut or banana).
- History of an allergic reaction to latex.
- History of an allergic reaction during an operation.
- Past experience of itchy skin, skin rash or redness when in contact with rubber products.
- Past skin irritation from an examination by a doctor or dentist wearing rubber gloves.
- Past sneezing, wheezing or chest tightness when exposed to rubber.

If a suspected or confirmed latex sensitivity or allergy is found, this information must be communicated to all members of the healthcare team and departments that the patient may visit, including theatre, recovery, pathology and radiology (AORN 2004, Rose 2005). The anaesthetist will need to be informed so that decisions can be made regarding potential allergy prophylaxis preoperatively (Rose 2005). The patient is normally first on the theatre list or in a theatre that has been allowed to stand clean and empty for at least 2 hours to ensure the removal of any latex dust and products (Rose 2005). They will need to be cared for in a latex-free environment with no latex or latex products used for the patient or in the immediate care environment (AORN 2004). Box 14.5 lists preoperative actions in the event of a latex allergy.

Box 14.5 Preoperative actions in the event of a latex allergy

- Notify operating theatre of potential or confirmed latex allergy 24–48 hours (or as soon as possible) before scheduled procedure.
- Identify the patient's risk factors for latex allergy and communicate them to the healthcare team.
- Schedule the procedure as the first case of the day if the facility is not latex safe.
- Plan for a latex-safe environment of care.
- The theatre must be cleaned with latex-free gloves and equipment.
- All latex products must be removed or covered with plastics so that the rubber elements are not exposed.
- All healthcare staff in direct contact with the patient must wear vinyl gloves during procedures and in the vicinity of the patient.
- Secure latex-free products for all latex-containing items used by surgeons and anaesthetists.
- A latex-free contents box or trolley (this holds stock of all latex-free products that will be required during surgery and anaesthetic) should be ready in every theatre department and recovery room. There should be a list of all latex-free equipment with the manufacturers listed available in the box or trolley.
- Notify surgeon if no alternative product is available.
- Notify anaesthetist if latex-containing product to be used and develop plan of emergency care if necessary.
- Where a type I (immediate hypersensitivity reaction) allergy is suspected, suitable clinical management procedures must be ready for use in the event of the patient having a hypersensitivity reaction.

(AORN 2004)

Further guidance may be sought from the Association of Peri-operative Registered Nurses (AORN) proposed latex guideline at www.aorn.org/proposed/latex.htm.com.

Preoperative theatre checklist

The preoperative checklist (see Procedure guideline 14.2 and Figure 14.1) is the final check between the ward and the operating theatre and should be completed as fully as possible to reduce the possibility of any

complications during the period that the patient is put under anaesthetic or during surgery itself.

Figure 14.1 Preoperative assessment care plan.

Patient Care Need: Care of the Patient undergoing Surgery (Specify)

.....

- Potential anxiety related to a lack of knowledge about forthcoming surgery
- Patient safety related to surgery

Anticipated Outcome:

- Patient/carer will state they have an understanding of the anaesthetic, operation and the possible complications
- Patient will have correct surgical procedure and patient safety will be maintained throughout

Patient Care Interventions:

A
- Orientate patient to the ward environment / routine including the nurse call bell system and organisation of care
- Explain care of valuables and property

B **Patient Assessment**
- Assess patient's physical and psychological concerns, their understanding of the operation and treatment/post-operative plan
- Check allergy status / sensitivities and infection risk e.g. Methicillin-Resistant Staphylococcus Aureus (MRSA) - Is it necessary to contact the Theatre Sister?
- Check and confirm pregnancy status on all women of childbearing age
- Ensure pre-operative blood tests (Full Blood Count, Urea & Electrolyte's, Group & Save/Cross match and blood ordered, Clotting screen, Glucose, Thyroid tests) & investigations (Chest X ray, ECG, and others – CT Scan) are completed *(see unitguidelines)*

Baseline observations undertaken: Date:..... Time:.....

Height cms	Weight kg	Blood Pressure mmHg	Oxygen (O_2) Saturations (on air) %
Temperature °C	Pulse rate/min	Respirations breaths/minute	Peak Flow (If required) Litres/minute

- Urinalysis - Abnormalities Yes / No (circle & specify if appropriate)

Post-operative Nausea & Vomiting (PONV) Risk Assessment (Apfel's Model 1999)	**Risk Score*** (*circle)
Previous history of PONV or history of motion sickness	1
Female	1
Non-smoker	1
Post-operative opioid use	1
Add Risk Scores & Total	.....

Obtain Level of Risk from table below (based on Apfel's model 1999)

Total Risk Score	**Level of Risk of PONV**
4	High Risk
3	
2	Moderate Risk
1	Low Risk
0	Minimal Risk

Patient with a moderate to high risk PONV score:
- Patients should be offered the choice of acupressure bands pre-operatively (Contact the CNS Pain Management)

Site of Acupressure Band(s)(tick):

☐ Right forearm ☐ Left forearm Time sited.....(24 hr clock)

- Check for correct placement of the acupressure band(s) site(s) and monitor for any signs of swelling, bruising or discomfort 30 minutes following application and thereafter at 4 hourly intervals
- To be transferred from the theatre table to their hospital bed whilst in theatres

NB this does not apply to patients with MRSA or known infections (see PONV guidelines)

Reference: Apfel C., Laara E., Koiuranta M et al (1999) A simplified risk score for predicting postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesthesiology* **91** (3) 693-700.

C
- Patient to Fast from (see pre-operative fasting policy):

  FOOD ..... (24 Hr Clock) FLUIDS ..... (24 Hr Clock)
- Complete pre-operative checklist and ensure patient has passed urine prior to administration of pre-medication (if prescribed)
- Administer pre-medication as prescribed (usually within **two** hours of anaesthetic induction time)

D	**Relevant information to include actual and potential medical, physical, psychological and communication problems e.g. diabetes, sight or hearing problems, pre-operative pain, language differences, phobias, pacemaker, previous surgery and anaesthetic problems**
	ALLERGY STATUS Is the patient allergic or sensitive to: drugs and/or solutions e.g. betadine and/or dressings e.g. elastoplast and/or other products e.g. latex ***(NB Inform the theatre sister the day before surgery if patient has pacemaker fitted, has an infection risk or latex allergy if possible)*** No Known Allergies or Sensitivities ❑ **OR** Specify allergies/sensitivities (see medical notes/prescription chart)
Patient / Carer Education:	
E	Provide information (verbal and/or written) and check understanding, reinforce as required • The pre-operative assessment process and investigations • The emotional and psychological support available • Inform patient of approximate theatre time for operation and duration of operation • Offer visit to Critical Care Unit if appropriate • Wearing of cotton based underwear and/or consent for the possible removal of underwear. For example if undergoing the insertion of an epidural, urinary catheterisation will be necessary. • Pre-operative fasting • Post-operative care & equipment specific to surgery as appropriate ➔ potential pain/discomfort and teaching on Patient Controlled Analgesia/Epidural Analgesia ➔ potential nausea & vomiting and IV hydration ➔ wounds & drain care, catheters, appliances ➔ anti-embolism stockings ➔ positioning, deep breathing and leg exercises, physiotherapy
Additional Interventions: Tick if appropriate or add more interventions for specific surgery	
	❑ Measure and fit knee length anti-embolism stockings on the morning of the operation Calf size .....cms Stocking size: small / medium / large / extra large (circle) ❑ Administer bowel preparation if prescribed Product..... Time.....Result..... Enema..... Time.....Result..... Suppositories..... Time.....Result.....

One item on the list is ensuring that blood results and X-rays or imaging accompany the patient. The blood results are important for assessing patient haemoglobin levels which will help in transporting oxygen and also the electrolytes to identify any imbalances such as low sodium or potassium as these can interfere with anaesthetic agents and

can cause cardiovascular disturbances such as arrhythmias (see Tables 14.1 and 14.2).

Table 14.1 Haematology values

Test	Reference range	Functions/additional information
RBC	Men: 4.5–6.5 × 10^{12}/L Women: 3.9–5.6 × 10^{12}/L	The main function of the RBC is the transport of oxygen and carbon dioxide
Hb	Men: 13.5–17.5 g/dL Women: 11.5–15.5 g/dL	Haemoglobin (Hb) is a protein pigment found within the RBC which carries the oxygen Anaemia (deficiency in the number of RBC or in the Hb content) may occur for many reasons. Changes to cell production, deficient dietary intake or blood loss may be relevant and need to be investigated further
WBC	Men: 3.7–9.5 × 10^{9}/L Women: 3.9–11.1 × 10^{9}/L	The function of the white blood cell (WBC) is the defence against infection There are different kinds of WBC: neutrophils, lymphocytes, monocytes, eosinophils and basophils Leucopenia is a WBC count lower than 3.7 and is usually associated with the use of cytotoxic drugs Leucocytosis (high levels of neutrophils and lymphocytes) occurs as the body's normal response to infection and after surgery Leukaemia involves an increased WBC count caused by changes in cell production in the bone marrow. The leukaemic cells enter the blood in increased numbers in an immature state
Platelets	Men: 150–400 × 10^{9}/L Women: 150–400 × 10^{9}/L	Clot formation occurs when platelets and the blood protein fibrin combine. A patient may be thrombocytopenic (low platelet count) due to drugs/poor production or have a raised count (thrombocytosis) with infection or autoimmune disease
Coagulation/INR	INR range 2–3 (in some cases a range of 3–4.5 is acceptable)	Coagulation occurs to prevent excessive blood loss by the formation of a clot (thrombus). However, a clot that forms in an artery may block the vessel and cause an infarction or ischaemia which can be fatal

Aspirin, warfarin and heparin are three drugs used for the prevention and/or treatment of thrombosis

It is imperative that patients on warfarin therapy receive regular monitoring to ensure a balance of slowing the clot-forming process and maintaining the ability of the blood to clot

Table 14.2 Biochemistry values

Test	Reference ange	Functions/additional information
Sodium	135–145 mmol/L	The main function of sodium is to maintain extracellular volume (water stored outside the cells), acid/base balance and the transmitting of nerve impulses *Hypernatraemia* (serum sodium >145 mmol/L) may be an indication of dehydration due to fluid loss from diarrhoea, excessive sweating, increased urinary output or a poor oral intake of fluid. An increased salt intake may also cause an elevation *Hyponatraemia* (serum sodium <135 mmol/L) may be indicated in fluid retention (oedema)
Potassium	3.5–5.2 mmol/L	Potassium plays a major role in nerve conduction, muscle function, acid/base balance and osmotic pressure. It has a direct effect on cardiac muscle, influencing cardiac output by helping to control the rate and force of each contraction The most common cause of *hyperkalaemia* (serum potassium >5.2 mmol/L) is chronic renal failure. The kidneys are unable to excrete potassium. The level may be elevated due to an increased intake of potassium supplements during treatment. Tissue cell destruction caused by trauma/cytotoxic therapy may cause a release of potassium from the cells and an elevation in the potassium plasma level. It may also be observed in untreated diabetic ketoacidosis Urgent treatment is required as *hyperkalaemia* may lead to changes in cardiac muscle contraction and cause subsequent cardiac arrest The main cause of *hypokalaemia* (serum potassium <3.5 mmol/L) is the loss of potassium via the kidneys during treatment with thiazide diuretics. Excessive/chronic diarrhoea may also cause a decreased potassium level

Urea	2.5–6.5 mmol/L	Urea is a waste product of metabolism that is transported to the kidneys and excreted as urine. Elevated levels of urea may indicate poor kidney function
Creatinine	55–105 µmol/L	Creatinine is a waste product of metabolism that is transported to the kidneys and excreted as urine. Elevated levels of creatinine may indicate poor kidney function
Calcium	2.20–2.60 mmol/L	Most of the calcium in the body is stored in the bone but ionized calcium, which circulates in the blood plasma, plays an important role in the transmission of nerve impulses and for the functioning of cardiac and skeletal muscle. It is also vital for blood coagulation High calcium levels (*hypercalcaemia* >2.6 mmol/L) can be due to hyperthyroidism, hyperparathyroidism or malignancy. Elevation in calcium levels may cause cardiac arrhythmia, potentially leading to cardiac arrest Tumour cells can cause excessive production of a protein called parathormone-related polypeptide (PTHrp) which causes a loss of calcium from the bone and an increase in blood calcium levels. This is a major reason for hypercalcaemia in cancer patients (Higgins 2009) *Hypocalcaemia* (<2.20 mmol/L) is often associated with vitamin D deficiency due to inadequate intake or increased loss due to GI disease. Mild hypocalcaemia may be symptomless but severe disease may cause increased neuromuscular excitability and cardiac arrhythmias. It is also a common feature of chronic renal failure (Higgins 2009)
C-reactive protein (CRP)	<10 mg/L	Elevation in the CRP level can be a useful indication of bacterial infection. CRP is monitored after surgery and for patients who have a high risk of infection. The CRP level can help monitor the severity of inflammation and assist in the diagnosis of conditions such as systemic lupus erythematous (SLE), ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease (Higgins 2009)
Albumin	35–50 g/L	Albumin is a protein found in blood plasma which assists in the transport of water-soluble substances and the maintenance of blood plasma volume
Bilirubin	(total) <17 µmol/L	Bilirubin is produced from the breakdown of haemoglobin; it is transported to the liver for excretion in bile. Elevated levels of bilirubin may cause jaundice

Procedure guideline 14.1 Antiembolic stockings: assessment, fitting and wearing

Essential equipment

- Tape measure
- Antiembolic stockings (calf or thigh length)
- Apron
- Patient records/documentation

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Assess and record in the patient's documentation the patient's risk factors for VTE,	All patients admitted to hospital should undergo a risk assessment for venous thrombosis to determine the most appropriate preventive measures, that is thromboprophylaxis (HoCHC 2005, C; NICE 2010, C; Roderick *et al.* 2005, C; SIGN 2002, C).

that is, DVT and PE. See Box 14.2.	The higher the number of risk factors, the greater the risk for VTE (NICE 2010, C; SIGN, 2002, C).
2 Assess and record in the patient's documentation the patient's suitability for antiembolic stockings, identifying whether the patient has any contraindications to wearing antiembolic stockings (see Box 14.3).	To comply with national guidelines and hospital policy/guidelines. To ensure that antiembolic stockings are fitted correctly and to reduce the complications associated with antiembolic stockings (All Wales Tissue Viability Nurse Forum 2009, C; HoCHC 2005, C; NICE 2010, C; Rashid *et al.* 2005, E; SIGN 2002, C).
3 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient and provide written information as follows: **(a)** reasons for wearing antiembolic stockings **(b)** how to fit and wear stockings **(c)** what to report to the nurse, for example any feelings of pain or numbness or skin problems **(d)** skin care, that is, wash and dry legs daily **(e)** reasons for early mobilization and adequate hydration **(f)** reasons for not crossing legs or ankles **(g)** length of time that the stockings should be worn, for example until the patient returns to their usual level of mobility.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2009, C; NMC 2008, C). To ensure that the patient understands how to fit and wear stockings including self-care measures and what to report to the nurse so as to detect complications early, for example pressure sores, circulation difficulties of wearing antiembolic stockings (NICE 2010, C; SIGN 2002, C).
Procedure	
4 Perform hand hygiene and put on apron prior to the	To prevent cross-infection (Pratt *et al.* 2007).

procedure.	
5 Place the tape measure around the calf at the greatest point and measure the calf circumference (and leg measurements) according to the manufacturer's instructions, recording the measurements in the patient's documentation.	To comply with the manufacturer's instructions. C Incorrect sizing causes swelling and bruising to ankles and can constrict blood supply, leading to long-term complications. C
6 Check pedal pulses are intact.	To ensure the patient has good circulation to the feet and antiembolic stockings are not contraindicated (NICE 2010, C; SIGN 2002, C).
7 Apply the antiembolic stocking to the legs according to the manufacturer's instructions.	To ensure correct size of stocking is fitted correctly. C
Postprocedure	
8 Remove stockings daily, observing for pain, skin damage, circulation difficulties which may arise as a result of wrinkling, and so on, of stocking, but for no more than 30 minutes: confirm size is applicable (SIGN 2002).	To review calf and/or leg measurements to ensure stockings fit correctly (NICE 2005, C; SIGN 2002, C). Reported complications of wearing antiembolic stockings include pressure sores (NICE 2005, C) and circulation difficulties, for example arterial occlusion, thrombosis, gangrene (SIGN 2002, C). The circulation complications can be linked to the tourniquet effect of bunched-up stockings combined with swelling of the leg (HoCHC 2005, C; SIGN 2002, C).
9 Where worn, ensure that antiembolic stockings are of the correct size and fit smoothly. Check the colour and tips of the toes. *Note*: top band of stockings must not be turned down.	To prevent a tourniquet effect if the stocking rolls down. C To ensure the blood supply is not compromised. C
10 Encourage early mobilization. For patients on bed rest, encourage deep breathing and exercises of the leg hourly, flexion/extension and rotation of the ankles.	To improve venous circulation (NICE 2010, C; SIGN 2002, C).
11 Encourage patient to sit with legs up when resting.	It is recognized that this will reduce limb swelling and promote venous return by its gravitational effect; however, there is little scientific data to clarify that this does reduce the risk of VTE. *Note*: care should be taken with patients with ischaemic legs (NICE 2007, C).

12 Monitor for signs of DVT or PE and report to medical staff immediately (see Box 14.1).	To monitor for signs of DVT and PE (NICE 2007, C; Rashid *et al.* 2005, C).
13 Monitor whether the patient has adequate hydration.	To ensure the patient is adequately hydrated (NICE 2010, C; SIGN 2002, C).
14 Record temperature daily.	To detect infection early and signs of inflammation associated with venous thrombosis. C
15 Launder according to the manufacturer's instructions.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection and promote patient comfort. C
16 On discharge from hospital, check the patient understands the following: **(a)** signs and symptoms of DVT **(b)** correct use of prophylaxis at home, for example how to wear antiembolic stocking correctly **(c)** implications of not using prophylaxis correctly **(d)** to continue to undertake leg exercises if immobile **(e)** to avoid long periods of travel for 4 weeks after an operation.	To reduce the risks of developing a DVT or PE after an operation and to ensure that the patient reports any symptoms promptly to enable the early detection and management of DVT and/or PE (NICE, 2010, C).

Procedure guideline 14.2 Preoperative care: theatre checklist

Essential equipment

- Identification bracelets
- Allergy bands if necessary
- Theatre gown

- Cotton-based underwear or disposable pants can be worn if wearing them does not interfere with surgery
- Antiembolic stockings
- Labelled containers for dentures, glasses and/or hearing aid if necessary
- Hypoallergenic tape
- Patient records/documentation including medical records, consent form, drug chart, X-ray films, blood test results, anaesthetic assessment, record and preoperative checklist

Procedure

Action	**Rationale**
1 Assess the preoperative education received by the patient and ensure that it is complete and understood.	To ensure that the patient understands the nature and outcome of the surgery to reduce anxiety and possible postoperative complications (Walker 2002, E).
2 Check that the patient has undergone relevant investigative procedures, for example X-ray, electrocardiogram (ECG), blood test and that these are included with the patient's notes.	To ensure all relevant information is available to the nurses, anaesthetists and surgeons (AORN 2000, C).
3 For female patients: **(a)** check and confirm pregnancy status on all women of childbearing age. If a pregnancy test is required, ensure the result is known to all healthcare professionals involved in the operation **(b)** if appropriate, ask the patient if she is menstruating and ensure that she has a sanitary towel in place and not a tampon.	To eliminate the possibility of unknown pregnancy prior to the planned surgical procedure. E This is to prevent infection if the tampon is left in place for longer than 2 hours (www.tamponalert.org.uk, C).
4 Check the consent form is correctly completed, signed and dated.	To comply with legal requirements and hospital policy and to ensure that the patient has understood the surgical procedure (NMC 2008, C).
5 Check the operation site is marked correctly.	To ensure the patient undergoes the correct surgery for which they have consented (AORN 2000, C).
6 Check that the patient has undergone preanaesthetic assessment by the anaesthetist.	To ensure that the patient can be given the most suitable anaesthetic and any special requirements for anaesthetic have been highlighted (AORN 2000, C).

7 Record the patient's pulse, blood pressure, respirations, temperature and weight.	To provide baseline data for comparison intra- and postoperatively. The weight is recorded so that the anaesthetist can calculate the correct dose of drugs to be administered (AORN 2000, C).
8 Instruct the patient to shower or bath as close to the planned time of the operation as possible and before a premedication is administered, if appropriate.	To minimize risk of postoperative wound infection and prevent patient accidents (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
9 Assist the patient to change into a theatre gown after having a shower/bath.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection, increase ease of access to operation site and avoid soiling of patient's own clothes (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).
10 Long hair should be held back with a non-metallic tie.	For safety, to prevent hair getting caught in equipment and to reduce the risk of infection. E
11 All jewellery, cosmetics, nail varnish and clothing, other than the theatre gown, are to be removed. Wedding rings may be left *in situ*, but must be covered and secured with hypoallergenic tape.	Metal jewellery may be accidentally lost or may cause harm to the patient, for example diathermy burns. Facial cosmetics make the patient's colour difficult to assess. Nail varnish makes the use of the pulse oximeter, used to monitor the patient's pulse and oxygen saturation levels, impossible and masks peripheral cyanosis (Vedovato *et al.* 2004, C).
12 Valuables should be placed in the hospital's custody and recorded according to the hospital policy.	To prevent loss of valuables. E
13 Disposable or cotton underwear could be worn unless the patient is undergoing major urology or gynaecology procedure.	To maintain patient's dignity (NMC 2008, C).
14 Check whether patient passed urine before premedication.	To prevent urinary incontinence when sedated and/or unconscious and possible contamination of sterile area. E
15 Apply antiembolic stockings correctly.	To reduce the risk of postoperative deep vein thrombosis or pulmonary emboli (NICE 2010, C).
16 Ensure the patient is wearing an identification bracelet with the correct information.	To ensure correct identification and prevent possible patient misidentification (AORN 2000, C).
17 Ensure the patient is wearing an allergy alert band if appropriate.	To reduce allergic reactions to known causative agents and to alert all involved in the care of the patient in the operating theatre (AORN 2004, C).
18 Check when patient last had food or drink and ensure that it was at least 6 hours before planned operation time.	To reduce the risk of regurgitation and inhalation of stomach contents on induction of anaesthesia (Asai 2004; Dean and Fawcett 2002, C).
19 Note whether the patient has dental crowns, bridge work or loose teeth.	The anaesthetist needs to be informed to prevent accidental damage. Loose teeth or a dental prosthesis could be inhaled by the patient when an endotracheal tube is inserted. E
20 Ensure prosthesis, dentures and contact lenses are removed. Make a note of irremovable prosthesis (for example pacemaker, knee replacement) on the preoperative checklist.	To promote patient safety during surgery, for example dentures may obstruct airway, contact lenses can cause cornea abrasions. Internal non-removable prosthesis may be affected by the electric current used in diathermy. E

21 Spectacles may be retained until the patient is in the anaesthetic room. Hearing aids may be retained until the patient has been anaesthetized (these may be left in position if a local anaesthetic is being used). Any prosthesis should then be labelled clearly and retained in the recovery room.	To allow the patient to communicate fully, thus reducing anxiety and enabling the patient to understand any procedures carried out. P
22 Complete the preoperative checklist by asking the patient and checking records and notes before giving any premedication.	Questioning premedicated patients is not a reliable source of checking information as the patient may be drowsy and/or disorientated (AORN 2000, C).
23 Give the premedication, if prescribed, in accordance with the anaesthetist's instructions.	Different drugs may be prescribed to complement the anaesthetic to be given, for example temazepam to reduce patient anxiety by inducing sleep and relaxation. E
24 Advise the patient to remain in bed once the premedication has been given and to use the nurse call system if assistance is needed.	To reduce the risk of accidental patient injury as the premedication may make the patient drowsy and disorientated. E
25 Ensure the patient is supported fully on the canvas, especially the head, when transferred from the ward bed to the trolley.	To reduce the risk of injury to the neck, and so on, during transfer from the ward to the operating theatre (AORN 2001, C).
26 Ensure that all relevant information, for example X-rays, notes, blood results, accompany the patient to the operating theatre.	To prevent delays which can increase the patient's anxiety and to ensure that the anaesthetist and surgeon have all the information they require for safe treatment of the patient. E
27 The patient should be accompanied to the theatre by a ward nurse who remains present until the patient has been checked by the anaesthetic assistant/nurse and/or anaesthetized.	To reduce patient anxiety and ensure a safe environment during induction. E
28 The ward nurse should give a full handover to the anaesthetic nurse or operating department practitioner on arrival in the anaesthetic room, using patient records and the preoperative checklist.	To ensure the patient has the correct operation. To ensure continuity of care and to maintain the safety of the patient by exchanging all relevant information (AORN 2000, C).

Intraoperative care

Intraoperative care: anaesthesia

Definition

Intraoperative care is the physical and psychological care given to the patient in the anaesthetic room and operating theatre until transfer to the recovery room. In the anaesthetic room the patients are admitted and checked into the operating suite. When they are transferred into theatre they are already anaesthetized and are transferred onto the operating table.

Related theory

Safe administration of anaesthesia has been evolving since the early 1840s. During this time surgery was often seen as a final attempt to save life and very few operations were performed. This was because surgery was very painful and patients were conscious during the procedure and could hear everything that was being said and done. In order to support the patients, surgeons would attempt to administer alcohol, morphine and other sedatives but this would not work and most patients were restrained either with straps or held down. The surgeon had to be speedy and often the patients would either faint from pain or die from the bleeding. Then on 16th October 1846 William Morton publicly administered ether at Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, followed shortly by James Robinson who administered the first ether anaesthetic in England on 19th December 1846. Thus began the developments in anaesthesia as in 1847, James Simpson, Professor of Obstetrics, introduced chloroform in Edinburgh. Although chloroform had severe side-effects such as sudden death and delayed liver damage, it still became popular because it worked well and was easier to use than ether. This was followed closely by the introduction of local anaesthetic in 1877 which led to infiltration anaesthesia, nerve blocks, spinal and epidural analgesia.

However, it was not until the turn of the 20th century that control of the airway using tubes in the trachea to help breathing and intravenous induction agents was introduced, enabling patients to fall asleep quickly and safely. Muscle relaxants emerged in the 1940s and today anaesthesia is very safe and there are very few deaths. Anaesthetists are highly trained and skilled physicians who provide a range of patient care such

as obstetric analgesia and anaesthesia, resuscitation, pain management, major accident plan and emergency medicine in A and E.

Evidence-based approaches

Outcomes

- To ensure that the patient understands what will happen in the operating theatres at all times in order to minimize anxiety.
- To ensure that the patient has the correct surgery for which the consent form was signed.
- To ensure patient safety at all times and minimize postoperative complications by:

  (a) giving the required care for the unconscious patient

  (b) ensuring injury is not sustained from hazards associated with the use of swabs, needles, instruments, diathermy and power tools

  (c) minimizing postoperative problems associated with patient positioning, such as nerve or tissue damage

  (d) maintaining asepsis during surgical procedures to reduce the risk of postoperative wound infection in accordance with hospital policies on infection control.

Legal and professional issues

The World Health Organization safety checklist is also completed at this point in the operating room which complies with the Safety First Campaign (NPSA 2009). The purpose of this safety checklist is to ensure that the correct procedure is performed on the correct patient, encourage team work and improve communication amongst the surgical teams from all disciplines. The safety checklist comprises three parts: sign in, time out and sign out (Tables 14.3, 14.4, 14.5). Sign in is completed in the anaesthetic room before the patient is induced. It has to be read out loud with the anaesthetist and the anaesthetic assistant present.

Table 14.3 Pre-theatre safety checklist (part 1)

Action	Rationale
Has the patient confirmed his/her identity, site, procedure and consent? □ Yes	This is the final point of confirming the details are correct
Is the surgical site marked? □ Yes	To ensure surgery is performed at the correct site
Is the anaesthesia machine and medication check complete? □ Yes	To ensure that the equipment and all necessary drugs are at hand and in working order to prevent complications arising during induction
Does the patient have a: Known allergy? □ No □ Yes	To maintain patient's safety and to be aware of any adverse reactions
Difficult airway/aspiration risk? □ No □ Yes	To ensure that the relevant equipment and drugs are in the room
Risk of >500 mL blood loss (7 mL/kg in children)? □ No □ Yes, and adequate IV access/fluids planned?	To ensure that the adequate IV fluids are planned and rapid administration of fluids is possible

Table 14.4 WHO checklist (part 2): time out (before the surgical intervention)

Action	Rationale
Have all team members introduced themselves by name and role? □ Yes	For all to understand and accept the roles and responsibilities. Also encourages confidence and team building
Surgeon, anaesthetist and registered practitioner verbally confirmed: □ What is the patient's name?	This is to confirm the identity of the patient and the procedure to be performed and site to prevent wrong site surgery

□ What procedure, site and position are planned?	
Anticipated critical events Surgeon: □ How much blood loss is anticipated? □ Are there any specific equipment requirements or special investigations? □ Are there any critical or unexpected steps you want the team to know about?	To ensure that all necessary equipment is ready in theatre and there is no time delay in the procedure and to ensure that every eventuality is covered. Also, the surgeon is aware if there any problems with equipment at the start so that they are prepared
Anaesthetist: □ Are there any patient-specific concerns? □ What is the patient's ASA grade? □ What monitoring equipment and other specific levels of support are required, for example blood?	The ASA grade indicates patient's suitability for anaesthesia
Nurse/ODP: □ Has the sterility of the instrumentation been confirmed (including indicator results)? □ Are there any equipment issues or concerns? □ Levels of support required, for example blood?	
Has the SSI bundle been undertaken? □ Yes/Not applicable □ Antibiotic prophylaxis within the last 60 minutes	This is to minimize the risk of postoperative infection which could lead to increased length of stay in hospital

□ Patient warming □ Hair removal □ Glycaemic control	
Has VTE prophylaxis been undertaken? □ Yes/Not applicable	To prevent development of DVT on the operating table
Is essential imaging displayed? □ Yes/Not applicable	To support the surgeon during the procedure

Table 14.5 WHO checklist (part 3): sign out (before leaving the operating theatre)

Action	Rationale
Registered practitioner verbally confirms with the team: ■ Has the name of the procedure been recorded? ■ Has it been confirmed that instruments, swabs and sharps counts are complete (or not applicable)? ■ Have the specimens been labelled (including patient's name)? ■ Have any equipment problems been identified that need to be addressed?	This is to ensure that the correct information is recorded as verified by the team and all equipment has been accounted for. Also to ensure that the patient is now safe to be transferred out of theatre
Surgeon, anaesthetist and registered practitioner ■ What are the key concerns for recovery and management of this patient?	To ensure continuity of care and that the recovery nurse has the information to care for the patient in the PACU

Preprocedural considerations

Pharmacological support

Prior to commencing anaesthetic, the following medications may be used to ensure that the patient is comfortable, relaxed and asleep.

- *Analgesia*: this will be administered intravenously with the muscle relaxants and sleep-inducing drugs. Drugs used are very much anaesthetist dependent but could include morphine or fentanyl. This is to ensure that the patient does not feel any pain at the time of skin incision.
- *Antiemetics* are given with analgesia. These medications, such as cyclizine, metoclopramide and chlorpromazine, moderate any side-effects from administering analgesia. Antiemetics are also important to prevent inhalation if the patient vomits on arrival in the anaesthetic room or during the induction of anaesthesia. (Although the patient may have been nil by mouth, some contents may still be in the stomach, which may be vomited as the muscles relax.)
- *Induction agents* are drugs which help to induce sleep. The mostly commonly used is propofol, a short-acting medication that can be administered twice during a procedure.
- *Inhalation agents*: once the patient has been induced, they can then be kept asleep with inhalation agents although these can cause nausea and vomiting. Examples of inhalation agents are sevoflurane and isoflurane. These are administered through vaporizers which are attached to the anaesthetic machines.
- *Muscle relaxants* are the last drugs to be administered during induction as they relax all muscles and patients are paralysed. This has to be done when the patients are asleep otherwise it can be a very frightening experience for them as they are awake but unable to move. The most commonly used relaxants/paralyzing agents are vecuronium and atracurium.

Specific patient preparation

When the patient arrives in the anaesthetic room, it is important to check the patients and their details to ensure that the correct patient is being received. At this point, consent is verified with the patient and the final phase of the preoperative checklist is completed to ensure that it is the

correct patient. This is the final patient check prior to commencing surgery and is crucial to ensuring the patient's safety.

Procedure guideline 14.3 Anaesthesia: caring for patient in anaesthetic room

Equipment

- Suction
- Anaesthetic machine
- Medical gases
- Monitoring equipment

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Greet the patient by name. Confirm with the ward nurse that it is the correct patient for the scheduled operation.	To reduce patient anxiety. P
Procedure	
2 Identify the patient by checking the identification band (name and patient number) against the patient's notes and the operating list.	To safeguard against patient misidentification. Questioning the premedicated patient can be unreliable (AORN 2000, C).
3 Check and confirm the correct completion of the preoperative checklist.	To ensure that all the listed measures have been completed and that any additional information has been recorded. E
4 Check that the results of the investigative procedures, for example blood results, X-rays, and so on, are included with the patient's notes.	To ensure that all the required results are available for the theatre team's use. E
5 Maintain a calm, quiet environment and explain all the procedures to the patient including the monitoring of blood pressure, pulse and oxygen saturation.	To reduce anxiety and enhance the smooth induction of anaesthesia (Mitchell 2009, E).
6 When the patient is anaesthetized, ensure that the eyes are closed and secured with hypoallergenic tape.	To prevent corneal damage due to eyes drying out or accidental abrasion. E
Postprocedure	
7 When the patient has been anaesthetized, they are transferred into the operating theatre.	

Intraoperative care: theatre

Related theory

Before surgical intervention (skin incision)

The team in theatre includes the anaesthetist, surgeon, registrar, anaesthetic assistant, scrub and circulating assistant. Once the patient has been transferred and positioned on the operating table, before surgical intervention, the theatre team will complete the second section of the safety checklist which is 'time out' (Table 14.4). This ensures that the team is fully aware and readily equipped for any eventuality that may arise during the procedure. WHO checklist (part 2) 'Time out' has to be read out loud for all team members to hear and respond to and has to be completed before the start of the surgical intervention, that is skin incision (Table 14.4).

Control of infection and asepsis in the operating theatre

As part of the intraoperative care, the aim of operating theatres is to provide an area free from infectious agents. Large quantities of bacteria are present in the nose and mouth, on the skin, hair and the attire of personnel; therefore, people entering the operating theatres wear clean scrub suits and lint-free surgical hats to eliminate the possibility of these bacteria, hair or dandruff being shed into the environment (Tammelin *et al.* 2000). Well-fitting shoes with impervious soles should be worn and regularly cleaned to remove splashes of blood and body fluids (Woodhead *et al.* 2002). Facemasks are worn to prevent droplets falling from the mouth into the operating field. The extent to which face masks are capable of preventing droplet spread is disputed (Lipp and Edwards 2002). It is, however, accepted that masks offer protection to the wearer from blood splashes and for safety reasons should be worn by the scrub team. Instruments must be handled carefully and needle holders and forceps used to manipulate sutures to minimize the risk of needlestick or sharps injury.

Minimally invasive surgery (laparoscopic surgery)

Specialties using this technique are:

- general surgery
- gynaecology
- gastrointestinal surgery
- urology.

Laparoscopy involves insufflation of the abdomen with carbon dioxide (CO_2). Prolonged insufflation can cause hypothermia as although the gas temperature in the hose equals room temperature, the temperature in the abdomen can decrease to 27.7°C due to high gas flow and the large amounts of gas used (Jacobs *et al.* 2000). Sharma *et al.* (1997) refer to the increased risk of hypercarbia and surgical emphysema during insufflation with CO_2. Careful monitoring and recording of the patient's vital signs, including oxygen saturation and expiratory gas levels, are therefore essential during laparoscopy. Haemorrhage can occur during the procedure and may be difficult to detect because surgeons have a limited view of the area being operated upon. Electrosurgical injuries to organs may occur as a result of capacitive coupling (the transfer of electrical currents from the active electrode through coupling of stray currents into other conductive surgical equipment) (Wu *et al.* 2000). Theatre staff must be aware of potential complications and ensure that equipment is used safely and according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

The position of the patient on the operating table must be such as to facilitate access to the operation site(s) by the surgeon, and the patient's airway for the anaesthetist. It will also be dependent upon the type of surgery being performed, position of monitoring equipment and

intravenous devices *in situ*. It should not compromise the patient's circulation, respiratory system or nerves.

Preoperative assessment will identify patients who may need extra precautions during positioning because of their weight, nutritional state, age, skin condition or pre-existing disease. Pre-existing conditions such as backache or sciatica can be exacerbated, particularly if the patient is in the lithotomy position, as the sciatic nerve can be compressed against the poles (AORN 2001). Most postoperative palsies are due to incorrect positioning of the patient on the operating table (Alison and Beckett 2010). Consideration by and the co-operation of all theatre personnel can help prevent many of the postoperative complications related to intraoperative positioning and this remains a team responsibility (AORN 2001, Alison and Beckett 2010).

All movements of the limbs of the unconscious patient should take into account the anatomy and natural planes of movement of that limb to avoid stretching and pressure on the related nerve planes (AORN 2001). Hyperabduction of the arm when placed on a board, for example, could stretch the brachial plexus, causing some postoperative loss of sensation and reduced movement of the forearm, wrist and fingers. To prevent this, the board should be angled at 45° and not 90° with hands facing more towards the feet rather than the head. The ulnar and radial nerves may be affected by direct pressure as a result of insufficient padding on arm supports.

Compartment syndrome is a life-threatening complication of the Lloyd Davies position (Figure 14.2) and occurs when perfusion falls below tissue pressure in a closed anatomical space or compartment such as hand, forearm, buttocks, legs, upper arms and feet. It develops through a combination of prolonged ischaemia and reperfusion of muscle within a tight osseofascial compartment (Malik *et al.* 2009). Untreated, it can lead to necrosis, functional impairment, possible renal failure and death (Callum and Bradbury 2000, Paula 2002). If patients are placed in Lloyd Davies position and Trendelenburg tilt for longer than 4 hours, the legs should be removed from the support every 2 hours, or as close to 2 hours as possible, for a short period of time to prevent reperfusion injury (Raza *et al.* 2004). The use of compression stockings and intermittent

compression devices in the Lloyd Davies position needs to be reviewed as this may contribute to compartment syndrome (Malik *et al.* 2009). There is insufficient evidence to suggest that use of one device over another will reduce the risk of compartment syndrome, nor is there enough evidence to recommend use of both devices at the same time because this will place pressure on the calf in the Lloyd Davies position. The use of devices will depend very much on the surgeon and anaesthetist and the patient's co-morbidity.

Figure 14.2 Patient in Lloyd Davies position.

Methods of infection prevention

It is imperative that during surgical procedure infection prevention is maintained at all times. The area around the patient and the scrub assistant's trolley area are all classified as a sterile field meaning that only those staff who have donned gloves and gowns after washing their hands can access this area. Presurgical handwashing is essential to the maintenance of asepsis in the operating theatre. New research has recommended a 1-minute hand wash with a non-antiseptic soap

followed by hand rubbing with liquid aqueous alcoholic solution, prior to each surgeon's first procedure of the day (Tanner *et al.* 2007). Before subsequent procedures the process should be repeated. However, this is applicable to minor cases only. This has been shown to be as effective as traditional hand scrubbing with antiseptic soap in preventing surgical site infections (Parienti *et al.* 2002). However, the traditional 3-minute first scrub of the day is recommended for all intermediate, major and complex cases.

Surgical gloves have a dual role, acting as a barrier for personal protection from the patient's blood and other exudate and preventing bacterial transfer from the surgeon's hand to the operating site. It has been suggested that double gloving significantly reduces the number of perforations to the innermost glove in high-risk surgical patients, thus reducing infection rates during surgical procedures (Tanner and Parkinson 2002).

Legal and professional issues

Transferring and positioning

When a patient is transferred between the trolley or bed and operating table, adequate personnel should be present to ensure patient and staff safety (AORN 2001). It is recommended that an approved rolling or sliding device is used to transfer patients from trolley to operating table, in compliance with legislation on manual handling.

Safe manual handling and the safety of the patient depend on the participation of the correct number of staff in the specified handling manoeuvre. There should be a minimum of four staff: one at either end of the patient to support the head and the feet and one on either side. Additional staff may be required if the patient weighs over 90 kg.

Once the patient has been positioned safely, the intermittent compression device is attached. Figure 14.3 shows the Flowtron machine used in prevention of deep vein thrombosis in conjunction with VTE stockings.

Figure 14.3 Flowtron machine and boots.

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

In the operating room the staff should ensure that all equipment is ready and checked before the first patient is sent for.

- *Anaesthetic machine and vital signs monitor*: this allows the anaesthetists to administer the correct dosage of oxygen and air whilst the monitor displays what is happening to the cardiovascular system such as heartbeat, blood pressure and also the level of oxygen in the blood.
- *Suction unit* (Figure 14.4): this is attached to the anaesthetic machine and will help in the event of obstruction or aspiration due to vomit.
- *Vaporizer*: this is also attached to the anaesthetic machine and helps to administer inhaling anaesthetic agents. This allows the patient to remain asleep during the procedure.
- *Scavenging system*: this absorbs and draws away all the anaesthetic gases that the patient exhales so it is important to ensure that this is

operational. If it isn't the exhaled gases would be released into the air and can be harmful to the staff (Beths 2006).

- *Operating table*: as part of the equipment check, the operating table is assessed to ensure it is fully operational and performs all the required functions to enable correct positioning of the patient. It is also possible to adjust the height of the operating table in relation to the height of the surgeon and team to prevent any unnecessary strain on the back and neck. The power to the table is provided by a battery. This is charged overnight via the mains.
- *Diathermy machine*: diathermy is used routinely during surgery to control haemorrhage by sealing bleeding vessels or cutting body tissues. It uses heat from electricity and this is achieved by passing normal electrical current through the diathermy machine and converting it into a high-frequency alternating current. There are two types of diathermy.
  - *Monopolar*: this works by producing current from an active electrode such as diathermy forceps, which are insulated so that the skin does not come into contact with metal, and then returned back to the machine through another electrode such as a patient diathermy plate/pad. This creates a complete circuit.
  - *Bipolar*: this does not require a patient diathermy plate/pad. It works by current coming from the machine down one side of the forceps prong, through the tissue and back to the machine through the other side of the forceps prong.

Figure 14.4 High vacuum suction unit.

Diathermy is potentially hazardous to the patient if used incorrectly. The main risk when using diathermy is of thermoelectrical burns. The most common cause is incorrect application of the patient plate or a break in the connecting lead (Vedovato *et al.* 2004) or if the patient is in contact with metal. The machine will automatically switch off or will alarm if the neutral electrodes become loose from the patient, but if the patient is in contact with metal this is a little harder to identify. To prevent these injuries, only equipment fitted with adaptive neutral electrodes should be used. It is important that all theatre nurses know how to test and use all diathermy equipment in their department to prevent patient injury (Molyneux 2001, Wicker 2000). This involves checking that the cables and plugs are not damaged and indicator lights

are all in working order. It is also important to check alarms to ensure that these are activated if the circuit is broken in any way during surgery.

Other causes of burns include skin preparation solutions or other liquids pooling around the plate site (Fong *et al.* 2000). With alcohol-based skin preparations especially, the skin should be allowed to dry before diathermy is used, as the alcohol can ignite (Fong *et al.* 2000).

If the patient's position is changed during the operation, the diathermy patient plate should be rechecked to ensure that it is still in contact and that the connecting clamp or lead is not causing pressure in the new position. Use of diathermy and the plate position should be noted on the nursing care plan and the patient's skin condition (plate site, pressure areas, and other areas where exposure to metal could have occurred) should be checked before the patient is transferred to the recovery unit.

The use of an electrosurgical diathermy unit during surgical procedures results in a smoke by-product from the coagulation or cutting of tissue. This smoke plume can be harmful to the perioperative personnel because it can contain:

- toxic gases and vapours such as benzene, hydrogen cyanide and formaldehyde
- bio-aerosols
- dead and live cellular material, including blood fragments
- viruses.

(Allen 2004)

To reduce the risk to staff and patients, an efficient filtered evacuation system should be used, such as a smoke evacuation machine; piped hospital suction must not be used (Scott *et al.* 2004).

- The *suction unit* is also checked to ensure that it is patent and the suction power is adequate to withdraw excessive bodily fluids from the operating site. This is a mobile unit which has the ability to allow high suction power.
- The *operating lights* need to be bright enough to ensure that the procedure is fully illuminated. These are checked to ensure they are bright and all the lamps are in working order prior to every operation.

■ The *Flowtron machine* is the intermittent compression device which is used in prevention of DVT in conjunction with VTE stockings.

Equipment for laparoscopy procedure

■ Camera system (consisting of light source, camera, insufflator, DVD recorder and monitors × 2). See Figure 14.5.

■ Laparoscope.

■ Laparoscopy-specific instruments (scissors, biopsy forceps, grabbers, dissectors, ports, retrieval pouches, insufflating tube, light lead). See Figure 14.6.

Figure 14.5 Laparoscopy equipment.

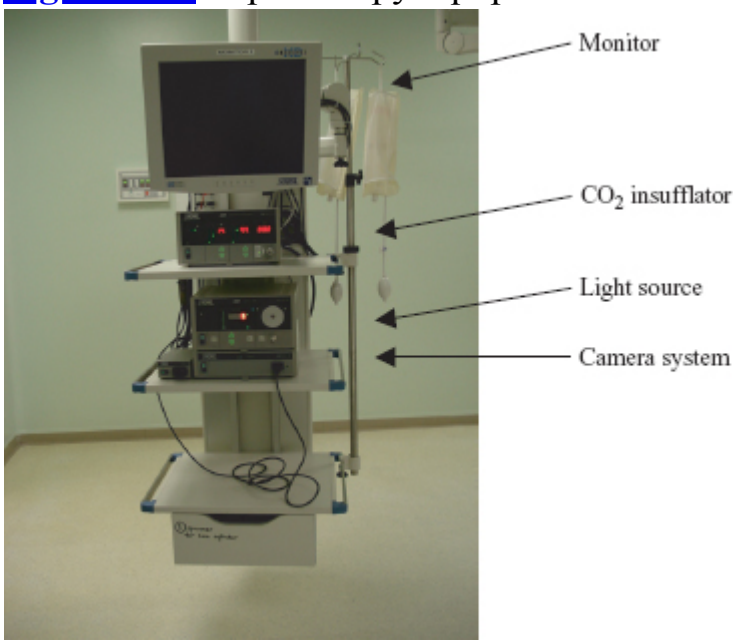


Figure 14.6 Laparoscopic equipment.

The equipment used for laparoscopic surgery is very specialized. The AORN recommends that all equipment is regularly and competently

maintained and a maintenance record kept in a log (AORN 2000, Wicker and O'Neill 2006). Policies should be developed for the checking procedure, and all staff thoroughly instructed in the operation of laparoscopic equipment. The staff must be able to 'white balance' the camera to ensure clarity of colour and picture (this is done before use) and set the pressure and flow rate of the insufflator for insufflating the abdomen with carbon dioxide. The surgeon will determine the level to achieve and this will be activated at the beginning of the procedure.

Procedure guideline 14.4 Operating theatre procedure

Procedure

Action	Rationale
1 Prior to transferring the patient from the trolley to the operating table, check with the anaesthetist that the patient's airway is protected, patent and safe.	To prevent complications with breathing. E
2 Ensure that there are adequate staff to transfer the patient onto the operating table. Ensure the brakes on the trolley and operating table have been applied. Ensure the patient's head and limbs are supported when transferring to the operating table.	To prevent patient injury during the transfer between trolley and operating table (AORN 2001, C).
3 When transferring the patient, ensure all limbs are supported and secure on the table. Ensure adequate padding and cushioning of bony prominences. The patient's position will be dictated by the nature of the surgery but must take into account the requirements of the anaesthetist and the physical needs of the patient.	If the patient is unconscious and unable to maintain a safe environment, support is necessary to prevent injury. Nerve damage due to compression or stretching must be prevented. The patient is especially at risk from damage due to pressure and stretching, so measures to maintain the skin's integrity are vital (AORN 2001, C).
4 Ensure the patient is covered by the gown or blanket. These items should only be removed immediately before surgery.	To maintain the patient's dignity. To help prevent a reduction in body temperature or accidental hypothermia. E
5 Use a warm air mattress on the operating table. Ensure all fluids used are warmed if possible.	To help maintain the patient's body temperature and prevent postoperative complications due to hypothermia. E

6 Ensure the diathermy patient plate is attached securely in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and hospital policy.	To ensure that no injury is sustained from the use of diathermy during surgery (Molyneux 2001, C).
7 Follow hospital policy for the checking of swabs, needles and instruments.	To ensure that swabs, needles and instruments are accounted for at the end of the operation. C
8 Follow hospital policy for the disposal of sharps and clinical waste that is not needed at this point.	To reduce the risk of injury to the patient and staff (Pratt *et al.* 2007, C).

Intraoperative care: recovery

Definition

Postanaesthetic recovery involves the short-term critical care required by patients during their immediate postoperative period within the recovery room, until they are stable, conscious, orientated and safe to transfer back to the ward. The postanaesthetic recovery room is an area within the operating department specifically designed, equipped and staffed for the support, monitoring and assessment of patients through the reversing stages of anaesthesia.

Evidence-based approaches

Prior to transfer to postanaesthetic recovery unit

Once the procedure in the operating room has been completed and the patient is ready to be transferred to the postanaesthetic unit, the final part of the WHO checklist (part 3) has to be completed (Table 14.5). This is done before any member of the team can leave the operating theatre.

Postanaesthetic care

Postanaesthetic care can best be described and understood as a series of many nursing procedures performed in sequence and simultaneously on patients who are in an artificially induced and traumatized condition. These patients will display varying degrees of responsiveness and physical and emotional states. It is important to establish a rapport with

each individual to gain the patient's confidence and co-operation and to aid assessment. It is also necessary to understand that when emerging from the final stage of anaesthesia, some patients can behave in an emotional and disinhibited fashion, at variance with their normal behaviour (Eckenhoff *et al.* 1961, Radtke *et al.* 2008). These displays are always transient and fortunately patients seldom have any recollection of them. Most patients will have an uneventful recovery following surgery.

Hypothermia may be a problem, with the symptoms mimicking those of other postoperative complications, which may result in inappropriate treatment. Hypothermia interferes with the effective reversal of muscle relaxants, so monitor patients who are shivering, restless, confused or with respiratory depression (Feldmann, 1988). Shivering puts an increased demand on cardiopulmonary systems as oxygen consumption is increased (Feldmann 1988, Frank *et al.*, 1993). Other complications such as arrhythmias or myocardial infarct can result and the longer the duration of the postoperative hypothermia, the greater the patient mortality (Crayne and Miner 1988, Frank *et al.*, 1993).

Transfer of patient from operating theatre to peri-anaesthesia care unit

The patient is accompanied from the operating theatre to the peri-anaesthesia care unit (PACU) with the anaesthetist and the scrub assistant. They will refer to the theatre care plan which would have identified care given during the procedure. The anaesthetic assistant will ensure that the patient is monitored for heart rate and oxygen saturations during the transfer and also that portable suction is available.

Preprocedural considerations

The recovery period is potentially hazardous. Therefore, when the patient arrives in the PACU, individual nursing care is required until patients are able to maintain their own airway (AAGBI 2002).

Equipment required in the PACU

Speed, efficiency and economy of movement are essential when time becomes a critical factor in the ultimate safety of the patient in the recovery room.

- *Basic equipment for monitoring airway maintenance*: wall-mounted piped oxygen with tubing and facemask (with both fixed and variable settings), a T-piece and full range of oral and nasopharyngeal airways. Spare oxygen cylinders with flowmeters should also be available in case of piped oxygen failure.
- *Suction*: regulator with tubing and a range of oral and endotracheal suction catheters. An electric-powered portable suction machine should also be available in case of pipeline vacuum failure.
- *Sphygmomanometer and stethoscope*: automatic blood pressure recorders are a valuable means of saving time and minimizing disturbance to patients, especially those in pain or disorientated, leaving the nurse's hands free to attend to other needs. However, such equipment can be non-functioning in certain cases, for example shivering or profoundly bradycardic patients, or if electrical and mechanical failure occurs. Therefore, manual equipment must always be available.
- *Pulse oximeter.*
- *Miscellaneous items*: receivers, tissues, disposable gloves, sharps container and waste receptacle.

These should be available at the patient's head in each recovery bay and the equipment should be compatible between the operating theatres and the recovery room. This must be arranged for ease of access and always be clean and in full working order.

There should be other equipment centrally available for respiratory and cardiovascular support.

- *Self-inflating resuscitator bag*, for example Ambu-bag and/or Mapleson C circuit with facemask. These allow maintenance of a clear airway by tilting the chin upwards and administering oxygen.
- *Full intubation equipment*: laryngoscopes with spare bulbs and batteries, range of endotracheal tubes, bougies and Magill forceps, syringe and catheter mount. This is to ensure that the patient can be intubated quickly during an emergency.

- *Anaesthetic machine and ventilator*: to ensure that the patient can be reventilated if extubated too early or not fully reversed from the anaesthetic.
- *Wright respirometer:* to measure that the patient is breathing deeply enough to allow adequate gaseous exchange.
- *Cricothyroid puncture set*: to access the thyroid surgical site to release pressure and prevent airway obstruction due to a haematoma. This is an emergency situation.
- *Range of tracheostomy tubes and tracheal dilator*: in case an emergency tracheostomy needs to be performed.
- *Intravenous infusion sets and cannulae, range of intravenous fluids.*
- *Central venous cannulas and manometer*: in case an insertion is required in recovery and to allow manual measurement of the central venous pressure (monitor failure).
- *Emergency drug box/trolley*: contents in accordance with current hospital policy. This is to ensure that all emergency drugs are in one place in the event of a cardiac/respiratory arrest.
- *Defibrillator*: required during a cardiac arrest to restart the heart.

Further support equipment, such as nerve stimulators, should be available centrally, whenever possible being stored on trolleys for ease of transportation (AAGBI 2002).

Procedure guideline 14.5 Transfer to PACU

Procedure

Action	Rationale
1 The scrub nurse accompanies the patient with the anaesthetist to the recovery area. A handover is given that includes: ■ the surgical procedure performed ■ information including allergies or pre-existing medical conditions, for example diabetes mellitus	To ensure continuity and effective communication of care for the patient. To ensure that the recovery nurse has all the information required to assess the patient's recovery needs. E The actual procedure performed may be different from the proposed procedure. E To highlight specific potential

■ the patient's cardiovascular state and pattern of anaesthesia used	postoperative complications to be assessed and monitored. E
■ the presence, position and nature of any drains, infusions or intravenous or arterial devices	To maintain the patient's immediate postoperative safety with cardiovascular system and airway. E To ensure care and management of these drains are continued and the positioning of the patient is assessed to prevent any occlusion of drains or infusions. E
■ information about any anxieties of the patient expressed before surgery, such as a fear of not waking after anaesthesia or fear about coping with pain	To ensure that appropriate action can be taken as the patient regains consciousness and to enable assessment of the efficacy of nursing interventions used. E
■ specific instructions from the anaesthetist for postoperative care.	To facilitate effective communication of the patient's care and treatment. E

Postprocedure

2 All information is to be recorded in the perioperative nursing care plan.

Procedure guideline 14.6 Patients in PACU

The following recommended actions are not necessarily listed in order of priority. Many will be carried out simultaneously and much will depend on the patient's condition, surgery and level of consciousness. All actions must be accompanied by commentary and explanation regardless of the patient's apparent responsiveness, as the sense of hearing returns before the patient's ability to respond (Levinson 1965, Starritt 1999).

Equipment

- Self-inflating resuscitator bag, for example Ambu-bag and/or Mapleson C circuit with facemask
- Full intubation equipment: laryngoscopes with spare bulbs and batteries, range of endotracheal tubes, bougies and Magill forceps, syringe and catheter mount
- Anaesthetic machine and ventilator
- Wright respirometer

- Cricothyroid puncture set
- Range of tracheostomy tubes and tracheal dilator
- Central venous cannulas and manometer
- Emergency drug box/trolley: contents in accordance with hospital policy
- Defibrillator

Procedure

Action	Rationale
1 Assess the patency of the airway by feeling for movement of expired air.	To determine the presence of any respiratory depression or neuromuscular blockade. Observe chest and abdominal movement, respiratory rate, depth and pattern (Drummond 1991, C).
2 Listen for inspiration and expiration. Apply suction if indicated. Observe any use of accessory muscles of respiration and check for tracheal tug.	To ensure airway is clear and laryngeal spasm is not present. E
3 If indicated, support the chin with the neck extended.	In the unconscious patient the tongue is liable to fall back and obstruct the airway, and protective reflexes are absent. E
4 Suction of the upper airway is indicated if gurgling sounds are present on respiration and if blood secretions or vomitus are evident or suspected, and the patient is unable to swallow or cough either at all or adequately. Suction must be applied with care to avoid damage to mucosal surfaces and further irritation or initiation of a gag reflex or laryngeal spasm.	Foreign matter can obstruct the airway or cause laryngeal spasm in light planes of anaesthesia. It can also be inhaled when protective laryngeal reflexes are absent (Dhara 1997, C).
5 Endotracheal suction is performed following the same procedure as that for suction of tracheostomy tubes (see Chapter 10).	To maintain the patency of the tube and remove secretions (Dhara 1997, C).
6 Apply a facemask and administer oxygen at the rate prescribed by the anaesthetist. If an endotracheal tube or laryngeal mask is in position, check whether the cuff or mask is inflated and administer oxygen by means of a T-piece system.	To maintain adequate oxygenation. Oxygen should be administered to all patients in the recovery room (Nimmo *et al.* 1994, C).
7 Observe skin colour and temperature. Check the colour of lips and conjunctiva, then peripheral colour and perfusion.	Central cyanosis indicates impaired gaseous exchange between the alveoli and pulmonary capillaries. Peripheral cyanosis indicates low cardiac output (Nimmo *et al.* 1994, C).

8 Feel and assess the pulse. The patient's position will probably mean that the head, carotid, facial or temporal arteries will offer the easiest access. Note the rate, rhythm and volume, and record.	To assess cardiovascular function and establish a postoperative baseline for future comparisons (Peskett 1999, C).
9 Obtain full information about: ■ anaesthetic technique, potential problems, and the patient's general medical condition ■ surgical procedure performed ■ the presence of drains and packs ■ amount of blood loss ■ specific postoperative instructions, and hand it over verbally to ensure that there is no delay in providing immediate care.	To ensure effective communication of the patient's care and treatment and to aid the planning of subsequent care. E
10 Record blood pressure, pulse and respiratory rate measurements on reception and at a minimum of 5-minute intervals unless the patient's condition dictates otherwise.	To enable any fluctuations or gross abnormalities in cardiovascular and respiratory functions to be detected immediately (Peskett 1999, C).
11 Check the temperature of the patient, especially those who are at high risk of hypothermia (Nunney 2008), for example the elderly, children, those who have undergone long surgery or where large amounts of blood or fluid replacement therapy have been used. Temperature must be measured hourly or half-hourly if hypothermic. Use Bair Hugger blankets (see Action Figure 11) and extra blankets to warm the patient.	More than 70% of patients undergoing surgery experience some degree of postoperative hypothermia (Wagner 2003, C).
12 Check and observe wound site(s), dressings and drains. Note and record leakage/drainage on the postoperative chart and also on the drain bottle/bag.	To assess and monitor for signs of haemorrhage (Eltringham *et al.* 1989, C).
13 Check that intravenous infusions are running at the correct prescribed rate and the site of the venous device is satisfactory.	Care of venous devices/sites prevents complications and ensures that fluid replacement and balance is achieved safely. E
14 Check the prescription chart for medications to be administered during the immediate postoperative period, for example analgesia and antiemetics.	To treat symptoms swiftly and appropriately and to monitor their effectiveness. E
15 Orientate the patient to time and place as frequently as is necessary.	To alleviate anxiety, provide reassurance, and gain the patient's confidence and co-operation. Premedication and anaesthesia can induce a degree of amnesia and disorientation. C
16 Give mouth care (see Chapter 9).	Preoperative fasting, drying

	gases and manipulation of lips, and so on, leave mucosa vulnerable, sore and foul tasting. E
17 After regional and/or spinal anaesthesia, assess the return of sensation and mobility of limbs. Check that the limbs are anatomically aligned.	To prevent inadvertent injury following sensory loss (AAGBI 2002, C).

Action Figure 11 Bair Hugger.

Problem-solving table 14.1 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 14.6)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Suggested action
Airway obstruction	Tongue occluding the airway	Do not remove the laryngeal mask or the Guedel airway until the patient starts responding to commands	Support chin forward from the angle of the jaw. If necessary insert a Guedel airway. Use a nasopharyngeal airway if the teeth are clenched or crowned
	Foreign material, blood, secretions, vomitus	Use suction to remove sercretions when removing airway	Apply suction. Always check for the presence of a throat pack
	Laryngeal spasm	Do not remove airway until patient responds to commands and ensure oxygen flow is high (5–10 litres) on arrival in PACU	Increase the rate of oxygen. Assist ventilation with an Ambu-bag and facemask. If there is no improvement, inform anaesthetist and have intubation equipment ready. Offer the patient reassurance by talking to them and telling them what you are doing
Hypoventilation	Respiratory depression from medications, for example opiates, inhalations, barbiturates.	Monitor depth and rate of respiration before administering analgesia	Inform the anaesthetist, keeping oxygen on, and administer antagonist on instruction, for example naloxone (opiate antagonist), doxapram (respiratory stimulant). Note: if naloxone is given it can reverse the analgesic effects of opiates and has a duration of action of only 20–30 minutes. The patient must be observed for signs of returning hyperventilation (Nimmo *et al.* 1994)
	Decreased respiratory drive from a low partial pressure of carbon dioxide ($PaCO_2$), loss of hypoxic drive in patients with chronic pulmonary disease	Ensure that Venturi masks are available and close to hand in the recovery bay	Administer oxygen using a Venturi mask with graded low concentrations (Atkinson *et al.* 1982)
	Neuromuscular blockade from continued action of non-depolarizing muscle relaxants, potentiation of relaxants caused by electrolyte imbalance, impaired excretion with renal or liver disease		Inform the anaesthetist, have available neostigmine and glycopyrrolate, or atropine potassium chloride and 10% calcium chloride. Often the blockade is mild and will wear off in minutes without treatment, but it is extremely frightening and patients will need continuous reassurance that their condition is not unnoticed and is resolving and that they will not be left alone

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Suggested action
Hypotension	Hypovolaemia	Increase the rate of fluids and ensure more fluids are prescribed	Take manual reading of the blood pressure. Take CVP readings if catheter is in place. Give oxygen. Lower the head of the trolley unless contraindicated, for example hiatus hernia, gross obesity. Check the record of anaesthetic agents used which might cause hypotension, for example enflurane, beta-blockers, nitroprusside, opiates, droperidol, sympathetic blockade following spinal anaesthesia. Check the peripheral perfusion. If the CVP is low, increase intravenous infusion unless contraindicated, for example congestive cardiac failure. Check drains and dressings for visible bleeding and haematoma. Inform the anaesthetist or surgeon
Hypertension	Pain, carbon dioxide retention. This may be due to retention during laparoscopic procedures	Ensure pain is assessed as soon as patient is responding to commands and scores are recorded	Treat pain with prescribed analgesia and provide a quiet environment to enable them to rest/sleep. Pain from certain operation sites can also be alleviated by changing the patient's position
	Fluid overload	Slow the intravenous rate	Check fluid balance sheet and the rate of intravenous infusion
	Distended bladder	Check if cather is patent	Offer a bedpan or urinal and if necessary catheterize the patient
	Some anaesthetic drugs given during reversal of anaesthetic	Ensure the anaesthetist monitors patient when reversing effects of anaesthetic drugs	Check the prescription chart for those patients on regular antihypertensive therapy. If the situation is not resolved, inform the anaesthetist. Also check patient's past medical history
Bradycardia	Very fit patient, opiates, reversal agents, beta-blockers, pain, vagal stimulation, hypoxaemia from respiratory depression	Ensure oxygen is administered and anaesthetist identifies any adverse episodes of bradycardia during surgery	Connect the patient to the ECG monitor to exclude heart block and monitor cardiac activity. Ascertain preoperative cardiac function. Check the prescription chart and anaesthetic sheet for medication administered that may cause bradycardia. Inform and liaise with the anaesthetist
Tachycardia	Pain, hypovolaemia, some anaesthetic drugs, for example ephedrine, septicaemia, fear, fluid overload	Ensure pain is managed and intravenous fluids are adminstered	Assess patient's pain and provide analgesia. Check the anaesthetic chart to ascertain which anaesthetic drugs were used. Connect the patient to the ECG monitor to exclude ventricular tachycardia. Provide reassurance for the patient. Assess fluid balance

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Suggested action
Pain	Surgical trauma, worsened by fear, anxiety and restlessness	Adminster analgesia after assessing patient's pain	Provide prescribed analgesia and assess its efficacy. Reassure and orientate the patients, who can be unaware that surgery has been performed, in which case their pain is more frightening. Try positional changes where feasible; for example, experience has shown that after breast surgery some relief can be obtained from raising the back support by 20–40°; patients with abdominal or gynaecological surgery can be more comfortable lying on their side; elevate limbs to reduce swelling where appropriate. Unless significant relief is obtained, inform the anaesthetist and the pain control specialist nurse
Nausea and vomiting	Anaesthetic agents, opiates, hypotension, abdominal surgery, pain; high-risk patients who have a history of postoperative nausea and vomiting	Administer antiemetics with the analgesia and ensure intravenous fluids are administered as prescribed	Administer intravenous antiemetics and monitor effectiveness. Encourage slow, regular breathing. If the patient is unconscious, turn onto the side, tip the head down and suck out pharynx, give oxygen. Note: have wire-cutters available if the jaws are wired
Hypothermia	Depression of the heat-regulating centre, vasodilation, following abdominal surgery, large infusions of unwarmed blood and fluids	Measure and record the patient's temperature upon arrival in the PACU and maintain temperature using a Bair Hugger	Use extra blankets or a Bair Hugger (Kumar *et al.* 2005). Monitor the patient's temperature. Administer warm intravenous fluids. In the event of bladder irrigation this should also be warmed but care has to be taken that the temperature of the warming cabinet is not too hot as this could burn the patient. The temperature should be the same as normal body temperature
Shivering	Some inhalational anaesthetics, hypothermia	Measure and record the patient's temperature upon arrival in the PACU and maintain temperature using a Bair Hugger Measure temperature every 30–60 mins	Give oxygen, reassure the patient and take their temperature. Provide a Bair Hugger and warm blankets
Hyperthermia	Infection, blood transfusion reaction	Measure and record temperature at least every 30–60 mins	Give oxygen, use a fan or tepid sponging if this is warranted. Medical assessment of antibiotic therapy and obtaining blood cultures. Administer intravenous paracetamol if prescribed

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Suggested action
	Malignant hyperpyrexia (above 40°)	This will be identified at the time of induction and all personnel will know the location of the emergency drugs	Malignant hyperpyrexia is a medical emergency and a malignant hyperpyrexia pack with the necessary drugs should be readily available at a central point in theatre. All personnel must know its location
Oliguria	Mechanical obstruction of catheter, for example clots, kinking	Check patency and drainage upon arrival in the PACU and every 30–60 mins	Check the patency of the catheter. Consider bladder irrigation. If clots present, inform surgeon
	Inadequate renal perfusion, for example hypotension, systolic pressures under 60 mmHg, hypovolaemia, dehydration		Take blood pressure and CVP if available. Increase intravenous fluids. Inform the anaesthetist
	Renal damage, for example from blood transfusion, infection, drugs, surgical damage to the ureters		Inform the anaesthetist or surgeon

Postprocedural considerations

Immediate care

Care of patients after local and regional anaesthesia

Patients having surgical procedures performed under local or spinal anaesthesia, whether intra- or extra-(epi)dural, will require a period of postoperative observation. The priorities for their care will be concentrated on considerations such as hypotension, headaches and dizziness (AAGBI 2002) as well as those for general anaesthetic.

Discharge from PACU

Discharge from the recovery room is the responsibility of the anaesthetist but the recovery staff are responsible for keeping the anaesthetist informed about any changes in the patient's condition that may arise during the recovery phase. This could be cardiovascular, respiratory or the level of consciousness. The recovery staff use the

discharge criteria as an assessment tool to determine whether the patient has achieved optimum recovery to enable them to return to the ward safely. However, if there are any changes in the patient's condition, this needs to be discussed with the anaesthetist who should assess the patient before their return to the ward.

The length of patient stay in the recovery room is dependent on the patient's cardiovascular and respiratory condition and the rate at which that patient recovers physically and emotionally from the anaesthetic. A prior knowledge of the patient's cardiovascular and respiratory parameters as well as past medical history obtained through preoperative contact is of great value when assessing their return to normal state. It also has the advantage of helping the patient to orientate to time and place, as familiarity generates a degree of security and confidence. The patients must meet the criteria in Box 14.6 before they can be discharged from the recovery room to the ward.

Box 14.6 Discharge criteria from PACU to ward

- The patient is fully conscious, able to maintain own airway, exhibits protective airway reflexes and is orientated.
- Respiratory function and good oxygenation are being maintained.
- The cardiovascular system is stable with no unexplained cardiac irregularity. The specific values of pulse and blood pressure are within normal preoperative limits on consecutive observations.
- There is no persistent or excessive bleeding from wound or drainage sites.
- Patients with urinary catheters have passed adequate amounts of urine (more than 0.5 mL/kg/h) (Eltringham *et al.* 1989).
- Pain and emesis should be controlled and suitable analgesia and antiemetic regimes should be prescribed by the anaesthetist (AAGBI 2002).
- Body temperature is at least 36°C (Kean 2000).

Complications

While the majority of patients can be expected to achieve uneventful recovery, 24% of all patients have complications (Hines *et al.* 1992).

Although nausea and vomiting are high on the list of complications (Jolley 2001), the most notable are respiratory and circulatory complications. Obstruction of the upper airway is the most common respiratory complication in the immediate postoperative period (Dhara 1997). Close observation and appropriate action can prevent the sequence of respiratory obstruction resulting in hypoxia leading to cardiac arrest (Peskett 1999).

Postoperative care

Definition

Postoperative care is the physical and psychological care given to the patient directly following transfer from the recovery room to the ward. Postoperative care continues until the patient is discharged from hospital, and in some cases continues on as ambulatory care on an outpatient basis.

Related theory

Ineffective breathing pattern

Respiratory function postoperatively can be influenced by a number of factors:

- increased bronchial secretions from inhalation anaesthesia
- decreased respiratory effort from opiate medication
- pain or anticipated pain from surgical wounds
- surgical trauma to the phrenic nerve
- pneumothorax as a result of surgical or anaesthetic procedures
- co-morbidity, for example asthma, chronic obstructive airways disease (COAD).

All factors affecting adequate expansion of the lung and the ejection of bronchial secretions will encourage the development of atelectasis and consolidation of the affected lung tissue (AAGBI 2002).

Haemodynamic instability

Haemodynamic instability is most commonly associated with an abnormal or unstable blood pressure, especially hypotension (Anderson 2003). A reduction in systolic blood pressure following surgery can indicate hypovolaemic shock, a condition in which the blood vessels do not contain sufficient blood (Hatfield and Tronson 2009). Bleeding is the most common cause but other causes can occur when tissue fluid is lost from the circulation, for example bowel obstruction and nausea and vomiting (Hughes 2004). Hatfield and Tronson ((2009), p. 348) outline three stages of hypovolaemic shock.

- *Compensated shock:* blood flow to the brain and heart is preserved at the expense of the kidneys, gastrointestinal system, skin and muscles.
- *Decompensated shock:* the body's compensatory mechanisms begin to fail and organ perfusion is severely reduced.
- *Irreversible shock:* tissues become so deprived of oxygen that multiorgan failure occurs.

During compensated shock, some patients can lose up to 30% of their circulatory volume before the effects of hypovolaemia are reflected in the systolic blood pressure measurements or heart rate (Hughes 2004). Therefore, when assessing postoperative patients it is also useful to consider the early signs of reduced tissue perfusion in detecting signs of hypovolaemic shock (Anderson 2003, Hatfield and Tronson 2009, Jevon and Ewens 2007), which include:

- restlessness, anxiety or confusion (as a result of cerebral hypoperfusion or hypoxia)
- increased respiratory rate, becoming shallow (frequently occurring before signs of tachycardia and hypotension)
- rising pulse rate (tachycardia as the heart attempts to compensate for the low circulatory blood volume)
- low urine output of <0.5 mL/kg/h (as the kidneys experience a reduction in perfusion and pressure, which activate the renin-angiotensin system in an attempt to conserve fluid and increase circulatory blood volume)
- pallor (pale, cyanotic skin) and later sweating

- cool peripheries (pale, cyanotic lips and nailbed), resulting in a poor signal on the pulse oximeter
- visible bleeding and haematoma from drains and wounds.

In most cases, if impending hypovolaemic shock is recognized and treated promptly, its progression through the aforementioned stages of shock can be circumvented (Hatfield and Tronson 2009). Irrespective of the cause of hypovolaemic shock, the aim of treatment is to restore adequate tissue perfusion (Hughes 2004). Excessive blood loss might require blood transfusion and occasionally surgical intervention. However, if signs are in the compensatory phase, fluid resuscitation with crystalloid or colloid and increased oxygenation to maintain saturation above 95% are sufficient to promote recovery for many patients.

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Although different surgical procedures require specific and specialist nursing care, the principles of postoperative care remain the same, underpinned by the application of evidence-based care. The nursing care given during the postoperative period is directed towards the prevention of those potential complications resulting from surgery and anaesthesia which might be anticipated to develop over a longer period of time. Consideration of the psychological and emotional aspects of recovery will of necessity be altered by the changed state of consciousness, awareness and knowledge of patients and their differing responses to surgery, diagnosis and treatment.

Principles of care

Fluid balance

There are several iatrogenic factors potentially contributing to fluid imbalance (circulating and tissue fluid volumes) in the postoperative patient. Anderson (2003) and Hatfield and Tronson (2009) suggest that these include:

- preoperative bowel preparation
- preoperative fasting times
- potential fluid volume excess
- fluid loss perioperatively
- inappropriate fluid prescription
- reduced intake postoperatively
- ongoing losses from bleeding
- paralytic ileus and/or vomiting.

Postoperatively it is essential that accurate fluid balance charts are maintained, outlining all fluid input (intravenous and oral) and output (e.g. urine, vomiting, wound exudate, drains, nasogastric (NG) drainage, stoma). This will facilitate the early identification of fluid loss or excess, which can be raised with a surgical colleague for appropriate management.

Some patients may require fluid replacement in the postoperative period to ensure an adequate fluid balance, avoiding dehydration and the resulting concentration of the blood that, along with venous stasis, is conducive to thrombus formation (Hughes 2004). Postoperative fluid replacements should be based on the following considerations (Doherty and Way 2006):

- maintenance requirements
- extra needs resulting from systemic factors (pyrexia)
- losses from drains
- requirements resulting from third space losses, for example oedema and ileus.

Daily maintenance fluids for sensible and insensible losses will be dependent upon age, gender, weight and body surface area and will increase with pyrexia, hyperventilation and conditions that increase the catabolic rate. Fluid requirements should be frequently re-evaluated with intravenous orders being rewritten every 12–24 hours or more often if clinically indicated. The most commonly used replacement fluids are crystalloids and colloids, which have different functions. The type and rate of fluid replacement regimen will be dependent upon the type and volume of fluid lost peri- and postoperatively (Hughes 2004).

Surgical drains

Surgical drains are used in many different types of surgery with the aim of decompressing or draining either fluid (blood, pus, gastric fluids and lymph) or air from the area of surgery (Hatfield and Tronson 2009). Drains can be open or closed.

- *Open* drains (including corrugated sheets or rubber or plastic) are 'open' to the air with the fluid 'passively' collecting in gauze or a stoma bag. As these drains are 'open', there is an associated risk of infection.
- *Closed* drains are 'closed' to the air with the fluid collecting into bags or bottles, for example chest drains, nasogastric tubes or abdominal drains. Closed drains are either 'active' (maintained under either low or high suction) or 'passive' (no active suction) (Hatfield and Tronson 2009).

As part of maintaining an accurate fluid balance, it is important that nurses accurately measure and record drainage output postoperatively. In particular, nurses should monitor changes in the character (colour, viscosity, odour) or volume of drainage fluid. Furthermore, as drains can become easily blocked with viscous fluid (e.g. blood clots), drain output alone may be an inaccurate method for determining blood loss. Consequently, it is essential that nurses inspect the skin around the drain site for signs of swelling or haematoma. Depending upon the type of surgery performed, drains are usually removed once the drainage has stopped or become less than approximately 25–50 mL/day. In some instances drains are 'shortened' by withdrawing them gradually (typically 2 cm/day).

Urinary output and catheters

Postoperatively, it is important that patients pass urine within 6–8 hours of surgery or pass more than 0.5 mL/kg/h (i.e. half the patient's bodyweight, for example 60 kg = 30 mL) if a urinary catheter is *in situ* (Doherty and Way 2006). Urinary catheters are used to relieve or prevent urinary retention and bladder distension, or to monitor urine output. Most urinary catheters are inserted urethrally but where this is contraindicated, suprapubic catheters can be used (see Chapter 6).

Bowel function

Gastrointestinal (GI) peristalsis usually returns within 24 hours after most operations that do not involve the abdominal cavity and within 48 hours after laparotomy (Crainic *et al.* 2009). Patients undergoing abdominal surgery experience reduced GI peristalsis due to surgical manipulation of the bowel and postoperative opioid medication (Crainic *et al.* 2009). The motility of the small intestine is affected to a lesser degree, except in patients who have had small bowel resection or who were operated on to relieve small bowel obstruction (Crainic *et al.* 2009). Prolonged inhibition of GI peristalsis (more than 3 days post surgery) is referred to as paralytic ileus (Baig and Wexner 2004). The duration of postoperative ileus correlates with the degree of surgical trauma, occurring less frequently following laparoscopic approaches than open procedures (Baig and Wexner 2004). Traditional interventions to prevent postoperative ileus or stimulate bowel function after surgery include decompression of the stomach until return of bowel function with a nasogastric tube (Nelson *et al.* 2005), reduction in opioid use, early mobilization of the patient to stimulate bowel function and early postoperative feeding (Crainic *et al.* 2009). Normal postoperative ileus leads to slight abdominal distension and absent bowel sounds. Return of peristalsis is often noted by the patient as mild cramps, passage of flatus and return of appetite.

Unless clinically indicated, food or enteral feeds should be withheld until there is evidence of return of normal GI motility. Postoperatively, nurses should monitor and document when patients pass flatus and when bowels have opened and the surgical team should be informed. All postoperative bowel movements should be documented (as per Bristol stool chart). Refer to Chapter 6.

Malnutrition

Surgery may exert a deleterious effect on appetite and the ability to maintain adequate nutritional intake postoperatively (Newman *et al.* 1998). Return to adequate nutritional state is necessary for wound healing (see Chapter 15) and it is particularly important that diabetic patients should return to their preoperative insulin/diet to avoid

increased risk of metabolic disturbance. Consequently it is essential that nurses continue to undertake ongoing nutritional assessments and highlight to the dietitian/surgeon when there is cause for concern (see Chapter 8).

Unless contraindicated by the surgery performed (e.g. major abdominal or head and neck surgery) or the patient's current clinical status (e.g. risk of pulmonary aspiration, vomiting and/or ileus), the majority of patients will be able to meet their nutritional requirements orally in the postoperative period. In line with *Essence of Care: Food and Nutrition Benchmark* (DH 2001), it is essential that the environment is conducive to enabling patients to eat. This encompasses the implementation of protected mealtimes, assistance to eat and drink (including provision of eating aids), provision of regular snacks and maintenance of oral hygiene. For suggestions on modification of diet for patients experiencing anorexia, sore mouth, dysphagia, nausea and vomiting and/or early satiety in the postoperative period, please refer to Chapter 8.

Any patients unable to meet their nutritional requirements orally may require enteral tube feeding either in the short term or on a more permanent basis. Types of enteral feed tubes include nasogastric, nasoduodenal, nasojejunal, gastrostomy or jejunostomy (see Chapter 8 for information relating to feeding tubes, including potential complications, optimal care and factors to consider prior to terminating feeding).

Whilst enteral feeding is the preferred route of nutritional support (NCCAC 2006), parenteral nutrition may be indicated for some postoperative patients who have undergone major abdominal surgery or those with prolonged ileus, uncontrolled vomiting or diarrhoea, short bowel syndrome or gastrointestinal obstruction (see Professional edition).

Wounds

Wound closure devices

Wounds are usually closed using one of three devices depending on the type of surgery and determined by surgeon preference: clips, sutures, paper sutures.

All should remain *in situ* and only be removed on surgical advice. For paper sutures, this would usually be 7–10 days and for clips/sutures usually 10–14 days postoperatively.

Dressings for surgical wounds

Turner (1985) wrote that the main functions of a wound dressing are to promote healing by providing a moist environment and to protect the wound from potentially harmful agents or injury. In a closed surgical wound, the main function of the dressing is to absorb blood or haemoserous fluid in the immediate postoperative phase.

When dressings are applied in theatre, it is recommended that they are not removed unless exudate, commonly termed 'strike-through', is evident or clinical signs of local or systemic infection occur (Bale and Jones 2006). However, this is often determined by the type of surgery and surgical advice. Unless contraindicated, dressings changes required within 48 hours of surgery should be undertaken using sterile non-touch technique and sterile normal saline (NICE 2008). NICE (2008) guidelines recommend that patients may shower safely 48 hours postoperatively.

The location of the wound and the method of wound closure usually determine whether the wound is dressed or not. Recent studies have demonstrated that it is unnecessary to dress surgical wounds after 48 hours and that this did not cause an increase in infection rates (Meylan and Tschantz 2001, Sticha *et al.* 1998). Chrintz *et al.* (1989) also found that early removal of dressings resulted in cost saving, reduced nursing time spent on dressings and increased ability for patient self-care. However, this is largely dictated by patient choice. Patient education and psychological support will be required prior to exposing a wound as it may cause patient distress.

If a dressing is required, a simple shower-proof, non-adherent dressing should be applied. Care should be taken to avoid applying the dressing

under tension as this may blister the skin (Gupta *et al.* 2002). Gauze-based dressings should not be used to dress surgical wounds, as these can completely adhere to the wound and become part of the healing tissue, causing excessive pain, wound damage and excessive use of nursing time on removal (Hollinworth and Collier 2000, Vermeulen *et al.* 2005).

When a dressing is applied, it should be changed using aseptic technique, as clinically indicated or as per surgical instructions (see Chapter 15). On discharge, the patient should be referred to a community nurse or educated about how to care for themselves, including observing for signs of infection and swelling/seroma formation, in order to continue wound care at home.

Drain sites should remain uncovered unless there is exudate. If exudate is present, a simple non-adherent dressing should be applied around the drain and reviewed as required or at least every 24 hours.

Surgical wound complications

Dehiscence and infection are the two main complications associated with surgical wounds. Dehiscence can range from splitting open of the skin layers to complete dehiscence of the muscle and fascia, exposing internal organs, and occasionally incisional hernia with outer layers intact (Baxter 2003).

Factors associated with surgical dehiscence include infection, age, malnutrition, being male, long-term steroid use, previous radiotherapy, smoking, diabetes and rheumatoid arthritis, which can impair healing by affecting the microcirculation (Poole 1985). Obesity causes increased subcutaneous dead space, rendering the patient more susceptible to haematoma and seroma formation and increased incidence of infection (Armstrong 1998). Tight suturing can tear the skin and affect vascularity of the wound edges, and may result in necrosis and wound breakdown (Westaby 1985).

Occassionally wound manager bags are required to drain the excessive exudate from a partially or fully dehisced wound. They are indicated if

wound dressings are unable to manage the discharge from a wound and skin integrity is compromised.

Wound infection is characterized by purulent exudates, redness, tenderness, elevated body temperature and wound odour. A swab, pus sample and blood cultures should be taken to identify the causative micro-organism and appropriate treatment commenced to eradicate it. Factors affecting the incidence of wound infection are similar to those affecting dehiscence, although drains and sutures increase the risk of infection and should be removed if infection is indicated (Gilchrist 1999). However, the signs are also seen in the normal postoperative inflammatory response, lasting up to 48 hours. Persistent inflammation beyond this period or the presence of pus or purulent discharge, or pyrexia of the patient may indicate infection.

As with drains, venous access devices, chest drains and indwelling urinary catheters, wound dressings and clips/sutures can also increase the risk of infection. See Chapter 3. Each should be assessed on a daily basis and/or if infection is apparent to determine if they are still clinically indicated and they should be removed at the earliest opportunity. If infection is apparent, samples from the device and blood cultures should be sent for microbiology and appropriate eradication treatment commenced.

Methods for management of pain

Effective management of pain following surgery requires that information about the patient's goals for pain relief, previous history with analgesics, and type of surgical procedure is used to guide decisions about analgesic regimens (Bell and Duffy 2009, Layzell 2008). Analgesics are selected based on the location of surgery, degree of anticipated pain and patient characteristics, such as co-morbidities, and routes of administration and dosing schedules are determined to maximize the effectiveness and safety of analgesia, while minimizing the potential for adverse events (Layzell 2008). (For further information concerning effective management of pain following surgery, including assessment tools, see Chapter 9.)

Methods for coping with immobility

Postoperatively, patients are at increased risk of developing DVT as a result of muscular inactivity, postoperative respiratory and circulatory depression, abdominal and pelvic surgery, prolonged pressure on calves (e.g. from lithotomy poles), increased production of thromboplastin as a result of surgical trauma and pre-existing coronary artery disease (Rashid *et al.* 2005). To prevent this complication, many patients undergoing surgery will be treated with anticoagulants, for example low molecular weight heparin subcutaneous injections or a continuous heparin infusion if the patient was previously anticoagulated (NICE 2010).

Postoperative instructions should describe any special positioning of the patient. Where a patient's condition allows, early mobilization is encouraged to reduce venous stasis unless otherwise contraindicated. For patients on bed rest, nurses should encourage deep breathing and exercises of the leg (flexion/extension and rotation of the ankles). Where worn, nurses should ensure that antiembolic stockings are of the correct size and fit smoothly and should advise patients against the crossing of legs or ankles to prevent constriction of the blood supply and swelling. Furthermore, patients on bed rest should be encouraged to change position hourly to minimize atelectasis and circumvent the development of pressure sores (Terrence and Serginson 2000).

Anticipated patient outcomes

To ensure patient safety at all times and minimize postoperative complications by:

- delivering the required nursing care for the postoperative patient
- minimizing potential postoperative problems associated with:
  - haemodynamic instability
  - ineffective breathing pattern
  - imbalanced fluid volume
  - malnutrition
  - pain
  - immobility

– infection
– self-care deficit
– patient knowledge deficit
– psychological and emotional aspects of recovery.

Postprocedural considerations

Ongoing care

Self-care/knowledge deficit

The increase in same-day surgical admissions combined with shorter hospital stays means that more postoperative wound healing and recovery takes place at home. This means that patients need to be self-caring on discharge, having assimilated the knowledge of usual postoperative outcomes and management with the ability to recognize when professional intervention and/or advice are required.

Surgery can be physically and psychologically stressful for patients, resulting in patients forgetting up to 60% of any preoperative information/teaching (Swindale 1989). This demonstrates the need for nurses to reinforce preoperative education postoperatively, ensuring that any information and discussions are tailored to the patient's individual needs, taking into account their level of anxiety and distress (Swindale 1989). Ongoing assessment of the patient's understanding of the information given should be carried out and documented. Nurses should teach the patient and carers any necessary skills (including how to use equipment), allowing sufficient time to practise before discharge. This will enable the patient to be as independent as possible postoperatively and promote an understanding of any self-care initiatives required on discharge. This should be supported with centralized evidence-based written information concerning postdischarge care at home.

Observations

Postoperative observations include:

- blood pressure: normal range <101–149 mmHg systolic

- pulse (rate, rhythm and amplitude): 51–100 bpm
- respiration rate (rate, depth, effort and pattern): 9–14 rpm
- peripheral oxygen saturation: >95%
- temperature: 36.1–37.9°C
- blood glucose (if clinically indicated): 4–7 mmol/L
- central venous pressure (if clinically indicated): 5–10 cmH_2O
- neurological response (Glasgow Coma Scale) (see Chapter 11).
- accurate fluid balance (to include input and output).

(Bickley *et al.* 2009, DH 2000)

The regularity of these postoperative observations will be determined by the type of surgery performed as well as the method of pain control (e.g. epidural). A clear physiological monitoring plan should be made for each patient, detailing frequency of observations and parameters (NCEPOD 2005). If obtaining blood pressure measurements using electronic sphygomomanometers, the operator should also be aware that errors in measurement (for example, if there is a weak, thready or irregular pulse) may not readily obvious to the operator and that manual blood pressure measurement may be indicated. It is therefore essential that nurses develop the skill and dexterity to monitor patients' vital signs with traditional manual equipment (see Chapter 12). It has also been reported that pulse oximeters can be open to misinterpretation and therefore should not replace a respiratory assessment (NCEPOD 2005). Respiratory assessment is an early and sensitive indicator of deterioration (NCEPOD 2005).

Furthermore, it is imperative that nurses are able to interpret the results of postoperative observations and, if reliant on care assistants to take the observations, that nurses themselves interpret the results, thereby ensuring that patients who require it are given immediate priority. Studies reported by the National Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome and Death (NCEPOD) (2005) established that 41% of patients admitted to intensive care units from other parts of the hospital following cardiac arrest had abnormal clinical observations up to 24 hours prior to admission, suggesting that a cardiac arrest could potentially have been avoided if ward staff had responded to the

abnormal clinical parameters (Goldhill and McNarry 2004, McQuillan *et al.* 1998, NCEPOD 2005, NPSA 2007). The Modified Early Warning System (MEWS) has been found to be a useful tool for referral of clinically deteriorating postoperative patients (Gardner-Thorpe *et al.* 2006). The MEWS is a simple physiological scoring system, based on the postoperative measurements previously outlined, that identifies patients at risk of deterioration who require increased levels of care (DH 2000, NICE 2007) (see Chapter 12). The primary purpose is to prevent delay in intervention or transfer of critically ill patients. The MEWS enables early identification of patient deterioration and, in conjunction with the SBAR (Situation, Background, Assessment, Recommendation) tool, is intended to improve communication between nursing staff and junior doctors/critical care outreach teams to 'flag up' patients who need to be given immediate priority, as recommended by the NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement (NHSIIP 2008). The call-out algorithm is intended to ensure that appropriate immediate management is started and that the need for critical care expertise should be considered at an early stage.

Routine postoperative respiratory observations will include:

- listening for audible stridor, wheeze, secretions
- respiratory assessment including rate, depth, pattern (ensure greater than 10 rpm)
- observing for increased effort of breathing
- observing any changes in the patient's colour, that is, peripheral/central cyanosis
- pulse oximetry
- use of oxygen therapy – flow and method of delivery
- any chest drains *in situ*
- airway adjuncts.

Deep breathing exercises (DBE), coughing exercises and early mobilization may be undertaken. DBE helps remove mucus which can form and remain in the lungs due to the effects of general anaesthetic and analgesics (which depress action of cilia of the mucus membranes lining the respiratory tract and the respiratory centre in the brain). DBE prevent pneumonia by increasing lung expansion and preventing the

accumulation of secretions. DBE also initiate the coughing reflex; voluntary coughing in conjunction with DBE facilitates the expectoration of respiratory tract secretions. A physiotherapist will often provide pre/postoperative advice and/or assessment for DBE. Note that the patient will require adequate analgesia and support for the wound to enable DBE and mobilization.

Discharge planning

All patients, whether short- or long-stay, those with few needs or those with complex needs, should receive comprehensive discharge planning. Postoperatively, discharge planning needs to be tailored to the individual needs of the patients, particularly in relation to advice and information on recovery and self-management (DH 2004) (see Chapter 2).

Websites

www.nhs.uk/Conditions/Toxic-shock-syndrome/Pages/Introduction.aspx

www.nhs.uk/conditions/toxic-shock-syndrome/pages/prevention.aspx

References

AAGBI (2002) *Immediate Postanaesthetic Recovery*. Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland, London. www.aagbi.org/publications/guidelines/docs/postanaes02.pdf.

AAGBI (2010) *Pre-Operative Assessment and Patient Preparation: The Role of the Anaesthetist: AAGBI Guideline 2*. Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland, London. www.aagbi.org/publications/guidelines/docs/preop2010.pdf.

Allaert, S.E., Carlier, S.P., Weyne, L.P. *et al.* (2007) First trimester anesthesia exposure and fetal outcome: a review. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Belgica*, **58** (2), 119–123.

Allen, G. (2004) Smoke plume evacuation; antibiotic prophylaxis; alcohol's effect on infection; misuse of prophylactic techniques. *AORN Journal*, **79** (4), 866–870.

All Wales Tissue Viability Nurse Forum (2009) Guidelines for best practice: the nursing care of patients wearing antiembolic stockings. *British Journal of Nursing*, special supplement.

Anderson, I.D. (2003) *Care of the Critically Ill Surgical Patient*, 2nd edn. Arnold, London.

AORN (2000) Recommended practices for safety through identification of potential hazards in the perioperative environment. *AORN Journal*, **72** (4), 690–692, 695–698.

AORN (2001) Recommended practices for positioning the patient in the perioperative practice setting. *AORN Journal*, **73** (1), 231–235, 237–238.

AORN (2004) AORN latex guideline. *AORN Journal*, **79** (3), 653–672.

AORN (2008) *Perioperative Standards, Recommended Practices and Guidelines*. AORN, Denver, CO.

Armstrong, M. (1998) Obesity as an intrinsic factor affecting wound healing. *Journal of Wound Care*, **7** (5), 220–221.

Asai, T. (2004) Editorial II: who is at increased risk of pulmonary aspiration? *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **93** (4), 497–500.

Atkinson, R.S., Rushman, G.B. and Lee, J.A. (1982) *A Synopsis of Anaesthesia*, 9th edn. Wright-PSG, Bristol.

Baig, M.K. and Wexner, S.D. (2004) Postoperative ileus: a review. *Diseases of the Colon and Rectum*, **47** (4), 516–526.

Bale, S. and Jones, V. (2006) *Wound Care Nursing: a Patient-Centred Approach*, 2nd edn. Mosby Elsevier, Edinburgh.

Barker, S.G.E. and Hollingsworth, S.J. (2004) Wearing graduated compression stockings: the reality of everyday deep vein thrombosis prophylaxis. *Phlebology*, **19** (1), 52–53.

Baxter, H. (2003) Management of surgical wounds. *Nursing Times*, **99** (13), 66–68.

Beddows, J. (1997) Alleviating pre-operative anxiety in patients: a study. *Nursing Standard*, **11** (37), 35–38.

Bell, L. and Duffy, A. (2009) Pain assessment and management in surgical nursing: a literature review. *British Journal of Nursing*, **18** (3), 153–156.

Beths, T. (2006) *Setting up the Anesthesia Machine and Scavenging System*. Ross University, Dominica, West Indies. www.rossvet.edu.kn/safetyweb/docs/Setting%20up%20the%20Anesthesia%20Machine%20and%20Scavenging%20System.pdf.

Bickley, L.S., Bates, B. and Szilagyi, P.G. (2009) *Bates' Pocket Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking*, 6th edn. Wolters Kluwer Health(Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Bondy, L.R., Sims, N., Schroeder, D.R. *et al.* (1999) The effect of anesthetic patient education on preoperative patient anxiety. *Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine*, **24** (2), 158–164.

Byrne, B. (2002) Deep vein thrombosis prophylaxis: the effectiveness and implications of using below-knee or thigh-length graduated compression stockings. *Journal of Vascular Nursing*, **20** (2), 53–59.

Callum, K. and Bradbury, A. (2000) ABC of arterial and venous disease: acute limb ischaemia. *BMJ (Clinical Research ed.)*, **320** (7237), 764–767.

Chrintz, H., Vibits, H., Cordtz, T.O. *et al.* (1989) Need for surgical wound dressing. *British Journal of Surgery*, **76** (2), 204–205.

Crainic, C., Erickson, K., Gardner, J. *et al.* (2009) Comparison of methods to facilitate postoperative bowel function. *MEDSURG Nursing*, **18** (4), 235–239.

Crayne, H.L. and Miner, D.G. (1988) Thermo-resuscitation for postoperative hypothermia. Using reflective blankets. *AORN Journal*, **47** (1), 222–223, 226–227.

Davis, P. and O'Neill, C. (2002) The potential benefits of intermittent pneumatic compression in the prevention of deep venous thrombosis. *Journal of Orthopaedic Nursing*, **6** (2), 95–101.

Dean, A. and Fawcett, T. (2002) Nurses' use of evidence in pre-operative fasting. *Nursing Standard*, **17** (12), 33–37.

DH (2000) *Comprehensive Critical Care: A Review of Adult Critical Care Services*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/documents/digitalasset/dh_4082872.pdf.

DH (2001) *Essence of Care: Patient Focussed Benchmarking for Health Care Practitioners*. Stationery Office, London.

DH (2004) *Achieving Timely Simple Discharge from Hospital: A Toolkit for the Multi-Disciplinary Team*. Stationery Office, London.

DH (2009) *Reference Guide to Consent for Examination or Treatment*. Department of Health, London. www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/documents/digitalasset/dh_103653.pdf.

Dhara, S.S. (1997) Complications in the recovery room. *Singapore Medical Journal*, **38** (5), 190–191.

Doherty, G.M. and Way, L.W. (2006) Current surgical diagnosis and treatment. In: *Lange Medical Book*, 12th edn. Lange Medical Books(McGraw-Hill, New York.

Drummond, G.B. (1991) Keep a clear airway. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **66** (2), 153–156.

Eckenhoff, J.E., Kneale, D.H. and Dripps, R.D. (1961) The incidence and etiology of postanesthetic excitment. A clinical survey. *Anesthesiology*, **22**, 667–673.

Eltringham, R., Durkin, M., Andrewes, S. and Casey, W. (1989) *Post-Anaesthetic Recovery: a Practical Approach*, 2nd edn. Springer-Verlag, London.

Feldmann, M.E. (1988) Inadvertent hypothermia: a threat to homeostasis in the postanesthetic patient. *Journal of Post Anesthesia Nursing*, **3** (2), 82–87.

Field, L. and Adams, N. (2001) Pain management 2: the use of pyschological approaches to pain. *British Journal of Nursing*, **10** (15), 971–974.

Fong, E.P., Tan, W.T. and Chye, L.T. (2000) Diathermy and alcohol skin preparations – a potential disastrous mix. *Burns*, **26** (7), 673–675.

Frank, S.M., Beattie, C., Christopherson, R. *et al.* (1993) Unintentional hypothermia is associated with postoperative myocardial ischemia. *The Perioperative Ischemia Randomized Anesthesia Trial Study Group. Anesthesiology*, **78** (3), 468–476.

Gardner-Thorpe, J., Love, N., Wrightson, J. *et al.* (2006) The value of Modified Early Warning Score (MEWS) in surgical in-patients: a prospective observational study. *Annals of the Royal College of Surgeons of England*, **88** (6), 571–575.

Gilchrist, B. (1999) Wound infection. In: Miller, M. and Glover, D. (eds) *Wound Management: Theory and Practice*. Nursing Times Books, London, pp. 96–107.

Goldhill, D.R. and McNarry, A.F. (2004) Physiological abnormalities in early warning scores are related to mortality in adult inpatients. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **92** (6), 882–884. 10.

Gupta, S.K., Lee, S. and Moseley, L.G. (2002) Postoperative wound blistering: is there a link with dressing usage? *Journal of Wound Care*, **11** (7), 271–273.

Hatfield, A. and Tronson, M. (2009) *The Complete Recovery Room Book*, 4th edn. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Hayes, J.M., Lehman, C.A. and Castonguay, P. (2002) Graduated compression stockings: updating practice, improving compliance. *MEDSURG Nursing*, **11** (4), 163–166.

Haynes, A.B., Weiser, T.G., Berry, W.R. *et al.* (2009) A surgical safety checklist to reduce morbidity and mortality in a global population. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **360** (5), 491–499.

Higgins, C. (2009) *Understanding Laboratory Investigations for Nurses and Healthcare Professionals*, 2nd edn. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

Hines, R., Barash, P.G., Watrous, G. and O'Connor, T. (1992) Complications occurring in the postanesthesia care unit: a survey. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **74** (4), 503–509.

HoCHC (2005) *The Prevention of Venous Thromboembolism in Hospitalised Patients: Second Report of Session 2004–2005*. House of Commons Health Committee. Stationery Office, London. www.publications.parliament.uk/pa/cm200405/cmselect/cmhealth/99/99.pdf.

Hollinworth, H. and Collier, M. (2000) Nurses' views about pain and trauma at dressing changes: results of a national survey. *Journal of Wound Care*, **9** (8), 369–373.

HSE (2004) *Latex and You*. Health and Safety Executive, Sudbury. www.hse.gov.uk/pubns/indg320.pdf.

Hughes, E. (2004) Principles of post-operative patient care. *Nursing Standard*, **19** (5), 43–51.

Jacobs, V.R., Morrison, J.E. Jr, Mundhenke, C. *et al.* (2000) Intraoperative evaluation of laparoscopic insufflation technique for quality control in the OR. *Journal of the Society of Laparoendoscopic Surgeons*, **4** (3), 189–195.

JBI (2008) Pre-operative hair removal to reduce surgical site infection. *Australian Nursing Journal*, **15** (7), 27–30.

Jevon, P. and Ewens, B. (2007) *Monitoring the Critically Ill Patient*, 2nd edn. Blackwell, Oxford.

Jlala, H.A., French, J.L., Foxall, G.L. *et al.* (2010) Effect of preoperative multimedia information on perioperative anxiety in patients undergoing procedures under regional anaesthesia. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **104** (3), 369–374.

Jolley, S. (2001) Managing post-operative nausea and vomiting. *Nursing Standard*, **15** (40), 47–52.

Kean, M. (2000) A patient temperature audit within a theatre recovery unit. *British Journal of Nursing*, **9** (3), 150–156.

Kjonniksen, I., Andersen, B.M., Sondenaa, V.G. and Segadal, L. (2002) Preoperative hair removal – a systematic literature review. *AORN Journal*, **75** (5), 928–938, 940.

Klopfenstein, C.E., Forster, A. and van Gessel, E. (2000) Anesthetic assessment in an outpatient consultation clinic reduces preoperative

anxiety. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia*, **47** (6), 511–515.

Kuczkowski, K.M. (2004) Nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy: what are the risks of anesthesia? *Obstetrical and Gynecological Survey*, **59** (1), 52–56.

Kumar, S., Wong, P.F., Melling, A.C. and Leaper, D.J. (2005) Effects of perioperative hypothermia and warming in surgical practice. *International Wound Journal*, **2** (3), 193–204.

Layzell, M. (2008) Current interventions and approaches to postoperative pain management. *British Journal of Nursing*, **17** (7), 414–419.

Levinson, B.W. (1965) States of awareness during general anaesthesia. Preliminary communication. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **37** (7), 544–546.

Lipp, A. and Edwards, P. (2002) Disposable surgical face masks for preventing surgical wound infection in clean surgery. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews (Online)*, (1), CD002929.

Malik, A.A., Khan, W.S., Chaudhry, A. *et al.* (2009) Acute compartment syndrome – a life and limb threatening surgical emergency. *Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **19** (5), 137–142.

McQuillan, P., Pilkington, S., Allan, A. *et al.* (1998) Confidential inquiry into quality of care before admission to intensive care. *BMJ (Clinical Research ed.)*, **316** (7148), 1853–1858.

Meylan, G. and Tschantz, P. (2001) Surgical wounds with or without dressings. Prospective comparative study. *Annales de Chirurgie*, **126** (5), 459–462.

Mitchell, M. (2000) Nursing intervention for pre-operative anxiety. *Nursing Standard*, **14** (37), 40–43.

Mitchell, M.J. (2009) Patient anxiety and conscious surgery. *Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **19** (6), 168–173.

Molyneux, C. (2001) Electrosurgery policy. *British Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **11** (10), 424.

Murkin, C. E. (2009) Pre-operative antiseptic skin preparation. *British Journal of Nursing*, **18** (11), 665–669.

NCCAC (2006) *Nutrition Support for Adults: Oral Nutrition, Enteral Support, Enteral Tube Feeding and Parenteral Nutrition: Methods, Evidence and Guidance*. National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care, London. www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/cg032fullguideline.pdf.

NCEPOD (2005) *An Acute Problem?* National Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome and Death, London. www.ncepod.org.uk/2005report/NCEPOD_Report_2005.pdf.

Nelson, R., Tse, B. and Edwards, S. (2005) Systematic review of prophylactic nasogastric decompression after abdominal operations. *British Journal of Surgery*, **92** (6), 673–680.

Newman, L.A., Vieira, F., Schwiezer, V. *et al.* (1998) Eating and weight changes following chemoradiation therapy for advanced head and neck cancer. *Archives of Otolaryngology Head and Neck Surgery*, **124**, 589–592.

NHSIIP (2008) *SBAR Situation-Background-Assessment-Recommendation*. NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement, Coventry.

NICE (2005) *The Prevention and Treatment of Pressure Ulcers*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London. www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/CG29QuickRefGuide.pdf.

NICE (2007) *Acutely Ill Patients in Hospital: Recognition of and Response to Acute Illness in Adults in Hospital: NICE Clinical Guideline 50*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London. www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/10893/28816/28816.pdf.

NICE (2008) *Surgical Site Infection: Prevention and Treatment of Surgical Site Infection*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London. www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/CG74NICEGuideline.pdf.

NICE (2010) *Venous Thromboembolism: Reducing the Risk of Venous Thromboembolis (Deep Vein Thrombosis and Pulmonary Embolism in Patients Admitted to Hospital*. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, London. http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG92/Guidance.

Nimmo, W.S., Rowbotham, D.J. and Smith, G. (1994) *Anaesthesia*, 2nd edn. Blackwell Scientific, Oxford.

NMC (2008) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London. www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent.

NMC (2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NPSA (2007) *The Fifth Report from the Patient Safety Observatory, Safer Care for the Acutely Ill Patient: Learning from Serious Incident*. National Patient Safety Agency, London. www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/?entryid45=59828.

NPSA (2009) http://www.patientsafetyfirst.nhs.uk/content.aspx?path=/.

NPSA (2010) *Checking Pregnancy Before Surgery: Rapid Response Report: NPSA(2010(RRR011*. National Patient Safety Agency, London. www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/?EntryId45=73838.

Nunney, R. (2008) Inadvertent hypothermia: a literature review. *Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **18** (4), 148–154.

O'Callaghan, N. (2002) Pre-operative fasting. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (36), 33–37.

Parienti, J.J., Thibon, P., Heller, R. *et al.* (2002) Hand-rubbing with an aqueous alcoholic solution vs traditional surgical hand-scrubbing and 30-day surgical site infection rates: a randomized equivalence study. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, **288** (6), 722–727.

Parnaby, C. (2004) A new anti-embolism stocking. Use of below-knee products and compliance. *British Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **14** (7), 302–304, 306–307.

Paula, R. (2002) *Compartment Syndrome Extremity*. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/828456-overview.

Peskett, M. J. (1999) Clinical indicators and other complications in the recovery room or postanaesthetic care unit. *Anaesthesia*, **54** (12), 1143–1149.

Poole, G.V. Jr (1985) Mechanical factors in abdominal wound closure: the prevention of fascial dehiscence. *Surgery*, **97**, 631–640.

Pratt, R.J., Pellowe, C.M., Wilson, J.A. *et al.* (2007) epic2: National evidence-based guidelines for preventing healthcare-associated

infections in NHS hospitals in England. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **65** (Suppl 1), S1–64.

Radtke, F.M., Franck, M., Schneider, M. *et al.* (2008) Comparison of three scores to screen for delirium in the recovery room. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **101** (3), 338–343.

Rashid, S.T., Thursz, M.R., Razvi, N.A. *et al.* (2005) Venous thromboprophylaxis in UK medical inpatients. *Journal of the Royal Society of Medicine*, **98** (11), 507–512.

Raza, A., Byrne, D. and Townell, N. (2004) Lower limb (well leg) compartment syndrome after urological pelvic surgery. *Journal of Urology*, **171** (1), 5–11.

RCN (2005) *Perioperative Fasting in Adults and Children: An RCN Guideline for the Multidisciplinary Team*. Royal College of Nursing, London. www.rcn.org.uk/_ata/assets/pdf_file/0009/78678/002800.pdf.

Roderick, P., Ferris, G., Wilson, K. *et al.* (2005) Towards evidence-based guidelines for the prevention of venous thromboembolism: systematic reviews of mechanical methods, oral anticoagulation, dextran and regional anaesthesia as thromboprophylaxis. *Health Technology Assessment*, **9** (49), iii–iv, ix–x, 1–78.

Rose, D. (2005) Latex sensitivity awareness in preoperative assessment. *British Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **15** (1), 27–33.

Scott, E., Beswick, A. and Wakefield, K. (2004) The hazards of diathermy plume. Part 2. Producing quantified data. *British Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **14** (10), 452, 454–456.

Sharma, K.C., Kabinoff, G., Ducheine, Y. *et al.* (1997) Laparoscopic surgery and its potential for medical complications. *Heart and Lung: Journal of Critical Care*, **26** (1), 52–64.

SIGN (2002) *Prophylaxis of Venous Embolism*. Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network, Edinburgh. www.sign.ac.uk/guidelines/fulltext/62/index.html.

Starritt, T. (1999) Patient assessment in recovery. *British Journal of Theatre Nursing*, **9** (12), 593–595.

Sticha, R.S., Swiriduk, D. and Wertheimer, S.J. (1998) Prospective analysis of postoperative wound infections using an early exposure method of wound care. *Journal of Foot and Ankle Surgery*, **37** (4), 286–291.

Swindale, J.E. (1989) The nurse's role in giving pre-operative information to reduce anxiety in patients admitted to hospital for elective minor surgery. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, **14** (11), 899–906.

Tammelin, A., Domicel, P., Hambraeus, A. and Stahle, E. (2000) Dispersal of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus epidermidis* by staff in an operating suite for thoracic and cardiovascular surgery: relation to skin carriage and clothing. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **44** (2), 119–126.

Tanner, J. and Parkinson, H. (2002) Double gloving to reduce surgical cross-infection. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews (Online)*, (3), CD003087.

Tanner, J., Woodings, D. and Moncaster, K. (2006) Preoperative hair removal to reduce surgical site infection. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews (Online)*, (3), CD004122.

Tanner, J., Blunsden, C. and Fakis, A. (2007) National survey of hand antisepsis practices. *Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **17** (1), 27–37.

Taylor, T. and Tanner, J. (2005) Razors versus clippers. A randomised controlled trial. *British Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **15** (12), 518–520, 522–523.

Terrence, C. and Serginson, E. (2000) *Surgical Nursing*. Bailliére Tindall, London.

Turner, T.D. (1985) Wound management product selection. *Journal of Sterile Services Management*, **2** (6), 3–6.

Vedovato, J.W., Polvora, V.P. and Leonardi, D.F. (2004) Burns as a complication of the use of diathermy. *Journal of Burn Care and Rehabilitation*, **25** (1), 120–123; discussion 119.

Vermeulen, H., Ubbink, D.T., Goossens, A. *et al.* (2005) Systematic review of dressings and topical agents for surgical wounds healing by secondary intention. *British Journal of Surgery*, **92** (6), 665–672.

Wagner, V.D. (2003) Impact of perioperative temperature management on patient safety. *SSM*, **9** (4), 38–44.

Walker, J.A. (2002) Emotional and psychological preoperative preparation in adults. *British Journal of Nursing*, **11** (8), 567–575.

Westaby, S. (1985) *Would Closure and Drainage*. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

Wicker, P. (2000) Electrosurgery in perioperative practice. *British Journal of Perioperative Practice*, **10** (4), 221–6.

Wicker, P. and O'Neill, J. (2006) *Caring for the Perioperative Patient*. Blackwell, Oxford.

Woodhead, K., Taylor, E.W., Bannister, G. *et al.* (2002) Behaviours and rituals in the operating theatre. A report from the Hospital Infection Society Working Party on Infection Control in Operating Theatres. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **51** (4), 241–255.

Wu, M.P., Ou, C.S., Chen, S.L. *et al.* (2000) Complications and recommended practices for electrosurgery in laparoscopy. *American Journal of Surgery*, **179** (1), 67–73.

Multiple choice questions

1 Accurate postoperative observations are key to assessing a patient's deterioration or recovery. The Modified Early Warning Score (MEWS) is a scoring system that supports that aim. What is the primary purpose of MEWS?

a Identifies patients at risk of deterioration.

bIdentifies potential respiratory distress.

c Improves communication between nursing staff and doctors.

d Assesses the impact of pre-existing conditions on postoperative recovery.

2 Why is it important that patients are effectively fasted prior to surgery?

a To reduce the risk of vomiting.

b To reduce the risk of reflux and inhalation of gastric contents.

c To prevent vomiting and chest infections.

d To prevent the patient gagging.

3 What are the principles of gaining informed consent prior to planned surgery?

a Gaining permission for an imminent procedure by providing information in medical terms, ensuring a patient knows the potential risks and intended benefits.

b Gaining permission from a patient who is competent to give it, by providing information, both verbally and with written material, relating to the planned procedure, for them to read on the day of planned surgery.

c Gaining permission from a patient who is competent to give it, by informing them about the procedure and highlighting risks if the procedure is not carried out.

d Gaining permission from a patient who is competent to give it, by providing information in understandable terms prior to surgery, allowing time for answering questions, and inviting voluntary participation.

4 Safe moving and handling of an anaesthetized patient is imperative to reduce harm to both the patient and staff. What is the minimum number of staff required to provide safe manual handling of a patient in theatre?

a 3 (1 either side, 1 at head).

b 5 (2 each side, 1 at head).

C 4 (1 each side, 1 at head, 1 at feet).

D 6 (2 each side, 1 at head, 1 at feet).

5 Why are antiembolic stockings an effective means of reducing the potential of developing a deep vein thrombosis?

a They promote arterial blood flow.

b They promote venous blood flow.

c They reduce the risk of postoperative swelling.

d They promote lymphatic fluid flow, and drainage.

6 You are looking after a postoperative patient and when carrying out their observations, you discover that they are tachycardic and anxious, with an increased respiratory rate. What could be happening? What would you do?

a The patient is showing symptoms of hypovolaemic shock. Investigate source of fluid loss, administer fluid replacement and get medical support.

b The patient is demonstrating symptoms of atelectasis. Administer a nebulizer, refer to physiotherapist for assessment.

c The patient is demonstrating symptoms of uncontrolled pain. Administer prescribed analgesia, seek assistance from medical team.

d The patient is demonstrating symptoms of hyperventilation. Offer reassurance, administer oxygen.

7 These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com **and select the Student Edition tab.**

Chapter 15

Wound Management

Overview

The aim of this chapter is to provide an overview of wound care principles and current practice in managing acute surgical wounds, plastic surgical approaches and wounds related to oncology and cancer treatment.

Wounds

Definition

A wound can be defined as an injury to living tissue, breaking its continuity (Martin 2010). Wounds can be divided into six basic categories:

1 contusion (bruise)
2 abrasion (graze)
3 laceration (tear)
4 incision (cut)
5 puncture (stab)
6 burn.

Both external and internal factors can contribute to the formation of a wound.

- *External*: mechanical (friction, surgery), chemical, electrical, temperature extremes, radiation, micro-organisms.
- *Internal*: circulatory system failure (venous, arterial, lymphatic), endocrine (diabetes), neuropathy, haematological (porphyria cutanea

tarda, mycosis fungoides), malignancy (fungating wound, Marjolin's ulcer (Naylor *et al.* 2001)).

Anatomy and physiology

The skin is the largest organ in the body and makes up about 10% of the adult total bodyweight (Hess 2005). The skin is important as it functions as an outer boundary for the body and helps preserve the balance within (Soloman *et al.* 1990). The skin needs to remain intact to perform vital functions (Timmons 2006) and without it humans would not survive insults from bacterial invasion or heat and water loss (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

The skin varies in thickness from 1.5 to 4 mm depending upon which part of the body it is covering (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The skin is made up of two main layers, the dermis and epidermis, which have six main functions: protection, sensation, thermoregulation, metabolism, excretion and non-verbal communication (Hess 2005, Timmons 2006).

The **epidermis** is the outermost layer and is avascular and thin. It regenerates every 4–6 weeks and functions as a protective barrier, preventing environmental damage and micro-organism invasion (Hess 2005). The thickness of the epidermis varies and it is thicker over the palms of the hands and soles of the feet (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

The **dermis** provides support and transports nutrients to the epidermis. It contains blood and lymphatic vessels, sweat and oil glands and hair follicles. The dermis is made up of collagen and fibroblasts, elastins and other extracellular proteins which bind it together and keep it strong (Hess 2005). Its extracellular matrix (ECM) contains fibroblasts, macrophages and some mast cells and white blood cells (Marieb and Hoehn 2010). The connective tissue within the dermis is highly elastic and provides strength to maintain the skin's integrity and combat everyday stretching and wear and tear (Timmons 2006).

The subcutaneous layer just below the dermis is the deepest extension and binds the skin to underlying tissues (Solomon *et al.* 1990). This layer is known as the **hypodermis** or superficial fascia and stores fat. It also assists the body as a protective layer and allows movement (Marieb and Hoehn 2010).

Related theory

Classification of wounds

There are many different wound classification systems available and choice depends on the type of information required. A wound may be classified simply according to the method of healing, for example primary, secondary or tertiary intention (Miller and Dyson 1996), but this does not provide any information about the wound's characteristics. Further simple classification systems include whether the wound is acute (of short duration), chronic (of long duration) or according to the amount of tissue loss (Dealey 2005). A classification system that contains an appraisal of tissue loss is considered most useful (Flanagan 1996). Superficial, partial-thickness wounds are usually traumatic and painful, but retain the hair follicles or sweat glands and part of the dermis and are usually considered **acute wounds**, whilst full-thickness wounds destroy the dermis and some deeper layers may also be involved (Dealey 2005). Full-thickness wounds take longer to heal and can be life threatening if necrosis or infection complicates healing (Hampton and Collins 2004), and are therefore **chronic wounds**.

Evidence-based approaches

Methods of wound healing

Wound healing is the process by which damaged tissue is restored to normal function. Healing may occur by primary, second or tertiary intention. Healing by **primary intention** involves the union of the edges of a wound under aseptic conditions, for example, a laceration or incision that is closed with sutures or skin adhesive (Dealey 2005, Miller and Dyson 1996).

Healing by **secondary intention** occurs when the wound's edges cannot be brought together. The wound is left open and allowed to heal by contraction and epithelialization. Epithelialization encourages restoration of the skin's integrity (Giele and Cassell 2008). Wounds that heal by secondary intention include surgical or traumatic wounds where

a large amount of tissue has been lost, heavily infected wounds, chronic wounds or, in some cases, where a better cosmetic or functional result will be achieved (Calvin 1998, Miller and Dyson 1996).

Healing by **tertiary intention,** or delayed primary closure, occurs when a wound has been left open and is then closed primarily after a few days' delay, usually once swelling, infection or bleeding has decreased (Giele and Cassell 2008).

Phases of wound healing

Wound healing is a cellular and biochemical process which relies essentially on an inflammatory process (Hampton and Collins 2004). These processes are dynamic, depend upon each other and overlap (Dealey 2005, Timmons 2006). It is important to support a wound-healing environment that encourages progression from one phase to the next without bacterial contamination, as this increases slough and necrosis (Hampton and Collins 2004).

The generally accepted stages of healing are:

1 haemostasis
2 inflammatory phase
3 proliferation or reconstructive phase
4 maturation or remodelling phase.

(Dealey 2005)

There are a number of internal and external factors that may influence normal wound healing and cause a delay in progress through these stages (Table 15.1). Growth factors involved throughout these phases act on individual cells to promote cell growth.

Table 15.1 Factors that delay wound healing

Extrinsic factor	Action	Intrinsic factor	Action
Cold	Any drop in temperature delays healing by up to 4 hours	Age	The elderly have a thinning of the dermis and underlying structural support for the wound (i.e. less moisture and subcutaneous fat). The metabolic process and circulation also slow with age
Excessive heat	Temperature over 30°C reduces tensile strength and causes vasoconstriction	Medical and general health conditions	Diabetes, cardiopulmonary disease, hypovolaemic shock, rheumatoid arthritis, anaemia, obesity
Chronic excessive exudate	Wounds should not be too wet or too dry (see moisture balance section in Table 15.2)	Malnutrition or protein–energy malnutrition	Poor healing, decreased tensile strength and higher risk of wound dehiscence and infection. Low serum albumin causes oedema
Poor dressing application and techniques	Gaping of dressing material or multiple layers Tape/adhesive not fastened securely and allowing slipping of wound exudates/dressing materials and/or bandaging too tight/loose	Psychosocial factors	Alcohol and smoking (carbon monoxide affects the blood vessels and circulation of oxygen), poor mobility, stress, isolation, anxiety and altered body image
Poor surgical technique	Prolonged operating time, inappropriate use of diathermy and drains can lead to haematomas and infection	Drugs	Steroids and non-steroidal anti-inflammatories, anti-inflammatories, immunosuppressives, cytotoxic chemotherapy

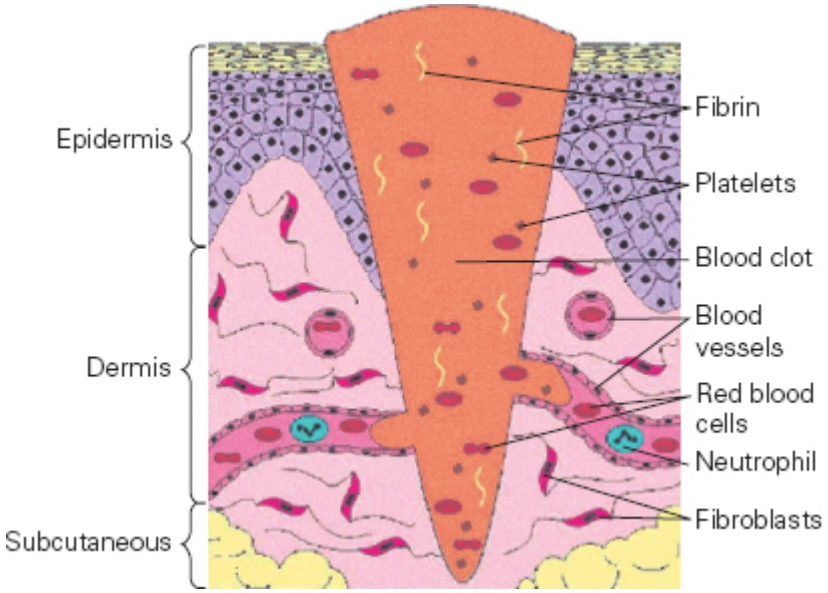
From Bale and Jones (2006), ConvaTec (2004), Hampton and Collins (2004).

Haemostasis (minutes)

Vasoconstriction occurs within a few seconds of tissue injury and damaged blood vessels constrict to stem the blood flow. When platelets come into contact with exposed collagen from damaged blood vessels, they release chemical messengers that stimulate a 'clotting cascade' (Flanagan 2000, Hampton and Collins 2004, Timmons 2006). Platelets adhere to vessel walls and are stabilized by fibrin networks to form a clot. Bleeding ceases when the blood vessels thrombose, usually within 5–10 minutes of injury (Hampton and Collins 2004). See Figure 15.1.

Figure 15.1 Haemostasis in a wound.

Reproduced by kind permission of Wayne Naylor.

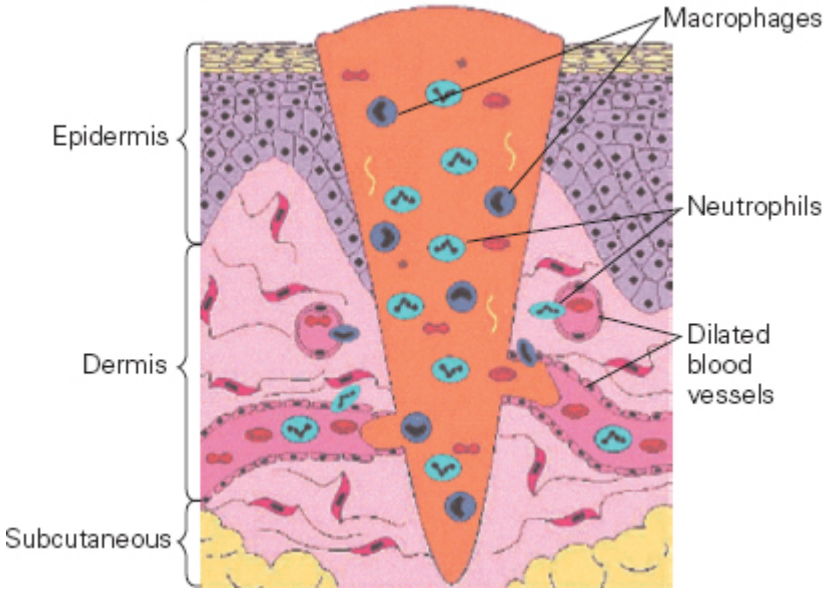


Inflammatory phase (1–5 days)

With the activation of clotting factors comes the release of histamine and vasodilation begins (Dowsett 2002, Flanagan 1996). The liberation of histamine also increases the permeability of the capillary walls and plasma proteins, leucocytes, antibodies and electrolytes exude into the surrounding tissues. The wound becomes red, swollen and hot. These signs are accompanied by pain and tenderness at the wound site, last for 1–3 days and can be mistaken for wound infection (Hampton 2008). See Figure 15.2.

Figure 15.2 The inflammatory phase of wound healing.

Reproduced by kind permission of Wayne Naylor.



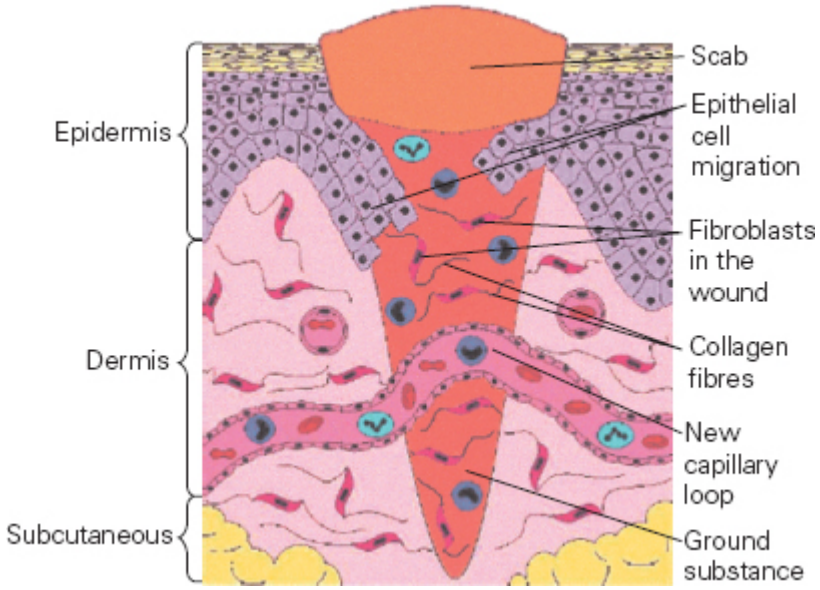
Polymorphonuclear leucocytes and macrophages migrate to the wound within hours and these phagocytose debris and bacteria and begin the process of repair (Hart 2002). If the number and function of macrophages are reduced, as may occur in disease, for example diabetes (Springett 2002), or due to treatment, for example chemotherapy in cancer patients (Tobias and Hochhauser 2010), healing processes are affected. Nutrients and oxygen are required to produce the cellular activity and therefore malnourished patients and hypoxic wounds are more susceptible to infection (Dealey 2005, Timmons 2006). The breakdown of debris causes an increased osmolarity within the area, resulting in further swelling. A chronic wound can get stuck in this phase of wound healing (Collier 2002, Dealey 2005, Hampton and Collins 2004) with prolonged healing, tendency to infection and high levels of exudate (Timmons 2006).

Proliferative phase (3–24 days)

Acute wounds will start to granulate within 3 days, but the inflammatory and proliferative phases can overlap, with both granulation and sloughy tissue present (Timmons 2006). See Figure 15.3.

Figure 15.3 The proliferative phase of wound healing.

Reproduced by kind permission of Wayne Naylor.



The fibroblasts are activated to divide and produce collagen by processes initiated by the macrophages (Timmons 2006). Newly synthesized collagen creates a 'healing ridge' below an intact suture line, thus giving an indication of how primary wound healing is progressing. Wound healing by secondary intention will also have a healing rim around it as the wound contracts. This mechanism is dependent on the presence of iron, vitamin C and oxygen. Vitamin C (ascorbic acid) and lactate are stimulants for fibroblast activity (Hampton and Collins 2004). Fibroblasts are also dependent on the local oxygen supply (Dealey 2005). The wound surface and the oxygen tension within encourage the macrophages to instigate the process of angiogenesis, forming new blood cell vessels (Dealey 2005, Hampton and Collins 2004). These vessels branch and join other vessels, forming loops. The fragile capillary loops are held within a framework of collagen. This complex is known as granulation tissue. At this stage, the wound will appear pink and moist with raised red bumps (Hampton and Collins 2004).

The process of wound contraction can significantly reduce the size of the wound and the area that new tissue must cover. It is extremely important and only observable in open wounds healing by secondary intention. There is debate about the exact method by which wound contraction occurs (Tejero-Trujeque 2001).

Re-epithelialization of the wound usually begins within 24 hours of injury (Calvin 1998, Garrett 1997). Macrophages produce a number of growth factors including keratinocyte growth factor (KGF) which stimulates a proliferation of cells within the wound bed (Timmons 2006). Epithelial cells (keratinocytes) may migrate from hair follicles and sweat glands within the wound or from the perimeter of the wound (Moore and Foster 1998). Endothelial buds grow and the fibroblasts continue the process of repair by laying down fibrous tissue (Hampton and Collins 2004). Epithelial cells will burrow under contaminated debris and unwanted material (Waldorf and Fewkes 1995) while also secreting an enzyme that separates the scab from underlying tissue. Dissolving dry eschar requires nearly 50% of the cell's metabolic energy (Dealey 2005). Through a mechanism called contact inhibition, epithelial cells will cease migrating when they come into contact with other epithelial cells (Garrett 1997).

Epithelialization (migration, mitosis and differentiation) occurs at an increased rate in a moist wound environment, as do the synthesis of collagen and formation of new capillaries (Flanagan 1999). Wound contraction is a function of myofibroblasts, which are prominent in granulating tissue. The extent of wound contraction is dependent on the number of myofibroblasts present and it is maintained by collagen deposition and cross-linking (Giele and Cassell 2008). The rate of epithelialization is influenced by growth factors (Timmons 2006) but little is known about the reality of growth factor activity in chronic wounds (Hampton and Collins 2004).

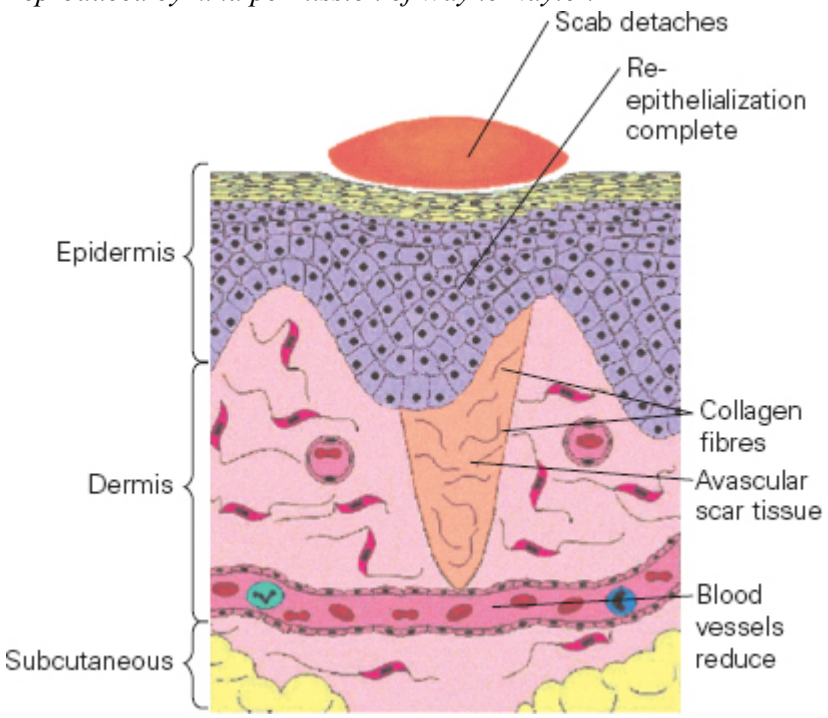
Maturation phase (21 days onward)

This stage begins at around 21 days following the initial injury (Figure 15.4). Maturation or remodelling of the healed wound may last for more than a year. Collagen is reorganized, the fibres becoming enlarged and orientated along the lines of tension in the wound (at right angles to the wound margin) (Silver 1994). This occurs via a process of lysis and resynthesis. Intermolecular cross-linking aids the tensile strength of the wound. During this reorganization fibroblasts may constrict the neighbouring collagen fibres surrounding them, causing contraction of

the tissue and reduction of blood vessels within the scar (Cho and Hunt 2001). Maximum strength is reached in approximately 3 months, although the scar will only achieve about 70–80% of normal skin strength (Calvin 1998, Ehrlich 1998). At the end of the maturation phase, the delicate granulation tissue of the wound will have been replaced by stronger avascular scar tissue. Rationalization of the blood vessels also results in thinning and fading of the scar, although it is not fully known why this varies amongst people (Dealey 2005).

Figure 15.4 The maturation phase of wound healing.

Reproduced by kind permission of Wayne Naylor.



Methods of wound assessment

In order to provide a method of wound assessment and a simple way of selecting appropriate dressings, an international group of wound care experts developed a concept using 'TIME' (tissue, infection/inflammation, moisture balance and edge advancement) as an acronym to identify the key barriers to healing (Dowsett and Ayello 2004, Werdin *et al.* 2008) (see Table 15.2).

Table 15.2 TIME principles for wound bed preparation

TIME	Status	Problem	Solution
Tissue	Tissue not viable	Defective matrix cell debris impairing healing	Debridement
Inflammation and infection	Colonized → infection continuum	Wound healing delayed	Topical antimicrobials dependent on bacterial load
Moisture balance	Dry → excessive moisture	Maceration potential	Restore moisture balance Prevent maceration to peri-wound margins
Edge of wound	Non-migrating keratinocytes	Wound not closing	Reassess cause or consider corrective therapies

Adapted from Schultz *et al.* (2003); permission granted by Smith & Nephew.

Wound bed preparation

Wound bed preparation (WBP) focuses on controlling and optimizing the wound environment for healing (Falanga 2000). It provides a means of bringing together a cohesive plan of both patient and wound care (Ayello *et al.* 2004, Vowden and Vowden 2002).

Tissue factors affecting wound healing

The rate of wound healing varies depending on the general health of the individual, the location of the wound, the degree of damage and the treatment applied. It is necessary when treating a wound to appraise all potential detrimental factors and minimize them, where possible, in order to provide the optimum systemic, local and external conditions for healing.

Factors that may delay healing include disease (including malignancy), poor nutritional state and infection. Other influences involve the local microenvironment of the wound, including temperature, pH, humidity, air gas composition, oxygen tension, blood supply and inflammation (Storch and Rice 2005). Whether this influence is positive or negative may depend on the stage of wound healing that has been reached. Other important considerations are external variables such as continuing trauma, possibly caused by treatment or the presence of foreign bodies. Factors known to affect wound healing are listed in Table 15.1.

Achieving a well-vascularized wound bed

Improving the blood flow to the wound bed will increase the availability of nutrients, oxygen, active cells and growth factors within the wound environment (Collier 2002). This may be achieved through the use of compression therapy, topical negative pressure therapy or wound management products that exert an osmotic pull on the wound bed, increasing capillary growth, for example Vacutex (Collier 2002).

Debridement of devitalized tissue

Surgical debridement is the most effective method of removing necrotic tissue (Wolcott *et al.* 2009). It is performed by a surgeon and usually involves excision of extensive or deep areas of necrosis, usually to the point of bleeding viable tissue to 'kickstart' healing (Hampton and Collins 2004). While this option is very effective, it carries the risks associated with general anaesthesia. An alternative method of rapid debridement is 'sharp' debridement, which may be utilized for the removal of loose, devitalized, superficial tissue only (Vowden and Vowden 1999). Sharp debridement can be performed at the patient's bedside by an experienced healthcare professional with relevant training (Poston 1996). However, this can be a dangerous practice in inexperienced hands and is controversial (Fairbairn *et al.* 2002). Potentially, ligaments may be severed as they can have the appearance of sloughy tissue or vascular damage could occur (Hampton and Collins 2004). It is also acknowledged that informed patient consent is required as this is an invasive procedure with potential risks and complications (Fairbairn *et al.* 2002).

Autolytic debridement is recommended as a less invasive technique which utilizes the body's natural debriding mechanism. This effect is enhanced in a moist wound environment, which can be achieved through the use of hydrogel dressings or semi-occlusive dressings that maintain moisture at the wound surface. Many dressings are designed for this purpose and break down necrotic tissue naturally (Hampton and Collins 2004, Hess 2005) (Table 15.3).

Table 15.3 Dressing groups. Please refer to manufacturer's recommendations with regard to individual products

Dressings	Description	Advantages	Disadvantages
Activated charcoal	Contains a layer of activated charcoal that traps and reduces odour-causing molecules *Example*: Carbonet, Clinisorb	Easy to apply as either primary or secondary dressing; can be combined with another dressing with absorbency *Example*: Kaltocarb	Need to obtain a good seal to prevent leakage of odour; some dressings lose effectiveness when wet[a]
Adhesive island	Consists of a low adherent absorbent pad located centrally on an adhesive backing *Example*: Mepore and Pad, Opsite Post-Op	Quick and easy to apply; protects the suture line from contamination and absorbs exudate/blood	Only suitable for light exudate; some can cause skin damage (excoriation, blistering) if applied incorrectly
Alginates	A textile fibre dressing made from seaweed; the soft woven fibres gel as they absorb exudate and promote autolytic debridement. Available as a sheet, ribbon or packing *Example*: Kaltostat, Sorbsan, Algisorb	Are suitable for moderate to heavy exudate; can be used on infected wounds; useful for sinus and fistula drainage; have haemostatic properties; can be irrigated out of wound with warm saline	Cannot be used on dry wounds or wound with hard necrotic tissue (eschar); sometimes a mild burning or 'drawing' sensation is reported on application[a]
Antimicrobials	These topical dressings can be used as primary or secondary dressings and are available as a primary layer (*example*: Acticoat) and impregnated in other dressings (*examples*: Aquacel Ag, Mepilex Ag, Allevyn Ag) or as a cream (*example*: Flamazine)	Suitable for chronic wounds with heavy exudate that need protection from bacterial contamination by providing a broad range of antimicrobial activity; can reduce or prevent infection	Cannot be used during radiotherapy; sometimes sensitivity occurs with the use of silver and some skin staining can occur; instructions vary with products and dressings are expensive Evidence base for use is controversial and needs monitoring[a]
Capillary wound dressings	Composed of 100% polyester filament outer layers and a 65% polyester and 35% cotton woven inner layer; outer layer draws exudate, interstitial fluid and necrotic tissue into the inner layer via a capillary action *Example*: Vacutex	Suitable for light to heavy exudate; debride necrotic tissue; protect and insulate the wound; maintain a moist environment and prevent maceration; encourage development of granulation tissue; can be cut to any shape and are available in large rolls; can be used as a wick to drain sinus and cavity wounds	Can be hard to cut and are quite stiff to fit into wounds; cannot be used on malignant wounds or where there is the risk of bleeding due to the 'drawing' action and resultant increase in blood flow to the wound bed Expensive and should be used on a named patient basis

Dressings	Description	Advantages	Disadvantages
Collagen	This protein is fibrous and insoluble and produced by fibroblasts. Collagen encourages collagen fibres into the granulation tissue. It is available in sheets/gels *Example*: Promogran	Conforms well to wound surface, maintains a moist environment, suitable for most wounds to accelerate healing. Supports ECM	Not recommended for necrotic wounds[a]
Foams	Produced in a variety of forms, most being constructed of polyurethane foam and may have one or more layers; foam cavity dressings are also available *Examples*: Allevyn, Mepilex, Biatain, PolyMem	Suitable for use with open, exuding wounds; highly absorbent, non-adherent and maintain a moist wound bed Available for low-high exudates and/or bordered to simplify dressing choice	May be difficult to use in wounds with deep tracts and need a combined approach with an alginate or in fungating wounds
Honey – most widely used is Manuka honey	Available as tubes of liquid honey (*example*: Actibalm) or impregnated dressings (*example*: Activon Tulle; Mesitran (with hydrogel sheet))	Suitable for acute and chronic infected, necrotic or sloughy wounds; provides a moist wound environment; non-adherent; antibacterial; assists with wound debridement; eliminates wound malodour; has an anti-inflammatory effect	Can be messy to use and causes leakage if excess exudate is present[a] May have a burning/drawing effect when first applied
Hydrocolloid	Usually consists of a base material containing gelatin, pectin and carboxymethylcellulose combined with adhesives and polymers; base material may be bonded to either a semi-permeable film or a film plus polyurethane foam; some have a border	Suitable for acute and chronic wounds with low to no exudate; provides a moist wound environment; promotes wound debridement; provides thermal insulation; waterproof and barrier to micro-organisms; easy to use	May release degradation products into the wound; strong odour produced as dressing interacts with exudate; some hydrocolloids cannot be used on infected wounds
Hydrofibre	Same consistency as hydrocolloid but in a soft woven sheet (also available with silver or combined with Duoderm in Combiderm) *Example*: Aquacel	Forms a soft, hydrophilic, gas-permeable gel on contact with the wound and manages exudate whilst preventing maceration of wound edge Easy to remove without trauma to wound bed	Does not have haemostatic property of alginates[a]
Hydrogels	Contain 17.5–90% water depending on the product, plus various other components to form a gel or solid sheet *Examples*: AquaForm Gel, Granugel, Geliperm (Sheet)	Suitable for light exudate wounds; absorb small amounts of exudate; donate fluid to dry necrotic tissue; reduce pain and are cooling; low trauma at dressing changes; can be used as carrier for drugs	Cool the wound surface; use with caution in infected wounds; can cause skin maceration due to leakage if too much gel is applied or the wound has moderate to heavy exudate[a] Moderate care of sheets so they do not dry out

Dressings	Description	Advantages	Disadvantages
Semi-permeable films	Polyurethane film with a hypoallergenic acrylic adhesive; have a variety of application methods often consisting of a plastic or cardboard carrier *Examples*: Tegaderm, Opsite	Only suitable for shallow superficial wounds; prophylactic use against friction damage; useful as retention dressing; allow passage of water vapour; allow monitoring of the wound	Possibility of adhesive trauma if removed incorrectly; do not contain exudate and can macerate, slip or leak Should not be used to cover an Allevyn dressing
Skin barrier film	Alcohol-free liquid polymer that forms a protective film on the skin *Example*: Cavilon (also comes as a barrier cream)	Non-cytotoxic; does not sting if applied to raw areas of skin; high wash-off resistance; protects the skin from body fluids, friction and shear and the effects of adhesive products	Requires good manual dexterity to apply; may cause skin warming on application

Dealey (2005), Hess (2005).
[a] Requires a secondary dressing.
Dressing Data Cards are also available from World Wide Wounds (2004).

Inflammation and infection (or bacterial burden)

It is generally agreed that all chronic wounds harbour a variety of bacteria to some degree and this can range from contamination through colonization to infection. There is also a stage between colonization and infection called 'critical colonization' where the bacterial load has reached a level just below clinical infection (Collier 2002). When a wound becomes infected, it will display the characteristic signs of heat, redness, swelling, pain, heavy exudate and malodour. The patient may also develop generalized pyrexia. However, immunosuppressed patients, diabetic patients or those on systemic steroid therapy may not present with the classic signs of infection. Instead, they may experience delayed healing, breakdown of the wound, presence of friable granulation tissue that bleeds easily, formation of an epithelial tissue bridge over the wound, increased production of exudate and malodour and increased pain (Cutting 1998, Gilchrist 1999). Careful wound assessment is essential to identify potential sites for infection, although routine swabbing of the area is not considered to be beneficial (Donovan 1998).

Methods available for the management of wound infection or to decrease the bacterial burden in the wound include debridement, antimicrobial dressings, for example those containing iodine or silver, topical negative pressure therapy and antibiotic therapy. Honey and

essential oils have also been used and there is a growing body of literature to this effect. Appropriate antibiotic treatment of the infection should be determined from a positive wound swab(s).

Moisture balance

wound exudate usually performs a useful function of cleaning the wound and providing nutrients to the healing wound bed. However, in the presence of excess exudate, the process of wound healing can be adversely affected. This is especially so in chronic wounds where wound fluid may actually prevent the proliferation of cells vital to wound healing, such as fibroblasts, keratinocytes and endothelial cells (Vowden and Vowden 2002).

The control of oedema or lymphoedema and lessening the bacterial burden on the wound will undoubtedly help in the reduction of wound exudate. However, if the methods for achieving these goals are unsuccessful or contraindicated then exudate must be managed through the use of wound management products. These include such products as absorbent wound dressings (e.g. alginates, hydrofibre, foams), non-adherent wound contact layers with a secondary absorbent pad, wound manager bags and topical negative pressure therapy (White 2001). It is also vital to protect the skin surrounding the wound from maceration by excess exudate and excoriation from corrosive exudate. Useful products for skin protection include ointments/pastes (e.g. zinc oxide BP), alcohol-free skin barrier films and thin hydrocolloid sheets used to 'frame' the wound.

Edge non-advancement

The clearest sign that the wound is failing to heal is when the epidermal edge is not advancing over time (Dowsett and Ayello 2004). In this case a thorough assessment should commence using the TIME principles and interventions.

Principles of wound cleaning

The aim of wound cleaning is to help create the optimum local conditions for wound healing by removal of excess debris, exudate,

foreign and necrotic material, toxic components, bacteria and other micro-organisms.

If the wound is clean and little exudate is present, repeated cleaning is contraindicated since it may damage new tissue, decrease the temperature of the wound unnecessarily and remove exudate (Morison 1989). A fall in the temperature of the wound of 12°C is possible if the procedure is prolonged or the lotions are cold. It can take 3 hours or longer for the wound to return to normal temperature, during which time the cellular activity is reduced and therefore the healing process slowed (Collier 1996).

Sodium chloride (0.9%) is a physiologically balanced solution that has a similar osmotic pressure to that already present in living cells and is therefore compatible with human tissue (Lawrence 1997). Used at body temperature, it is the safest and best cleaning solution for non-contaminated wounds (Fletcher 1997, Miller and Dyson 1996). Although sodium chloride has no antiseptic properties, it dilutes bacteria and is non-toxic to tissue (Thomas 2009). Tap water is also advocated for cleaning chronic wounds (Riyat and Quinton 1997). A study demonstrated that, in comparison with sterile 0.9% sodium chloride, lower rates of infection were found in the group where tap water was used (Angeras *et al.* 1992).

Principles of dressing a wound

With the exception of wounds where the main aim is to ameliorate symptoms such as malignant wounds, an ideal wound dressing must be capable of fulfilling the following functions.

- Removes excess exudate and toxic components.
- Maintains a high humidity at the wound–dressing interface.
- Allows gaseous exchange.
- Provides thermal insulation.
- Is impermeable to bacteria.
- Is free from particulate or toxic components.
- Allows change without trauma.
- Is acceptable to the patient.

- Is highly absorbent (for heavily exuding wounds).
- Is cost-effective.
- Provides mechanical protection.
- Is conformable and mouldable.
- Is able to be sterilized.

(Field and Kerstein 1994, Hampton 1999, Morgan 2000)

In addition, the dressing should minimize pain, odour and bleeding and be comfortable when in place.

A moist wound environment has been shown to affect a wound in the following ways. It:

- increases rate of epithelial migration
- reduces the lag phase between epithelial cell proliferation and differentiation
- encourages synthesis of collagen and ground substance
- promotes formation of capillary loops
- decreases length of inflammatory phase
- reduces pain and trauma due to dressing adherence
- promotes breakdown of necrotic tissue
- speeds wound contraction.

(Flanagan 1999, Garrett 1997, Miller and Dyson 1996, Williams and Young 1998)

Preprocedural considerations

Equipment

Dressings are named and categorized to make choices more clear (see Table 15.3 for details of groups of dressings). The dressing that is applied directly over the wound bed is the **primary** dressing. Dry dressings (such as gauze) do not provide most of the criteria for an ideal dressing and should not be used as a primary contact layer as they are likely to adhere and disturb healing (Dealey 2005). This depends on the definition of 'dry' dressing as some dressings appear dry but 'gel' on contact with the wound, which maintains a moist environment, and are

non-adhesive, thus becoming 'wet' (examples include Aquacel, alginates and hydrocolloids). The wound itself has the ability to produce moisture.

Wet dressings, such as hydrogels, can make a wound too wet and be responsible for maceration if used inappropriately (Hampton and Collins 2004).

Occlusive dressings achieve many of the criteria for an ideal dressing. They affect the wound and healing in several ways. They have the ability to maintain hydration and prevent the formation of an eschar. As they are designed for moderate exudates, chronic wounds (or fungating wounds) and pressure sores are often dressed with occlusive dressings that are bordered with adhesive. They have a combined primary and secondary layer (examples include Mepilex, Lyofoam, Allevyn and Granuflex). If patients have sensitive skin (or are undergoing radiotherapy) and adhesive borders are traumatic, dressings should be held in place with netting (Netelast) or bandages. A simple secondary dressing is a gauze layer or dressing pad and tape or bandage to secure (see Table 15.3).

Care should be taken with wounds that are difficult shapes to treat. These include long, narrow cavities which require a dressing that can be comfortably inserted into the space but removed easily without leaving any fibres behind and without trauma (Bale 1991).

Dressings should be changed when leakage occurs or the dressing no longer absorbs exudates, around every 2–7 days or as instructed (Hess 2005).

Assessment and recording tools

The wound should be evaluated each time a dressing is applied or if it gives cause for concern. The aim of evaluating the wound is to assess healing and to establish which treatment will best provide the ideal environment for healing. The surface area or volume of the wound should be measured and recorded. Photography also provides a useful record of wound progression (Vowden 1995).

A list of variables that require regular assessment is shown in Table 15.1. Figure 15.5 is an example of a wound assessment chart. Teare and

Barrett (2002) recommend that the underlying cause of the wound should also be assessed, with the primary focus on details such as size and depth as well as the stage of healing. Links can then be made between the wound dressing and the optimal healing environment. The use of this type of documentation to assist in the assessment process is recommended to:

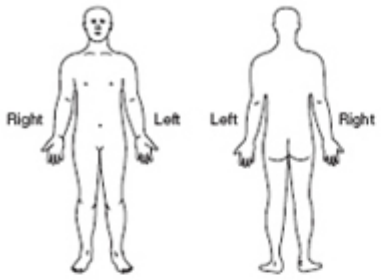
Figure 15.5 Wound assessment chart.

Reproduced courtesy of the Royal Marsden Hospital NHS Foundation Trust.

THE ROYAL MARSDEN WOUND ASSESSMENT CHART
Complete one chart for each wound

Patient name: Hospital number: Date of assessment (weekly)						
Wound dimensions						
Max length (cm)						
Max width (cm)						
Max depth (cm)						
Wound bed – approximate % cover (enter %)						
Necrotic (BLACK)						
Slough (YELLOW)						
Granulating (RED)						
Epithelializing (PINK)						
Skin around wound						
Intact						
Healthy						
Fragile						
Dry						
Scaly						
Erythema						
Maceration						
Oedema						
Eczema						
Skin nodules						
Skin stripping						
Dressing allergy						
Tape allergy						
Other (please state)						
Exudate level						
None						
Low						
Moderate						
High						
Amount increasing						
Amount decreasing						
Odour (see over for rating scale)						
None						
Slight						
Moderate						
Strong						
Bleeding						
None						
Slight						
Moderate						
Heavy						
At dressing change						
Pain from wound (see over for rating scale)						
Level (0–10)						
Continuous						
At specific times (specify)						
Wound infection suspected						
Swab taken (Y/N)						
Swab result						
Treatment						
Assessment review date **Initials of Assessor**						

Location (mark diagram):



Visual Analogue Scale (VAS) for Patient's Rating of Pain.

Rating Scale for Odour

Score	Assessment
None	No odour evident, even when at the patient's bedside with the dressing removed.
Slight	Wound odour is evident at close proximity to the patient when the dressing is removed.
Moderate	Wound odour is evident upon entering the room (1.5 to 3 metres from patient) with the dressing removed.
Strong	Wound odour is evident upon entering the room (1.5 to 3 metres from patient) with the dressing intact.

Diagram of wound if appropriate (or attach tracing/photograph):

Date: _____

Date: _____

Date: _____	Date: _____
Date: _____	Date: _____

Notes on use
Use one chart per wound.
Complete a wound assessment at least once a week.
Measure the wound at its widest points using a clean ruler, use a sterile wound swab or blunt probe to measure wound depth.
For the 'skin around wound' assessment more than one box may be ticked.
Odour and pain should be assessed using the scales at the top of page 2.
Following the assessment a wound management care plan should be written and updated if necessary after each reassessment.

- facilitate continuity of care by providing a central reference point for wound progression
- facilitate appropriate evaluation of all relevant parameters
- fulfil legal and professional requirements (Teare and Barrett 2002).

Procedure guideline 15.1 Dressing a wound

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack containing gallipots or an indented plastic tray, low-linting swabs and/or medical foam, disposable forceps, gloves, sterile field, disposable bag
- Fluids for cleaning and/or irrigation
- Hypoallergenic tape
- Appropriate dressing
- Appropriate hand hygiene preparation
- Any other material will be determined by the nature of the dressing; special features of a dressing should be referred to in the patient's nursing care plan
- Detergent wipe
- Total traceability system for surgical instruments and patient record form

Optional Equipment

- Sterile scissors

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives his or her valid consent (NMC 2008a, C; Wilson 2005, E).
2 Clean hands with bactericidal alcohol rub.	Hands must be cleaned before and after every patient contact and before commencing the preparations for aseptic technique, to prevent cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
3 Clean trolley with detergent wipe.	To provide a clean working surface (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 Place all the equipment required for the procedure on the bottom shelf of the clean dressing trolley.	To maintain the top shelf as a clean working surface. E
5 Screen the bed area and provide privacy. Position the patient comfortably so that the area to be dealt with is easily accessible without exposing the patient unduly.	To allow any airborne organisms to settle before the sterile field (and in the case of a dressing, the wound) is exposed (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E). Maintain the patient's dignity and comfort. E
6 If the procedure is a dressing and the wound is infected or producing copious amounts of exudate, put on a disposable plastic apron.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
7 Take the trolley to the treatment room or patient's bedside, disturbing the screens as little as possible.	To minimize airborne contamination (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Procedure

8 Loosen the dressing tape.	To make it easier to remove the dressing. E
9 Clean hands with a bactericidal alcohol handrub.	To reduce the risk of wound infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
10 Check the pack is sterile (i.e. the pack is undamaged, intact and dry), open the outer cover of the sterile pack and slide the contents onto the top shelf of the trolley.	To ensure that only sterile products are used (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
11 Open the sterile field using only the corners of the paper.	So that areas of potential contamination are kept to a minimum. E
12 Where appropriate, loosen the old dressing.	The dressing can then be lifted off without causing trauma. E
13 Clean hands with a bactericidal alcohol handrub.	Hands may become contaminated by handling outer packets, dressing, and so on. (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
14 Using the plastic bag in the pack, arrange	The time the wound is exposed should be kept to a minimum to reduce the risk of contamination.

the sterile field. Pour cleaning solution into gallipots or an indented plastic tray.	To prevent contamination of the environment. To minimize risk of contamination of cleaning solution. E
15 Remove dressing by placing a hand in the plastic bag, lifting the dressing off and inverting the plastic bag so that the dressing is now inside the bag. Thereafter use this as the 'dirty' bag.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection. To prevent contamination of the environment. E
16 Attach the bag with the dressing to the side of the trolley below the top shelf.	Contaminated material should be below the level of the sterile field. E
17 Assess wound healing with reference to Table 15.2.	To evaluate wound care (Dealey 2005, E; Hampton and Collins 2004, E; Hess 2005, E).
18 Put on gloves.	To reduce the risk of infection to the wound and contamination of the nurse. Gloves provide greater sensitivity than forceps and are less likely to traumatize the wound or the patient's skin. E
19 If necessary, gently clean the wound with a gloved hand using 0.9% sodium chloride, unless another solution is indicated. If appropriate, irrigate by flushing with water or 0.9% sodium chloride.	To reduce the possibility of physical and chemical trauma to granulation and epithelial tissue (Hess 2005, E).
20 Apply the dressing that is most suitable for the wound using the criteria for dressings (see Table 15.3).	To promote healing and/or reduce symptoms. E
21 Remove gloves; fasten dressing as appropriate with hypoallergenic tape/Netelast/bandage/tapeless retention dressing.	To prevent irritation of skin and to avoid trauma to wound. E
22 Make sure the patient is comfortable and the dressing is secure.	A dressing may slip or feel uncomfortable as the patient changes position. E
Postprocedure	
23 Dispose of waste in orange plastic clinical waste bags. Remove gloves.	To prevent environmental contamination. Orange is the recognized colour for clinical waste (DH 2005, C).
24 Draw back curtains and ensure the patient is comfortable.	
25 Check that the trolley remains dry and physically clean. If necessary, wipe with detergent wipe.	To reduce the risk of spreading infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
26 Record assessment in relevant documentation at the end of the procedure.	To maintain an accurate record of wound-healing progress (NMC 2009, C).

Problem-solving table 15.1 Prevention and resolution (Procedure guideline 15.1)

Problem	Cause	Prevention	Management
Bleeding	The wound is invading small blood vessels Because of their fragile vascular condition and capillary ooze, fungating wounds frequently bleed (Wilson 2005) Dry dressings are not soaked off and traumatize the friable tissues common to fungating wounds	Tranexamic acid can be taken regularly (10 day oral course; Alexander 2009) by patients known to have bleeding wounds or applied topically to specific points to minimize blood loss. It works by increasing clot formation	Ensuring that the surface of the wound has enough moisture to prevent trauma and adherence of dressings Using Kaltostat or similar calcium alginate and gentle compression is effective for small bleeds (Wilson 2005) Palliative radiotherapy (either a single fraction or short course; Tobias and Hochhauser 2010) Administer blood transfusion if indicated and patient is symptomatic
Malodour	Fatty acids are the by-product of the necrotic tissue within the wound and these produce malodour (Hampton 2008) Malodour can also be due to bacterial infection and a wound swab ought to be taken Lund-Neilsen *et al.* (2005) found that the 12 patients with malignant wounds in their study categorized odour into ordinary wound liquid and decay	Patient education Essential oils infusers (at least 2 in combination) Keeping room air circulating or windows open Allowing the patient to shower gently to remove old dressings and clean their wounds naturally Metrotop gel or oral antibiotics if infection present	Using dressings that absorb odour, and ensuring they are in contact with the wound bacteria (i.e. charcoal, silver as this is antimicrobial) Changing dressings when strike-through occurs Clearing of necrotic tissue by autolytic debridement (honey or Aquacel kept moist enough to gel either with saline or exudates) Honey has antibacterial properties and should be applied directly to the wound (impregnated versions are available to incorporate a suitable secondary dressing for absorption)
Pain	Combined causes, including general cancer burden in advanced disease The wound could be in an uncomfortable position	Soak off any dressings and use a skin barrier (i.e. Cavilon) to prevent tapes sticking Promoting a comfortable position for the patient Maintaining skin integrity	Provide analgesia on a continuous basis with a breakthrough dose as needed prior to changing dressing Minimize checking the dressing and changing it as appropriate Psychosocial support can relieve the emotions that increase pain and distress
Heavy exudates	Large tumours and advanced disease stages produce excessive volumes of exudates in fungating wounds and additional factors can be due to inappropriate dressings or infection (Selby 2009)	Absorption via appropriate dressings which allow vapour transfer at the wound surface into an absorbent backing layer	Whilst fungating wounds are often in challenging shapes, foam dressings are designed to hold excess moisture and are sponge-like, with some having a gentle wound contact layer that prevents maceration A drainage bag (stoma) system is suitable for those that need changing 2–3 times a day (Wilson 2005)

Postprocedural considerations

Ongoing care

Dressings need to be changed when 'strike-through' occurs, that is, the dressing becomes soiled and damp at the surface or edge or leakage of wound exudates occurs (see individual dressing packs for instructions to guide practice). The medical team may take the dressing down to view the wound and the nurse should be present to monitor this and reapply an appropriate dressing. Record any changes and/or instructions in the patient's notes or wound care plan (NMC 2009). Included in the notes should be the amount of exudate, any signs of inflammation or odour and appearance of the tissue (Lippincott Williams and Wilkins 2008). Measuring or photographing the wound can also benefit ongoing assessment as long as this is appropriate and acceptable to the patient

Pressure ulcers

Definition

A pressure ulcer usually results from compromised circulation secondary to pressure over time and is a local site of cell death (Hess 2005).

Measures for preventing and detecting pressure ulcers have been discussed in Chapter 4 and are briefly described here to facilitate dressing choices.

Anatomy and physiology

The European Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel (EPUAP) and National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel (2009) classify ulcers according to depth in four stages. The first is superficial damage which is characterized by local inflammation and may present as a persistent area of redness with no breach of the epidermis. The second stage is partial loss of the epidermis or dermis, often with a blistering or abrasion. The third stage involves damage to the dermis and subcutaneous layers of tissue and clinically appears as an ulcer but does not involve the underlying fascia.

The fourth stage involves tissue necrosis and full-thickness skin loss, often with tunnelling sinus tracts (Hess 2005).

Evidence-based approaches

Bryant (2000) lists four principles of wound care for pressure sore assessment.

- Eliminate the source (i.e. cause of pressure damage).
- Ensure the microenvironment is optimal (to promote wound healing).
- Support the host (using appropriate pressure-relieving aids and ensuring adequate nutritional balance and skin care regimen).
- Provide education (explaining to the patient and caregivers the principles of caring for their skin and pressure areas).

Wound dressings that maintain a moist environment facilitate healing and after a thorough assessment, selections can be made according to the depth of the ulcer and degree of damage from the dressings (see Table 15.3).

Preprocedural considerations

Nurses must consistently question whether they are employing measures for preventing pressure ulcers and whether the patient and caregivers are following the care plan (recording tools are listed in Chapter 4). Documentation should be made if the patient refuses care and/or evaluation of whether the patient improves or deteriorates should be recorded to keep the care plan up to date (Bryant 2000). Nutritional status and the patient's ability to self-care and mobilize should also be evaluated and documented (EPUAP 2009).

Assessment using the TIME principles (Dowsett and Ayello 2004) and following the procedure for changing a dressing should be practised.

Administration of analgesia as prescribed and the setting of a time frame with the patient's agreement are recommended to improve the experience for the patient (EPUAP 2009). Nurses should consult additional guidance if unfamiliar with the patient or regimen (www.epuap.org/guidelines/Final_Quick_Treatment.pdf).

Assessment

The EPUAP (2009) recommends the use of a pressure ulcer classification system to estimate tissue loss, and that the skin is assessed by colour, temperature and consistency (i.e. firm/turgid or soft/boggy).

Stages 1–2 with light exudates: for reddened areas, barrier cream and relief of pressure are recommended, whilst superficial ulcers require dressing with transparent films (e.g. Opsite, Tegaderm) as they effectively retain moisture and prevent friction (Bluestein and Javaheri 2008). For fragile skin, a skin barrier (e.g. Cavilon) may be used under the film or a light hydrocolloid (e.g. Duoderm Thin). Appropriate measures such as removal of pressure, positioning the patient and protective dressings will prevent the condition from worsening (Falanga 2000).

Stage 3 ulcers should be dressed with synthetic dressings rather than gauze as these cause less pain and require less frequent changes (Bluestein and Javaheri 2008, EPUAP 2009). These dressings include alginates, hydrocolloids and foams and are often available in site-specific shapes to ease application and removal and minimize leakage.

Surgical wounds

Evidence-based approaches

Methods of wound closure

There are four main methods of wound closure:

- sutures
- adhesive skin closure strips
- tissue adhesive
- staples.

See Table 15.4 for advantages and disadvantages of each method.

Table 15.4 Advantages and disadvantages of methods of wound closure

Method	Advantages	Disadvantages

Sutures: interrupted sutures are separate sutures each with its own knot and are used on the majority of wounds because they are the most versatile A *continuous* suture is one long thread that spirals along the entire suture line at evenly spaced intervals	*Non-absorbable* sutures are more widely used for skin closure where the material causes little reaction or rejection. A monofilament nylon is a strong single-stranded nylon providing continued strength; silk is a braided strand and fairly easy to handle *Absorbable* sutures degrade rapidly and thus allow the deep tissues within a wound to be closed successfully. They are also useful for patients who may not remember they have had sutures or will not attend for follow-up Sutures can be removed once healing has occurred, normally 5–10 days after injury	Suturing must be performed by an experienced practitioner Requires local anaesthetic Suture material is a foreign body in the wound and thus increases the risk of infection Interrupted sutures are not recommended for fragile skin Sutures tied too tightly can damage tissues and when too loose they may delay healing If skin layers are not aligned then patients can be left with a scar Forceps used to lift skin may crush the tissue
Adhesive skin closure strips	Available in a variety of widths Useful for superficial wounds that are not subject to tension Strips are cheap and easy to use and remove No local anaesthetic required and tissue damage is minimal	Strips do not adhere to sweaty or hairy skin If there is tissue oedema it makes it difficult to achieve good apposition of the wound edges May be suitable over some joints

		but where skin is taut or subject to movement, they do not provide optimum closure
Tissue adhesive	Surgical 'superglues' are now popular for emergency settings Good cosmetic results Less painful than suturing Wound complication rates are low	It is expensive Not suitable over joints and areas of high tension Needs second person to assist in getting skin edges aligned
Staples	Staples are made of stainless steel wire Provide greatest tensile strength Quick method and offers low level of tissue reactivity and better resistance to infection than sutures Can be performed without local anaesthetic	Staples are more expensive than sutures and may be confined to wounds where needlestick injury is a high risk Must be inserted by an experienced practitioner Failure to align tissue edges may cause scar deformity Only useful for superficial skin layers

From Elkin et al. (2004), Jay (1999), Richardson (2007).

Wounds may vary and therefore careful assessment is required before the method of closure is selected and attempted (Richardson 2007). Richardson (2007) lists the following guiding principles to assist with decision making.

- What is the aim of the wound closure? For example, eliminating dead space where a haematoma can develop, realigning tissue correctly or holding aligned tissues until healing has occurred.
- What is the history of the wound? This informs the practitioner about the depth of the wound and likelihood of infection.
- What is the wound site pattern? This and biomechanical properties may rule out some methods of closure.

Removal of sutures or staples

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

Removal of sutures is usually performed between 7 and 10 days post insertion, but this is dependent on where the wound is and whether it has healed. Routinely, every other suture or staple is removed first, with the rest removed if the incision remains securely closed. If any sign of suture line separation is evident during the removal process, the remaining sutures are left in place and reported to the medical team (Elkin *et al.* 2004). Note that staples have replaced clips (Pudner 2005).

Preprocedural considerations

Assess the wound, as the time period for removal of sutures depends upon the patient's underlying pathology, condition of their skin and the wound position (Pudner 2005). Surgical notes and instructions should also be taken into account along with the skills of the practitioner (NMC 2008b). Analgesia may be offered depending on the patient and wound site.

Procedure guideline 15.2 Suture removal

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack containing gallipots or an indented plastic tray, low-linting swabs and/or medical
- Any other material will be determined by the nature of the

foam, disposable forceps, gloves, sterile field, disposable bag

- Fluids for cleaning and/or irrigation
- Hypoallergenic tape
- Appropriate dressing
- Appropriate hand hygiene preparation
- Detergent wipe for cleaning trolley
- Total traceability system for surgical instruments and patient record form

dressing; special features of a dressing should be referred to in the patient's nursing care plan

Optional equipment

- Any extra equipment that may be needed during procedure, for example sterile scissors, stitch cutter, staple remover, sterile adhesive sutures

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C).
2 Perform procedure using aseptic technique.	To prevent infection (see Chapter 3, (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Procedure

3 Clean the wound with an appropriate sterile solution such as 0.9% sodium chloride.	To prevent infection. (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 Lift knot of suture with metal forceps. Snip stitch close to the skin. Pull suture out gently towards the side that has been cut. For intermittent sutures, alternate sutures may be removed first before remaining sutures are removed (Pudner 2005).	Plastic forceps tend to slip against nylon sutures. E To prevent infection by drawing exposed suture through the tissue (Pudner 2005, E). To ensure wound closure and predict dehiscence (Pudner 2005, E).
5 Use tips of scissors slightly open or the side of the stitch cutter to gently press the skin when the suture is being drawn out.	To minimize pain by counteracting the adhesion between the suture and surrounding tissue. E

Postprocedure

6 Record condition of suture line and surrounding skin (amount of exudate, pus, inflammation, pain, and so on).	To document care and enable evaluation of the wound (Bale and Jones 2006, E; Dealey 2005, E; NMC 2009, C).
7 Use of adhesive skin tapes should be monitored and they are usually left in place until they fall off by themselves.	To improve cosmetic effect and support tensile strength of the wound post suture removal, when indicated (Pudner 2005, E).

Procedure guideline 15.3 Staple removal

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack containing gallipots or an indented plastic tray, low-linting swabs and/or medical foam, disposable forceps, gloves, sterile field, disposable bag
- Fluids for cleaning and/or irrigation
- Hypoallergenic tape
- Appropriate dressing
- Appropriate hand hygiene preparation
- Any other material will be determined by the nature of the dressing; special features of a dressing should be referred to in the patient's nursing care plan
- Detergent wipe for cleaning trolley
- Total traceability system for surgical instruments and patient record form

Optional equipment

- Any extra equipment that may be needed during procedure, for example sterile scissors, stitch cutter, staple remover, sterile adhesive sutures (E)

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C).
2 Perform procedure using aseptic technique.	To prevent infection (see Chapter 3) (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
Procedure	
3 Clean the wound with an appropriate sterile solution such as 0.9% sodium chloride.	To prevent infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
4 Slide the lower bar of the staple remover with the V-shaped groove under the staple at an angle of 90°. Squeeze the handles of the staple removers together to open the staple.	To release the staple atraumatically from the wound. If the angle of the staple remover is not correct, the staple will not come out freely (Pudner 2005, E).
5 If the suture line is under tension, use free hand to gently squeeze the skin either side of the suture line.	To reduce tension of skin around suture line and lessen pain on removal of staple. E
6 If the wound gapes use adhesive sutures to oppose the wound edges.	To improve the cosmetic effect. E
Postprocedure	
7 Record condition of suture line and surrounding skin (amount of exudate, pus, inflammation, pain, etc.).	To document care and enable evaluation of the wound (Bale and Jones 2006, E; Dealey 2005, E; NMC 2009, C).
8 Use of adhesive skin tapes should be monitored and they are usually left in place until they fall off by themselves.	To improve cosmetic effect and support tensile strength of the wound post suture removal, when indicated (Pudner 2005, E).

Wound drains

Evidence-based approaches

The purpose of a drain within the wound is to prevent haematoma formation or excess fluid build-up within the wound bed as these can lead to infection and irritation of the tissues (Walker 2007). Suboptimal conditions put surgical wounds at risk of dehiscence, which can be indicated by a sudden discharge of fluid or cellulites along the suture line (Hampton and Collins 2004), particularly in abdominal wounds where an abscess may develop, or the patient may report a 'popping' sensation (Beitz *et al*. 2008).

Nurses are ideally placed to observe the postoperative patient and often are involved in managing drainage systems (Walker 2007). Surgical wounds will heal rapidly if blood perfusion is maximized (Hampton and Collins 2004).

Preprocedural considerations

Check the patient's operation notes to establish the number and site(s) of internal and external sutures. Explain the procedure to the patient and gain their consent (NMC 2008a).

Giving information about the proposed procedure helps to relieve anxiety and relax the patient. The easiest way to control pain is via the patient-controlled analgesia (PCA), if *in situ* (Hampton and Collins 2004). Offer the patient analgesia as per chart or encourage self-administration via the PCA pump to promote comfort. Another member of staff may be needed to reassure the patient during the procedure.

An aseptic technique should always be used and the drainage system should be handled as little as possible to minimize infection risk (Pudner 2005).

Equipment

- *Open drains*, for example Yates, Penrose, corrugated, are usually sutured in place and covered with a dressing (exudates passively ooze into the dressing from the surgical wound bed).
- *Closed drains*, for example Redivac and concertina-type, have perforated tubing along the incision and have a suction mechanism that exerts pressure (active drainage from the wound bed).

Procedure guideline 15.4 Wound drainage systems: changing the dressing around the drain site and observation/management

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack containing gallipots or an indented plastic tray, low-linting swabs and/or medical foam, disposable forceps, gloves, sterile field, disposable bag
- Fluids for cleaning and/or irrigation
- Hypoallergenic tape
- Appropriate absorbent dressing
- Appropriate hand hygiene preparation
- Detergent wipe
- Total traceability system for surgical instruments and patient record form
- Any other material will be determined by the nature of the dressing; special features of a dressing should be referred to in the patient's nursing care plan

Optional equipment

- Any extra equipment that may be needed during procedure, for example sterile sissors, metal forceps, stitch cutter

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure that the patient understands the procedure and gives their valid consent and participates in care (NMC 2008a, C; Walker 2007, C).
2 Perform procedure using aseptic technique.	To prevent infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).

Procedure

3 Clean the surrounding skin with an appropriate sterile solution such as 0.9% sodium chloride.	To prevent infection and remove excess debris. E
4 Check condition of surrounding skin.	To assess for any excoriation of the skin. E
5 Ensure that the skin suture holding the drain	To prevent the drain from leaving the wound. E

site in position is intact.	
6 Cover the drain site with a non-adherent, absorbent dressing.	To protect the drain site, prevent infection entering the wound and absorb exudate. E
Postprocedure	
7 Tape securely.	To prevent drain coming loose. E
8 Ensure that the drain is primed or that the suction pump is in working order.	To ensure continuity of drainage. Ineffective drainage can result in oedema/haematoma (Hess 2005, E).

Procedure guideline 15.5 Wound drainage systems: changing the vacuum bottle of a closed drainage system

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack containing gallipots or an indented plastic tray, low-linting swabs and/or medical foam, disposable forceps, gloves, sterile field, disposable bag
- Clamp (usually part of the system in place)
- Redivac drainage bottle
- Marker pen and chart

Procedure

Action	Rationale
1 Use aseptic technique and sterile equipment (as listed above).	To prevent infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Walker 2007).
2 Ensure sterile drainage system is readily available.	To ensure sterility during change of system. E
3 Measure the contents of the bottle to be changed and record this in the appropriate documents.	To maintain an accurate record of drainage from the wound and enable evaluation of state of wound (NMC 2009, E).
4 Clamp the tube with the tubing clamps on the drainage tube and bottle connector and remove the bottle.	To prevent air and contamination entering the wound via the drain. E
5 Clean the end of the tube and attach it to the sterile bottle.	To maintain sterility. E
6 Unclamp the tubing clamps.	To re-establish the drainage system. E
7 Place used vacuum drainage system into the clinical waste bag.	To safely dispose of used system. E

Postprocedure

8 Document in the patient's notes that the drainage bottle has been changed.	To record the change (NMC 2009, C).

Procedure guideline 15.6 Wound drain removal (closed drainage system, for example, Redivac or concertina)

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack containing gallipots or an indented plastic tray, low-linting swabs and/or medical foam, disposable forceps, gloves, sterile field, disposable bag
- Scissors or stitch cutter (refer to patient notes for directions if dressing in place)
- Sterile absorbent dressing to place over drainage site
- Wound swab/sterile pot (to be used if infection suspected)

Procedure

Action	Rationale
1 Use aseptic technique and sterile equipment (as listed above).	To prevent infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E Pudner 2005, E; Walker 2007, E).
2 Release the vacuum (active drainage system) by clamping the tubing with the clamp provided (Walker 2007).	This releases the vacuum and prevents suction and traumatic removal during the procedure which may damage the tissue. E
3 Only clean the wound if necessary, using an appropriate sterile solution, such as 0.9% sodium chloride.	To reduce risk of infection. E
4 If the drain is sutured in place, hold the knot of the suture with metal forceps and gently lift upwards.	Plastic forceps tend to slip against nylon sutures. To allow space for the scissors or stitch cutter to be placed underneath. E
5 Cut the shortest end of the suture as close to the skin as possible.	To prevent infection by allowing the suture to be liberated from the drain without drawing the exposed part through tissue (Pudner 2005, E).
6 Warn the patient of the pulling sensation they will experience and reassure throughout (Walker 2007).	To promote comfort and co-operation. E
7 Grasp the drain close to the skin and remove gently. If there is resistance, place free gloved hand against the tissue to oppose the removal from the wound.	To minimize pain and reduce trauma (E). Drains that have been left in for an extended period will sometimes be more difficult due to tissue growing around the tubing (Walker 2007, E).
8 The edge of the drain should be clean cut and not jagged.	This clean appearance ensures that the whole drain has been removed. E

9 Cover the drain site with a sterile dressing and tape securely.	To prevent infection entering the drain site. E
10 If the site is inflamed or there is a request for the tip to be sent to microbiology, cut it cleanly and send it in a sterile pot.	Recognize and treat suspected infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E, Walker 2007).

Postprocedure

11 Measure and record the contents of the drainage bottle in the appropriate documents.	To maintain an accurate record of drainage from the wound and enable evaluation of state of wound (NMC 2009, E).
12 Dispose of used drainage system in clinical waste bag.	To ensure safe disposal. E

Procedure guideline 15.7 Wound drain shortening (open drainage systems, for example, Penrose, Yates or corrugated)

Essential equipment

- Sterile dressing pack containing gallipots or an indented plastic tray, low-linting swabs and/or medical foam, disposable forceps, gloves, sterile field, disposable bag
- Scissors or stitch cutter (refer to patient notes for directions if dressing in place)
- Sterile absorbent dressing to place over drainage site
- Wound swab/sterile pot (to be used if infection suspected)

Procedure

Action	Rationale
1 Use aseptic technique and sterile equipment (as listed above).	To prevent infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Pudner 2005, E; Walker 2007, E).
2 If the drain is sutured in place, hold the knot of the suture with metal forceps and gently lift upwards.	Plastic forceps tend to slip against nylon sutures. To allow space for the scissors or stitch cutter to be placed underneath. E
3 Cut the shortest end of the suture as close to the skin as possible.	To prevent infection by allowing the suture to be liberated from the drain without drawing the exposed part through tissue (Pudner 2005, E).
4 Using gloved hand, gently ease the drain out of wound to the length requested by surgeons.	To allow healing to take place from base of wound. E
5 Using gloved hand, place a sterile safety pin	To prevent retraction of drain into the wound

through the drain as close to the skin as possible, taking great care not to stab either yourself or the patient.	and minimize the risk of cross-infection and sharps injury. E
6 Cut same amount of tubing from distal end of drain as withdrawn from wound.	So there is a convenient length of tubing to drain into the bag. To ensure patient comfort. E
7 Place a sterile, suitably sized dressing or drainage bag over the drain site (depending upon the expected amount of exudates).	To allow effluent to drain, prevent excoriation of the skin and contain any odour. E
8 Check dressing/bag is secure and comfortable for the patient.	For patient comfort. E
Postprocedure	
9 Record by how much the drainage tube was shortened, or example 1–2 cm every 24–28 hours (Pudner 2005, E).	To ensure the length remaining in the wound is known (NMC 2009, C).

Postprocedural considerations

Check wound and drain site for signs of infection and obtain a wound swab if appropriate. Report any unusual signs or complications and record (Fraise and Bradley 2009, NMC 2009).

Plastic surgery

Definition

Plastic surgery is the collective term that refers to surgical procedures that are performed to restore function and assist in the healing of exposed or non-union fractures, soft tissue defects or to improve natural contours (McCarthy 1990).

This is achieved by using flaps and skin grafts for reconstruction purposes, in addition to using the natural elasticity and mobility of the skin. Surgical reconstruction is often required following extensive surgery for cancers of the breast, head and neck, skin, soft tissue and genitourinary system. The aim is to perform a simple procedure that will provide the best aesthetic and functional outcome (Achauer and Eriksson 2000).

Anatomy and physiology

A surgical flap is a strip of tissue, usually consisting of skin, underlying fat, fascia, muscle and/or bone, which is transferred from one part of the body (known as the donor site) to another (known as the recipient site) (Storch and Rice 2005).

A skin graft is living but devascularized (separated from its blood supply) tissue consisting of all or some of the layers of the skin which is removed from one area of the body and applied to a wound on another area of the body. The common methods of skin grafting are full-thickness skin grafts (FTSG), in which the entire epidermis and dermis is removed, split-thickness or split skin graft (SSG), which consists of the epidermis and the upper part of the dermis only (Giele and Cassell 2008).

Evidence-based approaches

Principles of care

Each patient will require individually planned, and therefore unique, surgery. Reconstructive surgery of this type often results in altered anatomy, in both appearance and function, which may affect the psychological and physical well-being of the patient. Preoperative patient assessment must be as detailed as possible; this should include information on past and present medical conditions that may delay wound healing. For certain patient groups, for example those with recurrence of head and neck cancer, anatomy may already have been altered, through previous surgery, thereby narrowing down the possible options for reconstruction.

The complexity of the surgery will often require intensive nursing care. Postoperative observation of the wound sites, dressings and drains is crucial as deterioration of a wound can occur suddenly, for example fluid-filled seromas, necessitating the need for prompt nursing action. The main aim following flap reconstruction is to allow easy access for observation and to ensure that circulation and overall care are monitored efficiently during the crucial first 72 hours. Figure 15.6 shows a flap

observation chart. These should adhere to medical notes and instructions as per patient. The principles are clarified in the procedure guidelines (e.g. change of wound dressing, removal of drains).

Figure 15.6 Flap observation chart.

Name: ..... Hospital No: ..... Ward:.....

THE ROYAL MARSDEN

Flap Observation Chart

Instructions	Criteria for Assessment	Normal	Arterial Insufficiency	Venous Congestion
1. **Confirm with the surgeon the frequency of flap observations (see medical notes / nursing care plan)** Suggested immediate post-op assessment frequency: • every 15 minutes for first 4 hours, • every 30 minutes for the next 4 hours, • hourly for 24–36 hours, • then 2–4 hourly thereafter 2. **If signs of venous or arterial occlusion seek immediate help** 3. **At each handover, confirm flap status/observations at the bedside**	**Colour** • If it is an external flap then check with the donor site for original colour • If it is an internal flap then monitor for extremes of colour	Usual skin tone	Paler than usual skin tone	Blue / Purple / Mottled
	Temperature • An external or internal flap should always feel warm to touch • If the flap feels cool or has increased warmth, ***seek medical assessment immediately*** • A warmer flap may be due to an abnormal inflammatory response, e.g. infection	Warm	Cold	Increased warmth
	Turgidity (Texture) • The flap should usually feel soft (spongy), not hard or flaccid • Hard or swollen flap indicates possible oedema or haematoma	Soft	Flaccid	Turgid (hard)
	Capillary Refill (Blanching) • If possible this should be timed (in seconds) • If timing not possible and an alteration in perfusion is suspected, ***seek medical assessment immediately***	2–3 seconds	Absent / Sluggish > 6 seconds	Brisk < 3 seconds
	Specific Monitoring Instructions *(e.g. Monitor the tension on the flap and check for kinking)*			

Type & Location of Flap: ..... **Donor Area (if appropriate):** .....

Timing		Colour (*tick one*)			Temperature (*tick one*)			Turgidity (Texture) (*tick one*)			Capillary Refill (Blanching) (*tick one*)			Specific Instructions (specify):	Signature and Print Name
Date	Time	Usual skin tone	Paler than usual skin tone	Blue / purple / mottled	Warm	Cold	Increased warmth	Soft	Flaccid	Turgid (hard)	2–3 seconds	Absent / sluggish > 6 seconds	Brisk < 3 seconds		

Title: Flap Observation Chart | Version No: 2 Issue Date: March 2006 Unique Identification Number: NR027 | Document Type: Clinical Record – Chart
Department: Nursing & Rehabilitation – Nursing | Page 1 of 2 | © 2006 The Royal Marsden Hospital

Seroma

Following surgery, it is normal for haemoserous fluid to collect postoperatively at the site of excision. Fluid collects where there is a space created by tissue removal and it will continue to do so until the underlying tissues adhere (Harmer 2003).

A seroma is defined as a clinically identifiable collection of serous fluid within any *surgical* cavity (Woodworth *et al.* 2000). There appears to be no relationship between seroma formation and the patient's age, tumour size, grade or Body Mass Index (Woodworth *et al.* 2000). Seroma formation is a common sequel rather than a complication following breast surgery, particularly when axillary dissection has been undertaken (Agrawal *et al.* 2006) and the extent of dissection, mastectomy versus breast-conserving surgery and the number of lymph

nodes removed have all been shown to influence seroma formation (Cregan 2006). The sentinel lymph node biopsy technique introduced in recent years seems to confer a lower risk of seroma formation (Vitug and Newman 2007).

It is common for serous fluid to collect after removal of the drain. Patients who develop seromas will commonly report a bulging wound and experience pain or discomfort, which may in turn prevent them from performing postoperative exercises, such as arm exercises, which are recommended to restore mobility and minimize the risk of lymphoedema. Seroma formation can also impair the healing process and hinder the patient's recovery phase due to the risk of wound infection, wound dehiscence, flap necrosis, a delay in commencing further treatment and an increase in the number of postoperative clinic visits required for seroma surveillance (Agrawal *et al.* 2006). Depending on the amount that has collected, a surgeon or specialist nurse may aspirate this as required. Symptomatic seromas can be drained by simple percutaneous fine needle aspiration according to individual hospital protocol (Warren 2008).

Negative pressure wound therapy

Definition

Negative pressure wound therapy (NPWT) is the application of a uniform negative pressure across the wound bed to promote healing (Ubbink *et al.* 2008). The benefits of NPWT are improving exudates management, reduction of odour and infection rates and increasing local blood flow to the wound (KCI 2007, NICE 2009, Ubbink *et al.* 2008).

Evidence-based approaches

Rationale

The advantage of using NPWT is that it stimulates granulation in an enhanced well-vascularized wound bed and promotes wound healing. It

creates a moist wound environment and removes exudates and bacteria from the wound (KCI 2007). The interstitial fluid that mechanically compromises healing is gently removed whilst the capillary circulation is increased (Ubbink *et al.* 2008). Pressures are set at the level best suited to the wound type and can be set on continuous or intermittent according to the therapy required (Benbow 2006). Maintaining the vacuum seal is essential in providing this therapy. It has proven to be cost efficient, safe and effective as a treatment modality for wound care (KCI 2007). The benefits to chronic wound healing of using NPWT versus other treatments have been shown in a number of clinical trials, but further research is needed with fewer methodological flaws and clearer reporting of infection rates and length of hospital stay (NICE 2009, Ubbink *et al.* 2008).

Indications

NPWT is indicated for:

- chronic wounds
- pressure ulcers
- dehisced wounds and incisions
- partial-thickness burns
- flaps and grafts.

(KCI 2007)

See Figure 15.7 for an example of a patient with a wound being treated with the NPWT device.

Figure 15.7 Negative pressure wound therapy: right inguinal wound.

Contraindications

Negative pressure wound therapy is contraindicated in grossly contaminated wounds, malignant wounds, untreated osteomyelitis, non-enteric and unexplored fistulae or necrotic tissue with eschar present and areas with exposed tendons (KCI 2007).

Precautions should be exercised when there is active bleeding in the wound, difficult haemostasis or when the patient is taking anticoagulants (Benbow 2006). The wound site must be carefully assessed to ensure that NPWT is indeed the appropriate treatment modality. If signs of infection or complications develop, the therapy should be discontinued (KCI 2007). There is currently not enough evidence to recommend NPWT for open abdominal wounds (NICE 2009).

Preprocedural considerations

Consulting the appropriate company representative for training is essential as application and approach are individually determined and KCI, for example, have their own comprehensive clinical guidelines (KCI 2007). If the wound is bigger than the largest foam dressing, more than one piece of foam may be used as long as the edges of the foam are in contact with each other. KCI also has recommendations for changing the type of foam once the exudates decrease (KCI 2007). Using several smaller pieces of film to cover the area is recommended for larger

wounds as they are easier to apply and maintaining an air-tight seal is more successful (KCI 2007).

Equipment

Figures 15.7, 15.8 and 15.9 show the vacuum-assisted closure or VAC therapy system (KCI International). See the Websites and useful addresses at the end of the chapter for contact details for VAC and KCI, amongst others. Other methods for NPWT are available and use similar principles (Hampton and Collins 2004). All equipment used should be the manufacturer's recommended materials for the relevant system (KCI 2007).

Figure 15.8 Negative pressure wound therapy: VAC dressing.

Figure 15.9 Negative pressure wound therapy: VAC pump.

Procedure guideline 15.8 Negative pressure wound therapy

Essential equipment

- NPWT unit
- NPWT dressing pack
- NPWT canister and tubing
- Sterile scissors
- Sterile gloves
- Apron
- Dressing procedure pack
- Sterile 0.9% sodium chloride for irrigation (warmed to approx. 37°C in a jug of warm water)
- Clamp (Spencer Wells forceps)

Optional equipment

- Extra semi-permeable film dressings to seal any leaks
- Non-adherent wound contact layer to prevent foam adhering to wound bed
- Alcohol-free skin barrier film to protect any fragile or macerated skin around the wound

Preprocedure

Action	Rationale
1 Explain and discuss the procedure with the patient.	To ensure the patient understands the procedure and other options available and gives their valid consent (NMC 2008a, C).
2 Provide routine analgesia prior to dressing procedure.	To prevent unnecessary procedural pain. E
3 Ensure there is adequate lighting and the patient is comfortable and in a position where the wound can be accessed and viewed easily. Assemble all necessary equipment (Beldon 2006, C).	To allow access to area for dressing change. Dressing application can be complicated and take a long time so the patient should be in a comfortable position for the procedure (Beldon 2006, E).

Procedure

4 Use aseptic technique and sterile equipment (as listed above).	To prevent infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E; Pudner 2005, E; Walker 2007, E).
5 To remove the NPWT dressing, put on a pair of non-sterile gloves.	To reduce the risk of cross-infection (Fraise and Bradley 2009, E).
6 Clamp the dressing tubing and disconnect it from the canister tubing. Allow any fluid in the canister tubing to be sucked into the canister. Switch off the pump and clamp the canister tubing.	To prevent spillage of body fluid waste from the tubing or canister. E
7 Remove and discard the canister (if full or at least weekly).	To prevent pump alarming and for infection control. E
8 Carefully remove the occlusive film drape by gently lifting one edge and then stretching	To prevent damage to the peri-wound skin. E

the drape horizontally and slowly pulling up from the skin.	
9 Carefully remove the foam dressing from the wound bed. Irrigate with sterile 0.9% sodium chloride if required.	To prevent damage to newly formed tissue within the wound bed and prevent pain. E
10 Clean the wound with sterile 0.9% sodium chloride.	To prevent infection and remove surface debris/necrotic tissue (Dealey 2005, E).
11 Debride the wound if applicable.	To remove loose necrotic tissue that may be a focus for infection (Vowden and Vowden 2002, C).
12 To apply the dressing, cut the NPWT foam to fit the size and shape of the wound, including tunnelling and undermined areas.	The foam should fit the wound exactly to ensure full benefit of the negative pressure therapy (Beldon 2006, E).
13 Avoid cutting the foam over the wound bed.	To prevent loose particles of foam falling into the wound. E
14 Place the foam into the wound cavity.	The whole wound bed must be covered with foam. If the foam is touching, it will transfer the negative pressure to the next piece. E
15 If the wound bed is friable/granulating and likely to bleed, Mepitel may be used under the foam to protect the extracellular matrix (ECM).	The ECM requires a trauma-free dressing removal and once exudates subside, the wound bed may become less moist (alternatively, white foam, slightly damp, is recommended by KCI (KCI 2007, C).
16 Cut the occlusive film drape to size and apply over the top of the foam, ensuring a 3–5 cm border onto intact skin, NPWT gel strip or hydrocolloid. (NB: do not compress the foam into the wound.)	To obtain a good seal around the wound edges. E
17 Choose a location on the sealed occlusive film drape to apply the tubing where the tubing will not rub or cause pressure. Cut a hole through the film, approximately 2 cm in diameter, leaving the foam intact.	To reduce the risk of pressure injury to skin. E
18 Place the TRAC pad on the film with the hole in the centre of the elbow joint directly over the hole in the film drape. Gently press around the TRAC pad (KCI 2007).	To ensure correct position and seal of the pad. (NB: TRAC is used for the vacuum-assisted closure (VAC) system; follow manufacturer's individual instructions) (KCI 2007, C).
19 To commence the NPWT, insert the canister into the pump until it clicks into place.	Indicates the canister is positioned correctly and is secure (Beldon 2006, E).
20 Connect the dressing tubing to the canister tubing and open clamps.	The pump will alarm if the tubing is clamped or not connected. E
21 Press POWER button and follow the on-	To ensure the therapy is set to the individual

screen instructions to set the level and type of pressure required according to instructions from the patient's medical/surgical team.	requirements of the patient. E
22 Start the pump by pressing THERAPY ON/OFF: the foam should contract into the wound.	Any small air leak will prevent the foam dressing from contracting and reassessment is required. E
Postprocedure	
22 Document the dressing and setting in the patient's notes.	To provide a record (NMC 2009, C).

Postprocedural considerations

Ongoing care

Careful monitoring of the peri-wound area for signs of infection or oedema and checking the equipment whilst *in situ* are imperative to ensure patient safety. The dressings should be changed every 48–72 hours to observe and monitor the wound for signs of infection. The NPWT unit should not be switched off for more than 2 hours and regular assessments should be made (KCI 2007).

Websites and useful addresses

Aspen Medical (Sorbsan, Aquaform, Polymem, Mesitran):

www.aspenmedicaleurope.com/Pages/SpecialistWoundcare.asp

Coloplast (biatain):

www.coloplast.co.uk/ECompany/GBMED/Homepage.nsf/(VIEWDOCSBYID)/CC89E227B1FD573B41256A06002A0DE5

Convatec (aquacel. combiderm, duoderm, granuflex):

www.convatec.co.uk.com

www.hydrofiber.co.uk/engb/cvthy-products/hy-internapag/0/accessser/0/3377/7947/hydrofiber-technology.html

World Wide Wounds: Dressings Datacards:

www.worldwidewounds.com/Common/ProductDatacards.html#top.com

World Wide Wounds: Product Reviews:

www.wounds-uk.com/woundessentials/03_product_review.pdf.com

Insight Medical for tracheostomy dressings and Actibalm Honey:

www.insightmedical.net/product.asp?ID=47.com

KCI for VAC therapy: topical negative pressure:

kci-medical.com

Molnlycke Health Care (Mepitel, Mepilex)

www.molnlycke.com/item.asp?id=3273&lang=2&si=14.com

Smith and Nephew (Allevyn):

wound.smith-nephew.com/uk/Home.asp

For 'TIME' wound bed preparation (assessment principles):

wound.smith-nephew.com/uk/node.asp?NodeId=3104

Society of Radiographers

Telephone: 020 7740 7200

Website: www.sor.org/public/patient_info.htm.com

RTOG Skin Assessment Tool with pictures available from:

www.sor.org/public/contact/contact_us.htm.com

NHS Quality Improvement Scotland

Telephone: 0131 623 4300

Website: www.nhshealthquality.org.com

Best Practice Statement – April 2004 Skincare of Patients Receiving Radiotherapy

Wound Care Society

Telephone: 01480 434401

Website: www.woundcaresociety.com

Wound Care Alliance UK

Telephone: 0121 331 7083

Website: www.wcauk.org/about/php.com

References

Achauer, B.M. and Eriksson, E. (2000) *Plastic Surgery: Indications, Operations, and Outcomes*. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

Agrawal, A., Ayantunde, A.A. and Cheung, K.L. (2006) Concepts of seroma formation and prevention in breast cancer surgery. *ANZ Journal of Surgery*, **76** (12), 1088–1095.

Alexander, S. (2009) Malignant fungating wounds: managing pain, bleeding and psychosocial issues. *Journal of Wound Care*, **18** (10), 418–425.

Angeras, M.H., Brandberg, A., Falk, A. and Seeman, T. (1992) Comparison between sterile saline and tap water for the cleaning of acute traumatic soft tissue wounds. *European Journal of Surgery*, **158** (6–7), 347–350.

Ayello, E.A., Dowsett, C., Schultz, G.S. *et al.* (2004) TIME heals all wounds. *Nursing*, **34** (4), 36–41.

Bale, S. (1991) A holistic approach and the ideal dressing. Cavity wound management in the 1990s. *Professional Nurse*, **6** (6), 316, 318, 320–323.

Bale, S. and Jones, V. (2006) *Wound Care Nursing: A Patient-Centred Approach*, 2nd edn. Mosby Elsevier, Edinburgh.

Beitz, J.M., Bonner, M. and Calianno, C. (2008) *Wound Care Made Incredibly Visual*, Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Beldon, P. (2006) Topical negative pressure dressings and vacuum-assisted closure. *Wound Essentials*, **1**, 110–114.

Benbow, M. (2006) An update on VAC therapy… vacuum assisted closure. *Journal of Community Nursing*, **20** (4), 28–32.

Bluestein, D. and Javaheri, A. (2008) Pressure ulcers: prevention, evaluation, and management. *American Family Physician*, **78** (10), 1186–1194.

Bryant, R.A. (ed) (2000) *Acute and Chronic Wounds: Nursing Management*, 2nd edn Mosby, St Louis, MO.

Calvin, M. (1998) Cutaneous wound repair. *Wounds: A Compendium of Clinical Research & Practice*, **10** (1), 12–33.

Cho, M. and Hunt, T.K. (2001) The overall approach to wounds. In: Falanga, V. (ed) *Cutaneous Wound Healing*. Martin Dunitz, London. pp. xii.

Collier, M. (1996) The principles of optimum wound management. *Nursing Standard*, **10** (43), 47–52; quiz 53–54.

Collier, M. (2002) Wound-bed preparation. *Nursing Times*, **98** (2), 55–57.

ConvaTec (2004) *ConvaTec Wound Care Reference Guide*, ConvaTec, Uxbridge.

Cregan, P. (2006) Review of concepts of seroma formation and prevention in breast cancer surgery. *ANZ Journal of Surgery*, **76** (12), 1046.

Cutting, K.F. (1998) *Wounds and Infection*. Wound Care Society, Huntingdon.

Dealey, C. (2005) *The Care of Wounds: A Guide for Nurses*, 3rd edn. Blackwell Science, Oxford.

DH (2005) *Hazardous Waste (England) Regulations*. Department of Health, London.

Donovan, S. (1998) Wound infection and wound swabbing. *Professional Nurse*, **13** (11), 757–759.

Dowsett, C. (2002) The role of the nurse in wound bed preparation. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (44), 69–72, 74, 76.

Dowsett, C. and Ayello, E. (2004) TIME principles of chronic wound bed preparation and treatment. *British Journal of Nursing*, **13** (15), S16–S23.

Ehrlich, H.P. (1998) The physiology of wound healing. A summary of normal and abnormal wound healing processes. *Advances in Wound Care: The Journal for Prevention and Healing*, **11** (7), 326–328.

Elkin, M.K., Perry, A.G. and Potter, P.A. (2004) Skill 22.3 removing staples and sutures. In: *Nursing Interventions and Clinical Skills*, 3rd edn. Mosby, St Louis.

EPUAP (2009) *International Guideline: Treatment of Pressure Ulcers: Quick Reference Guide*. European Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel and National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel, Washington D.C. www.epuap.org/guidelines/Final_Quick_Treatment.pdf.

Fairbairn, K., Grier, J., Hunter, C. and Preece, J. (2002) A sharp debridement procedure devised by specialist nurses. *Journal of Wound Care*, **11** (10), 371–375.

Falanga, V. (2000) Classifications for wound bed preparation and stimulation of chronic wounds. *Wound Repair and Regeneration*, **8** (5), 347–352.

Field, F.K. and Kerstein, M.D. (1994) Overview of wound healing in a moist environment. *American Journal of Surgery*, **167** (1A), 2S–6S.

Flanagan, M. (1996) A practical framework for wound assessment. 1: Physiology. *British Journal of Nursing*, **5** (22), 1391–1397.

Flanagan, M. (1999) The physiology of wound healing. In: Miller, M. and Glover, D. (eds) *Wound Management: Theory and Practice*. Nursing Times Books, London: pp. 14–22.

Flanagan, M. (2000) The physiology of wound healing. *Journal of Wound Care*, **9** (6), 299–300.

Fletcher, J. (1997) Wound cleansing. *Professional Nurse*, **12** (11), 793–796.

Fraise, A.P. and Bradley, T. (eds) (2009) *Ayliffe's Control of Healthcare-associated Infection: A Practical Handbook*, 5th edition. Hodder Arnold, London.

Garrett, B. (1997) The proliferation and movement of cells during re-epithelialisation. *Journal of Wound Care*, **6** (4), 174–177.

Giele, H. and Cassell, O. (2008) *Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Gilchrist, B. (1999) Wound infection. In: Miller, M. and Glover, D. (eds) *Wound Management: Theory and Practice*. Nursing Times Books, London: pp. 96–107.

Hampton, S. (1999) Choosing the right dressing. In: Miller, M. and Glover, D. (eds) *Wound Management: Theory and Practice*. Nursing Times Books, London: pp. 116–128.

Hampton, S. (2008) Malodorous fungating wounds: how dressings alleviate symptoms. *British Journal of Community Nursing*, **13** (6), S31–S32, S34, S36 passim.

Hampton, S. and Collins, F. (2004) *Tissue Viability: The Prevention, Treatment, and Management of Wounds*, Whurr Publishers, London.

Harmer, V. (2003) Surgery as a treatment for breast cancer. In: Harmer, V. (ed) *Breast Cancer: Nursing Care and Management*. Whurr Publishers, London: pp. 82–101.

Hart, J. (2002) Inflammation. 1: Its role in the healing of acute wounds. *Journal of Wound Care*, **11** (6), 205–209.

Hess, C.T. (2005) *Wound Care*, 5th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Jay, R. (1999) Suturing in A + E. *Professional Nurse*, **14** (6), 412–415.

KCI (2007) *VAC Therapy Clinical Guidelines: A Reference Source for Clinicians*. KCI Licensing, Kidlington. www.kci1.com.

Lawrence, J.C. (1997) Wound irrigation. *Journal of Wound Care*, **6** (1), 23–26.

Lippincott Williams and Wilkins (2008) *Wound Care Made Incredibly Visual!* Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Lund-Nielsen, B., Muller, K. and Adamsen, L. (2005) Malignant wounds in women with breast cancer: feminine and sexual perspectives. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, **14** (1), 56–64.

Marieb, E.N. and Hoehn, K. (2010) *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th edn. Benjamin Cummings, San Francisco.

Martin, E.A. (2010) *Concise Colour Medical Dictionary*, 5th edn. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

McCarthy, J.G. (ed) (1990) *Plastic Surgery: Volumes 1–8*. W.B. Saunders, Harcourt and Brace, Philadelphia.

Miller, M. and Dyson, M. (1996) *Principles of Wound Care*. Macmillan Magazines, London.

Moore, P. and Foster, L. (1998) Acute surgical wound care. 2: The wound healing process. *British Journal of Nursing*, **7** (19), 1183–1187.

Morgan, D.A. (2000) *Formulary of Wound Management Products: A Guide for Healthcare Staff*, 8th edn. Euromed Communications, Haslemere.

Morison, M.J. (1989) Wound cleansing – which solution? *Professional Nurse*, **4** (5), 220–225.

Naylor, W. (2002) Malignant wounds: aetiology and principles of management. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (52), 45–53.

Naylor, W., Laverty, D. and Mallett, J. (2001) *The Royal Marsden Hospital Handbook of Wound Management in Cancer Care*. Blackwell Science, Oxford.

NMC (2008a) *Consent*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London www.nmc-uk.org/Nurses-and-midwives/Advice-by-topic/A/Advice/Consent.

NMC (2008b) *The Code: Standards of Conduct, Performance and Ethics for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

NMC (2009) *Record Keeping: Guidance for Nurses and Midwives*. Nursing and Midwifery Council, London.

Poston, J. (1996) Sharp debridement of devitalized tissue: the nurse's role. *British Journal of Nursing*, **5** (11), 655–656, 658–662.

Pudner, R (2005) Wound healing in the surgical patient. In: *Nursing the Surgical Patient*, 2nd edn. Elsevier, Edinburgh: pp. 45–69.

Richardson, M. (2007) Exploring various methods for closing traumatic wounds. *Nursing Times*, **103** (5), 30–31.

Riyat, M.S. and Quinton, D.N. (1997) Tap water as a wound cleansing agent in accident and emergency. *Journal of Accident and Emergency Medicine*, **14** (3), 165–166.

Schultz, G.S., Sibbald, R.G., Falanga, V. *et al.* (2003) Wound bed preparation: a systematic approach to wound management. *Wound Repair and Regeneration*, **11** (s1), S1–S28.

Selby, T. (2009) Managing exudate in malignant fungating wounds and solving problems for patients. *Nursing Times*, **105** (18), 14–17.

Silver, I. (1994) The physiology of wound healing. *Journal of Wound Care*, **3** (2), 106–109.

Solomon, E.P., Adragna, P.J. and Schmidt, R.R. (1990) *Human Anatomy and Physiology*. W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia.

Springett, K. (2002) The impact of diabetes on wound management. *Nursing Standard*, **16** (30), 72–74, 76, 78–80.

Storch, J.E. and Rice, J. (2005) *Reconstructive Plastic Surgical Nursing: Clinical Management and Wound Care*. Blackwell, Oxford.

Teare, J. and Barrett, C. (2002) Using quality of life assessment in wound care. *Nursing Standard*, **17** (6), 59–60, 64, 67–68.

Tejero-Trujeque, R. (2001) How do fibroblasts interact with the extracellular matrix in wound contraction? *Journal of Wound Care*, **10** (6), 237–242.

Thomas, S. (2009) *Formulary of Wound Management Products*, 10th edn. Euromed Communications, Liphook.

Timmons, J. (2006) Skin function and wound healing physiology. *Wound Essentials*, (1), 8–17. Wound-UK. www.wounds-uk.com/woundessentials/01_physiology.pdf.

Tobias, J.S. and Hochhauser, D. (2010) *Cancer and Its Management*, 6th edn. Wiley-Blackwell, Chichester.

Ubbink, D.T., Westerbos, S.J., Evans, D., Land, L. and Vermeulen, H. (2008) Topical negative pressure for treating chronic wounds. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, **3**, CD001898.

Vitug, A.F. and Newman, L.A. (2007) Complications in breast surgery. *Surgical Clinics of North America*, **87** (2), 431–451.

Vowden, K. (1995) Common problems in wound care: wound and ulcer measurement. *British Journal of Nursing*, **4** (13), 775–776, 778–779.

Vowden, K.R. and Vowden, P. (1999) Wound debridement, Part 2: Sharp techniques. *Journal of Wound Care*, **8** (6), 291–294.

Vowden, K. and Vowden, P. (2002) *Wound Bed Preparation*. World Wide Wounds. www.worldwidewounds.com/2002/april/Vowden/Wound-Bed-Preparation.html.

Waldorf, H. and Fewkes, J. (1995) Wound healing. *Advances in Dermatology*, **10**, 77–96.

Walker, J. (2007) Patient preparation for safe removal of surgical drains. *Nursing Standard*, **21** (49), 39–41.

Warren, M. (2008) Collaboration in developing a protocol for nurse-led seroma aspiration. *British Journal of Nursing*, **17** (15), 956–960.

Werdin, F., Tenenhaus, M. and Rennekampff, H.O. (2008) Chronic wound care. *Lancet*, **372** (9653), 1860–1862.

White, R. (2001) Managing exudate. *Nursing Times*, **97** (14), 59–60.

Williams, C. and Young, T. (1998) *Myth and Reality in Wound Care*. Quay Books, Salisbury.

Wilson, V. (2005) Assessment and management of fungating wounds: a review. *British Journal of Community Nursing (Supplement)*, **10** (3), S28–34.

Wolcott, R.D., Kennedy, J.P. and Dowd, S.E. (2009) Regular debridement is the main tool for maintaining a healthy wound bed in most chronic wounds. *Journal of Wound Care*, **18** (2), 54–56.

Woodworth, P.A., McBoyle, M.F., Helmer, S.D. and Beamer, R.L. (2000) Seroma formation after breast cancer surgery: incidence and predicting factors. *American Surgeon*, **66** (5), 444–451.

Multiple choice questions

1 What functions should a dressing fulfil for effective wound healing?

a High humidity, insulation, gaseous exchange, absorbent.

b Anaerobic, impermeable, conformable, low humidity.

c Insulation, low humidity, sterile, high adherence.

d Absorbent, low adherence, anaerobic, high humidity.

2 When would it be beneficial to use a wound care plan?

a On all chronic wounds.

b On all infected wounds.

c On all complex wounds.

d On every wound.

3 How would you care for a patient with a necrotic wound?

a Systemic antibiotic therapy and apply a dry dressing.

b Debride and apply a hydrogel dressing.

c Debride and apply an antimicrobial dressing.

d Apply a negative pressure dressing.

4 A new, postsurgical wound is assessed by the nurse and is found to be hot, tender and swollen. How could this wound be best described?

a In the inflammation phase of healing.

b In the haemostasis phase of healing.

c In the reconstructive phase of wound healing.

d As an infected wound.

5 What are the four stages of wound healing in the order they take place?

a Proliferative phase, inflammation phase, remodelling phase, maturation phase.

b Haemostasis, inflammation phase, proliferation phase, maturation phase.

c Inflammatory phase, dynamic stage, neutrophil phase, maturation phase.

d Haemostasis, proliferation phase, inflammation phase, remodelling phase.

6 If an elderly immobile patient had a grade 3 pressure sore, what would your management be?

a Hydrocolloid dressing, pressure-relieving mattress, nutritional support.

b Dry dressing, pressure-relieving mattress, mobilization.

c Foam dressing, pressure-relieving mattress, nutritional support.

d Film dressing, mobilization, positioning, nutritional support.

Answers to the multiple choice questions can be found in Appendix 3.

These multiple choice questions are also available for you to complete online. Visit www.royalmarsdenmanual.com **and select the Student Edition tab.**

Appendix 1

The Code

Standards of conduct, performance and ethics for nurses and midwives

Reproduced with permission from the Nursing and Midwifery Council, London

The people in your care must be able to trust you with their health and well-being. To justify that trust, you must:

- make the care of people your first concern, treating them as individuals and respecting their dignity
- work with others to protect and promote the health and well-being of those in your care, their families and carers, and the wider community
- provide a high standard of practice and care at all times
- be open and honest, act with integrity and uphold the reputation of your profession.

As a professional, you are personally accountable for actions and omissions in your practice and must always be able to justify your decisions.

You must always act lawfully, whether those laws relate to your professional practice or personal life.

Failure to comply with this Code may bring your fitness to practise into question and endanger your registration.

This Code should be considered together with the Nursing and Midwifery Council's rules, standards, guidance and advice available from www.nmc-uk.org.

Make the care of people your first concern, treating them as individuals and respecting their dignity

Treat people as individuals

- You must treat people as individuals and respect their dignity
- You must not discriminate in any way against those in your care
- You must treat people kindly and considerately
- You must act as an advocate for those in your care, helping them to access relevant health and social care, information and support

Respect people's confidentiality

- You must respect people's right to confidentiality
- You must ensure people are informed about how and why information is shared by those who will be providing their care
- You must disclose information if you believe someone may be at risk of harm, in line with the law of the country in which you are practising

Collaborate with those in your care

- You must listen to the people in your care and respond to their concerns and preferences
- You must support people in caring for themselves to improve and maintain their health
- You must recognize and respect the contribution that people make to their own care and well-being
- You must make arrangements to meet people's language and communication needs
- You must share with people, in a way they can understand, the information they want or need to know about their health

Ensure you gain consent

- You must ensure that you gain consent before you begin any treatment or care
- You must respect and support people's rights to accept or decline treatment and care
- You must uphold people's rights to be fully involved in decisions about their care
- You must be aware of the legislation regarding mental capacity, ensuring that people who lack capacity remain at the centre of decision making and are fully safeguarded
- You must be able to demonstrate that you have acted in someone's best interests if you have provided care in an emergency

Maintain clear professional boundaries

- You must refuse any gifts, favours or hospitality that might be interpreted as an attempt to gain preferential treatment
- You must not ask for or accept loans from anyone in your care or anyone close to them
- You must establish and actively maintain clear sexual boundaries at all times with people in your care, their families and carers

Work with others to protect and promote the health and well-being of those in your care, their families and carers, and the wider community

Share information with your colleagues

- You must keep your colleagues informed when you are sharing the care of others
- You must work with colleagues to monitor the quality of your work and maintain the safety of those in your care
- You must facilitate students and others to develop their competence

Work effectively as part of a team

- You must work co-operatively within teams and respect the skills, expertise and contributions of your colleagues
- You must be willing to share your skills and experience for the benefit of your colleagues
- You must consult and take advice from colleagues when appropriate
- You must treat your colleagues fairly and without discrimination
- You must make a referral to another practitioner when it is in the best interests of someone in your care

Delegate effectively

- You must establish that anyone you delegate to is able to carry out your instructions
- You must confirm that the outcome of any delegated task meets required standards
- You must make sure that everyone you are responsible for is supervised and supported

Manage risk

- You must act without delay if you believe that you, a colleague or anyone else may be putting someone at risk
- You must inform someone in authority if you experience problems that prevent you working within this Code or other nationally agreed standards
- You must report your concerns in writing if problems in the environment of care are putting people at risk

Provide a high standard of practice and care at all times

Use the best available evidence

- You must deliver care based on the best available evidence or best practice
- You must ensure any advice you give is evidence based if you are suggesting healthcare products or services
- You must ensure that the use of complementary or alternative therapies is safe and in the best interests of those in your care

Keep your skills and knowledge up to date

- You must have the knowledge and skills for safe and effective practice when working without direct supervision
- You must recognize and work within the limits of your competence
- You must keep your knowledge and skills up to date throughout your working life
- You must take part in appropriate learning and practice activities that maintain and develop your competence and performance

Keep clear and accurate records

- You must keep clear and accurate records of the discussions you have, the assessments you make, the treatment and medicines you give and how effective these have been
- You must complete records as soon as possible after an event has occurred
- You must not tamper with original records in any way
- You must ensure any entries you make in someone's paper records are clearly and legibly signed, dated and timed
- You must ensure any entries you make in someone's electronic records are clearly attributable to you
- You must ensure all records are kept confidentially and securely

Be open and honest, act with integrity and uphold the reputation of your profession

Act with integrity

- You must demonstrate a personal and professional commitment to equality and diversity
- You must adhere to the laws of the country in which you are practising
- You must inform the NMC if you have been cautioned, charged or found guilty of a criminal offence
- You must inform any employers you work for if your fitness to practise is impaired or is called into question

Deal with problems

- You must give a constructive and honest response to anyone who complains about the care they have received
- You must not allow someone's complaint to prejudice the care you provide for them
- You must act immediately to put matters right if someone in your care has suffered harm for any reason
- You must explain fully and promptly to the person affected what has happened and the likely effects
- You must co-operate with internal and external investigations

Be impartial

- You must not abuse your privileged position for your own ends
- You must ensure that your professional judgement is not influenced by any commercial considerations

Uphold the reputation of your profession

- You must not use your professional status to promote causes that are not related to health
- You must co-operate with the media only when you can confidently protect the confidential information and dignity of those in your care
- You must uphold the reputation of your profession at all times

Information about indemnity insurance

The NMC recommends that a registered nurse, midwife or specialist community public health nurse, in advising, treating and caring for patients/clients, has professional indemnity insurance. This is in the interests of clients, patients and registrants in the event of claims of professional negligence.

Whilst employers have vicarious liability for the negligent acts and/or omissions of their employees, such cover does not normally extend to activities undertaken outside the registrant's employment. Independent practice would not be covered by vicarious liability. It is the individual registrant's responsibility to establish their insurance status and take appropriate action.

In situations where an employer does not have vicarious liability, the NMC recommends that registrants obtain adequate professional indemnity insurance. If unable to secure professional indemnity insurance, a registrant will need to demonstrate that all their clients/patients are fully informed of this fact and the implications this might have in the event of a claim for professional negligence.

Appendix 2

Contributors to previous editions

First edition edited by

A. Phylip Pritchard
Research Assistant, Department of Nursing Research
Valerie-Anne Walker
Research Assistant, Department of Nursing Research

Second edition edited by

A. Phylip Pritchard
Assistant to the Director of In-Patient Services/Chief Nursing Officer
Jill A. David
Director of Nursing Research

Third edition edited by

A. Phylip Pritchard
Formerly Co-ordinator of European Educational Initiatives, The Royal Marsden Hospital, and Executive Secretary, European Oncology Nursing Society
Jane Mallett
Research and Practice Development Co-ordinator

Fourth edition edited by

Jane Mallett
Research and Practice Development Manager
Christopher Bailey
Macmillan Research Practitioner, Macmillan Practice Development

Unit, Centre
for Cancer and Palliative Care Studies, Institute of Cancer Research

Fifth edition edited by

Jane Mallett
Research and Practice Development Manager, The Royal Marsden Hospital
Lisa Dougherty
Clinical Nurse Specialist Intravenous Services, The Royal Marsden Hospital

Sixth and seventh editions edited by

Lisa Dougherty
Nurse Consultant Intravenous Therapy, The Royal Marsden Hospital
Sara Lister
Assistant Chief Nurse/Head of School, The Royal Marsden Hospital School of Cancer
Nursing and Rehabilitation

Contributors

Karen Allan, Senior Staff Nurse (Smithers Ward)
Emma Allum, Senior Staff Nurse (Wiltshaw Ward)
Sarah Aylott, formerly Practice Development Facilitator
Caroline Badger, formerly Senior Nurse (Lymphoedema)
Christopher Bailey, Macmillan Research Practitioner, Institute of Cancer Research
Michael Bailey, Senior Staff Nurse (Wilson Ward)
Sophie Baty, Sister (Recovery Theatre)
Rachel Bennett, formerly Ward Sister (Wilson Ward)
Chris Berry, formerly Back Care Advisor
Judith Bibbings, formerly Sister (Gastrointestinal/Genitourinary)
Peter Blake, Consultant Clinical Oncologist
Yannette Booth, formerly Lecturer in Cancer Nursing
Derryn Borley, formerly Assistant Director of Nursing Services

David Brighton, Professional Development Facilitator (IT)
Jo Bull, Senior Staff Nurse (Burdet Coutts Ward)
Monica Burchall, formerly Sister (High Dependency)
Nancy Burnett, Senior Nurse Manager
Susannah Button, formerly Ward Sister (Ellis Ward)
Antoinette Byrne, formerly Dietitian
Jill Carter, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist (Palliative Care)
Neve Carter, Senior Staff Nurse (Horder Ward) and Practice Development Facilitator
Patrick Casey, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist/Unit Manager (Gastrointestinal/Genitourinary)
Anne Chandler, Clinical Nurse Specialist in Pain Management
Belinda Crawford, Matron (Neurointensive Care), Atkinson Morley Hospital
Sharyn Crossen, Nursing Sister (Wilson Ward)
Gay Curling, Clinical Nurse Specialist (Breast Diagnostic)
Lisa Curtis, formerly Macmillan Lecturer, Institute of Cancer Research
Tonia Dawson, Clinical Nurse Specialist (Pelvic Cancer)
Barbara Dicks, Director of Patient Services/Chief Nursing Officer
Emma Dilnutt, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist (Palliative Care)
Nigel Dodds, Lead Nurse, Hospital and Home Programme
Anne Doherty, formerly Staff Nurse (Operating Theatres)
Ann Duncan, Ward Sister (Smithers Ward)
Nuala Durkin, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist/Unit Manager (High Dependency)
Jean Edwards, Senior Nurse Manager/Private Patient Co-ordinator
Stephen Evans, Radiation Protection Adviser (Physics Department)
Sarah Faithfull, CRC Nursing Fellow, Institute of Cancer Research
Deborah Fenlon, formerly Group Clinical Nurse Specialist (Breast Care Services)
Emma Foulds, Lecturer Practitioner, The Royal Marsden Hospital School of
Cancer Nursing and Rehabilitation
Tracey Gibson, Senior Staff Nurse (Critical Care)
Aileen Grant, Staff Nurse (Children's)
Jacqueline Green, Senior Dietitian

Douglas Guerrero, Clinical Nurse Specialist (Neuro-oncology)
Rachel Hair, formerly Senior Nurse (Neuro-oncology)
James Neale Hanvey, Divisional Nurse Director, Rare Cancers Division
Shujina Haq, Specialist Registrar (Occupational Health)
Sarah Hart, Clinical Nurse Specialist, Infection Control, Radiation Protection
Cathryn Havard, formerly Senior Nurse (Gastrointestinal/Genitourinary)
Pauline Hill, Clinical Nurse Specialist (Community Liaison)
Hilary Hollis, formerly Programme Leader
Lynne Hopwood, Assistant Chief Nurse (Operations)
Sian Horn, formerly Sister (High Dependency)
Elizabeth Houlton, formerly Senior Nurse (Community Liaison/Self-Care)
Nest Howells, formerly Information Officer, CancerLink
Sonja Hoy, Lecturer Practitioner
Jennifer Hunt, Director, Nursing Research Initiative for Scotland
Patricia Hunt, Lecturer Practitioner
Maureen Hunter, Rehabilitation Services Manager
Elizabeth Janes, formerly Dietitian
Margareta Johnstone, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist (High Dependency)
Penelope A. Jones, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist (Community Liaison/Palliative Care)
Audrey Kelly, Specialist Sister (Breast Care)
Danny Kelly, formerly Lecturer in Cancer Nursing, Institute of Cancer Research
Jennifer Kelynack, Nursing Sister (Critical Care)
Betti Kirkman, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist (Breast Diagnostic)
Glynis Knowles, Senior Staff, Breast Care (Outpatients Department, Sutton)
Diane Laverty, Clinical Nurse Specialist (Palliative Care)
Maria Law, Ward Sister (Kennaway Ward)
Susan J. Lee, formerly Occupational Health Manager
Sally Legge, Clinical Nurse Specialist (Gastrointestinal)
Annie Leggett, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist (Intravenous Therapy)
Anne Lister, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist/Unit Manager (Palliative

Care)
Philippa A. Lloyd, Senior Staff Nurse (Wiltshaw Ward)
Nicholas Lodge, Clinical Group Research Nurse (Gynaecology)
E. Lopez-Verdugo, Senior Technician/Theatre Manager
Jane Machin, Specialist Speech and Language Therapist
Hazel Mack, formerly Acting Ward Sister (Horder Ward)
Elizabeth MacKenzie, Sister (Critical Care)
Jean Maguire, Ward Sister/Specialist Sister for Lung Cancer
Jane Mallett, Research and Practice Development Manager
Neve Mann, formerly Practice Development Facilitator
Glynis Markham, formerly Director of Nursing Services
David Mathers, Deputy Charge Nurse, University Hospitals of Leicester NHS Trust
Anne McLoughlin, Nursing Specialist Sister (Breast Care)
Lisa Mercer, Senior Dietitian
Catherine Miller, formerly Senior Nurse (Continuing Care)
Jennifer Miller, Senior Occupational Therapist, Occupational Therapy Department
Marion Morgan, formerly Research Sister (Gynaecology)
Wayne Naylor, Clinical Nurse Specialist, Wellington Cancer Centre, New Zealand,
formerly Wound Management Research Nurse, The Royal Marsden Hospital
Katrina Neal, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist/Unit Manager (Palliative Care)
Liz O'Brien, Clinical Team Leader, District Nursing, Croydon Primary Care Trust
Emma Osenton, Ward Sister (Wiltshaw Ward)
Evelyn Otunbade, Backcare Adviser
Buddy Joe Paris, Staff Nurse (Critical Care)
Sinéad Parry, Project Lead, End of Life Care, Learning Disabilities, Trinity Hospice, formerly Complex Discharge Co-ordinator, Royal Marsden Hospital
Rachelle Pearce, formerly Sister (Medical Day Unit)
Emma Pennery, formerly Senior Clinical Nurse Specialist/Honorary Clinical Research Fellow

Helen Jayne Porter, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist (High Dose Chemotherapy)
Joanne Preece, formerly Head of Risk Management
Judith Pretty, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist (Head and Neck)
Barry Quinn, Lecturer Practitioner (Haemato-oncology)
Ffion M. Read, Senior Staff Nurse (Medical Day Unit)
Elizabeth Rees, formerly Research Nurse Palliative Care
Francis Regan, formerly Senior Staff Nurse (Burdett Coutts Ward)
Frances Rhys-Evans, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist/Ward Manager (Head and Neck and Thyroid Cancer)
Louise-Ann Ritchie, Nurse Practitioner (Haematology)
Jean Maurice Robert, Staff Nurse (Critical Care)
Helen Roberts, formerly Senior Nurse (Head and Neck)
Tim Root, Chief Pharmacist
Corinne Rowbotham, Senior Staff Nurse (IV Services)
Ray Rowden, formerly Director of Nursing Services
Miriam Rushton, formerly Senior Nurse (Gynaecology)
Kevin Russell, Charge Nurse (Critical Care)
Patricia Ryan, Senior Sister (Haemato-oncology)
Clair Sadler, Programme Leader
Lena Salter, formerly Patient Services Manager
Mave Salter, Complex Discharge Co-ordinator
Catherine Sandsund, Senior Physiotherapist, Physiotherapy Department
Neelam Sarpal, Teaching Sister
Kate Scott, Clinical Nurse Specialist (Psychological Care)
James Smith, formerly Chaplain
Caroline Soady, Clinical Nurse Specialist (Head and Neck)
Catherine South, Specialist Sister (Head and Neck)
Val Speechley, Patient Information Officer
Moira Stephens, Clinical Nurse Specialist (Haemato-oncology)
Mavis Stork, formerly Theatre Services Manager
Mary Anne Tanay, Research Nurse (Head and Neck)
June Toovey, formerly Sister (Intravenous Therapy Team)
Anne Topping, formerly Senior Nurse (Gastrointestinal/Genitourinary)
Jennie Treleaven, Consultant Haematologist
Robert Tunmore, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist (Psychological

Support)
Beverley van der Molen, formerly Clinical Nurse Specialist/Unit Manager (General Oncology)
Rebecca Verity, formerly Senior Staff Nurse (Bud Flanagan Ward)
Chris Viner, Clinical Nurse Specialist (Ambulatory Chemotherapy)
Caro Watts, Nurse Consultant (Transitional Care (Cancer))
Clare Webb, Specialist Sister in Psychological Care
Richard Wells, formerly Rehabilitation Services Manager
Alexandra Westbrook, Programme Leader
Isabel White, Head of Undergraduate Cancer Care Studies
Jane Wilson, formerly Group Theatre Manager
Miriam Wood, Senior Practice Development Facilitator (supporting role)
Jacquie Woodcock, Programme Leader
Karen Wright, formerly Research Assistant Nursing Research Unit
Karen Young, formerly Physiological Measurement Technician

Appendix 3

Multiple choice answers

Chapter 3 Infection prevention and control

1 The correct answer is **d**, Using appropriate hand hygiene, wearing gloves and aprons when necessary, disposing of used sharp instruments safely and providing care in a suitably clean environment to protect yourself and the patients.

2 The correct answer is **c**, Nurse the patient in isolation, ensure that you wear appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) and adhere to strict hand hygiene, for the purpose of preventing the spread of organisms from that patient to others.

3 The correct answer is **c**, The patient has spiked a temperature, has a raised white cell count (WCC), has new-onset confusion and the urine in his catheter bag is cloudy.

4 The correct answer is **d**, Review antimicrobials daily, wash hands with soap and water before and after each contact with the patient, ask for enhanced cleaning with chlorine-based products and use gloves and aprons when disposing of body fluids.

5 The correct answer is **b**, Gently make the wound bleed, place under running water and wash thoroughly with soap and water. Complete an incident form and inform your manager. Co-operate with any action to test yourself or the patient for infection with a bloodborne virus but do not obtain blood or consent for testing from the patient yourself; this should be done by someone not involved in the incident.

Chapter 4 Risk management

1 The correct answer is **a**, By adopting a culture of openness and transparency and exploring the root causes of patient safety incidents.

2 The correct answer is **d**, Help the patient to a safe comfortable position, take a set of observations and report the incident to the nurse in charge who may call a doctor. Complete an incident form. At an appropriate time, discuss the incident with the patient and, if they wish, their relatives.

3 The correct answer is **d**, Give adequate analgesia so she can mobilize to the chair with assistance, give subcutaneous low molecular weight heparin as prescribed. Make sure that she is wearing antiembolic stockings.

4 The correct answer is **b**, Assess his risk of developing a pressure ulcer with a risk assessment tool. If indicated, procure an appropriate pressure-relieving mattress for his bed and cushion for his chair. Reassess the patient's pressure areas at least twice a day and keep them clean and dry. Review his fluid and nutritional intake and support him to make changes as indicated.

5 The correct answer is **c**, Make sure that the bed area is free of clutter and that the patient can reach everything she needs, including the call bell. Check regularly to see if the patient needs assistance mobilizing to the toilet. Ensure that she has properly fitting slippers and appropriate walking aids.

Chapter 5 Communication

1 The correct answer is **a**, Listening, clarifying the concerns and feelings of the patient using open questions.

2 The correct answer is **c**, Tell the patient you are interested in what is concerning them and that you are available to listen.

3 The correct answer is **c**, Denial is a coping mechanism used by an individual with the intention of protecting themselves from painful or distressing information whereas collusion is the withholding of information from the patient with the intention of 'protecting them'.

4 The correct answer is **b**, Anxiety has three aspects: physical – bodily sensations related to flight and fight response, behavioural – such as avoiding the situation, and cognitive (thinking) – such as imagining the worst.

5 The correct answer is **a**, Use short statements and closed questions in a well-lit, quiet, familiar environment.

Chapter 6 Elimination

1 The correct answer is **a**, Once other methods of continence management have failed.

2 The correct answer is **b**, The smallest size necessary.

3 The correct answer is **c**, Male and female patients require anaesthetic lubricating gel.

4 The correct answer is **c**, Exercise and drink 2–3 litres of fluid per day.

5 The correct answer is **c**, Below the level of the patient's bladder to reduce backflow of urine.

6 The correct answer is **d**, Antiemetic or opioid medication.

7 The correct answer is **d**, Assessment, source isolation, universal precautions.

8 The correct answer is **d**, Cognitive ability, lifestyle, patient dexterity, position of stoma, state of peristomal skin, type of stoma, consistency of effluent, patient preference.

9 The correct answer is **c**, Encourage a varied diet as people can react differently.

10 The correct answer is **a**, That the patient can independently manage their stoma, and can get supplies.

Chapter 7 Moving and positioning

1 The correct answer is **a**, The skeleton provides a structural framework. This is moved by the muscles that contract or extend and in order to function, cross at least one joint and are attached to the articulating bones.

2 The correct answer is **d**, Social isolation, loss of independence, exacerbation of symptoms, rapid loss of strength in leg muscles, deconditioning of cardiovascular system leading to increased risk of chest infection, and pulmonary embolism.

3 The correct answer is **c**, The patient needs to be able to sit in a forward leaning position supported by pillows. They may also need access to a nebulizer and humidified oxygen so they must be in a position where this is accessible without being a risk to others.

4 The correct answer is **c**, Lying on his side with the area to be drained uppermost after the patient has had humidified air.

5 The correct answer is **b**, Try to diminish increased tone by avoiding extra stimulation by ensuring her foot doesn't come into contact with the end of the bed; supporting, with a pillow, her left leg in side lying and keeping the knee flexed.

Chapter 8 Nutrition, fluid balance and blood transfusion

1 The correct answer is **d**, The fluid input has exceeded the output.

2 The correct answer is **a**, Blood glucose levels, full blood count, stoma site and bodyweight.

3 The correct answer is **b**, Offer the patient pain relief and either use bed scales or a hoist with scales built in.

4 The correct answer is **b**, Sip feeds.

5 The correct answer is **a**, The feed.

6 The correct answer is **c**, Feeding via a radiologically inserted gastrostomy (RIG).

7 The correct answer is **b**, Sit them at least at a 45° angle.

8 The correct answer is **d**, Drugs that can be absorbed via this route, can be crushed and given diluted or dissolved in 10–15 mL of water.

9 The correct answer is **c**, That the pH of gastric aspirate is <5.5, and the measurement on the NG tube is the same length as the time insertion.

10 The correct answer is **b**, Temperature, pulse, blood pressure and respiration before the blood transfusion begins, then after 15 minutes, then as indicated in local guidelines, and finally at the end of the bag/unit.

Chapter 9 Patient comfort

1 The correct answer is **b**, As the skin of an elder person has reduced blood supply, is thinner, less elastic and has less natural oil. This means the skin is less resistant to shearing forces and wound healing can be delayed.

2 The correct answer is **a**, Document clearly the reason for not cutting his toe nails and refer him to a chiropodist.

3 The correct answer is **a**, Ask her to score her pain, describe its intensity, duration, the site, any relieving measures and what makes it worse, looking for non-verbal clues, so you can determine the appropriate method of pain management.

4 The correct answer is **b**, Step 2: Opioids for Mild to Moderate Pain.

5 The correct answer is **a**, A patient who has adequately controlled pain relief with short-lived exacerbation of pain, with a prescription that has no regular time of administration of analgesia.

6 The correct answer is **c**, Contact the pain team/anaesthetist to discuss the situation and suggest that the means of delivery are changed.

7 The correct answer is **a**, A wound dressing change for short-term pain relief or the removal of a chest drain for reduction of anxiety.

8 The correct answer is **a**, Respiratory rate, bowel movement record and pain assessment and score.

9 The correct answer is **d**, Potentially all of the above.

Chapter 10 Respiratory care

1 The correct answer is **c**, Observe the patient's breathing for ease and comfort, rate and pattern.

2 The correct answer is **c**, The type of oxygen delivery system, inspired oxygen percentage and duration of the therapy.

3 The correct answer is **b**, Never insert the catheter for longer than 10–15 seconds.

4 The correct answer is **d**, Arterial blood gases measure both oxygen and carbon dioxide levels and therefore give an indication of both ventilation and oxygenation.

5 The correct answer is **c**, Higher rates can cause nasal mucosal drying and may lead to epistaxis.

6 The correct answer is **a**, Early defibrillation to restart the heart.

7 The correct answer is **b**, Oxygen is a dry gas which can cause evaporation of water from the respiratory tract and lead to thickened mucus in the airways, reduction of the movement of cilia and increased susceptibility to respiratory infection.

Chapter 11 Interpreting diagnostic tests

1 The correct answer is **a**, Double bag it, in a self-sealing bag, and wear gloves if handling the specimen.

2 The correct answer is **c**, Choosing a soft, bouncy vein that refills when depressed and is easily detected, and advising the patient to keep their arm straight whilst firm pressure is applied.

3 The correct answer is **a**, Collect at least 10 mL of blood.

4 The correct answer is **a**, Inoculate the aerobic culture first.

5 The correct answer is **b**, Temperature of 38.5°C, shivering, tachycardia and hypertensive.

6 The correct answer is **a**, Clean around the urethral meatus prior to sample collection and get a midstream/clean catch urine specimen.

7 The correct answer is **b**, Gastroscopy.

8 The correct answer is **a**, MRI.

9 The correct answer is **a**, Eat and drink as soon as sedation has worn off.

10 The correct answer is **a**, Inadvertent puncture of the pleura, a blood vessel or bile duct.

Chapter 12 Observations

1 The correct answer is **a**, When they are admitted or initially assessed. A plan should be clearly documented which identifies which observations should be taken and how frequently subsequent observations should be done.

2 The correct answer is **b**, The system provides an early accurate predictor of deterioration by identifying physiological criteria that alert the nursing staff to a patient at risk.

3 The correct answer is **c**, A full set of observations: blood pressure, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation and temperature. It is essential to perform a 12-lead ECG. The patient should then be reviewed by the doctor.

4 The correct answer is **b**, If the patient has a history of dizziness or syncope on changing position.

5 The correct answer is **c**, Decreased conscious level, oliguria and reduced coronary blood flow.

6 The correct answer is **d**, If peripheral circulation is impaired, collection of capillary blood is not advised as the results might not be a true reflection of the physiological blood glucose level.

7 The correct answer is **b**, This is a medical emergency. Basic airway, breathing and circulation should be attended to urgently and senior help should be sought.

8 The correct answer is **b**, Counting the number of respiratory cycles in 1 minute. One cycle is equal to the complete rise and fall of the patient's chest.

9 The correct answer is **c**, Undertake a full set of observations to include oxygen saturations and respiratory rate. Administer humidified oxygen, bronchodilators, corticosteroids and antimicrobial therapy as prescribed.

Chapter 13 Medicines management

1 The correct answer is **b**, The safe handling and administration of all medicines to patients in their care. This includes making sure that patients understand the medicines they are taking, the reason they are taking them and the likely side effects.

2 The correct answer is **b**, As part of the process of diagnosing their illness, to prevent an illness, disease or side effect, to offer relief from symptoms or to treat a disease.

3 The correct answer is **d**, Administration of the wrong drug, in the wrong amount to the wrong patient, via the wrong route.

4 The correct answer is **c**, The patient will quickly find breathing very difficult because of compromise to their airway or circulation. This is accompanied by skin and mucosal changes.

5 The correct answer is **b**, It gives patients more control and allows them to take the medications on time, as well as giving them the opportunity to address any concerns with their medication before they are discharged home.

6 The correct answer is **d**, Check the cupboard, record book and order book and inform the registered nurse or person in charge of the clinical area. If the missing drugs are not found then inform the most senior nurse on duty. You will also complete an incident form.

7 The correct answer is **c**, Check the stock of oral morphine sulphate in the CD cupboard with another registered nurse and record this in the control drug book; together, check the correct prescription and the identity of the patient.

8 The correct answer is **b**, Check to see if the patient has vomited the tablets and, if so, document this on the prescription chart. If possible, the drugs may be given again after the administration of antiemetics or when the patient no longer feels nauseous. It may be necessary to discuss an alternative route of administration with the doctor.

9 The correct answer is **d**, The intravenous route provides an immediate therapeutic effect and gives better control of the rate of administration as a more precise dose can be calculated so treatment can be more reliable.

10 The correct answer is **c**, Her name, date of birth, hospital number, if she has any known allergies, the prescription for metronidazole: dose, route, time, date and that it is signed by the doctor, and when it was last given.

Chapter 14 Perioperative care

1 The correct answer is **a**, Identifies patients at risk of deterioration.

2 The correct answer is **b**, To reduce the risk of reflux and inhalation of gastric contents.

3 The correct answer is **d**, Gaining permission from a patient who is competent to give it, by providing information in understandable terms prior to surgery, allowing time for answering questions, and inviting voluntary participation.

4 The correct answer is **c**, 4 (1 each side, 1 at head, 1 at feet).

5 The correct answer is **b**, They promote venous blood flow.

6 The correct answer is **a**, The patient is showing symptoms of hypovolaemic shock. Investigate source of fluid loss, administer fluid replacement and get medical support.

Chapter 15 Wound management

1 The correct answer is **a**, High humidity, insulation, gaseous exchange, absorbent.

2 The correct answer is **d**, On every wound.

3 The correct answer is **b**, Debride and apply a hydrogel dressing.

4 The correct answer is **a**, In the inflammation phase of healing.

5 The correct answer is **b**, Haemostasis, inflammation phase, proliferation phase, maturation phase.

6 The correct answer is **c**, Foam dressing, pressure-relieving mattress, nutritional support.

Index

ABC of resuscitation
abdominal distension
  during bladder irrigation
  enterally fed patients
abducens nerve (VI)
ABO blood groups
  haematopoietic stem cell transplantation
ABO incompatibilities
Abstral
abuse
  defined
  of vulnerable adults
  see also aggression
accessory muscles of respiration
  use of
accidents
  defined
  see also incidents; spillages
accountability
Accuhaler®
aciclovir
acid–base homeostasis
acoustic nerve (VIII)
acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)
Action for Blind People
Actiq
activated charcoal dressings
active movements, immobile patients
active transport

activities of daily living, assessment
activity, assessment
acupuncture
acute lung injury, transfusion-related (TRALI)
acute normovolaemic haemodilution (ANH)
acute pain
  assessment
  management
  need for effective control
  opioid-dependent patients
  pre-existing chronic pain and
  see also postoperative pain
Adapt ring convex inserts
ADH *see* antidiuretic hormone
adhesive, tissue
adhesive island dressings
adhesive skin closure strips
adjuvant analgesics (co-analgesics)
administration of medicines *see* medicines administration
administration sets
  blood *see* blood administration sets
  enteral feeding
  extension sets
  gravity flow
  reducing risk of infection
adrenaline (epinephrine)
  blood pressure regulation
  cardiopulmonary resuscitation
advanced beginner nurse
advance directives
advanced life support (ALS)
advanced practice
adverse drug reactions (ADRs)

  allergic reactions
  predisposing factors
  treatment of acute
  types A and B
  Yellow Card Scheme
adverse event
aerobic organisms
aerosol containers, storage
aerosol dosage forms
aerosol generators, humidification
affirming
Age Concern
ageing
  eye
  skin
age-related macular degeneration
aggression
  management
  underlying causes
  verbal
agitation, at end of life
AIDS (acquired immune deficiency syndrome)
air, composition
airborne infection, precautions
airborne transmission
air fluidized beds
air fresheners
air-in-line detectors
air pressure
  protective isolation rooms
  source isolation rooms
airway
  anatomy

assessment
basic life support
laryngeal mask (LMA)
mucociliary transport
obstruction, postoperative
oropharyngeal or Guedel
secretions *see* respiratory secretions
suctioning, cardiopulmonary resuscitation
airway maintenance
cardiopulmonary resuscitation
during oxygen therapy
postanaesthetic recovery
unconscious patients
Alaris GH syringe pump
albumin
plasma
solutions, human (HAS)
alcohol-based handrubs
dispensers
procedure guideline
alcohol solutions/swabs, injection site preparation
aldosterone
alfentanil
alginate wound dressings
allergic reactions
blood transfusions
classification
drugs
intravenous drug administration
see also latex, allergy
allodynia
allopurinol
alopecia, chemotherapy-related

alternating pressure (AP) beds
alveolar pressure
alveoli, gaseous exchange
Ambu bag and mask ventilation
  see also self-inflating resuscitation bag
amikacin
aminoglycoside antibiotics
  adverse effects
  monitoring serum concentrations
amiodarone
amoebic dysentery
ampoules
  powder preparation, procedure guideline
  solution preparation, procedure guideline
amputation
  complications
  levels
  positioning and management
    equipment
    principles
    problem solving
    procedure guideline
anaemia
anaerobic organisms
anaesthesia
  equipment
  history of development
  induction
  pain management interventions
  pharmacological agents
  preoperative fasting
  procedure guideline
  recovery after *see* postanaesthetic recovery

see also local anaesthesia; topical anaesthesia
anaesthetic lubricating gel, urinary catheterization
anaesthetic machine
anaesthetic room
preoperative safety checklist
procedure guideline
anaesthetist
postanaesthetic assessment
preoperative assessment
anal canal
analgesia
around the clock (ATC)
background
breakthrough
epidural
inhalation (Entonox)
intramuscular
intraoperative
intrathecal
intravenous
oral
patient-controlled
preoperative information
sputum collection
subcutaneous
wound drain procedures
see also pain management
analgesic ladder
analgesics
adjuvant (co-analgesics)
mechanisms of action
methods of delivery
non-opioid

opioid *see* opioid analgesics
oral mucositis
rescue doses
anaphylactic reactions, blood transfusions
anesthesia *see* anaesthesia
anger
management
underlying causes
warning signs
angiogenesis
angiotensin
Anglicans, last offices
ankle movements, active
anorexia, dietary advice
antecubital fossa, veins for venepuncture
antibacterial eye preparations
antibiotic(s)
appropriate use
-associated diarrhoea
blood cultures prior to
coated urinary catheters
diarrhoea treatment
eye preparations
intrathecal administration
pain management
sensitivity testing
specimen collection prior to
therapeutic monitoring
see also antimicrobial agents
anticoagulants, thromboprophylaxis
anticonvulsants, pain management
antidepressants
panic disorder/acute anxiety

antidiuretic hormone (ADH)
antiembolic stockings
  contraindications
  fitting
  Lloyd Davies position and
  postoperative use
  procedure guideline
antiemetic agents
  surgical patients
antifungal agents
  eye preparations
  oral infections
anti-inflammatory drugs, eye
antimicrobial agents
  assays, blood sampling for
  in handwashing preparations
  see also antibiotic(s)
antimicrobial wound dressings
antimotility drugs
antipsychotic medication
antispasmodics
antiviral eye preparations
anxiety
  acute (panic attacks)
  depression with
  effects on pain
  management
  preoperative
  venepuncture
aperients
aphasia
  principles of communication
apheresis, donor

apneustic breathing
apnoea
Appeal adhesive remover
aprons, disposable
  dispensers
  procedure guideline
  protective isolation
  source isolation
aqueous humour
arachis oil enema
arginine
argyria
arm *see* upper limb
arousability
arrhythmias
  causing cardiac arrest
  complicating inhaler use
  complicating tracheal suctioning
  ECG features
  postoperative
  sinus
arteries
  inadvertent puncture
  pulse points
arterioles
arthropods
  infestations
  vector transmission
art therapy
ascites
ascorbic acid (vitamin C)
aseptic non-touch technique (ANTT)
aseptic technique

dressing a wound
examples
intravenous drug administration
operating theatre
procedure guideline
rationale
urinary catheterization
venepuncture
aspiration of gastric contents, complicating enteral feeding
aspirin
assessment (inpatient)
comprehensive
definition
documentation
evidence-based approaches
focused
interviews
methods
mini
ongoing
principles
process
self-
single
structure
tools
types
asthma, peak expiratory flow
asymmetrical tonic neck reflex
asystole
ataxic breathing
atelectasis, postoperative
athletes, heart rate

atmosphere
atmospheric pressure
atopic patients, allergic drug reactions
atrial fibrillation
  blood pressure measurement
atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP)
atrioventricular (AV) block, first degree
atrioventricular (AV) bundle (bundle of His)
atrioventricular (AV) node
atrioventricular (AV) valves
atropine
attitude, towards patients
audit, infection prevention and control
auditory ossicles
augmentive or alternative communication (AAC)
auscultatory gap
autologous blood donation
autolytic wound debridement
automated external defibrillators (AEDs)
autonomic nervous system (ANS)
awareness, conscious
axillary temperature

Babinski response
bacteraemia
  blood cultures
  signs and symptoms
bacteria
  antibiotic sensitivity
  cell walls
  commensal
  identification
  medically significant

shapes and arrangements
specimen handling
spores
structure
wound colonization
bacterial infections
serology
transfusion-transmitted
bacteriuria
catheterized patients
significant
Bahai faith
Bair Hugger blankets
balance
balloon catheters *see* Foley catheters
barium studies
baroreceptors
barrier nursing
defined
reverse
see also protective isolation; source isolation
basic life support (BLS)
algorithm
method (ABC)
principles
basilic vein
basins, hand wash
bathing
ear care after
patients in isolation
see also bed bathing
bathrooms, cleaning
beard care

bed(s)
  linen *see* linen/laundry
  positioning in
    amputees
    side lying
    sitting up
    supine
  standing up from
bed bathing
  communication during
  procedure guideline
bedpans
  constipated patients
  procedure guideline
bed rest
  postoperative
  see also rest
behaviour, towards patients
beliefs, assessing patient's
Benner's model of skill acquisition
benzodiazepines
  drug interactions
  endoscopic procedures
  legal controls
  pain management
benzydamine mouthwash
bereavement support
bilirubin, serum
binary fission
biochemical tests
  blood samples
  nutritional status
  surgical patients

bio-electrical impedance analysis (BIA)
biofilms
biopsy, liver
biotin
Biot's breathing
bisacodyl
bisphosphonates
black and minority ethnic (BME) groups
  communication issues
  pressure ulcer risk
  see also cultural beliefs/issues
bladder
  anatomy and physiology
  hyperirritability, catheterized patients
  overfilling, during irrigation
  postoperative distension
bladder irrigation
  catheters for
  defined
  fluid
  indications
  patient assessment
  problem solving
  procedure guidelines
  recording chart
bleeding/haemorrhage
  after colonoscopy
  after gastroscopy
  after liver biopsy
  after venepuncture
  cardiopulmonary arrest
  fluid homeostasis
  postoperative

wounds
blindness
communication and
blink reflex
blocking behaviours
blogs, internet
blood
accidental spillage
clots, bladder irrigation
gas transport
leucodepletion
oxygen transportation
spurting, during venepuncture
blood administration sets
changing
transfusion procedure
bloodborne infections
blood cultures
inoculation injuries
last offices
testing of donated blood
transfusion-related
transmission
blood components/products
administration, procedure guideline
appropriate use of donated
collection and delivery, procedure guideline
donation
irradiation to inactivate T lymphocytes
labelling
traceability
blood cultures
central venous access device-related infection

- competencies
- equipment
- indications
- methods of specimen collection
- postprocedure care
- procedure guideline
- skin preparation
- volume of blood required

blood donation
- autologous
- testing

blood flow
- improving wound bed
- problems during venepuncture

blood glucose
- diagnosis of diabetes
- monitoring
  - conditions affecting accuracy
  - equipment
  - general principles
  - indications
  - methods
  - problem solving
  - procedure guideline
  - training and quality control
- normal values
- regulation
- *see also* hyperglycaemia; hypoglycaemia

blood glucose meters

blood groups
- haemopoietic stem cell transplantation
- incompatibility
- typing

blood pack labelling
blood pressure (BP)
  across cardiovascular system
  control
  defined
  in dehydration
  diastolic
  factors affecting
  measurement
    cautions
    direct
    documentation
    equipment
    indications
    indirect
    methods
    neurological patients
    orthostatic BP
    postanaesthetic recovery
    postoperative
    postprocedure actions
    practical aspects
    problem solving
    procedure guideline
    at thigh
    see also sphygmomanometers
  normal
  systolic
  theory
  see also hypertension; hypotension
blood products *see* blood components/products
Blood Safety and Quality Regulations 2005
blood sampling

antimicrobial drug assay
blood cultures
blood tests
equipment
order of collection
pretransfusion, procedure guideline
see also venepuncture
blood tests
preoperative
blood transfusion
appropriate use
blood and blood products used *see* blood components/products
blood typing
competencies
complications
consent
defined
incompatible
indications
infectious complications
infusion devices
Jehovah's Witnesses
multiple choice questions
observations during/after
patient safety issues
postprocedure care
pre-administration checks
problem solving
procedure guidelines
rationale
safety and quality in UK
BLS *see* basic life support
body, care after death *see* last offices

body bag
body composition
  measurement
  nutritional status and
  two-compartment model
body fluids
  composition
  high risk
  patients in isolation
  transmission of infection
body image
  assessment
  stoma patients
body mass index (BMI)
bodyweight
  measurement
    in adults
    problem solving
    procedure guideline
    sick children
  nutritional assessment
Bohr effect
bones
bougies
bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE)
bowel
  anatomy and physiology
  measuring fluid output
  perforation, complicating colonoscopy
bowel function/habit
  assessment
  factors affecting
  normal

postoperative
see also constipation; diarrhoea
bowel preparation
colonoscopy
stoma surgery
Boyle's Law
BP *see* blood pressure
B/P. sphyg. *see* sphygmomanometers
brachial artery
blood pressure measurement
brachial plexus
Braden scale
bradycardia
postoperative
bradypnoea
brain
bruising (contusion)
expanding masses
brain stem
damage
breakthrough analgesia
breakthrough pain
breast surgery, seroma formation after
breathing
abnormal patterns
agonal
anatomy and physiology
assessment
cardiopulmonary resuscitation
increased effort, after repositioning
mechanism of
positioning to minimize work of
see also respiration

breathing exercises, deep (DBE)
breathlessness
  at end of life
  patient positioning
  see also respiratory compromise
Brief Pain Inventory (BPI)
Bristol Royal Infirmary
Bristol Stool Form Chart
British Committee for Standards in Haematology (BCSH)
British Lung Foundation
British Society for Allergy and Clinical Immunology (BSACI)
British Thoracic Society (BTS)
bronchial tree
bronchoalveolar lavage
bruising, after venepuncture
BSE (bovine spongiform encephalopathy)
buccal tablets
Buddhism, last offices
Buddhist Hospice Trust
buffy coat granulocytes
bundle of His (AV bundle)
buprenorphine
burial
  within 24 hours
  cultural and religious practices
Burial Society of the United Synagogue
burns, diathermy
Butrans
butterfly devices *see* winged infusion devices

caecum
calcium, plasma
calcium chloride

calcium phosphate mouthwash
calculus, dental
calf compression boots, intermittent *see* intermittent pneumatic compression devices
cancer
  death trajectory
  hypercalcaemia
  patient assessment
Cancer Action Team, assessment guidance
cancer pain
  assessment
  causes
  management
  see also chronic pain
Candida albicans
candidiasis, oral
cannabis
capacity, mental
capillary blood glucose monitoring
  see also blood glucose, monitoring
capillary wound dressings
capsules
  opening
  storage
carbohydrates, oral supplements
carbon dioxide (CO_2)
  control of respiration
  excretion
  insufflation, laparoscopic surgery
  narcosis
  pulmonary exchange
  transport
  see also hypercapnia

carbon dioxide partial pressure (PCO_2)
  in blood ($PaCO_2$)
  inspired and expired air
carbonic acid
carbon monoxide (CO) poisoning
cardiac arrest
  arrhythmias causing
  in-hospital
  management *see* cardiopulmonary resuscitation
  post-resuscitation care
  potentially reversible causes
  prevention
  team
  unwitnessed
cardiac arrhythmias *see* arrhythmias
cardiac compressions *see* chest compressions
cardiac ischaemia, in fluid overload
cardiac massage *see* chest compressions
cardiac output (CO)
cardiac pacemakers, deceased patients
cardiac syncope
cardiac tamponade
cardiogenic shock
cardiopulmonary arrest *see* cardiac arrest
cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR)
  advanced life support (ALS)
  assessment
  basic life support (BLS)
  complications
  contraindications
  cross-infection risks
  defibrillation
  documentation

drugs
equipment
indications
in-hospital algorithm
multiple choice questions
postprocedure care
problem solving
procedure guideline
recommendations
standards and training
see also cardiac arrest
cardiovascular assessment
cardiovascular instability, moving patients with
care
of body after death *see* last offices
delegation of
documentation
evaluating
high-impact actions
high quality, defined
implementing
planning
process of
quality of *see* quality of care
care homes, discharge to
Care Quality Commission (CQC)
Essential Standards of Quality and Safety
infection prevention and control
regulatory duties
carers, informal
discharge planning and
see also family
Carers Act, 1995

carotid artery, common
carotid pulse, checking
cataracts
cathartics
catheter-associated urinary tract infections (CAUTI)
  catheter materials and
  preventive measures
catheters
  central venous (CVCs)
  endotracheal suctioning
  urinary *see* urinary catheters
catheter specimen of urine (CSU)
CAUTI *see* catheter-associated urinary tract infections
Cavilon barrier film
CDs *see* controlled drugs
cell wall, bacterial
CE mark
central nervous system (CNS)
central venous access device (CVAD)-related infections
central venous access devices (CVAD)
  blood culture samples
  blood sampling for antimicrobial drug assay
  occlusion
central venous catheters (CVCs)
central venous pressure
cephalic vein
cerebellum
cerebral hemispheres
cerebral oedema
cerumen *see* ear wax
cervical nerves
cervical plexus
cervical spine injuries, assessment

chain of infection
chair
  patient positioning in
  standing up from
chapel of rest
charities, disease-specific national
charrière (ch)
chemoreceptors
chemotherapy
  effects on skin
  hair loss
  oral complications
chest
  anteroposterior (AP) diameter
  assessment of shape and expansion
chest compressions, cardiopulmonary resuscitation
chest X-rays
  nasogastric tubes
  post-CPR
Cheyne–Stokes breathing
children *see* paediatric patients
Chiron barrier cream
chlamydia, eye swabs
chlorhexidine
  denture care
  mouthwash
  oral care
  skin preparation
chloroform
choroid
Christianity, last offices
Christian Scientists, last offices
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)

chronic pain
  acute pain superimposed on
  assessment
    procedure guideline
    RMH patient-held chart
  defined
  management
  see also cancer pain
Church of England, last offices
Church of Jesus Christ of the Latter Day Saints, last offices
circulation, cardiopulmonary resuscitation
circulatory overload *see* fluid overload
CJD *see* Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease
clarifying
cleaning
  isolation rooms
  matron's role
  skin *see* skin preparation
  stoma
  wounds
clients *see* patient(s)
clinical experience/expertise
clinical nurse specialists
clinical risk
  defined
  inherent, defined
clinical risk management
clinical supervision
clippers, preoperative hair removal
Clostridium difficile
  control measures
  faecal specimens
  spores

surveillance
clothing
deceased patient
protective *see* personal protective equipment
cloths, prepackaged
cluster breathing
coagulation
blood tests
disorders, enteral tube insertion
co-analgesics
coccygeal nerves
co-codamol
co-danthramer
Code, NMC
codeine phosphate
diarrhoea
pain management
paracetamol combinations
coffee
cognition
cognitive impairment, pain assessment
cognitive state
assessment
moving and positioning and
Cohesive seals
cohorting
defined
cold
delayed wound healing
storage, medicines
therapy *see* cryotherapy
collaboration with patients
collagen

dressings
in wound healing
collusion
colon
colonization
critical
defined
wound
colonoscope
colonoscopy
indications
patient preparation
colostomy
end (permanent)
loop (temporary; defunctioning)
plugs
postoperative function
pouches
see also stoma(s)
comatose patients *see* unconscious patients
Combitube
comfort, patient
intravenous drug administration
multiple choice questions
pain control measures
see also pain management; personal hygiene
commensal organisms
Commission for Health Improvement (CHI)
see also Care Quality Commission
Commission for Social Care Inspection
Commission on Human Medicines (CHM)
commodes, procedure guideline
common carotid artery

communication
acquired disorders
aids
anatomy and physiology
angry/aggressive patients
aphasic patients
assessment
during assessment
augmentive or alternative (AAC)
barriers to effective
during bed bathing
blind or partially sighted patients
challenging issues
competencies
deaf or hard of hearing
defined
delirious patients
depressed patients
with diagnostic laboratory
discharge planning and
dying patients
effective
environmental aspects
language and cultural issues
legal and professional issues
multiple choice questions
non-verbal
oxygen therapy and
risk management process
skills
speech-impaired patients
suicidal patients
supportive *see* psychological support

theories of interpersonal
therapeutic
unconscious patients
verbal
community care
discharge planning
personalized
Community Care (Delayed Discharges) Act
community nurses, discharge planning
compartment syndrome
compassion
competence/competencies
advanced practitioner roles
Benner's model of acquisition
blood transfusion
cardiopulmonary resuscitation
communication
definition
infection prevention and control
nurse prescribing
oxygen therapy
specimen collection
tracheostomy care
urinary catheterization
venepuncture
competent nurse
complementary medicines, drug interactions
compliance aids
compression devices, intermittent pneumatic *see* intermittent pneumatic compression devices
compression stockings, graduated elastic *see* antiembolic stockings
computed tomography (CT)
concertina-type drainage system

removal
conduction system, heart
cone of pressure
confidentiality, respect for
conformable catheters
confusion
covert drug administration
at end of life
Connected programme, NHS
consciousness
arousability
assessment
cardiopulmonary arrest
post-CPR
see also Glasgow Coma Scale
awareness
defined
levels of
Conseal plugs
consent
assessing capacity to give
blood transfusion
capacity to give
implied
informed, obtaining
moving and positioning
specimen collection
for surgery
validity of
verbal
written
constipation
assessment

causes
defined
at end of life
enterally fed patients
management
opioid-induced
Rome criteria
secondary
Constitution, NHS
contact dermatitis, latex allergy
contact lenses
care of
gas permeable
hard
ophthalmic drug administration and
removal, procedure guidelines
soft
surgical patients
contact precautions
contact transmission of infection
containers
medicine
specimen
context, nursing
Continuing Healthcare, NHS
continuous intravenous infusions *see* intravenous infusions, continuous
continuous low pressure (CLP) system
contractures
in amputees
in neurological impairment
controlled drug register (record book)
archiving
legal requirements

procedure guideline
receipt of drugs
controlled drugs (CDs)
accountability and responsibility
administration
procedure guideline
defined
key holding and access
legal requirements
prescription
receipt
record keeping
requisition
return and disposal of unused
safe practice guidance
schedules
stationery
stock checks and discrepancies
storage
supply under patient group direction
transport
Controlled Drugs (Supervision of Management and Use) Regulations 2006
controlled-release tablets
conveens *see* penile sheaths
cool storage, medicines
COPD *see* chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
coping, assessment
cornea
corneal (blink) reflex
coroners
permission for repatriation
referral to

corrugated drains
  shortening
corticosteroids (steroids)
  blood glucose monitoring
  eye drops
  hyperglycaemia due to
  inhaled
  intra-articular injection
  pain management
cost-effectiveness
cough
counselling
  before stoma surgery
  see also psychological support
covert administration of medicines
CPR *see* cardiopulmonary resuscitation
cranial nerves
C-reactive protein (CRP)
creams
  storage
creatinine
  serum
Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease (CJD)
  variant (vCJD)
    transmission in blood
cricoid pressure
cricothyroid puncture set
critically ill patients
  blood pressure measurement
  oral care
  pain management
  physiological scoring systems
  pulse monitoring

sedation
temperature monitoring
transport
crockery, patients in isolation
cross-infection
prevention *see* infection prevention and control
Cruse Bereavement Care
cryo-depleted plasma
cryoprecipitate
cryotherapy (cold therapy)
oral, to prevent mucositis
pain management
CSU *see* catheter specimen of urine
cuff, blood pressure
cuff pressure manometer
cultural beliefs/issues
assessment
communication
death and dying
personal hygiene
culture, microbiological *see* microbiological culture
Cushing reflex
cutlery, patients in isolation
CVAD *see* central venous access devices
cyanosis
cycloplegics
cystic fibrosis
cystoscopy
cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection, transfusion-related

Dalton's law
danthron
Darzi, Lord, NHS Next Stage Review

final report *see High Quality Care for All*
NHS Constitution
deafness *see* hearing loss
death
confirmation
cultural and religious practices
education of family
'good'
immediate care
informing next of kin
last offices
legal issues
problem solving
procedure guidelines
registration and certification
repatriation after
sudden or unexpected
trajectories
viewing body after removal from ward
see also dying patients; end-of-life care
debridement, wound
decannulation plug, tracheostomy
decerebrate posturing
decision making
about nursing care
documentation
mental capacity
patient involvement in
reasonableness of
decorticate posturing
decubitus ulcers *see* pressure ulcers
deep breathing exercises (DBE)
deep vein thrombosis (DVT)

prophylaxis *see* thromboprophylaxis
risk factors
signs
see also venous thromboembolism
defaecation
anatomy and physiology
assisting, procedure guidelines
positioning for
defibrillation
placement of paddles/electrodes
problem solving
procedure
safe practice
by untrained individuals
defibrillators
dehydration
in diarrhoea
infusion-related
venepuncture in
delayed-release capsules
delegation of care
delirium
documentation
at end of life
incidence/prevalence
management
signs and symptoms
deltoid muscle injections
dementia, pain assessment
denial
assessment
supporting patients in
dental crowns/bridges

dental decay
dental floss/tape
dentures
  cleaning
  removal
  surgical patients
deodorizers
  stoma
depilation, surgical site
depolarization
depression
  co-morbid
  defined
  diagnosis
  management
  symptoms
Depression Alliance
Depression UK
dermis
desferrioxamine
dextrocardia
diabetes mellitus (DM)
  blood glucose monitoring
  consequences of hyperglycaemia
  delayed wound healing
  diagnosis
  foot care
  hypoglycaemia
  odour of urine
  patient education
  tight glycaemic control
diabetic ketoacidosis
diabetic retinopathy

diagnosis, nursing
  concept
  documentation
  example
  process
diagnostic tests
  multiple choice questions
  rationale
  request forms
dialogue, with patients
diamorphine
  emergency supply
  routes of administration
  safer practice guidance
diaphragm
diarrhoea
  acute
  antibiotic-associated
  assessment
  causes
  chronic
  defined
  enterally fed patients
  faecal incontinence
  faecal specimens
  infection prevention and control
  management
  source isolation
  see also Clostridium difficile
diastolic blood pressure
  measurement
diathermy
diclofenac

diencephalon
diet
  in constipation management
  in diarrhoea management
  history
  immunocompromised patients
  modification
  stoma patients
  see also food; nutrition
dietary supplements
diffusion
  facilitated
  of gases
digestion
digital rectal examination (DRE)
dignity
  maintaining
    in diarrhoea
    when moving and positioning
  respect for
dihydrocodeine
dioctyl sodium sulphosuccinate *see* docusate sodium
2, 3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG)
dipstick (reagent) tests, urine
  drugs affecting results
  procedure guideline
direct contact, transmission via
discharge
  to care home
  complex
  delay monitoring form
  delays
  at end of life

to intermediate care
against medical advice
neutropenic patients
patients with particular care needs
policy
weekend
discharge co-ordinator
discharge planning
communication and
complex cases
defined
evidence-based approach
postoperative
principles
procedure guideline
process
role of informal carers
single assessment process
stoma patients
dispensing
Distress Thermometer
district nurses, discharge planning
diversity
documentation
guidelines
NMC *Code*
nursing care
docusate sodium (dioctyl sodium sulphosuccinate)
enema
laxative
domestic staff, cleaning isolation rooms
do not attempt resuscitation (DNAR)
L-dopa

dorsal artery of the foot (dorsalis pedis artery)
dorsogluteal intramuscular injections
dosette boxes
double checking, medicines
double gloving
2, 3-DPG (2,3-diphosphoglycerate)
drains, wound
  closed
    changing vacuum
  dressings
    changing, procedure guideline
  leaking
  measuring fluid output
  open
  removal
    procedure guideline
    seroma formation after
  shortening, procedure guideline
  skin care
drinking
  assistance with
  difficulties
  preoperative
  see also eating; fluid intake
drinks, disguising medication in
driving
  mydriatic therapy and
  opioids and
droplet precautions
droplet transmission
drug interactions
  pharmacodynamic
  pharmacokinetic

drug intoxication, cardiopulmonary arrest
drugs *see* medicines
drying
  hand
  skin
dry mouth (xerostomia)
  causes
  during oxygen therapy
  treatment
dry powder inhalers (DPI)
dry skin
duodenum
Durogesic *see* fentanyl
Duthie Report, *The Safe and Secure Handling of Medicines: A Team Approach* (2005)
DVT *see* deep vein thrombosis
dying patients
  anatomy and physiology
  common symptoms
  definitions
  discharge home
  see also death; end-of-life care; palliative care
dynamic air mattress
dysarthria
  principles of communication
dyspareunia, stoma patients
dysphagia
  dietary modification
  oral medications and
  see also swallowing difficulties
dysphasia
  neurological assessment
dysphonia

principles of communication
dyspnoea
dyspraxia of speech
dysuria, catheterized patients

ear
anatomy
assessment
balance function
drug administration
irrigation
mechanism of hearing
swab sampling
ear care
contraindications
defined
indications
ear drops, procedure guideline
eardrum *see* tympanic membrane
Early Warning Scoring System *see* Modified Early Warning System
ear wax (cerumen)
assessment
impaction
removal (ear irrigation)
softeners
eating
assistance with
procedure guideline
difficulties
documentation
ECG *see* electrocardiogram
economic factors, influencing nursing
edatrexate

Effentora
effervescent tablets
Einthoven triangle
elastic compression stockings, graduated *see* antiembolic stockings
elderly *see* older adults
electrocardiogram (ECG)
  12-lead
    in dextrocardia
    electrode positions
    equipment
    female patients
    filters
    problem solving
    procedure guideline
  abnormal tracings
  ambulatory
  anatomy and physiology
  cardiopulmonary resuscitation
  documentation
  normal
  paper
  pulse measurement
electrolytes
  in body fluids
  ileostomy patients
  renal handling
  serum
  transport across membranes
elemental feeds
elimination
  assessment
  assisting patient with normal
  faecal

moving patients and
multiple choice questions
urinary
see also defaecation; urination
elixirs
embolism/embolus, pulmonary *see* pulmonary embolism
emollients
emotional distress, recording tools
emotional support *see* psychological support
empathy
endocarditis, blood cultures
end-of-life care
basic principles
communication issues
evidence-based approaches
legal and ethical issues
Liverpool Care Pathway
oral care
physical
preferred priorities
procedure
psychosocial
spiritual and religious
see also dying patients; palliative care
End-of-Life Care Strategy (2008)
endoscope
endoscopic investigations
endoscopists, nurse
endotracheal intubation
cardiopulmonary resuscitation
equipment
postanaesthetic recovery
problem solving

endotracheal suctioning
  postanaesthetic recovery
  specimen collection
  via tracheostomy
    complications
    equipment
    indications
    method
    principles
    procedure guideline
    suction catheter size and pressure
endotracheal tubes (ETT)
  introducers
  sampling respiratory secretions
  suction catheters
enemas
  contraindications
  evacuant
  indications
  problem solving
  procedure guideline
  retention
energy
  requirements, calculation
  supplements
enhanced recovery programmes, postoperative
enteral feeding tubes
  administration of medication
    problem solving
    procedure guideline
enteral feeding tubes (*cont.*)
  blocked
  checking position

insertion
contraindications
indications
patient preparation
problem solving
procedure guidelines
see also nasogastric intubation
see also nasogastric tubes
enteral feeds
chemically defined/elemental
immune modulating
medium chain triglycerides
paediatric
special application
whole protein/polymeric
enteral route of drug administration
enteral tube feeding
administration of feed
administration systems
blood glucose monitoring
bolus
complications
continuous
definition
equipment
home
hyperglycaemia
indications
intermittent
measuring fluid input
monitoring
nasal care
postoperative

preoperative cessation
problem solving
procedure guideline
psychosocial impact
pump alarms
rationale
termination
enteric-coated tablets
enteric precautions
Entonox (nitrous oxide and oxygen)
environment (health care)
delirium and
in neurological impairment
in respiratory compromise
supportive communication
venepuncture
epidermis
epidural analgesia
epinephrine *see* adrenaline
epithelialization, wound
e-prescribing systems
equality
Equality Act
Equality Impact Assessment (EIA)
erectile dysfunction, stoma patients
errors
intravenous drug
medication
see also incidents; incorrect blood component transfused error; spillages
erythrocytes *see* red blood cells
Escherichia coli
Essence of Care benchmarks

essential oils
ether anaesthesia
ethnic minority groups *see* black and minority ethnic (BME) groups
Eton scale
eukaryotes
eupnoea
European Medicines Agency (EMEA)
European Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel (EPUAP)
eustachian tube
euthanasia
evaluating care
evidence
  grading
  sources of
  types of
  using best available
evidence-based medicine (EBM)
evidence-based nursing (EBN)
evidence-based practice (EBP)
  definition and concept
  implementation
  patient involvement
exercise
  assessment
  constipation management
  pain management
experience, clinical
expertise, clinical
expert nurse
expert opinion
expiration
expiratory reserve volume (ERV)
extension sets

extensor tone
external acoustic canal
external ear
extracellular fluid (ECF)
extradural haemorrhage
extravasation
exudate, wound
  bags for draining excessive
  chronic excessive
  excessive
  specimen collection
eye(s)
  ageing changes
  anatomy and physiology
  artificial (prosthetic)
  assessment
  closure, during surgery
  infections
  movements
  systemic drug administration
  topical drug administration
eyebrows
eye care
  indications
  light source
  principles
eye drops
  containers and droppers
  instillation
  storage
eye irrigation
  procedure guideline
eyelashes

eyelids
  assessment
eye medications, topical
  infection control
  instillation techniques
  procedure guideline
  types
eye ointments
  instillation
  storage
eye opening, Glasgow Coma Scale
eye patches
eye protection (goggles)
  procedure guideline
  source isolation
eye swabbing
  procedure guidelines
eye swabs

face masks *see* masks
face shields
  procedure guideline
facial artery
facial nerve (VII)
factor Xa inhibitors
faecal elimination
faecal incontinence
  skin care
  specimen collection
faecal–oral transmission
faecal (stool) softeners
faecal specimens
  indications

procedure guidelines
storage and transportation
faeces (stools)
assessment
collection devices, in diarrhoea
measuring fluid output
patients in isolation
see also defaecation
fainting (syncope)
cardiac
urinary catheterization
venepuncture-associated
falls
incidence
prevention
when moving patients
family
bereavement support
deceased patients
discharge planning and
dying patients
participation in last offices
protective isolation
viewing body after removal from ward
fasting, preoperative
fat
body
intramuscular injections and
measurement
dietary supplements
fatigue
febrile non-haemolytic transfusion reactions
feeding, assisted

procedure guideline
feet *see* foot
female patients
ECG recordings
midstream specimen of urine
preoperative care
respiratory volumes and capacities
urinary catheterization
urinary catheters
X-ray precautions
female urethra
femoral artery
fentanyl (Durogesic)
buccal tablet
epidural/intrathecal
intravenous
oral transmucosal (OTFC)
transdermal patches
fever
see also pyrexia
fibre, dietary
fibrillation, heart
fibrin
clot formation
occlusion of cannulas
fibroblasts
finger pressure, neurological assessment
finger pricking, blood glucose monitoring
first-pass metabolism
fistulas, catheterized patients
flagellae
flaps, surgical
observation chart

flatus (wind), stoma patients
flexor tone
flossing, dental
flowmeters
Flowtron machine
  see also intermittent pneumatic compression devices
fluid(s)
  compartments
  composition of body
  requirements, calculation
  see also body fluids; infusion fluids
fluid administration sets
fluid balance
  assessment
  chart
fluid balance (*cont.*)
  defined
  ileostomy patients
  monitoring
    complications
    indications
    problem solving
    procedure guidelines
    record keeping
  multiple choice questions
  physiology
  postoperative management
fluid deficit *see* dehydration
fluid intake (input)
  catheterized patients
  monitoring/measuring
    problem solving
  preoperative

  routes and sources
  urostomy patients
fluid output (losses)
  insensible
  monitoring/measuring
    bowels
    catheterized patients
    gastric outlets, nasogastric tubes, gastrostomy
    non-catheterized patients
    problem solving
    stomas
    wound drains
  routes
fluid (circulatory) overload
  bladder irrigation
  blood transfusion
  intravenous infusions
  postoperative
  see also overinfusion
fluid replacement
  colloids *vs* crystalloids
  diarrhoea
  hypovolaemia
  postoperative
  see also intravenous fluids
flukes
flumazenil
fluoride
5-fluorouracil (5-FU)
  prevention of oral complications
  skin complications
foam sticks, oral care
foam wound dressings

Foley (balloon) catheters
  balloon deflation problems
  balloon filling
  balloon size
  see also urinary catheterization
food
  benchmarks
  digestion and absorption
  disguising medication in
  drug interactions
  ingestion
  prior to colonoscopy
  provision in hospital setting
  record charts
  stoma patients
  see also diet; meals; nutrition
food hygiene
  immunocompromised patients
  regulations
foot
  care
  venepuncture
footwear, supportive
forced expired volume in 1 second (FEV1)
forced vital capacity (FVC)
forearm
  intradermal injections
  veins for venepuncture
fractures
  complicating CPR
  moving and positioning patients with
Free Church, last offices
FreshAire

fresh frozen plasma (FFP)
friction
frontal lobe
fruit juice
5-FU *see* 5-fluorouracil
full blood count (FBC)
Functional Health Patterns, Gordon's
functional residual capacity (FRC)
funeral directors
fungaemia
fungal infections
  feet
  oral
fungi
  culture and identification
Fybogel

gag reflex
ganciclovir
gargling medication, administration
gas and air (Entonox)
gaseous exchange
gastric distension, during CPR
gastric outlets, measuring fluid output
gastrointestinal assessment
gastrointestinal infections
  faecal sampling
  patient education
  symptoms
gastrointestinal tract
gastrointestinal (GI) tract
  lower
  postoperative function

gastro-resistant capsules
gastroscopy
  indications
gastrostomy
  buttons
  measuring fluid output
  percutaneous endoscopically placed (PEG)
  radiologically inserted (RIG)
  tubes
gauges, needle
GCS *see* Glasgow Coma Scale
Gel-X capsules
general anaesthesia *see* anaesthesia
generalized anxiety disorder
general sales list (GSL) medicines
genitourinary assessment
gentamicin
gingivitis
Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS)
  frequency of observations
  post-CPR
  scoring
glasses *see* spectacles
glaucoma
globe (of eye)
glomerular filtration
glomerular filtration rate (GFR)
glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)
gloves, disposable
  dispensers
  disposal of used
  non-sterile
      aseptic technique

procedure guideline
operating theatre staff
source isolation
sterile
aseptic technique
procedure guidelines
venepuncture
gloving, double
glucagon
glucose
administration, in hypoglycaemia
blood *see* blood glucose
in urine
glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency
glucose meters, blood
glucose polymers
dietary supplements
enteral feeds
glutamine
gluteus muscle injections
glycerine swabs, dry mouth
glycerol (glycerine) suppositories
glyceryl trinitrate
to aid venous access
transdermal delivery
glycopeptide antibiotics
adverse effects
monitoring serum concentrations
goggles *see* eye protection
Gordon's Functional Health Patterns
gowns, sterile
donning, procedure guideline
graduated elastic compression stockings *see* antiembolic stockings

graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), transfusion-associated (TA-GVHD)
Gram-negative bacteria
  identification
Gram-positive bacteria
  identification
Gram staining
granulation tissue
granulocytes, buffy coat or apheresed
grapefruit juice
gravity drip rate controllers
gravity infusion devices
  advantages and disadvantages
  factors affecting flow rates
  flow rate calculations
groin swabs
Guedel airway

haematology
  preoperative tests
haematoma, after venepuncture
haematopoietic stem cell transplantation, blood groups in
haemodilution, acute normovolaemic (ANH)
haemodynamics
  postoperative instability
haemofiltration
haemoglobin (Hb)
  concentration
  oxygen transport
haemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN)
haemolytic transfusion reactions
  acute
  delayed
haemorrhage *see* bleeding/haemorrhage

haemostasis
  after venepuncture
  in wound healing
haemovigilance
hair
  care
  chemotherapy-related loss
  removal, surgical site
hairdryers
hand(s)
  cuts and abrasions
  drying
  veins for venepuncture
hand hygiene
  after glove removal
  aseptic technique
  equipment
  immunocompromised patients
  procedure guidelines
  protective isolation
  source isolation
  see also handwashing
handrubs
  alcohol-based *see* alcohol-based handrubs
  non-alcoholic antiseptic
handwashing
  areas commonly missed
  equipment and facilities
  presurgical
  procedure guideline
hazard
HCAI *see* health care-associated infections
head injury

head lice
head tilt/chin lift manoeuvre
healing, wound *see* wound healing
health and safety, occupational
  intravenous drug administration
  specimen handling
  venepuncture
  see also inoculation injuries; personal protective equipment
Health and Safety at Work, etc. Act 1974
health and safety management
Health and Social Care Act, 2008
healthcare assistants (HCA)
  changing roles
  documentation by
  personal hygiene care
  procedures suitable for
healthcare-associated infections (HCAI)
  control measures
  defined
  legal and professional issues
  patient education
  prevalence
  prevention *see* infection prevention and control
Healthcare Commission
  see also Care Quality Commission
healthcare providers, registration
healthcare provision, PEST factors influencing
health management, assessment
health perception, assessment
hearing
  mechanism of
  testing
hearing aids

hearing loss
  communicating with patients with
heart
  apical beat assessment
  conduction system
  rhythm
heart rate (HR)
  factors affecting
  see also pulse
heat
  excessive, poor wound healing
  gains and losses
heat and moisture exchanger (HME)
  tracheostomy patients
heat therapy
  to aid venous access
  pain management
heel supports, during surgery
height measurement
  adults
  equipment
  problem solving
  procedure guideline
  sick children
helminths
hemi-aesthesia
hemiparesis
hemiplegia
  prevention of shoulder pain
heparin
  low molecular weight (LMWH)
  unfractionated (UH)
hepatitis B, transfusion-related

hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)
hepatitis C, transfusion-related
herbal medicines
  drug interactions
Heron's six category intervention analysis
high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters
high-impact actions for nursing and midwifery
High Quality Care for All (Darzi 2008)
Hindu Council UK
Hinduism
  last offices
  washing and personal hygiene
His–Purkinje system
histamine
histology
HIV *see* human immunodeficiency virus
HLA (human leucocyte antigens)
Hollister barrier rings
home
  enteral feeding
  oxygen therapy
  see also discharge
honey
hospital-acquired infections *see* healthcare-associated infections
Hospital Chaplaincies Council
host, susceptible
human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
human leucocyte antigens (HLA)
human rights
human T cell leukaemia/lymphoma virus type 1 (HTLV-1)
humidification
  complications
  equipment

indications
during oxygen therapy
problem solving
procedure guideline
rationale
tracheostomy/laryngectomy patients
humidifiers
aerosol
blockage
cold water bubble
water bath
humidity
humour, using
hydration
artificial, dying patients
assessment
skin changes and
see also fluid intake
hydrocolloid wound dressings
hydrofibre wound dressings
Hydroframe
hydrogel-coated catheters
hydrogel wound dressings
hydrogen peroxide, oral therapy
hydromorphone
hydrostatic pressure
hygiene
bed bathing *see* bed bathing
food
personal *see* personal hygiene
see also cleaning
Hygiene Code (2010)
hyperalgesia

hypercalcaemia
hypercapnia
  postoperative
hyperextension
hyperglycaemia
Hypericum perforatum, drug interactions
hyperkalaemia
  transfusion-associated
hypernatraemia
hyperpyrexia
  malignant
hypertension
  management
  postoperative
  primary
  secondary
hyperthermia
  postoperative
hyperthyroidism
hyperventilation
  central neurogenic
hypervolaemia
  see also fluid overload
hyphae, fungal
hypocalcaemia
hypoglossal nerve (XII)
hypoglycaemia
hypokalaemia
hyponatraemia
hypotension
  management
  orthostatic
  postoperative

hypothalamus, thermoregulation
hypothermia
  cardiopulmonary arrest
  laparoscopic surgery
  postoperative
  transfusion-associated
hypothyroidism
hypoventilation
  postoperative
hypovolaemia
  blood pressure measurement
  cardiopulmonary arrest
  postoperative
  pulse measurement
  see also dehydration
hypovolaemic shock, postoperative
hypoxia
  anaemic
  cardiopulmonary arrest
  complicating tracheal suctioning
  histotoxic
  hypoxaemic
  ischaemic
hypoxic drive
  reduced

IBCT error *see* incorrect blood component transfused error
ibuprofen
identification, patient
  administration of medicines
  after death
  blood transfusions
  surgery

ileal conduits, postoperative function
ileostomy
  dietary restrictions
  postoperative function
  pouches
  see also stoma(s)
ileus, paralytic
illness memoirs
immobility
  bed rest
  postoperative patients
  unconscious patients
  see also moving and positioning
immune modulation, transfusion-related
immunocompromised patients
  blood transfusion
  cytomegalovirus infections
  diet
  discharge advice
  fungal infections
  intramuscular injections
  nutritional assessment
  protective isolation
  skin preparation for injections
  temperature monitoring
  wound infections
impartiality
implanted devices
  deceased patients
  magnetic resonance imaging and
inattention, sensory/motor
incidents
  involving medicines

non-clinical
non-clinical prevented
patient safety *see* patient safety incidents
serious untoward (SUI)
see also errors; spillages
incongruence
incontinence
skin care
see also faecal incontinence; urinary incontinence
incorrect blood component transfused (IBCT) error
prevention
indemnity insurance
independent prescribing
indirect contact, transmission via
individuals, treating people as
induction anaesthetics
infection(s)
bloodborne *see* bloodborne infections
causes
chain of
endogenous
exogenous
eye
health care-associated *see* health care-associated infections
indicators and effects
mechanisms
postoperative
pulse monitoring
pyrexia
source isolation *see* source isolation
sources
symptoms
temperature monitoring

transfusion-transmitted
venepuncture site
wound *see* wound infections
see also sepsis
infection prevention and control
aseptic technique
assessment and recording tools
cardiopulmonary resuscitation
Code of Practice (2010)
competencies
deceased patients
definitions
equipment
evidence-based approaches
high-impact interventions
indications
inoculation injury
intravenous drug administration
legal and professional issues
matron's role
multiple choice questions
operating theatre
patient education
personal hygiene
principles
procedure guidelines
protective isolation
rationale
source isolation
tracheal suctioning
waste management
infection prevention and control team (IPCT)
infectious agents

defined
mechanisms of infection
modes of transmission
see also bacteria; fungi; parasites; viruses
infectious diseases
isolation of patients with *see* source isolation
last offices
see also specific diseases
infiltration
inflammation, wound
inflammatory phase, wound healing
influenza, pandemic
information
assessing ability to comprehend
sharing with colleagues
sources
information provision
bereaved family
at discharge
end-of-life care
pain management
principles
standards of care
surgical patients
when a patient dies
see also communication; patient education
infusion(s)
complications
groups at risk
identifying risks
defined
parenteral
types

see also intravenous infusions
infusion containers/bags
changing
height
infusion devices
gravity
improving safety
MHRA classification
occlusion by fibrin
paediatric patients
problem solving
safe use
selection criteria
user errors
winged *see* winged infusion devices
see also infusion pumps
infusion flow rates
blood transfusions
calculations
complications of incorrect
factors affecting
slowing/stopping
infusion fluids
effects on flow rate
visual inspection
infusion pumps
accuracy of delivery
air-in-line detectors
antisiphonage
improving safety
MHRA categories
occlusion response and pressure
problem solving

safety software
syringe *see* syringe pumps
volumetric
inhalational anaesthetics
inhalational analgesia (Entonox)
inhalation route of drug administration
aerosol formulations
complications
equipment
patient education
procedure guidelines
inhalers
difficulties in using
dry powder (DPI)
metered dose (MDIs)
procedure guideline
injections
administration, procedure guideline
defined
equipment
indications
intravenous *see* intravenous injections
multidose preparations
preparation of medications for
calculations
procedure guidelines
reducing pain of
routes of administration
single-dose preparations
types
inner ear
inoculation injuries
management

prevention
during venepuncture
INR *see* International Normalized Ratio
insects
infestations
vector transmission
inspiration
inspiratory capacity (IC)
inspiratory reserve volume (IRV)
insulin
blood glucose regulation
deficiency
intensive treatment
subcutaneous injection
syringes
insurance, indemnity
integrity, personal
Intensive Care Society (ICS)
intercostal muscles
intercostal nerves
interdental cleaning
intermediate care
intermittent pneumatic compression devices
intraoperative use
thromboprophylaxis and
International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP)
International Normalized Ratio (INR)
interpreters
interstitial space
interviews, assessment
intra-alveolar pressure
intra-arterial drug administration
intra-articular drug administration

intracellular fluid (ICF)
intracranial mass lesions, expanding
intracranial pressure (ICP), raised
intradermal injections
  needle size
  procedure guideline
intramuscular (IM) injections
  needles
  opioid analgesics
  procedure guideline
  reducing pain
  sites
  skin preparation
  technique
  volume
  Z-track technique
intraoperative care
  anaesthesia
  defined
  infection control and asepsis
  laparoscopic surgery
  moving and positioning
  multiple choice questions
  objectives
  recovery
  safety checklist
  see also operating theatre
intraoperative cell salvage (ICS)
intraosseous route of drug administration
intrapleural pressure
intrathecal analgesia
intrathecal drug administration
intravascular space

intravenous access *see* venous access
intravenous bolus injections
  procedure guideline
intravenous cannulation, peripheral
intravenous devices
  skin care
  for venepuncture
intravenous drug administration
  asepsis/prevention of infection
  complications
  drug compatibilities
  equipment
  errors
  methods
  nurse's responsibilities
  pain management
  patient comfort
  problem solving
  procedure guidelines
  safe practice
  training and assessment
  see also intravenous infusions; intravenous injections
intravenous fluids
  administration sets
  circulatory overload complicating
  colloids *vs* crystalloids
  flow rates
  hypovolaemia
  importance of osmolarity
  infusion devices
intravenous fluids (*cont.*)
  measuring fluid input
  postoperative

reducing risk of infection
see also fluid replacement
intravenous infusions
complications
continuous
changing administration sets
flow rate calculations
procedure guideline
drug compatibilities
drug injections into
flow rates
calculations
factors affecting
slowing/stopping
intermittent
flow rate calculations
procedure guideline
reducing risk of infection
monitoring
postanaesthetic recovery
problem solving
reducing risk of infection
intravenous injections
direct intermittent
procedure guideline
intravenous push
procedure guideline
introducers
investigations
preoperative
Ionizing Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations (2000)
irinotecan
iron overload

irritant contact dermatitis, latex allergy
ischaemia, pressure-induced
ischaemic heart disease
Islam
  last offices
  washing and personal hygiene
Isogel
isolation
  see also protective isolation; source isolation
isothermic point
isotonic fluid expansion
  see also fluid overload
ispaghula husk

Jackson® silver tracheostomy tube
Jainism
jaw thrust
Jehovah's Witnesses
  blood transfusion
  last offices
jejunostomy
  feeding tubes
jewellery
  deceased patients
  hand hygiene and
  removal for X-rays
  surgical patients
joints
  protection in neurological patients
  restrictions in range of movement
  surgical replacement
Joint UKBTS/NIBSC Professional Advisory Committee (JPAC)
Judaism, last offices

Kapitex Tracheotwist® fenestrated tracheostomy tube
keep vein open (KVO) alerts
keratinocyte growth factor (KGF)
ketones
kidneys
  blood pressure regulation
  fluid balance regulation
  urine formation
knee-jerk reflex
knowledge, updating
Knowledge and Skills Framework
  communication
  equality and diversity
Korotkoff sounds
  auscultatory gap
  in children
  inaudible or weak
kyphosis

labelling
  blood pack
  specimens
laboratory specimen collection *see* specimen collection
lacrimal apparatus
lactic acid
lactulose
lancets
language
  anatomy and physiology
  difficulties, neurological assessment
  disorders
  non-English speakers
  written information

laparoscopic surgery
  equipment
large intestine
laryngeal mask airway (LMA)
laryngeal spasm, postoperative
laryngectomy
  equipment
  humidification
  total
  see also tracheostomy
laryngoscope
  light not working
larynx
lasting power of attorney (LPA)
last offices
  contraindications
  definition
  equipment
  indications
  infectious patients
  legal issues
  postmortem requirements
  problem solving
  procedure guideline
  radioactive patients
  rationale
  religious and cultural requirements
  see also death
latex
  allergy
    preoperative actions
    risk factors
  gloves

urinary catheters
laundry *see* linen/laundry
laxatives
abuse
bulking agents
opioid-treated patients
osmotic agents
stimulant
stool softeners
laying out *see* last offices
L-dopa
lean body mass
learning disabilities
Leeds Assessment of Neuropathic Symptoms and Signs (LANSS)
left bundle branch
leg *see* lower limb
legal aspects
controlled drugs
deceased patients
end-of-life care
infection prevention and control
leg drainage bags
supports
leg straps, catheterized patients
lemon swabs, dry mouth
leucoagglutination
leucocyte esterase reagent strips
leucocytes *see* white blood cells
leucocytosis
leucodepletion of blood
leucopenia
leucopheresis
leukaemia

Lewisham Isolation Prioritization System (LIPS)
lice
lidocaine, gel, urinary catheterization
ligaments
lights, operating
light sources
  ear irrigation
  eye care
lignocaine *see* lidocaine
Limone
linctuses
linen/laundry
  changing
  foul, infected or infested
      procedure guideline
  management of soiled
  patients in source isolation
lipidaemia, in diabetes
lipid emulsions, changing administration sets
lips
  assessment
liquid paraffin
listening
liver
liver biopsy
  complications
  image-guided approach
  needles
  percussion palpation approach
liver function tests
Liverpool Care Pathway
living wills
Lloyd Davies position

thromboprophylaxis and
local anaesthesia
liver biopsy
postoperative care
local anaesthetics
epidural/intrathecal
ophthalmic use
topical use *see* topical anaesthesia
long-chain triglycerides (LCT)
loop of Henle
loperamide
lordosis
lotions
low air loss bed
lower limb
amputation
see also amputation
blood pressure measurement
veins for venepuncture
low molecular weight heparin (LMWH)
low mood
lozenges
lubricating gels, urinary catheterization
Luer-Lok syringes
Luer-Slip syringes
lumbar nerves
lumbar plexus
lung(s)
gaseous exchange
irritant receptors
ventilation
ventilation/perfusion matching
lung capacities

lung disease
  unilateral, patient positioning
  widespread, patient positioning
lung volumes
lying position *see* side lying position; supine position
lymphocyte count, total

macrophages
macula lutea
macular degeneration, age-related
magnesium salts, laxative
magnesium sulphate
magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
malaria
male patients
  facial shaving
  meatal cleaning
  midstream specimen of urine
  penile sheaths
  respiratory volumes and capacities
  urinary catheterization
male urethra
malignant hyperpyrexia
malnutrition
  assessment
  biochemical investigations
  poor wound healing
  postoperative prevention
  screening tools
malnutrition universal screening tool (MUST)
malodour *see* odour
Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations (MHSWR)
manometer, cuff pressure

manual handling
  defined
  operating theatre
  risk assessment
  see also moving and positioning; transfers
masks
  disposable
    procedure guideline
    source isolation
  operating theatre staff
  oxygen *see* oxygen masks
  ventilation, CPR
matrons
maturation phase, wound healing
McGill forceps
McGill Pain Questionnaire (MPQ)
meals
  oral drug administration and
  patients in isolation
  see also feeding; food
mealtimes, protected
mean arterial pressure (MAP)
meatus, urinary *see* urethral meatus
median cubital vein
medical devices
  moving and positioning aspects
  see also implanted devices
Medical Devices Agency (MDA) *see* Medicines and Health Care Products Regulatory Agency
medical emergency team (MET) scoring
Medic-Alert Foundation
medical examiners (ME)
  confirmation of death

referral to
medically unstable patients, moving
medications *see* medicines
medicinal products, defined
medicine pots
medicines
adverse reactions *see* adverse drug reactions
affecting urinalysis results
calculations
complications
containers
controlled *see* controlled drugs
defined
dispensing
disposal of unwanted
errors involving
indications
influencing wound healing
monitoring serum levels
off label
patient's own
postanaesthetic recovery
preparation
prescribing *see* prescribing
safety issues
safety monitoring
security
stability
stock control
storage
to take out (TTO)
unlicensed
venepuncture and

Medicines Act
medicines administration
  controlled drugs
  covert
  errors
  injections and infusions
  intravenous *see* intravenous drug administration
  legal and professional issues
  multiple choice questions
  nasal
  ophthalmic
  oral
  otic
  patient identification
  processes permitting
  pulmonary
  rectal
  routes
  safe practice
  self-administration
  single or double checking
  topical
  transdermal
  vaginal
  verbal orders
  via enteral feeding tubes
Medicines and Health Care Products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) (formerly Medical Devices Agency)
  blood transfusion safety
  classification of infusion devices
  heat patches or packs
  safe use of infusion devices
  sphygmomanometers

thermometers
unlicensed and off-label medicines
Yellow Card Scheme
medicines management
defined
legal and professional issues
multiple choice questions
medium-chain triglycerides (MCT)
medulla, respiratory centres
melphalan
membranes, cellular
structure
transport and movement across
Menghini needle
meningococcal meningitis
mental capacity
Mental Capacity Act
Mental Health Act Commission
mercaptopurine
mercury
sphygmomanometers
thermometers
mesna
metabolic disorders, cardiopulmonary arrest
metacarpal veins
metered dose inhalers (MDIs)
procedure guideline
methadone
methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* *see* meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
methylnaltrexone
meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)
high-risk patients

  infection prevention and control
  screening
  vancomycin therapy
MET (medical emergency team) scoring
MEWS *see* Modified Early Warning System
MHRA *see* Medicines and Health Care Products Regulatory Agency
microbiological culture
microbiological specimen collection
  blood
  competencies
  equipment
  faeces
  respiratory secretions
  swabs
  urine
  see also specimen collection
microbiological tests
microbore infusion sets
Microlax enema
micro-organisms
  storage and transportation
  see also bacteria; fungi; parasites; viruses
microscopy
midazolam
  safety guidance
middle ear
Mid-Staffordshire NHS Foundation Trust
midstream specimen of urine (MSU)
  female patients
  male patients
  procedure guidelines
Milpar
minerals

dietary requirements
serum levels
supplements
mini assessment
minimally invasive surgery
mini-tracheostomy
mini-Wright peak flow meter
miotics
Misuse of Drugs Act 1971
Misuse of Drugs and Misuse of Drugs (Safe Custody) (Amendment) Regulations 2007
Misuse of Drugs (Safe Custody) Regulations 1973
Misuse of Drugs Regulations 2001
mixtures of medicines
mobility
assessment
nutritional status and
see also immobility; movement(s)
mobilization
patients on bed rest
postoperative
see also moving and positioning; transfers
modes of transmission
Modified Early Warning System (MEWS)
cardiopulmonary resuscitation
oxygen therapy
postoperative patients
modified-release tablets
monitored dosage systems
monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOI)
monoparesis
mood
low

in undernutrition
morphine
breakthrough pain
conversion to fentanyl patch
routes of administration
safer practice guidance
side-effects
mortuary
transfer to
viewing body after removal to
motor coordination, testing
motor function, assessment
motor inattention
motor response
evaluation of
Glasgow Coma Scale
mouth
assessment
dry *see* dry mouth
painful/sore
mouth care
aims
defined
equipment
indications
pharmacological agents
postanaesthetic recovery
problem solving
procedure guideline
unconscious patients
mouthrinses
mouth-to-face mask ventilation
mouth-to-mouth ventilation

mouthwashes
movement(s)
  abnormal patterns
  active, immobile patients
  physical benefits
  see also mobility
Movicol
moving and positioning
  amputees
  assessment prior to
  in chair/wheelchair
  documentation
  equipment
  indications
  intravenous infusions
  lying down to sitting up
  multiple choice questions
  in neurological impairment
  operating table
  patient explanation/instruction
  post-cardiac arrest
  postoperative patients
  principles
  privacy and dignity
  problem solving
  rationale
  in respiratory compromise *see* respiratory compromise, positioning in
  risk assessment
  side-lying
  sitting in bed
  sputum collection
  supine in bed
  unconscious patients

see also posture
MRSA *see* meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
MSU *see* midstream specimen of urine
mucociliary escalator
mucolytic agents
mucositis, oral *see* oral mucositis
multidisciplinary approach
  discharge planning
  moving and positioning
  pain management
  tracheostomy care
multidose vials *see* vials
muscle(s), skeletal
  atrophy, unconscious patients
  coordination testing
  relationships to bones
  venous return
muscle relaxants
muscle strength
  assessment
  testing
  unconscious patients
muscle tone
  altered
    patient positioning
    problem solving
  defined
  testing
musculoskeletal system
music, for pain management
Muslim Council of Great Britain
Muslims
  last offices

washing and personal hygiene
MXL
mycelium
mycobacteria
mycoses
see also fungal infections
mydriatics
myofibroblasts

nails
artificial
care
nail varnish/polish
nalidixic acid
naloxone
oxycodone combination
name (wrist) bands
see also identification, patient
NANDA-I (2009).
nasal analgesia
nasal cannulas, oxygen via
application
oxygen flow rates
problem solving
nasal care
nasal drops, procedure guideline
nasal drug administration
nasal erosion, complicating nasogastric feeding
nasoduodenal tubes, enteral feeding
nasogastric intubation
contraindications
indications
patient preparation

problem solving
using an introducer, procedure guideline
without an introducer, procedure guideline
nasogastric tubes
enteral feeding
checking position
complications
displacement
ongoing care
psychosocial impact
see also enteral feeding tubes
insertion *see* nasogastric intubation
measuring fluid output
methods of securing
nasojejunal tubes, enteral feeding
National Blood Transfusion Committee (NBTC)
National Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome and Death (NCEPOD)
National Council of Hindu Temples
National Framework for NHS Continuing Healthcare
National Health Service (NHS)
Constitution
Continuing Healthcare
National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE)
depression management
diabetes care guidance
pressure ulcer guidance
smoking cessation advice
National Patient Safety Agency (NPSA)
blood transfusion practice
checking position of nasogastric tube
developing ‘no blame’ culture
high-dose opiate guidance

  medication errors
  midazolam guidance
  never events
  patient identification advice
  patient safety incidents
  pressure ulcers
  wristband requirements
National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel
National Service Framework for Older People
National Spiritual Assembly of the Bahais of the United Kingdom
Naturcare
nausea and vomiting
  assessment
  dietary modification
  at end of life
  enterally fed patients
  postoperative
nebulization
  sputum collection
nebulizers
  cleaning before reuse
  humidifier
  procedure guideline
needle-free injection caps
needle-free injection ports
needle phobia
needles
  disposal of used
  for drug injections
  liver biopsy
  removal from vein
  sizes (gauges)
  venepuncture

needlestick injuries *see* inoculation injuries
needs, patient
negative air pressure, source isolation rooms
negative pressure wound therapy (NPWT)
  contraindications
  indications
  procedure guideline
Negus® silver tracheostomy tube
Nelaton catheters
neonates
  haemolytic disease
  infusions
  oxygen toxicity
  temperature regulation
nephrotoxicity, antimicrobial agents
nerve injuries
  complicating venepuncture
  intraoperative
nervous system
neuroglia
neurological assessment/observations
  charts
  equipment
  frequency
  functions assessed
  indications
  problem solving
  procedure guidelines
  vital signs
  see also Glasgow Coma Scale
neurological impairment, moving and positioning
  abnormal reflex activity
  abnormal tone and movement patterns

  environmental aspects
  equipment
  joint protection
  principles
  problem solving
  procedure guideline
  soft tissue changes and contractures
neuromuscular blockade, persistent
neurones
neuropathic pain
  assessment
  management
Neuro tips
neutropenia
  discharge advice
neutrophils (polymorphonuclear leucocytes)
never events
NHS *see* National Health Service
The NHS Plan (2000), discharge planning
NICE *see* National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence
Nightingale, Florence
nil by mouth, preoperative
nitrites, urinary
nitrofurazone-impregnated urinary catheters
nitrogen
  dietary requirements, calculation
  partial pressure
nitrous oxide and oxygen
NMC *see* Nursing and Midwifery Council
'No Blame' culture, developing a
nociceptive pain
nociceptors
Nodor S drops

non-clinical incidents
non-clinical prevented incidents
Non-conformists, last offices
non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
  COX-2-specific
non-verbal communication
noradrenaline
Normacol
normal saline *see* sodium chloride, 0.9% solution
norovirus, transmission
Norton scale
Norwegian scabies
nose
  artificial (Swedish)
  care
  drug administration
  MRSA screening
  swab sampling
No Secrets (2000)
nosocomial infections *see* healthcare-associated infections
novice nurse
NPSA see National Patient Safety Agency
NSAIDs see non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
numerical rating scales (NRS), pain assessment
nurse consultants
nurse endoscopists
nurse practitioners
nurse prescribing
  controlled drugs
nurses (qualified)
  accountability
  benefits of delivering care
  blocking behaviours

interpersonal interactions
role changes
role developments
vigilance
nursing
context
defined
economic influences
high-impact actions
political influences
social influences
technical influences
Nursing and Midwifery Council (NMC)
care of older person
The Code
communication guidance
consent guidance
consultation on advanced practice
covert drug administration
medicines management standards
nurse prescribing
respect for dignity
nursing assessment *see* assessment
nursing care *see* care
nursing diagnosis *see* diagnosis, nursing
nursing home, discharge to
nursing interventions, formulation of
nursing models
nutrients
deficiencies
ingestion, digestion and absorption
intake, assessment
requirements *see* nutritional requirements

nutrition
  anatomy and physiology
  benchmarks
  multiple choice questions
  postoperative
  provision in hospital setting
  see also diet; food; malnutrition
nutritional care, characteristics of good
nutritional requirements
  calculation
  causes of increased
nutritional status
  assessment
    biochemical investigations
    clinical examination
    methods
    tools
  body composition and
  defined
  skin changes
nutritional support
  indications
  oral
  see also dietary supplements; enteral tube feeding; parenteral nutrition

obesity
  nutritional assessment
  surgical wound complications
observations
  12-lead electrocardiogram
  blood glucose
  blood pressure
  definitions

  documentation
  equipment
  general principles
  measuring and recording methods
  multiple choice questions
  neurological
  peak flow
  postanaesthetic recovery
  postoperative
  professional issues
  pulse
  respiration and pulse oximetry
  temperature
  urinalysis
  see also vital signs
occipital lobe
occupational health and safety *see* health and safety, occupational
occupational therapy
oculocephalic reflex
oculomotor nerve (III)
odour
  stomas
  urine
  wound
oedema
  in fluid overload
  nutritional assessment
  patient positioning and
  physiological basis
oesophagogastroduodenoscopy (OGD) *see* gastroscopy
oesophagus
oestradiol, transdermal delivery
The Office of the Chief Rabbi

off-label medicines
ointments
  see also eye ointments
older adults
  delirium
  discharge planning
  eye changes
  guidelines for care
  mouth care
  pain assessment
  respect for dignity
  skin changes
  temperature regulation
  transfusion thresholds
  venepuncture
  wound healing
olfactory nerve (I)
oliguria, postoperative
olive oil, for softening ear wax
omega-3 fatty acids
operating lights
operating room (OR) *see* operating theatre
operating table
  position of patient on
  transfers to/from
operating theatre
  control of infection and asepsis
  equipment
  preoperative checklist
  pre-surgery (skin incision) actions
  procedure guideline
  team
  WHO safety checklist

see also intraoperative care; peri-anaesthesia care unit
ophthalmic drug administration
ophthalmoscope
opioid analgesics
acute pain in patients dependent on
constipation
dose titration
driving and
drug interactions
epidural/intrathecal
intramuscular injections
intravenous
legal aspects
mild to moderate pain
moderate to severe pain
nasal
oral
oral transmucosal administration
in renal failure
safe practice guidance
side-effects
subcutaneous
sublingual
transdermal patches
optic nerve (II)
OR *see* operating theatre
Orabase paste
oral assessment
Oral Assessment Guide (OAG)
oral cavity *see* mouth
oral drug administration
assessment prior to
covert

defined
equipment
formulations for
pain management
problem solving
procedure guideline
swallowing difficulties
oral health, factors maintaining
oral hygiene *see* mouth care
oral infections
oral irrigation
oral liquid medications
administration
formulations
oral mucosa
coating agents
oral mucositis
management
prevention
oral temperature
Oramorph
see also morphine
orbit (eye socket)
Orem's model of nursing
organ donation
cultural and religious beliefs
discussion with patient
organizational change, risk management and
organizational culture
organ of Corti
orientation
evaluation of
postanaesthetic recovery

oropharyngeal airway
orthopnoea
orthoses
orthostatic blood pressure, measurement
orthostatic hypotension
osmolarity
osmosis
osmotic pressure
ossicles, auditory
osteoporosis
Ostobon deodorant powder
Ostoseal protective powder
Ostosorb gel
otic drug administration
ototoxicity, antimicrobial agents
outcomes, patient
  discharge planning
  evaluating
  identifying
overinfusion
  complications
  monitoring
  prevention
  see also fluid overload
oximeter
oxycodone
  naloxone combination
  routes of administration
oxygen
  consumption
  control of respiration
  liquid
  pulmonary exchange

supply
toxicity
transportation
uptake
utilization
wound healing and
see also hypoxia
oxygen analyser
oxygenation
cellular
inadequate, during oxygen therapy
tissue
oxygen condensers (concentrators)
oxygen masks
fixed performance/high-flow (Venturi-type)
non-rebreathing
partial rebreathing
problem solving
simple semi-rigid plastic
tracheostomy
oxygen partial pressure (PO_2)
in blood (PaO_2)
control of respiration
inspired and expired air
oxygen saturation and
oxygen saturation (SaO_2)
documentation
factors affecting
PaO_2 and
pulse oximetry
reduced, patient positioning and
oxygen therapy
cardiopulmonary resuscitation

competencies
complications
definition
delivery systems
documentation
domiciliary
endoscopic procedures
equipment
humidification
indications
monitoring
multiple choice questions
nasal care
nursing care during
patient education
portable
postanaesthetic recovery
precautions
prescription
problem solving
procedure guideline
reduced peak flow
in respiratory compromise
safety measures
T-piece circuit
oxyhaemoglobin dissociation curve

pacing, in respiratory compromise
PACU *see* peri-anaesthesia care unit
paediatric patients
blood glucose ranges
blood pressure measurement
enteral feeds

infusion devices
nutritional assessment
nutritional requirements
oral drug administration
temperature regulation
tracheal suctioning
urinary catheters
venepuncture
see also neonates
pain
acute *see* acute pain
anatomy and physiology
during bladder irrigation
breakthrough
cancer *see* cancer pain
categories
chronic *see* chronic pain
defined
at end of life
evoked
factors affecting sensitivity to
incident
intensity, assessment
location
modulation
moving/positioning patients in
neuropathic
nociceptive
perception
phantom limb
postoperative *see* postoperative pain
spontaneous
stump

total, concept of
transduction
transmission
during venepuncture
wound
pain assessment
acute pain
chronic/cancer pain
pre-existing chronic pain
procedure guidelines
surgical patients
tools
vulnerable and older adults
painful stimuli
application of
response to, Glasgow Coma Scale
pain management
acute pain
chronic pain
complications
drug delivery methods
methods
multiple choice questions
need for effective
non-pharmacological methods
opioid-dependent patients
patient education
pharmacological methods
postoperative
see also analgesia; analgesics
palate
palifermin
Palladone

palliative care
  defined
  discharge home
  evidence-based approaches
  nutritional assessment
  principles
  see also dying patients; end-of-life care
palmar-plantar erythrodysesthesia syndrome
palpation, veins
panic attacks
  principles of support
  rebreathing technique
panic disorder, pharmacological therapy
paper towels
  dispensers
  disposal of used
  for handwashing
paracetamol
  combination preparations
paraesthesia
paralysis
paralytic ileus
paraphimosis, catheterized patients
paraphrasing
paraplegia
parasites
  diagnostic tests
parasympathetic nervous system
parenteral infusions
parenteral nutrition (PN)
  administration sets
  blood glucose monitoring
  changing administration sets

hyperglycaemia
indications
infusion devices
postoperative
parenteral route of drug administration
parenteral transmission
paresis
parietal lobe
partially sighted patients, communication with
partial pressure (P)
PART (patient-at-risk team) score
Passy Muir® speaking valve
pastes
pastilles
patella hammer
pathogen
pathogenicity
patient(s)
collaboration with
comfort
expectations
identification *see* identification, patient
information provision *see* information provision
involvement in decision making
own drugs
positioning *see* moving and positioning
problems/needs
providing information to *see* information provision
safety
self-administration of medicines
self-assessment tools
tampering with infusion devices
patient-at-risk team (PART) score

patient-controlled analgesia (PCA)
  patients not suitable for
  wound drain procedures
patient education
  assisted feeding
  cardiac arrest prevention
  diabetes mellitus
  enteral tube feeding
  fluid balance monitoring
  gastrointestinal infections
  immunocompromised patients
  infection prevention and control
  inhalational drug administration
  moving and positioning
  nasogastric tube feeding
  neurological impairment
  opioids and driving
  oxygen therapy
  pain management
  peak flow measurement
  protective isolation
  source isolation
  stomas
  subcutaneous injections
  surgical patients
  tracheostomy care
  see also information provision
patient-generated subjective global assessment (PG-SGA)
patient group directions (PGD)
  controlled drugs
  defined
  flowchart
Patient-Held Pain Chart, Royal Marsden Hospital

patient hygiene *see* personal hygiene
patient information materials, writing
patient information toolkit, NHS
patient safety
  diathermy risks
  myths about
patient safety incidents
  actions following
  developing a ‘no blame’ culture
  impact
  scenario
  see also risk management
Patients on Intravenous and Nasogastric Nutrition Therapy (PINNT)
patient support groups
peak flow (peak expiratory flow, PEF)
  cautions
  factors affecting
  indications
  normal values
  postprocedure actions
  problem solving
  procedure guideline
  timing of readings
peak flow meters
peer support groups
PEG (percutaneously endoscopically placed gastrostomy) tubes
penicillin
penile sheaths
  fixation methods
  procedure guideline
  sizing and fitting
penis
  pain on erection, catheterized patients

swab sampling
Penrose drain
shortening
pen torch
perception
assessing patient's self
assessment
percutaneously endoscopically placed gastrostomy (PEG) tubes
peri-anaesthesia care unit (PACU)
checklist prior to transfer to
discharge from
equipment
problem solving
procedure guidelines
transfer to
perianal care/hygiene
in diarrhoea
perineal care/hygiene
periodontitis
perioperative care
see also intraoperative care; postoperative care; preoperative care
peripheral intravenous cannulation
peripheral motor/sensory neuropathies
peripheral nerves
peripheral nervous system (PNS)
peripheral resistance
peristalsis
peritonitis, after liver biopsy
personal hygiene
assessment
bed bathing *see* bed bathing
benchmarks
cultural and religious factors

defined
ear care
eye care
hair care
mouth care
multiple choice questions
nails and feet
nose care
nurse's role
oxygen therapy and
perineal/perianal care
principles
privacy concerns
skin care
personal protective equipment (PPE)
cleaning isolation rooms
infection prevention and control
intravenous drug administration
last offices
operating theatre
procedure guidelines
protective isolation
source isolation
specimen collection/handling
see also aprons, disposable; eye protection; gloves
pessaries, vaginal
procedure guideline
PEST factors, influencing nursing care
PGD *see* patient group directions
pH
clinical importance
nasogastric aspirates
scale

phantom limb pain
pharmacists
  covert drug administration and
  responsibility for dispensing
pharmacodynamics
pharmacokinetics
pharmacology
pharmacovigilance
pharmacy-only medicines (P)
phenazopyridine (pyridium)
phlebitis, infusion flow rate and
phosphate enemas
phrenic nerve
physical abilities, assessment
physical activity *see* exercise
physiotherapy
  immobile patients
  soft tissue and joint restrictions
  sputum collection
  unconscious patients
Picker Report (2008)
pili
pinna
planning
  care
  discharge *see* discharge planning
plantar reflexes
plaque, dental
plasma (and serum)
  cryo-depleted
  fresh frozen (FFP)
  osmolarity
  oxygen transport

plasma proteins
Plasmodium falciparum
plastic surgery wounds
platelets
  administration sets
  count
  for transfusion
  wound healing
pledges, NHS Constitution
plugholes, hand basin
plugs, colostomy
pneumatic compression devices, intermittent *see* intermittent pneumatic compression devices
Pneumocystis jiroveci
pneumonia
  ventilator-associated
  see also respiratory tract infections
pneumothorax
  after liver biopsy
  tension
pocket mask with oxygen port, cardiopulmonary resuscitation
poikilothermia
point-of-care testing (POCT)
poisoning, cardiopulmonary arrest
political factors, influencing nursing
polydipsia
polymorphonuclear leucocytes
polyphagia
polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE)-coated catheters
polyurethane enteral feeding tubes
polyuria
polyvinyl chloride (PVC)
  enteral feeding tubes

urinary catheters
pons, respiratory centres
popliteal artery
portal of entry
portal of exit
Portex® tracheostomy tubes
cuffed
Suctionaid
Tracheotwist®
positioning *see* moving and positioning
positive air pressure, protective isolation rooms
postanaesthetic care
postanaesthetic recovery
complications
defined
discharge
local and regional anaesthesia
problem solving
procedure guidelines
see also peri-anaesthesia care unit
postanaesthetic recovery room
postmortem examination
cultural and religious issues
preparation of body for
postoperative care
bowel function
defined
discharge planning
fluid balance
multiple choice questions
nutrition
observations
pain management

patient education and information
prevention of complications
principles
pulse monitoring
rationale
stoma patients
surgical drains
temperature monitoring
thromboprophylaxis
urinary output and catheters
see also postanaesthetic recovery; wound management
postoperative nausea and vomiting
Postoperative Observation and Pain Assessment Chart, Royal Marsden Hospital
postoperative pain
assessment
management
postanaesthetic recovery
see also acute pain
postural control, in neurological impairment
posture
defaecation
in neurological impairment
pulse rate and
sitting
potassium
in bodily fluids
serum
transport across membranes
powders, reconstitution for injection
power of attorney, lasting (LPA)
preadmission clinics, discharge planning
prealbumin

precordial thump
prednisolone enema
pregnancy
  testing, preoperative
  X-ray precautions
premature babies, oxygen toxicity
premedication
preoperative autologous donation (PAD)
preoperative care
  defined
  fasting
  latex allergy
  marking skin
  multiple choice questions
  patient education and pain control
  patient identification
  pregnancy testing
  procedure guidelines
  rationale
  skin preparation
  stoma creation
  tampon users
  test results
  theatre checklist
  thromboprophylaxis
presbyopia
prescribing
  independent
  nurse
  supplementary
  unlicensed and off-label medicines
  verbal orders and
prescription-only medicines (POM)

prescriptions
  controlled drugs
  dispensing
  electronic (e-prescriptions)
  verbal orders without
pressure
  effects on tissues
  venepuncture site
pressure area care
  at end of life
  moving and positioning
  see also skin care
pressure cushions
pressure redistributing foam mattress
pressure-relieving devices
  last offices and
pressure ulcers
  antiembolic stockings and
  assessment
  classification
  defined
  factors contributing to
  frequency
  grades
  identifying at-risk patients
  importance of preventing
  management
  prevention
  principles of care
  risk assessment tools
  undernourished patients
primary health care team (PHCT), discharge planning
PR interval

prion diseases
  transmission via transfusion
prions
privacy
probenecid
probiotics
problems
  dealing with
  patient
procarbazine
procedures suitable for healthcare assistants
process of care
profession, upholding reputation
professional boundaries, clear
proficient nurse
prognosis, discussing, at end of life
prokaryotes
proliferative phase, wound healing
prone lying, amputees
propofol
proprioception, testing
prostatic surgery, bladder irrigation after
prostheses, preoperative removal
protected mealtimes
protective isolation
  defined
  entering the room, procedure guideline
  preparing the room, procedure guideline
  principles of care
  rationale
  room requirements
protein, dietary
  requirements, calculation

supplements
proteins, plasma
protozoa
protract
pseudomembranous colitis
psychological care department
psychological interventions, pain management
psychological support
assessment of needs
bereaved family
communication issues
environmental aspects
for nursing staff
principles
stoma patients
time available
psychosocial care
at end of life
nasogastric intubation
psychosocial factors
acute/postoperative pain
poor wound healing
pulmonary drug administration
pulmonary embolism (PE)
cardiopulmonary arrest
prophylaxis *see* thromboprophylaxis
risk factors
signs
pulmonary oedema, in fluid overload
pulse
amplitude
assessing gross irregularity
defined

  documentation
  indications
  methods of measuring
  neurological patients
  palpation sites
  paradoxical
  postanaesthetic recovery
  problem solving
  procedure guideline
  rate
  rhythm
pulseless electrical activity (PEA)
  drug therapy
  pulse assessment
pulse oximeter
  pulse measurement
pulse oximetry
  cautions
  complications
  postanaesthetic recovery
  postprocedure actions
  problem solving
  procedure guideline
pulse pressure
pupils, examination
purgatives
Purkinje fibres
pus, specimen collection
P-wave
pyrexia
  grades
  management
  transfusion reactions

see also fever

QRS complex
QT interval
quality agenda
quality of care
  assessments
  Darzi's 7 steps to enhancing
  defined
  information provision
  key components
quality standards
questioning
questions, open and closed
Q wave

radial artery
  blood pressure monitoring
  pulse
radicular (symptoms)
radioactive contamination
  deceased patients
  waste disposal
radiography
radiological investigations
radiologically inserted gastrostomy (RIG)
radiotherapy
  oral complications
  skin reactions
  tracheostomy and
randomized controlled trials (RCTs)
Rastafarianism
reagent sticks, urine *see* dipstick (reagent) tests, urine
receptors

reconstructive surgery
records *see* documentation
recovery, postanaesthetic *see* postanaesthetic recovery
recovery position
rectal bleeding, after colonoscopy
rectal drug administration
  see also enemas; suppositories
rectal examination, digital (DRE)
rectal temperature
rectum
  swab sampling
rectus femoris injections
red blood cells
  administration rate
  count (RBC)
  frozen
  in optimal additive solutions (SAGM)
  oxygen transport
  washed
Redivac drainage system
  changing vacuum
  removal
reference nutrient intake (RNI)
reflecting back
reflexes
  abnormal, role of positioning
  testing
refrigerators, storage of medicines
refusal of treatment/care
  advance directives
  respect for
regional anaesthesia, postoperative care
registration, healthcare providers

Regulan
relatives *see* family
relaxation techniques
  anxiety
  pain control
religious beliefs/practices
  assessment
  blood transfusion and
  death and dying
  personal hygiene
religious care, at end of life
renal clearance
renal failure
  biochemical tests
  opioid analgesia
renin-angiotensin system
repatriation, deceased patients
repolarization
reproduction, assessment
request forms, diagnostic test
research evidence
reservoir of infection
residential care homes, discharge to
residual volume
respiration
  abnormal patterns
  accessory muscles of *see* accessory muscles of respiration
  control
  defined
  depth
  external
  internal (cellular)
  rhythm

see also breathing
respirators
fit testing
procedure guideline
source isolation
respiratory assessment/observations
equipment
indications
methods
neurological patients
postanaesthetic recovery
postoperative
postprocedure actions
practical aspects
problem solving
procedure guideline
in respiratory compromise
respiratory care
respiratory centres
respiratory compromise
causes
management
positioning in
maximizing drainage of secretions
maximizing ventilation/perfusion matching
minimizing work of breathing
problem solving
procedure guidelines
postoperative
signs
respiratory depression
after gastroscopy
postoperative

respiratory disease, chronic
  inhalational drug administration
  oxygen therapy
respiratory distress
  signs of
  see also respiratory compromise
respiratory failure
  type 1 (hypoxaemic)
  type 2 (hypercapnic)
respiratory function
  postoperative
  unconscious patients
respiratory muscles
  accessory *see* accessory muscles of respiration
respiratory observations *see* respiratory assessment/observations
respiratory rate
  hypovolaemic shock
respiratory secretions
  droplet precautions
  effects of low humidity
  at end of life
  large volume
  positioning to maximize drainage
  specimen collection
  tracheal suctioning
  transmission of infection
  see also sputum
respiratory system
  conducting zone
  humidification function
  respiratory zone
respiratory therapy
  defined

multiple choice questions
see also oxygen therapy
respiratory tract infections
infection prevention and control
sputum/secretion sampling
respiratory volumes
responsibilities
NHS Constitution
patient's, assessment
rest
assessment
pain management
see also bed rest
restlessness, terminal
restraint, physical
resuscitation
cardiopulmonary *see* cardiopulmonary resuscitation
do not attempt (DNAR)
training
resuscitation bag, self-inflating *see* self-inflating resuscitation bag
resuscitation committee
Resuscitation Council UK (RCUK)
resuscitation training officer (RTO)
reticular activating system (RAS)
retina
retinol binding protein
retrolental fibroplasia
reverse barrier nursing
rhesus (Rh) blood group system
rhesus (Rh) incompatibility
rib fractures, during CPR
rifampicin
RIG (radiologically inserted gastrostomy)

right bundle branch
rights, NHS Constitution
rigor mortis
rigors
risk
  analysis and evaluation
  defined
  identification
  monitoring and reviewing
  treatment
risk assessment
  infection prevention and control
  scenario
risk management
  definitions
  developing ‘no blame’ culture
  falls
  key principles
  multiple choice questions
  NMC *Code*
  organizational change and
  pressure ulcers
  process
  quality agenda
  rising profile in UK
  scenarios
  self-assessment checklist
  stages
  venous thromboembolism
  see also incidents
risk register
risk scoring
rituals

death and dying
last offices
RNIB See It Right
RNID
Roberts catheters
Roho air-filled mattress/cushions
role(s)
change
developments
patient's, assessment
roller clamps
Roman Catholicism, last offices
Rome Criteria, constipation
Roper *et al* model of nursing
roundworms
routes of drug administration
Royal College of Psychiatrists
Royal College of Speech and Language Therapists
Royal National Institute of the Deaf (RNID)
Rusch® speaking valve
R-wave
Ryle's tube
insertion
see also nasogastric tubes

SABRE reporting system
sacral nerves
sacral plexus
The Safe and Secure Handling of Medicines: A Team Approach (Duthie Report, 2005)
safeguarding of vulnerable adults
safety
patient *see* patient safety
practitioner *see* health and safety, occupational

St John's wort, drug interactions
salicylates
saline, normal *see* sodium chloride, 0.9% solution
saliva
  artificial
Salmonella, diarrhoea
Saltair No-roma
Saltair solution
satiety, early
Saving Lives toolkit
SBAR (Situation-Background-Assessment-Recommendation) tool
scabies
scales, weighing
scars
scavenging system, anaesthetic gases
sclera
The Scope of Professional Practice (UKCC 1992)
scotoma
seating, in neurological impairment
seating cushion, lower limb amputees
sedation
  aggressive patients
  conscious, for endoscopy
  critically ill patients
  in delirium
segmentation, intestinal
selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)
self-administration of medicines
  patient assessment form
  procedure guideline
self-assessment, patient
self-care, postoperative patients
self concept, assessment

self-esteem, assessment
self-inflating resuscitation bag
  postanaesthetic recovery
  see also Ambu bag and mask ventilation
semi-circular canals
semi-lunar valves
semi-permeable films, wound management
senna
sensory function, assessment
sensory inattention
sensory loss, patient positioning and
sepsis
  pulse monitoring
  signs and symptoms
  transfusion-associated
  see also infection(s)
septic shock
Serious Adverse Blood Reactions and Events (SABRE) reporting system
serious adverse event
serious adverse reaction
Serious Hazards of Transfusion (SHOT) scheme
serious untoward incidents (SUI)
serological testing
seromas, surgical site
serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRI)
serum *see* plasma
Sevredol
  see also morphine
Sexual Dysfunction Association
sexual function
  assessment
  stoma patients

shampooing, hair
sharp debridement
sharps containers (bins)
sharps disposal
sharps injuries *see* inoculation injuries
shaving
  facial, male patients
  surgical site
shearing
Shiley® tracheostomy tubes
  cuffed
  cuffless
  fenestrated cuffed
  fenestrated cuffless
shivering
  postoperative
shock, venepuncture in
shoes *see* footwear
SHOT (Serious Hazards of Transfusion) scheme
showering, ear care after
shroud
side lying position
  minimizing work of breathing
  neurological patients
  procedure guideline
  sitting up from
  in unilateral lung disease
  ventilation/perfusion matching
sight
Sikh Educational and Cultural Association
Sikhism
  last offices
  washing and personal hygiene

silences
silicone catheters
silicone elastomer-coated catheters
silicone enteral feeding tubes
silicone-filled mattress pad/cushion
silver alloy-coated catheters
silver toxicity
Single Assessment Process
single checking, medicines
sinoatrial (SA) node
sinus arrhythmia
sinus rhythm
sip feeds
siphonage
sitting position
  in bed
    procedure guideline
  blood pressure measurement
  in chair/wheelchair
  lower limb amputees
  minimizing work of breathing
  problem solving
  in respiratory compromise
  standing from
  ventilation/perfusion matching
Situation-Background-Assessment-Recommendation (SBAR) tool
situs inversus
skills
  Benner's model of acquisition
  developing
  updating
skin
  ageing

anatomy and physiology
assessment
dry
factors influencing integrity
frail and papery
functions
local drug reactions
marking for surgery
redness
swab sampling
temperature
skin barrier products
stoma care
wound management
skin care
diarrhoea
incontinence
moving and positioning
multiple choice questions
specific considerations
see also pressure area care
skin cleaning *see* skin preparation
skin closure strips, adhesive
skin colour
postanaesthetic recovery
skinfold thickness
skin grafts
skin preparation (cleaning)
blood cultures
intramuscular injections
preoperative
venepuncture
skin turgor

sleep, assessment
sliding sheets
slipper bedpan, procedure guideline
small intestine
  absorption of nutrients
smell *see* odour
smoke inhalation
smoking
  cessation advice
  oxygen therapy and
Snellen chart
soap
  dispensers
  for handwashing
  perineal/perianal area
social factors, influencing nursing
social services, discharge planning
sodium
  in bodily fluids
  serum
  transport across membranes
  tubular reabsorption
sodium bicarbonate
  cardiopulmonary resuscitation
  mouthrinse
sodium chloride, 0.9% solution (normal saline)
  bladder irrigation
  eye irrigation
  mouthrinses
  wound cleaning
sodium citrate enema
sodium hypochlorite, denture care
sodium/potassium pump

soft tissue changes
  limiting movement
  neurological patients
SOLER acronym
soluble tablets
solutes
  in bodily fluids
  transport and movement
sore mouth
  dietary modification
  see also oral mucositis
source isolation
  attending to patient in
  cleaning room
    after patient discharged
  defined
  discharge from
  entering room, procedure guideline
  facilities required
  leaving room, procedure guideline
  preparation of room, procedure guideline
  procedure guidelines
  rationale
  transporting infected patients, procedure guideline
spacer devices
  cleaning
spasticity
  defined
  splints and orthoses
Speakability
speaking valves
special medicines
specimen collection

blood *see* blood sampling
communication with laboratory
competencies
consent
documentation
equipment
faeces
good practice
indications
multiple choice questions
respiratory tract secretions
swabs
timing
types of investigation
urine
specimens
containers
defined
labelling
methods of examination
request forms
safe handling
selection
transportation
spectacles
surgical patients
speech
communication using
evaluation, Glasgow Coma Scale
production
speech and language therapists (SLT)
speech impairments
causes

communicating with people with
definitions
speed shock
sphygmomanometers
aneroid
automated oscillometric
components
manual
mercury
postanaesthetic recovery
spillages
blood
source isolation rooms
spinal accessory nerve (XI)
spinal anaesthesia/analgesia
spinal cord
spinal nerves
spinal shock
spinal stability, positioning and
spiritual beliefs, assessment
spiritual care
bereaved family
at end of life
spirometers
splints
spores
bacterial
fungal
sputum
sampling
documentation
procedure guideline
storage and transport

see also respiratory secretions
stadiometer
Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs)
standard precautions
handling specimens
see also universal precautions
standard wire gauge (swg)
standing position
amputees
assistance with moving to
minimizing work of breathing
ventilation/perfusion matching
Staphylococcus aureus, meticillin-resistant see meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
staples
pros and cons
removal
procedure guideline
Starling's law of the heart
stem cell transplantation (SCT), blood groups in
sterculia
sternal rub, neurological assessment
steroids *see* corticosteroids
stethoscope
blood pressure measurement
postanaesthetic recovery
stockings, graduated elastic compression *see* antiembolic stockings
stoma(s)
anatomy and physiology
body image
complications
defined
deodorizers

diet
discharge planning
indications
measuring fluid output
observational index
postoperative function
preventing odour
sexual function and
siting
types
see also colostomy; gastrostomy; ileostomy; urostomy
stoma appliances
obtaining supplies
one- and two-piece systems
plug systems
postoperative period
pouches
selection
size
stoma bridges or rods
removal, procedure guideline
stoma care
education
equipment
indications
multiple choice questions
postoperative
preoperative
procedure guidelines
skin barriers
solutions
stomach
Stomahesive products

stomatitis
  see also oral mucositis
stools *see* faeces
stool softeners
stopcocks
storage
  controlled drugs
  medicines
stress, assessment
stress response, adverse effects
stroke
  atrial fibrillation and
  joint protection
  patient positioning
  see also aphasia
Stroke Association
stroke volume (SV)
ST segment
stump board
stump pain
subcutaneous analgesia
subcutaneous (SC) injections
  needles
  procedure guideline
  sites
subcutaneous layer
subjective global assessment (SGA)
  patient-generated (PG-SGA)
sublingual tablets
suction
  endotracheal *see* endotracheal suctioning
  equipment, CPR
  postanaesthetic recovery

suction catheters, respiratory tract secretions
suction unit, operating theatre
sudden cardiac death
suicidal ideation
suicide
  assisted
  rates
summarizing
superficial temporal artery
supine position
  in bed, procedure guideline
  neurological patients
supplementary prescribing
supportive care *see* psychological support
suppositories
  contraindications
  indications
  methods of administration
  procedure guideline
  types available
supraorbital pressure, neurological assessment
surgery
  autologous blood donation
  consent for
  enhanced recovery programmes
  hypothermia risk
  minimally invasive
  pain assessment prior to
  poor technique
  see also intraoperative care; postoperative care; preoperative care
surgical drains *see* drains, wound
surgical site
  checks, postanaesthetic recovery

hair removal
preoperative marking
surgical wounds
closure methods
complications
dehiscence
dressings
infections
plastic surgery
postanaesthetic recovery
removal of sutures or staples
see also drains, wound
susceptible host
sustained-release tablets
sutures
absorbable
continuous
interrupted
non-absorbable
removal
procedure guideline
swabs
documentation
ear
eye *see* eye swabbing
indications
low vaginal
MRSA screening
nose
penis
principles
rectum
skin

storage and transportation
throat
wound
swallowing, normal
swallowing difficulties
oral medications
see also dysphagia
swallow reflex
S wave
Swedish nose
see also heat and moisture exchanger
swelling, patient positioning and
symmetrical tonic neck reflex
sympathetic nervous system
syncope *see* fainting
syringe pumps
advantages and disadvantages
occlusion response
siphonage
user errors
syringes
for injections
oral drug administration
syrups
systematic reviews
systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS)
systemic vascular resistance (SVR)
systolic blood pressure
measurement

tablet crushers
tablets
crushing or breaking

storage
tablet splitters
tachycardia
postoperative
transfusion reactions
tachypnoea
tamponade, cardiac
tampons, during surgery
tape measure
tapeworms
taps, for hand washing
Targinact
team working
tears
artificial
technical factors, influencing nursing
TEDS *see* antiembolic stockings
TED stockings *see* antiembolic stockings
teeth
assessment
decay
loose
methods of cleaning
Teflon coated catheters
temperature
body
assessment of control
circadian variations
core
defined
equipment
factors affecting
indications for measuring

neurological patients
postanaesthetic recovery
postprocedure actions
problem solving
procedure guideline
recording sites
regulation
see also fever; hyperthermia; hypothermia; pyrexia
inspired gases
skin
storage of medicines
venepuncture and
wound
temporal lobe
tendon reflexes
tension pneumothorax
terminal care *see* end-of-life care
terminal illness, defined
terminal phase
common symptoms
defined
identifying
see also dying patients
tetraplegia
theatre, operating *see* operating theatre
therapeutic drug monitoring
therapeutic relationships, trusting
pain management
thermometers
thermoregulation
thigh, blood pressure measurement
thoracic nerves
threadworms

throat swabs
thrombocytes *see* platelets
thrombocytopenia
thrombocytosis
thromboembolic deterrent stockings *see* antiembolic stockings
thromboembolism
  cardiopulmonary arrest
  see also venous thromboembolism
thromboprophylaxis
  Lloyd Davies position and
  surgical patients
  see also antiembolic stockings
thyroid disorders
tidal volume (TV)
Tieman-tipped catheters
TILE mnemonic
Tilley's forceps
TIME principles, wound management
tissue(s)
  factors affecting wound healing
  gaseous exchange
  oxygenation
tissue adhesive
T lymphocytes, inactivation in blood products
toileting, assessment
toilets, patients in isolation
tone *see* muscle tone
tongue
  assessment
tongue depressor
tonic labyrinthine reflex
tonic neck reflex
  asymmetrical

symmetrical
tooth *see* teeth
toothbrushes
toothbrushing
toothpaste
topical anaesthesia
eye drops
gastroscopy
urinary catheterization
venepuncture
topical drug administration
complications
eye
formulations for
procedure guideline
topical negative pressure therapy (TNP) *see* negative pressure wound therapy
torsade de pointes
total body water
total lung capacity (TLC)
tourniquets
to aid venepuncture
for venepuncture site bleeding
towels, paper *see* paper towels
toxicity, cardiopulmonary arrest
toxic shock syndrome (TSS)
T-piece circuit
trachea
tracheal dilators
tracheal suctioning *see* endotracheal suctioning
tracheostomy
anatomy
competencies

contraindications
defined
dressing change
equipment
humidification
indications
mini
multidisciplinary approach
oxygen masks
patient education
percutaneous
permanent
procedure guidelines
stoma cleaning
suctioning via *see under* endotracheal suctioning
surgical
suture removal
temporary
see also laryngectomy
tracheostomy box
tracheostomy tubes
cuffed
cuffless
decannulation (removal)
decannulation plug
fenestrated
metal
postanaesthetic recovery
spare
speaking valves
specialist function
suction catheters
Trachphone

Track and Trigger system
traditional herbal medicines (THR)
tramadol
tranexamic acid
transcellular space
transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS)
transdermal drug administration
transdermal patches
  disposal
  procedure guideline
  types
transdermal systems, conventional
transfers
  to operating theatre
  to peri-anaesthesia care unit (PACU)
  post-cardiac arrest
  to/from operating table
  see also manual handling; moving and positioning; transportation
transfusion-associated circulatory overload (TACO)
transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease (TA-GVHD)
transfusion reactions
  delayed
  documentation
  febrile non-haemolytic
  immediate
  initial management
  major
  minor
  monitoring for
  pyrexia
transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI)
transfusion-related immune modulation
translation

transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs)
transmission-based precautions
  see also source isolation
transmission of infectious agents, modes
transplantation, organ donation for *see* organ donation
transplant co-ordinators
transportation
  controlled drugs
  discharge planning
  specimens
Transtec
trapezium squeeze, neurological assessment
tricuspid valve
tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs)
  pain management
trigeminal nerve (V)
trochlear nerve (IV)
Tru-Cut needle
tuberculosis (TB)
  cardiopulmonary resuscitation
  source isolation
  sputum sampling
tubular reabsorption
tubular secretion
tunica adventitia
tunica intima
tunica media
Turbohaler®
T-wave
24-hour urine collection
tympanic membrane
tympanic membrane thermometers
  problem solving

procedure guideline
tyramine-containing foods

ulna length, height estimation from
ultrasound-assisted/guided liver biopsy
unconscious patients
airway management
blood transfusion
mouth care
moving and positioning
oropharyngeal airway insertion
physiological changes
see also consciousness
underinfusion
complications
monitoring
prevention
Union of Liberal and Progressive Synagogues
universal precautions
handling specimens
tracheal suctioning
see also standard precautions
unlicensed medicines
upper limb
amputation
veins for venepuncture
urea, plasma (or serum)
ureters
urethra
mucosal trauma/irritation, catheterized patients
orifice, difficulty in visualizing
urethral catheterization *see* urinary catheterization
urethral meatus

cleaning
catheterized patients
midstream specimen of urine
crusting, catheterized patients
urinalysis
dipstick (reagent) tests *see* dipstick (reagent) tests, urine
drugs affecting results
factors influencing results
indications
methods
procedure guideline
urinary catheter-associated infections *see* catheter-associated urinary tract infections
urinary catheterization
anaesthetic lubricating gel
aseptic technique
bed bathing
competencies
complications
defined
documentation
drainage bags *see* urine drainage bags
equipment
indications
measuring urine output
postoperative
urinary catheterization (*cont.*)
problem solving
procedure guidelines
urinary catheters
antibiotic-impregnated
bags *see* urine drainage bags
balloon size

biofilm formation
bladder irrigation
encrustations and blockages
leakage around
length
materials
removal
selection
size
three-way
tip design
types
with urometers
valves
urinary elimination
urinary incontinence
penile sheaths
skin care
see also incontinence
urinary retention, catheterized patients
urinary stents
urinary tract
urinary tract infections (UTIs)
catheter-associated *see* catheter-associated urinary tract infections
cystoscopy and
dipstick tests
observations
predisposing factors
symptoms
urine sampling
urination
assessment
assisting, procedure guidelines

urine
  colour
  debris
  elimination
  formation
  observations
  odour
  osmolarity
  patients in isolation
urine drainage bags
  body-worn
  changing
  emptying
  leg
  leg straps
  sizes
  types
  with urometers
urine output
  impaired
    catheterized patients
    postoperative
  monitoring
    catheterized patients
    non-catheterized patients
  normal
  postoperative
urine specimens
  24-hour collection
  catheter (CSU)
  equipment
  indications
  midstream *see* midstream specimen of urine

principles
procedure guidelines
storage and transportation
urine testing *see* urinalysis
urometers
urostomy
fluid intake
postoperative function
pouches
see also stoma(s)
Urostomy Association
urticaria, transfusion-induced

vaccines, storage
VAC therapy system
see also negative pressure wound therapy
vacuum blood collection systems
VADs *see* vascular access devices
vaginal drug administration
procedure guideline
vaginal swabs, low
vagus nerve (X)
valuables, surgical patients
values, assessing patient's
valves, venous
vancomycin
monitoring serum concentration
vaporizer
vascular access devices (VADs)
central *see* central venous access devices
extension sets
infusion flow rates
occlusion

vasovagal attack *see* fainting
vastus lateralis injections
vector transmission
veins
  anatomy and physiology
  anchoring, using manual traction
  injuries, intravenous infusions
  missed
  palpation
  selection for venepuncture
  tapping
  for venepuncture
  visual inspection
venepuncture
  aseptic technique
  choice of vein
  competencies
  complications
  defined
  equipment
  haemostasis after
  improving venous access
  indications
  postprocedure care
  problem solving
  procedure guideline
  safety of practitioner
  skin preparation
venipuncture *see* venepuncture
venous access
  cardiopulmonary resuscitation
  limited, problem solving
  methods for improving

see also central venous access devices; vascular access devices; venepuncture
venous return
venous spasm
during blood transfusion
during intravenous infusions
during venepuncture
venous thromboembolism (VTE)
prevention
prophylaxis *see* thromboprophylaxis
risk assessment
risk factors
unconscious patients
see also deep vein thrombosis; pulmonary embolism
ventilated patients
humidification of inspired gases
moving and positioning
oral care
ventilation/perfusion matching
ventilation
Ambu bag and mask
mechanical
mouth-to-face mask
mouth-to-mouth
pulmonary
ventilation/perfusion (V/Q) matching, positioning to maximize
oxygen requirements
principles
problem solving
procedure guidelines
ventilator-associated pneumonia
ventilators, postanaesthetic recovery
ventricular fibrillation (VF)

defibrillation
drug therapy
ECG tracing
ventricular tachycardia (VT)
defibrillation
drug therapy
ECG tracing
pulseless
ventrogluteal intramuscular injections
Venturi-type oxygen masks
verbal aggression/abuse
verbal communication
verbal descriptor scales (VDS), pain
verbal orders, drug administration
verbal response, Glasgow Coma Scale
vertigo
vestibular apparatus
vestibule, oral
vials (multidose)
minimizing coring
powder preparation using equilibrium method
powder preparation using venting needle
vicarious liability
vigilance
vinyl gloves
violence
see also aggression; anger
viral infections
diagnostic tests
serology
transfusion-transmitted
see also specific infections
virulence

viruses
  identification
  life cycle
vision
visitors
  protective isolation
  see also family
visual acuity testing
visual fields
  defects
  testing
visual impairment
  communication and
visual pathways
  lesions
vital capacity (VC)
vital signs
  defined
  monitor, operating theatre
  neurological assessment
  see also blood pressure; observations; pulse; respiratory assessment/observations; temperature
vitamin B_{12}, absorption
vitamin C (ascorbic acid)
vitamin K
vitamins
  dietary requirements
  serum levels
  supplements
vitreous humour
vocal cords (folds)
voice
  impairment

production
volumetric infusion pumps
vomiting
after swallowing drugs
infection prevention and control
see also nausea and vomiting
vulnerable adults
covert drug administration
defined
pain assessment
safeguarding

warfarin
waste
containers
defined
waste management
colour coding system
equipment
procedure guideline
regulations
source isolation rooms
water
balloon catheters
drinking, immunocompromised patients
eye irrigation
for handwashing
intestinal absorption
oral care
quality
total body
transport and movement
tubular reabsorption

wound cleaning
Waterlow pressure ulcer risk assessment
WaterPik®
water trap
water vapour
weakness, patient positioning and
weekend discharge
weighing
adults
problem solving
procedure guideline
scales
sick children
weight, body *see* bodyweight
weight loss, percentage
wheelchairs
lower limb amputees
patient positioning in
whistle-tipped catheters
white blood cells
count (WBC)
for transfusion
WHO *see* World Health Organization
wind, stoma patients
winged infusion devices
blood culture samples
venepuncture
WISECARE project
women *see* female patients
World Health Organization (WHO)
adverse drug reactions
analgesic ladder
oral assessment scale

theatre safety checklist
worms, parasitic
wound(s)
assessment
bleeding
breakdown, amputees
causes
checks, postanaesthetic recovery
classification
cleaning
contraction
debridement
defined
dehiscence
exudate *see* exudate, wound
inflammation and infection
malodour
moisture balance
moving/positioning patients with
open
pain
re-epithelialization
surgical *see* surgical wounds
swabs
temperature
wound bed preparation (WBP)
TIME principles
wound closure
delayed primary
devices
methods
wound drains *see* drains, wound
wound dressings

changing
procedure guidelines
tracheostomy
dry
last offices
moisture balance control
occlusive
poor application/techniques
pressure ulcers
primary
principles of use
secondary
surgical wounds
wet
wound healing
bacterial burden and
edge non-advancement
factors affecting
haemostasis
inflammatory phase
maturation phase
moisture balance and
nutrition and
phases
by primary intention
proliferative phase
by secondary intention
by tertiary intention
tissue factors affecting
wound infections
amputees
preoperative hair removal and
surgical wounds

wound management
  moisture balance
  multiple choice questions
  negative pressure therapy
  pressure ulcers
  problem solving
  procedure guideline
  TIME principles
  useful addresses
Wright peak flow meter
Wright respirometer
wrist bands
  see also identification, patient

xerostomia *see* dry mouth
X-rays, diagnostic

Yates drainage system
  shortening
yeasts
Yellow Card Scheme
Zomorph
Zoroastrian Trust Funds of Europe
Z-track technique, intramuscular injections